# Table of Contents

1. Preamble .................................................. 1
2. Introduction ............................................. 3
   2.1. Document Conventions .................................. 3
3. Fundamentals ........................................... 6
   3.1. Host and Device Environment .......................... 6
   3.2. Execution Model ...................................... 6
   3.3. Object Model ......................................... 8
   3.4. Application Binary Interface .......................... 12
   3.5. Command Syntax and Duration ....................... 13
   3.6. Threading Behavior .................................. 14
   3.7. Valid Usage ......................................... 25
   3.8. `VkResult` Return Codes ............................. 30
   3.9. Numeric Representation and Computation .......... 34
   3.10. Fixed-Point Data Conversions ...................... 35
   3.11. Common Object Types ............................... 37
4. Initialization ........................................... 55
   4.1. Command Function Pointers ......................... 55
   4.2. Instances .......................................... 58
5. Devices and Queues .................................... 64
   5.1. Physical Devices ................................... 64
   5.2. Devices ............................................ 87
   5.3. Queues ............................................. 99
6. Command Buffers ....................................... 105
   6.1. Command Buffer Lifecycle ......................... 105
   6.2. Command Pools .................................... 107
   6.3. Command Buffer Allocation and Management ........ 114
   6.4. Command Buffer Recording ......................... 119
   6.5. Command Buffer Submission ......................... 126
   6.6. Queue Forward Progress ............................ 150
   6.7. Secondary Command Buffer Execution ............... 150
   6.8. Command Buffer Device Mask ....................... 154
7. Synchronization and Cache Control ....................... 157
   7.1. Execution and Memory Dependencies ................. 157
   7.2. Implicit Synchronization Guarantees ................ 182
   7.3. Fences ............................................ 184
   7.4. Semaphores ....................................... 207
   7.5. Events ............................................ 238
   7.6. Pipeline Barriers ................................. 264
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Appendix C: Compressed Image Formats</td>
<td>1660</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Block-Compressed Image Formats</td>
<td>1661</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETC Compressed Image Formats</td>
<td>1662</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASTC Compressed Image Formats</td>
<td>1663</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix D: Core Revisions (Informative)</td>
<td>1665</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix E: Layers &amp; Extensions (Informative)</td>
<td>1666</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List of Extensions</td>
<td>1666</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List of Provisional Extensions</td>
<td>1903</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix F: API Boilerplate</td>
<td>1915</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Vulkan Header Files</td>
<td>1915</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Window System-Specific Header Control (Informative)</td>
<td>1919</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Provisional Extension Header Control (Informative)</td>
<td>1920</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix G: Invariance</td>
<td>1922</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Repeatability</td>
<td>1922</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Multi-pass Algorithms</td>
<td>1922</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invariance Rules</td>
<td>1922</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tessellation Invariance</td>
<td>1924</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix H: Lexicon</td>
<td>1926</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glossary</td>
<td>1926</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Common Abbreviations</td>
<td>1948</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prefixes</td>
<td>1949</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Appendix I: Credits (Informative)</td>
<td>1951</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Working Group Contributors to Vulkan</td>
<td>1951</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Other Credits</td>
<td>1957</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 1. Preamble

Copyright 2014-2021 The Khronos Group Inc.

This Specification is protected by copyright laws and contains material proprietary to Khronos. Except as described by these terms, it or any components may not be reproduced, republished, distributed, transmitted, displayed, broadcast or otherwise exploited in any manner without the express prior written permission of Khronos. Khronos grants a conditional copyright license to use and reproduce the unmodified Specification for any purpose, without fee or royalty, EXCEPT no licenses to any patent, trademark or other intellectual property rights are granted under these terms.

Khronos makes no, and expressly disclaims any, representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding this Specification, including, without limitation: merchantability, fitness for a particular purpose, non-infringement of any intellectual property, correctness, accuracy, completeness, timeliness, and reliability. Under no circumstances will Khronos, or any of its Promoters, Contributors or Members, or their respective partners, officers, directors, employees, agents or representatives be liable for any damages, whether direct, indirect, special or consequential damages for lost revenues, lost profits, or otherwise, arising from or in connection with these materials.

This Specification has been created under the Khronos Intellectual Property Rights Policy, which is Attachment A of the Khronos Group Membership Agreement available at https://www.khronos.org/files/member_agreement.pdf, and which defines the terms 'Scope', 'Compliant Portion', and 'Necessary Patent Claims'. Parties desiring to implement the Specification and make use of Khronos trademarks in relation to that implementation, and receive reciprocal patent license protection under the Khronos Intellectual Property Rights Policy must become Adopters and confirm the implementation as conformant under the process defined by Khronos for this Specification; see https://www.khronos.org/adopters.

This Specification contains substantially unmodified functionality from, and is a successor to, Khronos specifications including OpenGL, OpenGL ES and OpenCL.

Some parts of this Specification are purely informative and so are EXCLUDED from the Scope of this Specification. The Document Conventions section of the Introduction defines how these parts of the Specification are identified.

Where this Specification uses technical terminology, defined in the Glossary or otherwise, that refer to enabling technologies that are not expressly set forth in this Specification, those enabling technologies are EXCLUDED from the Scope of this Specification. For clarity, enabling technologies not disclosed with particularity in this Specification (e.g. semiconductor manufacturing technology, hardware architecture, processor architecture or microarchitecture, memory architecture, compiler technology, object oriented technology, basic operating system technology, compression technology, algorithms, and so on) are NOT to be considered expressly set forth; only those application program interfaces and data structures disclosed with particularity are included in the Scope of this Specification.

For purposes of the Khronos Intellectual Property Rights Policy as it relates to the definition of Necessary Patent Claims, all recommended or optional features, behaviors and functionality set
forth in this Specification, if implemented, are considered to be included as Compliant Portions.

Where this Specification includes normative references to external documents, only the specifically identified sections of those external documents are INCLUDED in the Scope of this Specification. If not created by Khronos, those external documents may contain contributions from non-members of Khronos not covered by the Khronos Intellectual Property Rights Policy.

Vulkan and Khronos are registered trademarks of The Khronos Group Inc. ASTC is a trademark of ARM Holdings PLC; OpenCL is a trademark of Apple Inc.; and OpenGL and OpenGL ES are registered trademarks of Hewlett Packard Enterprise, all used under license by Khronos. All other product names, trademarks, and/or company names are used solely for identification and belong to their respective owners.
Chapter 2. Introduction

This document, referred to as the “Vulkan Specification” or just the “Specification” hereafter, describes the Vulkan Application Programming Interface (API). Vulkan is a C99 API designed for explicit control of low-level graphics and compute functionality.

The canonical version of the Specification is available in the official Vulkan Registry (https://www.khronos.org/registry/vulkan/). The source files used to generate the Vulkan specification are stored in the Vulkan Documentation Repository (https://github.com/KhronosGroup/Vulkan-Docs). The source repository additionally has a public issue tracker and allows the submission of pull requests that improve the specification.

2.1. Document Conventions

The Vulkan specification is intended for use by both implementors of the API and application developers seeking to make use of the API, forming a contract between these parties. Specification text may address either party; typically the intended audience can be inferred from context, though some sections are defined to address only one of these parties. (For example, Valid Usage sections only address application developers). Any requirements, prohibitions, recommendations or options defined by normative terminology are imposed only on the audience of that text.

Structure and enumerated types defined in extensions that were promoted to core in a later version of Vulkan are now defined in terms of the equivalent Vulkan core interfaces. This affects the Vulkan Specification, the Vulkan header files, and the corresponding XML Registry.

2.1.1. Informative Language

Some language in the specification is purely informative, intended to give background or suggestions to implementors or developers.

If an entire chapter or section contains only informative language, its title will be suffixed with “(Informative)”.

All NOTEs are implicitly informative.

2.1.2. Normative Terminology

Within this specification, the key words must, required, should, recommended, may, and optional are to be interpreted as described in RFC 2119 - Key words for use in RFCs to Indicate Requirement Levels (https://www.ietf.org/rfc/rfc2119.txt). The additional key word optionally is an alternate form of optional, for use where grammatically appropriate.

These key words are highlighted in the specification for clarity. In text addressing application developers, their use expresses requirements that apply to application behavior. In text addressing implementors, their use expresses requirements that apply to implementations.
In text addressing application developers, the additional key words **can** and **cannot** are to be interpreted as describing the capabilities of an application, as follows:

**can**
This word means that the application is able to perform the action described.

**cannot**
This word means that the API and/or the execution environment provide no mechanism through which the application can express or accomplish the action described.

These key words are never used in text addressing implementors.

---

**Note**
There is an important distinction between **cannot** and **must not**, as used in this Specification. **Cannot** means something the application literally is unable to express or accomplish through the API, while **must not** means something that the application is capable of expressing through the API, but that the consequences of doing so are undefined and potentially unrecoverable for the implementation (see **Valid Usage**).

---

Unless otherwise noted in the section heading, all sections and appendices in this document are normative.

### 2.1.3. Technical Terminology

The Vulkan Specification makes use of common engineering and graphics terms such as **Pipeline**, **Shader**, and **Host** to identify and describe Vulkan API constructs and their attributes, states, and behaviors. The **Glossary** defines the basic meanings of these terms in the context of the Specification. The Specification text provides fuller definitions of the terms and may elaborate, extend, or clarify the **Glossary** definitions. When a term defined in the **Glossary** is used in normative language within the Specification, the definitions within the Specification govern and supersede any meanings the terms may have in other technical contexts (i.e. outside the Specification).

### 2.1.4. Normative References

References to external documents are considered normative references if the Specification uses any of the normative terms defined in **Normative Terminology** to refer to them or their requirements, either as a whole or in part.

The following documents are referenced by normative sections of the specification:


https://www.khronos.org/registry/spir-v/.


Chapter 3. Fundamentals

This chapter introduces fundamental concepts including the Vulkan architecture and execution model, API syntax, queues, pipeline configurations, numeric representation, state and state queries, and the different types of objects and shaders. It provides a framework for interpreting more specific descriptions of commands and behavior in the remainder of the Specification.

3.1. Host and Device Environment

The Vulkan Specification assumes and requires: the following properties of the host environment with respect to Vulkan implementations:

- The host **must** have runtime support for 8, 16, 32 and 64-bit signed and unsigned two's-complement integers, all addressable at the granularity of their size in bytes.
- The host **must** have runtime support for 32- and 64-bit floating-point types satisfying the range and precision constraints in the Floating Point Computation section.
- The representation and endianness of these types on the host **must** match the representation and endianness of the same types on every physical device supported.

> **Note**
> Since a variety of data types and structures in Vulkan **may** be accessible by both host and physical device operations, the implementation **should** be able to access such data efficiently in both paths in order to facilitate writing portable and performant applications.

3.2. Execution Model

This section outlines the execution model of a Vulkan system.

Vulkan exposes one or more *devices*, each of which exposes one or more *queues* which **may** process work asynchronously to one another. The set of queues supported by a device is partitioned into *families*. Each family supports one or more types of functionality and **may** contain multiple queues with similar characteristics. Queues within a single family are considered *compatible* with one another, and work produced for a family of queues **can** be executed on any queue within that family. This specification defines the following types of functionality that queues **may** support: video decode, video encode, graphics, compute, transfer and sparse memory management.

> **Note**
> A single device **may** report multiple similar queue families rather than, or as well as, reporting multiple members of one or more of those families. This indicates that while members of those families have similar capabilities, they are *not* directly compatible with one another.

Device memory is explicitly managed by the application. Each device **may** advertise one or more heaps, representing different areas of memory. Memory heaps are either device local or host local,
but are always visible to the device. Further detail about memory heaps is exposed via memory types available on that heap. Examples of memory areas that may be available on an implementation include:

- **device local** is memory that is physically connected to the device.
- **device local, host visible** is device local memory that is visible to the host.
- **host local, host visible** is memory that is local to the host and visible to the device and host.

On other architectures, there may only be a single heap that can be used for any purpose.

### 3.2.1. Queue Operation

Vulkan queues provide an interface to the execution engines of a device. Commands for these execution engines are recorded into command buffers ahead of execution time, and then submitted to a queue for execution. Once submitted to a queue, command buffers will begin and complete execution without further application intervention, though the order of this execution is dependent on a number of implicit and explicit ordering constraints.

Work is submitted to queues using *queue submission commands* that typically take the form `vkQueue*` (e.g. `vkQueueSubmit`, `vkQueueBindSparse`), and can take a list of semaphores upon which to wait before work begins and a list of semaphores to signal once work has completed. The work itself, as well as signaling and waiting on the semaphores are all *queue operations*. Queue submission commands return control to the application once queue operations have been submitted - they do not wait for completion.

There are no implicit ordering constraints between queue operations on different queues, or between queues and the host, so these may operate in any order with respect to each other. Explicit ordering constraints between different queues or with the host can be expressed with semaphores and fences.

Command buffer submissions to a single queue respect submission order and other implicit ordering guarantees, but otherwise may overlap or execute out of order. Other types of batches and queue submissions against a single queue (e.g. sparse memory binding) have no implicit ordering constraints with any other queue submission or batch. Additional explicit ordering constraints between queue submissions and individual batches can be expressed with semaphores and fences.

Before a fence or semaphore is signaled, it is guaranteed that any previously submitted queue operations have completed execution, and that memory writes from those queue operations are available to future queue operations. Waiting on a signaled semaphore or fence guarantees that previous writes that are available are also visible to subsequent commands.

Command buffer boundaries, both between primary command buffers of the same or different batches or submissions as well as between primary and secondary command buffers, do not introduce any additional ordering constraints. In other words, submitting the set of command buffers (which can include executing secondary command buffers) between any semaphore or fence operations execute the recorded commands as if they had all been recorded into a single primary command buffer, except that the current state is reset on each boundary. Explicit ordering constraints can be expressed with explicit synchronization primitives.
There are a few implicit ordering guarantees between commands within a command buffer, but only covering a subset of execution. Additional explicit ordering constraints can be expressed with the various explicit synchronization primitives.

Note

Implementations have significant freedom to overlap execution of work submitted to a queue, and this is common due to deep pipelining and parallelism in Vulkan devices.

Commands recorded in command buffers either perform actions (draw, dispatch, clear, copy, query/timestamp operations, begin/end subpass operations), set state (bind pipelines, descriptor sets, and buffers, set dynamic state, push constants, set render pass/subpass state), or perform synchronization (set/wait events, pipeline barrier, render pass/subpass dependencies). Some commands perform more than one of these tasks. State setting commands update the current state of the command buffer. Some commands that perform actions (e.g. draw/dispatch) do so based on the current state set cumulatively since the start of the command buffer. The work involved in performing action commands is often allowed to overlap or to be reordered, but doing so must not alter the state to be used by each action command. In general, action commands are those commands that alter framebuffer attachments, read/write buffer or image memory, or write to query pools.

Synchronization commands introduce explicit execution and memory dependencies between two sets of action commands, where the second set of commands depends on the first set of commands. These dependencies enforce both that the execution of certain pipeline stages in the later set occurs after the execution of certain stages in the source set, and that the effects of memory accesses performed by certain pipeline stages occur in order and are visible to each other. When not enforced by an explicit dependency or implicit ordering guarantees, action commands may overlap execution or execute out of order, and may not see the side effects of each other’s memory accesses.

3.3. Object Model

The devices, queues, and other entities in Vulkan are represented by Vulkan objects. At the API level, all objects are referred to by handles. There are two classes of handles, dispatchable and non-dispatchable. Dispatchable handle types are a pointer to an opaque type. This pointer may be used by layers as part of intercepting API commands, and thus each API command takes a dispatchable type as its first parameter. Each object of a dispatchable type must have a unique handle value during its lifetime.

Non-dispatchable handle types are a 64-bit integer type whose meaning is implementation-dependent. Non-dispatchable handles may encode object information directly in the handle rather than acting as a reference to an underlying object, and thus may not have unique handle values. If handle values are not unique, then destroying one such handle must not cause identical handles of other types to become invalid, and must not cause identical handles of the same type to become invalid if that handle value has been created more times than it has been destroyed.

All objects created or allocated from a VkDevice (i.e. with a VkDevice as the first parameter) are private to that device, and must not be used on other devices.
### 3.3.1. Object Lifetime

Objects are created or allocated by `vkCreate*` and `vkAllocate*` commands, respectively. Once an object is created or allocated, its “structure” is considered to be immutable, though the contents of certain object types is still free to change. Objects are destroyed or freed by `vkDestroy*` and `vkFree*` commands, respectively.

Objects that are allocated (rather than created) take resources from an existing pool object or memory heap, and when freed return resources to that pool or heap. While object creation and destruction are generally expected to be low-frequency occurrences during runtime, allocating and freeing objects **can** occur at high frequency. Pool objects help accommodate improved performance of the allocations and frees.

It is an application's responsibility to track the lifetime of Vulkan objects, and not to destroy them while they are still in use.

The ownership of application-owned memory is immediately acquired by any Vulkan command it is passed into. Ownership of such memory **must** be released back to the application at the end of the duration of the command, so that the application **can** alter or free this memory as soon as all the commands that acquired it have returned.

The following object types are consumed when they are passed into a Vulkan command and not further accessed by the objects they are used to create. They **must not** be destroyed in the duration of any API command they are passed into:

- `VkShaderModule`
- `VkPipelineCache`

A `VkRenderPass` object passed as a parameter to create another object is not further accessed by that object after the duration of the command it is passed into. A `VkRenderPass` used in a command buffer follows the rules described below.

A `VkPipelineLayout` object **must** not be destroyed while any command buffer that uses it is in the recording state.

`VkDescriptorSetLayout` objects **may** be accessed by commands that operate on descriptor sets allocated using that layout, and those descriptor sets **must** not be updated with `vkUpdateDescriptorSets` after the descriptor set layout has been destroyed. Otherwise, a `VkDescriptorSetLayout` object passed as a parameter to create another object is not further accessed by that object after the duration of the command it is passed into.

The application **must not** destroy any other type of Vulkan object until all uses of that object by the device (such as via command buffer execution) have completed.

The following Vulkan objects **must not** be destroyed while any command buffers using the object are in the pending state:

- `VkEvent`
- `VkQueryPool`
• VkBuffer
• VkBufferView
• VkImage
• VkImageView
• VkPipeline
• VkSampler
• VkSamplerYcbcrConversion
• VkDescriptorPool
• VkFramebuffer
• VkRenderPass
• VkCommandBuffer
• VkCommandPool
• VkDeviceMemory
• VkDescriptorSet
• VkAccelerationStructureKHR

Destroying these objects will move any command buffers that are in the recording or executable state, and are using those objects, to the invalid state.

The following Vulkan objects **must** not be destroyed while any queue is executing commands that use the object:

• VkFence
• VkSemaphore
• VkCommandBuffer
• VkCommandPool

In general, objects **can** be destroyed or freed in any order, even if the object being freed is involved in the use of another object (e.g. use of a resource in a view, use of a view in a descriptor set, use of a pipeline library in another pipeline, use of a bottom level acceleration structure in an instance referenced by a top level acceleration structure, use of an object in a command buffer, binding of a memory allocation to a resource), as long as any object that uses the freed object is not further used in any way except to be destroyed or to be reset in such a way that it no longer uses the other object (such as resetting a command buffer). If the object has been reset, then it **can** be used as if it never used the freed object. An exception to this is when there is a parent/child relationship between objects. In this case, the application **must** not destroy a parent object before its children, except when the parent is explicitly defined to free its children when it is destroyed (e.g. for pool objects, as defined below).

*VkCommandPool* objects are parents of *VkCommandBuffer* objects. *VkDescriptorPool* objects are parents of *VkDescriptorSet* objects. *VkDevice* objects are parents of many object types (all that take a *VkDevice* as a parameter to their creation).
The following Vulkan objects have specific restrictions for when they can be destroyed:

- **VkQueue** objects cannot be explicitly destroyed. Instead, they are implicitly destroyed when the **VkDevice** object they are retrieved from is destroyed.

- Destroying a pool object implicitly frees all objects allocated from that pool. Specifically, destroying **VkCommandPool** frees all **VkCommandBuffer** objects that were allocated from it, and destroying **VkDescriptorPool** frees all **VkDescriptorSet** objects that were allocated from it.

- **VkDevice** objects can be destroyed when all **VkQueue** objects retrieved from them are idle, and all objects created from them have been destroyed. This includes the following objects:
  - VkFence
  - VkSemaphore
  - VkEvent
  - VkQueryPool
  - VkBuffer
  - VkBufferView
  - VkImage
  - VkImageView
  - VkShaderModule
  - VkPipelineCache
  - VkPipeline
  - VkPipelineLayout
  - VkSampler
  - VkSamplerYcbcrConversion
  - VkDescriptorSetLayout
  - VkDescriptorPool
  - VkFramebuffer
  - VkRenderPass
  - VkCommandPool
  - VkCommandBuffer
  - VkDeviceMemory
  - VkAccelerationStructureKHR

- **VkPhysicalDevice** objects cannot be explicitly destroyed. Instead, they are implicitly destroyed when the **VkInstance** object they are retrieved from is destroyed.

- **VkInstance** objects can be destroyed once all **VkDevice** objects created from any of its **VkPhysicalDevice** objects have been destroyed.
3.3.2. External Object Handles

As defined above, the scope of object handles created or allocated from a VkDevice is limited to that logical device. Objects which are not in scope are said to be external. To bring an external object into scope, an external handle must be exported from the object in the source scope and imported into the destination scope.

Note
The scope of external handles and their associated resources may vary according to their type, but they can generally be shared across process and API boundaries.

3.4. Application Binary Interface

The mechanism by which Vulkan is made available to applications is platform- or implementation-defined. On many platforms the C interface described in this Specification is provided by a shared library. Since shared libraries can be changed independently of the applications that use them, they present particular compatibility challenges, and this Specification places some requirements on them.

Shared library implementations must use the default Application Binary Interface (ABI) of the standard C compiler for the platform, or provide customized API headers that cause application code to use the implementation's non-default ABI. An ABI in this context means the size, alignment, and layout of C data types; the procedure calling convention; and the naming convention for shared library symbols corresponding to C functions. Customizing the calling convention for a platform is usually accomplished by defining calling convention macros appropriately in vk_platform.h.

On platforms where Vulkan is provided as a shared library, library symbols beginning with “vk” and followed by a digit or uppercase letter are reserved for use by the implementation. Applications which use Vulkan must not provide definitions of these symbols. This allows the Vulkan shared library to be updated with additional symbols for new API versions or extensions without causing symbol conflicts with existing applications.

Shared library implementations should provide library symbols for commands in the highest version of this Specification they support, and for Window System Integration extensions relevant to the platform. They may also provide library symbols for commands defined by additional extensions.
These requirements and recommendations are intended to allow implementors to take advantage of platform-specific conventions for SDKs, ABIs, library versioning mechanisms, etc. while still minimizing the code changes necessary to port applications or libraries between platforms. Platform vendors, or providers of the de facto standard Vulkan shared library for a platform, are encouraged to document what symbols the shared library provides and how it will be versioned when new symbols are added.

Applications should only rely on shared library symbols for commands in the minimum core version required by the application. `vkGetInstanceProcAddr` and `vkGetDeviceProcAddr` should be used to obtain function pointers for commands in core versions beyond the application’s minimum required version.

### 3.5. Command Syntax and Duration

The Specification describes Vulkan commands as functions or procedures using C99 syntax. Language bindings for other languages such as C++ and JavaScript may allow for stricter parameter passing, or object-oriented interfaces.

Vulkan uses the standard C types for the base type of scalar parameters (e.g. types from `<stdint.h>`), with exceptions described below, or elsewhere in the text when appropriate:

- **VkBool32** represents boolean `True` and `False` values, since C does not have a sufficiently portable built-in boolean type:

  ```c
  // Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
  typedef uint32_t VkBool32;
  ```

  - **VK_TRUE** represents a boolean `True` (unsigned integer 1) value, and **VK_FALSE** a boolean `False` (unsigned integer 0) value.

  All values returned from a Vulkan implementation in a `VkBool32` will be either **VK_TRUE** or **VK_FALSE**.

  Applications must not pass any other values than **VK_TRUE** or **VK_FALSE** into a Vulkan implementation where a `VkBool32` is expected.

  - **VK_TRUE** is a constant representing a `VkBool32` `True` value:

    ```c
    #define VK_TRUE                           1U
    ```

  - **VK_FALSE** is a constant representing a `VkBool32` `False` value:

    ```c
    #define VK_FALSE                          0U
    ```

  - **VkDeviceSize** represents device memory size and offset values:
typedef uint64_t VkDeviceSize;

VkDeviceAddress represents device buffer address values:

typedef uint64_t VkDeviceAddress;

Commands that create Vulkan objects are of the form `vkCreate*` and take `Vk*CreateInfo` structures with the parameters needed to create the object. These Vulkan objects are destroyed with commands of the form `vkDestroy*`.

The last in-parameter to each command that creates or destroys a Vulkan object is `pAllocator`. The `pAllocator` parameter can be set to a non-NULL value such that allocations for the given object are delegated to an application provided callback; refer to the Memory Allocation chapter for further details.

Commands that allocate Vulkan objects owned by pool objects are of the form `vkAllocate*`, and take `Vk*AllocateInfo` structures. These Vulkan objects are freed with commands of the form `vkFree*`. These objects do not take allocators; if host memory is needed, they will use the allocator that was specified when their parent pool was created.

Commands are recorded into a command buffer by calling API commands of the form `vkCmd*`. Each such command may have different restrictions on where it can be used: in a primary and/or secondary command buffer, inside and/or outside a render pass, and in one or more of the supported queue types. These restrictions are documented together with the definition of each such command.

The duration of a Vulkan command refers to the interval between calling the command and its return to the caller.

### 3.5.1. Lifetime of Retrieved Results

Information is retrieved from the implementation with commands of the form `vkGet*` and `vkEnumerate*`.

Unless otherwise specified for an individual command, the results are invariant; that is, they will remain unchanged when retrieved again by calling the same command with the same parameters, so long as those parameters themselves all remain valid.

### 3.6. Threading Behavior

Vulkan is intended to provide scalable performance when used on multiple host threads. All commands support being called concurrently from multiple threads, but certain parameters, or components of parameters are defined to be externally synchronized. This means that the caller must guarantee that no more than one thread is using such a parameter at a given time.
More precisely, Vulkan commands use simple stores to update the state of Vulkan objects. A parameter declared as externally synchronized may have its contents updated at any time during the host execution of the command. If two commands operate on the same object and at least one of the commands declares the object to be externally synchronized, then the caller must guarantee not only that the commands do not execute simultaneously, but also that the two commands are separated by an appropriate memory barrier (if needed).

**Note**

Memory barriers are particularly relevant for hosts based on the ARM CPU architecture, which is more weakly ordered than many developers are accustomed to from x86/x64 programming. Fortunately, most higher-level synchronization primitives (like the pthread library) perform memory barriers as a part of mutual exclusion, so mutating Vulkan objects via these primitives will have the desired effect.

Similarly the application must avoid any potential data hazard of application-owned memory that has its ownership temporarily acquired by a Vulkan command. While the ownership of application-owned memory remains acquired by a command the implementation may read the memory at any point, and it may write non-const qualified memory at any point. Parameters referring to non-const qualified application-owned memory are not marked explicitly as externally synchronized in the Specification.

If an application is using deferred host operations in a command, and that operation is successfully deferred, object parameters and application-owned memory passed to that command may be accessed at any time until the deferred operation is complete.

Many object types are immutable, meaning the objects cannot change once they have been created. These types of objects never need external synchronization, except that they must not be destroyed while they are in use on another thread. In certain special cases mutable object parameters are internally synchronized, making external synchronization unnecessary. Any command parameters that are not labeled as externally synchronized are either not mutated by the command or are internally synchronized. Additionally, certain objects related to a command's parameters (e.g., command pools and descriptor pools) may be affected by a command, and must also be externally synchronized. These implicit parameters are documented as described below.

Parameters of commands that are externally synchronized are listed below.
Externally Synchronized Parameters

- The `instance` parameter in `vkDestroyInstance`
- The `device` parameter in `vkDestroyDevice`
- The `queue` parameter in `vkQueueSubmit`
- The `fence` parameter in `vkQueueSubmit`
- The `queue` parameter in `vkQueueWaitIdle`
- The `memory` parameter in `vkFreeMemory`
- The `memory` parameter in `vkMapMemory`
- The `memory` parameter in `vkUnmapMemory`
- The `buffer` parameter in `vkBindBufferMemory`
- The `image` parameter in `vkBindImageMemory`
- The `queue` parameter in `vkQueueBindSparse`
- The `fence` parameter in `vkQueueBindSparse`
- The `fence` parameter in `vkDestroyFence`
- The `semaphore` parameter in `vkDestroySemaphore`
- The `event` parameter in `vkDestroyEvent`
- The `event` parameter in `vkSetEvent`
- The `event` parameter in `vkResetEvent`
- The `queryPool` parameter in `vkDestroyQueryPool`
- The `buffer` parameter in `vkDestroyBuffer`
- The `bufferView` parameter in `vkDestroyBufferView`
- The `image` parameter in `vkDestroyImageView`
- The `imageView` parameter in `vkDestroyImageView`
- The `shaderModule` parameter in `vkDestroyShaderModule`
- The `pipelineCache` parameter in `vkDestroyPipelineCache`
- The `dstCache` parameter in `vkMergePipelineCaches`
- The `pipeline` parameter in `vkDestroyPipeline`
- The `pipelineLayout` parameter in `vkDestroyPipelineLayout`
- The `sampler` parameter in `vkDestroySampler`
- The `descriptorSetLayout` parameter in `vkDestroyDescriptorSetLayout`
- The `descriptorPool` parameter in `vkDestroyDescriptorPool`
- The `descriptorPool` parameter in `vkResetDescriptorPool`
- The `descriptorPool` member of the `pAllocateInfo` parameter in `vkAllocateDescriptorSets`
- The `descriptorPool` parameter in `vkFreeDescriptorSets`
• The framebuffer parameter in `vkDestroyFramebuffer`
• The renderPass parameter in `vkDestroyRenderPass`
• The commandPool parameter in `vkDestroyCommandPool`
• The commandPool parameter in `vkResetCommandPool`
• The commandPool member of the pAllocateInfo parameter in `vkAllocateCommandBuffers`
• The commandPool parameter in `vkFreeCommandBuffers`
• The commandBuffer parameter in `vkBeginCommandBuffer`
• The commandBuffer parameter in `vkEndCommandBuffer`
• The commandBuffer parameter in `vkResetCommandBuffer`
• The commandBuffer parameter in `vkCmdBindPipeline`
• The commandBuffer parameter in `vkCmdSetViewport`
• The commandBuffer parameter in `vkCmdSetScissor`
• The commandBuffer parameter in `vkCmdSetLineWidth`
• The commandBuffer parameter in `vkCmdSetDepthBias`
• The commandBuffer parameter in `vkCmdSetBlendConstants`
• The commandBuffer parameter in `vkCmdSetDepthBounds`
• The commandBuffer parameter in `vkCmdSetStencilCompareMask`
• The commandBuffer parameter in `vkCmdSetStencilWriteMask`
• The commandBuffer parameter in `vkCmdSetStencilReference`
• The commandBuffer parameter in `vkCmdBindDescriptorSets`
• The commandBuffer parameter in `vkCmdBindIndexBuffer`
• The commandBuffer parameter in `vkCmdBindVertexBuffers`
• The commandBuffer parameter in `vkCmdDraw`
• The commandBuffer parameter in `vkCmdDrawIndexed`
• The commandBuffer parameter in `vkCmdDrawIndirect`
• The commandBuffer parameter in `vkCmdDispatch`
• The commandBuffer parameter in `vkCmdDispatchIndirect`
• The commandBuffer parameter in `vkCmdCopyBuffer`
• The commandBuffer parameter in `vkCmdCopyImage`
• The commandBuffer parameter in `vkCmdBlitImage`
• The commandBuffer parameter in `vkCmdCopyBufferToImage`
• The commandBuffer parameter in `vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer`
• The commandBuffer parameter in `vkCmdUpdateBuffer`
• The commandBuffer parameter in `vkCmdFillBuffer`
- The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdClearColorImage`
- The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdClearDepthStencilImage`
- The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdClearAttachments`
- The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdResolveImage`
- The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdSetEvent`
- The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdResetEvent`
- The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdWaitEvents`
- The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdPipelineBarrier`
- The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdBeginQuery`
- The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdEndQuery`
- The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdResetQueryPool`
- The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdWriteTimestamp`
- The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults`
- The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdPushConstants`
- The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdBeginRenderPass`
- The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdNextSubpass`
- The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdEndRenderPass`
- The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdExecuteCommands`
- The `surface` parameter in `vkDestroySurfaceKHR`
- The `surface` member of the `pCreateInfo` parameter in `vkCreateSwapchainKHR`
- The `oldSwapchain` member of the `pCreateInfo` parameter in `vkCreateSwapchainKHR`
- The `swapchain` parameter in `vkDestroySwapchainKHR`
- The `swapchain` parameter in `vkAcquireNextImageKHR`
- The `semaphore` parameter in `vkAcquireNextImageKHR`
- The `fence` parameter in `vkAcquireNextImageKHR`
- The `queue` parameter in `vkQueuePresentKHR`
- The `surface` parameter in `vkGetDeviceGroupSurfacePresentModesKHR`
- The `surface` parameter in `vkGetPhysicalDevicePresentRectanglesKHR`
- The `display` parameter in `vkCreateDisplayModeKHR`
- The `mode` parameter in `vkGetDisplayPlaneCapabilitiesKHR`
- The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdSetDeviceMask`
- The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdSetDeviceMaskKHR`
- The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdDispatchBase`
- The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdDispatchBaseKHR`
- The `commandPool` parameter in `vkTrimCommandPool`
• The `commandPool` parameter in `vkTrimCommandPoolKHR`
• The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdPushDescriptorSetKHR`
• The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdPushDescriptorSetWithTemplateKHR`
• The `descriptorUpdateTemplate` parameter in `vkDestroyDescriptorUpdateTemplateKHR`
• The `descriptorUpdateTemplate` parameter in `vkDestroyDescriptorUpdateTemplateKHR`
• The `descriptorSet` parameter in `vkUpdateDescriptorSetWithTemplateKHR`
• The `descriptorSet` parameter in `vkUpdateDescriptorSetWithTemplateKHR`
• The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdBeginRenderPass2KHR`
• The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdBeginRenderPass2KHR`
• The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdNextSubpass2KHR`
• The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdNextSubpass2KHR`
• The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdEndRenderPass2KHR`
• The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdEndRenderPass2KHR`
• The `swapchain` parameter in `vkGetSwapchainStatusKHR`
• The `ycbcrConversion` parameter in `vkDestroySamplerYcbcrConversionKHR`
• The `ycbcrConversion` parameter in `vkDestroySamplerYcbcrConversionKHR`
• The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdDrawIndirectCountKHR`
• The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdDrawIndirectCountKHR`
• The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCountKHR`
• The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCountKHR`
• The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdSetFragmentShadingRateKHR`
• The `swapchain` parameter in `vkWaitForPresentKHR`
• The `operation` parameter in `vkDestroyDeferredOperationKHR`
• The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdSetEvent2KHR`
• The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdResetEvent2KHR`
• The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR`
• The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdPipelineBarrier2KHR`
• The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdWriteTimestamp2KHR`
• The `queue` parameter in `vkQueueSubmit2KHR`
• The `fence` parameter in `vkQueueSubmit2KHR`
• The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdWriteBufferMarker2AMD`
• The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdCopyBuffer2KHR`
• The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdCopyImage2KHR`
• The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdCopyBufferToImage2KHR`
• The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer2KHR`
The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdBlitImage2KHR`

The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdResolveImage2KHR`

The `accelerationStructure` parameter in `vkDestroyAccelerationStructureKHR`

The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR`

The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR`

The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureKHR`

The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR`

The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR`

The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR`

The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdTraceRaysKHR`

The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR`

The `commandBuffer` parameter in `vkCmdSetRayTracingPipelineStackSizeKHR`

There are also a few instances where a command can take in a user allocated list whose contents are externally synchronized parameters. In these cases, the caller must guarantee that at most one thread is using a given element within the list at a given time. These parameters are listed below.
**Externally Synchronized Parameter Lists**

- The `buffer` member of each element of the `pBufferBinds` member of each element of the `pBindInfo` parameter in `vkQueueBindSparse`
- The `image` member of each element of the `pImageOpaqueBinds` member of each element of the `pBindInfo` parameter in `vkQueueBindSparse`
- The `image` member of each element of the `pImageBinds` member of each element of the `pBindInfo` parameter in `vkQueueBindSparse`
- Each element of the `pFences` parameter in `vkResetFences`
- Each element of the `pDescriptorSets` parameter in `vkFreeDescriptorSets`
- The `dstSet` member of each element of the `pDescriptorWrites` parameter in `vkUpdateDescriptorSets`
- The `dstSet` member of each element of the `pDescriptorCopies` parameter in `vkUpdateDescriptorSets`
- Each element of the `pCommandBuffers` parameter in `vkFreeCommandBuffers`
- Each element of the `pWaitSemaphores` member of the `pPresentInfo` parameter in `vkQueuePresentKHR`
- Each element of the `pSwapchains` member of the `pPresentInfo` parameter in `vkQueuePresentKHR`
- The `surface` member of each element of the `pCreateInfos` parameter in `vkCreateSharedSwapchainsKHR`
- The `oldSwapchain` member of each element of the `pCreateInfos` parameter in `vkCreateSharedSwapchainsKHR`

In addition, there are some implicit parameters that need to be externally synchronized. For example, all `commandBuffer` parameters that need to be externally synchronized imply that the `commandPool` that was passed in when creating that command buffer also needs to be externally synchronized. The implicit parameters and their associated object are listed below.
Implicit Externally Synchronized Parameters

- All `VkPhysicalDevice` objects enumerated from `instance` in `vkDestroyInstance`
- All `VkQueue` objects received from `device` in `vkDestroyDevice`
- All `VkQueue` objects created from `device` in `vkDeviceWaitIdle`
- Any `VkDescriptorSet` objects allocated from `descriptorPool` in `vkResetDescriptorPool`
- The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from in `vkBeginCommandBuffer`
- The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from in `vkEndCommandBuffer`
- The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from in `vkResetCommandBuffer`
- The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from, in `vkCmdBindPipeline`
- The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from, in `vkCmdSetViewport`
- The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from, in `vkCmdSetScissor`
- The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from, in `vkCmdSetLineWidth`
- The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from, in `vkCmdSetDepthBias`
- The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from, in `vkCmdSetBlendConstants`
- The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from, in `vkCmdSetDepthBounds`
- The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from, in `vkCmdCmdSetStencilCompareMask`
- The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from, in `vkCmdCmdSetStencilWriteMask`
- The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from, in `vkCmdCmdSetStencilReference`
- The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from, in `vkCmdBindDescriptorSets`
- The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from, in `vkCmdBindIndexBuffer`
- The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from, in `vkCmdBindVertexBuffers`
- The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from, in `vkCmdDraw`
- The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from, in `vkCmdDrawIndexed`
- The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from, in `vkCmdDrawIndirect`
- The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from, in `vkCmdDispatch`
- The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from, in `vkCmdDispatchIndirect`
- The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from, in `vkCmdCopyBuffer`
- The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from, in `vkCmdCopyImage`
- The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from, in `vkCmdBlitImage`
- The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from, in `vkCmdCopyBufferToImage`
- The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from, in `vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer`
- The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from, in `vkCmdUpdateBuffer`
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdFillBuffer
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdClearColorImage
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdClearDepthStencilImage
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdClearColorImage
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdClearAttachments
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdResolveImage
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdSetEvent
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdResetEvent
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdWaitEvents
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdPipelineBarrier
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdBeginQuery
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdEndQuery
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdResetQueryPool
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdWriteTimestamp
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdPushConstants
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdBeginRenderPass
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdNextSubpass
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdEndRenderPass
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdExecuteCommands
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdBeginVideoCodingKHR
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdEndVideoCodingKHR
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdControlVideoCodingKHR
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdDecodeVideoKHR
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdSetDeviceMask
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdSetDeviceMaskKHR
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdDispatchBase
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdDispatchBaseKHR
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdPushDescriptorSetKHR
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdPushDescriptorSetWithTemplateKHR
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdBeginRenderPass2
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdBeginRenderPass2KHR
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdNextSubpass2
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdNextSubpass2KHR
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdEndRenderPass2
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdEndRenderPass2KHR
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdDrawIndirectCount
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdDrawIndirectCountKHR
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCountKHR
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdSetFragmentShadingRateKHR
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdEncodeVideoKHR
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdSetEvent2KHR
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdResetEvent2KHR
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdPipelineBarrier2KHR
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdWriteTimestamp2KHR
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdWriteBufferMarker2AMD
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdCopyBuffer2KHR
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdCopyImage2KHR
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdCopyBufferToImage2KHR
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer2KHR
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdBlitImage2KHR
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdResolveImage2KHR
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureKHR
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR
• The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, in vkCmdCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR
3.7. Valid Usage

Valid usage defines a set of conditions which **must** be met in order to achieve well-defined runtime behavior in an application. These conditions depend only on Vulkan state, and the parameters or objects whose usage is constrained by the condition.

The core layer assumes applications are using the API correctly. Except as documented elsewhere in the Specification, the behavior of the core layer to an application using the API incorrectly is undefined, and **may** include program termination. However, implementations **must** ensure that incorrect usage by an application does not affect the integrity of the operating system, the Vulkan implementation, or other Vulkan client applications in the system. In particular, any guarantees made by an operating system about whether memory from one process can be visible to another process or not **must** not be violated by a Vulkan implementation for **any memory allocation**. Vulkan implementations are not **required** to make additional security or integrity guarantees beyond those provided by the OS unless explicitly directed by the application’s use of a particular feature or extension.

**Note**

For instance, if an operating system guarantees that data in all its memory allocations are set to zero when newly allocated, the Vulkan implementation **must** make the same guarantees for any allocations it controls (e.g. `VkDeviceMemory`).

Similarly, if an operating system guarantees that use-after-free of host allocations will not result in values written by another process becoming visible, the same guarantees **must** be made by the Vulkan implementation for device memory.

Some valid usage conditions have dependencies on runtime limits or feature availability. It is possible to validate these conditions against Vulkan’s minimum supported values for these limits and features, or some subset of other known values.

Valid usage conditions do not cover conditions where well-defined behavior (including returning an error code) exists.

Valid usage conditions **should** apply to the command or structure where complete information about the condition would be known during execution of an application. This is such that a validation layer or linter **can** be written directly against these statements at the point they are specified.
Note
This does lead to some non-obvious places for valid usage statements. For instance, the valid values for a structure might depend on a separate value in the calling command. In this case, the structure itself will not reference this valid usage as it is impossible to determine validity from the structure that it is invalid - instead this valid usage would be attached to the calling command.

Another example is draw state - the state setters are independent, and can cause a legitimately invalid state configuration between draw calls; so the valid usage statements are attached to the place where all state needs to be valid - at the drawing command.

Valid usage conditions are described in a block labelled “Valid Usage” following each command or structure they apply to.

3.7.1. Usage Validation

Vulkan is a layered API. The lowest layer is the core Vulkan layer, as defined by this Specification. The application can use additional layers above the core for debugging, validation, and other purposes.

One of the core principles of Vulkan is that building and submitting command buffers should be highly efficient. Thus error checking and validation of state in the core layer is minimal, although more rigorous validation can be enabled through the use of layers.

Validation of correct API usage is left to validation layers. Applications should be developed with validation layers enabled, to help catch and eliminate errors. Once validated, released applications should not enable validation layers by default.

3.7.2. Implicit Valid Usage

Some valid usage conditions apply to all commands and structures in the API, unless explicitly denoted otherwise for a specific command or structure. These conditions are considered implicit, and are described in a block labelled “Valid Usage (Implicit)” following each command or structure they apply to. Implicit valid usage conditions are described in detail below.

Valid Usage for Object Handles

Any input parameter to a command that is an object handle must be a valid object handle, unless otherwise specified. An object handle is valid if:

- It has been created or allocated by a previous, successful call to the API. Such calls are noted in the Specification.
- It has not been deleted or freed by a previous call to the API. Such calls are noted in the Specification.
- Any objects used by that object, either as part of creation or execution, must also be valid.

The reserved values VK_NULL_HANDLE and NULL can be used in place of valid non-dispatchable
handles and dispatchable handles, respectively, when \textit{explicitly called out in the Specification}. Any command that creates an object successfully \textbf{must} not return these values. It is valid to pass these values to \texttt{vkDestroy*} or \texttt{vkFree*} commands, which will silently ignore these values.

\textbf{Valid Usage for Pointers}

Any parameter that is a pointer \textbf{must} be a \textit{valid pointer} only if it is explicitly called out by a Valid Usage statement.

A pointer is “valid” if it points at memory containing values of the number and type(s) expected by the command, and all fundamental types accessed through the pointer (e.g. as elements of an array or as members of a structure) satisfy the alignment requirements of the host processor.

\textbf{Valid Usage for Strings}

Any parameter that is a pointer to \texttt{char} \textbf{must} be a finite sequence of values terminated by a null character, or if \textit{explicitly called out in the Specification}, \textbf{can} be \texttt{NULL}.

\textbf{Valid Usage for Enumerated Types}

Any parameter of an enumerated type \textbf{must} be a valid enumerant for that type. A enumerant is valid if:

- The enumerant is defined as part of the enumerated type.
- The enumerant is not the special value (suffixed with \_\_MAX\_ENUM\textsuperscript{1}) defined for the enumerated type.

\textsuperscript{1}

This special value exists only to ensure that C enum types are 32 bits in size. It is not part of the API, and \textbf{should} not be used by applications.

Any enumerated type returned from a query command or otherwise output from Vulkan to the application \textbf{must} not have a reserved value. Reserved values are values not defined by any extension for that enumerated type.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textbf{Note}
  \begin{itemize}
    \item This language is intended to accommodate cases such as “hidden” extensions known only to driver internals, or layers enabling extensions without knowledge of the application, without allowing return of values not defined by any extension.
  \end{itemize}
  \item \textbf{Note}
  \begin{itemize}
    \item Application developers are encouraged to be careful when using \texttt{switch} statements with Vulkan API enums. This is because new extensions can add new values to existing enums. The use of a \texttt{default:} statement, within a \texttt{switch}, may avoid future compilation issues. Particularly for enums like e.g. \texttt{VkDriverId} that may change at any time.
  \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}
Valid Usage for Flags

A collection of flags is represented by a bitmask using the type \texttt{VkFlags}:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef uint32_t VkFlags;
```

Bitmasks are passed to many commands and structures to compactly represent options, but \texttt{VkFlags} is not used directly in the API. Instead, a \texttt{Vk*Flags} type which is an alias of \texttt{VkFlags}, and whose name matches the corresponding \texttt{Vk*FlagBits} that are valid for that type, is used.

Any \texttt{Vk*Flags} member or parameter used in the API as an input must be a valid combination of bit flags. A valid combination is either zero or the bitwise OR of valid bit flags. A bit flag is valid if:

- The bit flag is defined as part of the \texttt{Vk*FlagBits} type, where the bits type is obtained by taking the flag type and replacing the trailing \texttt{Flags} with \texttt{FlagBits}. For example, a flag value of type \texttt{VkColorComponentFlags} must contain only bit flags defined by \texttt{VkColorComponentFlagBits}.
- The flag is allowed in the context in which it is being used. For example, in some cases, certain bit flags or combinations of bit flags are mutually exclusive.

Any \texttt{Vk*Flags} member or parameter returned from a query command or otherwise output from Vulkan to the application may contain bit flags undefined in its corresponding \texttt{Vk*FlagBits} type. An application cannot rely on the state of these unspecified bits.

Only the low-order 31 bits (bit positions zero through 30) are available for use as flag bits.

**Note**

This restriction is due to poorly defined behavior by C compilers given a C enumerant value of \texttt{0x80000000}. In some cases adding this enumerant value may increase the size of the underlying \texttt{Vk*FlagBits} type, breaking the ABI.

Valid Usage for Structure Types

Any parameter that is a structure containing a \texttt{sType} member must have a value of \texttt{sType} which is a valid \texttt{VkStructureType} value matching the type of the structure.

Valid Usage for Structure Pointer Chains

Any parameter that is a structure containing a \texttt{void* pNext} member must have a value of \texttt{pNext} that is either \texttt{NULL}, or is a pointer to a valid extending structure, containing \texttt{sType} and \texttt{pNext} members as described in the Vulkan Documentation and Extensions document in the section “Extension Interactions”. The set of structures connected by \texttt{pNext} pointers is referred to as a \texttt{pNext chain}.

Each structure included in the \texttt{pNext} chain must be defined at runtime by either:

- a core version which is supported
- an extension which is enabled
- a supported device extension in the case of physical-device-level functionality added by the
Each type of extending structure **must** not appear more than once in a pNext chain, including any aliases. This general rule may be explicitly overridden for specific structures.

Any component of the implementation (the loader, any enabled layers, and drivers) **must** skip over, without processing (other than reading the sType and pNext members) any extending structures in the chain not defined by core versions or extensions supported by that component.

As a convenience to implementations and layers needing to iterate through a structure pointer chain, the Vulkan API provides two *base structures*. These structures allow for some type safety, and can be used by Vulkan API functions that operate on generic inputs and outputs.

The **VkBaseInStructure** structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkBaseInStructure {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const struct VkBaseInStructure* pNext;
} VkBaseInStructure;
```

- **sType** is the structure type of the structure being iterated through.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to the next structure in a structure chain.

**VkBaseInStructure** can be used to facilitate iterating through a read-only structure pointer chain.

The **VkBaseOutStructure** structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkBaseOutStructure {
    VkStructureType sType;
    struct VkBaseOutStructure* pNext;
} VkBaseOutStructure;
```

- **sType** is the structure type of the structure being iterated through.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to the next structure in a structure chain.

**VkBaseOutStructure** can be used to facilitate iterating through a structure pointer chain that returns data back to the application.

**Valid Usage for Nested Structures**

The above conditions also apply recursively to members of structures provided as input to a command, either as a direct argument to the command, or themselves a member of another structure.

Specifics on valid usage of each command are covered in their individual sections.
Valid Usage for Extensions

Instance-level functionality or behavior added by an instance extension to the API must not be used unless that extension is supported by the instance as determined by vkEnumerateInstanceExtensionProperties, and that extension is enabled in VkInstanceCreateInfo.

Physical-device-level functionality or behavior added by an instance extension to the API must not be used unless that extension is supported by the instance as determined by vkEnumerateInstanceExtensionProperties, and that extension is enabled in VkInstanceCreateInfo.

Physical-device-level functionality or behavior added by a device extension to the API must not be used unless the conditions described in Extending Physical Device Core Functionality are met.

Device functionality or behavior added by a device extension to the API must not be used unless that extension is supported by the device as determined by vkEnumerateDeviceExtensionProperties, and that extension is enabled in VkDeviceCreateInfo.

Valid Usage for Newer Core Versions

Physical-device-level functionality or behavior added by a new core version of the API must not be used unless it is supported by the physical device as determined by VkPhysicalDeviceProperties::apiVersion and the specified version of VkApplicationInfo::apiVersion.

Device-level functionality or behavior added by a new core version of the API must not be used unless it is supported by the device as determined by VkPhysicalDeviceProperties::apiVersion and the specified version of VkApplicationInfo::apiVersion.

3.8. VkResult Return Codes

While the core Vulkan API is not designed to capture incorrect usage, some circumstances still require return codes. Commands in Vulkan return their status via return codes that are in one of two categories:

- Successful completion codes are returned when a command needs to communicate success or status information. All successful completion codes are non-negative values.
- Run time error codes are returned when a command needs to communicate a failure that could only be detected at runtime. All runtime error codes are negative values.

All return codes in Vulkan are reported via VkResult return values. The possible codes are:
typedef enum VkResult {
    VK_SUCCESS = 0,
    VK_NOT_READY = 1,
    VK_TIMEOUT = 2,
    VK_EVENT_SET = 3,
    VK_EVENT_RESET = 4,
    VK_INCOMPLETE = 5,
    VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY = -1,
    VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY = -2,
    VK_ERROR_INITIALIZATION_FAILED = -3,
    VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST = -4,
    VK_ERROR_MEMORY_MAP_FAILED = -5,
    VK_ERROR_LAYER_NOT_PRESENT = -6,
    VK_ERROR_EXTENSION_NOT_PRESENT = -7,
    VK_ERROR_FEATURE_NOT_PRESENT = -8,
    VK_ERROR_INCOMPATIBLE_DRIVER = -9,
    VK_ERROR_TOO_MANY_OBJECTS = -10,
    VK_ERROR_FORMAT_NOT_SUPPORTED = -11,
    VK_ERROR_FRAGMENTED_POOL = -12,
    VK_ERROR_UNKNOWN = -13,
    VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_POOL_MEMORY = -1000069000,
    VK_ERROR_INVALID_EXTERNAL_HANDLE = -1000072003,
    VK_ERROR_INVALID_OPAQUE_CAPTURE_ADDRESS = -1000257000,
    VK_ERROR_SURFACE_LOST_KHR = -1000000000,
    VK_ERROR_NATIVE_WINDOW_IN_USE_KHR = -1000000001,
    VK_SUBOPTIMAL_KHR = 1000001003,
    VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DATE_KHR = -1000001004,
    VK_ERROR_INCOMPATIBLE_DISPLAY_KHR = -1000003001,
    VK_THREAD_IDLE_KHR = 1000268000,
    VK_THREAD_DONE_KHR = 1000268001,
    VK_OPERATION_DEFERRED_KHR = 1000268002,
    VK_OPERATION_NOT_DEFERRED_KHR = 1000268003,
    VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_POOL_MEMORY_KHR = VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_POOL_MEMORY,
    VK_ERROR_INVALID_EXTERNAL_HANDLE_KHR = VK_ERROR_INVALID_EXTERNAL_HANDLE,
    VK_ERROR_INVALID_OPAQUE_CAPTURE_ADDRESS_KHR = VK_ERROR_INVALID_OPAQUE_CAPTURE_ADDRESS,
} VkResult;
Success Codes

- **VK_SUCCESS** Command successfully completed
- **VK_NOT_READY** A fence or query has not yet completed
- **VK_TIMEOUT** A wait operation has not completed in the specified time
- **VK_EVENT_SET** An event is signaled
- **VK_EVENT_RESET** An event is unsignaled
- **VK_INCOMPLETE** A return array was too small for the result
- **VK_SUBOPTIMAL_KHR** A swapchain no longer matches the surface properties exactly, but can still be used to present to the surface successfully.
- **VK_THREAD_IDLE_KHR** A deferred operation is not complete but there is currently no work for this thread to do at the time of this call.
- **VK_THREAD_DONE_KHR** A deferred operation is not complete but there is no work remaining to assign to additional threads.
- **VK_OPERATION_DEFERRED_KHR** A deferred operation was requested and at least some of the work was deferred.
- **VK_OPERATION_NOT_DEFERRED_KHR** A deferred operation was requested and no operations were deferred.

Error codes

- **VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY** A host memory allocation has failed.
- **VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY** A device memory allocation has failed.
- **VK_ERROR_INITIALIZATION_FAILED** Initialization of an object could not be completed for implementation-specific reasons.
- **VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST** The logical or physical device has been lost. See Lost Device
- **VK_ERROR_MEMORY_MAP_FAILED** Mapping of a memory object has failed.
- **VK_ERROR_LAYER_NOT_PRESENT** A requested layer is not present or could not be loaded.
- **VK_ERROR_EXTENSION_NOT_PRESENT** A requested extension is not supported.
- **VK_ERROR_FEATURE_NOT_PRESENT** A requested feature is not supported.
- **VK_ERROR_INCOMPATIBLE_DRIVER** The requested version of Vulkan is not supported by the driver or is otherwise incompatible for implementation-specific reasons.
- **VK_ERROR_TOO_MANY_OBJECTS** Too many objects of the type have already been created.
- **VK_ERROR_FORMAT_NOT_SUPPORTED** A requested format is not supported on this device.
- **VK_ERROR_FRAGMENTED_POOL** A pool allocation has failed due to fragmentation of the pool’s memory. This must only be returned if no attempt to allocate host or device memory was made to accommodate the new allocation. This should be returned in preference to VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_POOL_MEMORY, but only if the implementation is certain that the pool allocation failure was due to fragmentation.
- **VK_ERROR_SURFACE_LOST_KHR** A surface is no longer available.
- **VK_ERROR_NATIVE_WINDOW_IN_USE_KHR** The requested window is already in use by Vulkan or
another API in a manner which prevents it from being used again.

- **VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DATE_KHR** A surface has changed in such a way that it is no longer compatible with the swapchain, and further presentation requests using the swapchain will fail. Applications *must* query the new surface properties and recreate their swapchain if they wish to continue presenting to the surface.

- **VK_ERROR_INCOMPATIBLE_DISPLAY_KHR** The display used by a swapchain does not use the same presentable image layout, or is incompatible in a way that prevents sharing an image.

- **VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_POOL_MEMORY** A pool memory allocation has failed. This *must* only be returned if no attempt to allocate host or device memory was made to accommodate the new allocation. If the failure was definitely due to fragmentation of the pool, **VK_ERROR_FRAGMENTED_POOL** should be returned instead.

- **VK_ERROR_INVALID_EXTERNAL_HANDLE** An external handle is not a valid handle of the specified type.

- **VK_ERROR_INVALID_OPAQUE_CAPTURE_ADDRESS** A buffer creation or memory allocation failed because the requested address is not available. A shader group handle assignment failed because the requested shader group handle information is no longer valid.

- **VK_ERROR_UNKNOWN** An unknown error has occurred; either the application has provided invalid input, or an implementation failure has occurred.

If a command returns a runtime error, unless otherwise specified any output parameters will have undefined contents, except that if the output parameter is a structure with **sType** and **pNext** fields, those fields will be unmodified. Any structures chained from **pNext** will also have undefined contents, except that **sType** and **pNext** will be unmodified.

**VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_*_MEMORY** errors do not modify any currently existing Vulkan objects. Objects that have already been successfully created can still be used by the application.

**Note**
As a general rule, Free, Release, and Reset commands do not return **VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY**, while any other command with a return code *may* return it. Any exceptions from this rule are described for those commands.

**VK_ERROR_UNKNOWN** will be returned by an implementation when an unexpected error occurs that cannot be attributed to valid behavior of the application and implementation. Under these conditions, it *may* be returned from any command returning a **VkResult**.

**Note**
**VK_ERROR_UNKNOWN** is not expected to ever be returned if the application behavior is valid, and if the implementation is bug-free. If **VK_ERROR_UNKNOWN** is received, the application should be checked against the latest validation layers to verify correct behavior as much as possible. If no issues are identified it could be an implementation issue, and the implementor should be contacted for support.

Performance-critical commands generally do not have return codes. If a runtime error occurs in such commands, the implementation will defer reporting the error until a specified point. For commands that record into command buffers (**vkCmd**) runtime errors are reported by
3.9. Numeric Representation and Computation

Implementations normally perform computations in floating-point, and must meet the range and precision requirements defined under “Floating-Point Computation” below.

These requirements only apply to computations performed in Vulkan operations outside of shader execution, such as texture image specification and sampling, and per-fragment operations. Range and precision requirements during shader execution differ and are specified by the Precision and Operation of SPIR-V Instructions section.

In some cases, the representation and/or precision of operations is implicitly limited by the specified format of vertex or texel data consumed by Vulkan. Specific floating-point formats are described later in this section.

3.9.1. Floating-Point Computation

Most floating-point computation is performed in SPIR-V shader modules. The properties of computation within shaders are constrained as defined by the Precision and Operation of SPIR-V Instructions section.

Some floating-point computation is performed outside of shaders, such as viewport and depth range calculations. For these computations, we do not specify how floating-point numbers are to be represented, or the details of how operations on them are performed, but only place minimal requirements on representation and precision as described in the remainder of this section.

We require simply that numbers’ floating-point parts contain enough bits and that their exponent fields are large enough so that individual results of floating-point operations are accurate to about 1 part in $10^5$. The maximum representable magnitude for all floating-point values must be at least $2^{32}$.

$x \times 0 = 0 \times x = 0$ for any non-infinite and non-NaN $x$.

$1 \times x = x \times 1 = x$.

$x + 0 = 0 + x = x$.

$0^0 = 1$.

Occasionally, further requirements will be specified. Most single-precision floating-point formats meet these requirements.

The special values Inf and -Inf encode values with magnitudes too large to be represented; the special value NaN encodes “Not A Number” values resulting from undefined arithmetic operations such as $0 / 0$. Implementations may support Inf and NaN in their floating-point computations.
3.9.2. Floating-Point Format Conversions

When a value is converted to a defined floating-point representation, finite values falling between two representable finite values are rounded to one or the other. The rounding mode is not defined. Finite values whose magnitude is larger than that of any representable finite value may be rounded either to the closest representable finite value or to the appropriately signed infinity. For unsigned destination formats any negative values are converted to zero. Positive infinity is converted to positive infinity; negative infinity is converted to negative infinity in signed formats and to zero in unsigned formats; and any NaN is converted to a NaN.

3.9.3. 16-Bit Floating-Point Numbers

16-bit floating point numbers are defined in the “16-bit floating point numbers” section of the Khronos Data Format Specification.

3.9.4. Unsigned 11-Bit Floating-Point Numbers

Unsigned 11-bit floating point numbers are defined in the “Unsigned 11-bit floating point numbers” section of the Khronos Data Format Specification.

3.9.5. Unsigned 10-Bit Floating-Point Numbers

Unsigned 10-bit floating point numbers are defined in the “Unsigned 10-bit floating point numbers” section of the Khronos Data Format Specification.

3.9.6. General Requirements

Any representable floating-point value in the appropriate format is legal as input to a Vulkan command that requires floating-point data. The result of providing a value that is not a floating-point number to such a command is unspecified, but must not lead to Vulkan interruption or termination. For example, providing a negative zero (where applicable) or a denormalized number to a Vulkan command must yield deterministic results, while providing a NaN or Inf yields unspecified results.

Some calculations require division. In such cases (including implied divisions performed by vector normalization), division by zero produces an unspecified result but must not lead to Vulkan interruption or termination.

3.10. Fixed-Point Data Conversions

When generic vertex attributes and pixel color or depth components are represented as integers, they are often (but not always) considered to be normalized. Normalized integer values are treated specially when being converted to and from floating-point values, and are usually referred to as normalized fixed-point.

In the remainder of this section, b denotes the bit width of the fixed-point integer representation. When the integer is one of the types defined by the API, b is the bit width of that type. When the integer comes from an image containing color or depth component texels, b is the number of bits...
allocated to that component in its specified image format.

The signed and unsigned fixed-point representations are assumed to be b-bit binary two’s-complement integers and binary unsigned integers, respectively.

3.10.1. Conversion from Normalized Fixed-Point to Floating-Point

Unsigned normalized fixed-point integers represent numbers in the range \([0,1]\). The conversion from an unsigned normalized fixed-point value \(c\) to the corresponding floating-point value \(f\) is defined as

\[
f = \frac{c}{2^b - 1}
\]

Signed normalized fixed-point integers represent numbers in the range \([-1,1]\). The conversion from a signed normalized fixed-point value \(c\) to the corresponding floating-point value \(f\) is performed using

\[
f = \max \left( \frac{c}{2^b - 1}, -1.0 \right)
\]

Only the range \([-2^{b-1} \ldots 2^{b-1} - 1]\) is used to represent signed fixed-point values in the range \([-1,1]\). For example, if \(b = 8\), then the integer value -127 corresponds to -1.0 and the value 127 corresponds to 1.0. This equation is used everywhere that signed normalized fixed-point values are converted to floating-point.

Note that while zero is exactly expressible in this representation, one value (-128 in the example) is outside the representable range, and implementations must clamp it to -1.0. Where the value is subject to further processing by the implementation, e.g. during texture filtering, values less than -1.0 may be used but the result must be clamped before the value is returned to shaders.

3.10.2. Conversion from Floating-Point to Normalized Fixed-Point

The conversion from a floating-point value \(f\) to the corresponding unsigned normalized fixed-point value \(c\) is defined by first clamping \(f\) to the range \([0,1]\), then computing

\[c = \text{convertFloatToUint}(f \times (2^b - 1), b)\]

where \(\text{convertFloatToUint}(r,b)\) returns one of the two unsigned binary integer values with exactly \(b\) bits which are closest to the floating-point value \(r\). Implementations should round to nearest. If \(r\) is equal to an integer, then that integer value must be returned. In particular, if \(f\) is equal to 0.0 or 1.0, then \(c\) must be assigned 0 or \(2^b - 1\), respectively.

The conversion from a floating-point value \(f\) to the corresponding signed normalized fixed-point value \(c\) is performed by clamping \(f\) to the range \([-1,1]\), then computing

\[c = \text{convertFloatToInt}(f \times (2^{b-1} - 1), b)\]

where \(\text{convertFloatToInt}(r,b)\) returns one of the two signed two’s-complement binary integer values with exactly \(b\) bits which are closest to the floating-point value \(r\). Implementations should
round to nearest. If \( r \) is equal to an integer, then that integer value must be returned. In particular, if \( f \) is equal to -1.0, 0.0, or 1.0, then \( c \) must be assigned \(-2^{b-1} - 1\), 0, or \( 2^{b-1} - 1 \), respectively.

This equation is used everywhere that floating-point values are converted to signed normalized fixed-point.

### 3.11. Common Object Types

Some types of Vulkan objects are used in many different structures and command parameters, and are described here. These types include offsets, extents, and rectangles.

#### 3.11.1. Offsets

Offsets are used to describe a pixel location within an image or framebuffer, as an (x,y) location for two-dimensional images, or an (x,y,z) location for three-dimensional images.

A two-dimensional offset is defined by the structure:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkOffset2D {
    int32_t x;
    int32_t y;
} VkOffset2D;
```

- \( x \) is the x offset.
- \( y \) is the y offset.

A three-dimensional offset is defined by the structure:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkOffset3D {
    int32_t x;
    int32_t y;
    int32_t z;
} VkOffset3D;
```

- \( x \) is the x offset.
- \( y \) is the y offset.
- \( z \) is the z offset.

#### 3.11.2. Extents

Extents are used to describe the size of a rectangular region of pixels within an image or framebuffer, as (width,height) for two-dimensional images, or as (width,height,depth) for three-dimensional images.
A two-dimensional extent is defined by the structure:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkExtent2D {
    uint32_t width;
    uint32_t height;
} VkExtent2D;
```

- `width` is the width of the extent.
- `height` is the height of the extent.

A three-dimensional extent is defined by the structure:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkExtent3D {
    uint32_t width;
    uint32_t height;
    uint32_t depth;
} VkExtent3D;
```

- `width` is the width of the extent.
- `height` is the height of the extent.
- `depth` is the depth of the extent.

### 3.11.3. Rectangles

Rectangles are used to describe a specified rectangular region of pixels within an image or framebuffer. Rectangles include both an offset and an extent of the same dimensionality, as described above. Two-dimensional rectangles are defined by the structure:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkRect2D {
    VkOffset2D offset;
    VkExtent2D extent;
} VkRect2D;
```

- `offset` is a `VkOffset2D` specifying the rectangle offset.
- `extent` is a `VkExtent2D` specifying the rectangle extent.

### 3.11.4. Structure Types

Each value corresponds to a particular structure with a `sType` member with a matching name. As a general rule, the name of each `VkStructureType` value is obtained by taking the name of the structure, stripping the leading `Vk`, prefixing each capital letter with `_`, converting the entire resulting string to upper case, and prefixing it with `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_`. For example, structures of
type `VkImageCreateInfo` correspond to a `VkStructureType` of `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_CREATE_INFO`, and thus its `sType` member must equal that when it is passed to the API.

The values `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_LOADER_INSTANCE_CREATE_INFO` and `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_LOADER_DEVICE_CREATE_INFO` are reserved for internal use by the loader, and do not have corresponding Vulkan structures in this Specification.

Structure types supported by the Vulkan API include:

```
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkStructureType {
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_APPLICATION_INFO = 0,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_INSTANCE_CREATE_INFO = 1,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEVICE_QUEUE_CREATE_INFO = 2,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEVICE_CREATE_INFO = 3,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SUBMIT_INFO = 4,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_INFO = 5,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MAPPED_MEMORY_RANGE = 6,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BIND_SPARSE_INFO = 7,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_FENCE_CREATE_INFO = 8,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SEMAPHORE_CREATE_INFO = 9,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EVENT_CREATE_INFO = 10,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_QUERY_POOL_CREATE_INFO = 11,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BUFFER_CREATE_INFO = 12,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BUFFER_VIEW_CREATE_INFO = 13,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_CREATE_INFO = 14,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_VIEW_CREATE_INFO = 15,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SHADER_MODULE_CREATE_INFO = 16,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_CACHE_CREATE_INFO = 17,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_SHADER_STAGE_CREATE_INFO = 18,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_VERTEX_INPUT_STATE_CREATE_INFO = 19,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_INPUT_ASSEMBLY_STATE_CREATE_INFO = 20,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_TESSELLATION_STATE_CREATE_INFO = 21,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_VIEWPORT_STATE_CREATE_INFO = 22,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_RASTERIZATION_STATE_CREATE_INFO = 23,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_MULTISAMPLE_STATE_CREATE_INFO = 24,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_DEPTH_STENCIL_STATE_CREATE_INFO = 25,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_COLOR_BLEND_STATE_CREATE_INFO = 26,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_DYNAMIC_STATE_CREATE_INFO = 27,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_GRAPHICS_PIPELINE_CREATE_INFO = 28,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COMPUTE_PIPELINE_CREATE_INFO = 29,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_LAYOUT_CREATE_INFO = 30,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SAMPLER_CREATE_INFO = 31,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DESCRIPTOR_SET_LAYOUT_CREATE_INFO = 32,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DESCRIPTOR_POOL_CREATE_INFO = 33,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DESCRIPTOR_SET_ALLOCATE_INFO = 34,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_WRITE_DESCRIPTOR_SET = 35,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COPY_DESCRIPTOR_SET = 36,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_INFO = 37,
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RENDER_PASS_CREATE_INFO = 38,
}
```
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COMMAND_POOL_CREATE_INFO = 39,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COMMAND_BUFFER_ALLOCATE_INFO = 40,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COMMAND_BUFFER_INHERITANCE_INFO = 41,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COMMAND_BUFFER_BEGIN_INFO = 42,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RENDER_PASS_BEGIN_INFO = 43,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BUFFER_MEMORY_BARRIER = 44,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_MEMORY_BARRIER = 45,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_BARRIER = 46,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_LOADER_INSTANCE_CREATE_INFO = 47,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_LOADER_DEVICE_CREATE_INFO = 48,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BIND_BUFFER_MEMORY_INFO = 1000157000,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BIND_IMAGE_MEMORY_INFO = 1000157001,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_16BIT_STORAGE_FEATURES = 1000083000,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_DEDICATED_REQUIREMENTS = 1000127000,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_DEDICATE_ALLOCATE_INFO = 1000127001,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_FLAGS_INFO = 1000060000,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEVICE_GROUP_RENDER_PASS_BEGIN_INFO = 1000060003,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEVICE_GROUP_COMMAND_BUFFER_BEGIN_INFO = 1000060004,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEVICE_GROUP_SUBMIT_INFO = 1000060005,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEVICE_GROUP_BIND_SPARSE_INFO = 1000060006,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BIND_BUFFER_MEMORY DEVICE_GROUP_INFO = 1000060013,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BIND_IMAGE_MEMORY_DEVICE_GROUP_INFO = 1000060014,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_GROUP_PROPERTIES = 1000070000,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEVICE_GROUP_DEVICE_CREATE_INFO = 1000070001,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BUFFER_MEMORY_REQUIREMENTS_INFO_2 = 1000146000,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_MEMORY_REQUIREMENTS_INFO_2 = 1000146001,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_SPARSE_MEMORY_REQUIREMENTS_INFO_2 = 1000146002,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_REQUIREMENTS_2 = 1000146003,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SPARSE_IMAGE_MEMORY_REQUIREMENTS_2 = 1000146004,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_FEATURES_2 = 1000059000,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_PROPERTIES_2 = 1000059001,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_FORMAT_PROPERTIES_2 = 1000059002,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_FORMAT_PROPERTIES_2 = 1000059003,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_IMAGE_FORMAT_INFO_2 = 1000059004,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_QUEUE_FAMILY_PROPERTIES_2 = 1000059005,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_MEMORY_PROPERTIES_2 = 1000059006,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SPARSE_IMAGE_FORMAT_PROPERTIES_2 = 1000059007,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_POINT_CLIPPING_PROPERTIES = 1000117000,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RENDER_PASS_INPUT_ATTACHMENT_ASPECT_CREATE_INFO = 1000117001,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_VIEW_USAGE_CREATE_INFO = 1000117002,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_TESSELLATION_DOMAIN_ORIGIN_STATE_CREATE_INFO = 1000117003,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RENDER_PASS_MULTIVIEW_CREATE_INFO = 1000053000,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_MULTIVIEW_FEATURES = 1000053001,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE Multiview_PROPERTIES = 1000053002,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_VARIABLE(Pointers) FEATURES = 1000120000,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SAMPLER_YCBCR_CONVERSION_CREATE_INFO = 1000156000,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SAMPLER_YCBCR_CONVERSION_INFO = 1000156001,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BIND_IMAGE_PLANE_MEMORY_INFO = 1000156002,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_PLANE_MEMORY_REQUIREMENTS_INFO = 1000156003,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SAMPLER_YCBCR_CONVERSION_FEATURES = 1000156004,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SAMPLER_YCBCR_CONVERSION_IMAGE_FORMAT_PROPERTIES = 1000156005,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DESCRIPTOR_UPDATE_TEMPLATE_CREATE_INFO = 1000085000,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_EXTERNAL_IMAGE_FORMAT_INFO = 1000071000,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXTERNAL_IMAGE_FORMAT_PROPERTIES = 1000071001,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_EXTERNAL_BUFFER_INFO = 1000071002,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXTERNAL_BUFFER_PROPERTIES = 1000071003,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_ID_PROPERTIES = 1000071004,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_BUFFER_CREATE_INFO = 1000072000,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_IMAGE_CREATE_INFO = 1000072001,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXPORT_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_INFO = 1000072002,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_EXTERNAL_FENCE_INFO = 1000112000,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXTERNAL_FENCE_PROPERTIES = 1000112001,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXPORT_FENCE_CREATE_INFO = 1000113000,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_CREATE_INFO = 1000076000,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_PROPERTIES = 1000076001,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_MAINTENANCE_3_PROPERTIES = 1000168000,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DESCRIPTOR_SET_LAYOUT_SUPPORT = 1000168001,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_FORMAT_LIST_CREATE_INFO = 1000147000,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ATTACHMENT_DESCRIPTION_2 = 1000109000,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ATTACHMENT_REFERENCE_2 = 1000109001,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SUBPASS_DESCRIPTION_2 = 1000109002,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SUBPASS_DEPENDENCY_2 = 1000109003,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RENDER_PASS_CREATE_INFO_2 = 1000109004,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SUBPASS_BEGIN_INFO = 1000109005,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SUBPASS_END_INFO = 1000109006,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_8BIT_STORAGE_FEATURES = 1000177000,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_DRIVER_PROPERTIES = 1000196000,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SHADER_ATOMIC_INT64_FEATURES = 1000180000,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SHADER_FLOAT16_INT8_FEATURES = 1000082000,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_FLOAT_CONTROLS_PROPERTIES = 1000197000,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_DEPTH_STENCIL_RESOLVE_PROPERTIES = 1000199000,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SUBPASS_DESCRIPTION_DEPTH_STENCIL_RESOLVE = 1000199001,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_VULKAN_MEMORY_MODEL_FEATURES = 1000211000,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_IMAGELESS_FRAMEBUFFER_FEATURES = 1000108000,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_FRAMEBUFFER_ATTACHMENTS_CREATE_INFO = 1000108001,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_FRAMEBUFFER_ATTACHMENT_IMAGE_INFO = 1000108002,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RENDER_PASS_ATTACHMENT_BEGIN_INFO = 1000108003,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_UNIFORM_BUFFER_STANDARD_LAYOUT_FEATURES = 1000253000,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SHADER_SUBGROUP_EXTENDED_TYPES_FEATURES = 1000175000,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SEPARATE_DEPTH_STENCIL_LAYERS_FEATURES = 1000241000,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ATTACHMENT_REFERENCE_STENCIL_LAYOUT = 1000241001,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ATTACHMENT_DESCRIPTION_STENCIL_LAYOUT = 1000241002,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_TIMELINE_SEMAPHORE_FEATURES = 1000207000,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_TIMELINE_SEMAPHORE_PROPERTIES = 1000207001,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_CREATE_INFO = 1000207002,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_TIMELINE_SEMAPHORE_SUBMIT_INFO = 1000207003,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SEMAPHORE_WAIT_INFO = 1000207004,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SEMAPHORE_SIGNAL_INFO = 1000207005,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_BUFFER_DEVICE_ADDRESS_FEATURES = 1000257000,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BUFFER_DEVICE_ADDRESS_INFO = 1000244001,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BUFFER_OPAQUE_CAPTURE_ADDRESS_CREATE_INFO = 1000257002,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_OPAQUE_CAPTURE_ADDRESS_ALLOCATE_INFO = 1000257003,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEVICE_MEMORY_OPAQUE_CAPTURE_ADDRESS_INFO = 1000257004,
// Provided by VK_KHR_swapchain
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SWAPCHAIN_CREATE_INFO_KHR = 1000001000,
// Provided by VK_KHR_swapchain
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PRESENT_INFO_KHR = 1000001001,
// Provided by VK_KHR_swapchain with VK_VERSION_1_1, VK_KHR_device_group with
VK_KHR_surface
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEVICE_GROUP_PRESENT_CAPABILITIES_KHR = 1000060007,
// Provided by VK_KHR_swapchain with VK_VERSION_1_1, VK_KHR_device_group with
VK_KHR_swapchain
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_SWAPCHAIN_CREATE_INFO_KHR = 1000060008,
// Provided by VK_KHR_swapchain with VK_VERSION_1_1, VK_KHR_device_group with
VK_KHR_swapchain
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BIND_IMAGE_MEMORY_SWAPCHAIN_INFO_KHR = 1000060009,
// Provided by VK_KHR_swapchain with VK_VERSION_1_1, VK_KHR_device_group with
VK_KHR_swapchain
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ACQUIRE_NEXT_IMAGE_INFO_KHR = 1000060010,
// Provided by VK_KHR_swapchain with VK_VERSION_1_1, VK_KHR_device_group with
VK_KHR_swapchain
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEVICE_GROUP_SWAPCHAIN_CREATE_INFO_KHR = 1000060012,
// Provided by VK_KHR_display
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DISPLAY_MODE_CREATE_INFO_KHR = 1000002000,
// Provided by VK_KHR_display
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DISPLAY_SURFACE_CREATE_INFO_KHR = 1000002001,
// Provided by VK_KHR_display_swapchain
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DISPLAY_PRESENT_INFO_KHR = 1000003000,
// Provided by VK_KHR_xlib_surface
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_XLIB_SURFACE_CREATE_INFO_KHR = 1000004000,
// Provided by VK_KHR_xcb_surface
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_XCB_SURFACE_CREATE_INFO_KHR = 1000005000,
// Provided by VK_KHR_wayland_surface
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_WAYLAND_SURFACE_CREATE_INFO_KHR = 1000006000,
// Provided by VK_KHR_android_surface
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ANDROID_SURFACE_CREATE_INFO_KHR = 1000008000,
// Provided by VK_KHR_win32_surface
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_WIN32_SURFACE_CREATE_INFO_KHR = 1000009000,
#endif
#ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_PROFILE_KHR = 1000023000,
#endif
#ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_PROFILE_KHR = 1000023000,
#endif
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_CAPABILITIES_KHR = 1000023001,
#endif
#ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_PICTURE_RESOURCE_KHR = 1000023002,
#endif
#ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_GET_MEMORY_PROPERTIES_KHR = 1000023003,
#endif
#ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_BIND_MEMORY_KHR = 1000023004,
#endif
#ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_SESSION_CREATE_INFO_KHR = 1000023005,
#endif
#ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_SESSION_PARAMETERS_CREATE_INFO_KHR = 1000023006,
#endif
#ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_SESSION_PARAMETERS_UPDATE_INFO_KHR = 1000023007,
#endif
#ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_BEGIN_CODING_INFO_KHR = 1000023008,
#endif
#ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_END_CODING_INFO_KHR = 1000023009,
#endif
#ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_CODING_CONTROL_INFO_KHR = 1000023010,
#endif
#ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_REFERENCE_SLOT_KHR = 1000023011,
#endif
#ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_QUEUE_FAMILY_PROPERTIES_2_KHR = 1000023012,
#endif
#ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_PROFILES_KHR = 1000023013,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_VIDEO_FORMAT_INFO_KHR = 1000023014,

// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
// VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_FORMAT_PROPERTIES_KHR = 1000023015,

// Provided by VK_KHR_video_decode_queue
// VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_DECODE_INFO_KHR = 1000024000,

// Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory_win32
// VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMPORT_MEMORY_WIN32_HANDLE_INFO_KHR = 1000073000,
// VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXPORT_MEMORY_WIN32_HANDLE_INFO_KHR = 1000073001,
// VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_WIN32_HANDLE_PROPERTIES_KHR = 1000073002,
// VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_GET_WIN32_HANDLE_INFO_KHR = 1000073003,

// Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory_fd
// VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMPORT_MEMORY_FD_INFO_KHR = 1000074000,
// VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_FD_PROPERTIES_KHR = 1000074001,
// VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_GET_FD_INFO_KHR = 1000074002,

// Provided by VK_KHR_win32_keyed_mutex
// VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_WIN32_KEYED_MUTEX_ACQUIRE_RELEASE_INFO_KHR = 1000075000,

// Provided by VK_KHR_external_semaphore_win32
// VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMPORT_SEMAPHORE_WIN32_HANDLE_INFO_KHR = 1000078000,
// VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXPORT_SEMAPHORE_WIN32_HANDLE_INFO_KHR = 1000078001,
// VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_D3D12_FENCE_SUBMIT_INFO_KHR = 1000078002,
// VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SEMAPHORE_GET_WIN32_HANDLE_INFO_KHR = 1000078003,

// Provided by VK_KHR_external_semaphore_fd
// VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMPORT_SEMAPHORE_FD_INFO_KHR = 1000079000,
// VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SEMAPHORE_GET_FD_INFO_KHR = 1000079001,

// Provided by VK_KHR_push_descriptor
// VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_PUSH_DESCRIPTOR_PROPERTIES_KHR = 1000080000,

// Provided by VK_KHR_incremental_present
// VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PRESENT_REGIONS_KHR = 1000084000,

// Provided by VK_KHR_shared_presentable_image
// VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SHARED_PRESENT_SURFACE_CAPABILITIES_KHR = 1000111000,

// Provided by VK_KHR_external_fence_win32
// VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMPORT_FENCE_WIN32_HANDLE_INFO_KHR = 1000114000,
// VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXPORT_FENCE_WIN32_HANDLE_INFO_KHR = 1000114001,
// VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_FENCE_GET_WIN32_HANDLE_INFO_KHR = 1000114002,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COPY_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_INFO_KHR = 1000150010,
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COPY_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TO_MEMORY_INFO_KHR = 1000150011,
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COPY_MEMORY_TO_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_INFO_KHR = 1000150012,
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_FEATURES_KHR = 1000150013,
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_PROPERTIES_KHR = 1000150014,
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_CREATE_INFO_KHR = 1000150017,
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_SIZES_INFO_KHR = 1000150020,
// Provided by VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_RAY_TRACING_PIPELINE_FEATURES_KHR = 1000347000,
// Provided by VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_RAY_TRACING_PIPELINE_PROPERTIES_KHR = 1000347001,
// Provided by VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RAY_TRACING_PIPELINE_CREATE_INFO_KHR = 1000150015,
// Provided by VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_CREATE_INFO_KHR = 1000150016,
// Provided by VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RAY_TRACING_PIPELINE_INTERFACE_CREATE_INFO_KHR = 1000150018,
// Provided by VK_KHR_ray_query
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_RAY_QUERY_FEATURES_KHR = 1000348013,
// Provided by VK_KHR_portability_subset
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_PORTABILITY_SUBSET_FEATURES_KHR = 1000163000,
// Provided by VK_KHR_portability_subset
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_PORTABILITY_SUBSET_PROPERTIES_KHR = 1000163001,
// Provided by VK_KHR_portability_subset
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SHADER_CLOCK_FEATURES_KHR = 1000181000,
// Provided by VK_KHR_shader_clock
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SHADER_TERMINATE_INVOCATION_FEATURES_KHR = 1000215000,
// Provided by VK_KHR_fragment_shading_rate
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_INFO_KHR = 1000226000,
// Provided by VK_KHR_fragment_shading_rate
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_STATE_CREATE_INFO_KHR = 1000226001,
// Provided by VK_KHR_fragment_shading_rate
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_PROPERTIES_KHR = 1000226002,
// Provided by VK_KHR_fragment_shading_rate
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_FEATURES_KHR = 1000226003,
// Provided by VK_KHR_fragment_shading_rate
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_KHR = 1000260004,

// Provided by VK_KHR_surface_protected_capabilities
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SURFACE_PROTECTED_CAPABILITIES_KHR = 1000239000,

// Provided by VK_KHR_present_wait
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_PRESENT_WAIT_FEATURES_KHR = 1000248000,

// Provided by VK_KHR_pipeline_executable_properties
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_PIPELINE_EXECUTABLE_PROPERTIES_FEATURES_KHR = 1000269000,

// Provided by VK_KHR_pipeline_executable_properties
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_INFO_KHR = 1000269001,

// Provided by VK_KHR_pipeline_executable_properties
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_EXECUTABLE_PROPERTIES_KHR = 1000269002,

// Provided by VK_KHR_pipeline_executable_properties
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_EXECUTABLE_INFO_KHR = 1000269003,

// Provided by VK_KHR_pipeline_executable_properties
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_EXECUTABLE_STATISTIC_KHR = 1000269004,

// Provided by VK_KHR_pipeline_executable_properties
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_EXECUTABLE_INTERNAL_REPRESENTATION_KHR = 1000269005,

// Provided by VK_KHR_pipeline_library
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_LIBRARY_CREATE_INFO_KHR = 1000290000,

// Provided by VK_KHR_present_id
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PRESENT_ID_KHR = 1000294000,

// Provided by VK_KHR_present_id
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_PRESENT_ID_FEATURES_KHR = 1000294001,

#ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_encode_queue
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_ENCODE_INFO_KHR = 1000299000,

#ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_encode_queue
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_ENCODE_RATE_CONTROL_INFO_KHR = 1000299001,
#endif
#endif

// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_BARRIER_2_KHR = 1000314000,

// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BUFFER_MEMORY_BARRIER_2_KHR = 1000314001,

// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_MEMORY_BARRIER_2_KHR = 1000314002,

// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEPENDENCY_INFO_KHR = 1000314003,

// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SUBMIT_INFO_2_KHR = 1000314004,

// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SEMAPHORE_SUBMIT_INFO_KHR = 1000314005,

// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COMMAND_BUFFER_SUBMIT_INFO_KHR = 1000314006,

// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SYNCHRONIZATION_2_FEATURES_KHR = 1000314007,

// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2 with VK_NV_device_diagnostic_checkpoints
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_QUEUE_FAMILY_CHECKPOINT_PROPERTIES_2_NV = 1000314008,
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2 with VK_NV_device_diagnostic_checkpoints
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_CHECKPOINT_DATA_2_NV = 1000314009,
// Provided by VK_KHR_shader_subgroup_uniform_control_flow
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SHADER_SUBGROUP_UNIFORM_CONTROL_FLOW_FEATURES_KHR = 1000323000,
// Provided by VK_KHR_zero_initialize_workgroup_memory
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_ZERO_INITIALIZE_WORKGROUP_MEMORY_FEATURES_KHR = 1000325000,
// Provided by VK_KHR_workgroup_memory_explicit_layout
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_WORKGROUP_MEMORY_EXPLICIT_LAYOUT_FEATURES_KHR = 1000336000,
// Provided by VK_KHR_copy_commands2
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COPY_BUFFER_INFO_2_KHR = 1000337000,
// Provided by VK_KHR_copy_commands2
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COPY_IMAGE_INFO_2_KHR = 1000337001,
// Provided by VK_KHR_copy_commands2
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COPY_BUFFER_TO_IMAGE_INFO_2_KHR = 1000337002,
// Provided by VK_KHR_copy_commands2
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COPY_IMAGE_TO_BUFFER_INFO_2_KHR = 1000337003,
// Provided by VK_KHR_copy_commands2
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BLIT_IMAGE_INFO_2_KHR = 1000337004,
// Provided by VK_KHR_copy_commands2
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RESOLVE_IMAGE_INFO_2_KHR = 1000337005,
// Provided by VK_KHR_copy_commands2
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BUFFER_COPY_2_KHR = 1000337006,
// Provided by VK_KHR_copy_commands2
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_COPY_2_KHR = 1000337007,
// Provided by VK_KHR_copy_commands2
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_BLIT_2_KHR = 1000337008,
// Provided by VK_KHR_copy_commands2
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BUFFER_IMAGE_COPY_2_KHR = 1000337009,
// Provided by VK_KHR_copy_commands2
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_RESOLVE_2_KHR = 1000337010,
// Provided by VK_KHR_multiview
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RENDER_PASS_MULTIVIEW_CREATE_INFO_KHR = 1000337020,
// Provided by VK_KHR_multiview
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_MULTIVIEW_CREATE_INFO_KHR = 1000337020,
// Provided by VK_KHR_multiview
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_MULTIVIEW_PROPERTIES_KHR = 1000337020,
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_FEATURES_2_KHR = 1000337020,
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_PROPERTIES_2_KHR = 1000337020,
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_FORMAT_PROPERTIES_2_KHR = 1000337020,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_FORMAT_PROPERTIES_2_KHR =
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_FORMAT_PROPERTIES_2,

VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_IMAGE_FORMAT_INFO_2_KHR =
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_IMAGE_FORMAT_INFO_2,

VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_QUEUE_FAMILY_PROPERTIES_2_KHR =
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_QUEUE_FAMILY_PROPERTIES_2,

VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_MEMORY_PROPERTIES_2_KHR =
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_MEMORY_PROPERTIES_2,

VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SPARSE_IMAGE_FORMAT_PROPERTIES_2_KHR =
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SPARSE_IMAGE_FORMAT_PROPERTIES_2,

VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SPARSE_IMAGE_FORMAT_INFO_2_KHR =
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SPARSE_IMAGE_FORMAT_INFO_2,

VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_FLAGS_INFO_KHR =
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_FLAGS_INFO,

VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEVICE_GROUP_RENDER_PASS_BEGIN_INFO_KHR =
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEVICE_GROUP_RENDER_PASS_BEGIN_INFO,

VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEVICE_GROUP_COMMAND_BUFFER_BEGIN_INFO_KHR =
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEVICE_GROUP_COMMAND_BUFFER_BEGIN_INFO,

VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEVICE_GROUP_SUBMIT_INFO_KHR =
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPEDEVICE_GROUP_SUBMIT_INFO,

VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEVICE_GROUP_BIND_SPARSE_INFO_KHR =
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPEDEVICE_GROUP_BIND_SPARSE_INFO,

VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BIND_BUFFER_MEMORY_DEVICE_GROUP_INFO_KHR =
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BIND_BUFFER_MEMORYDEVICE_GROUP_INFO,

VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BIND_IMAGE_MEMORY_DEVICE_GROUP_INFO_KHR =
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BIND_IMAGE_MEMORYDEVICE_GROUP_INFO,

VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_GROUP_PROPERTIES_KHR =
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_GROUP_PROPERTIES,

VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_GROUP_CREATE_INFO_KHR =
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_GROUP_CREATE_INFO,

VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_EXTERNAL_IMAGE_FORMAT_INFO_KHR =
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_EXTERNAL_IMAGE_FORMAT_INFO,

VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXTERNAL_IMAGE_FORMAT_PROPERTIES_KHR =
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXTERNAL_IMAGE_FORMAT_PROPERTIES.
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_EXTERNAL_BUFFER_INFO_KHR =
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_EXTERNAL_BUFFER_INFO,
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory_capabilities
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXTERNAL_BUFFER_PROPERTIES_KHR =
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXTERNAL_BUFFER_PROPERTIES,
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory_capabilities,
VK_KHR_external_semaphore_capabilities, VK_KHR_external_fence_capabilities
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_ID_PROPERTIES_KHR =
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_ID_PROPERTIES,
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_BUFFER_CREATE_INFO_KHR =
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_BUFFER_CREATE_INFO,
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_IMAGE_CREATE_INFO_KHR =
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_IMAGE_CREATE_INFO,
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXPORT_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_INFO_KHR =
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXPORT_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_INFO,
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_semaphore_capabilities
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_INFO_KHR =
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_INFO,
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_semaphore_capabilities
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_PROPERTIES_KHR =
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_PROPERTIES,
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_semaphore
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXPORT_SEMAPHORE_CREATE_INFO_KHR =
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXPORT_SEMAPHORE_CREATE_INFO,
// Provided by VK_KHR_shader_float16_int8
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SHADER_FLOAT16_INT8_FEATURES_KHR =
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SHADER_FLOAT16_INT8_FEATURES,
// Provided by VK_KHR_shader_float16_int8
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_16BIT_STORAGE_FEATURES_KHR =
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_16BIT_STORAGE_FEATURES,
// Provided by VK_KHR_16bit_storage
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DESCRIPTOR_UPDATE_TEMPLATE_CREATE_INFO_KHR =
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DESCRIPTOR_UPDATE_TEMPLATE_CREATE_INFO,
// Provided by VK_KHR_descriptor_update_template
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_IMAGELESS_FRAMEBUFFER_FEATURES_KHR =
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_IMAGELESS_FRAMEBUFFER_FEATURES,
// Provided by VK_KHR_imageless_framebuffer
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_FRAMEBUFFER_ATTACHMENTS_CREATE_INFO_KHR =
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_FRAMEBUFFER_ATTACHMENTS_CREATE_INFO,
// Provided by VK_KHR_imageless_framebuffer
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_FRAMEBUFFER_ATTACHMENT_IMAGE_INFO_KHR =
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_FRAMEBUFFER_ATTACHMENT_IMAGE_INFO,
// Provided by VK_KHR_imageless_framebuffer
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RENDER_PASS_ATTACHMENT_BEGIN_INFO_KHR =
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RENDER_PASS_ATTACHMENT_BEGIN_INFO,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_create_renderpass2
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ATTACHMENT_DESCRIPTION_2_KHR =
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ATTACHMENT_DESCRIPTION_2,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_create_renderpass2
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ATTACHMENT_REFERENCE_2_KHR =
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ATTACHMENT_REFERENCE_2,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_create_renderpass2
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SUBPASS_DESCRIPTION_2_KHR =
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SUBPASS_DESCRIPTION_2,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_create_renderpass2
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SUBPASS_DEPENDENCY_2_KHR =
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SUBPASS_DEPENDENCY_2,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_create_renderpass2
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RENDER_PASS_CREATE_INFO_2_KHR =
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RENDER_PASS_CREATE_INFO_2,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_create_renderpass2
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SUBPASS_BEGIN_INFO_KHR = VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SUBPASS_BEGIN_INFO,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_create_renderpass2
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SUBPASS_END_INFO_KHR = VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SUBPASS_END_INFO,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_external_fence_capabilities
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_EXTERNAL_FENCE_INFO_KHR =
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICALDEVICE_EXTERNAL_FENCE_INFO_KHR,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_external_fence_capabilities
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXTERNAL_FENCE_PROPERTIES_KHR =
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXTERNAL_FENCE_PROPERTIES_KHR,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_external_fence
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXPORT_FENCE_CREATE_INFO_KHR =
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXPORT_FENCE_CREATE_INFO_KHR,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_maintenance2
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_POINT_CLIPPING_PROPERTIES_KHR =
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_POINT_CLIPPING_PROPERTIES_KHR,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_maintenance2
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RENDER_PASS_INPUT_ATTACHMENT_ASPECT_CREATE_INFO_KHR =
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RENDER_PASS_INPUT_ATTACHMENT_ASPECT_CREATE_INFO_KHR,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_maintenance2
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_VIEW_USAGE_CREATE_INFO_KHR =
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_VIEW_USAGE_CREATE_INFO_KHR,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_maintenance2
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_TESSELLATION_DOMAIN_ORIGIN_STATE_CREATE_INFO_KHR =
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_TESSELLATION_DOMAIN_ORIGIN_STATE_CREATE_INFO_KHR,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_variable_pointers
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_VARIABLE_POINTERS_FEATURES_KHR =
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_VARIABLE_POINTERS_FEATURES_KHR,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_dedicated_allocation
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_DEDICATED_REQUIREMENTS_KHR =
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_DEDICATED_REQUIREMENTS_KHR,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_dedicated_allocation
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_DEDICATED_ALLOCATE_INFO_KHR =
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_DEDICATED_ALLOCATE_INFO_KHR,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_DEDICATED_ALLOCATE_INFO,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_get_memory_requirements2
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BUFFER_MEMORY_REQUIREMENTS_INFO_2_KHR =
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BUFFER_MEMORY_REQUIREMENTS_INFO_2,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_get_memory_requirements2
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_MEMORY_REQUIREMENTS_INFO_2_KHR =
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_MEMORY_REQUIREMENTS_INFO_2,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_get_memory_requirements2
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_SPARSE_MEMORY_REQUIREMENTS_INFO_2_KHR =
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_SPARSE_MEMORY_REQUIREMENTS_INFO_2,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_get_memory_requirements2
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_REQUIREMENTS_2_KHR =
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_REQUIREMENTS_2,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_get_memory_requirements2
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SPARSE_IMAGE_MEMORY_REQUIREMENTS_2_KHR =
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SPARSE_IMAGE_MEMORY_REQUIREMENTS_2,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_image_format_list
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_FORMAT_LIST_CREATE_INFO_KHR =
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_FORMAT_LIST_CREATE_INFO,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SAMPLER_YCBCR_CONVERSION_CREATE_INFO_KHR =
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SAMPLER_YCBCR_CONVERSION_CREATE_INFO,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SAMPLER_YCBCR_CONVERSION_INFO_KHR =
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SAMPLER_YCBCR_CONVERSION_INFO,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BIND_IMAGE_PLANE_MEMORY_INFO_KHR =
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BIND_IMAGE_PLANE_MEMORY_INFO,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_PLANE_MEMORY_REQUIREMENTS_INFO_KHR =
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_PLANE_MEMORY_REQUIREMENTS_INFO,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SAMPLER_YCBCR_CONVERSION_FEATURES_KHR =
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SAMPLER_YCBCR_CONVERSION_FEATURES,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SAMPLER_YCBCR_CONVERSION_IMAGE_FORMAT_PROPERTIES_KHR =
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SAMPLER_YCBCR_CONVERSION_IMAGE_FORMAT_PROPERTIES,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_bind_memory2
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BIND_BUFFER_MEMORY_INFO_KHR =
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BIND_BUFFER_MEMORY_INFO,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_bind_memory2
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BIND_IMAGE_MEMORY_INFO_KHR =
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BIND_IMAGE_MEMORY_INFO,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_maintenance3
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_MAINTENANCE_3_PROPERTIES_KHR =
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_MAINTENANCE_3_PROPERTIES,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_maintenance3
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DESCRIPTOR_SET_LAYOUT_SUPPORT_KHR =
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DESCRIPTOR_SET_LAYOUT_SUPPORT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_shader_subgroup_extended_types
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SHADER_SUBGROUP_EXTENDED_TYPES_FEATURES_KHR =
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SHADER_SUBGROUP_EXTENDED_TYPES_FEATURES,
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SHADER_SUBGROUP_EXTENDED_TYPES_FEATURES,
  // Provided by VK_KHR_8bit_storage
  VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_8BIT_STORAGE_FEATURES_KHR =
  VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_8BIT_STORAGE_FEATURES,
  // Provided by VK_KHR_shader_atomic_int64
  VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SHADER_ATOMIC_INT64_FEATURES_KHR =
  VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SHADER_ATOMIC_INT64_FEATURES,
  // Provided by VK_KHR_driver_properties
  VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_DRIVER_PROPERTIES_KHR =
  VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_DRIVER_PROPERTIES,
  // Provided by VK_KHR_shader_float_controls
  VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_FLOAT_CONTROLS_PROPERTIES_KHR =
  VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_FLOAT_CONTROLS_PROPERTIES,
  // Provided by VK_KHR_depth_stencil_resolve
  VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SUBPASS_DESCRIPTION_DEPTH_STENCIL_RESOLVE_KHR =
  VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SUBPASS_DESCRIPTION_DEPTH_STENCIL_RESOLVE,
  // Provided by VK_KHR_timeline_semaphore
  VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_TIMELINE_SEMAPHORE_FEATURES_KHR =
  VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_TIMELINE_SEMAPHORE_FEATURES,
  // Provided by VK_KHR_timeline_semaphore
  VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_TIMELINE_SEMAPHORE_PROPERTIES_KHR =
  VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_TIMELINE_SEMAPHORE_PROPERTIES,
  // Provided by VK_KHR_vulkan_memory_model
  VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_VULKAN_MEMORY_MODEL_FEATURES_KHR =
  VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_VULKAN_MEMORY_MODEL_FEATURES,
  // Provided by VK_KHR_separate_depth_stencil_layouts
  VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ATTACHMENT_REFERENCE_STENCIL_LAYOUT_KHR =
  VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ATTACHMENT_REFERENCE_STENCIL_LAYOUT,
  VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ATTACHMENT_DESCRIPTION_STENCIL_LAYOUT_KHR =
  VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ATTACHMENT_DESCRIPTION_STENCIL_LAYOUT,
  // Provided by VK_KHR_uniform_buffer_standard_layout
  VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_UNIFORM_BUFFER_STANDARD_LAYOUT_FEATURES_KHR =
  VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_UNIFORM_BUFFER_STANDARD_LAYOUT_FEATURES,
// Provided by VK_KHR_buffer_device_address
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_BUFFER_DEVICE_ADDRESS_FEATURES_KHR = 
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_BUFFER_DEVICE_ADDRESS_FEATURES,
// Provided by VK_KHR_buffer_device_address
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BUFFER_DEVICE_ADDRESS_INFO_KHR = 
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BUFFER_DEVICE_ADDRESS_INFO,
// Provided by VK_KHR_buffer_device_address
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BUFFER_OPAQUE_CAPTURE_ADDRESS_CREATE_INFO_KHR = 
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BUFFER_OPAQUE_CAPTURE_ADDRESS_CREATE_INFO,
// Provided by VK_KHR_buffer_device_address
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_OPAQUE_CAPTURE_ADDRESS_ALLOCATE_INFO_KHR = 
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_OPAQUE_CAPTURE_ADDRESS_ALLOCATE_INFO,
// Provided by VK_KHR_buffer_device_address
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEVICE_MEMORY_OPAQUE_CAPTURE_ADDRESS_INFO_KHR = 
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEVICE_MEMORY_OPAQUE_CAPTURE_ADDRESS_INFO,
} VkStructureType;
Chapter 4. Initialization

Before using Vulkan, an application must initialize it by loading the Vulkan commands, and creating a VkInstance object.

4.1. Command Function Pointers

Vulkan commands are not necessarily exposed by static linking on a platform. Commands to query function pointers for Vulkan commands are described below.

Note

When extensions are promoted or otherwise incorporated into another extension or Vulkan core version, command aliases may be included. Whilst the behavior of each command alias is identical, the behavior of retrieving each alias's function pointer is not. A function pointer for a given alias can only be retrieved if the extension or version that introduced that alias is supported and enabled, irrespective of whether any other alias is available.

Function pointers for all Vulkan commands can be obtained with the command:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
PFN_vkVoidFunction vkGetInstanceProcAddr(
    VkInstance instance,
    const char* pName);
```

- `instance` is the instance that the function pointer will be compatible with, or NULL for commands not dependent on any instance.
- `pName` is the name of the command to obtain.

`vkGetInstanceProcAddr` itself is obtained in a platform- and loader- specific manner. Typically, the loader library will export this command as a function symbol, so applications can link against the loader library, or load it dynamically and look up the symbol using platform-specific APIs.

The table below defines the various use cases for `vkGetInstanceProcAddr` and expected return value (“fp” is “function pointer”) for each case. A valid returned function pointer (“fp”) must not be NULL.

The returned function pointer is of type PFN_vkVoidFunction, and must be cast to the type of the command being queried before use.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>instance</th>
<th>pName</th>
<th>return value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>null</code></td>
<td><code>null</code></td>
<td>undefined</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invalid non-NULL instance</td>
<td><code>null</code></td>
<td>undefined</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>null</code></td>
<td><code>vkEnumerateInstanceExtensionProperties</code></td>
<td><code>fp</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instance</td>
<td>pName</td>
<td>return value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NULL</td>
<td>vkEnumerateInstanceLayerProperties</td>
<td>fp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NULL</td>
<td>vkCreateInstance</td>
<td>fp</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instance</td>
<td>core Vulkan command</td>
<td>fp²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instance</td>
<td>enabled instance extension commands for instance</td>
<td>fp²</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>instance</td>
<td>available device extension³ commands for instance</td>
<td>fp³</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>any other case, not covered above</td>
<td>NULL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1  "#" means any representable value for the parameter (including valid values, invalid values, and NULL).

2  The returned function pointer must only be called with a dispatchable object (the first parameter) that is instance or a child of instance, e.g. VkInstance, VkPhysicalDevice, VkDevice, VkQueue, or VkCommandBuffer.

3  An “available device extension” is a device extension supported by any physical device enumerated by instance.

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-vkGetInstanceProcAddr-instance-parameter
  If instance is not NULL, instance must be a valid VkInstance handle
- VUID-vkGetInstanceProcAddr-pName-parameter
  pName must be a null-terminated UTF-8 string

In order to support systems with multiple Vulkan implementations, the function pointers returned by vkGetInstanceProcAddr may point to dispatch code that calls a different real implementation for different VkDevice objects or their child objects. The overhead of the internal dispatch for VkDevice objects can be avoided by obtaining device-specific function pointers for any commands that use a device or device-child object as their dispatchable object. Such function pointers can be obtained with the command:
PFN_vkVoidFunction vkGetDeviceProcAddr(VkDevice device, const char* pName);

The table below defines the various use cases for `vkGetDeviceProcAddr` and expected return value (“fp” is “function pointer”) for each case. A valid returned function pointer (“fp”) must not be `NULL`.

The returned function pointer is of type `PFN_vkVoidFunction`, and must be cast to the type of the command being queried before use. The function pointer must only be called with a dispatchable object (the first parameter) that is `device` or a child of `device`.

**Table 2. vkGetDeviceProcAddr behavior**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>device</th>
<th>pName</th>
<th>return value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>NULL</code></td>
<td>*1</td>
<td>undefined</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>invalid device</td>
<td>*1</td>
<td>undefined</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>device</td>
<td><code>NULL</code></td>
<td>undefined</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>device</td>
<td>core device-level Vulkan command</td>
<td><code>fp</code>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>device</td>
<td>enabled extension device-level commands</td>
<td><code>fp</code>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>any other case, not covered above</td>
<td></td>
<td><code>NULL</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1

"*" means any representable value for the parameter (including valid values, invalid values, and `NULL`).

2

In this function, device-level excludes all physical-device-level commands.

3

The returned function pointer must only be called with a dispatchable object (the first parameter) that is `device` or a child of `device` e.g. `VkDevice`, `VkQueue`, or `VkCommandBuffer`.

---

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- `VUID-vkGetDeviceProcAddr-device-parameter`  
  `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- `VUID-vkGetDeviceProcAddr-pName-parameter`  
  `pName` must be a null-terminated UTF-8 string

---

The definition of `PFN_vkVoidFunction` is:
### 4.1.1. Extending Physical Device From Device Extensions

When the `VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2` extension is enabled, physical-device-level functionality of a device extension can be used with a physical device if the corresponding extension is enumerated by `vkEnumerateDeviceExtensionProperties` for that physical device, even before a logical device has been created.

To obtain a function pointer for a physical-device-level command from a device extension, an application can use `vkGetInstanceProcAddr`. This function pointer may point to dispatch code, which calls a different real implementation for different `VkPhysicalDevice` objects. Applications must not use a `VkPhysicalDevice` in any command added by an extension or core version that is not supported by that physical device.

Device extensions may define structures that can be added to the `pNext` chain of physical-device-level commands.

### 4.2. Instances

There is no global state in Vulkan and all per-application state is stored in a `VkInstance` object. Creating a `VkInstance` object initializes the Vulkan library and allows the application to pass information about itself to the implementation.

Instances are represented by `VkInstance` handles:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VK_DEFINE_HANDLE(VkInstance)
```

To create an instance object, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkCreateInstance(
    const VkInstanceCreateInfo* pCreateInfo,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator,
    VkInstance* pInstance);
```

- `pCreateInfo` is a pointer to a `VkInstanceCreateInfo` structure controlling creation of the instance.
- `pAllocator` controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
- `pInstance` points a `VkInstance` handle in which the resulting instance is returned.

`vkCreateInstance` verifies that the requested layers exist. If not, `vkCreateInstance` will return `VK_ERROR_LAYER_NOT_PRESENT`. Next `vkCreateInstance` verifies that the requested extensions are supported (e.g. in the implementation or in any enabled instance layer) and if any requested
extension is not supported, `vkCreateInstance` must return `VK_ERROR_EXTENSION_NOT_PRESENT`. After verifying and enabling the instance layers and extensions the `VkInstance` object is created and returned to the application. If a requested extension is only supported by a layer, both the layer and the extension need to be specified at `vkCreateInstance` time for the creation to succeed.

**Valid Usage**

- VUID-vkCreateInstance-ppEnabledExtensionNames-01388
  All required extensions for each extension in the `VkInstanceCreateInfo::ppEnabledExtensionNames` list must also be present in that list

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-vkCreateInstance-pCreateInfo-parameter
  `pCreateInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkInstanceCreateInfo` structure

- VUID-vkCreateInstance-pAllocator-parameter
  If `pAllocator` is not NULL, `pAllocator` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkAllocationCallbacks` structure

- VUID-vkCreateInstance-pInstance-parameter
  `pInstance` must be a valid pointer to a `VkInstance` handle

**Return Codes**

**Success**
- `VK_SUCCESS`

**Failure**
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_INITIALIZATION_FAILED`
- `VK_ERROR_LAYER_NOT_PRESENT`
- `VK_ERROR_EXTENSION_NOT_PRESENT`
- `VK_ERROR_INCOMPATIBLE_DRIVER`

The `VkInstanceCreateInfo` structure is defined as:
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0

typedef struct VkInstanceCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkInstanceCreateFlags flags;
    const VkApplicationInfo* pApplicationInfo;
    uint32_t enabledLayerCount;
    const char* const* ppEnabledLayerNames;
    uint32_t enabledExtensionCount;
    const char* const* ppEnabledExtensionNames;
} VkInstanceCreateInfo;

• **sType** is the type of this structure.

• **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.

• **flags** is reserved for future use.

• **pApplicationInfo** is NULL or a pointer to a **VkApplicationInfo** structure. If not NULL, this information helps implementations recognize behavior inherent to classes of applications. **VkApplicationInfo** is defined in detail below.

• **enabledLayerCount** is the number of global layers to enable.

• **ppEnabledLayerNames** is a pointer to an array of **enabledLayerCount** null-terminated UTF-8 strings containing the names of layers to enable for the created instance. The layers are loaded in the order they are listed in this array, with the first array element being the closest to the application, and the last array element being the closest to the driver. See the **Layers** section for further details.

• **enabledExtensionCount** is the number of global extensions to enable.

• **ppEnabledExtensionNames** is a pointer to an array of **enabledExtensionCount** null-terminated UTF-8 strings containing the names of extensions to enable.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkInstanceCreateInfo-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_INSTANCE_CREATE_INFO

- VUID-VkInstanceCreateInfo-pNext-pNext
  pNext must be NULL

- VUID-VkInstanceCreateInfo-flags-zerobitmask
  flags must be 0

- VUID-VkInstanceCreateInfo-pApplicationInfo-parameter
  If pApplicationInfo is not NULL, pApplicationInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid VkApplicationInfo structure

- VUID-VkInstanceCreateInfo-ppEnabledLayerNames-parameter
  If enabledLayerCount is not 0, ppEnabledLayerNames must be a valid pointer to an array of enabledLayerCount null-terminated UTF-8 strings

- VUID-VkInstanceCreateInfo-ppEnabledExtensionNames-parameter
  If enabledExtensionCount is not 0, ppEnabledExtensionNames must be a valid pointer to an array of enabledExtensionCount null-terminated UTF-8 strings

// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkInstanceCreateFlags;

VkInstanceCreateFlags is a bitmask type for setting a mask, but is currently reserved for future use.

The VkApplicationInfo structure is defined as:

// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkApplicationInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    const char* pApplicationName;
    uint32_t applicationVersion;
    const char* pEngineName;
    uint32_t engineVersion;
    uint32_t apiVersion;
} VkApplicationInfo;

- sType is the type of this structure.
- pNext is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- pApplicationName is NULL or is a pointer to a null-terminated UTF-8 string containing the name of the application.
- applicationVersion is an unsigned integer variable containing the developer-supplied version number of the application.
• **pEngineName** is **NULL** or is a pointer to a null-terminated UTF-8 string containing the name of the engine (if any) used to create the application.

• **engineVersion** is an unsigned integer variable containing the developer-supplied version number of the engine used to create the application.

• **apiVersion** is the version of the Vulkan API against which the application expects to run, encoded as described in **Version Numbers**. If **apiVersion** is 0 the implementation **must** ignore it, otherwise if the implementation does not support the requested **apiVersion**, or an effective substitute for **apiVersion**, it **must** return **VK_ERROR_INCOMPATIBLE_DRIVER**. The patch version number specified in **apiVersion** is ignored when creating an instance object. Only the major and minor versions of the instance **must** match those requested in **apiVersion**.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkApplicationInfo-apiVersion-04010**
  
  If **apiVersion** is not 0, then it **must** be greater than or equal to **VK_API_VERSION_1_0**

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkApplicationInfo-sType-sType**
  
  sType **must** be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_APPLICATION_INFO**

- **VUID-VkApplicationInfo-pNext-pNext**
  
  pNext **must** be **NULL**

- **VUID-VkApplicationInfo-pApplicationName-parameter**
  
  If **pApplicationName** is not **NULL**, **pApplicationName** **must** be a null-terminated UTF-8 string

- **VUID-VkApplicationInfo-pEngineName-parameter**
  
  If **pEngineName** is not **NULL**, **pEngineName** **must** be a null-terminated UTF-8 string

To destroy an instance, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkDestroyInstance(
    VkInstance instance,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator);
```

- **instance** is the handle of the instance to destroy.

- **pAllocator** controls host memory allocation as described in the **Memory Allocation** chapter.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkDestroyInstance-instance-00629
  All child objects created using instance must have been destroyed prior to destroying instance.

- VUID-vkDestroyInstance-instance-00630
  If VkAllocationCallbacks were provided when instance was created, a compatible set of callbacks must be provided here.

- VUID-vkDestroyInstance-instance-00631
  If no VkAllocationCallbacks were provided when instance was created, pAllocator must be NULL.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkDestroyInstance-instance-parameter
  If instance is not NULL, instance must be a valid VkInstance handle.

- VUID-vkDestroyInstance-pAllocator-parameter
  If pAllocator is not NULL, pAllocator must be a valid pointer to a valid VkAllocationCallbacks structure.

Host Synchronization

- Host access to instance must be externally synchronized.

- Host access to all VkPhysicalDevice objects enumerated from instance must be externally synchronized.
Chapter 5. Devices and Queues

Once Vulkan is initialized, devices and queues are the primary objects used to interact with a Vulkan implementation.

Vulkan separates the concept of *physical* and *logical* devices. A physical device usually represents a single complete implementation of Vulkan (excluding instance-level functionality) available to the host, of which there are a finite number. A logical device represents an instance of that implementation with its own state and resources independent of other logical devices.

Physical devices are represented by `VkPhysicalDevice` handles:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VK_DEFINE_HANDLE(VkPhysicalDevice)
```

### 5.1. Physical Devices

To retrieve a list of physical device objects representing the physical devices installed in the system, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkEnumeratePhysicalDevices(
    VkInstance instance,
    uint32_t* pPhysicalDeviceCount,
    VkPhysicalDevice* pPhysicalDevices);
```

- `instance` is a handle to a Vulkan instance previously created with `vkCreateInstance`.
- `pPhysicalDeviceCount` is a pointer to an integer related to the number of physical devices available or queried, as described below.
- `pPhysicalDevices` is either `NULL` or a pointer to an array of `VkPhysicalDevice` handles.

If `pPhysicalDevices` is `NULL`, then the number of physical devices available is returned in `pPhysicalDeviceCount`. Otherwise, `pPhysicalDeviceCount` *must* point to a variable set by the user to the number of elements in the `pPhysicalDevices` array, and on return the variable is overwritten with the number of handles actually written to `pPhysicalDevices`. If `pPhysicalDeviceCount` is less than the number of physical devices available, at most `pPhysicalDeviceCount` structures will be written, and `VK_INCOMPLETE` will be returned instead of `VK_SUCCESS`, to indicate that not all the available physical devices were returned.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkEnumeratePhysicalDevices-instance-parameter
  
  `instance` must be a valid `VkInstance` handle

- VUID-vkEnumeratePhysicalDevices-pPhysicalDeviceCount-parameter
  
  `pPhysicalDeviceCount` must be a valid pointer to a `uint32_t` value

- VUID-vkEnumeratePhysicalDevices-pPhysicalDevices-parameter
  
  If the value referenced by `pPhysicalDeviceCount` is not 0, and `pPhysicalDevices` is not NULL, `pPhysicalDevices` must be a valid pointer to an array of `pPhysicalDeviceCount` `VkPhysicalDevice` handles

Return Codes

**Success**

- VK_SUCCESS
- VK_INCOMPLETE

**Failure**

- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_INITIALIZATION_FAILED

To query general properties of physical devices once enumerated, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkGetPhysicalDeviceProperties(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,  
    VkPhysicalDeviceProperties* pProperties);
```

- `physicalDevice` is the handle to the physical device whose properties will be queried.
- `pProperties` is a pointer to a `VkPhysicalDeviceProperties` structure in which properties are returned.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceProperties-physicalDevice-parameter
  
  `physicalDevice` must be a valid `VkPhysicalDevice` handle

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceProperties-pProperties-parameter
  
  `pProperties` must be a valid pointer to a `VkPhysicalDeviceProperties` structure

The `VkPhysicalDeviceProperties` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceProperties {
    uint32_t apiVersion;
    uint32_t driverVersion;
    uint32_t vendorID;
    uint32_t deviceID;
    VkPhysicalDeviceType deviceType;
    char deviceName[VK_MAX_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_NAME_SIZE];
    uint8_t pipelineCacheUUID[VK_UUID_SIZE];
    VkPhysicalDeviceLimits limits;
    VkPhysicalDeviceSparseProperties sparseProperties;
} VkPhysicalDeviceProperties;

• **apiVersion** is the version of Vulkan supported by the device, encoded as described in [Version Numbers](#).
• **driverVersion** is the vendor-specified version of the driver.
• **vendorID** is a unique identifier for the vendor (see below) of the physical device.
• **deviceID** is a unique identifier for the physical device among devices available from the vendor.
• **deviceType** is a `VkPhysicalDeviceType` specifying the type of device.
• **deviceName** is an array of `VK_MAX_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_NAME_SIZE` `char` containing a null-terminated UTF-8 string which is the name of the device.
• **pipelineCacheUUID** is an array of `VK_UUID_SIZE` `uint8_t` values representing a universally unique identifier for the device.
• **limits** is the `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits` structure specifying device-specific limits of the physical device. See [Limits](#) for details.
• **sparseProperties** is the `VkPhysicalDeviceSparseProperties` structure specifying various sparse related properties of the physical device. See [Sparse Properties](#) for details.

**Note**
The encoding of **driverVersion** is implementation-defined. It **may** not use the same encoding as **apiVersion**. Applications should follow information from the **vendor** on how to extract the version information from **driverVersion**.

The **vendorID** and **deviceID** fields are provided to allow applications to adapt to device characteristics that are not adequately exposed by other Vulkan queries.

**Note**
These **may** include performance profiles, hardware errata, or other characteristics.

The **vendor** identified by **vendorID** is the entity responsible for the most salient characteristics of the underlying implementation of the **VkPhysicalDevice** being queried.
For example, in the case of a discrete GPU implementation, this **should** be the GPU chipset vendor. In the case of a hardware accelerator integrated into a system-on-chip (SoC), this **should** be the supplier of the silicon IP used to create the accelerator.

If the vendor has a **PCI vendor ID**, the low 16 bits of **vendorID** **must** contain that PCI vendor ID, and the remaining bits **must** be set to zero. Otherwise, the value returned **must** be a valid Khronos vendor ID, obtained as described in the Vulkan Documentation and Extensions: Procedures and Conventions document in the section “Registering a Vendor ID with Khronos”. Khronos vendor IDs are allocated starting at 0x10000, to distinguish them from the PCI vendor ID namespace. Khronos vendor IDs are symbolically defined in the **VkVendorId** type.

The vendor is also responsible for the value returned in **deviceID**. If the implementation is driven primarily by a **PCI device** with a **PCI device ID**, the low 16 bits of **deviceID** **must** contain that PCI device ID, and the remaining bits **must** be set to zero. Otherwise, the choice of what values to return **may** be dictated by operating system or platform policies - but **should** uniquely identify both the device version and any major configuration options (for example, core count in the case of multicore devices).

The same device ID **should** be used for all physical implementations of that device version and configuration. For example, all uses of a specific silicon IP GPU version and configuration **should** use the same device ID, even if those uses occur in different SoCs.

Khronos vendor IDs which **may** be returned in **VkPhysicalDeviceProperties::vendorID** are:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkVendorId {
    VK_VENDOR_ID_VIV = 0x10001,
    VK_VENDOR_ID_VSI = 0x10002,
    VK_VENDOR_ID_KAZAN = 0x10003,
    VK_VENDOR_ID_CODEPLAY = 0x10004,
    VK_VENDOR_ID_MESA = 0x10005,
    VK_VENDOR_ID_POCL = 0x10006,
} VkVendorId;
```

Khronos vendor IDs may be allocated by vendors at any time. Only the latest canonical versions of this Specification, of the corresponding **vk.xml** API Registry, and of the corresponding **vulkan_core.h** header file **must** contain all reserved Khronos vendor IDs.

Only Khronos vendor IDs are given symbolic names at present. PCI vendor IDs returned by the implementation can be looked up in the PCI-SIG database.
VK_MAX_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_NAME_SIZE is the length in char values of an array containing a physical device name string, as returned in VkPhysicalDeviceProperties::deviceName.

#define VK_MAX_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_NAME_SIZE  256U

The physical device types which may be returned in VkPhysicalDeviceProperties::deviceType are:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkPhysicalDeviceType {
    VK_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_TYPE_OTHER = 0,
    VK_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_TYPE_INTEGRATED_GPU = 1,
    VK_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_TYPE_DISCRETE_GPU = 2,
    VK_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_TYPE_VIRTUAL_GPU = 3,
    VK_PHYSICAL DEVICE_TYPE CPU = 4,
} VkPhysicalDeviceType;
```

- **VK_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_TYPE_OTHER** - the device does not match any other available types.
- **VK_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_TYPE_INTEGRATED_GPU** - the device is typically one embedded in or tightly coupled with the host.
- **VK_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_TYPE_DISCRETE_GPU** - the device is typically a separate processor connected to the host via an interlink.
- **VK_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_TYPE_VIRTUAL_GPU** - the device is typically a virtual node in a virtualization environment.
- **VK_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_TYPE_CPU** - the device is typically running on the same processors as the host.

The physical device type is advertised for informational purposes only, and does not directly affect the operation of the system. However, the device type may correlate with other advertised properties or capabilities of the system, such as how many memory heaps there are.

To query general properties of physical devices once enumerated, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2
void vkGetPhysicalDeviceProperties2KHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,        physicalDevice,
    VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2* pProperties);
```

- **physicalDevice** is the handle to the physical device whose properties will be queried.
- **pProperties** is a pointer to a VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2 structure in which properties are returned.

Each structure in pProperties and its pNext chain contains members corresponding to implementation-dependent properties, behaviors, or limits. vkGetPhysicalDeviceProperties2 fills in each member to specify the corresponding value for the implementation.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceProperties2-physicalDevice-parameter
  `physicalDevice` must be a valid `VkPhysicalDevice` handle

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceProperties2-pProperties-parameter
  `pProperties` must be a valid pointer to a `VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2` structure

The `VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2 {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkPhysicalDeviceProperties properties;
} VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2
typedef VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2 VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2KHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `properties` is a `VkPhysicalDeviceProperties` structure describing properties of the physical device. This structure is written with the same values as if it were written by `vkGetPhysicalDeviceProperties`.

The `pNext` chain of this structure is used to extend the structure with properties defined by extensions.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2-sType-sType**
  
  The `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_PROPERTIES_2`

- **VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2-pNext-pNext**

  Each `pNext` member of any structure (including this one) in the `pNext` chain must be either `NULL` or a pointer to a valid instance of:
  
  - `VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructurePropertiesKHR`
  - `VkPhysicalDeviceDepthStencilResolveProperties`
  - `VkPhysicalDeviceDriverProperties`
  - `VkPhysicalDeviceFloatControlsProperties`
  - `VkPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRatePropertiesKHR`
  - `VkPhysicalDeviceIDProperties`
  - `VkPhysicalDeviceMaintenance3Properties`
  - `VkPhysicalDeviceMultiviewProperties`
  - `VkPhysicalDevicePerformanceQueryPropertiesKHR`
  - `VkPhysicalDevicePointClippingProperties`
  - `VkPhysicalDevicePortabilitySubsetPropertiesKHR`
  - `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR`
  - `VkPhysicalDeviceTimelineSemaphoreProperties`

- **VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2-sType-unique**

  The `sType` value of each struct in the `pNext` chain must be unique

The `VkPhysicalDeviceIDProperties` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceIDProperties {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    uint8_t deviceUUID[VK_UUID_SIZE];
    uint8_t driverUUID[VK_UUID_SIZE];
    uint8_t deviceLUID[VK_LUID_SIZE];
    uint32_t deviceNodeMask;
    VkBool32 deviceLUIDValid;
} VkPhysicalDeviceIDProperties;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory_capabilities,
// VK_KHR_external_semaphore_capabilities, VK_KHR_external_fence_capabilities
typedef VkPhysicalDeviceIDProperties VkPhysicalDeviceIDPropertiesKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.

- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.

- `deviceUUID` is an array of `VK_UUID_SIZE uint8_t` values representing a universally unique identifier for the device.
• `driverUUID` is an array of `VK_UUID_SIZE` `uint8_t` values representing a universally unique identifier for the driver build in use by the device.

• `deviceLUID` is an array of `VK_LUID_SIZE` `uint8_t` values representing a locally unique identifier for the device.

• `deviceNodeMask` is a `uint32_t` bitfield identifying the node within a linked device adapter corresponding to the device.

• `deviceLUIDValid` is a boolean value that will be `VK_TRUE` if `deviceLUID` contains a valid LUID and `deviceNodeMask` contains a valid node mask, and `VK_FALSE` if they do not.

If the `VkPhysicalDeviceIDProperties` structure is included in the `pNext` chain of the `VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2` structure passed to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceProperties2`, it is filled in with each corresponding implementation-dependent property.

`deviceUUID` must be immutable for a given device across instances, processes, driver APIs, driver versions, and system reboots.

Applications can compare the `driverUUID` value across instance and process boundaries, and can make similar queries in external APIs to determine whether they are capable of sharing memory objects and resources using them with the device.

`deviceUUID` and/or `driverUUID` must be used to determine whether a particular external object can be shared between driver components, where such a restriction exists as defined in the compatibility table for the particular object type:

• External memory handle types compatibility
• External semaphore handle types compatibility
• External fence handle types compatibility

If `deviceLUIDValid` is `VK_FALSE`, the values of `deviceLUID` and `deviceNodeMask` are undefined. If `deviceLUIDValid` is `VK_TRUE` and Vulkan is running on the Windows operating system, the contents of `deviceLUID` can be cast to an `LUID` object and must be equal to the locally unique identifier of a `IDXGIAdapter1` object that corresponds to `physicalDevice`. If `deviceLUIDValid` is `VK_TRUE`, `deviceNodeMask` must contain exactly one bit. If Vulkan is running on an operating system that supports the Direct3D 12 API and `physicalDevice` corresponds to an individual device in a linked device adapter, `deviceNodeMask` identifies the Direct3D 12 node corresponding to `physicalDevice`. Otherwise, `deviceNodeMask` must be 1.
Although they have identical descriptions, `VkPhysicalDeviceIDProperties::deviceUUID` may differ from `VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2::pipelineCacheUUID`. The former is intended to identify and correlate devices across API and driver boundaries, while the latter is used to identify a compatible device and driver combination to use when serializing and de-serializing pipeline state.

Implementations should return `deviceUUID` values which are likely to be unique even in the presence of multiple Vulkan implementations (such as a GPU driver and a software renderer; two drivers for different GPUs; or the same Vulkan driver running on two logically different devices).

Khronos' conformance testing can not guarantee that `deviceUUID` values are actually unique, so implementors should make their own best efforts to ensure this. In particular, hard-coded `deviceUUID` values, especially all-0 bits, should never be used.

A combination of values unique to the vendor, the driver, and the hardware environment can be used to provide a `deviceUUID` which is unique to a high degree of certainty. Some possible inputs to such a computation are:

- Information reported by `vkGetPhysicalDeviceProperties`
- PCI device ID (if defined)
- PCI bus ID, or similar system configuration information.
- Driver binary checksums.

While `VkPhysicalDeviceIDProperties::deviceUUID` is specified to remain consistent across driver versions and system reboots, it is not intended to be usable as a serializable persistent identifier for a device. It may change when a device is physically added to, removed from, or moved to a different connector in a system while that system is powered down. Further, there is no reasonable way to verify with conformance testing that a given device retains the same UUID in a given system across all driver versions supported in that system. While implementations should make every effort to report consistent device UUIDs across driver versions, applications should avoid relying on the persistence of this value for uses other than identifying compatible devices for external object sharing purposes.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- `VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceIDProperties-sType-sType`  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_ID_PROPERTIES`

`VK_UUID_SIZE` is the length in `uint8_t` values of an array containing a universally unique device or driver build identifier, as returned in `VkPhysicalDeviceIDProperties::deviceUUID` and
**VkPhysicalDeviceIDProperties**:driverUUID.

```c
#define VK_UUID_SIZE 16U
```

**VK_LUID_SIZE** is the length in `uint8_t` values of an array containing a locally unique device identifier, as returned in **VkPhysicalDeviceIDProperties**:deviceLUID.

```c
#define VK_LUID_SIZE 8U
```

or the equivalent

```c
#define VK_LUID_SIZE_KHR VK_LUID_SIZE
```

The **VkPhysicalDeviceDriverProperties** structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceDriverProperties {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkDriverId driverID;
    char driverName[VK_MAX_DRIVER_NAME_SIZE];
    char driverInfo[VK_MAX_DRIVER_INFO_SIZE];
    VkConformanceVersion conformanceVersion;
} VkPhysicalDeviceDriverProperties;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_driver_properties
typedef VkPhysicalDeviceDriverProperties VkPhysicalDeviceDriverPropertiesKHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **driverID** is a unique identifier for the driver of the physical device.
- **driverName** is an array of `VK_MAX_DRIVER_NAME_SIZE` `char` containing a null-terminated UTF-8 string which is the name of the driver.
- **driverInfo** is an array of `VK_MAX_DRIVER_INFO_SIZE` `char` containing a null-terminated UTF-8 string with additional information about the driver.
- **conformanceVersion** is the version of the Vulkan conformance test this driver is conformant against (see **VkConformanceVersion**).

If the **VkPhysicalDeviceDriverProperties** structure is included in the **pNext** chain of the **VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2** structure passed to **vkGetPhysicalDeviceProperties2**, it is filled in with each corresponding implementation-dependent property.
These are properties of the driver corresponding to a physical device.

driverID must be immutable for a given driver across instances, processes, driver versions, and system reboots.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceDriverProperties-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_DRIVER_PROPERTIES

Khronos driver IDs which may be returned in VkPhysicalDeviceDriverProperties::driverID are:
typedef enum VkDriverId {
    VK_DRIVER_ID_AMD_PROPRIETARY = 1,
    VK_DRIVER_ID_AMD_OPEN_SOURCE = 2,
    VK_DRIVER_ID_MESA_RADV = 3,
    VK_DRIVER_ID_NVIDIA_PROPRIETARY = 4,
    VK_DRIVER_ID_INTEL_PROPRIETARY_WINDOWS = 5,
    VK_DRIVER_ID_INTEL_OPEN_SOURCE_MESA = 6,
    VK_DRIVER_ID_IMAGINATION_PROPRIETARY = 7,
    VK_DRIVER_ID_QUALCOMM_PROPRIETARY = 8,
    VK_DRIVER_ID_ARM_PROPRIETARY = 9,
    VK_DRIVER_ID_GOOGLE_SWIFTSHADER = 10,
    VK_DRIVER_ID_GGP_PROPRIETARY = 11,
    VK_DRIVER_ID_BROADCOM_PROPRIETARY = 12,
    VK_DRIVER_ID_MESA_LLVMPIPE = 13,
    VK_DRIVER_ID_MOLTENVK = 14,
    VK_DRIVER_ID_COREAVI_PROPRIETARY = 15,
    VK_DRIVER_ID_JUICE_PROPRIETARY = 16,
    VK_DRIVER_ID_VERISILICON_PROPRIETARY = 17,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_driver_properties
    VK_DRIVER_ID_AMD_PROPRIETARY_KHR = VK_DRIVER_ID_AMD_PROPRIETARY,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_driver_properties
    VK_DRIVER_ID_AMD_OPEN_SOURCE_KHR = VK_DRIVER_ID_AMD_OPEN_SOURCE,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_driver_properties
    VK_DRIVER_ID_MESA_RADV_KHR = VK_DRIVER_ID_MESA_RADV,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_driver_properties
    VK_DRIVER_ID_INTEL_PROPRIETARY_WINDOWS_KHR = VK_DRIVER_ID_INTEL_PROPRIETARY_WINDOWS,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_driver_properties
    VK_DRIVER_ID_INTEL_OPEN_SOURCE_MESA_KHR = VK_DRIVER_ID_INTEL_OPEN_SOURCE_MESA,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_driver_properties
    VK_DRIVER_ID_IMAGINATION_PROPRIETARY_KHR = VK_DRIVER_ID_IMAGINATION_PROPRIETARY,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_driver_properties
    VK_DRIVER_ID_QUALCOMM_PROPRIETARY_KHR = VK_DRIVER_ID_QUALCOMM_PROPRIETARY,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_driver_properties
    VK_DRIVER_ID_ARM_PROPRIETARY_KHR = VK_DRIVER_ID_ARM_PROPRIETARY,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_driver_properties
    VK_DRIVER_ID_GOOGLE_SWIFTSHADER_KHR = VK_DRIVER_ID_GOOGLE_SWIFTSHADER,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_driver_properties
    VK_DRIVER_ID_GGP_PROPRIETARY_KHR = VK_DRIVER_ID_GGP_PROPRIETARY,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_driver_properties
    VK_DRIVER_ID_BROADCOM_PROPRIETARY_KHR = VK_DRIVER_ID_BROADCOM_PROPRIETARY,
} VkDriverId;

or the equivalent
// Provided by VK_KHR_driver_properties

typedef VkDriverId VkDriverIdKHR;

Note
Khronos driver IDs may be allocated by vendors at any time. There may be multiple driver IDs for the same vendor, representing different drivers (for e.g. different platforms, proprietary or open source, etc.). Only the latest canonical versions of this Specification, of the corresponding `vk.xml` API Registry, and of the corresponding `vulkan_core.h` header file must contain all reserved Khronos driver IDs.

Only driver IDs registered with Khronos are given symbolic names. There may be unregistered driver IDs returned.

`VK_MAX_DRIVER_NAME_SIZE` is the length in `char` values of an array containing a driver name string, as returned in `VkPhysicalDeviceDriverProperties::driverName`.

```
#define VK_MAX_DRIVER_NAME_SIZE 256U
```

or the equivalent

```
#define VK_MAX_DRIVER_NAME_SIZE_KHR VK_MAX_DRIVER_NAME_SIZE
```

`VK_MAX_DRIVER_INFO_SIZE` is the length in `char` values of an array containing a driver information string, as returned in `VkPhysicalDeviceDriverProperties::driverInfo`.

```
#define VK_MAX_DRIVER_INFO_SIZE 256U
```

or the equivalent

```
#define VK_MAX_DRIVER_INFO_SIZE_KHR VK_MAX_DRIVER_INFO_SIZE
```

The conformance test suite version an implementation is compliant with is described with the `VkConformanceVersion` structure:

```
typedef struct VkConformanceVersion {
    uint8_t major;
    uint8_t minor;
    uint8_t subminor;
    uint8_t patch;
} VkConformanceVersion;
```
or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_driver_properties
typedef VkConformanceVersion VkConformanceVersionKHR;
```

- **major** is the major version number of the conformance test suite.
- **minor** is the minor version number of the conformance test suite.
- **subminor** is the subminor version number of the conformance test suite.
- **patch** is the patch version number of the conformance test suite.

To query properties of queues available on a physical device, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    uint32_t* pQueueFamilyPropertyCount,
    VkQueueFamilyProperties* pQueueFamilyProperties);
```

- **physicalDevice** is the handle to the physical device whose properties will be queried.
- **pQueueFamilyPropertyCount** is a pointer to an integer related to the number of queue families available or queried, as described below.
- **pQueueFamilyProperties** is either NULL or a pointer to an array of `VkQueueFamilyProperties` structures.

If `pQueueFamilyProperties` is NULL, then the number of queue families available is returned in `pQueueFamilyPropertyCount`. Implementations must support at least one queue family. Otherwise, `pQueueFamilyPropertyCount` must point to a variable set by the user to the number of elements in the `pQueueFamilyProperties` array, and on return the variable is overwritten with the number of structures actually written to `pQueueFamilyProperties`. If `pQueueFamilyPropertyCount` is less than the number of queue families available, at most `pQueueFamilyPropertyCount` structures will be written.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties-physicalDevice-parameter
  - `physicalDevice` must be a valid `VkPhysicalDevice` handle
- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties-pQueueFamilyPropertyCount-parameter
  - `pQueueFamilyPropertyCount` must be a valid pointer to a `uint32_t` value
- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties-pQueueFamilyProperties-parameter
  - If the value referenced by `pQueueFamilyPropertyCount` is not 0, and `pQueueFamilyProperties` is not NULL, `pQueueFamilyProperties` must be a valid pointer to an array of `VkQueueFamilyProperties` structures

The `VkQueueFamilyProperties` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkQueueFamilyProperties {
    VkQueueFlags queueFlags;
    uint32_t queueCount;
    uint32_t timestampValidBits;
    VkExtent3D minImageTransferGranularity;
} VkQueueFamilyProperties;

• queueFlags is a bitmask of VkQueueFlagBits indicating capabilities of the queues in this queue family.

• queueCount is the unsigned integer count of queues in this queue family. Each queue family must support at least one queue.

• timestampValidBits is the unsigned integer count of meaningful bits in the timestamps written via vkCmdWriteTimestamp2KHR or vkCmdWriteTimestamp. The valid range for the count is 36..64 bits, or a value of 0, indicating no support for timestamps. Bits outside the valid range are guaranteed to be zeros.

• minImageTransferGranularity is the minimum granularity supported for image transfer operations on the queues in this queue family.

The value returned in minImageTransferGranularity has a unit of compressed texel blocks for images having a block-compressed format, and a unit of texels otherwise.

Possible values of minImageTransferGranularity are:

• (0,0,0) specifies that only whole mip levels must be transferred using the image transfer operations on the corresponding queues. In this case, the following restrictions apply to all offset and extent parameters of image transfer operations:
  ◦ The x, y, and z members of a VkOffset3D parameter must always be zero.
  ◦ The width, height, and depth members of a VkExtent3D parameter must always match the width, height, and depth of the image subresource corresponding to the parameter, respectively.

• (A_x, A_y, A_z) where A_x, A_y, and A_z are all integer powers of two. In this case the following restrictions apply to all image transfer operations:
  ◦ x, y, and z of a VkOffset3D parameter must be integer multiples of A_x, A_y, and A_z, respectively.
  ◦ width of a VkExtent3D parameter must be an integer multiple of A_x, or else x + width must equal the width of the image subresource corresponding to the parameter.
  ◦ height of a VkExtent3D parameter must be an integer multiple of A_y, or else y + height must equal the height of the image subresource corresponding to the parameter.
  ◦ depth of a VkExtent3D parameter must be an integer multiple of A_z, or else z + depth must equal the depth of the image subresource corresponding to the parameter.
  ◦ If the format of the image corresponding to the parameters is one of the block-compressed formats then for the purposes of the above calculations the granularity must be scaled up
by the compressed texel block dimensions.

Queues supporting graphics and/or compute operations must report (1,1,1) in minImageTransferGranularity, meaning that there are no additional restrictions on the granularity of image transfer operations for these queues. Other queues supporting image transfer operations are only required to support whole mip level transfers, thus minImageTransferGranularity for queues belonging to such queue families may be (0,0,0).

The Device Memory section describes memory properties queried from the physical device.

For physical device feature queries see the Features chapter.

Bits which may be set in VkQueueFamilyProperties::queueFlags indicating capabilities of queues in a queue family are:

```c
typedef enum VkQueueFlagBits {
    VK_QUEUE_GRAPHICS_BIT = 0x00000001,
    VK_QUEUE_COMPUTE_BIT = 0x00000002,
    VK_QUEUE_TRANSFER_BIT = 0x00000004,
    VK_QUEUE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT = 0x00000008,
    #ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_decode_queue
    VK_QUEUE_VIDEO_DECODE_BIT_KHR = 0x00000020,
    #endif
    #ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_encode_queue
    VK_QUEUE_VIDEO_ENCODE_BIT_KHR = 0x00000040,
    #endif
} VkQueueFlagBits;
```

- **VK_QUEUE_GRAPHICS_BIT** specifies that queues in this queue family support graphics operations.
- **VK_QUEUE_COMPUTE_BIT** specifies that queues in this queue family support compute operations.
- **VK_QUEUE_TRANSFER_BIT** specifies that queues in this queue family support transfer operations.
- **VK_QUEUE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT** specifies that queues in this queue family support sparse memory management operations (see Sparse Resources). If any of the sparse resource features are enabled, then at least one queue family must support this bit.
- **VK_QUEUE_VIDEO_DECODE_BIT_KHR** specifies that queues in this queue family support Video Decode operations.
- **VK_QUEUE_VIDEO_ENCODE_BIT_KHR** specifies that queues in this queue family support Video Encode operations.

If an implementation exposes any queue family that supports graphics operations, at least one queue family of at least one physical device exposed by the implementation must support both graphics and compute operations.
Note
All commands that are allowed on a queue that supports transfer operations are also allowed on a queue that supports either graphics or compute operations. Thus, if the capabilities of a queue family include `VK_QUEUE_GRAPHICS_BIT` or `VK_QUEUE_COMPUTE_BIT`, then reporting the `VK_QUEUE_TRANSFER_BIT` capability separately for that queue family is optional.

For further details see Queues.

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkQueueFlags;
```

`VkQueueFlags` is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more `VkQueueFlagBits`.

To query properties of queues available on a physical device, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2
void vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties2KHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    uint32_t* pQueueFamilyPropertyCount,
    VkQueueFamilyProperties2* pQueueFamilyProperties);
```

- `physicalDevice` is the handle to the physical device whose properties will be queried.
- `pQueueFamilyPropertyCount` is a pointer to an integer related to the number of queue families available or queried, as described in `vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties`.
- `pQueueFamilyProperties` is either `NULL` or a pointer to an array of `VkQueueFamilyProperties2` structures.

`vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties2KHR` behaves similarly to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties`, with the ability to return extended information in a `pNext` chain of output structures.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties2-physicalDevice-parameter `physicalDevice` must be a valid `VkPhysicalDevice` handle
- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties2-pQueueFamilyPropertyCount-parameter `pQueueFamilyPropertyCount` must be a valid pointer to a `uint32_t` value
- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties2-pQueueFamilyProperties-parameter If the value referenced by `pQueueFamilyPropertyCount` is not 0, and `pQueueFamilyProperties` is not `NULL`, `pQueueFamilyProperties` must be a valid pointer to an array of `VkQueueFamilyProperties2` structures

The `VkQueueFamilyProperties2` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkQueueFamilyProperties2 {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkQueueFamilyProperties queueFamilyProperties;
} VkQueueFamilyProperties2;

or the equivalent

// Provided by VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2
typedef VkQueueFamilyProperties2 VkQueueFamilyProperties2KHR;

• **sType** is the type of this structure.
• **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• **queueFamilyProperties** is a VkQueueFamilyProperties structure which is populated with the same values as in vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkQueueFamilyProperties2-sType-sType**
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_QUEUE_FAMILY_PROPERTIES_2

- **VUID-VkQueueFamilyProperties2-pNext-pNext**
  Each pNext member of any structure (including this one) in the pNext chain must be either NULL or a pointer to a valid instance of VkQueueFamilyCheckpointProperties2NV or VkVideoQueueFamilyProperties2KHR

- **VUID-VkQueueFamilyProperties2-sType-unique**
  The sType value of each struct in the pNext chain must be unique

To enumerate the performance query counters available on a queue family of a physical device, call:

// Provided by VK_KHR_performance_query

VkResult vkEnumeratePhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyPerformanceQueryCountersKHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    uint32_t queueFamilyIndex,
    uint32_t* pCounterCount,
    VkPerformanceCounterKHR* pCounters,
    VkPerformanceCounterDescriptionKHR* pCounterDescriptions);

- **physicalDevice** is the handle to the physical device whose queue family performance query counter properties will be queried.
- **queueFamilyIndex** is the index into the queue family of the physical device we want to get properties for.
• **pCounterCount** is a pointer to an integer related to the number of counters available or queried, as described below.

• **pCounters** is either **NULL** or a pointer to an array of **VkPerformanceCounterKHR** structures.

• **pCounterDescriptions** is either **NULL** or a pointer to an array of **VkPerformanceCounterDescriptionKHR** structures.

If **pCounters** is **NULL** and **pCounterDescriptions** is **NULL**, then the number of counters available is returned in **pCounterCount**. Otherwise, **pCounterCount** must point to a variable set by the user to the number of elements in the **pCounters**, **pCounterDescriptions**, or both arrays and on return the variable is overwritten with the number of structures actually written out. If **pCounterCount** is less than the number of counters available, at most **pCounterCount** structures will be written, and **VK_INCOMPLETE** will be returned instead of **VK_SUCCESS**, to indicate that not all the available counters were returned.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkEnumeratePhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyPerformanceQueryCountersKHR-physicalDevice-parameter
  physicalDevice must be a valid **VkPhysicalDevice** handle

- VUID-vkEnumeratePhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyPerformanceQueryCountersKHR-pCounterCount-parameter
  pCounterCount must be a valid pointer to a **uint32_t** value

- VUID-vkEnumeratePhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyPerformanceQueryCountersKHR-pCounters-parameter
  If the value referenced by pCounterCount is not 0, and pCounters is not NULL, pCounters must be a valid pointer to an array of pCounterCount **VkPerformanceCounterKHR** structures

- VUID-vkEnumeratePhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyPerformanceQueryCountersKHR-pCounterDescriptions-parameter
  If the value referenced by pCounterCount is not 0, and pCounterDescriptions is not NULL, pCounterDescriptions must be a valid pointer to an array of pCounterCount **VkPerformanceCounterDescriptionKHR** structures

### Return Codes

**Success**

- **VK_SUCCESS**
- **VK_INCOMPLETE**

**Failure**

- **VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY**
- **VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY**
- **VK_ERROR_INITIALIZATION_FAILED**

The **VkPerformanceCounterKHR** structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkPerformanceCounterKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkPerformanceCounterUnitKHR unit;
    VkPerformanceCounterScopeKHR scope;
    VkPerformanceCounterStorageKHR storage;
    uint8_t uuid[VK_UUID_SIZE];
} VkPerformanceCounterKHR;

- sType is the type of this structure.
- pNext is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- unit is a VkPerformanceCounterUnitKHR specifying the unit that the counter data will record.
- scope is a VkPerformanceCounterScopeKHR specifying the scope that the counter belongs to.
- storage is a VkPerformanceCounterStorageKHR specifying the storage type that the counter’s data uses.
- uuid is an array of size VK_UUID_SIZE, containing 8-bit values that represent a universally unique identifier for the counter of the physical device.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkPerformanceCounterKHR-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_KHR
- VUID-VkPerformanceCounterKHR-pNext-pNext
  pNext must be NULL

Performance counters have an associated unit. This unit describes how to interpret the performance counter result.

The performance counter unit types which may be returned in VkPerformanceCounterKHR::unit are:
// Provided by VK_KHR_performance_query

typedef enum VkPerformanceCounterUnitKHR {
    VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_UNIT_GENERIC_KHR = 0,
    VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_UNIT_PERCENTAGE_KHR = 1,
    VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_UNIT_NANOSECONDS_KHR = 2,
    VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_UNIT_BYTES_KHR = 3,
    VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_UNIT_BYTES_PER_SECOND_KHR = 4,
    VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_UNIT_KELVIN_KHR = 5,
    VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_UNIT_WATTS_KHR = 6,
    VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_UNIT_VOLTS_KHR = 7,
    VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_UNIT_AMPS_KHR = 8,
    VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_UNIT_HERTZ_KHR = 9,
    VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_UNIT_CYCLES_KHR = 10,
} VkPerformanceCounterUnitKHR;

- **VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_UNIT_GENERIC_KHR** - the performance counter unit is a generic data point.
- **VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_UNIT_PERCENTAGE_KHR** - the performance counter unit is a percentage (%).
- **VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_UNIT_NANOSECONDS_KHR** - the performance counter unit is a value of nanoseconds (ns).
- **VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_UNIT.GetBytes_KHR** - the performance counter unit is a value of bytes.
- **VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_UNIT_BYTES_PER_SECOND_KHR** - the performance counter unit is a value of bytes/s.
- **VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_UNIT_KELVIN_KHR** - the performance counter unit is a temperature reported in Kelvin.
- **VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_UNIT_WATTS_KHR** - the performance counter unit is a value of watts (W).
- **VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_UNIT_VOLTS_KHR** - the performance counter unit is a value of volts (V).
- **VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_UNIT_AMPS_KHR** - the performance counter unit is a value of amps (A).
- **VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_UNIT_HERTZ_KHR** - the performance counter unit is a value of hertz (Hz).
- **VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_UNIT_CYCLES_KHR** - the performance counter unit is a value of cycles.

Performance counters have an associated scope. This scope describes the granularity of a performance counter.

The performance counter scope types which **may** be returned in `VkPerformanceCounterKHR::scope` are:
typedef enum VkPerformanceCounterScopeKHR {
    VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_SCOPE_COMMAND_BUFFER_KHR = 0,
    VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_SCOPE_RENDER_PASS_KHR = 1,
    VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_SCOPE_COMMAND_KHR = 2,
    VK_QUERY_SCOPE_COMMAND_BUFFER_KHR = VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_SCOPE_COMMAND_BUFFER_KHR,
    VK_QUERY_SCOPE_RENDER_PASS_KHR = VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_SCOPE_RENDER_PASS_KHR,
    VK_QUERY_SCOPE_COMMAND_KHR = VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_SCOPE_COMMAND_KHR,
} VkPerformanceCounterScopeKHR;

- **VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_SCOPE_COMMAND_BUFFER_KHR** - the performance counter scope is a single complete command buffer.
- **VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_SCOPE_RENDER_PASS_KHR** - the performance counter scope is zero or more complete render passes. The performance query containing the performance counter must begin and end outside a render pass instance.
- **VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_SCOPE_COMMAND_KHR** - the performance counter scope is zero or more commands.

Performance counters have an associated storage. This storage describes the payload of a counter result.

The performance counter storage types which may be returned in VkPerformanceCounterKHR::storage are:

typedef enum VkPerformanceCounterStorageKHR {
    VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_STORAGE_INT32_KHR = 0,
    VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_STORAGE_INT64_KHR = 1,
    VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_STORAGE_UINT32_KHR = 2,
    VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_STORAGE_UINT64_KHR = 3,
    VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_STORAGE_FLOAT32_KHR = 4,
    VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_STORAGE_FLOAT64_KHR = 5,
} VkPerformanceCounterStorageKHR;

- **VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_STORAGE_INT32_KHR** - the performance counter storage is a 32-bit signed integer.
- **VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_STORAGE_INT64_KHR** - the performance counter storage is a 64-bit signed integer.
- **VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_STORAGE_UINT32_KHR** - the performance counter storage is a 32-bit unsigned integer.
- **VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_STORAGE_UINT64_KHR** - the performance counter storage is a 64-bit unsigned integer.
- **VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_STORAGE_FLOAT32_KHR** - the performance counter storage is a 32-bit floating-point.
**VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_STORAGE_FLOAT64_KHR** - the performance counter storage is a 64-bit floating-point.

The **VkPerformanceCounterDescriptionKHR** structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_performance_query
typedef struct VkPerformanceCounterDescriptionKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkPerformanceCounterDescriptionFlagsKHR flags;
    char name[VK_MAX_DESCRIPTION_SIZE];
    char category[VK_MAX_DESCRIPTION_SIZE];
    char description[VK_MAX_DESCRIPTION_SIZE];
} VkPerformanceCounterDescriptionKHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **flags** is a bitmask of **VkPerformanceCounterDescriptionFlagBitsKHR** indicating the usage behavior for the counter.
- **name** is an array of size **VK_MAX_DESCRIPTION_SIZE**, containing a null-terminated UTF-8 string specifying the name of the counter.
- **category** is an array of size **VK_MAX_DESCRIPTION_SIZE**, containing a null-terminated UTF-8 string specifying the category of the counter.
- **description** is an array of size **VK_MAX_DESCRIPTION_SIZE**, containing a null-terminated UTF-8 string specifying the description of the counter.

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-VkPerformanceCounterDescriptionKHR-sType-sType
  **sType** must be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_DESCRIPTION_KHR**
- VUID-VkPerformanceCounterDescriptionKHR-pNext-pNext
  **pNext** must be **NULL**

Bits which **can** be set in **VkPerformanceCounterDescriptionKHR::flags** to specify usage behavior for a performance counter are:
// Provided by VK_KHR_performance_query
typedef enum VkPerformanceCounterDescriptionFlagBitsKHR {
    VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_DESCRIPTION_PERFORMANCE_IMPACTING_BIT_KHR = 0x00000001,
    VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_DESCRIPTION_CONCURRENTLY_IMPACTED_BIT_KHR = 0x00000002,
    VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_DESCRIPTION_PERFORMANCE_IMPACTING_KHR =
        VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_DESCRIPTION_PERFORMANCE_IMPACTING_BIT_KHR,
    VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_DESCRIPTION_CONCURRENTLY_IMPACTED_KHR =
        VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_DESCRIPTION_CONCURRENTLY_IMPACTED_BIT_KHR,
} VkPerformanceCounterDescriptionFlagBitsKHR;

• VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_DESCRIPTION_PERFORMANCE_IMPACTING_BIT_KHR specifies that recording the counter may have a noticeable performance impact.

• VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_DESCRIPTION_CONCURRENTLY_IMPACTED_BIT_KHR specifies that concurrently recording the counter while other submitted command buffers are running may impact the accuracy of the recording.

// Provided by VK_KHR_performance_query
typedef VkFlags VkPerformanceCounterDescriptionFlagsKHR;

VkPerformanceCounterDescriptionFlagsKHR is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more VkPerformanceCounterDescriptionFlagBitsKHR.

5.2. Devices

Device objects represent logical connections to physical devices. Each device exposes a number of queue families each having one or more queues. All queues in a queue family support the same operations.

As described in Physical Devices, a Vulkan application will first query for all physical devices in a system. Each physical device can then be queried for its capabilities, including its queue and queue family properties. Once an acceptable physical device is identified, an application will create a corresponding logical device. The created logical device is then the primary interface to the physical device.

How to enumerate the physical devices in a system and query those physical devices for their queue family properties is described in the Physical Device Enumeration section above.

A single logical device can be created from multiple physical devices, if those physical devices belong to the same device group. A device group is a set of physical devices that support accessing each other’s memory and recording a single command buffer that can be executed on all the physical devices. Device groups are enumerated by calling vkEnumeratePhysicalDeviceGroups, and a logical device is created from a subset of the physical devices in a device group by passing the physical devices through VkDeviceGroupDeviceCreateInfo. For two physical devices to be in the same device group, they must support identical extensions, features, and properties.
**Note**

Physical devices in the same device group **must** be so similar because there are no rules for how different features/properties would interact. They **must** return the same values for nearly every invariant `vkGetPhysicalDevice*` feature, property, capability, etc., but could potentially differ for certain queries based on things like having a different display connected, or a different compositor. The specification does not attempt to enumerate which state is in each category, because such a list would quickly become out of date.

To retrieve a list of the device groups present in the system, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_device_group_creation
VkResult vkEnumeratePhysicalDeviceGroupsKHR(
    VkInstance instance,
    uint32_t* pPhysicalDeviceGroupCount,
    VkPhysicalDeviceGroupProperties* pPhysicalDeviceGroupProperties);
```

- *instance* is a handle to a Vulkan instance previously created with `vkCreateInstance`.
- *pPhysicalDeviceGroupCount* is a pointer to an integer related to the number of device groups available or queried, as described below.
- *pPhysicalDeviceGroupProperties* is either `NULL` or a pointer to an array of `VkPhysicalDeviceGroupProperties` structures.

If `pPhysicalDeviceGroupProperties` is `NULL`, then the number of device groups available is returned in `pPhysicalDeviceGroupCount`. Otherwise, `pPhysicalDeviceGroupCount` **must** point to a variable set by the user to the number of elements in the `pPhysicalDeviceGroupProperties` array, and on return the variable is overwritten with the number of structures actually written to `pPhysicalDeviceGroupProperties`. If `pPhysicalDeviceGroupCount` is less than the number of device groups available, at most `pPhysicalDeviceGroupCount` structures will be written, and `VK_INCOMPLETE` will be returned instead of `VK_SUCCESS`, to indicate that not all the available device groups were returned.

Every physical device **must** be in exactly one device group.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkEnumeratePhysicalDeviceGroups-instance-parameter
  instance must be a valid VkInstance handle

- VUID-vkEnumeratePhysicalDeviceGroups-pPhysicalDeviceGroupCount-parameter
  pPhysicalDeviceGroupCount must be a valid pointer to a uint32_t value

- VUID-vkEnumeratePhysicalDeviceGroups-pPhysicalDeviceGroupProperties-parameter
  If the value referenced by pPhysicalDeviceGroupCount is not 0, and
  pPhysicalDeviceGroupProperties is not NULL, pPhysicalDeviceGroupProperties must be a valid pointer to an array of pPhysicalDeviceGroupCount VkPhysicalDeviceGroupProperties structures

Return Codes

Success
- VK_SUCCESS
- VK_INCOMPLETE

Failure
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_INITIALIZATION_FAILED

The VkPhysicalDeviceGroupProperties structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceGroupProperties {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    uint32_t physicalDeviceCount;
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevices[VK_MAX_DEVICE_GROUP_SIZE];
    VkBool32 subsetAllocation;
} VkPhysicalDeviceGroupProperties;
```

or the equivalent

```
// Provided by VK_KHR_device_group_creation
typedef VkPhysicalDeviceGroupProperties VkPhysicalDeviceGroupPropertiesKHR;
```

- sType is the type of this structure.
- pNext is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- physicalDeviceCount is the number of physical devices in the group.
• **physicalDevices** is an array of `VK_MAX_DEVICE_GROUP_SIZE` `VkPhysicalDevice` handles representing all physical devices in the group. The first `physicalDeviceCount` elements of the array will be valid.

• **subsetAllocation** specifies whether logical devices created from the group support allocating device memory on a subset of devices, via the `deviceMask` member of the `VkMemoryAllocateFlagsInfo`. If this is `VK_FALSE`, then all device memory allocations are made across all physical devices in the group. If `physicalDeviceCount` is 1, then `subsetAllocation` must be `VK_FALSE`.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- `VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceGroupProperties-sType-sType`  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_GROUP_PROPERTIES`

- `VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceGroupProperties-pNext-pNext`  
  `pNext` must be `NULL`

**`VK_MAX_DEVICE_GROUP_SIZE`** is the length of an array containing `VkPhysicalDevice` handle values representing all physical devices in a group, as returned in `VkPhysicalDeviceGroupProperties::physicalDevices`.

```c
#define VK_MAX_DEVICE_GROUP_SIZE 32U
```

or the equivalent

```c
#define VK_MAX_DEVICE_GROUP_SIZE_KHR VK_MAX_DEVICE_GROUP_SIZE
```

### 5.2.1. Device Creation

Logical devices are represented by `VkDevice` handles:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VK_DEFINE_HANDLE(VkDevice)
```

A logical device is created as a *connection* to a physical device. To create a logical device, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkCreateDevice(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    const VkDeviceCreateInfo* pCreateInfo,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator,
    VkDevice* pDevice);
```

• **physicalDevice** must be one of the device handles returned from a call to
vkEnumeratePhysicalDevices (see Physical Device Enumeration).

- pCreateInfo is a pointer to a VkDeviceCreateInfo structure containing information about how to create the device.
- pAllocator controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
- pDevice is a pointer to a handle in which the created VkDevice is returned.

vkCreateDevice verifies that extensions and features requested in the ppEnabledExtensionNames and pEnabledFeatures members of pCreateInfo, respectively, are supported by the implementation. If any requested extension is not supported, vkCreateDevice must return VK_ERROR_EXTENSION_NOT_PRESENT. If any requested feature is not supported, vkCreateDevice must return VK_ERROR_FEATURE_NOT_PRESENT. Support for extensions can be checked before creating a device by querying vkEnumerateDeviceExtensionProperties. Support for features can similarly be checked by querying vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures.

After verifying and enabling the extensions the VkDevice object is created and returned to the application.

Multiple logical devices can be created from the same physical device. Logical device creation may fail due to lack of device-specific resources (in addition to other errors). If that occurs, vkCreateDevice will return VK_ERROR_TOO_MANY_OBJECTS.

**Valid Usage**

- VUID-vkCreateDevice-ppEnabledExtensionNames-01387
  All required device extensions for each extension in the VkDeviceCreateInfo::ppEnabledExtensionNames list must also be present in that list

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-vkCreateDevice-physicalDevice-parameter
  physicalDevice must be a valid VkPhysicalDevice handle
- VUID-vkCreateDevice-pCreateInfo-parameter
  pCreateInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid VkDeviceCreateInfo structure
- VUID-vkCreateDevice-pAllocator-parameter
  If pAllocator is not NULL, pAllocator must be a valid pointer to a valid VkAllocationCallbacks structure
- VUID-vkCreateDevice-pDevice-parameter
  pDevice must be a valid pointer to a VkDevice handle
Return Codes

Success
- VK_SUCCESS

Failure
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_INITIALIZATION_FAILED
- VK_ERROR_EXTENSION_NOT_PRESENT
- VK_ERROR_FEATURE_NOT_PRESENT
- VK_ERROR_TOO_MANY_OBJECTS
- VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST

The VkDeviceCreateInfo structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkDeviceCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkDeviceCreateFlags flags;
    uint32_t queueCreateInfoCount;
    const VkDeviceQueueCreateInfo* pQueueCreateInfos;
    uint32_t enabledLayerCount;
    const char* const* ppEnabledLayerNames;
    uint32_t enabledExtensionCount;
    const char* const* ppEnabledExtensionNames;
    const VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures* pEnabledFeatures;
} VkDeviceCreateInfo;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `flags` is reserved for future use.
- `queueCreateInfoCount` is the unsigned integer size of the `pQueueCreateInfos` array. Refer to the Queue Creation section below for further details.
- `pQueueCreateInfos` is a pointer to an array of `VkDeviceQueueCreateInfo` structures describing the queues that are requested to be created along with the logical device. Refer to the Queue Creation section below for further details.
- `enabledLayerCount` is deprecated and ignored.
- `ppEnabledLayerNames` is deprecated and ignored. See Device Layer Deprecation.
- `enabledExtensionCount` is the number of device extensions to enable.
• **ppEnabledExtensionNames** is a pointer to an array of **enabledExtensionCount** null-terminated UTF-8 strings containing the names of extensions to enable for the created device. See the Extensions section for further details.

• **pEnabledFeatures** is **NULL** or a pointer to a [VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures](#) structure containing boolean indicators of all the features to be enabled. Refer to the Features section for further details.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkDeviceCreateInfo-queueFamilyIndex-00372**
  
  The `queueFamilyIndex` member of each element of `pQueueCreateInfos` must be unique within `pQueueCreateInfos`.

- **VUID-VkDeviceCreateInfo-pNext-00373**
  
  If the `pNext` chain includes a [VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2](#) structure, then `pEnabledFeatures` must be **NULL**.

- **VUID-VkDeviceCreateInfo-pProperties-04451**
  
  If the `VK_KHR_portability_subset` extension is included in `pProperties` of `vkEnumerateDeviceExtensionProperties`, `ppEnabledExtensions` must include "VK_KHR_portability_subset".

- **VUID-VkDeviceCreateInfo-shadingRateImage-04478**
  
  If shadingRateImage is enabled, pipelineFragmentShadingRate must not be enabled.

- **VUID-VkDeviceCreateInfo-shadingRateImage-04479**
  
  If shadingRateImage is enabled, primitiveFragmentShadingRate must not be enabled.

- **VUID-VkDeviceCreateInfo-shadingRateImage-04480**
  
  If shadingRateImage is enabled, attachmentFragmentShadingRate must not be enabled.

- **VUID-VkDeviceCreateInfo-fragmentDensityMap-04481**
  
  If fragmentDensityMap is enabled, pipelineFragmentShadingRate must not be enabled.

- **VUID-VkDeviceCreateInfo-fragmentDensityMap-04482**
  
  If fragmentDensityMap is enabled, primitiveFragmentShadingRate must not be enabled.

- **VUID-VkDeviceCreateInfo-fragmentDensityMap-04483**
  
  If fragmentDensityMap is enabled, attachmentFragmentShadingRate must not be enabled.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkDeviceCreateInfo-sType-sType**
  
  *sType* must be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEVICE_CREATE_INFO**

- **VUID-VkDeviceCreateInfo-pNext-pNext**


- **VUID-VkDeviceCreateInfo-sType-unique**

  The *sType* value of each struct in the *pNext* chain must be unique

- **VUID-VkDeviceCreateInfo-flags-zerobitmask**

  *flags* must be **0**

- **VUID-VkDeviceCreateInfo-pQueueCreateInfos-parameter**

  *pQueueCreateInfos* must be a valid pointer to an array of *queueCreateInfoCount* valid **VkDeviceQueueCreateInfo** structures

- **VUID-VkDeviceCreateInfo-ppEnabledLayerNames-parameter**

  If *enabledLayerCount* is not **0**, *ppEnabledLayerNames* must be a valid pointer to an array of *enabledLayerCount* null-terminated UTF-8 strings

- **VUID-VkDeviceCreateInfo-ppEnabledExtensionNames-parameter**

  If *enabledExtensionCount* is not **0**, *ppEnabledExtensionNames* must be a valid pointer to an array of *enabledExtensionCount* null-terminated UTF-8 strings
If \texttt{pEnabledFeatures} is not \texttt{NULL}, \texttt{pEnabledFeatures} must be a valid pointer to a valid \texttt{VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures} structure.

\texttt{queueCreateInfoCount} must be greater than \texttt{0}.

\begin{verbatim}
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkDeviceCreateFlags;
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{VkDeviceCreateFlags} is a bitmask type for setting a mask, but is currently reserved for future use.

A logical device \textbf{can} be created that connects to one or more physical devices by adding a \texttt{VkDeviceGroupDeviceCreateInfo} structure to the \texttt{pNext} chain of \texttt{VkDeviceCreateInfo}. The \texttt{VkDeviceGroupDeviceCreateInfo} structure is defined as:

\begin{verbatim}
typedef struct VkDeviceGroupDeviceCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    uint32_t physicalDeviceCount;
    const VkPhysicalDevice* pPhysicalDevices;
} VkDeviceGroupDeviceCreateInfo;
\end{verbatim}

or the equivalent

\begin{verbatim}
// Provided by VK_KHR_device_group_creation
typedef VkDeviceGroupDeviceCreateInfo VKDeviceGroupDeviceCreateInfoKHR;
\end{verbatim}

- \texttt{sType} is the type of this structure.
- \texttt{pNext} is \texttt{NULL} or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- \texttt{physicalDeviceCount} is the number of elements in the \texttt{pPhysicalDevices} array.
- \texttt{pPhysicalDevices} is a pointer to an array of physical device handles belonging to the same device group.

The elements of the \texttt{pPhysicalDevices} array are an ordered list of the physical devices that the logical device represents. These must be a subset of a single device group, and need not be in the same order as they were enumerated. The order of the physical devices in the \texttt{pPhysicalDevices} array determines the \textit{device index} of each physical device, with element \texttt{i} being assigned a device index of \texttt{i}. Certain commands and structures refer to one or more physical devices by using device indices or \textit{device masks} formed using device indices.

A logical device created without using \texttt{VkDeviceGroupDeviceCreateInfo}, or with \texttt{physicalDeviceCount} equal to zero, is equivalent to a \texttt{physicalDeviceCount} of one and \texttt{pPhysicalDevices} pointing to the \texttt{physicalDevice} parameter to \texttt{vkCreateDevice}. In particular, the device index of that physical device is zero.
5.2.2. Device Use

The following is a high-level list of VkDevice uses along with references on where to find more information:

• Creation of queues. See the Queues section below for further details.

• Creation and tracking of various synchronization constructs. See Synchronization and Cache Control for further details.

• Allocating, freeing, and managing memory. See Memory Allocation and Resource Creation for further details.

• Creation and destruction of command buffers and command buffer pools. See Command Buffers for further details.

• Creation, destruction, and management of graphics state. See Pipelines and Resource Descriptors, among others, for further details.

5.2.3. Lost Device

A logical device may become lost for a number of implementation-specific reasons, indicating that pending and future command execution may fail and cause resources and backing memory to become undefined.
Note

Typical reasons for device loss will include things like execution timing out (to prevent denial of service), power management events, platform resource management, implementation errors.

Applications not adhering to valid usage may also result in device loss being reported, however this is not guaranteed. Even if device loss is reported, the system may be in an unrecoverable state, and further usage of the API is still considered invalid.

When this happens, certain commands will return VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST. After any such event, the logical device is considered lost. It is not possible to reset the logical device to a non-lost state, however the lost state is specific to a logical device (VkDevice), and the corresponding physical device (VkPhysicalDevice) may be otherwise unaffected.

In some cases, the physical device may also be lost, and attempting to create a new logical device will fail, returning VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST. This is usually indicative of a problem with the underlying implementation, or its connection to the host. If the physical device has not been lost, and a new logical device is successfully created from that physical device, it must be in the non-lost state.

Note

Whilst logical device loss may be recoverable, in the case of physical device loss, it is unlikely that an application will be able to recover unless additional, unaffected physical devices exist on the system. The error is largely informational and intended only to inform the user that a platform issue has occurred, and should be investigated further. For example, underlying hardware may have developed a fault or become physically disconnected from the rest of the system. In many cases, physical device loss may cause other more serious issues such as the operating system crashing; in which case it may not be reported via the Vulkan API.

When a device is lost, its child objects are not implicitly destroyed and their handles are still valid. Those objects must still be destroyed before their parents or the device can be destroyed (see the Object Lifetime section). The host address space corresponding to device memory mapped using vkMapMemory is still valid, and host memory accesses to these mapped regions are still valid, but the contents are undefined. It is still legal to call any API command on the device and child objects.

Once a device is lost, command execution may fail, and commands that return a VkResult may return VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST. Commands that do not allow runtime errors must still operate correctly for valid usage and, if applicable, return valid data.

Commands that wait indefinitely for device execution (namely vkDeviceWaitIdle, vkQueueWaitIdle, vkWaitForFences or vkAcquireNextImageKHR with a maximum timeout, and vkGetQueryPoolResults with the VK_QUERY_RESULT_WAIT_BIT bit set in flags) must return in finite time even in the case of a lost device, and return either VK_SUCCESS or VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST. For any command that may return VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST, for the purpose of determining whether a command buffer is in the pending state, or whether resources are considered in-use by the device, a return value of VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST is equivalent to VK_SUCCESS.
The content of any external memory objects that have been exported from or imported to a lost device become undefined. Objects on other logical devices or in other APIs which are associated with the same underlying memory resource as the external memory objects on the lost device are unaffected other than their content becoming undefined. The layout of subresources of images on other logical devices that are bound to VkDeviceMemory objects associated with the same underlying memory resources as external memory objects on the lost device becomes VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_UNDEFINED.

The state of VkSemaphore objects on other logical devices created by importing a semaphore payload with temporary permanence which was exported from the lost device is undefined. The state of VkSemaphore objects on other logical devices that permanently share a semaphore payload with a VkSemaphore object on the lost device is undefined, and remains undefined following any subsequent signal operations. Implementations must ensure pending and subsequently submitted wait operations on such semaphores behave as defined in Semaphore State Requirements For Wait Operations for external semaphores not in a valid state for a wait operation.

5.2.4. Device Destruction

To destroy a device, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkDestroyDevice( 
    VkDevice device, 
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator);
```

- `device` is the logical device to destroy.
- `pAllocator` controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.

To ensure that no work is active on the device, vkDeviceWaitIdle can be used to gate the destruction of the device. Prior to destroying a device, an application is responsible for destroying/freeing any Vulkan objects that were created using that device as the first parameter of the corresponding vkCreate* or vkAllocate* command.

**Note**

The lifetime of each of these objects is bound by the lifetime of the VkDevice object. Therefore, to avoid resource leaks, it is critical that an application explicitly free all of these resources prior to calling vkDestroyDevice.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkDestroyDevice-device-00378
  All child objects created on device must have been destroyed prior to destroying device

- VUID-vkDestroyDevice-device-00379
  If VkAllocationCallbacks were provided when device was created, a compatible set of callbacks must be provided here

- VUID-vkDestroyDevice-device-00380
  If no VkAllocationCallbacks were provided when device was created, pAllocator must be NULL

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkDestroyDevice-device-parameter
  If device is not NULL, device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- VUID-vkDestroyDevice-pAllocator-parameter
  If pAllocator is not NULL, pAllocator must be a valid pointer to a valid VkAllocationCallbacks structure

Host Synchronization

- Host access to device must be externally synchronized
- Host access to all VkQueue objects received from device must be externally synchronized

5.3. Queues

5.3.1. Queue Family Properties

As discussed in the Physical Device Enumeration section above, the vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties command is used to retrieve details about the queue families and queues supported by a device.

Each index in the pQueueFamilyProperties array returned by vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties describes a unique queue family on that physical device. These indices are used when creating queues, and they correspond directly with the queueFamilyIndex that is passed to the vkCreateDevice command via the VkDeviceQueueCreateInfo structure as described in the Queue Creation section below.

Grouping of queue families within a physical device is implementation-dependent.
The general expectation is that a physical device groups all queues of matching capabilities into a single family. However, while implementations should do this, it is possible that a physical device may return two separate queue families with the same capabilities.

Once an application has identified a physical device with the queue(s) that it desires to use, it will create those queues in conjunction with a logical device. This is described in the following section.

5.3.2. Queue Creation

Creating a logical device also creates the queues associated with that device. The queues to create are described by a set of VkDeviceQueueCreateInfo structures that are passed to vkCreateDevice in pQueueCreateInfos.

Queues are represented by VkQueue handles:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VK_DEFINE_HANDLE(VkQueue)
```

The VkDeviceQueueCreateInfo structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkDeviceQueueCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkDeviceQueueCreateFlags flags;
    uint32_t queueFamilyIndex;
    uint32_t queueCount;
    const float* pQueuePriorities;
} VkDeviceQueueCreateInfo;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **flags** is reserved for future use.
- **queueFamilyIndex** is an unsigned integer indicating the index of the queue family in which to create the queue on this device. This index corresponds to the index of an element of the pQueueFamilyProperties array that was returned by vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties.
- **queueCount** is an unsigned integer specifying the number of queues to create in the queue family indicated by queueFamilyIndex.
- **pQueuePriorities** is a pointer to an array of queueCount normalized floating point values, specifying priorities of work that will be submitted to each created queue. See Queue Priority for more information.
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkDeviceQueueCreateInfo-queueFamilyIndex-00381
  queueFamilyIndex must be less than pQueueFamilyPropertyCount returned by vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties

- VUID-VkDeviceQueueCreateInfo-queueCount-00382
  queueCount must be less than or equal to the queueCount member of the VkQueueFamilyProperties structure, as returned by vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties in the pQueueFamilyProperties[queueFamilyIndex]

- VUID-VkDeviceQueueCreateInfo-pQueuePriorities-00383
  Each element of pQueuePriorities must be between 0.0 and 1.0 inclusive

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkDeviceQueueCreateInfo-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEVICE_QUEUE_CREATE_INFO

- VUID-VkDeviceQueueCreateInfo-pNext-pNext
  pNext must be NULL

- VUID-VkDeviceQueueCreateInfo-flags-zerobitmask
  flags must be 0

- VUID-VkDeviceQueueCreateInfo-pQueuePriorities-parameter
  pQueuePriorities must be a valid pointer to an array of queueCount float values

- VUID-VkDeviceQueueCreateInfo-queueCount-arraylength
  queueCount must be greater than 0

// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkDeviceQueueCreateFlags;

VkDeviceQueueCreateFlags is a bitmask type for setting a mask, but is currently reserved for future use.

To retrieve a handle to a VkQueue object, call:

// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkGetDeviceQueue(
  VkDevice device,  
  uint32_t queueFamilyIndex,  
  uint32_t queueIndex,  
  VkQueue* pQueue);

- device is the logical device that owns the queue.
• `queueFamilyIndex` is the index of the queue family to which the queue belongs.
• `queueIndex` is the index within this queue family of the queue to retrieve.
• `pQueue` is a pointer to a `VkQueue` object that will be filled with the handle for the requested queue.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkGetDeviceQueue-queueFamilyIndex-00384**
  
  `queueFamilyIndex` **must** be one of the queue family indices specified when `device` was created, via the `VkDeviceQueueCreateInfo` structure.

- **VUID-vkGetDeviceQueue-queueIndex-00385**
  
  `queueIndex` **must** be less than the value of `VkDeviceQueueCreateInfo::queueCount` for the queue family indicated by `queueFamilyIndex` when `device` was created.

- **VUID-vkGetDeviceQueue-flags-01841**
  
  `VkDeviceQueueCreateInfo::flags` **must** have been set to zero when `device` was created.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkGetDeviceQueue-device-parameter**
  
  `device` **must** be a valid `VkDevice` handle.

- **VUID-vkGetDeviceQueue-pQueue-parameter**
  
  `pQueue` **must** be a valid pointer to a `VkQueue` handle.

### 5.3.3. Queue Family Index

The queue family index is used in multiple places in Vulkan in order to tie operations to a specific family of queues.

When retrieving a handle to the queue via `vkGetDeviceQueue`, the queue family index is used to select which queue family to retrieve the `VkQueue` handle from as described in the previous section.

When creating a `VkCommandPool` object (see Command Pools), a queue family index is specified in the `VkCommandPoolCreateInfo` structure. Command buffers from this pool can only be submitted on queues corresponding to this queue family.

When creating `VkImage` (see Images) and `VkBuffer` (see Buffers) resources, a set of queue families is included in the `VkImageCreateInfo` and `VkBufferCreateInfo` structures to specify the queue families that can access the resource.

When inserting a `VkBufferMemoryBarrier` or `VkImageMemoryBarrier` (see Pipeline Barriers), a source and destination queue family index is specified to allow the ownership of a buffer or image to be transferred from one queue family to another. See the Resource Sharing section for details.
5.3.4. Queue Priority

Each queue is assigned a priority, as set in the `VkDeviceQueueCreateInfo` structures when creating the device. The priority of each queue is a normalized floating point value between 0.0 and 1.0, which is then translated to a discrete priority level by the implementation. Higher values indicate a higher priority, with 0.0 being the lowest priority and 1.0 being the highest.

Within the same device, queues with higher priority may be allotted more processing time than queues with lower priority. The implementation makes no guarantees with regards to ordering or scheduling among queues with the same priority, other than the constraints defined by any explicit synchronization primitives. The implementation makes no guarantees with regards to queues across different devices.

An implementation may allow a higher-priority queue to starve a lower-priority queue on the same `VkDevice` until the higher-priority queue has no further commands to execute. The relationship of queue priorities must not cause queues on one `VkDevice` to starve queues on another `VkDevice`.

No specific guarantees are made about higher priority queues receiving more processing time or better quality of service than lower priority queues.

5.3.5. Queue Submission

Work is submitted to a queue via *queue submission* commands such as `vkQueueSubmit2KHR` or `vkQueueSubmit`. Queue submission commands define a set of *queue operations* to be executed by the underlying physical device, including synchronization with semaphores and fences.

Submission commands take as parameters a target queue, zero or more *batches* of work, and an optional fence to signal upon completion. Each batch consists of three distinct parts:

1. Zero or more semaphores to wait on before execution of the rest of the batch.
   - If present, these describe a *semaphore wait operation*.
2. Zero or more work items to execute.
   - If present, these describe a *queue operation* matching the work described.
3. Zero or more semaphores to signal upon completion of the work items.
   - If present, these describe a *semaphore signal operation*.

If a fence is present in a queue submission, it describes a *fence signal operation*.

All work described by a queue submission command must be submitted to the queue before the command returns.

**Sparse Memory Binding**

In Vulkan it is possible to sparsely bind memory to buffers and images as described in the *Sparse Resource* chapter. Sparse memory binding is a queue operation. A queue whose flags include the `VK_QUEUE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT` must be able to support the mapping of a virtual address to a physical address on the device. This causes an update to the page table mappings on the device. This update must be synchronized on a queue to avoid corrupting page table mappings during execution of
graphics commands. By binding the sparse memory resources on queues, all commands that are
dependent on the updated bindings are synchronized to only execute after the binding is updated.
See the Synchronization and Cache Control chapter for how this synchronization is accomplished.

### 5.3.6. Queue Destruction

Queues are created along with a logical device during `vkCreateDevice`. All queues associated with a
logical device are destroyed when `vkDestroyDevice` is called on that device.
Chapter 6. Command Buffers

Command buffers are objects used to record commands which can be subsequently submitted to a device queue for execution. There are two levels of command buffers - primary command buffers, which can execute secondary command buffers, and which are submitted to queues, and secondary command buffers, which can be executed by primary command buffers, and which are not directly submitted to queues.

Command buffers are represented by `VkCommandBuffer` handles:

```cpp
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VK_DEFINE_HANDLE(VkCommandBuffer)
```

Recorded commands include commands to bind pipelines and descriptor sets to the command buffer, commands to modify dynamic state, commands to draw (for graphics rendering), commands to dispatch (for compute), commands to execute secondary command buffers (for primary command buffers only), commands to copy buffers and images, and other commands.

Each command buffer manages state independently of other command buffers. There is no inheritance of state across primary and secondary command buffers, or between secondary command buffers. When a command buffer begins recording, all state in that command buffer is undefined. When secondary command buffer(s) are recorded to execute on a primary command buffer, the secondary command buffer inherits no state from the primary command buffer, and all state of the primary command buffer is undefined after an execute secondary command buffer command is recorded. There is one exception to this rule - if the primary command buffer is inside a render pass instance, then the render pass and subpass state is not disturbed by executing secondary command buffers. For state dependent commands (such as draws and dispatches), any state consumed by those commands must not be undefined.

Unless otherwise specified, and without explicit synchronization, the various commands submitted to a queue via command buffers may execute in arbitrary order relative to each other, and/or concurrently. Also, the memory side effects of those commands may not be directly visible to other commands without explicit memory dependencies. This is true within a command buffer, and across command buffers submitted to a given queue. See the synchronization chapter for information on implicit and explicit synchronization between commands.

6.1. Command Buffer Lifecycle

Each command buffer is always in one of the following states:

**Initial**

When a command buffer is allocated, it is in the initial state. Some commands are able to reset a command buffer (or a set of command buffers) back to this state from any of the executable, recording or invalid state. Command buffers in the initial state can only be moved to the recording state, or freed.
Recording

`vkBeginCommandBuffer` changes the state of a command buffer from the initial state to the *recording state*. Once a command buffer is in the recording state, `vkCmd*` commands can be used to record to the command buffer.

Executable

`vkEndCommandBuffer` ends the recording of a command buffer, and moves it from the recording state to the *executable state*. Executable command buffers can be submitted, reset, or recorded to another command buffer.

Pending

Queue submission of a command buffer changes the state of a command buffer from the executable state to the *pending state*. Whilst in the pending state, applications must not attempt to modify the command buffer in any way - as the device may be processing the commands recorded to it. Once execution of a command buffer completes, the command buffer either reverts back to the executable state, or if it was recorded with `VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_USAGE_ONE_TIME_SUBMIT_BIT`, it moves to the *invalid state*. A synchronization command should be used to detect when this occurs.

Invalid

Some operations, such as modifying or deleting a resource that was used in a command recorded to a command buffer, will transition the state of that command buffer into the *invalid state*. Command buffers in the invalid state can only be reset or freed.

Any given command that operates on a command buffer has its own requirements on what state a command buffer must be in, which are detailed in the valid usage constraints for that command.

Resetting a command buffer is an operation that discards any previously recorded commands and puts a command buffer in the *initial state*. Resetting occurs as a result of `vkResetCommandBuffer` or `vkResetCommandPool`, or as part of `vkBeginCommandBuffer` (which additionally puts the command buffer in the *recording state*).

Secondary command buffers can be recorded to a primary command buffer via `vkCmdExecuteCommands`. This partially ties the lifecycle of the two command buffers together - if
the primary is submitted to a queue, both the primary and any secondaries recorded to it move to the pending state. Once execution of the primary completes, so it does for any secondary recorded within it. After all executions of each command buffer complete, they each move to their appropriate completion state (either to the executable state or the invalid state, as specified above).

If a secondary moves to the invalid state or the initial state, then all primary buffers it is recorded in move to the invalid state. A primary moving to any other state does not affect the state of a secondary recorded in it.

**Note**

Resetting or freeing a primary command buffer removes the lifecycle linkage to all secondary command buffers that were recorded into it.

### 6.2. Command Pools

Command pools are opaque objects that command buffer memory is allocated from, and which allow the implementation to amortize the cost of resource creation across multiple command buffers. Command pools are externally synchronized, meaning that a command pool must not be used concurrently in multiple threads. That includes use via recording commands on any command buffers allocated from the pool, as well as operations that allocate, free, and reset command buffers or the pool itself.

Command pools are represented by VkCommandPool handles:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VK_DEFINE_NON_DISPATCHABLE_HANDLE(VkCommandPool)
```

To create a command pool, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkCreateCommandPool(
    VkDevice device,                     // device
    const VkCommandPoolCreateInfo* pCreateInfo,       // pCreateInfo
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator,           // pAllocator
    VkCommandPool* pCommandPool);           // pCommandPool
```

- **device** is the logical device that creates the command pool.
- **pCreateInfo** is a pointer to a VkCommandPoolCreateInfo structure specifying the state of the command pool object.
- **pAllocator** controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
- **pCommandPool** is a pointer to a VkCommandPool handle in which the created pool is returned.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkCreateCommandPool-queueFamilyIndex-01937
  
  \( pCreateInfo->queueFamilyIndex \) must be the index of a queue family available in the logical device \( device \)

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCreateCommandPool-device-parameter
  
  \( device \) must be a valid \( VkDevice \) handle

- VUID-vkCreateCommandPool-pCreateInfo-parameter
  
  \( pCreateInfo \) must be a valid pointer to a valid \( VkCommandPoolCreateInfo \) structure

- VUID-vkCreateCommandPool-pAllocator-parameter
  
  If \( pAllocator \) is not \( NULL \), \( pAllocator \) must be a valid pointer to a valid \( VkAllocationCallbacks \) structure

- VUID-vkCreateCommandPool-pCommandPool-parameter
  
  \( pCommandPool \) must be a valid pointer to a \( VkCommandPool \) handle

Return Codes

Success
- \( VK_SUCCESS \)

Failure
- \( VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY \)
- \( VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY \)

The \( VkCommandPoolCreateInfo \) structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkCommandPoolCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void*pNext;
    VkCommandPoolCreateFlags flags;
    uint32_t queueFamilyIndex;
} VkCommandPoolCreateInfo;
```

- \( sType \) is the type of this structure.
- \( pNext \) is \( NULL \) or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- \( flags \) is a bitmask of \( VkCommandPoolCreateFlagBits \) indicating usage behavior for the pool and command buffers allocated from it.
• **queueFamilyIndex** designates a queue family as described in section *Queue Family Properties*. All command buffers allocated from this command pool **must** be submitted on queues from the same queue family.

### Valid Usage

#### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkCommandPoolCreateInfo-sType-sType**
  
  `sType` **must** be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COMMAND_POOL_CREATE_INFO`

- **VUID-VkCommandPoolCreateInfo-pNext-pNext**
  
  `pNext` **must** be `NULL`

- **VUID-VkCommandPoolCreateInfo-flags-parameter**
  
  `flags` **must** be a valid combination of `VkCommandPoolCreateFlagBits` values

Bits which **can** be set in `VkCommandPoolCreateInfo::flags` to specify usage behavior for a command pool are:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkCommandPoolCreateFlagBits {
    VK_COMMAND_POOL_CREATE_TRANSIENT_BIT = 0x00000001,
    VK_COMMAND_POOL_CREATE_RESET_COMMAND_BUFFER_BIT = 0x00000002,
} VkCommandPoolCreateFlagBits;
```

- **VK_COMMAND_POOL_CREATE_TRANSIENT_BIT** specifies that command buffers allocated from the pool will be short-lived, meaning that they will be reset or freed in a relatively short timeframe. This flag **may** be used by the implementation to control memory allocation behavior within the pool.

- **VK_COMMAND_POOL_CREATE_RESET_COMMAND_BUFFER_BIT** allows any command buffer allocated from a pool to be individually reset to the initial state; either by calling `vkResetCommandBuffer`, or via the implicit reset when calling `vkBeginCommandBuffer`. If this flag is not set on a pool, then `vkResetCommandBuffer` **must** not be called for any command buffer allocated from that pool.

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkCommandPoolCreateFlags;
```

`VkCommandPoolCreateFlags` is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more `VkCommandPoolCreateFlagBits`.

To trim a command pool, call:
void vkTrimCommandPoolKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    VkCommandPool commandPool,
    VkCommandPoolTrimFlags flags);

- `device` is the logical device that owns the command pool.
- `commandPool` is the command pool to trim.
- `flags` is reserved for future use.

Trimming a command pool recycles unused memory from the command pool back to the system. Command buffers allocated from the pool are not affected by the command.

*Note*

This command provides applications with some control over the internal memory allocations used by command pools.

Unused memory normally arises from command buffers that have been recorded and later reset, such that they are no longer using the memory. On reset, a command buffer can return memory to its command pool, but the only way to release memory from a command pool to the system requires calling `vkResetCommandPool`, which cannot be executed while any command buffers from that pool are still in use. Subsequent recording operations into command buffers will re-use this memory but since total memory requirements fluctuate over time, unused memory can accumulate.

In this situation, trimming a command pool *may* be useful to return unused memory back to the system, returning the total outstanding memory allocated by the pool back to a more “average” value.

Implementations utilize many internal allocation strategies that make it impossible to guarantee that all unused memory is released back to the system. For instance, an implementation of a command pool *may* involve allocating memory in bulk from the system and sub-allocating from that memory. In such an implementation any live command buffer that holds a reference to a bulk allocation would prevent that allocation from being freed, even if only a small proportion of the bulk allocation is in use.

In most cases trimming will result in a reduction in allocated but unused memory, but it does not guarantee the “ideal” behavior.

Trimming *may* be an expensive operation, and *should* not be called frequently. Trimming *should* be treated as a way to relieve memory pressure after application-known points when there exists enough unused memory that the cost of trimming is “worth” it.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkTrimCommandPool-device-parameter**
  
  `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- **VUID-vkTrimCommandPool-commandPool-parameter**
  
  `commandPool` must be a valid `VkCommandPool` handle

- **VUID-vkTrimCommandPool-flags-zerobitmask**
  
  `flags` must be 0

- **VUID-vkTrimCommandPool-commandPool-parent**
  
  `commandPool` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from `device`

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandPool` must be externally synchronized

```c
typedef VkFlags VkCommandPoolTrimFlags;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_maintenance1
typedef VkCommandPoolTrimFlags VkCommandPoolTrimFlagsKHR;
```

`VkCommandPoolTrimFlags` is a bitmask type for setting a mask, but is currently reserved for future use.

To reset a command pool, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkResetCommandPool(
    VkDevice device,                  
    VkCommandPool commandPool,       
    VkCommandPoolResetFlags flags);  
```

- `device` is the logical device that owns the command pool.
- `commandPool` is the command pool to reset.
- `flags` is a bitmask of `VkCommandPoolResetFlagBits` controlling the reset operation.

Resetting a command pool recycles all of the resources from all of the command buffers allocated from the command pool back to the command pool. All command buffers that have been allocated from the command pool are put in the initial state.

Any primary command buffer allocated from another `VkCommandPool` that is in the recording or executable state and has a secondary command buffer allocated from `commandPool` recorded into it,
becomes invalid.

### Valid Usage

- VUID-vkResetCommandPool-commandPool-00040
  
  All VkCommandBuffer objects allocated from commandPool must not be in the pending state.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkResetCommandPool-device-parameter
  
  device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- VUID-vkResetCommandPool-commandPool-parameter
  
  commandPool must be a valid VkCommandPool handle

- VUID-vkResetCommandPool-flags-parameter
  
  flags must be a valid combination of VkCommandPoolResetFlagBits values

- VUID-vkResetCommandPool-commandPool-parent
  
  commandPool must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from device

### Host Synchronization

- Host access to commandPool must be externally synchronized

### Return Codes

**Success**

- VK_SUCCESS

**Failure**

- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY

Bits which can be set in vkResetCommandPool::flags to control the reset operation are:

```cpp
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkCommandPoolResetFlagBits {
    VK_COMMAND_POOL_RESET_RELEASE_RESOURCES_BIT = 0x00000001,
} VkCommandPoolResetFlagBits;
```

- VK_COMMAND_POOL_RESET_RELEASE_RESOURCES_BIT specifies that resetting a command pool recycles all of the resources from the command pool back to the system.
`VkCommandPoolResetFlags` is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more `VkCommandPoolResetFlagBits`.

To destroy a command pool, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkDestroyCommandPool(
    VkDevice device,  
    VkCommandPool commandPool,  
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator);
```

- `device` is the logical device that destroys the command pool.
- `commandPool` is the handle of the command pool to destroy.
- `pAllocator` controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.

When a pool is destroyed, all command buffers allocated from the pool are **freed**.

Any primary command buffer allocated from another `VkCommandPool` that is in the recording or executable state and has a secondary command buffer allocated from `commandPool` recorded into it, becomes **invalid**.

### Valid Usage

- [VUID-vkDestroyCommandPool-commandPool-00041](#) All `VkCommandBuffer` objects allocated from `commandPool` must not be in the **pending state**
- [VUID-vkDestroyCommandPool-commandPool-00042](#) If `VkAllocationCallbacks` were provided when `commandPool` was created, a compatible set of callbacks must be provided here
- [VUID-vkDestroyCommandPool-commandPool-00043](#) If no `VkAllocationCallbacks` were provided when `commandPool` was created, `pAllocator` must be NULL
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkDestroyCommandPool-device-parameter**
  device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- **VUID-vkDestroyCommandPool-commandPool-parameter**
  If commandPool is not VK_NULL_HANDLE, commandPool must be a valid VkCommandPool handle

- **VUID-vkDestroyCommandPool-pAllocator-parameter**
  If pAllocator is not NULL, pAllocator must be a valid pointer to a valid VkAllocationCallbacks structure

- **VUID-vkDestroyCommandPool-commandPool-parent**
  If commandPool is a valid handle, it must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from device

Host Synchronization

- Host access to commandPool must be externally synchronized

6.3. Command Buffer Allocation and Management

To allocate command buffers, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkAllocateCommandBuffers(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkCommandBufferAllocateInfo* pAllocateInfo,
    VkCommandBuffer* pCommandBuffers);
```

- device is the logical device that owns the command pool.

- pAllocateInfo is a pointer to a VkCommandBufferAllocateInfo structure describing parameters of the allocation.

- pCommandBuffers is a pointer to an array of VkCommandBuffer handles in which the resulting command buffer objects are returned. The array must be at least the length specified by the commandBufferCount member of pAllocateInfo. Each allocated command buffer begins in the initial state.

vkAllocateCommandBuffers can be used to allocate multiple command buffers. If the allocation of any of those command buffers fails, the implementation must free all successfully allocated command buffer objects from this command, set all entries of the pCommandBuffers array to NULL and return the error.
Filling `pCommandBuffers` with NULL values on failure is an exception to the default error behavior that output parameters will have undefined contents.

When command buffers are first allocated, they are in the initial state.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkAllocateCommandBuffers-device-parameter**
  - `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle
- **VUID-vkAllocateCommandBuffers-pAllocateInfo-parameter**
  - `pAllocateInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkCommandBufferAllocateInfo` structure
- **VUID-vkAllocateCommandBuffers-pCommandBuffers-parameter**
  - `pCommandBuffers` must be a valid pointer to an array of `pAllocateInfo->commandBufferCount` `VkCommandBuffer` handles
- **VUID-vkAllocateCommandBuffers-pAllocateInfo::commandBufferCount-arraylength**
  - `pAllocateInfo->commandBufferCount` must be greater than 0

### Host Synchronization

- Host access to `pAllocateInfo->commandPool` must be externally synchronized

### Return Codes

**Success**

- `VK_SUCCESS`

**Failure**

- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY`

The `VkCommandBufferAllocateInfo` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkCommandBufferAllocateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkCommandPool commandPool;
    VkCommandBufferLevel level;
    uint32_t commandBufferCount;
} VkCommandBufferAllocateInfo;
```
• **sType** is the type of this structure.
• **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• **commandPool** is the command pool from which the command buffers are allocated.
• **level** is a **VkCommandBufferLevel** value specifying the command buffer level.
• **commandBufferCount** is the number of command buffers to allocate from the pool.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkCommandBufferAllocateInfo-sType-sType
  - `sType` must be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COMMAND_BUFFER_ALLOCATE_INFO**
- VUID-VkCommandBufferAllocateInfo-pNext-pNext
  - `pNext` must be **NULL**
- VUID-VkCommandBufferAllocateInfo-commandPool-parameter
  - `commandPool` must be a valid **VkCommandPool** handle
- VUID-VkCommandBufferAllocateInfo-level-parameter
  - `level` must be a valid **VkCommandBufferLevel** value

Possible values of **VkCommandBufferAllocateInfo::level**, specifying the command buffer level, are:

```
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkCommandBufferLevel {
  VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_LEVEL_PRIMARY = 0,
  VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_LEVEL_SECONDARY = 1,
} VkCommandBufferLevel;
```

- **VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_LEVEL_PRIMARY** specifies a primary command buffer.
- **VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_LEVEL_SECONDARY** specifies a secondary command buffer.

To reset a command buffer, call:

```
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkResetCommandBuffer(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,          commandBuffer,
    VkCommandBufferResetFlags flags);                     flags);
```

- **commandBuffer** is the command buffer to reset. The command buffer can be in any state other than **pending**, and is moved into the **initial state**.
- **flags** is a bitmask of **VkCommandBufferResetFlagBits** controlling the reset operation.

Any primary command buffer that is in the **recording** or **executable state** and has **commandBuffer** recorded into it, becomes **invalid**.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkResetCommandBuffer-commandBuffer-00045
  `commandBuffer` must not be in the `pending state`

- VUID-vkResetCommandBuffer-commandBuffer-00046
  `commandBuffer` must have been allocated from a pool that was created with the `VK_COMMAND_POOL_CREATE_RESET_COMMAND_BUFFER_BIT`

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkResetCommandBuffer-commandBuffer-parameter
  `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle

- VUID-vkResetCommandBuffer-flags-parameter
  `flags` must be a valid combination of `VkCommandBufferResetFlagBits` values

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized

- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Return Codes

**Success**
- `VK_SUCCESS`

**Failure**
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY`

Bits which can be set in `vkResetCommandBuffer::flags` to control the reset operation are:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkCommandBufferResetFlagBits {
    VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_RESET_RELEASE_RESOURCES_BIT = 0x00000001,
} VkCommandBufferResetFlagBits;
```

- `VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_RESET_RELEASE_RESOURCES_BIT` specifies that most or all memory resources currently owned by the command buffer should be returned to the parent command pool. If this flag is not set, then the command buffer may hold onto memory resources and reuse them when recording commands. `commandBuffer` is moved to the initial state.
typedef VkFlags VkCommandBufferResetFlags;

VkCommandBufferResetFlags is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more VkCommandBufferResetFlagBits.

To free command buffers, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkFreeCommandBuffers(
    VkDevice    device,        // Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
    VkCommandPool commandPool, // Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
    uint32_t    commandBufferCount, // Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
    const VkCommandBuffer* pCommandBuffers);
```

- `device` is the logical device that owns the command pool.
- `commandPool` is the command pool from which the command buffers were allocated.
- `commandBufferCount` is the length of the `pCommandBuffers` array.
- `pCommandBuffers` is a pointer to an array of handles of command buffers to free.

Any primary command buffer that is in the `recording` or `executable` state and has any element of `pCommandBuffers` recorded into it, becomes invalid.

---

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkFreeCommandBuffers-pCommandBuffers-00047**
  All elements of `pCommandBuffers` must not be in the `pending` state

- **VUID-vkFreeCommandBuffers-pCommandBuffers-00048**
  `pCommandBuffers` must be a valid pointer to an array of `commandBufferCount` `VkCommandBuffer` handles, each element of which must either be a valid handle or `NULL`
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkFreeCommandBuffers-device-parameter
  
  `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- VUID-vkFreeCommandBuffers-commandPool-parameter
  
  `commandPool` must be a valid `VkCommandPool` handle

- VUID-vkFreeCommandBuffers-commandBufferCount-arraylength
  
  `commandBufferCount` must be greater than 0

- VUID-vkFreeCommandBuffers-commandPool-parent
  
  `commandPool` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from `device`

- VUID-vkFreeCommandBuffers-pCommandBuffers-parent
  
  Each element of `pCommandBuffers` that is a valid handle must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from `commandPool`

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandPool` must be externally synchronized
- Host access to each member of `pCommandBuffers` must be externally synchronized

6.4. Command Buffer Recording

To begin recording a command buffer, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkBeginCommandBuffer(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    const VkCommandBufferBeginInfo* pBeginInfo);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the handle of the command buffer which is to be put in the recording state.
- `pBeginInfo` is a pointer to a `VkCommandBufferBeginInfo` structure defining additional information about how the command buffer begins recording.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkBeginCommandBuffer-commandBuffer-00049**
  commandBuffer must not be in the recording or pending state

- **VUID-vkBeginCommandBuffer-commandBuffer-00050**
  If commandBuffer was allocated from a VkCommandPool which did not have the VK_COMMAND_POOL_CREATE_RESET_COMMAND_BUFFER_BIT flag set, commandBuffer must be in the initial state

- **VUID-vkBeginCommandBuffer-commandBuffer-00051**
  If commandBuffer is a secondary command buffer, the pInheritanceInfo member of pBeginInfo must be a valid VkCommandBufferInheritanceInfo structure

- **VUID-vkBeginCommandBuffer-commandBuffer-00052**
  If commandBuffer is a secondary command buffer and either the occlusionQueryEnable member of the pInheritanceInfo member of pBeginInfo is VK_FALSE, or the precise occlusion queries feature is not enabled, then pBeginInfo->pInheritanceInfo->queryFlags must not contain VK_QUERY_CONTROL_PRECISE_BIT

- **VUID-vkBeginCommandBuffer-commandBuffer-02840**
  If commandBuffer is a primary command buffer, then pBeginInfo->flags must not set both the VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_USAGE_ONE_TIME_SUBMIT_BIT and the VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_USAGE_SIMULTANEOUS_USE_BIT flags

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkBeginCommandBuffer-commandBuffer-parameter**
  commandBuffer must be a valid VkCommandBuffer handle

- **VUID-vkBeginCommandBuffer-pBeginInfo-parameter**
  pBeginInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid VkCommandBufferBeginInfo structure

Host Synchronization

- Host access to commandBuffer must be externally synchronized

- Host access to the VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must be externally synchronized
Return Codes

Success
- VK_SUCCESS

Failure
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY

The VkCommandBufferBeginInfo structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkCommandBufferBeginInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkCommandBufferUsageFlags flags;
    const VkCommandBufferInheritanceInfo* pInheritanceInfo;
} VkCommandBufferBeginInfo;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **flags** is a bitmask of VkCommandBufferUsageFlagBits specifying usage behavior for the command buffer.
- **pInheritanceInfo** is a pointer to a VkCommandBufferInheritanceInfo structure, used if commandBuffer is a secondary command buffer. If this is a primary command buffer, then this value is ignored.

Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkCommandBufferBeginInfo-flags-00053**
  If flags contains VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_USAGE_RENDER_PASS_CONTINUE_BIT, the renderPass member of pInheritanceInfo must be a valid VkRenderPass

- **VUID-VkCommandBufferBeginInfo-flags-00054**
  If flags contains VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_USAGE_RENDER_PASS_CONTINUE_BIT, the subpass member of pInheritanceInfo must be a valid subpass index within the renderPass member of pInheritanceInfo

- **VUID-VkCommandBufferBeginInfo-flags-00055**
  If flags contains VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_USAGE_RENDER_PASS_CONTINUE_BIT, the framebuffer member of pInheritanceInfo must be either VK_NULL_HANDLE, or a valid VkFramebuffer that is compatible with the renderPass member of pInheritanceInfo
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkCommandBufferBeginInfo-sType-sType**
  
  _sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COMMAND_BUFFER_BEGIN_INFO_

- **VUID-VkCommandBufferBeginInfo-pNext-pNext**
  
  _pNext must be NULL or a pointer to a valid instance of VkDeviceGroupCommandBufferBeginInfo_

- **VUID-VkCommandBufferBeginInfo-sType-unique**
  
  The _sType value of each struct in the pNext chain must be unique_

- **VUID-VkCommandBufferBeginInfo-flags-parameter**
  
  _flags must be a valid combination of VkCommandBufferUsageFlagBits values_

Bits which can be set in VkCommandBufferBeginInfo::flags to specify usage behavior for a command buffer are:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkCommandBufferUsageFlagBits {
    VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_USAGE_ONE_TIME_SUBMIT_BIT = 0x00000001,
    VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_USAGE_RENDER_PASS_CONTINUE_BIT = 0x00000002,
    VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_USAGE_SIMULTANEOUS_USE_BIT = 0x00000004,
} VkCommandBufferUsageFlagBits;
```

- **VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_USAGE_ONE_TIME_SUBMIT_BIT** specifies that each recording of the command buffer will only be submitted once, and the command buffer will be reset and recorded again between each submission.

- **VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_USAGE_RENDER_PASS_CONTINUE_BIT** specifies that a secondary command buffer is considered to be entirely inside a render pass. If this is a primary command buffer, then this bit is ignored.

- **VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_USAGE_SIMULTANEOUS_USE_BIT** specifies that a command buffer can be resubmitted to a queue while it is in the pending state, and recorded into multiple primary command buffers.

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkCommandBufferUsageFlags;
```

_VkCommandBufferUsageFlags_ is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more VkCommandBufferUsageFlagBits.

If the command buffer is a secondary command buffer, then the VkCommandBufferInheritanceInfo structure defines any state that will be inherited from the primary command buffer:
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0

typedef struct VkCommandBufferInheritanceInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void*pNext;
    VkRenderPass renderPass;
    uint32_t subpass;
    VkFramebuffer framebuffer;
    VkBool32 occlusionQueryEnable;
    VkQueryControlFlags queryFlags;
    VkQueryPipelineStatisticFlags pipelineStatistics;
} VkCommandBufferInheritanceInfo;

• sType is the type of this structure.

• pNext is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.

• renderPass is a VkRenderPass object defining which render passes the VkCommandBuffer will be compatible with and can be executed within. If the VkCommandBuffer will not be executed within a render pass instance, renderPass is ignored.

• subpass is the index of the subpass within the render pass instance that the VkCommandBuffer will be executed within. If the VkCommandBuffer will not be executed within a render pass instance, subpass is ignored.

• framebuffer can refer to the VkFramebuffer object that the VkCommandBuffer will be rendering to if it is executed within a render pass instance. It can be VK_NULL_HANDLE if the framebuffer is not known, or if the VkCommandBuffer will not be executed within a render pass instance.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Note</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Specifying the exact framebuffer that the secondary command buffer will be executed with may result in better performance at command buffer execution time.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

• occlusionQueryEnable specifies whether the command buffer can be executed while an occlusion query is active in the primary command buffer. If this is VK_TRUE, then this command buffer can be executed whether the primary command buffer has an occlusion query active or not. If this is VK_FALSE, then the primary command buffer must not have an occlusion query active.

• queryFlags specifies the query flags that can be used by an active occlusion query in the primary command buffer when this secondary command buffer is executed. If this value includes the VK_QUERY_CONTROL_PRECISE_BIT bit, then the active query can return boolean results or actual sample counts. If this bit is not set, then the active query must not use the VK_QUERY_CONTROL_PRECISE_BIT bit.

• pipelineStatistics is a bitmask of VkQueryPipelineStatisticFlagBits specifying the set of pipeline statistics that can be counted by an active query in the primary command buffer when this secondary command buffer is executed. If this value includes a given bit, then this command buffer can be executed whether the primary command buffer has a pipeline statistics query active that includes this bit or not. If this value excludes a given bit, then the active pipeline statistics query must not be from a query pool that counts that statistic.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkCommandBufferInheritanceInfo-occlusionQueryEnable-00056**
  - If the **inherited queries** feature is not enabled, `occlusionQueryEnable` must be `VK_FALSE`

- **VUID-VkCommandBufferInheritanceInfo-queryFlags-00057**
  - If the **inherited queries** feature is enabled, `queryFlags` must be a valid combination of `VkQueryControlFlagBits` values

- **VUID-VkCommandBufferInheritanceInfo-queryFlags-02788**
  - If the **inherited queries** feature is not enabled, `queryFlags` must be `0`

- **VUID-VkCommandBufferInheritanceInfo-pipelineStatistics-02789**
  - If the **pipeline statistics queries** feature is enabled, `pipelineStatistics` must be a valid combination of `VkQueryPipelineStatisticFlagBits` values

- **VUID-VkCommandBufferInheritanceInfo-pipelineStatistics-00058**
  - If the **pipeline statistics queries** feature is not enabled, `pipelineStatistics` must be `0`

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkCommandBufferInheritanceInfo-sType-sType**
  - `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COMMAND_BUFFER_INHERITANCE_INFO`

- **VUID-VkCommandBufferInheritanceInfo-pNext-pNext**
  - `pNext` must be `NULL`

- **VUID-VkCommandBufferInheritanceInfo-commonparent**
  - Both of `framebuffer`, and `renderPass` that are valid handles of non-ignored parameters must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`

**Note**
On some implementations, not using the `VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_USAGE_SIMULTANEOUS_USE_BIT` bit enables command buffers to be patched in-place if needed, rather than creating a copy of the command buffer.

If a command buffer is in the **invalid, or executable state**, and the command buffer was allocated from a command pool with the `VK_COMMAND_POOL_CREATE_RESET_COMMAND_BUFFER_BIT` flag set, then `vkBeginCommandBuffer` implicitly resets the command buffer, behaving as if `vkResetCommandBuffer` had been called with `VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_RESET_RELEASE_RESOURCES_BIT` not set. After the implicit reset, `commandBuffer` is moved to the **recording state**.

Once recording starts, an application records a sequence of commands (`vkCmd*`) to set state in the command buffer, draw, dispatch, and other commands.

To complete recording of a command buffer, call:
VkResult vkEndCommandBuffer(VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer);

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer to complete recording.

If there was an error during recording, the application will be notified by an unsuccessful return code returned by `vkEndCommandBuffer`. If the application wishes to further use the command buffer, the command buffer **must** be reset.

The command buffer **must** have been in the **recording state**, and is moved to the **executable state**.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkEndCommandBuffer-commandBuffer-00059**
  - `commandBuffer` **must** be in the **recording state**

- **VUID-vkEndCommandBuffer-commandBuffer-00060**
  - If `commandBuffer` is a primary command buffer, there **must** not be an active render pass instance

- **VUID-vkEndCommandBuffer-commandBuffer-00061**
  - All queries made **active** during the recording of `commandBuffer` **must** have been made **inactive**

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkEndCommandBuffer-commandBuffer-parameter**
  - `commandBuffer` **must** be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle

### Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` **must** be externally synchronized

- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from **must** be externally synchronized
6.5. Command Buffer Submission

Submission can be a high overhead operation, and applications should attempt to batch work together into as few calls to `vkQueueSubmit` or `vkQueueSubmit2KHR` as possible.

To submit command buffers to a queue, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2
VkResult vkQueueSubmit2KHR(
    VkQueue queue,
    uint32_t submitCount,
    const VkSubmitInfo2KHR* pSubmits,
    VkFence fence);
```

- `queue` is the queue that the command buffers will be submitted to.
- `submitCount` is the number of elements in the `pSubmits` array.
- `pSubmits` is a pointer to an array of `VkSubmitInfo2KHR` structures, each specifying a command buffer submission batch.
- `fence` is an optional handle to a fence to be signaled once all submitted command buffers have completed execution. If `fence` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, it defines a fence signal operation.

`vkQueueSubmit2KHR` is a queue submission command, with each batch defined by an element of `pSubmits` as an instance of the `VkSubmitInfo2KHR` structure.

Semaphore operations submitted with `vkQueueSubmit2KHR` have additional ordering constraints compared to other submission commands, with dependencies involving previous and subsequent queue operations. Information about these additional constraints can be found in the semaphore section of the synchronization chapter.

If any command buffer submitted to this queue is in the executable state, it is moved to the pending state. Once execution of all submissions of a command buffer complete, it moves from the pending state.
state, back to the executable state. If a command buffer was recorded with the
VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_USAGE_ONE_TIME_SUBMIT_BIT flag, it instead moves back to the invalid state.

If vkQueueSubmit2KHR fails, it may return VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY or
VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY. If it does, the implementation must ensure that the state and
contents of any resources or synchronization primitives referenced by the submitted command
buffers and any semaphores referenced by pSubmits is unaffected by the call or its failure. If
vkQueueSubmit2KHR fails in such a way that the implementation is unable to make that guarantee, the
implementation must return VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST. See Lost Device.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkQueueSubmit2KHR-fence-04894**
  
  If `fence` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, `fence` **must** be unsignaled.

- **VUID-vkQueueSubmit2KHR-fence-04895**
  
  If `fence` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, `fence` **must** not be associated with any other queue command that has not yet completed execution on that queue.

- **VUID-vkQueueSubmit2KHR-synchronization2-03866**
  
  The `synchronization2` feature **must** be enabled.

- **VUID-vkQueueSubmit2KHR-commandBuffer-03867**
  
  If a command recorded into the `commandBuffer` member of any element of the `pCommandBufferInfos` member of any element of `pSubmits` referenced an `VkEvent`, that event **must** not be referenced by a command that has been submitted to another queue and is still in the **pending state**.

- **VUID-vkQueueSubmit2KHR-semaphore-03868**
  
  The `semaphore` member of any binary semaphore element of the `pSignalSemaphoreInfos` member of any element of `pSubmits` **must** be unsignaled when the semaphore signal operation it defines is executed on the device.

- **VUID-vkQueueSubmit2KHR-stageMask-03869**
  
  The `stageMask` member of any element of the `pSignalSemaphoreInfos` member of any element of `pSubmits` **must** only include pipeline stages that are supported by the queue family which `queue` belongs to.

- **VUID-vkQueueSubmit2KHR-stageMask-03870**
  
  The `stageMask` member of any element of the `pWaitSemaphoreInfos` member of any element of `pSubmits` **must** only include pipeline stages that are supported by the queue family which `queue` belongs to.

- **VUID-vkQueueSubmit2KHR-semaphore-03871**
  
  When a semaphore wait operation for a binary semaphore is executed, as defined by the `semaphore` member of any element of the `pWaitSemaphoreInfos` member of any element of `pSubmits`, there **must** be no other queues waiting on the same semaphore.

- **VUID-vkQueueSubmit2KHR-semaphore-03872**
  
  The `semaphore` member of any element of the `pWaitSemaphoreInfos` member of any element of `pSubmits` **must** be semaphores that are signaled, or have semaphore signal operations previously submitted for execution.

- **VUID-vkQueueSubmit2KHR-semaphore-03873**
  
  Any `semaphore` member of any element of the `pWaitSemaphoreInfos` member of any element of `pSubmits` that was created with a `VkSemaphoreTypeKHR` of `VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_BINARY_KHR` **must** reference a semaphore signal operation that has been submitted for execution and any semaphore signal operations on which it depends (if any) **must** have also been submitted for execution.

- **VUID-vkQueueSubmit2KHR-commandBuffer-03874**
  
  The `commandBuffer` member of any element of the `pCommandBufferInfos` member of any element of `pSubmits` **must** be in the **pending or executable state**.
If a command recorded into the `commandBuffer` member of any element of the `pCommandBufferInfos` member of any element of `pSubmits` was not recorded with the `VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_USAGE_SIMULTANEOUS_USE_BIT`, it must not be in the pending state.

Any secondary command buffers recorded into the `commandBuffer` member of any element of the `pCommandBufferInfos` member of any element of `pSubmits` must be in the pending or executable state.

If any secondary command buffers recorded into the `commandBuffer` member of any element of the `pCommandBufferInfos` member of any element of `pSubmits` was not recorded with the `VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_USAGE_SIMULTANEOUS_USE_BIT`, it must not be in the pending state.

The `commandBuffer` member of any element of the `pCommandBufferInfos` member of any element of `pSubmits` must have been allocated from a `VkCommandPool` that was created for the same queue family `queue` belongs to.

If a command recorded into the `commandBuffer` member of any element of the `pCommandBufferInfos` member of any element of `pSubmits` includes a Queue Family Transfer Acquire Operation, there must exist a previously submitted Queue Family Transfer Release Operation on a queue in the queue family identified by the acquire operation, with parameters matching the acquire operation as defined in the definition of such acquire operations, and which happens before the acquire operation.

If a command recorded into the `commandBuffer` member of any element of the `pCommandBufferInfos` member of any element of `pSubmits` was a `vkCmdBeginQuery` whose `queryPool` was created with a `queryType` of `VK_QUERY_TYPE_PERFORMANCE_QUERY_KHR`, the profiling lock must have been held continuously on the `VkDevice` that `queue` was retrieved from, throughout recording of those command buffers.

---

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- **VUID-vkQueueSubmit2KHR-queue-parameter**
  `queue` must be a valid `VkQueue` handle.

- **VUID-vkQueueSubmit2KHR-pSubmits-parameter**
  If `submitCount` is not 0, `pSubmits` must be a valid pointer to an array of `submitCount` valid `VkSubmitInfo2KHR` structures.

- **VUID-vkQueueSubmit2KHR-fence-parameter**
  If `fence` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, `fence` must be a valid `VkFence` handle.

- **VUID-vkQueueSubmit2KHR-commonparent**
  Both of `fence`, and `queue` that are valid handles of non-ignored parameters must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`.
Host Synchronization

- Host access to queue must be externally synchronized
- Host access to fence must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Return Codes

**Success**
- VK_SUCCESS

**Failure**
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST

The VkSubmitInfo2KHR structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2
typedef struct VkSubmitInfo2KHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkSubmitFlagsKHR flags;
    uint32_t waitSemaphoreInfoCount;
    const VkSemaphoreSubmitInfoKHR* pWaitSemaphoreInfos;
    uint32_t commandBufferInfoCount;
    const VkCommandBufferSubmitInfoKHR* pCommandBufferInfos;
    uint32_t signalSemaphoreInfoCount;
    const VkSemaphoreSubmitInfoKHR* pSignalSemaphoreInfos;
} VkSubmitInfo2KHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `flags` is a bitmask of VkSubmitFlagBitsKHR.
- `waitSemaphoreInfoCount` is the number of elements in `pWaitSemaphoreInfos`.
- `pWaitSemaphoreInfos` is a pointer to an array of VkSemaphoreSubmitInfoKHR structures defining semaphore wait operations.
• `commandBufferInfoCount` is the number of elements in `pCommandBufferInfos` and the number of command buffers to execute in the batch.

• `pCommandBufferInfos` is a pointer to an array of `VkCommandBufferSubmitInfoKHR` structures describing command buffers to execute in the batch.

• `signalSemaphoreInfoCount` is the number of elements in `pSignalSemaphoreInfos`.

• `pSignalSemaphoreInfos` is a pointer to an array of `VkSemaphoreSubmitInfoKHR` describing semaphore signal operations.

Valid Usage

• VUID-VkSubmitInfo2KHR-semaphore-03881
  If the same semaphore is used as the `semaphore` member of both an element of `pSignalSemaphoreInfos` and `pWaitSemaphoreInfos`, and that semaphore is a timeline semaphore, the `value` member of the `pSignalSemaphoreInfos` element **must** be greater than the `value` member of the `pWaitSemaphoreInfos` element

• VUID-VkSubmitInfo2KHR-semaphore-03882
  If the `semaphore` member of any element of `pSignalSemaphoreInfos` is a timeline semaphore, the `value` member of that element **must** have a value greater than the current value of the semaphore when the semaphore signal operation is executed

• VUID-VkSubmitInfo2KHR-semaphore-03883
  If the `semaphore` member of any element of `pSignalSemaphoreInfos` is a timeline semaphore, the `value` member of that element **must** have a value which does not differ from the current value of the semaphore or the value of any outstanding semaphore wait or signal operation on that semaphore by more than `maxTimelineSemaphoreValueDifference`

• VUID-VkSubmitInfo2KHR-semaphore-03884
  If the `semaphore` member of any element of `pWaitSemaphoreInfos` is a timeline semaphore, the `value` member of that element **must** have a value which does not differ from the current value of the semaphore or the value of any outstanding semaphore wait or signal operation on that semaphore by more than `maxTimelineSemaphoreValueDifference`
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkSubmitInfo2KHR-sType-sType**
  \n  \n  \n  - **sType** must be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SUBMIT_INFO_2_KHR**
  \n- **VUID-VkSubmitInfo2KHR-pNext-pNext**
  Each **pNext** member of any structure (including this one) in the **pNext** chain must be either **NULL** or a pointer to a valid instance of **VkPerformanceQuerySubmitInfoKHR** or **VkWin32KeyedMutexAcquireReleaseInfoKHR**
  \n- **VUID-VkSubmitInfo2KHR-sType-unique**
  The **sType** value of each struct in the **pNext** chain must be unique
  \n- **VUID-VkSubmitInfo2KHR-flags-parameter**
  flags must be a valid combination of **VkSubmitFlagBitsKHR** values
  \n- **VUID-VkSubmitInfo2KHR-pWaitSemaphoreInfos-parameter**
  If **waitSemaphoreInfoCount** is not 0, **pWaitSemaphoreInfos** must be a valid pointer to an array of **waitSemaphoreInfoCount** valid **VkSemaphoreSubmitInfoKHR** structures
  \n- **VUID-VkSubmitInfo2KHR-pCommandBufferInfos-parameter**
  If **commandBufferInfoCount** is not 0, **pCommandBufferInfos** must be a valid pointer to an array of **commandBufferInfoCount** valid **VkCommandBufferSubmitInfoKHR** structures
  \n- **VUID-VkSubmitInfo2KHR-pSignalSemaphoreInfos-parameter**
  If **signalSemaphoreInfoCount** is not 0, **pSignalSemaphoreInfos** must be a valid pointer to an array of **signalSemaphoreInfoCount** valid **VkSemaphoreSubmitInfoKHR** structures

Bits which can be set in **VkSubmitInfo2KHR::flags** to specify submission behavior are:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2
typedef enum VkSubmitFlagBitsKHR {
    VK_SUBMIT_PROTECTED_BIT_KHR = 0x00000001,
} VkSubmitFlagBitsKHR;
```

- **VK_SUBMIT_PROTECTED_BIT_KHR** specifies that this batch is a protected submission.

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2
typedef VkFlags VkSubmitFlagsKHR;
```

**VkSubmitFlagsKHR** is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more **VkSubmitFlagBitsKHR**.

The **VkSemaphoreSubmitInfoKHR** structure is defined as:
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2

typedef struct VkSemaphoreSubmitInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkSemaphore semaphore;
    uint64_t value;
    VkPipelineStageFlags2KHR stageMask;
    uint32_t deviceIndex;
} VkSemaphoreSubmitInfoKHR;

• sType is the type of this structure.
• pNext is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• semaphore is a VkSemaphore affected by this operation.
• value is either the value used to signal semaphore or the value waited on by semaphore, if semaphore is a timeline semaphore. Otherwise it is ignored.
• stageMask is a VkPipelineStageFlags2KHR mask of pipeline stages which limit the first synchronization scope of a semaphore signal operation, or second synchronization scope of a semaphore wait operation as described in the semaphore wait operation and semaphore signal operation sections of the synchronization chapter.
• deviceIndex is the index of the device within a device group that executes the semaphore wait or signal operation.

Whether this structure defines a semaphore wait or signal operation is defined by how it is used.

**Valid Usage**

• VUID-VkSemaphoreSubmitInfoKHR-stageMask-03929
    If the geometry shaders feature is not enabled, stageMask must not contain VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT_KHR

• VUID-VkSemaphoreSubmitInfoKHR-stageMask-03930
    If the tessellation shaders feature is not enabled, stageMask must not contain
    VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT_KHR or
    VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_TESSELLATION_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT_KHR

• VUID-VkSemaphoreSubmitInfoKHR-device-03888
    If the device that semaphore was created on is not a device group, deviceIndex must be 0

• VUID-VkSemaphoreSubmitInfoKHR-device-03889
    If the device that semaphore was created on is a device group, deviceIndex must be a valid device index
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkSemaphoreSubmitInfoKHR-sType-sType
  **sType** must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SEMAPHORE_SUBMIT_INFO_KHR`

- VUID-VkSemaphoreSubmitInfoKHR-pNext-pNext
  **pNext** must be `NULL`

- VUID-VkSemaphoreSubmitInfoKHR-semaphore-parameter
  **semaphore** must be a valid `VkSemaphore` handle

- VUID-VkSemaphoreSubmitInfoKHR-stageMask-parameter
  **stageMask** must be a valid combination of `VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR` values

The `VkCommandBufferSubmitInfoKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2
typedef struct VkCommandBufferSubmitInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer;
    uint32_t deviceMask;
} VkCommandBufferSubmitInfoKHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **commandBuffer** is a `VkCommandBuffer` to be submitted for execution.
- **deviceMask** is a bitmask indicating which devices in a device group execute the command buffer. A **deviceMask** of `0` is equivalent to setting all bits corresponding to valid devices in the group to `1`.

Valid Usage

- VUID-VkCommandBufferSubmitInfoKHR-commandBuffer-03890
  **commandBuffer** must not have been allocated with `VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_LEVEL_SECONDARY`

- VUID-VkCommandBufferSubmitInfoKHR-deviceMask-03891
  If **deviceMask** is not `0`, it must be a valid device mask
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkCommandBufferSubmitInfoKHR-sType-sType**
  - `sType` **must** be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COMMAND_BUFFER_SUBMIT_INFO_KHR`

- **VUID-VkCommandBufferSubmitInfoKHR-pNext-pNext**
  - `pNext` **must** be `NULL`

- **VUID-VkCommandBufferSubmitInfoKHR-commandBuffer-parameter**
  - `commandBuffer` **must** be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle

To submit command buffers to a queue, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkQueueSubmit(
    VkQueue queue,
    uint32_t submitCount,
    const VkSubmitInfo* pSubmits,
    VkFence fence);
```

- `queue` is the queue that the command buffers will be submitted to.
- `submitCount` is the number of elements in the `pSubmits` array.
- `pSubmits` is a pointer to an array of `VkSubmitInfo` structures, each specifying a command buffer submission batch.
- `fence` is an **optional** handle to a fence to be signaled once all submitted command buffers have completed execution. If `fence` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, it defines a fence signal operation.

`vkQueueSubmit` is a **queue submission command**, with each batch defined by an element of `pSubmits`. Batches begin execution in the order they appear in `pSubmits`, but **may** complete out of order.

Fence and semaphore operations submitted with `vkQueueSubmit` have additional ordering constraints compared to other submission commands, with dependencies involving previous and subsequent queue operations. Information about these additional constraints can be found in the **semaphore** and **fence** sections of the synchronization chapter.

Details on the interaction of `pWaitDstStageMask` with synchronization are described in the **semaphore wait operation** section of the synchronization chapter.

The order that batches appear in `pSubmits` is used to determine **submission order**, and thus all the **implicit ordering guarantees** that respect it. Other than these implicit ordering guarantees and any **explicit synchronization primitives**, these batches **may** overlap or otherwise execute out of order.

If any command buffer submitted to this queue is in the **executable state**, it is moved to the **pending state**. Once execution of all submissions of a command buffer complete, it moves from the **pending state**, back to the **executable state**. If a command buffer was recorded with the `VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_USAGE_ONE_TIME_SUBMIT_BIT` flag, it instead moves to the **invalid state**.
If `vkQueueSubmit` fails, it may return `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY` or `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY`. If it does, the implementation must ensure that the state and contents of any resources or synchronization primitives referenced by the submitted command buffers and any semaphores referenced by `pSubmits` is unaffected by the call or its failure. If `vkQueueSubmit` fails in such a way that the implementation is unable to make that guarantee, the implementation must return `VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST`. See Lost Device.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkQueueSubmit-fence-00063
  If fence is not VK_NULL_HANDLE, fence must be unsignaled

- VUID-vkQueueSubmit-fence-00064
  If fence is not VK_NULL_HANDLE, fence must not be associated with any other queue command that has not yet completed execution on that queue

- VUID-vkQueueSubmit-pCommandBuffers-00065
  Any calls to vkCmdSetEvent, vkCmdResetEvent or vkCmdWaitEvents that have been recorded into any of the command buffer elements of the pCommandBuffers member of any element of pSubmits, must not reference any VkEvent that is referenced by any of those commands in a command buffer that has been submitted to another queue and is still in the pending state

- VUID-vkQueueSubmit-pWaitDstStageMask-00066
  Any stage flag included in any element of the pWaitDstStageMask member of any element of pSubmits must be a pipeline stage supported by one of the capabilities of queue, as specified in the table of supported pipeline stages

- VUID-vkQueueSubmit-pSignalSemaphores-00067
  Each binary semaphore element of the pSignalSemaphores member of any element of pSubmits must be unsignaled when the semaphore signal operation it defines is executed on the device

- VUID-vkQueueSubmit-pWaitSemaphores-00068
  When a semaphore wait operation referring to a binary semaphore defined by any element of the pWaitSemaphores member of any element of pSubmits executes on queue, there must be no other queues waiting on the same semaphore

- VUID-vkQueueSubmit-pWaitSemaphores-03238
  All elements of the pWaitSemaphores member of all elements of pSubmits created with a VkSemaphoreType of VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_BINARY must reference a semaphore signal operation that has been submitted for execution and any semaphore signal operations on which it depends (if any) must have also been submitted for execution

- VUID-vkQueueSubmit-pCommandBuffers-00070
  Each element of the pCommandBuffers member of each element of pSubmits must be in the pending or executable state

- VUID-vkQueueSubmit-pCommandBuffers-00071
  If any element of the pCommandBuffers member of any element of pSubmits was not recorded with the VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_USAGE_SIMULTANEOUS_USE_BIT, it must not be in the pending state

- VUID-vkQueueSubmit-pCommandBuffers-00072
  Any secondary command buffers recorded into any element of the pCommandBuffers member of any element of pSubmits must be in the pending or executable state

- VUID-vkQueueSubmit-pCommandBuffers-00073
  If any secondary command buffers recorded into any element of the pCommandBuffers member of any element of pSubmits was not recorded with the
VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_USAGE_SIMULTANEOUS_USE_BIT, it **must** not be in the pending state

- **VUID-vkQueueSubmit-pCommandBuffers-00074**
  Each element of the `pCommandBuffers` member of each element of `pSubmits` **must** have been allocated from a `VkCommandPool` that was created for the same queue family `queue` belongs to.

- **VUID-vkQueueSubmit-pSubmits-02207**
  If any element of `pSubmits->pCommandBuffers` includes a **Queue Family Transfer Acquire Operation**, there **must** exist a previously submitted **Queue Family Transfer Release Operation** on a queue in the queue family identified by the acquire operation, with parameters matching the acquire operation as defined in the definition of such **acquire operations**, and which happens-before the acquire operation.

- **VUID-vkQueueSubmit-pCommandBuffers-03220**
  If a command recorded into any element of `pCommandBuffers` was a `vkCmdBeginQuery` whose `queryPool` was created with a `queryType` of `VK_QUERY_TYPE_PERFORMANCE_QUERY_KHR`, the **profiling lock** **must** have been held continuously on the `VkDevice` that `queue` was retrieved from, throughout recording of those command buffers.

- **VUID-vkQueueSubmit-pSubmits-02808**
  Any resource created with `VK_SHARING_MODE_EXCLUSIVE` that is read by an operation specified by `pSubmits` **must** not be owned by any queue family other than the one which `queue` belongs to, at the time it is executed.

- **VUID-vkQueueSubmit-pSubmits-04626**
  Any resource created with `VK_SHARING_MODE_CONCURRENT` that is accessed by an operation specified by `pSubmits` **must** have included the queue family of `queue` at resource creation time.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkQueueSubmit-queue-parameter**
  `queue` **must** be a valid `VkQueue` handle.

- **VUID-vkQueueSubmit-pSubmits-parameter**
  If `submitCount` is not 0, `pSubmits` **must** be a valid pointer to an array of `submitCount` valid `VkSubmitInfo` structures.

- **VUID-vkQueueSubmit-fence-parameter**
  If `fence` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, `fence` **must** be a valid `VkFence` handle.

- **VUID-vkQueueSubmit-commonparent**
  Both of `fence`, and `queue` that are valid handles of non-ignored parameters **must** have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`. 
Host Synchronization

- Host access to queue must be externally synchronized
- Host access to fence must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Return Codes

Success
- VK_SUCCESS

Failure
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST

The VkSubmitInfo structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkSubmitInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    uint32_t waitSemaphoreCount;
    const VkSemaphore* pWaitSemaphores;
    const VkPipelineStageFlags* pWaitDstStageMask;
    const VkCommandBuffer* pCommandBuffers;
    uint32_t signalSemaphoreCount;
    const VkSemaphore* pSignalSemaphores;
} VkSubmitInfo;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `waitSemaphoreCount` is the number of semaphores upon which to wait before executing the command buffers for the batch.
- `pWaitSemaphores` is a pointer to an array of VkSemaphore handles upon which to wait before the command buffers for this batch begin execution. If semaphores to wait on are provided, they
define a semaphore wait operation.

- `pWaitDstStageMask` is a pointer to an array of pipeline stages at which each corresponding semaphore wait will occur.
- `commandBufferCount` is the number of command buffers to execute in the batch.
- `pCommandBuffers` is a pointer to an array of `VkCommandBuffer` handles to execute in the batch.
- `signalSemaphoreCount` is the number of semaphores to be signaled once the commands specified in `pCommandBuffers` have completed execution.
- `pSignalSemaphores` is a pointer to an array of `VkSemaphore` handles which will be signaled when the command buffers for this batch have completed execution. If semaphores to be signaled are provided, they define a semaphore signal operation.

The order that command buffers appear in `pCommandBuffers` is used to determine submission order, and thus all the implicit ordering guarantees that respect it. Other than these implicit ordering guarantees and any explicit synchronization primitives, these command buffers may overlap or otherwise execute out of order.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkSubmitInfo-pCommandBuffers-00075**
  Each element of `pCommandBuffers` must not have been allocated with `VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_LEVEL_SECONDARY`

- **VUID-VkSubmitInfo-pWaitDstStageMask-00076**
  If the geometry shaders feature is not enabled, each element of `pWaitDstStageMask` must not contain `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT`

- **VUID-VkSubmitInfo-pWaitDstStageMask-00077**
  If the tessellation shaders feature is not enabled, each element of `pWaitDstStageMask` must not contain `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT` or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT`

- **VUID-VkSubmitInfo-pWaitDstStageMask-00078**
  Each element of `pWaitDstStageMask` must not include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_HOST_BIT`

- **VUID-VkSubmitInfo-pWaitSemaphores-03239**
  If any element of `pWaitSemaphores` or `pSignalSemaphores` was created with a `VkSemaphoreType` of `VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE`, then the `pNext` chain must include a `VkTimelineSemaphoreSubmitInfo` structure

- **VUID-VkSubmitInfo-pNext-03240**
  If the `pNext` chain of this structure includes a `VkTimelineSemaphoreSubmitInfo` structure and any element of `pWaitSemaphores` was created with a `VkSemaphoreType` of `VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE`, then its `waitSemaphoreValueCount` member must equal `waitSemaphoreCount`

- **VUID-VkSubmitInfo-pNext-03241**
  If the `pNext` chain of this structure includes a `VkTimelineSemaphoreSubmitInfo` structure and any element of `pSignalSemaphores` was created with a `VkSemaphoreType` of `VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE`, then its `signalSemaphoreValueCount` member must equal `signalSemaphoreCount`

- **VUID-VkSubmitInfo-pSignalSemaphores-03242**
  For each element of `pSignalSemaphores` created with a `VkSemaphoreType` of `VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE` the corresponding element of `VkTimelineSemaphoreSubmitInfo::pSignalSemaphoreValues` must have a value greater than the current value of the semaphore when the semaphore signal operation is executed

- **VUID-VkSubmitInfo-pWaitSemaphores-03243**
  For each element of `pWaitSemaphores` created with a `VkSemaphoreType` of `VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE` the corresponding element of `VkTimelineSemaphoreSubmitInfo::pWaitSemaphoreValues` must have a value which does not differ from the current value of the semaphore or the value of any outstanding semaphore wait or signal operation on that semaphore by more than `maxTimelineSemaphoreValueDifference`

- **VUID-VkSubmitInfo-pSignalSemaphores-03244**
  For each element of `pSignalSemaphores` created with a `VkSemaphoreType` of `VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE` the corresponding element of `VkTimelineSemaphoreSubmitInfo::pSignalSemaphoreValues` must have a value which does...
not differ from the current value of the semaphore or the value of any outstanding semaphore wait or signal operation on that semaphore by more than maxTimelineSemaphoreValueDifference

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkSubmitInfo-sType-sType**
  - The `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SUBMIT_INFO`.

- **VUID-VkSubmitInfo-pNext-pNext**
  - Each `pNext` member of any structure (including this one) in the `pNext` chain must be either NULL or a pointer to a valid instance of `VkD3D12FenceSubmitInfoKHR`, `VkDeviceGroupSubmitInfo`, `VkPerformanceQuerySubmitInfoKHR`, `VkTimelineSemaphoreSubmitInfo`, or `VkWin32KeyedMutexAcquireReleaseInfoKHR`.

- **VUID-VkSubmitInfo-sType-unique**
  - The `sType` value of each struct in the `pNext` chain must be unique.

- **VUID-VkSubmitInfo-pWaitSemaphores-parameter**
  - If `waitSemaphoreCount` is not 0, `pWaitSemaphores` must be a valid pointer to an array of `waitSemaphoreCount` valid `VkSemaphore` handles.

- **VUID-VkSubmitInfo-pWaitDstStageMask-parameter**
  - If `waitSemaphoreCount` is not 0, `pWaitDstStageMask` must be a valid pointer to an array of `waitSemaphoreCount` valid combinations of `VkPipelineStageFlagBits` values.

- **VUID-VkSubmitInfo-pWaitDstStageMask-requiredbitmask**
  - Each element of `pWaitDstStageMask` must not be 0.

- **VUID-VkSubmitInfo-pCommandBuffers-parameter**
  - If `commandBufferCount` is not 0, `pCommandBuffers` must be a valid pointer to an array of `commandBufferCount` valid `VkCommandBuffer` handles.

- **VUID-VkSubmitInfo-pSignalSemaphores-parameter**
  - If `signalSemaphoreCount` is not 0, `pSignalSemaphores` must be a valid pointer to an array of `signalSemaphoreCount` valid `VkSemaphore` handles.

- **VUID-VkSubmitInfo-commonparent**
  - Each of the elements of `pCommandBuffers`, the elements of `pSignalSemaphores`, and the elements of `pWaitSemaphores` that are valid handles of non-ignored parameters must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`.

To specify the values to use when waiting for and signaling semaphores created with a `VkSemaphoreType` of `VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE`, add a `VkTimelineSemaphoreSubmitInfo` structure to the `pNext` chain of the `VkSubmitInfo` structure when using `vkQueueSubmit` or the `VkBindSparseInfo` structure when using `vkQueueBindSparse`. The `VkTimelineSemaphoreSubmitInfo` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkTimelineSemaphoreSubmitInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    uint32_t waitSemaphoreValueCount;
    const uint64_t* pWaitSemaphoreValues;
    uint32_t signalSemaphoreValueCount;
    const uint64_t* pSignalSemaphoreValues;
} VkTimelineSemaphoreSubmitInfo;

or the equivalent

// Provided by VK_KHR_timeline_semaphore
typedef VkTimelineSemaphoreSubmitInfo VkTimelineSemaphoreSubmitInfoKHR;

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **waitSemaphoreValueCount** is the number of semaphore wait values specified in **pWaitSemaphoreValues**.
- **pWaitSemaphoreValues** is a pointer to an array of **waitSemaphoreValueCount** values for the corresponding semaphores in **VkSubmitInfo::pWaitSemaphores** to wait for.
- **signalSemaphoreValueCount** is the number of semaphore signal values specified in **pSignalSemaphoreValues**.
- **pSignalSemaphoreValues** is a pointer to an array of **signalSemaphoreValueCount** values for the corresponding semaphores in **VkSubmitInfo::pSignalSemaphores** to set when signaled.

If the semaphore in **VkSubmitInfo::pWaitSemaphores** or ** VkSubmitInfo::pSignalSemaphores** corresponding to an entry in **pWaitSemaphoreValues** or **pSignalSemaphoreValues** respectively was not created with a **VkSemaphoreType** of **VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE**, the implementation must ignore the value in the **pWaitSemaphoreValues** or **pSignalSemaphoreValues** entry.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkTimelineSemaphoreSubmitInfo-sType-sType**
  - **sType** must be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_TIMELINE_SEMAPHORE_SUBMIT_INFO**

- **VUID-VkTimelineSemaphoreSubmitInfo-pWaitSemaphoreValues-parameter**
  - If **waitSemaphoreValueCount** is not 0, and **pWaitSemaphoreValues** is not NULL, **pWaitSemaphoreValues** must be a valid pointer to an array of **waitSemaphoreValueCount** **uint64_t** values

- **VUID-VkTimelineSemaphoreSubmitInfo-pSignalSemaphoreValues-parameter**
  - If **signalSemaphoreValueCount** is not 0, and **pSignalSemaphoreValues** is not NULL, **pSignalSemaphoreValues** must be a valid pointer to an array of **signalSemaphoreValueCount** **uint64_t** values
To specify the values to use when waiting for and signaling semaphores whose current payload refers to a Direct3D 12 fence, add a `VkD3D12FenceSubmitInfoKHR` structure to the `pNext` chain of the `VkSubmitInfo` structure. The `VkD3D12FenceSubmitInfoKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_semaphore_win32
typedef struct VkD3D12FenceSubmitInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    uint32_t waitSemaphoreValuesCount;
    const uint64_t* pWaitSemaphoreValues;
    uint32_t signalSemaphoreValuesCount;
    const uint64_t* pSignalSemaphoreValues;
} VkD3D12FenceSubmitInfoKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `waitSemaphoreValuesCount` is the number of semaphore wait values specified in `pWaitSemaphoreValues`.
- `pWaitSemaphoreValues` is a pointer to an array of `waitSemaphoreValuesCount` values for the corresponding semaphores in `VkSubmitInfo::pWaitSemaphores` to wait for.
- `signalSemaphoreValuesCount` is the number of semaphore signal values specified in `pSignalSemaphoreValues`.
- `pSignalSemaphoreValues` is a pointer to an array of `signalSemaphoreValuesCount` values for the corresponding semaphores in `VkSubmitInfo::pSignalSemaphores` to set when signaled.

If the semaphore in `VkSubmitInfo::pWaitSemaphores` or `VkSubmitInfo::pSignalSemaphores` corresponding to an entry in `pWaitSemaphoreValues` or `pSignalSemaphoreValues` respectively does not currently have a payload referring to a Direct3D 12 fence, the implementation must ignore the value in the `pWaitSemaphoreValues` or `pSignalSemaphoreValues` entry.

**Note**
As the introduction of the external semaphore handle type `VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_FENCE_BIT` predates that of timeline semaphores, support for importing semaphore payloads from external handles of that type into semaphores created (implicitly or explicitly) with a `VkSemaphoreType` of `VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_BINARY` is preserved for backwards compatibility. However, applications should prefer importing such handle types into semaphores created with a `VkSemaphoreType` of `VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE`, and use the `VkTimelineSemaphoreSubmitInfo` structure instead of the `VkD3D12FenceSubmitInfoKHR` structure to specify the values to use when waiting for and signaling such semaphores.
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkD3D12FenceSubmitInfoKHR-waitSemaphoreValuesCount-00079
  waitSemaphoreValuesCount must be the same value as VkSubmitInfo::waitSemaphoreCount, where VkSubmitInfo is in the pNext chain of this VkD3D12FenceSubmitInfoKHR structure

- VUID-VkD3D12FenceSubmitInfoKHR-signalSemaphoreValuesCount-00080
  signalSemaphoreValuesCount must be the same value as VkSubmitInfo::signalSemaphoreCount, where VkSubmitInfo is in the pNext chain of this VkD3D12FenceSubmitInfoKHR structure

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkD3D12FenceSubmitInfoKHR-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_D3D12_FENCE_SUBMIT_INFO_KHR

- VUID-VkD3D12FenceSubmitInfoKHR-pWaitSemaphoreValues-parameter
  If waitSemaphoreValuesCount is not 0, and pWaitSemaphoreValues is not NULL, pWaitSemaphoreValues must be a valid pointer to an array of waitSemaphoreValuesCount uint64_t values

- VUID-VkD3D12FenceSubmitInfoKHR-pSignalSemaphoreValues-parameter
  If signalSemaphoreValuesCount is not 0, and pSignalSemaphoreValues is not NULL, pSignalSemaphoreValues must be a valid pointer to an array of signalSemaphoreValuesCount uint64_t values

When submitting work that operates on memory imported from a Direct3D 11 resource to a queue, the keyed mutex mechanism may be used in addition to Vulkan semaphores to synchronize the work. Keyed mutexes are a property of a properly created shareable Direct3D 11 resource. They can only be used if the imported resource was created with the D3D11_RESOURCE_MISC_SHARED_KEYEDMUTEX flag.

To acquire keyed mutexes before submitted work and/or release them after, add a VkWin32KeyedMutexAcquireReleaseInfoKHR structure to the pNext chain of the VkSubmitInfo structure.

The VkWin32KeyedMutexAcquireReleaseInfoKHR structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkWin32KeyedMutexAcquireReleaseInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    uint32_t acquireCount;
    const VkDeviceMemory* pAcquireSyncs;
    const uint64_t* pAcquireKeys;
    const uint32_t* pAcquireTimeouts;
    uint32_t releaseCount;
    const VkDeviceMemory* pReleaseSyncs;
    const uint64_t* pReleaseKeys;
} VkWin32KeyedMutexAcquireReleaseInfoKHR;

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `acquireCount` is the number of entries in the `pAcquireSyncs`, `pAcquireKeys`, and `pAcquireTimeouts` arrays.
- `pAcquireSyncs` is a pointer to an array of `VkDeviceMemory` objects which were imported from Direct3D 11 resources.
- `pAcquireKeys` is a pointer to an array of mutex key values to wait for prior to beginning the submitted work. Entries refer to the keyed mutex associated with the corresponding entries in `pAcquireSyncs`.
- `pAcquireTimeouts` is a pointer to an array of timeout values, in millisecond units, for each acquire specified in `pAcquireKeys`.
- `releaseCount` is the number of entries in the `pReleaseSyncs` and `pReleaseKeys` arrays.
- `pReleaseSyncs` is a pointer to an array of `VkDeviceMemory` objects which were imported from Direct3D 11 resources.
- `pReleaseKeys` is a pointer to an array of mutex key values to set when the submitted work has completed. Entries refer to the keyed mutex associated with the corresponding entries in `pReleaseSyncs`.

**Valid Usage**

- [VUID-VkWin32KeyedMutexAcquireReleaseInfoKHR-pAcquireSyncs-00081](#) Each member of `pAcquireSyncs` and `pReleaseSyncs` must be a device memory object imported by setting `VkImportMemoryWin32HandleInfoKHR::handleType` to `VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D11_TEXTURE_BIT` or `VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D11_TEXTURE_KMT_BIT`
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkWin32KeyedMutexAcquireReleaseInfoKHR-sType-sType**
  
  *sType must be* `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_WIN32_KEYED_MUTEX_ACQUIRE_RELEASE_INFO_KHR`

- **VUID-VkWin32KeyedMutexAcquireReleaseInfoKHR-pAcquireSyncs-parameter**
  
  If `acquireCount` is not 0, *pAcquireSyncs must be a valid pointer to an array of acquireCount valid VkDeviceMemory handles*

- **VUID-VkWin32KeyedMutexAcquireReleaseInfoKHR-pAcquireKeys-parameter**
  
  If `acquireCount` is not 0, *pAcquireKeys must be a valid pointer to an array of acquireCount uint64_t values*

- **VUID-VkWin32KeyedMutexAcquireReleaseInfoKHR-pAcquireTimeouts-parameter**
  
  If `acquireCount` is not 0, *pAcquireTimeouts must be a valid pointer to an array of acquireCount uint32_t values*

- **VUID-VkWin32KeyedMutexAcquireReleaseInfoKHR-pReleaseSyncs-parameter**
  
  If `releaseCount` is not 0, *pReleaseSyncs must be a valid pointer to an array of releaseCount valid VkDeviceMemory handles*

- **VUID-VkWin32KeyedMutexAcquireReleaseInfoKHR-pReleaseKeys-parameter**
  
  If `releaseCount` is not 0, *pReleaseKeys must be a valid pointer to an array of releaseCount uint64_t values*

- **VUID-VkWin32KeyedMutexAcquireReleaseInfoKHR-commonparent**
  
  Both of the elements of *pAcquireSyncs, and the elements of pReleaseSyncs that are valid handles of non-ignored parameters must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same VkDevice*

If the *pNext chain of VkSubmitInfo includes a VkDeviceGroupSubmitInfo structure, then that structure includes device indices and masks specifying which physical devices execute semaphore operations and command buffers.*

The *VkDeviceGroupSubmitInfo structure is defined as:*

```c
typedef struct VkDeviceGroupSubmitInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    uint32_t waitSemaphoreCount;
    const uint32_t* pWaitSemaphoreDeviceIndices;
    uint32_t commandBufferCount;
    const uint32_t* pCommandBufferDeviceMasks;
    uint32_t signalSemaphoreCount;
    const uint32_t* pSignalSemaphoreDeviceIndices;
} VkDeviceGroupSubmitInfo;
```

or the equivalent
typedef VkDeviceGroupSubmitInfo VkDeviceGroupSubmitInfoKHR;

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `waitSemaphoreCount` is the number of elements in the `pWaitSemaphoreDeviceIndices` array.
- `pWaitSemaphoreDeviceIndices` is a pointer to an array of `waitSemaphoreCount` device indices indicating which physical device executes the semaphore wait operation in the corresponding element of `VkSubmitInfo::pWaitSemaphores`.
- `commandBufferCount` is the number of elements in the `pCommandBufferDeviceMasks` array.
- `pCommandBufferDeviceMasks` is a pointer to an array of `commandBufferCount` device masks indicating which physical devices execute the command buffer in the corresponding element of `VkSubmitInfo::pCommandBuffers`. A physical device executes the command buffer if the corresponding bit is set in the mask.
- `signalSemaphoreCount` is the number of elements in the `pSignalSemaphoreDeviceIndices` array.
- `pSignalSemaphoreDeviceIndices` is a pointer to an array of `signalSemaphoreCount` device indices indicating which physical device executes the semaphore signal operation in the corresponding element of `VkSubmitInfo::pSignalSemaphores`.

If this structure is not present, semaphore operations and command buffers execute on device index zero.

**Valid Usage**

- VUID-VkDeviceGroupSubmitInfo-waitSemaphoreCount-00082
  `waitSemaphoreCount` must equal `VkSubmitInfo::waitSemaphoreCount`

- VUID-VkDeviceGroupSubmitInfo-commandBufferCount-00083
  `commandBufferCount` must equal `VkSubmitInfo::commandBufferCount`

- VUID-VkDeviceGroupSubmitInfo-signalSemaphoreCount-00084
  `signalSemaphoreCount` must equal `VkSubmitInfo::signalSemaphoreCount`

- VUID-VkDeviceGroupSubmitInfo-pWaitSemaphoreDeviceIndices-00085
  All elements of `pWaitSemaphoreDeviceIndices` and `pSignalSemaphoreDeviceIndices` must be valid device indices

- VUID-VkDeviceGroupSubmitInfo-pCommandBufferDeviceMasks-00086
  All elements of `pCommandBufferDeviceMasks` must be valid device masks
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkDeviceGroupSubmitInfo-sType-sType
  
  **sType** must be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEVICE_GROUP_SUBMIT_INFO**

- VUID-VkDeviceGroupSubmitInfo-pWaitSemaphoreDeviceIndices-parameter
  
  If **waitSemaphoreCount** is not 0, **pWaitSemaphoreDeviceIndices** must be a valid pointer to an array of **waitSemaphoreCount uint32_t** values

- VUID-VkDeviceGroupSubmitInfo-pCommandBufferDeviceMasks-parameter
  
  If **commandBufferCount** is not 0, **pCommandBufferDeviceMasks** must be a valid pointer to an array of **commandBufferCount uint32_t** values

- VUID-VkDeviceGroupSubmitInfo-pSignalSemaphoreDeviceIndices-parameter
  
  If **signalSemaphoreCount** is not 0, **pSignalSemaphoreDeviceIndices** must be a valid pointer to an array of **signalSemaphoreCount uint32_t** values

If the **pNext** chain of **VkSubmitInfo** includes a **VkPerformanceQuerySubmitInfoKHR** structure, then the structure indicates which counter pass is active for the batch in that submit.

The **VkPerformanceQuerySubmitInfoKHR** structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_performance_query
typedef struct VkPerformanceQuerySubmitInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType   sType;
    const void*       pNext;
    uint32_t          counterPassIndex;
} VkPerformanceQuerySubmitInfoKHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **counterPassIndex** specifies which counter pass index is active.

If the **VkSubmitInfo::pNext** chain does not include this structure, the batch defaults to use counter pass index 0.

Valid Usage

- VUID-VkPerformanceQuerySubmitInfoKHR-counterPassIndex-03221
  
  **counterPassIndex** must be less than the number of counter passes required by any queries within the batch. The required number of counter passes for a performance query is obtained by calling **vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyPerformanceQueryPassesKHR**
6.6. Queue Forward Progress

When using binary semaphores, the application must ensure that command buffer submissions will be able to complete without any subsequent operations by the application on any queue. After any call to `vkQueueSubmit` (or other queue operation), for every queued wait on a semaphore created with a `VkSemaphoreType` of `VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_BINARY` there must be a prior signal of that semaphore that will not be consumed by a different wait on the semaphore.

When using timeline semaphores, wait-before-signal behavior is well-defined and applications can submit work via `vkQueueSubmit` which defines a timeline semaphore wait operation before submitting a corresponding semaphore signal operation. For each timeline semaphore wait operation defined by a call to `vkQueueSubmit`, the application must ensure that a corresponding semaphore signal operation is executed before forward progress can be made.

Command buffers in the submission can include `vkCmdWaitEvents` commands that wait on events that will not be signaled by earlier commands in the queue. Such events must be signaled by the application using `vkSetEvent`, and the `vkCmdWaitEvents` commands that wait upon them must not be inside a render pass instance. The event must be set before the `vkCmdWaitEvents` command is executed.

**Note**
Implementations may have some tolerance for waiting on events to be set, but this is defined outside of the scope of Vulkan.

6.7. Secondary Command Buffer Execution

A secondary command buffer must not be directly submitted to a queue. Instead, secondary command buffers are recorded to execute as part of a primary command buffer with the command:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkCmdExecuteCommands(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    uint32_t commandBufferCount,
    const VkCommandBuffer* pCommandBuffers);
```

- `commandBuffer` is a handle to a primary command buffer that the secondary command buffers are executed in.
- `commandBufferCount` is the length of the `pCommandBuffers` array.
• \textit{pCommandBuffers} is a pointer to an array of \textit{commandBufferCount} secondary command buffer handles, which are recorded to execute in the primary command buffer in the order they are listed in the array.

If any element of \textit{pCommandBuffers} was not recorded with the \texttt{VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_USAGE_SIMULTANEOUS_USE_BIT} flag, and it was recorded into any other primary command buffer which is currently in the \textit{executable or recording state}, that primary command buffer becomes \textit{invalid}.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkCmdExecuteCommands-pCommandBuffers-00088**
  
  Each element of `pCommandBuffers` **must** have been allocated with a `level` of `VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_LEVEL_SECONDARY`

- **VUID-vkCmdExecuteCommands-pCommandBuffers-00089**
  
  Each element of `pCommandBuffers` **must** be in the pending or executable state

- **VUID-vkCmdExecuteCommands-pCommandBuffers-00091**
  
  If any element of `pCommandBuffers` was not recorded with the `VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_USAGE_SIMULTANEOUS_USE_BIT` flag, it **must** not be in the pending state

- **VUID-vkCmdExecuteCommands-pCommandBuffers-00092**
  
  If any element of `pCommandBuffers` was not recorded with the `VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_USAGE_SIMULTANEOUS_USE_BIT` flag, it **must** not have already been recorded to `commandBuffer`

- **VUID-vkCmdExecuteCommands-pCommandBuffers-00093**
  
  If any element of `pCommandBuffers` was not recorded with the `VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_USAGE_SIMULTANEOUS_USE_BIT` flag, it **must** not appear more than once in `pCommandBuffers`

- **VUID-vkCmdExecuteCommands-pCommandBuffers-00094**
  
  Each element of `pCommandBuffers` **must** have been allocated from a `VkCommandPool` that was created for the same queue family as the `VkCommandPool` from which `commandBuffer` was allocated

- **VUID-vkCmdExecuteCommands-contents-00095**
  
  If `vkCmdExecuteCommands` is being called within a render pass instance, that render pass instance **must** have been begun with the contents parameter of `vkCmdBeginRenderPass` set to `VK_SUBPASS_CONTENTS_SECONDARY_COMMAND_BUFFERS`

- **VUID-vkCmdExecuteCommands-pCommandBuffers-00096**
  
  If `vkCmdExecuteCommands` is being called within a render pass instance, each element of `pCommandBuffers` **must** have been recorded with the `VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_USAGE_RENDER_PASS_CONTINUE_BIT`

- **VUID-vkCmdExecuteCommands-pCommandBuffers-00097**
  
  If `vkCmdExecuteCommands` is being called within a render pass instance, each element of `pCommandBuffers` **must** have been recorded with `VkCommandBufferInheritanceInfo::subpass` set to the index of the subpass which the given command buffer will be executed in

- **VUID-vkCmdExecuteCommands-pInheritanceInfo-00098**
  
  If `vkCmdExecuteCommands` is being called within a render pass instance, the render passes specified in the `pBeginInfo->pInheritanceInfo->renderPass` members of the `vkBeginCommandBuffer` commands used to begin recording each element of `pCommandBuffers` **must** be compatible with the current render pass

- **VUID-vkCmdExecuteCommands-pCommandBuffers-00099**
  
  If `vkCmdExecuteCommands` is being called within a render pass instance, and any element of `pCommandBuffers` was recorded with `VkCommandBufferInheritanceInfo::framebuffer` not equal to `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, that `VkFramebuffer` **must** match the `VkFramebuffer` used in the current render pass instance
If `vkCmdExecuteCommands` is not being called within a render pass instance, each element of `pCommandBuffers` must not have been recorded with the `VK_COMMAND_BUFFER_USAGE_RENDER_PASS_CONTINUE_BIT`.

If the inherited queries feature is not enabled, `commandBuffer` must not have any queries active.

If `commandBuffer` has a `VK_QUERY_TYPE_OCCLUSION` query active, then each element of `pCommandBuffers` must have been recorded with `VkCommandBufferInheritanceInfo::occlusionQueryEnable` set to `VK_TRUE`.

If `commandBuffer` has a `VK_QUERY_TYPE_OCCLUSION` query active, then each element of `pCommandBuffers` must have been recorded with `VkCommandBufferInheritanceInfo::queryFlags` having all bits set that are set for the query.

If `commandBuffer` has a `VK_QUERY_TYPE_PIPELINE_STATISTICS` query active, then each element of `pCommandBuffers` must have been recorded with `VkCommandBufferInheritanceInfo::pipelineStatistics` having all bits set that are set in the `VkQueryPool` the query uses.

Each element of `pCommandBuffers` must not begin any query types that are active in `commandBuffer`.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle.
- `pCommandBuffers` must be a valid pointer to an array of `commandBufferCount` valid `VkCommandBuffer` handles.
- `commandBuffer` must be in the recording state.
- The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support transfer, graphics, or compute operations.
- `commandBuffer` must be a primary `VkCommandBuffer`.
- `commandBufferCount` must be greater than 0.
- Both of `commandBuffer`, and the elements of `pCommandBuffers` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`.
Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized.
- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized.

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Transfer, Graphics, Compute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6.8. Command Buffer Device Mask

Each command buffer has a piece of state storing the current device mask of the command buffer. This mask controls which physical devices within the logical device all subsequent commands will execute on, including state-setting commands, action commands, and synchronization commands.

Scissor and viewport state can be set to different values on each physical device (only when set as dynamic state), and each physical device will render using its local copy of the state. Other state is shared between physical devices, such that all physical devices use the most recently set values for the state. However, when recording an action command that uses a piece of state, the most recent command that set that state must have included all physical devices that execute the action command in its current device mask.

The command buffer’s device mask is orthogonal to the `pCommandBufferDeviceMasks` member of `VkDeviceGroupSubmitInfo`. Commands only execute on a physical device if the device index is set in both device masks.

If the `pNext` chain of `VkCommandBufferBeginInfo` includes a `VkDeviceGroupCommandBufferBeginInfo` structure, then that structure includes an initial device mask for the command buffer.

The `VkDeviceGroupCommandBufferBeginInfo` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkDeviceGroupCommandBufferBeginInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    uint32_t deviceMask;
} VkDeviceGroupCommandBufferBeginInfo;
```

or the equivalent
typedef VkDeviceGroupCommandBufferBeginInfo VkDeviceGroupCommandBufferBeginInfoKHR;

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **deviceMask** is the initial value of the command buffer's device mask.

The initial device mask also acts as an upper bound on the set of devices that can ever be in the device mask in the command buffer.

If this structure is not present, the initial value of a command buffer's device mask is set to include all physical devices in the logical device when the command buffer begins recording.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkDeviceGroupCommandBufferBeginInfo-deviceMask-00106**
  - deviceMask must be a valid device mask value

- **VUID-VkDeviceGroupCommandBufferBeginInfo-deviceMask-00107**
  - deviceMask must not be zero

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkDeviceGroupCommandBufferBeginInfo-sType-sType**
  - sType must be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEVICE_GROUP_COMMAND_BUFFER_BEGIN_INFO**

To update the current device mask of a command buffer, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_device_group
void vkCmdSetDeviceMaskKHR(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    uint32_t deviceMask);
```

- **commandBuffer** is command buffer whose current device mask is modified.
- **deviceMask** is the new value of the current device mask.

**deviceMask** is used to filter out subsequent commands from executing on all physical devices whose bit indices are not set in the mask, except commands beginning a render pass instance, commands transitioning to the next subpass in the render pass instance, and commands ending a render pass instance, which always execute on the set of physical devices whose bit indices are included in the **deviceMask** member of the **VkDeviceGroupRenderPassBeginInfo** structure passed to the command beginning the corresponding render pass instance.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkCmdSetDeviceMask-deviceMask-00108
  
  `deviceMask` must be a valid device mask value

- VUID-vkCmdSetDeviceMask-deviceMask-00109
  
  `deviceMask` must not be zero

- VUID-vkCmdSetDeviceMask-deviceMask-00110
  
  `deviceMask` must not include any set bits that were not in the `VkDeviceGroupCommandBufferBeginInfo::deviceMask` value when the command buffer began recording

- VUID-vkCmdSetDeviceMask-deviceMask-00111
  
  If `vkCmdSetDeviceMask` is called inside a render pass instance, `deviceMask` must not include any set bits that were not in the `VkDeviceGroupRenderPassBeginInfo::deviceMask` value when the render pass instance began recording

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdSetDeviceMask-commandBuffer-parameter
  
  `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle

- VUID-vkCmdSetDeviceMask-commandBuffer-recording
  
  `commandBuffer` must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdSetDeviceMask-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  
  The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support graphics, compute, or transfer operations

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized

- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Transfer</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 7. Synchronization and Cache Control

Synchronization of access to resources is primarily the responsibility of the application in Vulkan. The order of execution of commands with respect to the host and other commands on the device has few implicit guarantees, and needs to be explicitly specified. Memory caches and other optimizations are also explicitly managed, requiring that the flow of data through the system is largely under application control.

Whilst some implicit guarantees exist between commands, five explicit synchronization mechanisms are exposed by Vulkan:

**Fences**
- Fences can be used to communicate to the host that execution of some task on the device has completed.

**Semaphores**
- Semaphores can be used to control resource access across multiple queues.

**Events**
- Events provide a fine-grained synchronization primitive which can be signaled either within a command buffer or by the host, and can be waited upon within a command buffer or queried on the host.

**Pipeline Barriers**
- Pipeline barriers also provide synchronization control within a command buffer, but at a single point, rather than with separate signal and wait operations.

**Render Passes**
- Render passes provide a useful synchronization framework for most rendering tasks, built upon the concepts in this chapter. Many cases that would otherwise need an application to use other synchronization primitives can be expressed more efficiently as part of a render pass.

### 7.1. Execution and Memory Dependencies

An *operation* is an arbitrary amount of work to be executed on the host, a device, or an external entity such as a presentation engine. Synchronization commands introduce explicit *execution dependencies*, and *memory dependencies* between two sets of operations defined by the command’s two *synchronization scopes*.

The synchronization scopes define which other operations a synchronization command is able to create execution dependencies with. Any type of operation that is not in a synchronization command’s synchronization scopes will not be included in the resulting dependency. For example, for many synchronization commands, the synchronization scopes can be limited to just operations executing in specific *pipeline stages*, which allows other pipeline stages to be excluded from a dependency. Other scoping options are possible, depending on the particular command.
An execution dependency is a guarantee that for two sets of operations, the first set must happen-before the second set. If an operation happens-before another operation, then the first operation must complete before the second operation is initiated. More precisely:

- Let A and B be separate sets of operations.
- Let S be a synchronization command.
- Let $A_s$ and $B_s$ be the synchronization scopes of S.
- Let $A'$ be the intersection of sets A and $A_s$.
- Let $B'$ be the intersection of sets B and $B_s$.
- Submitting A, S and B for execution, in that order, will result in execution dependency $E$ between $A'$ and $B'$.
- Execution dependency $E$ guarantees that $A'$ happens-before $B'$.

An execution dependency chain is a sequence of execution dependencies that form a happens-before relation between the first dependency's $A'$ and the final dependency's $B'$. For each consecutive pair of execution dependencies, a chain exists if the intersection of $B_s$ in the first dependency and $A_s$ in the second dependency is not an empty set. The formation of a single execution dependency from an execution dependency chain can be described by substituting the following in the description of execution dependencies:

- Let S be a set of synchronization commands that generate an execution dependency chain.
- Let $A_s$ be the first synchronization scope of the first command in S.
- Let $B_s$ be the second synchronization scope of the last command in S.

Execution dependencies alone are not sufficient to guarantee that values resulting from writes in one set of operations can be read from another set of operations.

Three additional types of operations are used to control memory access. Availability operations cause the values generated by specified memory write accesses to become available to a memory domain for future access. Any available value remains available until a subsequent write to the same memory location occurs (whether it is made available or not) or the memory is freed. Memory domain operations cause writes that are available to a source memory domain to become available to a destination memory domain (an example of this is making writes available to the host domain available to the device domain). Visibility operations cause values available to a memory domain to become visible to specified memory accesses.

Availability, visibility, memory domains, and memory domain operations are formally defined in the Availability and Visibility section of the Memory Model chapter. Which API operations perform each of these operations is defined in Availability, Visibility, and Domain Operations.

A memory dependency is an execution dependency which includes availability and visibility operations such that:

- The first set of operations happens-before the availability operation.
- The availability operation happens-before the visibility operation.
- The visibility operation happens-before the second set of operations.
Once written values are made visible to a particular type of memory access, they can be read or written by that type of memory access. Most synchronization commands in Vulkan define a memory dependency.

The specific memory accesses that are made available and visible are defined by the access scopes of a memory dependency. Any type of access that is in a memory dependency's first access scope and occurs in $A'$ is made available. Any type of access that is in a memory dependency's second access scope and occurs in $B'$ has any available writes made visible to it. Any type of operation that is not in a synchronization command's access scopes will not be included in the resulting dependency.

A memory dependency enforces availability and visibility of memory accesses and execution order between two sets of operations. Adding to the description of execution dependency chains:

- Let $\mathbf{a}$ be the set of memory accesses performed by $A'$.
- Let $\mathbf{b}$ be the set of memory accesses performed by $B'$.
- Let $\mathbf{a}_s$ be the first access scope of the first command in $\mathbf{S}$.
- Let $\mathbf{b}_s$ be the second access scope of the last command in $\mathbf{S}$.
- Let $\mathbf{a}'$ be the intersection of sets $\mathbf{a}$ and $\mathbf{a}_s$.
- Let $\mathbf{b}'$ be the intersection of sets $\mathbf{b}$ and $\mathbf{b}_s$.
- Submitting $\mathbf{A}$, $\mathbf{S}$ and $\mathbf{B}$ for execution, in that order, will result in a memory dependency $\mathbf{m}$ between $A'$ and $B'$.
- Memory dependency $\mathbf{m}$ guarantees that:
  - Memory writes in $\mathbf{a}'$ are made available.
  - Available memory writes, including those from $\mathbf{a}'$, are made visible to $\mathbf{b}'$.

Note

Execution and memory dependencies are used to solve data hazards, i.e. to ensure that read and write operations occur in a well-defined order. Write-after-read hazards can be solved with just an execution dependency, but read-after-write and write-after-write hazards need appropriate memory dependencies to be included between them. If an application does not include dependencies to solve these hazards, the results and execution orders of memory accesses are undefined.

7.1.1. Image Layout Transitions

Image subresources can be transitioned from one layout to another as part of a memory dependency (e.g. by using an image memory barrier). When a layout transition is specified in a memory dependency, it happens-after the availability operations in the memory dependency, and happens-before the visibility operations. Image layout transitions may perform read and write accesses on all memory bound to the image subresource range, so applications must ensure that all memory writes have been made available before a layout transition is executed. Available memory is automatically made visible to a layout transition, and writes performed by a layout transition are automatically made available.
Layout transitions always apply to a particular image subresource range, and specify both an old layout and new layout. The old layout must either be `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_UNDEFINED`, or match the current layout of the image subresource range. If the old layout matches the current layout of the image subresource range, the transition preserves the contents of that range. If the old layout is `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_UNDEFINED`, the contents of that range may be discarded.

As image layout transitions may perform read and write accesses on the memory bound to the image, if the image subresource affected by the layout transition is bound to peer memory for any device in the current device mask then the memory heap the bound memory comes from must support the `VK_PEER_MEMORY_FEATURE_GENERIC_SRC_BIT` and `VK_PEER_MEMORY_FEATURE_GENERIC_DST_BIT` capabilities as returned by `vkGetDeviceGroupPeerMemoryFeatures`.

Note

Applications must ensure that layout transitions happen-after all operations accessing the image with the old layout, and happen-before any operations that will access the image with the new layout. Layout transitions are potentially read/write operations, so not defining appropriate memory dependencies to guarantee this will result in a data race.

Image layout transitions interact with memory aliasing.

Layout transitions that are performed via image memory barriers execute in their entirety in submission order, relative to other image layout transitions submitted to the same queue, including those performed by render passes. In effect there is an implicit execution dependency from each such layout transition to all layout transitions previously submitted to the same queue.

7.1.2. Pipeline Stages

The work performed by an action or synchronization command consists of multiple operations, which are performed as a sequence of logically independent steps known as pipeline stages. The exact pipeline stages executed depend on the particular command that is used, and current command buffer state when the command was recorded. Drawing commands, dispatching commands, copy commands, clear commands, and synchronization commands all execute in different sets of pipeline stages. Synchronization commands do not execute in a defined pipeline stage.

Note

Operations performed by synchronization commands (e.g. availability and visibility operations) are not executed by a defined pipeline stage. However other commands can still synchronize with them by using the synchronization scopes to create a dependency chain.

Execution of operations across pipeline stages must adhere to implicit ordering guarantees, particularly including pipeline stage order. Otherwise, execution across pipeline stages may overlap or execute out of order with regards to other stages, unless otherwise enforced by an execution dependency.

Several of the synchronization commands include pipeline stage parameters, restricting the
synchronization scopes for that command to just those stages. This allows fine grained control over the exact execution dependencies and accesses performed by action commands. Implementations should use these pipeline stages to avoid unnecessary stalls or cache flushing.

Bits which can be set in a VkPipelineStageFlags2KHR mask, specifying stages of execution, are:

```cpp
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2
// Flag bits for VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR
typedef VkFlags64 VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR;
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_NONE_KHR = 0ULL;
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_TOP_OF_PIPE_BIT_KHR = 0x00000001ULL;
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_DRAW_INDIRECT_BIT_KHR = 0x00000002ULL;
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VERTEX_INPUT_BIT_KHR = 0x00000004ULL;
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VERTEX_SHADER_BIT_KHR = 0x00000008ULL;
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT_KHR = 0x00000010ULL;
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_TESSELLATION_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT_KHR = 0x00000020ULL;
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT_KHR = 0x00000040ULL;
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_FRAGMENT_SHADER_BIT_KHR = 0x00000080ULL;
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_EARLY_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT_KHR = 0x00000100ULL;
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_LATE_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT_KHR = 0x00000200ULL;
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT_KHR = 0x00000400ULL;
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COMPUTE_SHADER_BIT_KHR = 0x00000800ULL;
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_TRANSFER_BIT_KHR = 0x00001000ULL;
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_TRANSFER_BIT_KHR = 0x00001000ULL;
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_BOTTOM_OF_PIPE_BIT_KHR = 0x00002000ULL;
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_HOST_BIT_KHR = 0x00004000ULL;
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR = 0x00008000ULL;
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR = 0x00010000ULL;
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COPY_BIT_KHR = 0x100000000ULL;
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_RESOLVE_BIT_KHR = 0x200000000ULL;
```
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_BLIT_BIT_KHR = 0x400000000ULL;
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_CLEAR_BIT_KHR = 0x800000000ULL;
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_INDEX_INPUT_BIT_KHR = 0x1000000000ULL;
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VERTEX_ATTRIBUTE_INPUT_BIT_KHR = 0x2000000000ULL;
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_PRE_RASTERIZATION_SHADERS_BIT_KHR = 0x4000000000ULL;

#ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_decode_queue
    static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VIDEO_DECODE_BIT_KHR = 0x04000000ULL;
#endif

#ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_encode_queue
    static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VIDEO_ENCODE_BIT_KHR = 0x08000000ULL;
#endif

// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2 with VK_EXT_transform_feedback
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_TRANSFORM_FEEDBACK_BIT_EXT = 0x01000000ULL;
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2 with VK_EXT_conditional_rendering
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_CONDITIONAL_RENDERING_BIT_EXT = 0x00040000ULL;
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2 with VK_NV_device_generated_commands
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COMMAND_PREPROCESS_BIT_NV = 0x00020000ULL;
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2 with VK_KHR_fragment_shading_rate
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_BIT_KHR = 0x00400000ULL;
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2 with VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR = 0x02000000ULL;
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2 with VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_BIT_KHR = 0x00200000ULL;
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2 with VK_NV_ray_tracing
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_BIT_NV = 0x00200000ULL;
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2 with VK_NV_ray_tracing
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_NV = 0x02000000ULL;
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2 with VK_EXT_fragment_density_map
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_FRAGMENT_DENSITY_PROCESS_BIT_EXT = 0x00800000ULL;

162 | Chapter 7. Synchronization and Cache Control
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_TASK_SHADER_BIT_NV = 0x00080000ULL;
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2 with VK_NV_mesh_shader
static const VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_MESH_SHADER_BIT_NV = 0x00100000ULL;

- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_NONE_KHR** specifies no stages of execution.
- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_DRAW_INDIRECT_BIT_KHR** specifies the stage of the pipeline where indirect command parameters are consumed.
- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_INDEX_INPUT_BIT_KHR** specifies the stage of the pipeline where index buffers are consumed.
- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VERTEX_ATTRIBUTE_INPUT_BIT_KHR** specifies the stage of the pipeline where vertex buffers are consumed.
- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VERTEX_INPUT_BIT_KHR** is equivalent to the logical OR of:
  - **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_INDEX_INPUT_BIT_KHR**
  - **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VERTEX_ATTRIBUTE_INPUT_BIT_KHR**
- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VERTEX_SHADER_BIT_KHR** specifies the vertex shader stage.
- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT_KHR** specifies the tessellation control shader stage.
- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_TESSELLATION_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT_KHR** specifies the tessellation evaluation shader stage.
- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT_KHR** specifies the geometry shader stage.
- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_PRE_RASTERIZATION_SHADERS_BIT_KHR** is equivalent to specifying all supported pre-rasterization shader stages:
  - **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VERTEX_SHADER_BIT_KHR**
  - **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT_KHR**
  - **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_TESSELLATION_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT_KHR**
  - **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT_KHR**
- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_FRAGMENT_SHADER_BIT_KHR** specifies the fragment shader stage.
- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_EARLY_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT_KHR** specifies the stage of the pipeline where early fragment tests (depth and stencil tests before fragment shading) are performed. This stage also includes subpass load operations for framebuffer attachments with a depth/stencil format.
- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_LATE_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT_KHR** specifies the stage of the pipeline where late fragment tests (depth and stencil tests after fragment shading) are performed. This stage also includes subpass store operations for framebuffer attachments with a depth/stencil format.
- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT_KHR** specifies the stage of the pipeline after blending where the final color values are output from the pipeline. This stage also includes subpass load and store operations and multisample resolve operations for framebuffer attachments with a color or depth/stencil format.
- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COMPUTE_SHADER_BIT_KHR** specifies the compute shader stage.
• **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_HOST_BIT_KHR** specifies a pseudo-stage indicating execution on the host of reads/writes of device memory. This stage is not invoked by any commands recorded in a command buffer.

• **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COPY_BIT_KHR** specifies the execution of all copy commands, including `vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults`.

• **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_BLIT_BIT_KHR** specifies the execution of `vkCmdBlitImage`.

• **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_RESOLVE_BIT_KHR** specifies the execution of `vkCmdResolveImage`.

• **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_CLEAR_BIT_KHR** specifies the execution of clear commands, with the exception of `vkCmdClearAttachments`.

• **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_TRANSFER_BIT_KHR** is equivalent to specifying all of:
  - **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COPY_BIT_KHR**
  - **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_BLIT_BIT_KHR**
  - **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_RESOLVE_BIT_KHR**
  - **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_CLEAR_BIT_KHR**

• **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_BIT_KHR** specifies the execution of the ray tracing shader stages.

• **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR** specifies the execution of acceleration structure commands.

• **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR** specifies the execution of all graphics pipeline stages, and is equivalent to the logical OR of:
  - **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_DRAW_INDIRECT_BIT_KHR**
  - **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VERTEX_INPUT_BIT_KHR**
  - **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VERTEX_SHADER_BIT_KHR**
  - **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT_KHR**
  - **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_TESSELLATION_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT_KHR**
  - **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT_KHR**
  - **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_FRAGMENT_SHADER_BIT_KHR**
  - **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_EARLY_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT_KHR**
  - **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_LATE_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT_KHR**
  - **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT_KHR**

• **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR** specifies all operations performed by all commands supported on the queue it is used with.

• **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_BIT_KHR** specifies the stage of the pipeline where the fragment shading rate attachment is read to determine the fragment shading rate for portions of a rasterized primitive.

• **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VIDEO_DECODE_BIT_KHR** specifies the stage of the pipeline where video decode operation are performed.

• **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VIDEO_ENCODE_BIT_KHR** specifies the stage of the pipeline where video encode operation are performed.
operation are performed.

- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_TOP_OF_PIPE_BIT_KHR** is equivalent to **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR** with **VkAccessFlags2KHR** set to 0 when specified in the second synchronization scope, but equivalent to **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_NONE_KHR** in the first scope.

- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_BOTTOM_OF_PIPE_BIT_KHR** is equivalent to **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR** with **VkAccessFlags2KHR** set to 0 when specified in the first synchronization scope, but equivalent to **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_NONE_KHR** in the second scope.

**Note**
The TOP and BOTTOM pipeline stages are deprecated, and applications should prefer **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR** and **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_NONE_KHR**.

**Note**
The **VkPipelineStageFlags2KHR** bitmask goes beyond the 31 individual bit flags allowable within a C99 enum, which is how **VkPipelineStageFlagBits** is defined. The first 31 values are common to both, and are interchangeable.

**VkPipelineStageFlags2KHR** is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more **VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR** flags:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2
typedef VkFlags64 VkPipelineStageFlags2KHR;
```

The **VkPipelineStageFlagBits** enum is defined as:
typedef enum VkPipelineStageFlagBits {
    VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TOP_OF_PIPE_BIT = 0x00000001,
    VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_DRAW_INDIRECT_BIT = 0x00000002,
    VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_VERTEX_INPUT_BIT = 0x00000004,
    VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_VERTEX_SHADER_BIT = 0x00000008,
    VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT = 0x00000010,
    VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT = 0x00000020,
    VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT = 0x00000040,
    VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADER_BIT = 0x00000080,
    VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_EARLY_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT = 0x00000100,
    VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_LATE_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT = 0x00000200,
    VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT = 0x00000400,
    VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_COMPUTE_SHADER_BIT = 0x00000800,
    VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TRANSFER_BIT = 0x00001000,
    VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_BOTTOM_OF_PIPE_BIT = 0x00002000,
    VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_HOST_BIT = 0x00004000,
    VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT = 0x00008000,
    VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT = 0x00010000,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
    VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR = 0x02000000,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline
    VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_BIT_KHR = 0x00200000,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_fragment_shading_rate
    VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_BIT_KHR = 0x00400000,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2
    VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_NONE_KHR = 0,
} VkPipelineStageFlagBits;

These values all have the same value/meaning as the equivalently named values for
VkPipelineStageFlags2KHR.

- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_NONE_KHR** specifies no stages of execution.
- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_DRAW_INDIRECT_BIT** specifies the stage of the pipeline where VkDrawIndirect* / VkDispatchIndirect* / VkTraceRaysIndirect* data structures are consumed.
- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_VERTEX_INPUT_BIT** specifies the stage of the pipeline where vertex and index buffers are consumed.
- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_VERTEX_SHADER_BIT** specifies the vertex shader stage.
- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT** specifies the tessellation control shader stage.
- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT** specifies the tessellation evaluation shader stage.
- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT** specifies the geometry shader stage.
- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADER_BIT** specifies the fragment shader stage.
- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_EARLY_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT** specifies the stage of the pipeline where early
fragment tests (depth and stencil tests before fragment shading) are performed. This stage also includes subpass load operations for framebuffer attachments with a depth/stencil format.

- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_LATE_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT** specifies the stage of the pipeline where late fragment tests (depth and stencil tests after fragment shading) are performed. This stage also includes subpass store operations for framebuffer attachments with a depth/stencil format.

- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT** specifies the stage of the pipeline after blending where the final color values are output from the pipeline. This stage also includes subpass load and store operations and multisample resolve operations for framebuffer attachments with a color or depth/stencil format.

- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_COMPUTE_SHADER_BIT** specifies the execution of a compute shader.

- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TRANSFER_BIT** specifies the following commands:
  - All copy commands, including 
    - vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults
  - vkCmdBlitImage2KHR and vkCmdBlitImage
  - vkCmdResolveImage2KHR and vkCmdResolveImage
  - All clear commands, with the exception of vkCmdClearAttachments

- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_HOST_BIT** specifies a pseudo-stage indicating execution on the host of reads/writes of device memory. This stage is not invoked by any commands recorded in a command buffer.

- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR** specifies the execution of 
  - vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR
  - vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR
  - vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureKHR
  - vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR
  - vkCmdCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR
  - vkCmdWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR.

- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_BIT_KHR** specifies the execution of the ray tracing shader stages, via 
  - vkCmdTraceRaysKHR, or 
  - vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR

- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT** specifies the execution of all graphics pipeline stages, and is equivalent to the logical OR of:
  - **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_DRAW_INDIRECT_BIT**
  - **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_VERTEX_INPUT_BIT**
  - **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_VERTEX_SHADER_BIT**
  - **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSellation_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT**
  - **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSellation_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT**
  - **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT**
  - **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADER_BIT**
  - **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_EARLY_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT**
  - **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_LATE_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT**
  - **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT**
  - **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_BIT_KHR**
• **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT** specifies all operations performed by all commands supported on the queue it is used with.

• **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_BIT_KHR** specifies the stage of the pipeline where the fragment shading rate attachment is read to determine the fragment shading rate for portions of a rasterized primitive.

• **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TOP_OF_PIPE_BIT** is equivalent to **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT** with VkAccessFlags set to 0 when specified in the second synchronization scope, but specifies no stage of execution when specified in the first scope.

• **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_BOTTOM_OF_PIPE_BIT** is equivalent to **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT** with VkAccessFlags set to 0 when specified in the first synchronization scope, but specifies no stage of execution when specified in the second scope.

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkPipelineStageFlags;
```

*VkPipelineStageFlags* is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more *VkPipelineStageFlagBits*.

If a synchronization command includes a source stage mask, its first *synchronization scope* only includes execution of the pipeline stages specified in that mask, and its first *access scope* only includes memory accesses performed by pipeline stages specified in that mask.

If a synchronization command includes a destination stage mask, its second *synchronization scope* only includes execution of the pipeline stages specified in that mask, and its second *access scope* only includes memory access performed by pipeline stages specified in that mask.

---

*Note*

Including a particular pipeline stage in the first *synchronization scope* of a command implicitly includes logically earlier pipeline stages in the synchronization scope. Similarly, the second *synchronization scope* includes logically later pipeline stages.

However, note that *access scopes* are not affected in this way - only the precise stages specified are considered part of each access scope.

Certain pipeline stages are only available on queues that support a particular set of operations. The following table lists, for each pipeline stage flag, which queue capability flag must be supported by the queue. When multiple flags are enumerated in the second column of the table, it means that the pipeline stage is supported on the queue if it supports any of the listed capability flags. For further details on queue capabilities see *Physical Device Enumeration* and *Queues*.

**Table 3. Supported pipeline stage flags**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Pipeline stage flag</th>
<th>Required queue capability flag</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TOP_OF_PIPE_BIT</td>
<td>None required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_DRAW_INDIRECT_BIT</td>
<td>VK_QUEUE_GRAPHICS_BIT or VK_QUEUE_COMPUTE_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pipeline stage flag</td>
<td>Required queue capability flag</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_VERTEX_INPUT_BIT</td>
<td>VK_QUEUE_GRAPHICS_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_VERTEX_SHADER_BIT</td>
<td>VK_QUEUE_GRAPHICS_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT</td>
<td>VK_QUEUE_GRAPHICS_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT</td>
<td>VK_QUEUE_GRAPHICS_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT</td>
<td>VK_QUEUE_GRAPHICS_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADER_BIT</td>
<td>VK_QUEUE_GRAPHICS_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_EARLY_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT</td>
<td>VK_QUEUE_GRAPHICS_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_LATE_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT</td>
<td>VK_QUEUE_GRAPHICS_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT</td>
<td>VK_QUEUE_GRAPHICS_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT_KHR</td>
<td>VK_QUEUE_GRAPHICS_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR</td>
<td>VK_QUEUE_COMPUTE_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_BIT_KHR</td>
<td>VK_QUEUE_COMPUTE_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TRANSFER_BIT</td>
<td>VK_QUEUE_GRAPHICS_BIT, VK_QUEUE_COMPUTE_BIT or VK_QUEUE_TRANSFER_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_BOTTOM_OF_PIPE_BIT</td>
<td>None required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_HOST_BIT</td>
<td>None required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT</td>
<td>VK_QUEUE_GRAPHICS_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT</td>
<td>None required</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_BIT_KHR</td>
<td>VK_QUEUE_GRAPHICS_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR</td>
<td>VK_QUEUE_COMPUTE_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_BIT_KHR</td>
<td>VK_QUEUE_COMPUTE_BIT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Pipeline stages that execute as a result of a command logically complete execution in a specific order, such that completion of a logically later pipeline stage **must** not happen-before completion of a logically earlier stage. This means that including any stage in the source stage mask for a particular synchronization command also implies that any logically earlier stages are included in $A_s$ for that command.

Similarly, initiation of a logically earlier pipeline stage **must** not happen-after initiation of a logically later pipeline stage. Including any given stage in the destination stage mask for a particular synchronization command also implies that any logically later stages are included in $B_s$ for that command.
Note
Implementations may not support synchronization at every pipeline stage for every synchronization operation. If a pipeline stage that an implementation does not support synchronization for appears in a source stage mask, it may substitute any logically later stage in its place for the first synchronization scope. If a pipeline stage that an implementation does not support synchronization for appears in a destination stage mask, it may substitute any logically earlier stage in its place for the second synchronization scope.

For example, if an implementation is unable to signal an event immediately after vertex shader execution is complete, it may instead signal the event after color attachment output has completed.

If an implementation makes such a substitution, it must not affect the semantics of execution or memory dependencies or image and buffer memory barriers.

Graphics pipelines are executable on queues supporting VK_QUEUE_GRAPHICS_BIT. Stages executed by graphics pipelines can only be specified in commands recorded for queues supporting VK_QUEUE_GRAPHICS_BIT.

The graphics pipeline executes the following stages, with the logical ordering of the stages matching the order specified here:

- VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_DRAW_INDIRECT_BIT
- VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_INDEX_INPUT_BIT_KHR
- VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VERTEX_ATTRIBUTE_INPUT_BIT_KHR
- VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_VERTEX_SHADER_BIT
- VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT
- VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT
- VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT
- VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_BIT_KHR
- VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_EARLY_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT
- VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADER_BIT
- VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_LATE_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT
- VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT

For the compute pipeline, the following stages occur in this order:

- VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_DRAW_INDIRECT_BIT
- VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_COMPUTE_SHADER_BIT

For the transfer pipeline, the following stages occur in this order:

- VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TRANSFER_BIT
For host operations, only one pipeline stage occurs, so no order is guaranteed:

- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_HOST_BIT**

For acceleration structure operations, only one pipeline stage occurs, so no order is guaranteed:

- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR**

For the ray tracing pipeline, the following stages occur in this order:

- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_DRAW_INDIRECT_BIT**
- **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_BIT_KHR**

### 7.1.3. Access Types

Memory in Vulkan can be accessed from within shader invocations and via some fixed-function stages of the pipeline. The *access type* is a function of the descriptor type used, or how a fixed-function stage accesses memory.

Some synchronization commands take sets of access types as parameters to define the *access scopes* of a memory dependency. If a synchronization command includes a *source access mask*, its first access scope only includes accesses via the access types specified in that mask. Similarly, if a synchronization command includes a *destination access mask*, its second access scope only includes accesses via the access types specified in that mask.

Bits which can be set in the srcAccessMask and dstAccessMask members of **VkMemoryBarrier2KHR**, **VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR**, and **VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR**, specifying access behavior, are:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2
// Flag bits for VkAccessFlagBits2KHR
typedef VkFlags64 VkAccessFlagBits2KHR;
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_NONE_KHR = 0ULL;
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_INDIRECT_COMMAND_READ_BIT_KHR = 0x00000001ULL;
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_INDEX_READ_BIT_KHR = 0x00000002ULL;
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_VERTEX_ATTRIBUTE_READ_BIT_KHR = 0x00000004ULL;
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_UNIFORM_READ_BIT_KHR = 0x00000008ULL;
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_INPUT_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT_KHR = 0x00000010ULL;
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_READ_BIT_KHR = 0x00000020ULL;
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_WRITE_BIT_KHR = 0x00000040ULL;
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT_KHR = 0x00000080ULL;
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_WRITE_BIT_KHR = 0x00000100ULL;
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT_KHR = 0x00000200ULL;
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_WRITE_BIT_KHR = 0x00000400ULL;
```
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_TRANSFER_READ_BIT_KHR = 0x00000800ULL;
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_TRANSFER_WRITE_BIT_KHR = 0x00001000ULL;
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_HOST_READ_BIT_KHR = 0x00002000ULL;
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_HOST_WRITE_BIT_KHR = 0x00004000ULL;
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_MEMORY_READ_BIT_KHR = 0x00008000ULL;
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_MEMORY_WRITE_BIT_KHR = 0x00010000ULL;
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_SAMPLED_READ_BIT_KHR = 0x100000000ULL;
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_STORAGE_READ_BIT_KHR = 0x200000000ULL;
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_STORAGE_WRITE_BIT_KHR = 0x400000000ULL;

#ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_decode_queue
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_VIDEO_DECODE_READ_BIT_KHR = 0x800000000ULL;
#endif
#ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_decode_queue
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_VIDEO_DECODE_WRITE_BIT_KHR = 0x1000000000ULL;
#endif
#ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_encode_queue
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_VIDEO_ENCODE_READ_BIT_KHR = 0x2000000000ULL;
#endif
#ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_encode_queue
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_VIDEO_ENCODE_WRITE_BIT_KHR = 0x4000000000ULL;
#endif
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2 with VK_EXT_transform_feedback
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_TRANSFORM_FEEDBACK_WRITE_BIT_EXT = 0x02000000ULL;
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2 with VK_EXT_transform_feedback
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_TRANSFORM_FEEDBACK_COUNTER_READ_BIT_EXT = 0x04000000ULL;
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2 with VK_EXT_transform_feedback
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_TRANSFORM_FEEDBACK_COUNTER_WRITE_BIT_EXT = 0x08000000ULL;
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2 with VK_KHR_fragment_shading_rate
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_CONDITIONAL_RENDERING_READ_BIT_EXT = 0x00100000ULL;
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2 with VK_NV_device_generated_commands
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_COMMAND_PREPROCESS_READ_BIT_NV = 0x00020000ULL;
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2 with VK_NV_device_generated_commands
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_COMMAND_PREPROCESS_WRITE_BIT_NV = 0x00040000ULL;
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2 with VK_KHR_fragment_shading_rate
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR
VK_ACCESS_2_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT_KHR = 0x00800000ULL;
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2 with VK_NV_shading_rate_image
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_SHADING_RATE_IMAGE_READ_BIT_NV = 0x00800000ULL;
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2 with VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_READ_BIT_KHR = 0x00200000ULL;
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2 with VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_WRITE_BIT_KHR = 0x00400000ULL;
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2 with VK_NV_ray_tracing
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_READ_BIT_NV = 0x00200000ULL;
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2 with VK_NV_ray_tracing
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_WRITE_BIT_NV = 0x00400000ULL;
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2 with VK_EXT_fragment_density_map
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_FRAGMENT_DENSITY_MAP_READ_BIT_EXT = 0x01000000ULL;
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2 with VK_EXT_blend_operation_advanced
static const VkAccessFlagBits2KHR VK_ACCESS_2_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_READ_NONCOHERENT_BIT_EXT = 0x00080000ULL;

• VK_ACCESS_2_NONE_KHR specifies no accesses.
• VK_ACCESS_2_MEMORY_READ_BIT_KHR specifies all read accesses. It is always valid in any access mask, and is treated as equivalent to setting all READ access flags that are valid where it is used.
• VK_ACCESS_2_MEMORY_WRITE_BIT_KHR specifies all write accesses. It is always valid in any access mask, and is treated as equivalent to setting all WRITE access flags that are valid where it is used.
• VK_ACCESS_2_INDIRECT_COMMAND_READ_BIT_KHR specifies read access to command data read from indirect buffers as part of an indirect build, trace, drawing or dispatch command. Such access occurs in the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_DRAW_INDIRECT_BIT_KHR pipeline stage.
• VK_ACCESS_2_INDEX_READ_BIT_KHR specifies read access to an index buffer as part of an indexed drawing command, bound by vkCmdBindIndexBuffer. Such access occurs in the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_INDEX_INPUT_BIT_KHR pipeline stage.
• VK_ACCESS_2_VERTEX_ATTRIBUTE_READ_BIT_KHR specifies read access to a vertex buffer as part of a drawing command, bound by vkCmdBindVertexBuffers. Such access occurs in the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VERTEX_ATTRIBUTE_INPUT_BIT_KHR pipeline stage.
• VK_ACCESS_2_UNIFORM_READ_BIT_KHR specifies read access to a uniform buffer in any shader pipeline stage.
• VK_ACCESS_2_INPUT_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT_KHR specifies read access to an input attachment within a render pass during fragment shading. Such access occurs in the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_FRAGMENT_SHADER_BIT_KHR pipeline stage.
• VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_SAMPLED_READ_BIT_KHR specifies read access to a uniform texel buffer or sampled image in any shader pipeline stage.
- **VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_STORAGE_READ_BIT_KHR** specifies read access to a storage buffer, storage texel buffer, or storage image in any shader pipeline stage.

- **VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_READ_BIT_KHR** specifies read access to a shader binding table in any shader pipeline. In addition, it is equivalent to the logical OR of:
  - VK_ACCESS_2_UNIFORM_READ_BIT_KHR
  - VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_SAMPLED_READ_BIT_KHR
  - VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_STORAGE_READ_BIT_KHR

- **VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_STORAGE_WRITE_BIT_KHR** specifies write access to a storage buffer, storage texel buffer, or storage image in any shader pipeline stage.

- **VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_WRITE_BIT_KHR** is equivalent to VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_STORAGE_WRITE_BIT_KHR.

- **VK_ACCESS_2_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT_KHR** specifies read access to a color attachment, such as via blending, logic operations, or via certain subpass load operations. Such access occurs in the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT_KHR pipeline stage.

- **VK_ACCESS_2_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_WRITE_BIT_KHR** specifies write access to a color, resolve, or depth/stencil resolve attachment during a render pass or via certain subpass load and store operations. Such access occurs in the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT_KHR pipeline stage.

- **VK_ACCESS_2_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT_KHR** specifies read access to a depth/stencil attachment, via depth or stencil operations or via certain subpass load operations. Such access occurs in the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_EARLY_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT_KHR or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_LATE_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT_KHR pipeline stages.

- **VK_ACCESS_2_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_WRITE_BIT_KHR** specifies write access to a depth/stencil attachment, via depth or stencil operations or via certain subpass load and store operations. Such access occurs in the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_EARLY_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT_KHR or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_LATE_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT_KHR pipeline stages.

- **VK_ACCESS_2_TRANSFER_READ_BIT_KHR** specifies read access to an image or buffer in a copy operation. Such access occurs in the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COPY_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_BLIT_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_RESOLVE_BIT_KHR pipeline stages.

- **VK_ACCESS_2_TRANSFER_WRITE_BIT_KHR** specifies write access to an image or buffer in a clear or copy operation. Such access occurs in the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COPY_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_BLIT_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_CLEAR_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_RESOLVE_BIT_KHR pipeline stages.

- **VK_ACCESS_2_HOST_READ_BIT_KHR** specifies read access by a host operation. Accesses of this type are not performed through a resource, but directly on memory. Such access occurs in the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_HOST_BIT_KHR pipeline stage.

- **VK_ACCESS_2_HOST_WRITE_BIT_KHR** specifies write access by a host operation. Accesses of this type are not performed through a resource, but directly on memory. Such access occurs in the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_HOST_BIT_KHR pipeline stage.

- **VK_ACCESS_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_READ_BIT_KHR** specifies read access to an acceleration structure as part of a trace, build, or copy command, or to an acceleration structure scratch buffer as part of a build command. Such access occurs in the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_BIT_KHR pipeline stage or
VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR pipeline stage.

- **VK_ACCESS_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_WRITE_BIT_KHR** specifies write access to an acceleration structure or acceleration structure scratch buffer as part of a build or copy command. Such access occurs in the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR pipeline stage.

- **VK_ACCESS_2_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT_KHR** specifies read access to a fragment shading rate attachment during rasterization. Such access occurs in the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_BIT_KHR pipeline stage.

- **VK_ACCESS_2_VIDEO_DECODE_READ_BIT_KHR** specifies read access to an image or buffer resource as part of a video decode operation. Such access occurs in the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VIDEO_DECODE_BIT_KHR pipeline stage.

- **VK_ACCESS_2_VIDEO_DECODE_WRITE_BIT_KHR** specifies write access to an image or buffer resource as part of a video decode operation. Such access occurs in the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VIDEO_DECODE_BIT_KHR pipeline stage.

- **VK_ACCESS_2_VIDEO_ENCODE_READ_BIT_KHR** specifies read access to an image or buffer resource as part of a video encode operation. Such access occurs in the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VIDEO_ENCODE_BIT_KHR pipeline stage.

- **VK_ACCESS_2_VIDEO_ENCODE_WRITE_BIT_KHR** specifies write access to an image or buffer resource as part of a video encode operation. Such access occurs in the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VIDEO_ENCODE_BIT_KHR pipeline stage.

Note

In situations where an application wishes to select all access types for a given set of pipeline stages, **VK_ACCESS_2_MEMORY_READ_BIT_KHR** or **VK_ACCESS_2_MEMORY_WRITE_BIT_KHR** can be used. This is particularly useful when specifying stages that only have a single access type.

Note

The VkAccessFlags2KHR bitmask goes beyond the 31 individual bit flags allowable within a C99 enum, which is how VkAccessFlagBits is defined. The first 31 values are common to both, and are interchangeable.

VkAccessFlags2KHR is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more VkAccessFlagBits2KHR:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2
typedef VkFlags64 VkAccessFlags2KHR;
```

The VkAccessFlagBits enum is defined as:
typedef enum VkAccessFlagBits {
    VK_ACCESS_INDIRECT_COMMAND_READ_BIT = 0x00000001,
    VK_ACCESS_INDEX_READ_BIT = 0x00000002,
    VK_ACCESS_VERTEX_ATTRIBUTE_READ_BIT = 0x00000004,
    VK_ACCESS_UNIFORM_READ_BIT = 0x00000008,
    VK_ACCESS_INPUT_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT = 0x00000010,
    VK_ACCESS_SHADER_READ_BIT = 0x00000020,
    VK_ACCESS_SHADER_WRITE_BIT = 0x00000040,
    VK_ACCESS_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT = 0x00000080,
    VK_ACCESS_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_WRITE_BIT = 0x00000100,
    VK_ACCESS_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT = 0x00000200,
    VK_ACCESS_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_WRITE_BIT = 0x00000400,
    VK_ACCESS_TRANSFER_READ_BIT = 0x00000800,
    VK_ACCESS_TRANSFER_WRITE_BIT = 0x00001000,
    VK_ACCESS_HOST_READ_BIT = 0x00002000,
    VK_ACCESS_HOST_WRITE_BIT = 0x00004000,
    VK_ACCESS_MEMORY_READ_BIT = 0x00008000,
    VK_ACCESS_MEMORY_WRITE_BIT = 0x00010000,
    VK_ACCESS_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_READ_BIT_KHR = 0x00200000,
    VK_ACCESS_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_WRITE_BIT_KHR = 0x00400000,
    VK_ACCESS_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT_KHR = 0x00800000,
    VK_ACCESS_NONE_KHR = 0,
} VkAccessFlagBits;

These values all have the same value/meaning as the equivalently named values for VkAccessFlags2KHR.

- **VK_ACCESS_NONE_KHR** specifies no accesses.
- **VK_ACCESS_MEMORY_READ_BIT** specifies all read accesses. It is always valid in any access mask, and
  is treated as equivalent to setting all READ access flags that are valid where it is used.
- **VK_ACCESS_MEMORY_WRITE_BIT** specifies all write accesses. It is always valid in any access mask, and
  is treated as equivalent to setting all WRITE access flags that are valid where it is used.
- **VK_ACCESS_INDIRECT_COMMAND_READ_BIT** specifies read access to indirect command data read as
  part of an indirect build, trace, drawing or dispatching command. Such access occurs in the
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_DRAW_INDIRECT_BIT pipeline stage.
- **VK_ACCESS_INDEX_READ_BIT** specifies read access to an index buffer as part of an indexed drawing
  command, bound by vkCmdBindIndexBuffer. Such access occurs in the
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_VERTEX_INPUT_BIT pipeline stage.
- **VK_ACCESS_VERTEX_ATTRIBUTE_READ_BIT** specifies read access to a vertex buffer as part of a
  drawing command, bound by vkCmdBindVertexBuffers. Such access occurs in the
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_VERTEX_INPUT_BIT pipeline stage.
- **VK_ACCESS_UNIFORM_READ_BIT** specifies read access to a **uniform buffer** in any shader pipeline stage.

- **VK_ACCESS_INPUT_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT** specifies read access to an **input attachment** within a render pass during fragment shading. Such access occurs in the **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADER_BIT** pipeline stage.

- **VK_ACCESS_SHADER_READ_BIT** specifies read access to a **uniform buffer, uniform texel buffer, sampled image, storage buffer, physical storage buffer, shader binding table, storage texel buffer, or storage image** in any shader pipeline stage.

- **VK_ACCESS_SHADER_WRITE_BIT** specifies write access to a **storage buffer, physical storage buffer, storage texel buffer, or storage image** in any shader pipeline stage.

- **VK_ACCESS_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT** specifies read access to a **color attachment**, such as via blending, logic operations, or via certain subpass load operations.

- **VK_ACCESS_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_WRITE_BIT** specifies write access to a **color, resolve, or depth/stencil resolve attachment** during a render pass or via certain subpass load and store operations. Such access occurs in the **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT** pipeline stage.

- **VK_ACCESS_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT** specifies read access to a **depth/stencil attachment**, via depth or stencil operations or via certain subpass load operations. Such access occurs in the **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_EARLY_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT** or **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_LATE_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT** pipeline stages.

- **VK_ACCESS_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_WRITE_BIT** specifies write access to a **depth/stencil attachment**, via depth or stencil operations or via certain subpass load and store operations. Such access occurs in the **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_EARLY_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT** or **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_LATE_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT** pipeline stages.

- **VK_ACCESS_TRANSFER_READ_BIT** specifies read access to an image or buffer in a **copy** operation. Such access occurs in the **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_TRANSFER_BIT_KHR** pipeline stage.

- **VK_ACCESS_TRANSFER_WRITE_BIT** specifies write access to an image or buffer in a **clear** or **copy** operation. Such access occurs in the **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_TRANSFER_BIT_KHR** pipeline stage.

- **VK_ACCESS_HOST_READ_BIT** specifies read access by a host operation. Accesses of this type are not performed through a resource, but directly on memory. Such access occurs in the **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_HOST_BIT** pipeline stage.

- **VK_ACCESS_HOST_WRITE_BIT** specifies write access by a host operation. Accesses of this type are not performed through a resource, but directly on memory. Such access occurs in the **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_HOST_BIT** pipeline stage.

- **VK_ACCESS_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_READ_BIT_KHR** specifies read access to an acceleration structure as part of a trace, build, or copy command, or to an acceleration structure scratch buffer as part of a build command. Such access occurs in the **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_BIT_KHR** pipeline stage or **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR** pipeline stage.

- **VK_ACCESS_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_WRITE_BIT_KHR** specifies write access to an acceleration structure or acceleration structure scratch buffer as part of a build or copy command. Such access occurs in the **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR** pipeline stage.

- **VK_ACCESS_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT_KHR** specifies read access to a fragment
shading rate attachment during rasterization. Such access occurs in the 
`VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_BIT_KHR` pipeline stage.

Certain access types are only performed by a subset of pipeline stages. Any synchronization 
command that takes both stage masks and access masks uses both to define the access scopes - only 
the specified access types performed by the specified stages are included in the access scope. An 
application must not specify an access flag in a synchronization command if it does not include a 
pipeline stage in the corresponding stage mask that is able to perform accesses of that type. The 
following table lists, for each access flag, which pipeline stages can perform that type of access.

Table 4. Supported access types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Access flag</th>
<th>Supported pipeline stages</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_ACCESS_INDIRECT_COMMAND_READ_BIT</td>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_DRAW_INDIRECT_BIT, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_ACCESS_INDEX_READ_BIT</td>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_VERTEX_INPUT_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_ACCESS_VERTEX_ATTRIBUTE_READ_BIT</td>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_VERTEX_INPUT_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_ACCESS_UNIFORM_READ_BIT</td>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_VERTEX_SHADER_BIT, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADER_BIT, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_COMPUTE_SHADER_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_ACCESS_SHADER_READ_BIT</td>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_VERTEX_SHADER_BIT, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADER_BIT, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_COMPUTE_SHADER_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_ACCESS_SHADER_WRITE_BIT</td>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_VERTEX_SHADER_BIT, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADER_BIT, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_COMPUTE_SHADER_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_ACCESS_INPUT_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT</td>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADER_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_ACCESS_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT</td>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_ACCESS_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_WRITE_BIT</td>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Access flag</td>
<td>Supported pipeline stages</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_ACCESS_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT</td>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_EARLY_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_LATE_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_ACCESS_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_WRITE_BIT</td>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_EARLY_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_LATE_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_ACCESS_TRANSFER_READ_BIT</td>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TRANSFER_BIT or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_ACCESS_TRANSFER_WRITE_BIT</td>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TRANSFER_BIT or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_ACCESS_HOST_READ_BIT</td>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_HOST_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_ACCESS_HOST_WRITE_BIT</td>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_HOST_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_ACCESS_MEMORY_READ_BIT</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_ACCESS_MEMORY_WRITE_BIT</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_ACCESS_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT_KHR</td>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_BIT_KHR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_ACCESS_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_READ_BIT_KHR</td>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_VERTEX_SHADER_BIT, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSellation_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSellation_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADER_BIT, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_COMPUTE_SHADER_BIT, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_ACCESS_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_WRITE_BIT_KHR</td>
<td>VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkAccessFlags;

**VkAccessFlags** is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more VkAccessFlagBits.

If a memory object does not have the VK_MEMORY_PROPERTY_HOST_COHERENT_BIT property, then vkFlushMappedMemoryRanges **must** be called in order to guarantee that writes to the memory object from the host are made available to the host domain, where they **can** be further made available to the device domain via a domain operation. Similarly, vkInvalidateMappedMemoryRanges **must** be called to guarantee that writes which are available to the host domain are made visible to host operations.

If the memory object does have the VK_MEMORY_PROPERTY_HOST_COHERENT_BIT property flag, writes to the memory object from the host are automatically made available to the host domain. Similarly, writes made available to the host domain are automatically made visible to the host.
Note

Queue submission commands automatically perform a domain operation from host to device for all writes performed before the command executes, so in most cases an explicit memory barrier is not needed for this case. In the few circumstances where a submit does not occur between the host write and the device read access, writes can be made available by using an explicit memory barrier.

7.1.4. Framebuffer Region Dependencies

Pipeline stages that operate on, or with respect to, the framebuffer are collectively the framebuffer-space pipeline stages. These stages are:

- VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADER_BIT
- VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_EARLY_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT
- VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_LATE_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT
- VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT

For these pipeline stages, an execution or memory dependency from the first set of operations to the second set can either be a single framebuffer-global dependency, or split into multiple framebuffer-local dependencies. A dependency with non-framebuffer-space pipeline stages is neither framebuffer-global nor framebuffer-local.

A framebuffer region is a set of sample (x, y, layer, sample) coordinates that is a subset of the entire framebuffer.

Both synchronization scopes of a framebuffer-local dependency include only the operations performed within corresponding framebuffer regions (as defined below). No ordering guarantees are made between different framebuffer regions for a framebuffer-local dependency.

Both synchronization scopes of a framebuffer-global dependency include operations on all framebuffer-regions.

If the first synchronization scope includes operations on pixels/fragments with N samples and the second synchronization scope includes operations on pixels/fragments with M samples, where N does not equal M, then a framebuffer region containing all samples at a given (x, y, layer) coordinate in the first synchronization scope corresponds to a region containing all samples at the same coordinate in the second synchronization scope. In other words, it is a pixel granularity dependency. If N equals M, then a framebuffer region containing a single (x, y, layer, sample) coordinate in the first synchronization scope corresponds to a region containing the same sample at the same coordinate in the second synchronization scope. In other words, it is a sample granularity dependency.
Since fragment shader invocations are not specified to run in any particular groupings, the size of a framebuffer region is implementation-dependent, not known to the application, and must be assumed to be no larger than specified above.

Note
Practically, the pixel vs sample granularity dependency means that if an input attachment has a different number of samples than the pipeline’s `rasterizationSamples`, then a fragment can access any sample in the input attachment’s pixel even if it only uses framebuffer-local dependencies. If the input attachment has the same number of samples, then the fragment can only access the covered samples in its input `SampleMask` (i.e. the fragment operations happen-after a framebuffer-local dependency for each sample the fragment covers). To access samples that are not covered, a framebuffer-global dependency is required.

If a synchronization command includes a `dependencyFlags` parameter, and specifies the `VK_DEPENDENCY_BY_REGION_BIT` flag, then it defines framebuffer-local dependencies for the framebuffer-space pipeline stages in that synchronization command, for all framebuffer regions. If no `dependencyFlags` parameter is included, or the `VK_DEPENDENCY_BY_REGION_BIT` flag is not specified, then a framebuffer-global dependency is specified for those stages. The `VK_DEPENDENCY_BY_REGION_BIT` flag does not affect the dependencies between non-framebuffer-space pipeline stages, nor does it affect the dependencies between framebuffer-space and non-framebuffer-space pipeline stages.

Framebuffer-local dependencies are more efficient for most architectures; particularly tile-based architectures - which can keep framebuffer-regions entirely in on-chip registers and thus avoid external bandwidth across such a dependency. Including a framebuffer-global dependency in your rendering will usually force all implementations to flush data to memory, or to a higher level cache, breaking any potential locality optimizations.

7.1.5. View-Local Dependencies

In a render pass instance that has `multiview` enabled, dependencies can be either view-local or view-global.

A view-local dependency only includes operations from a single source view from the source subpass in the first synchronization scope, and only includes operations from a single destination view from the destination subpass in the second synchronization scope. A view-global dependency includes all views in the view mask of the source and destination subpasses in the corresponding synchronization scopes.

If a synchronization command includes a `dependencyFlags` parameter and specifies the `VK_DEPENDENCY_VIEW_LOCAL_BIT` flag, then it defines view-local dependencies for that synchronization command, for all views. If no `dependencyFlags` parameter is included or the
VK_DEPENDENCY_VIEW_LOCAL_BIT flag is not specified, then a view-global dependency is specified.

7.1.6. Device-Local Dependencies

Dependencies can be either device-local or non-device-local. A device-local dependency acts as multiple separate dependencies, one for each physical device that executes the synchronization command, where each dependency only includes operations from that physical device in both synchronization scopes. A non-device-local dependency is a single dependency where both synchronization scopes include operations from all physical devices that participate in the synchronization command. For subpass dependencies, all physical devices in the VkDeviceGroupRenderPassBeginInfo::deviceMask participate in the dependency, and for pipeline barriers all physical devices that are set in the command buffer's current device mask participate in the dependency.

If a synchronization command includes a dependencyFlags parameter and specifies the VK_DEPENDENCY_DEVICE_GROUP_BIT flag, then it defines a non-device-local dependency for that synchronization command. If no dependencyFlags parameter is included or the VK_DEPENDENCY_DEVICE_GROUP_BIT flag is not specified, then it defines device-local dependencies for that synchronization command, for all participating physical devices.

Semaphore and event dependencies are device-local and only execute on the one physical device that performs the dependency.

7.2. Implicit Synchronization Guarantees

A small number of implicit ordering guarantees are provided by Vulkan, ensuring that the order in which commands are submitted is meaningful, and avoiding unnecessary complexity in common operations.

Submission order is a fundamental ordering in Vulkan, giving meaning to the order in which action and synchronization commands are recorded and submitted to a single queue. Explicit and implicit ordering guarantees between commands in Vulkan all work on the premise that this ordering is meaningful. This order does not itself define any execution or memory dependencies; synchronization commands and other orderings within the API use this ordering to define their scopes.

Submission order for any given set of commands is based on the order in which they were recorded to command buffers and then submitted. This order is determined as follows:

1. The initial order is determined by the order in which vkQueueSubmit and vkQueueSubmit2KHR commands are executed on the host, for a single queue, from first to last.
2. The order in which VkSubmitInfo structures are specified in the pSubmits parameter of vkQueueSubmit, or in which VkSubmitInfo2KHR structures are specified in the pSubmits parameter of vkQueueSubmit2KHR, from lowest index to highest.
3. The order in which command buffers are specified in the pCommandBuffers member of VkSubmitInfo or VkSubmitInfo2KHR from lowest index to highest.
4. The order in which commands were recorded to a command buffer on the host, from first to
For commands recorded outside a render pass, this includes all other commands recorded outside a render pass, including *vkCmdBeginRenderPass* and *vkCmdEndRenderPass* commands; it does not directly include commands inside a render pass.

For commands recorded inside a render pass, this includes all other commands recorded inside the same subpass, including the *vkCmdBeginRenderPass* and *vkCmdEndRenderPass* commands that delimit the same render pass instance; it does not include commands recorded to other subpasses. **State commands** do not execute any operations on the device, instead they set the state of the command buffer when they execute on the host, in the order that they are recorded. **Action commands** consume the current state of the command buffer when they are recorded, and will execute state changes on the device as required to match the recorded state.

**Query commands**, the order of primitives passing through the graphics pipeline and image layout transitions as part of an image memory barrier provide additional guarantees based on submission order.

Execution of **pipeline stages** within a given command also has a loose ordering, dependent only on a single command.

**Signal operation order** is a fundamental ordering in Vulkan, giving meaning to the order in which semaphore and fence signal operations occur when submitted to a single queue. The signal operation order for queue operations is determined as follows:

1. The initial order is determined by the order in which *vkQueueSubmit* and *vkQueueSubmit2KHR* commands are executed on the host, for a single queue, from first to last.
2. The order in which *VkSubmitInfo* structures are specified in the *pSubmits* parameter of *vkQueueSubmit*, or in which *VkSubmitInfo2KHR* structures are specified in the *pSubmits* parameter of *vkQueueSubmit2KHR*, from lowest index to highest.
3. The fence signal operation defined by the *fence* parameter of a *vkQueueSubmit*, *vkQueueSubmit2KHR*, or *vkQueueBindSparse* command is ordered after all semaphore signal operations defined by that command.

Semaphore signal operations defined by a single *VkSubmitInfo*, *VkSubmitInfo2KHR*, or *VkBindSparseInfo* structure are unordered with respect to other semaphore signal operations defined within the same structure.

The *vkSignalSemaphore* command does not execute on a queue but instead performs the signal operation from the host. The semaphore signal operation defined by executing a *vkSignalSemaphore* command happens-after the *vkSignalSemaphore* command is invoked and happens-before the command returns.
Note

When signaling timeline semaphores, it is the responsibility of the application to ensure that they are ordered such that the semaphore value is strictly increasing. Because the first synchronization scope for a semaphore signal operation contains all semaphore signal operations which occur earlier in submission order, all semaphore signal operations contained in any given batch are guaranteed to happen-after all semaphore signal operations contained in any previous batches. However, no ordering guarantee is provided between the semaphore signal operations defined within a single batch. This, combined with the requirement that timeline semaphore values strictly increase, means that it is invalid to signal the same timeline semaphore twice within a single batch.

If an application wishes to ensure that some semaphore signal operation happens-after some other semaphore signal operation, it can submit a separate batch containing only semaphore signal operations, which will happen-after the semaphore signal operations in any earlier batches.

When signaling a semaphore from the host, the only ordering guarantee is that the signal operation happens-after when `vkSignalSemaphore` is called and happens-before it returns. Therefore, it is invalid to call `vkSignalSemaphore` while there are any outstanding signal operations on that semaphore from any queue submissions unless those queue submissions have some dependency which ensures that they happen-after the host signal operation. One example of this would be if the pending signal operation is, itself, waiting on the same semaphore at a lower value and the call to `vkSignalSemaphore` signals that lower value. Furthermore, if there are two or more processes or threads signaling the same timeline semaphore from the host, the application must ensure that the `vkSignalSemaphore` with the lower semaphore value returns before `vkSignalSemaphore` is called with the higher value.

7.3. Fences

Fences are a synchronization primitive that can be used to insert a dependency from a queue to the host. Fences have two states - signaled and unsignaled. A fence can be signaled as part of the execution of a queue submission command. Fences can be unsignaled on the host with `vkResetFences`. Fences can be waited on by the host with the `vkWaitForFences` command, and the current state can be queried with `vkGetFenceStatus`.

The internal data of a fence may include a reference to any resources and pending work associated with signal or unsignal operations performed on that fence object, collectively referred to as the fence’s payload. Mechanisms to import and export that internal data to and from fences are provided below. These mechanisms indirectly enable applications to share fence state between two or more fences and other synchronization primitives across process and API boundaries.

Fences are represented by `VkFence` handles:
To create a fence, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkCreateFence(VkDevice device,
const VkFenceCreateInfo* pCreateInfo,
const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator,
VkFence* pFence);
```

- `device` is the logical device that creates the fence.
- `pCreateInfo` is a pointer to a `VkFenceCreateInfo` structure containing information about how the fence is to be created.
- `pAllocator` controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
- `pFence` is a pointer to a handle in which the resulting fence object is returned.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkCreateFence-device-parameter**
  
  `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle.

- **VUID-vkCreateFence-pCreateInfo-parameter**
  
  `pCreateInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkFenceCreateInfo` structure.

- **VUID-vkCreateFence-pAllocator-parameter**
  
  If `pAllocator` is not `NULL`, `pAllocator` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkAllocationCallbacks` structure.

- **VUID-vkCreateFence-pFence-parameter**
  
  `pFence` must be a valid pointer to a `VkFence` handle.

### Return Codes

**Success**
- `VK_SUCCESS`

**Failure**
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY`

The `VkFenceCreateInfo` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkFenceCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkFenceCreateFlags flags;
} VkFenceCreateInfo;

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `flags` is a bitmask of `VkFenceCreateFlagBits` specifying the initial state and behavior of the fence.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkFenceCreateInfo-sType-sType
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_FENCE_CREATE_INFO`
- VUID-VkFenceCreateInfo-pNext-pNext
  Each `pNext` member of any structure (including this one) in the `pNext` chain must be either `NULL` or a pointer to a valid instance of `VkExportFenceCreateInfo` or `VkExportFenceWin32HandleInfoKHR`
- VUID-VkFenceCreateInfo-sType-unique
  The `sType` value of each struct in the `pNext` chain must be unique
- VUID-VkFenceCreateInfo-flags-parameter
  `flags` must be a valid combination of `VkFenceCreateFlagBits` values

typedef enum VkFenceCreateFlagBits {
    VK_FENCE_CREATE_SIGNALED_BIT = 0x00000001,
} VkFenceCreateFlagBits;

- `VK_FENCE_CREATE_SIGNALED_BIT` specifies that the fence object is created in the signaled state. Otherwise, it is created in the unsignaled state.

typedef VkFlags VkFenceCreateFlags;

`VkFenceCreateFlags` is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more `VkFenceCreateFlagBits`.

To create a fence whose payload can be exported to external handles, add a `VkExportFenceCreateInfo` structure to the `pNext` chain of the `VkFenceCreateInfo` structure. The `VkExportFenceCreateInfo` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkExportFenceCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType          sType;
    const void*              pNext;
    VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlags handleTypes;
} VkExportFenceCreateInfo;

or the equivalent

// Provided by VK_KHR_external_fence
typedef VkExportFenceCreateInfo VkExportFenceCreateInfoKHR;

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **handleTypes** is a bitmask of **VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlagBits** specifying one or more fence handle types the application can export from the resulting fence. The application can request multiple handle types for the same fence.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkExportFenceCreateInfo-handleTypes-01446**
  The bits in **handleTypes** must be supported and compatible, as reported by **VkExternalFenceProperties**

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkExportFenceCreateInfo-sType-sType**
  **sType** must be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXPORT_FENCE_CREATE_INFO**

- **VUID-VkExportFenceCreateInfo-handleTypes-parameter**
  **handleTypes** must be a valid combination of **VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlagBits** values

To specify additional attributes of NT handles exported from a fence, add a **VkExportFenceWin32HandleInfoKHR** structure to the **pNext** chain of the **VkFenceCreateInfo** structure. The **VkExportFenceWin32HandleInfoKHR** structure is defined as:

// Provided by VK_KHR_external_fence_win32
typedef struct VkExportFenceWin32HandleInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType          sType;
    const void*              pNext;
    const SECURITY_ATTRIBUTES* pAttributes;
    DWORD                     dwAccess;
    LPCWSTR                   name;
} VkExportFenceWin32HandleInfoKHR;
• `sType` is the type of this structure.
• `pNext` is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• `pAttributes` is a pointer to a Windows `SECURITY_ATTRIBUTES` structure specifying security attributes of the handle.
• `dwAccess` is a `DWORD` specifying access rights of the handle.
• `name` is a null-terminated UTF-16 string to associate with the underlying synchronization primitive referenced by NT handles exported from the created fence.

If `VkExportFenceCreateInfo` is not included in the same `pNext` chain, this structure is ignored.

If `VkExportFenceCreateInfo` is included in the `pNext` chain of `VkFenceCreateInfo` with a Windows `handleType`, but either `VkExportFenceWin32HandleInfoKHR` is not included in the `pNext` chain, or if it is but `pAttributes` is set to NULL, default security descriptor values will be used, and child processes created by the application will not inherit the handle, as described in the MSDN documentation for “Synchronization Object Security and Access Rights”. Further, if the structure is not present, the access rights will be

```
DXGI_SHARED_RESOURCE_READ | DXGI_SHARED_RESOURCE_WRITE
```

for handles of the following types:

```
VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_BIT
```

1


Valid Usage

- VUID-VkExportFenceWin32HandleInfoKHR-handleTypes-01447
  
  If `VkExportFenceCreateInfo::handleTypes` does not include `VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_BIT`, a `VkExportFenceWin32HandleInfoKHR` structure must not be included in the `pNext` chain of `VkFenceCreateInfo`

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkExportFenceWin32HandleInfoKHR-sType-sType
  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXPORT_FENCE_WIN32_HANDLE_INFO_KHR`

  - VUID-VkExportFenceWin32HandleInfoKHR-pAttributes-parameter
    
    If `pAttributes` is not `NULL`, `pAttributes` must be a valid pointer to a valid `SECURITY_ATTRIBUTES` value

To export a Windows handle representing the state of a fence, call:
VkResult vkGetFenceWin32HandleKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkFenceGetWin32HandleInfoKHR* pGetWin32HandleInfo,
    HANDLE* pHandle);

• device is the logical device that created the fence being exported.
• pGetWin32HandleInfo is a pointer to a VkFenceGetWin32HandleInfoKHR structure containing parameters of the export operation.
• pHandle will return the Windows handle representing the fence state.

For handle types defined as NT handles, the handles returned by vkGetFenceWin32HandleKHR are owned by the application. To avoid leaking resources, the application must release ownership of them using the CloseHandle system call when they are no longer needed.

Exporting a Windows handle from a fence may have side effects depending on the transference of the specified handle type, as described in Importing Fence Payloads.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

• VUID-vkGetFenceWin32HandleKHR-device-parameter
  device must be a valid VkDevice handle

• VUID-vkGetFenceWin32HandleKHR-pGetWin32HandleInfo-parameter
  pGetWin32HandleInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid VkFenceGetWin32HandleInfoKHR structure

• VUID-vkGetFenceWin32HandleKHR-pHandle-parameter
  pHandle must be a valid pointer to a HANDLE value

Return Codes

Success

• VK_SUCCESS

Failure

• VK_ERROR_TOO_MANY_OBJECTS
• VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY

The VkFenceGetWin32HandleInfoKHR structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkFenceGetWin32HandleInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkFence fence;
    VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlagBits handleType;
} VkFenceGetWin32HandleInfoKHR;

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `fence` is the fence from which state will be exported.
- `handleType` is a `VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlagBits` value specifying the type of handle requested.

The properties of the handle returned depend on the value of `handleType`. See `VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlagBits` for a description of the properties of the defined external fence handle types.

**Valid Usage**

- VUID-VkFenceGetWin32HandleInfoKHR-handleType-01448
  `handleType` must have been included in `VkExportFenceCreateInfo::handleTypes` when the `fence`'s current payload was created

- VUID-VkFenceGetWin32HandleInfoKHR-handleType-01449
  If `handleType` is defined as an NT handle, `vkGetFenceWin32HandleKHR` must be called no more than once for each valid unique combination of `fence` and `handleType`

- VUID-VkFenceGetWin32HandleInfoKHR-fence-01450
  `fence` must not currently have its payload replaced by an imported payload as described below in Importing Fence Payloads unless that imported payload's handle type was included in `VkExternalFenceProperties::exportFromImportedHandleTypes` for `handleType`

- VUID-VkFenceGetWin32HandleInfoKHR-handleType-01451
  If `handleType` refers to a handle type with copy payload transference semantics, `fence` must be signaled, or have an associated `fence signal operation` pending execution

- VUID-VkFenceGetWin32HandleInfoKHR-handleType-01452
  `handleType` must be defined as an NT handle or a global share handle
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkFenceGetWin32HandleInfoKHR-sType-sType**
  - `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_FENCE_GET_WIN32_HANDLE_INFO_KHR`

- **VUID-VkFenceGetWin32HandleInfoKHR-pNext-pNext**
  - `pNext` must be `NULL`

- **VUID-VkFenceGetWin32HandleInfoKHR-fence-parameter**
  - `fence` must be a valid `VkFence` handle

- **VUID-VkFenceGetWin32HandleInfoKHR-handleType-parameter**
  - `handleType` must be a valid `VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlagBits` value

To export a POSIX file descriptor representing the payload of a fence, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_fence_fd
VkResult vkGetFenceFdKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkFenceGetFdInfoKHR* pGetFdInfo,
    int* pFd);
```

- `device` is the logical device that created the fence being exported.
- `pGetFdInfo` is a pointer to a `VkFenceGetFdInfoKHR` structure containing parameters of the export operation.
- `pFd` will return the file descriptor representing the fence payload.

Each call to `vkGetFenceFdKHR` must create a new file descriptor and transfer ownership of it to the application. To avoid leaking resources, the application must release ownership of the file descriptor when it is no longer needed.

**Note**
Ownership can be released in many ways. For example, the application can call `close()` on the file descriptor, or transfer ownership back to Vulkan by using the file descriptor to import a fence payload.

If `pGetFdInfo->handleType` is `VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_SYNC_FD_BIT` and the fence is signaled at the time `vkGetFenceFdKHR` is called, `pFd` may return the value `-1` instead of a valid file descriptor.

Where supported by the operating system, the implementation must set the file descriptor to be closed automatically when an `execve` system call is made.

Exporting a file descriptor from a fence may have side effects depending on the transference of the specified handle type, as described in Importing Fence State.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetFenceFdKHR-device-parameter
device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- VUID-vkGetFenceFdKHR-pGetFdInfo-parameter
pGetFdInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid VkFenceGetFdInfoKHR structure

- VUID-vkGetFenceFdKHR-pFd-parameter
pFd must be a valid pointer to an int value

Return Codes

**Success**
- VK_SUCCESS

**Failure**
- VK_ERROR_TOO_MANY_OBJECTS
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY

The VkFenceGetFdInfoKHR structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_fence_fd
typedef struct VkFenceGetFdInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkFence fence;
    VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlagBits handleType;
} VkFenceGetFdInfoKHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **fence** is the fence from which state will be exported.
- **handleType** is a VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlagBits value specifying the type of handle requested.

The properties of the file descriptor returned depend on the value of **handleType**. See VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlagBits for a description of the properties of the defined external fence handle types.
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkFenceGetFdInfoKHR-handleType-01453
  
  **handleType must** have been included in **VkExportFenceCreateInfo::handleTypes** when fence’s current payload was created.

- VUID-VkFenceGetFdInfoKHR-handleType-01454
  
  If **handleType** refers to a handle type with copy payload transference semantics, **fence must** be signaled, or have an associated **fence signal operation** pending execution.

- VUID-VkFenceGetFdInfoKHR-fence-01455
  
  **fence must** not currently have its payload replaced by an imported payload as described below in Importing Fence Payloads unless that imported payload’s handle type was included in **VkExternalFenceProperties::exportFromImportedHandleTypes** for **handleType**.

- VUID-VkFenceGetFdInfoKHR-handleType-01456
  
  **handleType must** be defined as a POSIX file descriptor handle.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkFenceGetFdInfoKHR-sType-sType
  
  **sType must** be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_FENCE_GET_FD_INFO_KHR**

- VUID-VkFenceGetFdInfoKHR-pNext-pNext
  
  **pNext must** be **NULL**

- VUID-VkFenceGetFdInfoKHR-fence-parameter
  
  **fence must** be a valid **VkFence** handle

- VUID-VkFenceGetFdInfoKHR-handleType-parameter
  
  **handleType must** be a valid **VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlagBits** value

To destroy a fence, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkDestroyFence(  
  VkDevice device,  
  VkFence fence,  
  const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator);
```

- **device** is the logical device that destroys the fence.
- **fence** is the handle of the fence to destroy.
- **pAllocator** controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkDestroyFence-fence-01120**
  All queue submission commands that refer to fence must have completed execution

- **VUID-vkDestroyFence-fence-01121**
  If VkAllocationCallbacks were provided when fence was created, a compatible set of callbacks must be provided here

- **VUID-vkDestroyFence-fence-01122**
  If no VkAllocationCallbacks were provided when fence was created, pAllocator must be NULL

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkDestroyFence-device-parameter**
  device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- **VUID-vkDestroyFence-fence-parameter**
  If fence is not VK_NULL_HANDLE, fence must be a valid VkFence handle

- **VUID-vkDestroyFence-pAllocator-parameter**
  If pAllocator is not NULL, pAllocator must be a valid pointer to a valid VkAllocationCallbacks structure

- **VUID-vkDestroyFence-fence-parent**
  If fence is a valid handle, it must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from device

Host Synchronization

- Host access to fence must be externally synchronized

To query the status of a fence from the host, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkGetFenceStatus(
    VkDevice device,
    VkFence fence);
```

- **device** is the logical device that owns the fence.
- **fence** is the handle of the fence to query.

Upon success, vkGetFenceStatus returns the status of the fence object, with the following return codes:

*Table 5. Fence Object Status Codes*
### Status

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_SUCCESS</td>
<td>The fence specified by <em>fence</em> is signaled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_NOT_READY</td>
<td>The fence specified by <em>fence</em> is unsignaled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_ERRORDEVICE_LOST</td>
<td>The device has been lost. See Lost Device.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If a **queue submission** command is pending execution, then the value returned by this command **may** immediately be out of date.

If the device has been lost (see Lost Device), *vkGetFenceStatus* may return any of the above status codes. If the device has been lost and *vkGetFenceStatus* is called repeatedly, it will eventually return either **VK_SUCCESS** or **VK_ERRORDEVICE_LOST**.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetFenceStatus-device-parameter
  - *device* must be a valid *VkDevice* handle
- VUID-vkGetFenceStatus-fence-parameter
  - *fence* must be a valid *VkFence* handle
- VUID-vkGetFenceStatus-fence-parent
  - *fence* must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from *device*

### Return Codes

**Success**

- **VK_SUCCESS**
- **VK_NOT_READY**

**Failure**

- **VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY**
- **VK_ERROR_OUT_OFDEVICE_MEMORY**
- **VK_ERRORDEVICE_LOST**

To set the state of fences to unsignaled from the host, call:

```cpp
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkResetFences(
    VkDevice device,
    uint32_t fenceCount,
    const VkFence* pFences);
```
device is the logical device that owns the fences.

fenceCount is the number of fences to reset.

pFences is a pointer to an array of fence handles to reset.

If any member of pFences currently has its payload imported with temporary permanence, that fence’s prior permanent payload is first restored. The remaining operations described therefore operate on the restored payload.

When vkResetFences is executed on the host, it defines a fence unsignal operation for each fence, which resets the fence to the unsignaled state.

If any member of pFences is already in the unsignaled state when vkResetFences is executed, then vkResetFences has no effect on that fence.

Valid Usage

- VUID-vkResetFences-pFences-01123
  Each element of pFences must not be currently associated with any queue command that has not yet completed execution on that queue

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkResetFences-device-parameter
device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- VUID-vkResetFences-pFences-parameter
  pFences must be a valid pointer to an array of fenceCount valid VkFence handles

- VUID-vkResetFences-fenceCount-arraylength
  fenceCount must be greater than 0

- VUID-vkResetFences-pFences-parent
  Each element of pFences must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from device

Host Synchronization

- Host access to each member of pFences must be externally synchronized

Return Codes

Success

- VK_SUCCESS

Failure

- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY
When a fence is submitted to a queue as part of a queue submission command, it defines a memory dependency on the batches that were submitted as part of that command, and defines a fence signal operation which sets the fence to the signaled state.

The first synchronization scope includes every batch submitted in the same queue submission command. Fence signal operations that are defined by vkQueueSubmit additionally include in the first synchronization scope all commands that occur earlier in submission order. Fence signal operations that are defined by vkQueueSubmit or vkQueueBindSparse additionally include in the first synchronization scope any semaphore and fence signal operations that occur earlier in signal operation order.

The second synchronization scope only includes the fence signal operation.

The first access scope includes all memory access performed by the device.

The second access scope is empty.

To wait for one or more fences to enter the signaled state on the host, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkWaitForFences(
    VkDevice device, 
    uint32_t fenceCount, 
    const VkFence* pFences, 
    VkBool32 waitAll, 
    uint64_t timeout);
```

- `device` is the logical device that owns the fences.
- `fenceCount` is the number of fences to wait on.
- `pFences` is a pointer to an array of `fenceCount` fence handles.
- `waitAll` is the condition that must be satisfied to successfully unblock the wait. If `waitAll` is `VK_TRUE`, then the condition is that all fences in `pFences` are signaled. Otherwise, the condition is that at least one fence in `pFences` is signaled.
- `timeout` is the timeout period in units of nanoseconds. `timeout` is adjusted to the closest value allowed by the implementation-dependent timeout accuracy, which may be substantially longer than one nanosecond, and may be longer than the requested period.

If the condition is satisfied when `vkWaitForFences` is called, then `vkWaitForFences` returns immediately. If the condition is not satisfied at the time `vkWaitForFences` is called, then `vkWaitForFences` will block and wait until the condition is satisfied or the `timeout` has expired, whichever is sooner.

If `timeout` is zero, then `vkWaitForFences` does not wait, but simply returns the current state of the fences. `VK_TIMEOUT` will be returned in this case if the condition is not satisfied, even though no actual wait was performed.

If the condition is satisfied before the `timeout` has expired, `vkWaitForFences` returns `VK_SUCCESS`. Otherwise, `vkWaitForFences` returns `VK_TIMEOUT` after the `timeout` has expired.
If device loss occurs (see Lost Device) before the timeout has expired, `vkWaitForFences` must return in finite time with either `VK_SUCCESS` or `VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST`.

**Note**
While we guarantee that `vkWaitForFences` must return in finite time, no guarantees are made that it returns immediately upon device loss. However, the client can reasonably expect that the delay will be on the order of seconds and that calling `vkWaitForFences` will not result in a permanently (or seemingly permanently) dead process.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)
- VUID-vkWaitForFences-device-parameter
  - `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle
- VUID-vkWaitForFences-pFences-parameter
  - `pFences` must be a valid pointer to an array of `fenceCount` valid `VkFence` handles
- VUID-vkWaitForFences-fenceCount-arraylength
  - `fenceCount` must be greater than 0
- VUID-vkWaitForFences-pFences-parent
  - Each element of `pFences` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from `device`

### Return Codes
**Success**
- `VK_SUCCESS`
- `VK_TIMEOUT`

**Failure**
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST`

An execution dependency is defined by waiting for a fence to become signaled, either via `vkWaitForFences` or by polling on `vkGetFenceStatus`.

The first synchronization scope includes only the fence signal operation.

The second synchronization scope includes the host operations of `vkWaitForFences` or `vkGetFenceStatus` indicating that the fence has become signaled.
Note
Signaling a fence and waiting on the host does not guarantee that the results of memory accesses will be visible to the host, as the access scope of a memory dependency defined by a fence only includes device access. A memory barrier or other memory dependency must be used to guarantee this. See the description of host access types for more information.

7.3.1. Importing Fence Payloads

Applications can import a fence payload into an existing fence using an external fence handle. The effects of the import operation will be either temporary or permanent, as specified by the application. If the import is temporary, the fence will be restored to its permanent state the next time that fence is passed to vkResetFences.

Note
Restoring a fence to its prior permanent payload is a distinct operation from resetting a fence payload. See vkResetFences for more detail.

Performing a subsequent temporary import on a fence before resetting it has no effect on this requirement; the next unsignal of the fence must still restore its last permanent state. A permanent payload import behaves as if the target fence was destroyed, and a new fence was created with the same handle but the imported payload. Because importing a fence payload temporarily or permanently detaches the existing payload from a fence, similar usage restrictions to those applied to vkDestroyFence are applied to any command that imports a fence payload. Which of these import types is used is referred to as the import operation’s permanence. Each handle type supports either one or both types of permanence.

The implementation must perform the import operation by either referencing or copying the payload referred to by the specified external fence handle, depending on the handle’s type. The import method used is referred to as the handle type’s transference. When using handle types with reference transference, importing a payload to a fence adds the fence to the set of all fences sharing that payload. This set includes the fence from which the payload was exported. Fence signaling, waiting, and resetting operations performed on any fence in the set must behave as if the set were a single fence. Importing a payload using handle types with copy transference creates a duplicate copy of the payload at the time of import, but makes no further reference to it. Fence signaling, waiting, and resetting operations performed on the target of copy imports must not affect any other fence or payload.

Export operations have the same transference as the specified handle type’s import operations. Additionally, exporting a fence payload to a handle with copy transference has the same side effects on the source fence’s payload as executing a fence reset operation. If the fence was using a temporarily imported payload, the fence’s prior permanent payload will be restored.

Note
The tables Handle Types Supported by VkImportFenceWin32HandleInfoKHR and Handle Types Supported by VkImportFenceFdInfoKHR define the permanence and transference of each handle type.
External synchronization allows implementations to modify an object’s internal state, i.e. payload, without internal synchronization. However, for fences sharing a payload across processes, satisfying the external synchronization requirements of VkFence parameters as if all fences in the set were the same object is sometimes infeasible. Satisfying valid usage constraints on the state of a fence would similarly require impractical coordination or levels of trust between processes. Therefore, these constraints only apply to a specific fence handle, not to its payload. For distinct fence objects which share a payload:

- If multiple commands which queue a signal operation, or which unsignal a fence, are called concurrently, behavior will be as if the commands were called in an arbitrary sequential order.
- If a queue submission command is called with a fence that is sharing a payload, and the payload is already associated with another queue command that has not yet completed execution, either one or both of the commands will cause the fence to become signaled when they complete execution.
- If a fence payload is reset while it is associated with a queue command that has not yet completed execution, the payload will become unsignaled, but may become signaled again when the command completes execution.
- In the preceding cases, any of the devices associated with the fences sharing the payload may be lost, or any of the queue submission or fence reset commands may return VK_ERROR_INITIALIZATION_FAILED.

Other than these non-deterministic results, behavior is well defined. In particular:

- The implementation must not crash or enter an internally inconsistent state where future valid Vulkan commands might cause undefined results,
- Timeouts on future wait commands on fences sharing the payload must be effective.

**Note**

These rules allow processes to synchronize access to shared memory without trusting each other. However, such processes must still be cautious not to use the shared fence for more than synchronizing access to the shared memory. For example, a process should not use a fence with shared payload to tell when commands it submitted to a queue have completed and objects used by those commands may be destroyed, since the other process can accidentally or maliciously cause the fence to signal before the commands actually complete.

When a fence is using an imported payload, its VkExportFenceCreateInfo::handleTypes value is that specified when creating the fence from which the payload was exported, rather than that specified when creating the fence. Additionally, VkExternalFenceProperties::exportFromImportedHandleTypes restricts which handle types can be exported from such a fence based on the specific handle type used to import the current payload. Passing a fence to vkAcquireNextImageKHR is equivalent to temporarily importing a fence payload to that fence.
Because the exportable handle types of an imported fence correspond to its current imported payload, and `vkAcquireNextImageKHR` behaves the same as a temporary import operation for which the source fence is opaque to the application, applications have no way of determining whether any external handle types can be exported from a fence in this state. Therefore, applications must not attempt to export handles from fences using a temporarily imported payload from `vkAcquireNextImageKHR`.

When importing a fence payload, it is the responsibility of the application to ensure the external handles meet all valid usage requirements. However, implementations must perform sufficient validation of external handles to ensure that the operation results in a valid fence which will not cause program termination, device loss, queue stalls, host thread stalls, or corruption of other resources when used as allowed according to its import parameters. If the external handle provided does not meet these requirements, the implementation must fail the fence payload import operation with the error code `VK_ERROR_INVALID_EXTERNAL_HANDLE`.

To import a fence payload from a Windows handle, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_fence_win32
VkResult vkImportFenceWin32HandleKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkImportFenceWin32HandleInfoKHR* pImportFenceWin32HandleInfo);
```

- `device` is the logical device that created the fence.
- `pImportFenceWin32HandleInfo` is a pointer to a `VkImportFenceWin32HandleInfoKHR` structure specifying the fence and import parameters.

Importing a fence payload from Windows handles does not transfer ownership of the handle to the Vulkan implementation. For handle types defined as NT handles, the application must release ownership using the `CloseHandle` system call when the handle is no longer needed.

Applications can import the same fence payload into multiple instances of Vulkan, into the same instance from which it was exported, and multiple times into a given Vulkan instance.

**Valid Usage**

- `VUID-vkImportFenceWin32HandleKHR-fence-04448`
  - fence must not be associated with any queue command that has not yet completed execution on that queue
### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkImportFenceWin32HandleKHR-device-parameter**
  
  _device_ must be a valid _VkDevice_ handle.

- **VUID-vkImportFenceWin32HandleKHR-pImportFenceWin32HandleInfo-parameter**

  _pImportFenceWin32HandleInfo_ must be a valid pointer to a valid _VkImportFenceWin32HandleInfoKHR_ structure.

### Return Codes

**Success**

- _VK_SUCCESS_

**Failure**

- _VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY_
- _VK_ERROR_INVALID_EXTERNAL_HANDLE_

The _VkImportFenceWin32HandleInfoKHR_ structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_fence_win32
typedef struct VkImportFenceWin32HandleInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkFence fence;
    VkFenceImportFlags flags;
    VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlagBits handleType;
    HANDLE handle;
    LPCWSTR name;
} VkImportFenceWin32HandleInfoKHR;
```

- _sType_ is the type of this structure.
- _pNext_ is _NULL_ or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- _fence_ is the fence into which the state will be imported.
- _flags_ is a bitmask of _VkFenceImportFlagBits_ specifying additional parameters for the fence payload import operation.
- _handleType_ is a _VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlagBits_ value specifying the type of _handle_.
- _handle_ is _NULL_ or the external handle to import.
- _name_ is _NULL_ or a null-terminated UTF-16 string naming the underlying synchronization primitive to import.

The handle types supported by _handleType_ are:
### Table 6. Handle Types Supported by VkImportFenceWin32HandleInfoKHR

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Handle Type</th>
<th>Transference</th>
<th>Permanence Supported</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_BIT</td>
<td>Reference</td>
<td>Temporary, Permanent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_KMT_BIT</td>
<td>Reference</td>
<td>Temporary, Permanent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkImportFenceWin32HandleInfoKHR-handleType-01457**
  
  `handleType must` be a value included in the **Handle Types Supported by VkImportFenceWin32HandleInfoKHR** table

- **VUID-VkImportFenceWin32HandleInfoKHR-handleType-01459**
  
  If `handleType` is not `VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_BIT`, `name must` be NULL

- **VUID-VkImportFenceWin32HandleInfoKHR-handleType-01460**
  
  If `handle` is NULL, `name must` name a valid synchronization primitive of the type specified by `handleType`

- **VUID-VkImportFenceWin32HandleInfoKHR-handleType-01461**
  
  If `name` is NULL, `handle must` be a valid handle of the type specified by `handleType`

- **VUID-VkImportFenceWin32HandleInfoKHR-handle-01462**
  
  If `handle` is not NULL, `name must` be NULL

- **VUID-VkImportFenceWin32HandleInfoKHR-handle-01539**
  
  If `handle` is not NULL, it **must** obey any requirements listed for `handleType` in external fence handle types compatibility

- **VUID-VkImportFenceWin32HandleInfoKHR-name-01540**
  
  If `name` is not NULL, it **must** obey any requirements listed for `handleType` in external fence handle types compatibility

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkImportFenceWin32HandleInfoKHR-sType-sType**
  
  `sType must` be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMPORT_FENCE_WIN32_HANDLE_INFO_KHR`

- **VUID-VkImportFenceWin32HandleInfoKHR-pNext-pNext**
  
  `pNext must` be NULL

- **VUID-VkImportFenceWin32HandleInfoKHR-fence-parameter**
  
  `fence must` be a valid `VkFence` handle

- **VUID-VkImportFenceWin32HandleInfoKHR-flags-parameter**
  
  `flags must` be a valid combination of `VkFenceImportFlagBits` values
Host Synchronization

- Host access to fence must be externally synchronized

To import a fence payload from a POSIX file descriptor, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_fence_fd
VkResult vkImportFenceFdKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkImportFenceFdInfoKHR* pImportFenceFdInfo);
```

- `device` is the logical device that created the fence.
- `pImportFenceFdInfo` is a pointer to a `VkImportFenceFdInfoKHR` structure specifying the fence and import parameters.

Importing a fence payload from a file descriptor transfers ownership of the file descriptor from the application to the Vulkan implementation. The application must not perform any operations on the file descriptor after a successful import.

Applications can import the same fence payload into multiple instances of Vulkan, into the same instance from which it was exported, and multiple times into a given Vulkan instance.

Valid Usage

- VUID-vkImportFenceFdKHR-fence-01463 fence must not be associated with any queue command that has not yet completed execution on that queue

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkImportFenceFdKHR-device-parameter `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle
- VUID-vkImportFenceFdKHR-pImportFenceFdInfo-parameter `pImportFenceFdInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkImportFenceFdInfoKHR` structure
Return Codes

Success
• VK_SUCCESS

Failure
• VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
• VK_ERROR_INVALID_EXTERNAL_HANDLE

The `VkImportFenceFdInfoKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_fence_fd
typedef struct VkImportFenceFdInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkFence fence;
    VkFenceImportFlags flags;
    VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlagBits handleType;
    int fd;
} VkImportFenceFdInfoKHR;
```

• `sType` is the type of this structure.
• `pNext` is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• `fence` is the fence into which the payload will be imported.
• `flags` is a bitmask of `VkFenceImportFlagBits` specifying additional parameters for the fence payload import operation.
• `handleType` is a `VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlagBits` value specifying the type of `fd`.
• `fd` is the external handle to import.

The handle types supported by `handleType` are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Handle Type</th>
<th>Transference</th>
<th>Permanence Supported</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_FD_BIT</td>
<td>Reference</td>
<td>Temporary,Permanent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_SYNC_FD_BIT</td>
<td>Copy</td>
<td>Temporary</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkImportFenceFdInfoKHR-handleType-01464**
  
  `handleType` **must** be a value included in the Handle Types Supported by `VkImportFenceFdInfoKHR` table.

- **VUID-VkImportFenceFdInfoKHR-fd-01541**
  
  `fd` **must** obey any requirements listed for `handleType` in external fence handle types compatibility.

If `handleType` is `VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_SYNC_FD_BIT`, the special value `-1` for `fd` is treated like a valid sync file descriptor referring to an object that has already signaled. The import operation will succeed and the `VkFence` will have a temporarily imported payload as if a valid file descriptor had been provided.

**Note**

This special behavior for importing an invalid sync file descriptor allows easier interoperability with other system APIs which use the convention that an invalid sync file descriptor represents work that has already completed and does not need to be waited for. It is consistent with the option for implementations to return a `-1` file descriptor when exporting a `VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_SYNC_FD_BIT` from a `VkFence` which is signaled.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkImportFenceFdInfoKHR-sType-sType**
  
  `sType` **must** be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMPORT_FENCE_FD_INFO_KHR`.

- **VUID-VkImportFenceFdInfoKHR-pNext-pNext**
  
  `pNext` **must** be `NULL`.

- **VUID-VkImportFenceFdInfoKHR-fence-parameter**
  
  `fence` **must** be a valid `VkFence` handle.

- **VUID-VkImportFenceFdInfoKHR-flags-parameter**
  
  `flags` **must** be a valid combination of `VkFenceImportFlagBits` values.

- **VUID-VkImportFenceFdInfoKHR-handleType-parameter**
  
  `handleType` **must** be a valid `VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlagBits` value.

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `fence` **must** be externally synchronized.

Bits which **can** be set in

- **VkImportFenceWin32HandleInfoKHR::flags**
specifying additional parameters of a fence import operation are:

```c
typedef enum VkFenceImportFlagBits {
    VK_FENCE_IMPORT_TEMPORARY_BIT = 0x00000001,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_external_fence
    VK_FENCE_IMPORT_TEMPORARY_BIT_KHR = VK_FENCE_IMPORT_TEMPORARY_BIT,
} VkFenceImportFlagBits;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_fence
typedef VkFenceImportFlagBits VkFenceImportFlagBitsKHR;
```

• **VK_FENCE_IMPORT_TEMPORARY_BIT** specifies that the fence payload will be imported only temporarily, as described in Importing Fence Payloads, regardless of the permanence of `handleType`.

```c
typedef VkFlags VkFenceImportFlags;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_fence
typedef VkFenceImportFlags VkFenceImportFlagsKHR;
```

`VkFenceImportFlags` is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more `VkFenceImportFlagBits`.

## 7.4. Semaphores

Semaphores are a synchronization primitive that can be used to insert a dependency between queue operations or between a queue operation and the host. **Binary semaphores** have two states - signaled and unsignaled. **Timeline semaphores** have a strictly increasing 64-bit unsigned integer payload and are signaled with respect to a particular reference value. A semaphore **can** be signaled after execution of a queue operation is completed, and a queue operation **can** wait for a semaphore to become signaled before it begins execution. A timeline semaphore **can** additionally be signaled from the host with the `vkSignalSemaphore` command and waited on from the host with the `vkWaitSemaphores` command.

The internal data of a semaphore may include a reference to any resources and pending work associated with signal or unsignal operations performed on that semaphore object, collectively referred to as the semaphore's *payload*. Mechanisms to import and export that internal data to and from semaphores are provided below. These mechanisms indirectly enable applications to share semaphore state between two or more semaphores and other synchronization primitives across process and API boundaries.
Semaphores are represented by `VkSemaphore` handles:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VK_DEFINE_NON_DISPATCHABLE_HANDLE(VkSemaphore)
```

To create a semaphore, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkCreateSemaphore(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkSemaphoreCreateInfo* pCreateInfo,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator,
    VkSemaphore* pSemaphore);
```

- `device` is the logical device that creates the semaphore.
- `pCreateInfo` is a pointer to a `VkSemaphoreCreateInfo` structure containing information about how the semaphore is to be created.
- `pAllocator` controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
- `pSemaphore` is a pointer to a handle in which the resulting semaphore object is returned.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCreateSemaphore-device-parameter
  ```
  device must be a valid VkDevice handle
  ```

- VUID-vkCreateSemaphore-pCreateInfo-parameter
  ```
  pCreateInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid VkSemaphoreCreateInfo structure
  ```

- VUID-vkCreateSemaphore-pAllocator-parameter
  If `pAllocator` is not NULL, `pAllocator` must be a valid pointer to a valid VkAllocationCallbacks structure

- VUID-vkCreateSemaphore-pSemaphore-parameter
  ```
  pSemaphore must be a valid pointer to a VkSemaphore handle
  ```

### Return Codes

**Success**
- `VK_SUCCESS`

**Failure**
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY`

The `VkSemaphoreCreateInfo` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkSemaphoreCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkSemaphoreCreateFlags flags;
} VkSemaphoreCreateInfo;

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `flags` is reserved for future use.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkSemaphoreCreateInfo-sType-sType
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SEMAPHORE_CREATE_INFO`

- VUID-VkSemaphoreCreateInfo-pNext-pNext
  Each `pNext` member of any structure (including this one) in the `pNext` chain must be either `NULL` or a pointer to a valid instance of `VkExportSemaphoreCreateInfo`, `VkExportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfoKHR`, or `VkSemaphoreTypeCreateInfo`

- VUID-VkSemaphoreCreateInfo-sType-unique
  The `sType` value of each struct in the `pNext` chain must be unique

- VUID-VkSemaphoreCreateInfo-flags-zerobitmask
  `flags` must be `0`

// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkSemaphoreCreateFlags;

`VkSemaphoreCreateFlags` is a bitmask type for setting a mask, but is currently reserved for future use.

The `VkSemaphoreTypeCreateInfo` structure is defined as:

typedef struct VkSemaphoreTypeCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkSemaphoreType semaphoreType;
    uint64_t initialValue;
} VkSemaphoreTypeCreateInfo;

or the equivalent

// Provided by VK_KHR_timeline_semaphore
typedef VkSemaphoreTypeCreateInfo VkSemaphoreTypeCreateInfoKHR;
• **sType** is the type of this structure.

• **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.

• **semaphoreType** is a VkSemaphoreType value specifying the type of the semaphore.

• **initialValue** is the initial payload value if **semaphoreType** is VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE.

To create a semaphore of a specific type, add a `VkSemaphoreTypeCreateInfo` structure to the `VkSemaphoreCreateInfo`::pNext chain.

If no `VkSemaphoreTypeCreateInfo` structure is included in the pNext chain of `VkSemaphoreCreateInfo`, then the created semaphore will have a default `VkSemaphoreType` of VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_BINARY.

### Valid Usage

- VUID-VkSemaphoreTypeCreateInfo-timelineSemaphore-03252
  
  If the timelineSemaphore feature is not enabled, **semaphoreType** must not equal VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE

- VUID-VkSemaphoreTypeCreateInfo-semaphoreType-03279
  
  If **semaphoreType** is VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_BINARY, **initialValue** must be zero

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkSemaphoreTypeCreateInfo-sType-sType
  
  **sType** must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_CREATE_INFO

- VUID-VkSemaphoreTypeCreateInfo-semaphoreType-parameter
  
  **semaphoreType** must be a valid `VkSemaphoreType` value

Possible values of `VkSemaphoreTypeCreateInfo`::**semaphoreType**, specifying the type of a semaphore, are:

```c
typedef enum VkSemaphoreType {
    VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_BINARY = 0,
    VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE = 1,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_timeline_semaphore
    VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_BINARY_KHR = VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_BINARY,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_timeline_semaphore
    VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE_KHR = VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE,
} VkSemaphoreType;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_timeline_semaphore
typedef VkSemaphoreType VkSemaphoreTypeKHR;
```

210 | Chapter 7. Synchronization and Cache Control
• **VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_BINARY** specifies a *binary semaphore* type that has a boolean payload indicating whether the semaphore is currently signaled or unsignaled. When created, the semaphore is in the unsignaled state.

• **VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE** specifies a *timeline semaphore* type that has a strictly increasing 64-bit unsigned integer payload indicating whether the semaphore is signaled with respect to a particular reference value. When created, the semaphore payload has the value given by the `initialValue` field of `VkSemaphoreTypeCreateInfo`.

To create a semaphore whose payload can be exported to external handles, add a `VkExportSemaphoreCreateInfo` structure to the `pNext` chain of the `VkSemaphoreCreateInfo` structure. The `VkExportSemaphoreCreateInfo` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkExportSemaphoreCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlags handleTypes;
} VkExportSemaphoreCreateInfo;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_semaphore
typedef VkExportSemaphoreCreateInfo VkExportSemaphoreCreateInfoKHR;
```

• `sType` is the type of this structure.

• `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.

• `handleTypes` is a bitmask of `VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlagBits` specifying one or more semaphore handle types the application can export from the resulting semaphore. The application can request multiple handle types for the same semaphore.

### Valid Usage

- VUID-VkExportSemaphoreCreateInfo-handleTypes-01124
  The bits in `handleTypes` must be supported and compatible, as reported by `VkExternalSemaphoreProperties`

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkExportSemaphoreCreateInfo-sType-sType
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXPORT_SEMAPHORE_CREATE_INFO`

- VUID-VkExportSemaphoreCreateInfo-handleTypes-parameter
  `handleTypes` must be a valid combination of `VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlagBits` values
To specify additional attributes of NT handles exported from a semaphore, add a `VkExportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfoKHR` structure to the `pNext` chain of the `VkSemaphoreCreateInfo` structure. The `VkExportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfoKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_semaphore_win32
typedef struct VkExportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    const SECURITY_ATTRIBUTES* pAttributes;
    DWORD dwAccess;
    LPCWSTR name;
} VkExportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfoKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `pAttributes` is a pointer to a Windows `SECURITY_ATTRIBUTES` structure specifying security attributes of the handle.
- `dwAccess` is a `DWORD` specifying access rights of the handle.
- `name` is a null-terminated UTF-16 string to associate with the underlying synchronization primitive referenced by NT handles exported from the created semaphore.

If `VkExportSemaphoreCreateInfo` is not included in the same `pNext` chain, this structure is ignored.

If `VkExportSemaphoreCreateInfo` is included in the `pNext` chain of `VkSemaphoreCreateInfo` with a Windows `handleType`, but either `VkExportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfoKHR` is not included in the `pNext` chain, or if it is but `pAttributes` is set to `NULL`, default security descriptor values will be used, and child processes created by the application will not inherit the handle, as described in the MSDN documentation for “Synchronization Object Security and Access Rights”. Further, if the structure is not present, the access rights used depend on the handle type.

For handles of the following types:

**VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_BIT**

The implementation must ensure the access rights allow both signal and wait operations on the semaphore.

For handles of the following types:

**VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_FENCE_BIT**

The access rights must be:

**GENERIC_ALL**

1

Valid Usage

• VUID-VkExportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfoKHR-handleTypes-01125

If 

VkExportSemaphoreCreateInfo::handleTypes does not include
VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_BIT
or
VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_FENCE_BIT, VkExportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfoKHR
must not be included in the pNext chain of VkSemaphoreCreateInfo

Valid Usage (Implicit)

• VUID-VkExportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfoKHR-sType-sType

sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXPORT_SEMAPHORE_WIN32_HANDLE_INFO_KHR

• VUID-VkExportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfoKHR-pAttributes-parameter

If pAttributes is not NULL, pAttributes must be a valid pointer to a valid
SECURITY_ATTRIBUTES value

To export a Windows handle representing the payload of a semaphore, call:

```
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_semaphore_win32
VkResult vkGetSemaphoreWin32HandleKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkSemaphoreGetWin32HandleInfoKHR* pGetWin32HandleInfo,
    HANDLE* pHandle);
```

- `device` is the logical device that created the semaphore being exported.
- `pGetWin32HandleInfo` is a pointer to a VkSemaphoreGetWin32HandleInfoKHR structure containing parameters of the export operation.
- `pHandle` will return the Windows handle representing the semaphore state.

For handle types defined as NT handles, the handles returned by vkGetSemaphoreWin32HandleKHR are owned by the application. To avoid leaking resources, the application must release ownership of them using the CloseHandle system call when they are no longer needed.

Exporting a Windows handle from a semaphore may have side effects depending on the transference of the specified handle type, as described in Importing Semaphore Payloads.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkGetSemaphoreWin32HandleKHR-device-parameter**
  
  **device** must be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- **VUID-vkGetSemaphoreWin32HandleKHR-pGetWin32HandleInfo-parameter**
  
  `pGetWin32HandleInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkSemaphoreGetWin32HandleInfoKHR` structure

- **VUID-vkGetSemaphoreWin32HandleKHR-pHandle-parameter**
  
  `pHandle` must be a valid pointer to a HANDLE value

Return Codes

**Success**

- **VK_SUCCESS**

**Failure**

- **VK_ERROR_TOO_MANY_OBJECTS**
- **VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY**

The `VkSemaphoreGetWin32HandleInfoKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_semaphore_win32
typedef struct VkSemaphoreGetWin32HandleInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkSemaphore semaphore;
    VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlagBits handleType;
} VkSemaphoreGetWin32HandleInfoKHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **semaphore** is the semaphore from which state will be exported.
- **handleType** is a `VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlagBits` value specifying the type of handle requested.

The properties of the handle returned depend on the value of **handleType**. See `VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlagBits` for a description of the properties of the defined external semaphore handle types.
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkSemaphoreGetWin32HandleInfoKHR-handleType-01126
  \textit{handleType} \textbf{must} have been included in \texttt{VkExportSemaphoreCreateInfo::handleTypes} when the semaphore's current payload was created.

- VUID-VkSemaphoreGetWin32HandleInfoKHR-handleType-01127
  If \textit{handleType} is defined as an NT handle, \texttt{vkGetSemaphoreWin32HandleKHR} \textbf{must} be called no more than once for each valid unique combination of semaphore and handleType.

- VUID-VkSemaphoreGetWin32HandleInfoKHR-semaphore-01128
  semaphore \textbf{must} not currently have its payload replaced by an imported payload as described below in Importing Semaphore Payloads unless that imported payload's handle type was included in \texttt{VkExternalSemaphoreProperties::exportFromImportedHandleTypes} for handleType.

- VUID-VkSemaphoreGetWin32HandleInfoKHR-handleType-01129
  If \textit{handleType} refers to a handle type with copy payload transference semantics, as defined below in Importing Semaphore Payloads, there \textbf{must} be no queue waiting on semaphore.

- VUID-VkSemaphoreGetWin32HandleInfoKHR-handleType-01130
  If \textit{handleType} refers to a handle type with copy payload transference semantics, semaphore \textbf{must} be signaled, or have an associated semaphore signal operation pending execution.

- VUID-VkSemaphoreGetWin32HandleInfoKHR-handleType-01131
  \textit{handleType} \textbf{must} be defined as an NT handle or a global share handle.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkSemaphoreGetWin32HandleInfoKHR-sType-sType
  \texttt{sType} \textbf{must} be \texttt{VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SEMAPHORE_GET_WIN32_HANDLE_INFO_KHR}.

- VUID-VkSemaphoreGetWin32HandleInfoKHR-pNext-pNext
  \texttt{pNext} \textbf{must} be \texttt{NULL}.

- VUID-VkSemaphoreGetWin32HandleInfoKHR-semaphore-parameter
  semaphore \textbf{must} be a valid \texttt{VkSemaphore} handle.

- VUID-VkSemaphoreGetWin32HandleInfoKHR-handleType-parameter
  handleType \textbf{must} be a valid \texttt{VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlagBits} value.

To export a POSIX file descriptor representing the payload of a semaphore, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_semaphore_fd
VkResult \texttt{vkGetSemaphoreFdKHR}(  
    \texttt{VkDevice}  \texttt{device},  
    \texttt{const \texttt{VkSemaphoreGetFdInfoKHR*}}  \texttt{pGetFdInfo},  
    \texttt{int*}  \texttt{pFd});
```

- \texttt{device} is the logical device that created the semaphore being exported.
• `pGetFdInfo` is a pointer to a `VkSemaphoreGetFdInfoKHR` structure containing parameters of the export operation.

• `pFd` will return the file descriptor representing the semaphore payload.

Each call to `vkGetSemaphoreFdKHR` must create a new file descriptor and transfer ownership of it to the application. To avoid leaking resources, the application must release ownership of the file descriptor when it is no longer needed.

*Note*

Ownership can be released in many ways. For example, the application can call `close()` on the file descriptor, or transfer ownership back to Vulkan by using the file descriptor to import a semaphore payload.

Where supported by the operating system, the implementation must set the file descriptor to be closed automatically when an `execve` system call is made.

Exporting a file descriptor from a semaphore may have side effects depending on the transference of the specified handle type, as described in Importing Semaphore State.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetSemaphoreFdKHR-device-parameter
  - `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- VUID-vkGetSemaphoreFdKHR-pGetFdInfo-parameter
  - `pGetFdInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkSemaphoreGetFdInfoKHR` structure

- VUID-vkGetSemaphoreFdKHR-pFd-parameter
  - `pFd` must be a valid pointer to an `int` value

### Return Codes

**Success**

- `VK_SUCCESS`

**Failure**

- `VK_ERROR_TOO_MANY_OBJECTS`

- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY`

The `VkSemaphoreGetFdInfoKHR` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkSemaphoreGetFdInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkSemaphore semaphore;
    VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlagBits handleType;
} VkSemaphoreGetFdInfoKHR;

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **semaphore** is the semaphore from which state will be exported.
- **handleType** is a `VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlagBits` value specifying the type of handle requested.

The properties of the file descriptor returned depend on the value of **handleType**. See `VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlagBits` for a description of the properties of the defined external semaphore handle types.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkSemaphoreGetFdInfoKHR-handleType-01132**
  handleType must have been included in VkExportSemaphoreCreateInfo::handleTypes when semaphore's current payload was created.

- **VUID-VkSemaphoreGetFdInfoKHR-semaphore-01133**
  semaphore must not currently have its payload replaced by an imported payload as described below in Importing Semaphore Payloads unless that imported payload's handle type was included in VkExternalSemaphoreProperties::exportFromImportedHandleTypes for handleType.

- **VUID-VkSemaphoreGetFdInfoKHR-handleType-01134**
  If handleType refers to a handle type with copy payload transference semantics, as defined below in Importing Semaphore Payloads, there must be no queue waiting on semaphore.

- **VUID-VkSemaphoreGetFdInfoKHR-handleType-01135**
  If handleType refers to a handle type with copy payload transference semantics, semaphore must be signaled, or have an associated semaphore signal operation pending execution.

- **VUID-VkSemaphoreGetFdInfoKHR-handleType-01136**
  handleType must be defined as a POSIX file descriptor handle.

- **VUID-VkSemaphoreGetFdInfoKHR-handleType-03253**
  If handleType refers to a handle type with copy payload transference semantics, semaphore must have been created with a VkSemaphoreType of VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_BINARY.

- **VUID-VkSemaphoreGetFdInfoKHR-handleType-03254**
  If handleType refers to a handle type with copy payload transference semantics, semaphore must have an associated semaphore signal operation that has been submitted for execution and any semaphore signal operations on which it depends (if any) must have also been submitted for execution.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkSemaphoreGetFdInfoKHR-sType-sType**
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SEMAPHORE_GET_FD_INFO_KHR.

- **VUID-VkSemaphoreGetFdInfoKHR-pNext-pNext**
  pNext must be NULL.

- **VUID-VkSemaphoreGetFdInfoKHR-semaphore-parameter**
  semaphore must be a valid VkSemaphore handle.

- **VUID-VkSemaphoreGetFdInfoKHR-handleType-parameter**
  handleType must be a valid VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlagBits value.

To destroy a semaphore, call:
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkDestroySemaphore(
    VkDevice device,
    VkSemaphore semaphore,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator);

- **device** is the logical device that destroys the semaphore.
- **semaphore** is the handle of the semaphore to destroy.
- **pAllocator** controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkDestroySemaphore-semaphore-01137**
  All submitted batches that refer to **semaphore** must have completed execution

- **VUID-vkDestroySemaphore-semaphore-01138**
  If **VkAllocationCallbacks** were provided when **semaphore** was created, a compatible set of callbacks must be provided here

- **VUID-vkDestroySemaphore-semaphore-01139**
  If no **VkAllocationCallbacks** were provided when **semaphore** was created, **pAllocator** must be **NULL**

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkDestroySemaphore-device-parameter**
  **device** must be a valid **VkDevice** handle

- **VUID-vkDestroySemaphore-semaphore-parameter**
  If **semaphore** is not **VK_NULL_HANDLE**, **semaphore** must be a valid **VkSemaphore** handle

- **VUID-vkDestroySemaphore-pAllocator-parameter**
  If **pAllocator** is not **NULL**, **pAllocator** must be a valid pointer to a valid **VkAllocationCallbacks** structure

- **VUID-vkDestroySemaphore-semaphore-parent**
  If **semaphore** is a valid handle, it must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from **device**

### Host Synchronization

- Host access to **semaphore** must be externally synchronized

#### 7.4.1. Semaphore Signaling

When a batch is submitted to a queue via a queue submission, and it includes semaphores to be
signaled, it defines a memory dependency on the batch, and defines semaphore signal operations which set the semaphores to the signaled state.

In case of semaphores created with a VkSemaphoreType of VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE the semaphore is considered signaled with respect to the counter value set to be signaled as specified in VkTimelineSemaphoreSubmitInfo or VkSemaphoreSignalInfo.

The first synchronization scope includes every command submitted in the same batch. In the case of vkQueueSubmit2KHR, the first synchronization scope is limited to the pipeline stage specified by VkSemaphoreSubmitInfoKHR::stageMask. Semaphore signal operations that are defined by vkQueueSubmit or vkQueueSubmit2KHR additionally include all commands that occur earlier in submission order. Semaphore signal operations that are defined by vkQueueSubmit or vkQueueBindSparse additionally include in the first synchronization scope any semaphore and fence signal operations that occur earlier in signal operation order.

The second synchronization scope includes only the semaphore signal operation.

The first access scope includes all memory access performed by the device.

The second access scope is empty.

7.4.2. Semaphore Waiting

When a batch is submitted to a queue via a queue submission, and it includes semaphores to be waited on, it defines a memory dependency between prior semaphore signal operations and the batch, and defines semaphore wait operations.

Such semaphore wait operations set the semaphores created with a VkSemaphoreType of VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_BINARY to the unsignaled state. In case of semaphores created with a VkSemaphoreType of VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE a prior semaphore signal operation defines a memory dependency with a semaphore wait operation if the value the semaphore is signaled with is greater than or equal to the value the semaphore is waited with, thus the semaphore will continue to be considered signaled with respect to the counter value waited on as specified in VkTimelineSemaphoreSubmitInfo.

The first synchronization scope includes all semaphore signal operations that operate on semaphores waited on in the same batch, and that happen-before-the wait completes.

The second synchronization scope includes every command submitted in the same batch. In the case of vkQueueSubmit, the second synchronization scope is limited to operations on the pipeline stages determined by the destination stage mask specified by the corresponding element of pWaitDstStageMask. In the case of vkQueueSubmit2KHR, the second synchronization scope is limited to the pipeline stage specified by VkSemaphoreSubmitInfoKHR::stageMask. Also, in the case of either vkQueueSubmit2KHR or vkQueueSubmit, the second synchronization scope additionally includes all commands that occur later in submission order.

The first access scope is empty.

The second access scope includes all memory access performed by the device.
The semaphore wait operation happens-after the first set of operations in the execution dependency, and happens-before the second set of operations in the execution dependency.

**Note**

Unlike timeline semaphores, fences or events, the act of waiting for a binary semaphore also unsignals that semaphore. Applications **must** ensure that between two such wait operations, the semaphore is signaled again, with execution dependencies used to ensure these occur in order. Binary semaphore waits and signals should thus occur in discrete 1:1 pairs.

**Note**

A common scenario for using `pWaitDstStageMask` with values other than `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT` is when synchronizing a window system presentation operation against subsequent command buffers which render the next frame. In this case, a presentation image **must** not be overwritten until the presentation operation completes, but other pipeline stages can execute without waiting. A mask of `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT` prevents subsequent color attachment writes from executing until the semaphore signals. Some implementations may be able to execute transfer operations and/or pre-rasterization work before the semaphore is signaled.

If an image layout transition needs to be performed on a presentable image before it is used in a framebuffer, that **can** be performed as the first operation submitted to the queue after acquiring the image, and **should** not prevent other work from overlapping with the presentation operation. For example, a `VkImageMemoryBarrier` could use:

```plaintext
• srcStageMask = VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT
• srcAccessMask = 0
• dstStageMask = VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT
• dstAccessMask = VK_ACCESS_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT | VK_ACCESS_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_WRITE_BIT.
• oldLayout = VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_PRESENT_SRC_KHR
• newLayout = VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL
```

Alternatively, `oldLayout` **can** be `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_UNDEFINED`, if the image's contents need not be preserved.

This barrier accomplishes a dependency chain between previous presentation operations and subsequent color attachment output operations, with the layout transition performed in between, and does not introduce a dependency between previous work and any pre-rasterization shader stages. More precisely, the semaphore signals after the presentation operation completes, the semaphore wait stalls the `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT` stage, and there is a dependency from that same stage to itself with the layout transition performed in between.
7.4.3. Semaphore State Requirements For Wait Operations

Before waiting on a semaphore, the application must ensure the semaphore is in a valid state for a wait operation. Specifically, when a semaphore wait operation is submitted to a queue:

- A binary semaphore must be signaled, or have an associated semaphore signal operation that is pending execution.
- Any semaphore signal operations on which the pending binary semaphore signal operation depends must also be completed or pending execution.
- There must be no other queue waiting on the same binary semaphore when the operation executes.

7.4.4. Host Operations on Semaphores

In addition to semaphore signal operations and semaphore wait operations submitted to device queues, timeline semaphores support the following host operations:

- Query the current counter value of the semaphore using the vkGetSemaphoreCounterValue command.
- Wait for a set of semaphores to reach particular counter values using the vkWaitSemaphores command.
- Signal the semaphore with a particular counter value from the host using the vkSignalSemaphore command.

To query the current counter value of a semaphore created with a VkSemaphoreType of VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE from the host, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_timeline_semaphore
VkResult vkGetSemaphoreCounterValueKHR(
   VkDevice device,
   VkSemaphore semaphore,
   uint64_t*pValue);
```

- device is the logical device that owns the semaphore.
- semaphore is the handle of the semaphore to query.
- pValue is a pointer to a 64-bit integer value in which the current counter value of the semaphore is returned.

Note

If a queue submission command is pending execution, then the value returned by this command may immediately be out of date.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkGetSemaphoreCounterValue-semaphore-03255
  
  **semaphore** must have been created with a **VkSemaphoreType** of **VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE**

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetSemaphoreCounterValue-device-parameter
  
  **device** must be a valid **VkDevice** handle

- VUID-vkGetSemaphoreCounterValue-semaphore-parameter
  
  **semaphore** must be a valid **VkSemaphore** handle

- VUID-vkGetSemaphoreCounterValue-pValue-parameter
  
  **pValue** must be a valid pointer to a **uint64_t** value

- VUID-vkGetSemaphoreCounterValue-semaphore-parent
  
  **semaphore** must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from **device**

Return Codes

**Success**

- VK_SUCCESS

**Failure**

- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST

To wait for a set of semaphores created with a **VkSemaphoreType** of **VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE** to reach particular counter values on the host, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_timeline_semaphore
VkResult vkWaitSemaphoresKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkSemaphoreWaitInfo* pWaitInfo,
    uint64_t timeout);
```

- **device** is the logical device that owns the semaphores.
- **pWaitInfo** is a pointer to a **VkSemaphoreWaitInfo** structure containing information about the wait condition.
- **timeout** is the timeout period in units of nanoseconds. **timeout** is adjusted to the closest value allowed by the implementation-dependent timeout accuracy, which may be substantially longer...
than one nanosecond, and **may** be longer than the requested period.

If the condition is satisfied when `vkWaitSemaphores` is called, then `vkWaitSemaphores` returns immediately. If the condition is not satisfied at the time `vkWaitSemaphores` is called, then `vkWaitSemaphores` will block and wait until the condition is satisfied or the `timeout` has expired, whichever is sooner.

If `timeout` is zero, then `vkWaitSemaphores` does not wait, but simply returns information about the current state of the semaphores. `VK_TIMEOUT` will be returned in this case if the condition is not satisfied, even though no actual wait was performed.

If the condition is satisfied before the `timeout` has expired, `vkWaitSemaphores` returns `VK_SUCCESS`. Otherwise, `vkWaitSemaphores` returns `VK_TIMEOUT` after the `timeout` has expired.

If device loss occurs (see Lost Device) before the timeout has expired, `vkWaitSemaphores` **must** return in finite time with either `VK_SUCCESS` or `VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST`.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkWaitSemaphores-device-parameter**
  
  `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- **VUID-vkWaitSemaphores-pWaitInfo-parameter**
  
  `pWaitInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkSemaphoreWaitInfo` structure

### Return Codes

**Success**

- `VK_SUCCESS`
- `VK_TIMEOUT`

**Failure**

- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST`

The `VkSemaphoreWaitInfo` structure is defined as:
```c
typedef struct VkSemaphoreWaitInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkSemaphoreWaitFlags flags;
    uint32_t semaphoreCount;
    const VkSemaphore* pSemaphores;
    const uint64_t* pValues;
} VkSemaphoreWaitInfo;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_timeline_semaphore
typedef VkSemaphoreWaitInfo VkSemaphoreWaitInfoKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `flags` is a bitmask of `VkSemaphoreWaitFlagBits` specifying additional parameters for the semaphore wait operation.
- `semaphoreCount` is the number of semaphores to wait on.
- `pSemaphores` is a pointer to an array of `semaphoreCount` semaphore handles to wait on.
- `pValues` is a pointer to an array of `semaphoreCount` timeline semaphore values.

**Valid Usage**

- VUID-VkSemaphoreWaitInfo-pSemaphores-03256
  All of the elements of `pSemaphores` must reference a semaphore that was created with a `VkSemaphoreType` of `VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE`
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **sType** must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SEMAPHORE_WAIT_INFO`
- **pNext** must be `NULL`
- **flags** must be a valid combination of `VkSemaphoreWaitFlagBits` values
- **pSemaphores** must be a valid pointer to an array of `semaphoreCount` valid `VkSemaphore` handles
- **pValues** must be a valid pointer to an array of `semaphoreCount` `uint64_t` values
- **semaphoreCount** must be greater than `0`

Bits which **can** be set in `VkSemaphoreWaitInfo::flags`, specifying additional parameters of a semaphore wait operation, are:

```c
typedef enum VkSemaphoreWaitFlagBits {
    VK_SEMAPHORE_WAIT_ANY_BIT = 0x00000001,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_timeline_semaphore
    VK_SEMAPHORE_WAIT_ANY_BIT_KHR = VK_SEMAPHORE_WAIT_ANY_BIT,
} VkSemaphoreWaitFlagBits;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_timeline_semaphore
typedef VkSemaphoreWaitFlagBits VkSemaphoreWaitFlagBitsKHR;
```

- **VK_SEMAPHORE_WAIT_ANY_BIT** specifies that the semaphore wait condition is that at least one of the semaphores in `VkSemaphoreWaitInfo::pSemaphores` has reached the value specified by the corresponding element of `VkSemaphoreWaitInfo::pValues`. If **VK_SEMAPHORE_WAIT_ANY_BIT** is not set, the semaphore wait condition is that all of the semaphores in `VkSemaphoreWaitInfo::pSemaphores` have reached the value specified by the corresponding element of `VkSemaphoreWaitInfo::pValues`.

```c
typedef VkFlags VkSemaphoreWaitFlags;
```

or the equivalent
**VkSemaphoreWaitFlags** is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more **VkSemaphoreWaitFlagBits**.

To signal a semaphore created with a **VkSemaphoreType** of **VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE** with a particular counter value, on the host, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_timeline_semaphore
typedef VkSemaphoreWaitFlags VkSemaphoreWaitFlagsKHR;

VkSemaphoreWaitFlags is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more VkSemaphoreWaitFlagBits.

To signal a semaphore created with a VkSemaphoreType of VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE with a particular counter value, on the host, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_timeline_semaphore
VkResult vkSignalSemaphoreKHR(VkDevice device, const VkSemaphoreSignalInfo* pSignalInfo);
```

- **device** is the logical device that owns the semaphore.
- **pSignalInfo** is a pointer to a VkSemaphoreSignalInfo structure containing information about the signal operation.

When **vkSignalSemaphore** is executed on the host, it defines and immediately executes a semaphore signal operation which sets the timeline semaphore to the given value.

The first synchronization scope is defined by the host execution model, but includes execution of **vkSignalSemaphore** on the host and anything that happened-before it.

The second synchronization scope is empty.

## Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkSignalSemaphore-device-parameter**
  - **device** must be a valid VkDevice handle

- **VUID-vkSignalSemaphore-pSignalInfo-parameter**
  - **pSignalInfo** must be a valid pointer to a valid VkSemaphoreSignalInfo structure

## Return Codes

**Success**

- **VK_SUCCESS**

**Failure**

- **VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY**
- **VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY**

The **VkSemaphoreSignalInfo** structure is defined as:

---

Chapter 7. Synchronization and Cache Control | 227
typedef struct VkSemaphoreSignalInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkSemaphore semaphore;
    uint64_t value;
} VkSemaphoreSignalInfo;

or the equivalent

// Provided by VK_KHR_timeline_semaphore
typedef VkSemaphoreSignalInfo VkSemaphoreSignalInfoKHR;

• sType is the type of this structure.
• pNext is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• semaphore is the handle of the semaphore to signal.
• value is the value to signal.

Valid Usage

• VUID-VkSemaphoreSignalInfo-semaphore-03257
  semaphore must have been created with a VkSemaphoreType of VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE

• VUID-VkSemaphoreSignalInfo-value-03258
  value must have a value greater than the current value of the semaphore

• VUID-VkSemaphoreSignalInfo-value-03259
  value must be less than the value of any pending semaphore signal operations

• VUID-VkSemaphoreSignalInfo-value-03260
  value must have a value which does not differ from the current value of the semaphore or the value of any outstanding semaphore wait or signal operation on semaphore by more than maxTimelineSemaphoreValueDifference

Valid Usage (Implicit)

• VUID-VkSemaphoreSignalInfo-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SEMAPHORE_SIGNAL_INFO

• VUID-VkSemaphoreSignalInfo-pNext-pNext
  pNext must be NULL

• VUID-VkSemaphoreSignalInfo-semaphore-parameter
  semaphore must be a valid VkSemaphore handle
7.4.5. Importing Semaphore Payloads

Applications can import a semaphore payload into an existing semaphore using an external semaphore handle. The effects of the import operation will be either temporary or permanent, as specified by the application. If the import is temporary, the implementation must restore the semaphore to its prior permanent state after submitting the next semaphore wait operation. Performing a subsequent temporary import on a semaphore before performing a semaphore wait has no effect on this requirement; the next wait submitted on the semaphore must still restore its last permanent state. A permanent payload import behaves as if the target semaphore was destroyed, and a new semaphore was created with the same handle but the imported payload. Because importing a semaphore payload temporarily or permanently detaches the existing payload from a semaphore, similar usage restrictions to those applied to vkDestroySemaphore are applied to any command that imports a semaphore payload. Which of these import types is used is referred to as the import operation’s permanence. Each handle type supports either one or both types of permanence.

The implementation must perform the import operation by either referencing or copying the payload referred to by the specified external semaphore handle, depending on the handle’s type. The import method used is referred to as the handle type’s transference. When using handle types with reference transference, importing a payload to a semaphore adds the semaphore to the set of all semaphores sharing that payload. This set includes the semaphore from which the payload was exported. Semaphore signaling and waiting operations performed on any semaphore in the set must behave as if the set were a single semaphore. Importing a payload using handle types with copy transference creates a duplicate copy of the payload at the time of import, but makes no further reference to it. Semaphore signaling and waiting operations performed on the target of copy imports must not affect any other semaphore or payload.

Export operations have the same transference as the specified handle type’s import operations. Additionally, exporting a semaphore payload to a handle with copy transference has the same side effects on the source semaphore’s payload as executing a semaphore wait operation. If the semaphore was using a temporarily imported payload, the semaphore’s prior permanent payload will be restored.

Note
The permanence and transference of handle types can be found in:

- Handle Types Supported by VkImportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfoKHR
- Handle Types Supported by VkImportSemaphoreFdInfoKHR

External synchronization allows implementations to modify an object’s internal state, i.e. payload, without internal synchronization. However, for semaphores sharing a payload across processes, satisfying the external synchronization requirements of VkSemaphore parameters as if all semaphores in the set were the same object is sometimes infeasible. Satisfying the wait operation state requirements would similarly require impractical coordination or levels of trust between processes. Therefore, these constraints only apply to a specific semaphore handle, not to its payload. For distinct semaphore objects which share a payload, if the semaphores are passed to separate queue submission commands concurrently, behavior will be as if the commands were called in an arbitrary sequential order. If the wait operation state requirements are violated for the
shared payload by a queue submission command, or if a signal operation is queued for a shared payload that is already signaled or has a pending signal operation, effects must be limited to one or more of the following:

- Returning **VK_ERROR_INITIALIZATION_FAILED** from the command which resulted in the violation.
- Losing the logical device on which the violation occurred immediately or at a future time, resulting in a **VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST** error from subsequent commands, including the one causing the violation.
- Continuing execution of the violating command or operation as if the semaphore wait completed successfully after an implementation-dependent timeout. In this case, the state of the payload becomes undefined, and future operations on semaphores sharing the payload will be subject to these same rules. The semaphore must be destroyed or have its payload replaced by an import operation to again have a well-defined state.

**Note**
These rules allow processes to synchronize access to shared memory without trusting each other. However, such processes must still be cautious not to use the shared semaphore for more than synchronizing access to the shared memory. For example, a process should not use a shared semaphore as part of an execution dependency chain that, when complete, leads to objects being destroyed, if it does not trust other processes sharing the semaphore payload.

When a semaphore is using an imported payload, its **VkExportSemaphoreCreateInfo::handleTypes** value is that specified when creating the semaphore from which the payload was exported, rather than that specified when creating the semaphore. Additionally, **VkExternalSemaphoreProperties::exportFromImportedHandleTypes** restricts which handle types can be exported from such a semaphore based on the specific handle type used to import the current payload. Passing a semaphore to **vkAcquireNextImageKHR** is equivalent to temporarily importing a semaphore payload to that semaphore.

**Note**
Because the exportable handle types of an imported semaphore correspond to its current imported payload, and **vkAcquireNextImageKHR** behaves the same as a temporary import operation for which the source semaphore is opaque to the application, applications have no way of determining whether any external handle types can be exported from a semaphore in this state. Therefore, applications must not attempt to export external handles from semaphores using a temporarily imported payload from **vkAcquireNextImageKHR**.

When importing a semaphore payload, it is the responsibility of the application to ensure the external handles meet all valid usage requirements. However, implementations must perform sufficient validation of external handles to ensure that the operation results in a valid semaphore which will not cause program termination, device loss, queue stalls, or corruption of other resources when used as allowed according to its import parameters, and excepting those side effects allowed for violations of the valid semaphore state for wait operations rules. If the external handle provided does not meet these requirements, the implementation must fail the semaphore payload import operation with the error code **VK_ERROR_INVALID_EXTERNAL_HANDLE**.
In addition, when importing a semaphore payload that is not compatible with the payload type corresponding to the VkSemaphoreType the semaphore was created with, the implementation may fail the semaphore payload import operation with the error code VK_ERROR_INVALID_EXTERNAL_HANDLE.

**Note**

As the introduction of the external semaphore handle type VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_FENCE_BIT predates that of timeline semaphores, support for importing semaphore payloads from external handles of that type into semaphores created (implicitly or explicitly) with a VkSemaphoreType of VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_BINARY is preserved for backwards compatibility. However, applications should prefer importing such handle types into semaphores created with a VkSemaphoreType of VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE.

To import a semaphore payload from a Windows handle, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_semaphore_win32
VkResult vkImportSemaphoreWin32HandleKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkImportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfoKHR* pImportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfo);
```

- `device` is the logical device that created the semaphore.
- `pImportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfo` is a pointer to a `VkImportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfoKHR` structure specifying the semaphore and import parameters.

Importing a semaphore payload from Windows handles does not transfer ownership of the handle to the Vulkan implementation. For handle types defined as NT handles, the application must release ownership using the `CloseHandle` system call when the handle is no longer needed.

Applications can import the same semaphore payload into multiple instances of Vulkan, into the same instance from which it was exported, and multiple times into a given Vulkan instance.

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-vkImportSemaphoreWin32HandleKHR-device-parameter
  
  `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- VUID-vkImportSemaphoreWin32HandleKHR-pImportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfo-parameter
  
  `pImportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkImportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfoKHR` structure
The `VkImportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfoKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_semaphore_win32
typedef struct VkImportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkSemaphore semaphore;
    VkSemaphoreImportFlags flags;
    VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlagBits handleType;
    HANDLE handle;
    LPCWSTR name;
} VkImportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfoKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `semaphore` is the semaphore into which the payload will be imported.
- `flags` is a bitmask of `VkSemaphoreImportFlagBits` specifying additional parameters for the semaphore payload import operation.
- `handleType` is a `VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlagBits` value specifying the type of `handle`.
- `handle` is `NULL` or the external handle to import.
- `name` is `NULL` or a null-terminated UTF-16 string naming the underlying synchronization primitive to import.

The handle types supported by `handleType` are:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Handle Type</th>
<th>Transference</th>
<th>Permanence Supported</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_B</td>
<td>Reference</td>
<td>Temporary, Permanent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_K</td>
<td>Reference</td>
<td>Temporary, Permanent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_KMT_BIT</td>
<td>Reference</td>
<td>Temporary, Permanent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkImportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfoKHR-handleType-01140**
  
  **handleType** must be a value included in the Handle Types Supported by VkImportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfoKHR table.

- **VUID-VkImportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfoKHR-handleType-01466**
  
  If **handleType** is not **VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_BIT** or **VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_FENCE_BIT**, **name** must be NULL.

- **VUID-VkImportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfoKHR-handleType-01467**
  
  If **handle** is NULL, **name** must name a valid synchronization primitive of the type specified by **handleType**.

- **VUID-VkImportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfoKHR-handleType-01468**
  
  If **name** is NULL, **handle** must be a valid handle of the type specified by **handleType**.

- **VUID-VkImportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfoKHR-handle-01469**
  
  If **handle** is not NULL, **name** must be NULL.

- **VUID-VkImportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfoKHR-handleType-03261**
  
  If **handleType** is **VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_BIT** or **VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_KMT_BIT**, the VkSemaphoreCreateInfo ::flags field must match that of the semaphore from which **handle** or **name** was exported.

- **VUID-VkImportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfoKHR-flags-03322**
  
  If **flags** contains **VK_SEMAPHORE_IMPORT_TEMPORARY_BIT**, the VkSemaphoreTypeCreateInfo ::semaphoreType field must match that of the semaphore from which **handle** or **name** was exported must not be **VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE**.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkImportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfoKHR-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMPORT_SEMAPHORE_WIN32_HANDLE_INFO_KHR

- VUID-VkImportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfoKHR-pNext-pNext
  pNext must be NULL

- VUID-VkImportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfoKHR-semaphore-parameter
  semaphore must be a valid VkSemaphore handle

- VUID-VkImportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfoKHR-flags-parameter
  flags must be a valid combination of VkSemaphoreImportFlagBits values

Host Synchronization

- Host access to semaphore must be externally synchronized

To import a semaphore payload from a POSIX file descriptor, call:

```
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_semaphore_fd
VkResult vkImportSemaphoreFdKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkImportSemaphoreFdInfoKHR* pImportSemaphoreFdInfo);
```

- device is the logical device that created the semaphore.
- pImportSemaphoreFdInfo is a pointer to a VkImportSemaphoreFdInfoKHR structure specifying the semaphore and import parameters.

Importing a semaphore payload from a file descriptor transfers ownership of the file descriptor from the application to the Vulkan implementation. The application must not perform any operations on the file descriptor after a successful import.

Applications can import the same semaphore payload into multiple instances of Vulkan, into the same instance from which it was exported, and multiple times into a given Vulkan instance.

Valid Usage

- VUID-vkImportSemaphoreFdKHR-semaphore-01142
  semaphore must not be associated with any queue command that has not yet completed execution on that queue
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkImportSemaphoreFdKHR-device-parameter**
  
  device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- **VUID-vkImportSemaphoreFdKHR-pImportSemaphoreFdInfo-parameter**
  
  pImportSemaphoreFdInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid VkImportSemaphoreFdInfoKHR structure

Return Codes

**Success**

- VK_SUCCESS

**Failure**

- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_INVALID_EXTERNAL_HANDLE

The VkImportSemaphoreFdInfoKHR structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_semaphore_fd
typedef struct VkImportSemaphoreFdInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkSemaphore semaphore;
    VkSemaphoreImportFlags flags;
    VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlagBits handleType;
    int fd;
} VkImportSemaphoreFdInfoKHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **semaphore** is the semaphore into which the payload will be imported.
- **flags** is a bitmask of VkSemaphoreImportFlagBits specifying additional parameters for the semaphore payload import operation.
- **handleType** is a VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlagBits value specifying the type of fd.
- **fd** is the external handle to import.

The handle types supported by handleType are:

*Table 9. Handle Types Supported by VkImportSemaphoreFdInfoKHR*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Handle Type</th>
<th>Transference</th>
<th>Permanence Supported</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_FD_BIT</td>
<td>Reference</td>
<td>Temporary, Permanent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_SYNC_FD_BIT</td>
<td>Copy</td>
<td>Temporary</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkImportSemaphoreFdInfoKHR-handleType-01143**
  
  `handleType` **must** be a value included in the [Handle Types Supported by VkImportSemaphoreFdInfoKHR](#) table.

- **VUID-VkImportSemaphoreFdInfoKHR-fd-01544**
  
  `fd` **must** obey any requirements listed for `handleType` in external semaphore handle types compatibility.

- **VUID-VkImportSemaphoreFdInfoKHR-handleType-03263**
  
  If `handleType` is `VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_FD_BIT`, the `VkSemaphoreCreateInfo::flags` field **must** match that of the semaphore from which `fd` was exported.

- **VUID-VkImportSemaphoreFdInfoKHR-handleType-03264**
  
  If `handleType` is `VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_FD_BIT`, the `VkSemaphoreTypeCreateInfo::semaphoreType` field **must** match that of the semaphore from which `fd` was exported.

- **VUID-VkImportSemaphoreFdInfoKHR-flags-03323**
  
  If `flags` contains `VK_SEMAPHORE_IMPORT_TEMPORARY_BIT`, the `VkSemaphoreTypeCreateInfo::semaphoreType` field of the semaphore from which `fd` was exported **must** not be `VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE`.

If `handleType` is `VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_SYNC_FD_BIT`, the special value `-1` for `fd` is treated like a valid sync file descriptor referring to an object that has already signaled. The import operation will succeed and the `VkSemaphore` will have a temporarily imported payload as if a valid file descriptor had been provided.

**Note**

This special behavior for importing an invalid sync file descriptor allows easier interoperability with other system APIs which use the convention that an invalid sync file descriptor represents work that has already completed and does not need to be waited for. It is consistent with the option for implementations to return a `-1` file descriptor when exporting a `VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_SYNC_FD_BIT` from a `VkSemaphore` which is signaled.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkImportSemaphoreFdInfoKHR-sType-sType**
  - `sType` **must** be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMPORT_SEMAPHORE_FD_INFO_KHR**

- **VUID-VkImportSemaphoreFdInfoKHR-pNext-pNext**
  - `pNext` **must** be **NULL**

- **VUID-VkImportSemaphoreFdInfoKHR-semaphore-parameter**
  - `semaphore` **must** be a valid `VkSemaphore` handle

- **VUID-VkImportSemaphoreFdInfoKHR-flags-parameter**
  - `flags` **must** be a valid combination of `VkSemaphoreImportFlagBits` values

- **VUID-VkImportSemaphoreFdInfoKHR-handleType-parameter**
  - `handleType` **must** be a valid `VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlagBits` value

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `semaphore` **must** be externally synchronized

Bits which **can** be set in

- `VkImportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfoKHR::flags`
- `VkImportSemaphoreFdInfoKHR::flags`

specifying additional parameters of a semaphore import operation are:

```c
typedef enum VkSemaphoreImportFlagBits {
    VK_SEMAPHORE_IMPORT_TEMPORARY_BIT = 0x00000001,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_external_semaphore
    VK_SEMAPHORE_IMPORT_TEMPORARY_BIT_KHR = VK_SEMAPHORE_IMPORT_TEMPORARY_BIT,
} VkSemaphoreImportFlagBits;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_semaphore
typedef VkSemaphoreImportFlagBits VkSemaphoreImportFlagBitsKHR;
```

These bits have the following meanings:

- **VK_SEMAPHORE_IMPORT_TEMPORARY_BIT** specifies that the semaphore payload will be imported only temporarily, as described in Importing Semaphore Payloads, regardless of the permanence of `handleType`.

```c
typedef VkFlags VkSemaphoreImportFlags;
```
or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_semaphore
typedef VkSemaphoreImportFlags VkSemaphoreImportFlagsKHR;
```

`VkSemaphoreImportFlags` is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more `VkSemaphoreImportFlagBits`.

## 7.5. Events

Events are a synchronization primitive that can be used to insert a fine-grained dependency between commands submitted to the same queue, or between the host and a queue. Events must not be used to insert a dependency between commands submitted to different queues. Events have two states - signaled and unsignaled. An application can signal or unsignal an event either on the host or on the device. A device can be made to wait for an event to become signaled before executing further operations. No command exists to wait for an event to become signaled on the host, but the current state of an event can be queried.

Events are represented by `VkEvent` handles:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VK_DEFINE_NON_DISPATCHABLE_HANDLE(VkEvent)
```

To create an event, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkCreateEvent(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkEventCreateInfo* pCreateInfo,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator,
    VkEvent* pEvent);
```

- `device` is the logical device that creates the event.
- `pCreateInfo` is a pointer to a `VkEventCreateInfo` structure containing information about how the event is to be created.
- `pAllocator` controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
- `pEvent` is a pointer to a handle in which the resulting event object is returned.

When created, the event object is in the unsignaled state.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkCreateEvent-events-04468
  If the VK_KHR_portability_subset extension is enabled, and 
  VkPhysicalDevicePortabilitySubsetFeaturesKHR::events is VK_FALSE, then the 
  implementation does not support events, and vkCreateEvent must not be used

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCreateEvent-device-parameter
  device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- VUID-vkCreateEvent-pCreateInfo-parameter
  pCreateInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid VkEventCreateInfo structure

- VUID-vkCreateEvent-pAllocator-parameter
  If pAllocator is not NULL, pAllocator must be a valid pointer to a valid 
  VkAllocationCallbacks structure

- VUID-vkCreateEvent-pEvent-parameter
  pEvent must be a valid pointer to a VkEvent handle

Return Codes

Success

- VK_SUCCESS

Failure

- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY

The VkEventCreateInfo structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkEventCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkEventCreateFlags flags;
} VkEventCreateInfo;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `flags` is a bitmask of VkEventCreateFlagBits defining additional creation parameters.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkEventCreateInfo-sType-sType**
  
  *must* be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EVENT_CREATE_INFO**

- **VUID-VkEventCreateInfo-pNext-pNext**
  
  *must* be **NULL**

- **VUID-VkEventCreateInfo-flags-parameter**
  
  *flags* *must* be a valid combination of **VkEventCreateFlagBits** values

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkEventCreateFlagBits {
    // Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2
    VK_EVENT_CREATE_DEVICE_ONLY_BIT_KHR = 0x00000001,
} VkEventCreateFlagBits;
```

- **VK_EVENT_CREATE_DEVICE_ONLY_BIT_KHR** specifies that host event commands will not be used with this event.

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkEventCreateFlags;
```

**VkEventCreateFlags** is a bitmask type for setting a mask of **VkEventCreateFlagBits**.

To destroy an event, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkDestroyEvent( 
    VkDevice device, 
    VkEvent event, 
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator);
```

- **device** is the logical device that destroys the event.
- **event** is the handle of the event to destroy.
- **pAllocator** controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkDestroyEvent-event-01145
  All submitted commands that refer to event must have completed execution

- VUID-vkDestroyEvent-event-01146
  If VkAllocationCallbacks were provided when event was created, a compatible set of callbacks must be provided here

- VUID-vkDestroyEvent-event-01147
  If no VkAllocationCallbacks were provided when event was created, pAllocator must be NULL

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkDestroyEvent-device-parameter
  device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- VUID-vkDestroyEvent-event-parameter
  If event is not VK_NULL_HANDLE, event must be a valid VkEvent handle

- VUID-vkDestroyEvent-pAllocator-parameter
  If pAllocator is not NULL, pAllocator must be a valid pointer to a valid VkAllocationCallbacks structure

- VUID-vkDestroyEvent-event-parent
  If event is a valid handle, it must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from device

Host Synchronization

- Host access to event must be externally synchronized

To query the state of an event from the host, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkGetEventStatus(
    VkDevice  device,
    VkEvent   event);
```

- device is the logical device that owns the event.
- event is the handle of the event to query.

Upon success, vkGetEventStatus returns the state of the event object with the following return codes:

Table 10. Event Object Status Codes
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Status</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_EVENT_SET</td>
<td>The event specified by <code>event</code> is signaled.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_EVENT_RESET</td>
<td>The event specified by <code>event</code> is unsignaled.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If a `vkCmdSetEvent` or `vkCmdResetEvent` command is in a command buffer that is in the **pending state**, then the value returned by this command **may** immediately be out of date.

The state of an event **can** be updated by the host. The state of the event is immediately changed, and subsequent calls to `vkGetEventStatus` will return the new state. If an event is already in the requested state, then updating it to the same state has no effect.

### Valid Usage

- VUID-vkGetEventStatus-event-03940
  - `event` **must** not have been created with `VK_EVENT_CREATE_DEVICE_ONLY_BIT_KHR`

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetEventStatus-device-parameter
  - `device` **must** be a valid `VkDevice` handle
- VUID-vkGetEventStatus-event-parameter
  - `event` **must** be a valid `VkEvent` handle
- VUID-vkGetEventStatus-event-parent
  - `event` **must** have been created, allocated, or retrieved from `device`

### Return Codes

**Success**

- `VK_EVENT_SET`
- `VK_EVENT_RESET`

**Failure**

- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST`

To set the state of an event to signaled from the host, call:
/// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkSetEvent(
    VkDevice device,
    VkEvent event);

- **device** is the logical device that owns the event.
- **event** is the event to set.

When `vkSetEvent` is executed on the host, it defines an *event signal operation* which sets the event to the signaled state.

If **event** is already in the signaled state when `vkSetEvent` is executed, then `vkSetEvent` has no effect, and no event signal operation occurs.

**Valid Usage**

- VUID-vkSetEvent-event-03941
  
  **event** must not have been created with `VK_EVENT_CREATE_DEVICE_ONLY_BIT_KHR`

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-vkSetEvent-device-parameter
  
  **device** must be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- VUID-vkSetEvent-event-parameter
  
  **event** must be a valid `VkEvent` handle

- VUID-vkSetEvent-event-parent
  
  **event** must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from **device**

**Host Synchronization**

- Host access to **event** must be externally synchronized

**Return Codes**

**Success**

- `VK_SUCCESS`

**Failure**

- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY`
To set the state of an event to unsignaled from the host, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkResetEvent(
    VkDevice device,
    VkEvent event);
```

- `device` is the logical device that owns the event.
- `event` is the event to reset.

When `vkResetEvent` is executed on the host, it defines an *event unsignal operation* which resets the event to the unsignaled state.

If `event` is already in the unsignaled state when `vkResetEvent` is executed, then `vkResetEvent` has no effect, and no event unsignal operation occurs.

## Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkResetEvent-event-03821**
  There must be an execution dependency between `vkResetEvent` and the execution of any `vkCmdWaitEvents` that includes `event` in its `pEvents` parameter

- **VUID-vkResetEvent-event-03822**
  There must be an execution dependency between `vkResetEvent` and the execution of any `vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR` that includes `event` in its `pEvents` parameter

- **VUID-vkResetEvent-event-03823**
  `event` must not have been created with `VK_EVENT_CREATE_DEVICE_ONLY_BIT_KHR`

## Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkResetEvent-device-parameter**
  `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- **VUID-vkResetEvent-event-parameter**
  `event` must be a valid `VkEvent` handle

- **VUID-vkResetEvent-event-parent**
  `event` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from `device`

## Host Synchronization

- Host access to `event` must be externally synchronized
Return Codes

**Success**
- VK_SUCCESS

**Failure**
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY

The state of an event can also be updated on the device by commands inserted in command buffers.

To signal an event from a device, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2
void vkCmdSetEvent2KHR(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    VkEvent event,
    const VkDependencyInfoKHR* pDependencyInfo);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command is recorded.
- `event` is the event that will be signaled.
- `pDependencyInfo` is a pointer to a `VkDependencyInfoKHR` structure defining the first scopes of this operation.

When `vkCmdSetEvent2KHR` is submitted to a queue, it defines the first half of memory dependencies defined by `pDependencyInfo`, as well as an event signal operation which sets the event to the signaled state. A memory dependency is defined between the event signal operation and commands that occur earlier in submission order.

The first synchronization scope and access scope are defined by the union of all the memory dependencies defined by `pDependencyInfo`, and are applied to all operations that occur earlier in submission order. Queue family ownership transfers and image layout transitions defined by `pDependencyInfo` are also included in the first scopes.

The second synchronization scope includes only the event signal operation, and any queue family ownership transfers and image layout transitions defined by `pDependencyInfo`.

The second access scope includes only queue family ownership transfers and image layout transitions.

Future `vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR` commands rely on all values of each element in `pDependencyInfo` matching exactly with those used to signal the corresponding event. `vkCmdWaitEvents` must not be used to wait on the result of a signal operation defined by `vkCmdSetEvent2KHR`. 
Note
The extra information provided by `vkCmdSetEvent2KHR` compared to `vkCmdSetEvent` allows implementations to more efficiently schedule the operations required to satisfy the requested dependencies. With `vkCmdSetEvent`, the full dependency information is not known until `vkCmdWaitEvents` is recorded, forcing implementations to insert the required operations at that point and not before.

If `event` is already in the signaled state when `vkCmdSetEvent2KHR` is executed on the device, then `vkCmdSetEvent2KHR` has no effect, no event signal operation occurs, and no dependency is generated.

Valid Usage

- VUID-vkCmdSetEvent2KHR-synchronization2-03824
  The `synchronization2` feature must be enabled

- VUID-vkCmdSetEvent2KHR-dependencyFlags-03825
  The `dependencyFlags` member of `pDependencyInfo` must be 0

- VUID-vkCmdSetEvent2KHR-commandBuffer-03826
  The current device mask of `commandBuffer` must include exactly one physical device

- VUID-vkCmdSetEvent2KHR-srcStageMask-03827
  The `srcStageMask` member of any element of the `pMemoryBarriers`, `pBufferMemoryBarriers`, or `pImageMemoryBarriers` members of `pDependencyInfo` must only include pipeline stages valid for the queue family that was used to create the command pool that `commandBuffer` was allocated from

- VUID-vkCmdSetEvent2KHR-dstStageMask-03828
  The `dstStageMask` member of any element of the `pMemoryBarriers`, `pBufferMemoryBarriers`, or `pImageMemoryBarriers` members of `pDependencyInfo` must only include pipeline stages valid for the queue family that was used to create the command pool that `commandBuffer` was allocated from
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdSetEvent2KHR-commandBuffer-parameter
  - `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle

- VUID-vkCmdSetEvent2KHR-event-parameter
  - `event` must be a valid `VkEvent` handle

- VUID-vkCmdSetEvent2KHR-pDependencyInfo-parameter
  - `pDependencyInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkDependencyInfoKHR` structure

- VUID-vkCmdSetEvent2KHR-commandBuffer-recording
  - `commandBuffer` must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdSetEvent2KHR-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  - The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support graphics, or compute operations

- VUID-vkCmdSetEvent2KHR-renderpass
  - This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance

- VUID-vkCmdSetEvent2KHR-commonparent
  - Both of `commandBuffer`, and `event` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized

- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The `VkDependencyInfoKHR` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkDependencyInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void*pNext;
    VkDependencyFlags dependencyFlags;
    uint32_t memoryBarrierCount;
    const VkMemoryBarrier2KHR*pMemoryBarriers;
    uint32_t bufferMemoryBarrierCount;
    const VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR*pBufferMemoryBarriers;
    uint32_t imageMemoryBarrierCount;
    const VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR*pImageMemoryBarriers;
} VkDependencyInfoKHR;

- sType is the type of this structure.
- pNext is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- dependencyFlags is a bitmask of VkDependencyFlagBits specifying how execution and memory dependencies are formed.
- memoryBarrierCount is the length of the pMemoryBarriers array.
- pMemoryBarriers is a pointer to an array of VkMemoryBarrier2KHR structures that define memory dependencies between any memory accesses.
- bufferMemoryBarrierCount is the length of the pBufferMemoryBarriers array.
- pBufferMemoryBarriers is a pointer to an array of VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR structures that define memory dependencies between buffer ranges.
- imageMemoryBarrierCount is the length of the pImageMemoryBarriers array.
- pImageMemoryBarriers is a pointer to an array of VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR structures that define memory dependencies between image subresources.

This structure defines a set of memory dependencies, as well as queue family transfer operations and image layout transitions.

Each member of pMemoryBarriers, pBufferMemoryBarriers, and pImageMemoryBarriers defines a separate memory dependency.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkDependencyInfoKHR-sType-sType**
  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEPENDENCY_INFO_KHR`

- **VUID-VkDependencyInfoKHR-pNext-pNext**
  
  `pNext` must be `NULL`

- **VUID-VkDependencyInfoKHR-dependencyFlags-parameter**
  
  `dependencyFlags` must be a valid combination of `VkDependencyFlagBits` values

- **VUID-VkDependencyInfoKHR-pMemoryBarriers-parameter**
  
  If `memoryBarrierCount` is not 0, `pMemoryBarriers` must be a valid pointer to an array of `VkMemoryBarrier2KHR` structures

- **VUID-VkDependencyInfoKHR-pBufferMemoryBarriers-parameter**
  
  If `bufferMemoryBarrierCount` is not 0, `pBufferMemoryBarriers` must be a valid pointer to an array of `VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR` structures

- **VUID-VkDependencyInfoKHR-pImageMemoryBarriers-parameter**
  
  If `imageMemoryBarrierCount` is not 0, `pImageMemoryBarriers` must be a valid pointer to an array of `VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR` structures

To set the state of an event to signaled from a device, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkCmdSetEvent(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,  
    VkEvent event, 
    VkPipelineStageFlags stageMask);
```

- **commandBuffer** is the command buffer into which the command is recorded.
- **event** is the event that will be signaled.
- **stageMask** specifies the source stage mask used to determine the first synchronization scope.

`vkCmdSetEvent` behaves identically to `vkCmdSetEvent2KHR`, except that it does not define an access scope, and must only be used with `vkCmdWaitEvents`, not `vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR`. 
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkCmdSetEvent-stageMask-04090
  If the geometry shaders feature is not enabled, stageMask must not contain VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT

- VUID-vkCmdSetEvent-stageMask-04091
  If the tessellation shaders feature is not enabled, stageMask must not contain VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT

- VUID-vkCmdSetEvent-stageMask-04098
  Any pipeline stage included in stageMask must be supported by the capabilities of the queue family specified by the queueFamilyIndex member of the VkCommandPoolCreateInfo structure that was used to create the VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, as specified in the table of supported pipeline stages

- VUID-vkCmdSetEvent-stageMask-03937
  If the synchronization2 feature is not enabled, stageMask must not be 0

- VUID-vkCmdSetEvent-stageMask-01149
  stageMask must not include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_HOST_BIT

- VUID-vkCmdSetEvent-commandBuffer-01152
  commandBuffer’s current device mask must include exactly one physical device

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdSetEvent-commandBuffer-parameter
  commandBuffer must be a valid VkCommandBuffer handle

- VUID-vkCmdSetEvent-event-parameter
  event must be a valid VkEvent handle

- VUID-vkCmdSetEvent-stageMask-parameter
  stageMask must be a valid combination of VkPipelineStageFlagBits values

- VUID-vkCmdSetEvent-commandBuffer-recording
  commandBuffer must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdSetEvent-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must support graphics, or compute operations

- VUID-vkCmdSetEvent-renderpass
  This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance

- VUID-vkCmdSetEvent-commonparent
  Both of commandBuffer, and event must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same VkDevice
Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To unsignal the event from a device, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2
void vkCmdResetEvent2KHR(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    VkEvent event,
    VkPipelineStageFlags2KHR stageMask);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command is recorded.
- `event` is the event that will be unsignaled.
- `stageMask` is a `VkPipelineStageFlags2KHR` mask of pipeline stages used to determine the first synchronization scope.

When `vkCmdResetEvent2KHR` is submitted to a queue, it defines an execution dependency on commands that were submitted before it, and defines an event unsignal operation which resets the event to the unsignaled state.

The first synchronization scope includes all commands that occur earlier in submission order. The synchronization scope is limited to operations by `stageMask` or stages that are logically earlier than `stageMask`.

The second synchronization scope includes only the event unsignal operation.

If `event` is already in the unsignaled state when `vkCmdResetEvent2KHR` is executed on the device, then this command has no effect, no event unsignal operation occurs, and no execution dependency is generated.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkCmdResetEvent2KHR-stageMask-03929
  If the geometry shaders feature is not enabled, stageMask must not contain VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT_KHR

- VUID-vkCmdResetEvent2KHR-stageMask-03930
  If the tessellation shaders feature is not enabled, stageMask must not contain VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT_KHR or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_TESSELLATION_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT_KHR

- VUID-vkCmdResetEvent2KHR-synchronization2-03829
  The synchronization2 feature must be enabled

- VUID-vkCmdResetEvent2KHR-stageMask-03830
  stageMask must not include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_HOST_BIT_KHR

- VUID-vkCmdResetEvent2KHR-event-03831
  There must be an execution dependency between vkCmdResetEvent2KHR and the execution of any vkCmdWaitEvents that includes event in its pEvents parameter

- VUID-vkCmdResetEvent2KHR-event-03832
  There must be an execution dependency between vkCmdResetEvent2KHR and the execution of any vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR that includes event in its pEvents parameter

- VUID-vkCmdResetEvent2KHR-commandBuffer-03833
  commandBuffer’s current device mask must include exactly one physical device.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdResetEvent2KHR-commandBuffer-parameter
  `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle

- VUID-vkCmdResetEvent2KHR-event-parameter
  `event` must be a valid `VkEvent` handle

- VUID-vkCmdResetEvent2KHR-stageMask-parameter
  `stageMask` must be a valid combination of `VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR` values

- VUID-vkCmdResetEvent2KHR-stageMask-required bitmask
  `stageMask` must not be 0

- VUID-vkCmdResetEvent2KHR-commandBuffer-recording
  `commandBuffer` must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdResetEvent2KHR-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support graphics, or compute operations

- VUID-vkCmdResetEvent2KHR-renderpass
  This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance

- VUID-vkCmdResetEvent2KHR-commonparent
  Both of `commandBuffer`, and `event` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized

- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To set the state of an event to unsignaled from a device, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkCmdResetEvent(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    VkEvent event,
    VkPipelineStageFlags stageMask);
```
• **commandBuffer** is the command buffer into which the command is recorded.
• **event** is the event that will be unsignaled.
• **stageMask** is a bitmask of VkPipelineStageFlagBits specifying the source stage mask used to determine when the **event** is unsignaled.

**vkCmdResetEvent** behaves identically to **vkCmdResetEvent2KHR**.

---

**Valid Usage**

- **VUID-vkCmdResetEvent-stageMask-04090**
  If the geometry shaders feature is not enabled, **stageMask** must not contain VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT

- **VUID-vkCmdResetEvent-stageMask-04091**
  If the tessellation shaders feature is not enabled, **stageMask** must not contain VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT

- **VUID-vkCmdResetEvent-stageMask-04098**
  Any pipeline stage included in **stageMask** must be supported by the capabilities of the queue family specified by the **queueFamilyIndex** member of the VkCommandPoolCreateInfo structure that was used to create the VkCommandPool that **commandBuffer** was allocated from, as specified in the table of supported pipeline stages

- **VUID-vkCmdResetEvent-stageMask-03937**
  If the synchronization2 feature is not enabled, **stageMask** must not be 0

- **VUID-vkCmdResetEvent-stageMask-01153**
  **stageMask** must not include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_HOST_BIT

- **VUID-vkCmdResetEvent-event-03834**
  There must be an execution dependency between **vkCmdResetEvent** and the execution of any **vkCmdWaitEvents** that includes **event** in its **pEvents** parameter

- **VUID-vkCmdResetEvent-event-03835**
  There must be an execution dependency between **vkCmdResetEvent** and the execution of any **vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR** that includes **event** in its **pEvents** parameter

- **VUID-vkCmdResetEvent-commandBuffer-01157**
  **commandBuffer**'s current device mask must include exactly one physical device
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdResetEvent-commandBuffer-parameter
  
  `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle

- VUID-vkCmdResetEvent-event-parameter
  
  `event` must be a valid `VkEvent` handle

- VUID-vkCmdResetEvent-stageMask-parameter
  
  `stageMask` must be a valid combination of `VkPipelineStageFlagBits` values

- VUID-vkCmdResetEvent-commandBuffer-recording
  
  `commandBuffer` must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdResetEvent-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  
  The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support graphics, or compute operations

- VUID-vkCmdResetEvent-renderpass
  
  This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance

- VUID-vkCmdResetEvent-commonparent
  
  Both of `commandBuffer`, and `event` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized

- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To wait for one or more events to enter the signaled state on a device, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2
void vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR(  
  VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,  
  uint32_t eventCount,  
  const VkEvent* pEvents,  
  const VkDependencyInfoKHR* pDependencyInfos);
```
- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command is recorded.
- `eventCount` is the length of the `pEvents` array.
- `pEvents` is a pointer to an array of `eventCount` events to wait on.
- `pDependencyInfos` is a pointer to an array of `eventCount` `VkDependencyInfoKHR` structures, defining the second synchronization scope.

When `vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR` is submitted to a queue, it inserts memory dependencies according to the elements of `pDependencyInfos` and each corresponding element of `pEvents`. `vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR` **must** not be used to wait on event signal operations occurring on other queues, or signal operations executed by `vkCmdSetEvent`.

The first synchronization scope and access scope of each memory dependency defined by any element `i` of `pDependencyInfos` are applied to operations that occurred earlier in submission order than the last event signal operation on element `i` of `pEvents`.

Signal operations for an event at index `i` are only included if:

- The event was signaled by a `vkCmdSetEvent2KHR` command that occurred earlier in submission order with a `dependencyInfo` parameter exactly equal to the element of `pDependencyInfos` at index `i`; or
- The event was created without `VK_EVENT_CREATE_DEVICE_ONLY_BIT_KHR`, and the first synchronization scope defined by the element of `pDependencyInfos` at index `i` only includes host operations (`VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_HOST_BIT_KHR`).

The second synchronization scope and access scope of each memory dependency defined by any element `i` of `pDependencyInfos` are applied to operations that occurred later in submission order than `vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR`.

**Note**

`vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR` is used with `vkCmdSetEvent2KHR` to define a memory dependency between two sets of action commands, roughly in the same way as pipeline barriers, but split into two commands such that work between the two may execute unhindered.

**Note**

Applications should be careful to avoid race conditions when using events. There is no direct ordering guarantee between `vkCmdSetEvent2KHR` and `vkCmdResetEvent2KHR`, `vkCmdResetEvent`, or `vkCmdSetEvent`. Another execution dependency (e.g. a pipeline barrier or semaphore with `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR`) is needed to prevent such a race condition.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR-synchronization2-03836
  The synchronization2 feature must be enabled

- VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR-pEvents-03837
  Members of pEvents must not have been signaled by vkCmdSetEvent

- VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR-pEvents-03838
  For any element i of pEvents, if that event is signaled by vkCmdSetEvent2KHR, that command's dependencyInfo parameter must be exactly equal to the ith element of pDependencyInfos

- VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR-pEvents-03839
  For any element i of pEvents, if that event is signaled by vkSetEvent, barriers in the ith element of pDependencyInfos must include only host operations in their first synchronization scope

- VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR-pEvents-03840
  For any element i of pEvents, if barriers in the ith element of pDependencyInfos include only host operations, the ith element of pEvents must be signaled before vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR is executed

- VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR-pEvents-03841
  For any element i of pEvents, if barriers in the ith element of pDependencyInfos do not include host operations, the ith element of pEvents must be signaled by a corresponding vkCmdSetEvent2KHR that occurred earlier in submission order

- VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR-srcStageMask-03842
  The srcStageMask member of any element of the pMemoryBarriers, pBufferMemoryBarriers, or pImageMemoryBarriers members of pDependencyInfos must either include only pipeline stages valid for the queue family that was used to create the command pool that commandBuffer was allocated from, or include only VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_HOST_BIT_KHR

- VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR-dstStageMask-03843
  The dstStageMask member of any element of the pMemoryBarriers, pBufferMemoryBarriers, or pImageMemoryBarriers members of pDependencyInfos must only include pipeline stages valid for the queue family that was used to create the command pool that commandBuffer was allocated from

- VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR-dependencyFlags-03844
  The dependencyFlags member of any element of pDependencyInfo must be 0

- VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR-pEvents-03845
  If pEvents includes one or more events that will be signaled by vkSetEvent after commandBuffer has been submitted to a queue, then vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR must not be called inside a render pass instance

- VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR-commandBuffer-03846
  commandBuffer’s current device mask must include exactly one physical device
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR-commandBuffer-parameter
  commandBuffer must be a valid VkCommandBuffer handle

- VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR-pEvents-parameter
  pEvents must be a valid pointer to an array of eventCount valid VkEvent handles

- VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR-pDependencyInfos-parameter
  pDependencyInfos must be a valid pointer to an array of eventCount valid VkDependencyInfoKHR structures

- VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR-commandBuffer-recording
  commandBuffer must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must support graphics, or compute operations

- VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR-eventCount-arraylength
  eventCount must be greater than 0

- VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR-commonparent
  Both of commandBuffer, and the elements of pEvents must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same VkDevice

Host Synchronization

- Host access to commandBuffer must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To wait for one or more events to enter the signaled state on a device, call:
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0

```c
void vkCmdWaitEvents(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,  // Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
    uint32_t eventCount,  // Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
    const VkEvent* pEvents,  // Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
    VkPipelineStageFlags srcStageMask,  // Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
    VkPipelineStageFlags dstStageMask,  // Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
    uint32_t memoryBarrierCount,  // Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
    const VkMemoryBarrier* pMemoryBarriers,  // Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
    uint32_t bufferMemoryBarrierCount,  // Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
    const VkBufferMemoryBarrier* pBufferMemoryBarriers,  // Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
    uint32_t imageMemoryBarrierCount,  // Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
    const VkImageMemoryBarrier* pImageMemoryBarriers);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command is recorded.
- `eventCount` is the length of the `pEvents` array.
- `pEvents` is a pointer to an array of event object handles to wait on.
- `srcStageMask` is a bitmask of `VkPipelineStageFlagBits` specifying the source stage mask.
- `dstStageMask` is a bitmask of `VkPipelineStageFlagBits` specifying the destination stage mask.
- `memoryBarrierCount` is the length of the `pMemoryBarriers` array.
- `pMemoryBarriers` is a pointer to an array of `VkMemoryBarrier` structures.
- `bufferMemoryBarrierCount` is the length of the `pBufferMemoryBarriers` array.
- ` pBufferMemoryBarriers` is a pointer to an array of `VkBufferMemoryBarrier` structures.
- `imageMemoryBarrierCount` is the length of the `pImageMemoryBarriers` array.
- `pImageMemoryBarriers` is a pointer to an array of `VkImageMemoryBarrier` structures.

`vkCmdWaitEvents` is largely similar to `vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR`, but can only wait on signal operations defined by `vkCmdSetEvent`. As `vkCmdSetEvent` does not define any access scopes, `vkCmdWaitEvents` defines the first access scope for each event signal operation in addition to its own access scopes.

**Note**
Since `vkCmdSetEvent` does not have any dependency information beyond a stage mask, implementations do not have the same opportunity to perform availability and visibility operations or image layout transitions in advance as they do with `vkCmdSetEvent2KHR` and `vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR`.

When `vkCmdWaitEvents` is submitted to a queue, it defines a memory dependency between prior event signal operations on the same queue or the host, and subsequent commands. `vkCmdWaitEvents` must not be used to wait on event signal operations occurring on other queues.

The first synchronization scope only includes event signal operations that operate on members of `pEvents`, and the operations that happened-before the event signal operations. Event signal operations performed by `vkCmdSetEvent` that occur earlier in submission order are included in the first synchronization scope, if the logically latest pipeline stage in their `stageMask` parameter is
logically earlier than or equal to the logically latest pipeline stage in srcStageMask. Event signal operations performed by vkSetEvent are only included in the first synchronization scope if VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_HOST_BIT is included in srcStageMask.

The second synchronization scope includes all commands that occur later in submission order. The second synchronization scope is limited to operations on the pipeline stages determined by the destination stage mask specified by dstStageMask.

The first access scope is limited to accesses in the pipeline stages determined by the source stage mask specified by srcStageMask. Within that, the first access scope only includes the first access scopes defined by elements of the pMemoryBarriers, pBufferMemoryBarriers and pImageMemoryBarriers arrays, which each define a set of memory barriers. If no memory barriers are specified, then the first access scope includes no accesses.

The second access scope is limited to accesses in the pipeline stages determined by the destination stage mask specified by dstStageMask. Within that, the second access scope only includes the second access scopes defined by elements of the pMemoryBarriers, pBufferMemoryBarriers and pImageMemoryBarriers arrays, which each define a set of memory barriers. If no memory barriers are specified, then the second access scope includes no accesses.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents-srcStageMask-04090**
  
  If the geometry shaders feature is not enabled, srcStageMask must not contain **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT**

- **VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents-srcStageMask-04091**
  
  If the tessellation shaders feature is not enabled, srcStageMask must not contain **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSellation_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT** or **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSellation_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT**

- **VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents-srcStageMask-04098**
  
  Any pipeline stage included in srcStageMask must be supported by the capabilities of the queue family specified by the queueFamilyIndex member of the VkCommandPoolCreateInfo structure that was used to create the VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, as specified in the table of supported pipeline stages

- **VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents-srcAccessMask-02815**
  
  The srcAccessMask member of each element of pMemoryBarriers must only include access flags that are supported by one or more of the pipeline stages in srcStageMask, as specified in the table of supported access types

- **VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents-dstStageMask-04090**
  
  If the geometry shaders feature is not enabled, dstStageMask must not contain **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT**

- **VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents-dstStageMask-04091**
  
  If the tessellation shaders feature is not enabled, dstStageMask must not contain **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSellation_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT** or **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSellation_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT**

- **VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents-dstStageMask-04098**
  
  Any pipeline stage included in dstStageMask must be supported by the capabilities of the queue family specified by the queueFamilyIndex member of the VkCommandPoolCreateInfo structure that was used to create the VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from, as specified in the table of supported pipeline stages

- **VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents-dstAccessMask-02816**
  
  The dstAccessMask member of each element of pMemoryBarriers must only include access flags that are supported by one or more of the pipeline stages in dstStageMask, as specified in the table of supported access types

- **VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents-pBufferMemoryBarriers-02817**
  
  For any element of pBufferMemoryBarriers, if its srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex members are equal, or if its srcQueueFamilyIndex is the queue family index that was used to create the command pool that commandBuffer was allocated from, then its srcAccessMask member must only contain access flags that are supported by one or more of the pipeline stages in srcStageMask, as specified in the table of supported access
For any element of `pBufferMemoryBarriers`, if its `srcQueueFamilyIndex` and `dstQueueFamilyIndex` members are equal, or if its `dstQueueFamilyIndex` is the queue family index that was used to create the command pool that `commandBuffer` was allocated from, then its `dstAccessMask` member **must** only contain access flags that are supported by one or more of the pipeline stages in `dstStageMask`, as specified in the table of supported access types.

For any element of `pImageMemoryBarriers`, if its `srcQueueFamilyIndex` and `dstQueueFamilyIndex` members are equal, or if its `srcQueueFamilyIndex` is the queue family index that was used to create the command pool that `commandBuffer` was allocated from, then its `srcAccessMask` member **must** only contain access flags that are supported by one or more of the pipeline stages in `srcStageMask`, as specified in the table of supported access types.

For any element of `pImageMemoryBarriers`, if its `srcQueueFamilyIndex` and `dstQueueFamilyIndex` members are equal, or if its `dstQueueFamilyIndex` is the queue family index that was used to create the command pool that `commandBuffer` was allocated from, then its `dstAccessMask` member **must** only contain access flags that are supported by one or more of the pipeline stages in `dstStageMask`, as specified in the table of supported access types.

`srcStageMask` **must** be the bitwise OR of the `stageMask` parameter used in previous calls to `vkCmdSetEvent` with any of the elements of `pEvents` and `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_HOST_BIT` if any of the elements of `pEvents` was set using `vkSetEvent`.

If `pEvents` includes one or more events that will be signaled by `vkSetEvent` after `commandBuffer` has been submitted to a queue, then `vkCmdWaitEvents` **must** not be called inside a render pass instance.

The `srcQueueFamilyIndex` and `dstQueueFamilyIndex` members of any element of `pBufferMemoryBarriers` or `pImageMemoryBarriers` **must** be equal.

`commandBuffer`’s current device mask **must** include exactly one physical device.

Elements of `pEvents` **must** not have been signaled by `vkCmdSetEvent2KHR`.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents-commandBuffer-parameter**
  - `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle

- **VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents-pEvents-parameter**
  - `pEvents` must be a valid pointer to an array of `eventCount` valid `VkEvent` handles

- **VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents-srcStageMask-parameter**
  - `srcStageMask` must be a valid combination of `VkPipelineStageFlagBits` values

- **VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents-dstStageMask-parameter**
  - `dstStageMask` must be a valid combination of `VkPipelineStageFlagBits` values

- **VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents-pMemoryBarriers-parameter**
  - If `memoryBarrierCount` is not 0, `pMemoryBarriers` must be a valid pointer to an array of `memoryBarrierCount` valid `VkMemoryBarrier` structures

- **VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents-pBufferMemoryBarriers-parameter**
  - If `bufferMemoryBarrierCount` is not 0, `pBufferMemoryBarriers` must be a valid pointer to an array of `bufferMemoryBarrierCount` valid `VkBufferMemoryBarrier` structures

- **VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents-pImageMemoryBarriers-parameter**
  - If `imageMemoryBarrierCount` is not 0, `pImageMemoryBarriers` must be a valid pointer to an array of `imageMemoryBarrierCount` valid `VkImageMemoryBarrier` structures

- **VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents-commandBuffer-recording**
  - `commandBuffer` must be in the recording state

- **VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents-commandBuffer-cmdpool**
  - The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support graphics, or compute operations

- **VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents-eventCount-arraylength**
  - `eventCount` must be greater than 0

- **VUID-vkCmdWaitEvents-commonparent**
  - Both of `commandBuffer`, and the elements of `pEvents` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized
### 7.6. Pipeline Barriers

To record a pipeline barrier, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2
void vkCmdPipelineBarrier2KHR(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,  // Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2
    const VkDependencyInfoKHR* pDependencyInfo);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command is recorded.
- `pDependencyInfo` is a pointer to a `VkDependencyInfoKHR` structure defining the scopes of this operation.

When `vkCmdPipelineBarrier2KHR` is submitted to a queue, it defines memory dependencies between commands that were submitted before it, and those submitted after it.

The first **synchronization scope** and **access scope** of each memory dependency defined by any element `i` of `pDependencyInfos` are applied to operations that occurred earlier in **submission order**.

The second **synchronization scope** and **access scope** of each memory dependency defined by any element `i` of `pDependencyInfos` are applied to operations that occurred later in **submission order**.

If `vkCmdPipelineBarrier2KHR` is recorded within a render pass instance, the synchronization scopes are **limited to operations within the same subpass**.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier2KHR-pDependencies-02285
  If `vkCmdPipelineBarrier2KHR` is called within a render pass instance, the render pass must have been created with at least one `VkSubpassDependency` instance in `VkRenderPassCreateInfo::pDependencies` that expresses a dependency from the current subpass to itself, with synchronization scopes and access scopes that are all supersets of the scopes defined in this command.

- VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier2KHR-bufferMemoryBarrierCount-01178
  If `vkCmdPipelineBarrier2KHR` is called within a render pass instance, it must not include any buffer memory barriers.

- VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier2KHR-image-04073
  If `vkCmdPipelineBarrier2KHR` is called within a render pass instance, the image member of any image memory barrier included in this command must be an attachment used in the current subpass both as an input attachment, and as either a color or depth/stencil attachment.

- VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier2KHR-oldLayout-01181
  If `vkCmdPipelineBarrier2KHR` is called within a render pass instance, the oldLayout and newLayout members of any image memory barrier included in this command must be equal.

- VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier2KHR-srcQueueFamilyIndex-01182
  If `vkCmdPipelineBarrier2KHR` is called within a render pass instance, the srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex members of any image memory barrier included in this command must be equal.

- VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier2KHR-dependencyFlags-01186
  If `vkCmdPipelineBarrier2KHR` is called outside of a render pass instance, `VK_DEPENDENCY_VIEW_LOCAL_BIT` must not be included in the dependency flags.

- VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier2KHR-synchronization2-03848
  The synchronization2 feature must be enabled.

- VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier2KHR-srcStageMask-03849
  The `srcStageMask` member of any element of the `pMemoryBarriers`, `pBufferMemoryBarriers`, or `pImageMemoryBarriers` members of `pDependencyInfo` must only include pipeline stages valid for the queue family that was used to create the command pool that `commandBuffer` was allocated from.

- VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier2KHR-dstStageMask-03850
  The `dstStageMask` member of any element of the `pMemoryBarriers`, `pBufferMemoryBarriers`, or `pImageMemoryBarriers` members of `pDependencyInfo` must only include pipeline stages valid for the queue family that was used to create the command pool that `commandBuffer` was allocated from.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier2KHR-commandBuffer-parameter
  commandBuffer must be a valid VkCommandBuffer handle

- VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier2KHR-pDependencyInfo-parameter
  pDependencyInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid VkDependencyInfoKHR structure

- VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier2KHR-commandBuffer-recording
  commandBuffer must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier2KHR-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must support transfer, graphics, or compute operations

Host Synchronization

- Host access to commandBuffer must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Transfer, Graphics, Compute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To record a pipeline barrier, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkCmdPipelineBarrier(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    VkPipelineStageFlags srcStageMask,
    VkPipelineStageFlags dstStageMask,
    VkDependencyFlags dependencyFlags,
    uint32_t memoryBarrierCount,
    const VkMemoryBarrier* pMemoryBarriers,
    uint32_t bufferMemoryBarrierCount,
    const VkBufferMemoryBarrier* pBufferMemoryBarriers,
    uint32_t imageMemoryBarrierCount,
    const VkImageMemoryBarrier* pImageMemoryBarriers);
```

- commandBuffer is the command buffer into which the command is recorded.
- srcStageMask is a bitmask of VkPipelineStageFlagBits specifying the source stages.
• dstStageMask is a bitmask of VkPipelineStageFlagBits specifying the destination stages.
• dependencyFlags is a bitmask of VkDependencyFlagBits specifying how execution and memory dependencies are formed.
• memoryBarrierCount is the length of the pMemoryBarriers array.
• pMemoryBarriers is a pointer to an array of VkMemoryBarrier structures.
• bufferMemoryBarrierCount is the length of the pBufferMemoryBarriers array.
• pBufferMemoryBarriers is a pointer to an array of VkBufferMemoryBarrier structures.
• imageMemoryBarrierCount is the length of the pImageMemoryBarriers array.
• pImageMemoryBarriers is a pointer to an array of VkImageMemoryBarrier structures.

vkCmdPipelineBarrier operates almost identically to vkCmdPipelineBarrier2KHR, except that the scopes and barriers are defined as direct parameters rather than being defined by an VkDependencyInfoKHR.

When vkCmdPipelineBarrier is submitted to a queue, it defines a memory dependency between commands that were submitted before it, and those submitted after it.

If vkCmdPipelineBarrier was recorded outside a render pass instance, the first synchronization scope includes all commands that occur earlier in submission order. If vkCmdPipelineBarrier was recorded inside a render pass instance, the first synchronization scope includes only commands that occur earlier in submission order within the same subpass. In either case, the first synchronization scope is limited to operations on the pipeline stages determined by the source stage mask specified by srcStageMask.

If vkCmdPipelineBarrier was recorded outside a render pass instance, the second synchronization scope includes all commands that occur later in submission order. If vkCmdPipelineBarrier was recorded inside a render pass instance, the second synchronization scope includes only commands that occur later in submission order within the same subpass. In either case, the second synchronization scope is limited to operations on the pipeline stages determined by the destination stage mask specified by dstStageMask.

The first access scope is limited to accesses in the pipeline stages determined by the source stage mask specified by srcStageMask. Within that, the first access scope only includes the first access scopes defined by elements of the pMemoryBarriers, pBufferMemoryBarriers and pImageMemoryBarriers arrays, which each define a set of memory barriers. If no memory barriers are specified, then the first access scope includes no accesses.

The second access scope is limited to accesses in the pipeline stages determined by the destination stage mask specified by dstStageMask. Within that, the second access scope only includes the second access scopes defined by elements of the pMemoryBarriers, pBufferMemoryBarriers and pImageMemoryBarriers arrays, which each define a set of memory barriers. If no memory barriers are specified, then the second access scope includes no accesses.

If dependencyFlags includes VK_DEPENDENCY_BY_REGION_BIT, then any dependency between framebuffer-space pipeline stages is framebuffer-local - otherwise it is framebuffer-global.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier-srcStageMask-04090**
  If the **geometry shaders** feature is not enabled, **srcStageMask** must not contain **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT**

- **VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier-srcStageMask-04091**
  If the **tessellation shaders** feature is not enabled, **srcStageMask** must not contain **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT** or **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT**

- **VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier-srcStageMask-04098**
  Any pipeline stage included in **srcStageMask** must be supported by the capabilities of the queue family specified by the **queueFamilyIndex** member of the **VkCommandPoolCreateInfo** structure that was used to create the **VkCommandPool** that commandBuffer was allocated from, as specified in the table of supported pipeline stages

- **VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier-srcStageMask-03937**
  If the **synchronization2** feature is not enabled, **srcStageMask** must not be 0

- **VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier-dstStageMask-04090**
  If the **geometry shaders** feature is not enabled, **dstStageMask** must not contain **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT**

- **VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier-dstStageMask-04091**
  If the **tessellation shaders** feature is not enabled, **dstStageMask** must not contain **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT** or **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT**

- **VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier-dstStageMask-04098**
  Any pipeline stage included in **dstStageMask** must be supported by the capabilities of the queue family specified by the **queueFamilyIndex** member of the **VkCommandPoolCreateInfo** structure that was used to create the **VkCommandPool** that commandBuffer was allocated from, as specified in the table of supported pipeline stages

- **VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier-dstStageMask-03937**
  If the **synchronization2** feature is not enabled, **dstStageMask** must not be 0

- **VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier-srcAccessMask-02815**
  The **srcAccessMask** member of each element of **pMemoryBarriers** must only include access flags that are supported by one or more of the pipeline stages in **srcStageMask**, as specified in the table of supported access types

- **VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier-dstAccessMask-02816**
  The **dstAccessMask** member of each element of **pMemoryBarriers** must only include access flags that are supported by one or more of the pipeline stages in **dstStageMask**, as specified in the table of supported access types

- **VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier-pBufferMemoryBarriers-02817**
  For any element of **pBufferMemoryBarriers**, if its **srcQueueFamilyIndex** and **dstQueueFamilyIndex** members are equal, or if its **srcQueueFamilyIndex** is the queue family index that was used to create the command pool that commandBuffer was allocated from, then its **srcAccessMask** member must only contain access flags that are supported by one or more of the pipeline stages in **srcStageMask**, as specified in the table of supported access types
types

- VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier-pBufferMemoryBarriers-02818
  For any element of `pBufferMemoryBarriers`, if its `srcQueueFamilyIndex` and `dstQueueFamilyIndex` members are equal, or if its `dstQueueFamilyIndex` is the queue family index that was used to create the command pool that `commandBuffer` was allocated from, then its `dstAccessMask` member must only contain access flags that are supported by one or more of the pipeline stages in `dstStageMask`, as specified in the table of supported access types.

- VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier-pImageMemoryBarriers-02819
  For any element of `pImageMemoryBarriers`, if its `srcQueueFamilyIndex` and `dstQueueFamilyIndex` members are equal, or if its `srcQueueFamilyIndex` is the queue family index that was used to create the command pool that `commandBuffer` was allocated from, then its `srcAccessMask` member must only contain access flags that are supported by one or more of the pipeline stages in `srcStageMask`, as specified in the table of supported access types.

- VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier-pImageMemoryBarriers-02820
  For any element of `pImageMemoryBarriers`, if its `srcQueueFamilyIndex` and `dstQueueFamilyIndex` members are equal, or if its `dstQueueFamilyIndex` is the queue family index that was used to create the command pool that `commandBuffer` was allocated from, then its `dstAccessMask` member must only contain access flags that are supported by one or more of the pipeline stages in `dstStageMask`, as specified in the table of supported access types.

- VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier-pDependencies-02285
  If `vkCmdPipelineBarrier` is called within a render pass instance, the render pass must have been created with at least one `VkSubpassDependency` instance in `VkRenderPassCreateInfo::pDependencies` that expresses a dependency from the current subpass to itself, with synchronization scopes and access scopes that are all supersets of the scopes defined in this command.

- VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier-bufferMemoryBarrierCount-01178
  If `vkCmdPipelineBarrier` is called within a render pass instance, it must not include any buffer memory barriers.

- VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier-image-04073
  If `vkCmdPipelineBarrier` is called within a render pass instance, the `image` member of any image memory barrier included in this command must be an attachment used in the current subpass both as an input attachment, and as either a color or depth/stencil attachment.

- VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier-oldLayout-01181
  If `vkCmdPipelineBarrier` is called within a render pass instance, the `oldLayout` and `newLayout` members of any image memory barrier included in this command must be equal.

- VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier-srcQueueFamilyIndex-01182
  If `vkCmdPipelineBarrier` is called within a render pass instance, the `srcQueueFamilyIndex` and `dstQueueFamilyIndex` members of any image memory barrier included in this command must be equal.
If `vkCmdPipelineBarrier` is called outside of a render pass instance, `VK_DEPENDENCY_VIEW_LOCAL_BIT` must not be included in the dependency flags.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier-commandBuffer-parameter**
  
  `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle

- **VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier-srcStageMask-parameter**
  
  `srcStageMask` must be a valid combination of `VkPipelineStageFlagBits` values

- **VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier-dstStageMask-parameter**
  
  `dstStageMask` must be a valid combination of `VkPipelineStageFlagBits` values

- **VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier-dependencyFlags-parameter**
  
  `dependencyFlags` must be a valid combination of `VkDependencyFlagBits` values

- **VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier-pMemoryBarriers-parameter**
  
  If `memoryBarrierCount` is not 0, `pMemoryBarriers` must be a valid pointer to an array of `memoryBarrierCount` valid `VkMemoryBarrier` structures

- **VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier-pBufferMemoryBarriers-parameter**
  
  If `bufferMemoryBarrierCount` is not 0, `pBufferMemoryBarriers` must be a valid pointer to an array of `bufferMemoryBarrierCount` valid `VkBufferMemoryBarrier` structures

- **VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier-pImageMemoryBarriers-parameter**
  
  If `imageMemoryBarrierCount` is not 0, `pImageMemoryBarriers` must be a valid pointer to an array of `imageMemoryBarrierCount` valid `VkImageMemoryBarrier` structures

- **VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier-commandBuffer-recording**
  
  `commandBuffer` must be in the recording state

- **VUID-vkCmdPipelineBarrier-commandBuffer-cmdpool**
  
  The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support transfer, graphics, or compute operations

### Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized

- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized
Bits which **can** be set in `vkCmdPipelineBarrier::dependencyFlags`, specifying how execution and memory dependencies are formed, are:

```cpp
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkDependencyFlagBits {
    VK_DEPENDENCY_BY_REGION_BIT = 0x00000001,
    VK_DEPENDENCY_DEVICE_GROUP_BIT = 0x00000004,
    VK_DEPENDENCY_VIEW_LOCAL_BIT = 0x00000002,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_multiview
    VK_DEPENDENCY_VIEW_LOCAL_BIT_KHR = VK_DEPENDENCY_VIEW_LOCAL_BIT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_device_group
    VK_DEPENDENCY_DEVICE_GROUP_BIT_KHR = VK_DEPENDENCY_DEVICE_GROUP_BIT,
} VkDependencyFlagBits;
```

- **VK_DEPENDENCY_BY_REGION_BIT** specifies that dependencies will be framebuffer-local.
- **VK_DEPENDENCY_VIEW_LOCAL_BIT** specifies that a subpass has more than one view.
- **VK_DEPENDENCY_DEVICE_GROUP_BIT** specifies that dependencies are non-device-local.

```cpp
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkDependencyFlags;
```

`VkDependencyFlags` is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more `VkDependencyFlagBits`.

### 7.6.1. Subpass Self-dependency

If `vkCmdPipelineBarrier` or `vkCmdPipelineBarrier2KHR` is called inside a render pass instance, the following restrictions apply. For a given subpass to allow a pipeline barrier, the render pass must declare a self-dependency from that subpass to itself. That is, there must exist a subpass dependency with `srcSubpass` and `dstSubpass` both equal to that subpass index. More than one self-dependency can be declared for each subpass.

Self-dependencies must only include pipeline stage bits that are graphics stages. If any of the stages in `srcStageMask` are framebuffer-space stages, `dstStageMask` must only contain framebuffer-space stages. This means that pseudo-stages like `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT` which include the execution of both framebuffer-space stages and non-framebuffer-space stages must not be used.

If the source and destination stage masks both include framebuffer-space stages, then `dependencyFlags` must include `VK_DEPENDENCY_BY_REGION_BIT`. If the subpass has more than one view,
then dependencyFlags must include VK_DEPENDENCY_VIEW_LOCAL_BIT.

Each of the synchronization scopes and access scopes of a vkCmdPipelineBarrier2KHR or vkCmdPipelineBarrier command inside a render pass instance must be a subset of the scopes of one of the self-dependencies for the current subpass.

If the self-dependency has VK_DEPENDENCY_BY_REGION_BIT or VK_DEPENDENCY_VIEW_LOCAL_BIT set, then so must the pipeline barrier. Pipeline barriers within a render pass instance must not include buffer memory barriers. Image memory barriers must only specify image subresources that are used as attachments within the subpass, and must not define an image layout transition or queue family ownership transfer.

7.7. Memory Barriers

Memory barriers are used to explicitly control access to buffer and image subresource ranges. Memory barriers are used to transfer ownership between queue families, change image layouts, and define availability and visibility operations. They explicitly define the access types and buffer and image subresource ranges that are included in the access scopes of a memory dependency that is created by a synchronization command that includes them.

7.7.1. Global Memory Barriers

Global memory barriers apply to memory accesses involving all memory objects that exist at the time of its execution.

The VkMemoryBarrier2KHR structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkMemoryBarrier2KHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkPipelineStageFlags2KHR srcStageMask;
    VkAccessFlags2KHR srcAccessMask;
    VkPipelineStageFlags2KHR dstStageMask;
    VkAccessFlags2KHR dstAccessMask;
} VkMemoryBarrier2KHR;
```

• **sType** is the type of this structure.

• **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.

• **srcStageMask** is a VkPipelineStageFlags2KHR mask of pipeline stages to be included in the first synchronization scope.

• **srcAccessMask** is a VkAccessFlags2KHR mask of access flags to be included in the first access scope.

• **dstStageMask** is a VkPipelineStageFlags2KHR mask of pipeline stages to be included in the second synchronization scope.

• **dstAccessMask** is a VkAccessFlags2KHR mask of access flags to be included in the second access scope.
This structure defines a memory dependency affecting all device memory.

The first synchronization scope and access scope described by this structure include only operations and memory accesses specified by `srcStageMask` and `srcAccessMask`.

The second synchronization scope and access scope described by this structure include only operations and memory accesses specified by `dstStageMask` and `dstAccessMask`.
Valid Usage

• VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcStageMask-03929
  If the geometry shaders feature is not enabled, srcStageMask must not contain
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT_KHR

• VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcStageMask-03930
  If the tessellation shaders feature is not enabled, srcStageMask must not contain
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT_KHR or
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_TESSELLATION_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT_KHR

• VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03900
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_INDIRECT_COMMAND_READ_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_DRAW_INDIRECT_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR,
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

• VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03901
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_INDEX_READ_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_INDEX_INPUT_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VERTEX_INPUT_BIT_KHR,
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

• VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03902
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_VERTEX_ATTRIBUTE_READ_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VERTEX_ATTRIBUTE_INPUT_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VERTEX_INPUT_BIT_KHR,
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

• VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03903
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_INPUT_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_FRAGMENT_SHADER_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_SUBPASS_SHADING_BIT_HUAWEI,
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

• VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03904
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_UNIFORM_READ_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR, or one of the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT stages

• VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03905
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_SAMPLED_READ_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR, or one of the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT stages

• VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03906
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_STORAGE_READ_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR, or one of the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT stages

• VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03907
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_STORAGE_WRITE_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must
include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR, or one of the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT stages

- **VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03908**
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_READ_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR, or one of the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT stages

- **VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03909**
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_WRITE_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR, or one of the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT stages

- **VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03910**
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

- **VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03911**
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_WRITE_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

- **VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03912**
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_EARLY_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_LATE_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

- **VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03913**
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_WRITE_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_EARLY_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_LATE_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

- **VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03914**
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_TRANSFER_READ_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COPY_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_BLIT_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_RESOLVE_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_TRANSFER_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

- **VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03915**
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_TRANSFER_WRITE_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COPY_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_BLIT_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_RESOLVE_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_CLEAR_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_TRANSFER_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

- **VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03916**
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_HOST_READ_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include...
VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_HOST_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03917
  If `srcAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_HOST_WRITE_BIT_KHR`, `srcStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_HOST_BIT_KHR`

- VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03927
  If `srcAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_READ_BIT_KHR`, `srcStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_BIT_KHR`, or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR`

- VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03928
  If `srcAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_WRITE_BIT_KHR`, `srcStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR` or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR`

- VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-04858
  If `srcAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_VIDEO_DECODE_READ_BIT_KHR`, `srcStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VIDEO_DECODE_BIT_KHR`

- VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-04859
  If `srcAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_VIDEO_DECODE_WRITE_BIT_KHR`, `srcStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VIDEO_DECODE_BIT_KHR`

- VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-04860
  If `srcAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_VIDEO_ENCODE_READ_BIT_KHR`, `srcStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VIDEO_ENCODE_BIT_KHR`

- VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-04861
  If `srcAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_VIDEO_ENCODE_WRITE_BIT_KHR`, `srcStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VIDEO_ENCODE_BIT_KHR`

- VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstStageMask-03929
  If the geometry shaders feature is not enabled, `dstStageMask` must not contain `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT_KHR`

- VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstStageMask-03930
  If the tessellation shaders feature is not enabled, `dstStageMask` must not contain `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT_KHR` or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_TESSELLATION_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT_KHR`

- VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03900
  If `dstAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_INDIRECT_COMMAND_READ_BIT_KHR`, `dstStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_DRAW_INDIRECT_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR`, or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR`

- VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03901
  If `dstAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_INDEX_READ_BIT_KHR`, `dstStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_INDEX_INPUT_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VERTEX_INPUT_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR`, or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR`

- VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03902
  If `dstAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_VERTEX_ATTRIBUTE_READ_BIT_KHR`, `dstStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VERTEX_ATTRIBUTE_INPUT_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR`, or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR`

- VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03903
  If `dstAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_VERTEX_ATTRIBUTE_WRITE_BIT_KHR`, `dstStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VERTEX_ATTRIBUTE_INPUT_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR`, or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR`

- VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03904
  If `dstAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_UNIFORM_READ_BIT_KHR`, `dstStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR`, or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR`

- VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03905
  If `dstAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_UNIFORM_WRITE_BIT_KHR`, `dstStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR`, or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR`
VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VERTEX_INPUT_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03903
  If dstAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_INPUT_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT_KHR, dstStageMask must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_FRAGMENT_SHADER_BIT_KHR,
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_SUBPASS_SHADING_BIT_HUAWEI,
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03904
  If dstAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_UNIFORM_READ_BIT_KHR, dstStageMask must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR, or one of the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT stages

- VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03905
  If dstAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_SAMPLED_READ_BIT_KHR, dstStageMask must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR, or one of the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT stages

- VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03906
  If dstAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_STORAGE_READ_BIT_KHR, dstStageMask must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR, or one of the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT stages

- VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03907
  If dstAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_STORAGE_WRITE_BIT_KHR, dstStageMask must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR, or one of the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT stages

- VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03908
  If dstAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_READ_BIT_KHR, dstStageMask must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR, or one of the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT stages

- VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03909
  If dstAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_WRITE_BIT_KHR, dstStageMask must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR, or one of the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT stages

- VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03910
  If dstAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT_KHR, dstStageMask must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03911
  If dstAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_WRITE_BIT_KHR, dstStageMask must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03912
If \( \text{dstAccessMask} \) includes \( \text{VK_ACCESS_2_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT_KHR} \), \( \text{dstStageMask} \) must include \( \text{VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_EARLY_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT_KHR} \), \( \text{VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_LATE_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT_KHR} \), \( \text{VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR} \), or \( \text{VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR} \)

- \( \text{VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03913} \)

If \( \text{dstAccessMask} \) includes \( \text{VK_ACCESS_2_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_WRITE_BIT_KHR} \), \( \text{dstStageMask} \) must include \( \text{VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_EARLY_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT_KHR} \), \( \text{VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_LATE_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT_KHR} \), \( \text{VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR} \), or \( \text{VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR} \)

- \( \text{VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03914} \)

If \( \text{dstAccessMask} \) includes \( \text{VK_ACCESS_2_TRANSFER_READ_BIT_KHR} \), \( \text{dstStageMask} \) must include \( \text{VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COPY_BIT_KHR} \), \( \text{VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_BLIT_BIT_KHR} \), \( \text{VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_RESOLVE_BIT_KHR} \), \( \text{VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_CLEAR_BIT_KHR} \), \( \text{VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_TRANSFER_BIT_KHR} \), \( \text{VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR} \), or \( \text{VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR} \)

- \( \text{VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03915} \)

If \( \text{dstAccessMask} \) includes \( \text{VK_ACCESS_2_TRANSFER_WRITE_BIT_KHR} \), \( \text{dstStageMask} \) must include \( \text{VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COPY_BIT_KHR} \), \( \text{VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_BLIT_BIT_KHR} \), \( \text{VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_RESOLVE_BIT_KHR} \), \( \text{VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_CLEAR_BIT_KHR} \), \( \text{VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_TRANSFER_BIT_KHR} \), \( \text{VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR} \), or \( \text{VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR} \)

- \( \text{VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03916} \)

If \( \text{dstAccessMask} \) includes \( \text{VK_ACCESS_2_HOST_READ_BIT_KHR} \), \( \text{dstStageMask} \) must include \( \text{VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_HOST_BIT_KHR} \)

- \( \text{VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03917} \)

If \( \text{dstAccessMask} \) includes \( \text{VK_ACCESS_2_HOST_WRITE_BIT_KHR} \), \( \text{dstStageMask} \) must include \( \text{VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_HOST_BIT_KHR} \)

- \( \text{VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03927} \)

If \( \text{dstAccessMask} \) includes \( \text{VK_ACCESS_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_READ_BIT_KHR} \), \( \text{dstStageMask} \) must include \( \text{VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR} \), \( \text{VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_BIT_KHR} \), or \( \text{VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR} \)

- \( \text{VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03928} \)

If \( \text{dstAccessMask} \) includes \( \text{VK_ACCESS_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_WRITE_BIT_KHR} \), \( \text{dstStageMask} \) must include \( \text{VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR} \) or \( \text{VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR} \)

- \( \text{VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-04858} \)

If \( \text{dstAccessMask} \) includes \( \text{VK_ACCESS_2_VIDEO_DECODE_READ_BIT_KHR} \), \( \text{dstStageMask} \) must include \( \text{VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VIDEO_DECODE_BIT_KHR} \)

- \( \text{VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-04859} \)

If \( \text{dstAccessMask} \) includes \( \text{VK_ACCESS_2_VIDEO_DECODE_WRITE_BIT_KHR} \), \( \text{dstStageMask} \) must include \( \text{VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VIDEO_DECODE_BIT_KHR} \)

- \( \text{VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-04860} \)

If \( \text{dstAccessMask} \) includes \( \text{VK_ACCESS_2_VIDEO_ENCODE_READ_BIT_KHR} \), \( \text{dstStageMask} \) must include \( \text{VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VIDEO_ENCODE_BIT_KHR} \)

- \( \text{VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-04861} \)
include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VIDEO_ENCODE_BIT_KHR

• VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-04861
  If dstAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_VIDEO_ENCODE_WRITE_BIT_KHR, dstStageMask must include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VIDEO_ENCODE_BIT_KHR

Valid Usage (Implicit)

• VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_BARRIER_2_KHR

• VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcStageMask-parameter
  srcStageMask must be a valid combination of VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR values

• VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-parameter
  srcAccessMask must be a valid combination of VkAccessFlagBits2KHR values

• VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstStageMask-parameter
  dstStageMask must be a valid combination of VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR values

• VUID-VkMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-parameter
  dstAccessMask must be a valid combination of VkAccessFlagBits2KHR values

The VkMemoryBarrier structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkMemoryBarrier {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkAccessFlags srcAccessMask;
    VkAccessFlags dstAccessMask;
} VkMemoryBarrier;
```

• sType is the type of this structure.

• pNext is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.

• srcAccessMask is a bitmask of VkAccessFlagBits specifying a source access mask.

• dstAccessMask is a bitmask of VkAccessFlagBits specifying a destination access mask.

The first access scope is limited to access types in the source access mask specified by srcAccessMask.

The second access scope is limited to access types in the destination access mask specified by dstAccessMask.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkMemoryBarrier-sType-sType**
  
  \textit{sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_BARRIER}

- **VUID-VkMemoryBarrier-pNext-pNext**
  
  \textit{pNext must be NULL}

- **VUID-VkMemoryBarrier-srcAccessMask-parameter**
  
  \textit{srcAccessMask must be a valid combination of VkAccessFlagBits values}

- **VUID-VkMemoryBarrier-dstAccessMask-parameter**
  
  \textit{dstAccessMask must be a valid combination of VkAccessFlagBits values}

### 7.7.2. Buffer Memory Barriers

Buffer memory barriers only apply to memory accesses involving a specific buffer range. That is, a memory dependency formed from a buffer memory barrier is scoped to access via the specified buffer range. Buffer memory barriers can also be used to define a queue family ownership transfer for the specified buffer range.

The \texttt{VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR} structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2
typedef struct VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkPipelineStageFlags2KHR srcStageMask;
    VkAccessFlags2KHR srcAccessMask;
    VkPipelineStageFlags2KHR dstStageMask;
    VkAccessFlags2KHR dstAccessMask;
    uint32_t srcQueueFamilyIndex;
    uint32_t dstQueueFamilyIndex;
    VkBuffer buffer;
    VkDeviceSize offset;
    VkDeviceSize size;
} VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR;
```

- \textit{sType} is the type of this structure.
- \textit{pNext} is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- \textit{srcStageMask} is a VkPipelineStageFlags2KHR mask of pipeline stages to be included in the first synchronization scope.
- \textit{srcAccessMask} is a VkAccessFlags2KHR mask of access flags to be included in the first access scope.
- \textit{dstStageMask} is a VkPipelineStageFlags2KHR mask of pipeline stages to be included in the second synchronization scope.
- \textit{dstAccessMask} is a VkAccessFlags2KHR mask of access flags to be included in the second access scope.
scope.

- `srcQueueFamilyIndex` is the source queue family for a queue family ownership transfer.
- `dstQueueFamilyIndex` is the destination queue family for a queue family ownership transfer.
- `buffer` is a handle to the buffer whose backing memory is affected by the barrier.
- `offset` is an offset in bytes into the backing memory for `buffer`; this is relative to the base offset as bound to the buffer (see `vkBindBufferMemory`).
- `size` is a size in bytes of the affected area of backing memory for `buffer`, or `VK_WHOLE_SIZE` to use the range from `offset` to the end of the buffer.

This structure defines a memory dependency limited to a range of a buffer, and can define a queue family transfer operation for that range.

The first synchronization scope and access scope described by this structure include only operations and memory accesses specified by `srcStageMask` and `srcAccessMask`.

The second synchronization scope and access scope described by this structure include only operations and memory accesses specified by `dstStageMask` and `dstAccessMask`.

Both access scopes are limited to only memory accesses to `buffer` in the range defined by `offset` and `size`.

If `buffer` was created with `VK_SHARING_MODE_EXCLUSIVE`, and `srcQueueFamilyIndex` is not equal to `dstQueueFamilyIndex`, this memory barrier defines a queue family transfer operation. When executed on a queue in the family identified by `srcQueueFamilyIndex`, this barrier defines a queue family release operation for the specified buffer range, and the second synchronization and access scopes do not synchronize operations on that queue. When executed on a queue in the family identified by `dstQueueFamilyIndex`, this barrier defines a queue family acquire operation for the specified buffer range, and the first synchronization and access scopes do not synchronize operations on that queue.

A queue family transfer operation is also defined if the values are not equal, and either is one of the special queue family values reserved for external memory ownership transfers, as described in Queue Family Ownership Transfer. A queue family release operation is defined when `dstQueueFamilyIndex` is one of those values, and a queue family acquire operation is defined when `srcQueueFamilyIndex` is one of those values.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcStageMask-03929**
  If the geometry shaders feature is not enabled, `srcStageMask` **must** not contain `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT_KHR`.

- **VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcStageMask-03930**
  If the tessellation shaders feature is not enabled, `srcStageMask` **must** not contain `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT_KHR` or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_TESSellation_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT_KHR`.

- **VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03900**
  If `srcAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_INDIRECT_COMMAND_READ_BIT_KHR`, `srcStageMask` **must** include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_DRAW_INDIRECT_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR`, or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR`.

- **VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03901**
  If `srcAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_INDEX_READ_BIT_KHR`, `srcStageMask` **must** include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_INDEX_INPUT_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VERTEX_INPUT_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR`, or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR`.

- **VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03902**
  If `srcAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_VERTEX_ATTRIBUTE_READ_BIT_KHR`, `srcStageMask` **must** include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VERTEX_ATTRIBUTE_INPUT_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VERTEX_INPUT_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR`, or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR`.

- **VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03903**
  If `srcAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_INPUT_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT_KHR`, `srcStageMask` **must** include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_FRAGMENT_SHADER_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_SUBPASS_SHADING_BIT_HUAWEI`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR`, or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR`.

- **VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03904**
  If `srcAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_UNIFORM_READ_BIT_KHR`, `srcStageMask` **must** include one of the `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT` stages.

- **VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03905**
  If `srcAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_SAMPLED_READ_BIT_KHR`, `srcStageMask` **must** include one of the `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT` stages.

- **VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03906**
  If `srcAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_STORAGE_READ_BIT_KHR`, `srcStageMask` **must** include one of the `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT` stages.

- **VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03907**
  If `srcAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_STORAGE_WRITE_BIT_KHR`, `srcStageMask` **must** include one of the `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT` stages.
If `srcAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_READ_BIT_KHR`, `srcStageMask` must include

- `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR`,
- `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR`, or one of the `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT` stages

If `srcAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_WRITE_BIT_KHR`, `srcStageMask` must include

- `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR`, or
- one of the `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT` stages

If `srcAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT_KHR`, `srcStageMask` must include

- `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR`, or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR`

If `srcAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_WRITE_BIT_KHR`, `srcStageMask` must include

- `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR`, or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR`

If `srcAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT_KHR`, `srcStageMask` must include

- `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_EARLY_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_LATE_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR`, or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR`

If `srcAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_WRITE_BIT_KHR`, `srcStageMask` must include

- `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_EARLY_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_LATE_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR`, or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR`

If `srcAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_TRANSFER_READ_BIT_KHR`, `srcStageMask` must include

- `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COPY_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_BLIT_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_RESOLVE_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_TRANSFER_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR`, or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR`

If `srcAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_TRANSFER_WRITE_BIT_KHR`, `srcStageMask` must include

- `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COPY_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_BLIT_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_RESOLVE_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_CLEAR_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_TRANSFER_BIT_KHR`, or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR`

If `srcAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_HOST_READ_BIT_KHR`, `srcStageMask` must include

- `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR`
VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_HOST_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03917
  If `srcAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_HOST_WRITE_BIT_KHR`, `srcStageMask` must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_HOST_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03927
  If `srcAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_READ_BIT_KHR`, `srcStageMask`
  must include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR,
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_BIT_KHR, or
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03928
  If `srcAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_WRITE_BIT_KHR`, `srcStageMask`
  must include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR or
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03929
  If `srcAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_VIDEO_DECODE_READ_BIT_KHR`, `srcStageMask` must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VIDEO_DECODE_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstStageMask-03929
  If the `geometry shaders` feature is not enabled, `dstStageMask` must not contain
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstStageMask-03930
  If the `tessellation shaders` feature is not enabled, `dstStageMask` must not contain
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT_KHR or
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_TESSELLATION_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03900
  If `dstAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_INDIRECT_COMMAND_READ_BIT_KHR`, `dstStageMask` must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_DRAW_INDIRECT_BIT_KHR,
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR,
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03901
  If `dstAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_INDEX_READ_BIT_KHR`, `dstStageMask` must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_INDEX_INPUT_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VERTEX_INPUT_BIT_KHR,
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03902
  If `dstAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_VERTEX_ATTRIBUTE_READ_BIT_KHR`, `dstStageMask` must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VERTEX_ATTRIBUTE_INPUT_BIT_KHR,
VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VERTEX_INPUT_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03903
  If dstAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_INPUT_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT_KHR, dstStageMask must include
  - VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_FRAGMENT_SHADER_BIT_KHR,
  - VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_SUBPASS_SHADING_BIT_HUAWEI,
  - VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03904
  If dstAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_UNIFORM_READ_BIT_KHR, dstStageMask must include
  - VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR, or
  - one of the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT stages

- VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03905
  If dstAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_SAMPLED_READ_BIT_KHR, dstStageMask must include
  - VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR, or
  - one of the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT stages

- VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03906
  If dstAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_STORAGE_READ_BIT_KHR, dstStageMask must include
  - VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR, or
  - one of the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT stages

- VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03907
  If dstAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_STORAGE_WRITE_BIT_KHR, dstStageMask must include
  - VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR, or
  - one of the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT stages

- VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03908
  If dstAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_READ_BIT_KHR, dstStageMask must include
  - VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR,
  - VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR, or one of the
  - VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT stages

- VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03909
  If dstAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_WRITE_BIT_KHR, dstStageMask must include
  - VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR, or
  - one of the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT stages

- VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03910
  If dstAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT_KHR, dstStageMask must include
  - VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, or
  - VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03911
  If dstAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_WRITE_BIT_KHR, dstStageMask must include
  - VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, or
  - VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03912
If `dstAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT_KHR`, `dstStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_EARLY_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_LATE_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR`, or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR`.

• VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03913
  If `dstAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_WRITE_BIT_KHR`, `dstStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_EARLY_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_LATE_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR`, or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR`.

• VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03914
  If `dstAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_TRANSFER_READ_BIT_KHR`, `dstStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COPY_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_BLIT_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_RESOLVE_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_TRANSFER_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR`, or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR`.

• VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03915
  If `dstAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_TRANSFER_WRITE_BIT_KHR`, `dstStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COPY_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_BLIT_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_RESOLVE_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_CLEAR_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_TRANSFER_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR`, or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR`.

• VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03916
  If `dstAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_HOST_READ_BIT_KHR`, `dstStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_HOST_BIT_KHR`.

• VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03917
  If `dstAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_HOST_WRITE_BIT_KHR`, `dstStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_HOST_BIT_KHR`.

• VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03918
  If `dstAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_READ_BIT_KHR`, `dstStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_BIT_KHR`, or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR`.

• VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03919
  If `dstAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_WRITE_BIT_KHR`, `dstStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR` or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR`.

• VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-04858
  If `dstAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_VIDEO_DECODE_READ_BIT_KHR`, `dstStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VIDEO_DECODE_BIT_KHR`.

• VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-04859
  If `dstAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_VIDEO_DECODE_WRITE_BIT_KHR`, `dstStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VIDEO_DECODING_BIT_KHR`.

• VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-04860
  If `dstAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_VIDEO_ENCODE_READ_BIT_KHR`, `dstStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VIDEO_ENCODING_BIT_KHR`.
include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VIDEO_ENCODE_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-04861
  If dstAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_VIDEO_ENCODE_WRITE_BIT_KHR, dstStageMask must include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VIDEO_ENCODE_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-offset-01187
  offset must be less than the size of buffer

- VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-size-01188
  If size is not equal to VK_WHOLE_SIZE, size must be greater than 0

- VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-size-01189
  If size is not equal to VK_WHOLE_SIZE, size must be less than or equal to than the size of buffer minus offset

- VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-buffer-01931
  If buffer is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single VkDeviceMemory object

- VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcQueueFamilyIndex-04087
  If srcQueueFamilyIndex is not equal to dstQueueFamilyIndex, at least one must not be a special queue family reserved for external memory ownership transfers, as described in Queue Family Ownership Transfer

- VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-buffer-04088
  If buffer was created with a sharing mode of VK_SHARING_MODE_CONCURRENT, srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex are not equal, and one of srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex is one of the special queue family values reserved for external memory transfers, the other must be VK_QUEUE_FAMILY_IGNORED

- VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-buffer-04089
  If buffer was created with a sharing mode of VK_SHARING_MODE_EXCLUSIVE, and srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex are not equal, srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex must both be valid queue families, or one of the special queue family values reserved for external memory transfers, as described in Queue Family Ownership Transfer

- VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcStageMask-03851
  If either srcStageMask or dstStageMask includes VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_HOST_BIT_KHR, srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex must be equal
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-sType-sType**
  
  *sType* must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BUFFER_MEMORY_BARRIER_2_KHR`

- **VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-pNext-pNext**
  
  *pNext* must be `NULL`

- **VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcStageMask-parameter**
  
  *srcStageMask* must be a valid combination of `VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR` values

- **VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-parameter**
  
  *srcAccessMask* must be a valid combination of `VkAccessFlagBits2KHR` values

- **VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstStageMask-parameter**
  
  *dstStageMask* must be a valid combination of `VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR` values

- **VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-parameter**
  
  *dstAccessMask* must be a valid combination of `VkAccessFlagBits2KHR` values

- **VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR-buffer-parameter**
  
  *buffer* must be a valid `VkBuffer` handle

---

The `VkBufferMemoryBarrier` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkBufferMemoryBarrier {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkAccessFlags srcAccessMask;
    VkAccessFlags dstAccessMask;
    uint32_t srcQueueFamilyIndex;
    uint32_t dstQueueFamilyIndex;
    VkBuffer buffer;
    VkDeviceSize offset;
    VkDeviceSize size;
} VkBufferMemoryBarrier;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **srcAccessMask** is a bitmask of `VkAccessFlagBits` specifying a source access mask.
- **dstAccessMask** is a bitmask of `VkAccessFlagBits` specifying a destination access mask.
- **srcQueueFamilyIndex** is the source queue family for a queue family ownership transfer.
- **dstQueueFamilyIndex** is the destination queue family for a queue family ownership transfer.
- **buffer** is a handle to the buffer whose backing memory is affected by the barrier.
- **offset** is an offset in bytes into the backing memory for `buffer`; this is relative to the base offset as bound to the buffer (see `vkBindBufferMemory`).
• size is a size in bytes of the affected area of backing memory for buffer, or VK_WHOLE_SIZE to use the range from offset to the end of the buffer.

The first access scope is limited to access to memory through the specified buffer range, via access types in the source access mask specified by srcAccessMask. If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_HOST_WRITE_BIT, memory writes performed by that access type are also made visible, as that access type is not performed through a resource.

The second access scope is limited to access to memory through the specified buffer range, via access types in the destination access mask specified by dstAccessMask. If dstAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_HOST_WRITE_BIT or VK_ACCESS_HOST_READ_BIT, available memory writes are also made visible to accesses of those types, as those access types are not performed through a resource.

If srcQueueFamilyIndex is not equal to dstQueueFamilyIndex, and srcQueueFamilyIndex is equal to the current queue family, then the memory barrier defines a queue family release operation for the specified buffer range, and the second access scope includes no access, as if dstAccessMask was 0.

If dstQueueFamilyIndex is not equal to srcQueueFamilyIndex, and dstQueueFamilyIndex is equal to the current queue family, then the memory barrier defines a queue family acquire operation for the specified buffer range, and the first access scope includes no access, as if srcAccessMask was 0.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier-offset-01187**
  
  offset must be less than the size of buffer

- **VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier-size-01188**
  
  If size is not equal to VK_WHOLE_SIZE, size must be greater than 0

- **VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier-size-01189**
  
  If size is not equal to VK_WHOLE_SIZE, size must be less than or equal to the size of buffer minus offset

- **VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier-buffer-01931**
  
  If buffer is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single VkDeviceMemory object

- **VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier-srcQueueFamilyIndex-04087**
  
  If srcQueueFamilyIndex is not equal to dstQueueFamilyIndex, at least one must not be a special queue family reserved for external memory ownership transfers, as described in Queue Family Ownership Transfer

- **VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier-buffer-04088**
  
  If buffer was created with a sharing mode of VK_SHARING_MODE_CONCURRENT, srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex are not equal, and one of srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex is one of the special queue family values reserved for external memory transfers, the other must be VK_QUEUE_FAMILY_IGNORED

- **VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier-buffer-04089**
  
  If buffer was created with a sharing mode of VK_SHARING_MODE_EXCLUSIVE, and srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex are not equal, srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex must both be valid queue families, or one of the special queue family values reserved for external memory transfers, as described in Queue Family Ownership Transfer

- **VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier-synchronization2-03853**
  
  If the synchronization2 feature is not enabled, and buffer was created with a sharing mode of VK_SHARING_MODE_CONCURRENT, at least one of srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex must be VK_QUEUE_FAMILY_IGNORED

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier-sType-sType**
  
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BUFFER_MEMORY_BARRIER

- **VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier-pNext-pNext**
  
  pNext must be NULL

- **VUID-VkBufferMemoryBarrier-buffer-parameter**
  
  buffer must be a valid VkBuffer handle

VK_WHOLE_SIZE is a special value indicating that the entire remaining length of a buffer following a
given offset should be used. It can be specified for VkBufferMemoryBarrier::size and other structures.

```c
#define VK_WHOLE_SIZE (~0ULL)
```

### 7.7.3. Image Memory Barriers

Image memory barriers only apply to memory accesses involving a specific image subresource range. That is, a memory dependency formed from an image memory barrier is scoped to access via the specified image subresource range. Image memory barriers can also be used to define image layout transitions or a queue family ownership transfer for the specified image subresource range.

The VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR structure is defined as:

```c
struct VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkPipelineStageFlags2KHR srcStageMask;
    VkAccessFlags2KHR srcAccessMask;
    VkPipelineStageFlags2KHR dstStageMask;
    VkAccessFlags2KHR dstAccessMask;
    VkImageLayout oldLayout;
    VkImageLayout newLayout;
    uint32_t srcQueueFamilyIndex;
    uint32_t dstQueueFamilyIndex;
    VkImage image;
    VkImageSubresourceRange subresourceRange;
};
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **srcStageMask** is a VkPipelineStageFlags2KHR mask of pipeline stages to be included in the first synchronization scope.
- **srcAccessMask** is a VkAccessFlags2KHR mask of access flags to be included in the first access scope.
- **dstStageMask** is a VkPipelineStageFlags2KHR mask of pipeline stages to be included in the second synchronization scope.
- **dstAccessMask** is a VkAccessFlags2KHR mask of access flags to be included in the second access scope.
- **oldLayout** is the old layout in an image layout transition.
- **newLayout** is the new layout in an image layout transition.
- **srcQueueFamilyIndex** is the source queue family for a queue family ownership transfer.
• **dstQueueFamilyIndex** is the destination queue family for a **queue family ownership transfer**.
• **image** is a handle to the image affected by this barrier.
• **subresourceRange** describes the **image subresource range** within **image** that is affected by this barrier.

This structure defines a **memory dependency** limited to an image subresource range, and can define a **queue family transfer operation** and **image layout transition** for that subresource range.

The first **synchronization scope** and **access scope** described by this structure include only operations and memory accesses specified by **srcStageMask** and **srcAccessMask**.

The second **synchronization scope** and **access scope** described by this structure include only operations and memory accesses specified by **dstStageMask** and **dstAccessMask**.

Both **access scopes** are limited to only memory accesses to **image** in the subresource range defined by **subresourceRange**.

If **image** was created with **VK_SHARING_MODE_EXCLUSIVE**, and **srcQueueFamilyIndex** is not equal to **dstQueueFamilyIndex**, this memory barrier defines a **queue family transfer operation**. When executed on a queue in the family identified by **srcQueueFamilyIndex**, this barrier defines a **queue family release operation** for the specified image subresource range, and the second synchronization and access scopes do not synchronize operations on that queue. When executed on a queue in the family identified by **dstQueueFamilyIndex**, this barrier defines a **queue family acquire operation** for the specified image subresource range, and the first synchronization and access scopes do not synchronize operations on that queue.

A **queue family transfer operation** is also defined if the values are not equal, and either is one of the special queue family values reserved for external memory ownership transfers, as described in **Queue Family Ownership Transfer**. A **queue family release operation** is defined when **dstQueueFamilyIndex** is one of those values, and a **queue family acquire operation** is defined when **srcQueueFamilyIndex** is one of those values.

If **oldLayout** is not equal to **newLayout**, then the memory barrier defines an **image layout transition** for the specified image subresource range. If this memory barrier defines a **queue family transfer operation**, the layout transition is only executed once between the queues.

**Note**

When the old and new layout are equal, the layout values are ignored - data is preserved no matter what values are specified, or what layout the image is currently in.

If **image** has a multi-planar format and the image is **disjoint**, then including **VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT** in the **aspectMask** member of **subresourceRange** is equivalent to including **VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT**, **VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT**, and (for three-plane formats only) **VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT**.
Valid Usage

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcStageMask-03929
  If the geometry shaders feature is not enabled, srcStageMask must not contain VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT_KHR

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcStageMask-03930
  If the tessellation shaders feature is not enabled, srcStageMask must not contain VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT_KHR or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_TESSELLATION_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT_KHR

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03900
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_INDIRECT_COMMAND_READ_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_DRAW_INDIRECT_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03901
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_INDEX_READ_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_INDEX_INPUT_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VERTEX_INPUT_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03902
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_VERTEX_ATTRIBUTE_READ_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VERTEX_ATTRIBUTE_INPUT_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VERTEX_INPUT_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03903
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_INPUT_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_FRAGMENT_SHADER_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_SUBPASS_SHADING_BIT_HUAWEI, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03904
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_UNIFORM_READ_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include one of the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT stages

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03905
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_SAMPLED_READ_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR, or one of the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT stages

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03906
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_STORAGE_READ_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR, or one of the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT stages

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03907
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_STORAGE_WRITE_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must
include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR, or one of the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT stages

- VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03908
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_READ_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR, or one of the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT stages

- VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03909
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_WRITE_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR, or one of the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT stages

- VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03910
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT_KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03911
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_WRITE_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT_KHR VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03912
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_EARLY_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_LATE_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03913
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_WRITE_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_EARLY_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_LATE_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03914
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_TRANSFER_READ_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COPY_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_BLIT_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_RESOLVE_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_TRANSFER_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03915
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_TRANSFER_WRITE_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COPY_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_BLIT_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_RESOLVE_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_CLEAR_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_TRANSFER_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03916
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_HOST_READ_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include
VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_HOST_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03917
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_HOST_WRITE_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_HOST_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03927
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_READ_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-03928
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_WRITE_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-04858
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_VIDEO_DECODE_READ_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VIDEO_DECODE_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-04859
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_VIDEO_DECODE_WRITE_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VIDEO_DECODE_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-04860
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_VIDEO_ENCODE_READ_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VIDEO_ENCODE_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-04861
  If srcAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_VIDEO_ENCODE_WRITE_BIT_KHR, srcStageMask must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VIDEO_ENCODE_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstStageMask-03929
  If the geometry shaders feature is not enabled, dstStageMask must not contain VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstStageMask-03930
  If the tessellation shaders feature is not enabled, dstStageMask must not contain
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT_KHR or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_TESSELLATION_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstStageMask-03900
  If dstAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_INDIRECT_COMMAND_READ_BIT_KHR, dstStageMask must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_DRAW_INDIRECT_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstStageMask-03901
  If dstAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_INDEX_READ_BIT_KHR, dstStageMask must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_INDEX_INPUT_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VERTEX_INPUT_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstStageMask-03902
  If dstAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_VERTEX_ATTRIBUTE_READ_BIT_KHR, dstStageMask must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VERTEX_ATTRIBUTE_INPUT_BIT_KHR,
VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VERTEX_INPUT_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03903
  If dstAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_INPUT_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT_KHR, dstStageMask must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_FRAGMENT_SHADER_BIT_KHR,
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_SUBPASS_SHADING_BIT_HUAWEI,
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03904
  If dstAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_UNIFORM_READ_BIT_KHR, dstStageMask must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR, or
  one of the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT stages

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03905
  If dstAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_SAMPLED_READ_BIT_KHR, dstStageMask must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR, or
  one of the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT stages

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03906
  If dstAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_STORAGE_READ_BIT_KHR, dstStageMask must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR, or
  one of the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT stages

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03907
  If dstAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_STORAGE_WRITE_BIT_KHR, dstStageMask must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR, or
  one of the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT stages

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03908
  If dstAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_READ_BIT_KHR, dstStageMask must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR, or
  one of the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT stages

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03909
  If dstAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_SHADER_WRITE_BIT_KHR, dstStageMask must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR, or
  one of the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_*_SHADER_BIT stages

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03910
  If dstAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT_KHR, dstStageMask must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT_KHR
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03911
  If dstAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_WRITE_BIT_KHR, dstStageMask must include
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT_KHR
  VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR, or VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03912
If `dstAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT_KHR`, `dstStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_EARLY_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_LATE_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR`, or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR`

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03913
  If `dstAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_WRITE_BIT_KHR`, `dstStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_EARLY_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_LATE_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_GRAPHICS_BIT_KHR`, or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR`

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03914
  If `dstAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_TRANSFER_READ_BIT_KHR`, `dstStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COPY_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_BLIT_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_RESOLVE_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_TRANSFER_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR`, or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR`

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03915
  If `dstAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_TRANSFER_WRITE_BIT_KHR`, `dstStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_COPY_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_BLIT_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_RESOLVE_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_CLEAR_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_TRANSFER_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR`, or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR`

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03916
  If `dstAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_HOST_READ_BIT_KHR`, `dstStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_HOST_BIT_KHR`

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03917
  If `dstAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_HOST_WRITE_BIT_KHR`, `dstStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_HOST_BIT_KHR`

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03927
  If `dstAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_READ_BIT_KHR`, `dstStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_BIT_KHR`, or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR`

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-03928
  If `dstAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_WRITE_BIT_KHR`, `dstStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR` or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT_KHR`

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-04858
  If `dstAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_VIDEO_DECODE_READ_BIT_KHR`, `dstStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VIDEO_DECODE_BIT_KHR`

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-04859
  If `dstAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_VIDEO_DECODE_WRITE_BIT_KHR`, `dstStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VIDEO_DECODE_BIT_KHR`

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-04860
  If `dstAccessMask` includes `VK_ACCESS_2_VIDEO_ENCODE_READ_BIT_KHR`, `dstStageMask` must include `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VIDEO_ENCODE_BIT_KHR`
include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VIDEO_ENCODE_BIT_KHR

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-04861
  If dstAccessMask includes VK_ACCESS_2_VIDEO_ENCODE_WRITE_BIT_KHR, dstStageMask must include VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VIDEO_ENCODE_BIT_KHR

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-subresourceRange-01486
  subresourceRange.baseMipLevel must be less than the mipLevels specified in VkImageCreateInfo when image was created

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-subresourceRange-01724
  If subresourceRange.levelCount is not VK_REMAINING_MIP_LEVELS, subresourceRange.baseMipLevel + subresourceRange.levelCount must be less than or equal to the mipLevels specified in VkImageCreateInfo when image was created

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-subresourceRange-01488
  subresourceRange.baseArrayLayer must be less than the arrayLayers specified in VkImageCreateInfo when image was created

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-subresourceRange-01725
  If subresourceRange.layerCount is not VK_REMAINING_ARRAY_LAYERS, subresourceRange.baseArrayLayer + subresourceRange.layerCount must be less than or equal to the arrayLayers specified in VkImageCreateInfo when image was created

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-image-01932
  If image is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single VkDeviceMemory object

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-oldLayout-01208
  If srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex define a queue family ownership transfer or oldLayout and newLayout define an image layout transition, and oldLayout or newLayout is VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL then image must have been created with VK_IMAGE_USAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-oldLayout-01209
  If srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex define a queue family ownership transfer or oldLayout and newLayout define an image layout transition, and oldLayout or newLayout is VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL then image must have been created with VK_IMAGE_USAGE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-oldLayout-01210
  If srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex define a queue family ownership transfer or oldLayout and newLayout define an image layout transition, and oldLayout or newLayout is VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL then image must have been created with VK_IMAGE_USAGE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-oldLayout-01211
  If srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex define a queue family ownership transfer or oldLayout and newLayout define an image layout transition, and oldLayout or newLayout is VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHADER_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL then image must have been created with VK_IMAGE_USAGE_SAMPLED_BIT or VK_IMAGE_USAGE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT_BIT

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-oldLayout-01212
  If srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex define a queue family ownership transfer
or oldLayout and newLayout define an image layout transition, and oldLayout or newLayout is VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_TRANSFER_SRC_OPTIMAL then image must have been created with VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-oldLayout-01213
  If srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex define a queue family ownership transfer or oldLayout and newLayout define an image layout transition, and oldLayout or newLayout is VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_TRANSFER_DST_OPTIMAL then image must have been created with VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-oldLayout-01197
  If srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex define a queue family ownership transfer or oldLayout and newLayout define an image layout transition, oldLayout must be VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_UNDEFINED or the current layout of the image subresources affected by the barrier

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-newLayout-01198
  If srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex define a queue family ownership transfer or oldLayout and newLayout define an image layout transition, newLayout must not be VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_UNDEFINED or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_PREINITIALIZED

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-oldLayout-01658
  If srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex define a queue family ownership transfer or oldLayout and newLayout define an image layout transition, oldLayout or newLayout is VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL then image must have been created with VK_IMAGE_USAGE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-oldLayout-01659
  If srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex define a queue family ownership transfer or oldLayout and newLayout define an image layout transition, oldLayout or newLayout is VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL then image must have been created with VK_IMAGE_USAGE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcQueueFamilyIndex-03938
  If srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex define a queue family ownership transfer or oldLayout and newLayout define an image layout transition, oldLayout or newLayout is VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL_KHR, image must have been created with VK_IMAGE_USAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT or VK_IMAGE_USAGE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcQueueFamilyIndex-03939
  If srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex define a queue family ownership transfer or oldLayout and newLayout define an image layout transition, oldLayout or newLayout is VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL_KHR, image must have been created with at least one of VK_IMAGE_USAGE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT, VK_IMAGE_USAGE_SAMPLED_BIT, or VK_IMAGE_USAGE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT_BIT

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-oldLayout-02088
  If srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex define a queue family ownership transfer or oldLayout and newLayout define an image layout transition, oldLayout or newLayout is VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL_KHR then image must have been created with VK_IMAGE_USAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_BIT_KHR set

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-image-01671
  If image has a single-plane color format or is not disjoint, then the aspectMask member of
subresourceRange must be VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-image-01672
  If image has a multi-planar format and the image is disjoint, then the aspectMask member of subresourceRange must include either at least one of VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT, VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT, and VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT; or must include VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-image-01673
  If image has a multi-planar format with only two planes, then the aspectMask member of subresourceRange must not include VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-image-03319
  If image has a depth/stencil format with both depth and stencil and the separateDepthStencilLayouts feature is enabled, then the aspectMask member of subresourceRange must include either or both VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_DEPTH_BIT and VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_STENCIL_BIT

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-image-03320
  If image has a depth/stencil format with both depth and stencil and the separateDepthStencilLayouts feature is not enabled, then the aspectMask member of subresourceRange must include both VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_DEPTH_BIT and VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_STENCIL_BIT

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcQueueFamilyIndex-04070
  If srcQueueFamilyIndex is not equal to dstQueueFamilyIndex, at least one must not be a special queue family reserved for external memory ownership transfers, as described in Queue Family Ownership Transfer

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-image-04071
  If image was created with a sharing mode of VK_SHARING_MODE_CONCURRENT, srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex are not equal, and one of srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex is one of the special queue family values reserved for external memory transfers, the other must be VK_QUEUE_FAMILY_IGNORED

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcQueueFamilyIndex-04072
  If image was created with a sharing mode of VK_SHARING_MODE_EXCLUSIVE, and srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex are not equal, srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex must both be valid queue families, or one of the special queue family values reserved for external memory transfers, as described in Queue Family Ownership Transfer

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcStageMask-03854
  If either srcStageMask or dstStageMask includes VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_HOST_BIT_KHR, srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex must be equal

• VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcStageMask-03855
  If srcStageMask includes VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_HOST_BIT_KHR, and srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex define a queue family ownership transfer or oldLayout and newLayout define an image layout transition, oldLayout must be one of VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_PREINITIALIZED, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_UNDEFINED, or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-sType-sType**
  sType must be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_MEMORY_BARRIER_2_KHR**

- **VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-pNext-pNext**
  pNext must be **NULL**

- **VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcStageMask-parameter**
  srcStageMask must be a valid combination of **VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR** values

- **VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-srcAccessMask-parameter**
  srcAccessMask must be a valid combination of **VkAccessFlagBits2KHR** values

- **VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstStageMask-parameter**
  dstStageMask must be a valid combination of **VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR** values

- **VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-dstAccessMask-parameter**
  dstAccessMask must be a valid combination of **VkAccessFlagBits2KHR** values

- **VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-oldLayout-parameter**
  oldLayout must be a valid **VkImageLayout** value

- **VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-newLayout-parameter**
  newLayout must be a valid **VkImageLayout** value

- **VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-image-parameter**
  image must be a valid **VkImage** handle

- **VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR-subresourceRange-parameter**
  subresourceRange must be a valid **VkImageSubresourceRange** structure

---

The **VkImageMemoryBarrier** structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkImageMemoryBarrier {
    VkStructureType       sType;
    const void*           pNext;
    VkAccessFlags         srcAccessMask;
    VkAccessFlags         dstAccessMask;
    VkImageLayout         oldLayout;
    VkImageLayout         newLayout;
    uint32_t              srcQueueFamilyIndex;
    uint32_t              dstQueueFamilyIndex;
    VkImage               image;
    VkImageSubresourceRange subresourceRange;
} VkImageMemoryBarrier;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **srcAccessMask** is a bitmask of **VkAccessFlagBits** specifying a source access mask.
• **dstAccessMask** is a bitmask of *VkAccessFlagBits* specifying a *destination access mask*.

• **oldLayout** is the old layout in an *image layout transition*.

• **newLayout** is the new layout in an *image layout transition*.

• **srcQueueFamilyIndex** is the source queue family for a *queue family ownership transfer*.

• **dstQueueFamilyIndex** is the destination queue family for a *queue family ownership transfer*.

• **image** is a handle to the image affected by this barrier.

• **subresourceRange** describes the *image subresource range* within *image* that is affected by this barrier.

The first **access scope** is limited to access to memory through the specified image subresource range, via access types in the *source access mask* specified by **srcAccessMask**. If **srcAccessMask** includes **VK_ACCESS_HOST_WRITE_BIT**, memory writes performed by that access type are also made visible, as that access type is not performed through a resource.

The second **access scope** is limited to access to memory through the specified image subresource range, via access types in the *destination access mask* specified by **dstAccessMask**. If **dstAccessMask** includes **VK_ACCESS_HOST_WRITE_BIT** or **VK_ACCESS_HOST_READ_BIT**, available memory writes are also made visible to accesses of those types, as those access types are not performed through a resource.

If **srcQueueFamilyIndex** is not equal to **dstQueueFamilyIndex**, and **srcQueueFamilyIndex** is equal to the current queue family, then the memory barrier defines a *queue family release operation* for the specified image subresource range, and the second access scope includes no access, as if **dstAccessMask** was **0**.

If **dstQueueFamilyIndex** is not equal to **srcQueueFamilyIndex**, and **dstQueueFamilyIndex** is equal to the current queue family, then the memory barrier defines a *queue family acquire operation* for the specified image subresource range, and the first access scope includes no access, as if **srcAccessMask** was **0**.

If the **synchronization2 feature** is not enabled or **oldLayout** is not equal to **newLayout**, **oldLayout** and **newLayout** define an *image layout transition* for the specified image subresource range.

**Note**

If the **synchronization2 feature** is enabled, when the old and new layout are equal, the layout values are ignored - data is preserved no matter what values are specified, or what layout the image is currently in.

If **image** has a multi-planar format and the image is *disjoint*, then including **VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT** in the **aspectMask** member of **subresourceRange** is equivalent to including **VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT**, **VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT**, and (for three-plane formats only) **VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT**.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier-subresourceRange-01486**

  subresourceRange.baseMipLevel must be less than the mipLevels specified in VkImageCreateInfo when image was created

- **VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier-subresourceRange-01724**

  If subresourceRange.levelCount is not VK_REMAINING_MIP_LEVELS, subresourceRange.baseMipLevel + subresourceRange.levelCount must be less than or equal to the mipLevels specified in VkImageCreateInfo when image was created

- **VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier-subresourceRange-01488**

  subresourceRange.baseArrayLayer must be less than the arrayLayers specified in VkImageCreateInfo when image was created

- **VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier-subresourceRange-01725**

  If subresourceRange.layerCount is not VK_REMAINING_ARRAY_LAYERS, subresourceRange.baseArrayLayer + subresourceRange.layerCount must be less than or equal to the arrayLayers specified in VkImageCreateInfo when image was created

- **VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier-image-01932**

  If image is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single VkDeviceMemory object

- **VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier-oldLayout-01208**

  If srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex define a queue family ownership transfer or oldLayout and newLayout define an image layout transition, and oldLayout or newLayout is VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL then image must have been created with VK_IMAGE_USAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT

- **VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier-oldLayout-01209**

  If srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex define a queue family ownership transfer or oldLayout and newLayout define an image layout transition, and oldLayout or newLayout is VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL then image must have been created with VK_IMAGE_USAGE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT

- **VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier-oldLayout-01210**

  If srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex define a queue family ownership transfer or oldLayout and newLayout define an image layout transition, and oldLayout or newLayout is VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL then image must have been created with VK_IMAGE_USAGE_SAMPLED_BIT or VK_IMAGE_USAGE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT_BIT

- **VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier-oldLayout-01211**

  If srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex define a queue family ownership transfer or oldLayout and newLayout define an image layout transition, and oldLayout or newLayout is VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_TRANSFER_SRC_OPTIMAL then image must have been created with VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT
If srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex define a queue family ownership transfer or oldLayout and newLayout define an image layout transition, and oldLayout or newLayout is `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_TRANSFER_DST_OPTIMAL` then image must have been created with `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT`.

If srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex define a queue family ownership transfer or oldLayout and newLayout define an image layout transition, oldLayout must be `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_UNDEFINED` or the current layout of the image subresources affected by the barrier.

If srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex define a queue family ownership transfer or oldLayout and newLayout define an image layout transition, newLayout must not be `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_UNDEFINED` or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_PREINITIALIZED`.

If srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex define a queue family ownership transfer or oldLayout and newLayout define an image layout transition, and oldLayout or newLayout is `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL` then image must have been created with `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT`.

If srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex define a queue family ownership transfer or oldLayout and newLayout define an image layout transition, and oldLayout or newLayout is `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL` then image must have been created with `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT`.

If srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex define a queue family ownership transfer or oldLayout and newLayout define an image layout transition, and oldLayout or newLayout is `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL_KHR`, image must have been created with `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT` or `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT`.

If srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex define a queue family ownership transfer or oldLayout and newLayout define an image layout transition, and oldLayout or newLayout is `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL_KHR`, image must have been created with at least one of `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT`, `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_SAMPLED_BIT`, or `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT_BIT`.

If srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex define a queue family ownership transfer or oldLayout and newLayout define an image layout transition, and oldLayout or newLayout is `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL_KHR`, image must have been created with `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_BIT_KHR`.

If image has a single-plane color format or is not disjoint, then the `aspectMask` member of subresourceRange must be `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT`.

If image has a multi-planar format and the image is disjoint, then the `aspectMask` member
of subresourceRange must include either at least one of VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT, VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT, and VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT; or must include VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT

- VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier-image-01673
  If image has a multi-planar format with only two planes, then the aspectMask member of subresourceRange must not include VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT

- VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier-image-03319
  If image has a depth/stencil format with both depth and stencil and the separateDepthStencilLayers feature is enabled, then the aspectMask member of subresourceRange must include either or both VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_DEPTH_BIT and VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_STENCIL_BIT

- VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier-image-03320
  If image has a depth/stencil format with both depth and stencil and the separateDepthStencilLayers feature is not enabled, then the aspectMask member of subresourceRange must include both VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_DEPTH_BIT and VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_STENCIL_BIT

- VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier-srcQueueFamilyIndex-04070
  If srcQueueFamilyIndex is not equal to dstQueueFamilyIndex, at least one must not be a special queue family reserved for external memory ownership transfers, as described in Queue Family Ownership Transfer

- VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier-image-04071
  If image was created with a sharing mode of VK_SHARING_MODE_CONCURRENT, srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex are not equal, and one of srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex is one of the special queue family values reserved for external memory transfers, the other must be VK_QUEUE_FAMILY_IGNORED

- VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier-image-04072
  If image was created with a sharing mode of VK_SHARING_MODE_EXCLUSIVE, and srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex are not equal, srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex must both be valid queue families, or one of the special queue family values reserved for external memory transfers, as described in Queue Family Ownership Transfer

- VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier-synchronization2-03857
  If the synchronization2 feature is not enabled, and image was created with a sharing mode of VK_SHARING_MODE_CONCURRENT, at least one of srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex must be VK_QUEUE_FAMILY_IGNORED
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- *VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier-sType-sType*
  
  `sType` **must** be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_MEMORY_BARRIER`

- *VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier-pNext-pNext*
  
  `pNext` **must** be `NULL`

- *VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier-oldLayout-parameter*
  
  `oldLayout` **must** be a valid `VkImageLayout` value

- *VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier-newLayout-parameter*
  
  `newLayout` **must** be a valid `VkImageLayout` value

- *VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier-image-parameter*
  
  `image` **must** be a valid `VkImage` handle

- *VUID-VkImageMemoryBarrier-subresourceRange-parameter*
  
  `subresourceRange` **must** be a valid `VkImageSubresourceRange` structure

### 7.7.4. Queue Family Ownership Transfer

Resources created with a `VkSharingMode` of `VK_SHARING_MODE_EXCLUSIVE` **must** have their ownership explicitly transferred from one queue family to another in order to access their content in a well-defined manner on a queue in a different queue family.

The special queue family index `VK_QUEUE_FAMILY_IGNORED` indicates that a queue family parameter or member is ignored.

```c
#define VK_QUEUE_FAMILY_IGNORED         (~0U)
```

Resources shared with external APIs or instances using external memory **must** also explicitly manage ownership transfers between local and external queues (or equivalent constructs in external APIs) regardless of the `VkSharingMode` specified when creating them.

The special queue family index `VK_QUEUE_FAMILY_EXTERNAL` represents any queue external to the resource's current Vulkan instance, as long as the queue uses the same underlying device group or physical device, and the same driver version as the resource's `VkDevice`, as indicated by `VkPhysicalDeviceIDProperties::deviceUUID` and `VkPhysicalDeviceIDProperties::driverUUID`.

```c
#define VK_QUEUE_FAMILY_EXTERNAL         (~1U)
```

or the equivalent

```c
#define VK_QUEUE_FAMILY_EXTERNAL_KHR     VK_QUEUE_FAMILY_EXTERNAL
```

If memory dependencies are correctly expressed between uses of such a resource between two
queues in different families, but no ownership transfer is defined, the contents of that resource are undefined for any read accesses performed by the second queue family.

**Note**

If an application does not need the contents of a resource to remain valid when transferring from one queue family to another, then the ownership transfer should be skipped.

A queue family ownership transfer consists of two distinct parts:

1. Release exclusive ownership from the source queue family
2. Acquire exclusive ownership for the destination queue family

An application **must** ensure that these operations occur in the correct order by defining an execution dependency between them, e.g. using a semaphore.

A *release operation* is used to release exclusive ownership of a range of a buffer or image subresource range. A release operation is defined by executing a buffer memory barrier (for a buffer range) or an image memory barrier (for an image subresource range) using a pipeline barrier command, on a queue from the source queue family. The srcQueueFamilyIndex parameter of the barrier must be set to the source queue family index, and the dstQueueFamilyIndex parameter to the destination queue family index. dstAccessMask is ignored for such a barrier, such that no visibility operation is executed - the value of this mask does not affect the validity of the barrier. The release operation happens-after the availability operation, and happens-before operations specified in the second synchronization scope of the calling command.

An *acquire operation* is used to acquire exclusive ownership of a range of a buffer or image subresource range. An acquire operation is defined by executing a buffer memory barrier (for a buffer range) or an image memory barrier (for an image subresource range) using a pipeline barrier command, on a queue from the destination queue family. The buffer range or image subresource range specified in an acquire operation must match exactly that of a previous release operation. The srcQueueFamilyIndex parameter of the barrier must be set to the source queue family index, and the dstQueueFamilyIndex parameter to the destination queue family index. srcAccessMask is ignored for such a barrier, such that no availability operation is executed - the value of this mask does not affect the validity of the barrier. The acquire operation happens-after operations in the first synchronization scope of the calling command, and happens-before the visibility operation.

**Note**

Whilst it is not invalid to provide destination or source access masks for memory barriers used for release or acquire operations, respectively, they have no practical effect. Access after a release operation has undefined results, and so visibility for those accesses has no practical effect. Similarly, write access before an acquire operation will produce undefined results for future access, so availability of those writes has no practical use. In an earlier version of the specification, these were required to match on both sides - but this was subsequently relaxed. These masks should be set to 0.

If the transfer is via an image memory barrier, and an image layout transition is desired, then the
values of oldLayout and newLayout in the release operation’s memory barrier must be equal to values of oldLayout and newLayout in the acquire operation’s memory barrier. Although the image layout transition is submitted twice, it will only be executed once. A layout transition specified in this way happens-after the release operation and happens-before the acquire operation.

If the values of srcQueueFamilyIndex and dstQueueFamilyIndex are equal, no ownership transfer is performed, and the barrier operates as if they were both set to VK_QUEUE_FAMILY_IGNORED.

Queue family ownership transfers may perform read and write accesses on all memory bound to the image subresource or buffer range, so applications must ensure that all memory writes have been made available before a queue family ownership transfer is executed. Available memory is automatically made visible to queue family release and acquire operations, and writes performed by those operations are automatically made available.

Once a queue family has acquired ownership of a buffer range or image subresource range of a VK_SHARING_MODE_EXCLUSIVE resource, its contents are undefined to other queue families unless ownership is transferred. The contents of any portion of another resource which aliases memory that is bound to the transferred buffer or image subresource range are undefined after a release or acquire operation.

Note
Because events cannot be used directly for inter-queue synchronization, and because vkCmdSetEvent does not have the queue family index or memory barrier parameters needed by a release operation, the release and acquire operations of a queue family ownership transfer can only be performed using vkCmdPipelineBarrier.

7.8. Wait Idle Operations

To wait on the host for the completion of outstanding queue operations for a given queue, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkQueueWaitIdle(VkQueue queue);
```

• queue is the queue on which to wait.

vkQueueWaitIdle is equivalent to having submitted a valid fence to every previously executed queue submission command that accepts a fence, then waiting for all of those fences to signal using vkWaitForFences with an infinite timeout and waitAll set to VK_TRUE.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

• VUID-vkQueueWaitIdle-queue-parameter
  queue must be a valid VkQueue handle
Host Synchronization

- Host access to queue must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Return Codes

Success
- VK_SUCCESS

Failure
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST

To wait on the host for the completion of outstanding queue operations for all queues on a given logical device, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkDeviceWaitIdle(
    VkDevice device);
```

- `device` is the logical device to idle.

`vkDeviceWaitIdle` is equivalent to calling `vkQueueWaitIdle` for all queues owned by `device`.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkDeviceWaitIdle-device-parameter
  `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle

Host Synchronization

- Host access to all `VkQueue` objects created from `device` must be externally synchronized
### Return Codes

**Success**
- VK_SUCCESS

**Failure**
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST

### 7.9. Host Write Ordering Guarantees

When batches of command buffers are submitted to a queue via a queue submission command, it defines a memory dependency with prior host operations, and execution of command buffers submitted to the queue.

The first synchronization scope is defined by the host execution model, but includes execution of `vkQueueSubmit` on the host and anything that happened-before it.

The second synchronization scope includes all commands submitted in the same queue submission, and all commands that occur later in submission order.

The first access scope includes all host writes to mappable device memory that are available to the host memory domain.

The second access scope includes all memory access performed by the device.

### 7.10. Synchronization and Multiple Physical Devices

If a logical device includes more than one physical device, then fences, semaphores, and events all still have a single instance of the signaled state.

A fence becomes signaled when all physical devices complete the necessary queue operations.

Semaphore wait and signal operations all include a device index that is the sole physical device that performs the operation. These indices are provided in the `VkDeviceGroupSubmitInfo` and `VkDeviceGroupBindSparseInfo` structures. Semaphores are not exclusively owned by any physical device. For example, a semaphore can be signaled by one physical device and then waited on by a different physical device.

An event can only be waited on by the same physical device that signaled it (or the host).
A *render pass* represents a collection of attachments, subpasses, and dependencies between the subpasses, and describes how the attachments are used over the course of the subpasses. The use of a render pass in a command buffer is a *render pass instance*.

Render passes are represented by `VkRenderPass` handles:

```
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VK_DEFINE_NON_DISPATCHABLE_HANDLE(VkRenderPass)
```

An *attachment description* describes the properties of an attachment including its format, sample count, and how its contents are treated at the beginning and end of each render pass instance.

A *subpass* represents a phase of rendering that reads and writes a subset of the attachments in a render pass. Rendering commands are recorded into a particular subpass of a render pass instance.

A *subpass description* describes the subset of attachments that is involved in the execution of a subpass. Each subpass can read from some attachments as *input attachments*, write to some as *color attachments* or *depth/stencil attachments*, and perform *multisample resolve operations* to *resolve attachments*. A subpass description can also include a set of *preserve attachments*, which are attachments that are not read or written by the subpass but whose contents must be preserved throughout the subpass.

A subpass uses an attachment if the attachment is a color, depth/stencil, resolve, depth/stencil resolve, fragment shading rate, or input attachment for that subpass (as determined by the `pColorAttachments`, `pDepthStencilAttachment`, `pResolveAttachments`, `VkSubpassDescriptionDepthStencilResolve::pDepthStencilResolveAttachment`, `VkFragmentShadingRateAttachmentInfoKHR::pFragmentShadingRateAttachment->attachment`, and `pInputAttachments` members of `VkSubpassDescription`, respectively). A subpass does not use an attachment if that attachment is preserved by the subpass. The *first use of an attachment* is in the lowest numbered subpass that uses that attachment. Similarly, the *last use of an attachment* is in the highest numbered subpass that uses that attachment.

The subpasses in a render pass all render to the same dimensions, and fragments for pixel (x,y,layer) in one subpass can only read attachment contents written by previous subpasses at that same (x,y,layer) location. For multi-pixel fragments, the pixel read from an input attachment is selected from the pixels covered by that fragment in an implementation-dependent manner. However, this selection must be made consistently for any fragment with the same shading rate for the lifetime of the `VkDevice`. 
By describing a complete set of subpasses in advance, render passes provide the implementation an opportunity to optimize the storage and transfer of attachment data between subpasses.

In practice, this means that subpasses with a simple framebuffer-space dependency may be merged into a single tiled rendering pass, keeping the attachment data on-chip for the duration of a render pass instance. However, it is also quite common for a render pass to only contain a single subpass.

Subpass dependencies describe execution and memory dependencies between subpasses.

A subpass dependency chain is a sequence of subpass dependencies in a render pass, where the source subpass of each subpass dependency (after the first) equals the destination subpass of the previous dependency.

Execution of subpasses may overlap or execute out of order with regards to other subpasses, unless otherwise enforced by an execution dependency. Each subpass only respects submission order for commands recorded in the same subpass, and the vkCmdBeginRenderPass and vkCmdEndRenderPass commands that delimit the render pass - commands within other subpasses are not included. This affects most other implicit ordering guarantees.

A render pass describes the structure of subpasses and attachments independent of any specific image views for the attachments. The specific image views that will be used for the attachments, and their dimensions, are specified in VkFramebuffer objects. Framebuffers are created with respect to a specific render pass that the framebuffer is compatible with (see Render Pass Compatibility). Collectively, a render pass and a framebuffer define the complete render target state for one or more subpasses as well as the algorithmic dependencies between the subpasses.

The various pipeline stages of the drawing commands for a given subpass may execute concurrently and/or out of order, both within and across drawing commands, whilst still respecting pipeline order. However for a given (x,y,layer,sample) sample location, certain per-sample operations are performed in rasterization order.

VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED is a constant indicating that a renderpass attachment is not used.

```c
#define VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED        (~0U)
```

### 8.1. Render Pass Creation

To create a render pass, call:
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0

VkResult vkCreateRenderPass(
    VkDevice device, // device is the logical device that creates the render pass.
    const VkRenderPassCreateInfo* pCreateInfo, // pCreateInfo is a pointer to a VkRenderPassCreateInfo structure describing the parameters of the render pass.
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator, // pAllocator controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
    VkRenderPass* pRenderPass) // pRenderPass is a pointer to a VkRenderPass handle in which the resulting render pass object is returned.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCreateRenderPass-device-parameter
  device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- VUID-vkCreateRenderPass-pCreateInfo-parameter
  pCreateInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid VkRenderPassCreateInfo structure

- VUID-vkCreateRenderPass-pAllocator-parameter
  If pAllocator is not NULL, pAllocator must be a valid pointer to a valid VkAllocationCallbacks structure

- VUID-vkCreateRenderPass-pRenderPass-parameter
  pRenderPass must be a valid pointer to a VkRenderPass handle

Return Codes

Success

- VK_SUCCESS

Failure

- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY

The VkRenderPassCreateInfo structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkRenderPassCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkRenderPassCreateFlags flags;
    uint32_t attachmentCount;
    const VkAttachmentDescription* pAttachments;
    uint32_t subpassCount;
    const VkSubpassDescription* pSubpasses;
    uint32_t dependencyCount;
    const VkSubpassDependency* pDependencies;
} VkRenderPassCreateInfo;

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **flags** is reserved for future use.
- **attachmentCount** is the number of attachments used by this render pass.
- **pAttachments** is a pointer to an array of attachmentCount VkAttachmentDescription structures describing the attachments used by the render pass.
- **subpassCount** is the number of subpasses to create.
- **pSubpasses** is a pointer to an array of subpassCount VkSubpassDescription structures describing each subpass.
- **dependencyCount** is the number of memory dependencies between pairs of subpasses.
- **pDependencies** is a pointer to an array of dependencyCount VkSubpassDependency structures describing dependencies between pairs of subpasses.

**Note**
Care should be taken to avoid a data race here; if any subpasses access attachments with overlapping memory locations, and one of those accesses is a write, a subpass dependency needs to be included between them.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo-attachment-00834**
  If the attachment member of any element of pInputAttachments, pColorAttachments, pResolveAttachments or pDepthStencilAttachment, or any element of pPreserveAttachments in any element of pSubpasses is not VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED, it must be less than attachmentCount.

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo-pAttachments-00836**
  For any member of pAttachments with a loadOp equal to VK_ATTACHMENT_LOAD_OP_CLEAR, the first use of that attachment must not specify a layout equal to VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHADER_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL.

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo-pAttachments-02511**
  For any member of pAttachments with a stencilLoadOp equal to VK_ATTACHMENT_LOAD_OP_CLEAR, the first use of that attachment must not specify a layout equal to VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHADER_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL.

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo-pAttachments-01566**
  For any member of pAttachments with a loadOp equal to VK_ATTACHMENT_LOAD_OP_CLEAR, the first use of that attachment must not specify a layout equal to VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL.

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo-pAttachments-01567**
  For any member of pAttachments with a stencilLoadOp equal to VK_ATTACHMENT_LOAD_OP_CLEAR, the first use of that attachment must not specify a layout equal to VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL.

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo-pNext-01926**
  If the pNext chain includes a VkRenderPassInputAttachmentAspectCreateInfo structure, the subpass member of each element of its pAspectReferences member must be less than subpassCount.

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo-pNext-01927**
  If the pNext chain includes a VkRenderPassInputAttachmentAspectCreateInfo structure, the inputAttachmentIndex member of each element of its pAspectReferences member must be less than the value of inputAttachmentCount in the element of pSubpasses identified by its subpass member.

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo-pNext-01963**
  If the pNext chain includes a VkRenderPassInputAttachmentAspectCreateInfo structure, for any element of the pInputAttachments member of any element of pSubpasses where the attachment member is not VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED, the aspectMask member of the corresponding element of VkRenderPassInputAttachmentAspectCreateInfo::pAspectReferences must only include aspects that are present in images of the format specified by the element of pAttachments at attachment.

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo-pNext-01928**
  If the pNext chain includes a VkRenderPassMultiviewCreateInfo structure, and its subpassCount member is not zero, that member must be equal to the value of subpassCount.

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo-pNext-01929**
If the `pNext` chain includes a `VkRenderPassMultiviewCreateInfo` structure, if its `dependencyCount` member is not zero, it **must** be equal to `dependencyCount`.

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo-pNext-01930**
  If the `pNext` chain includes a `VkRenderPassMultiviewCreateInfo` structure, for each non-zero element of `pViewOffsets`, the `srcSubpass` and `dstSubpass` members of `pDependencies` at the same index **must** not be equal.

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo-pNext-02512**
  If the `pNext` chain includes a `VkRenderPassMultiviewCreateInfo` structure, for each non-zero element of `pViewOffsets`, the `srcSubpass` and `dstSubpass` members of `pDependencies` at the same index **must** be equal.

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo-pNext-02513**
  If the `pNext` chain includes a `VkRenderPassMultiviewCreateInfo` structure, elements of its `pViewMasks` member **must** either all be 0, or all not be 0.

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo-pNext-02514**
  If the `pNext` chain includes a `VkRenderPassMultiviewCreateInfo` structure, and each element of its `pViewMasks` member is 0, the `dependencyFlags` member of each element of `pDependencies` **must** not include `VK_DEPENDENCY_VIEW_LOCAL_BIT`.

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo-pNext-02515**
  If the `pNext` chain includes a `VkRenderPassMultiviewCreateInfo` structure, and each element of its `pViewMasks` member is 0, `correlatedViewMaskCount` **must** be 0.

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo-pDependencies-00837**
  For any element of `pDependencies`, if the `srcSubpass` is not `VK_SUBPASS_EXTERNAL`, all stage flags included in the `srcStageMask` member of that dependency **must** be a pipeline stage supported by the `pipeline` identified by the `pipelineBindPoint` member of the source subpass.

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo-pDependencies-00838**
  For any element of `pDependencies`, if the `dstSubpass` is not `VK_SUBPASS_EXTERNAL`, all stage flags included in the `dstStageMask` member of that dependency **must** be a pipeline stage supported by the `pipeline` identified by the `pipelineBindPoint` member of the destination subpass.

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo-srcSubpass-02517**
  The `srcSubpass` member of each element of `pDependencies` **must** be less than `subpassCount`.

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo-dstSubpass-02518**
  The `dstSubpass` member of each element of `pDependencies` **must** be less than `subpassCount`.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo-sType-sType**
  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RENDER_PASS_CREATE_INFO`

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo-pNext-pNext**
  
  Each `pNext` member of any structure (including this one) in the `pNext` chain must be either `NULL` or a pointer to a valid instance of `VkRenderPassInputAttachmentAspectCreateInfo` or `VkRenderPassMultiviewCreateInfo`

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo-sType-unique**
  
  The `sType` value of each struct in the `pNext` chain must be unique

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo-flags-zerobitmask**

  `flags` must be `0`

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo-pAttachments-parameter**

  If `attachmentCount` is not `0`, `pAttachments` must be a valid pointer to an array of `attachmentCount` valid `VkAttachmentDescription` structures

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo-pSubpasses-parameter**

  `pSubpasses` must be a valid pointer to an array of `subpassCount` valid `VkSubpassDescription` structures

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo-pDependencies-parameter**

  If `dependencyCount` is not `0`, `pDependencies` must be a valid pointer to an array of `dependencyCount` valid `VkSubpassDependency` structures

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo-subpassCount-arraylength**

  `subpassCount` must be greater than `0`

---

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkRenderPassCreateFlags;
```

`VkRenderPassCreateFlags` is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more `VkRenderPassCreateFlagBits`.

If the `VkRenderPassCreateInfo::pNext` chain includes a `VkRenderPassMultiviewCreateInfo` structure, then that structure includes an array of view masks, view offsets, and correlation masks for the render pass.

The `VkRenderPassMultiviewCreateInfo` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkRenderPassMultiviewCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    uint32_t subpassCount;
    const uint32_t* pViewMasks;
    uint32_t dependencyCount;
    const int32_t* pViewOffsets;
    uint32_t correlationMaskCount;
    const uint32_t* pCorrelationMasks;
} VkRenderPassMultiviewCreateInfo;

or the equivalent

// Provided by VK_KHR_multiview
typedef VkRenderPassMultiviewCreateInfo VkRenderPassMultiviewCreateInfoKHR;

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **subpassCount** is zero or the number of subpasses in the render pass.
- **pViewMasks** is a pointer to an array of **subpassCount** view masks, where each mask is a bitfield of view indices describing which views rendering is broadcast to in each subpass, when multiview is enabled. If **subpassCount** is zero, each view mask is treated as zero.
- **dependencyCount** is zero or the number of dependencies in the render pass.
- **pViewOffsets** is a pointer to an array of **dependencyCount** view offsets, one for each dependency. If **dependencyCount** is zero, each dependency's view offset is treated as zero. Each view offset controls which views in the source subpass the views in the destination subpass depend on.
- **correlationMaskCount** is zero or the number of correlation masks.
- **pCorrelationMasks** is a pointer to an array of **correlationMaskCount** view masks indicating sets of views that may be more efficient to render concurrently.

When a subpass uses a non-zero view mask, **multiview** functionality is considered to be enabled. Multiview is all-or-nothing for a render pass - that is, either all subpasses must have a non-zero view mask (though some subpasses may have only one view) or all must be zero. Multiview causes all drawing and clear commands in the subpass to behave as if they were broadcast to each view, where a view is represented by one layer of the framebuffer attachments. All draws and clears are broadcast to each view index whose bit is set in the view mask. The view index is provided in the **ViewIndex** shader input variable, and color, depth/stencil, and input attachments all read/write the layer of the framebuffer corresponding to the view index.

If the view mask is zero for all subpasses, multiview is considered to be disabled and all drawing commands execute normally, without this additional broadcasting.

Some implementations may not support multiview in conjunction with geometry shaders or tessellation shaders.
When multiview is enabled, the `VK_DEPENDENCY_VIEW_LOCAL_BIT` bit in a dependency can be used to express a view-local dependency, meaning that each view in the destination subpass depends on a single view in the source subpass. Unlike pipeline barriers, a subpass dependency can potentially have a different view mask in the source subpass and the destination subpass. If the dependency is view-local, then each view (dstView) in the destination subpass depends on the view dstView + pViewOffsets[dependency] in the source subpass. If there is not such a view in the source subpass, then this dependency does not affect that view in the destination subpass. If the dependency is not view-local, then all views in the destination subpass depend on all views in the source subpass, and the view offset is ignored. A non-zero view offset is not allowed in a self-dependency.

The elements of `pCorrelation Masks` are a set of masks of views indicating that views in the same mask may exhibit spatial coherency between the views, making it more efficient to render them concurrently. Correlation masks must not have a functional effect on the results of the multiview rendering.

When multiview is enabled, at the beginning of each subpass all non-render pass state is undefined. In particular, each time `vkCmdBeginRenderPass` or `vkCmdNextSubpass` is called the graphics pipeline must be bound, any relevant descriptor sets or vertex/index buffers must be bound, and any relevant dynamic state or push constants must be set before they are used.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkRenderPassMultiviewCreateInfo-pCorrelationMasks-00841**
  
  Each view index must not be set in more than one element of `pCorrelationMasks`

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkRenderPassMultiviewCreateInfo-sType-sType**
  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RENDER_PASS_MULTIVIEW_CREATE_INFO`

- **VUID-VkRenderPassMultiviewCreateInfo-pViewMasks-parameter**
  
  If `subpassCount` is not 0, `pViewMasks` must be a valid pointer to an array of `subpassCount` `uint32_t` values.

- **VUID-VkRenderPassMultiviewCreateInfo-pViewOffsets-parameter**
  
  If `dependencyCount` is not 0, `pViewOffsets` must be a valid pointer to an array of `dependencyCount` `int32_t` values.

- **VUID-VkRenderPassMultiviewCreateInfo-pCorrelationMasks-parameter**
  
  If `correlationMaskCount` is not 0, `pCorrelationMasks` must be a valid pointer to an array of `correlationMaskCount` `uint32_t` values.

The `VkAttachmentDescription` structure is defined as:
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0

typedef struct VkAttachmentDescription {
    VkAttachmentDescriptionFlags flags;
    VkFormat format;
    VkSampleCountFlagBits samples;
    VkAttachmentLoadOp loadOp;
    VkAttachmentStoreOp storeOp;
    VkAttachmentLoadOp stencilLoadOp;
    VkAttachmentStoreOp stencilStoreOp;
    VkImageLayout initialLayout;
    VkImageLayout finalLayout;
} VkAttachmentDescription;

- **flags** is a bitmask of VkAttachmentDescriptionFlagBits specifying additional properties of the attachment.
- **format** is a VkFormat value specifying the format of the image view that will be used for the attachment.
- **samples** is a VkSampleCountFlagBits value specifying the number of samples of the image.
- **loadOp** is a VkAttachmentLoadOp value specifying how the contents of color and depth components of the attachment are treated at the beginning of the subpass where it is first used.
- **storeOp** is a VkAttachmentStoreOp value specifying how the contents of color and depth components of the attachment are treated at the end of the subpass where it is last used.
- **stencilLoadOp** is a VkAttachmentLoadOp value specifying how the contents of stencil components of the attachment are treated at the beginning of the subpass where it is first used.
- **stencilStoreOp** is a VkAttachmentStoreOp value specifying how the contents of stencil components of the attachment are treated at the end of the last subpass where it is used.
- **initialLayout** is the layout the attachment image subresource will be in when a render pass instance begins.
- **finalLayout** is the layout the attachment image subresource will be transitioned to when a render pass instance ends.

If the attachment uses a color format, then loadOp and storeOp are used, and stencilLoadOp and stencilStoreOp are ignored. If the format has depth and/or stencil components, loadOp and storeOp apply only to the depth data, while stencilLoadOp and stencilStoreOp define how the stencil data is handled. loadOp and stencilLoadOp define the load operations that execute as part of the first subpass that uses the attachment. storeOp and stencilStoreOp define the store operations that execute as part of the last subpass that uses the attachment.

The load operation for each sample in an attachment happens-before any recorded command which accesses the sample in the first subpass where the attachment is used. Load operations for attachments with a depth/stencil format execute in the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_EARLY_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT pipeline stage. Load operations for attachments with a color format execute in the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT pipeline stage.

The store operation for each sample in an attachment happens-after any recorded command which
accesses the sample in the last subpass where the attachment is used. Store operations for attachments with a depth/stencil format execute in the `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_LATE_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT` pipeline stage. Store operations for attachments with a color format execute in the `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT` pipeline stage.

If an attachment is not used by any subpass, then `loadOp`, `storeOp`, `stencilStoreOp`, and `stencilLoadOp` are ignored, and the attachment's memory contents will not be modified by execution of a render pass instance.

The load and store operations apply on the first and last use of each view in the render pass, respectively. If a view index of an attachment is not included in the view mask in any subpass that uses it, then the load and store operations are ignored, and the attachment's memory contents will not be modified by execution of a render pass instance.

During a render pass instance, input/color attachments with color formats that have a component size of 8, 16, or 32 bits **must** be represented in the attachment's format throughout the instance. Attachments with other floating- or fixed-point color formats, or with depth components **may** be represented in a format with a precision higher than the attachment format, but **must** be represented with the same range. When such a component is loaded via the `loadOp`, it will be converted into an implementation-dependent format used by the render pass. Such components **must** be converted from the render pass format, to the format of the attachment, before they are resolved or stored at the end of a render pass instance via `storeOp`. Conversions occur as described in *Numeric Representation and Computation* and *Fixed-Point Data Conversions*.

If flags includes `VK_ATTACHMENT_DESCRIPTION_MAY_ALIAS_BIT`, then the attachment is treated as if it shares physical memory with another attachment in the same render pass. This information limits the ability of the implementation to reorder certain operations (like layout transitions and the `loadOp`) such that it is not improperly reordered against other uses of the same physical memory via a different attachment. This is described in more detail below.

If a render pass uses multiple attachments that alias the same device memory, those attachments **must** each include the `VK_ATTACHMENT_DESCRIPTION_MAY_ALIAS_BIT` bit in their attachment description flags. Attachments aliasing the same memory occurs in multiple ways:

- Multiple attachments being assigned the same image view as part of framebuffer creation.
- Attachments using distinct image views that correspond to the same image subresource of an image.
- Attachments using views of distinct image subresources which are bound to overlapping memory ranges.

**Note**

Render passes **must** include subpass dependencies (either directly or via a subpass dependency chain) between any two subpasses that operate on the same attachment or aliasing attachments and those subpass dependencies **must** include execution and memory dependencies separating uses of the aliases, if at least one of those subpasses writes to one of the aliases. These dependencies **must** not include the `VK_DEPENDENCY_BY_REGION_BIT` if the aliases are views of distinct image subresources which overlap in memory.
Multiple attachments that alias the same memory must not be used in a single subpass. A given attachment index must not be used multiple times in a single subpass, with one exception: two subpass attachments can use the same attachment index if at least one use is as an input attachment and neither use is as a resolve or preserve attachment. In other words, the same view can be used simultaneously as an input and color or depth/stencil attachment, but must not be used as multiple color or depth/stencil attachments nor as resolve or preserve attachments. The precise set of valid scenarios is described in more detail below.

If a set of attachments alias each other, then all except the first to be used in the render pass must use an initialLayout of VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_UNDEFINED, since the earlier uses of the other aliases make their contents undefined. Once an alias has been used and a different alias has been used after it, the first alias must not be used in any later subpasses. However, an application can assign the same image view to multiple aliasing attachment indices, which allows that image view to be used multiple times even if other aliases are used in between.

Note

Once an attachment needs the VK_ATTACHMENT_DESCRIPTION_MAY_ALIAS_BIT bit, there should be no additional cost of introducing additional aliases, and using these additional aliases may allow more efficient clearing of the attachments on multiple uses via VK_ATTACHMENT_LOAD_OP_CLEAR.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkAttachmentDescription-finalLayout-00843**
  finalLayout must not be VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_UNDEFINED or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_PREINITIALIZED

- **VUID-VkAttachmentDescription-format-03280**
  If format is a color format, initialLayout must not be
  - VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL
  - VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL
  - VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL
  - VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL

- **VUID-VkAttachmentDescription-format-03281**
  If format is a depth/stencil format, initialLayout must not be
  - VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL

- **VUID-VkAttachmentDescription-format-03282**
  If format is a color format, finalLayout must not be
  - VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL
  - VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL
  - VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL
  - VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL

- **VUID-VkAttachmentDescription-format-03283**
  If format is a depth/stencil format, finalLayout must not be
  - VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL

- **VUID-VkAttachmentDescription-separateDepthStencilLayouts-03284**
  If the separateDepthStencilLayouts feature is not enabled, initialLayout must not be
  - VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL
  - VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL
  - VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL
  - VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL

- **VUID-VkAttachmentDescription-separateDepthStencilLayouts-03285**
  If the separateDepthStencilLayouts feature is not enabled, finalLayout must not be
  - VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL
  - VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL
  - VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL
  - VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL

- **VUID-VkAttachmentDescription-format-03286**
  If format is a color format, initialLayout must not be
  - VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL
  - VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL
  - VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL
  - VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL

- **VUID-VkAttachmentDescription-format-03287**
  If format is a color format, finalLayout must not be
  - VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL
  - VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL
  - VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL
  - VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL

- **VUID-VkAttachmentDescription-format-03288**
  If format is a depth/stencil format which includes both depth and stencil aspects, initialLayout must not be
  - VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL
  - VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL
  - VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL
If `format` is a depth/stencil format which includes both depth and stencil aspects, `finalLayout` must not be `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL`, or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL`.

If `format` is a depth/stencil format which includes only the depth aspect, `initialLayout` must not be `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL` or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL`.

If `format` is a depth/stencil format which includes only the stencil aspect, `finalLayout` must not be `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL` or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL`.

If `format` is a depth/stencil format which includes only the stencil aspect, `initialLayout` must not be `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL` or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL`.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkAttachmentDescription-flags-parameter**
  
  `flags` **must** be a valid combination of `VkAttachmentDescriptionFlagBits` values

- **VUID-VkAttachmentDescription-format-parameter**
  
  `format` **must** be a valid `VkFormat` value

- **VUID-VkAttachmentDescription-samples-parameter**
  
  `samples` **must** be a valid `VkSampleCountFlagBits` value

- **VUID-VkAttachmentDescription-loadOp-parameter**
  
  `loadOp` **must** be a valid `VkAttachmentLoadOp` value

- **VUID-VkAttachmentDescription-storeOp-parameter**
  
  `storeOp` **must** be a valid `VkAttachmentStoreOp` value

- **VUID-VkAttachmentDescription-stencilLoadOp-parameter**
  
  `stencilLoadOp` **must** be a valid `VkAttachmentLoadOp` value

- **VUID-VkAttachmentDescription-stencilStoreOp-parameter**
  
  `stencilStoreOp` **must** be a valid `VkAttachmentStoreOp` value

- **VUID-VkAttachmentDescription-initialLayout-parameter**
  
  `initialLayout` **must** be a valid `VkImageLayout` value

- **VUID-VkAttachmentDescription-finalLayout-parameter**
  
  `finalLayout` **must** be a valid `VkImageLayout` value

Bits which **can** be set in `VkAttachmentDescription::flags` describing additional properties of the attachment are:

```cpp
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkAttachmentDescriptionFlagBits {
    VK_ATTACHMENT_DESCRIPTION_MAY_ALIAS_BIT = 0x00000001,
} VkAttachmentDescriptionFlagBits;
```

- **VK_ATTACHMENT_DESCRIPTION_MAY_ALIAS_BIT** specifies that the attachment aliases the same device memory as other attachments.

```cpp
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkAttachmentDescriptionFlags;
```

`VkAttachmentDescriptionFlags` is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more `VkAttachmentDescriptionFlagBits`.

Possible values of `VkAttachmentDescription::loadOp` and `stencilLoadOp`, specifying how the contents of the attachment are treated, are:
typedef enum VkAttachmentLoadOp {
    VK_ATTACHMENT_LOAD_OP_LOAD = 0,
    VK_ATTACHMENT_LOAD_OP_CLEAR = 1,
    VK_ATTACHMENT_LOAD_OP_DONT_CARE = 2,
} VkAttachmentLoadOp;

- **VK_ATTACHMENT_LOAD_OP_LOAD** specifies that the previous contents of the image within the render area will be preserved. For attachments with a depth/stencil format, this uses the access type `VK_ACCESS_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT`. For attachments with a color format, this uses the access type `VK_ACCESS_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT`.

- **VK_ATTACHMENT_LOAD_OP_CLEAR** specifies that the contents within the render area will be cleared to a uniform value, which is specified when a render pass instance is begun. For attachments with a depth/stencil format, this uses the access type `VK_ACCESS_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_WRITE_BIT`. For attachments with a color format, this uses the access type `VK_ACCESS_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_WRITE_BIT`.

- **VK_ATTACHMENT_LOAD_OP_DONT_CARE** specifies that the previous contents within the area need not be preserved; the contents of the attachment will be undefined inside the render area. For attachments with a depth/stencil format, this uses the access type `VK_ACCESS_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_WRITE_BIT`. For attachments with a color format, this uses the access type `VK_ACCESS_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_WRITE_BIT`.

Possible values of `VkAttachmentDescription::storeOp` and `stencilStoreOp`, specifying how the contents of the attachment are treated, are:

typedef enum VkAttachmentStoreOp {
    VK_ATTACHMENT_STORE_OP_STORE = 0,
    VK_ATTACHMENT_STORE_OP_DONT_CARE = 1,
} VkAttachmentStoreOp;

- **VK_ATTACHMENT_STORE_OP_STORE** specifies the contents generated during the render pass and within the render area are written to memory. For attachments with a depth/stencil format, this uses the access type `VK_ACCESS_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_WRITE_BIT`. For attachments with a color format, this uses the access type `VK_ACCESS_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_WRITE_BIT`.

- **VK_ATTACHMENT_STORE_OP_DONT_CARE** specifies the contents within the render area are not needed after rendering, and may be discarded; the contents of the attachment will be undefined inside the render area. For attachments with a depth/stencil format, this uses the access type `VK_ACCESS_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_WRITE_BIT`. For attachments with a color format, this uses the access type `VK_ACCESS_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_WRITE_BIT`.

Note

`VK_ATTACHMENT_STORE_OP_DONT_CARE` can cause contents generated during previous render passes to be discarded before reaching memory, even if no write to the attachment occurs during the current render pass.
The *VkRenderPassInputAttachmentAspectCreateInfo* structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkRenderPassInputAttachmentAspectCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    uint32_t aspectReferenceCount;
    const VkInputAttachmentAspectReference* pAspectReferences;
} VkRenderPassInputAttachmentAspectCreateInfo;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_maintenance2
typedef VkRenderPassInputAttachmentAspectCreateInfo
    VkRenderPassInputAttachmentAspectCreateInfoKHR;
```

- *sType* is the type of this structure.
- *pNext* is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- *aspectReferenceCount* is the number of elements in the *pAspectReferences* array.
- *pAspectReferences* is a pointer to an array of *aspectReferenceCount* *VkInputAttachmentAspectReference* structures containing a mask describing which aspect(s) can be accessed for a given input attachment within a given subpass.

To specify which aspects of an input attachment can be read, add a *VkRenderPassInputAttachmentAspectCreateInfo* structure to the *pNext* chain of the *VkRenderPassCreateInfo* structure:

An application can access any aspect of an input attachment that does not have a specified aspect mask in the *pAspectReferences* array. Otherwise, an application must not access aspect(s) of an input attachment other than those in its specified aspect mask.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkRenderPassInputAttachmentAspectCreateInfo-sType-sType
  
  *sType* must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RENDER_PASS_INPUT_ATTACHMENT_ASPECT_CREATE_INFO`

- VUID-VkRenderPassInputAttachmentAspectCreateInfo-pAspectReferences-parameter
  
  *pAspectReferences* must be a valid pointer to an array of *aspectReferenceCount* valid *VkInputAttachmentAspectReference* structures

- VUID-VkRenderPassInputAttachmentAspectCreateInfo-aspectReferenceCount-arraylength
  
  *aspectReferenceCount* must be greater than `0`

The *VkInputAttachmentAspectReference* structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkInputAttachmentAspectReference {
    uint32_t subpass;
    uint32_t inputAttachmentIndex;
    VkImageAspectFlags aspectMask;
} VkInputAttachmentAspectReference;

or the equivalent

// Provided by VK_KHR_maintenance2
typedef VkInputAttachmentAspectReference VkInputAttachmentAspectReferenceKHR;

- subpass is an index into the pSubpasses array of the parent VkRenderPassCreateInfo structure.
- inputAttachmentIndex is an index into the pInputAttachments of the specified subpass.
- aspectMask is a mask of which aspect(s) can be accessed within the specified subpass.

This structure specifies an aspect mask for a specific input attachment of a specific subpass in the render pass.

subpass and inputAttachmentIndex index into the render pass as:

pCreateInfo->pSubpasses[subpass].pInputAttachments[inputAttachmentIndex]

Valid Usage

- VUID-VkInputAttachmentAspectReference-aspectMask-01964
  aspectMask must not include VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_METADATA_BIT

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkInputAttachmentAspectReference-aspectMask-parameter
  aspectMask must be a valid combination of VkImageAspectFlagBits values
- VUID-VkInputAttachmentAspectReference-aspectMask-requiredbitmask
  aspectMask must not be 0

The VkSubpassDescription structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkSubpassDescription {
    VkSubpassDescriptionFlags flags;
    VkPipelineBindPoint pipelineBindPoint;
    uint32_t inputAttachmentCount;
    const VkAttachmentReference* pInputAttachments;
    uint32_t colorAttachmentCount;
    const VkAttachmentReference* pColorAttachments;
    const VkAttachmentReference* pResolveAttachments;
    const VkAttachmentReference* pDepthStencilAttachment;
    uint32_t preserveAttachmentCount;
    const uint32_t* pPreserveAttachments;
} VkSubpassDescription;

• `flags` is a bitmask of `VkSubpassDescriptionFlagBits` specifying usage of the subpass.
• `pipelineBindPoint` is a `VkPipelineBindPoint` value specifying the pipeline type supported for this subpass.
• `inputAttachmentCount` is the number of input attachments.
• `pInputAttachments` is a pointer to an array of `VkAttachmentReference` structures defining the input attachments for this subpass and their layouts.
• `colorAttachmentCount` is the number of color attachments.
• `pColorAttachments` is a pointer to an array of `colorAttachmentCount` `VkAttachmentReference` structures defining the color attachments for this subpass and their layouts.
• `pResolveAttachments` is `NULL` or a pointer to an array of `colorAttachmentCount` `VkAttachmentReference` structures defining the resolve attachments for this subpass and their layouts.
• `pDepthStencilAttachment` is a pointer to a `VkAttachmentReference` structure specifying the depth/stencil attachment for this subpass and its layout.
• `preserveAttachmentCount` is the number of preserved attachments.
• `pPreserveAttachments` is a pointer to an array of `preserveAttachmentCount` render pass attachment indices identifying attachments that are not used by this subpass, but whose contents must be preserved throughout the subpass.

Each element of the `pInputAttachments` array corresponds to an input attachment index in a fragment shader, i.e. if a shader declares an image variable decorated with a `InputAttachmentIndex` value of `X`, then it uses the attachment provided in `pInputAttachments[X]`. Input attachments must also be bound to the pipeline in a descriptor set. If the `attachment` member of any element of `pInputAttachments` is `VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED`, the application must not read from the corresponding input attachment index. Fragment shaders can use subpass input variables to access the contents of an input attachment at the fragment's (x, y, layer) framebuffer coordinates.

Each element of the `pColorAttachments` array corresponds to an output location in the shader, i.e. if the shader declares an output variable decorated with a `Location` value of `X`, then it uses the attachment provided in `pColorAttachments[X]`. If the `attachment` member of any element of
If \texttt{pResolveAttachments} is not \texttt{NULL}, each of its elements corresponds to a color attachment (the element in \texttt{pColorAttachments} at the same index), and a multisample resolve operation is defined for each attachment. At the end of each subpass, multisample resolve operations read the subpass's color attachments, and resolve the samples for each pixel within the render area to the same pixel location in the corresponding resolve attachments, unless the resolve attachment index is \texttt{VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED}.

Similarly, if \texttt{VkSubpassDescriptionDepthStencilResolve::pDepthStencilResolveAttachment} is not \texttt{NULL} and does not have the value \texttt{VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED}, it corresponds to the depth/stencil attachment in \texttt{pDepthStencilAttachment}, and multisample resolve operations for depth and stencil are defined by \texttt{VkSubpassDescriptionDepthStencilResolve::depthResolveMode} and \texttt{VkSubpassDescriptionDepthStencilResolve::stencilResolveMode}, respectively. At the end of each subpass, multisample resolve operations read the subpass's depth/stencil attachment, and resolve the samples for each pixel to the same pixel location in the corresponding resolve attachment. If \texttt{VkSubpassDescriptionDepthStencilResolve::depthResolveMode} is \texttt{VK_RESOLVE_MODE_NONE}, then the depth component of the resolve attachment is not written to and its contents are preserved. Similarly, if \texttt{VkSubpassDescriptionDepthStencilResolve::stencilResolveMode} is \texttt{VK_RESOLVE_MODE_NONE}, then the stencil component of the resolve attachment is not written to and its contents are preserved. \texttt{VkSubpassDescriptionDepthStencilResolve::depthResolveMode} is ignored if the \texttt{VkFormat} of the \texttt{pDepthStencilResolveAttachment} does not have a depth component. Similarly, \texttt{VkSubpassDescriptionDepthStencilResolve::stencilResolveMode} is ignored if the \texttt{VkFormat} of the \texttt{pDepthStencilResolveAttachment} does not have a stencil component.

If \texttt{pDepthStencilAttachment} is \texttt{NULL}, or if its attachment index is \texttt{VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED}, it indicates that no depth/stencil attachment will be used in the subpass.

The contents of an attachment within the render area become undefined at the start of a subpass \texttt{S} if all of the following conditions are true:

- The attachment is used as a color, depth/stencil, or resolve attachment in any subpass in the render pass.
- There is a subpass \texttt{S}_1 that uses or preserves the attachment, and a subpass dependency from \texttt{S}_1 to \texttt{S}.
- The attachment is not used or preserved in subpass \texttt{S}.

Once the contents of an attachment become undefined in subpass \texttt{S}, they remain undefined for subpasses in subpass dependency chains starting with subpass \texttt{S} until they are written again. However, they remain valid for subpasses in other subpass dependency chains starting with subpass \texttt{S}_1 if those subpasses use or preserve the attachment.
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkSubpassDescription-pipelineBindPoint-00844
  
  pipelineBindPoint must be VK_PIPELINE_BIND_POINT_GRAPHICS

- VUID-VkSubpassDescription-colorAttachmentCount-00845
  
  colorAttachmentCount must be less than or equal to VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxColorAttachments

- VUID-VkSubpassDescription-loadOp-00846
  
  If the first use of an attachment in this render pass is as an input attachment, and the attachment is not also used as a color or depth/stencil attachment in the same subpass, then loadOp must not be VK_ATTACHMENT_LOAD_OP_CLEAR

- VUID-VkSubpassDescription-pResolveAttachments-00847
  
  If pResolveAttachments is not NULL, for each resolve attachment that is not VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED, the corresponding color attachment must not be VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED

- VUID-VkSubpassDescription-pResolveAttachments-00848
  
  If pResolveAttachments is not NULL, for each resolve attachment that is not VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED, the corresponding color attachment must not have a sample count of VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT

- VUID-VkSubpassDescription-pResolveAttachments-00849
  
  If pResolveAttachments is not NULL, each resolve attachment that is not VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED must have a sample count of VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT

- VUID-VkSubpassDescription-pResolveAttachments-00850
  
  If pResolveAttachments is not NULL, each resolve attachment that is not VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED must have the same VkFormat as its corresponding color attachment

- VUID-VkSubpassDescription-pColorAttachments-01417
  
  All attachments in pColorAttachments that are not VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED must have the same sample count

- VUID-VkSubpassDescription-pInputAttachments-02647
  
  All attachments in pInputAttachments that are not VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED must have image formats whose potential format features contain at least VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT or VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT

- VUID-VkSubpassDescription-pColorAttachments-02648
  
  All attachments in pColorAttachments that are not VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED must have image formats whose potential format features contain VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT

- VUID-VkSubpassDescription-pResolveAttachments-02649
  
  All attachments in pResolveAttachments that are not VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED must have image formats whose potential format features contain VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT

- VUID-VkSubpassDescription-pDepthStencilAttachment-02650
  
  If pDepthStencilAttachment is not NULL and the attachment is not VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED then it must have an image format whose potential format features contain...
If neither the [VK_AMD_mixed_attachment_samples] nor the [VK_NV_framebuffer_mixed_samples] extensions are enabled, and if pDepthStencilAttachment is not VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED and any attachments in pColorAttachments are not VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED, they must have the same sample count.

Each element of pPreserveAttachments must not be VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED.

Each element of pPreserveAttachments must not also be an element of any other member of the subpass description.

If any attachment is used by more than one VkAttachmentReference member, then each use must use the same layout.

Each attachment must follow the image layout requirements specified for its attachment type.

pDepthStencilAttachment and pColorAttachments must not contain references to the same attachment.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkSubpassDescription-flags-zerobitmask
  
  **flags must be 0**

- VUID-VkSubpassDescription-pipelineBindPoint-parameter
  
  **pipelineBindPoint must be a valid VkPipelineBindPoint value**

- VUID-VkSubpassDescription-pInputAttachments-parameter
  
  If `inputAttachmentCount` is not 0, `pInputAttachments` must be a valid pointer to an array of `inputAttachmentCount` valid `VkAttachmentReference` structures

- VUID-VkSubpassDescription-pColorAttachments-parameter
  
  If `colorAttachmentCount` is not 0, `pColorAttachments` must be a valid pointer to an array of `colorAttachmentCount` valid `VkAttachmentReference` structures

- VUID-VkSubpassDescription-pResolveAttachments-parameter
  
  If `colorAttachmentCount` is not 0, and `pResolveAttachments` is not NULL, `pResolveAttachments` must be a valid pointer to an array of `colorAttachmentCount` valid `VkAttachmentReference` structures

- VUID-VkSubpassDescription-pDepthStencilAttachment-parameter
  
  If `pDepthStencilAttachment` is not NULL, `pDepthStencilAttachment must be a valid pointer to a valid VkAttachmentReference structure`

- VUID-VkSubpassDescription-pPreserveAttachments-parameter
  
  If `preserveAttachmentCount` is not 0, `pPreserveAttachments` must be a valid pointer to an array of `preserveAttachmentCount uint32_t values`

Bits which **can** be set in `VkSubpassDescription::flags`, specifying usage of the subpass, are:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkSubpassDescriptionFlagBits {
} VkSubpassDescriptionFlagBits;
```

**Note**

All bits for this type are defined by extensions, and none of those extensions are enabled in this build of the specification.

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkSubpassDescriptionFlags;
```

`VkSubpassDescriptionFlags` is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more `VkSubpassDescriptionFlagBits`.

The `VkAttachmentReference` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkAttachmentReference {
    uint32_t attachment;
    VkImageLayout layout;
} VkAttachmentReference;

- **attachment** is either an integer value identifying an attachment at the corresponding index in VkRenderPassCreateInfo::pAttachments, or VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED to signify that this attachment is not used.

- **layout** is a VkImageLayout value specifying the layout the attachment uses during the subpass.

**Valid Usage**

- VUID-VkAttachmentReference-layout-00857

  If attachment is not VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED, layout must not be VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_UNDEFINED, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_PREINITIALIZED, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL, or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL.

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-VkAttachmentReference-layout-parameter

  layout must be a valid VkImageLayout value

**VK_SUBPASS_EXTERNAL** is a special subpass index value expanding synchronization scope outside a subpass. It is described in more detail by VkSubpassDependency.

#define VK_SUBPASS_EXTERNAL (~0U)

The VkSubpassDependency structure is defined as:

// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkSubpassDependency {
    uint32_t srcSubpass;
    uint32_t dstSubpass;
    VkPipelineStageFlags srcStageMask;
    VkPipelineStageFlags dstStageMask;
    VkAccessFlags srcAccessMask;
    VkAccessFlags dstAccessMask;
    VkDependencyFlags dependencyFlags;
} VkSubpassDependency;

- **srcSubpass** is the subpass index of the first subpass in the dependency, or VK_SUBPASS_EXTERNAL.
• **dstSubpass** is the subpass index of the second subpass in the dependency, or 
  VK_SUBPASS_EXTERNAL.

• **srcStageMask** is a bitmask of VkPipelineStageFlagBits specifying the source stage mask.

• **dstStageMask** is a bitmask of VkPipelineStageFlagBits specifying the destination stage mask.

• **srcAccessMask** is a bitmask of VkAccessFlagBits specifying a source access mask.

• **dstAccessMask** is a bitmask of VkAccessFlagBits specifying a destination access mask.

• **dependencyFlags** is a bitmask of VkDependencyFlagBits.

If **srcSubpass** is equal to **dstSubpass** then the VkSubpassDependency describes a subpass self-dependency, and only constrains the pipeline barriers allowed within a subpass instance. Otherwise, when a render pass instance which includes a subpass dependency is submitted to a queue, it defines a memory dependency between the subpasses identified by **srcSubpass** and **dstSubpass**.

If **srcSubpass** is equal to VK_SUBPASS_EXTERNAL, the first synchronization scope includes commands that occur earlier in submission order than the vkCmdBeginRenderPass used to begin the render pass instance. Otherwise, the first set of commands includes all commands submitted as part of the subpass instance identified by **srcSubpass** and any load, store or multisample resolve operations on attachments used in **srcSubpass**. In either case, the first synchronization scope is limited to operations on the pipeline stages determined by the source stage mask specified by **srcStageMask**.

If **dstSubpass** is equal to VK_SUBPASS_EXTERNAL, the second synchronization scope includes commands that occur later in submission order than the vkCmdEndRenderPass used to end the render pass instance. Otherwise, the second set of commands includes all commands submitted as part of the subpass instance identified by **dstSubpass** and any load, store or multisample resolve operations on attachments used in **dstSubpass**. In either case, the second synchronization scope is limited to operations on the pipeline stages determined by the destination stage mask specified by **dstStageMask**.

The first access scope is limited to accesses in the pipeline stages determined by the source stage mask specified by **srcStageMask**. It is also limited to access types in the source access mask specified by **srcAccessMask**.

The second access scope is limited to accesses in the pipeline stages determined by the destination stage mask specified by **dstStageMask**. It is also limited to access types in the destination access mask specified by **dstAccessMask**.

The availability and visibility operations defined by a subpass dependency affect the execution of image layout transitions within the render pass.
Note

For non-attachment resources, the memory dependency expressed by subpass dependency is nearly identical to that of a `VkMemoryBarrier` (with matching `srcAccessMask` and `dstAccessMask` parameters) submitted as a part of a `vkCmdPipelineBarrier` (with matching `srcStageMask` and `dstStageMask` parameters). The only difference being that its scopes are limited to the identified subpasses rather than potentially affecting everything before and after.

For attachments however, subpass dependencies work more like a `VkImageMemoryBarrier` defined similarly to the `VkMemoryBarrier` above, the queue family indices set to `VK_QUEUE_FAMILY_IGNORED`, and layouts as follows:

- The equivalent to `oldLayout` is the attachment's layout according to the subpass description for `srcSubpass`.
- The equivalent to `newLayout` is the attachment's layout according to the subpass description for `dstSubpass`. 
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkSubpassDependency-srcStageMask-00860**
  If the geometry shaders feature is not enabled, **srcStageMask must not contain** `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT`

- **VUID-VkSubpassDependency-dstStageMask-00861**
  If the geometry shaders feature is not enabled, **dstStageMask must not contain** `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT`

- **VUID-VkSubpassDependency-srcStageMask-00862**
  If the tessellation shaders feature is not enabled, **srcStageMask must not contain** `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT` or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT`

- **VUID-VkSubpassDependency-dstStageMask-00863**
  If the tessellation shaders feature is not enabled, **dstStageMask must not contain** `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT` or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT`

- **VUID-VkSubpassDependency-srcSubpass-00864**
  **srcSubpass must be less than or equal to dstSubpass**, unless one of them is `VK_SUBPASS_EXTERNAL`, to avoid cyclic dependencies and ensure a valid execution order

- **VUID-VkSubpassDependency-srcSubpass-00865**
  **srcSubpass and dstSubpass must not both be equal to VK_SUBPASS_EXTERNAL**

- **VUID-VkSubpassDependency-srcSubpass-00867**
  If **srcSubpass is equal to dstSubpass** and not all of the stages in **srcStageMask and dstStageMask are framebuffer-space stages**, the logically latest pipeline stage in **srcStageMask must be logically earlier than or equal to the logically earliest pipeline stage in dstStageMask**

- **VUID-VkSubpassDependency-srcAccessMask-00868**
  Any access flag included in **srcAccessMask must be supported by one of the pipeline stages in srcStageMask**, as specified in the table of supported access types

- **VUID-VkSubpassDependency-dstAccessMask-00869**
  Any access flag included in **dstAccessMask must be supported by one of the pipeline stages in dstStageMask**, as specified in the table of supported access types

- **VUID-VkSubpassDependency-srcSubpass-02243**
  If **srcSubpass equals dstSubpass**, and **srcStageMask and dstStageMask both include a framebuffer-space stage**, then **dependencyFlags must include VK_DEPENDENCY_BY_REGION_BIT**

- **VUID-VkSubpassDependency-dependencyFlags-02520**
  If **dependencyFlags includes VK_DEPENDENCY_VIEW_LOCAL_BIT, srcSubpass must not be equal to VK_SUBPASS_EXTERNAL**

- **VUID-VkSubpassDependency-dependencyFlags-02521**
  If **dependencyFlags includes VK_DEPENDENCY_VIEW_LOCAL_BIT, dstSubpass must not be equal to VK_SUBPASS_EXTERNAL**

- **VUID-VkSubpassDependency-srcSubpass-00872**
  If **srcSubpass equals dstSubpass** and that subpass has more than one bit set in the view mask, then **dependencyFlags must include VK_DEPENDENCY_VIEW_LOCAL_BIT**
If the synchronization2 feature is not enabled, `srcStageMask` must not be 0.

If the synchronization2 feature is not enabled, `dstStageMask` must not be 0.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- `srcStageMask` must be a valid combination of `VkPipelineStageFlagBits` values
- `dstStageMask` must be a valid combination of `VkPipelineStageFlagBits` values
- `srcAccessMask` must be a valid combination of `VkAccessFlagBits` values
- `dstAccessMask` must be a valid combination of `VkAccessFlagBits` values
- `dependencyFlags` must be a valid combination of `VkDependencyFlagBits` values

When multiview is enabled, the execution of the multiple views of one subpass may not occur simultaneously or even back-to-back, and rather may be interleaved with the execution of other subpasses. The load and store operations apply to attachments on a per-view basis. For example, an attachment using `VK_ATTACHMENT_LOAD_OP_CLEAR` will have each view cleared on first use, but the first use of one view may be temporally distant from the first use of another view.

**Note**

A good mental model for multiview is to think of a multiview subpass as if it were a collection of individual (per-view) subpasses that are logically grouped together and described as a single multiview subpass in the API. Similarly, a multiview attachment can be thought of like several individual attachments that happen to be layers in a single image. A view-local dependency between two multiview subpasses acts like a set of one-to-one dependencies between corresponding pairs of per-view subpasses. A view-global dependency between two multiview subpasses acts like a set of $N \times M$ dependencies between all pairs of per-view subpasses in the source and destination. Thus, it is a more compact representation which also makes clear the commonality and reuse that is present between views in a subpass. This interpretation motivates the answers to questions like “when does the load op apply” - it is on the first use of each view of an attachment, as if each view was a separate attachment.

If there is no subpass dependency from `VK_SUBPASS_EXTERNAL` to the first subpass that uses an attachment, then an implicit subpass dependency exists from `VK_SUBPASS_EXTERNAL` to the first subpass it is used in. The implicit subpass dependency only exists if there exists an automatic layout transition away from `initialLayout`. The subpass dependency operates as if defined with the following parameters:
Similarly, if there is no subpass dependency from the last subpass that uses an attachment to `VK_SUBPASS_EXTERNAL`, then an implicit subpass dependency exists from the last subpass it is used in to `VK_SUBPASS_EXTERNAL`. The implicit subpass dependency only exists if there exists an automatic layout transition into `finalLayout`. The subpass dependency operates as if defined with the following parameters:

```cpp
VkSubpassDependency implicitDependency = {
    .srcSubpass = VK_SUBPASS_EXTERNAL;
    .dstSubpass = firstSubpass; // First subpass attachment is used in
    .srcStageMask = VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_NONE_KHR;
    .dstStageMask = VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ALL_COMMANDS_BIT;
    .srcAccessMask = 0;
    .dstAccessMask = VK_ACCESS_INPUT_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT |
                      VK_ACCESS_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT |
                      VK_ACCESS_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_WRITE_BIT |
                      VK_ACCESS_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT |
                      VK_ACCESS_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_WRITE_BIT;
    .dependencyFlags = 0;
};
```

As subpasses may overlap or execute out of order with regards to other subpasses unless a subpass dependency chain describes otherwise, the layout transitions required between subpasses cannot be known to an application. Instead, an application provides the layout that each attachment must be in at the start and end of a render pass, and the layout it must be in during each subpass it is used in. The implementation then must execute layout transitions between subpasses in order to guarantee that the images are in the layouts required by each subpass, and in the final layout at the end of the render pass.

Automatic layout transitions apply to the entire image subresource attached to the framebuffer. If the attachment view is a 2D or 2D array view of a 3D image, even if the attachment view only refers to a subset of the slices of the selected mip level of the 3D image, automatic layout transitions apply to the entire subresource referenced which is the entire mip level in this case.

Automatic layout transitions away from the layout used in a subpass happen-after the availability operations for all dependencies with that subpass as the `srcSubpass`.

Automatic layout transitions into the layout used in a subpass happen-before the visibility
operations for all dependencies with that subpass as the dstSubpass.

Automatic layout transitions away from initialLayout happen-after the availability operations for all dependencies with a srcSubpass equal to VK_SUBPASS_EXTERNAL, where dstSubpass uses the attachment that will be transitioned. For attachments created with VK_ATTACHMENT_DESCRIPTION_MAY_ALIAS_BIT, automatic layout transitions away from initialLayout happen-after the availability operations for all dependencies with a srcSubpass equal to VK_SUBPASS_EXTERNAL, where dstSubpass uses any aliased attachment.

Automatic layout transitions into finalLayout happen-before the visibility operations for all dependencies with a dstSubpass equal to VK_SUBPASS_EXTERNAL, where srcSubpass uses the attachment that will be transitioned. For attachments created with VK_ATTACHMENT_DESCRIPTION_MAY_ALIAS_BIT, automatic layout transitions into finalLayout happen-before the visibility operations for all dependencies with a dstSubpass equal to VK_SUBPASS_EXTERNAL, where srcSubpass uses any aliased attachment.

If two subpasses use the same attachment, and both subpasses use the attachment in a read-only layout, no subpass dependency needs to be specified between those subpasses. If an implementation treats those layouts separately, it must insert an implicit subpass dependency between those subpasses to separate the uses in each layout. The subpass dependency operates as if defined with the following parameters:

```cpp
// Used for input attachments
VkPipelineStageFlags inputAttachmentStages = VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADER_BIT;
VkAccessFlags inputAttachmentDstAccess = VK_ACCESS_INPUT_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT;

// Used for depth/stencil attachments
VkPipelineStageFlags depthStencilAttachmentStages =
    VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_EARLY_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT |
    VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_LATE_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT;
VkAccessFlags depthStencilAttachmentDstAccess =
    VK_ACCESS_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT;

VkSubpassDependency implicitDependency = {
    .srcSubpass = firstSubpass;
    .dstSubpass = secondSubpass;
    .srcStageMask = inputAttachmentStages | depthStencilAttachmentStages;
    .dstStageMask = inputAttachmentStages | depthStencilAttachmentStages;
    .srcAccessMask = 0;
    .dstAccessMask = inputAttachmentDstAccess | depthStencilAttachmentDstAccess;
    .dependencyFlags = 0;
};
```

If a subpass uses the same attachment as both an input attachment and either a color attachment or a depth/stencil attachment, writes via the color or depth/stencil attachment are not automatically made visible to reads via the input attachment, causing a feedback loop, except in any of the following conditions:

- If the color components or depth/stencil components read by the input attachment are mutually
exclusive with the components written by the color or depth/stencil attachments, then there is no feedback loop. This requires the graphics pipelines used by the subpass to disable writes to color components that are read as inputs via the `colorWriteMask`, and to disable writes to depth/stencil components that are read as inputs via `depthWriteEnable` or `stencilTestEnable`.

- If the attachment is used as an input attachment and depth/stencil attachment only, and the depth/stencil attachment is not written to.

Rendering within a subpass that contains a feedback loop creates a data race, except in the following cases:

- If a memory dependency is inserted between when the attachment is written and when it is subsequently read by later fragments. Pipeline barriers expressing a subpass self-dependency are the only way to achieve this, and one must be inserted every time a fragment will read values at a particular sample (x, y, layer, sample) coordinate, if those values have been written since the most recent pipeline barrier; or since the start of the subpass, if there have been no pipeline barriers since the start of the subpass.

Attachments have requirements for a valid image layout depending on the usage

- An attachment used as an input attachment must be in the `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHARED_PRESENT_KHR`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHADER_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL`, or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL` layout.

- An attachment used only as a color attachment must be in the `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL` or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHARED_PRESENT_KHR` or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL` layout.

- An attachment used as both an input attachment and a color attachment must be in the `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHARED_PRESENT_KHR` or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL` layout.

- An attachment used only as a depth/stencil attachment must be in the `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL`, or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL` layout.

- An attachment used as an input attachment and depth/stencil attachment must be in the `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHARED_PRESENT_KHR`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL`, or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL` layout.

An attachment must not be used as both a depth/stencil attachment and a color attachment.

A more extensible version of render pass creation is also defined below.
To create a render pass, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_create_renderpass2
VkResult vkCreateRenderPass2KHR(
  VkDevice device,
  const VkRenderPassCreateInfo2* pCreateInfo,
  const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator,
  VkRenderPass* pRenderPass);
```

- **device** is the logical device that creates the render pass.
- **pCreateInfo** is a pointer to a `VkRenderPassCreateInfo2` structure describing the parameters of the render pass.
- **pAllocator** controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
- **pRenderPass** is a pointer to a `VkRenderPass` handle in which the resulting render pass object is returned.

This command is functionally identical to `vkCreateRenderPass`, but includes extensible substructures that include `sType` and `pNext` parameters, allowing them to be more easily extended.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCreateRenderPass2-device-parameter  
  device must be a valid `VkDevice` handle
- VUID-vkCreateRenderPass2-pCreateInfo-parameter  
  pCreateInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkRenderPassCreateInfo2` structure
- VUID-vkCreateRenderPass2-pAllocator-parameter  
  If pAllocator is not NULL, pAllocator must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkAllocationCallbacks` structure
- VUID-vkCreateRenderPass2-pRenderPass-parameter  
  pRenderPass must be a valid pointer to a `VkRenderPass` handle

### Return Codes

**Success**

- VK_SUCCESS

**Failure**

- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY

The `VkRenderPassCreateInfo2` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkRenderPassCreateInfo2 {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkRenderPassCreateFlags flags;
    uint32_t attachmentCount;
    const VkAttachmentDescription2* pAttachments;
    uint32_t subpassCount;
    const VkSubpassDescription2* pSubpasses;
    dependencyCount;
    const VkSubpassDependency2* pDependencies;
    correlatedViewMaskCount;
    const uint32_t* pCorrelatedViewMasks;
} VkRenderPassCreateInfo2;

// Provided by VK_KHR_create_renderpass2
typedef VkRenderPassCreateInfo2 VkRenderPassCreateInfo2KHR;

• sType is the type of this structure.
• pNext is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• flags is reserved for future use.
• attachmentCount is the number of attachments used by this render pass.
• pAttachments is a pointer to an array of attachmentCount VkAttachmentDescription2 structures describing the attachments used by the render pass.
• subpassCount is the number of subpasses to create.
• pSubpasses is a pointer to an array of subpassCount VkSubpassDescription2 structures describing each subpass.
• dependencyCount is the number of dependencies between pairs of subpasses.
• pDependencies is a pointer to an array of dependencyCount VkSubpassDependency2 structures describing dependencies between pairs of subpasses.
• correlatedViewMaskCount is the number of correlation masks.
• pCorrelatedViewMasks is a pointer to an array of view masks indicating sets of views that may be more efficient to render concurrently.

Parameters defined by this structure with the same name as those in VkRenderPassCreateInfo have the identical effect to those parameters; the child structures are variants of those used in VkRenderPassCreateInfo which add sType and pNext parameters, allowing them to be extended.

If the VkSubpassDescription2::viewMask member of any element of pSubpasses is not zero, multiview functionality is considered to be enabled for this render pass.

correlatedViewMaskCount and pCorrelatedViewMasks have the same effect as
`VkRenderPassMultiviewCreateInfo::correlationMaskCount` and `VkRenderPassMultiviewCreateInfo::pCorrelationMasks`, respectively.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo2-None-03049**
  If any two subpasses operate on attachments with overlapping ranges of the same `VkDeviceMemory` object, and at least one subpass writes to that area of `VkDeviceMemory`, a subpass dependency must be included (either directly or via some intermediate subpasses) between them.

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo2-attachment-03050**
  If the attachment member of any element of `pInputAttachments`, `pColorAttachments`, `pResolveAttachments` or `pDepthStencilAttachment`, or the attachment indexed by any element of `pPreserveAttachments` in any given element of `pSubpasses` is bound to a range of a `VkDeviceMemory` object that overlaps with any other attachment in any subpass (including the same subpass), the `VkAttachmentDescription2` structures describing them must include `VK_ATTACHMENT_DESCRIPTION_MAY_ALIAS_BIT` in flags.

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo2-attachment-03051**
  If the attachment member of any element of `pInputAttachments`, `pColorAttachments`, `pResolveAttachments` or `pDepthStencilAttachment`, or any element of `pPreserveAttachments` in any given element of `pSubpasses` is not `VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED`, it must be less than `attachmentCount`.

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo2-pAttachments-02522**
  For any member of `pAttachments` with a `loadOp` equal to `VK_ATTACHMENT_LOAD_OP_CLEAR`, the first use of that attachment must not specify a layout equal to `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHADER_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL`, or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL`.

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo2-pAttachments-02523**
  For any member of `pAttachments` with a `stencilLoadOp` equal to `VK_ATTACHMENT_LOAD_OP_CLEAR`, the first use of that attachment must not specify a layout equal to `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHADER_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL`, or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL`.

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo2-pDependencies-03054**
  For any element of `pDependencies`, if the `srcSubpass` is not `VK_SUBPASS_EXTERNAL`, all stage flags included in the `srcStageMask` member of that dependency must be a pipeline stage supported by the `pipeline` identified by the `pipelineBindPoint` member of the source subpass.

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo2-pDependencies-03055**
  For any element of `pDependencies`, if the `dstSubpass` is not `VK_SUBPASS_EXTERNAL`, all stage flags included in the `dstStageMask` member of that dependency must be a pipeline stage supported by the `pipeline` identified by the `pipelineBindPoint` member of the destination subpass.

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo2-pCorrelatedViewMasks-03056**
  The set of bits included in any element of `pCorrelatedViewMasks` must not overlap with the set of bits included in any other element of `pCorrelatedViewMasks`.

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo2-viewMask-03057**
If the \texttt{VkSubpassDescription2::viewMask} member of all elements of \texttt{pSubpasses} is 0, \texttt{correlatedViewMaskCount} must be 0.

- VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo2-viewMask-03058

  The \texttt{VkSubpassDescription2::viewMask} member of all elements of \texttt{pSubpasses} must either all be 0, or all not be 0.

- VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo2-viewMask-03059

  If the \texttt{VkSubpassDescription2::viewMask} member of all elements of \texttt{pSubpasses} is 0, the \texttt{dependencyFlags} member of any element of \texttt{pDependencies} must not include \texttt{VK_DEPENDENCY_VIEW_LOCAL_BIT}.

- VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo2-pDependencies-03060

  For any element of \texttt{pDependencies} where its \texttt{srcSubpass} member equals its \texttt{dstSubpass} member, if the \texttt{viewMask} member of the corresponding element of \texttt{pSubpasses} includes more than one bit, its \texttt{dependencyFlags} member must include \texttt{VK_DEPENDENCY_VIEW_LOCAL_BIT}.

- VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo2-attachment-02525

  If the \texttt{attachment} member of any element of the \texttt{pInputAttachments} member of any element of \texttt{pSubpasses} is not \texttt{VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED}, the \texttt{aspectMask} member of that element of \texttt{pInputAttachments} must only include aspects that are present in images of the format specified by the element of \texttt{pAttachments} specified by \texttt{attachment}.

- VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo2-srcSubpass-02526

  The \texttt{srcSubpass} member of each element of \texttt{pDependencies} must be less than \texttt{subpassCount}.

- VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo2-dstSubpass-02527

  The \texttt{dstSubpass} member of each element of \texttt{pDependencies} must be less than \texttt{subpassCount}.

- VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo2-pAttachments-04585

  If any element of \texttt{pAttachments} is used as a fragment shading rate attachment in any subpass, it must not be used as any other attachment in the render pass.

- VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo2-pAttachments-04586

  If any element of \texttt{pAttachments} is used as a fragment shading rate attachment in any subpass, it must have an image format whose \texttt{potential format features} contain \texttt{VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_BIT_KHR}.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo2-sType-sType**
  sType **must** be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RENDER_PASS_CREATE_INFO_2`

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo2-pNext-pNext**
  pNext **must** be NULL

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo2-flags-zerobitmask**
  flags **must** be 0

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo2-pAttachments-parameter**
  If attachmentCount is not 0, pAttachments **must** be a valid pointer to an array of attachmentCount valid `VkAttachmentDescription2` structures

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo2-pSubpasses-parameter**
  pSubpasses **must** be a valid pointer to an array of subpassCount valid `VkSubpassDescription2` structures

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo2-pDependencies-parameter**
  If dependencyCount is not 0, pDependencies **must** be a valid pointer to an array of dependencyCount valid `VkSubpassDependency2` structures

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo2-pCorrelatedViewMasks-parameter**
  If correlatedViewMaskCount is not 0, pCorrelatedViewMasks **must** be a valid pointer to an array of correlatedViewMaskCount uint32_t values

- **VUID-VkRenderPassCreateInfo2-subpassCount-arraylength**
  subpassCount **must** be greater than 0

The `VkAttachmentDescription2` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkAttachmentDescription2
{
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkAttachmentDescriptionFlags flags;
    VkFormat format;
    VkSampleCountFlagBits samples;
    VkAttachmentLoadOp loadOp;
    VkAttachmentStoreOp storeOp;
    VkAttachmentLoadOp stencilLoadOp;
    VkAttachmentStoreOp stencilStoreOp;
    VkImageLayout initialLayout;
    VkImageLayout finalLayout;
} VkAttachmentDescription2;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_create_renderpass2
typedef VkAttachmentDescription2 VkAttachmentDescription2KHR;
```
- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **flags** is a bitmask of `VkAttachmentDescriptionFlagBits` specifying additional properties of the attachment.
- **format** is a `VkFormat` value specifying the format of the image that will be used for the attachment.
- **samples** is a `VkSampleCountFlagBits` value specifying the number of samples of the image.
- **loadOp** is a `VkAttachmentLoadOp` value specifying how the contents of color and depth components of the attachment are treated at the beginning of the subpass where it is first used.
- **storeOp** is a `VkAttachmentStoreOp` value specifying how the contents of color and depth components of the attachment are treated at the end of the subpass where it is last used.
- **stencilLoadOp** is a `VkAttachmentLoadOp` value specifying how the contents of stencil components of the attachment are treated at the beginning of the subpass where it is first used.
- **stencilStoreOp** is a `VkAttachmentStoreOp` value specifying how the contents of stencil components of the attachment are treated at the end of the last subpass where it is used.
- **initialLayout** is the layout the attachment image subresource will be in when a render pass instance begins.
- **finalLayout** is the layout the attachment image subresource will be transitioned to when a render pass instance ends.

Parameters defined by this structure with the same name as those in `VkAttachmentDescription` have the identical effect to those parameters.

If the `separateDepthStencilLayouts` feature is enabled, and **format** is a depth/stencil format, **initialLayout** and **finalLayout** can be set to a layout that only specifies the layout of the depth aspect.

If the **pNext** chain includes a `VkAttachmentDescriptionStencilLayout` structure, then the **stencilInitialLayout** and **stencilFinalLayout** members specify the initial and final layouts of the stencil aspect of a depth/stencil format, and **initialLayout** and **finalLayout** only apply to the depth aspect. For depth-only formats, the `VkAttachmentDescriptionStencilLayout` structure is ignored. For stencil-only formats, the initial and final layouts of the stencil aspect are taken from the `VkAttachmentDescriptionStencilLayout` structure if present, or **initialLayout** and **finalLayout** if not present.

If **format** is a depth/stencil format, and either **initialLayout** or **finalLayout** does not specify a layout for the stencil aspect, then the application **must** specify the initial and final layouts of the stencil aspect by including a `VkAttachmentDescriptionStencilLayout` structure in the **pNext** chain.
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkAttachmentDescription2-finalLayout-03061
  finalLayout must not be VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_UNDEFINED or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_PREINITIALIZED

- VUID-VkAttachmentDescription2-format-03294
  If format is a color format, initialLayout must not be
  VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL,
  VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL,
  VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL,
  or
  VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL

- VUID-VkAttachmentDescription2-format-03295
  If format is a depth/stencil format, initialLayout must not be
  VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL

- VUID-VkAttachmentDescription2-format-03296
  If format is a color format, finalLayout must not be
  VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL,
  VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL,
  VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL,
  or
  VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL

- VUID-VkAttachmentDescription2-format-03297
  If format is a depth/stencil format, finalLayout must not be
  VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL

- VUID-VkAttachmentDescription2-separateDepthStencilLayouts-03298
  If the separateDepthStencilLayouts feature is not enabled, initialLayout must not be
  VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL,
  VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL
  or
  VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL

- VUID-VkAttachmentDescription2-separateDepthStencilLayouts-03299
  If the separateDepthStencilLayouts feature is not enabled, finalLayout must not be
  VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL,
  VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL
  or
  VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL

- VUID-VkAttachmentDescription2-format-03300
  If format is a color format, initialLayout must not be
  VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL,
  VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL
  or
  VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL

- VUID-VkAttachmentDescription2-format-03301
  If format is a depth/stencil format which includes both depth and stencil aspects, and
  initialLayout is VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL or
  VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL, the pNext chain must include a
**VkAttachmentDescriptionStencilLayout** structure

- **VUID-VkAttachmentDescription2-format-03303**
  
  If format is a depth/stencil format which includes both depth and stencil aspects, and finalLayout is `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL` or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL`, the pNext chain must include a **VkAttachmentDescriptionStencilLayout** structure.

- **VUID-VkAttachmentDescription2-format-03304**
  
  If format is a depth/stencil format which includes only the depth aspect, initialLayout must not be `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL` or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL`.

- **VUID-VkAttachmentDescription2-format-03305**
  
  If format is a depth/stencil format which includes only the depth aspect, finalLayout must not be `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL` or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL`.

- **VUID-VkAttachmentDescription2-format-03306**
  
  If format is a depth/stencil format which includes only the stencil aspect, initialLayout must not be `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL` or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL`.

- **VUID-VkAttachmentDescription2-format-03307**
  
  If format is a depth/stencil format which includes only the stencil aspect, finalLayout must not be `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL` or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL`. 
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkAttachmentDescription2-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ATTACHMENT_DESCRIPTION_2

- VUID-VkAttachmentDescription2-pNext-pNext
  pNext must be NULL or a pointer to a valid instance of VkAttachmentDescriptionStencilLayout

- VUID-VkAttachmentDescription2-sType-unique
  The sType value of each struct in the pNext chain must be unique

- VUID-VkAttachmentDescription2-flags-parameter
  flags must be a valid combination of VkAttachmentDescriptionFlagBits values

- VUID-VkAttachmentDescription2-format-parameter
  format must be a valid VkFormat value

- VUID-VkAttachmentDescription2-samples-parameter
  samples must be a valid VkSampleCountFlagBits value

- VUID-VkAttachmentDescription2-loadOp-parameter
  loadOp must be a valid VkAttachmentLoadOp value

- VUID-VkAttachmentDescription2-storeOp-parameter
  storeOp must be a valid VkAttachmentStoreOp value

- VUID-VkAttachmentDescription2-stencilLoadOp-parameter
  stencilLoadOp must be a valid VkAttachmentLoadOp value

- VUID-VkAttachmentDescription2-stencilStoreOp-parameter
  stencilStoreOp must be a valid VkAttachmentStoreOp value

- VUID-VkAttachmentDescription2-initialLayout-parameter
  initialLayout must be a valid VkImageLayout value

- VUID-VkAttachmentDescription2-finalLayout-parameter
  finalLayout must be a valid VkImageLayout value

The VkAttachmentDescriptionStencilLayout structure is defined as:

typedef struct VkAttachmentDescriptionStencilLayout {
  VkStructureType sType;
  void* pNext;
  VkImageLayout stencilInitialLayout;
  VkImageLayout stencilFinalLayout;
} VkAttachmentDescriptionStencilLayout;

or the equivalent

// Provided by VK_KHR_separate_depth_stencil_layouts
typedef VkAttachmentDescriptionStencilLayout VkAttachmentDescriptionStencilLayoutKHR;
• **sType** is the type of this structure.

• **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.

• **stencilInitialLayout** is the layout the stencil aspect of the attachment image subresource will be in when a render pass instance begins.

• **stencilFinalLayout** is the layout the stencil aspect of the attachment image subresource will be transitioned to when a render pass instance ends.

---

**Valid Usage**

- **VUID-VkAttachmentDescriptionStencilLayout-stencilInitialLayout-03308**

  stencilInitialLayout **must not be** VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL, or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL.

- **VUID-VkAttachmentDescriptionStencilLayout-stencilFinalLayout-03309**

  stencilFinalLayout **must not be** VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL, or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL.

- **VUID-VkAttachmentDescriptionStencilLayout-stencilFinalLayout-03310**

  stencilFinalLayout **must not be** VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_UNDEFINED or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_PREINITIALIZED.

---

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- **VUID-VkAttachmentDescriptionStencilLayout-sType-sType**

  sType **must be** VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ATTACHMENT_DESCRIPTION_STENCIL_LAYOUT.

- **VUID-VkAttachmentDescriptionStencilLayout-stencilInitialLayout-parameter**

  stencilInitialLayout **must be a valid VkImageLayout value**.

- **VUID-VkAttachmentDescriptionStencilLayout-stencilFinalLayout-parameter**

  stencilFinalLayout **must be a valid VkImageLayout value**.

---

The **VkSubpassDescription2** structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkSubpassDescription2 {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkSubpassDescriptionFlags flags;
    VkPipelineBindPoint pipelineBindPoint;
    uint32_t viewMask;
    uint32_t inputAttachmentCount;
    const VkAttachmentReference2* pInputAttachments;
    const VkAttachmentReference2* pColorAttachments;
    const VkAttachmentReference2* pResolveAttachments;
    const VkAttachmentReference2* pDepthStencilAttachment;
    uint32_t preserveAttachmentCount;
    const uint32_t* pPreserveAttachments;
} VkSubpassDescription2;

or the equivalent

// Provided by VK_KHR_create_renderpass2
typedef VkSubpassDescription2 VkSubpassDescription2KHR;

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `flags` is a bitmask of `VkSubpassDescriptionFlagBits` specifying usage of the subpass.
- `pipelineBindPoint` is a `VkPipelineBindPoint` value specifying the pipeline type supported for this subpass.
- `viewMask` is a bitfield of view indices describing which views rendering is broadcast to in this subpass, when multiview is enabled.
- `inputAttachmentCount` is the number of input attachments.
- `pInputAttachments` is a pointer to an array of `VkAttachmentReference2` structures defining the input attachments for this subpass and their layouts.
- `colorAttachmentCount` is the number of color attachments.
- `pColorAttachments` is a pointer to an array of `colorAttachmentCount` `VkAttachmentReference2` structures defining the color attachments for this subpass and their layouts.
- `pResolveAttachments` is `NULL` or a pointer to an array of `colorAttachmentCount` `VkAttachmentReference2` structures defining the resolve attachments for this subpass and their layouts.
- `pDepthStencilAttachment` is a pointer to a `VkAttachmentReference2` structure specifying the depth/stencil attachment for this subpass and its layout.
- `preserveAttachmentCount` is the number of preserved attachments.
- `pPreserveAttachments` is a pointer to an array of `preserveAttachmentCount` render pass attachment indices identifying attachments that are not used by this subpass, but whose contents must be
preserved throughout the subpass.

Parameters defined by this structure with the same name as those in `VkSubpassDescription` have the identical effect to those parameters.

`viewMask` has the same effect for the described subpass as `VkRenderPassMultiviewCreateInfo::pViewMasks` has on each corresponding subpass.

If an instance of `VkFragmentShadingRateAttachmentInfoKHR` is included in the `pNext` chain, `pFragmentShadingRateAttachment` is not `NULL`, and its `attachment` member is not `VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED`, the identified attachment defines a fragment shading rate attachment for that subpass.
**Valid Usage**

- **VUID-VkSubpassDescription2-pipelineBindPoint-03062**
  
  `pipelineBindPoint` must be `VK_PIPELINE_BIND_POINT_GRAPHICS`

- **VUID-VkSubpassDescription2-colorAttachmentCount-03063**
  
  `colorAttachmentCount` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxColorAttachments`

- **VUID-VkSubpassDescription2-loadOp-03064**
  
  If the first use of an attachment in this render pass is as an input attachment, and the attachment is not also used as a color or depth/stencil attachment in the same subpass, then `loadOp` must not be `VK_ATTACHMENT_LOAD_OP_CLEAR`

- **VUID-VkSubpassDescription2-pResolveAttachments-03065**
  
  If `pResolveAttachments` is not NULL, for each resolve attachment that does not have the value `VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED`, the corresponding color attachment must not have the value `VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED`

- **VUID-VkSubpassDescription2-pResolveAttachments-03066**
  
  If `pResolveAttachments` is not NULL, for each resolve attachment that is not `VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED`, the corresponding color attachment must not have a sample count of `VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT`

- **VUID-VkSubpassDescription2-pResolveAttachments-03067**
  
  If `pResolveAttachments` is not NULL, each resolve attachment that is not `VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED` must have a sample count of `VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT`

- **VUID-VkSubpassDescription2-pResolveAttachments-03068**
  
  Any given element of `pResolveAttachments` must have the same `VkFormat` as its corresponding color attachment

- **VUID-VkSubpassDescription2-pColorAttachments-03069**
  
  All attachments in `pColorAttachments` that are not `VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED` must have the same `VkFormat` as its corresponding color attachment

- **VUID-VkSubpassDescription2-pInputAttachments-02897**
  
  All attachments in `pInputAttachments` that are not `VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED` must have image formats whose potential format features contain at least `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT` or `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT`

- **VUID-VkSubpassDescription2-pColorAttachments-02898**
  
  All attachments in `pColorAttachments` that are not `VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED` must have image formats whose potential format features contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT`

- **VUID-VkSubpassDescription2-pResolveAttachments-02899**
  
  All attachments in `pResolveAttachments` that are not `VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED` must have image formats whose potential format features contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT`

- **VUID-VkSubpassDescription2-pDepthStencilAttachment-02900**
  
  If `pDepthStencilAttachment` is not NULL and the attachment is not `VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED` then it must have an image format whose potential format features contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT`
If neither the [VK_AMD_mixed_attachment_samples] nor the [VK_NV_framebuffer_mixed_samples] extensions are enabled, and if pDepthStencilAttachment is not VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED and any attachments in pColorAttachments are not VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED, they must have the same sample count.

Each element of pPreserveAttachments must not be VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED.

Any given element of pPreserveAttachments must not also be an element of any other member of the subpass description.

If any attachment is used by more than one VkAttachmentReference2 member, then each use must use the same layout.

Attachments must follow the image layout requirements based on the type of attachment it is being used as.

If the attachment member of any element of pInputAttachments is not VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED, then the aspectMask member must be a valid combination of VkImageAspectFlagBits.

If the attachment member of any element of pInputAttachments is not VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED, then the aspectMask member must not be 0.

If the attachment member of any element of pInputAttachments is not VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED, then the aspectMask member must not include VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_METADATA_BIT.

An attachment must not be used in both pDepthStencilAttachment and pColorAttachments.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkSubpassDescription2-sType-sType
  *sType** must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SUBPASS_DESCRIPTION_2`

- VUID-VkSubpassDescription2-pNext-pNext
  Each `pNext` member of any structure (including this one) in the `pNext` chain **must** be either `NULL` or a pointer to a valid instance of `VkFragmentShadingRateAttachmentInfoKHR` or `VkSubpassDescriptionDepthStencilResolve`

- VUID-VkSubpassDescription2-sType-unique
  The `sType` value of each struct in the `pNext` chain **must** be unique

- VUID-VkSubpassDescription2-flags-zerobitmask
  *flags** must be `0`

- VUID-VkSubpassDescription2-pipelineBindPoint-parameter
  `pipelineBindPoint` **must** be a valid `VkPipelineBindPoint` value

- VUID-VkSubpassDescription2-pInputAttachments-parameter
  If `inputAttachmentCount` is not `0`, `pInputAttachments` **must** be a valid pointer to an array of `VkAttachmentReference2` structures

- VUID-VkSubpassDescription2-pColorAttachments-parameter
  If `colorAttachmentCount` is not `0`, `pColorAttachments` **must** be a valid pointer to an array of `VkAttachmentReference2` structures

- VUID-VkSubpassDescription2-pResolveAttachments-parameter
  If `colorAttachmentCount` is not `0`, and `pResolveAttachments` is not `NULL`, `pResolveAttachments` **must** be a valid pointer to an array of `colorAttachmentCount` valid `VkAttachmentReference2` structures

- VUID-VkSubpassDescription2-pDepthStencilAttachment-parameter
  If `pDepthStencilAttachment` is not `NULL`, `pDepthStencilAttachment` **must** be a valid pointer to a valid `VkAttachmentReference2` structure

- VUID-VkSubpassDescription2-pPreserveAttachments-parameter
  If `preserveAttachmentCount` is not `0`, `pPreserveAttachments` **must** be a valid pointer to an array of `preserveAttachmentCount uint32_t` values

If the `pNext` chain of `VkSubpassDescription2` includes a `VkSubpassDescriptionDepthStencilResolve` structure, then that structure describes multisample resolve operations for the depth/stencil attachment in a subpass.

The `VkSubpassDescriptionDepthStencilResolve` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkSubpassDescriptionDepthStencilResolve {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkResolveModeFlagBits depthResolveMode;
    VkResolveModeFlagBits stencilResolveMode;
    const VkAttachmentReference2* pDepthStencilResolveAttachment;
} VkSubpassDescriptionDepthStencilResolve;

or the equivalent

// Provided by VK_KHR_depth_stencil_resolve
typedefVkSubpassDescriptionDepthStencilResolve VkSubpassDescriptionDepthStencilResolveKHR;

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **depthResolveMode** is a **VkResolveModeFlagBits** value describing the depth resolve mode.
- **stencilResolveMode** is a **VkResolveModeFlagBits** value describing the stencil resolve mode.
- **pDepthStencilResolveAttachment** is **NULL** or a pointer to a **VkAttachmentReference2** structure defining the depth/stencil resolve attachment for this subpass and its layout.
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkSubpassDescriptionDepthStencilResolve-pDepthStencilResolveAttachment-03177
  If `pDepthStencilResolveAttachment` is not `NULL` and does not have the value `VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED`, `pDepthStencilAttachment` must not have the value `VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED`.

- VUID-VkSubpassDescriptionDepthStencilResolve-pDepthStencilResolveAttachment-03178
  If `pDepthStencilResolveAttachment` is not `NULL` and does not have the value `VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED`, `depthResolveMode` and `stencilResolveMode` must not both be `VK_RESOLVE_MODE_NONE`.

- VUID-VkSubpassDescriptionDepthStencilResolve-pDepthStencilResolveAttachment-03179
  If `pDepthStencilResolveAttachment` is not `NULL` and does not have the value `VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED`, `pDepthStencilAttachment` must not have a sample count of `VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT`.

- VUID-VkSubpassDescriptionDepthStencilResolve-pDepthStencilResolveAttachment-03180
  If `pDepthStencilResolveAttachment` is not `NULL` and does not have the value `VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED`, `pDepthStencilResolveAttachment` must have a sample count of `VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT`.

- VUID-VkSubpassDescriptionDepthStencilResolve-pDepthStencilResolveAttachment-02651
  If `pDepthStencilResolveAttachment` is not `NULL` and does not have the value `VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED` then it must have an image format whose potential format features contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT`.

- VUID-VkSubpassDescriptionDepthStencilResolve-pDepthStencilResolveAttachment-03181
  If the `VkFormat` of `pDepthStencilResolveAttachment` has a depth component, then the `VkFormat` of `pDepthStencilAttachment` must have a depth component with the same number of bits and numerical type.

- VUID-VkSubpassDescriptionDepthStencilResolve-pDepthStencilResolveAttachment-03182
  If the `VkFormat` of `pDepthStencilResolveAttachment` has a stencil component, then the `VkFormat` of `pDepthStencilAttachment` must have a stencil component with the same number of bits and numerical type.

- VUID-VkSubpassDescriptionDepthStencilResolve-depthResolveMode-03183
  The value of `depthResolveMode` must be one of the bits set in `VkPhysicalDeviceDepthStencilResolveProperties::supportedDepthResolveModes` or `VK_RESOLVE_MODE_NONE`.

- VUID-VkSubpassDescriptionDepthStencilResolve-stencilResolveMode-03184
  The value of `stencilResolveMode` must be one of the bits set in `VkPhysicalDeviceDepthStencilResolveProperties::supportedStencilResolveModes` or `VK_RESOLVE_MODE_NONE`.

- VUID-VkSubpassDescriptionDepthStencilResolve-pDepthStencilResolveAttachment-03185
  If the `VkFormat` of `pDepthStencilResolveAttachment` has both depth and stencil components, `VkPhysicalDeviceDepthStencilResolveProperties::independentResolve` is `VK_FALSE`, and `VkPhysicalDeviceDepthStencilResolveProperties::independentResolveNone` is `VK_FALSE`, then the values of `depthResolveMode` and `stencilResolveMode` must be identical.

- VUID-VkSubpassDescriptionDepthStencilResolve-pDepthStencilResolveAttachment-03186
  If the `VkFormat` of `pDepthStencilResolveAttachment` has both depth and stencil components, `VkPhysicalDeviceDepthStencilResolveProperties::independentResolve` is `VK_FALSE`, and `VkPhysicalDeviceDepthStencilResolveProperties::independentResolveNone` is `VK_FALSE`, then the values of `depthResolveMode` and `stencilResolveMode` must be identical.
components, \(VkPhysicalDeviceDepthStencilResolveProperties::independentResolve\) is \(VK_FALSE\) and \(VkPhysicalDeviceDepthStencilResolveProperties::independentResolveNone\) is \(VK_TRUE\), then the values of \(depthResolveMode\) and \(stencilResolveMode\) must be identical or one of them must be \(VK_RESOLVE_MODE_NONE\).

- VUID-VkSubpassDescriptionDepthStencilResolve-pDepthStencilResolveAttachment-04588
  If the \(VkFormat\) of \(pDepthStencilResolveAttachment\) has a depth component, \(depthResolveMode\) must be a valid \(VkResolveModeFlagBits\) value.

- VUID-VkSubpassDescriptionDepthStencilResolve-pDepthStencilResolveAttachment-04589
  If the \(VkFormat\) of \(pDepthStencilResolveAttachment\) has a stencil component, \(stencilResolveMode\) must be a valid \(VkResolveModeFlagBits\) value.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkSubpassDescriptionDepthStencilResolve-sType-sType
  \(sType\) must be \(VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SUBPASS_DESCRIPTION_DEPTH_STENCIL_RESOLVE\).

- VUID-VkSubpassDescriptionDepthStencilResolve-pDepthStencilResolveAttachment-parameter
  If \(pDepthStencilResolveAttachment\) is not NULL, \(pDepthStencilResolveAttachment\) must be a valid pointer to a valid \(VkAttachmentReference2\) structure.

Possible values of \(VkSubpassDescriptionDepthStencilResolve::depthResolveMode\) and \(stencilResolveMode\), specifying the depth and stencil resolve modes, are:

```c
typedef enum VkResolveModeFlagBits {
    VK_RESOLVE_MODE_NONE = 0,
    VK_RESOLVE_MODE_SAMPLE_ZERO_BIT = 0x00000001,
    VK_RESOLVE_MODE_AVERAGE_BIT = 0x00000002,
    VK_RESOLVE_MODE_MIN_BIT = 0x00000004,
    VK_RESOLVE_MODE_MAX_BIT = 0x00000008,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_depth_stencil_resolve
    VK_RESOLVE_MODE_NONE_KHR = VK_RESOLVE_MODE_NONE,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_depth_stencil_resolve
    VK_RESOLVE_MODE_SAMPLE_ZERO_BIT_KHR = VK_RESOLVE_MODE_SAMPLE_ZERO_BIT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_depth_stencil_resolve
    VK_RESOLVE_MODE_AVERAGE_BIT_KHR = VK_RESOLVE_MODE_AVERAGE_BIT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_depth_stencil_resolve
    VK_RESOLVE_MODE_MIN_BIT_KHR = VK_RESOLVE_MODE_MIN_BIT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_depth_stencil_resolve
    VK_RESOLVE_MODE_MAX_BIT_KHR = VK_RESOLVE_MODE_MAX_BIT,
} VkResolveModeFlagBits;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_depth_stencil_resolve
typedef VkResolveModeFlagBits VkResolveModeFlagBitsKHR;
```
- `VK_RESOLVE_MODE_NONE` indicates that no resolve operation is done.
- `VK_RESOLVE_MODE_SAMPLE_ZERO_BIT` indicates that result of the resolve operation is equal to the value of sample 0.
- `VK_RESOLVE_MODE_AVERAGE_BIT` indicates that result of the resolve operation is the average of the sample values.
- `VK_RESOLVE_MODE_MIN_BIT` indicates that result of the resolve operation is the minimum of the sample values.
- `VK_RESOLVE_MODE_MAX_BIT` indicates that result of the resolve operation is the maximum of the sample values.

```c
typedef VkFlags VkResolveModeFlags;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_depth_stencil_resolve
typedef VkResolveModeFlags VkResolveModeFlagsKHR;
```

`VkResolveModeFlags` is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more `VkResolveModeFlagBits`.

The `VkFragmentShadingRateAttachmentInfoKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_fragment_shading_rate
typedef struct VkFragmentShadingRateAttachmentInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    const VkAttachmentReference2* pFragmentShadingRateAttachment;
    VkExtent2D shadingRateAttachmentTexelSize;
} VkFragmentShadingRateAttachmentInfoKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `pFragmentShadingRateAttachment` is `NULL` or a pointer to a `VkAttachmentReference2` structure defining the fragment shading rate attachment for this subpass.
- `shadingRateAttachmentTexelSize` specifies the size of the portion of the framebuffer corresponding to each texel in `pFragmentShadingRateAttachment`.

If no shading rate attachment is specified, or if this structure is not specified, the implementation behaves as if a valid shading rate attachment was specified with all texels specifying a single pixel per fragment.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkFragmentShadingRateAttachmentInfoKHR-pFragmentShadingRateAttachment-04524**
  If `pFragmentShadingRateAttachment` is not `NULL` and its attachment member is not `VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED`, its layout member **must** be equal to `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL` or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL_KHR`.

- **VUID-VkFragmentShadingRateAttachmentInfoKHR-pFragmentShadingRateAttachment-04525**
  If `pFragmentShadingRateAttachment` is not `NULL` and its attachment member is not `VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED`, shadingRateAttachmentTexelSize.width **must** be a power of two value.

- **VUID-VkFragmentShadingRateAttachmentInfoKHR-pFragmentShadingRateAttachment-04526**
  If `pFragmentShadingRateAttachment` is not `NULL` and its attachment member is not `VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED`, shadingRateAttachmentTexelSize.width **must** be less than or equal to `maxFragmentShadingRateAttachmentTexelSize.width`.

- **VUID-VkFragmentShadingRateAttachmentInfoKHR-pFragmentShadingRateAttachment-04527**
  If `pFragmentShadingRateAttachment` is not `NULL` and its attachment member is not `VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED`, shadingRateAttachmentTexelSize.width **must** be greater than or equal to `minFragmentShadingRateAttachmentTexelSize.width`.

- **VUID-VkFragmentShadingRateAttachmentInfoKHR-pFragmentShadingRateAttachment-04528**
  If `pFragmentShadingRateAttachment` is not `NULL` and its attachment member is not `VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED`, shadingRateAttachmentTexelSize.height **must** be a power of two value.

- **VUID-VkFragmentShadingRateAttachmentInfoKHR-pFragmentShadingRateAttachment-04529**
  If `pFragmentShadingRateAttachment` is not `NULL` and its attachment member is not `VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED`, shadingRateAttachmentTexelSize.height **must** be less than or equal to `maxFragmentShadingRateAttachmentTexelSize.height`.

- **VUID-VkFragmentShadingRateAttachmentInfoKHR-pFragmentShadingRateAttachment-04530**
  If `pFragmentShadingRateAttachment` is not `NULL` and its attachment member is not `VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED`, shadingRateAttachmentTexelSize.height **must** be greater than or equal to `minFragmentShadingRateAttachmentTexelSize.height`.

- **VUID-VkFragmentShadingRateAttachmentInfoKHR-pFragmentShadingRateAttachment-04531**
  If `pFragmentShadingRateAttachment` is not `NULL` and its attachment member is not `VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED`, the quotient of shadingRateAttachmentTexelSize.width and shadingRateAttachmentTexelSize.height **must** be less than or equal to `maxFragmentShadingRateAttachmentTexelSizeAspectRatio`.

- **VUID-VkFragmentShadingRateAttachmentInfoKHR-pFragmentShadingRateAttachment-04532**
  If `pFragmentShadingRateAttachment` is not `NULL` and its attachment member is not `VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED`, the quotient of shadingRateAttachmentTexelSize.height and shadingRateAttachmentTexelSize.width **must** be less than or equal to `maxFragmentShadingRateAttachmentTexelSizeAspectRatio`. 
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkFragmentShadingRateAttachmentInfoKHR-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_INFO_KHR

- VUID-VkFragmentShadingRateAttachmentInfoKHR-pFragmentShadingRateAttachment-parameter
  If pFragmentShadingRateAttachment is not NULL, pFragmentShadingRateAttachment must be a valid pointer to a valid VkAttachmentReference2 structure

The VkAttachmentReference2 structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkAttachmentReference2 {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    uint32_t attachment;
    VkImageLayout layout;
    VkImageAspectFlags aspectMask;
} VkAttachmentReference2;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_create_renderpass2
typedef VkAttachmentReference2 VkAttachmentReference2KHR;
```

- sType is the type of this structure.
- pNext is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- attachment is either an integer value identifying an attachment at the corresponding index in VkRenderPassCreateInfo2::pAttachments, or VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED to signify that this attachment is not used.
- layout is a VkImageLayout value specifying the layout the attachment uses during the subpass.
- aspectMask is a mask of which aspect(s) can be accessed within the specified subpass as an input attachment.

Parameters defined by this structure with the same name as those in VkAttachmentReference have the identical effect to those parameters.

aspectMask is ignored when this structure is used to describe anything other than an input attachment reference.

If the separateDepthStencilLayouts feature is enabled, and attachment has a depth/stencil format, layout can be set to a layout that only specifies the layout of the depth aspect.

If layout only specifies the layout of the depth aspect of the attachment, the layout of the stencil aspect is specified by the stencilLayout member of a VkAttachmentReferenceStencilLayout structure included in the pNext chain. Otherwise, layout describes the layout for all relevant image
Valid Usage

• **VUID-VkAttachmentReference2-layout-03077**
  If attachment is not VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED, layout **must** not be VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_UNDEFINED, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_PREINITIALIZED, or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_PRESENT_SRC_KHR

• **VUID-VkAttachmentReference2-separateDepthStencilLayouts-03313**
  If the `separateDepthStencilLayouts` feature is not enabled, and attachment is not VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED, layout **must** not be VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL, or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL

• **VUID-VkAttachmentReference2-attachment-04754**
  If attachment is not VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED, and the format of the referenced attachment is a color format, layout **must** not be VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL

• **VUID-VkAttachmentReference2-attachment-04755**
  If attachment is not VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED, and the format of the referenced attachment is a depth/stencil format which includes both depth and stencil aspects, and layout is VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL, the `pNext` chain **must** include a `VkAttachmentReferenceStencilLayout` structure

• **VUID-VkAttachmentReference2-attachment-04756**
  If attachment is not VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED, and the format of the referenced attachment is a depth/stencil format which includes only the depth aspect, layout **must** not be VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL

• **VUID-VkAttachmentReference2-attachment-04757**
  If attachment is not VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED, and the format of the referenced attachment is a depth/stencil format which includes only the stencil aspect, layout **must** not be VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL

Valid Usage (Implicit)

• **VUID-VkAttachmentReference2-sType-sType**
  `sType` **must** be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ATTACHMENT_REFERENCE_2

• **VUID-VkAttachmentReference2-pNext-pNext**
  `pNext` **must** be `NULL` or a pointer to a valid instance of `VkAttachmentReferenceStencilLayout`

• **VUID-VkAttachmentReference2-sType-unique**
  The `sType` value of each struct in the `pNext` chain **must** be unique

• **VUID-VkAttachmentReference2-layout-parameter**
  `layout` **must** be a valid `VkImageLayout` value

364 | Chapter 8. Render Pass
The `VkAttachmentReferenceStencilLayout` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkAttachmentReferenceStencilLayout {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkImageLayout stencilLayout;
} VkAttachmentReferenceStencilLayout;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_separate_depth_stencil_layouts
typedef VkAttachmentReferenceStencilLayout VkAttachmentReferenceStencilLayoutKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `stencilLayout` is a `VkImageLayout` value specifying the layout the stencil aspect of the attachment uses during the subpass.

**Valid Usage**

- VUID-VkAttachmentReferenceStencilLayout-stencilLayout-03318
  
  `stencilLayout` must not be `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_UNDEFINED`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_PREINITIALIZED`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_PRESENT_SRC_KHR`

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-VkAttachmentReferenceStencilLayout-sType-sType
  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ATTACHMENT_REFERENCE_STENCIL_LAYOUT`

- VUID-VkAttachmentReferenceStencilLayout-stencilLayout-parameter
  
  `stencilLayout` must be a valid `VkImageLayout` value

The `VkSubpassDependency2` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkSubpassDependency2 {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    uint32_t srcSubpass;
    uint32_t dstSubpass;
    VkPipelineStageFlags srcStageMask;
    VkPipelineStageFlags dstStageMask;
    VkAccessFlags srcAccessMask;
    VkAccessFlags dstAccessMask;
    VkDependencyFlags dependencyFlags;
    int32_t viewOffset;
} VkSubpassDependency2;

or the equivalent

// Provided by VK_KHR_create_renderpass2
typedef VkSubpassDependency2 VkSubpassDependency2KHR;

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **srcSubpass** is the subpass index of the first subpass in the dependency, or **VK_SUBPASS_EXTERNAL**.
- **dstSubpass** is the subpass index of the second subpass in the dependency, or **VK_SUBPASS_EXTERNAL**.
- **srcStageMask** is a bitmask of **VkPipelineStageFlagBits** specifying the source stage mask.
- **dstStageMask** is a bitmask of **VkPipelineStageFlagBits** specifying the destination stage mask.
- **srcAccessMask** is a bitmask of **VkAccessFlagBits** specifying a source access mask.
- **dstAccessMask** is a bitmask of **VkAccessFlagBits** specifying a destination access mask.
- **dependencyFlags** is a bitmask of **VkDependencyFlagBits**.
- **viewOffset** controls which views in the source subpass the views in the destination subpass depend on.

Parameters defined by this structure with the same name as those in **VkSubpassDependency** have the identical effect to those parameters.

**viewOffset** has the same effect for the described subpass dependency as **VkRenderPassMultiviewCreateInfo::pViewOffsets** has on each corresponding subpass dependency.

If an instance of **VkMemoryBarrier2KHR** is included in the **pNext** chain, **srcStageMask**, **dstStageMask**, **srcAccessMask**, and **dstAccessMask** parameters are ignored. The synchronization and access scopes instead are defined by the parameters of **VkMemoryBarrier2KHR**.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkSubpassDependency2-srcStageMask-03080**
  If the **geometry shaders** feature is not enabled, **srcStageMask** must not contain **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT**

- **VUID-VkSubpassDependency2-dstStageMask-03081**
  If the **geometry shaders** feature is not enabled, **dstStageMask** must not contain **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT**

- **VUID-VkSubpassDependency2-srcStageMask-03082**
  If the **tessellation shaders** feature is not enabled, **srcStageMask** must not contain **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT** or **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT**

- **VUID-VkSubpassDependency2-dstStageMask-03083**
  If the **tessellation shaders** feature is not enabled, **dstStageMask** must not contain **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT** or **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT**

- **VUID-VkSubpassDependency2-srcSubpass-03084**
  **srcSubpass** must be less than or equal to **dstSubpass**, unless one of them is **VK_SUBPASS_EXTERNAL**, to avoid cyclic dependencies and ensure a valid execution order

- **VUID-VkSubpassDependency2-srcSubpass-03085**
  **srcSubpass** and **dstSubpass** must not both be equal to **VK_SUBPASS_EXTERNAL**

- **VUID-VkSubpassDependency2-srcSubpass-03087**
  If **srcSubpass** is equal to **dstSubpass** and not all of the stages in **srcStageMask** and **dstStageMask** are framebuffer-space stages, the logically latest pipeline stage in **srcStageMask** must be logically earlier than or equal to the logically earliest pipeline stage in **dstStageMask**

- **VUID-VkSubpassDependency2-srcAccessMask-03088**
  Any access flag included in **srcAccessMask** must be supported by one of the pipeline stages in **srcStageMask**, as specified in the table of supported access types

- **VUID-VkSubpassDependency2-dstAccessMask-03089**
  Any access flag included in **dstAccessMask** must be supported by one of the pipeline stages in **dstStageMask**, as specified in the table of supported access types

- **VUID-VkSubpassDependency2-dependencyFlags-03090**
  If **dependencyFlags** includes **VK_DEPENDENCY_VIEW_LOCAL_BIT**, **srcSubpass** must not be equal to **VK_SUBPASS_EXTERNAL**

- **VUID-VkSubpassDependency2-dependencyFlags-03091**
  If **dependencyFlags** includes **VK_DEPENDENCY_VIEW_LOCAL_BIT**, **dstSubpass** must not be equal to **VK_SUBPASS_EXTERNAL**

- **VUID-VkSubpassDependency2-srcSubpass-02245**
  If **srcSubpass** equals **dstSubpass**, and **srcStageMask** and **dstStageMask** both include a framebuffer-space stage, then dependencyFlags must include **VK_DEPENDENCY_BY_REGION_BIT**

- **VUID-VkSubpassDependency2-viewOffset-02530**
  If **viewOffset** is not equal to 0, **srcSubpass** must not be equal to **dstSubpass**

- **VUID-VkSubpassDependency2-dependencyFlags-03092**
If `dependencyFlags` does not include `VK_DEPENDENCY_VIEW_LOCAL_BIT`, `viewOffset` must be 0.

- VUID-VkSubpassDependency2-synchronization2-04988
  - If the synchronization2 feature is not enabled, `srcStageMask` must not be 0

- VUID-VkSubpassDependency2-synchronization2-04989
  - If the synchronization2 feature is not enabled, `dstStageMask` must not be 0

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkSubpassDependency2-sType-sType
  - `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SUBPASS_DEPENDENCY_2`

- VUID-VkSubpassDependency2-pNext-pNext
  - `pNext` must be `NULL` or a pointer to a valid instance of `VkMemoryBarrier2KHR`

- VUID-VkSubpassDependency2-sType-unique
  - The `sType` value of each struct in the `pNext` chain must be unique

- VUID-VkSubpassDependency2-srcStageMask-parameter
  - `srcStageMask` must be a valid combination of `VkPipelineStageFlagBits` values

- VUID-VkSubpassDependency2-dstStageMask-parameter
  - `dstStageMask` must be a valid combination of `VkPipelineStageFlagBits` values

- VUID-VkSubpassDependency2-srcAccessMask-parameter
  - `srcAccessMask` must be a valid combination of `VkAccessFlagBits` values

- VUID-VkSubpassDependency2-dstAccessMask-parameter
  - `dstAccessMask` must be a valid combination of `VkAccessFlagBits` values

- VUID-VkSubpassDependency2-dependencyFlags-parameter
  - `dependencyFlags` must be a valid combination of `VkDependencyFlagBits` values

To destroy a render pass, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkDestroyRenderPass(
    VkDevice device, 
    VkRenderPass renderPass, 
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator);
```

- `device` is the logical device that destroys the render pass.
- `renderPass` is the handle of the render pass to destroy.
- `pAllocator` controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkDestroyRenderPass-renderPass-00873
  All submitted commands that refer to renderPass must have completed execution

- VUID-vkDestroyRenderPass-renderPass-00874
  If VkAllocationCallbacks were provided when renderPass was created, a compatible set of callbacks must be provided here

- VUID-vkDestroyRenderPass-renderPass-00875
  If no VkAllocationCallbacks were provided when renderPass was created, pAllocator must be NULL

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkDestroyRenderPass-device-parameter
  device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- VUID-vkDestroyRenderPass-renderPass-parameter
  If renderPass is not VK_NULL_HANDLE, renderPass must be a valid VkRenderPass handle

- VUID-vkDestroyRenderPass-pAllocator-parameter
  If pAllocator is not NULL, pAllocator must be a valid pointer to a valid VkAllocationCallbacks structure

- VUID-vkDestroyRenderPass-renderPass-parent
  If renderPass is a valid handle, it must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from device

Host Synchronization

- Host access to renderPass must be externally synchronized

8.2. Render Pass Compatibility

Framebuffers and graphics pipelines are created based on a specific render pass object. They must only be used with that render pass object, or one compatible with it.

Two attachment references are compatible if they have matching format and sample count, or are both VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED or the pointer that would contain the reference is NULL.

Two arrays of attachment references are compatible if all corresponding pairs of attachments are compatible. If the arrays are of different lengths, attachment references not present in the smaller array are treated as VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED.

Two render passes are compatible if their corresponding color, input, resolve, and depth/stencil attachment references are compatible and if they are otherwise identical except for:
• Initial and final image layout in attachment descriptions
• Load and store operations in attachment descriptions
• Image layout in attachment references

As an additional special case, if two render passes have a single subpass, the resolve attachment reference and depth/stencil resolve mode compatibility requirements are ignored.

A framebuffer is compatible with a render pass if it was created using the same render pass or a compatible render pass.

8.3. Framebuffers

Render passes operate in conjunction with framebuffers. Framebuffers represent a collection of specific memory attachments that a render pass instance uses.

Framebuffers are represented by VkFramebuffer handles:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VK_DEFINE_NON_DISPATCHABLE_HANDLE(VkFramebuffer)
```

To create a framebuffer, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkCreateFramebuffer(
    VkDevice              device,      
    const VkFramebufferCreateInfo* pCreateInfo,  
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator,    
    VkFramebuffer*        pFramebuffer);
```

• `device` is the logical device that creates the framebuffer.
• `pCreateInfo` is a pointer to a VkFramebufferCreateInfo structure describing additional information about framebuffer creation.
• `pAllocator` controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
• `pFramebuffer` is a pointer to a VkFramebuffer handle in which the resulting framebuffer object is returned.

**Valid Usage**

• VUID-vkCreateFramebuffer-pCreateInfo-02777
  If `pCreateInfo->flags` does not include VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT, and `attachmentCount` is not 0, each element of `pCreateInfo->pAttachments` must have been created on `device`
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCreateFramebuffer-device-parameter
  
  **device must** be a valid **VkDevice** handle

- VUID-vkCreateFramebuffer-pCreateInfo-parameter
  
  **pCreateInfo must** be a valid pointer to a valid **VkFramebufferCreateInfo** structure

- VUID-vkCreateFramebuffer-pAllocator-parameter
  
  If **pAllocator** is not **NULL**, **pAllocator must** be a valid pointer to a valid **VkAllocationCallbacks** structure

- VUID-vkCreateFramebuffer-pFramebuffer-parameter
  
  **pFramebuffer must** be a valid pointer to a **VkFramebuffer** handle

Return Codes

**Success**

- VK_SUCCESS

**Failure**

- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY

The **VkFramebufferCreateInfo** structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkFramebufferCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkFramebufferCreateFlags flags;
    VkRenderPass renderPass;
    uint32_t attachmentCount;
    const VkImageView* pAttachments;
    uint32_t width;
    uint32_t height;
    uint32_t layers;
} VkFramebufferCreateInfo;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **flags** is a bitmask of **VkFramebufferCreateFlagBits**
- **renderPass** is a render pass defining what render passes the framebuffer will be compatible with. See **Render Pass Compatibility** for details.
- **attachmentCount** is the number of attachments.
• **pAttachments** is a pointer to an array of **VkImageView** handles, each of which will be used as the corresponding attachment in a render pass instance. If **flags** includes **VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT**, this parameter is ignored.

• **width**, **height** and **layers** define the dimensions of the framebuffer. If the render pass uses multiview, then **layers must** be one and each attachment requires a number of layers that is greater than the maximum bit index set in the view mask in the subpasses in which it is used.

Other than the exceptions listed below, applications **must** ensure that all accesses to memory that backs image subresources used as attachments in a given renderpass instance either happen-before the **load operations** for those attachments, or happen-after the **store operations** for those attachments.

The exceptions to the general rule are:

• For depth/stencil attachments, an aspect **can** be used separately as attachment and non-attachment if both accesses are read-only.

• For depth/stencil attachments, each aspect **can** be used separately as attachment and non-attachment as long as the non-attachment accesses are also via an image subresource in either the **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL** layout or the **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL** layout, and the attachment resource uses whichever of those two layouts the image accesses do not.

Use of non-attachment aspects in these cases is only well defined if the attachment is used in the subpass where the non-attachment access is being made, or the layout of the image subresource is constant throughout the entire render pass instance, including the **initialLayout** and **finalLayout**.

---

**Note**

These restrictions mean that the render pass has full knowledge of all uses of all of the attachments, so that the implementation is able to make correct decisions about when and how to perform layout transitions, when to overlap execution of subpasses, etc.

It is legal for a subpass to use no color or depth/stencil attachments, either because it has no attachment references or because all of them are **VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED**. This kind of subpass **can** use shader side effects such as image stores and atomics to produce an output. In this case, the subpass continues to use the **width**, **height**, and **layers** of the framebuffer to define the dimensions of the rendering area, and the **rasterizationSamples** from each pipeline's **VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo** to define the number of samples used in rasterization; however, if **VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures::variableMultisampleRate** is **VK_FALSE**, then all pipelines to be bound with the subpass **must** have the same value for **VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo::rasterizationSamples**.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-attachmentCount-00876**
  
  attachmentCount must be equal to the attachment count specified in renderPass.

- **VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-flags-02778**
  
  If flags does not include VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT, and attachmentCount is not 0, pAttachments must be a valid pointer to an array of attachmentCount valid VkImageView handles.

- **VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-pAttachments-00877**
  
  If flags does not include VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT, each element of pAttachments that is used as a color attachment or resolve attachment by renderPass must have been created with a usage value including VK_IMAGE_USAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT.

- **VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-pAttachments-02633**
  
  If flags does not include VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT, each element of pAttachments that is used as a depth/stencil attachment by renderPass must have been created with a usage value including VK_IMAGE_USAGE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT.

- **VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-pAttachments-02634**
  
  If flags does not include VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT, each element of pAttachments that is used as a depth/stencil resolve attachment by renderPass must have been created with a usage value including VK_IMAGE_USAGE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT.

- **VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-pAttachments-00879**
  
  If flags does not include VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT, each element of pAttachments that is used as an input attachment by renderPass must have been created with a VkImageCreateInfo::width greater than or equal to width.

- **VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-pAttachments-00880**
  
  If flags does not include VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT, each element of pAttachments must have been created with a VkFormat value that matches the VkFormat specified by the corresponding VkAttachmentDescription in renderPass.

- **VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-pAttachments-00881**
  
  If flags does not include VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT, each element of pAttachments must have been created with a samples value that matches the samples value specified by the corresponding VkAttachmentDescription in renderPass.

- **VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-flags-04533**
  
  If flags does not include VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT, each element of pAttachments that is used as an input, color, resolve, or depth/stencil attachment by renderPass must have been created with a VkImageCreateInfo::width greater than or equal to width.

- **VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-flags-04534**
  
  If flags does not include VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT, each element of pAttachments that is used as an input, color, resolve, or depth/stencil attachment by renderPass must have been created with a VkImageCreateInfo::height greater than or equal to height.
If flags does not include VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT, each element of pAttachments that is used as an input, color, resolve, or depth/stencil attachment by renderPass must have been created with a VkImageViewCreateInfo
::subresourceRange.layerCount greater than or equal to layers

- **VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-renderPass-04536**
  If renderPass was specified with non-zero view masks, each element of pAttachments that is used as an input, color, resolve, or depth/stencil attachment by renderPass must have a layerCount greater than the index of the most significant bit set in any of those view masks

- **VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-flags-04537**
  If flags does not include VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT, and renderPass was specified with non-zero view masks, each element of pAttachments that is used as a fragment shading rate attachment by renderPass must have a layerCount that is either 1, or greater than the index of the most significant bit set in any of those view masks

- **VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-flags-04538**
  If flags does not include VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT, and renderPass was not specified with non-zero view masks, each element of pAttachments that is used as a fragment shading rate attachment by renderPass must have a layerCount that is either 1, or greater than layers

- **VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-flags-04539**
  If flags does not include VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT, an element of pAttachments that is used as a fragment shading rate attachment must have a width at least as large as [width / texelWidth], where texelWidth is the largest value of shadingRateAttachmentTexelSize.width in a VkFragmentShadingRateAttachmentInfoKHR which references that attachment

- **VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-flags-04540**
  If flags does not include VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT, an element of pAttachments that is used as a fragment shading rate attachment must have a height at least as large as [height / texelHeight], where texelHeight is the largest value of shadingRateAttachmentTexelSize.height in a VkFragmentShadingRateAttachmentInfoKHR which references that attachment

- **VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-pAttachments-00883**
  If flags does not include VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT, each element of pAttachments must only specify a single mip level

- **VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-pAttachments-00884**
  If flags does not include VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT, each element of pAttachments must have been created with the identity swizzle

- **VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-width-00885**
  width must be greater than 0

- **VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-width-00886**
  width must be less than or equal to VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxFramebufferWidth

- **VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-height-00887**
  height must be greater than 0

- **VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-height-00888**
height must be less than or equal to VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxFramebufferHeight

- VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-layers-00889
  layers must be greater than 0

- VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-layers-00890
  layers must be less than or equal to VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxFramebufferLayers

If renderPass was specified with non-zero view masks, layers must be 1

- VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-pAttachments-00891
  If flags does not include VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT, each element of pAttachments that is a 2D or 2D array image view taken from a 3D image must not be a depth/stencil format

- VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-flags-03189
  If the imageless framebuffer feature is not enabled, flags must not include VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT

- VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-flags-03190
  If flags includes VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT, the pNext chain must include an instance of VkFramebufferAttachmentsCreateInfo

- VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-flags-03191
  If flags includes VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT, the attachmentImageInfoCount member of an instance of VkFramebufferAttachmentsCreateInfo in the pNext chain must be equal to either zero or attachmentCount

- VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-flags-04541
  If flags includes VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT, the width member of any element of the pAttachmentImageInfos member of an instance of VkFramebufferAttachmentsCreateInfo in the pNext chain that is used as an input, color, resolve or depth/stencil attachment in renderPass must be greater than or equal to width

- VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-flags-04542
  If flags includes VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT, the height member of any element of the pAttachmentImageInfos member of an instance of VkFramebufferAttachmentsCreateInfo in the pNext chain that is used as a fragment shading rate attachment must be greater than or equal to \( \left\lceil \frac{\text{width}}{\text{texelWidth}} \right\rceil \), where texelWidth is the largest value of shadingRateAttachmentTexelSize.width in a VkFragmentShadingRateAttachmentInfoKHR which references that attachment

- VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-flags-04543
  If flags includes VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT, the width member of any element of the pAttachmentImageInfos member of an instance of VkFramebufferAttachmentsCreateInfo in the pNext chain that is used as a fragment shading rate attachment must be greater than or equal to \( \left\lceil \frac{\text{height}}{\text{texelHeight}} \right\rceil \), where texelHeight is the largest value of shadingRateAttachmentTexelSize.height in a VkFragmentShadingRateAttachmentInfoKHR which references that attachment.
**VkFragmentShadingRateAttachmentInfoKHR** which references that attachment

- **VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-flags-04545**
  If `flags` includes `VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT`, the `layerCount` member of any element of the `pAttachmentImageInfos` member of an instance of `VkFramebufferAttachmentsCreateInfo` in the `pNext` chain that is used as a fragment shading rate attachment must be either 1, or greater than or equal to `layers`

- **VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-flags-04587**
  If `flags` includes `VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT`, and `renderPass` was specified with non-zero view masks, each element of `pAttachments` that is used as a fragment shading rate attachment by `renderPass` must have a `layerCount` that is either 1, or greater than the index of the most significant bit set in any of those view masks

- **VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-renderPass-03198**
  If multiview is enabled for `renderPass`, and `flags` includes `VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT`, the `layerCount` member of any element of the `attachmentImageInfos` member of a `VkFramebufferAttachmentsCreateInfo` structure included in the `pNext` chain used as a fragment shading rate attachment in `renderPass` must be greater than the maximum bit index set in the view mask in the subpasses in which it is used in `renderPass`

- **VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-flags-04546**
  If multiview is not enabled for `renderPass`, and `flags` includes `VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT`, the `layerCount` member of any element of the `attachmentImageInfos` member of a `VkFramebufferAttachmentsCreateInfo` structure included in the `pNext` chain used as a fragment shading rate attachment in `renderPass` must be greater than or equal to `layers`

- **VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-flags-04547**
  If `flags` includes `VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT`, the `usage` member of any element of the `attachmentImageInfos` member of a `VkFramebufferAttachmentsCreateInfo` structure included in the `pNext` chain that refers to an attachment used as a color attachment or resolve attachment by `renderPass` must include `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT`

- **VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-flags-03201**
  If `flags` includes `VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT`, the `usage` member of any element of the `attachmentImageInfos` member of a `VkFramebufferAttachmentsCreateInfo` structure included in the `pNext` chain that refers to an attachment used as a depth/stencil attachment by `renderPass` must include `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT`

- **VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-flags-03202**
  If `flags` includes `VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT`, the `usage` member of any element of the `attachmentImageInfos` member of a `VkFramebufferAttachmentsCreateInfo` structure included in the `pNext` chain that refers to an attachment used as a depth/stencil resolve attachment by `renderPass` must include `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT`
VK_IMAGE_USAGE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT

- VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-flags-03204
  If flags includes VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT, the usage member of any element of the pAttachmentImageInfos member of a VkFramebufferAttachmentsCreateInfo structure included in the pNext chain that refers to an attachment used as an input attachment by renderPass must include VK_IMAGE_USAGE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT_BIT

- VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-flags-03205
  If flags includes VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT, at least one element of the pViewFormats member of any element of the pAttachmentImageInfos member of a VkFramebufferAttachmentsCreateInfo structure included in the pNext chain must be equal to the corresponding value of VkAttachmentDescription::format used to create renderPass

- VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-flags-04113
  If flags does not include VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT, each element of pAttachments must have been created with VkImageViewCreateInfo::viewType not equal to VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_3D

- VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-flags-04548
  If flags does not include VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT, each element of pAttachments that is used as a fragment shading rate attachment by renderPass must have been created with a usage value including VK_IMAGE_USAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-flags-04549
  If flags includes VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT, the usage member of any element of the pAttachmentImageInfos member of a VkFramebufferAttachmentsCreateInfo structure included in the pNext chain that refers to an attachment used as a fragment shading rate attachment by renderPass must include VK_IMAGE_USAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_BIT_KHR
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_INFO

- VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-pNext-pNext
  pNext must be NULL or a pointer to a valid instance of VkFramebufferAttachmentsCreateInfo

- VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-sType-unique
  The sType value of each struct in the pNext chain must be unique

- VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-flags-parameter
  flags must be a valid combination of VkFramebufferCreateFlagBits values

- VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-renderPass-parameter
  renderPass must be a valid VkRenderPass handle

- VUID-VkFramebufferCreateInfo-commonparent
  Both of renderPass, and the elements of pAttachments that are valid handles of non-ignored parameters must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same VkDevice

The VkFramebufferAttachmentsCreateInfo structure is defined as:

typedef struct VkFramebufferAttachmentsCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    uint32_t attachmentImageInfoCount;
    const VkFramebufferAttachmentImageInfo* pAttachmentImageInfos;
} VkFramebufferAttachmentsCreateInfo;

or the equivalent

// Provided by VK_KHR_imageless_framebuffer
typedef VkFramebufferAttachmentsCreateInfo VkFramebufferAttachmentsCreateInfoKHR;

- sType is the type of this structure.
- pNext is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- attachmentImageInfoCount is the number of attachments being described.
- pAttachmentImageInfos is a pointer to an array of VkFramebufferAttachmentImageInfo instances, each of which describes a number of parameters of the corresponding attachment in a render pass instance.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkFramebufferAttachmentsCreateInfo-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_FRAMEBUFFER_ATTACHMENTS_CREATE_INFO

- VUID-VkFramebufferAttachmentsCreateInfo-pAttachmentImageInfos-parameter
  If attachmentImageInfoCount is not 0, pAttachmentImageInfos must be a valid pointer to an array of attachmentImageInfoCount valid VkFramebufferAttachmentImageInfo structures

The VkFramebufferAttachmentImageInfo structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkFramebufferAttachmentImageInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkImageCreateFlags flags;
    VkImageUsageFlags usage;
    uint32_t width;
    uint32_t height;
    uint32_t layerCount;
    uint32_t viewFormatCount;
    const VkFormat* pViewFormats;
} VkFramebufferAttachmentImageInfo;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_imageless_framebuffer
typedef VkFramebufferAttachmentImageInfo VkFramebufferAttachmentImageInfoKHR;
```

- sType is the type of this structure.
- pNext is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- flags is a bitmask of VkImageCreateFlagBits, matching the value of VkImageCreateInfo::flags used to create an image that will be used with this framebuffer.
- usage is a bitmask of VkImageUsageFlagBits, matching the value of VkImageCreateInfo::usage used to create an image used with this framebuffer.
- width is the width of the image view used for rendering.
- height is the height of the image view used for rendering.
- layerCount is the number of array layers of the image view used for rendering.
- viewFormatCount is the number of entries in the pViewFormats array, matching the value of VkImageFormatListCreateInfo::viewFormatCount used to create an image used with this framebuffer.
- pViewFormats is a pointer to an array of VkFormat values specifying all of the formats which can be used when creating views of the image, matching the value of VkImageFormatListCreateInfo::pViewFormats used to create an image used with this
Images that can be used with the framebuffer when beginning a render pass, as specified by `VkRenderPassAttachmentBeginInfo`, must be created with parameters that are identical to those specified here.

```
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkFramebufferCreateFlagBits {
    VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT = 0x00000001,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_imageless_framebuffer
    VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT_KHR = VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT,
} VkFramebufferCreateFlagBits;
```

- **VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT** specifies that image views are not specified, and only attachment compatibility information will be provided via a `VkFramebufferAttachmentImageInfo` structure.

```
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkFramebufferCreateFlags;
```

`VkFramebufferCreateFlags` is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more `VkFramebufferCreateFlagBits`.

To destroy a framebuffer, call:
```c
void vkDestroyFramebuffer(
    VkDevice device,           
    VkFramebuffer framebuffer, 
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator);
```

- `device` is the logical device that destroys the framebuffer.
- `framebuffer` is the handle of the framebuffer to destroy.
- `pAllocator` controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkDestroyFramebuffer-framebuffer-00892**
  All submitted commands that refer to `framebuffer` must have completed execution.

- **VUID-vkDestroyFramebuffer-framebuffer-00893**
  If `VkAllocationCallbacks` were provided when `framebuffer` was created, a compatible set of callbacks must be provided here.

- **VUID-vkDestroyFramebuffer-framebuffer-00894**
  If no `VkAllocationCallbacks` were provided when `framebuffer` was created, `pAllocator` must be NULL.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkDestroyFramebuffer-device-parameter**
  `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle.

- **VUID-vkDestroyFramebuffer-framebuffer-parameter**
  If `framebuffer` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, `framebuffer` must be a valid `VkFramebuffer` handle.

- **VUID-vkDestroyFramebuffer-pAllocator-parameter**
  If `pAllocator` is not NULL, `pAllocator` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkAllocationCallbacks` structure.

- **VUID-vkDestroyFramebuffer-framebuffer-parent**
  If `framebuffer` is a valid handle, it must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from `device`.

### Host Synchronization

- Host access to `framebuffer` must be externally synchronized.
8.4. Render Pass Commands

An application records the commands for a render pass instance one subpass at a time, by beginning a render pass instance, iterating over the subpasses to record commands for that subpass, and then ending the render pass instance.

To begin a render pass instance, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkCmdBeginRenderPass(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    const VkRenderPassBeginInfo* pRenderPassBegin,
    VkSubpassContents contents);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer in which to record the command.
- `pRenderPassBegin` is a pointer to a `VkRenderPassBeginInfo` structure specifying the render pass to begin an instance of, and the framebuffer the instance uses.
- `contents` is a `VkSubpassContents` value specifying how the commands in the first subpass will be provided.

After beginning a render pass instance, the command buffer is ready to record the commands for the first subpass of that render pass.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass-initialLayout-00895
  If any of the initialLayout or finalLayout member of the VkAttachmentDescription structures or the layout member of the VkAttachmentReference structures specified when creating the render pass specified in the renderPass member of pRenderPassBegin is VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL then the corresponding attachment image view of the framebuffer specified in the framebuffer member of pRenderPassBegin must have been created with a usage value including VK_IMAGE_USAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT

- VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass-initialLayout-01758
  If any of the initialLayout or finalLayout member of the VkAttachmentDescription structures or the layout member of the VkAttachmentReference structures specified when creating the render pass specified in the renderPass member of pRenderPassBegin is VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL, or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL, then the corresponding attachment image view of the framebuffer specified in the framebuffer member of pRenderPassBegin must have been created with a usage value including VK_IMAGE_USAGE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT

- VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass-initialLayout-02842
  If any of the initialLayout or finalLayout member of the VkAttachmentDescription structures or the layout member of the VkAttachmentReference structures specified when creating the render pass specified in the renderPass member of pRenderPassBegin is VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL, or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL, or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL then the corresponding attachment image view of the framebuffer specified in the framebuffer member of pRenderPassBegin must have been created with a usage value including VK_IMAGE_USAGE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT

- VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass-stencilInitialLayout-02843
  If any of the stencilInitialLayout or stencilFinalLayout member of the VkAttachmentDescriptionStencilLayout structures or the stencilLayout member of the VkAttachmentReferenceStencilLayout structures specified when creating the render pass specified in the renderPass member of pRenderPassBegin is VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL, or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL then the corresponding attachment image view of the framebuffer specified in the framebuffer member of pRenderPassBegin must have been created with a usage value including VK_IMAGE_USAGE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT

- VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass-initialLayout-00897
  If any of the initialLayout or finalLayout member of the VkAttachmentDescription structures or the layout member of the VkAttachmentReference structures specified when creating the render pass specified in the renderPass member of pRenderPassBegin is VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHADER_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL then the corresponding attachment image view of the framebuffer specified in the framebuffer member of pRenderPassBegin must have been created with a usage value including VK_IMAGE_USAGE_SHADER_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL
been created with a usage value including `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_SAMPLED_BIT` or `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT_BIT`

- **VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass-initialLayout-00898**
  If any of the `initialLayout` or `finalLayout` member of the `VkAttachmentDescription` structures or the `layout` member of the `VkAttachmentReference` structures specified when creating the render pass specified in the `renderPass` member of `pRenderPassBegin` is `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_TRANSFER_SRC_OPTIMAL` then the corresponding attachment image view of the framebuffer specified in the `framebuffer` member of `pRenderPassBegin` must have been created with a usage value including `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT`

- **VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass-initialLayout-00899**
  If any of the `initialLayout` or `finalLayout` member of the `VkAttachmentDescription` structures or the `layout` member of the `VkAttachmentReference` structures specified when creating the render pass specified in the `renderPass` member of `pRenderPassBegin` is `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_TRANSFER_DST_OPTIMAL` then the corresponding attachment image view of the framebuffer specified in the `framebuffer` member of `pRenderPassBegin` must have been created with a usage value including `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT`

- **VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass-initialLayout-00900**
  If the `initialLayout` member of any of the `VkAttachmentDescription` structures specified when creating the render pass specified in the `renderPass` member of `pRenderPassBegin` is not `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_UNDEFINED`, then each such `initialLayout` must be equal to the current layout of the corresponding attachment image subresource of the framebuffer specified in the `framebuffer` member of `pRenderPassBegin`

- **VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass-srcStageMask-00901**
  The `srcStageMask` and `dstStageMask` members of any element of the `pDependencies` member of `VkRenderPassCreateInfo` used to create `renderPass` must be supported by the capabilities of the queue family identified by the `queueFamilyIndex` member of the `VkCommandPoolCreateInfo` used to create the command pool which `commandBuffer` was allocated from

- **VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass-framebuffer-02532**
  For any attachment in `framebuffer` that is used by `renderPass` and is bound to memory locations that are also bound to another attachment used by `renderPass`, and if at least one of those uses causes either attachment to be written to, both attachments must have had the `VK_ATTACHMENT_DESCRIPTION_MAY_ALIAS_BIT` set
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass-commandBuffer-parameter
  commandBuffer must be a valid VkCommandBuffer handle

- VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass-pRenderPassBegin-parameter
  pRenderPassBegin must be a valid pointer to a valid VkRenderPassBeginInfo structure

- VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass-contents-parameter
  contents must be a valid VkSubpassContents value

- VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass-commandBuffer-recording
  commandBuffer must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must support graphics operations

- VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass-renderpass
  This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance

- VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass-bufferlevel
  commandBuffer must be a primary VkCommandBuffer

Host Synchronization

- Host access to commandBuffer must be externally synchronized

- Host access to the VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Alternatively to begin a render pass, call:

```c
void vkCmdBeginRenderPass2(
    VkCommandBuffer
    commandBuffer,
    const VkRenderPassBeginInfo* pRenderPassBegin,
    const VkSubpassBeginInfo* pSubpassBeginInfo);
```
// Provided by VK_KHR_create_renderpass2
void vkCmdBeginRenderPass2KHR(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    const VkRenderPassBeginInfo* pRenderPassBegin,
    const VkSubpassBeginInfo* pSubpassBeginInfo);

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer in which to record the command.
- `pRenderPassBegin` is a pointer to a `VkRenderPassBeginInfo` structure specifying the render pass to begin an instance of, and the framebuffer the instance uses.
- `pSubpassBeginInfo` is a pointer to a `VkSubpassBeginInfo` structure containing information about the subpass which is about to begin rendering.

After beginning a render pass instance, the command buffer is ready to record the commands for the first subpass of that render pass.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass2-framebuffer-02779**
  Both the framebuffer and renderPass members of pRenderPassBegin must have been created on the same VkDevice that commandBuffer was allocated on.

- **VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass2-initialLayout-03094**
  If any of the initialLayout or finalLayout member of the VkAttachmentDescription structures or the layout member of the VkAttachmentReference structures specified when creating the render pass specified in the renderPass member of pRenderPassBegin is VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL then the corresponding attachment image view of the framebuffer specified in the framebuffer member of pRenderPassBegin must have been created with a usage value including VK_IMAGE_USAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT.

- **VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass2-initialLayout-03096**
  If any of the initialLayout or finalLayout member of the VkAttachmentDescription structures or the layout member of the VkAttachmentReference structures specified when creating the render pass specified in the renderPass member of pRenderPassBegin is VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL, or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL then the corresponding attachment image view of the framebuffer specified in the framebuffer member of pRenderPassBegin must have been created with a usage value including VK_IMAGE_USAGE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT.

- **VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass2-initialLayout-02844**
  If any of the initialLayout or finalLayout member of the VkAttachmentDescription structures or the layout member of the VkAttachmentReference structures specified when creating the render pass specified in the renderPass member of pRenderPassBegin is VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL, or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL then the corresponding attachment image view of the framebuffer specified in the framebuffer member of pRenderPassBegin must have been created with a usage value including VK_IMAGE_USAGE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT.

- **VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass2-stencilInitialLayout-02845**
  If any of the stencilInitialLayout or stencilFinalLayout member of the VkAttachmentDescriptionStencilLayout structures or the stencilLayout member of the VkAttachmentReferenceStencilLayout structures specified when creating the render pass specified in the renderPass member of pRenderPassBegin is VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL, or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL then the corresponding attachment image view of the framebuffer specified in the framebuffer member of pRenderPassBegin must have been created with a usage value including VK_IMAGE_USAGE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT.

- **VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass2-initialLayout-03097**
  If any of the initialLayout or finalLayout member of the VkAttachmentDescription structures or the layout member of the VkAttachmentReference structures specified when creating the render pass specified in the renderPass member of pRenderPassBegin is VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL, or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL then the corresponding attachment image view of the framebuffer specified in the framebuffer member of pRenderPassBegin must have been created with a usage value including VK_IMAGE_USAGE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT.
creating the render pass specified in the `renderPass` member of `pRenderPassBegin` is `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHADER_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL` then the corresponding attachment image view of the framebuffer specified in the `framebuffer` member of `pRenderPassBegin` must have been created with a `usage` value including `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_SAMPLED_BIT` or `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT_BIT`

- **VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass2-initialLayout-03098**
  If any of the `initialLayout` or `finalLayout` member of the `VkAttachmentDescription` structures or the `layout` member of the `VkAttachmentReference` structures specified when creating the render pass specified in the `renderPass` member of `pRenderPassBegin` is `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_TRANSFER_SRC_OPTIMAL` then the corresponding attachment image view of the framebuffer specified in the `framebuffer` member of `pRenderPassBegin` must have been created with a `usage` value including `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT`

- **VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass2-initialLayout-03099**
  If any of the `initialLayout` or `finalLayout` member of the `VkAttachmentDescription` structures or the `layout` member of the `VkAttachmentReference` structures specified when creating the render pass specified in the `renderPass` member of `pRenderPassBegin` is `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_TRANSFER_DST_OPTIMAL` then the corresponding attachment image view of the framebuffer specified in the `framebuffer` member of `pRenderPassBegin` must have been created with a `usage` value including `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT`

- **VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass2-initialLayout-03100**
  If the `initialLayout` member of any of the `VkAttachmentDescription` structures specified when creating the render pass specified in the `renderPass` member of `pRenderPassBegin` is not `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_UNDEFINED`, then each such `initialLayout` must be equal to the current layout of the corresponding attachment image subresource of the framebuffer specified in the `framebuffer` member of `pRenderPassBegin`

- **VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass2-srcStageMask-03101**
  The `srcStageMask` and `dstStageMask` members of any element of the `pDependencies` member of `VkRenderPassCreateInfo` used to create `renderPass` must be supported by the capabilities of the queue family identified by the `queueFamilyIndex` member of the `VkCommandPoolCreateInfo` used to create the command pool which `commandBuffer` was allocated from

- **VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass2-framebuffer-02533**
  For any attachment in `framebuffer` that is used by `renderPass` and is bound to memory locations that are also bound to another attachment used by `renderPass`, and if at least one of those uses causes either attachment to be written to, both attachments must have had the `VK_ATTACHMENT_DESCRIPTION_MAY_ALIAS_BIT` set
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass2-commandBuffer-parameter
  commandBuffer must be a valid VkCommandBuffer handle

- VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass2-pRenderPassBegin-parameter
  pRenderPassBegin must be a valid pointer to a valid VkRenderPassBeginInfo structure

- VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass2-pSubpassBeginInfo-parameter
  pSubpassBeginInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid VkSubpassBeginInfo structure

- VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass2-commandBuffer-recording
  commandBuffer must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass2-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must support graphics operations

- VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass2-renderpass
  This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance

- VUID-vkCmdBeginRenderPass2-bufferlevel
  commandBuffer must be a primary VkCommandBuffer

Host Synchronization

- Host access to commandBuffer must be externally synchronized

- Host access to the VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The VkRenderPassBeginInfo structure is defined as:
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0

typedef struct VkRenderPassBeginInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkRenderPass renderPass;
    VkFramebuffer framebuffer;
    VkRect2D renderArea;
    uint32_t clearValueCount;
    const VkClearValue* pClearValues;
} VkRenderPassBeginInfo;

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `renderPass` is the render pass to begin an instance of.
- `framebuffer` is the framebuffer containing the attachments that are used with the render pass.
- `renderArea` is the render area that is affected by the render pass instance, and is described in more detail below.
- `clearValueCount` is the number of elements in `pClearValues`.
- `pClearValues` is a pointer to an array of `clearValueCount` `VkClearValue` structures that contains clear values for each attachment, if the attachment uses a `loadOp` value of `VK_ATTACHMENT_LOAD_OP_CLEAR` or if the attachment has a depth/stencil format and uses a `stencilLoadOp` value of `VK_ATTACHMENT_LOAD_OP_CLEAR`. The array is indexed by attachment number. Only elements corresponding to cleared attachments are used. Other elements of `pClearValues` are ignored.

`renderArea` is the render area that is affected by the render pass instance. The effects of attachment load, store and multisample resolve operations are restricted to the pixels whose x and y coordinates fall within the render area on all attachments. The render area extends to all layers of `framebuffer`. The application must ensure (using scissor if necessary) that all rendering is contained within the render area. The render area must be contained within the framebuffer dimensions.

When multiview is enabled, the resolve operation at the end of a subpass applies to all views in the view mask.

**Note**

There may be a performance cost for using a render area smaller than the framebuffer, unless it matches the render area granularity for the render pass.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkRenderPassBeginInfo-clearValueCount-00902**
  
  `clearValueCount` must be greater than the largest attachment index in `renderPass` that specifies a `loadOp` (or `stencilLoadOp`, if the attachment has a depth/stencil format) of `VK_ATTACHMENT_LOAD_OP_CLEAR`

- **VUID-VkRenderPassBeginInfo-clearValueCount-04962**
  
  If `clearValueCount` is not 0, `pClearValues` must be a valid pointer to an array of `clearValueCount` `VkClearValue` unions

- **VUID-VkRenderPassBeginInfo-renderPass-00904**
  
  `renderPass` must be compatible with the `renderPass` member of the `VkFramebufferCreateInfo` structure specified when creating `framebuffer`

- **VUID-VkRenderPassBeginInfo-pNext-02850**
  
  If the `pNext` chain does not contain `VkDeviceGroupRenderPassBeginInfo` or its `deviceRenderAreaCount` member is equal to 0, `renderArea.offset.x` must be greater than or equal to 0

- **VUID-VkRenderPassBeginInfo-pNext-02851**
  
  If the `pNext` chain does not contain `VkDeviceGroupRenderPassBeginInfo` or its `deviceRenderAreaCount` member is equal to 0, `renderArea.offset.y` must be greater than or equal to 0

- **VUID-VkRenderPassBeginInfo-pNext-02852**
  
  If the `pNext` chain does not contain `VkDeviceGroupRenderPassBeginInfo` or its `deviceRenderAreaCount` member is equal to 0, `renderArea.offset.x + renderArea.extent.width` must be less than or equal to `VkFramebufferCreateInfo::width` the `framebuffer` was created with

- **VUID-VkRenderPassBeginInfo-pNext-02853**
  
  If the `pNext` chain does not contain `VkDeviceGroupRenderPassBeginInfo` or its `deviceRenderAreaCount` member is equal to 0, `renderArea.offset.y + renderArea.extent.height` must be less than or equal to `VkFramebufferCreateInfo::height` the `framebuffer` was created with

- **VUID-VkRenderPassBeginInfo-pNext-02854**
  
  If the `pNext` chain contains `VkDeviceGroupRenderPassBeginInfo`, the `offset.x` member of each element of `pDeviceRenderAreas` must be greater than or equal to 0

- **VUID-VkRenderPassBeginInfo-pNext-02855**
  
  If the `pNext` chain contains `VkDeviceGroupRenderPassBeginInfo`, the `offset.y` member of each element of `pDeviceRenderAreas` must be greater than or equal to 0

- **VUID-VkRenderPassBeginInfo-pNext-02856**
  
  If the `pNext` chain contains `VkDeviceGroupRenderPassBeginInfo`, `offset.x + extent.width` of each element of `pDeviceRenderAreas` must be less than or equal to `VkFramebufferCreateInfo::width` the `framebuffer` was created with

- **VUID-VkRenderPassBeginInfo-pNext-02857**
  
  If the `pNext` chain contains `VkDeviceGroupRenderPassBeginInfo`, `offset.y + extent.height` of each element of `pDeviceRenderAreas` must be less than or equal to...
If framebuffer was created with a VkFramebufferCreateInfo::flags value that did not include VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT, and the pNext chain includes a VkRenderPassAttachmentBeginInfo structure, its attachmentCount must be zero.

If framebuffer was created with a VkFramebufferCreateInfo::flags value that included VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT, each element of the pAttachments member of a VkRenderPassAttachmentBeginInfo structure included in the pNext chain must have been created on the same VkDevice as framebuffer and renderPass.

If framebuffer was created with a VkFramebufferCreateInfo::flags value that included VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT, each element of the pAttachments member of a VkRenderPassAttachmentBeginInfo structure included in the pNext chain must be a VkImageView with an inherited usage equal to the usage member of the corresponding element of VkFramebufferAttachmentsCreateInfo::pAttachmentImageInfos used to create framebuffer.

If framebuffer was created with a VkFramebufferCreateInfo::flags value that included VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT, each element of the pAttachments member of a VkRenderPassAttachmentBeginInfo structure included in the pNext chain must be a VkImageView with a width equal to the width member of the corresponding element of VkFramebufferAttachmentsCreateInfo::pAttachmentImageInfos used to create framebuffer.

If framebuffer was created with a VkFramebufferCreateInfo::flags value that included VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT, each element of the pAttachments member of a VkRenderPassAttachmentBeginInfo structure included in the pNext chain must be a VkImageView with a height equal to the height member of the corresponding element of VkFramebufferAttachmentsCreateInfo::pAttachmentImageInfos used to create framebuffer.
The `VkRenderPassAttachmentBeginInfo` structure included in the `pNext` chain **must** be a `VkImageView` of an image created with a value of `VkImageViewCreateInfo`::`subresourceRange.layerCount` equal to the `layerCount` member of the corresponding element of `VkFramebufferAttachmentsCreateInfo`::`pAttachmentImageInfos` used to create framebuffer.

**VUID-VkRenderPassBeginInfo-framebuffer-03214**
If framebuffer was created with a `VkFramebufferCreateInfo`::`flags` value that included `VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT`, each element of the `pAttachments` member of a `VkRenderPassAttachmentBeginInfo` structure included in the `pNext` chain **must** be a `VkImageView` of an image created with a value of `VkImageFormatListCreateInfo`::`viewFormatCount` equal to the `viewFormatCount` member of the corresponding element of `VkFramebufferAttachmentsCreateInfo`::`pAttachmentImageInfos` used to create framebuffer.

**VUID-VkRenderPassBeginInfo-framebuffer-03215**
If framebuffer was created with a `VkFramebufferCreateInfo`::`flags` value that included `VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT`, each element of the `pAttachments` member of a `VkRenderPassAttachmentBeginInfo` structure included in the `pNext` chain **must** be a `VkImageView` of an image created with a set of elements in `VkImageFormatListCreateInfo`::`pViewFormats` equal to the set of elements in the `pViewFormats` member of the corresponding element of `VkFramebufferAttachmentsCreateInfo`::`pAttachmentImageInfos` used to create framebuffer.

**VUID-VkRenderPassBeginInfo-framebuffer-03216**
If framebuffer was created with a `VkFramebufferCreateInfo`::`flags` value that included `VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT`, each element of the `pAttachments` member of a `VkRenderPassAttachmentBeginInfo` structure included in the `pNext` chain **must** be a `VkImageView` of an image created with a value of `VkImageViewCreateInfo`::`format` equal to the corresponding value of `VkAttachmentDescription`::`format` in `renderPass`.

**VUID-VkRenderPassBeginInfo-framebuffer-03217**
If framebuffer was created with a `VkFramebufferCreateInfo`::`flags` value that included `VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT`, each element of the `pAttachments` member of a `VkRenderPassAttachmentBeginInfo` structure included in the `pNext` chain **must** be a `VkImageView` of an image created with a value of `VkImageCreateInfo`::`samples` equal to the corresponding value of `VkAttachmentDescription`::`samples` in `renderPass`. 
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkRenderPassBeginInfo-sType-sType**  
  *sType* must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RENDER_PASS_BEGIN_INFO`

- **VUID-VkRenderPassBeginInfo-pNext-pNext**  
  Each *pNext* member of any structure (including this one) in the *pNext* chain must be either NULL or a pointer to a valid instance of `VkDeviceGroupRenderPassBeginInfo` or `VkRenderPassAttachmentBeginInfo`

- **VUID-VkRenderPassBeginInfo-sType-unique**  
  The *sType* value of each struct in the *pNext* chain must be unique

- **VUID-VkRenderPassBeginInfo-renderPass-parameter**  
  *renderPass* must be a valid `VkRenderPass` handle

- **VUID-VkRenderPassBeginInfo-framebuffer-parameter**  
  *framebuffer* must be a valid `VkFramebuffer` handle

- **VUID-VkRenderPassBeginInfo-commonparent**  
  Both of *framebuffer*, and *renderPass* must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`

The `VkSubpassBeginInfo` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkSubpassBeginInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkSubpassContents contents;
} VkSubpassBeginInfo;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_create_renderpass2
typedef VkSubpassBeginInfo VkSubpassBeginInfoKHR;
```

- *sType* is the type of this structure.
- *pNext* is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- *contents* is a `VkSubpassContents` value specifying how the commands in the next subpass will be provided.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkSubpassBeginInfo-sType-sType**
  sType must be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SUBPASS_BEGIN_INFO**

- **VUID-VkSubpassBeginInfo-pNext-pNext**
  pNext must be **NULL**

- **VUID-VkSubpassBeginInfo-contents-parameter**
  contents must be a valid **VkSubpassContents** value

Possible values of `vkCmdBeginRenderPass::contents`, specifying how the commands in the first subpass will be provided, are:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkSubpassContents {
    VK_SUBPASS_CONTENTS_INLINE = 0,
    VK_SUBPASS_CONTENTS_SECONDARY_COMMAND_BUFFERS = 1,
} VkSubpassContents;
```

- **VK_SUBPASS_CONTENTS_INLINE** specifies that the contents of the subpass will be recorded inline in the primary command buffer, and secondary command buffers must not be executed within the subpass.

- **VK_SUBPASS_CONTENTS_SECONDARY_COMMAND_BUFFERS** specifies that the contents are recorded in secondary command buffers that will be called from the primary command buffer, and `vkCmdExecuteCommands` is the only valid command on the command buffer until `vkCmdNextSubpass` or `vkCmdEndRenderPass`.

If the pNext chain of `VkRenderPassBeginInfo` includes a `VkDeviceGroupRenderPassBeginInfo` structure, then that structure includes a device mask and set of render areas for the render pass instance.

The **VkDeviceGroupRenderPassBeginInfo** structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkDeviceGroupRenderPassBeginInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    uint32_t deviceMask;
    uint32_t deviceRenderAreaCount;
    const VkRect2D* pDeviceRenderAreas;
} VkDeviceGroupRenderPassBeginInfo;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_device_group
typedef VkDeviceGroupRenderPassBeginInfo VkDeviceGroupRenderPassBeginInfoKHR;
```
• **sType** is the type of this structure.
• **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• **deviceMask** is the device mask for the render pass instance.
• **deviceRenderAreaCount** is the number of elements in the **pDeviceRenderAreas** array.
• **pDeviceRenderAreas** is a pointer to an array of **VkRect2D** structures defining the render area for each physical device.

The **deviceMask** serves several purposes. It is an upper bound on the set of physical devices that can be used during the render pass instance, and the initial device mask when the render pass instance begins. In addition, commands transitioning to the next subpass in the render pass instance and commands ending the render pass instance, and, accordingly render pass attachment load, store, and resolve operations and subpass dependencies corresponding to the render pass instance, are executed on the physical devices included in the device mask provided here.

If **deviceRenderAreaCount** is not zero, then the elements of **pDeviceRenderAreas** override the value of **VkRenderPassBeginInfo::renderArea**, and provide a render area specific to each physical device. These render areas serve the same purpose as **VkRenderPassBeginInfo::renderArea**, including controlling the region of attachments that are cleared by **VK_ATTACHMENT_LOAD_OP_CLEAR** and that are resolved into resolve attachments.

If this structure is not present, the render pass instance's device mask is the value of **VkDeviceGroupCommandBufferBeginInfo::deviceMask**. If this structure is not present or if **deviceRenderAreaCount** is zero, **VkRenderPassBeginInfo::renderArea** is used for all physical devices.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkDeviceGroupRenderPassBeginInfo::deviceMask-00905**
  
  **deviceMask** must be a valid device mask value

- **VUID-VkDeviceGroupRenderPassBeginInfo::deviceMask-00906**
  
  **deviceMask** must not be zero

- **VUID-VkDeviceGroupRenderPassBeginInfo::deviceMask-00907**
  
  **deviceMask** must be a subset of the command buffer's initial device mask

- **VUID-VkDeviceGroupRenderPassBeginInfo::deviceRenderAreaCount-00908**
  
  **deviceRenderAreaCount** must either be zero or equal to the number of physical devices in the logical device

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkDeviceGroupRenderPassBeginInfo::sType-sType**
  
  **sType** must be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEVICE_GROUP_RENDER_PASS_BEGIN_INFO**

- **VUID-VkDeviceGroupRenderPassBeginInfo::pDeviceRenderAreas-parameter**
  
  If **deviceRenderAreaCount** is not 0, **pDeviceRenderAreas** must be a valid pointer to an array of **deviceRenderAreaCount** **VkRect2D** structures
The `VkRenderPassAttachmentBeginInfo` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkRenderPassAttachmentBeginInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    uint32_t attachmentCount;
    const VkImageView* pAttachments;
} VkRenderPassAttachmentBeginInfo;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_imageless_framebuffer
typedef VkRenderPassAttachmentBeginInfo VkRenderPassAttachmentBeginInfoKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `attachmentCount` is the number of attachments.
- `pAttachments` is a pointer to an array of `VkImageView` handles, each of which will be used as the corresponding attachment in the render pass instance.

### Valid Usage

- VUID-VkRenderPassAttachmentBeginInfo-pAttachments-03218
  Each element of `pAttachments` must only specify a single mip level

- VUID-VkRenderPassAttachmentBeginInfo-pAttachments-03219
  Each element of `pAttachments` must have been created with the identity swizzle

- VUID-VkRenderPassAttachmentBeginInfo-pAttachments-04114
  Each element of `pAttachments` must have been created with `VkImageViewCreateInfo`::`viewType` not equal to `VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_3D`

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkRenderPassAttachmentBeginInfo-sType-sType
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RENDER_PASS_ATTACHMENT.Begin_INFO`

- VUID-VkRenderPassAttachmentBeginInfo-pAttachments-parameter
  If `attachmentCount` is not 0, `pAttachments` must be a valid pointer to an array of `attachmentCount` valid `VkImageView` handles

To query the render area granularity, call:
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0

```c
void vkGetRenderAreaGranularity(
    VkDevice device, 
    VkRenderPass renderPass, 
    VkExtent2D* pGranularity);
```

- `device` is the logical device that owns the render pass.
- `renderPass` is a handle to a render pass.
- `pGranularity` is a pointer to a `VkExtent2D` structure in which the granularity is returned.

The conditions leading to an optimal `renderArea` are:

- the `offset.x` member in `renderArea` is a multiple of the `width` member of the returned `VkExtent2D` (the horizontal granularity).
- the `offset.y` member in `renderArea` is a multiple of the `height` member of the returned `VkExtent2D` (the vertical granularity).
- either the `extent.width` member in `renderArea` is a multiple of the horizontal granularity or `offset.x+extent.width` is equal to the `width` of the framebuffer in the `VkRenderPassBeginInfo`.
- either the `extent.height` member in `renderArea` is a multiple of the vertical granularity or `offset.y+extent.height` is equal to the `height` of the framebuffer in the `VkRenderPassBeginInfo`.

Subpass dependencies are not affected by the render area, and apply to the entire image subresources attached to the framebuffer as specified in the description of automatic layout transitions. Similarly, pipeline barriers are valid even if their effect extends outside the render area.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetRenderAreaGranularity-device-parameter
  `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle
- VUID-vkGetRenderAreaGranularity-renderPass-parameter
  `renderPass` must be a valid `VkRenderPass` handle
- VUID-vkGetRenderAreaGranularity-pGranularity-parameter
  `pGranularity` must be a valid pointer to a `VkExtent2D` structure
- VUID-vkGetRenderAreaGranularity-renderPass-parent
  `renderPass` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from `device`

To transition to the next subpass in the render pass instance after recording the commands for a subpass, call:
void vkCmdNextSubpass(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    VkSubpassContents contents);

- *commandBuffer* is the command buffer in which to record the command.
- *contents* specifies how the commands in the next subpass will be provided, in the same fashion as the corresponding parameter of `vkCmdBeginRenderPass`.

The subpass index for a render pass begins at zero when `vkCmdBeginRenderPass` is recorded, and increments each time `vkCmdNextSubpass` is recorded.

Moving to the next subpass automatically performs any multisample resolve operations in the subpass being ended. End-of-subpass multisample resolves are treated as color attachment writes for the purposes of synchronization. This applies to resolve operations for both color and depth/stencil attachments. That is, they are considered to execute in the `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT` pipeline stage and their writes are synchronized with `VK_ACCESS_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_WRITE_BIT`. Synchronization between rendering within a subpass and any resolve operations at the end of the subpass occurs automatically, without need for explicit dependencies or pipeline barriers. However, if the resolve attachment is also used in a different subpass, an explicit dependency is needed.

After transitioning to the next subpass, the application can record the commands for that subpass.

**Valid Usage**

- **VUID-vkCmdNextSubpass-None-00909**
  The current subpass index **must** be less than the number of subpasses in the render pass minus one
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdNextSubpass-commandBuffer-parameter
  *commandBuffer* must be a valid *VkCommandBuffer* handle

- VUID-vkCmdNextSubpass-contents-parameter
  *contents* must be a valid *VkSubpassContents* value

- VUID-vkCmdNextSubpass-commandBuffer-recording
  *commandBuffer* must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdNextSubpass-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The *VkCommandPool* that *commandBuffer* was allocated from must support graphics operations

- VUID-vkCmdNextSubpass-renderpass
  This command must only be called inside of a render pass instance

- VUID-vkCmdNextSubpass-bufferlevel
  *commandBuffer* must be a primary *VkCommandBuffer*

Host Synchronization

- Host access to *commandBuffer* must be externally synchronized

- Host access to the *VkCommandPool* that *commandBuffer* was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Inside</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To transition to the next subpass in the render pass instance after recording the commands for a subpass, call:

```c
void vkCmdNextSubpass2(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    const VkSubpassBeginInfo* pSubpassBeginInfo,
    const VkSubpassEndInfo* pSubpassEndInfo);
```
// Provided by VK_KHR_create_renderpass2
void vkCmdNextSubpass2KHR(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    const VkSubpassBeginInfo* pSubpassBeginInfo,
    const VkSubpassEndInfo* pSubpassEndInfo);

- commandBuffer is the command buffer in which to record the command.
- pSubpassBeginInfo is a pointer to a VkSubpassBeginInfo structure containing information about the subpass which is about to begin rendering.
- pSubpassEndInfo is a pointer to a VkSubpassEndInfo structure containing information about how the previous subpass will be ended.

vkCmdNextSubpass2 is semantically identical to vkCmdNextSubpass, except that it is extensible, and that contents is provided as part of an extensible structure instead of as a flat parameter.

Valid Usage

- VUID-vkCmdNextSubpass-None-03102
  The current subpass index must be less than the number of subpasses in the render pass minus one

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdNextSubpass2-commandBuffer-parameter
  commandBuffer must be a valid VkCommandBuffer handle

- VUID-vkCmdNextSubpass2-pSubpassBeginInfo-parameter
  pSubpassBeginInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid VkSubpassBeginInfo structure

- VUID-vkCmdNextSubpass2-pSubpassEndInfo-parameter
  pSubpassEndInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid VkSubpassEndInfo structure

- VUID-vkCmdNextSubpass2-commandBuffer-recording
  commandBuffer must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdNextSubpass2-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must support graphics operations

- VUID-vkCmdNextSubpass2-renderpass
  This command must only be called inside of a render pass instance

- VUID-vkCmdNextSubpass2-bufferlevel
  commandBuffer must be a primary VkCommandBuffer
Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` **must** be externally synchronized
- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from **must** be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Inside</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To record a command to end a render pass instance after recording the commands for the last subpass, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkCmdEndRenderPass(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer in which to end the current render pass instance.

Ending a render pass instance performs any multisample resolve operations on the final subpass.

Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkCmdEndRenderPass-None-00910**
  The current subpass index **must** be equal to the number of subpasses in the render pass minus one
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkCmdEndRenderPass-commandBuffer-parameter**
  `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle

- **VUID-vkCmdEndRenderPass-commandBuffer-recording**
  `commandBuffer` must be in the recording state

- **VUID-vkCmdEndRenderPass-commandBuffer-cmdpool**
  The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support graphics operations

- **VUID-vkCmdEndRenderPass-renderpass**
  This command must only be called inside of a render pass instance

- **VUID-vkCmdEndRenderPass-bufferlevel**
  `commandBuffer` must be a primary `VkCommandBuffer`

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Inside</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To record a command to end a render pass instance after recording the commands for the last subpass, call:

```c
void vkCmdEndRenderPass2(  
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,  
    const VkSubpassEndInfo* pSubpassEndInfo);  
```

// Provided by VK_KHR_create_renderpass2

```c
void vkCmdEndRenderPass2KHR(  
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,  
    const VkSubpassEndInfo* pSubpassEndInfo);  
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer in which to end the current render pass instance.
- `pSubpassEndInfo` is a pointer to a `VkSubpassEndInfo` structure containing information about how the previous subpass will be ended.
vkCmdEndRenderPass2 is semantically identical to `vkCmdEndRenderPass`, except that it is extensible.

**Valid Usage**

- VUID-vkCmdEndRenderPass2-None-03103
  The current subpass index must be equal to the number of subpasses in the render pass minus one

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-vkCmdEndRenderPass2-commandBuffer-parameter
  commandBuffer must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle

- VUID-vkCmdEndRenderPass2-pSubpassEndInfo-parameter
  pSubpassEndInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkSubpassEndInfo` structure

- VUID-vkCmdEndRenderPass2-commandBuffer-recording
  commandBuffer must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdEndRenderPass2-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The `VkCommandPool` that commandBuffer was allocated from must support graphics operations

- VUID-vkCmdEndRenderPass2-renderpass
  This command must only be called inside of a render pass instance

- VUID-vkCmdEndRenderPass2-bufferlevel
  commandBuffer must be a primary `VkCommandBuffer`

**Host Synchronization**

- Host access to commandBuffer must be externally synchronized

- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that commandBuffer was allocated from must be externally synchronized

**Command Properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Inside</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The `VkSubpassEndInfo` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkSubpassEndInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
} VkSubpassEndInfo;

or the equivalent

// Provided by VK_KHR_create_renderpass2
typedef VkSubpassEndInfo VkSubpassEndInfoKHR;

• sType is the type of this structure.
• pNext is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

• VUID-VkSubpassEndInfo-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SUBPASS_END_INFO

• VUID-VkSubpassEndInfo-pNext-pNext
  pNext must be NULL
Chapter 9. Shaders

A shader specifies programmable operations that execute for each vertex, control point, tessellated vertex, primitive, fragment, or workgroup in the corresponding stage(s) of the graphics and compute pipelines.

Graphics pipelines include vertex shader execution as a result of primitive assembly, followed, if enabled, by tessellation control and evaluation shaders operating on patches, geometry shaders, if enabled, operating on primitives, and fragment shaders, if present, operating on fragments generated by Rasterization. In this specification, vertex, tessellation control, tessellation evaluation and geometry shaders are collectively referred to as pre-rasterization shader stages and occur in the logical pipeline before rasterization. The fragment shader occurs logically after rasterization.

Only the compute shader stage is included in a compute pipeline. Compute shaders operate on compute invocations in a workgroup.

Shaders can read from input variables, and read from and write to output variables. Input and output variables can be used to transfer data between shader stages, or to allow the shader to interact with values that exist in the execution environment. Similarly, the execution environment provides constants that describe capabilities.

Shader variables are associated with execution environment-provided inputs and outputs using built-in decorations in the shader. The available decorations for each stage are documented in the following subsections.

9.1. Shader Modules

Shader modules contain shader code and one or more entry points. Shaders are selected from a shader module by specifying an entry point as part of pipeline creation. The stages of a pipeline can use shaders that come from different modules. The shader code defining a shader module must be in the SPIR-V format, as described by the Vulkan Environment for SPIR-V appendix.

Shader modules are represented by VkShaderModule handles:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VK_DEFINE_NON_DISPATCHABLE_HANDLE(VkShaderModule)
```

To create a shader module, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkCreateShaderModule(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkShaderModuleCreateInfo* pCreateInfo,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator,
    VkShaderModule* pShaderModule);
```

- **device** is the logical device that creates the shader module.
- `pCreateInfo` is a pointer to a `VkShaderModuleCreateInfo` structure.
- `pAllocator` controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
- `pShaderModule` is a pointer to a `VkShaderModule` handle in which the resulting shader module object is returned.

Once a shader module has been created, any entry points it contains can be used in pipeline shader stages as described in Compute Pipelines and Graphics Pipelines.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCreateShaderModule-device-parameter
  
  `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- VUID-vkCreateShaderModule-pCreateInfo-parameter
  
  `pCreateInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkShaderModuleCreateInfo` structure

- VUID-vkCreateShaderModule-pAllocator-parameter
  
  If `pAllocator` is not NULL, `pAllocator` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkAllocationCallbacks` structure

- VUID-vkCreateShaderModule-pShaderModule-parameter
  
  `pShaderModule` must be a valid pointer to a `VkShaderModule` handle

### Return Codes

**Success**

- `VK_SUCCESS`

**Failure**

- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY`

The `VkShaderModuleCreateInfo` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkShaderModuleCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkShaderModuleCreateFlags flags;
    size_t codeSize;
    const uint32_t* pCode;
} VkShaderModuleCreateInfo;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• **flags** is reserved for future use.

• **codeSize** is the size, in bytes, of the code pointed to by **pCode**.

• **pCode** is a pointer to code that is used to create the shader module. The type and format of the code is determined from the content of the memory addressed by **pCode**.

---

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkShaderModuleCreateInfo-codeSize-01085**
  - **codeSize must** be greater than 0

- **VUID-VkShaderModuleCreateInfo-codeSize-01086**
  - **codeSize must** be a multiple of 4

- **VUID-VkShaderModuleCreateInfo-pCode-01087**
  - **pCode must** point to valid SPIR-V code, formatted and packed as described by the Khronos SPIR-V Specification

- **VUID-VkShaderModuleCreateInfo-pCode-01088**
  - **pCode must** adhere to the validation rules described by the Validation Rules within a Module section of the SPIR-V Environment appendix

- **VUID-VkShaderModuleCreateInfo-pCode-01089**
  - **pCode must** declare the Shader capability for SPIR-V code

- **VUID-VkShaderModuleCreateInfo-pCode-01090**
  - **pCode must** not declare any capability that is not supported by the API, as described by the Capabilities section of the SPIR-V Environment appendix

- **VUID-VkShaderModuleCreateInfo-pCode-01091**
  - If **pCode** declares any of the capabilities listed in the SPIR-V Environment appendix, one of the corresponding requirements must be satisfied

- **VUID-VkShaderModuleCreateInfo-pCode-04146**
  - **pCode must** not declare any SPIR-V extension that is not supported by the API, as described by the Extension section of the SPIR-V Environment appendix

- **VUID-VkShaderModuleCreateInfo-pCode-04147**
  - If **pCode** declares any of the SPIR-V extensions listed in the SPIR-V Environment appendix, one of the corresponding requirements must be satisfied
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkShaderModuleCreateInfo-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SHADER_MODULE_CREATE_INFO

- VUID-VkShaderModuleCreateInfo-pNext-pNext
  pNext must be NULL

- VUID-VkShaderModuleCreateInfo-flags-zerobitmask
  flags must be 0

- VUID-VkShaderModuleCreateInfo-pCode-parameter
  pCode must be a valid pointer to an array of $\frac{\text{codeSize}}{4}$ uint32_t values

// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkShaderModuleCreateFlags;

VkShaderModuleCreateFlags is a bitmask type for setting a mask, but is currently reserved for future use.

To destroy a shader module, call:

// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkDestroyShaderModule(
    VkDevice device,
    VkShaderModule shaderModule,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator);

- device is the logical device that destroys the shader module.
- shaderModule is the handle of the shader module to destroy.
- pAllocator controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.

A shader module can be destroyed while pipelines created using its shaders are still in use.

Valid Usage

- VUID-vkDestroyShaderModule-shaderModule-01092
  If VkAllocationCallbacks were provided when shaderModule was created, a compatible set of callbacks must be provided here

- VUID-vkDestroyShaderModule-shaderModule-01093
  If no VkAllocationCallbacks were provided when shaderModule was created, pAllocator must be NULL
9.2. Shader Execution

At each stage of the pipeline, multiple invocations of a shader may execute simultaneously. Further, invocations of a single shader produced as the result of different commands may execute simultaneously. The relative execution order of invocations of the same shader type is undefined. Shader invocations may complete in a different order than that in which the primitives they originated from were drawn or dispatched by the application. However, fragment shader outputs are written to attachments in rasterization order.

The relative execution order of invocations of different shader types is largely undefined. However, when invoking a shader whose inputs are generated from a previous pipeline stage, the shader invocations from the previous stage are guaranteed to have executed far enough to generate input values for all required inputs.

9.3. Shader Memory Access Ordering

The order in which image or buffer memory is read or written by shaders is largely undefined. For some shader types (vertex, tessellation evaluation, and in some cases, fragment), even the number of shader invocations that may perform loads and stores is undefined.

In particular, the following rules apply:

- **Vertex** and **tessellation evaluation** shaders will be invoked at least once for each unique vertex, as defined in those sections.
- **Fragment** shaders will be invoked zero or more times, as defined in that section.
- The relative execution order of invocations of the same shader type is undefined. A store issued...
by a shader when working on primitive B might complete prior to a store for primitive A, even if primitive A is specified prior to primitive B. This applies even to fragment shaders; while fragment shader outputs are always written to the framebuffer in rasterization order, stores executed by fragment shader invocations are not.

- The relative execution order of invocations of different shader types is largely undefined.

Note

The above limitations on shader invocation order make some forms of synchronization between shader invocations within a single set of primitives unimplementable. For example, having one invocation poll memory written by another invocation assumes that the other invocation has been launched and will complete its writes in finite time.

The Memory Model appendix defines the terminology and rules for how to correctly communicate between shader invocations, such as when a write is Visible-To a read, and what constitutes a Data Race.

Applications must not cause a data race.

The SPIR-V SubgroupMemory, CrossWorkgroupMemory, and AtomicCounterMemory memory semantics are ignored. Sequentially consistent atomics and barriers are not supported and SequentiallyConsistent is treated as AcquireRelease. SequentiallyConsistent should not be used.

9.4. Shader Inputs and Outputs

Data is passed into and out of shaders using variables with input or output storage class, respectively. User-defined inputs and outputs are connected between stages by matching their Location decorations. Additionally, data can be provided by or communicated to special functions provided by the execution environment using BuiltIn decorations.

In many cases, the same BuiltIn decoration can be used in multiple shader stages with similar meaning. The specific behavior of variables decorated as BuiltIn is documented in the following sections.

9.5. Vertex Shaders

Each vertex shader invocation operates on one vertex and its associated vertex attribute data, and outputs one vertex and associated data. Graphics pipelines must include a vertex shader, and the vertex shader stage is always the first shader stage in the graphics pipeline.

9.5.1. Vertex Shader Execution

A vertex shader must be executed at least once for each vertex specified by a drawing command. If the subpass includes multiple views in its view mask, the shader may be invoked separately for each view. During execution, the shader is presented with the index of the vertex and instance for which it has been invoked. Input variables declared in the vertex shader are filled by the
implementation with the values of vertex attributes associated with the invocation being executed.

If the same vertex is specified multiple times in a drawing command (e.g. by including the same index value multiple times in an index buffer) the implementation may reuse the results of vertex shading if it can statically determine that the vertex shader invocations will produce identical results.

**Note**

It is implementation-dependent when and if results of vertex shading are reused, and thus how many times the vertex shader will be executed. This is true also if the vertex shader contains stores or atomic operations (see `vertexPipelineStoresAndAtomics`).

### 9.6. Tessellation Control Shaders

The tessellation control shader is used to read an input patch provided by the application and to produce an output patch. Each tessellation control shader invocation operates on an input patch (after all control points in the patch are processed by a vertex shader) and its associated data, and outputs a single control point of the output patch and its associated data, and can also output additional per-patch data. The input patch is sized according to the `patchControlPoints` member of `VkPipelineTessellationStateCreateInfo`, as part of input assembly.

The size of the output patch is controlled by the `OpExecutionMode OutputVertices` specified in the tessellation control or tessellation evaluation shaders, which must be specified in at least one of the shaders. The size of the input and output patches must each be greater than zero and less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxTessellationPatchSize`.

#### 9.6.1. Tessellation Control Shader Execution

A tessellation control shader is invoked at least once for each output vertex in a patch. If the subpass includes multiple views in its view mask, the shader may be invoked separately for each view.

Inputs to the tessellation control shader are generated by the vertex shader. Each invocation of the tessellation control shader can read the attributes of any incoming vertices and their associated data. The invocations corresponding to a given patch execute logically in parallel, with undefined relative execution order. However, the `OpControlBarrier` instruction can be used to provide limited control of the execution order by synchronizing invocations within a patch, effectively dividing tessellation control shader execution into a set of phases. Tessellation control shaders will read undefined values if one invocation reads a per-vertex or per-patch output written by another invocation at any point during the same phase, or if two invocations attempt to write different values to the same per-patch output in a single phase.

### 9.7. Tessellation Evaluation Shaders

The Tessellation Evaluation Shader operates on an input patch of control points and their associated data, and a single input barycentric coordinate indicating the invocation's relative
position within the subdivided patch, and outputs a single vertex and its associated data.

9.7.1. Tessellation Evaluation Shader Execution

A tessellation evaluation shader is invoked at least once for each unique vertex generated by the tessellator. If the subpass includes multiple views in its view mask, the shader may be invoked separately for each view.

9.8. Geometry Shaders

The geometry shader operates on a group of vertices and their associated data assembled from a single input primitive, and emits zero or more output primitives and the group of vertices and their associated data required for each output primitive.

9.8.1. Geometry Shader Execution

A geometry shader is invoked at least once for each primitive produced by the tessellation stages, or at least once for each primitive generated by primitive assembly when tessellation is not in use. A shader can request that the geometry shader runs multiple instances. A geometry shader is invoked at least once for each instance. If the subpass includes multiple views in its view mask, the shader may be invoked separately for each view.

9.9. Fragment Shaders

Fragment shaders are invoked as the result of rasterization in a graphics pipeline. Each fragment shader invocation operates on a single fragment and its associated data. With few exceptions, fragment shaders do not have access to any data associated with other fragments and are considered to execute in isolation of fragment shader invocations associated with other fragments.

9.9.1. Fragment Shader Execution

Fragment shaders are invoked for each fragment generated by rasterization, or as helper invocations.

For fragment shaders invoked by fragments, the following rules apply:

- A fragment shader must not be executed if a fragment operation that executes before fragment shading discards the fragment.

- A fragment shader may not be executed if:
  - An implementation determines that another fragment shader, invoked by a subsequent primitive in primitive order, overwrites all results computed by the shader (including writes to storage resources).
  - Any other fragment operation discards the fragment, and the shader does not write to any storage resources.

- Otherwise, at least one fragment shader must be executed.
  - If sample shading is enabled and multiple invocations per fragment are required,
additional invocations must be executed as specified.

- Each covered sample must be included in at least one fragment shader invocation.

Note

Multiple fragment shader invocations may be executed for the same fragment for any number of implementation-dependent reasons. When there is more than one fragment shader invocation per fragment, the association of samples to invocations is implementation-dependent. Stores and atomics performed by these additional invocations have the normal effect.

For example, if the subpass includes multiple views in its view mask, a fragment shader may be invoked separately for each view.

Note

Relative ordering of execution of different fragment shader invocations is explicitly not defined.

### 9.9.2. Early Fragment Tests

An explicit control is provided to allow fragment shaders to enable early fragment tests. If the fragment shader specifies the `EarlyFragmentTests OpExecutionMode`, additional per-fragment tests are performed prior to fragment shader execution.

If early fragment tests are enabled, any depth value computed by the fragment shader has no effect.

### 9.10. Compute Shaders

Compute shaders are invoked via `vkCmdDispatch` and `vkCmdDispatchIndirect` commands. In general, they have access to similar resources as shader stages executing as part of a graphics pipeline.

Compute workloads are formed from groups of work items called workgroups and processed by the compute shader in the current compute pipeline. A workgroup is a collection of shader invocations that execute the same shader, potentially in parallel. Compute shaders execute in global workgroups which are divided into a number of local workgroups with a size that can be set by assigning a value to the `LocalSize` execution mode or via an object decorated by the `WorkgroupSize` decoration. An invocation within a local workgroup can share data with other members of the local workgroup through shared variables and issue memory and control flow barriers to synchronize with other members of the local workgroup.

### 9.11. Ray Generation Shaders

A ray generation shader is similar to a compute shader. Its main purpose is to execute ray tracing queries using `OpTraceRayKHR` instructions and process the results.
9.11.1. Ray Generation Shader Execution

One ray generation shader is executed per ray tracing dispatch. Its location in the shader binding table (see Shader Binding Table for details) is passed directly into vkCmdTraceRaysKHR using the raygenShaderBindingTableBuffer and raygenShaderBindingOffset parameters.

9.12. Intersection Shaders

Intersection shaders enable the implementation of arbitrary, application defined geometric primitives. An intersection shader for a primitive is executed whenever its axis-aligned bounding box is hit by a ray.

Like other ray tracing shader domains, an intersection shader operates on a single ray at a time. It also operates on a single primitive at a time. It is therefore the purpose of an intersection shader to compute the ray-primitive intersections and report them. To report an intersection, the shader calls the OpReportIntersectionKHR instruction.

An intersection shader communicates with any-hit and closest shaders by generating attribute values that they can read. Intersection shaders cannot read or modify the ray payload.

9.12.1. Intersection Shader Execution

The order in which intersections are found along a ray, and therefore the order in which intersection shaders are executed, is unspecified.

The intersection shader of the closest AABB which intersects the ray is guaranteed to be executed at some point during traversal, unless the ray is forcibly terminated.

9.13. Any-Hit Shaders

The any-hit shader is executed after the intersection shader reports an intersection that lies within the current $[t_{\text{min}}, t_{\text{max}}]$ of the ray. The main use of any-hit shaders is to programmatically decide whether or not an intersection will be accepted. The intersection will be accepted unless the shader calls the OpIgnoreIntersectionKHR instruction. Any-hit shaders have read-only access to the attributes generated by the corresponding intersection shader, and can read or modify the ray payload.

9.13.1. Any-Hit Shader Execution

The order in which intersections are found along a ray, and therefore the order in which any-hit shaders are executed, is unspecified.

The any-hit shader of the closest hit is guaranteed to be executed at some point during traversal, unless the ray is forcibly terminated.


Closest hit shaders have read-only access to the attributes generated by the corresponding
intersection shader, and can read or modify the ray payload. They also have access to a number of system-generated values. Closest hit shaders can call `OpTraceRayKHR` to recursively trace rays.


Exactly one closest hit shader is executed when traversal is finished and an intersection has been found and accepted.

### 9.15. Miss Shaders

Miss shaders can access the ray payload and can trace new rays through the `OpTraceRayKHR` instruction, but cannot access attributes since they are not associated with an intersection.

#### 9.15.1. Miss Shader Execution

A miss shader is executed instead of a closest hit shader if no intersection was found during traversal.

### 9.16. Callable Shaders

Callable shaders can access a callable payload that works similarly to ray payloads to do subroutine work.

#### 9.16.1. Callable Shader Execution

A callable shader is executed by calling `OpExecuteCallableKHR` from an allowed shader stage.

### 9.17. Interpolation Decorations

Interpolation decorations control the behavior of attribute interpolation in the fragment shader stage. Interpolation decorations can be applied to `Input` storage class variables in the fragment shader stage’s interface, and control the interpolation behavior of those variables.

Inputs that could be interpolated can be decorated by at most one of the following decorations:

- **Flat**: no interpolation
- **NoPerspective**: linear interpolation (for lines and polygons)

Fragment input variables decorated with neither Flat nor NoPerspective use perspective-correct interpolation (for lines and polygons).

The presence of and type of interpolation is controlled by the above interpolation decorations as well as the auxiliary decorations **Centroid** and **Sample**.

A variable decorated with Flat will not be interpolated. Instead, it will have the same value for every fragment within a triangle. This value will come from a single **provoking vertex**. A variable decorated with Flat can also be decorated with Centroid or Sample, which will mean the same thing as decorating it only as Flat.
For fragment shader input variables decorated with neither Centroid nor Sample, the assigned variable may be interpolated anywhere within the fragment and a single value may be assigned to each sample within the fragment.

If a fragment shader input is decorated with Centroid, a single value may be assigned to that variable for all samples in the fragment, but that value must be interpolated to a location that lies in both the fragment and in the primitive being rendered, including any of the fragment’s samples covered by the primitive. Because the location at which the variable is interpolated may be different in neighboring fragments, and derivatives may be computed by computing differences between neighboring fragments, derivatives of centroid-sampled inputs may be less accurate than those for non-centroid interpolated variables.

If a fragment shader input is decorated with Sample, a separate value must be assigned to that variable for each covered sample in the fragment, and that value must be sampled at the location of the individual sample. When rasterizationSamples is VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT, the fragment center must be used for Centroid, Sample, and undecorated attribute interpolation.

Fragment shader inputs that are signed or unsigned integers, integer vectors, or any double-precision floating-point type must be decorated with Flat.

### 9.18. Static Use

A SPIR-V module declares a global object in memory using the OpVariable instruction, which results in a pointer \( x \) to that object. A specific entry point in a SPIR-V module is said to statically use that object if that entry point’s call tree contains a function containing a memory instruction or image instruction with \( x \) as an id operand. See the “Memory Instructions” and “Image Instructions” subsections of section 3 “Binary Form” of the SPIR-V specification for the complete list of SPIR-V memory instructions.

Static use is not used to control the behavior of variables with Input and Output storage. The effects of those variables are applied based only on whether they are present in a shader entry point’s interface.

### 9.19. Scope

A scope describes a set of shader invocations, where each such set is a scope instance. Each invocation belongs to one or more scope instances, but belongs to no more than one scope instance for each scope.

The operations available between invocations in a given scope instance vary, with smaller scopes generally able to perform more operations, and with greater efficiency.

### 9.19.1. Cross Device

All invocations executed in a Vulkan instance fall into a single cross device scope instance.

Whilst the CrossDevice scope is defined in SPIR-V, it is disallowed in Vulkan. API synchronization commands can be used to communicate between devices.
9.19.2. Device

All invocations executed on a single device form a device scope instance.

If the `vulkanMemoryModel` and `vulkanMemoryModelDeviceScope` features are enabled, this scope is represented in SPIR-V by the Device Scope, which can be used as a Memory Scope for barrier and atomic operations.

If both the `shaderDeviceClock` and `vulkanMemoryModelDeviceScope` features are enabled, using the Device Scope with the OpReadClockKHR instruction will read from a clock that is consistent across invocations in the same device scope instance.

There is no method to synchronize the execution of these invocations within SPIR-V, and this can only be done with API synchronization primitives.

Invocations executing on different devices in a device group operate in separate device scope instances.

9.19.3. Queue Family

Invocations executed by queues in a given queue family form a queue family scope instance.

This scope is identified in SPIR-V as the QueueFamily Scope if the `vulkanMemoryModel` feature is enabled, or if not, the Device Scope, which can be used as a Memory Scope for barrier and atomic operations.

If the `shaderDeviceClock` feature is enabled, but the `vulkanMemoryModelDeviceScope` feature is not enabled, using the Device Scope with the OpReadClockKHR instruction will read from a clock that is consistent across invocations in the same queue family scope instance.

There is no method to synchronize the execution of these invocations within SPIR-V, and this can only be done with API synchronization primitives.

Each invocation in a queue family scope instance must be in the same device scope instance.

9.19.4. Command

Any shader invocations executed as the result of a single command such as `vkCmdDispatch` or `vkCmdDraw` form a command scope instance. For indirect drawing commands with `drawCount` greater than one, invocations from separate draws are in separate command scope instances. For ray tracing shaders, an invocation group is an implementation-dependent subset of the set of shader invocations of a given shader stage which are produced by a single trace rays command.

There is no specific Scope for communication across invocations in a command scope instance. As this has a clear boundary at the API level, coordination here can be performed in the API, rather than in SPIR-V.

Each invocation in a command scope instance must be in the same queue-family scope instance.

For shaders without defined workgroups, this set of invocations forms an invocation group as defined in the SPIR-V specification.
9.19.5. Primitive

Any fragment shader invocations executed as the result of rasterization of a single primitive form a *primitive scope instance*.

There is no specific *Scope* for communication across invocations in a primitive scope instance.

Any generated *helper invocations* are included in this scope instance.

Each invocation in a primitive scope instance must be in the same *command scope instance*.

Any input variables decorated with *Flat* are uniform within a primitive scope instance.

9.19.6. Shader Call

Any *shader-call-related* invocations that are executed in one or more ray tracing execution models form a *shader call scope instance*.

The *ShaderCallKHR Scope* can be used as *Memory Scope* for barrier and atomic operations.

Each invocation in a shader call scope instance must be in the same *queue family scope instance*.

9.19.7. Workgroup

A *local workgroup* is a set of invocations that can synchronize and share data with each other using memory in the *Workgroup* storage class.

The *Workgroup Scope* can be used as both an *Execution Scope* and *Memory Scope* for barrier and atomic operations.

Each invocation in a local workgroup must be in the same *command scope instance*.

Only compute shaders have defined workgroups - other shader types cannot use workgroup functionality. For shaders that have defined workgroups, this set of invocations forms an *invocation group* as defined in the SPIR-V specification.

9.19.8. Quad

A *quad scope instance* is formed of four shader invocations.

In a fragment shader, each invocation in a quad scope instance is formed of invocations in neighboring framebuffer locations \((x_i, y_i)\), where:

- \(i\) is the index of the invocation within the scope instance.
- \(w\) and \(h\) are the number of pixels the fragment covers in the \(x\) and \(y\) axes.
- \(w\) and \(h\) are identical for all participating invocations.
- \((x_0) = (x_1 - w) = (x_2) = (x_3 - w)\)
- \((y_0) = (y_1) = (y_2 - h) = (y_3 - h)\)
- Each invocation has the same layer and sample indices.
The specific set of invocations that make up a quad scope instance in other shader stages is undefined.

In a fragment shader, each invocation in a quad scope instance must be in the same primitive scope instance.

For shaders that have defined workgroups, each invocation in a quad scope instance must be in the same local workgroup.

In other shader stages, each invocation in a quad scope instance must be in the same device scope instance.

Fragment shaders have defined quad scope instances.

### 9.19.9. Invocation

The smallest scope is a single invocation; this is represented by the Invocation Scope in SPIR-V.

Fragment shader invocations must be in a primitive scope instance.

Invocations in shaders that have defined workgroups must be in a local workgroup.

Invocations in shaders that have a defined quad scope must be in a quad scope instance.

All invocations in all stages must be in a command scope instance.

#### 9.20. Derivative Operations

Derivative operations calculate the partial derivative for an expression $P$ as a function of an invocation's $x$ and $y$ coordinates.

Derivative operations operate on a set of invocations known as a derivative group as defined in the SPIR-V specification. A derivative group is equivalent to the primitive scope instance for a fragment shader invocation.

Derivatives are calculated assuming that $P$ is piecewise linear and continuous within the derivative group. All dynamic instances of explicit derivative instructions ($\text{OpDPdxFine}$, $\text{OpDPdyFine}$, and $\text{OpFwidth}$*) must be executed in control flow that is uniform within a derivative group. For other derivative operations, results are undefined if a dynamic instance is executed in control flow that is not uniform within the derivative group.

Fragment shaders that statically execute derivative operations must launch sufficient invocations to ensure their correct operation; additional helper invocations are launched for framebuffer locations not covered by rasterized fragments if necessary.

Derivative operations calculate their results as the difference between the result of $P$ across invocations in the quad. For fine derivative operations ($\text{OpDPdxFine}$ and $\text{OpDPdyFine}$), the values of $\text{DPdx(P)}$ are calculated as
\[ \text{DPdx}(P_0) = \text{DPdx}(P_1) = P_1 - P_0 \]
\[ \text{DPdx}(P_2) = \text{DPdx}(P_3) = P_3 - P_2 \]

and the values of \( \text{DPdy}(P_i) \) are calculated as

\[ \text{DPdy}(P_0) = \text{DPdy}(P_2) = P_2 - P_0 \]
\[ \text{DPdy}(P_1) = \text{DPdy}(P_3) = P_3 - P_1 \]

where \( i \) is the index of each invocation as described in Quad.

Coarse derivative operations (\text{OpDPdxCoarse} and \text{OpDPdyCoarse}), calculate their results in roughly the same manner, but may only calculate two values instead of four (one for each of \text{DPdx} and \text{DPdy}), reusing the same result no matter the originating invocation. If an implementation does this, it should use the fine derivative calculations described for \( P_0 \).

\begin{quote}
\textbf{Note}

Derivative values are calculated between fragments rather than pixels. If the fragment shader invocations involved in the calculation cover multiple pixels, these operations cover a wider area, resulting in larger derivative values. This in turn will result in a coarser level of detail being selected for image sampling operations using derivatives.

Applications may want to account for this when using multi-pixel fragments; if pixel derivatives are desired, applications should use explicit derivative operations and divide the results by the size of the fragment in each dimension as follows:

\[ \text{DPdx}(P_n)' = \text{DPdx}(P_n) / w \]
\[ \text{DPdy}(P_n)' = \text{DPdy}(P_n) / h \]

where \( w \) and \( h \) are the size of the fragments in the quad, and \( \text{DPdx}(P_n)' \) and \( \text{DPdy}(P_n)' \) are the pixel derivatives.
\end{quote}

The results for \text{OpDPdx} and \text{OpDPdy} may be calculated as either fine or coarse derivatives, with implementations favouring the most efficient approach. Implementations must choose coarse or fine consistently between the two.

Executing \text{OpFwidthFine}, \text{OpFwidthCoarse}, or \text{OpFwidth} is equivalent to executing the corresponding \text{OpDPdx*} and \text{OpDPdy*} instructions, taking the absolute value of the results, and summing them.

Executing an \text{OpImage*Sample*ImplicitLod} instruction is equivalent to executing \text{OpDPdx(Coordinate)}
and \( \text{OpDPdy} \text{(Coordinate)} \), and passing the results as the Grad operands \( dx \) and \( dy \).

**Note**

It is expected that using the \text{ImplicitLod} variants of sampling functions will be substantially more efficient than using the \text{ExplicitLod} variants with explicitly generated derivatives.

### 9.21. Helper Invocations

When performing \text{derivative} operations in a fragment shader, additional invocations \textbf{may} be spawned in order to ensure correct results. These additional invocations are known as \textit{helper invocations} and \textbf{can} be identified by a non-zero value in the \text{HelperInvocation} built-in. Stores and atomics performed by helper invocations \textbf{must} not have any effect on memory, and values returned by atomic instructions in helper invocations are undefined.

Helper invocations \textbf{may} become inactive at any time for any reason, with one exception. If a helper invocation would be active if it were not a helper invocation, it \textbf{must} be active for \text{derivative} operations.
Chapter 10. Pipelines

The following figure shows a block diagram of the Vulkan pipelines. Some Vulkan commands specify geometric objects to be drawn or computational work to be performed, while others specify state controlling how objects are handled by the various pipeline stages, or control data transfer between memory organized as images and buffers. Commands are effectively sent through a processing pipeline, either a graphics pipeline, a ray tracing pipeline, or a compute pipeline.

The first stage of the graphics pipeline (Input Assembler) assembles vertices to form geometric primitives such as points, lines, and triangles, based on a requested primitive topology. In the next stage (Vertex Shader) vertices can be transformed, computing positions and attributes for each vertex. If tessellation and/or geometry shaders are supported, they can then generate multiple primitives from a single input primitive, possibly changing the primitive topology or generating additional attribute data in the process.

The final resulting primitives are clipped to a clip volume in preparation for the next stage, Rasterization. The rasterizer produces a series of fragments associated with a region of the framebuffer, from a two-dimensional description of a point, line segment, or triangle. These fragments are processed by fragment operations to determine whether generated values will be written to the framebuffer. Fragment shading determines the values to be written to the framebuffer attachments. Framebuffer operations then read and write the color and depth/stencil attachments of the framebuffer for a given subpass of a render pass instance. The attachments can be used as input attachments in the fragment shader in a later subpass of the same render pass.

The compute pipeline is a separate pipeline from the graphics pipeline, which operates on one-, two-, or three-dimensional workgroups which can read from and write to buffer and image memory.

This ordering is meant only as a tool for describing Vulkan, not as a strict rule of how Vulkan is implemented, and we present it only as a means to organize the various operations of the pipelines. Actual ordering guarantees between pipeline stages are explained in detail in the synchronization chapter.
Each pipeline is controlled by a monolithic object created from a description of all of the shader stages and any relevant fixed-function stages. **Linking** the whole pipeline together allows the optimization of shaders based on their input/outputs and eliminates expensive draw time state validation.

A pipeline object is bound to the current state using `vkCmdBindPipeline`. Any pipeline object state that is specified as **dynamic** is not applied to the current state when the pipeline object is bound, but is instead set by dynamic state setting commands.

No state, including dynamic state, is inherited from one command buffer to another.

Compute, ray tracing, and graphics pipelines are each represented by `VkPipeline` handles:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VK_DEFINE_NON_DISPATCHABLE_HANDLE(VkPipeline)
```

## 10.1. Compute Pipelines

Compute pipelines consist of a single static compute shader stage and the pipeline layout.

The compute pipeline represents a compute shader and is created by calling `vkCreateComputePipelines` with `module` and `pName` selecting an entry point from a shader module, where that entry point defines a valid compute shader, in the `VkPipelineShaderStageCreateInfo` structure contained within the `VkComputePipelineCreateInfo` structure.

To create compute pipelines, call:
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0

VkResult vkCreateComputePipelines(
    VkDevice device,            
    VkPipelineCache pipelineCache,       
    uint32_t createInfoCount,    
    const VkComputePipelineCreateInfo* pCreateInfos,    
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator,      
    VkPipeline* pPipelines);      

• **device** is the logical device that creates the compute pipelines.

• **pipelineCache** is either **VK_NULL_HANDLE**, indicating that pipeline caching is disabled; or the handle of a valid pipeline cache object, in which case use of that cache is enabled for the duration of the command.

• **createInfoCount** is the length of the **pCreateInfos** and **pPipelines** arrays.

• **pCreateInfos** is a pointer to an array of **VkComputePipelineCreateInfo** structures.

• **pAllocator** controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.

• **pPipelines** is a pointer to an array of **VkPipeline** handles in which the resulting compute pipeline objects are returned.

## Valid Usage

• **VUID-vkCreateComputePipelines-flags-00695**
  If the **flags** member of any element of **pCreateInfos** contains the **VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_DERIVATIVE_BIT** flag, and the **basePipelineIndex** member of that same element is not -1, **basePipelineIndex must** be less than the index into **pCreateInfos** that corresponds to that element

• **VUID-vkCreateComputePipelines-flags-00696**
  If the **flags** member of any element of **pCreateInfos** contains the **VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_DERIVATIVE_BIT** flag, the base pipeline **must** have been created with the **VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_ALLOW_DERIVATIVES_BIT** flag set
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCreateComputePipelines-device-parameter
device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- VUID-vkCreateComputePipelines-pipelineCache-parameter
  If pipelineCache is not VK_NULL_HANDLE, pipelineCache must be a valid VkPipelineCache handle

- VUID-vkCreateComputePipelines-pCreateInfos-parameter
  pCreateInfos must be a valid pointer to an array of createInfoCount valid VkComputePipelineCreateInfo structures

- VUID-vkCreateComputePipelines-pAllocator-parameter
  If pAllocator is not NULL, pAllocator must be a valid pointer to a valid VkAllocationCallbacks structure

- VUID-vkCreateComputePipelines-pPipelines-parameter
  pPipelines must be a valid pointer to an array of createInfoCount VkPipeline handles

- VUID-vkCreateComputePipelines-createInfoCount-arraylength
  createInfoCount must be greater than 0

- VUID-vkCreateComputePipelines-pipelineCache-parent
  If pipelineCache is a valid handle, it must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from device

Return Codes

Success
- VK_SUCCESS

Failure
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY

The VkComputePipelineCreateInfo structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkComputePipelineCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkPipelineCreateFlags flags;
    VkPipelineShaderStageCreateInfo stage;
    VkPipelineLayout layout;
    VkPipeline basePipelineHandle;
    int32_t basePipelineIndex;
} VkComputePipelineCreateInfo;
```
• **sType** is the type of this structure.
• **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• **flags** is a bitmask of **VkPipelineCreateFlagBits** specifying how the pipeline will be generated.
• **stage** is a **VkPipelineShaderStageCreateInfo** structure describing the compute shader.
• **layout** is the description of binding locations used by both the pipeline and descriptor sets used with the pipeline.
• **basePipelineHandle** is a pipeline to derive from
• **basePipelineIndex** is an index into the **pCreateInfos** parameter to use as a pipeline to derive from

The parameters **basePipelineHandle** and **basePipelineIndex** are described in more detail in **Pipeline Derivatives**.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkComputePipelineCreateInfo-flags-00697**
  If `flags` contains the `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_DERIVATIVE_BIT` flag, and `basePipelineIndex` is -1, `basePipelineHandle` must be a valid handle to a compute `VkPipeline`

- **VUID-VkComputePipelineCreateInfo-flags-00698**
  If `flags` contains the `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_DERIVATIVE_BIT` flag, and `basePipelineHandle` is `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, `basePipelineIndex` must be a valid index into the calling command's `pCreateInfos` parameter

- **VUID-VkComputePipelineCreateInfo-flags-00699**
  If `flags` contains the `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_DERIVATIVE_BIT` flag, and `basePipelineIndex` is not -1, `basePipelineHandle` must be `VK_NULL_HANDLE`

- **VUID-VkComputePipelineCreateInfo-flags-00700**
  If `flags` contains the `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_DERIVATIVE_BIT` flag, and `basePipelineHandle` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, `basePipelineIndex` must be -1

- **VUID-VkComputePipelineCreateInfo-stage-00701**
  The `stage` member of `stage` must be `VK_SHADER_STAGE_COMPUTE_BIT`

- **VUID-VkComputePipelineCreateInfo-stage-00702**
  The shader code for the entry point identified by `stage` and the rest of the state identified by this structure must adhere to the pipeline linking rules described in the Shader Interfaces chapter

- **VUID-VkComputePipelineCreateInfo-layout-00703**
  `layout` must be consistent with the layout of the compute shader specified in `stage`

- **VUID-VkComputePipelineCreateInfo-layout-01687**
  The number of resources in `layout` accessible to the compute shader stage must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxPerStageResources`

- **VUID-VkComputePipelineCreateInfo-flags-03364**
  `flags` must not include `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_LIBRARY_BIT_KHR`

- **VUID-VkComputePipelineCreateInfo-flags-03365**
  `flags` must not include `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_ANY_HIT_SHADERS_BIT_KHR`

- **VUID-VkComputePipelineCreateInfo-flags-03366**
  `flags` must not include `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_CLOSEST_HIT_SHADERS_BIT_KHR`

- **VUID-VkComputePipelineCreateInfo-flags-03367**
  `flags` must not include `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_MISS_SHADERS_BIT_KHR`

- **VUID-VkComputePipelineCreateInfo-flags-03368**
  `flags` must not include `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_INTERSECTION_SHADERS_BIT_KHR`

- **VUID-VkComputePipelineCreateInfo-flags-03369**
  `flags` must not include `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_SKIP_TRIANGLES_BIT_KHR`

- **VUID-VkComputePipelineCreateInfo-flags-03370**
  `flags` must not include `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_SKIP_AABBS_BIT_KHR`
**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- **sType** must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COMPUTE_PIPELINE_CREATE_INFO`
- **pNext** must be `NULL`
- **flags** must be a valid combination of `VkPipelineCreateFlagBits` values
- **stage** must be a valid `VkPipelineShaderStageCreateInfo` structure
- **layout** must be a valid `VkPipelineLayout` handle
- Both of `basePipelineHandle`, and `layout` that are valid handles of non-ignored parameters must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`

The `VkPipelineShaderStageCreateInfo` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkPipelineShaderStageCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkPipelineShaderStageCreateFlags flags;
    VkShaderStageFlagBits stage;
    VkShaderModule module;
    const char* pName;
    const VkSpecializationInfo* pSpecializationInfo;
} VkPipelineShaderStageCreateInfo;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **flags** is a bitmask of `VkPipelineShaderStageCreateFlagBits` specifying how the pipeline shader stage will be generated.
- **stage** is a `VkShaderStageFlagBits` value specifying a single pipeline stage.
- **module** is a `VkShaderModule` object containing the shader for this stage.
- **pName** is a pointer to a null-terminated UTF-8 string specifying the entry point name of the shader for this stage.
- **pSpecializationInfo** is a pointer to a `VkSpecializationInfo` structure, as described in
Specialization Constants, or NULL.
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkPipelineShaderStageCreateInfo-stage-00704
  If the geometry shaders feature is not enabled, stage must not be VK_SHADER_STAGE_GEOMETRY_BIT.

- VUID-VkPipelineShaderStageCreateInfo-stage-00705
  If the tessellation shaders feature is not enabled, stage must not be VK_SHADER_STAGE_TESSellation_CONTROL_BIT or VK_SHADER_STAGE_TESSellation_EVALUATION_BIT.

- VUID-VkPipelineShaderStageCreateInfo-stage-00706
  stage must not be VK_SHADER_STAGE_ALL_GRAPHICS, or VK_SHADER_STAGE_ALL.

- VUID-VkPipelineShaderStageCreateInfo-pName-00707
  pName must be the name of an OpEntryPoint in module with an execution model that matches stage.

- VUID-VkPipelineShaderStageCreateInfo-maxClipDistances-00708
  If the identified entry point includes any variable in its interface that is declared with the ClipDistance BuiltIn decoration, that variable must not have an array size greater than VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxClipDistances.

- VUID-VkPipelineShaderStageCreateInfo-maxCullDistances-00709
  If the identified entry point includes any variable in its interface that is declared with the CullDistance BuiltIn decoration, that variable must not have an array size greater than VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxCullDistances.

- VUID-VkPipelineShaderStageCreateInfo-maxCombinedClipAndCullDistances-00710
  If the identified entry point includes any variables in its interface that are declared with the ClipDistance or CullDistance BuiltIn decoration, those variables must not have array sizes which sum to more than VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxCombinedClipAndCullDistances.

- VUID-VkPipelineShaderStageCreateInfo-maxSampleMaskWords-00711
  If the identified entry point includes any variable in its interface that is declared with the SampleMask BuiltIn decoration, that variable must not have an array size greater than VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxSampleMaskWords.

- VUID-VkPipelineShaderStageCreateInfo-stage-00712
  If stage is VK_SHADER_STAGE_VERTEX_BIT, the identified entry point must not include any input variable in its interface that is decorated with CullDistance.

- VUID-VkPipelineShaderStageCreateInfo-stage-00713
  If stage is VK_SHADER_STAGE_TESSellation_CONTROL_BIT or VK_SHADER_STAGE_TESSellation_EVALUATION_BIT, and the identified entry point has an OpExecutionMode instruction that specifies a patch size with OutputVertices, the patch size must be greater than 0 and less than or equal to VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxTessellationPatchSize.

- VUID-VkPipelineShaderStageCreateInfo-stage-00714
  If stage is VK_SHADER_STAGE_GEOMETRY_BIT, the identified entry point must have an OpExecutionMode instruction that specifies a maximum output vertex count that is greater than 0 and less than or equal to VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxGeometryOutputVertices.
If `stage` is `VK_SHADER_STAGE_GEOMETRY_BIT`, the identified entry point must have an `OpExecutionMode` instruction that specifies an invocation count that is greater than 0 and less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxGeometryShaderInvocations`.

If `stage` is a pre-rasterization shader stage, and the identified entry point writes to `Layer` for any primitive, it must write the same value to `Layer` for all vertices of a given primitive.

If `stage` is a pre-rasterization shader stage, and the identified entry point writes to `ViewportIndex` for any primitive, it must write the same value to `ViewportIndex` for all vertices of a given primitive.

If `stage` is `VK_SHADER_STAGE_FRAGMENT_BIT`, the identified entry point must not include any output variables in its interface decorated with `CullDistance`.

If `stage` is `VK_SHADER_STAGE_FRAGMENT_BIT`, and the identified entry point writes to `FragDepth` in any execution path, it must write to `FragDepth` in all execution paths.

The SPIR-V code that was used to create `module` must be valid as described by the Khronos SPIR-V Specification after applying the specializations provided in `pSpecializationInfo`, if any, and then converting all specialization constants into fixed constants.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_SHADER_STAGE_CREATE_INFO`.
- `pNext` must be `NULL`.
- `flags` must be 0.
- `stage` must be a valid `VkShaderStageFlagBits` value.
- `module` must be a valid `VkShaderModule` handle.
- `pName` must be a null-terminated UTF-8 string.
- If `pSpecializationInfo` is not `NULL`, `pSpecializationInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkSpecializationInfo` structure.
typedef VkFlags VkPipelineShaderStageCreateFlags;

VkPipelineShaderStageCreateFlags is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more VkPipelineShaderStageCreateFlagBits.

Possible values of the flags member of VkPipelineShaderStageCreateInfo specifying how a pipeline shader stage is created, are:

typedef enum VkPipelineShaderStageCreateFlagBits {
} VkPipelineShaderStageCreateFlagBits;

Commands and structures which need to specify one or more shader stages do so using a bitmask whose bits correspond to stages. Bits which can be set to specify shader stages are:

typedef enum VkShaderStageFlagBits {
    VK_SHADER_STAGE_VERTEX_BIT = 0x00000001,
    VK_SHADER_STAGE_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_BIT = 0x00000002,
    VK_SHADER_STAGE_TESSELLATION_EVALUATION_BIT = 0x00000004,
    VK_SHADER_STAGE_GEOMETRY_BIT = 0x00000008,
    VK_SHADER_STAGE_FRAGMENT_BIT = 0x00000010,
    VK_SHADER_STAGE_COMPUTE_BIT = 0x00000020,
    VK_SHADER_STAGE_ALL_GRAPHICS = 0x0000001F,
    VK_SHADER_STAGE_ALL = 0x7FFFFFFF,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline
    VK_SHADER_STAGE_RAYGEN_BIT_KHR = 0x00000100,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline
    VK_SHADER_STAGE_ANY_HIT_BIT_KHR = 0x00000200,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline
    VK_SHADER_STAGE_CLOSEST_HIT_BIT_KHR = 0x00000400,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline
    VK_SHADER_STAGE_MISS_BIT_KHR = 0x00000800,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline
    VK_SHADER_STAGE_INTERSECTION_BIT_KHR = 0x00001000,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline
    VK_SHADER_STAGE_CALLABLE_BIT_KHR = 0x00002000,
} VkShaderStageFlagBits;

• VK_SHADER_STAGE_VERTEX_BIT specifies the vertex stage.
• VK_SHADER_STAGE_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_BIT specifies the tessellation control stage.
• VK_SHADER_STAGE_TESSELLATION_EVALUATION_BIT specifies the tessellation evaluation stage.
• VK_SHADER_STAGE_GEOMETRY_BIT specifies the geometry stage.
• VK_SHADER_STAGE_FRAGMENT_BIT specifies the fragment stage.
• **VK_SHADER_STAGE_COMPUTE_BIT** specifies the compute stage.

• **VK_SHADER_STAGE_ALL_GRAPHICS** is a combination of bits used as shorthand to specify all graphics stages defined above (excluding the compute stage).

• **VK_SHADER_STAGE_ALL** is a combination of bits used as shorthand to specify all shader stages supported by the device, including all additional stages which are introduced by extensions.

• **VK_SHADER_STAGE_RAYGEN_BIT_KHR** specifies the ray generation stage.

• **VK_SHADER_STAGE_ANY_HIT_BIT_KHR** specifies the any-hit stage.

• **VK_SHADER_STAGE_CLOSEST_HIT_BIT_KHR** specifies the closest hit stage.

• **VK_SHADER_STAGE_MISS_BIT_KHR** specifies the miss stage.

• **VK_SHADER_STAGE_INTERSECTION_BIT_KHR** specifies the intersection stage.

• **VK_SHADER_STAGE_CALLABLE_BIT_KHR** specifies the callable stage.

**Note**

**VK_SHADER_STAGE_ALL_GRAPHICS** only includes the original five graphics stages included in Vulkan 1.0, and not any stages added by extensions. Thus, it may not have the desired effect in all cases.

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkShaderStageFlags;
```

**VkShaderStageFlags** is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more **VkShaderStageFlagBits**.

### 10.2. Graphics Pipelines

Graphics pipelines consist of multiple shader stages, multiple fixed-function pipeline stages, and a pipeline layout.

To create graphics pipelines, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkCreateGraphicsPipelines(
    VkDevice device,
    VkPipelineCache pipelineCache,
    uint32_t createInfoCount,
    const VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo* pCreateInfos,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator,
    VkPipeline* pPipelines);
```

• **device** is the logical device that creates the graphics pipelines.

• **pipelineCache** is either **VK_NULL_HANDLE**, indicating that pipeline caching is disabled; or the handle of a valid **pipeline cache** object, in which case use of that cache is enabled for the duration of the command.
• \textit{createInfoCount} is the length of the \textit{pCreateInfos} and \textit{pPipelines} arrays.

• \textit{pCreateInfos} is a pointer to an array of \textit{VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo} structures.

• \textit{pAllocator} controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.

• \textit{pPipelines} is a pointer to an array of \textit{VkPipeline} handles in which the resulting graphics pipeline objects are returned.

The \textit{VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo} structure includes an array of \textit{VkPipelineShaderStageCreateInfo} structures for each of the desired active shader stages, as well as creation information for all relevant fixed-function stages, and a pipeline layout.

### Valid Usage

- VUID-vkCreateGraphicsPipelines-flags-00720
  If the \textit{flags} member of any element of \textit{pCreateInfos} contains the \textit{VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_DERIVATIVE_BIT} flag, and the \textit{basePipelineIndex} member of that same element is not -1, \textit{basePipelineIndex} must be less than the index into \textit{pCreateInfos} that corresponds to that element

- VUID-vkCreateGraphicsPipelines-flags-00721
  If the \textit{flags} member of any element of \textit{pCreateInfos} contains the \textit{VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_DERIVATIVE_BIT} flag, the base pipeline must have been created with the \textit{VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_ALLOW_DERIVATIVES_BIT} flag set

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCreateGraphicsPipelines-device-parameter
  \textit{device} must be a valid \textit{VkDevice} handle

- VUID-vkCreateGraphicsPipelines-pipelineCache-parameter
  If \textit{pipelineCache} is not \textit{VK_NULL_HANDLE}, \textit{pipelineCache} must be a valid \textit{VkPipelineCache} handle

- VUID-vkCreateGraphicsPipelines-pCreateInfos-parameter
  \textit{pCreateInfos} must be a valid pointer to an array of \textit{createInfoCount} valid \textit{VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo} structures

- VUID-vkCreateGraphicsPipelines-pAllocator-parameter
  If \textit{pAllocator} is not NULL, \textit{pAllocator} must be a valid pointer to a valid \textit{VkAllocationCallbacks} structure

- VUID-vkCreateGraphicsPipelines-pPipelines-parameter
  \textit{pPipelines} must be a valid pointer to an array of \textit{createInfoCount} \textit{VkPipeline} handles

- VUID-vkCreateGraphicsPipelines-pCreateInfos-arraylength
  \textit{createInfoCount} must be greater than 0

- VUID-vkCreateGraphicsPipelines-pPipelineCache-parent
  If \textit{pipelineCache} is a valid handle, it must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from \textit{device}
Return Codes

Success
• VK_SUCCESS

Failure
• VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
• VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY

The `VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkPipelineCreateFlags flags;
    uint32_t stageCount;
    const VkPipelineShaderStageCreateInfo* pStages;
    const VkPipelineVertexInputStateCreateInfo* pVertexInputState;
    const VkPipelineInputAssemblyStateCreateInfo* pInputAssemblyState;
    const VkPipelineTessellationStateCreateInfo* pTessellationState;
    const VkPipelineViewportStateCreateInfo* pViewportState;
    const VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateInfo* pRasterizationState;
    const VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo* pMultisampleState;
    const VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo* pDepthStencilState;
    const VkPipelineColorBlendStateCreateInfo* pColorBlendState;
    const VkPipelineDynamicStateCreateInfo* pDynamicState;
    VkPipelineLayout layout;
    VkRenderPass renderPass;
    uint32_t subpass;
    VkPipeline basePipelineHandle;
    int32_t basePipelineIndex;
} VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `flags` is a bitmask of `VkPipelineCreateFlagBits` specifying how the pipeline will be generated.
- `stageCount` is the number of entries in the `pStages` array.
- `pStages` is a pointer to an array of `stageCount` `VkPipelineShaderStageCreateInfo` structures describing the set of the shader stages to be included in the graphics pipeline.
- `pVertexInputState` is a pointer to a `VkPipelineVertexInputStateCreateInfo` structure.
- `pInputAssemblyState` is a pointer to a `VkPipelineInputAssemblyStateCreateInfo` structure which determines input assembly behavior, as described in Drawing Commands.
- `pTessellationState` is a pointer to a `VkPipelineTessellationStateCreateInfo` structure, and is
ignored if the pipeline does not include a tessellation control shader stage and tessellation evaluation shader stage.

- **pViewportState** is a pointer to a `VkPipelineViewportStateCreateInfo` structure, and is ignored if the pipeline has rasterization disabled.

- **pRasterizationState** is a pointer to a `VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateInfo` structure.

- **pMultisampleState** is a pointer to a `VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo` structure, and is ignored if the pipeline has rasterization disabled.

- **pDepthStencilState** is a pointer to a `VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo` structure, and is ignored if the pipeline has rasterization disabled or if the subpass of the render pass the pipeline is created against does not use a depth/stencil attachment.

- **pColorBlendState** is a pointer to a `VkPipelineColorBlendStateCreateInfo` structure, and is ignored if the pipeline has rasterization disabled or if the subpass of the render pass the pipeline is created against does not use any color attachments.

- **pDynamicState** is a pointer to a `VkPipelineDynamicStateCreateInfo` structure, and is used to indicate which properties of the pipeline state object are dynamic and can be changed independently of the pipeline state. This can be NULL, which means no state in the pipeline is considered dynamic.

- **layout** is the description of binding locations used by both the pipeline and descriptor sets used with the pipeline.

- **renderPass** is a handle to a render pass object describing the environment in which the pipeline will be used; the pipeline must only be used with an instance of any render pass compatible with the one provided. See Render Pass Compatibility for more information.

- **subpass** is the index of the subpass in the render pass where this pipeline will be used.

- **basePipelineHandle** is a pipeline to derive from.

- **basePipelineIndex** is an index into the `pCreateInfos` parameter to use as a pipeline to derive from.

The parameters **basePipelineHandle** and **basePipelineIndex** are described in more detail in Pipeline Derivatives.

The state required for a graphics pipeline is divided into vertex input state, pre-rasterization shader state, fragment shader state, and fragment output state.

Vertex input state is defined by:

- `VkPipelineVertexInputStateCreateInfo`
- `VkPipelineInputAssemblyStateCreateInfo`

Pre-rasterization shader state is defined by:

- `VkPipelineShaderStageCreateInfo` entries for:
  - Vertex shaders
  - Tessellation control shaders
- Tessellation evaluation shaders
- Geometry shaders

- Within the `VkPipelineLayout`, all bindings that affect the specified shader stages
- `VkPipelineViewportStateCreateInfo`
- `VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateInfo`
- `VkPipelineTessellationStateCreateInfo` if tessellation stages are included.
- `VkRenderPass` and `subpass` parameter
- `VkPipelineFragmentShadingRateStateCreateInfoKHR`

Fragment shader state is defined by:

- A `VkPipelineShaderStageCreateInfo` entry for the fragment shader
- Within the `VkPipelineLayout`, all bindings that affect the fragment shader
- `VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo`
- `VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo`
- `VkRenderPass` and `subpass` parameter
- `VkPipelineFragmentShadingRateStateCreateInfoKHR`

Fragment output state is defined by:

- `VkPipelineColorBlendStateCreateInfo`
- The `alphaToCoverageEnable` and `alphaToOneEnable` members of `VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo`.
- `VkRenderPass` and `subpass` parameter

A complete graphics pipeline always includes pre-rasterization shader state, with other subsets included depending on that state. If the pre-rasterization shader state includes a vertex shader, then vertex input state is included in a complete graphics pipeline. If the value of `VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateInfo::rasterizerDiscardEnable` in the pre-rasterization shader state is `VK_FALSE` fragment shader state and fragment output interface state is included in a complete graphics pipeline.

Pipelines must be created with a complete set of pipeline state.
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-flags-00722
  If `flags` contains the `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_DERIVATIVE_BIT` flag, and `basePipelineIndex` is -1, `basePipelineHandle` **must** be a valid handle to a graphics `VkPipeline`

- VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-flags-00723
  If `flags` contains the `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_DERIVATIVE_BIT` flag, and `basePipelineHandle` is `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, `basePipelineIndex` **must** be a valid index into the calling command's `pCreateInfos` parameter

- VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-flags-00724
  If `flags` contains the `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_DERIVATIVE_BIT` flag, and `basePipelineHandle` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, `basePipelineIndex` **must** be -1

- VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-flags-00725
  If `flags` contains the `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_DERIVATIVE_BIT` flag, and `basePipelineHandle` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, `basePipelineIndex` **must** be -1

- VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-stage-00726
  The `stage` member of each element of `pStages` **must** be unique

- VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-stage-00727
  If the pipeline is being created with pre-rasterization shader state the `stage` member of one element of `pStages` **must** be `VK_SHADER_STAGE_VERTEX_BIT`

- VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-stage-00728
  The `stage` member of each element of `pStages` **must** not be `VK_SHADER_STAGE_COMPUTE_BIT`

- VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-pStages-00729
  If the pipeline is being created with pre-rasterization shader state and `pStages` includes a tessellation control shader stage, it **must** include a tessellation evaluation shader stage

- VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-pStages-00730
  If the pipeline is being created with pre-rasterization shader state and `pStages` includes a tessellation evaluation shader stage, it **must** include a tessellation control shader stage

- VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-pStages-00731
  If the pipeline is being created with pre-rasterization shader state and `pStages` includes a tessellation control shader stage and a tessellation evaluation shader stage, `pTessellationState` **must** be a valid pointer to a valid `VkPipelineTessellationStateCreateInfo` structure

- VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-pStages-00732
  If the pipeline is being created with pre-rasterization shader state and `pStages` includes tessellation shader stages, the shader code of at least one stage **must** contain an `OpExecutionMode` instruction that specifies the type of subdivision in the pipeline

- VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-pStages-00733
  If the pipeline is being created with pre-rasterization shader state and `pStages` includes tessellation shader stages, and the shader code of both stages contain an `OpExecutionMode` instruction that specifies the type of subdivision in the pipeline, they **must** both specify the same subdivision mode
If the pipeline is being created with pre-rasterization shader state and pStages includes tessellation shader stages, the shader code of at least one stage must contain an `OpExecutionMode` instruction that specifies the output patch size in the pipeline.

If the pipeline is being created with pre-rasterization shader state and pStages includes tessellation shader stages, and the shader code of both contain an `OpExecutionMode` instruction that specifies the out patch size in the pipeline, they must both specify the same patch size.

If the pipeline is being created with pre-rasterization shader state and pStages includes tessellation shader stages, the `topology` member of pInputAssembly must be `VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_PATCH_LIST`.

If the pipeline is being created with pre-rasterization shader state and the `topology` member of pInputAssembly is `VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_PATCH_LIST`, pStages must include tessellation shader stages.

If the pipeline is being created with pre-rasterization shader state and pStages includes a geometry shader stage, and does not include any tessellation shader stages, its shader code must contain an `OpExecutionMode` instruction that specifies an input primitive type that is compatible with the primitive topology specified in pInputAssembly.

If the pipeline is being created with pre-rasterization shader state and pStages includes a geometry shader stage, and also includes tessellation shader stages, its shader code must contain an `OpExecutionMode` instruction that specifies an input primitive type that is compatible with the primitive topology that is output by the tessellation stages.

If the pipeline is being created with pre-rasterization shader state and fragment shader state, it includes both a fragment shader and a geometry shader, and the fragment shader code reads from an input variable that is decorated with `PrimitiveID`, then the geometry shader code must write to a matching output variable, decorated with `PrimitiveID`, in all execution paths.

If the pipeline is being created with fragment shader state the fragment shader must not read from any input attachment that is defined as `VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED` in subpass.

If the pipeline is being created with pre-rasterization shader state and multiple pre-rasterization shader stages are included in pStages, the shader code for the entry points identified by those pStages and the rest of the state identified by this structure must adhere to the pipeline linking rules described in the Shader Interfaces chapter.

If the pipeline is being created with pre-rasterization shader state and fragment shader state, the fragment shader and last pre-rasterization shader stage and any relevant state...
must adhere to the pipeline linking rules described in the Shader Interfaces chapter

• VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-subpass-04890
  If the pipeline is being created with fragment shader state, and subpass uses a depth/stencil attachment in renderPass with a read-only layout for the depth aspect in the VkAttachmentReference defined by subpass, the depthWriteEnable member of pDepthStencilState must be VK_FALSE

• VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-subpass-04891
  If the pipeline is being created with fragment shader state, and subpass uses a depth/stencil attachment in renderPass with a read-only layout for the stencil aspect in the VkAttachmentReference defined by subpass, the failOp, passOp and depthFailOp members of each of the front and back members of pDepthStencilState must be VK_STENCIL_OP_KEEP

• VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-blendEnable-04717
  If the pipeline is being created with fragment output interface state, then for each color attachment in the subpass, if the potential format features of the format of the corresponding attachment description do not contain VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BLEND_BIT, then the blendEnable member of the corresponding element of the pAttachments member of pColorBlendState must be VK_FALSE

• VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-attachmentCount-00746
  If the pipeline is being created with fragment output interface state, and the subpass uses color attachments, the attachmentCount member of pColorBlendState must be equal to the colorAttachmentCount used to create subpass

• VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-pDynamicStates-00747
  If the pipeline is being created with pre-rasterization shader state, and no element of the pDynamicStates member of pDynamicState is VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_VIEWPORT, the pViewports member of pViewportState must be a valid pointer to an array of pViewportState->viewportCount valid VkViewport structures

• VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-pDynamicStates-00748
  If the pipeline is being created with pre-rasterization shader state, and no element of the pDynamicStates member of pDynamicState is VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_SCISSOR, the pScissors member of pViewportState must be a valid pointer to an array of pViewportState->scissorCount VkRect2D structures

• VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-pDynamicStates-00749
  If the pipeline is being created with pre-rasterization shader state, and the wide lines feature is not enabled, and no element of the pDynamicStates member of pDynamicState is VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_LINE_WIDTH, the lineWidth member of pRasterizationState must be 1.0

• VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-rasterizerDiscardEnable-00750
  If the pipeline is being created with pre-rasterization shader state, and the rasterizerDiscardEnable member of pRasterizationState is VK_FALSE, pViewportState must be a valid pointer to a valid VkPipelineViewportStateCreateInfo structure

• VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-rasterizerDiscardEnable-00751
  If the pipeline is being created with fragment shader state, pMultisampleState must be a valid pointer to a valid VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo structure

• VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-rasterizerDiscardEnable-00752
  If the pipeline is being created with fragment shader state, and subpass uses a
depth/stencil attachment, `pDepthStencilState` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo` structure.

- VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-rasterizerDiscardEnable-00753
  If the pipeline is being created with fragment output interface state, and subpass uses color attachments, `pColorBlendState` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkPipelineColorBlendStateCreateInfo` structure.

- VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-rasterizerDiscardEnable-04493
  If the pipeline is being created with fragment output interface state, `pColorBlendState->attachmentCount` must be greater than the index of all color attachments that are not `VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED` for the subpass index in `renderPass`.

- VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-pDynamicStates-00754
  If the pipeline is being created with pre-rasterization shader state, the depth bias clamping feature is not enabled, no element of the `pDynamicStates` member of `pDynamicState` is `VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_DEPTH_BIAS`, and the `depthBiasEnable` member of `pRasterizationState` is `VK_TRUE`, the `depthBiasClamp` member of `pRasterizationState` must be `0.0`.

- VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-pDynamicStates-00755
  If the pipeline is being created with fragment shader state, and no element of the `pDynamicStates` member of `pDynamicState` is `VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_DEPTH_BOUNDS`, and the `depthBoundsTestEnable` member of `pDepthStencilState` is `VK_TRUE`, the `minDepthBounds` and `maxDepthBounds` members of `pDepthStencilState` must be between `0.0` and `1.0`, inclusive.

- VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-layout-00756
  `layout` must be consistent with all shaders specified in `pStages`.

- VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-subpass-00757
  If the pipeline is being created with fragment shader state and neither the `[VK_AMD_mixed_attachment_samples]` nor the `[VK_NV_framebuffer_mixed_samples]` extensions are enabled, and if subpass uses color and/or depth/stencil attachments, then the `rasterizationSamples` member of `pMultisampleState` must be the same as the sample count for those subpass attachments.

- VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-subpass-00758
  If the pipeline is being created with fragment shader state and subpass does not use any color and/or depth/stencil attachments, then the `rasterizationSamples` member of `pMultisampleState` must follow the rules for a zero-attachment subpass.

- VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-subpass-00759
  `subpass` must be a valid subpass within `renderPass`.

- VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-renderPass-00760
  If the pipeline is being created with pre-rasterization shader state, and the `renderPass` has multiview enabled and subpass has more than one bit set in the view mask and `multiviewTessellationShader` is not enabled, then `pStages` must not include tessellation shaders.

- VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-renderPass-00761
  If the pipeline is being created with pre-rasterization shader state, and the `renderPass` has multiview enabled and subpass has more than one bit set in the view mask and `multiviewGeometryShader` is not enabled, then `pStages` must not include a geometry shader.
If the pipeline is being created with **pre-rasterization shader state**, and the renderPass has multiview enabled and **subpass** has more than one bit set in the view mask, shaders in the pipeline must not write to the **Layer** built-in output.

If the pipeline is being created with **pre-rasterization shader state**, and the renderPass has multiview enabled, then all shaders must not include variables decorated with the **Layer** built-in decoration in their interfaces.

If the pipeline is being created with **pre-rasterization shader state**, and the renderPass has multiview enabled and **subpass** has more than one bit set in the view mask, shaders in the pipeline must not write to the Layer built-in output.

flags must not contain the VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_DISPATCH_BASE flag

If the pipeline is being created with **fragment shader state** and an input attachment was referenced by an aspectMask at renderPass creation time, the fragment shader must only read from the aspects that were specified for that input attachment.

The number of resources in layout accessible to each shader stage that is used by the pipeline must be less than or equal to VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxPerStageResources.

If the pipeline is being created with **vertex input state**, pVertexInputState must be a valid pointer to a valid VkPipelineVertexInputStateCreateInfo structure.

If the pipeline is being created with **vertex input state**, and VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_VERTEX_INPUT_EXT is not set, pVertexInputState must be a valid pointer to a valid VkPipelineVertexInputStateCreateInfo structure.

If the pipeline is being created with **vertex input state**, pInputAssemblyState must be a valid pointer to a valid VkPipelineInputAssemblyStateCreateInfo structure.

flags must not contain the VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_LIBRARY_BIT_KHR

flags must not include VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_ANY_HIT_SHADERS_BIT_KHR

flags must not include VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_CLOSEST_HIT_SHADERS_BIT_KHR

flags must not include VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_MISS_SHADERS_BIT_KHR

flags must not include VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_SKIP_TRIANGLES_BIT_KHR

flags must not include VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_SKIP_AABBS_BIT_KHR
• VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-flags-03577
  flags must not include VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_HANDLE_CAPTURE_REPLAY_BIT_KHR

• VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-pDynamicState-04494
  If the pipeline is being created with pre-rasterization shader state or fragment shader state and VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_KHR is not included in pDynamicState->pDynamicStates, VkPipelineFragmentShadingRateStateCreateInfoKHR::fragmentSize.width must be greater than or equal to 1

• VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-pDynamicState-04495
  If the pipeline is being created with pre-rasterization shader state or fragment shader state and VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_KHR is not included in pDynamicState->pDynamicStates, VkPipelineFragmentShadingRateStateCreateInfoKHR::fragmentSize.height must be greater than or equal to 1

• VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-pDynamicState-04496
  If the pipeline is being created with pre-rasterization shader state or fragment shader state and VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_KHR is not included in pDynamicState->pDynamicStates, VkPipelineFragmentShadingRateStateCreateInfoKHR::fragmentSize.width must be a power-of-two value

• VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-pDynamicState-04497
  If the pipeline is being created with pre-rasterization shader state or fragment shader state and VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_KHR is not included in pDynamicState->pDynamicStates, VkPipelineFragmentShadingRateStateCreateInfoKHR::fragmentSize.height must be a power-of-two value

• VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-pDynamicState-04498
  If the pipeline is being created with pre-rasterization shader state or fragment shader state and VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_KHR is not included in pDynamicState->pDynamicStates, VkPipelineFragmentShadingRateStateCreateInfoKHR::fragmentSize.width must be less than or equal to 4

• VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-pDynamicState-04499
  If the pipeline is being created with pre-rasterization shader state or fragment shader state and VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_KHR is not included in pDynamicState->pDynamicStates, VkPipelineFragmentShadingRateStateCreateInfoKHR::fragmentSize.height must be less than or equal to 4

• VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-pDynamicState-04500
  If the pipeline is being created with pre-rasterization shader state or fragment shader state and VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_KHR is not included in pDynamicState->pDynamicStates, and the pipelineFragmentShadingRate feature is not enabled, VkPipelineFragmentShadingRateStateCreateInfoKHR::fragmentSize.width and VkPipelineFragmentShadingRateStateCreateInfoKHR::fragmentSize.height must both be equal to 1

• VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-pDynamicState-04501
  If the pipeline is being created with pre-rasterization shader state or fragment shader state and VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_KHR is not included in pDynamicState->pDynamicStates, and the primitiveFragmentShadingRate feature is not enabled, VkPipelineFragmentShadingRateStateCreateInfoKHR::combinerOps[0] must be
If the pipeline is being created with pre-rasterization shader state and \texttt{VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_KHR} is not included in \texttt{pDynamicState->pDynamicStates}, and the attachmentFragmentShadingRate feature is not enabled, \texttt{VkPipelineFragmentShadingRateStateCreateInfoKHR::combinerOps[1]} must be \texttt{VK_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_COMBINER_OP_KEEP_KHR}.

If the pipeline is being created with pre-rasterization shader state and the primitiveFragmentShadingRateWithMultipleViewports limit is not supported, and entry points specified in \texttt{pStages} write to the ViewportIndex built-in, they must not also write to the PrimitiveShadingRateKHR built-in.

If the pipeline is being created with pre-rasterization shader state or fragment shader state, the fragmentShadingRateNonTrivialCombinerOps limit is not supported, and \texttt{VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_KHR} is not included in \texttt{pDynamicState->pDynamicStates}, elements of \texttt{VkPipelineFragmentShadingRateStateCreateInfoKHR::combinerOps} must be \texttt{VK_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_COMBINER_OP_KEEP_KHR} or \texttt{VK_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_COMBINER_OP_REPLACE_KHR}.

All elements of the \texttt{pDynamicStates} member of \texttt{pDynamicState} must not be \texttt{VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_RAY_TRACING_PIPELINE_STACK_SIZE_KHR}.

The pipeline must be created with a complete set of state.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-sType-sType**
  
  sType must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_GRAPHICS_PIPELINE_CREATE_INFO`

- **VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-pNext-pNext**
  
  pNext must be NULL or a pointer to a valid instance of `VkPipelineFragmentShadingRateStateCreateInfoKHR`

- **VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-sType-unique**
  
  The sType value of each struct in the pNext chain must be unique

- **VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-flags-parameter**
  
  flags must be a valid combination of `VkPipelineCreateFlagBits` values

- **VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-pStages-parameter**
  
  pStages must be a valid pointer to an array of `stageCount` valid `VkPipelineShaderStageCreateInfo` structures

- **VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-pRasterizationState-parameter**
  
  pRasterizationState must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateInfo` structure

- **VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-pDynamicState-parameter**
  
  If pDynamicState is not NULL, pDynamicState must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkPipelineDynamicStateCreateInfo` structure

- **VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-layout-parameter**
  
  layout must be a valid `VkPipelineLayout` handle

- **VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-renderPass-parameter**
  
  renderPass must be a valid `VkRenderPass` handle

- **VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-stageCount-arraylength**
  
  stageCount must be greater than 0

- **VUID-VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo-commonparent**
  
  Each of basePipelineHandle, layout, and renderPass that are valid handles of non-ignored parameters must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`

Possible values of the flags member of `VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo`, `VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR`, and `VkComputePipelineCreateInfo`, specifying how a pipeline is created, are:
typedef enum VkPipelineCreateFlagBits {
    VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_DISABLE_OPTIMIZATION_BIT = 0x00000001,
    VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_ALLOW_DERIVATIVES_BIT = 0x00000002,
    VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_DERIVATIVE_BIT = 0x00000004,
    VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_VIEW_INDEX_FROM_DEVICE_INDEX_BIT = 0x00000008,
    VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_ANY_HIT_SHADERS_BIT_KHR = 0x00004000,
    VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_CLOSEST_HIT_SHADERS_BIT_KHR = 0x00008000,
    VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_MISS_SHADERS_BIT_KHR = 0x00010000,
    VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_INTERSECTION_SHADERS_BIT_KHR = 0x00020000,
    VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_SKIP_TRIANGLES_BIT_KHR = 0x00001000,
    VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_SKIP_AABBS_BIT_KHR = 0x00002000,
    VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_HANDLE_CAPTURE_REPLAY_BIT_KHR = 0x00080000,
    VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_CAPTURE_STATISTICS_BIT_KHR = 0x00000040,
    VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_CAPTURE_INTERNAL_REPRESENTATIONS_BIT_KHR = 0x00000080,
    VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_LIBRARY_BIT_KHR = 0x00000800,
    VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_DISPATCH_BASE = VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_DISPATCH_BASE_BIT,
    VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_VIEW_INDEX_FROM_DEVICE_INDEX_BIT_KHR = VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_VIEW_INDEX_FROM_DEVICE_INDEX_BIT,
    VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_DISPATCH_BASE_KHR = VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_DISPATCH_BASE
} VkPipelineCreateFlagBits;

- **VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_DISABLE_OPTIMIZATION_BIT** specifies that the created pipeline will not be optimized. Using this flag may reduce the time taken to create the pipeline.

- **VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_ALLOW_DERIVATIVES_BIT** specifies that the pipeline to be created is allowed to be the parent of a pipeline that will be created in a subsequent pipeline creation call.

- **VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_DERIVATIVE_BIT** specifies that the pipeline to be created will be a child of a previously created parent pipeline.

- **VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_VIEW_INDEX_FROM_DEVICE_INDEX_BIT** specifies that any shader input variables decorated as `ViewIndex` will be assigned values as if they were decorated as `DeviceIndex`.

- **VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_DISPATCH_BASE** specifies that a compute pipeline can be used with `vkCmdDispatchBase` with a non-zero base workgroup.

- **VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_CAPTURE_STATISTICS_BIT_KHR** specifies that the shader compiler should capture statistics for the pipeline executables produced by the compile process which can later
be retrieved by calling `vkGetPipelineExecutableStatisticsKHR`. Enabling this flag must not affect the final compiled pipeline but may disable pipeline caching or otherwise affect pipeline creation time.

- `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_CAPTURE_INTERNAL_REPRESENTATIONS_BIT_KHR` specifies that the shader compiler should capture the internal representations of pipeline executables produced by the compile process which can later be retrieved by calling `vkGetPipelineExecutableInternalRepresentationsKHR`. Enabling this flag must not affect the final compiled pipeline but may disable pipeline caching or otherwise affect pipeline creation time.

- `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_LIBRARY_BIT_KHR` specifies that the pipeline cannot be used directly, and instead defines a pipeline library that can be combined with other pipelines using the `VkPipelineLibraryCreateInfoKHR` structure. This is available in ray tracing pipelines.

- `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_ANY_HIT_SHADERS_BIT_KHR` specifies that an any-hit shader will always be present when an any-hit shader would be executed. A NULL any-hit shader is an any-hit shader which is effectively `VK_SHADER_UNUSED_KHR`, such as from a shader group consisting entirely of zeros.

- `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_CLOSEST_HIT_SHADERS_BIT_KHR` specifies that a closest hit shader will always be present when a closest hit shader would be executed. A NULL closest hit shader is a closest hit shader which is effectively `VK_SHADER_UNUSED_KHR`, such as from a shader group consisting entirely of zeros.

- `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_MISS_SHADERS_BIT_KHR` specifies that a miss shader will always be present when a miss shader would be executed. A NULL miss shader is a miss shader which is effectively `VK_SHADER_UNUSED_KHR`, such as from a shader group consisting entirely of zeros.

- `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_INTERSECTION_SHADERS_BIT_KHR` specifies that an intersection shader will always be present when an intersection shader would be executed. A NULL intersection shader is an intersection shader which is effectively `VK_SHADER_UNUSED_KHR`, such as from a shader group consisting entirely of zeros.

- `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_SKIP_TRIANGLES_BIT_KHR` specifies that triangle primitives will be skipped during traversal using `OpTraceRayKHR`.

- `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_SKIP_AABBS_BIT_KHR` specifies that AABB primitives will be skipped during traversal using `OpTraceRayKHR`.

- `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_HANDLE_CAPTURE_REPLAY_BIT_KHR` specifies that the shader group handles can be saved and reused on a subsequent run (e.g. for trace capture and replay).

It is valid to set both `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_ALLOW_DERIVATIVES_BIT` and `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_DERIVATIVE_BIT`. This allows a pipeline to be both a parent and possibly a child in a pipeline hierarchy. See Pipeline Derivatives for more information.

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkPipelineCreateFlags;
```

`VkPipelineCreateFlags` is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more
The `VkPipelineDynamicStateCreateInfo` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkPipelineDynamicStateCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkPipelineDynamicStateCreateFlags flags;
    uint32_t dynamicStateCount;
    const VkDynamicState* pDynamicStates;
} VkPipelineDynamicStateCreateInfo;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **flags** is reserved for future use.
- **dynamicStateCount** is the number of elements in the **pDynamicStates** array.
- **pDynamicStates** is a pointer to an array of **VkDynamicState** values specifying which pieces of pipeline state will use the values from dynamic state commands rather than from pipeline state creation information.

### Valid Usage

- VUID-VkPipelineDynamicStateCreateInfo-pDynamicStates-01442
  Each element of **pDynamicStates** must be unique

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkPipelineDynamicStateCreateInfo-sType-sType
  **sType** must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_DYNAMIC_STATE_CREATE_INFO`
- VUID-VkPipelineDynamicStateCreateInfo-pNext-pNext
  **pNext** must be `NULL`
- VUID-VkPipelineDynamicStateCreateInfo-flags-zerobitmask
  **flags** must be `0`
- VUID-VkPipelineDynamicStateCreateInfo-pDynamicStates-parameter
  If **dynamicStateCount** is not `0`, **pDynamicStates** must be a valid pointer to an array of **VkDynamicState** values

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkPipelineDynamicStateCreateFlags;
```

`VkPipelineDynamicStateCreateFlags` is a bitmask type for setting a mask, but is currently reserved for
future use.

The source of different pieces of dynamic state is specified by the `VkPipelineDynamicStateCreateInfo::pDynamicStates` property of the currently active pipeline, each of whose elements **must** be one of the values:

```cpp
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkDynamicState {
    VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_VIEWPORT = 0,
    VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_SCISSOR = 1,
    VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_LINE_WIDTH = 2,
    VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_DEPTH_BIAS = 3,
    VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_BLEND_CONSTANTS = 4,
    VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_DEPTH_BOUNDS = 5,
    VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_STENCIL_COMPARE_MASK = 6,
    VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_STENCIL_WRITE_MASK = 7,
    VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_STENCIL_REFERENCE = 8,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline
    VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_RAY_TRACING_PIPELINE_STACK_SIZE_KHR = 1000347000,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_fragment_shading_rate
    VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_KHR = 1000226000,
} VkDynamicState;
```

- **VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_VIEWPORT** specifies that the `pViewports` state in `VkPipelineViewportStateCreateInfo` will be ignored and **must** be set dynamically with `vkCmdSetViewport` before any drawing commands. The number of viewports used by a pipeline is still specified by the `viewportCount` member of `VkPipelineViewportStateCreateInfo`.

- **VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_SCISSOR** specifies that the `pScissors` state in `VkPipelineViewportStateCreateInfo` will be ignored and **must** be set dynamically with `vkCmdSetScissor` before any drawing commands. The number of scissor rectangles used by a pipeline is still specified by the `scissorCount` member of `VkPipelineViewportStateCreateInfo`.

- **VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_LINE_WIDTH** specifies that the `lineWidth` state in `VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateInfo` will be ignored and **must** be set dynamically with `vkCmdSetLineWidth` before any drawing commands that generate line primitives for the rasterizer.

- **VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_DEPTH_BIAS** specifies that the `depthBiasConstantFactor`, `depthBiasClamp` and `depthBiasSlopeFactor` states in `VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateInfo` will be ignored and **must** be set dynamically with `vkCmdSetDepthBias` before any draws are performed with `depthBiasEnable` in `VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateInfo` set to `VK_TRUE`.

- **VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_BLEND_CONSTANTS** specifies that the `blendConstants` state in `VkPipelineColorBlendStateCreateInfo` will be ignored and **must** be set dynamically with `vkCmdSetBlendConstants` before any draws are performed with a pipeline state with `VkPipelineColorBlendAttachmentState` member `blendEnable` set to `VK_TRUE` and any of the blend functions using a constant blend color.

- **VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_DEPTH_BOUNDS** specifies that the `minDepthBounds` and `maxDepthBounds` states of `VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo` will be ignored and **must** be set dynamically with
vkCmdSetDepthBounds before any draws are performed with a pipeline state with
VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo member depthBoundsTestEnable set to VK_TRUE.

- **VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_STENCIL_COMPARE_MASK** specifies that the compareMask state in
  VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo for both front and back will be ignored and must be set
dynamically with vkCmdSetStencilCompareMask before any draws are performed with a pipeline state with
  VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo member stencilTestEnable set to VK_TRUE

- **VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_STENCIL_WRITE_MASK** specifies that the writeMask state in
  VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo for both front and back will be ignored and must be set
dynamically with vkCmdSetStencilWriteMask before any draws are performed with a pipeline state with
  VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo member stencilTestEnable set to VK_TRUE

- **VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_STENCIL_REFERENCE** specifies that the reference state in
  VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo for both front and back will be ignored and must be set
dynamically with vkCmdSetStencilReference before any draws are performed with a pipeline state with
  VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo member stencilTestEnable set to VK_TRUE

- **VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_KHR** specifies that state in
  VkPipelineFragmentShadingRateStateCreateInfoKHR will be ignored and must be set
dynamically with vkCmdSetFragmentShadingRateKHR before any drawing commands.

- **VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_RAY_TRACING_PIPELINE_STACK_SIZE_KHR** specifies that the default stack size
  computation for the pipeline will be ignored and must be set dynamically with
  vkCmdSetRayTracingPipelineStackSizeKHR before any ray tracing calls are performed.

### 10.2.1. Valid Combinations of Stages for Graphics Pipelines

If tessellation shader stages are omitted, the tessellation shading and fixed-function stages of the
pipeline are skipped.

If a geometry shader is omitted, the geometry shading stage is skipped.

If a fragment shader is omitted, fragment color outputs have undefined values, and the fragment
depth value is unmodified. This can be useful for depth-only rendering.

Presence of a shader stage in a pipeline is indicated by including a valid
VkPipelineShaderStageCreateInfo with module and pName selecting an entry point from a shader
module, where that entry point is valid for the stage specified by stage.

Presence of some of the fixed-function stages in the pipeline is implicitly derived from enabled
shaders and provided state. For example, the fixed-function tessellator is always present when the
pipeline has valid Tessellation Control and Tessellation Evaluation shaders.

For example:

- Depth/stencil-only rendering in a subpass with no color attachments
  - Active Pipeline Shader Stages
    - Vertex Shader
  - Required: Fixed-Function Pipeline Stages
    - VkPipelineVertexInputStateCreateInfo
- `VkPipelineInputAssemblyStateCreateInfo`
- `VkPipelineViewportStateCreateInfo`
- `VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateInfo`
- `VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo`
- `VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo`

- **Color-only rendering in a subpass with no depth/stencil attachment**
  - **Active Pipeline Shader Stages**
    - Vertex Shader
    - Fragment Shader
  - **Required: Fixed-Function Pipeline Stages**
    - `VkPipelineVertexInputStateCreateInfo`
    - `VkPipelineInputAssemblyStateCreateInfo`
    - `VkPipelineViewportStateCreateInfo`
    - `VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateInfo`
    - `VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo`
    - `VkPipelineColorBlendStateCreateInfo`

- **Rendering pipeline with tessellation and geometry shaders**
  - **Active Pipeline Shader Stages**
    - Vertex Shader
    - Tessellation Control Shader
    - Tessellation Evaluation Shader
    - Geometry Shader
    - Fragment Shader
  - **Required: Fixed-Function Pipeline Stages**
    - `VkPipelineVertexInputStateCreateInfo`
    - `VkPipelineInputAssemblyStateCreateInfo`
    - `VkPipelineTessellationStateCreateInfo`
    - `VkPipelineViewportStateCreateInfo`
    - `VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateInfo`
    - `VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo`
    - `VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo`
    - `VkPipelineColorBlendStateCreateInfo`
10.3. Ray Tracing Pipelines

Ray tracing pipelines consist of multiple shader stages, fixed-function traversal stages, and a pipeline layout.

VK_SHADER_UNUSED_KHR is a special shader index used to indicate that a ray generation, miss, or callable shader member is not used.

#define VK_SHADER_UNUSED_KHR \ (~0U)

To create ray tracing pipelines, call:

// Provided by VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline
VkResult vkCreateRayTracingPipelinesKHR( 
    VkDevice device, 
    VkDeferredOperationKHR deferredOperation, 
    VkPipelineCache pipelineCache, 
    uint32_t createInfoCount, 
    const VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR* pCreateInfos, 
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator, 
    VkPipeline* pPipelines);

- device is the logical device that creates the ray tracing pipelines.
- deferredOperation is VK_NULL_HANDLE or the handle of a valid VkDeferredOperationKHR request deferral object for this command.
- pipelineCache is either VK_NULL_HANDLE, indicating that pipeline caching is disabled, or the handle of a valid pipeline cache object, in which case use of that cache is enabled for the duration of the command.
- createInfoCount is the length of the pCreateInfos and pPipelines arrays.
- pCreateInfos is a pointer to an array of VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR structures.
- pAllocator controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
- pPipelines is a pointer to an array in which the resulting ray tracing pipeline objects are returned.

The VK_ERROR_INVALID_OPAQUE_CAPTURE_ADDRESS error is returned if the implementation is unable to re-use the shader group handles provided in VkRayTracingShaderGroupCreateInfoKHR::pShaderGroupCaptureReplayHandle when VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelineFeaturesKHR::rayTracingPipelineShaderGroupHandleCaptureReplay is enabled.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkCreateRayTracingPipelinesKHR-flags-03415**
  If the `flags` member of any element of `pCreateInfos` contains the `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_DERIVATIVE_BIT` flag, and the `basePipelineIndex` member of that same element is not `-1`, `basePipelineIndex` **must** be less than the index into `pCreateInfos` that corresponds to that element.

- **VUID-vkCreateRayTracingPipelinesKHR-flags-03416**
  If the `flags` member of any element of `pCreateInfos` contains the `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_DERIVATIVE_BIT` flag, the base pipeline **must** have been created with the `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_ALLOW_DERIVATIVES_BIT` flag set.

- **VUID-vkCreateRayTracingPipelinesKHR-flags-03816**
  `flags` **must** not contain the `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_DISPATCH_BASE` flag.

- **VUID-vkCreateRayTracingPipelinesKHR-deferredOperation-03677**
  If `deferredOperation` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, it **must** be a valid `VkDeferredOperationKHR` object.

- **VUID-vkCreateRayTracingPipelinesKHR-deferredOperation-03678**
  Any previous deferred operation that was associated with `deferredOperation` **must** be complete.

- **VUID-vkCreateRayTracingPipelinesKHR-rayTracingPipeline-03586**
  The `rayTracingPipeline` feature **must** be enabled.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkCreateRayTracingPipelinesKHR-device-parameter**
  
  `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- **VUID-vkCreateRayTracingPipelinesKHR-deferredOperation-parameter**
  
  If `deferredOperation` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, `deferredOperation` must be a valid `VkDeferredOperationKHR` handle

- **VUID-vkCreateRayTracingPipelinesKHR-pipelineCache-parameter**
  
  If `pipelineCache` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, `pipelineCache` must be a valid `VkPipelineCache` handle

- **VUID-vkCreateRayTracingPipelinesKHR-pCreateInfos-parameter**
  
  `pCreateInfos` must be a valid pointer to an array of `createInfoCount` valid `VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR` structures

- **VUID-vkCreateRayTracingPipelinesKHR-pAllocator-parameter**
  
  If `pAllocator` is not `NULL`, `pAllocator` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkAllocationCallbacks` structure

- **VUID-vkCreateRayTracingPipelinesKHR-pPipelines-parameter**
  
  `pPipelines` must be a valid pointer to an array of `createInfoCount` `VkPipeline` handles

- **VUID-vkCreateRayTracingPipelinesKHR-createInfoCount-arraylength**
  
  `createInfoCount` must be greater than 0

- **VUID-vkCreateRayTracingPipelinesKHR-deferredOperation-parent**
  
  If `deferredOperation` is a valid handle, it must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from `device`

- **VUID-vkCreateRayTracingPipelinesKHR-pipelineCache-parent**
  
  If `pipelineCache` is a valid handle, it must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from `device`

Return Codes

**Success**

- `VK_SUCCESS`
- `VK_OPERATION_DEFERRED_KHR`
- `VK_OPERATION_NOT_DEFERRED_KHR`

**Failure**

- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_INVALID_OPAQUE_CAPTURE_ADDRESS`

The `VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR` structure is defined as:
// Provided by VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline

typedef struct VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkPipelineCreateFlags flags;
    uint32_t stageCount;
    const VkPipelineShaderStageCreateInfo* pStages;
    uint32_t groupCount;
    const VkRayTracingShaderGroupCreateInfoKHR* pGroups;
    uint32_t maxPipelineRayRecursionDepth;
    const VkPipelineLibraryCreateInfoKHR* pLibraryInfo;
    const VkRayTracingPipelineInterfaceCreateInfoKHR* pLibraryInterface;
    const VkPipelineDynamicStateCreateInfo* pDynamicState;
    VkPipelineLayout layout;
    VkPipeline basePipelineHandle;
    int32_t basePipelineIndex;
} VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR;

• **sType** is the type of this structure.
• **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• **flags** is a bitmask of VkPipelineCreateFlagBits specifying how the pipeline will be generated.
• **stageCount** is the number of entries in the **pStages** array.
• **pStages** is a pointer to an array of **stageCount** VkPipelineShaderStageCreateInfo structures describing the set of the shader stages to be included in the ray tracing pipeline.
• **groupCount** is the number of entries in the **pGroups** array.
• **pGroups** is a pointer to an array of **groupCount** VkRayTracingShaderGroupCreateInfoKHR structures describing the set of the shader stages to be included in each shader group in the ray tracing pipeline.
• **maxPipelineRayRecursionDepth** is the maximum recursion depth of shaders executed by this pipeline.
• **pLibraryInfo** is a pointer to a VkPipelineLibraryCreateInfoKHR structure defining pipeline libraries to include.
• **pLibraryInterface** is a pointer to a VkRayTracingPipelineInterfaceCreateInfoKHR structure defining additional information when using pipeline libraries.
• **pDynamicState** is a pointer to a VkPipelineDynamicStateCreateInfo structure, and is used to indicate which properties of the pipeline state object are dynamic and can be changed independently of the pipeline state. This can be NULL, which means no state in the pipeline is considered dynamic.
• **layout** is the description of binding locations used by both the pipeline and descriptor sets used with the pipeline.
• **basePipelineHandle** is a pipeline to derive from.
• **basePipelineIndex** is an index into the **pCreateInfos** parameter to use as a pipeline to derive from.

456 | Chapter 10. Pipelines
The parameters `basePipelineHandle` and `basePipelineIndex` are described in more detail in Pipeline Derivatives.

When `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_LIBRARY_BIT_KHR` is specified, this pipeline defines a pipeline library which cannot be bound as a ray tracing pipeline directly. Instead, pipeline libraries define common shaders and shader groups which can be included in future pipeline creation.

If pipeline libraries are included in `pLibraryInfo`, shaders defined in those libraries are treated as if they were defined as additional entries in `pStages`, appended in the order they appear in the `pLibraries` array and in the `pStages` array when those libraries were defined.

When referencing shader groups in order to obtain a shader group handle, groups defined in those libraries are treated as if they were defined as additional entries in `pGroups`, appended in the order they appear in the `pLibraries` array and in the `pGroups` array when those libraries were defined. The shaders these groups reference are set when the pipeline library is created, referencing those specified in the pipeline library, not in the pipeline that includes it.

The default stack size for a pipeline if `VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_RAY_TRACING_PIPELINE_STACK_SIZE_KHR` is not provided is computed as described in Ray Tracing Pipeline Stack.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR-flags-03421**
  If flags contains the `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_DERIVATIVE_BIT` flag, and `basePipelineIndex` is -1, `basePipelineHandle` must be a valid handle to a ray tracing `VkPipeline`

- **VUID-VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR-flags-03422**
  If flags contains the `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_DERIVATIVE_BIT` flag, and `basePipelineHandle` is `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, `basePipelineIndex` must be a valid index into the calling command's `pCreateInfos` parameter

- **VUID-VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR-flags-03423**
  If flags contains the `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_DERIVATIVE_BIT` flag, and `basePipelineIndex` is not -1, `basePipelineHandle` must be `VK_NULL_HANDLE`

- **VUID-VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR-flags-03424**
  If flags contains the `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_DERIVATIVE_BIT` flag, and `basePipelineHandle` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, `basePipelineIndex` must be -1

- **VUID-VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR-pStages-03425**
  The shader code for the entry points identified by `pStages`, and the rest of the state identified by this structure must adhere to the pipeline linking rules described in the Shader Interfaces chapter

- **VUID-VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR-layout-03426**
  layout must be consistent with all shaders specified in `pStages`

- **VUID-VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR-layout-03427**
  The number of resources in layout accessible to each shader stage that is used by the pipeline must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxPerStageResources`

- **VUID-VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR-stage-03425**
  If flags does not include `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_LIBRARY_BIT_KHR`, the stage member of at least one element of `pStages`, including those implicitly added by `pLibraryInfo`, must be `VK_SHADER_STAGE_RAYGEN_BIT_KHR`

- **VUID-VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR-maxPipelineRayRecursionDepth-03589**
  `maxPipelineRayRecursionDepth` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR::maxRayRecursionDepth`

- **VUID-VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR-flags-03453**
  If flags includes `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_LIBRARY_BIT_KHR`, `pLibraryInterface` must not be NULL

- **VUID-VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR-pLibraryInfo-03590**
  If `pLibraryInfo` is not NULL and its `libraryCount` member is greater than 0, its `pLibraryInterface` member must not be NULL

- **VUID-VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR-plibraries-03591**
  Each element of `pLibraryInfo->plibraries` must have been created with the value of `maxPipelineRayRecursionDepth` equal to that in this pipeline

- **VUID-VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR-plibraryInfo-03592**
  If `pLibraryInfo` is not NULL, each element of its `plibraries` member must have been created with a layout that is compatible with the layout in this pipeline
If `pLibraryInfo` is not `NULL`, each element of its `pLibraries` member must have been created with values of the `maxPipelineRayPayloadSize` and `maxPipelineRayHitAttributeSize` members of `pLibraryInterface` equal to those in this pipeline

If `flags` includes `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_HANDLE_CAPTURE_REPLAY_BIT_KHR`, each element of `pLibraryInfo->pLibraries` must have been created with the `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_HANDLE_CAPTURE_REPLAY_BIT_KHR` bit set

If `flags` includes `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_SKIP_AABBS_BIT_KHR`, each element of `pLibraryInfo->pLibraries` must have been created with the `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_SKIP_AABBS_BIT_KHR` bit set

If `flags` includes `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_SKIP_TRIANGLES_BIT_KHR`, each element of `pLibraryInfo->pLibraries` must have been created with the `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_SKIP_TRIANGLES_BIT_KHR` bit set

If `flags` includes `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_ANY_HIT_SHADERS_BIT_KHR`, each element of `pLibraryInfo->pLibraries` must have been created with the `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_ANY_HIT_SHADERS_BIT_KHR` bit set

If `flags` includes `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_CLOSEST_HIT_SHADERS_BIT_KHR`, each element of `pLibraryInfo->pLibraries` must have been created with the `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_CLOSEST_HIT_SHADERS_BIT_KHR` bit set

If `flags` includes `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_INTERSECTION_SHADERS_BIT_KHR`, each element of `pLibraryInfo->pLibraries` must have been created with the `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_INTERSECTION_SHADERS_BIT_KHR` bit set

If `flags` includes `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_MISS_SHADERS_BIT_KHR`, each element of `pLibraryInfo->pLibraries` must have been created with the `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_MISS_SHADERS_BIT_KHR` bit set

If the `VK_KHR_pipeline_library` extension is not enabled, `pLibraryInfo` and `pLibraryInterface` must be `NULL`

If `flags` includes `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_ANY_HIT_SHADERS_BIT_KHR`, for any element of `pGroups` with a type of `VK_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_TYPE_TRIANGLES_HIT_GROUP_KHR` or `VK_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_TYPE_PROCEDURAL_HIT_GROUP_KHR`, the `anyHitShader` of that element must not be `VK_SHADER_UNUSED_KHR`

If `flags` includes `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_CLOSEST_HIT_SHADERS_BIT_KHR`,
for any element of `pGroups` with a type of
`VK_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_TYPE_TRIANGLES_HIT_GROUP_KHR` or
`VK_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_TYPE_PROCEDURAL_HIT_GROUP_KHR`, the
closestHitShader of that
element must not be `VK_SHADER_UNUSED_KHR`.

- VUID-VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR-rayTraversalPrimitiveCulling-03596
  If the `rayTraversalPrimitiveCulling` feature is not enabled, flags must not include
  `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_SKIP_AABBS_BIT_KHR`.

- VUID-VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR-rayTraversalPrimitiveCulling-03597
  If the `rayTraversalPrimitiveCulling` feature is not enabled, flags must not include
  `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_SKIP_TRIANGLES_BIT_KHR`.

- VUID-VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR-flags-03598
  If flags includes
  `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_HANDLE_CAPTURE_REPLAY_BIT_KHR`,
  rayTracingPipelineShaderGroupHandleCaptureReplay must be enabled.

- VUID-VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR-rayTracingPipelineShaderGroupHandleCaptureReplay-03599
  If
  `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelineFeaturesKHR
  ::rayTracingPipelineShaderGroupHandleCaptureReplay` is `VK_TRUE` and the
  pShaderGroupCaptureReplayHandle member of any element of `pGroups` is not NULL, flags
  must include
  `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_HANDLE_CAPTURE_REPLAY_BIT_KHR`.

- VUID-VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR-pLibraryInfo-03600
  If `pLibraryInfo` is not NULL and its `libraryCount` is 0, `stageCount` must not be 0.

- VUID-VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR-pLibraryInfo-03601
  If `pLibraryInfo` is not NULL and its `libraryCount` is 0, `groupCount` must not be 0.

- VUID-VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR-pDynamicStates-03602
  Any element of the `pDynamicStates` member of `pDynamicState` must be
  `VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_RAY_TRACING_PIPELINE_STACK_SIZE_KHR`.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

• VUID-VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RAY_TRACING_PIPELINE_CREATE_INFO_KHR

• VUID-VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR-pNext-pNext
  pNext must be NULL

• VUID-VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR-flags-parameter
  flags must be a valid combination of VkPipelineCreateFlagBits values

• VUID-VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR-pStages-parameter
  If stageCount is not 0, pStages must be a valid pointer to an array of stageCount valid
  VkPipelineShaderStageCreateInfo structures

• VUID-VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR-pGroups-parameter
  If groupCount is not 0, pGroups must be a valid pointer to an array of groupCount valid
  VkRayTracingShaderGroupCreateInfoKHR structures

• VUID-VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR-pLibraryInfo-parameter
  If pLibraryInfo is not NULL, pLibraryInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid
  VkPipelineLibraryCreateInfoKHR structure

• VUID-VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR-pLibraryInterface-parameter
  If pLibraryInterface is not NULL, pLibraryInterface must be a valid pointer to a valid
  VkRayTracingPipelineInterfaceCreateInfoKHR structure

• VUID-VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR-pDynamicState-parameter
  If pDynamicState is not NULL, pDynamicState must be a valid pointer to a valid
  VkPipelineDynamicStateCreateInfo structure

• VUID-VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR-layout-parameter
  layout must be a valid VkPipelineLayout handle

• VUID-VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR-commonparent
  Both of basePipelineHandle, and layout that are valid handles of non-ignored parameters
  must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same VkDevice

The VkRayTracingShaderGroupCreateInfoKHR structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline
typedef struct VkRayTracingShaderGroupCreateInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkRayTracingShaderGroupTypeKHR type;
    uint32_t generalShader;
    uint32_t closestHitShader;
    uint32_t anyHitShader;
    uint32_t intersectionShader;
    const void* pShaderGroupCaptureReplayHandle;
} VkRayTracingShaderGroupCreateInfoKHR;
```
• `sType` is the type of this structure.

• `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.

• `type` is the type of hit group specified in this structure.

• `generalShader` is the index of the ray generation, miss, or callable shader from `VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR::pStages` in the group if the shader group has `type` of `VK_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_TYPE_GENERAL_KHR` and `VK_SHADER_UNUSED_KHR` otherwise.

• `closestHitShader` is the optional index of the closest hit shader from `VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR::pStages` in the group if the shader group has `type` of `VK_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_TYPE_TRIANGLES_HIT_GROUP_KHR` or `VK_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_TYPE_PROCEDURAL_HIT_GROUP_KHR`, and `VK_SHADER_UNUSED_KHR` otherwise.

• `anyHitShader` is the optional index of the any-hit shader from `VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR::pStages` in the group if the shader group has `type` of `VK_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_TYPE_TRIANGLES_HIT_GROUP_KHR` or `VK_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_TYPE_PROCEDURAL_HIT_GROUP_KHR`, and `VK_SHADER_UNUSED_KHR` otherwise.

• `intersectionShader` is the index of the intersection shader from `VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR::pStages` in the group if the shader group has `type` of `VK_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_TYPE_PROCEDURAL_HIT_GROUP_KHR`, and `VK_SHADER_UNUSED_KHR` otherwise.

• `pShaderGroupCaptureReplayHandle` is an optional pointer to replay information for this shader group. Ignored if `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelineFeaturesKHR::rayTracingPipelineShaderGroupHandleCaptureReplay` is `VK_FALSE`. 
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkRayTracingShaderGroupCreateInfoKHR-type-03474**
  If `type` is `VK_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_TYPE_GENERAL_KHR` then `generalShader` must be a valid index into `VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR::pStages` referring to a shader of `VK_SHADER_STAGE_RAYGEN_BIT_KHR`, `VK_SHADER_STAGE_MISS_BIT_KHR`, or `VK_SHADER_STAGE_CALLABLE_BIT_KHR`.

- **VUID-VkRayTracingShaderGroupCreateInfoKHR-type-03475**
  If `type` is `VK_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_TYPE_GENERAL_KHR` then `closestHitShader`, `anyHitShader`, and `intersectionShader` must be `VK_SHADER_UNUSED_KHR`.

- **VUID-VkRayTracingShaderGroupCreateInfoKHR-type-03476**
  If `type` is `VK_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_TYPE_PROCEDURAL_HIT_GROUP_KHR` then `intersectionShader` must be a valid index into `VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR::pStages` referring to a shader of `VK_SHADER_STAGE_INTERSECTION_BIT_KHR`.

- **VUID-VkRayTracingShaderGroupCreateInfoKHR-type-03477**
  If `type` is `VK_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_TYPE_TRIANGLES_HIT_GROUP_KHR` then `intersectionShader` must be `VK_SHADER_UNUSED_KHR`.

- **VUID-VkRayTracingShaderGroupCreateInfoKHR-closestHitShader-03478**
  `closestHitShader` must be either `VK_SHADER_UNUSED_KHR` or a valid index into `VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR::pStages` referring to a shader of `VK_SHADER_STAGE_CLOSEST_HIT_BIT_KHR`.

- **VUID-VkRayTracingShaderGroupCreateInfoKHR-anyHitShader-03479**
  `anyHitShader` must be either `VK_SHADER_UNUSED_KHR` or a valid index into `VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR::pStages` referring to a shader of `VK_SHADER_STAGE_ANY_HIT_BIT_KHR`.

- **VUID-VkRayTracingShaderGroupCreateInfoKHR-rayTracingPipelineShaderGroupHandleCaptureReplayMixed-03603**
  If `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelineFeaturesKHR::rayTracingPipelineShaderGroupHandleCaptureReplayMixed` is `VK_FALSE` then `pShaderGroupCaptureReplayHandle` must not be provided if it has not been provided on a previous call to ray tracing pipeline creation.

- **VUID-VkRayTracingShaderGroupCreateInfoKHR-rayTracingPipelineShaderGroupHandleCaptureReplayMixed-03604**
  If `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelineFeaturesKHR::rayTracingPipelineShaderGroupHandleCaptureReplayMixed` is `VK_FALSE` then the caller must guarantee that no ray tracing pipeline creation commands with `pShaderGroupCaptureReplayHandle` provided execute simultaneously with ray tracing pipeline creation commands without `pShaderGroupCaptureReplayHandle` provided.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkRayTracingShaderGroupCreateInfoKHR-sType-sType
  
sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_CREATE_INFO_KHR

- VUID-VkRayTracingShaderGroupCreateInfoKHR-pNext-pNext
  
pNext must be NULL

- VUID-VkRayTracingShaderGroupCreateInfoKHR-type-parameter
  
type must be a valid VkRayTracingShaderGroupTypeKHR value

Possible values of type in VkRayTracingShaderGroupCreateInfoKHR are:

```
// Provided by VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline
typedef enum VkRayTracingShaderGroupTypeKHR {
    VK_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_TYPE_GENERAL_KHR = 0,
    VK_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_TYPE_TRIANGLES_HIT_GROUP_KHR = 1,
    VK_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_TYPE_PROCEDURAL_HIT_GROUP_KHR = 2,
} VkRayTracingShaderGroupTypeKHR;
```

- VK_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_TYPE_GENERAL_KHR indicates a shader group with a single
  
  VK_SHADER_STAGE_RAYGEN_BIT_KHR, VK_SHADER_STAGE_MISS_BIT_KHR, or
  
  VK_SHADER_STAGE_CALLABLE_BIT_KHR shader in it.

- VK_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_TYPE_TRIANGLES_HIT_GROUP_KHR specifies a shader group that only
  
  hits triangles and must not contain an intersection shader, only closest hit and any-hit shaders.

- VK_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_TYPE_PROCEDURAL_HIT_GROUP_KHR specifies a shader group that only
  
  intersects with custom geometry and must contain an intersection shader and may contain
  
  closest hit and any-hit shaders.

Note

For current group types, the hit group type could be inferred from the presence or

absence of the intersection shader, but we provide the type explicitly for future hit

groups that do not have that property.

The VkRayTracingPipelineInterfaceCreateInfoKHR structure is defined as:

```
// Provided by VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline
typedef struct VkRayTracingPipelineInterfaceCreateInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType     sType;
    const void*         pNext;
    uint32_t             maxPipelineRayPayloadSize;
    uint32_t             maxPipelineRayHitAttributeSize;
} VkRayTracingPipelineInterfaceCreateInfoKHR;
```

- sType is the type of this structure.
• `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.

• `maxPipelineRayPayloadSize` is the maximum payload size in bytes used by any shader in the pipeline.

• `maxPipelineRayHitAttributeSize` is the maximum attribute structure size in bytes used by any shader in the pipeline.

`maxPipelineRayPayloadSize` is calculated as the maximum number of bytes used by any block declared in the `RayPayloadKHR` or `IncomingRayPayloadKHR` storage classes. `maxPipelineRayHitAttributeSize` is calculated as the maximum number of bytes used by any block declared in the `HitAttributeKHR` storage class. As variables in these storage classes do not have explicit offsets, the size should be calculated as if each variable has a scalar alignment equal to the largest scalar alignment of any of the block’s members.

**Note**

There is no explicit upper limit for `maxPipelineRayPayloadSize`, but in practice it should be kept as small as possible. Similar to invocation local memory, it must be allocated for each shader invocation and for devices which support many simultaneous invocations, this storage can rapidly be exhausted, resulting in failure.

### Valid Usage

- VUID-VkRayTracingPipelineInterfaceCreateInfoKHR-maxPipelineRayHitAttributeSize-03605
  `maxPipelineRayHitAttributeSize` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR::maxRayHitAttributeSize`

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkRayTracingPipelineInterfaceCreateInfoKHR-sType-sType
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RAY_TRACING_PIPELINE_INTERFACE_CREATE_INFO_KHR`

- VUID-VkRayTracingPipelineInterfaceCreateInfoKHR-pNext-pNext
  `pNext` must be `NULL`

To query the opaque handles of shaders in the ray tracing pipeline, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline
VkResult vkGetRayTracingShaderGroupHandlesKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    VkPipeline pipeline,
    uint32_t firstGroup,
    uint32_t groupCount,
    size_t dataSize,
    void* pData);
```
• **device** is the logical device containing the ray tracing pipeline.
• **pipeline** is the ray tracing pipeline object containing the shaders.
• **firstGroup** is the index of the first group to retrieve a handle for from the `VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR::pGroups` array.
• **groupCount** is the number of shader handles to retrieve.
• **dataSize** is the size in bytes of the buffer pointed to by `pData`.
• **pData** is a pointer to a user-allocated buffer where the results will be written.

### Valid Usage

- VUID-vkGetRayTracingShaderGroupHandlesKHR-pipeline-04619
  `pipeline` must be a ray tracing pipeline

- VUID-vkGetRayTracingShaderGroupHandlesKHR-firstGroup-04050
  `firstGroup` must be less than the number of shader groups in `pipeline`

- VUID-vkGetRayTracingShaderGroupHandlesKHR-firstGroup-02419
  The sum of `firstGroup` and `groupCount` must be less than or equal to the number of shader groups in `pipeline`

- VUID-vkGetRayTracingShaderGroupHandlesKHR-dataSize-02420
  `dataSize` must be at least `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR::shaderGroupHandleSize` × `groupCount`

- VUID-vkGetRayTracingShaderGroupHandlesKHR-pipeline-03482
  `pipeline` must have not been created with `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_LIBRARY_BIT_KHR`

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetRayTracingShaderGroupHandlesKHR-device-parameter
  `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- VUID-vkGetRayTracingShaderGroupHandlesKHR-pipeline-parameter
  `pipeline` must be a valid `VkPipeline` handle

- VUID-vkGetRayTracingShaderGroupHandlesKHR-pData-parameter
  `pData` must be a valid pointer to an array of `dataSize` bytes

- VUID-vkGetRayTracingShaderGroupHandlesKHR-dataSize-arraylength
  `dataSize` must be greater than 0

- VUID-vkGetRayTracingShaderGroupHandlesKHR-pipeline-parent
  `pipeline` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from `device`
Return Codes

Success
• VK_SUCCESS

Failure
• VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
• VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY

To query the optional capture handle information of shaders in the ray tracing pipeline, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline
VkResult vkGetRayTracingCaptureReplayShaderGroupHandlesKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    VkPipeline pipeline,
    uint32_t firstGroup,
    uint32_t groupCount,
    size_t dataSize,
    void* pData);
```

• `device` is the logical device containing the ray tracing pipeline.
• `pipeline` is the ray tracing pipeline object containing the shaders.
• `firstGroup` is the index of the first group to retrieve a handle for from the `VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR::pGroups` array.
• `groupCount` is the number of shader handles to retrieve.
• `dataSize` is the size in bytes of the buffer pointed to by `pData`.
• `pData` is a pointer to a user-allocated buffer where the results will be written.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkGetRayTracingCaptureReplayShaderGroupHandlesKHR-pipeline-04620**
  
  pipeline must be a ray tracing pipeline

- **VUID-vkGetRayTracingCaptureReplayShaderGroupHandlesKHR-firstGroup-04051**
  
  firstGroup must be less than the number of shader groups in pipeline

- **VUID-vkGetRayTracingCaptureReplayShaderGroupHandlesKHR-firstGroup-03483**
  
  The sum of firstGroup and groupCount must be less than or equal to the number of shader groups in pipeline

- **VUID-vkGetRayTracingCaptureReplayShaderGroupHandlesKHR-dataSize-03484**
  
  dataSize must be at least VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR::shaderGroupHandleCaptureReplaySize × groupCount

- **VUID-vkGetRayTracingCaptureReplayShaderGroupHandlesKHR-rayTracingPipelineShaderGroupHandleCaptureReplay-03606**
  
  VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelineFeaturesKHR::rayTracingPipelineShaderGroupHandleCaptureReplay must be enabled to call this function

- **VUID-vkGetRayTracingCaptureReplayShaderGroupHandlesKHR-pipeline-03607**
  
  pipeline must have been created with a flags that included VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_HANDLE_CAPTURE_REPLAY_BIT_KHR

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkGetRayTracingCaptureReplayShaderGroupHandlesKHR-device-parameter**
  
  device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- **VUID-vkGetRayTracingCaptureReplayShaderGroupHandlesKHR-pipeline-parameter**
  
  pipeline must be a valid VkPipeline handle

- **VUID-vkGetRayTracingCaptureReplayShaderGroupHandlesKHR-pData-parameter**
  
  pData must be a valid pointer to an array of dataSize bytes

- **VUID-vkGetRayTracingCaptureReplayShaderGroupHandlesKHR-dataSize-arraylength**
  
  dataSize must be greater than 0

- **VUID-vkGetRayTracingCaptureReplayShaderGroupHandlesKHR-pipeline-parent**
  
  pipeline must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from device
To query the pipeline stack size of shaders in a shader group in the ray tracing pipeline, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline
VkDeviceSize vkGetRayTracingShaderGroupStackSizeKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    VkPipeline pipeline,
    uint32_t group,
    VkShaderGroupShaderKHR groupShader);
```

- `device` is the logical device containing the ray tracing pipeline.
- `pipeline` is the ray tracing pipeline object containing the shaders groups.
- `group` is the index of the shader group to query.
- `groupShader` is the type of shader from the group to query.

The return value is the ray tracing pipeline stack size in bytes for the specified shader as called from the specified shader group.

### Valid Usage

- VUID-vkGetRayTracingShaderGroupStackSizeKHR-pipeline-04622
  `pipeline` must be a ray tracing pipeline
- VUID-vkGetRayTracingShaderGroupStackSizeKHR-group-03608
  The value of `group` must be less than the number of shader groups in `pipeline`
- VUID-vkGetRayTracingShaderGroupStackSizeKHR-groupShader-03609
  The shader identified by `groupShader` in `group` must not be `VK_SHADER_UNUSED_KHR`
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetRayTracingShaderGroupStackSizeKHR-device-parameter
device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- VUID-vkGetRayTracingShaderGroupStackSizeKHR-pipeline-parameter
pipeline must be a valid VkPipeline handle

- VUID-vkGetRayTracingShaderGroupStackSizeKHR-groupShader-parameter
groupShader must be a valid VkShaderGroupShaderKHR value

- VUID-vkGetRayTracingShaderGroupStackSizeKHR-pipeline-parent
pipeline must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from device

Possible values of groupShader in vkGetRayTracingShaderGroupStackSizeKHR are:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline
typedef enum VkShaderGroupShaderKHR {
    VK_SHADER_GROUP_SHADER_GENERAL_KHR = 0,
    VK_SHADER_GROUP_SHADER_CLOSEST_HIT_KHR = 1,
    VK_SHADER_GROUP_SHADER_ANY_HIT_KHR = 2,
    VK_SHADER_GROUP_SHADER_INTERSECTION_KHR = 3,
} VkShaderGroupShaderKHR;
```

- VK_SHADER_GROUP_SHADER_GENERAL_KHR uses the shader specified in the group with VkRayTracingShaderGroupCreateInfoKHR::generalShader
- VK_SHADER_GROUP_SHADER_CLOSEST_HIT_KHR uses the shader specified in the group with VkRayTracingShaderGroupCreateInfoKHR::closestHitShader
- VK_SHADER_GROUP_SHADER_ANY_HIT_KHR uses the shader specified in the group with VkRayTracingShaderGroupCreateInfoKHR::anyHitShader
- VK_SHADER_GROUP_SHADER_INTERSECTION_KHR uses the shader specified in the group with VkRayTracingShaderGroupCreateInfoKHR::intersectionShader

To set the dynamic stack size for a ray tracing pipeline call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline
void vkCmdSetRayTracingPipelineStackSizeKHR(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    uint32_t pipelineStackSize);
```

- commandBuffer is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
- pipelineStackSize is the stack size to use for subsequent ray tracing trace commands.

See Ray Tracing Pipeline Stack for more on computing pipelineStackSize.
Valid Usage

• VUID-vkCmdSetRayTracingPipelineStackSizeKHR-pipelineStackSize-03610
  pipelineStackSize must be large enough for any dynamic execution through the shaders in the ray tracing pipeline used by a subsequent trace call

Valid Usage (Implicit)

• VUID-vkCmdSetRayTracingPipelineStackSizeKHR-commandBuffer-parameter
  commandBuffer must be a valid VkCommandBuffer handle

• VUID-vkCmdSetRayTracingPipelineStackSizeKHR-commandBuffer-recording
  commandBuffer must be in the recording state

• VUID-vkCmdSetRayTracingPipelineStackSizeKHR-commandBuffer-cmdlpool
  The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must support compute operations

• VUID-vkCmdSetRayTracingPipelineStackSizeKHR-renderpass
  This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance

Host Synchronization

• Host access to commandBuffer must be externally synchronized

• Host access to the VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10.4. Pipeline Destruction

To destroy a pipeline, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkDestroyPipeline(
    VkDevice device,
    VkPipeline pipeline,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator);
```
device is the logical device that destroys the pipeline.

pipeline is the handle of the pipeline to destroy.

pAllocator controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkDestroyPipeline-pipeline-00765**
  
  All submitted commands that refer to pipeline must have completed execution.

- **VUID-vkDestroyPipeline-pipeline-00766**
  
  If VkAllocationCallbacks were provided when pipeline was created, a compatible set of callbacks must be provided here.

- **VUID-vkDestroyPipeline-pipeline-00767**
  
  If no VkAllocationCallbacks were provided when pipeline was created, pAllocator must be NULL.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkDestroyPipeline-device-parameter**
  
  device must be a valid VkDevice handle.

- **VUID-vkDestroyPipeline-pipeline-parameter**
  
  If pipeline is not VK_NULL_HANDLE, pipeline must be a valid VkPipeline handle.

- **VUID-vkDestroyPipeline-pAllocator-parameter**
  
  If pAllocator is not NULL, pAllocator must be a valid pointer to a valid VkAllocationCallbacks structure.

- **VUID-vkDestroyPipeline-pPipeline-parent**
  
  If pipeline is a valid handle, it must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from device.

### Host Synchronization

- Host access to pipeline must be externally synchronized.

### 10.5. Multiple Pipeline Creation

Multiple pipelines can be created simultaneously by passing an array of VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo, VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR, or VkComputePipelineCreateInfo structures into the vkCreateGraphicsPipelines, vkCreateRayTracingPipelinesKHR, and vkCreateComputePipelines commands, respectively. Applications can group together similar pipelines to be created in a single call, and implementations are encouraged to look for reuse opportunities within a group-create.

When an application attempts to create many pipelines in a single command, it is possible that some subset may fail creation. In that case, the corresponding entries in the pPipelines output...
array will be filled with \texttt{VK\_NULL\_HANDLE} values. If any pipeline fails creation despite valid arguments (for example, due to out of memory errors), the \texttt{VkResult} code returned by \texttt{vkCreate*Pipelines} will indicate why. The implementation will attempt to create all pipelines, and only return \texttt{VK\_NULL\_HANDLE} values for those that actually failed.

\section*{10.6. Pipeline Derivatives}

A pipeline derivative is a child pipeline created from a parent pipeline, where the child and parent are expected to have much commonality. The goal of derivative pipelines is that they be cheaper to create using the parent as a starting point, and that it be more efficient (on either host or device) to switch/bind between children of the same parent.

A derivative pipeline is created by setting the \texttt{VK\_PIPELINE\_CREATE\_DERIVATIVE\_BIT} flag in the \texttt{Vk*PipelineCreateInfo} structure. If this is set, then exactly one of \texttt{basePipelineHandle} or \texttt{basePipelineIndex} members of the structure \textbf{must} have a valid handle/index, and specifies the parent pipeline. If \texttt{basePipelineHandle} is used, the parent pipeline \textbf{must} have already been created. If \texttt{basePipelineIndex} is used, then the parent is being created in the same command. \texttt{VK\_NULL\_HANDLE} acts as the invalid handle for \texttt{basePipelineHandle}, and -1 is the invalid index for \texttt{basePipelineIndex}. If \texttt{basePipelineIndex} is used, the base pipeline \textbf{must} appear earlier in the array. The base pipeline \textbf{must} have been created with the \texttt{VK\_PIPELINE\_CREATE\_ALLOW\_DERIVATIVES\_BIT} flag set.

\section*{10.7. Pipeline Cache}

Pipeline cache objects allow the result of pipeline construction to be reused between pipelines and between runs of an application. Reuse between pipelines is achieved by passing the same pipeline cache object when creating multiple related pipelines. Reuse across runs of an application is achieved by retrieving pipeline cache contents in one run of an application, saving the contents, and using them to preinitialize a pipeline cache on a subsequent run. The contents of the pipeline cache objects are managed by the implementation. Applications \textbf{can} manage the host memory consumed by a pipeline cache object and control the amount of data retrieved from a pipeline cache object.

Pipeline cache objects are represented by \texttt{VkPipelineCache} handles:

```c
// Provided by VK\_VERSION\_1\_0
VK\_DEFINE\_NON\_DISPATCHABLE\_HANDLE(VkPipelineCache)
```

\section*{10.7.1. Creating a Pipeline Cache}

To create pipeline cache objects, call:
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkCreatePipelineCache(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkPipelineCacheCreateInfo* pCreateInfo,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator,
    VkPipelineCache* pPipelineCache);

- **device** is the logical device that creates the pipeline cache object.
- **pCreateInfo** is a pointer to a `VkPipelineCacheCreateInfo` structure containing initial parameters for the pipeline cache object.
- **pAllocator** controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
- **pPipelineCache** is a pointer to a `VkPipelineCache` handle in which the resulting pipeline cache object is returned.

**Note**
Applications can track and manage the total host memory size of a pipeline cache object using the `pAllocator`. Applications can limit the amount of data retrieved from a pipeline cache object in `vkGetPipelineCacheData`. Implementations should not internally limit the total number of entries added to a pipeline cache object or the total host memory consumed.

Once created, a pipeline cache can be passed to the `vkCreateGraphicsPipelines`, `vkCreateRayTracingPipelinesKHR`, and `vkCreateComputePipelines` commands. If the pipeline cache passed into these commands is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, the implementation will query it for possible reuse opportunities and update it with new content. The use of the pipeline cache object in these commands is internally synchronized, and the same pipeline cache object can be used in multiple threads simultaneously.

**Note**
Implementations should make every effort to limit any critical sections to the actual accesses to the cache, which is expected to be significantly shorter than the duration of the `vkCreate*Pipelines` commands.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCreatePipelineCache-device-parameter
  
  **device** must be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- VUID-vkCreatePipelineCache-pCreateInfo-parameter
  
  **pCreateInfo** must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkPipelineCacheCreateInfo` structure

- VUID-vkCreatePipelineCache-pAllocator-parameter
  
  If **pAllocator** is not **NULL**, **pAllocator** must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkAllocationCallbacks` structure

- VUID-vkCreatePipelineCache-pPipelineCache-parameter
  
  **pPipelineCache** must be a valid pointer to a `VkPipelineCache` handle

Return Codes

**Success**
- VK_SUCCESS

**Failure**
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY

The `VkPipelineCacheCreateInfo` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkPipelineCacheCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkPipelineCacheCreateFlags flags;
    size_t initialDataSize;
    const void* pInitialData;
} VkPipelineCacheCreateInfo;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **flags** is reserved for future use.
- **initialDataSize** is the number of bytes in **pInitialData**. If **initialDataSize** is zero, the pipeline cache will initially be empty.
- **pInitialData** is a pointer to previously retrieved pipeline cache data. If the pipeline cache data is incompatible (as defined below) with the device, the pipeline cache will be initially empty. If **initialDataSize** is zero, **pInitialData** is ignored.
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkPipelineCacheCreateInfo-initialDataSize-00768
  If initialDataSize is not 0, it must be equal to the size of pInitialData, as returned by vkGetPipelineCacheData when pInitialData was originally retrieved

- VUID-VkPipelineCacheCreateInfo-initialDataSize-00769
  If initialDataSize is not 0, pInitialData must have been retrieved from a previous call to vkGetPipelineCacheData

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkPipelineCacheCreateInfo-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_CACHE_CREATE_INFO

- VUID-VkPipelineCacheCreateInfo-pNext-pNext
  pNext must be NULL

- VUID-VkPipelineCacheCreateInfo-flags-zerobitmask
  flags must be 0

- VUID-VkPipelineCacheCreateInfo-pInitialData-parameter
  If initialDataSize is not 0, pInitialData must be a valid pointer to an array of initialDataSize bytes

// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkPipelineCacheCreateFlags;

VkPipelineCacheCreateFlags is a bitmask type for setting a mask, but is currently reserved for future use.

10.7.2. Merging Pipeline Caches

Pipeline cache objects can be merged using the command:

// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkMergePipelineCaches(
    VkDevice device,
    VkPipelineCache dstCache,
    uint32_t srcCacheCount,
    const VkPipelineCache* pSrcCaches);

- device is the logical device that owns the pipeline cache objects.
- dstCache is the handle of the pipeline cache to merge results into.
- srcCacheCount is the length of the pSrcCaches array.
- pSrcCaches is a pointer to an array of pipeline cache handles, which will be merged into
The previous contents of \texttt{dstCache} are included after the merge.

\textbf{Note}

The details of the merge operation are implementation-dependent, but implementations \textbf{should} merge the contents of the specified pipelines and prune duplicate entries.

\textbf{Valid Usage}

- VUID-vkMergePipelineCaches-dstCache-00770
  \texttt{dstCache} must not appear in the list of source caches

\textbf{Valid Usage (Implicit)}

- VUID-vkMergePipelineCaches-device-parameter
  \texttt{device} must be a valid \texttt{VkDevice} handle

- VUID-vkMergePipelineCaches-dstCache-parameter
  \texttt{dstCache} must be a valid \texttt{VkPipelineCache} handle

- VUID-vkMergePipelineCaches-pSrcCaches-parameter
  \texttt{pSrcCaches} must be a valid pointer to an array of \texttt{srcCacheCount} valid \texttt{VkPipelineCache} handles

- VUID-vkMergePipelineCaches-srcCacheCount-arraylength
  \texttt{srcCacheCount} must be greater than 0

- VUID-vkMergePipelineCaches-dstCache-parent
  \texttt{dstCache} must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from \texttt{device}

- VUID-vkMergePipelineCaches-pSrcCaches-parent
  Each element of \texttt{pSrcCaches} must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from \texttt{device}

\textbf{Host Synchronization}

- Host access to \texttt{dstCache} must be externally synchronized

\textbf{Return Codes}

\textbf{Success}

- VK_SUCCESS

\textbf{Failure}

- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY
10.7.3. Retrieving Pipeline Cache Data

Data can be retrieved from a pipeline cache object using the command:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkGetPipelineCacheData(
    VkDevice device,
    VkPipelineCache pipelineCache,
    size_t* pDataSize,
    void* pData);
```

- **device** is the logical device that owns the pipeline cache.
- **pipelineCache** is the pipeline cache to retrieve data from.
- **pDataSize** is a pointer to a `size_t` value related to the amount of data in the pipeline cache, as described below.
- **pData** is either **NULL** or a pointer to a buffer.

If **pData** is **NULL**, then the maximum size of the data that **can** be retrieved from the pipeline cache, in bytes, is returned in **pDataSize**. Otherwise, **pDataSize** must point to a variable set by the user to the size of the buffer, in bytes, pointed to by **pData**, and on return the variable is overwritten with the amount of data actually written to **pData**. If **pDataSize** is less than the maximum size that can be retrieved by the pipeline cache, at most **pDataSize** bytes will be written to **pData**, and **VK_INCOMPLETE** will be returned instead of **VK_SUCCESS**, to indicate that not all of the pipeline cache was returned.

Any data written to **pData** is valid and can be provided as the **pInitialData** member of the **VkPipelineCacheCreateInfo** structure passed to **vkCreatePipelineCache**.

Two calls to **vkGetPipelineCacheData** with the same parameters must retrieve the same data unless a command that modifies the contents of the cache is called between them.

The initial bytes written to **pData** must be a header as described in the Pipeline Cache Header section.

If **pDataSize** is less than what is necessary to store this header, nothing will be written to **pData** and zero will be written to **pDataSize**.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetPipelineCacheData-device-parameter
  
  `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- VUID-vkGetPipelineCacheData-pipelineCache-parameter
  
  `pipelineCache` must be a valid `VkPipelineCache` handle

- VUID-vkGetPipelineCacheData-pDataSize-parameter
  
  `pDataSize` must be a valid pointer to a `size_t` value

- VUID-vkGetPipelineCacheData-pData-parameter
  
  If the value referenced by `pDataSize` is not 0, and `pData` is not NULL, `pData` must be a valid pointer to an array of `pDataSize` bytes

- VUID-vkGetPipelineCacheData-pipelineCache-parent
  
  `pipelineCache` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from `device`

Return Codes

Success

- VK_SUCCESS
- VK_INCOMPLETE

Failure

- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY

10.7.4. Pipeline Cache Header

Applications can store the data retrieved from the pipeline cache, and use these data, possibly in a future run of the application, to populate new pipeline cache objects. The results of pipeline compiles, however, may depend on the vendor ID, device ID, driver version, and other details of the device. To enable applications to detect when previously retrieved data is incompatible with the device, the pipeline cache data must begin with a valid pipeline cache header.

Version one of the pipeline cache header is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkPipelineCacheHeaderVersionOne {
    uint32_t headerSize;
    VkPipelineCacheHeaderVersion headerVersion;
    uint32_t vendorID;
    uint32_t deviceID;
    uint8_t pipelineCacheUUID[VK_UUID_SIZE];
} VkPipelineCacheHeaderVersionOne;
```
• headerSize is the length in bytes of the pipeline cache header.

• headerVersion is a VkPipelineCacheHeaderVersion enum value specifying the version of the header. A consumer of the pipeline cache should use the cache version to interpret the remainder of the cache header.

• vendorID is the VkPhysicalDeviceProperties::vendorID of the implementation.

• deviceID is the VkPhysicalDeviceProperties::deviceID of the implementation.

• pipelineCacheUUID is the VkPhysicalDeviceProperties::pipelineCacheUUID of the implementation.

Unlike most structures declared by the Vulkan API, all fields of this structure are written with the least significant byte first, regardless of host byte-order.

The C language specification does not define the packing of structure members. This layout assumes tight structure member packing, with members laid out in the order listed in the structure, and the intended size of the structure is 32 bytes. If a compiler produces code that diverges from that pattern, applications must employ another method to set values at the correct offsets.

Valid Usage

- VUID-VkPipelineCacheHeaderVersionOne-headerSize-04967
  headerSize must be 32

- VUID-VkPipelineCacheHeaderVersionOne-headerVersion-04968
  headerVersion must be VK_PIPELINE_CACHE_HEADER_VERSION_ONE

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkPipelineCacheHeaderVersionOne-headerVersion-parameter
  headerVersion must be a valid VkPipelineCacheHeaderVersion value

Possible values of the headerVersion value of the pipeline cache header are:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkPipelineCacheHeaderVersion {
  VK_PIPELINE_CACHE_HEADER_VERSION_ONE = 1,
} VkPipelineCacheHeaderVersion;
```

• VK_PIPELINE_CACHE_HEADER_VERSION_ONE specifies version one of the pipeline cache.

10.7.5. Destroying a Pipeline Cache

To destroy a pipeline cache, call:
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0

```c
void vkDestroyPipelineCache(
    VkDevice device,
    VkPipelineCache pipelineCache,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator);
```

- **device** is the logical device that destroys the pipeline cache object.
- **pipelineCache** is the handle of the pipeline cache to destroy.
- **pAllocator** controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkDestroyPipelineCache-pipelineCache-00771**
  If `VkAllocationCallbacks` were provided when `pipelineCache` was created, a compatible set of callbacks must be provided here.

- **VUID-vkDestroyPipelineCache-pipelineCache-00772**
  If no `VkAllocationCallbacks` were provided when `pipelineCache` was created, `pAllocator` must be `NULL`.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkDestroyPipelineCache-device-parameter**
  Device must be a valid `VkDevice` handle.

- **VUID-vkDestroyPipelineCache-pipelineCache-parameter**
  If `pipelineCache` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, `pipelineCache` must be a valid `VkPipelineCache` handle.

- **VUID-vkDestroyPipelineCache-pAllocator-parameter**
  If `pAllocator` is not `NULL`, `pAllocator` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkAllocationCallbacks` structure.

- **VUID-vkDestroyPipelineCache-pipelineCache-parent**
  If `pipelineCache` is a valid handle, it must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from `device`.

### Host Synchronization

- Host access to `pipelineCache` must be externally synchronized.

## 10.8. Specialization Constants

Specialization constants are a mechanism whereby constants in a SPIR-V module can have their constant value specified at the time the `VkPipeline` is created. This allows a SPIR-V module to have
constants that **can** be modified while executing an application that uses the Vulkan API.

**Note**
Specialization constants are useful to allow a compute shader to have its local workgroup size changed at runtime by the user, for example.

Each `VkPipelineShaderStageCreateInfo` structure contains a `pSpecializationInfo` member, which **can** be `NULL` to indicate no specialization constants, or point to a `VkSpecializationInfo` structure.

The `VkSpecializationInfo` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkSpecializationInfo {
    uint32_t mapEntryCount;
    const VkSpecializationMapEntry* pMapEntries;
    size_t dataSize;
    const void* pData;
} VkSpecializationInfo;
```

- `mapEntryCount` is the number of entries in the `pMapEntries` array.
- `pMapEntries` is a pointer to an array of `VkSpecializationMapEntry` structures which map constant IDs to offsets in `pData`.
- `dataSize` is the byte size of the `pData` buffer.
- `pData` contains the actual constant values to specialize with.

**Valid Usage**

- VUID-VkSpecializationInfo-offset-00773
  The `offset` member of each element of `pMapEntries` must be less than `dataSize`

- VUID-VkSpecializationInfo-pMapEntries-00774
  The `size` member of each element of `pMapEntries` must be less than or equal to `dataSize` minus `offset`

- VUID-VkSpecializationInfo-constantID-04911
  The `constantID` value of each element of `pMapEntries` must be unique within `pMapEntries`

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-VkSpecializationInfo-pMapEntries-parameter
  If `mapEntryCount` is not 0, `pMapEntries` must be a valid pointer to an array of `mapEntryCount` valid `VkSpecializationMapEntry` structures

- VUID-VkSpecializationInfo-pData-parameter
  If `dataSize` is not 0, `pData` must be a valid pointer to an array of `dataSize` bytes
The **VkSpecializationMapEntry** structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkSpecializationMapEntry {
    uint32_t constantID;
    uint32_t offset;
    size_t size;
} VkSpecializationMapEntry;
```

- **constantID** is the ID of the specialization constant in SPIR-V.
- **offset** is the byte offset of the specialization constant value within the supplied data buffer.
- **size** is the byte size of the specialization constant value within the supplied data buffer.

If a **constantID** value is not a specialization constant ID used in the shader, that map entry does not affect the behavior of the pipeline.

**Valid Usage**

- VUID-VkSpecializationMapEntry-constantID-00776

For a **constantID** specialization constant declared in a shader, **size** must match the byte size of the **constantID**. If the specialization constant is of type **boolean**, **size** must be the byte size of **VkBool32**

In human readable SPIR-V:

```
OpDecorate %x SpecId 13 ; decorate .x component of WorkgroupSize with ID 13
OpDecorate %y SpecId 42 ; decorate .y component of WorkgroupSize with ID 42
OpDecorate %z SpecId 3 ; decorate .z component of WorkgroupSize with ID 3
OpDecorate %wgsize BuiltIn WorkgroupSize ; decorate WorkgroupSize onto constant
%i32 = OpTypeInt 32 0 ; declare an unsigned 32-bit type
%uvec3 = OpTypeVector %i32 3 ; declare a 3 element vector type of unsigned 32-bit
%x = OpSpecConstant %i32 1 ; declare the .x component of WorkgroupSize
%y = OpSpecConstant %i32 1 ; declare the .y component of WorkgroupSize
%z = OpSpecConstant %i32 1 ; declare the .z component of WorkgroupSize
%wgsize = OpSpecConstantComposite %uvec3 %x %y %z ; declare WorkgroupSize
```

From the above we have three specialization constants, one for each of the x, y & z elements of the WorkgroupSize vector.

Now to specialize the above via the specialization constants mechanism:
const VkSpecializationMapEntry entries[] =
{
    
    { 13, // constantID
        0 * sizeof(uint32_t), // offset
        sizeof(uint32_t)     // size
    },
    
    { 42, // constantID
        1 * sizeof(uint32_t), // offset
        sizeof(uint32_t)     // size
    },
    
    { 3, // constantID
        2 * sizeof(uint32_t), // offset
        sizeof(uint32_t)     // size
    }
};

const uint32_t data[] = { 16, 8, 4 }; // our workgroup size is 16x8x4

const VkSpecializationInfo info =
{
    3, // mapEntryCount
    entries, // pMapEntries
    3 * sizeof(uint32_t), // dataSize
    data, // pData
};

Then when calling `vkCreateComputePipelines`, and passing the `VkSpecializationInfo` we defined as the `pSpecializationInfo` parameter of `VkPipelineShaderStageCreateInfo`, we will create a compute pipeline with the runtime specified local workgroup size.

Another example would be that an application has a SPIR-V module that has some platform-dependent constants they wish to use.

In human readable SPIR-V:

```
OpDecorate %1 SpecId 0 ; decorate our signed 32-bit integer constant
OpDecorate %2 SpecId 12 ; decorate our 32-bit floating-point constant
%32 = OpTypeInt 32 1 ; declare a signed 32-bit type
%float = OpTypeFloat 32 ; declare a 32-bit floating-point type
%1 = OpSpecConstant %i32 -1 ; some signed 32-bit integer constant
%2 = OpSpecConstant %float 0.5 ; some 32-bit floating-point constant
```

From the above we have two specialization constants, one is a signed 32-bit integer and the second is a 32-bit floating-point value.
Now to specialize the above via the specialization constants mechanism:

```cpp
struct SpecializationData {
    int32_t data0;
    float data1;
};

const VkSpecializationMapEntry entries[] = {
    {0, // constantID
     offsetof(SpecializationData, data0), // offset
     sizeof(SpecializationData::data0)    // size
    },
    {12, // constantID
     offsetof(SpecializationData, data1), // offset
     sizeof(SpecializationData::data1)    // size
    }
};

SpecializationData data;
data.data0 = -42;    // set the data for the 32-bit integer
data.data1 = 42.0f; // set the data for the 32-bit floating-point

const VkSpecializationInfo info = {
    2,     // mapEntryCount
    entries, // pMapEntries
    sizeof(data), // dataSize
    &data,  // pData
};
```

It is legal for a SPIR-V module with specializations to be compiled into a pipeline where no specialization information was provided. SPIR-V specialization constants contain default values such that if a specialization is not provided, the default value will be used. In the examples above, it would be valid for an application to only specialize some of the specialization constants within the SPIR-V module, and let the other constants use their default values encoded within the OpSpecConstant declarations.

### 10.9. Pipeline Libraries

A pipeline library is a special pipeline that was created using the `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_LIBRARY_BIT_KHR` and cannot be bound, instead it defines a set of pipeline state which can be linked into other pipelines. For ray tracing pipelines this includes shaders and shader groups. The application **must** maintain the lifetime of a pipeline library based on the pipelines that link with it. A pipeline library is considered in-use, as long as one of the linking pipelines is in-use.

This linkage is achieved by using the following structure within the appropriate creation
mechanisms:

The `VkPipelineLibraryCreateInfoKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_pipeline_library
typedef struct VkPipelineLibraryCreateInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    uint32_t libraryCount;
    const VkPipeline* pLibraries;
} VkPipelineLibraryCreateInfoKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `libraryCount` is the number of pipeline libraries in `pLibraries`.
- `pLibraries` is a pointer to an array of `VkPipeline` structures specifying pipeline libraries to use when creating a pipeline.

**Valid Usage**

- VUID-VkPipelineLibraryCreateInfoKHR-pLibraries-03381 Each element of `pLibraries` must have been created with `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_LIBRARY_BIT_KHR`

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-VkPipelineLibraryCreateInfoKHR-sType-sType `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_LIBRARY_CREATE_INFO_KHR`
- VUID-VkPipelineLibraryCreateInfoKHR-pNext-pNext `pNext` must be `NULL`
- VUID-VkPipelineLibraryCreateInfoKHR-pLibraries-parameter If `libraryCount` is not 0, `pLibraries` must be a valid pointer to an array of `libraryCount` valid `VkPipeline` handles

### 10.10. Pipeline Binding

Once a pipeline has been created, it can be bound to the command buffer using the command:
void vkCmdBindPipeline(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    VkPipelineBindPoint pipelineBindPoint,
    VkPipeline pipeline);
Valid Usage

• VUID-vkCmdBindPipeline-pipelineBindPoint-00777
  If `pipelineBindPoint` is `VK_PIPELINE_BIND_POINT_COMPUTE`, the `VkCommandPool` that
  `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support compute operations.

• VUID-vkCmdBindPipeline-pipelineBindPoint-00778
  If `pipelineBindPoint` is `VK_PIPELINE_BIND_POINT_GRAPHICS`, the `VkCommandPool` that
  `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support graphics operations.

• VUID-vkCmdBindPipeline-pipelineBindPoint-00779
  If `pipelineBindPoint` is `VK_PIPELINE_BIND_POINT_COMPUTE`, pipeline must be a compute
  pipeline.

• VUID-vkCmdBindPipeline-pipelineBindPoint-00780
  If `pipelineBindPoint` is `VK_PIPELINE_BIND_POINT_GRAPHICS`, pipeline must be a graphics
  pipeline.

• VUID-vkCmdBindPipeline-pipelineBindPoint-00781
  If the variable multisample rate feature is not supported, pipeline is a graphics pipeline, the
  current subpass uses no attachments, and this is not the first call to this function with a
  graphics pipeline after transitioning to the current subpass, then the sample count specified by
  this pipeline must match that set in the previous pipeline.

• VUID-vkCmdBindPipeline-pipelineBindPoint-02391
  If `pipelineBindPoint` is `VK_PIPELINE_BIND_POINT_RAY_TRACING_KHR`, the `VkCommandPool` that
  `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support compute operations.

• VUID-vkCmdBindPipeline-pipelineBindPoint-02392
  If `pipelineBindPoint` is `VK_PIPELINE_BIND_POINT_RAY_TRACING_KHR`, pipeline must be a ray
  tracing pipeline.

• VUID-vkCmdBindPipeline-pipeline-03382
  Pipeline must not have been created with `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_LIBRARY_BIT_KHR` set.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdBindPipeline-commandBuffer-parameter
  commandBuffer must be a valid VkCommandBuffer handle

- VUID-vkCmdBindPipeline-pipelineBindPoint-parameter
  pipelineBindPoint must be a valid VkPipelineBindPoint value

- VUID-vkCmdBindPipeline-pipeline-parameter
  pipeline must be a valid VkPipeline handle

- VUID-vkCmdBindPipeline-commandBuffer-recording
  commandBuffer must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdBindPipeline-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must support graphics, or compute operations

- VUID-vkCmdBindPipeline-commonparent
  Both of commandBuffer, and pipeline must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same VkDevice

Host Synchronization

- Host access to commandBuffer must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Possible values of vkCmdBindPipeline::pipelineBindPoint, specifying the bind point of a pipeline object, are:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkPipelineBindPoint {
    VK_PIPELINE_BIND_POINT_GRAPHICS = 0,
    VK_PIPELINE_BIND_POINT_COMPUTE = 1,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline
    VK_PIPELINE_BIND_POINT_RAY_TRACING_KHR = 1000165000,
} VkPipelineBindPoint;
```

- VK_PIPELINE_BIND_POINT_COMPUTE specifies binding as a compute pipeline.
• **VK_PIPELINE_BIND_POINT_GRAPHICS** specifies binding as a graphics pipeline.

• **VK_PIPELINE_BIND_POINT_RAY_TRACING_KHR** specifies binding as a ray tracing pipeline.

### 10.11. Dynamic State

When a pipeline object is bound, any pipeline object state that is not specified as dynamic is applied to the command buffer state. Pipeline object state that is specified as dynamic is not applied to the command buffer state at this time. Instead, dynamic state can be modified at any time and persists for the lifetime of the command buffer, or until modified by another dynamic state setting command or another pipeline bind.

When a pipeline object is bound, the following applies to each state parameter:

- If the state is not specified as dynamic in the new pipeline object, then that command buffer state is overwritten by the state in the new pipeline object. Before any draw or dispatch call with this pipeline there must not have been any calls to any of the corresponding dynamic state setting commands after this pipeline was bound.

- If the state is specified as dynamic in the new pipeline object, then that command buffer state is not disturbed. Before any draw or dispatch call with this pipeline there must have been at least one call to each of the corresponding dynamic state setting commands since the command buffer recording was begun, or the last bound pipeline object with that state specified as static, whichever was the latter.

Dynamic state that does not affect the result of operations can be left undefined.

**Note**

For example, if blending is disabled by the pipeline object state then the dynamic color blend constants do not need to be specified in the command buffer, even if this state is specified as dynamic in the pipeline object.

### 10.12. Pipeline Shader Information

When a pipeline is created, its state and shaders are compiled into zero or more device-specific executables, which are used when executing commands against that pipeline. To query the properties of these pipeline executables, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_pipeline_executable_properties
VkResult vkGetPipelineExecutablePropertiesKHR(
    VkDevice device, 
    const VkPipelineInfoKHR* pPipelineInfo, 
    uint32_t* pExecutableCount, 
    VkPipelineExecutablePropertiesKHR* pProperties);
```

- **device** is the device that created the pipeline.

- **pPipelineInfo** describes the pipeline being queried.
• `pExecutableCount` is a pointer to an integer related to the number of pipeline executables available or queried, as described below.

• `pProperties` is either `null` or a pointer to an array of `VkPipelineExecutablePropertiesKHR` structures.

If `pProperties` is `null`, then the number of pipeline executables associated with the pipeline is returned in `pExecutableCount`. Otherwise, `pExecutableCount` must point to a variable set by the user to the number of elements in the `pProperties` array, and on return the variable is overwritten with the number of structures actually written to `pProperties`. If `pExecutableCount` is less than the number of pipeline executables associated with the pipeline, at most `pExecutableCount` structures will be written, and `VK_INCOMPLETE` will be returned instead of `VK_SUCCESS`, to indicate that not all the available properties were returned.

### Valid Usage

- VUID-vkGetPipelineExecutablePropertiesKHR-pipelineExecutableInfo-03270

  `pipelineExecutableInfo` must be enabled

- VUID-vkGetPipelineExecutablePropertiesKHR-pipeline-03271

  `pipeline` member of `pPipelineInfo` must have been created with device

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetPipelineExecutablePropertiesKHR-device-parameter

  `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- VUID-vkGetPipelineExecutablePropertiesKHR-pPipelineInfo-parameter

  `pPipelineInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkPipelineInfoKHR` structure

- VUID-vkGetPipelineExecutablePropertiesKHR-pExecutableCount-parameter

  `pExecutableCount` must be a valid pointer to a `uint32_t` value

- VUID-vkGetPipelineExecutablePropertiesKHR-pProperties-parameter

  If the value referenced by `pExecutableCount` is not 0, and `pProperties` is not `null`, `pProperties` must be a valid pointer to an array of `pExecutableCount` `VkPipelineExecutablePropertiesKHR` structures

### Return Codes

**Success**

- `VK_SUCCESS`
- `VK_INCOMPLETE`

**Failure**

- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY`
The `VkPipelineInfoKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_pipeline_executable_properties
typedef struct VkPipelineInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkPipeline pipeline;
} VkPipelineInfoKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `pipeline` is a `VkPipeline` handle.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- `VUID-VkPipelineInfoKHR-sType-sType`  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_INFO_KHR`
- `VUID-VkPipelineInfoKHR-pNext-pNext`  
  `pNext` must be `NULL`
- `VUID-VkPipelineInfoKHR-pipeline-parameter`  
  `pipeline` must be a valid `VkPipeline` handle

The `VkPipelineExecutablePropertiesKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_pipeline_executable_properties
typedef struct VkPipelineExecutablePropertiesKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkShaderStageFlags stages;
    char name[VK_MAX_DESCRIPTION_SIZE];
    char description[VK_MAX_DESCRIPTION_SIZE];
    uint32_t subgroupSize;
} VkPipelineExecutablePropertiesKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `stages` is a bitmask of zero or more `VkShaderStageFlagBits` indicating which shader stages (if any) were principally used as inputs to compile this pipeline executable.
- `name` is an array of `VK_MAX_DESCRIPTION_SIZE` `char` containing a null-terminated UTF-8 string which is a short human readable name for this pipeline executable.
- `description` is an array of `VK_MAX_DESCRIPTION_SIZE` `char` containing a null-terminated UTF-8 string which is a human readable description for this pipeline executable.
• **subgroupSize** is the subgroup size with which this pipeline executable is dispatched.

Not all implementations have a 1:1 mapping between shader stages and pipeline executables and some implementations **may** reduce a given shader stage to fixed function hardware programming such that no pipeline executable is available. No guarantees are provided about the mapping between shader stages and pipeline executables and **stages should** be considered a best effort hint. Because the application **cannot** rely on the **stages** field to provide an exact description, **name and description** provide a human readable name and description which more accurately describes the given pipeline executable.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkPipelineExecutablePropertiesKHR-sType-sType
  - **sType** must be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_EXECUTABLE_PROPERTIES_KHR**
- VUID-VkPipelineExecutablePropertiesKHR-pNext-pNext
  - **pNext** must be **NULL**

Each pipeline executable **may** have a set of statistics associated with it that are generated by the pipeline compilation process. These statistics **may** include things such as instruction counts, amount of spilling (if any), maximum number of simultaneous threads, or anything else which **may** aid developers in evaluating the expected performance of a shader. To query the compile-time statistics associated with a pipeline executable, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_pipeline_executable_properties
VkResult vkGetPipelineExecutableStatisticsKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkPipelineExecutableInfoKHR* pExecutableInfo,
    uint32_t* pStatisticCount,
    VkPipelineExecutableStatisticKHR* pStatistics);
```

- **device** is the device that created the pipeline.
- **pExecutableInfo** describes the pipeline executable being queried.
- **pStatisticCount** is a pointer to an integer related to the number of statistics available or queried, as described below.
- **pStatistics** is either **NULL** or a pointer to an array of **VkPipelineExecutableStatisticKHR** structures.

If **pStatistics** is **NULL**, then the number of statistics associated with the pipeline executable is returned in **pStatisticCount**. Otherwise, **pStatisticCount** **must** point to a variable set by the user to the number of elements in the **pStatistics** array, and on return the variable is overwritten with the number of structures actually written to **pStatistics**. If **pStatisticCount** is less than the number of statistics associated with the pipeline executable, at most **pStatisticCount** structures will be written, and **VK_INCOMPLETE** will be returned instead of **VK_SUCCESS**, to indicate that not all the available statistics were returned.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkGetPipelineExecutableStatisticsKHR-pipelineExecutableInfo-03272
  `pipelineExecutableInfo` must be enabled

- VUID-vkGetPipelineExecutableStatisticsKHR-pipeline-03273
  `pipeline` member of `pExecutableInfo` must have been created with `device`

- VUID-vkGetPipelineExecutableStatisticsKHR-pipeline-03274
  `pipeline` member of `pExecutableInfo` must have been created with `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_CAPTURE_STATISTICS_BIT_KHR`

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetPipelineExecutableStatisticsKHR-device-parameter
  `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- VUID-vkGetPipelineExecutableStatisticsKHR-pExecutableInfo-parameter
  `pExecutableInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkPipelineExecutableInfoKHR` structure

- VUID-vkGetPipelineExecutableStatisticsKHR-pStatisticCount-parameter
  `pStatisticCount` must be a valid pointer to a `uint32_t` value

- VUID-vkGetPipelineExecutableStatisticsKHR-pStatistics-parameter
  If the value referenced by `pStatisticCount` is not 0, and `pStatistics` is not NULL, `pStatistics` must be a valid pointer to an array of `pStatisticCount` `VkPipelineExecutableStatisticKHR` structures

Return Codes

Success

- VK_SUCCESS
- VK_INCOMPLETE

Failure

- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY

The `VkPipelineExecutableInfoKHR` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkPipelineExecutableInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkPipeline pipeline;
    uint32_t executableIndex;
} VkPipelineExecutableInfoKHR;

• **sType** is the type of this structure.

• **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.

• **pipeline** is the pipeline to query.

• **executableIndex** is the index of the pipeline executable to query in the array of executable properties returned by `vkGetPipelineExecutablePropertiesKHR`.

Valid Usage

• **VUID-VkPipelineExecutableInfoKHR-executableIndex-03275**
  
  `executableIndex` must be less than the number of pipeline executables associated with `pipeline` as returned in the `pExecutableCount` parameter of `vkGetPipelineExecutablePropertiesKHR`.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

• **VUID-VkPipelineExecutableInfoKHR-sType-sType**
  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_EXECUTABLE_INFO_KHR`.

• **VUID-VkPipelineExecutableInfoKHR-pNext-pNext**
  
  `pNext` must be NULL.

• **VUID-VkPipelineExecutableInfoKHR-pipeline-parameter**
  
  `pipeline` must be a valid `VkPipeline` handle.

The `VkPipelineExecutableStatisticKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_pipeline_executable_properties
typedef struct VkPipelineExecutableStatisticKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    char name[VK_MAX_DESCRIPTION_SIZE];
    char description[VK_MAX_DESCRIPTION_SIZE];
    VkPipelineExecutableStatisticFormatKHR format;
    VkPipelineExecutableStatisticValueKHR value;
} VkPipelineExecutableStatisticKHR;
```

• **sType** is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `name` is an array of `VK_MAX_DESCRIPTION_SIZE` char containing a null-terminated UTF-8 string which is a short human readable name for this statistic.
- `description` is an array of `VK_MAX_DESCRIPTION_SIZE` char containing a null-terminated UTF-8 string which is a human readable description for this statistic.
- `format` is a `VkPipelineExecutableStatisticFormatKHR` value specifying the format of the data found in `value`.
- `value` is the value of this statistic.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- `VUID-VkPipelineExecutableStatisticKHR-sType-sType`  
  `sType` **must** be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_EXECUTABLE_STATISTIC_KHR`
- `VUID-VkPipelineExecutableStatisticKHR-pNext-pNext`  
  `pNext` **must** be `NULL`

The `VkPipelineExecutableStatisticFormatKHR` enum is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_pipeline_executable_properties
typedef enum VkPipelineExecutableStatisticFormatKHR {
    VK_PIPELINE_EXECUTABLE_STATISTIC_FORMAT_BOOL32_KHR = 0,
    VK_PIPELINE_EXECUTABLE_STATISTIC_FORMAT_INT64_KHR = 1,
    VK_PIPELINE_EXECUTABLE_STATISTIC_FORMAT_UINT64_KHR = 2,
    VK_PIPELINE_EXECUTABLE_STATISTIC_FORMAT_FLOAT64_KHR = 3,
} VkPipelineExecutableStatisticFormatKHR;
```

- `VK_PIPELINE_EXECUTABLE_STATISTIC_FORMAT_BOOL32_KHR` specifies that the statistic is returned as a 32-bit boolean value which **must** be either `VK_TRUE` or `VK_FALSE` and **should** be read from the `b32` field of `VkPipelineExecutableStatisticValueKHR`.
- `VK_PIPELINE_EXECUTABLE_STATISTIC_FORMAT_INT64_KHR` specifies that the statistic is returned as a signed 64-bit integer and **should** be read from the `i64` field of `VkPipelineExecutableStatisticValueKHR`.
- `VK_PIPELINE_EXECUTABLE_STATISTIC_FORMAT_UINT64_KHR` specifies that the statistic is returned as an unsigned 64-bit integer and **should** be read from the `u64` field of `VkPipelineExecutableStatisticValueKHR`.
- `VK_PIPELINE_EXECUTABLE_STATISTIC_FORMAT_FLOAT64_KHR` specifies that the statistic is returned as a 64-bit floating-point value and **should** be read from the `f64` field of `VkPipelineExecutableStatisticValueKHR`.

The `VkPipelineExecutableStatisticValueKHR` union is defined as:
typedef union VkPipelineExecutableStatisticValueKHR {
    VkBool32 b32;
    int64_t i64;
    uint64_t u64;
    double f64;
} VkPipelineExecutableStatisticValueKHR;

- `b32` is the 32-bit boolean value if the `VkPipelineExecutableStatisticFormatKHR` is `VK_PIPELINE_EXECUTABLE_STATISTIC_FORMAT_BOOL32_KHR`.
- `i64` is the signed 64-bit integer value if the `VkPipelineExecutableStatisticFormatKHR` is `VK_PIPELINE_EXECUTABLE_STATISTIC_FORMAT_INT64_KHR`.
- `u64` is the unsigned 64-bit integer value if the `VkPipelineExecutableStatisticFormatKHR` is `VK_PIPELINE_EXECUTABLE_STATISTIC_FORMAT_UINT64_KHR`.
- `f64` is the 64-bit floating-point value if the `VkPipelineExecutableStatisticFormatKHR` is `VK_PIPELINE_EXECUTABLE_STATISTIC_FORMAT_FLOAT64_KHR`.

Each pipeline executable may have one or more text or binary internal representations associated with it which are generated as part of the compile process. These may include the final shader assembly, a binary form of the compiled shader, or the shader compiler's internal representation at any number of intermediate compile steps. To query the internal representations associated with a pipeline executable, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_pipeline_executable_properties
VkResult vkGetPipelineExecutableInternalRepresentationsKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkPipelineExecutableInfoKHR* pExecutableInfo,
    uint32_t* pInternalRepresentationCount,
    VkPipelineExecutableInternalRepresentationKHR* pInternalRepresentations);
```

- `device` is the device that created the pipeline.
- `pExecutableInfo` describes the pipeline executable being queried.
- `pInternalRepresentationCount` is a pointer to an integer related to the number of internal representations available or queried, as described below.
- `pInternalRepresentations` is either `NULL` or a pointer to an array of `VkPipelineExecutableInternalRepresentationKHR` structures.

If `pInternalRepresentations` is `NULL`, then the number of internal representations associated with the pipeline executable is returned in `pInternalRepresentationCount`. Otherwise, `pInternalRepresentationCount` must point to a variable set by the user to the number of elements in the `pInternalRepresentations` array, and on return the variable is overwritten with the number of structures actually written to `pInternalRepresentations`. If `pInternalRepresentationCount` is less than the number of internal representations associated with the pipeline executable, at most `pInternalRepresentationCount` structures will be written, and `VK_INCOMPLETE` will be returned instead of `VK_SUCCESS`, to indicate that not all the available representations were returned.
While the details of the internal representations remain implementation-dependent, the implementation should order the internal representations in the order in which they occur in the compiled pipeline with the final shader assembly (if any) last.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkGetPipelineExecutableInternalRepresentationsKHR-pipelineExecutableInfo-03276**
  - `pipelineExecutableInfo` must be enabled

- **VUID-vkGetPipelineExecutableInternalRepresentationsKHR-pipeline-03277**
  - `pipeline` member of `pExecutableInfo` must have been created with `device`

- **VUID-vkGetPipelineExecutableInternalRepresentationsKHR-pipeline-03278**
  - `pipeline` member of `pExecutableInfo` must have been created with `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_CAPTURE_INTERNAL_REPRESENTATIONS_BIT_KHR`

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkGetPipelineExecutableInternalRepresentationsKHR-device-parameter**
  - `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- **VUID-vkGetPipelineExecutableInternalRepresentationsKHR-pExecutableInfo-parameter**
  - `pExecutableInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkPipelineExecutableInfoKHR` structure

- **VUID-vkGetPipelineExecutableInternalRepresentationsKHR-pInternalRepresentationCount-parameter**
  - `pInternalRepresentationCount` must be a valid pointer to a `uint32_t` value

- **VUID-vkGetPipelineExecutableInternalRepresentationsKHR-pInternalRepresentations-parameter**
  - If the value referenced by `pInternalRepresentationCount` is not 0, and `pInternalRepresentations` is not NULL, `pInternalRepresentations` must be a valid pointer to an array of `VkPipelineExecutableInternalRepresentationKHR` structures

### Return Codes

#### Success

- `VK_SUCCESS`
- `VK_INCOMPLETE`

#### Failure

- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY`

The `VkPipelineExecutableInternalRepresentationKHR` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkPipelineExecutableInternalRepresentationKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    char name[VK_MAX_DESCRIPTION_SIZE];
    char description[VK_MAX_DESCRIPTION_SIZE];
    VkBool32 isText;
    size_t dataSize;
    void* pData;
} VkPipelineExecutableInternalRepresentationKHR;

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **name** is an array of VK_MAX_DESCRIPTION_SIZE char containing a null-terminated UTF-8 string which is a short human readable name for this internal representation.
- **description** is an array of VK_MAX_DESCRIPTION_SIZE char containing a null-terminated UTF-8 string which is a human readable description for this internal representation.
- **isText** specifies whether the returned data is text or opaque data. If **isText** is VK_TRUE then the data returned in **pData** is text and is guaranteed to be a null-terminated UTF-8 string.
- **dataSize** is an integer related to the size, in bytes, of the internal representation’s data, as described below.
- **pData** is either NULL or a pointer to a block of data into which the implementation will write the internal representation.

If **pData** is NULL, then the size, in bytes, of the internal representation data is returned in **dataSize**. Otherwise, **dataSize** must be the size of the buffer, in bytes, pointed to by **pData** and on return **dataSize** is overwritten with the number of bytes of data actually written to **pData** including any trailing null character. If **dataSize** is less than the size, in bytes, of the internal representation’s data, at most **dataSize** bytes of data will be written to **pData**, and VK_INCOMPLETE will be returned instead of VK_SUCCESS, to indicate that not all the available representation was returned.

If **isText** is VK_TRUE and **pData** is not NULL and **dataSize** is not zero, the last byte written to **pData** will be a null character.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkPipelineExecutableInternalRepresentationKHR-sType-sType
  - sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_EXECUTABLE_INTERNAL_REPRESENTATION_KHR

- VUID-VkPipelineExecutableInternalRepresentationKHR-pNext-pNext
  - pNext must be NULL
Chapter 11. Memory Allocation

Vulkan memory is broken up into two categories, host memory and device memory.

11.1. Host Memory

Host memory is memory needed by the Vulkan implementation for non-device-visible storage.

Note

This memory may be used to store the implementation’s representation and state of Vulkan objects.

Vulkan provides applications the opportunity to perform host memory allocations on behalf of the Vulkan implementation. If this feature is not used, the implementation will perform its own memory allocations. Since most memory allocations are off the critical path, this is not meant as a performance feature. Rather, this can be useful for certain embedded systems, for debugging purposes (e.g. putting a guard page after all host allocations), or for memory allocation logging.

Allocators are provided by the application as a pointer to a VkAllocationCallbacks structure:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkAllocationCallbacks {
    void* pUserData;
    PFN_vkAllocationFunction pfnAllocation;
    PFN_vkReallocationFunction pfnReallocation;
    PFN_vkFreeFunction pfnFree;
    PFN_vkInternalAllocationNotification pfnInternalAllocation;
    PFN_vkInternalFreeNotification pfnInternalFree;
} VkAllocationCallbacks;
```

- **pUserData** is a value to be interpreted by the implementation of the callbacks. When any of the callbacks in VkAllocationCallbacks are called, the Vulkan implementation will pass this value as the first parameter to the callback. This value can vary each time an allocator is passed into a command, even when the same object takes an allocator in multiple commands.

- **pfnAllocation** is a PFN_vkAllocationFunction pointer to an application-defined memory allocation function.

- **pfnReallocation** is a PFN_vkReallocationFunction pointer to an application-defined memory reallocation function.

- **pfnFree** is a PFN_vkFreeFunction pointer to an application-defined memory free function.

- **pfnInternalAllocation** is a PFN_vkInternalAllocationNotification pointer to an application-defined function that is called by the implementation when the implementation makes internal allocations.

- **pfnInternalFree** is a PFN_vkInternalFreeNotification pointer to an application-defined function that is called by the implementation when the implementation frees internal allocations.
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkAllocationCallbacks-pfnAllocation-00632
  `pfnAllocation` must be a valid pointer to a valid user-defined `PFN_vkAllocationFunction`

- VUID-VkAllocationCallbacks-pfnReallocation-00633
  `pfnReallocation` must be a valid pointer to a valid user-defined `PFN_vkReallocationFunction`

- VUID-VkAllocationCallbacks-pfnFree-00634
  `pfnFree` must be a valid pointer to a valid user-defined `PFN_vkFreeFunction`

- VUID-VkAllocationCallbacks-pfnInternalAllocation-00635
  If either of `pfnInternalAllocation` or `pfnInternalFree` is not NULL, both must be valid callbacks

The type of `pfnAllocation` is:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef void* (VKAPI_PTR *PFN_vkAllocationFunction)(
    void* pUserData,
    size_t size,
    size_t alignment,
    VkSystemAllocationScope allocationScope);
```

- `pUserData` is the value specified for `VkAllocationCallbacks::pUserData` in the allocator specified by the application.
- `size` is the size in bytes of the requested allocation.
- `alignment` is the requested alignment of the allocation in bytes and must be a power of two.
- `allocationScope` is a `VkSystemAllocationScope` value specifying the allocation scope of the lifetime of the allocation, as described here.

If `pfnAllocation` is unable to allocate the requested memory, it must return NULL. If the allocation was successful, it must return a valid pointer to memory allocation containing at least `size` bytes, and with the pointer value being a multiple of `alignment`.

**Note**

Correct Vulkan operation cannot be assumed if the application does not follow these rules.

For example, `pfnAllocation` (or `pfnReallocation`) could cause termination of running Vulkan instance(s) on a failed allocation for debugging purposes, either directly or indirectly. In these circumstances, it cannot be assumed that any part of any affected `VkInstance` objects are going to operate correctly (even `vkDestroyInstance`), and the application must ensure it cleans up properly via other means (e.g. process termination).
If `pfnAllocation` returns `NULL`, and if the implementation is unable to continue correct processing of the current command without the requested allocation, it must treat this as a runtime error, and generate `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY` at the appropriate time for the command in which the condition was detected, as described in Return Codes.

If the implementation is able to continue correct processing of the current command without the requested allocation, then it may do so, and must not generate `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY` as a result of this failed allocation.

The type of `pfnReallocation` is:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef void* (VKAPI_PTR *PFN_vkReallocationFunction)(
    void* pUserData,
    void* pOriginal,
    size_t size,
    size_t alignment,
    VkSystemAllocationScope allocationScope);
```

- `pUserData` is the value specified for `VkAllocationCallbacks::pUserData` in the allocator specified by the application.
- `pOriginal` must be either `NULL` or a pointer previously returned by `pfnReallocation` or `pfnAllocation` of a compatible allocator.
- `size` is the size in bytes of the requested allocation.
- `alignment` is the requested alignment of the allocation in bytes and must be a power of two.
- `allocationScope` is a `VkSystemAllocationScope` value specifying the allocation scope of the lifetime of the allocation, as described here.

`pfnReallocation` must return an allocation with enough space for `size` bytes, and the contents of the original allocation from bytes zero to `min(original size, new size) - 1` must be preserved in the returned allocation. If `size` is larger than the old size, the contents of the additional space are undefined. If satisfying these requirements involves creating a new allocation, then the old allocation should be freed.

If `pOriginal` is `NULL`, then `pfnReallocation` must behave equivalently to a call to `PFN_vkAllocationFunction` with the same parameter values (without `pOriginal`).

If `size` is zero, then `pfnReallocation` must behave equivalently to a call to `PFN_vkFreeFunction` with the same `pUserData` parameter value, and `pMemory` equal to `pOriginal`.

If `pOriginal` is non-NULL, the implementation must ensure that `alignment` is equal to the `alignment` used to originally allocate `pOriginal`.

If this function fails and `pOriginal` is non-NULL the application must not free the old allocation.

`pfnReallocation` must follow the same rules for return values as `PFN_vkAllocationFunction`.

The type of `PFN_vkFreeFunction` is:
typedef void (VKAPI_PTR *PFN_vkFreeFunction)(
    void* pUserData, 
    void* pMemory);

• **pUserData** is the value specified for `VkAllocationCallbacks::pUserData` in the allocator specified by the application.

• **pMemory** is the allocation to be freed.

**pMemory** may be **NULL**, which the callback must handle safely. If `pMemory` is non-NULL, it must be a pointer previously allocated by `pfnAllocation` or `pfnReallocation`. The application should free this memory.

The type of `pfInternalAllocation` is:

```
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef void (VKAPI_PTR *PFN_vkInternalAllocationNotification)(
    void* pUserData, 
    size_t size, 
    VkInternalAllocationType allocationType, 
    VkSystemAllocationScope allocationScope);
```

• **pUserData** is the value specified for `VkAllocationCallbacks::pUserData` in the allocator specified by the application.

• **size** is the requested size of an allocation.

• **allocationType** is a `VkInternalAllocationType` value specifying the requested type of an allocation.

• **allocationScope** is a `VkSystemAllocationScope` value specifying the allocation scope of the lifetime of the allocation, as described [here](#).

This is a purely informational callback.

The type of `pfInternalFree` is:

```
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef void (VKAPI_PTR *PFN_vkInternalFreeNotification)(
    void* pUserData, 
    size_t size, 
    VkInternalAllocationType allocationType, 
    VkSystemAllocationScope allocationScope);
```

• **pUserData** is the value specified for `VkAllocationCallbacks::pUserData` in the allocator specified by the application.

• **size** is the requested size of an allocation.
• **allocationType** is a `VkInternalAllocationType` value specifying the requested type of an allocation.

• **allocationScope** is a `VkSystemAllocationScope` value specifying the allocation scope of the lifetime of the allocation, as described here.

Each allocation has an allocation scope defining its lifetime and which object it is associated with. Possible values passed to the **allocationScope** parameter of the callback functions specified by `VkAllocationCallbacks`, indicating the allocation scope, are:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkSystemAllocationScope {
    VK_SYSTEM_ALLOCATION_SCOPE_COMMAND = 0,
    VK_SYSTEM_ALLOCATION_SCOPE_OBJECT = 1,
    VK_SYSTEM_ALLOCATION_SCOPE_CACHE = 2,
    VK_SYSTEM_ALLOCATION_SCOPE_DEVICE = 3,
    VK_SYSTEM_ALLOCATION_SCOPE_INSTANCE = 4,
} VkSystemAllocationScope;
```

• **VK_SYSTEM_ALLOCATION_SCOPE_COMMAND** specifies that the allocation is scoped to the duration of the Vulkan command.

• **VK_SYSTEM_ALLOCATION_SCOPE_OBJECT** specifies that the allocation is scoped to the lifetime of the Vulkan object that is being created or used.

• **VK_SYSTEM_ALLOCATION_SCOPE_CACHE** specifies that the allocation is scoped to the lifetime of a `VkPipelineCache` object.

• **VK_SYSTEM_ALLOCATION_SCOPE_DEVICE** specifies that the allocation is scoped to the lifetime of the Vulkan device.

• **VK_SYSTEM_ALLOCATION_SCOPE_INSTANCE** specifies that the allocation is scoped to the lifetime of the Vulkan instance.

Most Vulkan commands operate on a single object, or there is a sole object that is being created or manipulated. When an allocation uses an allocation scope of **VK_SYSTEM_ALLOCATION_SCOPE_OBJECT** or **VK_SYSTEM_ALLOCATION_SCOPE_CACHE**, the allocation is scoped to the object being created or manipulated.

When an implementation requires host memory, it will make callbacks to the application using the most specific allocator and allocation scope available:

• If an allocation is scoped to the duration of a command, the allocator will use the **VK_SYSTEM_ALLOCATION_SCOPE_COMMAND** allocation scope. The most specific allocator available is used: if the object being created or manipulated has an allocator, that object's allocator will be used, else if the parent `VkDevice` has an allocator it will be used, else if the parent `VkInstance` has an allocator it will be used. Else,

• If an allocation is associated with a `VkPipelineCache` object, the allocator will use the **VK_SYSTEM_ALLOCATION_SCOPE_CACHE** allocation scope. The most specific allocator available is used (cache, else device, else instance). Else,
If an allocation is scoped to the lifetime of an object, that object is being created or manipulated by the command, and that object's type is not VkDevice or VkInstance, the allocator will use an allocation scope of VK_SYSTEM_ALLOCATION_SCOPE_OBJECT. The most specific allocator available is used (object, else device, else instance). Else,

If an allocation is scoped to the lifetime of a device, the allocator will use an allocation scope of VK_SYSTEM_ALLOCATION_SCOPE_DEVICE. The most specific allocator available is used (device, else instance). Else,

If the allocation is scoped to the lifetime of an instance and the instance has an allocator, its allocator will be used with an allocation scope of VK_SYSTEM_ALLOCATION_SCOPE_INSTANCE.

Otherwise an implementation will allocate memory through an alternative mechanism that is unspecified.

Objects that are allocated from pools do not specify their own allocator. When an implementation requires host memory for such an object, that memory is sourced from the object’s parent pool’s allocator.

The application is not expected to handle allocating memory that is intended for execution by the host due to the complexities of differing security implementations across multiple platforms. The implementation will allocate such memory internally and invoke an application provided informational callback when these internal allocations are allocated and freed. Upon allocation of executable memory, pfnInternalAllocation will be called. Upon freeing executable memory, pfnInternalFree will be called. An implementation will only call an informational callback for executable memory allocations and frees.

The allocationType parameter to the pfnInternalAllocation and pfnInternalFree functions may be one of the following values:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkInternalAllocationType {
    VK_INTERNAL_ALLOCATION_TYPE_EXECUTABLE = 0,
} VkInternalAllocationType;
```

- VK_INTERNAL_ALLOCATION_TYPE_EXECUTABLE specifies that the allocation is intended for execution by the host.

An implementation must only make calls into an application-provided allocator during the execution of an API command. An implementation must only make calls into an application-provided allocator from the same thread that called the provoking API command. The implementation should not synchronize calls to any of the callbacks. If synchronization is needed, the callbacks must provide it themselves. The informational callbacks are subject to the same restrictions as the allocation callbacks.

If an implementation intends to make calls through a VkAllocationCallbacks structure between the time a vkCreate* command returns and the time a corresponding vkDestroy* command begins, that implementation must save a copy of the allocator before the vkCreate* command returns. The callback functions and any data structures they rely upon must remain valid for the lifetime of the object they are associated with.
If an allocator is provided to a `vkCreate*` command, a *compatible* allocator **must** be provided to the corresponding `vkDestroy*` command. Two `VkAllocationCallbacks` structures are compatible if memory allocated with `PFNAllocation` or `PFNReallocation` in each can be freed with `PFNReallocation` or `PFNFree` in the other. An allocator **must** not be provided to a `vkDestroy*` command if an allocator was not provided to the corresponding `vkCreate*` command.

If a non-NULL allocator is used, the `PFNAllocation`, `PFNReallocation` and `PFNFree` members **must** be non-NULL and point to valid implementations of the callbacks. An application **can** choose to not provide informational callbacks by setting both `PFNInternalAllocation` and `PFNInternalFree` to NULL. `PFNInternalAllocation` and `PFNInternalFree` **must** either both be NULL or both be non-NULL.

If `PFNAllocation` or `PFNReallocation` fail, the implementation **may** fail object creation and/or generate a `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY` error, as appropriate.

Allocation callbacks **must** not call any Vulkan commands.

The following sets of rules define when an implementation is permitted to call the allocator callbacks.

`PFNAllocation` or `PFNReallocation` **may** be called in the following situations:

- Allocations scoped to a `VkDevice` or `VkInstance` **may** be allocated from any API command.
- Allocations scoped to a command **may** be allocated from any API command.
- Allocations scoped to a `VkPipelineCache` **may** only be allocated from:
  - `vkCreatePipelineCache`
  - `vkMergePipelineCaches` for `dstCache`
  - `vkCreateGraphicsPipelines` for `pipelineCache`
  - `vkCreateComputePipelines` for `pipelineCache`
- Allocations scoped to a `VkDescriptorPool` **may** only be allocated from:
  - any command that takes the pool as a direct argument
  - `vkAllocateDescriptorSets` for the `descriptorPool` member of its `pAllocateInfo` parameter
  - `vkCreateDescriptorPool`
- Allocations scoped to a `VkCommandPool` **may** only be allocated from:
  - any command that takes the pool as a direct argument
  - `vkCreateCommandPool`
  - `vkAllocateCommandBuffers` for the `commandPool` member of its `pAllocateInfo` parameter
  - any `vkCmd*` command whose `commandBuffer` was allocated from that `VkCommandPool`
- Allocations scoped to any other object **may** only be allocated in that object's `vkCreate*` command.

`PFNFree`, or `PFNReallocation` with zero size, **may** be called in the following situations:

- Allocations scoped to a `VkDevice` or `VkInstance` **may** be freed from any API command.
• Allocations scoped to a command **must** be freed by any API command which allocates such memory.

• Allocations scoped to a `VkPipelineCache` **may** be freed from `vkDestroyPipelineCache`.

• Allocations scoped to a `VkDescriptorPool` **may** be freed from:
  ◦ any command that takes the pool as a direct argument

• Allocations scoped to a `VkCommandPool` **may** be freed from:
  ◦ any command that takes the pool as a direct argument
  ◦ `vkResetCommandBuffer` whose `commandBuffer` was allocated from that `VkCommandPool`

• Allocations scoped to any other object **may** be freed in that object’s `vkDestroy*` command.

• Any command that allocates host memory **may** also free host memory of the same scope.

## 11.2. Device Memory

*Device memory* is memory that is visible to the device — for example the contents of the image or buffer objects, which can be natively used by the device.

### 11.2.1. Device Memory Properties

Memory properties of a physical device describe the memory heaps and memory types available.

To query memory properties, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkGetPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    VkPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties* pMemoryProperties);
```

• `physicalDevice` is the handle to the device to query.

• `pMemoryProperties` is a pointer to a `VkPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties` structure in which the properties are returned.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

• VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties-physicalDevice-parameter
  `physicalDevice` must be a valid `VkPhysicalDevice` handle

• VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties-pMemoryProperties-parameter
  `pMemoryProperties` must be a valid pointer to a `VkPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties` structure

The `VkPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties` structure is defined as:
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0

typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties {
    uint32_t memoryTypeCount;
    VkMemoryType memoryTypes[VK_MAX_MEMORY_TYPES];
    uint32_t memoryHeapCount;
    VkMemoryHeap memoryHeaps[VK_MAX_MEMORY_HEAPS];
} VkPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties;

• **memoryTypeCount** is the number of valid elements in the **memoryTypes** array.

• **memoryTypes** is an array of **VK_MAX_MEMORY_TYPES** **VkMemoryType** structures describing the **memory types** that **can** be used to access memory allocated from the heaps specified by **memoryHeaps**.

• **memoryHeapCount** is the number of valid elements in the **memoryHeaps** array.

• **memoryHeaps** is an array of **VK_MAX_MEMORY_HEAPS** **VkMemoryHeap** structures describing the **memory heaps** from which memory **can** be allocated.

The **VkPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties** structure describes a number of **memory heaps** as well as a number of **memory types** that **can** be used to access memory allocated in those heaps. Each heap describes a memory resource of a particular size, and each memory type describes a set of memory properties (e.g. host cached vs uncached) that **can** be used with a given memory heap. Allocations using a particular memory type will consume resources from the heap indicated by that memory type's heap index. More than one memory type **may** share each heap, and the heaps and memory types provide a mechanism to advertise an accurate size of the physical memory resources while allowing the memory to be used with a variety of different properties.

The number of memory heaps is given by **memoryHeapCount** and is less than or equal to **VK_MAX_MEMORY_HEAPS**. Each heap is described by an element of the **memoryHeaps** array as a **VkMemoryHeap** structure. The number of memory types available across all memory heaps is given by **memoryTypeCount** and is less than or equal to **VK_MAX_MEMORY_TYPES**. Each memory type is described by an element of the **memoryTypes** array as a **VkMemoryType** structure.

At least one heap **must** include **VK_MEMORY_HEAP_DEVICE_LOCAL_BIT** in **VkMemoryHeap::flags**. If there are multiple heaps that all have similar performance characteristics, they **may** all include **VK_MEMORY_HEAP_DEVICE_LOCAL_BIT**. In a unified memory architecture (UMA) system there is often only a single memory heap which is considered to be equally “local” to the host and to the device, and such an implementation **must** advertise the heap as device-local.

Each memory type returned by **vkGetPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties** **must** have its **propertyFlags** set to one of the following values:

- 0
- **VK_MEMORY_PROPERTY_HOST_VISIBLE_BIT**
- **VK_MEMORY_PROPERTY_HOST_COHERENT_BIT**
- **VK_MEMORY_PROPERTY_HOST_VISIBLE_BIT**
- **VK_MEMORY_PROPERTY_HOST_CACHED_BIT**
- **VK_MEMORY_PROPERTY_HOST_VISIBLE_BIT**
VK_MEMORY_PROPERTY_HOST_CACHED_BIT | VK_MEMORYPROPERTY_HOST_COHERENT_BIT
• VK_MEMORYPROPERTY_DEVICE_LOCAL_BIT
• VK_MEMORYPROPERTY_DEVICE_LOCAL_BIT | VK_MEMORYPROPERTY_HOST_VISIBLE_BIT | VK_MEMORYPROPERTY_HOST_COHERENT_BIT
• VK_MEMORYPROPERTY_DEVICE_LOCAL_BIT | VK_MEMORYPROPERTY_HOST_VISIBLE_BIT | VK_MEMORYPROPERTY_HOST_CACHED_BIT
• VK_MEMORYPROPERTY_DEVICE_LOCAL_BIT | VK_MEMORYPROPERTY_HOST_VISIBLE_BIT | VK_MEMORYPROPERTY_HOST_CACHED_BIT | VK_MEMORYPROPERTY_HOST_COHERENT_BIT
• VK_MEMORYPROPERTY_DEVICE_LOCAL_BIT | VK_MEMORYPROPERTY_HOST_VISIBLE_BIT | VK_MEMORYPROPERTY_HOST_CACHED_BIT | VK_MEMORYPROPERTY_HOST_COHERENT_BIT | VK_MEMORYPROPERTY_LAZILY_ALLOCATED_BIT

There **must** be at least one memory type with both the VK_MEMORYPROPERTY_HOST_VISIBLE_BIT and VK_MEMORYPROPERTY_HOST_COHERENT_BIT bits set in its propertyFlags. There **must** be at least one memory type with the VK_MEMORYPROPERTY_DEVICE_LOCAL_BIT bit set in its propertyFlags.

For each pair of elements X and Y returned in memoryTypes, X **must** be placed at a lower index position than Y if:

• the set of bit flags returned in the propertyFlags member of X is a strict subset of the set of bit flags returned in the propertyFlags member of Y; or

• the propertyFlags members of X and Y are equal, and X belongs to a memory heap with greater performance (as determined in an implementation-specific manner)

**Note**

There is no ordering requirement between X and Y elements for the case their propertyFlags members are not in a subset relation. That potentially allows more than one possible way to order the same set of memory types. Notice that the list of all allowed memory property flag combinations is written in a valid order. But if instead VK_MEMORYPROPERTY_DEVICE_LOCAL_BIT was before VK_MEMORYPROPERTY_HOST_VISIBLE_BIT | VK_MEMORYPROPERTY_HOST_COHERENT_BIT, the list would still be in a valid order.

This ordering requirement enables applications to use a simple search loop to select the desired memory type along the lines of:
// Find a memory in `memoryTypeBitsRequirement` that includes all of `requiredProperties`

```c
int32_t findProperties(const VkPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties* pMemoryProperties,
                        uint32_t memoryTypeBitsRequirement,
                        VkMemoryPropertyFlags requiredProperties)
{
    const uint32_t memoryCount = pMemoryProperties->memoryTypeCount;
    for (uint32_t memoryIndex = 0; memoryIndex < memoryCount; ++memoryIndex) {
        const uint32_t memoryTypeBits = (1 << memoryIndex);
        const bool isRequiredMemoryType = memoryTypeBitsRequirement & memoryTypeBits;
        const VkMemoryPropertyFlags properties = pMemoryProperties->memoryTypes[memoryIndex].propertyFlags;
        const bool hasRequiredProperties = (properties & requiredProperties) == requiredProperties;
        if (isRequiredMemoryType && hasRequiredProperties)
            return static_cast<int32_t>(memoryIndex);
    }

    // failed to find memory type
    return -1;
}
```

// Try to find an optimal memory type, or if it does not exist try fallback memory type
// `device` is the VkDevice
// `image` is the VkImage that requires memory to be bound
// `memoryProperties` properties as returned by vkGetPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties
// `requiredProperties` are the property flags that must be present
// `optimalProperties` are the property flags that are preferred by the application

```c
VkMemoryRequirements memoryRequirements;
vkGetImageMemoryRequirements(device, image, &memoryRequirements);
int32_t memoryType = findProperties(&memoryProperties, memoryRequirements.memoryTypeBits,
                                      optimalProperties);
if (memoryType == -1) // not found; try fallback properties
    memoryType = findProperties(&memoryProperties, memoryRequirements.memoryTypeBits,
                                 requiredProperties);
```

**VK_MAX_MEMORY_TYPES** is the length of an array of VkMemoryType structures describing memory types, as returned in VkPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties::memoryTypes.

```c
#define VK_MAX_MEMORY_TYPES 32U
```

**VK_MAX_MEMORY_HEAPS** is the length of an array of VkMemoryHeap structures describing memory heaps, as returned in VkPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties::memoryHeaps.
#define VK_MAX_MEMORY_HEAPS 16U

To query memory properties, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2
void vkGetPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties2KHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    VkPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties2* pMemoryProperties);
```

- `physicalDevice` is the handle to the device to query.
- `pMemoryProperties` is a pointer to a `VkPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties2` structure in which the properties are returned.

`vkGetPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties2KHR` behaves similarly to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties`, with the ability to return extended information in a `pNext` chain of output structures.

## Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties2-physicalDevice-parameter
  
  `physicalDevice` must be a valid `VkPhysicalDevice` handle

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties2-pMemoryProperties-parameter
  
  `pMemoryProperties` must be a valid pointer to a `VkPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties2` structure

The `VkPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties2` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties2 {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties memoryProperties;
} VkPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties2;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2
typedef VkPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties2 VkPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties2KHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `memoryProperties` is a `VkPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties` structure which is populated with the same values as in `vkGetPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties`.  

Chapter 11. Memory Allocation | 511
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties2-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_MEMORY_PROPERTIES_2

- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties2-pNext-pNext
  pNext must be NULL

The VkMemoryHeap structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkMemoryHeap {
    VkDeviceSize size;
    VkMemoryHeapFlags flags;
} VkMemoryHeap;
```

- **size** is the total memory size in bytes in the heap.
- **flags** is a bitmask of VkMemoryHeapFlagBits specifying attribute flags for the heap.

Bits which **may** be set in VkMemoryHeap::flags, indicating attribute flags for the heap, are:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkMemoryHeapFlagBits {
    VK_MEMORY_HEAP_DEVICE_LOCAL_BIT = 0x00000001,
    VK_MEMORY_HEAP_MULTI_INSTANCE_BIT = 0x00000002,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_device_group_creation
    VK_MEMORY_HEAP_MULTI_INSTANCE_BIT_KHR = VK_MEMORY_HEAP_MULTI_INSTANCE_BIT,
} VkMemoryHeapFlagBits;
```

- **VK_MEMORY_HEAP_DEVICE_LOCAL_BIT** specifies that the heap corresponds to device local memory. Device local memory **may** have different performance characteristics than host local memory, and **may** support different memory property flags.

- **VK_MEMORY_HEAP_MULTI_INSTANCE_BIT** specifies that in a logical device representing more than one physical device, there is a per-physical device instance of the heap memory. By default, an allocation from such a heap will be replicated to each physical device's instance of the heap.

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkMemoryHeapFlags;
```

VkMemoryHeapFlags is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more VkMemoryHeapFlagBits.

The VkMemoryType structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkMemoryType {
    VkMemoryPropertyFlags propertyFlags;
    uint32_t heapIndex;
} VkMemoryType;

• *heapIndex* describes which memory heap this memory type corresponds to, and must be less than *memoryHeapCount* from the *VkPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties* structure.

• *propertyFlags* is a bitmask of *VkMemoryPropertyFlagBits* of properties for this memory type.

Bits which may be set in *VkMemoryType::propertyFlags*, indicating properties of a memory heap, are:

```c
typedef enum VkMemoryPropertyFlagBits {
    VK_MEMORY_PROPERTY_DEVICE_LOCAL_BIT = 0x00000001,
    VK_MEMORY_PROPERTY_HOST_VISIBLE_BIT = 0x00000002,
    VK_MEMORY_PROPERTY_HOST_COHERENT_BIT = 0x00000004,
    VK_MEMORY_PROPERTY_HOST_CACHED_BIT = 0x00000008,
    VK_MEMORY_PROPERTY_LAZILY_ALLOCATED_BIT = 0x00000010,
} VkMemoryPropertyFlagBits;
```

• **VK_MEMORY_PROPERTY_DEVICE_LOCAL_BIT** bit specifies that memory allocated with this type is the most efficient for device access. This property will be set if and only if the memory type belongs to a heap with the **VK_MEMORY_HEAP_DEVICE_LOCAL_BIT** set.

• **VK_MEMORY_PROPERTY_HOST_VISIBLE_BIT** bit specifies that memory allocated with this type can be mapped for host access using *vkMapMemory*.

• **VK_MEMORY_PROPERTY_HOST_COHERENT_BIT** bit specifies that the host cache management commands *vkFlushMappedMemoryRanges* and *vkInvalidateMappedMemoryRanges* are not needed to flush host writes to the device or make device writes visible to the host, respectively.

• **VK_MEMORY_PROPERTY_HOST_CACHED_BIT** bit specifies that memory allocated with this type is cached on the host. Host memory accesses to uncached memory are slower than to cached memory, however uncached memory is always host coherent.

• **VK_MEMORY_PROPERTY_LAZILY_ALLOCATED_BIT** bit specifies that the memory type only allows device access to the memory. Memory types must not have both **VK_MEMORY_PROPERTY_LAZILY_ALLOCATED_BIT** and **VK_MEMORY_PROPERTY_HOST_VISIBLE_BIT** set. Additionally, the object's backing memory may be provided by the implementation lazily as specified in *Lazily Allocated Memory*.

```c
typedef VkFlags VkMemoryPropertyFlags;
```

*VkMemoryPropertyFlags* is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more *VkMemoryPropertyFlagBits*. 
11.2.2. Device Memory Objects

A Vulkan device operates on data in device memory via memory objects that are represented in the API by a `VkDeviceMemory` handle:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VK_DEFINE_NON_DISPATCHABLE_HANDLE(VkDeviceMemory)
```

11.2.3. Device Memory Allocation

To allocate memory objects, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkAllocateMemory(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkMemoryAllocateInfo* pAllocateInfo,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator,
    VkDeviceMemory* pMemory);
```

- `device` is the logical device that owns the memory.
- `pAllocateInfo` is a pointer to a `VkMemoryAllocateInfo` structure describing parameters of the allocation. A successfully returned allocation must use the requested parameters—no substitution is permitted by the implementation.
- `pAllocator` controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
- `pMemory` is a pointer to a `VkDeviceMemory` handle in which information about the allocated memory is returned.

Allocations returned by `vkAllocateMemory` are guaranteed to meet any alignment requirement of the implementation. For example, if an implementation requires 128 byte alignment for images and 64 byte alignment for buffers, the device memory returned through this mechanism would be 128-byte aligned. This ensures that applications can correctly suballocate objects of different types (with potentially different alignment requirements) in the same memory object.

When memory is allocated, its contents are undefined.

The maximum number of valid memory allocations that can exist simultaneously within a `VkDevice` may be restricted by implementation- or platform-dependent limits. The `maxMemoryAllocationCount` feature describes the number of allocations that can exist simultaneously before encountering these internal limits.

**Note**

For historical reasons, if `maxMemoryAllocationCount` is exceeded, some implementations may return `VK_ERROR_TOO_MANY_OBJECTS`. Exceeding this limit will result in undefined behavior, and an application should not rely on the use of the returned error code in order to identify when the limit is reached.
Some platforms may have a limit on the maximum size of a single allocation. For example, certain systems may fail to create allocations with a size greater than or equal to 4GB. Such a limit is implementation-dependent, and if such a failure occurs then the error VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY must be returned. This limit is advertised in VkPhysicalDeviceMaintenance3Properties::maxMemoryAllocationSize.

Valid Usage

- VUID-vkAllocateMemory-pAllocateInfo-01713
  pAllocateInfo->allocationSize must be less than or equal to VkPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties::memoryHeaps[memindex].size where memindex = VkPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties::memoryTypes[pAllocateInfo->memoryTypeIndex].heapIndex as returned by vkGetPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties for the VkPhysicalDevice that device was created from

- VUID-vkAllocateMemory-pAllocateInfo-01714
  pAllocateInfo->memoryTypeIndex must be less than VkPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties::memoryTypeCount as returned by vkGetPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties for the VkPhysicalDevice that device was created from

- VUID-vkAllocateMemory-maxMemoryAllocationCount-04101
  There must be less than VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxMemoryAllocationCount device memory allocations currently allocated on the device

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkAllocateMemory-device-parameter
  device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- VUID-vkAllocateMemory-pAllocateInfo-parameter
  pAllocateInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid VkMemoryAllocateInfo structure

- VUID-vkAllocateMemory-pAllocator-parameter
  If pAllocator is not NULL, pAllocator must be a valid pointer to a valid VkAllocationCallbacks structure

- VUID-vkAllocateMemory-pMemory-parameter
  pMemory must be a valid pointer to a VkDeviceMemory handle
Return Codes

**Success**

- VK_SUCCESS

**Failure**

- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_INVALID_EXTERNAL_HANDLE
- VK_ERROR_INVALID_OPAQUE_CAPTURE_ADDRESS_KHR

The `VkMemoryAllocateInfo` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkMemoryAllocateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkDeviceSize allocationSize;
    uint32_t memoryTypeIndex;
} VkMemoryAllocateInfo;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `allocationSize` is the size of the allocation in bytes.
- `memoryTypeIndex` is an index identifying a memory type from the `memoryTypes` array of the `VkPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties` structure.

The internal data of an allocated device memory object must include a reference to implementation-specific resources, referred to as the memory object’s payload. Applications can also import and export that internal data to and from device memory objects to share data between Vulkan instances and other compatible APIs. A `VkMemoryAllocateInfo` structure defines a memory import operation if its `pNext` chain includes one of the following structures:

- `VkImportMemoryWin32HandleInfoKHR` with a non-zero `handleType` value
- `VkImportMemoryFdInfoKHR` with a non-zero `handleType` value

If the parameters define an import operation and the external handle type is `VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D11_TEXTURE_BIT`, `VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D11_TEXTURE_KMT_BIT`, or `VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_RESOURCE_BIT`, `allocationSize` is ignored. The implementation must query the size of these allocations from the OS.

Whether device memory objects constructed via a memory import operation hold a reference to their payload depends on the properties of the handle type used to perform the import, as defined...
Importing memory must not modify the content of the memory. Implementations must ensure that importing memory does not enable the importing Vulkan instance to access any memory or resources in other Vulkan instances other than that corresponding to the memory object imported. Implementations must also ensure accessing imported memory which has not been initialized does not allow the importing Vulkan instance to obtain data from the exporting Vulkan instance or vice-versa.

**Note**

How exported and imported memory is isolated is left to the implementation, but applications should be aware that such isolation may prevent implementations from placing multiple exportable memory objects in the same physical or virtual page. Hence, applications should avoid creating many small external memory objects whenever possible.

Importing memory must not increase overall heap usage within a system. However, it must affect the following per-process values:

- `VkPhysicalDeviceMaintenance3Properties::maxMemoryAllocationCount`

When performing a memory import operation, it is the responsibility of the application to ensure the external handles and their associated payloads meet all valid usage requirements. However, implementations must perform sufficient validation of external handles and payloads to ensure that the operation results in a valid memory object which will not cause program termination, device loss, queue stalls, or corruption of other resources when used as allowed according to its allocation parameters. If the external handle provided does not meet these requirements, the implementation must fail the memory import operation with the error code `VK_ERROR_INVALID_EXTERNAL_HANDLE`.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkMemoryAllocateInfo-allocationSize-00638**
  
  allocationSize must be greater than 0

- **VUID-VkMemoryAllocateInfo-pNext-00639**
  
  If the pNext chain includes a VkExportMemoryAllocateInfo structure, and any of the handle types specified in VkExportMemoryAllocateInfo::handleTypes require a dedicated allocation, as reported by vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties2 in VkExternalImageFormatProperties::externalMemoryProperties.externalMemoryFeatures or VkExternalBufferProperties::externalMemoryProperties.externalMemoryFeatures, the pNext chain must include a VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfo or VkDedicatedAllocationMemoryAllocateInfoNV structure with either its image or buffer member set to a value other than VK_NULL_HANDLE

- **VUID-VkMemoryAllocateInfo-allocationSize-01742**
  
  If the parameters define an import operation, the external handle specified was created by the Vulkan API, and the external handle type is VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_FD_BIT_KHR, then the values of allocationSize and memoryTypeIndex must match those specified when the payload being imported was created

- **VUID-VkMemoryAllocateInfo-None-00643**
  
  If the parameters define an import operation and the external handle specified was created by the Vulkan API, the device mask specified by VkMemoryAllocateFlagsInfo must match that specified when the payload being imported was allocated

- **VUID-VkMemoryAllocateInfo-None-00644**
  
  If the parameters define an import operation and the external handle specified was created by the Vulkan API, the list of physical devices that comprise the logical device passed to vkAllocateMemory must match the list of physical devices that comprise the logical device on which the payload was originally allocated

- **VUID-VkMemoryAllocateInfo-memoryTypeIndex-00645**
  
  If the parameters define an import operation and the external handle is an NT handle or a global share handle created outside of the Vulkan API, the value of memoryTypeIndex must be one of those returned by vkGetMemoryWin32HandlePropertiesKHR

- **VUID-VkMemoryAllocateInfo-allocationSize-01743**
  
  If the parameters define an import operation, the external handle was created by the Vulkan API, and the external handle type is VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_BIT_KHR or VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_KMT_BIT_KHR, then the values of allocationSize and memoryTypeIndex must match those specified when the payload being imported was created

- **VUID-VkMemoryAllocateInfo-allocationSize-00647**
  
  If the parameters define an import operation and the external handle type is VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_HEAP_BIT, allocationSize must match the size specified when creating the Direct3D 12 heap from which the payload was extracted

- **VUID-VkMemoryAllocateInfo-memoryTypeIndex-00648**

---

518 | Chapter 11. Memory Allocation
If the parameters define an import operation and the external handle is a POSIX file descriptor created outside of the Vulkan API, the value of `memoryTypeIndex` must be one of those returned by `vkGetMemoryFdPropertiesKHR`.

- **VUID-VkMemoryAllocateInfo-opaqueCaptureAddress-03329**
  
  If `VkMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddressAllocateInfo::opaqueCaptureAddress` is not zero, `VkMemoryAllocateFlagsInfo::flags` must include `VK_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_DEVICE_ADDRESS_CAPTURE_REPLAY_BIT`.

- **VUID-VkMemoryAllocateInfo-flags-03330**
  
  If `VkMemoryAllocateFlagsInfo::flags` includes `VK_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_DEVICE_ADDRESS_CAPTURE_REPLAY_BIT`, the `bufferDeviceAddressCaptureReplay` feature must be enabled.

- **VUID-VkMemoryAllocateInfo-flags-03331**
  
  If `VkMemoryAllocateFlagsInfo::flags` includes `VK_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_DEVICE_ADDRESS_BIT`, the `bufferDeviceAddress` feature must be enabled.

- **VUID-VkMemoryAllocateInfo-opaqueCaptureAddress-03333**
  
  If the parameters define an import operation, `VkMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddressAllocateInfo::opaqueCaptureAddress` must be zero.

## Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkMemoryAllocateInfo-sType-sType**
  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_INFO`.

- **VUID-VkMemoryAllocateInfo-pNext-pNext**
  
  Each `pNext` member of any structure (including this one) in the `pNext` chain must be either `NULL` or a pointer to a valid instance of `VkExportMemoryAllocateInfo`, `VkExportMemoryWin32HandleInfoKHR`, `VkImportMemoryFdInfoKHR`, `VkImportMemoryWin32HandleInfoKHR`, `VkMemoryAllocateFlagsInfo`, `VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfo`, or `VkMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddressAllocateInfo`.

- **VUID-VkMemoryAllocateInfo-sType-unique**
  
  The `sType` value of each struct in the `pNext` chain must be unique.

If the `pNext` chain includes a `VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfo` structure, then that structure includes a handle of the sole buffer or image resource that the memory can be bound to.

The `VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfo` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkImage image;
    VkBuffer buffer;
} VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfo;
```

or the equivalent.
// Provided by VK_KHR_dedicated_allocation
typedef VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfo VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfoKHR;

• **sType** is the type of this structure.
• **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• **image** is **VK_NULL_HANDLE** or a handle of an image which this memory will be bound to.
• **buffer** is **VK_NULL_HANDLE** or a handle of a buffer which this memory will be bound to.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfo-image-01432**
  At least one of `image` and `buffer` must be `VK_NULL_HANDLE`.

- **VUID-VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfo-image-01433**
  If `image` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, `VkMemoryAllocateInfo::allocationSize` must equal the `VkMemoryRequirements::size` of the image.

- **VUID-VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfo-image-01434**
  If `image` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, `image` must have been created without `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT` set in `VkImageCreateInfo::flags`.

- **VUID-VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfo-buffer-01435**
  If `buffer` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, `VkMemoryAllocateInfo::allocationSize` must equal the `VkMemoryRequirements::size` of the buffer.

- **VUID-VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfo-buffer-01436**
  If `buffer` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, `buffer` must have been created without `VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT` set in `VkBufferCreateInfo::flags`.

- **VUID-VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfo-image-01876**
  If `image` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE` and `VkMemoryAllocateInfo` defines a memory import operation with handle type `VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_BIT`, `VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_KMT_BIT`, `VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D11_TEXTURE_BIT`, `VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D11_TEXTURE_KMT_BIT`, `VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_HEAP_BIT`, or `VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_RESOURCE_BIT`, and the external handle was created by the Vulkan API, then the memory being imported must also be a dedicated image allocation and `image` must be identical to the image associated with the imported memory.

- **VUID-VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfo-buffer-01877**
  If `buffer` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE` and `VkMemoryAllocateInfo` defines a memory import operation with handle type `VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_BIT`, `VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_KMT_BIT`, `VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D11_TEXTURE_BIT`, `VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D11_TEXTURE_KMT_BIT`, `VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_HEAP_BIT`, or `VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_RESOURCE_BIT`, and the external handle was created by the Vulkan API, then the memory being imported must also be a dedicated buffer allocation and `buffer` must be identical to the buffer associated with the imported memory.

- **VUID-VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfo-image-01878**
  If `image` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE` and `VkMemoryAllocateInfo` defines a memory import operation with handle type `VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_FD_BIT`, the memory being imported must also be a dedicated image allocation and `image` must be identical to the image associated with the imported memory.

- **VUID-VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfo-buffer-01879**
  If `buffer` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE` and `VkMemoryAllocateInfo` defines a memory import operation with handle type `VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_FD_BIT`, the memory being imported must also be a dedicated buffer allocation and `buffer` must be identical to the buffer associated with the imported memory.
When allocating memory whose payload may be exported to another process or Vulkan instance, add a `VkExportMemoryAllocateInfo` structure to the `pNext` chain of the `VkMemoryAllocateInfo` structure, specifying the handle types that may be exported.

The `VkExportMemoryAllocateInfo` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkExportMemoryAllocateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlags handleTypes;
} VkExportMemoryAllocateInfo;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory
typedef VkExportMemoryAllocateInfo VkExportMemoryAllocateInfoKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `handleTypes` is a bitmask of `VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits` specifying one or more memory handle types the application can export from the resulting allocation. The application can request multiple handle types for the same allocation.
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkExportMemoryAllocateInfo-handleTypes-00656
  The bits in `handleTypes` must be supported and compatible, as reported by `VkExternalImageFormatProperties` or `VkExternalBufferProperties`.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkExportMemoryAllocateInfo-sType-sType
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXPORT_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_INFO`.

- VUID-VkExportMemoryAllocateInfo-handleTypes-parameter
  `handleTypes` must be a valid combination of `VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits` values.

11.2.4. Win32 External Memory

To specify additional attributes of NT handles exported from a memory object, add a `VkExportMemoryWin32HandleInfoKHR` structure to the `pNext` chain of the `VkMemoryAllocateInfo` structure. The `VkExportMemoryWin32HandleInfoKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory_win32
typedef struct VkExportMemoryWin32HandleInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    const SECURITY_ATTRIBUTES* pAttributes;
    DWORD dwAccess;
    LPCWSTR name;
} VkExportMemoryWin32HandleInfoKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `pAttributes` is a pointer to a Windows `SECURITY_ATTRIBUTES` structure specifying security attributes of the handle.
- `dwAccess` is a `DWORD` specifying access rights of the handle.
- `name` is a null-terminated UTF-16 string to associate with the payload referenced by NT handles exported from the created memory.

If `VkExportMemoryAllocateInfo` is not included in the same `pNext` chain, this structure is ignored.

If `VkExportMemoryAllocateInfo` is included in the `pNext` chain of `VkMemoryAllocateInfo` with a Windows `handleType`, but either `VkExportMemoryWin32HandleInfoKHR` is not included in the `pNext` chain, or if it is but `pAttributes` is set to `NULL`, default security descriptor values will be used, and child processes created by the application will not inherit the handle, as described in the MSDN.
documentation for “Synchronization Object Security and Access Rights”. Further, if the structure is not present, the access rights used depend on the handle type.

For handles of the following types:

- VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_BIT
- VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D11_TEXTURE_BIT

The implementation must ensure the access rights allow read and write access to the memory.

For handles of the following types:

- VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_HEAP_BIT
- VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12RESOURCE_BIT

The access rights must be:

- GENERIC_ALL

Valid Usage

- VUID-VkExportMemoryWin32HandleInfoKHR-handleTypes-00657
  If VkExportMemoryAllocateInfo::handleTypes does not include VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_BIT, VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D11_TEXTURE_BIT, VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_HEAP_BIT, or VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_RESOURCE_BIT, a VkExportMemoryWin32HandleInfoKHR structure must not be included in the pNext chain of VkMemoryAllocateInfo

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkExportMemoryWin32HandleInfoKHR-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXPORT_MEMORY_WIN32_HANDLE_INFO_KHR

- VUID-VkExportMemoryWin32HandleInfoKHR-pAttributes-parameter
  If pAttributes is not NULL, pAttributes must be a valid pointer to a valid SECURITY_ATTRIBUTES value

To import memory from a Windows handle, add a VkImportMemoryWin32HandleInfoKHR structure to the pNext chain of the VkMemoryAllocateInfo structure.

The VkImportMemoryWin32HandleInfoKHR structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkImportMemoryWin32HandleInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits handleType;
    HANDLE handle;
    LPCWSTR name;
} VkImportMemoryWin32HandleInfoKHR;

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `handleType` is a `VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits` value specifying the type of `handle` or `name`.
- `handle` is `NULL` or the external handle to import.
- `name` is `NULL` or a null-terminated UTF-16 string naming the payload to import.

Importing memory object payloads from Windows handles does not transfer ownership of the handle to the Vulkan implementation. For handle types defined as NT handles, the application must release handle ownership using the `CloseHandle` system call when the handle is no longer needed. For handle types defined as NT handles, the imported memory object holds a reference to its payload.

*Note*
Non-NT handle import operations do not add a reference to their associated payload. If the original object owning the payload is destroyed, all resources and handles sharing that payload will become invalid.

Applications can import the same payload into multiple instances of Vulkan, into the same instance from which it was exported, and multiple times into a given Vulkan instance. In all cases, each import operation must create a distinct `VkDeviceMemory` object.
Valid Usage

• VUID-VkImportMemoryWin32HandleInfoKHR-handleType-00658
  If handleType is not 0, it must be supported for import, as reported by VkExternalImageFormatProperties or VkExternalBufferProperties

• VUID-VkImportMemoryWin32HandleInfoKHR-handle-00659
  The memory from which handle was exported, or the memory named by name must have been created on the same underlying physical device as device

• VUID-VkImportMemoryWin32HandleInfoKHR-handleType-00660
  If handleType is not 0, it must be defined as an NT handle or a global share handle

• VUID-VkImportMemoryWin32HandleInfoKHR-handleType-01439
  If handleType is not VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_BIT, VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D11_TEXTURE_BIT, VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_HEAP_BIT, or VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_RESOURCE_BIT, name must be NULL

• VUID-VkImportMemoryWin32HandleInfoKHR-handle-01440
  If handleType is not 0 and handle is NULL, name must name a valid memory resource of the type specified by handleType

• VUID-VkImportMemoryWin32HandleInfoKHR-handleType-00661
  If handleType is not 0 and name is NULL, handle must be a valid handle of the type specified by handleType

• VUID-VkImportMemoryWin32HandleInfoKHR-handle-01441
  If handle is not NULL, name must be NULL

• VUID-VkImportMemoryWin32HandleInfoKHR-handleType-parameter-01518
  If handle is not NULL, it must obey any requirements listed for handleType in external memory handle types compatibility

• VUID-VkImportMemoryWin32HandleInfoKHR-name-parameter-01519
  If name is not NULL, it must obey any requirements listed for handleType in external memory handle types compatibility

Valid Usage (Implicit)

• VUID-VkImportMemoryWin32HandleInfoKHR-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMPORT_MEMORY_WIN32_HANDLE_INFO_KHR

• VUID-VkImportMemoryWin32HandleInfoKHR-handleType-parameter
  If handleType is not 0, handleType must be a valid VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits value

To export a Windows handle representing the payload of a Vulkan device memory object, call:
Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory_win32

```c
VkResult vkGetMemoryWin32HandleKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkMemoryGetWin32HandleInfoKHR* pGetWin32HandleInfo,
    HANDLE* pHandle);
```

- `device` is the logical device that created the device memory being exported.
- `pGetWin32HandleInfo` is a pointer to a `VkMemoryGetWin32HandleInfoKHR` structure containing parameters of the export operation.
- `pHandle` will return the Windows handle representing the payload of the device memory object.

For handle types defined as NT handles, the handles returned by `vkGetMemoryWin32HandleKHR` are owned by the application and hold a reference to their payload. To avoid leaking resources, the application must release ownership of them using the `CloseHandle` system call when they are no longer needed.

**Note**

Non-NT handle types do not add a reference to their associated payload. If the original object owning the payload is destroyed, all resources and handles sharing that payload will become invalid.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkGetMemoryWin32HandleKHR-device-parameter**
  
  `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- **VUID-vkGetMemoryWin32HandleKHR-pGetWin32HandleInfo-parameter**
  
  `pGetWin32HandleInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkMemoryGetWin32HandleInfoKHR` structure

- **VUID-vkGetMemoryWin32HandleKHR-pHandle-parameter**
  
  `pHandle` must be a valid pointer to a `HANDLE` value

### Return Codes

**Success**

- VK_SUCCESS

**Failure**

- VK_ERROR_TOO_MANY_OBJECTS
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY

The `VkMemoryGetWin32HandleInfoKHR` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkMemoryGetWin32HandleInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkDeviceMemory memory;
    VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits handleType;
} VkMemoryGetWin32HandleInfoKHR;

• sType is the type of this structure.
• pNext is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• memory is the memory object from which the handle will be exported.
• handleType is a VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits value specifying the type of handle requested.

The properties of the handle returned depend on the value of handleType. See VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits for a description of the properties of the defined external memory handle types.

Valid Usage

• VUID-VkMemoryGetWin32HandleInfoKHR-handleType-00662
  handleType must have been included in VkExportMemoryAllocateInfo::handleTypes when memory was created

• VUID-VkMemoryGetWin32HandleInfoKHR-handleType-00663
  If handleType is defined as an NT handle, vkGetMemoryWin32HandleKHR must be called no more than once for each valid unique combination of memory and handleType

• VUID-VkMemoryGetWin32HandleInfoKHR-handleType-00664
  handleType must be defined as an NT handle or a global share handle

Valid Usage (Implicit)

• VUID-VkMemoryGetWin32HandleInfoKHR-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_GET_WIN32_HANDLE_INFO_KHR

• VUID-VkMemoryGetWin32HandleInfoKHR-pNext-pNext
  pNext must be NULL

• VUID-VkMemoryGetWin32HandleInfoKHR-memory-parameter
  memory must be a valid VkDeviceMemory handle

• VUID-VkMemoryGetWin32HandleInfoKHR-handleType-parameter
  handleType must be a valid VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits value

Windows memory handles compatible with Vulkan may also be created by non-Vulkan APIs using methods beyond the scope of this specification. To determine the correct parameters to use when
importing such handles, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory_win32
VkResult vkGetMemoryWin32HandlePropertiesKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits handleType,
    HANDLE handle,
    VkMemoryWin32HandlePropertiesKHR* pMemoryWin32HandleProperties);
```

- `device` is the logical device that will be importing `handle`.
- `handleType` is a `VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits` value specifying the type of the handle `handle`.
- `handle` is the handle which will be imported.
- `pMemoryWin32HandleProperties` is a pointer to a `VkMemoryWin32HandlePropertiesKHR` structure in which properties of `handle` are returned.

### Valid Usage

- `VUID-vkGetMemoryWin32HandlePropertiesKHR-handle-00665`  
  `handle` **must** be an external memory handle created outside of the Vulkan API

- `VUID-vkGetMemoryWin32HandlePropertiesKHR-handleType-00666`  
  `handleType` **must** not be one of the handle types defined as opaque

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- `VUID-vkGetMemoryWin32HandlePropertiesKHR-device-parameter`  
  `device` **must** be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- `VUID-vkGetMemoryWin32HandlePropertiesKHR-handleType-parameter`  
  `handleType` **must** be a valid `VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits` value

- `VUID-vkGetMemoryWin32HandlePropertiesKHR-pMemoryWin32HandleProperties-parameter`  
  `pMemoryWin32HandleProperties` **must** be a valid pointer to a `VkMemoryWin32HandlePropertiesKHR` structure

### Return Codes

**Success**

- `VK_SUCCESS`

**Failure**

- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_INVALID_EXTERNAL_HANDLE`
The VkMemoryWin32HandlePropertiesKHR structure returned is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory_win32
typedef struct VkMemoryWin32HandlePropertiesKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    uint32_t memoryTypeBits;
} VkMemoryWin32HandlePropertiesKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `memoryTypeBits` is a bitmask containing one bit set for every memory type which the specified windows handle can be imported as.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- `VUID-VkMemoryWin32HandlePropertiesKHR-sType-sType`  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_WIN32_HANDLE_PROPERTIES_KHR`
- `VUID-VkMemoryWin32HandlePropertiesKHR-pNext-pNext`  
  `pNext` must be `NULL`

#### 11.2.5. File Descriptor External Memory

To import memory from a POSIX file descriptor handle, add a `VkImportMemoryFdInfoKHR` structure to the `pNext` chain of the `VkMemoryAllocateInfo` structure. The `VkImportMemoryFdInfoKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory_fd
typedef struct VkImportMemoryFdInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits handleType;
    int fd;
} VkImportMemoryFdInfoKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `handleType` is a `VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits` value specifying the handle type of `fd`.
- `fd` is the external handle to import.

Importing memory from a file descriptor transfers ownership of the file descriptor from the application to the Vulkan implementation. The application must not perform any operations on the file descriptor after a successful import. The imported memory object holds a reference to its payload.
Applications can import the same payload into multiple instances of Vulkan, into the same instance from which it was exported, and multiple times into a given Vulkan instance. In all cases, each import operation must create a distinct VkDeviceMemory object.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkImportMemoryFdInfoKHR-handleType-00667**
  If handleType is not 0, it must be supported for import, as reported by VkExternalImageFormatProperties or VkExternalBufferProperties

- **VUID-VkImportMemoryFdInfoKHR-fd-00668**
  The memory from which fd was exported must have been created on the same underlying physical device as device

- **VUID-VkImportMemoryFdInfoKHR-handleType-00669**
  If handleType is not 0, it must be VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_FD_BIT or VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_DMA_BUF_BIT_EXT

- **VUID-VkImportMemoryFdInfoKHR-handleType-00669**
  If handleType is not 0, fd must be a valid handle of the type specified by handleType

- **VUID-VkImportMemoryFdInfoKHR-handleType-00669**
  If handleType is not 0, fd must be a valid handle of the type specified by handleType

- **VUID-VkImportMemoryFdInfoKHR-fd-01746**
  The memory represented by fd must have been created from a physical device and driver that is compatible with device and handleType, as described in External memory handle types compatibility

- **VUID-VkImportMemoryFdInfoKHR-fd-01520**
  fd must obey any requirements listed for handleType in external memory handle types compatibility

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkImportMemoryFdInfoKHR-sType-sType**
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMPORT_MEMORY_FD_INFO_KHR

- **VUID-VkImportMemoryFdInfoKHR-handleType-parameter**
  If handleType is not 0, handleType must be a valid VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits value

To export a POSIX file descriptor referencing the payload of a Vulkan device memory object, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory_fd
VkResult vkGetMemoryFdKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkMemoryGetFdInfoKHR* pGetFdInfo,
    int* pFd);
```

- **device** is the logical device that created the device memory being exported.
- **pGetFdInfo** is a pointer to a VkMemoryGetFdInfoKHR structure containing parameters of the
• `pFd` will return a file descriptor referencing the payload of the device memory object.

Each call to `vkGetMemoryFdKHR` must create a new file descriptor holding a reference to the memory object's payload and transfer ownership of the file descriptor to the application. To avoid leaking resources, the application must release ownership of the file descriptor using the `close` system call when it is no longer needed, or by importing a Vulkan memory object from it. Where supported by the operating system, the implementation must set the file descriptor to be closed automatically when an `execve` system call is made.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- `VUID-vkGetMemoryFdKHR-device-parameter` device must be a valid `VkDevice` handle
- `VUID-vkGetMemoryFdKHR-pGetFdInfo-parameter` `pGetFdInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkMemoryGetFdInfoKHR` structure
- `VUID-vkGetMemoryFdKHR-pFd-parameter` `pFd` must be a valid pointer to an `int` value

Return Codes

Success

- `VK_SUCCESS`

Failure

- `VK_ERROR_TOO_MANY_OBJECTS`
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY`

The `VkMemoryGetFdInfoKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory_fd
typedef struct VkMemoryGetFdInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkDeviceMemory memory;
    VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits handleType;
} VkMemoryGetFdInfoKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `memory` is the memory object from which the handle will be exported.
- `handleType` is a `VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits` value specifying the type of handle requested.
The properties of the file descriptor exported depend on the value of `handleType`. See `VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits` for a description of the properties of the defined external memory handle types.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkMemoryGetFdInfoKHR-handleType-00671**
  - `handleType` must have been included in `VkExportMemoryAllocateInfo::handleTypes` when memory was created.

- **VUID-VkMemoryGetFdInfoKHR-handleType-00672**
  - `handleType` must be `VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_FD_BIT` or `VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_DMA_BUF_BIT_EXT`.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkMemoryGetFdInfoKHR-sType-sType**
  - `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_GET_FD_INFO_KHR`.

- **VUID-VkMemoryGetFdInfoKHR-pNext-pNext**
  - `pNext` must be `NULL`.

- **VUID-VkMemoryGetFdInfoKHR-memory-parameter**
  - `memory` must be a valid `VkDeviceMemory` handle.

- **VUID-VkMemoryGetFdInfoKHR-handleType-parameter**
  - `handleType` must be a valid `VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits` value.

POSIX file descriptor memory handles compatible with Vulkan may also be created by non-Vulkan APIs using methods beyond the scope of this specification. To determine the correct parameters to use when importing such handles, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory_fd
VkResult vkGetMemoryFdPropertiesKHR(
  VkDevice device,
  VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits handleType,
  int fd,
  VkMemoryFdPropertiesKHR* pMemoryFdProperties);
```

- `device` is the logical device that will be importing `fd`.
- `handleType` is a `VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits` value specifying the type of the handle `fd`.
- `fd` is the handle which will be imported.
- `pMemoryFdProperties` is a pointer to a `VkMemoryFdPropertiesKHR` structure in which the properties of the handle `fd` are returned.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkGetMemoryFdPropertiesKHR-fd-00673
  
  **fd** must be an external memory handle created outside of the Vulkan API

- VUID-vkGetMemoryFdPropertiesKHR-handleType-00674
  
  **handleType** must not be **VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_FD_BIT_KHR**

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetMemoryFdPropertiesKHR-device-parameter
  
  **device** must be a valid **VkDevice** handle

- VUID-vkGetMemoryFdPropertiesKHR-handleType-parameter
  
  **handleType** must be a valid **VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits** value

- VUID-vkGetMemoryFdPropertiesKHR-pMemoryFdProperties-parameter
  
  **pMemoryFdProperties** must be a valid pointer to a **VkMemoryFdPropertiesKHR** structure

Return Codes

**Success**

- **VK_SUCCESS**

**Failure**

- **VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY**
- **VK_ERROR_INVALID_EXTERNAL_HANDLE**

The **VkMemoryFdPropertiesKHR** structure returned is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkMemoryFdPropertiesKHR {
    VkStructureType    sType;
    void*              pNext;
    uint32_t           memoryTypeBits;
} VkMemoryFdPropertiesKHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **memoryTypeBits** is a bitmask containing one bit set for every memory type which the specified file descriptor can be imported as.
11.2.6. Device Group Memory Allocations

If the `pNext` chain of `VkMemoryAllocateInfo` includes a `VkMemoryAllocateFlagsInfo` structure, then that structure includes flags and a device mask controlling how many instances of the memory will be allocated.

The `VkMemoryAllocateFlagsInfo` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkMemoryAllocateFlagsInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkMemoryAllocateFlags flags;
    uint32_t deviceMask;
} VkMemoryAllocateFlagsInfo;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_device_group
typedef VkMemoryAllocateFlagsInfo VkMemoryAllocateFlagsInfoKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `flags` is a bitmask of `VkMemoryAllocateFlagBits` controlling the allocation.
- `deviceMask` is a mask of physical devices in the logical device, indicating that memory must be allocated on each device in the mask, if `VK_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_DEVICE_MASK_BIT` is set in `flags`.

If `VK_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_DEVICE_MASK_BIT` is not set, the number of instances allocated depends on whether `VK_MEMORY_HEAP_MULTI_INSTANCE_BIT` is set in the memory heap. If `VK_MEMORY_HEAP_MULTI_INSTANCE_BIT` is set, then memory is allocated for every physical device in the logical device (as if `deviceMask` has bits set for all device indices). If `VK_MEMORY_HEAP_MULTI_INSTANCE_BIT` is not set, then a single instance of memory is allocated (as if `deviceMask` is set to one).

On some implementations, allocations from a multi-instance heap may consume memory on all physical devices even if the `deviceMask` excludes some devices. If `VkPhysicalDeviceGroupProperties::subsetAllocation` is `VK_TRUE`, then memory is only consumed for the devices in the device mask.
In practice, most allocations on a multi-instance heap will be allocated across all physical devices. Unicast allocation support is an optional optimization for a minority of allocations.

Valid Usage

- VUID-VkMemoryAllocateFlagsInfo-deviceMask-00675
  If VK_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_DEVICE_MASK_BIT is set, deviceMask must be a valid device mask.

- VUID-VkMemoryAllocateFlagsInfo-deviceMask-00676
  If VK_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_DEVICE_MASK_BIT is set, deviceMask must not be zero.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkMemoryAllocateFlagsInfo-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_FLAGS_INFO.

- VUID-VkMemoryAllocateFlagsInfo-flags-parameter
  flags must be a valid combination of VkMemoryAllocateFlagBits values.

Bits which can be set in VkMemoryAllocateFlagsInfo::flags, controlling device memory allocation, are:

```c
typedef enum VkMemoryAllocateFlagBits {
    VK_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_DEVICE_MASK_BIT = 0x00000001,
    VK_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_DEVICE_ADDRESS_BIT = 0x00000002,
    VK_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_DEVICE_ADDRESS_CAPTURE_REPLAY_BIT = 0x00000004,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_device_group
    VK_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_DEVICE_MASK_BIT_KHR = VK_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_DEVICE_MASK_BIT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_buffer_device_address
    VK_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_DEVICE_ADDRESS_BIT_KHR = VK_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_DEVICE_ADDRESS_BIT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_buffer_device_address
    VK_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_DEVICE_ADDRESS_CAPTURE_REPLAY_BIT_KHR = VK_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_DEVICE_ADDRESS_CAPTURE_REPLAY_BIT,
} VkMemoryAllocateFlagBits;
```
or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_device_group
typedef VkMemoryAllocateFlagBits VkMemoryAllocateFlagBitsKHR;
```

- VK_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_DEVICE_MASK_BIT specifies that memory will be allocated for the devices in VkMemoryAllocateFlagsInfo::deviceMask.
- VK_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_DEVICE_ADDRESS_BIT specifies that the memory can be attached to a buffer...
object created with the `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_SHADER_DEVICE_ADDRESS_BIT` bit set in `usage`, and that the memory handle can be used to retrieve an opaque address via `vkGetDeviceMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddress`.

- `VK_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_DEVICE_ADDRESS_CAPTURE_REPLAY_BIT` specifies that the memory’s address can be saved and reused on a subsequent run (e.g. for trace capture and replay), see `VkBufferOpaqueCaptureAddressCreateInfo` for more detail.

```c
typedef VkFlags VkMemoryAllocateFlags;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_device_group
typedef VkMemoryAllocateFlags VkMemoryAllocateFlagsKHR;
```

`VkMemoryAllocateFlags` is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more `VkMemoryAllocateFlagBits`.

### 11.2.7. Opaque Capture Address Allocation

To request a specific device address for a memory allocation, add a `VkMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddressAllocateInfo` structure to the `pNext` chain of the `VkMemoryAllocateInfo` structure. The `VkMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddressAllocateInfo` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddressAllocateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    uint64_t opaqueCaptureAddress;
} VkMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddressAllocateInfo;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_buffer_device_address
typedef VkMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddressAllocateInfo
    VkMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddressAllocateInfoKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `opaqueCaptureAddress` is the opaque capture address requested for the memory allocation.

If `opaqueCaptureAddress` is zero, no specific address is requested.

If `opaqueCaptureAddress` is not zero, it **should** be an address retrieved from `vkGetDeviceMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddress` on an identically created memory allocation on the
same implementation.

**Note**

In most cases, it is expected that a non-zero opaqueAddress is an address retrieved from `vkGetDeviceMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddress` on an identically created memory allocation. If this is not the case, it is likely that `VK_ERROR_INVALID_OPAQUE_CAPTURE_ADDRESS` errors will occur.

This is, however, not a strict requirement because trace capture/replay tools may need to adjust memory allocation parameters for imported memory.

If this structure is not present, it is as if `opaqueCaptureAddress` is zero.

---

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- `VUID-VkMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddressAllocateInfo-sType-sType`
  - `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_OPAQUE_CAPTURE_ADDRESS_ALLOCATE_INFO`

---

#### 11.2.8. Freeing Device Memory

To free a memory object, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkFreeMemory(
    VkDevice device,   // Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
    VkDeviceMemory memory,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator);
```

- `device` is the logical device that owns the memory.
- `memory` is the `VkDeviceMemory` object to be freed.
- `pAllocator` controls host memory allocation as described in the *Memory Allocation* chapter.

Before freeing a memory object, an application **must** ensure the memory object is no longer in use by the device—for example by command buffers in the *pending state*. Memory **can** be freed whilst still bound to resources, but those resources **must** not be used afterwards. Freeing a memory object releases the reference it held, if any, to its payload. If there are still any bound images or buffers, the memory object's payload **may** not be immediately released by the implementation, but **must** be released by the time all bound images and buffers have been destroyed. Once all references to a payload are released, it is returned to the heap from which it was allocated.

How memory objects are bound to Images and Buffers is described in detail in the *Resource Memory Association* section.

If a memory object is mapped at the time it is freed, it is implicitly unmapped.
Note

As described below, host writes are not implicitly flushed when the memory object is unmapped, but the implementation must guarantee that writes that have not been flushed do not affect any other memory.

**Valid Usage**

- VUID-vkFreeMemory-memory-00677
  
  All submitted commands that refer to memory (via images or buffers) must have completed execution

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-vkFreeMemory-device-parameter
  
  device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- VUID-vkFreeMemory-memory-parameter
  
  If memory is not VK_NULL_HANDLE, memory must be a valid VkDeviceMemory handle

- VUID-vkFreeMemory-pAllocator-parameter
  
  If pAllocator is not NULL, pAllocator must be a valid pointer to a valid VkAllocationCallbacks structure

- VUID-vkFreeMemory-memory-parent
  
  If memory is a valid handle, it must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from device

**Host Synchronization**

- Host access to memory must be externally synchronized

### 11.2.9. Host Access to Device Memory Objects

Memory objects created with vkAllocateMemory are not directly host accessible.

Memory objects created with the memory property VK_MEMORY_PROPERTY_HOST_VISIBLE_BIT are considered mappable. Memory objects must be mappable in order to be successfully mapped on the host.

To retrieve a host virtual address pointer to a region of a mappable memory object, call:
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0

VkResult vkMapMemory(
    VkDevice device,        
    VkDeviceMemory memory,   
    VkDeviceSize offset,     
    VkDeviceSize size,       
    VkMemoryMapFlags flags,  
    void** ppData);

- **device** is the logical device that owns the memory.
- **memory** is the `VkDeviceMemory` object to be mapped.
- **offset** is a zero-based byte offset from the beginning of the memory object.
- **size** is the size of the memory range to map, or `VK_WHOLE_SIZE` to map from `offset` to the end of the allocation.
- **flags** is reserved for future use.
- **ppData** is a pointer to a `void *` variable in which is returned a host-accessible pointer to the beginning of the mapped range. This pointer minus `offset` must be aligned to at least `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::minMemoryMapAlignment`.

After a successful call to `vkMapMemory` the memory object `memory` is considered to be currently *host mapped*.

**Note**

It is an application error to call `vkMapMemory` on a memory object that is already *host mapped*.

**Note**

`vkMapMemory` will fail if the implementation is unable to allocate an appropriately sized contiguous virtual address range, e.g. due to virtual address space fragmentation or platform limits. In such cases, `vkMapMemory` must return `VK_ERROR_MEMORY_MAP_FAILED`. The application can improve the likelihood of success by reducing the size of the mapped range and/or removing unneeded mappings using `vkUnmapMemory`.

`vkMapMemory` does not check whether the device memory is currently in use before returning the host-accessible pointer. The application must guarantee that any previously submitted command that writes to this range has completed before the host reads from or writes to that range, and that any previously submitted command that reads from that range has completed before the host writes to that region (see here for details on fulfilling such a guarantee). If the device memory was allocated without the `VK_MEMORY_PROPERTY_HOST_COHERENT_BIT` set, these guarantees must be made for an extended range: the application must round down the start of the range to the nearest multiple of `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::nonCoherentAtomSize`, and round the end of the range up to the nearest multiple of `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::nonCoherentAtomSize`.

While a range of device memory is host mapped, the application is responsible for synchronizing
both device and host access to that memory range.

Note
It is important for the application developer to become meticulously familiar with all of the mechanisms described in the chapter on Synchronization and Cache Control as they are crucial to maintaining memory access ordering.

Valid Usage

- VUID-vkMapMemory-memory-00678
  memory must not be currently host mapped

- VUID-vkMapMemory-offset-00679
  offset must be less than the size of memory

- VUID-vkMapMemory-size-00680
  If size is not equal to VK_WHOLE_SIZE, size must be greater than 0

- VUID-vkMapMemory-size-00681
  If size is not equal to VK_WHOLE_SIZE, size must be less than or equal to the size of the memory minus offset

- VUID-vkMapMemory-memory-00682
  memory must have been created with a memory type that reports VK_MEMORY_PROPERTY_HOST_VISIBLE_BIT

- VUID-vkMapMemory-memory-00683
  memory must not have been allocated with multiple instances

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkMapMemory-device-parameter
  device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- VUID-vkMapMemory-memory-parameter
  memory must be a valid VkDeviceMemory handle

- VUID-vkMapMemory-flags-zerobitmask
  flags must be 0

- VUID-vkMapMemory-ppData-parameter
  ppData must be a valid pointer to a pointer value

- VUID-vkMapMemory-memory-parent
  memory must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from device

Host Synchronization

- Host access to memory must be externally synchronized
Return Codes

Success
  • VK_SUCCESS

Failure
  • VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
  • VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY
  • VK_ERROR_MEMORY_MAP_FAILED

// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkMemoryMapFlags;

VkMemoryMapFlags is a bitmask type for setting a mask, but is currently reserved for future use.

Two commands are provided to enable applications to work with non-coherent memory allocations: vkFlushMappedMemoryRanges and vkInvalidateMappedMemoryRanges.

Note
If the memory object was created with the VK_MEMORY_PROPERTY_HOST_COHERENT_BIT set, vkFlushMappedMemoryRanges and vkInvalidateMappedMemoryRanges are unnecessary and may have a performance cost. However, availability and visibility operations still need to be managed on the device. See the description of host access types for more information.

To flush ranges of non-coherent memory from the host caches, call:

// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkFlushMappedMemoryRanges(
  VkDevice device,
  uint32_t memoryRangeCount,
  const VkMappedMemoryRange* pMemoryRanges);

• device is the logical device that owns the memory ranges.
• memoryRangeCount is the length of the pMemoryRanges array.
• pMemoryRanges is a pointer to an array of VkMappedMemoryRange structures describing the memory ranges to flush.

vkFlushMappedMemoryRanges guarantees that host writes to the memory ranges described by pMemoryRanges are made available to the host memory domain, such that they can be made available to the device memory domain via memory domain operations using the VK_ACCESS_HOST_WRITE_BIT access type.

Within each range described by pMemoryRanges, each set of nonCoherentAtomSize bytes in that range is
flushed if any byte in that set has been written by the host since it was first host mapped, or the last
time it was flushed. If `pMemoryRanges` includes sets of `nonCoherentAtomSize` bytes where no bytes have
been written by the host, those bytes must not be flushed.

Unmapping non-coherent memory does not implicitly flush the host mapped memory, and host
writes that have not been flushed may not ever be visible to the device. However, implementations
must ensure that writes that have not been flushed do not become visible to any other memory.

\[\text{Note}\]
The above guarantee avoids a potential memory corruption in scenarios where
host writes to a mapped memory object have not been flushed before the memory
is unmapped (or freed), and the virtual address range is subsequently reused for a
different mapping (or memory allocation).

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**
- `VUID-vkFlushMappedMemoryRanges-device-parameter`
device must be a valid `VkDevice` handle
- `VUID-vkFlushMappedMemoryRanges-pMemoryRanges-parameter`
  `pMemoryRanges` must be a valid pointer to an array of `memoryRangeCount` valid
  `VkMappedMemoryRange` structures
- `VUID-vkFlushMappedMemoryRanges-memoryRangeCount-arraylength`
  `memoryRangeCount` must be greater than 0

**Return Codes**

**Success**
- `VK_SUCCESS`

**Failure**
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY`

To invalidate ranges of non-coherent memory from the host caches, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkInvalidateMappedMemoryRanges(
    VkDevice device,
    uint32_t memoryRangeCount,
    const VkMappedMemoryRange* pMemoryRanges);
```

- `device` is the logical device that owns the memory ranges.
- `memoryRangeCount` is the length of the `pMemoryRanges` array.
• `pMemoryRanges` is a pointer to an array of `VkMappedMemoryRange` structures describing the memory ranges to invalidate.

`vkInvalidateMappedMemoryRanges` guarantees that device writes to the memory ranges described by `pMemoryRanges`, which have been made available to the host memory domain using the `VK_ACCESS_HOST_WRITE_BIT` and `VK_ACCESS_HOST_READ_BIT` access types, are made visible to the host. If a range of non-coherent memory is written by the host and then invalidated without first being flushed, its contents are undefined.

Within each range described by `pMemoryRanges`, each set of `nonCoherentAtomSize` bytes in that range is invalidated if any byte in that set has been written by the device since it was first host mapped, or the last time it was invalidated.

**Note**

Mapping non-coherent memory does not implicitly invalidate that memory.

---

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- `VUID-vkInvalidateMappedMemoryRanges-device-parameter`  
  `device` **must** be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- `VUID-vkInvalidateMappedMemoryRanges-pMemoryRanges-parameter`  
  `pMemoryRanges` **must** be a valid pointer to an array of `memoryRangeCount` valid `VkMappedMemoryRange` structures

- `VUID-vkInvalidateMappedMemoryRanges-memoryRangeCount-arraylength`  
  `memoryRangeCount` **must** be greater than 0

---

**Return Codes**

**Success**

- `VK_SUCCESS`

**Failure**

- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY`

---

The `VkMappedMemoryRange` structure is defined as:
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0

typedef struct VkMappedMemoryRange {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkDeviceMemory memory;
    VkDeviceSize offset;
    VkDeviceSize size;
} VkMappedMemoryRange;

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **memory** is the memory object to which this range belongs.
- **offset** is the zero-based byte offset from the beginning of the memory object.
- **size** is either the size of range, or **VK_WHOLE_SIZE** to affect the range from **offset** to the end of the current mapping of the allocation.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkMappedMemoryRange-memory-00684**
  - memory **must** be currently host mapped

- **VUID-VkMappedMemoryRange-size-00685**
  - If **size** is not equal to **VK_WHOLE_SIZE**, **offset** and **size** **must** specify a range contained within the currently mapped range of memory

- **VUID-VkMappedMemoryRange-size-00686**
  - If **size** is equal to **VK_WHOLE_SIZE**, **offset** **must** be within the currently mapped range of memory

- **VUID-VkMappedMemoryRange-offset-00687**
  - **offset** **must** be a multiple of VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::nonCoherentAtomSize

- **VUID-VkMappedMemoryRange-size-01389**
  - If **size** is equal to **VK_WHOLE_SIZE**, the end of the current mapping of memory **must** either be a multiple of VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::nonCoherentAtomSize bytes from the beginning of the memory object, or be equal to the end of the memory object

- **VUID-VkMappedMemoryRange-size-01390**
  - If **size** is not equal to **VK_WHOLE_SIZE**, **size** **must** either be a multiple of VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::nonCoherentAtomSize, or **offset** plus **size** **must** equal the size of memory
To unmap a memory object once host access to it is no longer needed by the application, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
define vkUnmapMemory(device, memory);
```

- `device` is the logical device that owns the memory.
- `memory` is the memory object to be unmapped.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkMappedMemoryRange-sType-sType
  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MAPPED_MEMORY_RANGE`

- VUID-VkMappedMemoryRange-pNext-pNext
  
  `pNext` must be `NULL`

- VUID-VkMappedMemoryRange-memory-parameter
  
  `memory` must be a valid `VkDeviceMemory` handle

### Valid Usage

- VUID-vkUnmapMemory-memory-00689
  
  `memory` must be currently host mapped

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkUnmapMemory-device-parameter
  
  `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- VUID-vkUnmapMemory-memory-parameter
  
  `memory` must be a valid `VkDeviceMemory` handle

- VUID-vkUnmapMemory-memory-parent
  
  `memory` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from `device`

### Host Synchronization

- Host access to `memory` must be externally synchronized

### 11.2.10. Lazily Allocated Memory

If the memory object is allocated from a heap with the `VK_MEMORY_PROPERTY_LAZILY_ALLOCATED_BIT` bit set, that object’s backing memory may be provided by the implementation lazily. The actual
committed size of the memory may initially be as small as zero (or as large as the requested size), and monotonically increases as additional memory is needed.

A memory type with this flag set is only allowed to be bound to a VkImage whose usage flags include VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSIENT_ATTACHMENT_BIT.

Note
Using lazily allocated memory objects for framebuffer attachments that are not needed once a render pass instance has completed may allow some implementations to never allocate memory for such attachments.

To determine the amount of lazily-allocated memory that is currently committed for a memory object, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkGetDeviceMemoryCommitment(
    VkDevice device,  
    VkDeviceMemory memory,  
    VkDeviceSize* pCommittedMemoryInBytes);
```

- **device** is the logical device that owns the memory.
- **memory** is the memory object being queried.
- **pCommittedMemoryInBytes** is a pointer to a VkDeviceSize value in which the number of bytes currently committed is returned, on success.

The implementation may update the commitment at any time, and the value returned by this query may be out of date.

The implementation guarantees to allocate any committed memory from the heapIndex indicated by the memory type that the memory object was created with.

Valid Usage

- VUID-vkGetDeviceMemoryCommitment-memory-00690
  memory must have been created with a memory type that reports VK_MEMORY_PROPERTY_LAZILY_ALLOCATED_BIT
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetDeviceMemoryCommitment-device-parameter
device must be a valid VkDevice handle
- VUID-vkGetDeviceMemoryCommitment-memory-parameter
memory must be a valid VkDeviceMemory handle
- VUID-vkGetDeviceMemoryCommitment-pCommittedMemoryInBytes-parameter
pCommittedMemoryInBytes must be a valid pointer to a VkDeviceSize value
- VUID-vkGetDeviceMemoryCommitment-memory-parent
memory must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from device

11.2.11. Peer Memory Features

Peer memory is memory that is allocated for a given physical device and then bound to a resource and accessed by a different physical device, in a logical device that represents multiple physical devices. Some ways of reading and writing peer memory may not be supported by a device.

To determine how peer memory can be accessed, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_device_group
void vkGetDeviceGroupPeerMemoryFeaturesKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    uint32_t heapIndex,
    uint32_t localDeviceIndex,
    uint32_t remoteDeviceIndex,
    VkPeerMemoryFeatureFlags* pPeerMemoryFeatures);
```

- device is the logical device that owns the memory.
- heapIndex is the index of the memory heap from which the memory is allocated.
- localDeviceIndex is the device index of the physical device that performs the memory access.
- remoteDeviceIndex is the device index of the physical device that the memory is allocated for.
- pPeerMemoryFeatures is a pointer to a VkPeerMemoryFeatureFlags bitmask indicating which types of memory accesses are supported for the combination of heap, local, and remote devices.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkGetDeviceGroupPeerMemoryFeatures-heapIndex-00691
  heapIndex must be less than memoryHeapCount

- VUID-vkGetDeviceGroupPeerMemoryFeatures-localDeviceIndex-00692
  localDeviceIndex must be a valid device index

- VUID-vkGetDeviceGroupPeerMemoryFeatures-remoteDeviceIndex-00693
  remoteDeviceIndex must be a valid device index

- VUID-vkGetDeviceGroupPeerMemoryFeatures-localDeviceIndex-00694
  localDeviceIndex must not equal remoteDeviceIndex

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetDeviceGroupPeerMemoryFeatures-device-parameter
  device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- VUID-vkGetDeviceGroupPeerMemoryFeatures-pPeerMemoryFeatures-parameter
  pPeerMemoryFeatures must be a valid pointer to a VkPeerMemoryFeatureFlags value

Bits which may be set in the value returned for vkGetDeviceGroupPeerMemoryFeatures::pPeerMemoryFeatures, indicating the supported peer memory features, are:

```cpp
typedef enum VkPeerMemoryFeatureFlagBits {
    VK_PEER_MEMORY_FEATURE_COPY_SRC_BIT = 0x00000001,
    VK_PEER_MEMORY_FEATURE_COPY_DST_BIT = 0x00000002,
    VK_PEER_MEMORY_FEATURE_GENERIC_SRC_BIT = 0x00000004,
    VK_PEER_MEMORY_FEATURE_GENERIC_DST_BIT = 0x00000008,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_device_group
    VK_PEER_MEMORY_FEATURE_COPY_SRC_BIT_KHR = VK_PEER_MEMORY_FEATURE_COPY_SRC_BIT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_device_group
    VK_PEER_MEMORY_FEATURE_COPY_DST_BIT_KHR = VK_PEER_MEMORY_FEATURE_COPY_DST_BIT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_device_group
    VK_PEER_MEMORY_FEATURE_GENERIC_SRC_BIT_KHR = VK_PEER_MEMORY_FEATURE_GENERIC_SRC_BIT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_device_group
    VK_PEER_MEMORY_FEATURE_GENERIC_DST_BIT_KHR = VK_PEER_MEMORY_FEATURE_GENERIC_DST_BIT,
} VkPeerMemoryFeatureFlagBits;
```

or the equivalent

```cpp
// Provided by VK_KHR_device_group
typedef VkPeerMemoryFeatureFlagBits VkPeerMemoryFeatureFlagBitsKHR;
```
• **VK_PEER_MEMORY_FEATURE_COPY_SRC_BIT** specifies that the memory can be accessed as the source of any `vkCmdCopy*` command.

• **VK_PEER_MEMORY_FEATURE_COPY_DST_BIT** specifies that the memory can be accessed as the destination of any `vkCmdCopy*` command.

• **VK_PEER_MEMORY_FEATURE_GENERIC_SRC_BIT** specifies that the memory can be read as any memory access type.

• **VK_PEER_MEMORY_FEATURE_GENERIC_DST_BIT** specifies that the memory can be written as any memory access type. Shader atomics are considered to be writes.

**Note**

The peer memory features of a memory heap also apply to any accesses that may be performed during image layout transitions.

**VK_PEER_MEMORY_FEATURE_COPY_DST_BIT** must be supported for all host local heaps and for at least one device local heap.

If a device does not support a peer memory feature, it is still valid to use a resource that includes both local and peer memory bindings with the corresponding access type as long as only the local bindings are actually accessed. For example, an application doing split-frame rendering would use framebuffer attachments that include both local and peer memory bindings, but would scissor the rendering to only update local memory.

```c
typedef VkFlags VkPeerMemoryFeatureFlags;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_device_group
typedef VkPeerMemoryFeatureFlags VkPeerMemoryFeatureFlagsKHR;
```

**VkPeerMemoryFeatureFlags** is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more **VkPeerMemoryFeatureFlagBits**.

### 11.2.12. Opaque Capture Address Query

To query a 64-bit opaque capture address value from a memory object, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_buffer_device_address
uint64_t vkGetDeviceMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddressKHR(
    VkDevice device, const VkDeviceMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddressInfo* pInfo);
```

• **device** is the logical device that the memory object was allocated on.

• **pInfo** is a pointer to a **VkDeviceMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddressInfo** structure specifying the memory object to retrieve an address for.
The 64-bit return value is an opaque address representing the start of `pInfo->memory`.

If the memory object was allocated with a non-zero value of `VkMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddressAllocateInfo::opaqueCaptureAddress`, the return value must be the same address.

*Note*
The expected usage for these opaque addresses is only for trace capture/replay tools to store these addresses in a trace and subsequently specify them during replay.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkGetDeviceMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddress-None-03334**
  
  The `bufferDeviceAddress` feature must be enabled

- **VUID-vkGetDeviceMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddress-device-03335**
  
  If `device` was created with multiple physical devices, then the `bufferDeviceAddressMultiDevice` feature must be enabled

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkGetDeviceMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddress-device-parameter**
  
  `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- **VUID-vkGetDeviceMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddress-pInfo-parameter**
  
  `pInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkDeviceMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddressInfo` structure

The `VkDeviceMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddressInfo` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkDeviceMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddressInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkDeviceMemory memory;
} VkDeviceMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddressInfo;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_buffer_device_address
typedef VkDeviceMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddressInfo
VkDeviceMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddressInfoKHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• memory specifies the memory whose address is being queried.

Valid Usage

• VUID-VkDeviceMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddressInfo-memory-03336
  memory must have been allocated with VK_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_DEVICE_ADDRESS_BIT

Valid Usage (Implicit)

• VUID-VkDeviceMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddressInfo-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEVICE_MEMORY_OPAQUE_CAPTURE_ADDRESS_INFO

• VUID-VkDeviceMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddressInfo-pNext-pNext
  pNext must be NULL

• VUID-VkDeviceMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddressInfo-memory-parameter
  memory must be a valid VkDeviceMemory handle
Chapter 12. Resource Creation

Vulkan supports two primary resource types: buffers and images. Resources are views of memory with associated formatting and dimensionality. Buffers are essentially unformatted arrays of bytes whereas images contain format information, can be multidimensional and may have associated metadata.

12.1. Buffers

Buffers represent linear arrays of data which are used for various purposes by binding them to a graphics or compute pipeline via descriptor sets or via certain commands, or by directly specifying them as parameters to certain commands.

Buffers are represented by VkBuffer handles:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VK_DEFINE_NON_DISPATCHABLE_HANDLE(VkBuffer)
```

To create buffers, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkCreateBuffer(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkBufferCreateInfo* pCreateInfo,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator,
    VkBuffer* pBuffer);
```

- **device** is the logical device that creates the buffer object.
- **pCreateInfo** is a pointer to a VkBufferCreateInfo structure containing parameters affecting creation of the buffer.
- **pAllocator** controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
- **pBuffer** is a pointer to a VkBuffer handle in which the resulting buffer object is returned.

Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkCreateBuffer-flags-00911**
  If the flags member of pCreateInfo includes VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT, creating this VkBuffer must not cause the total required sparse memory for all currently valid sparse resources on the device to exceed VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::sparseAddressSpaceSize
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkCreateBuffer-device-parameter**
  
  `device` **must** be a valid `VkDevice` handle.

- **VUID-vkCreateBuffer-pCreateInfo-parameter**
  
  `pCreateInfo` **must** be a valid pointer to a valid `VkBufferCreateInfo` structure.

- **VUID-vkCreateBuffer-pAllocator-parameter**
  
  If `pAllocator` is not `NULL`, `pAllocator` **must** be a valid pointer to a valid `VkAllocationCallbacks` structure.

- **VUID-vkCreateBuffer-pBuffer-parameter**
  
  `pBuffer` **must** be a valid pointer to a `VkBuffer` handle.

Return Codes

**Success**

- **VK_SUCCESS**

**Failure**

- **VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY**
- **VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY**
- **VK_ERROR_INVALID_OPAQUE_CAPTURE_ADDRESS_KHR**

The `VkBufferCreateInfo` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkBufferCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType    sType;
    const void*        pNext;
    VkBufferCreateFlags flags;
    VkDeviceSize       size;
    VkBufferUsageFlags usage;
    VkSharingMode      sharingMode;
    uint32_t           queueFamilyIndexCount;
    const uint32_t*    pQueueFamilyIndices;
} VkBufferCreateInfo;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **flags** is a bitmask of `VkBufferCreateFlagBits` specifying additional parameters of the buffer.
- **size** is the size in bytes of the buffer to be created.
- **usage** is a bitmask of `VkBufferUsageFlagBits` specifying allowed usages of the buffer.
• `sharingMode` is a `VkSharingMode` value specifying the sharing mode of the buffer when it will be accessed by multiple queue families.

• `queueFamilyIndexCount` is the number of entries in the `pQueueFamilyIndices` array.

• `pQueueFamilyIndices` is a pointer to an array of queue families that will access this buffer. It is ignored if `sharingMode` is not `VK_SHARING_MODE_CONCURRENT`. 
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkBufferCreateInfo-size-00912**
  
  ```
  size must be greater than 0
  ```

- **VUID-VkBufferCreateInfo-sharingMode-00913**
  
  If `sharingMode` is `VK_SHARING_MODE_CONCURRENT`, `pQueueFamilyIndices` must be a valid pointer to an array of `queueFamilyIndexCount` `uint32_t` values

- **VUID-VkBufferCreateInfo-sharingMode-00914**
  
  If `sharingMode` is `VK_SHARING_MODE_CONCURRENT`, `queueFamilyIndexCount` must be greater than 1

- **VUID-VkBufferCreateInfo-sharingMode-00919**
  
  If `sharingMode` is `VK_SHARING_MODE_CONCURRENT`, each element of `pQueueFamilyIndices` must be unique and must be less than `pQueueFamilyPropertyCount` returned by either `vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties` or `vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties2` for the `physicalDevice` that was used to create device

- **VUID-VkBufferCreateInfo-flags-00915**
  
  If the `sparse bindings` feature is not enabled, `flags` must not contain `VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT`

- **VUID-VkBufferCreateInfo-flags-00916**
  
  If the `sparse buffer residency` feature is not enabled, `flags` must not contain `VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT`

- **VUID-VkBufferCreateInfo-flags-00917**
  
  If the `sparse aliased residency` feature is not enabled, `flags` must not contain `VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_ALIASED_BIT`

- **VUID-VkBufferCreateInfo-flags-00918**
  
  If `flags` contains `VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT` or `VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_ALIASED_BIT`, it must also contain `VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT`

- **VUID-VkBufferCreateInfo-pNext-00920**
  
  If the `pNext` chain includes a `VkExternalMemoryBufferCreateInfo` structure, its `handleTypes` member must only contain bits that are also in `VkExternalBufferProperties::externalMemoryProperties.compatibleHandleTypes`, as returned by `vkGetPhysicalDeviceExternalBufferProperties` with `pExternalBufferInfo->handleType` equal to any one of the handle types specified in `VkExternalMemoryBufferCreateInfo::handleTypes`

- **VUID-VkBufferCreateInfo-opaqueCaptureAddress-03337**
  
  If `VkBufferOpaqueCaptureAddressCreateInfo::opaqueCaptureAddress` is not zero, `flags` must include `VK_BUFFER_CREATE_DEVICE_ADDRESS_CAPTURE_REPLAY_BIT`

- **VUID-VkBufferCreateInfo-flags-03338**
  
  If `flags` includes `VK_BUFFER_CREATE_DEVICE_ADDRESS_CAPTURE_REPLAY_BIT`, the `bufferDeviceAddressCaptureReplay` or `VkPhysicalDeviceBufferDeviceAddressFeaturesEXT::bufferDeviceAddressCaptureReplay` feature must be enabled

- **VUID-VkBufferCreateInfo-usage-04813**
If `usage` includes `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODE_SRC_BIT_KHR`, `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODE_DST_BIT_KHR`, then the `pNext` chain must include a valid `VkVideoProfilesKHR` structure which includes at least one `VkVideoProfileKHR` with a decode codec-operation

- VUID-VkBufferCreateInfo-usage-04814

If `usage` includes `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_SRC_BIT_KHR`, `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_DST_BIT_KHR`, then the `pNext` chain must include a valid `VkVideoProfilesKHR` structure which includes at least one `VkVideoProfileKHR` with a encode codec-operation

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkBufferCreateInfo-sType-sType
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BUFFER_CREATE_INFO`

- VUID-VkBufferCreateInfo-pNext-pNext
  Each `pNext` member of any structure (including this one) in the `pNext` chain must be either `NULL` or a pointer to a valid instance of `VkBufferOpaqueCaptureAddressCreateInfo`, `VkExternalMemoryBufferCreateInfo`, `VkVideoProfileKHR`, or `VkVideoProfilesKHR`

- VUID-VkBufferCreateInfo-sType-unique
  The `sType` value of each struct in the `pNext` chain must be unique

- VUID-VkBufferCreateInfo-flags-parameter
  `flags` must be a valid combination of `VkBufferCreateFlagBits` values

- VUID-VkBufferCreateInfo-usage-parameter
  `usage` must be a valid combination of `VkBufferUsageFlagBits` values

- VUID-VkBufferCreateInfo-usage-requiredbitmask
  `usage` must not be `0`

- VUID-VkBufferCreateInfo-sharingMode-parameter
  `sharingMode` must be a valid `VkSharingMode` value

Bits which can be set in `VkBufferCreateInfo::usage`, specifying usage behavior of a buffer, are:
typedef enum VkBufferUsageFlagBits {
    VK_BUFFER_USAGE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT = 0x00000001,
    VK_BUFFER_USAGE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT = 0x00000002,
    VK_BUFFER_USAGE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT = 0x00000004,
    VK_BUFFER_USAGE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT = 0x00000008,
    VK_BUFFER_USAGE_UNIFORM_BUFFER_BIT = 0x00000010,
    VK_BUFFER_USAGE_STORAGE_BUFFER_BIT = 0x00000020,
    VK_BUFFER_USAGE_INDEX_BUFFER_BIT = 0x00000040,
    VK_BUFFER_USAGE_VERTEX_BUFFER_BIT = 0x00000080,
    VK_BUFFER_USAGE_INDIRECT_BUFFER_BIT = 0x00000100,
    VK_BUFFER_USAGE_SHADER_DEVICE_ADDRESS_BIT = 0x00020000,
    #ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_decode_queue
    VK_BUFFER_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODE_SRC_BIT_KHR = 0x00002000,
    #endif
    #ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_decode_queue
    VK_BUFFER_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODE_DST_BIT_KHR = 0x00004000,
    #endif
    // Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
    VK_BUFFER_USAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_INPUT_READ_ONLY_BIT_KHR = 0x00080000,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
    VK_BUFFER_USAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_STORAGE_BIT_KHR = 0x00100000,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline
    VK_BUFFER_USAGE_SHADER_BINDING_TABLE_BIT_KHR = 0x00000400,
    #ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_encode_queue
    VK_BUFFER_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_DST_BIT_KHR = 0x00008000,
    #endif
    #ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_encode_queue
    VK_BUFFER_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_SRC_BIT_KHR = 0x00010000,
    #endif
    // Provided by VK_KHR_buffer_device_address
    VK_BUFFER_USAGE_SHADER_DEVICE_ADDRESS_BIT_KHR = VK_BUFFER_USAGE_SHADER_DEVICE_ADDRESS_BIT,
} VkBufferUsageFlagBits;

• **VK_BUFFER_USAGE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT** specifies that the buffer can be used as the source of a transfer command (see the definition of **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TRANSFER_BIT**).

• **VK_BUFFER_USAGE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT** specifies that the buffer can be used as the destination of a transfer command.

• **VK_BUFFER_USAGE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT** specifies that the buffer can be used to create a VkBufferView suitable for occupying a VkDescriptorSet slot of type VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER.

• **VK_BUFFER_USAGE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT** specifies that the buffer can be used to create a VkBufferView suitable for occupying a VkDescriptorSet slot of type
VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER.

- **VK_BUFFER_USAGE_UNIFORM_BUFFER_BIT** specifies that the buffer can be used in a VkDescriptorBufferInfo suitable for occupying a VkDescriptorSet slot either of type VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER or VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER_DYNAMIC.

- **VK_BUFFER_USAGE_STORAGE_BUFFER_BIT** specifies that the buffer can be used in a VkDescriptorBufferInfo suitable for occupying a VkDescriptorSet slot either of type VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER or VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER_DYNAMIC.

- **VK_BUFFER_USAGE_INDEX_BUFFER_BIT** specifies that the buffer is suitable for passing as the buffer parameter to vkCmdBindIndexBuffer.

- **VK_BUFFER_USAGE_VERTEX_BUFFER_BIT** specifies that the buffer is suitable for passing as an element of the pBuffers array to vkCmdBindVertexBuffers.

- **VK_BUFFER_USAGE_INDIRECT_BUFFER_BIT** specifies that the buffer is suitable for passing as the buffer parameter to vkCmdDrawIndirect, vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect, or vkCmdDispatchIndirect.

- **VK_BUFFER_USAGE_SHADER_BINDING_TABLE_BIT_KHR** specifies that the buffer is suitable for use as a Shader Binding Table.

- **VK_BUFFER_USAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_INPUT_READ_ONLY_BIT_KHR** specifies that the buffer is suitable for use as a read-only input to an acceleration structure build.

- **VK_BUFFER_USAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_STORAGE_BIT_KHR** specifies that the buffer is suitable for storage space for a VkAccelerationStructureKHR.

- **VK_BUFFER_USAGE_SHADER_DEVICE_ADDRESS_BIT** specifies that the buffer can be used to retrieve a buffer device address via vkGetBufferDeviceAddress and use that address to access the buffer's memory from a shader.

- **VK_BUFFER_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODE_SRC_BIT_KHR** specifies that the buffer can be used as the source bitstream buffer in a video decode operation.

- **VK_BUFFER_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODE_DST_BIT_KHR** specifies that the buffer can be used as the destination status buffer in a video decode operation.

- **VK_BUFFER_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_DST_BIT_KHR** specifies that the buffer can be used as the destination bitstream buffer in a video encode operation.

- **VK_BUFFER_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_DST_BIT_KHR** specifies that the buffer can be used as the destination status buffer in a video encode operation.

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkBufferUsageFlags;
```

VkBufferUsageFlags is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more VkBufferUsageFlagBits.

Bits which can be set in VkBufferCreateInfo::flags, specifying additional parameters of a buffer, are:
\begin{verbatim}
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkBufferCreateFlagBits {
    VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT = 0x00000001,
    VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT = 0x00000002,
    VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_ALIASED_BIT = 0x00000004,
    VK_BUFFER_CREATE_DEVICE_ADDRESS_CAPTURE_REPLAY_BIT = 0x00000010,
    VK_BUFFER_CREATE_DEVICE_ADDRESS_CAPTURE_REPLAY_BIT_KHR =
    VK_BUFFER_CREATE_DEVICE_ADDRESS_CAPTURE_REPLAY_BIT,
} VkBufferCreateFlagBits;
\end{verbatim}

- \textbf{VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT} specifies that the buffer will be backed using sparse memory binding.

- \textbf{VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT} specifies that the buffer can be partially backed using sparse memory binding. Buffers created with this flag must also be created with the \textbf{VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT} flag.

- \textbf{VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_ALIASED_BIT} specifies that the buffer will be backed using sparse memory binding with memory ranges that might also simultaneously be backing another buffer (or another portion of the same buffer). Buffers created with this flag must also be created with the \textbf{VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT} flag.

- \textbf{VK_BUFFER_CREATE_DEVICE_ADDRESS_CAPTURE_REPLAY_BIT} specifies that the buffer’s address can be saved and reused on a subsequent run (e.g. for trace capture and replay), see \texttt{VkBufferOpaqueCaptureAddressCreateInfo} for more detail.

See \texttt{Sparse Resource Features} and \texttt{Physical Device Features} for details of the sparse memory features supported on a device.

\begin{verbatim}
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkBufferCreateFlags;
\end{verbatim}

\texttt{VkBufferCreateFlags} is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more \texttt{VkBufferCreateFlagBits}.

To define a set of external memory handle types that may be used as backing store for a buffer, add a \texttt{VkExternalMemoryBufferCreateInfo} structure to the \texttt{pNext} chain of the \texttt{VkBufferCreateInfo} structure. The \texttt{VkExternalMemoryBufferCreateInfo} structure is defined as:

\begin{verbatim}
typedef struct VkExternalMemoryBufferCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlags handleTypes;
} VkExternalMemoryBufferCreateInfo;
\end{verbatim}

or the equivalent
typedef VkExternalMemoryBufferCreateInfo VkExternalMemoryBufferCreateInfoKHR;

Note

A `VkExternalMemoryBufferCreateInfo` structure with a non-zero `handleTypes` field must be included in the creation parameters for a buffer that will be bound to memory that is either exported or imported.

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `handleTypes` is zero, or a bitmask of `VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits` specifying one or more external memory handle types.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkExternalMemoryBufferCreateInfo-sType-sType
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_BUFFER_CREATE_INFO`

- VUID-VkExternalMemoryBufferCreateInfo-handleTypes-parameter
  `handleTypes` must be a valid combination of `VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits` values

To request a specific device address for a buffer, add a `VkBufferOpaqueCaptureAddressCreateInfo` structure to the `pNext` chain of the `VkBufferCreateInfo` structure. The `VkBufferOpaqueCaptureAddressCreateInfo` structure is defined as:

typedef struct VkBufferOpaqueCaptureAddressCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    uint64_t opaqueCaptureAddress;
} VkBufferOpaqueCaptureAddressCreateInfo;

or the equivalent

// Provided by VK_KHR_buffer_device_address
typedef VkBufferOpaqueCaptureAddressCreateInfo VkBufferOpaqueCaptureAddressCreateInfoKHR;

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `opaqueCaptureAddress` is the opaque capture address requested for the buffer.

If `opaqueCaptureAddress` is zero, no specific address is requested.
If `opaqueCaptureAddress` is not zero, then it **should** be an address retrieved from `vkGetBufferOpaqueCaptureAddress` for an identically created buffer on the same implementation.

If this structure is not present, it is as if `opaqueCaptureAddress` is zero.

Apps **should** avoid creating buffers with app-provided addresses and implementation-provided addresses in the same process, to reduce the likelihood of `VK_ERROR_INVALID_OPAQUE_CAPTURE_ADDRESS` errors.

---

**Note**

The expected usage for this is that a trace capture/replay tool will add the `VK_BUFFER_CREATE_DEVICE_ADDRESS_CAPTURE_REPLAY_BIT` flag to all buffers that use `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_SHADER_DEVICE_ADDRESS_BIT`, and during capture will save the queried opaque device addresses in the trace. During replay, the buffers will be created specifying the original address so any address values stored in the trace data will remain valid.

Implementations are expected to separate such buffers in the GPU address space so normal allocations will avoid using these addresses. Apps/tools should avoid mixing app-provided and implementation-provided addresses for buffers created with `VK_BUFFER_CREATE_DEVICE_ADDRESS_CAPTURE_REPLAY_BIT`, to avoid address space allocation conflicts.

---

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- `VUID-VkBufferOpaqueCaptureAddressCreateInfo-sType-sType`
  
  `sType` **must** be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BUFFER_OPAQUE_CAPTURE_ADDRESS_CREATE_INFO`

To destroy a buffer, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkDestroyBuffer(
    VkDevice device,
    VkBuffer buffer,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator);
```

- `device` is the logical device that destroys the buffer.
- `buffer` is the buffer to destroy.
- `pAllocator` controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
### Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkDestroyBuffer-buffer-00922**
  All submitted commands that refer to `buffer`, either directly or via a `VkBufferView`, **must** have completed execution.

- **VUID-vkDestroyBuffer-buffer-00923**
  If `VkAllocationCallbacks` were provided when `buffer` was created, a compatible set of callbacks **must** be provided here.

- **VUID-vkDestroyBuffer-buffer-00924**
  If no `VkAllocationCallbacks` were provided when `buffer` was created, `pAllocator` **must** be `NULL`.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkDestroyBuffer-device-parameter**
  `device` **must** be a valid `VkDevice` handle.

- **VUID-vkDestroyBuffer-buffer-parameter**
  If `buffer` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, `buffer` **must** be a valid `VkBuffer` handle.

- **VUID-vkDestroyBuffer-pAllocator-parameter**
  If `pAllocator` is not `NULL`, `pAllocator` **must** be a valid pointer to a valid `VkAllocationCallbacks` structure.

- **VUID-vkDestroyBuffer-buffer-parent**
  If `buffer` is a valid handle, it **must** have been created, allocated, or retrieved from `device`.

### Host Synchronization

- Host access to `buffer` **must** be externally synchronized.

## 12.2. Buffer Views

A **buffer view** represents a contiguous range of a buffer and a specific format to be used to interpret the data. Buffer views are used to enable shaders to access buffer contents interpreted as formatted data. In order to create a valid buffer view, the buffer **must** have been created with at least one of the following usage flags:

- `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT`
- `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT`

Buffer views are represented by `VkBufferView` handles:
To create a buffer view, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkCreateBufferView(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkBufferViewCreateInfo* pCreateInfo,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator,
    VkBufferView* pView);
```

- `device` is the logical device that creates the buffer view.
- `pCreateInfo` is a pointer to a `VkBufferViewCreateInfo` structure containing parameters to be used to create the buffer view.
- `pAllocator` controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
- `pView` is a pointer to a `VkBufferView` handle in which the resulting buffer view object is returned.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- `VUID-vkCreateBufferView-device-parameter`  
  `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- `VUID-vkCreateBufferView-pCreateInfo-parameter`  
  `pCreateInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkBufferViewCreateInfo` structure

- `VUID-vkCreateBufferView-pAllocator-parameter`  
  If `pAllocator` is not `NULL`, `pAllocator` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkAllocationCallbacks` structure

- `VUID-vkCreateBufferView-pView-parameter`  
  `pView` must be a valid pointer to a `VkBufferView` handle

### Return Codes

**Success**

- `VK_SUCCESS`

**Failure**

- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY`

The `VkBufferViewCreateInfo` structure is defined as:
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0

typedef struct VkBufferViewCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkBufferViewCreateFlags flags;
    VkBuffer buffer;
    VkFormat format;
    VkDeviceSize offset;
    VkDeviceSize range;
} VkBufferViewCreateInfo;

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **flags** is reserved for future use.
- **buffer** is a VkBuffer on which the view will be created.
- **format** is a VkFormat describing the format of the data elements in the buffer.
- **offset** is an offset in bytes from the base address of the buffer. Accesses to the buffer view from shaders use addressing that is relative to this starting offset.
- **range** is a size in bytes of the buffer view. If **range** is equal to VK_WHOLE_SIZE, the range from **offset** to the end of the buffer is used. If VK_WHOLE_SIZE is used and the remaining size of the buffer is not a multiple of the texel block size of **format**, the nearest smaller multiple is used.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkBufferViewCreateInfo-offset-00925**
  
  `offset` **must** be less than the size of `buffer`.

- **VUID-VkBufferViewCreateInfo-offset-00926**
  
  `offset` **must** be a multiple of `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::minTexelBufferOffsetAlignment`.

- **VUID-VkBufferViewCreateInfo-range-00928**
  
  If `range` is not equal to `VK_WHOLE_SIZE`, `range` **must** be greater than 0.

- **VUID-VkBufferViewCreateInfo-range-00929**
  
  If `range` is not equal to `VK_WHOLE_SIZE`, `range` **must** be an integer multiple of the texel block size of `format`.

- **VUID-VkBufferViewCreateInfo-range-00930**
  
  If `range` is not equal to `VK_WHOLE_SIZE`, the number of texel buffer elements given by `((\text{range} / (\text{texel block size})) \times (\text{texels per block}))` where texel block size and texels per block are as defined in the Compatible Formats table for `format`, **must** be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxTexelBufferElements`.

- **VUID-VkBufferViewCreateInfo-offset-00931**
  
  If `range` is not equal to `VK_WHOLE_SIZE`, the sum of `offset` and `range` **must** be less than or equal to the size of `buffer`.

- **VUID-VkBufferViewCreateInfo-range-00932**
  
  If `range` is equal to `VK_WHOLE_SIZE`, the number of texel buffer elements given by `((\text{size} - \text{offset}) / (\text{texel block size})) \times (\text{texels per block})` where `size` is the size of `buffer`, and texel block size and texels per block are as defined in the Compatible Formats table for `format`, **must** be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxTexelBufferElements`.

- **VUID-VkBufferViewCreateInfo-buffer-00932**
  
  `buffer` **must** have been created with a `usage` value containing at least one of `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT` or `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT`.

- **VUID-VkBufferViewCreateInfo-buffer-00933**
  
  If `buffer` was created with `usage` containing `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT`, `format` **must** be supported for uniform texel buffers, as specified by the `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT` flag in `VkFormatProperties::bufferFeatures` returned by `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties`.

- **VUID-VkBufferViewCreateInfo-buffer-00934**
  
  If `buffer` was created with `usage` containing `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT`, `format` **must** be supported for storage texel buffers, as specified by the `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT` flag in `VkFormatProperties::bufferFeatures` returned by `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties`.

- **VUID-VkBufferViewCreateInfo-buffer-00935**
  
  If `buffer` is non-sparse then it **must** be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkBufferViewCreateInfo-sType-sType**
  
  *sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BUFFER_VIEW_CREATE_INFO*

- **VUID-VkBufferViewCreateInfo-pNext-pNext**
  
  *pNext must be NULL*

- **VUID-VkBufferViewCreateInfo-flags-zerobitmask**
  
  *flags must be 0*

- **VUID-VkBufferViewCreateInfo-buffer-parameter**
  
  *buffer must be a valid VkBuffer handle*

- **VUID-VkBufferViewCreateInfo-format-parameter**
  
  *format must be a valid VkFormat value*

---

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkBufferViewCreateFlags;
```

\textit{VkBufferViewCreateFlags} is a bitmask type for setting a mask, but is currently reserved for future use.

To destroy a buffer view, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkDestroyBufferView(
    VkDevice device,
    VkBufferView bufferView,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator);
```

- **device** is the logical device that destroys the buffer view.
- **bufferView** is the buffer view to destroy.
- **pAllocator** controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.

---

Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkDestroyBufferView-bufferView-00936**
  
  *All submitted commands that refer to bufferView must have completed execution*

- **VUID-vkDestroyBufferView-bufferView-00937**
  
  *If VkAllocationCallbacks were provided when bufferView was created, a compatible set of callbacks must be provided here*

- **VUID-vkDestroyBufferView-bufferView-00938**
  
  *If no VkAllocationCallbacks were provided when bufferView was created, pAllocator must be NULL*
12.3. Images

Images represent multidimensional - up to 3 - arrays of data which can be used for various purposes (e.g. attachments, textures), by binding them to a graphics or compute pipeline via descriptor sets, or by directly specifying them as parameters to certain commands.

Images are represented by VkImage handles:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VK_DEFINE_NON_DISPATCHABLE_HANDLE(VkImage)
```

To create images, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkCreateImage(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkImageCreateInfo* pCreateInfo,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator,
    VkImage* pImage);
```

- **device** is the logical device that creates the image.
- **pCreateInfo** is a pointer to a VkImageCreateInfo structure containing parameters to be used to create the image.
- **pAllocator** controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
- **pImage** is a pointer to a VkImage handle in which the resulting image object is returned.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkCreateImage-flags-00939
  If the flags member of pCreateInfo includes VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT, creating this VkImage must not cause the total required sparse memory for all currently valid sparse resources on the device to exceed VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::sparseAddressSpaceSize.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCreateImage-device-parameter
device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- VUID-vkCreateImage-pCreateInfo-parameter
  pCreateInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid VkImageCreateInfo structure

- VUID-vkCreateImage-pAllocator-parameter
  If pAllocator is not NULL, pAllocator must be a valid pointer to a valid VkAllocationCallbacks structure

- VUID-vkCreateImage-pImage-parameter
  pImage must be a valid pointer to a VkImage handle

Return Codes

Success
  - VK_SUCCESS

Failure
  - VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
  - VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY

The VkImageCreateInfo structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkImageCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkImageCreateFlags flags;
    VkImageType imageType;
    VkFormat format;
    VkExtent3D extent;
    uint32_t mipLevels;
    uint32_t arrayLayers;
    VkSampleCountFlagBits samples;
    VkImageTiling tiling;
    VkImageUsageFlags usage;
    VkSharingMode sharingMode;
    uint32_t queueFamilyIndexCount;
    const uint32_t* pQueueFamilyIndices;
    VkImageLayout initialLayout;
} VkImageCreateInfo;

• **sType** is the type of this structure.

• **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.

• **flags** is a bitmask of **VkImageCreateFlagBits** describing additional parameters of the image.

• **imageType** is a **VkImageType** value specifying the basic dimensionality of the image. Layers in array textures do not count as a dimension for the purposes of the image type.

• **format** is a **VkFormat** describing the format and type of the texel blocks that will be contained in the image.

• **extent** is a **VkExtent3D** describing the number of data elements in each dimension of the base level.

• **mipLevels** describes the number of levels of detail available for minified sampling of the image.

• **arrayLayers** is the number of layers in the image.

• **samples** is a **VkSampleCountFlagBits** value specifying the number of **samples per texel**.

• **tiling** is a **VkImageTiling** value specifying the tiling arrangement of the texel blocks in memory.

• **usage** is a bitmask of **VkImageUsageFlagBits** describing the intended usage of the image.

• **sharingMode** is a **VkSharingMode** value specifying the sharing mode of the image when it will be accessed by multiple queue families.

• **queueFamilyIndexCount** is the number of entries in the **pQueueFamilyIndices** array.

• **pQueueFamilyIndices** is a pointer to an array of queue families that will access this image. It is ignored if **sharingMode** is not **VK_SHARING_MODE_CONCURRENT**.

• **initialLayout** is a **VkImageLayout** value specifying the initial **VkImageLayout** of all image subresources of the image. See Image Layouts.

Images created with **tiling** equal to **VK_IMAGE_TILING_LINEAR** have further restrictions on their limits and capabilities compared to images created with **tiling** equal to **VK_IMAGE_TILING_OPTIMAL**. Creation
of images with tiling \texttt{VK_IMAGE_TILING_LINEAR} may not be supported unless other parameters meet all of the constraints:

- \texttt{imageType} is \texttt{VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D}
- \texttt{format} is not a depth/stencil format
- \texttt{mipLevels} is 1
- \texttt{arrayLayers} is 1
- \texttt{samples} is \texttt{VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT}
- \texttt{usage} only includes \texttt{VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT} and/or \texttt{VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT}

Images created with a \texttt{format} from one of those listed in \texttt{Formats requiring sampler Y'CbCr conversion for VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT image views} have further restrictions on their limits and capabilities compared to images created with other formats. Creation of images with a format requiring \texttt{Y'CbCr conversion} may not be supported unless other parameters meet all of the constraints:

- \texttt{imageType} is \texttt{VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D}
- \texttt{mipLevels} is 1
- \texttt{arrayLayers} is 1
- \texttt{samples} is \texttt{VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT}

Implementations may support additional limits and capabilities beyond those listed above.

To determine the set of valid \texttt{usage} bits for a given format, call \texttt{vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties}.

If the size of the resultant image would exceed \texttt{maxResourceSize}, then \texttt{vkCreateImage} must fail and return \texttt{VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY}. This failure may occur even when all image creation parameters satisfy their valid usage requirements.

\begin{center}
\textbf{Note}
\end{center}

For images created without \texttt{VK_IMAGE_CREATE_EXTENDED_USAGE_BIT} a \texttt{usage} bit is valid if it is supported for the format the image is created with.

For images created with \texttt{VK_IMAGE_CREATE_EXTENDED_USAGE_BIT} a \texttt{usage} bit is valid if it is supported for at least one of the formats a \texttt{VkImageView} created from the image can have (see \texttt{Image Views} for more detail).
Valid values for some image creation parameters are limited by a numerical upper bound or by inclusion in a bitset. For example, `VkImageCreateInfo::arrayLayers` is limited by `imageCreateMaxArrayLayers`, defined below; and `VkImageCreateInfo::samples` is limited by `imageCreateSampleCounts`, also defined below.

Several limiting values are defined below, as well as assisting values from which the limiting values are derived. The limiting values are referenced by the relevant valid usage statements of `VkImageCreateInfo`.

- Let `VkBool32 imageCreateMaybeLinear` indicate if the resultant image may be linear. (The definition below is trivial because certain extensions are disabled in this build of the specification).
  - If `tiling` is `VK_IMAGE_TILING_LINEAR`, then `imageCreateMaybeLinear` is `VK_TRUE`.
  - If `tiling` is `VK_IMAGE_TILING_OPTIMAL`, then `imageCreateMaybeLinear` is `VK_FALSE`.

- Let `VkFormatFeatureFlags imageCreateFormatFeatures` be the set of valid format features available during image creation.
  - If `tiling` is `VK_IMAGE_TILING_LINEAR`, then `imageCreateFormatFeatures` is the value of `VkFormatProperties::linearTilingFeatures` found by calling `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties` with parameter `format` equal to `VkImageCreateInfo::format`.
  - If `tiling` is `VK_IMAGE_TILING_OPTIMAL`, then `imageCreateFormatFeatures` is the value of `VkFormatProperties::optimalTilingFeatures` found by calling `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties` with parameter `format` equal to `VkImageCreateInfo::format`.

- Let `VkImageFormatProperties2 imageCreateImageFormatPropertiesList[]` be the list of structures obtained by calling `vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties2`, possibly multiple times, as follows:
  - The parameters `VkPhysicalDeviceImageFormatInfo2::format, imageType, tiling, usage`, and `flags must` be equal to those in `VkImageCreateInfo`.
  - If `VkImageCreateInfo::pNext` contains a `VkExternalMemoryImageCreateInfo` structure whose `handleTypes` is not `0`, then `VkPhysicalDeviceImageFormatInfo2::pNext must` contain a `VkPhysicalDeviceExternalImageFormatInfo` structure whose `handleType` is not `0`; and `vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties2 must` be called for each handle type in `VkExternalMemoryImageCreateInfo::handleTypes`, successively setting `VkPhysicalDeviceExternalImageFormatInfo::handleType` on each call.
  - If `VkImageCreateInfo::pNext` contains no `VkExternalMemoryImageCreateInfo` structure, or contains a structure whose `handleTypes` is `0`, then `VkPhysicalDeviceImageFormatInfo2::pNext must` either contain no `VkPhysicalDeviceExternalImageFormatInfo` structure, or contain a structure whose `handleType` is `0`.
  - If any call to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties2` returns an error, then `imageCreateImageFormatPropertiesList` is defined to be the empty list.
• Let `uint32_t imageCreateMaxMipLevels` be the minimum value of `VkImageFormatProperties::maxMipLevels` in `imageCreateImageFormatPropertiesList`. The value is undefined if `imageCreateImageFormatPropertiesList` is empty.

• Let `uint32_t imageCreateMaxArrayLayers` be the minimum value of `VkImageFormatProperties::maxArrayLayers` in `imageCreateImageFormatPropertiesList`. The value is undefined if `imageCreateImageFormatPropertiesList` is empty.

• Let `VkExtent3D imageCreateMaxExtent` be the component-wise minimum over all `VkImageFormatProperties::maxExtent` values in `imageCreateImageFormatPropertiesList`. The value is undefined if `imageCreateImageFormatPropertiesList` is empty.

• Let `VkSampleCountFlags imageCreateSampleCounts` be the intersection of each `VkImageFormatProperties::sampleCounts` in `imageCreateImageFormatPropertiesList`. The value is undefined if `imageCreateImageFormatPropertiesList` is empty.
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-imageCreateMaxMipLevels-02251
  Each of the following values (as described in *Image Creation Limits*) **must** not be undefined: `imageCreateMaxMipLevels`, `imageCreateMaxArrayLayers`, `imageCreateMaxExtent`, and `imageCreateSampleCounts`.

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-sharingMode-00941
  If `sharingMode` is `VK_SHARING_MODE_CONCURRENT`, `pQueueFamilyIndices` **must** be a valid pointer to an array of `queueFamilyIndexCount` `uint32_t` values.

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-sharingMode-00942
  If `sharingMode` is `VK_SHARING_MODE_CONCURRENT`, `queueFamilyIndexCount` **must** be greater than 1.

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-sharingMode-01420
  If `sharingMode` is `VK_SHARING_MODE_CONCURRENT`, each element of `pQueueFamilyIndices` **must** be unique and **must** be less than `pQueueFamilyPropertyCount` returned by either `vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties` or `vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties2` for the `physicalDevice` that was used to create device.

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-format-00943
  `format` **must** not be `VK_FORMAT_UNDEFINED`.

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-extent-00944
  `extent.width` **must** be greater than 0.

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-extent-00945
  `extent.height` **must** be greater than 0.

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-extent-00946
  `extent.depth` **must** be greater than 0.

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-mipLevels-00947
  `mipLevels` **must** be greater than 0.

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-arrayLayers-00948
  `arrayLayers` **must** be greater than 0.

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-flags-00949
  If `flags` contains `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_CUBE_COMPATIBLE_BIT`, `imageType` **must** be `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D`.

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-flags-00950
  If `flags` contains `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_2D_ARRAY_COMPATIBLE_BIT`, `imageType` **must** be `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D`.

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-extent-02252
  `extent.width` **must** be less than or equal to `imageCreateMaxExtent.width` (as defined in *Image Creation Limits*).

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-extent-02253
  `extent.height` **must** be less than or equal to `imageCreateMaxExtent.height` (as defined in *Image Creation Limits*).
extent.depth must be less than or equal to imageCreateMaxExtent.depth (as defined in Image Creation Limits)

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-imageType-00954
  If imageType is VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D and flags contains VK_IMAGE_CREATE_CUBE_COMPATIBLE_BIT, extent.width and extent.height must be equal and arrayLayers must be greater than or equal to 6

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-imageType-00956
  If imageType is VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D, both extent.height and extent.depth must be 1

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-imageType-00957
  If imageType is VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D, extent.depth must be 1

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-mipLevels-00958
  mipLevels must be less than or equal to the number of levels in the complete mipmap chain based on extent.width, extent.height, and extent.depth

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-mipLevels-02255
  mipLevels must be less than or equal to imageCreateMaxMipLevels (as defined in Image Creation Limits)

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-arrayLayers-02256
  arrayLayers must be less than or equal to imageCreateMaxArrayLayers (as defined in Image Creation Limits)

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-imageType-00961
  If imageType is VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D, arrayLayers must be 1

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-samples-02257
  If samples is not VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT, then imageType must be VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D, flags must not contain VK_IMAGE_CREATE_CUBE_COMPATIBLE_BIT, mipLevels must be equal to 1, and imageCreateMaybeLinear (as defined in Image Creation Limits) must be VK_FALSE,

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-usage-00963
  If usage includes VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSIENT_ATTACHMENT_BIT, then bits other than VK_IMAGE_USAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT, VK_IMAGE_USAGE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT, and VK_IMAGE_USAGE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT_BIT must not be set

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-usage-00964
  If usage includes VK_IMAGE_USAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT, VK_IMAGE_USAGE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT, VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSIENT_ATTACHMENT_BIT, or VK_IMAGE_USAGE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT_BIT, extent.width must be less than or equal to VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxFramebufferWidth

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-usage-00965
  If usage includes VK_IMAGE_USAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT, VK_IMAGE_USAGE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT, VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSIENT_ATTACHMENT_BIT, or VK_IMAGE_USAGE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT_BIT, extent.height must be less than or equal to VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxFramebufferHeight

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-usage-00966
  If usage includes VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSIENT_ATTACHMENT_BIT, usage must also contain at least one of VK_IMAGE_USAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT, VK_IMAGE_USAGE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT, or VK_IMAGE_USAGE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT_BIT
samples must be a bit value that is set in imageCreateSampleCounts (as defined in Image Creation Limits)

If the multisampled storage images feature is not enabled, and usage contains VK_IMAGE_USAGE_STORAGE_BIT, samples must be VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT

If the sparse bindings feature is not enabled, flags must not contain VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT

If the sparse aliased residency feature is not enabled, flags must not contain VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_ALIASED_BIT

If tiling is VK_IMAGE_TILING_LINEAR, flags must not contain VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT

If imageType is VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D, flags must not contain VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT

If the sparse residency for 2D images feature is not enabled, and imageType is VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D, flags must not contain VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT

If the sparse residency for 3D images feature is not enabled, and imageType is VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D, flags must not contain VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT

If the sparse residency for images with 2 samples feature is not enabled, imageType is VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D, and samples is VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_2_BIT, flags must not contain VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT

If the sparse residency for images with 4 samples feature is not enabled, imageType is VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D, and samples is VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_4_BIT, flags must not contain VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT

If the sparse residency for images with 8 samples feature is not enabled, imageType is VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D, and samples is VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_8_BIT, flags must not contain VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT

If the sparse residency for images with 16 samples feature is not enabled, imageType is VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D, and samples is VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_16_BIT, flags must not contain VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT

If flags contains VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT or VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_ALIASED_BIT, it must also contain VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT.

VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-flags-00969
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-flags-01924
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-tiling-04121
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-imageType-00970
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-imageType-00971
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-imageType-00972
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-imageType-00973
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-imageType-00974
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-imageType-00975
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-imageType-00976
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-flags-00968
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-usage-00968
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-flags-00969
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-flags-01924
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-tiling-04121
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-imageType-00970
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-imageType-00971
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-imageType-00972
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-imageType-00973
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-imageType-00974
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-imageType-00975
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-imageType-00976
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-flags-00967
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-flags-00968
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-usage-00968
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-flags-00969
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-flags-01924
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-tiling-04121
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-imageType-00970
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-imageType-00971
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-imageType-00972
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-imageType-00973
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-imageType-00974
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-imageType-00975
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-imageType-00976
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-flags-00987
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-flags-00978
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-flags-01925
VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-None-01925
If any of the bits VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT, VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT, or VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_ALIASED_BIT are set, VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSIENT_ATTACHMENT_BIT must not also be set

- **VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-pNext-00990**
  If the pNext chain includes a VkExternalMemoryImageCreateInfo structure, its handleTypes member must only contain bits that are also in VkExternalImageFormatProperties::externalMemoryProperties.compatibleHandleTypes, as returned by vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties2 with format, imageType, tiling, usage, and flags equal to those in this structure, and with a VkPhysicalDeviceExternalImageFormatInfo structure included in the pNext chain, with a handleType equal to any one of the handle types specified in VkExternalMemoryImageCreateInfo::handleTypes

- **VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-physicalDeviceCount-01421**
  If the logical device was created with VkDeviceGroupDeviceCreateInfo::physicalDeviceCount equal to 1, flags must not contain VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPLIT_INSTANCE_BIND_REGIONS_BIT

- **VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-flags-02259**
  If flags contains VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPLIT_INSTANCE_BIND_REGIONS_BIT, then mipLevels must be one, arrayLayers must be one, imageType must be VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D, and imageCreateMaybeLinear (as defined in Image Creation Limits) must be VK_FALSE

- **VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-flags-01572**
  If flags contains VK_IMAGE_CREATE_BLOCK_TEXEL_VIEW_COMPATIBLE_BIT, then flags must also contain VK_IMAGE_CREATE_MUTABLE_FORMAT_BIT

- **VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-initialLayout-00993**
  initialLayout must be VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_UNDEFINED or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_PREINITIALIZED

- **VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-pNext-01443**
  If the pNext chain includes a VkExternalMemoryImageCreateInfo or VkExternalMemoryImageCreateInfoNV structure whose handleTypes member is not 0, initialLayout must be VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_UNDEFINED

- **VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-format-02561**
  If the image format is one of those listed in Formats requiring sampler Y’CbCr conversion for VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT image views, then mipLevels must be 1

- **VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-format-02562**
  If the image format is one of those listed in Formats requiring sampler Y’CbCr conversion for VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT image views, samples must be VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT

- **VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-format-02563**
  If the image format is one of those listed in Formats requiring sampler Y’CbCr conversion for VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT image views, imageType must be VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D

- **VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-format-02564**
  If the image format is one of those listed in Formats requiring sampler Y’CbCr conversion
for VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT image views, arrayLayers must be 1

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-imageCreateInfoFormatFeatures-02260
  If format is a multi-planar format, and if imageCreateInfoFormatFeatures (as defined in Image Creation Limits) does not contain VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_DISJOINT_BIT, then flags must not contain VK_IMAGE_CREATE_DISJOINT_BIT

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-format-01577
  If format is not a multi-planar format, and flags does not include VK_IMAGE_CREATE_ALIAS_BIT, flags must not contain VK_IMAGE_CREATE_DISJOINT_BIT

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-format-04712
  If format has a _422 or _420 suffix, width must be a multiple of 2

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-format-04713
  If format has a _420 suffix, height must be a multiple of 2

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-imageType-02082
  If usage includes VK_IMAGE_USAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_BIT_KHR, imageType must be VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-samples-02083
  If usage includes VK_IMAGE_USAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_BIT_KHR, samples must be VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-imageView2DOn3DImage-04459
  If the VK_KHR_portability_subset extension is enabled, and VkPhysicalDevicePortabilitySubsetFeaturesKHR::imageView2DOn3DImage is VK_FALSE, flags must not contain VK_IMAGE_CREATE_2D_ARRAY_COMPATIBLE_BIT

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-multisampleArrayImage-04460
  If the VK_KHR_portability_subset extension is enabled, and VkPhysicalDevicePortabilitySubsetFeaturesKHR::multisampleArrayImage is VK_FALSE, and samples is not VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT, then arrayLayers must be 1

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-pNext-04737
  If a VkImageFormatListCreateInfo structure was included in the pNext chain and VkImageFormatListCreateInfo::viewFormatCount is not zero, then all of the formats in VkImageFormatListCreateInfo::pViewFormats must be compatible with the format as described in the compatibility table

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-flags-04738
  If flags does not contain VK_IMAGE_CREATE_MUTABLE_FORMAT_BIT and the pNext chain includes a VkImageFormatListCreateInfo structure, then VkImageFormatListCreateInfo::viewFormatCount must be 0 or 1

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-usage-04815
  If usage includes VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODER_DST_BIT_KHR, VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODER_SRC_BIT_KHR, VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODER_DPB_BIT_KHR, then the pNext chain must include a valid VkVideoProfilesKHR structure which includes at least one VkVideoProfileKHR with a decode codec-operation

- VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-usage-04816
  If usage includes VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODER_DST_BIT_KHR, VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODER_SRC_BIT_KHR, VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODER_DPB_BIT_KHR, then
the `pNext` chain **must** include a valid `VkVideoProfilesKHR` structure which includes at least one `VkVideoProfileKHR` with a encode codec-operation.

---

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-sType-sType**
  
  `sType` **must** be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_CREATE_INFO`.

- **VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-pNext-pNext**
  
  Each `pNext` member of any structure (including this one) in the `pNext` chain **must** be either `NULL` or a pointer to a valid instance of `VkExternalMemoryImageCreateInfo`, `VkImageFormatListCreateInfo`, `VkImageSwapchainCreateInfoKHR`, `VkVideoProfileKHR`, or `VkVideoProfilesKHR`.

- **VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-sType-unique**
  
  The `sType` value of each struct in the `pNext` chain **must** be unique.

- **VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-flags-parameter**
  
  `flags` **must** be a valid combination of `VkImageCreateFlagBits` values.

- **VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-imageType-parameter**
  
  `imageType` **must** be a valid `VkImageType` value.

- **VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-format-parameter**
  
  `format` **must** be a valid `VkFormat` value.

- **VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-samples-parameter**
  
  `samples` **must** be a valid `VkSampleCountFlagBits` value.

- **VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-tiling-parameter**
  
  `tiling` **must** be a valid `VkImageTiling` value.

- **VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-usage-parameter**
  
  `usage` **must** be a valid combination of `VkImageUsageFlagBits` values.

- **VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-usage-requiredbitmask**
  
  `usage` **must** not be 0.

- **VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-sharingMode-parameter**
  
  `sharingMode` **must** be a valid `VkSharingMode` value.

- **VUID-VkImageCreateInfo-initialLayout-parameter**
  
  `initialLayout` **must** be a valid `VkImageLayout` value.

To define a set of external memory handle types that **may** be used as backing store for an image, add a `VkExternalMemoryImageCreateInfo` structure to the `pNext` chain of the `VkImageCreateInfo` structure. The `VkExternalMemoryImageCreateInfo` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkExternalMemoryImageCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlags handleTypes;
} VkExternalMemoryImageCreateInfo;

or the equivalent

// Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory
typedef VkExternalMemoryImageCreateInfo VkExternalMemoryImageCreateInfoKHR;

Note
A VkExternalMemoryImageCreateInfo structure with a non-zero handleTypes field must be included in the creation parameters for an image that will be bound to memory that is either exported or imported.

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **handleTypes** is zero, or a bitmask of VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits specifying one or more external memory handle types.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkExternalMemoryImageCreateInfo-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_IMAGE_CREATE_INFO
- VUID-VkExternalMemoryImageCreateInfo-handleTypes-parameter
  handleTypes must be a valid combination of VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits values

If the pNext chain of VkImageCreateInfo includes a VkImageSwapchainCreateInfoKHR structure, then that structure includes a swapchain handle indicating that the image will be bound to memory from that swapchain.

The VkImageSwapchainCreateInfoKHR structure is defined as:

// Provided by VK_KHR_swapchain with VK_VERSION_1_1, VK_KHR_device_group with VK_KHR_swapchain
typedef struct VkImageSwapchainCreateInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkSwapchainKHR swapchain;
} VkImageSwapchainCreateInfoKHR;
- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **swapchain** is **VK_NULL_HANDLE** or a handle of a swapchain that the image will be bound to.

### Valid Usage

- VUID-VkImageSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-swapchain-00995
  If **swapchain** is not **VK_NULL_HANDLE**, the fields of **VkImageCreateInfo** must match the implied image creation parameters of the swapchain.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkImageSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-sType-sType
  **sType** must be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_SWAPCHAIN_CREATE_INFO_KHR**

- VUID-VkImageSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-swapchain-parameter
  If **swapchain** is not **VK_NULL_HANDLE**, **swapchain** must be a valid **VkSwapchainKHR** handle.

If the **pNext** chain of **VkImageCreateInfo** includes a **VkImageFormatListCreateInfo** structure, then that structure contains a list of all formats that **can** be used when creating views of this image.

The **VkImageFormatListCreateInfo** structure is defined as:

```plaintext
typedef struct VkImageFormatListCreateInfo {
  VkStructureType sType;
  const void* pNext;
  uint32_t viewFormatCount;
  const VkFormat* pViewFormats;
} VkImageFormatListCreateInfo;
```

or the equivalent

```plaintext
// Provided by VK_KHR_image_format_list
typedef VkImageFormatListCreateInfo VkImageFormatListCreateInfoKHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **viewFormatCount** is the number of entries in the **pViewFormats** array.
- **pViewFormats** is a pointer to an array of **VkFormat** values specifying all formats which **can** be used when creating views of this image.

If **viewFormatCount** is zero, **pViewFormats** is ignored and the image is created as if the **VkImageFormatListCreateInfo** structure were not included in the **pNext** chain of **VkImageCreateInfo**.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkImageFormatListCreateInfo-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_FORMAT_LIST_CREATE_INFO

- VUID-VkImageFormatListCreateInfo-pViewFormats-parameter
  If viewFormatCount is not 0, pViewFormats must be a valid pointer to an array of viewFormatCount valid VkFormat values

Bits which can be set in VkImageViewUsageCreateInfo::usage, or VkImageCreateInfo::usage, specifying intended usage of an image, are:
typedef enum VkImageUsageFlagBits {
    VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT = 0x00000001,
    VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT = 0x00000002,
    VK_IMAGE_USAGE_SAMPLED_BIT = 0x00000004,
    VK_IMAGE_USAGE_STORAGE_BIT = 0x00000008,
    VK_IMAGE_USAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT = 0x00000010,
    VK_IMAGE_USAGE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT = 0x00000020,
    VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSIENT_ATTACHMENT_BIT = 0x00000040,
    VK_IMAGE_USAGE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT_BIT = 0x00000080,
    #ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_decode_queue
    VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODE_DST_BIT_KHR = 0x00000400,
    #endif
    #ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_decode_queue
    VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODE_SRC_BIT_KHR = 0x00000800,
    #endif
    #ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_decode_queue
    VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODE_DPB_BIT_KHR = 0x00001000,
    #endif
    // Provided by VK_KHR_fragment_shading_rate
    VK_IMAGE_USAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_BIT_KHR = 0x00000100,
    #ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_encode_queue
    VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_DST_BIT_KHR = 0x00002000,
    #endif
    #ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_encode_queue
    VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_SRC_BIT_KHR = 0x00004000,
    #endif
    #ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_encode_queue
    VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_DPB_BIT_KHR = 0x00008000,
    #endif
} VkImageUsageFlagBits;

- **VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT** specifies that the image can be used as the source of a transfer command.
- **VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT** specifies that the image can be used as the destination of a transfer command.
- **VK_IMAGE_USAGE_SAMPLED_BIT** specifies that the image can be used to create a VkImageView suitable for occupying a VkDescriptorSet slot either of type VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLED_IMAGE or VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER, and be sampled by a shader.
- **VK_IMAGE_USAGE_STORAGE_BIT** specifies that the image can be used to create a VkImageView suitable for occupying a VkDescriptorSet slot of type VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_IMAGE.
VK_IMAGE_USAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT specifies that the image can be used to create a VkImageView suitable for use as a color or resolve attachment in a VkFramebuffer.

VK_IMAGE_USAGE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT specifies that the image can be used to create a VkImageView suitable for use as a depth/stencil or depth/stencil resolve attachment in a VkFramebuffer.

VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSIENT_ATTACHMENT_BIT specifies that the memory bound to this image will be allocated with the VK_MEMORY_PROPERTY_LAZILY_ALLOCATED_BIT (see Memory Allocation for more detail). This bit can be set for any image that can be used to create a VkImageView suitable for use as a color, resolve, depth/stencil, or input attachment.

VK_IMAGE_USAGE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT_BIT specifies that the image can be used to create a VkImageView suitable for occupying VkDescriptorSet slot of type VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT; be read from a shader as an input attachment; and be used as an input attachment in a framebuffer.

VK_IMAGE_USAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_BIT_KHR specifies that the image can be used to create a VkImageView suitable for use as a fragment shading rate attachment.

VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODE_DST_BIT_KHR specifies that video decode operations can use the image as a reference picture, or a source of postprocessing, or transfer operation.

VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODE_DPB_BIT_KHR specifies that video decode operations can use the image as a DPB Video Picture Resource, representing a reference picture. This flag must be combined with VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODE_DST_BIT_KHR and VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODE_SRC_BIT_KHR. VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODE_DST_BIT_KHR is required for DPB image resources because these resources will be associated with reference pictures after acting as targets for video decode operations. VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODE_SRC_BIT_KHR is required for DPB image resources because the reference pictures associated with them act as information sources for subsequent decode operations.

VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_SRC_BIT_KHR specifies that the image can be used as an input picture for video encode operations.

VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_DPB_BIT_KHR specifies that video encode operations can use the image to hold a reconstructed picture, and to act as a reference picture. This flag must be combined with VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_DST_BIT_KHR and VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_SRC_BIT_KHR. VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_DST_BIT_KHR is required for a DPB image resource because the reconstructed picture resulting from an encode operation will be written to it. VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_SRC_BIT_KHR is required for DPB image resources because it can be used as a reconstructed reference picture source for the encode operation.

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkImageUsageFlags;
```

VkImageUsageFlags is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more VkImageUsageFlagBits.

When creating a VkImageView one of the following VkImageUsageFlagBits must be set:

- VK_IMAGE_USAGE_SAMPLED_BIT
- **VK_IMAGE_USAGE_STORAGE_BIT**
- **VK_IMAGE_USAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT**
- **VK_IMAGE_USAGE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT**
- **VK_IMAGE_USAGE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT_BIT**
- **VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSIENT_ATTACHMENT_BIT**
- **VK_IMAGE_USAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_BIT_KHR**

Bits which **can** be set in `VkImageCreateInfo::flags`, specifying additional parameters of an image, are:

```cpp
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkImageCreateFlagBits {
    VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT = 0x00000001,
    VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT = 0x00000002,
    VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_ALIASED_BIT = 0x00000004,
    VK_IMAGE_CREATE_MUTABLE_FORMAT_BIT = 0x00000008,
    VK_IMAGE_CREATE_CUBE_COMPATIBLE_BIT = 0x00000010,
    VK_IMAGE_CREATE_ALIAS_BIT = 0x00000400,
    VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPLIT_INSTANCE_BIND_REGIONS_BIT = 0x00000040,
    VK_IMAGE_CREATE_2D_ARRAY_COMPATIBLE_BIT = 0x00000020,
    VK_IMAGE_CREATE_BLOCK_TEXEL_VIEW_COMPATIBLE_BIT = 0x00000080,
    VK_IMAGE_CREATE_EXTENDED_USAGE_BIT = 0x00000100,
    VK_IMAGE_CREATE_DISJOINT_BIT = 0x00000200,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_device_group with VK_KHR_bind_memory2
    VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPLIT_INSTANCE_BIND_REGIONS_BIT_KHR = VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPLIT_INSTANCE_BIND_REGIONS_BIT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_maintenance1
    VK_IMAGE_CREATE_2D_ARRAY_COMPATIBLE_BIT_KHR = VK_IMAGE_CREATE_2D_ARRAY_COMPATIBLE_BIT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_maintenance2
    VK_IMAGE_CREATE_BLOCK_TEXEL_VIEW_COMPATIBLE_BIT_KHR = VK_IMAGE_CREATE_BLOCK_TEXEL_VIEW_COMPATIBLE_BIT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_maintenance2
    VK_IMAGE_CREATE_EXTENDED_USAGE_BIT_KHR = VK_IMAGE_CREATE_EXTENDED_USAGE_BIT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
    VK_IMAGE_CREATE_DISJOINT_BIT_KHR = VK_IMAGE_CREATE_DISJOINT_BIT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_bind_memory2
    VK_IMAGE_CREATE_ALIAS_BIT_KHR = VK_IMAGE_CREATE_ALIAS_BIT,
} VkImageCreateFlagBits;
```

- **VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT** specifies that the image will be backed using sparse memory binding.
- **VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT** specifies that the image can be partially backed using sparse memory binding. Images created with this flag must also be created with the **VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT** flag.
- **VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_ALIASED_BIT** specifies that the image will be backed using sparse...
memory binding with memory ranges that might also simultaneously be backing another image (or another portion of the same image). Images created with this flag must also be created with the VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT flag.

- VK_IMAGE_CREATE_MUTABLE_FORMAT_BIT specifies that the image can be used to create a VkImageView with a different format from the image. For multi-planar formats, VK_IMAGE_CREATE_MUTABLE_FORMAT_BIT specifies that a VkImageView can be created of a plane of the image.

- VK_IMAGE_CREATE_CUBE_COMPATIBLE_BIT specifies that the image can be used to create a VkImageView of type VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE or VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE_ARRAY.

- VK_IMAGE_CREATE_2D_ARRAY_COMPATIBLE_BIT specifies that the image can be used to create a VkImageView of type VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D or VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D_ARRAY.

- VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPLIT_INSTANCE_BIND_REGIONS_BIT specifies that the image can be used with a non-zero value of the splitInstanceBindRegionCount member of a VkBindImageMemoryDeviceGroupInfo structure passed into vkBindImageMemory2. This flag also has the effect of making the image use the standard sparse image block dimensions.

- VK_IMAGE_CREATE_BLOCK_TEXEL_VIEW_COMPATIBLE_BIT specifies that the image having a compressed format can be used to create a VkImageView with an uncompressed format where each texel in the image view corresponds to a compressed texel block of the image.

- VK_IMAGE_CREATE_EXTENDED_USAGE_BIT specifies that the image can be created with usage flags that are not supported for the format the image is created with but are supported for at least one format a VkImageView created from the image can have.

- VK_IMAGE_CREATE_DISJOINT_BIT specifies that an image with a multi-planar format must have each plane separately bound to memory, rather than having a single memory binding for the whole image; the presence of this bit distinguishes a disjoint image from an image without this bit set.

- VK_IMAGE_CREATE_ALIAS_BIT specifies that two images created with the same creation parameters and aliased to the same memory can interpret the contents of the memory consistently with each other, subject to the rules described in the Memory Aliasing section. This flag further specifies that each plane of a disjoint image can share an in-memory non-linear representation with single-plane images, and that a single-plane image can share an in-memory non-linear representation with a plane of a multi-planar disjoint image, according to the rules in Compatible formats of planes of multi-planar formats. If the pNext chain includes a VkExternalMemoryImageCreateInfo structure whose handleTypes member is not 0, it is as if VK_IMAGE_CREATE_ALIAS_BIT is set.

See Sparse Resource Features and Sparse Physical Device Features for more details.

// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkImageCreateFlags;

VkImageCreateFlags is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more VkImageCreateFlagBits.

Possible values of VkImageCreateInfo::imageType, specifying the basic dimensionality of an image, are:
typedef enum VkImageType {
    VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D = 0,
    VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D = 1,
    VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D = 2,
} VkImageType;

- **VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D** specifies a one-dimensional image.
- **VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D** specifies a two-dimensional image.
- **VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D** specifies a three-dimensional image.

Possible values of VkImageCreateInfo::tiling, specifying the tiling arrangement of texel blocks in an image, are:

typedef enum VkImageTiling {
    VK_IMAGE_TILING_OPTIMAL = 0,
    VK_IMAGE_TILING_LINEAR = 1,
} VkImageTiling;

- **VK_IMAGE_TILING_OPTIMAL** specifies optimal tiling (texels are laid out in an implementation-dependent arrangement, for more efficient memory access).
- **VK_IMAGE_TILING_LINEAR** specifies linear tiling (texels are laid out in memory in row-major order, possibly with some padding on each row).

To query the memory layout of an image subresource, call:

void vkGetImageSubresourceLayout(
    VkDevice device,
    VkImage image,
    const VkImageSubresource* pSubresource,
    VkSubresourceLayout* pLayout);

- **device** is the logical device that owns the image.
- **image** is the image whose layout is being queried.
- **pSubresource** is a pointer to a VkImageSubresource structure selecting a specific image for the image subresource.
- **pLayout** is a pointer to a VkSubresourceLayout structure in which the layout is returned.

The image must be linear. The returned layout is valid for host access.

If the image’s format is a multi-planar format, then vkGetImageSubresourceLayout describes one plane of the image.
vkGetImageSubresourceLayout is invariant for the lifetime of a single image.

**Valid Usage**

- **VUID-vkGetImageSubresourceLayout-image-00996**
  
  *image* must have been created with *tiling* equal to VK_IMAGE_TILING_LINEAR

- **VUID-vkGetImageSubresourceLayout-aspectMask-00997**
  
  The *aspectMask* member of *pSubresource* must only have a single set

- **VUID-vkGetImageSubresourceLayout-mipLevel-01716**
  
  The *mipLevel* member of *pSubresource* must be less than the *mipLevels* specified in *VkImageCreateInfo* when *image* was created

- **VUID-vkGetImageSubresourceLayout-arrayLayer-01717**
  
  The *arrayLayer* member of *pSubresource* must be less than the *arrayLayers* specified in *VkImageCreateInfo* when *image* was created

- **VUID-vkGetImageSubresourceLayout-format-04461**
  
  If *format* is a color format, the *aspectMask* member of *pSubresource* must be VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT

- **VUID-vkGetImageSubresourceLayout-format-04462**
  
  If *format* has a depth component, the *aspectMask* member of *pSubresource* must contain VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_DEPTH_BIT

- **VUID-vkGetImageSubresourceLayout-format-04463**
  
  If *format* has a stencil component, the *aspectMask* member of *pSubresource* must contain VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_STENCIL_BIT

- **VUID-vkGetImageSubresourceLayout-format-04464**
  
  If *format* does not contain a stencil or depth component, the *aspectMask* member of *pSubresource* must not contain VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_DEPTH_BIT or VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_STENCIL_BIT

- **VUID-vkGetImageSubresourceLayout-format-01581**
  
  If the *tiling* of the *image* is VK_IMAGE_TILING_LINEAR and its *format* is a multi-planar format with two planes, the *aspectMask* member of *pSubresource* must be VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT or VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT

- **VUID-vkGetImageSubresourceLayout-format-01582**
  
  If the *tiling* of the *image* is VK_IMAGE_TILING_LINEAR and its *format* is a multi-planar format with three planes, the *aspectMask* member of *pSubresource* must be VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT, VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT or VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetImageSubresourceLayout-device-parameter
device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- VUID-vkGetImageSubresourceLayout-image-parameter
image must be a valid VkImage handle

- VUID-vkGetImageSubresourceLayout-pSubresource-parameter
pSubresource must be a valid pointer to a valid VkImageSubresource structure

- VUID-vkGetImageSubresourceLayout-pLayout-parameter
pLayout must be a valid pointer to a VkSubresourceLayout structure

- VUID-vkGetImageSubresourceLayout-image-parent
image must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from device

The VkImageSubresource structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkImageSubresource {
    VkImageAspectFlags aspectMask;
    uint32_t mipLevel;
    uint32_t arrayLayer;
} VkImageSubresource;
```

- aspectMask is a VkImageAspectFlags value selecting the image aspect.
- mipLevel selects the mipmap level.
- arrayLayer selects the array layer.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkImageSubresource-aspectMask-parameter
aspectMask must be a valid combination of VkImageAspectFlagBits values

- VUID-VkImageSubresource-aspectMask-requiredbitmask
aspectMask must not be 0

Information about the layout of the image subresource is returned in a VkSubresourceLayout structure:
typedef struct VkSubresourceLayout {
    VkDeviceSize offset;
    VkDeviceSize size;
    VkDeviceSize rowPitch;
    VkDeviceSize arrayPitch;
    VkDeviceSize depthPitch;
} VkSubresourceLayout;

- **offset** is the byte offset from the start of the image or the plane where the image subresource begins.
- **size** is the size in bytes of the image subresource. **size** includes any extra memory that is required based on **rowPitch**.
- **rowPitch** describes the number of bytes between each row of texels in an image.
- **arrayPitch** describes the number of bytes between each array layer of an image.
- **depthPitch** describes the number of bytes between each slice of a 3D image.

If the image is **linear**, then **rowPitch**, **arrayPitch** and **depthPitch** describe the layout of the image subresource in linear memory. For uncompressed formats, **rowPitch** is the number of bytes between texels with the same x coordinate in adjacent rows (y coordinates differ by one). **arrayPitch** is the number of bytes between texels with the same x and y coordinate in adjacent array layers of the image (array layer values differ by one). **depthPitch** is the number of bytes between texels with the same x and y coordinate in adjacent slices of a 3D image (z coordinates differ by one). Expressed as an addressing formula, the starting byte of a texel in the image subresource has address:

```
// (x,y,z,layer) are in texel coordinates
address(x,y,z,layer) = layer*arrayPitch + z*depthPitch + y*rowPitch + x*elementSize + offset
```

For compressed formats, the **rowPitch** is the number of bytes between compressed texel blocks in adjacent rows. **arrayPitch** is the number of bytes between compressed texel blocks in adjacent array layers. **depthPitch** is the number of bytes between compressed texel blocks in adjacent slices of a 3D image.

```
// (x,y,z,layer) are in compressed texel block coordinates
address(x,y,z,layer) = layer*arrayPitch + z*depthPitch + y*rowPitch + x *compressedTexelBlockByteSize + offset;
```

The value of **arrayPitch** is undefined for images that were not created as arrays. **depthPitch** is defined only for 3D images.

If the image has a **single-plane** color format, then the **aspectMask** member of **VkImageSubresource** must be **VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT**.

If the image has a depth/stencil format, then **aspectMask** must be either **VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_DEPTH_BIT**.
or VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_STENCIL_BIT. On implementations that store depth and stencil aspects separately, querying each of these image subresource layouts will return a different offset and size representing the region of memory used for that aspect. On implementations that store depth and stencil aspects interleaved, the same offset and size are returned and represent the interleaved memory allocation.

If the image has a multi-planar format, then the aspectMask member of VkImageSubresource must be VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT, VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT, or (for 3-plane formats only) VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT. Querying each of these image subresource layouts will return a different offset and size representing the region of memory used for that plane. If the image is disjoint, then the offset is relative to the base address of the plane. If the image is non-disjoint, then the offset is relative to the base address of the image.

To destroy an image, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkDestroyImage(
    VkDevice device,
    VkImage image,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator);
```

- **device** is the logical device that destroys the image.
- **image** is the image to destroy.
- **pAllocator** controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.

Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkDestroyImage-image-01000**
  All submitted commands that refer to image, either directly or via a VkImageView, must have completed execution

- **VUID-vkDestroyImage-image-01001**
  If VkAllocationCallbacks were provided when image was created, a compatible set of callbacks must be provided here

- **VUID-vkDestroyImage-image-01002**
  If no VkAllocationCallbacks were provided when image was created, pAllocator must be NULL

- **VUID-vkDestroyImage-image-04882**
  image must not have been acquired from vkGetSwapchainImagesKHR
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkDestroyImage-device-parameter
device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- VUID-vkDestroyImage-image-parameter
If image is not VK_NULL_HANDLE, image must be a valid VkImage handle

- VUID-vkDestroyImage-pAllocator-parameter
If pAllocator is not NULL, pAllocator must be a valid pointer to a valid VkAllocationCallbacks structure

- VUID-vkDestroyImage-image-parent
If image is a valid handle, it must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from device

Host Synchronization

- Host access to image must be externally synchronized

12.3.1. Image Format Features

Valid uses of a VkImage may depend on the image’s format features, defined below. Such constraints are documented in the affected valid usage statement.

- If the image was created with VK_IMAGE_TILING_LINEAR, then its set of format features is the value of VkFormatProperties::linearTilingFeatures found by calling vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties on the same format as VkImageCreateInfo::format.

- If the image was created with VK_IMAGE_TILING_OPTIMAL, then its set of format features is the value of VkFormatProperties::optimalTilingFeatures found by calling vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties on the same format as VkImageCreateInfo::format.

12.3.2. Image Mipmap Sizing

A complete mipmap chain is the full set of mipmap levels, from the largest mipmap level provided, down to the minimum mipmap level.

Conventional Images

For conventional images, the dimensions of each successive mipmap level, n+1, are:

\[ width_{n+1} = \max(\lfloor width_n/2 \rfloor, 1) \]

\[ height_{n+1} = \max(\lfloor height_n/2 \rfloor, 1) \]

\[ depth_{n+1} = \max(\lfloor depth_n/2 \rfloor, 1) \]
where \( \text{width}_n, \text{height}_n, \) and \( \text{depth}_n \) are the dimensions of the next larger mipmap level, \( n \).

The minimum mipmap size is:

- 1 for one-dimensional images,
- 1x1 for two-dimensional images, and
- 1x1x1 for three-dimensional images.

The number of levels in a complete mipmap chain is:

\[
\lceil \log_2(\max(\text{width}_0, \text{height}_0, \text{depth}_0)) \rceil + 1
\]

where \( \text{width}_0, \text{height}_0, \) and \( \text{depth}_0 \) are the dimensions of the largest (most detailed) mipmap level, \( 0 \).

### 12.4. Image Layouts

Images are stored in implementation-dependent opaque layouts in memory. Each layout has limitations on what kinds of operations are supported for image subresources using the layout. At any given time, the data representing an image subresource in memory exists in a particular layout which is determined by the most recent layout transition that was performed on that image subresource. Applications have control over which layout each image subresource uses, and can transition an image subresource from one layout to another. Transitions can happen with an image memory barrier, included as part of a `vkCmdPipelineBarrier` or a `vkCmdWaitEvents` command buffer command (see Image Memory Barriers), or as part of a subpass dependency within a render pass (see VkSubpassDependency).

Image layout is per-image subresource. Separate image subresources of the same image can be in different layouts at the same time, with the exception that depth and stencil aspects of a given image subresource can only be in different layouts if the separateDepthStencilLayouts feature is enabled.

**Note**

Each layout may offer optimal performance for a specific usage of image memory. For example, an image with a layout of `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL` may provide optimal performance for use as a color attachment, but be unsupported for use in transfer commands. Applications can transition an image subresource from one layout to another in order to achieve optimal performance when the image subresource is used for multiple kinds of operations. After initialization, applications need not use any layout other than the general layout, though this may produce suboptimal performance on some implementations.

Upon creation, all image subresources of an image are initially in the same layout, where that layout is selected by the `VkImageCreateInfo::initialLayout` member. The `initialLayout` must be either `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_UNDEFINED` or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_PREINITIALIZED`. If it is `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_PREINITIALIZED`, then the image data can be preinitialized by the host while using this layout, and the transition away from this layout will preserve that data. If it is `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_UNDEFINED`, then the contents of the data are considered to be undefined, and the
transition away from this layout is not guaranteed to preserve that data. For either of these initial layouts, any image subresources must be transitioned to another layout before they are accessed by the device.

Host access to image memory is only well-defined for linear images and for image subresources of those images which are currently in either the VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_PREINITIALIZED or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL layout. Calling vkGetImageSubresourceLayout for a linear image returns a subresource layout mapping that is valid for either of those image layouts.

The set of image layouts consists of:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkImageLayout {
    VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_UNDEFINED = 0,
    VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL = 1,
    VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL = 2,
    VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL = 3,
    VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL = 4,
    VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHADER_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL = 5,
    VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_TRANSFER_SRC_OPTIMAL = 6,
    VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_TRANSFER_DST_OPTIMAL = 7,
    VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_PREINITIALIZED = 8,
    VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL = 100017000,
    VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL = 100017001,
    VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL = 1000241000,
    VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL = 1000241001,
    VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL = 1000241002,
    VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL = 1000241003,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_swapchain
    VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_PRESENT_SRC_KHR = 1000001002,
    #ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_decode_queue
    VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_VIDEO_DECODE_DST_KHR = 1000024000,
    #endif
    #ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_decode_queue
    VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_VIDEO_DECODE_SRC_KHR = 1000024001,
    #endif
    #ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_decode_queue
    VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_VIDEO_DECODE_DPB_KHR = 1000024002,
    #endif
    // Provided by VK_KHR_shared_presentable_image
    VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHARED_PRESENT_KHR = 1000111000,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_fragment_shading_rate
    VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL_KHR = 1000164003,
    #ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_encode_queue
    VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_VIDEO_ENCODE_DST_KHR = 1000299000,
    #endif
};
```
The type(s) of device access supported by each layout are:

- **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_UNDEFINED** specifies that the layout is unknown. Image memory **cannot** be transitioned into this layout. This layout **can** be used as the `initialLayout` member of `VkImageCreateInfo`. This layout **can** be used in place of the current image layout in a layout transition, but doing so will cause the contents of the image's memory to be undefined.

- **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_PREINITIALIZED** specifies that an image's memory is in a defined layout and **can** be populated by data, but that it has not yet been initialized by the driver. Image memory **cannot** be transitioned into this layout. This layout **can** be used as the `initialLayout` member of `VkImageCreateInfo`. This layout is intended to be used as the initial layout for an image whose contents are written by the host, and hence the data **can** be written to memory immediately, without first executing a layout transition. Currently, **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_PREINITIALIZED** is only useful with linear images because there is not a standard layout defined for **VK_IMAGE_TILING_OPTIMAL** images.

- **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL** supports all types of device access.

- **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL_KHR** specifies a layout that **must** only be used with
attachment accesses in the graphics pipeline.

- **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL_KHR** specifies a layout allowing read only access as an attachment, or in shaders as a sampled image, combined image/sampler, or input attachment.

- **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL** must only be used as a color or resolve attachment in a VkFramebuffer. This layout is valid only for image subresources of images created with the VK_IMAGE_USAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT usage bit enabled.

- **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL** specifies a layout for both the depth and stencil aspects of a depth/stencil format image allowing read and write access as a depth/stencil attachment. It is equivalent to **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL** and **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL**.

- **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL** specifies a layout for both the depth and stencil aspects of a depth/stencil format image allowing read only access as a depth/stencil attachment or in shaders as a sampled image, combined image/sampler, or input attachment. It is equivalent to **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL** and **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL**.

- **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL** specifies a layout for depth/stencil format images allowing read and write access to the stencil aspect as a stencil attachment, and read only access to the depth aspect as a depth attachment or in shaders as a sampled image, combined image/sampler, or input attachment. It is equivalent to **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL**.

- **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL** specifies a layout for depth/stencil format images allowing read-only access as a depth attachment or in shaders as a sampled image, combined image/sampler, or input attachment. This layout is valid only for image subresources of images created with the VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT usage bits enabled.

- **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_TRANSFER_SRC_OPTIMAL** must only be used as a source image of a transfer command (see the definition of VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TRANSFER_BIT). This layout is valid only for image subresources of images created with the VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT usage bit enabled.
• **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_TRANSFER_DST_OPTIMAL** must only be used as a destination image of a transfer command. This layout is valid only for image subresources of images created with the **VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT** usage bit enabled.

• **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_PRESENT_SRC_KHR** must only be used for presenting a presentable image for display. A swapchain’s image must be transitioned to this layout before calling **vkQueuePresentKHR**, and must be transitioned away from this layout after calling **vkAcquireNextImageKHR**.

• **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHARED_PRESENT_KHR** is valid only for shared presentable images, and must be used for any usage the image supports.

• **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL_KHR** must only be used as a fragment shading rate attachment or This layout is valid only for image subresources of images created with the **VK_IMAGE_USAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_BIT_KHR** usage bit enabled.

• **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_VIDEO_DECODE_DST_KHR** must only be used as a decode output image of a **video decode operation**. This layout is valid only for image subresources of images created with the **VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODE_DST_BIT_KHR** usage bit enabled.

• **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_VIDEO_DECODE_SRC_KHR** must only be used as a decode source image of a **video decode operation**. This layout is valid only for image subresources of images created with the **VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODE_SRC_BIT_KHR** usage bit enabled.

• **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_VIDEO_DECODE_DPB_KHR** must only be used as a decode source or destination image of a **video decode operation**. This layout is valid only for image subresources of images created with the **VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODE_DPB_BIT_KHR** usage bit enabled.

• **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_VIDEO_ENCODE_DST_KHR** must only be used as an encode output image of a **video encode operation**. This layout is valid only for image subresources of images created with the **VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_DST_BIT_KHR** usage bit enabled.

• **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_VIDEO_ENCODE_SRC_KHR** must only be used as an encode source image of a **video encode operation**. This layout is valid only for image subresources of images created with the **VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_SRC_BIT_KHR** usage bit enabled.

• **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_VIDEO_ENCODE_DPB_KHR** must only be used as an encode source or destination image of a **video encode operation**. This layout is valid only for image subresources of images created with the **VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_DPB_BIT_KHR** usage bit enabled.

The layout of each image subresource is not a state of the image subresource itself, but is rather a property of how the data in memory is organized, and thus for each mechanism of accessing an image in the API the application must specify a parameter or structure member that indicates which image layout the image subresource(s) are considered to be in when the image will be accessed. For transfer commands, this is a parameter to the command (see Clear Commands and Copy Commands). For use as a framebuffer attachment, this is a member in the substructures of the **VkRenderPassCreateInfo** (see Render Pass). For use in a descriptor set, this is a member in the **VkDescriptorImageInfo** structure (see Descriptor Set Updates).

### 12.4.1. Image Layout Matching Rules

At the time that any command buffer command accessing an image executes on any queue, the layouts of the image subresources that are accessed must all match exactly the layout specified via the API controlling those accesses, except in case of accesses to an image with a depth/stencil
format performed through descriptors referring to only a single aspect of the image, where the following relaxed matching rules apply:

- Descriptors referring just to the depth aspect of a depth/stencil image only need to match in the image layout of the depth aspect, thus `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL` and `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL` are considered to match.

- Descriptors referring just to the stencil aspect of a depth/stencil image only need to match in the image layout of the stencil aspect, thus `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL` and `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL` are considered to match.

When performing a layout transition on an image subresource, the old layout value **must** either equal the current layout of the image subresource (at the time the transition executes), or else be `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_UNDEFINED` (implying that the contents of the image subresource need not be preserved). The new layout used in a transition **must** not be `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_UNDEFINED` or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_PREINITIALIZED`.

### 12.5. Image Views

Image objects are not directly accessed by pipeline shaders for reading or writing image data. Instead, *image views* representing contiguous ranges of the image subresources and containing additional metadata are used for that purpose. Views **must** be created on images of compatible types, and **must** represent a valid subset of image subresources.

Image views are represented by `VkImageView` handles:

```
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VK_DEFINE_NON_DISPATCHABLE_HANDLE(VkImageView)
```

`VK_REMAINING_ARRAY LAYERS` is a special constant value used for image views to indicate that all remaining array layers in an image after the base layer should be included in the view.

```
#define VK_REMAINING_ARRAY LAYERS ~0U
```

`VK_REMAINING_MIP LEVELS` is a special constant value used for image views to indicate that all remaining mipmap levels in an image after the base level should be included in the view.

```
#define VK_REMAINING_MIP LEVELS ~0U
```

The types of image views that **can** be created are:
To create an image view, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkCreateImageView(VkDevice device, const VkImageViewCreateInfo* pCreateInfo, const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator, VkImageView* pView);
```

- `device` is the logical device that creates the image view.
- `pCreateInfo` is a pointer to a `VkImageViewCreateInfo` structure containing parameters to be used to create the image view.
- `pAllocator` controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
- `pView` is a pointer to a `VkImageView` handle in which the resulting image view object is returned.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCreateImageView-device-parameter
  
  `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- VUID-vkCreateImageView-pCreateInfo-parameter
  
  `pCreateInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkImageViewCreateInfo` structure

- VUID-vkCreateImageView-pAllocator-parameter
  
  If `pAllocator` is not NULL, `pAllocator` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkAllocationCallbacks` structure

- VUID-vkCreateImageView-pView-parameter
  
  `pView` must be a valid pointer to a `VkImageView` handle
Return Codes

Success

• VK_SUCCESS

Failure

• VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
• VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY

The `VkImageViewCreateInfo` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkImageViewCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkImageViewCreateFlags flags;
    VkImage image;
    VkImageViewType viewType;
    VkFormat format;
    VkComponentMapping components;
    VkImageSubresourceRange subresourceRange;
} VkImageViewCreateInfo;
```

• `sType` is the type of this structure.
• `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• `flags` is a bitmask of `VkImageViewCreateFlagBits` describing additional parameters of the image view.
• `image` is a `VkImage` on which the view will be created.
• `viewType` is a `VkImageViewType` value specifying the type of the image view.
• `format` is a `VkFormat` describing the format and type used to interpret texel blocks in the image.
• `components` is a `VkComponentMapping` structure specifying a remapping of color components (or of depth or stencil components after they have been converted into color components).
• `subresourceRange` is a `VkImageSubresourceRange` structure selecting the set of mipmap levels and array layers to be accessible to the view.

Some of the `image` creation parameters are inherited by the view. In particular, image view creation inherits the implicit parameter `usage` specifying the allowed usages of the image view that, by default, takes the value of the corresponding `usage` parameter specified in `VkImageCreateInfo` at image creation time. The implicit `usage` can be overridden by adding a `VkImageViewUsageCreateInfo` structure to the `pNext` chain, but the view `usage` must be a subset of the image usage.

If `image` was created with the `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_MUTABLE_FORMAT_BIT` flag, and if the `format` of the image is not multi-planar, `format` can be different from the image's format, but if `image` was created without the `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_BLOCK_TEXEL_VIEW_COMPATIBLE_BIT` flag and they are not equal they must...
be compatible. Image format compatibility is defined in the Format Compatibility Classes section. Views of compatible formats will have the same mapping between texel coordinates and memory locations irrespective of the format, with only the interpretation of the bit pattern changing.

Note

Values intended to be used with one view format may not be exactly preserved when written or read through a different format. For example, an integer value that happens to have the bit pattern of a floating point denorm or NaN may be flushed or canonicalized when written or read through a view with a floating point format. Similarly, a value written through a signed normalized format that has a bit pattern exactly equal to \(-2^b\) may be changed to \(-2^b + 1\) as described in Conversion from Normalized Fixed-Point to Floating-Point.

If image was created with the VK_IMAGE_CREATE_BLOCK_TEXEL_VIEW_COMPATIBLE_BIT flag, format must be compatible with the image’s format as described above, or must be an uncompressed format in which case it must be size-compatible with the image’s format, as defined for copying data between images. In this case, the resulting image view’s texel dimensions equal the dimensions of the selected mip level divided by the compressed texel block size and rounded up.

The VkComponentMapping components member describes a remapping from components of the image to components of the vector returned by shader image instructions. This remapping must be the identity swizzle for storage image descriptors, input attachment descriptors, framebuffer attachments, and any VkImageView used with a combined image sampler that enables sampler Y’C_bC_r conversion.

If the image view is to be used with a sampler which supports sampler Y’C_bC_r conversion, an identically defined object of type VkSamplerYcbcrConversion to that used to create the sampler must be passed to vkCreateImageView in a VkSamplerYcbcrConversionInfo included in the pNext chain of VkImageViewCreateInfo. Conversely, if a VkSamplerYcbcrConversion object is passed to vkCreateImageView, an identically defined VkSamplerYcbcrConversion object must be used when sampling the image.

If the image has a multi-planar format and subresourceRange.aspectMask is VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT, and image has been created with a usage value not containing any of the VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODE_DST_BIT_KHR, VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODE_DPBR_BIT_KHR, VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_SRC_BIT_KHR, and VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_DPB_BIT_KHR flags, then the format must be identical to the image format, and the sampler to be used with the image view must enable sampler Y’C_bC_r conversion.

If the image has a multi-planar format and the image has been created with a usage value containing any of the VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODER_DPB_BIT_KHR, VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODER_SRC_BIT_KHR, and VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODER_DPB_BIT_KHR flags, then all of the video decode operations would ignore the VkSamplerYcbcrConversionInfo structure and/or sampler Y’C_bC_r conversion object, associated with the image view. If the image has a multi-planar format and the image has been created with a usage value containing any of the VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_DST_BIT_KHR, VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_SRC_BIT_KHR, and VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_DPB_BIT_KHR flags, then all of the video encode operations would ignore the VkSamplerYcbcrConversionInfo structure...
and/or sampler $Y'CbCr$ conversion object, associated with the image view.

If image was created with the `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_MUTABLE_FORMAT_BIT` and the image has a multi-planar format, and if `subresourceRange.aspectMask` is `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT`, `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT`, or `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT`, format must be compatible with the corresponding plane of the image, and the sampler to be used with the image view must not enable sampler $Y'CbCr$ conversion. The width and height of the single-plane image view must be derived from the multi-planar image’s dimensions in the manner listed for plane compatibility for the plane.

Any view of an image plane will have the same mapping between texel coordinates and memory locations as used by the channels of the color aspect, subject to the formulae relating texel coordinates to lower-resolution planes as described in Chroma Reconstruction. That is, if an R or B plane has a reduced resolution relative to the G plane of the multi-planar image, the image view operates using the $(u_{plane}, v_{plane})$ unnormalized coordinates of the reduced-resolution plane, and these coordinates access the same memory locations as the $(u_{color}, v_{color})$ unnormalized coordinates of the color aspect for which chroma reconstruction operations operate on the same $(u_{plane}, v_{plane})$ or $(i_{plane}, j_{plane})$ coordinates.

Table 11. Image type and image view type compatibility requirements

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Image View Type</th>
<th>Compatible Image Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_1D</td>
<td>VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_1D_ARRAY</td>
<td>VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D</td>
<td>VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D, VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D_ARRAY</td>
<td>VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D, VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE</td>
<td>VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE_ARRAY</td>
<td>VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_3D</td>
<td>VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-image-01003**
  If `image` was not created with `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_CUBE_COMPATIBLE_BIT` then `viewType` must not be `VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE` or `VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE_ARRAY`.

- **VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-viewType-01004**
  If the `image cubemap arrays` feature is not enabled, `viewType` must not be `VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE` or `VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE_ARRAY`.

- **VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-image-01005**
  If `image` was created with `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D` but without `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_2D_ARRAY_COMPATIBLE_BIT` set then `viewType` must not be `VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D` or `VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D_ARRAY`.

- **VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-image-04970**
  If `image` was created with `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D` and `viewType` is `VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D` or `VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D_ARRAY` then `subresourceRange.levelCount` must be 1.

- **VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-image-04971**
  If `image` was created with `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D` and `viewType` is `VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D` or `VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D_ARRAY` then `flags` must not contain any of `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT`, `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT`, and `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_ALIASED_BIT`.

- **VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-image-04972**
  If `image` was created with a `samples` value not equal to `VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT` then `viewType` must be either `VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D` or `VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D_ARRAY`.

- **VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-None-02273**
  The `format features` of the resultant image view must contain at least one bit.

- **VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-usage-02274**
  If `usage` contains `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_SAMPLED_BIT`, then the `format features` of the resultant image view must contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_BIT`.

- **VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-usage-02275**
  If `usage` contains `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_STORAGE_BIT`, then the image view's `format features` must contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_BIT`.

- **VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-usage-02276**
  If `usage` contains `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT`, then the image view's `format features` must contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT`.

- **VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-usage-02277**
  If `usage` contains `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT`, then the image view's `format features` must contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT`.

- **VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-usage-02652**
  If `usage` contains `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT_BIT`, then the image view's `format features` must contain at least one of `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT` or `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_RGBA_INTEGER_ATTACHMENT_BIT` or `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE-desktop`. 

Chapter 12. Resource Creation | 603
• VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-subresourceRange-01478
  subresourceRange.baseMipLevel must be less than the mipLevels specified in VkImageCreateInfo when image was created

• VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-subresourceRange-01718
  If subresourceRange.levelCount is not VK_REMAINING_MIP_LEVELS, subresourceRange.baseMipLevel + subresourceRange.levelCount must be less than or equal to the mipLevels specified in VkImageCreateInfo when image was created

• VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-image-01482
  If image is not a 3D image created with VK_IMAGE_CREATE_2D_ARRAY_COMPATIBLE_BIT set, or viewType is not VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D or VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D_ARRAY, subresourceRange.baseArrayLayer must be less than the arrayLayers specified in VkImageCreateInfo when image was created

• VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-subresourceRange-01483
  If subresourceRange.layerCount is not VK_REMAINING_ARRAY_LAYERS, image is not a 3D image created with VK_IMAGE_CREATE_2D_ARRAY_COMPATIBLE_BIT set, or viewType is not VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D or VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D_ARRAY, subresourceRange.baseArrayLayer + subresourceRange.layerCount must be less than or equal to the arrayLayers specified in VkImageCreateInfo when image was created

• VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-image-02724
  If image is a 3D image created with VK_IMAGE_CREATE_2D_ARRAY_COMPATIBLE_BIT set, and viewType is VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D or VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D_ARRAY, subresourceRange.baseArrayLayer must be less than the depth computed from baseMipLevel and extent.depth specified in VkImageCreateInfo when image was created, according to the formula defined in Image Miplevel Sizing

• VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-subresourceRange-02725
  If subresourceRange.layerCount is not VK_REMAINING_ARRAY_LAYERS, image is a 3D image created with VK_IMAGE_CREATE_2D_ARRAY_COMPATIBLE_BIT set, and viewType is VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D or VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D_ARRAY, subresourceRange.baseArrayLayer + subresourceRange.layerCount must be less than or equal to the depth computed from baseMipLevel and extent.depth specified in VkImageCreateInfo when image was created, according to the formula defined in Image Miplevel Sizing

• VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-image-01761
  If image was created with the VK_IMAGE_CREATE_MUTABLE_FORMAT_BIT flag, but without the VK_IMAGE_CREATE_BLOCK_TEXEL_VIEW_COMPATIBLE_BIT flag, and if the format of the image is not a multi-planar format, format must be compatible with the format used to create image, as defined in Format Compatibility Classes

• VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-image-01583
  If image was created with the VK_IMAGE_CREATE_BLOCK_TEXEL_VIEW_COMPATIBLE_BIT flag, format must be compatible with, or must be an uncompressed format that is size-compatible with, the format used to create image

• VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-image-01584
If image was created with the VK_IMAGE_CREATE_BLOCK_TEXEL_VIEW_COMPATIBLE_BIT flag, the levelCount and layerCount members of subresourceRange must both be 1

- VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-image-04739
  If image was created with the VK_IMAGE_CREATE_BLOCK_TEXEL_VIEW_COMPATIBLE_BIT flag and format is a non-compressed format, viewType must not be VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_3D

- VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-pNext-01585
  If a VkImageFormatListCreateInfo structure was included in the pNext chain of the VkImageCreateInfo structure used when creating image and VkImageFormatListCreateInfo::viewFormatCount is not zero then format must be one of the formats in VkImageFormatListCreateInfo::pViewFormats

- VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-image-01586
  If image was created with the VK_IMAGE_CREATE_MUTABLE_FORMAT_BIT flag, if the format of the image is a multi-planar format, and if subresourceRange.aspectMask is one of VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT, VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT, or VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT, then format must be compatible with the VkFormat for the plane of the image format indicated by subresourceRange.aspectMask, as defined in Compatible formats of planes of multi-planar formats

- VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-image-01762
  If image was not created with the VK_IMAGE_CREATE_MUTABLE_FORMAT_BIT flag, or if the format of the image is a multi-planar format and if subresourceRange.aspectMask is VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT, format must be identical to the format used to create image

- VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-format-04724
  If format is one of those listed in Formats requiring sampler Y’C_{B’}C_{R} conversion for VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT image views, then the pNext chain must include a VkSamplerYcbcrConversionInfo structure with a conversion value other than VK_NULL_HANDLE

- VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-format-04714
  If format has a _422 or _420 suffix then image must have been created with a width that is a multiple of 2

- VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-format-04715
  If format has a _420 suffix then image must have been created with a height that is a multiple of 2

- VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-pNext-01970
  If the pNext chain includes a VkSamplerYcbcrConversionInfo structure with a conversion value other than VK_NULL_HANDLE, all members of components must have the identity swizzle

- VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-image-01020
  If image is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single VkDeviceMemory object

- VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-subResourceRange-01021
  viewType must be compatible with the type of image as shown in the view type compatibility table

- VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-image-02086
  Chapter 12. Resource Creation | 605
If the image was created with usage containing

VK_IMAGE_USAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_BIT_KHR, viewType must be

VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D or VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D_ARRAY

- VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-usage-04550

If the attachmentFragmentShadingRate feature is enabled, and the usage for the image view includes

VK_IMAGE_USAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_BIT_KHR, then the image view’s format features must contain

VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_BIT_KHR

- VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-usage-04551

If the attachmentFragmentShadingRate feature is enabled, the usage for the image view includes

VK_IMAGE_USAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_BIT_KHR, and layeredShadingRateAttachments is VK_FALSE, subresourceRange.layerCount must be 1

- VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-pNext-02661

If the pNext chain includes a VkImageViewUsageCreateInfo structure, its usage member must not include any bits that were not set in the usage member of the VkImageViewCreateInfo structure used to create image

- VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-imageViewType-04973

If viewType is VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_1D, VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D, or VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_3D; and subresourceRange.layerCount is not VK_REMAINING_ARRAY_LAYERS, then subresourceRange.layerCount must be 1

- VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-imageViewType-04974

If viewType is VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_1D, VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D, or VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_3D; and subresourceRange.layerCount is VK_REMAINING_ARRAY_LAYERS, then the remaining number of layers must be 1

- VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-viewType-02960

If viewType is VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE and subresourceRange.layerCount is not VK_REMAINING_ARRAY_LAYERS, subresourceRange.layerCount must be 6

- VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-viewType-02961

If viewType is VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE_ARRAY and subresourceRange.layerCount is not VK_REMAINING_ARRAY_LAYERS, subresourceRange.layerCount must be a multiple of 6

- VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-viewType-02962

If viewType is VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE and subresourceRange.layerCount is VK_REMAINING_ARRAY_LAYERS, the remaining number of layers must be 6

- VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-viewType-02963

If viewType is VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE_ARRAY and subresourceRange.layerCount is VK_REMAINING_ARRAY_LAYERS, the remaining number of layers must be a multiple of 6

- VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-imageViewFormatSwizzle-04465

If the VK_KHR_portability_subset extension is enabled, and VkPhysicalDevicePortabilitySubsetFeaturesKHR::imageViewFormatSwizzle is VK_FALSE, all elements of components must have the identity swizzle

- VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-imageViewFormatReinterpretation-04466

If the VK_KHR_portability_subset extension is enabled, and VkPhysicalDevicePortabilitySubsetFeaturesKHR::imageViewFormatReinterpretation is VK_FALSE, the VkFormat in format must not contain a different number of components, or
a different number of bits in each component, than the format of the `VkImage` in `image`.

• VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-image-04817
  If `image` was created with `usage` containing `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODE_DST_BIT_KHR`, `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODE_SRC_BIT_KHR`, `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODE_DPB_BIT_KHR`, then the `viewType` must be `VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D` or `VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D_ARRAY` and all members of `components` must have the identity swizzle.

• VUID-VkImageViewCreateInfo-image-04818
  If `image` was created with `usage` containing `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_DST_BIT_KHR`, `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_SRC_BIT_KHR`, `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_DPB_BIT_KHR`, then the `viewType` must be `VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D` or `VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D_ARRAY` and all members of `components` must have the identity swizzle.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **sType** must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_VIEW_CREATE_INFO`

- Each `pNext` member of any structure (including this one) in the `pNext` chain must be either `NULL` or a pointer to a valid instance of `VkImageViewUsageCreateInfo`, `VkSamplerYcbcrConversionInfo`, `VkVideoProfileKHR`, or `VkVideoProfilesKHR`.

- The `sType` value of each struct in the `pNext` chain must be unique.

- `flags` must be 0.

- **image** must be a valid `VkImage` handle.

- **viewType** must be a valid `VkImageViewType` value.

- **format** must be a valid `VkFormat` value.

- **components** must be a valid `VkComponentMapping` structure.

- **subresourceRange** must be a valid `VkImageSubresourceRange` structure.

Bits which can be set in `VkImageViewCreateInfo::flags`, specifying additional parameters of an image view, are:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkImageViewCreateFlagBits {
} VkImageViewCreateFlagBits;
```
VkImageViewCreateFlags is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more VkImageViewCreateFlagBits.

The set of usages for the created image view can be restricted compared to the parent image’s usage flags by adding a VkImageViewUsageCreateInfo structure to the pNext chain of VkImageViewCreateInfo.

The VkImageViewUsageCreateInfo structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkImageViewUsageCreateInfo
{
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkImageUsageFlags usage;
} VkImageViewUsageCreateInfo;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_maintenance2
typedef VkImageViewUsageCreateInfo VkImageViewUsageCreateInfoKHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **usage** is a bitmask of VkImageUsageFlagBits specifying allowed usages of the image view.

When this structure is chained to VkImageViewCreateInfo the usage field overrides the implicit usage parameter inherited from image creation time and its value is used instead for the purposes of determining the valid usage conditions of VkImageViewCreateInfo.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkImageViewUsageCreateInfo-sType-sType
  - **sType** must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_VIEW_USAGE_CREATE_INFO
- VUID-VkImageViewUsageCreateInfo-usage-parameter
  - **usage** must be a valid combination of VkImageUsageFlagBits values
- VUID-VkImageViewUsageCreateInfo-usage-requiredbitmask
  - **usage** must not be 0

The VkImageSubresourceRange structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkImageSubresourceRange {
    VkImageAspectFlags aspectMask;
    uint32_t baseMipLevel;
    uint32_t levelCount;
    uint32_t baseArrayLayer;
    uint32_t layerCount;
} VkImageSubresourceRange;

• aspectMask is a bitmask of VkImageAspectFlagBits specifying which aspect(s) of the image are included in the view.
• baseMipLevel is the first mipmap level accessible to the view.
• levelCount is the number of mipmap levels (starting from baseMipLevel) accessible to the view.
• baseArrayLayer is the first array layer accessible to the view.
• layerCount is the number of array layers (starting from baseArrayLayer) accessible to the view.

The number of mipmap levels and array layers must be a subset of the image subresources in the image. If an application wants to use all mip levels or layers in an image after the baseMipLevel or baseArrayLayer, it can set levelCount and layerCount to the special values VK_REMAINING_MIP_LEVELS and VK_REMAINING_ARRAY_LAYERS without knowing the exact number of mip levels or layers.

For cube and cube array image views, the layers of the image view starting at baseArrayLayer correspond to faces in the order +X, -X, +Y, -Y, +Z, -Z. For cube arrays, each set of six sequential layers is a single cube, so the number of cube maps in a cube map array view is layerCount / 6, and image array layer (baseArrayLayer + i) is face index (i mod 6) of cube i / 6. If the number of layers in the view, whether set explicitly in layerCount or implied by VK_REMAINING_ARRAY_LAYERS, is not a multiple of 6, the last cube map in the array must not be accessed.

aspectMask must be only VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT, VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_DEPTH_BIT or VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_STENCIL_BIT if format is a color, depth-only or stencil-only format, respectively, except if format is a multi-planar format. If using a depth/stencil format with both depth and stencil components, aspectMask must include at least one of VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_DEPTH_BIT and VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_STENCIL_BIT, and can include both.

When the VkImageSubresourceRange structure is used to select a subset of the slices of a 3D image's mip level in order to create a 2D or 2D array image view of a 3D image created with VK_IMAGE_CREATE_2D_ARRAY_COMPATIBLE_BIT, baseArrayLayer and layerCount specify the first slice index and the number of slices to include in the created image view. Such an image view can be used as a framebuffer attachment that refers only to the specified range of slices of the selected mip level. However, any layout transitions performed on such an attachment view during a render pass instance still apply to the entire subresource referenced which includes all the slices of the selected mip level.

When using an image view of a depth/stencil image to populate a descriptor set (e.g. for sampling in the shader, or for use as an input attachment), the aspectMask must only include one bit, which selects whether the image view is used for depth reads (i.e. using a floating-point sampler or input attachment in the shader) or stencil reads (i.e. using an unsigned integer sampler or input attachment in the shader).
attachment in the shader). When an image view of a depth/stencil image is used as a depth/stencil framebuffer attachment, the aspectMask is ignored and both depth and stencil image subresources are used.

When creating a VkImageView, if sampler Y’C_bC_r conversion is enabled in the sampler, the aspectMask of a subresourceRange used by the VkImageView must be VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT.

When creating a VkImageView, if sampler Y’C_bC_r conversion is not enabled in the sampler and the image format is multi-planar, the image must have been created with VK_IMAGE_CREATE_MUTABLE_FORMAT_BIT, and the aspectMask of the VkImageView's subresourceRange must be VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT, VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT or VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT.

Valid Usage

- VUID-VkImageSubresourceRange-levelCount-01720
  If levelCount is not VK_REMAINING_MIP_LEVELS, it must be greater than 0
- VUID-VkImageSubresourceRange-layerCount-01721
  If layerCount is not VK_REMAINING_ARRAY_LAYERS, it must be greater than 0
- VUID-VkImageSubresourceRange-aspectMask-01670
  If aspectMask includes VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT, then it must not include any of VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT, VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT, or VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkImageSubresourceRange-aspectMask-parameter
  aspectMask must be a valid combination of VkImageAspectFlagBits values
- VUID-VkImageSubresourceRange-aspectMask-requiredbitmask
  aspectMask must not be 0

Bits which can be set in an aspect mask to specify aspects of an image for purposes such as identifying a subresource, are:
typedef enum VkImageAspectFlagBits {
    VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT = 0x00000001,
    VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_DEPTH_BIT = 0x00000002,
    VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_STENCIL_BIT = 0x00000004,
    VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_METADATA_BIT = 0x00000008,
    VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT = 0x00000010,
    VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT = 0x00000020,
    VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT = 0x00000040,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
    VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT_KHR = VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
    VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT_KHR = VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
    VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT_KHR = VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT,
} VkImageAspectFlagBits;

• VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT specifies the color aspect.
• VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_DEPTH_BIT specifies the depth aspect.
• VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_STENCIL_BIT specifies the stencil aspect.
• VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_METADATA_BIT specifies the metadata aspect, used for sparse resource operations.
• VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT specifies plane 0 of a multi-planar image format.
• VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT specifies plane 1 of a multi-planar image format.
• VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT specifies plane 2 of a multi-planar image format.

typedef VkFlags VkImageAspectFlags;

VkImageAspectFlags is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more VkImageAspectFlagBits.

The VkComponentMapping structure is defined as:

typedef struct VkComponentMapping {
    VkComponentSwizzle r;
    VkComponentSwizzle g;
    VkComponentSwizzle b;
    VkComponentSwizzle a;
} VkComponentMapping;

• r is a VkComponentSwizzle specifying the component value placed in the R component of the output vector.
• g is a VkComponentSwizzle specifying the component value placed in the G component of the
output vector.

- \( b \) is a \texttt{VkComponentSwizzle} specifying the component value placed in the B component of the output vector.

- \( a \) is a \texttt{VkComponentSwizzle} specifying the component value placed in the A component of the output vector.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- \texttt{VUID-VkComponentMapping-r-parameter}
  
  \( r \) must be a valid \texttt{VkComponentSwizzle} value

- \texttt{VUID-VkComponentMapping-g-parameter}
  
  \( g \) must be a valid \texttt{VkComponentSwizzle} value

- \texttt{VUID-VkComponentMapping-b-parameter}
  
  \( b \) must be a valid \texttt{VkComponentSwizzle} value

- \texttt{VUID-VkComponentMapping-a-parameter}
  
  \( a \) must be a valid \texttt{VkComponentSwizzle} value

Possible values of the members of \texttt{VkComponentMapping}, specifying the component values placed in each component of the output vector, are:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkComponentSwizzle {
    VK_COMPONENT_SWIZZLE_IDENTITY = 0,
    VK_COMPONENT_SWIZZLE_ZERO = 1,
    VK_COMPONENT_SWIZZLE_ONE = 2,
    VK_COMPONENT_SWIZZLE_R = 3,
    VK_COMPONENT_SWIZZLE_G = 4,
    VK_COMPONENT_SWIZZLE_B = 5,
    VK_COMPONENT_SWIZZLE_A = 6,
} VkComponentSwizzle;
```

- \texttt{VK_COMPONENT_SWIZZLE_IDENTITY} specifies that the component is set to the identity swizzle.

- \texttt{VK_COMPONENT_SWIZZLE_ZERO} specifies that the component is set to zero.

- \texttt{VK_COMPONENT_SWIZZLE_ONE} specifies that the component is set to either 1 or 1.0, depending on whether the type of the image view format is integer or floating-point respectively, as determined by the \texttt{Format Definition} section for each \texttt{VkFormat}.

- \texttt{VK_COMPONENT_SWIZZLE_R} specifies that the component is set to the value of the R component of the image.

- \texttt{VK_COMPONENT_SWIZZLE_G} specifies that the component is set to the value of the G component of the image.

- \texttt{VK_COMPONENT_SWIZZLE_B} specifies that the component is set to the value of the B component of the image.
• **VK_COMPONENT_SWIZZLE_A** specifies that the component is set to the value of the A component of the image.

Setting the identity swizzle on a component is equivalent to setting the identity mapping on that component. That is:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Component</th>
<th>Identity Mapping</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>components.r</td>
<td>VK_COMPONENT_SWIZZLE_R</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>components.g</td>
<td>VK_COMPONENT_SWIZZLE_G</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>components.b</td>
<td>VK_COMPONENT_SWIZZLE_B</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>components.a</td>
<td>VK_COMPONENT_SWIZZLE_A</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To destroy an image view, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkDestroyImageView(
    VkDevice device,
    VkImageView imageView,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator);
```

• **device** is the logical device that destroys the image view.

• **imageView** is the image view to destroy.

• **pAllocator** controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.

**Valid Usage**

- **VUID-vkDestroyImageView-imageView-01026**
  All submitted commands that refer to `imageView` must have completed execution

- **VUID-vkDestroyImageView-imageView-01027**
  If `VkAllocationCallbacks` were provided when `imageView` was created, a compatible set of callbacks must be provided here

- **VUID-vkDestroyImageView-imageView-01028**
  If no `VkAllocationCallbacks` were provided when `imageView` was created, **pAllocator must be NULL**
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkDestroyImageView-device-parameter**
  
  `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- **VUID-vkDestroyImageView-imageView-parameter**
  
  If `imageView` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, `imageView` must be a valid `VkImageView` handle

- **VUID-vkDestroyImageView-pAllocator-parameter**
  
  If `pAllocator` is not `NULL`, `pAllocator` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkAllocationCallbacks` structure

- **VUID-vkDestroyImageView-imageView-parent**
  
  If `imageView` is a valid handle, it must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from `device`

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `imageView` must be externally synchronized

12.5.1. Image View Format Features

Valid uses of a `VkImageView` may depend on the image view's format features, defined below. Such constraints are documented in the affected valid usage statement.

- If `VkImageViewCreateInfo::image` was created with `VK_IMAGE_TILING_LINEAR`, then the image view's set of format features is the value of `VkFormatProperties::linearTilingFeatures` found by calling `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties` on the same format as `VkImageViewCreateInfo::format`.

- If `VkImageViewCreateInfo::image` was created with `VK_IMAGE_TILING_OPTIMAL`, then the image view's set of format features is the value of `VkFormatProperties::optimalTilingFeatures` found by calling `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties` on the same format as `VkImageViewCreateInfo::format`.

12.6. Acceleration Structures

Acceleration structures are an opaque structure that is built by the implementation to more efficiently perform spatial queries on the provided geometric data. For this extension, an acceleration structure is either a top-level acceleration structure containing a set of bottom-level acceleration structures or a bottom-level acceleration structure containing either a set of axis-aligned bounding boxes for custom geometry or a set of triangles.

Each instance in the top-level acceleration structure contains a reference to a bottom-level acceleration structure as well as an instance transform plus information required to index into the shader bindings. The top-level acceleration structure is what is bound to the acceleration descriptor, for example to trace inside the shader in the ray tracing pipeline.
Acceleration structures are represented by `VkAccelerationStructureKHR` handles:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
VK_DEFINE_NON_DISPATCHABLE_HANDLE(VkAccelerationStructureKHR)
```

To create an acceleration structure, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
VkResult vkCreateAccelerationStructureKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkAccelerationStructureCreateInfoKHR* pCreateInfo,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator,
    VkAccelerationStructureKHR* pAccelerationStructure);
```

- `device` is the logical device that creates the acceleration structure object.
- `pCreateInfo` is a pointer to a `VkAccelerationStructureCreateInfoKHR` structure containing parameters affecting creation of the acceleration structure.
- `pAllocator` controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
- `pAccelerationStructure` is a pointer to a `VkAccelerationStructureKHR` handle in which the resulting acceleration structure object is returned.

Similar to other objects in Vulkan, the acceleration structure creation merely creates an object with a specific “shape”. The type and quantity of geometry that can be built into an acceleration structure is determined by the parameters of `VkAccelerationStructureCreateInfoKHR`.

Populating the data in the object after allocating and binding memory is done with commands such as `vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR`, `vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR`, `vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureKHR`, and `vkCopyAccelerationStructureKHR`.

The input buffers passed to acceleration structure build commands will be referenced by the implementation for the duration of the command. After the command completes, the acceleration structure may hold a reference to any acceleration structure specified by an active instance contained therein. Apart from this referencing, acceleration structures must be fully self-contained. The application may re-use or free any memory which was used by the command as an input or as scratch without affecting the results of ray traversal.
Valid Usage

• VUID-vkCreateAccelerationStructureKHR-accelerationStructure-03611
  The **accelerationStructure** feature **must** be enabled

• VUID-vkCreateAccelerationStructureKHR-deviceAddress-03488
  If **VkAccelerationStructureCreateInfoKHR::deviceAddress** is not zero, the **accelerationStructureCaptureReplay** feature **must** be enabled

• VUID-vkCreateAccelerationStructureKHR-device-03489
  If **device** was created with multiple physical devices, then the **bufferDeviceAddressMultiDevice** feature **must** be enabled

Valid Usage (Implicit)

• VUID-vkCreateAccelerationStructureKHR-device-parameter
  **device** **must** be a valid **VkDevice** handle

• VUID-vkCreateAccelerationStructureKHR-pCreateInfo-parameter
  **pCreateInfo** **must** be a valid pointer to a valid **VkAccelerationStructureCreateInfoKHR** structure

• VUID-vkCreateAccelerationStructureKHR-pAllocator-parameter
  If **pAllocator** is not **NULL**, **pAllocator** **must** be a valid pointer to a valid **VkAllocationCallbacks** structure

• VUID-vkCreateAccelerationStructureKHR-pAccelerationStructure-parameter
  **pAccelerationStructure** **must** be a valid pointer to a **VkAccelerationStructureKHR** handle

Return Codes

**Success**

• **VK_SUCCESS**

**Failure**

• **VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY**
• **VK_ERROR_INVALID_OPAQUE_CAPTURE_ADDRESS_KHR**

The **VkAccelerationStructureCreateInfoKHR** structure is defined as:
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure

typedef struct VkAccelerationStructureCreateInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkAccelerationStructureCreateFlagsKHR createFlags;
    VkBuffer buffer;
    VkDeviceSize offset;
    VkDeviceSize size;
    VkAccelerationStructureTypeKHR type;
    VkDeviceAddress deviceAddress;
} VkAccelerationStructureCreateInfoKHR;

• sType is the type of this structure.

• pNext is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.

• createFlags is a bitmask of VkAccelerationStructureCreateFlagBitsKHR specifying additional creation parameters of the acceleration structure.

• buffer is the buffer on which the acceleration structure will be stored.

• offset is an offset in bytes from the base address of the buffer at which the acceleration structure will be stored, and must be a multiple of 256.

• size is the size required for the acceleration structure.

• type is a VkAccelerationStructureTypeKHR value specifying the type of acceleration structure that will be created.

• deviceAddress is the device address requested for the acceleration structure if the accelerationStructureCaptureReplay feature is being used.

If deviceAddress is zero, no specific address is requested.

If deviceAddress is not zero, deviceAddress must be an address retrieved from an identically created acceleration structure on the same implementation. The acceleration structure must also be placed on an identically created buffer and at the same offset.

Applications should avoid creating acceleration structures with application-provided addresses and implementation-provided addresses in the same process, to reduce the likelihood of VK_ERROR_INVALID_OPAQUE_CAPTURE_ADDRESS_KHR errors.
Note

The expected usage for this is that a trace capture/replay tool will add the `VK_BUFFER_CREATE_DEVICE_ADDRESS_CAPTURE_REPLAY_BIT` flag to all buffers that use `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_SHADER_DEVICE_ADDRESS_BIT`, and will add `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_SHADER_DEVICE_ADDRESS_BIT` to all buffers used as storage for an acceleration structure where `deviceAddress` is not zero. During capture the tool will save the queried opaque device addresses in the trace. During replay, the buffers will be created specifying the original address so any address values stored in the trace data will remain valid.

Implementations are expected to separate such buffers in the GPU address space so normal allocations will avoid using these addresses. Apps/tools should avoid mixing app-provided and implementation-provided addresses for buffers created with `VK_BUFFER_CREATE_DEVICE_ADDRESS_CAPTURE_REPLAY_BIT`, to avoid address space allocation conflicts.

Applications should create an acceleration structure with a specific `VkAccelerationStructureTypeKHR` other than `VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_GENERIC_KHR`.

If the acceleration structure will be the target of a build operation, the required size for an acceleration structure can be queried with `vkGetAccelerationStructureBuildSizesKHR`. If the acceleration structure is going to be the target of a compacting copy, `vkCmdWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR` or `vkWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR` can be used to obtain the compacted size required.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkAccelerationStructureCreateInfoKHR-deviceAddress-03612**
  If `deviceAddress` is not zero, `createFlags` must include `VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_CREATE_DEVICE_ADDRESS_CAPTURE_REPLAY_BIT_KHR`.

- **VUID-VkAccelerationStructureCreateInfoKHR-createFlags-03613**
  If `createFlags` includes `VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_CREATE_DEVICE_ADDRESS_CAPTURE_REPLAY_BIT_KHR`, `VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructureFeaturesKHR::accelerationStructureCaptureReplay` must be `VK_TRUE`.

- **VUID-VkAccelerationStructureCreateInfoKHR-buffer-03614**
  `buffer` must have been created with a usage value containing `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_STORAGE_BIT_KHR`.

- **VUID-VkAccelerationStructureCreateInfoKHR-buffer-03615**
  `buffer` must not have been created with `VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT`.

- **VUID-VkAccelerationStructureCreateInfoKHR-offset-03616**
  The sum of `offset` and `size` must be less than the size of `buffer`.

- **VUID-VkAccelerationStructureCreateInfoKHR-offset-03734**
  `offset` must be a multiple of 256 bytes.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **sType** must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_CREATE_INFO_KHR`
- **pNext** must be `NULL`
- **createFlags** must be a valid combination of `VkAccelerationStructureCreateFlagBitsKHR` values
- **buffer** must be a valid `VkBuffer` handle
- **type** must be a valid `VkAccelerationStructureTypeKHR` value

To get the build sizes for an acceleration structure, call:

```c
void vkGetAccelerationStructureBuildSizesKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    VkAccelerationStructureBuildTypeKHR buildType,
    const VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR* pBuildInfo,
    const uint32_t* pMaxPrimitiveCounts,
    VkAccelerationStructureBuildSizesInfoKHR* pSizeInfo);
```

- **device** is the logical device that will be used for creating the acceleration structure.
- **buildType** defines whether host or device operations (or both) are being queried for.
- **pBuildInfo** is a pointer to a `VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR` structure describing parameters of a build operation.
- **pMaxPrimitiveCounts** is a pointer to an array of `pBuildInfo->geometryCount` `uint32_t` values defining the number of primitives built into each geometry.
- **pSizeInfo** is a pointer to a `VkAccelerationStructureBuildSizesInfoKHR` structure which returns the size required for an acceleration structure and the sizes required for the scratch buffers, given the build parameters.

The `srcAccelerationStructure`, `dstAccelerationStructure`, and `mode` members of `pBuildInfo` are ignored. Any `VkDeviceOrHostAddressKHR` members of `pBuildInfo` are ignored by this command, except that the `hostAddress` member of `VkAccelerationStructureGeometryTrianglesDataKHR` `::transformData` will be examined to check if it is `NULL`.

An acceleration structure created with the `accelerationStructureSize` returned by this command supports any build or update with a `VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR` structure and array of `VkAccelerationStructureBuildRangeInfoKHR` structures subject to the following properties:

- The **build command** is a host build command, and **buildType** is
The build command is a device build command, and buildType is
VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_TYPE_DEVICE_KHR or
VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_TYPE_HOST_OR_DEVICE_KHR
• For VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR:
  ◦ Its type, and flags members are equal to those specified in pBuildInfo.
  ◦ geometryCount is less than or equal to that specified in pBuildInfo.
  ◦ For each element of either pGeometries or ppGeometries at a given index, its geometryType member is equal to that specified in pBuildInfo.
  ◦ For each element of either pGeometries or ppGeometries at a given index, with a geometryType member equal to VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR, the vertexFormat and indexType members of geometry.triangles are equal to those specified in the same element in pBuildInfo.
  ◦ For each element of either pGeometries or ppGeometries at a given index, with a geometryType member equal to VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR, the maxVertex member of geometry.triangles is less than or equal to that specified in the same element in pBuildInfo.
  ◦ For each element of either pGeometries or ppGeometries at a given index, with a geometryType member equal to VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR, if the applicable address in the transformData member of geometry.triangles is not NULL, the corresponding transformData.hostAddress parameter in pBuildInfo is not NULL.
• For each VkAccelerationStructureBuildRangeInfoKHR corresponding to the VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR:
  ◦ Its primitiveCount member is less than or equal to the corresponding element of pMaxPrimitiveCounts.

Similarly, the updateScratchSize value will support any build command specifying the VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR mode under the above conditions, and the buildScratchSize value will support any build command specifying the VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_BUILD_KHR mode under the above conditions.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkGetAccelerationStructureBuildSizesKHR-rayTracingPipeline-03617
  The `rayTracingPipeline` or `rayQuery` feature must be enabled

- VUID-vkGetAccelerationStructureBuildSizesKHR-device-03618
  If `device` was created with multiple physical devices, then the `bufferDeviceAddressMultiDevice` feature must be enabled

- VUID-vkGetAccelerationStructureBuildSizesKHR-pBuildInfo-03619
  If `pBuildInfo->geometryCount` is not 0, `pMaxPrimitiveCounts` must be a valid pointer to an array of `pBuildInfo->geometryCount` `uint32_t` values

- VUID-vkGetAccelerationStructureBuildSizesKHR-pBufferInfo-03785
  If `pBuildInfo->pGeometries` or `pBuildInfo->ppGeometries` has a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_INSTANCES_KHR`, each `pMaxPrimitiveCounts[i]` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructurePropertiesKHR::maxInstanceCount`

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetAccelerationStructureBuildSizesKHR-device-parameter
  `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- VUID-vkGetAccelerationStructureBuildSizesKHR-buildType-parameter
  `buildType` must be a valid `VkAccelerationStructureBuildTypeKHR` value

- VUID-vkGetAccelerationStructureBuildSizesKHR-pBuildInfo-parameter
  `pBuildInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR` structure

- VUID-vkGetAccelerationStructureBuildSizesKHR-pMaxPrimitiveCounts-parameter
  If `pMaxPrimitiveCounts` is not NULL, `pMaxPrimitiveCounts` must be a valid pointer to an array of `pBuildInfo->geometryCount` `uint32_t` values

- VUID-vkGetAccelerationStructureBuildSizesKHR-pSizeInfo-parameter
  `pSizeInfo` must be a valid pointer to a `VkAccelerationStructureBuildSizesInfoKHR` structure

The `VkAccelerationStructureBuildSizesInfoKHR` structure describes the required build sizes for an acceleration structure and scratch buffers and is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
typedef struct VkAccelerationStructureBuildSizesInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkDeviceSize accelerationStructureSize;
    VkDeviceSize updateScratchSize;
    VkDeviceSize buildScratchSize;
} VkAccelerationStructureBuildSizesInfoKHR;
```
• `sType` is the type of this structure.

• `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.

• `accelerationStructureSize` is the size in bytes required in a `VkAccelerationStructureKHR` for a build or update operation.

• `updateScratchSize` is the size in bytes required in a scratch buffer for an update operation.

• `buildScratchSize` is the size in bytes required in a scratch buffer for a build operation.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- `VUID-VkAccelerationStructureBuildSizesInfoKHR-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_SIZES_INFO_KHR`

- `VUID-VkAccelerationStructureBuildSizesInfoKHR-pNext-pNext
  pNext must be NULL`

Values which can be set in `VkAccelerationStructureCreateInfoKHR::type` specifying the type of acceleration structure, are:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
typedef enum VkAccelerationStructureTypeKHR {
  VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_TOP_LEVEL_KHR = 0,
  VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BOTTOM_LEVEL_KHR = 1,
  VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_GENERIC_KHR = 2,
} VkAccelerationStructureTypeKHR;
```

- `VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_TOP_LEVEL_KHR` is a top-level acceleration structure containing instance data referring to bottom-level acceleration structures.

- `VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BOTTOM_LEVEL_KHR` is a bottom-level acceleration structure containing the AABBs or geometry to be intersected.

- `VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_GENERIC_KHR` is an acceleration structure whose type is determined at build time used for special circumstances.

Bits which can be set in `VkAccelerationStructureCreateInfoKHR::createFlags` specifying additional creation parameters for acceleration structures, are:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
typedef enum VkAccelerationStructureCreateFlagBitsKHR {
  VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_CREATE_DEVICE_ADDRESS_CAPTURE_REPLAY_BIT_KHR = 0x00000001,
} VkAccelerationStructureCreateFlagBitsKHR;
```

- `VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_CREATEDEVICE_ADDRESS_CAPTURE_REPLAY_BIT_KHR` specifies that the acceleration structure’s address can be saved and reused on a subsequent run.
VkAccelerationStructureCreateFlagsKHR is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more VkAccelerationStructureCreateFlagBitsKHR.

Bits which can be set in VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR::flags specifying additional parameters for acceleration structure builds, are:

- VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_ALLOW_UPDATE_BIT_KHR indicates that the specified acceleration structure can be updated with update of VK_TRUE in vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR.
- VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_ALLOW_COMPACTION_BIT_KHR indicates that the specified acceleration structure can act as the source for a copy acceleration structure command with mode of VK_COPY_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_COMPACT_KHR to produce a compacted acceleration structure.
- VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_PREFER_FAST_TRACE_BIT_KHR indicates that the given acceleration structure build should prioritize trace performance over build time.
- VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_PREFER_FAST_BUILD_BIT_KHR indicates that the given acceleration structure build should prioritize build time over trace performance.
- VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_LOW_MEMORY_BIT_KHR indicates that this acceleration structure should minimize the size of the scratch memory and the final result acceleration structure, potentially at the expense of build time or trace performance.

**Note**

VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_ALLOW_UPDATE_BIT_KHR and VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_ALLOW_COMPACTION_BIT_KHR may take more time and memory than a normal build, and so should only be used when those features are needed.
Geometry types are specified by `VkGeometryTypeKHR`, which takes values:

```c
typedef enum VkGeometryTypeKHR {
    VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR = 0,
    VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_AABBS_KHR = 1,
    VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_INSTANCES_KHR = 2,
} VkGeometryTypeKHR;
```

- `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR` specifies a geometry type consisting of triangles.
- `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_AABBS_KHR` specifies a geometry type consisting of axis-aligned bounding boxes.
- `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_INSTANCES_KHR` specifies a geometry type consisting of acceleration structure instances.

Bits specifying additional parameters for geometries in acceleration structure builds, are:

```c
typedef enum VkGeometryFlagBitsKHR {
    VK_GEOMETRY_OPAQUE_BIT_KHR = 0x00000001,
    VK_GEOMETRY_NO_DUPLICATE_ANY_HIT_INVOCATION_BIT_KHR = 0x00000002,
} VkGeometryFlagBitsKHR;
```

- `VK_GEOMETRY_OPAQUE_BIT_KHR` indicates that this geometry does not invoke the any-hit shaders even if present in a hit group.
- `VK_GEOMETRY_NO_DUPLICATE_ANY_HIT_INVOCATION_BIT_KHR` indicates that the implementation must only call the any-hit shader a single time for each primitive in this geometry. If this bit is absent an implementation may invoke the any-hit shader more than once for this geometry.

To destroy an acceleration structure, call:

```c
void vkDestroyAccelerationStructureKHR(
    VkDevice device,                  // Logical device
    VkAccelerationStructureKHR accelerationStructure, // Acceleration structure to destroy
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator); // Controls host memory allocation
```

- `device` is the logical device that destroys the acceleration structure.
- `accelerationStructure` is the acceleration structure to destroy.
- `pAllocator` controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkDestroyAccelerationStructureKHR-accelerationStructure-02442
  All submitted commands that refer to accelerationStructure must have completed execution

- VUID-vkDestroyAccelerationStructureKHR-accelerationStructure-02443
  If VkAllocationCallbacks were provided when accelerationStructure was created, a compatible set of callbacks must be provided here

- VUID-vkDestroyAccelerationStructureKHR-accelerationStructure-02444
  If no VkAllocationCallbacks were provided when accelerationStructure was created, pAllocator must be NULL

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkDestroyAccelerationStructureKHR-device-parameter
  device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- VUID-vkDestroyAccelerationStructureKHR-accelerationStructure-parameter
  If accelerationStructure is not VK_NULL_HANDLE, accelerationStructure must be a valid VkAccelerationStructureKHR handle

- VUID-vkDestroyAccelerationStructureKHR-pAllocator-parameter
  If pAllocator is not NULL, pAllocator must be a valid pointer to a valid VkAllocationCallbacks structure

- VUID-vkDestroyAccelerationStructureKHR-accelerationStructure-parent
  If accelerationStructure is a valid handle, it must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from device

Host Synchronization

- Host access to accelerationStructure must be externally synchronized

Possible values of buildType in vkGetAccelerationStructureBuildSizesKHR are:

// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
typedef enum VkAccelerationStructureBuildTypeKHR {
    VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_TYPE_HOST_KHR = 0,
    VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_TYPE_DEVICE_KHR = 1,
    VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_TYPE_HOST_OR_DEVICE_KHR = 2,
} VkAccelerationStructureBuildTypeKHR;

- VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_TYPE_HOST_KHR requests the memory requirement for operations performed by the host.
- VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_TYPE_DEVICE_KHR requests the memory requirement for
operations performed by the device.

- **VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_TYPE_HOST_OR_DEVICE_KHR** requests the memory requirement for operations performed by either the host, or the device.

To query the 64-bit device address for an acceleration structure, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
VkDeviceAddress vkGetAccelerationStructureDeviceAddressKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkAccelerationStructureDeviceAddressInfoKHR* pInfo);
```

- **device** is the logical device that the acceleration structure was created on.
- **pInfo** is a pointer to a `VkAccelerationStructureDeviceAddressInfoKHR` structure specifying the acceleration structure to retrieve an address for.

The 64-bit return value is an address of the acceleration structure, which can be used for device and shader operations that involve acceleration structures, such as ray traversal and acceleration structure building.

If the acceleration structure was created with a non-zero value of `VkAccelerationStructureCreateInfoKHR::deviceAddress`, the return value will be the same address.

If the acceleration structure was created with a type of `VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_GENERIC_KHR`, the returned address **must** be consistent with the relative offset to other acceleration structures with type `VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_GENERIC_KHR` allocated with the same `VkBuffer`. That is, the difference in returned addresses between the two **must** be the same as the difference in offsets provided at acceleration structure creation.

---

**Note**

The acceleration structure device address **may** be different from the buffer device address corresponding to the acceleration structure's start offset in its storage buffer for acceleration structure types other than `VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_GENERIC_KHR`.

---

**Valid Usage**

- **VUID-vkGetAccelerationStructureDeviceAddressKHR-device-03504**

  If **device** was created with multiple physical devices, then the `bufferDeviceAddressMultiDevice` feature **must** be enabled.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetAccelerationStructureDeviceAddressKHR-device-parameter
device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- VUID-vkGetAccelerationStructureDeviceAddressKHR-pInfo-parameter
pInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid VkAccelerationStructureDeviceAddressInfoKHR structure

The VkAccelerationStructureDeviceAddressInfoKHR structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
typedef struct VkAccelerationStructureDeviceAddressInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkAccelerationStructureKHR accelerationStructure;
} VkAccelerationStructureDeviceAddressInfoKHR;
```

- sType is the type of this structure.
- pNext is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- accelerationStructure specifies the acceleration structure whose address is being queried.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkAccelerationStructureDeviceAddressInfoKHR-sType-sType
sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_DEVICE_ADDRESS_INFO_KHR

- VUID-VkAccelerationStructureDeviceAddressInfoKHR-pNext-pNext
pNext must be NULL

- VUID-VkAccelerationStructureDeviceAddressInfoKHR-accelerationStructure-parameter
accelerationStructure must be a valid VkAccelerationStructureKHR handle

12.7. Resource Memory Association

Resources are initially created as virtual allocations with no backing memory. Device memory is allocated separately (see Device Memory) and then associated with the resource. This association is done differently for sparse and non-sparse resources.

Resources created with any of the sparse creation flags are considered sparse resources. Resources created without these flags are non-sparse. The details on resource memory association for sparse resources is described in Sparse Resources.

Non-sparse resources must be bound completely and contiguously to a single VkDeviceMemory object before the resource is passed as a parameter to any of the following operations:
• creating image or buffer views
• updating descriptor sets
• recording commands in a command buffer

Once bound, the memory binding is immutable for the lifetime of the resource.

In a logical device representing more than one physical device, buffer and image resources exist on all physical devices but **can** be bound to memory differently on each. Each such replicated resource is an *instance* of the resource. For sparse resources, each instance **can** be bound to memory arbitrarily differently. For non-sparse resources, each instance **can** either be bound to the local or a peer instance of the memory, or for images **can** be bound to rectangular regions from the local and/or peer instances. When a resource is used in a descriptor set, each physical device interprets the descriptor according to its own instance’s binding to memory.

**Note**
There are no new copy commands to transfer data between physical devices. Instead, an application **can** create a resource with a peer mapping and use it as the source or destination of a transfer command executed by a single physical device to copy the data from one physical device to another.

To determine the memory requirements for a buffer resource, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkGetBufferMemoryRequirements
    (VkDevice device,
     VkBuffer buffer,
     VkMemoryRequirements* pMemoryRequirements);
```

• *device* is the logical device that owns the buffer.
• *buffer* is the buffer to query.
• *pMemoryRequirements* is a pointer to a *VkMemoryRequirements* structure in which the memory requirements of the buffer object are returned.

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

• VUID-vkGetBufferMemoryRequirements-device-parameter
  - *device* must be a valid *VkDevice* handle

• VUID-vkGetBufferMemoryRequirements-buffer-parameter
  - *buffer* must be a valid *VkBuffer* handle

• VUID-vkGetBufferMemoryRequirements-pMemoryRequirements-parameter
  - *pMemoryRequirements* must be a valid pointer to a *VkMemoryRequirements* structure

• VUID-vkGetBufferMemoryRequirements-buffer-parent
  - *buffer* must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from *device*
To determine the memory requirements for an image resource which is not created with the `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_DISJOINT_BIT` flag set, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkGetImageMemoryRequirements(
    VkDevice device,
    VkImage image,
    VkMemoryRequirements* pMemoryRequirements);
```

- `device` is the logical device that owns the image.
- `image` is the image to query.
- `pMemoryRequirements` is a pointer to a `VkMemoryRequirements` structure in which the memory requirements of the image object are returned.

### Valid Usage

- VUID-vkGetImageMemoryRequirements-image-01588
  - `image` must not have been created with the `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_DISJOINT_BIT` flag set

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetImageMemoryRequirements-device-parameter
  - `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle
- VUID-vkGetImageMemoryRequirements-image-parameter
  - `image` must be a valid `VkImage` handle
- VUID-vkGetImageMemoryRequirements-pMemoryRequirements-parameter
  - `pMemoryRequirements` must be a valid pointer to a `VkMemoryRequirements` structure
- VUID-vkGetImageMemoryRequirements-image-parent
  - `image` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from `device`

The `VkMemoryRequirements` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkMemoryRequirements {
    VkDeviceSize size;
    VkDeviceSize alignment;
    uint32_t memoryTypeBits;
} VkMemoryRequirements;
```

- `size` is the size, in bytes, of the memory allocation required for the resource.
- `alignment` is the alignment, in bytes, of the offset within the allocation required for the resource.
• memoryTypeBits is a bitmask and contains one bit set for every supported memory type for the resource. Bit \( i \) is set if and only if the memory type \( i \) in the VkPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties structure for the physical device is supported for the resource.

If the resource being queried was created with the VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D11_TEXTURE_BIT, VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D11_TEXTURE_KMT_BIT, or VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_RESOURCE_BIT external memory handle type, the value of size has no meaning and should be ignored.

The implementation guarantees certain properties about the memory requirements returned by vkGetBufferMemoryRequirements2, vkGetImageMemoryRequirements2, vkGetBufferMemoryRequirements and vkGetImageMemoryRequirements:

• The memoryTypeBits member always contains at least one bit set.

• If buffer is a VkBuffer not created with the VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT bit set, or if image is linear image, then the memoryTypeBits member always contains at least one bit set corresponding to a VkMemoryType with a propertyFlags that has both the VK_MEMORY_PROPERTY_HOST_VISIBLE_BIT bit and the VK_MEMORY_PROPERTY_HOST_COHERENT_BIT bit set. In other words, mappable coherent memory can always be attached to these objects.

• If buffer was created with VkExternalMemoryBufferCreateInfo::handleTypes set to 0 or image was created with VkExternalMemoryImageCreateInfo::handleTypes set to 0, the memoryTypeBits member always contains at least one bit set corresponding to a VkMemoryType with a propertyFlags that has the VK_MEMORY_PROPERTY_DEVICE_LOCAL_BIT bit set.

• The memoryTypeBits member is identical for all VkBuffer objects created with the same value for the flags and usage members in the VkBufferCreateInfo structure and the handleTypes member of the VkExternalMemoryBufferCreateInfo structure passed to vkCreateBuffer. Further, if usage1 and usage2 of type VkBufferUsageFlags are such that the bits set in usage2 are a subset of the bits set in usage1, and they have the same flags and VkExternalMemoryBufferCreateInfo::handleTypes, then the bits set in memoryTypeBits returned for usage1 must be a subset of the bits set in memoryTypeBits returned for usage2, for all values of flags.

• The alignment member is a power of two.

• The alignment member is identical for all VkBuffer objects created with the same combination of values for the usage and flags members in the VkBufferCreateInfo structure passed to vkCreateBuffer.

• The alignment member satisfies the buffer descriptor offset alignment requirements associated with the VkBuffer’s usage:
  - If usage included VK_BUFFER_USAGE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT or VK_BUFFER_USAGE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT, alignment must be an integer multiple of VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::minTexelBufferOffsetAlignment.
  - If usage included VK_BUFFER_USAGE_UNIFORM_BUFFER_BIT, alignment must be an integer multiple of VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::minUniformBufferOffsetAlignment.
  - If usage included VK_BUFFER_USAGE_STORAGE_BUFFER_BIT, alignment must be an integer multiple of VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::minStorageBufferOffsetAlignment.
For images created with a color format, the `memoryTypeBits` member is identical for all `VkImage` objects created with the same combination of values for the `tiling` member, the `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT` bit of the `flags` member, the `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPLIT_INSTANCE_BIND_REGIONS_BIT` bit of the `flags` member, `handleTypes` member of `VkExternalMemoryImageCreateInfo`, and the `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSIENT_ATTACHMENT_BIT` of the `usage` member in the `VkImageCreateInfo` structure passed to `vkCreateImage`.

For images created with a depth/stencil format, the `memoryTypeBits` member is identical for all `VkImage` objects created with the same combination of values for the `format` member, the `tiling` member, the `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT` bit of the `flags` member, the `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPLIT_INSTANCE_BIND_REGIONS_BIT` bit of the `flags` member, `handleTypes` member of `VkExternalMemoryImageCreateInfo`, and the `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSIENT_ATTACHMENT_BIT` of the `usage` member in the `VkImageCreateInfo` structure passed to `vkCreateImage`.

If the memory requirements are for a `VkImage`, the `memoryTypeBits` member must not refer to a `VkMemoryType` with a `propertyFlags` that has the `VK_MEMORY_PROPERTY_LAZILY_ALLOCATED_BIT` bit set if the image did not have `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSIENT_ATTACHMENT_BIT` bit set in the `usage` member of the `VkImageCreateInfo` structure passed to `vkCreateImage`.

If the memory requirements are for a `VkBuffer`, the `memoryTypeBits` member must not refer to a `VkMemoryType` with a `propertyFlags` that has the `VK_MEMORY_PROPERTY_LAZILY_ALLOCATED_BIT` bit set.

```
Note

The implication of this requirement is that lazily allocated memory is disallowed for buffers in all cases.
```

The `size` member is identical for all `VkBuffer` objects created with the same combination of creation parameters specified in `VkBufferCreateInfo` and its `pNext` chain.

The `size` member is identical for all `VkImage` objects created with the same combination of creation parameters specified in `VkImageCreateInfo` and its `pNext` chain.

```
Note

This, however, does not imply that they interpret the contents of the bound memory identically with each other. That additional guarantee, however, can be explicitly requested using `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_ALIAS_BIT`.
```

To determine the memory requirements for a buffer resource, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_memory_requirements2
void vkGetBufferMemoryRequirements2KHR(
    VkDevice device,       // Provided by VK_KHR_get_memory_requirements2
    const VkBufferMemoryRequirementsInfo2* pInfo,    // Provided by VK_KHR_get_memory_requirements2
    VkMemoryRequirements2* pMemoryRequirements);
```

- `device` is the logical device that owns the buffer.
- `pInfo` is a pointer to a `VkBufferMemoryRequirementsInfo2` structure containing parameters required for the memory requirements query.
• **pMemoryRequirements** is a pointer to a **VkMemoryRequirements2** structure in which the memory requirements of the buffer object are returned.

---

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-vkGetBufferMemoryRequirements2-device-parameter
device must be a valid **VkDevice** handle

- VUID-vkGetBufferMemoryRequirements2-pInfo-parameter
pInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid **VkBufferMemoryRequirementsInfo2** structure

- VUID-vkGetBufferMemoryRequirements2-pMemoryRequirements-parameter
pMemoryRequirements must be a valid pointer to a **VkMemoryRequirements2** structure

The **VkBufferMemoryRequirementsInfo2** structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkBufferMemoryRequirementsInfo2 {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkBuffer buffer;
} VkBufferMemoryRequirementsInfo2;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_memory_requirements2
typedef VkBufferMemoryRequirementsInfo2 VkBufferMemoryRequirementsInfo2KHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **buffer** is the buffer to query.

---

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-VkBufferMemoryRequirementsInfo2-sType-sType
  sType must be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BUFFER_MEMORY_REQUIREMENTS_INFO_2**

- VUID-VkBufferMemoryRequirementsInfo2-pNext-pNext
  pNext must be **NULL**

- VUID-VkBufferMemoryRequirementsInfo2-buffer-parameter
  buffer must be a valid **VkBuffer** handle

To determine the memory requirements for an image resource, call:
void vkGetImageMemoryRequirements2KHR(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkImageMemoryRequirementsInfo2* pInfo,
    VkMemoryRequirements2* pMemoryRequirements
);

- `device` is the logical device that owns the image.
- `pInfo` is a pointer to a `VkImageMemoryRequirementsInfo2` structure containing parameters required for the memory requirements query.
- `pMemoryRequirements` is a pointer to a `VkMemoryRequirements2` structure in which the memory requirements of the image object are returned.

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-vkGetImageMemoryRequirements2-device-parameter
  - `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle
- VUID-vkGetImageMemoryRequirements2-pInfo-parameter
  - `pInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkImageMemoryRequirementsInfo2` structure
- VUID-vkGetImageMemoryRequirements2-pMemoryRequirements-parameter
  - `pMemoryRequirements` must be a valid pointer to a `VkMemoryRequirements2` structure

The `VkImageMemoryRequirementsInfo2` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkImageMemoryRequirementsInfo2 {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkImage image;
} VkImageMemoryRequirementsInfo2;
```

or the equivalent

```c
typedef VkImageMemoryRequirementsInfo2 VkImageMemoryRequirementsInfo2KHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `image` is the image to query.
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkImageMemoryRequirementsInfo2-image-01589
  If image was created with a *multi-planar* format and the VK_IMAGE_CREATE_DISJOINT_BIT flag, there **must** be a VkImagePlaneMemoryRequirementsInfo included in the pNext chain of the VkImageMemoryRequirementsInfo2 structure

- VUID-VkImageMemoryRequirementsInfo2-image-01590
  If image was not created with the VK_IMAGE_CREATE_DISJOINT_BIT flag, there **must not** be a VkImagePlaneMemoryRequirementsInfo included in the pNext chain of the VkImageMemoryRequirementsInfo2 structure

- VUID-VkImageMemoryRequirementsInfo2-image-01591
  If image was created with a single-plane format, there **must not** be a VkImagePlaneMemoryRequirementsInfo included in the pNext chain of the VkImageMemoryRequirementsInfo2 structure

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkImageMemoryRequirementsInfo2-sType-sType
  sType **must** be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_MEMORY_REQUIREMENTS_INFO_2

- VUID-VkImageMemoryRequirementsInfo2-pNext-pNext
  pNext **must** be NULL or a pointer to a valid instance of VkImagePlaneMemoryRequirementsInfo

- VUID-VkImageMemoryRequirementsInfo2-sType-unique
  The sType value of each struct in the pNext chain **must** be unique

- VUID-VkImageMemoryRequirementsInfo2-image-parameter
  image **must** be a valid VkImage handle

To determine the memory requirements for a plane of a disjoint image, add a VkImagePlaneMemoryRequirementsInfo structure to the pNext chain of the VkImageMemoryRequirementsInfo2 structure.

The VkImagePlaneMemoryRequirementsInfo structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkImagePlaneMemoryRequirementsInfo {
    VkStructureType          sType;
    const void*               pNext;
    VkImageAspectFlagBits     planeAspect;
} VkImagePlaneMemoryRequirementsInfo;
```

or the equivalent
```
// Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
typedef VkImagePlaneMemoryRequirementsInfo VkImagePlaneMemoryRequirementsInfoKHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **planeAspect** is a **VkImageAspectFlagBits** value specifying the aspect corresponding to the image plane to query.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkImagePlaneMemoryRequirementsInfo-planeAspect-02281**
  
  If the image’s tiling is **VK_IMAGE_TILING_LINEAR** or **VK_IMAGE_TILING_OPTIMAL**, then `planeAspect` must be a single valid format plane for the image (that is, for a two-plane image `planeAspect` must be **VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT** or **VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT**, and for a three-plane image `planeAspect` must be **VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT**, **VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT** or **VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT**)

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkImagePlaneMemoryRequirementsInfo-sType-sType**
  
  **sType** must be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_PLANE_MEMORY_REQUIREMENTS_INFO**

- **VUID-VkImagePlaneMemoryRequirementsInfo-planeAspect-parameter**
  
  **planeAspect** must be a valid **VkImageAspectFlagBits** value

The **VkMemoryRequirements2** structure is defined as:

```
typedef struct VkMemoryRequirements2 {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkMemoryRequirements memoryRequirements;
} VkMemoryRequirements2;
```

or the equivalent

```
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_memory_requirements2
typedef VkMemoryRequirements2 VkMemoryRequirements2KHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **memoryRequirements** is a **VkMemoryRequirements** structure describing the memory requirements of the resource.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkMemoryRequirements2-sType-sType**
  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_REQUIREMENTS_2`

- **VUID-VkMemoryRequirements2-pNext-pNext**
  
  `pNext` must be `NULL` or a pointer to a valid instance of `VkMemoryDedicatedRequirements`

- **VUID-VkMemoryRequirements2-sType-unique**
  
  The `sType` value of each struct in the `pNext` chain must be unique

The `VkMemoryDedicatedRequirements` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkMemoryDedicatedRequirements {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkBool32 prefersDedicatedAllocation;
    VkBool32 requiresDedicatedAllocation;
} VkMemoryDedicatedRequirements;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_dedicated_allocation
typedef VkMemoryDedicatedRequirements VkMemoryDedicatedRequirementsKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `prefersDedicatedAllocation` specifies that the implementation would prefer a dedicated allocation for this resource. The application is still free to suballocate the resource but it may get better performance if a dedicated allocation is used.
- `requiresDedicatedAllocation` specifies that a dedicated allocation is required for this resource.

To determine the dedicated allocation requirements of a buffer or image resource, add a `VkMemoryDedicatedRequirements` structure to the `pNext` chain of the `VkMemoryRequirements2` structure passed as the `pMemoryRequirements` parameter of `vkGetBufferMemoryRequirements2` or `vkGetImageMemoryRequirements2`, respectively.

Constraints on the values returned for buffer resources are:

- `requiresDedicatedAllocation` may be `VK_TRUE` if the `pNext` chain of `VkBufferCreateInfo` for the call to `vkCreateBuffer` used to create the buffer being queried included a `VkExternalMemoryBufferCreateInfo` structure, and any of the handle types specified in `VkExternalMemoryBufferCreateInfo::handleTypes` requires dedicated allocation, as reported by `vkGetPhysicalDeviceExternalBufferProperties ::externalMemoryProperties.externalMemoryFeatures`. Otherwise, `requiresDedicatedAllocation` will be `VK_FALSE`. 

---

Chapter 12. Resource Creation
• When the implementation sets requiresDedicatedAllocation to VK_TRUE, it must also set prefersDedicatedAllocation to VK_TRUE.

• If VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT was set in VkBufferCreateInfo::flags when buffer was created, then both prefersDedicatedAllocation and requiresDedicatedAllocation will be VK_FALSE.

Constraints on the values returned for image resources are:

• requiresDedicatedAllocation may be VK_TRUE if the pNext chain of VkImageCreateInfo for the call to vkCreateImage used to create the image being queried included a VkExternalMemoryImageCreateInfo structure, and any of the handle types specified in VkExternalMemoryImageCreateInfo::handleTypes requires dedicated allocation, as reported by vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties2 in VkExternalImageFormatProperties::externalMemoryProperties.externalMemoryFeatures. Otherwise, requiresDedicatedAllocation will be VK_FALSE.

• If VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT was set in VkImageCreateInfo::flags when image was created, then both prefersDedicatedAllocation and requiresDedicatedAllocation will be VK_FALSE.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

• VUID-VkMemoryDedicatedRequirements-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_DEDICATED_REQUIREMENTS

To attach memory to a buffer object, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkBindBufferMemory(
    VkDevice device,
    VkBuffer buffer,
    VkDeviceMemory memory,
    VkDeviceSize memoryOffset);
```

• device is the logical device that owns the buffer and memory.

• buffer is the buffer to be attached to memory.

• memory is a VkDeviceMemory object describing the device memory to attach.

• memoryOffset is the start offset of the region of memory which is to be bound to the buffer. The number of bytes returned in the VkMemoryRequirements::size member in memory, starting from memoryOffset bytes, will be bound to the specified buffer.

vkBindBufferMemory is equivalent to passing the same parameters through VkBindBufferMemoryInfo to vkBindBufferMemory2.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkBindBufferMemory-buffer-01029
  buffer must not already be backed by a memory object

- VUID-vkBindBufferMemory-buffer-01030
  buffer must not have been created with any sparse memory binding flags

- VUID-vkBindBufferMemory-memoryOffset-01031
  memoryOffset must be less than the size of memory

- VUID-vkBindBufferMemory-memory-01035
  memory must have been allocated using one of the memory types allowed in the
  memoryTypeBits member of the VkMemoryRequirements structure returned from a call to
  vkGetBufferMemoryRequirements with buffer

- VUID-vkBindBufferMemory-memoryOffset-01036
  memoryOffset must be an integer multiple of the alignment member of the
  VkMemoryRequirements structure returned from a call to vkGetBufferMemoryRequirements with buffer

- VUID-vkBindBufferMemory-size-01037
  The size member of the VkMemoryRequirements structure returned from a call to
  vkGetBufferMemoryRequirements with buffer must be less than or equal to the size of memory
  minus memoryOffset

- VUID-vkBindBufferMemory-buffer-01444
  If buffer requires a dedicated allocation (as reported by
  vkGetBufferMemoryRequirements2 in VkMemoryDedicatedRequirements
  ::requiresDedicatedAllocation for buffer), memory must have been allocated with
  VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfo::buffer equal to buffer

- VUID-vkBindBufferMemory-memory-01508
  If the VkMemoryAllocateInfo provided when memory was allocated included a
  VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfo structure in its pNext chain, and
  VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfo::buffer was not VK_NULL_HANDLE, then buffer must
  equal VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfo::buffer, and memoryOffset must be zero

- VUID-vkBindBufferMemory-memory-02726
  If the value of VkExportMemoryAllocateInfo::handleTypes used to allocate memory is not 0, it
  must include at least one of the handles set in VkExternalMemoryBufferCreateInfo
  ::handleTypes when buffer was created

- VUID-vkBindBufferMemory-memory-02727
  If memory was allocated by a memory import operation, the external handle type of the
  imported memory must also have been set in VkExternalMemoryBufferCreateInfo
  ::handleTypes when buffer was created

- VUID-vkBindBufferMemory-bufferDeviceAddress-03339
  If the VkPhysicalDeviceBufferDeviceAddressFeatures::bufferDeviceAddress feature is
  enabled and buffer was created with the VK_BUFFER_USAGE_SHADER_DEVICE_ADDRESS_BIT bit
  set, memory must have been allocated with the VK_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_DEVICE_ADDRESS_BIT bit
  set
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkBindBufferMemory-device-parameter**
  - `device` **must** be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- **VUID-vkBindBufferMemory-buffer-parameter**
  - `buffer` **must** be a valid `VkBuffer` handle

- **VUID-vkBindBufferMemory-memory-parameter**
  - `memory` **must** be a valid `VkDeviceMemory` handle

- **VUID-vkBindBufferMemory-buffer-parent**
  - `buffer` **must** have been created, allocated, or retrieved from `device`

- **VUID-vkBindBufferMemory-memory-parent**
  - `memory` **must** have been created, allocated, or retrieved from `device`

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `buffer` **must** be externally synchronized

Return Codes

**Success**
- **VK_SUCCESS**

**Failure**
- **VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY**
- **VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY**
- **VK_ERROR_INVALID_OPAQUE_CAPTURE_ADDRESS_KHR**

To attach memory to buffer objects for one or more buffers at a time, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_bind_memory2
VkResult vkBindBufferMemory2KHR(
    VkDevice device,  // Provided by VK_KHR_bind_memory2
    uint32_t bindInfoCount,  // Provided by VK_KHR_bind_memory2
    const VkBindBufferMemoryInfo* pBindInfos);  // Provided by VK_KHR_bind_memory2
```

- `device` is the logical device that owns the buffers and memory.
- `bindInfoCount` is the number of elements in `pBindInfos`.
- `pBindInfos` is a pointer to an array of `bindInfoCount` `VkBindBufferMemoryInfo` structures describing buffers and memory to bind.

On some implementations, it **may** be more efficient to batch memory bindings into a single
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkBindBufferMemory2-device-parameter**
  
  `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- **VUID-vkBindBufferMemory2-pBindInfos-parameter**
  
  `pBindInfos` must be a valid pointer to an array of `bindInfoCount` valid `VkBindBufferMemoryInfo` structures

- **VUID-vkBindBufferMemory2-bindInfoCount-arraylength**
  
  `bindInfoCount` must be greater than 0

Return Codes

**Success**

- `VK_SUCCESS`

**Failure**

- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_INVALID_OPAQUE_CAPTURE_ADDRESS_KHR`

`VkBindBufferMemoryInfo` contains members corresponding to the parameters of `vkBindBufferMemory`.

The `VkBindBufferMemoryInfo` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkBindBufferMemoryInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkBuffer buffer;
    VkDeviceMemory memory;
    VkDeviceSize memoryOffset;
} VkBindBufferMemoryInfo;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_bind_memory2
typedef VkBindBufferMemoryInfo VkBindBufferMemoryInfoKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **buffer** is the buffer to be attached to memory.
- **memory** is a `VkDeviceMemory` object describing the device memory to attach.
- **memoryOffset** is the start offset of the region of **memory** which is to be bound to the buffer. The number of bytes returned in the `VkMemoryRequirements::size` member in **memory**, starting from **memoryOffset** bytes, will be bound to the specified buffer.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkBindBufferMemoryInfo-buffer-01029**
  
  **buffer** must not already be backed by a memory object

- **VUID-VkBindBufferMemoryInfo-buffer-01030**
  
  **buffer** must not have been created with any sparse memory binding flags

- **VUID-VkBindBufferMemoryInfo-memoryOffset-01031**
  
  **memoryOffset** must be less than the size of **memory**

- **VUID-VkBindBufferMemoryInfo-memory-01035**
  
  **memory** must have been allocated using one of the memory types allowed in the **memoryTypeBits** member of the **VkMemoryRequirements** structure returned from a call to **vkGetBufferMemoryRequirements** with **buffer**

- **VUID-VkBindBufferMemoryInfo-memoryOffset-01036**
  
  **memoryOffset** must be an integer multiple of the **alignment** member of the **VkMemoryRequirements** structure returned from a call to **vkGetBufferMemoryRequirements** with **buffer**

- **VUID-VkBindBufferMemoryInfo-size-01037**
  
  The **size** member of the **VkMemoryRequirements** structure returned from a call to **vkGetBufferMemoryRequirements** with **buffer** must be less than or equal to the size of **memory** minus **memoryOffset**

- **VUID-VkBindBufferMemoryInfo-buffer-01444**
  
  If **buffer** requires a dedicated allocation (as reported by **vkGetBufferMemoryRequirements2** in **VkMemoryDedicatedRequirements**::**requiresDedicatedAllocation** for **buffer**), **memory** must have been allocated with **VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfo**::**buffer** equal to **buffer**

- **VUID-VkBindBufferMemoryInfo-memory-01508**
  
  If the **VkMemoryAllocateInfo** provided when **memory** was allocated included a **VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfo** structure in its **pNext** chain, and **VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfo**::**buffer** was not **VK_NULL_HANDLE**, then **buffer** must equal **VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfo**::**buffer**, and **memoryOffset** must be zero

- **VUID-VkBindBufferMemoryInfo-memory-02726**
  
  If the value of **VkExportMemoryAllocateInfo**::**handleTypes** used to allocate **memory** is not 0, it must include at least one of the handles set in **VkExternalMemoryBufferCreateInfo**::**handleTypes** when **buffer** was created

- **VUID-VkBindBufferMemoryInfo-memory-02727**
  
  If **memory** was allocated by a memory import operation, the external handle type of the imported **memory** must also have been set in **VkExternalMemoryBufferCreateInfo**::**handleTypes** when **buffer** was created

- **VUID-VkBindBufferMemoryInfo-bufferDeviceAddress-03339**
  
  If the **VkPhysicalDeviceBufferDeviceAddressFeatures**::**bufferDeviceAddress** feature is enabled and **buffer** was created with the **VK_BUFFER_USAGE_SHADER_DEVICE_ADDRESS_BIT** bit set, **memory** must have been allocated with the **VK_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_DEVICE_ADDRESS_BIT** bit set
If the `pNext` chain includes a `VkBindBufferMemoryDeviceGroupInfo` structure, all instances of `memory` specified by `VkBindBufferMemoryDeviceGroupInfo::pDeviceIndices` must have been allocated.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **sType** must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BIND_BUFFER_MEMORY_INFO`
- **pNext** must be `NULL` or a pointer to a valid instance of `VkBindBufferMemoryDeviceGroupInfo`
- The **sType** value of each struct in the **pNext** chain must be unique
- **buffer** must be a valid `VkBuffer` handle
- **memory** must be a valid `VkDeviceMemory` handle
- Both of `buffer`, and `memory` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`

The `VkBindBufferMemoryDeviceGroupInfo` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkBindBufferMemoryDeviceGroupInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    uint32_t deviceIndexCount;
    const uint32_t* pDeviceIndices;
} VkBindBufferMemoryDeviceGroupInfo;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_device_group with VK_KHR_bind_memory2
typedef VkBindBufferMemoryDeviceGroupInfo VkBindBufferMemoryDeviceGroupInfoKHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **deviceIndexCount** is the number of elements in `pDeviceIndices`.
- **pDeviceIndices** is a pointer to an array of device indices.

If the `pNext` chain of `VkBindBufferMemoryInfo` includes a `VkBindBufferMemoryDeviceGroupInfo`
structure, then that structure determines how memory is bound to buffers across multiple devices in a device group.

If \texttt{deviceIndexCount} is greater than zero, then on device index i the buffer is attached to the instance of \texttt{memory} on the physical device with device index \texttt{pDeviceIndices[i]}.

If \texttt{deviceIndexCount} is zero and \texttt{memory} comes from a memory heap with the \texttt{VK_MEMORY_HEAP_MULTI_INSTANCE_BIT} bit set, then it is as if \texttt{pDeviceIndices} contains consecutive indices from zero to the number of physical devices in the logical device, minus one. In other words, by default each physical device attaches to its own instance of \texttt{memory}.

If \texttt{deviceIndexCount} is zero and \texttt{memory} comes from a memory heap without the \texttt{VK_MEMORY_HEAP_MULTI_INSTANCE_BIT} bit set, then it is as if \texttt{pDeviceIndices} contains an array of zeros. In other words, by default each physical device attaches to instance zero.

### Valid Usage

- VUID-VkBindBufferMemoryDeviceGroupInfo-deviceIndexCount-01606
  \texttt{deviceIndexCount} must either be zero or equal to the number of physical devices in the logical device

- VUID-VkBindBufferMemoryDeviceGroupInfo-pDeviceIndices-01607
  All elements of \texttt{pDeviceIndices} must be valid device indices

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkBindBufferMemoryDeviceGroupInfo-sType-sType
  \texttt{sType} must be \texttt{VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BIND_BUFFER_MEMORY_DEVICE_GROUP_INFO}

- VUID-VkBindBufferMemoryDeviceGroupInfo-pDeviceIndices-parameter
  If \texttt{deviceIndexCount} is not 0, \texttt{pDeviceIndices} must be a valid pointer to an array of \texttt{deviceIndexCount uint32_t} values

To attach memory to a \texttt{VkImage} object created without the \texttt{VK_IMAGE_CREATE_DISJOINT_BIT} set, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkBindImageMemory(
    VkDevice device,
    VkImage image,
    VkDeviceMemory memory,
    VkDeviceSize memoryOffset);
```

- \texttt{device} is the logical device that owns the image and memory.
- \texttt{image} is the image.
- \texttt{memory} is the \texttt{VkDeviceMemory} object describing the device memory to attach.
- \texttt{memoryOffset} is the start offset of the region of \texttt{memory} which is to be bound to the image. The
number of bytes returned in the `VkMemoryRequirements::size` member in `memory`, starting from `memoryOffset` bytes, will be bound to the specified image.

`vkBindImageMemory` is equivalent to passing the same parameters through `VkBindImageMemoryInfo` to `vkBindImageMemory2`. 
Valid Usage

• VUID-vkBindImageMemory-image-01044
  image must not already be backed by a memory object

• VUID-vkBindImageMemory-image-01045
  image must not have been created with any sparse memory binding flags

• VUID-vkBindImageMemory-memoryOffset-01046
  memoryOffset must be less than the size of memory

• VUID-vkBindImageMemory-image-01445
  If image requires a dedicated allocation (as reported by
  vkGetImageMemoryRequirements2 in VkMemoryDedicatedRequirements
  ::requiresDedicatedAllocation for image), memory must have been created with
  VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfo::image equal to image

• VUID-vkBindImageMemory-memory-01509
  If the VkMemoryAllocateInfo provided when memory was allocated included a
  VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfo structure in its pNext chain, and
  VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfo::image was not VK_NULL_HANDLE, then image must
  equal VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfo::image and memoryOffset must be zero

• VUID-vkBindImageMemory-memory-02728
  If the value of VkExportMemoryAllocateInfo::handleTypes used to allocate memory is not 0, it
  must include at least one of the handles set in VkExternalMemoryImageCreateInfo
  ::handleTypes when image was created

• VUID-vkBindImageMemory-memory-02729
  If memory was created by a memory import operation, the external handle type of the
  imported memory must also have been set in VkExternalMemoryImageCreateInfo
  ::handleTypes when image was created

• VUID-vkBindImageMemory-image-01608
  image must not have been created with the VK_IMAGE_CREATE_DISJOINT_BIT set

• VUID-vkBindImageMemory-memory-01047
  memory must have been allocated using one of the memory types allowed in the
  memoryTypeBits member of the VkMemoryRequirements structure returned from a call to
  vkGetImageMemoryRequirements with image

• VUID-vkBindImageMemory-memoryOffset-01048
  memoryOffset must be an integer multiple of the alignment member of the
  VkMemoryRequirements structure returned from a call to vkGetImageMemoryRequirements
  with image

• VUID-vkBindImageMemory-memory-size-01049
  The difference of the size of memory and memoryOffset must be greater than or equal to the
  size member of the VkMemoryRequirements structure returned from a call to
  vkGetImageMemoryRequirements with the same image
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkBindImageMemory-device-parameter
  device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- VUID-vkBindImageMemory-image-parameter
  image must be a valid VkImage handle

- VUID-vkBindImageMemory-memory-parameter
  memory must be a valid VkDeviceMemory handle

- VUID-vkBindImageMemory-image-parent
  image must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from device

- VUID-vkBindImageMemory-memory-parent
  memory must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from device

Host Synchronization

- Host access to image must be externally synchronized

Return Codes

Success
- VK_SUCCESS

Failure
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY

To attach memory to image objects for one or more images at a time, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_bind_image_memory2
VkResult vkBindImageMemory2KHR(
    VkDevice device,
    uint32_t bindInfoCount,
    const VkBindImageMemoryInfo* pBindInfos);
```

- device is the logical device that owns the images and memory.
- bindInfoCount is the number of elements in pBindInfos.
- pBindInfos is a pointer to an array of VkBindImageMemoryInfo structures, describing images and memory to bind.

On some implementations, it may be more efficient to batch memory bindings into a single command.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkBindImageMemory2-pBindInfos-02858
  If any VkBindImageMemoryInfo::image was created with VK_IMAGE_CREATE_DISJOINT_BIT then all planes of VkBindImageMemoryInfo::image must be bound individually in separate pBindInfos

- VUID-vkBindImageMemory2-pBindInfos-04006
  pBindInfos must not refer to the same image subresource more than once

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkBindImageMemory2-device-parameter
device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- VUID-vkBindImageMemory2-pBindInfos-parameter
  pBindInfos must be a valid pointer to an array of bindInfoCount valid VkBindImageMemoryInfo structures

- VUID-vkBindImageMemory2-bindInfoCount-arraylength
  bindInfoCount must be greater than 0

Return Codes

Success
  - VK_SUCCESS

Failure
  - VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
  - VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY

VkBindImageMemoryInfo contains members corresponding to the parameters of vkBindImageMemory.

The VkBindImageMemoryInfo structure is defined as:

typedef struct VkBindImageMemoryInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkImage image;
    VkDeviceMemory memory;
    VkDeviceSize memoryOffset;
} VkBindImageMemoryInfo;

or the equivalent
// Provided by VK_KHR_bind_memory2

typedef VkBindImageMemoryInfo VkBindImageMemoryInfoKHR;

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **image** is the image to be attached to memory.
- **memory** is a *VkDeviceMemory* object describing the device memory to attach.
- **memoryOffset** is the start offset of the region of **memory** which is to be bound to the image. The number of bytes returned in the *VkMemoryRequirements::size* member in **memory**, starting from **memoryOffset** bytes, will be bound to the specified image.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkBindImageMemoryInfo-image-01044**
  - `image` must not already be backed by a memory object

- **VUID-VkBindImageMemoryInfo-image-01045**
  - `image` must not have been created with any sparse memory binding flags

- **VUID-VkBindImageMemoryInfo-memoryOffset-01046**
  - `memoryOffset` must be less than the size of `memory`

- **VUID-VkBindImageMemoryInfo-image-01445**
  - If `image` requires a dedicated allocation (as reported by `vkGetImageMemoryRequirements2` in `VkMemoryDedicatedRequirements::requiresDedicatedAllocation` for `image`), `memory` must have been created with `VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfo::image` equal to `image`

- **VUID-VkBindImageMemoryInfo-memory-01509**
  - If the `VkMemoryAllocateInfo` provided when `memory` was allocated included a `VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfo` structure in its `pNext` chain, and `VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfo::image` was not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, then `image` must equal `VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfo::image` and `memoryOffset` must be zero

- **VUID-VkBindImageMemoryInfo-memory-02728**
  - If the value of `VkExportMemoryAllocateInfo::handleTypes` used to allocate `memory` is not 0, it must include at least one of the handles set in `VkExternalMemoryImageCreateInfo::handleTypes` when `image` was created

- **VUID-VkBindImageMemoryInfo-memory-02729**
  - If `memory` was created by a memory import operation, the external handle type of the imported `memory` must also have been set in `VkExternalMemoryImageCreateInfo::handleTypes` when `image` was created

- **VUID-VkBindImageMemoryInfo-pNext-01615**
  - If the `pNext` chain does not include a `VkBindImagePlaneMemoryInfo` structure, `memory` must have been allocated using one of the memory types allowed in the `memoryTypeBits` member of the `VkMemoryRequirements` structure returned from a call to `vkGetImageMemoryRequirements2` with `image`

- **VUID-VkBindImageMemoryInfo-pNext-01616**
  - If the `pNext` chain does not include a `VkBindImagePlaneMemoryInfo` structure, `memoryOffset` must be an integer multiple of the `alignment` member of the `VkMemoryRequirements` structure returned from a call to `vkGetImageMemoryRequirements2` with `image`

- **VUID-VkBindImageMemoryInfo-pNext-01617**
  - If the `pNext` chain does not include a `VkBindImagePlaneMemoryInfo` structure, the difference of the size of `memory` and `memoryOffset` must be greater than or equal to the `size` member of the `VkMemoryRequirements` structure returned from a call to `vkGetImageMemoryRequirements2` with the same `image`

- **VUID-VkBindImageMemoryInfo-pNext-01618**
  - If the `pNext` chain includes a `VkBindImagePlaneMemoryInfo` structure, `image` must have
been created with the `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_DISJOINT_BIT` bit set

- **VUID-VkBindImageMemoryInfo-pNext-01619**
  If the `pNext` chain includes a `VkBindImagePlaneMemoryInfo` structure, `memory` **must** have been allocated using one of the memory types allowed in the `memoryTypeBits` member of the `VkMemoryRequirements` structure returned from a call to `vkGetImageMemoryRequirements2` with `image` and where `VkBindImagePlaneMemoryInfo::planeAspect` corresponds to the `VkImagePlaneMemoryRequirementsInfo::planeAspect` in the `VkImageMemoryRequirementsInfo2` structure's `pNext` chain.

- **VUID-VkBindImageMemoryInfo-pNext-01620**
  If the `pNext` chain includes a `VkBindImagePlaneMemoryInfo` structure, `memoryOffset` **must** be an integer multiple of the `alignment` member of the `VkMemoryRequirements` structure returned from a call to `vkGetImageMemoryRequirements2` with `image` and where `VkBindImagePlaneMemoryInfo::planeAspect` corresponds to the `VkImagePlaneMemoryRequirementsInfo::planeAspect` in the `VkImageMemoryRequirementsInfo2` structure's `pNext` chain.

- **VUID-VkBindImageMemoryInfo-pNext-01621**
  If the `pNext` chain includes a `VkBindImagePlaneMemoryInfo` structure, the difference of the size of `memory` and `memoryOffset` **must** be greater than or equal to the `size` member of the `VkMemoryRequirements` structure returned from a call to `vkGetImageMemoryRequirements2` with the same `image` and where `VkBindImagePlaneMemoryInfo::planeAspect` corresponds to the `VkImagePlaneMemoryRequirementsInfo::planeAspect` in the `VkImageMemoryRequirementsInfo2` structure's `pNext` chain.

- **VUID-VkBindImageMemoryInfo-pNext-01626**
  If the `pNext` chain includes a `VkBindImageMemoryDeviceGroupInfo` structure, all instances of `memory` specified by `VkBindImageMemoryDeviceGroupInfo::pDeviceIndices` **must** have been allocated.

- **VUID-VkBindImageMemoryInfo-pNext-01627**
  If the `pNext` chain includes a `VkBindImageMemoryDeviceGroupInfo` structure, and `VkBindImageMemoryDeviceGroupInfo::splitInstanceBindRegionCount` is not zero, then `image` **must** have been created with the `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPLIT_INSTANCE_BIND_REGIONS_BIT` bit set.

- **VUID-VkBindImageMemoryInfo-pNext-01628**
  If the `pNext` chain includes a `VkBindImageMemoryDeviceGroupInfo` structure, all elements of `VkBindImageMemoryDeviceGroupInfo::pSplitInstanceBindRegions` **must** be valid rectangles contained within the dimensions of `image`.

- **VUID-VkBindImageMemoryInfo-pNext-01629**
  If the `pNext` chain includes a `VkBindImageMemoryDeviceGroupInfo` structure, the union of the areas of all elements of `VkBindImageMemoryDeviceGroupInfo::pSplitInstanceBindRegions` that correspond to the same instance of `image` **must** cover the entire image.

- **VUID-VkBindImageMemoryInfo-image-01630**
  If `image` was created with a valid swapchain handle in `VkImageSwapchainCreateInfoKHR::swapchain`, then the `pNext` chain **must** include a...
**VkBindImageMemorySwapchainInfoKHR** structure containing the same swapchain handle

- VUID-VkBindImageMemoryInfo-pNext-01631
  If the `pNext` chain includes a **VkBindImageMemorySwapchainInfoKHR** structure, **memory must be **VK_NULL_HANDLE**

- VUID-VkBindImageMemoryInfo-pNext-01632
  If the `pNext` chain does not include a **VkBindImageMemorySwapchainInfoKHR** structure, **memory must be a valid **VkDeviceMemory** handle

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkBindImageMemoryInfo-sType-sType
  **sType must be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BIND_IMAGE_MEMORY_INFO**

- VUID-VkBindImageMemoryInfo-pNext-pNext
  Each `pNext` member of any structure (including this one) in the `pNext` chain **must be either **NULL** or a pointer to a valid instance of **VkBindImageMemoryDeviceGroupInfo**, **VkBindImageMemorySwapchainInfoKHR**, or **VkBindImagePlaneMemoryInfo**

- VUID-VkBindImageMemoryInfo-sType-unique
  The `sType` value of each struct in the `pNext` chain **must be unique**

- VUID-VkBindImageMemoryInfo-image-parameter
  **image must be a valid **VkImage** handle**

- VUID-VkBindImageMemoryInfo-commonparent
  Both of **image**, and **memory** that are valid handles of non-ignored parameters **must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same **VkDevice**

The **VkBindImageMemoryDeviceGroupInfo** structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkBindImageMemoryDeviceGroupInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    uint32_t deviceIndexCount;
    const uint32_t* pDeviceIndices;
    uint32_t splitInstanceBindRegionCount;
    const VkRect2D* pSplitInstanceBindRegions;
} VkBindImageMemoryDeviceGroupInfo;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_device_group with VK_KHR_bind_memory2
typedef VkBindImageMemoryDeviceGroupInfoKHR
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
• **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• **deviceIndexCount** is the number of elements in **pDeviceIndices**.
• **pDeviceIndices** is a pointer to an array of device indices.
• **splitInstanceBindRegionCount** is the number of elements in **pSplitInstanceBindRegions**.
• **pSplitInstanceBindRegions** is a pointer to an array of **VkRect2D** structures describing which regions of the image are attached to each instance of memory.

If the **pNext** chain of **VkBindImageMemoryInfo** includes a **VkBindImageMemoryDeviceGroupInfo** structure, then that structure determines how memory is bound to images across multiple devices in a device group.

If **deviceIndexCount** is greater than zero, then on device index **i** image is attached to the instance of the memory on the physical device with device index **pDeviceIndices[i]**.

Let **N** be the number of physical devices in the logical device. If **splitInstanceBindRegionCount** is greater than zero, then **pSplitInstanceBindRegions** is a pointer to an array of **N^2** rectangles, where the image region specified by the rectangle at element **i*N+j** in resource instance **i** is bound to the memory instance **j**. The blocks of the memory that are bound to each sparse image block region use an offset in memory, relative to **memoryOffset**, computed as if the whole image was being bound to a contiguous range of memory. In other words, horizontally adjacent image blocks use consecutive blocks of memory, vertically adjacent image blocks are separated by the number of bytes per block multiplied by the width in blocks of **image**, and the block at **(0,0)** corresponds to memory starting at **memoryOffset**.

If **splitInstanceBindRegionCount** and **deviceIndexCount** are zero and the memory comes from a memory heap with the **VK_MEMORY_HEAP_MULTI_INSTANCE_BIT** bit set, then it is as if **pDeviceIndices** contains consecutive indices from zero to the number of physical devices in the logical device, minus one. In other words, by default each physical device attaches to its own instance of the memory.

If **splitInstanceBindRegionCount** and **deviceIndexCount** are zero and the memory comes from a memory heap without the **VK_MEMORY_HEAP_MULTI_INSTANCE_BIT** bit set, then it is as if **pDeviceIndices** contains an array of zeros. In other words, by default each physical device attaches to instance zero.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkBindImageMemoryDeviceGroupInfo-deviceIndexCount-01633**
  At least one of `deviceIndexCount` and `splitInstanceBindRegionCount` must be zero

- **VUID-VkBindImageMemoryDeviceGroupInfo-deviceIndexCount-01634**
  `deviceIndexCount` must either be zero or equal to the number of physical devices in the logical device

- **VUID-VkBindImageMemoryDeviceGroupInfo-pDeviceIndices-01635**
  All elements of `pDeviceIndices` must be valid device indices

- **VUID-VkBindImageMemoryDeviceGroupInfo-splitInstanceBindRegionCount-01636**
  `splitInstanceBindRegionCount` must either be zero or equal to the number of physical devices in the logical device squared

- **VUID-VkBindImageMemoryDeviceGroupInfo-pSplitInstanceBindRegions-01637**
  Elements of `pSplitInstanceBindRegions` that correspond to the same instance of an image must not overlap

- **VUID-VkBindImageMemoryDeviceGroupInfo-offset-01638**
  The `offset.x` member of any element of `pSplitInstanceBindRegions` must be a multiple of the sparse image block width (`VkSparseImageFormatProperties::imageGranularity.width`) of all non-metadata aspects of the image

- **VUID-VkBindImageMemoryDeviceGroupInfo-offset-01639**
  The `offset.y` member of any element of `pSplitInstanceBindRegions` must be a multiple of the sparse image block height (`VkSparseImageFormatProperties::imageGranularity.height`) of all non-metadata aspects of the image

- **VUID-VkBindImageMemoryDeviceGroupInfo-extent-01640**
  The `extent.width` member of any element of `pSplitInstanceBindRegions` must either be a multiple of the sparse image block width of all non-metadata aspects of the image, or else `extent.width + offset.x` must equal the width of the image subresource

- **VUID-VkBindImageMemoryDeviceGroupInfo-extent-01641**
  The `extent.height` member of any element of `pSplitInstanceBindRegions` must either be a multiple of the sparse image block height of all non-metadata aspects of the image, or else `extent.height + offset.y` must equal the height of the image subresource
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkBindImageMemoryDeviceGroupInfo-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BIND_IMAGE_MEMORY_DEVICE_GROUP_INFO

- VUID-VkBindImageMemoryDeviceGroupInfo-pDeviceIndices-parameter
  If deviceIndexCount is not 0, pDeviceIndices must be a valid pointer to an array of deviceIndexCount uint32_t values

- VUID-VkBindImageMemoryDeviceGroupInfo-pSplitInstanceBindRegions-parameter
  If splitInstanceBindRegionCount is not 0, pSplitInstanceBindRegions must be a valid pointer to an array of splitInstanceBindRegionCount VkRect2D structures

If the pNext chain of VkBindImageMemoryInfo includes a VkBindImageMemorySwapchainInfoKHR structure, then that structure includes a swapchain handle and image index indicating that the image will be bound to memory from that swapchain.

The VkBindImageMemorySwapchainInfoKHR structure is defined as:

```
// Provided by VK_KHR_swapchain with VK_VERSION_1_1, VK_KHR_device_group with VK_KHR_swapchain
typedef struct VkBindImageMemorySwapchainInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkSwapchainKHR swapchain;
    uint32_t imageIndex;
} VkBindImageMemorySwapchainInfoKHR;
```

- sType is the type of this structure.
- pNext is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- swapchain is VK_NULL_HANDLE or a swapchain handle.
- imageIndex is an image index within swapchain.

If swapchain is not NULL, the swapchain and imageIndex are used to determine the memory that the image is bound to, instead of memory and memoryOffset.

Memory can be bound to a swapchain and use the pDeviceIndices or pSplitInstanceBindRegions members of VkBindImageMemoryDeviceGroupInfo.

Valid Usage

- VUID-VkBindImageMemorySwapchainInfoKHR-imageIndex-01644
  imageIndex must be less than the number of images in swapchain
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkBindImageMemorySwapchainInfoKHR-sType-sType
  
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BIND_IMAGE_MEMORY_SWAPCHAIN_INFO_KHR

- VUID-VkBindImageMemorySwapchainInfoKHR-swapchain-parameter
  
  swapchain must be a valid VkSwapchainKHR handle

Host Synchronization

- Host access to swapchain must be externally synchronized

In order to bind planes of a disjoint image, add a VkBindImagePlaneMemoryInfo structure to the pNext chain of VkBindImageMemoryInfo.

The VkBindImagePlaneMemoryInfo structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkBindImagePlaneMemoryInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkImageAspectFlagBits planeAspect;
} VkBindImagePlaneMemoryInfo;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
typedef VkBindImagePlaneMemoryInfo VkBindImagePlaneMemoryInfoKHR;
```

- sType is the type of this structure.
- pNext is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- planeAspect is a VkImageAspectFlagBits value specifying the aspect of the disjoint image plane to bind.

Valid Usage

- VUID-VkBindImagePlaneMemoryInfo-planeAspect-02283
  
  If the image’s tiling is VK_IMAGE_TILING_LINEAR or VK_IMAGE_TILING_OPTIMAL, then planeAspect must be a single valid format plane for the image (that is, for a two-plane image planeAspect must be VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT or VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT, and for a three-plane image planeAspect must be VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT, VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT or VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT)
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkBindImagePlaneMemoryInfo-sType-sType**
  
  *sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BIND_IMAGE_PLANE_MEMORY_INFO*

- **VUID-VkBindImagePlaneMemoryInfo-planeAspect-parameter**
  
  *planeAspect must be a valid VkImageAspectFlagBits value*

---

**Buffer-Image Granularity**

There is an implementation-dependent limit, bufferImageGranularity, which specifies a page-like granularity at which linear and non-linear resources must be placed in adjacent memory locations to avoid aliasing. Two resources which do not satisfy this granularity requirement are said to alias. bufferImageGranularity is specified in bytes, and must be a power of two. Implementations which do not impose a granularity restriction may report a bufferImageGranularity value of one.

**Note**

Despite its name, bufferImageGranularity is really a granularity between “linear” and “non-linear” resources.

Given resourceA at the lower memory offset and resourceB at the higher memory offset in the same VkDeviceMemory object, where one resource is linear and the other is non-linear (as defined in the Glossary), and the following:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{resourceA.end} &= \text{resourceA.memoryOffset + resourceA.size - 1} \\
\text{resourceA.endPage} &= \text{resourceA.end} \& \sim (\text{bufferImageGranularity} - 1) \\
\text{resourceB.start} &= \text{resourceB.memoryOffset} \\
\text{resourceB.startPage} &= \text{resourceB.start} \& \sim (\text{bufferImageGranularity} - 1)
\end{align*}
\]

The following property must hold:

\[
\text{resourceA.endPage} < \text{resourceB.startPage}
\]

That is, the end of the first resource (A) and the beginning of the second resource (B) must be on separate “pages” of size bufferImageGranularity. bufferImageGranularity may be different than the physical page size of the memory heap. This restriction is only needed when a linear resource and a non-linear resource are adjacent in memory and will be used simultaneously. The memory ranges of adjacent resources can be closer than bufferImageGranularity, provided they meet the alignment requirement for the objects in question.

Sparse block size in bytes and sparse image and buffer memory alignments must all be multiples of the bufferImageGranularity. Therefore, memory bound to sparse resources naturally satisfies the bufferImageGranularity.
12.8. Resource Sharing Mode

Buffer and image objects are created with a *sharing mode* controlling how they can be accessed from queues. The supported sharing modes are:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkSharingMode {
    VK_SHARING_MODE_EXCLUSIVE = 0,
    VK_SHARING_MODE_CONCURRENT = 1,
} VkSharingMode;
```

- **VK_SHARING_MODE_EXCLUSIVE** specifies that access to any range or image subresource of the object will be exclusive to a single queue family at a time.
- **VK_SHARING_MODE_CONCURRENT** specifies that concurrent access to any range or image subresource of the object from multiple queue families is supported.

**Note**

The **VK_SHARING_MODE_CONCURRENT** may result in lower performance access to the buffer or image than **VK_SHARING_MODE_EXCLUSIVE**.

Ranges of buffers and image subresources of image objects created using **VK_SHARING_MODE_EXCLUSIVE** must only be accessed by queues in the queue family that has ownership of the resource. Upon creation, such resources are not owned by any queue family; ownership is implicitly acquired upon first use within a queue. Once a resource using **VK_SHARING_MODE_EXCLUSIVE** is owned by some queue family, the application must perform a queue family ownership transfer to make the memory contents of a range or image subresource accessible to a different queue family.

**Note**

Images still require a layout transition from **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_UNDEFINED** or **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_PREINITIALIZED** before being used on the first queue.

A queue family can take ownership of an image subresource or buffer range of a resource created with **VK_SHARING_MODE_EXCLUSIVE**, without an ownership transfer, in the same way as for a resource that was just created; however, taking ownership in this way has the effect that the contents of the image subresource or buffer range are undefined.

Ranges of buffers and image subresources of image objects created using **VK_SHARING_MODE_CONCURRENT** must only be accessed by queues from the queue families specified through the `queueFamilyIndexCount` and `pQueueFamilyIndices` members of the corresponding create info structures.

12.8.1. External Resource Sharing

Resources should only be accessed in the Vulkan instance that has exclusive ownership of their underlying memory. Only one Vulkan instance has exclusive ownership of a resource's underlying memory at a given time, regardless of whether the resource was created using...
VK_SHARING_MODE_EXCLUSIVE or VK_SHARING_MODE_CONCURRENT. Applications can transfer ownership of a resource's underlying memory only if the memory has been imported from or exported to another instance or external API using external memory handles. The semantics for transferring ownership outside of the instance are similar to those used for transferring ownership of VK_SHARING_MODE_EXCLUSIVE resources between queues, and is also accomplished using VkBufferMemoryBarrier or VkImageMemoryBarrier operations. Applications must

1. Release exclusive ownership from the source instance or API.
2. Ensure the release operation has completed using semaphores or fences.
3. Acquire exclusive ownership in the destination instance or API

Unlike queue ownership transfers, the destination instance or API is not specified explicitly when releasing ownership, nor is the source instance or API specified when acquiring ownership. Instead, the image or memory barrier's dstQueueFamilyIndex or srcQueueFamilyIndex parameters are set to the reserved queue family index VK_QUEUE_FAMILY_EXTERNAL to represent the external destination or source respectively.

Binding a resource to a memory object shared between multiple Vulkan instances or other APIs does not change the ownership of the underlying memory. The first entity to access the resource implicitly acquires ownership. Accessing a resource backed by memory that is owned by a particular instance or API has the same semantics as accessing a VK_SHARING_MODE_EXCLUSIVE resource, with one exception: Implementations must ensure layout transitions performed on one member of a set of identical subresources of identical images that alias the same range of an underlying memory object affect the layout of all the subresources in the set.

As a corollary, writes to any image subresources in such a set must not make the contents of memory used by other subresources in the set undefined. An application can define the content of a subresource of one image by performing device writes to an identical subresource of another image provided both images are bound to the same region of external memory. Applications may also add resources to such a set after the content of the existing set members has been defined without making the content undefined by creating a new image with the initial layout VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_UNDEFINED and binding it to the same region of external memory as the existing images.

**Note**

Because layout transitions apply to all identical images aliasing the same region of external memory, the actual layout of the memory backing a new image as well as an existing image with defined content will not be undefined. Such an image is not usable until it acquires ownership of its memory from the existing owner. Therefore, the layout specified as part of this transition will be the true initial layout of the image. The undefined layout specified when creating it is a placeholder to simplify valid usage requirements.

### 12.9. Memory Aliasing

A range of a VkDeviceMemory allocation is aliased if it is bound to multiple resources simultaneously, as described below, via vkBindImageMemory, vkBindBufferMemory, via sparse memory bindings,
or by binding the memory to resources in multiple Vulkan instances or external APIs using external memory handle export and import mechanisms.

Consider two resources, resource\textsubscript{A} and resource\textsubscript{B}, bound respectively to memory range\textsubscript{A} and range\textsubscript{B}. Let paddedRange\textsubscript{A} and paddedRange\textsubscript{B} be, respectively, range\textsubscript{A} and range\textsubscript{B} aligned to bufferImageGranularity. If the resources are both linear or both non-linear (as defined in the Glossary), then the resources alias the memory in the intersection of range\textsubscript{A} and range\textsubscript{B}. If one resource is linear and the other is non-linear, then the resources alias the memory in the intersection of paddedRange\textsubscript{A} and paddedRange\textsubscript{B}.

Applications can alias memory, but use of multiple aliases is subject to several constraints.

\textit{Note}

Memory aliasing can be useful to reduce the total device memory footprint of an application, if some large resources are used for disjoint periods of time.

When a non-linear, non-\texttt{VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT} image is bound to an aliased range, all image subresources of the image overlap the range. When a linear image is bound to an aliased range, the image subresources that (according to the image’s advertised layout) include bytes from the aliased range overlap the range. When a \texttt{VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT} image has sparse image blocks bound to an aliased range, only image subresources including those sparse image blocks overlap the range, and when the memory bound to the image’s mip tail overlaps an aliased range all image subresources in the mip tail overlap the range.

Buffers, and linear image subresources in either the \texttt{VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_PREINITIALIZED} or \texttt{VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL} layouts, are host-accessible subresources. That is, the host has a well-defined addressing scheme to interpret the contents, and thus the layout of the data in memory can be consistently interpreted across aliases if each of those aliases is a host-accessible subresource. Non-linear images, and linear image subresources in other layouts, are not host-accessible.

If two aliases are both host-accessible, then they interpret the contents of the memory in consistent ways, and data written to one alias can be read by the other alias.

If two aliases are both images that were created with identical creation parameters, both were created with the \texttt{VK_IMAGE_CREATE_ALIAS_BIT} flag set, and both are bound identically to memory except for \texttt{VkBindImageMemoryDeviceGroupInfo::pDeviceIndices} and \texttt{VkBindImageMemoryDeviceGroupInfo::pSplitInstanceBindRegions}, then they interpret the contents of the memory in consistent ways, and data written to one alias can be read by the other alias.

Additionally, if an individual plane of a multi-planar image and a single-plane image alias the same memory, then they also interpret the contents of the memory in consistent ways under the same conditions, but with the following modifications:

- Both must have been created with the \texttt{VK_IMAGE_CREATE_DISJOINT_BIT} flag.
- The single-plane image must have a \texttt{VkFormat} that is equivalent to that of the multi-planar image’s individual plane.
- The single-plane image and the individual plane of the multi-planar image must be bound identically to memory except for \texttt{VkBindImageMemoryDeviceGroupInfo::pDeviceIndices} and
VkBindImageMemoryDeviceGroupInfo::pSplitInstanceBindRegions.

- The width and height of the single-plane image are derived from the multi-planar image's dimensions in the manner listed for plane compatibility for the aliased plane.
- All other creation parameters must be identical

Aliases created by binding the same memory to resources in multiple Vulkan instances or external APIs using external memory handle export and import mechanisms interpret the contents of the memory in consistent ways, and data written to one alias can be read by the other alias.

Otherwise, the aliases interpret the contents of the memory differently, and writes via one alias make the contents of memory partially or completely undefined to the other alias. If the first alias is a host-accessible subresource, then the bytes affected are those written by the memory operations according to its addressing scheme. If the first alias is not host-accessible, then the bytes affected are those overlapped by the image subresources that were written. If the second alias is a host-accessible subresource, the affected bytes become undefined. If the second alias is not host-accessible, all sparse image blocks (for sparse partially-resident images) or all image subresources (for non-sparse image and fully resident sparse images) that overlap the affected bytes become undefined.

If any image subresources are made undefined due to writes to an alias, then each of those image subresources must have its layout transitioned from VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_UNDEFINED to a valid layout before it is used, or from VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_PREINITIALIZED if the memory has been written by the host. If any sparse blocks of a sparse image have been made undefined, then only the image subresources containing them must be transitioned.

Use of an overlapping range by two aliases must be separated by a memory dependency using the appropriate access types if at least one of those uses performs writes, whether the aliases interpret memory consistently or not. If buffer or image memory barriers are used, the scope of the barrier must contain the entire range and/or set of image subresources that overlap.

If two aliasing image views are used in the same framebuffer, then the render pass must declare the attachments using the VK_ATTACHMENT_DESCRIPTION_MAY_ALIAS_BIT, and follow the other rules listed in that section.

**Note**
Memory recycled via an application suballocator (i.e. without freeing and reallocating the memory objects) is not substantially different from memory aliasing. However, a suballocator usually waits on a fence before recycling a region of memory, and signaling a fence involves sufficient implicit dependencies to satisfy all the above requirements.
Chapter 13. Samplers

VkSampler objects represent the state of an image sampler which is used by the implementation to read image data and apply filtering and other transformations for the shader.

Samplers are represented by VkSampler handles:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VK_DEFINE_NON_DISPATCHABLE_HANDLE(VkSampler)
```

To create a sampler object, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkCreateSampler(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkSamplerCreateInfo* pCreateInfo,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator,
    VkSampler* pSampler);
```

- `device` is the logical device that creates the sampler.
- `pCreateInfo` is a pointer to a VkSamplerCreateInfo structure specifying the state of the sampler object.
- `pAllocator` controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
- `pSampler` is a pointer to a VkSampler handle in which the resulting sampler object is returned.

**Valid Usage**

- VUID-vkCreateSampler-maxSamplerAllocationCount-04110
  
  There must be less than VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxSamplerAllocationCount VkSampler objects currently created on the device

---

662 | Chapter 13. Samplers
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCreateSampler-device-parameter
device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- VUID-vkCreateSampler-pCreateInfo-parameter
pCreateInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid VkSamplerCreateInfo structure

- VUID-vkCreateSampler-pAllocator-parameter
If pAllocator is not NULL, pAllocator must be a valid pointer to a valid VkAllocationCallbacks structure

- VUID-vkCreateSampler-pSampler-parameter
pSampler must be a valid pointer to a VkSampler handle

Return Codes

Success
- VK_SUCCESS

Failure
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY

The VkSamplerCreateInfo structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkSamplerCreateInfo {
  VkStructureType sType;
  const void* pNext;
  VkSamplerCreateFlags flags;
  VkFilter magFilter;
  VkFilter minFilter;
  VkSamplerMipmapMode mipmapMode;
  VkSamplerAddressMode addressModeU;
  VkSamplerAddressMode addressModeV;
  VkSamplerAddressMode addressModeW;
  float mipLodBias;
  VkBool32 anisotropyEnable;
  float maxAnisotropy;
  VkBool32 compareEnable;
  VkCompareOp compareOp;
  float minLod;
  float maxLod;
  VkBorderColor borderColor;
  VkBool32 unnormalizedCoordinates;
} VkSamplerCreateInfo;
```
• **sType** is the type of this structure.
• **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• **flags** is a bitmask of VkSamplerCreateFlagBits describing additional parameters of the sampler.
• **magFilter** is a VkFilter value specifying the magnification filter to apply to lookups.
• **minFilter** is a VkFilter value specifying the minification filter to apply to lookups.
• **mipmapMode** is a VkSamplerMipmapMode value specifying the mipmap filter to apply to lookups.
• **addressModeU** is a VkSamplerAddressMode value specifying the addressing mode for outside [0..1] range for U coordinate.
• **addressModeV** is a VkSamplerAddressMode value specifying the addressing mode for outside [0..1] range for V coordinate.
• **addressModeW** is a VkSamplerAddressMode value specifying the addressing mode for outside [0..1] range for W coordinate.
• **mipLodBias** is the bias to be added to mipmap LOD (level-of-detail) calculation and bias provided by image sampling functions in SPIR-V, as described in the Level-of-Detail Operation section.
• **anisotropyEnable** is VK_TRUE to enable anisotropic filtering, as described in the Texel Anisotropic Filtering section, or VK_FALSE otherwise.
• **maxAnisotropy** is the anisotropy value clamp used by the sampler when anisotropyEnable is VK_TRUE. If anisotropyEnable is VK_FALSE, maxAnisotropy is ignored.
• **compareEnable** is VK_TRUE to enable comparison against a reference value during lookups, or VK_FALSE otherwise.
  ◦ Note: Some implementations will default to shader state if this member does not match.
• **compareOp** is a VkCompareOp value specifying the comparison function to apply to fetched data before filtering as described in the Depth Compare Operation section.
• **minLod** is used to clamp the minimum of the computed LOD value.
• **maxLod** is used to clamp the maximum of the computed LOD value. To avoid clamping the maximum value, set maxLod to the constant VK_LOD_CLAMP_NONE.
• **borderColor** is a VkBorderColor value specifying the predefined border color to use.
• **unnormalizedCoordinates** controls whether to use unnormalized or normalized texel coordinates to address texels of the image. When set to VK_TRUE, the range of the image coordinates used to lookup the texel is in the range of zero to the image size in each dimension. When set to VK_FALSE the range of image coordinates is zero to one.

When unnormalizedCoordinates is VK_TRUE, images the sampler is used with in the shader have the following requirements:

  ◦ The viewType must be either VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_1D or VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D.
  ◦ The image view must have a single layer and a single mip level.

When unnormalizedCoordinates is VK_TRUE, image built-in functions in the shader that use the sampler have the following requirements:

  ◦ The functions must not use projection.
The functions must not use offsets.

**Mapping of OpenGL to Vulkan filter modes**

*magFilter* values of VK_FILTER_NEAREST and VK_FILTER_LINEAR directly correspond to GL_NEAREST and GL_LINEAR magnification filters. *minFilter* and *mipmapMode* combine to correspond to the similarly named OpenGL minification filter of GL_minFilter_MIPMAP_mipmapMode (e.g. *minFilter* of VK_FILTER_LINEAR and *mipmapMode* of VK_SAMPLER_MIPMAP_MODE_NEAREST correspond to GL_LINEAR_MIPMAP_NEAREST).

There are no Vulkan filter modes that directly correspond to OpenGL minification filters of GL_LINEAR or GL_NEAREST, but they can be emulated using VK_SAMPLER_MIPMAP_MODE_NEAREST, minLod = 0, and maxLod = 0.25, and using *minFilter* = VK_FILTER_LINEAR or *minFilter* = VK_FILTER_NEAREST, respectively.

Note that using a maxLod of zero would cause magnification to always be performed, and the *magFilter* to always be used. This is valid, just not an exact match for OpenGL behavior. Clamping the maximum LOD to 0.25 allows the λ value to be non-zero and minification to be performed, while still always rounding down to the base level. If the *minFilter* and *magFilter* are equal, then using a maxLod of zero also works.

The maximum number of sampler objects which can be simultaneously created on a device is implementation-dependent and specified by the maxSamplerAllocationCount member of the VkPhysicalDeviceLimits structure.

**Note**

For historical reasons, if maxSamplerAllocationCount is exceeded, some implementations may return VK_ERROR_TOO_MANY_OBJECTS. Exceeding this limit will result in undefined behavior, and an application should not rely on the use of the returned error code in order to identify when the limit is reached.

Since VkSampler is a non-dispatchable handle type, implementations may return the same handle for sampler state vectors that are identical. In such cases, all such objects would only count once against the maxSamplerAllocationCount limit.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkSamplerCreateInfo-mipLodBias-01069**
The absolute value of `mipLodBias` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxSamplerLodBias`

- **VUID-VkSamplerCreateInfo-samplerMipLodBias-04467**
If the `VK_KHR_portability_subset` extension is enabled, and `VkPhysicalDevicePortabilitySubsetFeaturesKHR::samplerMipLodBias` is `VK_FALSE`, `mipLodBias` must be zero

- **VUID-VkSamplerCreateInfo-maxLod-01973**
`maxLod` must be greater than or equal to `minLod`

- **VUID-VkSamplerCreateInfo-anisotropyEnable-01070**
If the anisotropic sampling feature is not enabled, `anisotropyEnable` must be `VK_FALSE`

- **VUID-VkSamplerCreateInfo-anisotropyEnable-01071**
If `anisotropyEnable` is `VK_TRUE`, `maxAnisotropy` must be between 1.0 and `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxSamplerAnisotropy`, inclusive

- **VUID-VkSamplerCreateInfo-minFilter-01645**
If `sampler Y'CbCr` conversion is enabled and the potential format features of the sampler `Y'CbCr` conversion do not support `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_YCBCR_CONVERSION_SEPARATE_RECONSTRUCTION_FILTER_BIT`, `minFilter` and `magFilter` must be equal to the sampler `Y'CbCr` conversion's chromaFilter

- **VUID-VkSamplerCreateInfo-unnormalizedCoordinates-01072**
If `unnormalizedCoordinates` is `VK_TRUE`, `minFilter` and `magFilter` must be equal

- **VUID-VkSamplerCreateInfo-unnormalizedCoordinates-01073**
If `unnormalizedCoordinates` is `VK_TRUE`, `mipmapMode` must be `VK_SAMPLER_MIPMAP_MODE_NEAREST`

- **VUID-VkSamplerCreateInfo-unnormalizedCoordinates-01074**
If `unnormalizedCoordinates` is `VK_TRUE`, `minLod` and `maxLod` must be zero

- **VUID-VkSamplerCreateInfo-unnormalizedCoordinates-01075**
If `unnormalizedCoordinates` is `VK_TRUE`, `addressModeU` and `addressModeV` must each be either `VK_SAMPLER_ADDRESS_MODE_CLAMP_TO_EDGE` or `VK_SAMPLER_ADDRESS_MODE_CLAMP_TO_BORDER`

- **VUID-VkSamplerCreateInfo-unnormalizedCoordinates-01076**
If `unnormalizedCoordinates` is `VK_TRUE`, `anisotropyEnable` must be `VK_FALSE`

- **VUID-VkSamplerCreateInfo-unnormalizedCoordinates-01077**
If `unnormalizedCoordinates` is `VK_TRUE`, `compareEnable` must be `VK_FALSE`

- **VUID-VkSamplerCreateInfo-addressModeU-01078**
If any of `addressModeU`, `addressModeV`, or `addressModeW` are `VK_SAMPLER_ADDRESS_MODE_CLAMP_TO_BORDER`, `borderColor` must be a valid `VkBorderColor` value

- **VUID-VkSamplerCreateInfo-addressModeU-01646**
If `sampler Y'CbCr` conversion is enabled, `addressModeU`, `addressModeV`, and `addressModeW` must be `VK_SAMPLER_ADDRESS_MODE_CLAMP_TO_EDGE`, `anisotropyEnable` must be `VK_FALSE`, and `unnormalizedCoordinates` must be `VK_FALSE`
If `samplerMirrorClampToEdge` is not enabled, and if the `VK_KHR_sampler_mirror_clamp_to_edge` extension is not enabled, `addressModeU`, `addressModeV` and `addressModeW` must not be `VK_SAMPLER_ADDRESS_MODE_MIRROR_CLAMP_TO_EDGE`.

If `compareEnable` is `VK_TRUE`, `compareOp` must be a valid `VkCompareOp` value.

---

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SAMPLER_CREATE_INFO`
- `pNext` must be `NULL` or a pointer to a valid instance of `VkSamplerYcbcrConversionInfo`
- The `sType` value of each struct in the `pNext` chain must be unique
- `flags` must be `0`
- `magFilter` must be a valid `VkFilter` value
- `minFilter` must be a valid `VkFilter` value
- `mipmapMode` must be a valid `VkSamplerMipmapMode` value
- `addressModeU` must be a valid `VkSamplerAddressMode` value
- `addressModeV` must be a valid `VkSamplerAddressMode` value
- `addressModeW` must be a valid `VkSamplerAddressMode` value

`VK_LOD_CLAMP_NONE` is a special constant value used for `VkSamplerCreateInfo::maxLod` to indicate that maximum LOD clamping should not be performed.

```c
#define VK_LOD_CLAMP_NONE 1000.0F
```

Bits which can be set in `VkSamplerCreateInfo::flags`, specifying additional parameters of a sampler, are:
VkSamplerCreateFlags is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more VkSamplerCreateFlagBits.

Possible values of the VkSamplerCreateInfo::magFilter and minFilter parameters, specifying filters used for texture lookups, are:

- VK_FILTER_NEAREST specifies nearest filtering.
- VK_FILTER_LINEAR specifies linear filtering.

These filters are described in detail in Texel Filtering.

Possible values of the VkSamplerCreateInfo::mipmapMode parameters, specifying the mipmap mode used for texture lookups, are:

- VK_SAMPLER_MIPMAP_MODE_NEAREST specifies nearest filtering.
- VK_SAMPLER_MIPMAP_MODE_LINEAR specifies linear filtering.

These modes are described in detail in Texel Filtering.

Possible values of the VkSamplerCreateInfo::addressMode* parameters, specifying the behavior of sampling with coordinates outside the range [0,1] for the respective u, v, or w coordinate as defined in the Wrapping Operation section, are:
typedef enum VkSamplerAddressMode {
    VK_SAMPLER_ADDRESS_MODE_REPEAT = 0,
    VK_SAMPLER_ADDRESS_MODE_MIRRORED_REPEAT = 1,
    VK_SAMPLER_ADDRESS_MODE_CLAMP_TO_EDGE = 2,
    VK_SAMPLER_ADDRESS_MODE_CLAMP_TO_BORDER = 3,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_mirror_clamp_to_edge
    VK_SAMPLER_ADDRESS_MODE_MIRROR_CLAMP_TO_EDGE = 4,
    VK_SAMPLER_ADDRESS_MODE_MIRROR_CLAMP_TO_EDGE_KHR = VK_SAMPLER_ADDRESS_MODE_MIRROR_CLAMP_TO_EDGE,
} VkSamplerAddressMode;

- **VK_SAMPLER_ADDRESS_MODE_REPEAT** specifies that the repeat wrap mode will be used.
- **VK_SAMPLER_ADDRESS_MODE_MIRRORED_REPEAT** specifies that the mirrored repeat wrap mode will be used.
- **VK_SAMPLER_ADDRESS_MODE_CLAMP_TO_EDGE** specifies that the clamp to edge wrap mode will be used.
- **VK_SAMPLER_ADDRESS_MODE_CLAMP_TO_BORDER** specifies that the clamp to border wrap mode will be used.
- **VK_SAMPLER_ADDRESS_MODE_MIRROR_CLAMP_TO_EDGE** specifies that the mirror clamp to edge wrap mode will be used. This is only valid if the VK_KHR_sampler_mirror_clamp_to_edge extension is enabled.

Possible values of VkSamplerCreateInfo::borderColor, specifying the border color used for texture lookups, are:

typedef enum VkBorderColor {
    VK_BORDER_COLOR_FLOAT_TRANSPARENT_BLACK = 0,
    VK_BORDER_COLOR_INT_TRANSPARENT_BLACK = 1,
    VK_BORDER_COLOR_FLOAT_OPAQUE_BLACK = 2,
    VK_BORDER_COLOR_INT_OPAQUE_BLACK = 3,
    VK_BORDER_COLOR_FLOAT_OPAQUE_WHITE = 4,
    VK_BORDER_COLOR_INT_OPAQUE_WHITE = 5,
} VkBorderColor;

- **VK_BORDER_COLOR_FLOAT_TRANSPARENT_BLACK** specifies a transparent, floating-point format, black color.
- **VK_BORDER_COLOR_INT_TRANSPARENT_BLACK** specifies a transparent, integer format, black color.
- **VK_BORDER_COLOR_FLOAT_OPAQUE_BLACK** specifies an opaque, floating-point format, black color.
- **VK_BORDER_COLOR_INT_OPAQUE_BLACK** specifies an opaque, integer format, black color.
- **VK_BORDER_COLOR_FLOAT_OPAQUE_WHITE** specifies an opaque, floating-point format, white color.
- **VK_BORDER_COLOR_INT_OPAQUE_WHITE** specifies an opaque, integer format, white color.

These colors are described in detail in Texel Replacement.
To destroy a sampler, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkDestroySampler(
    VkDevice device,
    VkSampler sampler,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator);
```

- **device** is the logical device that destroys the sampler.
- **sampler** is the sampler to destroy.
- **pAllocator** controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.

## Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkDestroySampler-sampler-01082**
  All submitted commands that refer to **sampler** must have completed execution

- **VUID-vkDestroySampler-sampler-01083**
  If **VkAllocationCallbacks** were provided when **sampler** was created, a compatible set of callbacks must be provided here

- **VUID-vkDestroySampler-sampler-01084**
  If no **VkAllocationCallbacks** were provided when **sampler** was created, **pAllocator** must be **NULL**

## Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkDestroySampler-device-parameter**
  **device** must be a valid **VkDevice** handle

- **VUID-vkDestroySampler-sampler-parameter**
  If **sampler** is not **VK_NULL_HANDLE**, **sampler** must be a valid **VkSampler** handle

- **VUID-vkDestroySampler-pAllocator-parameter**
  If **pAllocator** is not **NULL**, **pAllocator** must be a valid pointer to a valid **VkAllocationCallbacks** structure

- **VUID-vkDestroySampler-sampler-parent**
  If **sampler** is a valid handle, it must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from **device**

## Host Synchronization

- Host access to **sampler** must be externally synchronized
13.1. Sampler Y'CbCr conversion

To create a sampler with Y'CbCr conversion enabled, add a `VkSamplerYcbcrConversionInfo` structure to the `pNext` chain of the `VkSamplerCreateInfo` structure. To create a sampler Y'CbCr conversion, the `samplerYcbcrConversion` feature must be enabled. Conversion must be fixed at pipeline creation time, through use of a combined image sampler with an immutable sampler in `VkDescriptorSetLayoutBinding`. A `VkSamplerYcbcrConversionInfo` must be provided for samplers to be used with image views that access `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT` if the format appears in Formats requiring sampler Y'CbCr conversion for `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT` image views.

The `VkSamplerYcbcrConversionInfo` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkSamplerYcbcrConversionInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkSamplerYcbcrConversion conversion;
} VkSamplerYcbcrConversionInfo;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
typedef VkSamplerYcbcrConversionInfo VkSamplerYcbcrConversionInfoKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `conversion` is a `VkSamplerYcbcrConversion` handle created with `vkCreateSamplerYcbcrConversion`.

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-VkSamplerYcbcrConversionInfo-sType-sType
  - `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SAMPLER_YCBCR_CONVERSION_INFO`
- VUID-VkSamplerYcbcrConversionInfo-conversion-parameter
  - `conversion` must be a valid `VkSamplerYcbcrConversion` handle

A sampler Y'CbCr conversion is an opaque representation of a device-specific sampler Y'CbCr conversion description, represented as a `VkSamplerYcbcrConversion` handle:

```c
VK_DEFINE_NON_DISPATCHABLE_HANDLE(VkSamplerYcbcrConversion)
```

or the equivalent
To create a `VkSamplerYcbcrConversion`, call:

```c
VkResult vkCreateSamplerYcbcrConversionKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo* pCreateInfo,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator,
    VkSamplerYcbcrConversion* pYcbcrConversion);
```

- `device` is the logical device that creates the sampler \(Y'\)\(Cb\)\(Cr\) conversion.
- `pCreateInfo` is a pointer to a `VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo` structure specifying the requested sampler \(Y'\)\(Cb\)\(Cr\) conversion.
- `pAllocator` controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
- `pYcbcrConversion` is a pointer to a `VkSamplerYcbcrConversion` handle in which the resulting sampler \(Y'\)\(Cb\)\(Cr\) conversion is returned.

The interpretation of the configured sampler \(Y'\)\(Cb\)\(Cr\) conversion is described in more detail in the description of sampler \(Y'\)\(Cb\)\(Cr\) conversion in the Image Operations chapter.

**Valid Usage**

- VUID-vkCreateSamplerYcbcrConversion-None-01648
  
  The sampler \(Y'\)\(Cb\)\(Cr\) conversion feature **must** be enabled

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-vkCreateSamplerYcbcrConversion-device-parameter
  
  `device` **must** be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- VUID-vkCreateSamplerYcbcrConversion-pCreateInfo-parameter
  
  `pCreateInfo` **must** be a valid pointer to a valid `VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo` structure

- VUID-vkCreateSamplerYcbcrConversion-pAllocator-parameter
  
  If `pAllocator` is not NULL, `pAllocator` **must** be a valid pointer to a valid `VkAllocationCallbacks` structure

- VUID-vkCreateSamplerYcbcrConversion-pYcbcrConversion-parameter
  
  `pYcbcrConversion` **must** be a valid pointer to a `VkSamplerYcbcrConversion` handle
Return Codes

Success
- VK_SUCCESS

Failure
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY

The `VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkFormat format;
    VkSamplerYcbcrModelConversion ycbcrModel;
    VkSamplerYcbcrRange ycbcrRange;
    VkComponentMapping components;
    VkChromaLocation xChromaOffset;
    VkChromaLocation yChromaOffset;
    VkFilter chromaFilter;
    VkBool32 forceExplicitReconstruction;
} VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
typedef VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfoKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `format` is the format of the image from which color information will be retrieved.
- `ycbcrModel` describes the color matrix for conversion between color models.
- `ycbcrRange` describes whether the encoded values have headroom and foot room, or whether the encoding uses the full numerical range.
- `components` applies a swizzle based on `VkComponentSwizzle` enums prior to range expansion and color model conversion.
- `xChromaOffset` describes the sample location associated with downsampled chroma channels in the x dimension. `xChromaOffset` has no effect for formats in which chroma channels are not downsampled horizontally.
- `yChromaOffset` describes the sample location associated with downsampled chroma channels in the y dimension. `yChromaOffset` has no effect for formats in which the chroma channels are not
downsampled vertically.

- **chromaFilter** is the filter for chroma reconstruction.
- **forceExplicitReconstruction** can be used to ensure that reconstruction is done explicitly, if supported.

**Note**

Setting `forceExplicitReconstruction` to `VK_TRUE` may have a performance penalty on implementations where explicit reconstruction is not the default mode of operation.

If the format supports `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_YCBCR_CONVERSION_CHROMA_RECONSTRUCTION_EXPLICIT_BIT` the `forceExplicitReconstruction` value behaves as if it was set to `VK_TRUE`.

Sampler Y’C₉/C₉ conversion objects do not support *external format conversion* without additional extensions defining *external formats*. 
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo-format-04060**
  format must represent unsigned normalized values (i.e. the format must be a UNORM format)

- **VUID-VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo-format-01650**
  The potential format features of the sampler YCbCr conversion must support
  VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_MIDPOINT_CHROMA_SAMPLES_BIT or
  VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COSITED_CHROMA_SAMPLES_BIT

- **VUID-VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo-xChromaOffset-01651**
  If the potential format features of the sampler Y′C′B′C′R conversion do not support
  VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COSITED_CHROMA_SAMPLES_BIT, xChromaOffset and yChromaOffset must not be
  VK_CHROMA_LOCATION_COSITED_EVEN if the corresponding channels are downsampled

- **VUID-VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo-xChromaOffset-01652**
  If the potential format features of the sampler Y′C′B′C′R conversion do not support
  VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_MIDPOINT_CHROMA_SAMPLES_BIT, xChromaOffset and yChromaOffset must not be
  VK_CHROMA_LOCATION_MIDPOINT if the corresponding channels are downsampled

- **VUID-VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo-components-02581**
  If the format has a _422 or _420 suffix, then components.g must be the identity swizzle

- **VUID-VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo-components-02582**
  If the format has a _422 or _420 suffix, then components.a must be the identity swizzle,
  VK_COMPONENT_SWIZZLE_ONE, or VK_COMPONENT_SWIZZLE_ZERO

- **VUID-VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo-components-02583**
  If the format has a _422 or _420 suffix, then components.r must be the identity swizzle or
  VK_COMPONENT_SWIZZLE_B

- **VUID-VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo-components-02584**
  If the format has a _422 or _420 suffix, then components.b must be the identity swizzle or
  VK_COMPONENT_SWIZZLE_R

- **VUID-VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo-components-02585**
  If the format has a _422 or _420 suffix, and if either components.r or components.b is the
  identity swizzle, both values must be the identity swizzle

- **VUID-VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo-ycbcrModel-01655**
  If ycbcrModel is not VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_MODEL_CONVERSION_RGB_IDENTITY, then components.r,
  components.g, and components.b must correspond to channels of the format; that is,
  components.r, components.g, and components.b must not be VK_COMPONENT_SWIZZLE_ZERO or
  VK_COMPONENT_SWIZZLE_ONE, and must not correspond to a channel which contains zero or
  one as a consequence of conversion to RGBA

- **VUID-VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo-ycbcrRange-02748**
  If ycbcrRange is VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_RANGE_ITU_NARROW then the R, G and B channels obtained
  by applying the component swizzle to format must each have a bit-depth greater than or
  equal to 8

- **VUID-VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo-forceExplicitReconstruction-01656**
  If the potential format features of the sampler Y′C′C′R conversion do not support
  VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_YCBCR_CONVERSION_CHROMA_RECONSTRUCTION_EXPLICIT_FORCE
ABLE_BIT forceExplicitReconstruction must be VK_FALSE

- VUID-VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo-chromaFilter-01657
  If the potential format features of the sampler Y'C_bC_r conversion do not support VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_YCBCR_CONVERSION_LINEAR_FILTER_BIT, chromaFilter must not be VK_FILTER_LINEAR

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SAMPLER_YCBCR_CONVERSION_CREATE_INFO
- VUID-VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo-pNext-pNext
  pNext must be NULL
- VUID-VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo-format-parameter
  format must be a valid VkFormat value
- VUID-VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo-ycbcrModel-parameter
  ycbcrModel must be a valid VkSamplerYcbcrModelConversion value
- VUID-VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo-ycbcrRange-parameter
  ycbcrRange must be a valid VkSamplerYcbcrRange value
- VUID-VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo-components-parameter
  components must be a valid VkComponentMapping structure
- VUID-VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo-xChromaOffset-parameter
  xChromaOffset must be a valid VkChromaLocation value
- VUID-VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo-yChromaOffset-parameter
  yChromaOffset must be a valid VkChromaLocation value
- VUID-VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo-chromaFilter-parameter
  chromaFilter must be a valid VkFilter value

If chromaFilter is VK_FILTER_NEAREST, chroma samples are reconstructed to luma channel resolution using nearest-neighbour sampling. Otherwise, chroma samples are reconstructed using interpolation. More details can be found in the description of sampler Y'C_bC_r conversion in the Image Operations chapter.

VkSamplerYcbcrModelConversion defines the conversion from the source color model to the shader color model. Possible values are:
typedef enum VkSamplerYcbcrModelConversion {
    VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_MODEL_CONVERSION_RGB_IDENTITY = 0,
    VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_MODEL_CONVERSION_YCBCR_IDENTITY = 1,
    VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_MODEL_CONVERSION_YCBCR_709 = 2,
    VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_MODEL_CONVERSION_YCBCR_601 = 3,
    VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_MODEL_CONVERSION_YCBCR_2020 = 4,

    // Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
    VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_MODEL_CONVERSION_RGB_IDENTITY_KHR =
        VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_MODEL_CONVERSION_RGB_IDENTITY,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
    VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_MODEL_CONVERSION_YCBCR_IDENTITY_KHR =
        VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_MODEL_CONVERSION_YCBCR_IDENTITY,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
    VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_MODEL_CONVERSION_YCBCR_709_KHR =
        VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_MODEL_CONVERSION_YCBCR_709,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
    VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_MODEL_CONVERSION_YCBCR_601_KHR =
        VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_MODEL_CONVERSION_YCBCR_601,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
    VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_MODEL_CONVERSION_YCBCR_2020_KHR =
        VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_MODEL_CONVERSION_YCBCR_2020,
} VkSamplerYcbcrModelConversion;

or the equivalent

// Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
typedef VkSamplerYcbcrModelConversion VkSamplerYcbcrModelConversionKHR;

• VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_MODEL_CONVERSION_RGB_IDENTITY specifies that the input values to the conversion are unmodified.

• VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_MODEL_CONVERSION_YCBCR_IDENTITY specifies no model conversion but the inputs are range expanded as for Y'CbCr.

• VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_MODEL_CONVERSION_YCBCR_709 specifies the color model conversion from Y'CbCr to R'G'B' defined in BT.709 and described in the “BT.709 Y'CbCr conversion” section of the Khronos Data Format Specification.

• VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_MODEL_CONVERSION_YCBCR_601 specifies the color model conversion from Y'CbCr to R'G'B' defined in BT.601 and described in the “BT.601 Y'CbCr conversion” section of the Khronos Data Format Specification.

• VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_MODEL_CONVERSION_YCBCR_2020 specifies the color model conversion from Y'CbCr to R'G'B' defined in BT.2020 and described in the “BT.2020 Y'CbCr conversion” section of the Khronos Data Format Specification.

In the VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_MODEL_CONVERSION_YCBCR_* color models, for the input to the sampler Y'CbCr range expansion and model conversion:

• the Y (Y' luma) channel corresponds to the G channel of an RGB image.
• the CB (Cₜ or “U” blue color difference) channel corresponds to the B channel of an RGB image.
• the CR (Cₚ or “V” red color difference) channel corresponds to the R channel of an RGB image.
• the alpha channel, if present, is not modified by color model conversion.

These rules reflect the mapping of channels after the channel swizzle operation (controlled by VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo::components).

**Note**

For example, an “YUVA” 32-bit format comprising four 8-bit channels can be implemented as VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8A8_UNORM with a component mapping:

- components.a = VK_COMPONENT_SWIZZLE_IDENTITY
- components.r = VK_COMPONENT_SWIZZLE_B
- components.g = VK_COMPONENT_SWIZZLE_R
- components.b = VK_COMPONENT_SWIZZLE_G

The VkSamplerYcbcrRange enum describes whether color channels are encoded using the full range of numerical values or whether values are reserved for headroom and foot room. VkSamplerYcbcrRange is defined as:

```c
typedef enum VkSamplerYcbcrRange {
    VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_RANGE_ITU_FULL = 0,
    VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_RANGE_ITU_NARROW = 1,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
    VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_RANGE_ITU_FULL_KHR = VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_RANGE_ITU_FULL,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
    VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_RANGE_ITU_NARROW_KHR = VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_RANGE_ITU_NARROW,
} VkSamplerYcbcrRange;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
typedef VkSamplerYcbcrRange VkSamplerYcbcrRangeKHR;
```

- VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_RANGE_ITU_FULL specifies that the full range of the encoded values are valid and interpreted according to the ITU “full range” quantization rules.
- VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_RANGE_ITU_NARROW specifies that headroom and foot room are reserved in the numerical range of encoded values, and the remaining values are expanded according to the ITU “narrow range” quantization rules.

The formulae for these conversions is described in the Sampler Y’CₜCₚ Range Expansion section of the Image Operations chapter.

No range modification takes place if ycbcrModel is VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_MODEL_CONVERSION_RGB_IDENTITY; the ycbcrRange field of VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo is ignored in this case.
The `VkChromaLocation` enum defines the location of downsampled chroma channel samples relative to the luma samples, and is defined as:

```c
typedef enum VkChromaLocation {
    VK_CHROMA_LOCATION_COSITED_EVEN = 0,
    VK_CHROMA_LOCATION_MIDPOINT = 1,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
    VK_CHROMA_LOCATION_COSITED_EVEN_KHR = VK_CHROMA_LOCATION_COSITED_EVEN,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
    VK_CHROMA_LOCATION_MIDPOINT_KHR = VK_CHROMA_LOCATION_MIDPOINT,
} VkChromaLocation;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
typedef VkChromaLocation VkChromaLocationKHR;
```

- `VK_CHROMA_LOCATION_COSITED_EVEN` specifies that downsampled chroma samples are aligned with luma samples with even coordinates.
- `VK_CHROMA_LOCATION_MIDPOINT` specifies that downsampled chroma samples are located half way between each even luma sample and the nearest higher odd luma sample.

To destroy a sampler Y'C_bC_r conversion, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
void vkDestroySamplerYcbcrConversionKHR( VkDevice device,
                                         VkSamplerYcbcrConversion ycbcrConversion,
                                         const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator);
```

- `device` is the logical device that destroys the Y'C_bC_r conversion.
- `ycbcrConversion` is the conversion to destroy.
- `pAllocator` controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkDestroySamplerYcbcrConversion-device-parameter**
  
  `device` **must** be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- **VUID-vkDestroySamplerYcbcrConversion-ycbcrConversion-parameter**
  
  If `ycbcrConversion` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, `ycbcrConversion` **must** be a valid `VkSamplerYcbcrConversion` handle

- **VUID-vkDestroySamplerYcbcrConversion-pAllocator-parameter**
  
  If `pAllocator` is not `NULL`, `pAllocator` **must** be a valid pointer to a valid `VkAllocationCallbacks` structure

- **VUID-vkDestroySamplerYcbcrConversion-ycbcrConversion-parent**
  
  If `ycbcrConversion` is a valid handle, it **must** have been created, allocated, or retrieved from `device`

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `ycbcrConversion` **must** be externally synchronized
Chapter 14. Resource Descriptors

A descriptor is an opaque data structure representing a shader resource such as a buffer, buffer view, image view, sampler, or combined image sampler. Descriptors are organised into descriptor sets, which are bound during command recording for use in subsequent drawing commands. The arrangement of content in each descriptor set is determined by a descriptor set layout, which determines what descriptors can be stored within it. The sequence of descriptor set layouts that can be used by a pipeline is specified in a pipeline layout. Each pipeline object can use up to maxBoundDescriptorSets (see Limits) descriptor sets.

Shaders access resources via variables decorated with a descriptor set and binding number that link them to a descriptor in a descriptor set. The shader interface mapping to bound descriptor sets is described in the Shader Resource Interface section.

Shaders can also access buffers without going through descriptors by using Physical Storage Buffer Access to access them through 64-bit addresses.

14.1. Descriptor Types

There are a number of different types of descriptor supported by Vulkan, corresponding to different resources or usage. The following sections describe the API definitions of each descriptor type. The mapping of each type to SPIR-V is listed in the Shader Resource and Descriptor Type Correspondence and Shader Resource and Storage Class Correspondence tables in the Shader Interfaces chapter.

14.1.1. Storage Image

A storage image (VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_IMAGE) is a descriptor type associated with an image resource via an image view that load, store, and atomic operations can be performed on.

Storage image loads are supported in all shader stages for image views whose format features contain VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_BIT.

Stores to storage images are supported in compute shaders for image views whose format features contain VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_BIT.

Atomic operations on storage images are supported in compute shaders for image views whose format features contain VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_ATOMIC_BIT.

When the fragmentStoresAndAtomics feature is enabled, stores and atomic operations are also supported for storage images in fragment shaders with the same set of image formats as supported in compute shaders. When the vertexPipelineStoresAndAtomics feature is enabled, stores and atomic operations are also supported in vertex, tessellation, and geometry shaders with the same set of image formats as supported in compute shaders.

The image subresources for a storage image must be in the VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHARED_PRESENT_KHR or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL layout in order to access its data in a shader.
14.1.2. Sampler

A sampler descriptor (VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLER) is a descriptor type associated with a sampler object, used to control the behavior of sampling operations performed on a sampled image.

14.1.3. Sampled Image

A sampled image (VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLED_IMAGE) is a descriptor type associated with an image resource via an image view that sampling operations can be performed on.

Shaders combine a sampled image variable and a sampler variable to perform sampling operations.

Sampled images are supported in all shader stages for image views whose format features contain VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_BIT.

The image subresources for a sampled image must be in the VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHARED_PRESENT_KHR, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHADER_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL, or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL layout in order to access its data in a shader.

14.1.4. Combined Image Sampler

A combined image sampler (VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER) is a single descriptor type associated with both a sampler and an image resource, combining both a sampler and sampled image descriptor into a single descriptor.

If the descriptor refers to a sampler that performs Y′C_bC_r conversion, the sampler must only be used to sample the image in the same descriptor. Otherwise, the sampler and image in this type of descriptor can be used freely with any other samplers and images.

The image subresources for a combined image sampler must be in the VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHARED_PRESENT_KHR, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHADER_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL, or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL layout in order to access its data in a shader.

Note

On some implementations, it may be more efficient to sample from an image using a combination of sampler and sampled image that are stored together in the descriptor set in a combined descriptor.

14.1.5. Uniform Texel Buffer

A uniform texel buffer (VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER) is a descriptor type associated with a buffer resource via a buffer view that formatted load operations can be performed on.
Uniform texel buffers define a tightly-packed 1-dimensional linear array of texels, with texels going through format conversion when read in a shader in the same way as they are for an image.

Load operations from uniform texel buffers are supported in all shader stages for image formats which report support for the `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT` feature bit via `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties` in `VkFormatProperties::bufferFeatures`.

### 14.1.6. Storage Texel Buffer

A storage texel buffer (`VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER`) is a descriptor type associated with a buffer resource via a buffer view that formatted load, store, and atomic operations can be performed on.

Storage texel buffers define a tightly-packed 1-dimensional linear array of texels, with texels going through format conversion when read in a shader in the same way as they are for an image. Unlike uniform texel buffers, these buffers can also be written to in the same way as for storage images.

Storage texel buffer loads are supported in all shader stages for texel buffer formats which report support for the `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT` feature bit via `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties` in `VkFormatProperties::bufferFeatures`.

Stores to storage texel buffers are supported in compute shaders for texel buffer formats which report support for the `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT` feature via `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties` in `VkFormatProperties::bufferFeatures`.

Atomic operations on storage texel buffers are supported in compute shaders for texel buffer formats which report support for the `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_ATOMIC_BIT` feature via `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties` in `VkFormatProperties::bufferFeatures`.

When the fragmentStoresAndAtomics feature is enabled, stores and atomic operations are also supported for storage texel buffers in fragment shaders with the same set of texel buffer formats as supported in compute shaders. When the vertexPipelineStoresAndAtomics feature is enabled, stores and atomic operations are also supported in vertex, tessellation, and geometry shaders with the same set of texel buffer formats as supported in compute shaders.

### 14.1.7. Storage Buffer

A storage buffer (`VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER`) is a descriptor type associated with a buffer resource directly, described in a shader as a structure with various members that load, store, and atomic operations can be performed on.

**Note**

Atomic operations can only be performed on members of certain types as defined in the SPIR-V environment appendix.

### 14.1.8. Uniform Buffer

A uniform buffer (`VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER`) is a descriptor type associated with a buffer resource directly, described in a shader as a structure with various members that load operations...
can be performed on.

14.1.9. Dynamic Uniform Buffer

A dynamic uniform buffer (VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER_DYNAMIC) is almost identical to a uniform buffer, and differs only in how the offset into the buffer is specified. The base offset calculated by the VkDescriptorBufferInfo when initially updating the descriptor set is added to a dynamic offset when binding the descriptor set.

14.1.10. Dynamic Storage Buffer

A dynamic storage buffer (VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER_DYNAMIC) is almost identical to a storage buffer, and differs only in how the offset into the buffer is specified. The base offset calculated by the VkDescriptorBufferInfo when initially updating the descriptor set is added to a dynamic offset when binding the descriptor set.

14.1.11. Input Attachment

An input attachment (VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT) is a descriptor type associated with an image resource via an image view that can be used for framebuffer local load operations in fragment shaders.

All image formats that are supported for color attachments (VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT) or depth/stencil attachments (VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT) for a given image tiling mode are also supported for input attachments.

The image subresources for an input attachment must be in a valid image layout in order to access its data in a shader.


An acceleration structure (VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_KHR) is a descriptor type that is used to retrieve scene geometry from within shaders that are used for ray traversal. Shaders have read-only access to the memory.

14.2. Descriptor Sets

Descriptors are grouped together into descriptor set objects. A descriptor set object is an opaque object containing storage for a set of descriptors, where the types and number of descriptors is defined by a descriptor set layout. The layout object may be used to define the association of each descriptor binding with memory or other implementation resources. The layout is used both for determining the resources that need to be associated with the descriptor set, and determining the interface between shader stages and shader resources.

14.2.1. Descriptor Set Layout

A descriptor set layout object is defined by an array of zero or more descriptor bindings. Each
individual descriptor binding is specified by a descriptor type, a count (array size) of the number of descriptors in the binding, a set of shader stages that can access the binding, and (if using immutable samplers) an array of sampler descriptors.

Descriptor set layout objects are represented by VkDescriptorSetLayout handles:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VK_DEFINE_NON_DISPATCHABLE_HANDLE(VkDescriptorSetLayout)
```

To create descriptor set layout objects, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkCreateDescriptorSetLayout(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkDescriptorSetLayoutCreateInfo* pCreateInfo,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator,
    VkDescriptorSetLayout* pSetLayout);
```

- **device** is the logical device that creates the descriptor set layout.
- **pCreateInfo** is a pointer to a VkDescriptorSetLayoutCreateInfo structure specifying the state of the descriptor set layout object.
- **pAllocator** controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
- **pSetLayout** is a pointer to a VkDescriptorSetLayout handle in which the resulting descriptor set layout object is returned.

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-vkCreateDescriptorSetLayout-device-parameter
  device must be a valid VkDevice handle
- VUID-vkCreateDescriptorSetLayout-pCreateInfo-parameter
  pCreateInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid VkDescriptorSetLayoutCreateInfo structure
- VUID-vkCreateDescriptorSetLayout-pAllocator-parameter
  If pAllocator is not NULL, pAllocator must be a valid pointer to a valid VkAllocationCallbacks structure
- VUID-vkCreateDescriptorSetLayout-pSetLayout-parameter
  pSetLayout must be a valid pointer to a VkDescriptorSetLayout handle
Information about the descriptor set layout is passed in a `VkDescriptorSetLayoutCreateInfo` structure:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkDescriptorSetLayoutCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkDescriptorSetLayoutCreateFlags flags;
    uint32_t bindingCount;
    const VkDescriptorSetLayoutBinding* pBindings;
} VkDescriptorSetLayoutCreateInfo;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `flags` is a bitmask of `VkDescriptorSetLayoutCreateFlagBits` specifying options for descriptor set layout creation.
- `bindingCount` is the number of elements in `pBindings`.
- `pBindings` is a pointer to an array of `VkDescriptorSetLayoutBinding` structures.

**Valid Usage**

- VUID-VkDescriptorSetLayoutCreateInfo-binding-00279
  The `VkDescriptorSetLayoutBinding::binding` members of the elements of the `pBindings` array must each have different values.

- VUID-VkDescriptorSetLayoutCreateInfo-flags-00280
  If `flags` contains `VK_DESCRIPTOR_SET_LAYOUT_CREATE_PUSH_DESCRIPTOR_BIT_KHR`, then all elements of `pBindings` must not have a `descriptorType` of `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER_DYNAMIC` or `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER_DYNAMIC`.

- VUID-VkDescriptorSetLayoutCreateInfo-flags-00281
  If `flags` contains `VK_DESCRIPTOR_SET_LAYOUT_CREATE_PUSH_DESCRIPTOR_BIT_KHR`, then the total number of elements of all bindings must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDevicePushDescriptorPropertiesKHR::maxPushDescriptors`.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkDescriptorSetLayoutCreateInfo-sType-sType
  
sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DESCRIPTOR_SET_LAYOUT_CREATE_INFO

- VUID-VkDescriptorSetLayoutCreateInfo-pNext-pNext
  
pNext must be NULL

- VUID-VkDescriptorSetLayoutCreateInfo-flags-parameter
  
flags must be a valid combination of VkDescriptorSetLayoutCreateFlagBits values

- VUID-VkDescriptorSetLayoutCreateInfo-pBindings-parameter
  
If bindingCount is not 0, pBindings must be a valid pointer to an array of bindingCount valid
  VkDescriptorSetLayoutBinding structures

Bits which can be set in VkDescriptorSetLayoutCreateInfo::flags to specify options for descriptor
set layout are:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkDescriptorSetLayoutCreateFlagBits {
    // Provided by VK_KHR_push_descriptor
    VK_DESCRIPTOR_SET_LAYOUT_CREATE_PUSH_DESCRIPTOR_BIT_KHR = 0x00000001,
} VkDescriptorSetLayoutCreateFlagBits;
```

- VK_DESCRIPTOR_SET_LAYOUT_CREATE_PUSH_DESCRIPTOR_BIT_KHR specifies that descriptor sets must
  not be allocated using this layout, and descriptors are instead pushed by
  vkCmdPushDescriptorSetKHR.

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkDescriptorSetLayoutCreateFlags;
```

VkDescriptorSetLayoutCreateFlags is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more
VkDescriptorSetLayoutCreateFlagBits.

The VkDescriptorSetLayoutBinding structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkDescriptorSetLayoutBinding {
    uint32_t binding;
    VkDescriptorType descriptorType;
    uint32_t descriptorCount;
    VkShaderStageFlags stageFlags;
    const VkSampler* pImmutableSamplers;
} VkDescriptorSetLayoutBinding;
```

- binding is the binding number of this entry and corresponds to a resource of the same binding
  number in the shader stages.
• **descriptorType** is a `VkDescriptorType` specifying which type of resource descriptors are used for this binding.

• **descriptorCount** is the number of descriptors contained in the binding, accessed in a shader as an array. If `descriptorCount` is zero this binding entry is reserved and the resource **must** not be accessed from any stage via this binding within any pipeline using the set layout.

• **stageFlags** member is a bitmask of `VkShaderStageFlagBits` specifying which pipeline shader stages **can** access a resource for this binding. `VK_SHADER_STAGE_ALL` is a shorthand specifying that all defined shader stages, including any additional stages defined by extensions, **can** access the resource.

If a shader stage is not included in **stageFlags**, then a resource **must** not be accessed from that stage via this binding within any pipeline using the set layout. Other than input attachments which are limited to the fragment shader, there are no limitations on what combinations of stages **can** use a descriptor binding, and in particular a binding **can** be used by both graphics stages and the compute stage.

• **pImmutableSamplers** affects initialization of samplers. If `descriptorType` specifies a `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLER` or `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER` type descriptor, then `pImmutableSamplers` **can** be used to initialize a set of immutable samplers. Immutable samplers are permanently bound into the set layout and **must** not be changed; updating a `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLER` descriptor with immutable samplers is not allowed and updates to a `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER` descriptor with immutable samplers does not modify the samplers (the image views are updated, but the sampler updates are ignored). If `pImmutableSamplers` is not NULL, then it is a pointer to an array of sampler handles that will be copied into the set layout and used for the corresponding binding. Only the sampler handles are copied; the sampler objects **must** not be destroyed before the final use of the set layout and any descriptor pools and sets created using it. If `pImmutableSamplers` is NULL, then the sampler slots are dynamic and sampler handles **must** be bound into descriptor sets using this layout. If `descriptorType` is not one of these descriptor types, then `pImmutableSamplers` is ignored.

The above layout definition allows the descriptor bindings to be specified sparsely such that not all binding numbers between 0 and the maximum binding number need to be specified in the `pBindings` array. Bindings that are not specified have a `descriptorCount` and `stageFlags` of zero, and the value of `descriptorType` is undefined. However, all binding numbers between 0 and the maximum binding number in the `VkDescriptorSetLayoutCreateInfo::pBindings` array **may** consume memory in the descriptor set layout even if not all descriptor bindings are used, though it **should** not consume additional memory from the descriptor pool.

Note
The maximum binding number specified **should** be as compact as possible to avoid wasted memory.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkDescriptorSetLayoutBinding-descriptorType-00282**
  - If descriptorType is `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLER` or `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER`, and descriptorCount is not 0 and pImmutableSamplers is not NULL, pImmutableSamplers must be a valid pointer to an array of descriptorCount valid VkSampler handles.

- **VUID-VkDescriptorSetLayoutBinding-descriptorCount-00283**
  - If descriptorCount is not 0, stageFlags must be a valid combination of VkShaderStageFlagBits values.

- **VUID-VkDescriptorSetLayoutBinding-descriptorType-01510**
  - If descriptorType is `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT` and descriptorCount is not 0, then stageFlags must be 0 or `VK_SHADER_STAGE_FRAGMENT_BIT`.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkDescriptorSetLayoutBinding-descriptorType-parameter**
  - descriptorType must be a valid VkDescriptorType value.

To query information about whether a descriptor set layout can be created, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_maintenance3
void vkGetDescriptorSetLayoutSupportKHR(
  VkDevice device,
  const VkDescriptorSetLayoutCreateInfo* pCreateInfo,
  VkDescriptorSetLayoutSupport* pSupport);
```

- **device** is the logical device that would create the descriptor set layout.
- **pCreateInfo** is a pointer to a VkDescriptorSetLayoutCreateInfo structure specifying the state of the descriptor set layout object.
- **pSupport** is a pointer to a VkDescriptorSetLayoutSupport structure, in which information about support for the descriptor set layout object is returned.

Some implementations have limitations on what fits in a descriptor set which are not easily expressible in terms of existing limits like maxDescriptorSet*, for example if all descriptor types share a limited space in memory but each descriptor is a different size or alignment. This command returns information about whether a descriptor set satisfies this limit. If the descriptor set layout satisfies the VkPhysicalDeviceMaintenance3Properties::maxPerSetDescriptors limit, this command is guaranteed to return VK_TRUE in VkDescriptorSetLayoutSupport::supported. If the descriptor set layout exceeds the VkPhysicalDeviceMaintenance3Properties::maxPerSetDescriptors limit, whether the descriptor set layout is supported is implementation-dependent and may depend on whether the descriptor sizes and alignments cause the layout to exceed an internal limit.

This command does not consider other limits such as maxPerStageDescriptor*, and so a descriptor...
set layout that is supported according to this command must still satisfy the pipeline layout limits such as maxPerStageDescriptor* in order to be used in a pipeline layout.

**Note**
This is a VkDevice query rather than VkPhysicalDevice because the answer may depend on enabled features.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetDescriptorSetLayoutSupport-device-parameter
  - *device* must be a valid VkDevice handle

- VUID-vkGetDescriptorSetLayoutSupport-pCreateInfo-parameter
  - *pCreateInfo* must be a valid pointer to a valid VkDescriptorSetLayoutCreateInfo structure

- VUID-vkGetDescriptorSetLayoutSupport-pSupport-parameter
  - *pSupport* must be a valid pointer to a VkDescriptorSetLayoutSupport structure

Information about support for the descriptor set layout is returned in a VkDescriptorSetLayoutSupport structure:

```c
typedef struct VkDescriptorSetLayoutSupport {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkBool32 supported;
} VkDescriptorSetLayoutSupport;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_maintenance3
typedef VkDescriptorSetLayoutSupport VkDescriptorSetLayoutSupportKHR;
```

- *sType* is the type of this structure.
- *pNext* is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- *supported* specifies whether the descriptor set layout can be created.

*supported* is set to VK_TRUE if the descriptor set can be created, or else is set to VK_FALSE.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkDescriptorSetLayoutSupport-sType-sType
  - *sType* must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DESCRIPTOR_SET_LAYOUT_SUPPORT

- VUID-VkDescriptorSetLayoutSupport-pNext-pNext
  - *pNext* must be NULL
The following examples show a shader snippet using two descriptor sets, and application code that creates corresponding descriptor set layouts.

**GLSL example**

```glsl
// binding to a single sampled image descriptor in set 0
//
layout (set=0, binding=0) uniform texture2D mySampledImage;

// binding to an array of sampled image descriptors in set 0
//
layout (set=0, binding=1) uniform texture2D myArrayOfSampledImages[12];

// binding to a single uniform buffer descriptor in set 1
//
layout (set=1, binding=0) uniform myUniformBuffer {
    vec4 myElement[32];
};
```
SPIR-V example

```assembly
... %1 = OpExtInstImport "GLSL.std.450" ... 
OpName %9 "mySampledImage" 
OpName %14 "myArrayOfSampledImages" 
OpName %18 "myUniformBuffer" 
OpMemberName %18 0 "myElement" 
OpName %20 "" 
OpDecorate %9 DescriptorSet 0 
OpDecorate %9 Binding 0 
OpDecorate %14 DescriptorSet 0 
OpDecorate %14 Binding 1 
OpDecorate %17 ArrayStride 16 
OpMemberDecorate %18 0 Offset 0 
OpDecorate %18 Block 
OpDecorate %20 DescriptorSet 1 
OpDecorate %20 Binding 0 
%2 = OpTypeVoid 
%3 = OpTypeFunction %2 
%6 = OpTypeFloat 32 
%7 = OpTypeImage %6 2D 0 0 0 1 Unknown 
%8 = OpTypePointer UniformConstant %7 
%9 = OpVariable %8 UniformConstant 
%10 = OpTypeInt 32 0 
%11 = OpConstant %10 12 
%12 = OpTypeArray %7 %11 
%13 = OpTypePointer UniformConstant %12 
%14 = OpVariable %13 UniformConstant 
%15 = OpTypeVector %6 4 
%16 = OpConstant %10 32 
%17 = OpTypeArray %15 %16 
%18 = OpTypeStruct %17 
%19 = OpTypePointer Uniform %18 
%20 = OpVariable %19 Uniform 
...
```

API example

```c
VkResult myResult;

const VkDescriptorSetLayoutBinding myDescriptorSetLayoutBinding[] = {
    // binding to a single image descriptor
    {
        0, // binding
        VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLED_IMAGE, // descriptorType
        1, // descriptorCount
        VK_SHADER_STAGE_FRAGMENT_BIT, // stageFlags
    },
    ...
};
```

692 | Chapter 14. Resource Descriptors
// pImmutableSamplers
},

// binding to an array of image descriptors
{
    1,                                     // binding
    VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLED_IMAGE,     // descriptorType
    12,                                    // descriptorCount
    VK_SHADER_STAGE_FRAGMENT_BIT,         // stageFlags
    NULL                                   // pImmutableSamplers
},

// binding to a single uniform buffer descriptor
{
    0,                                     // binding
    VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER,    // descriptorType
    1,                                     // descriptorCount
    VK_SHADER_STAGE_FRAGMENT_BIT,         // stageFlags
    NULL                                   // pImmutableSamplers
}
);

const VkDescriptorSetLayoutCreateInfo myDescriptorSetLayoutCreateInfo[] =
{
    // Information for first descriptor set with two descriptor bindings
    {
        VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DESCRIPTOR_SET_LAYOUT_CREATE_INFO, // sType
        NULL,                                    // pNext
        0,                                       // flags
        2,                                       // bindingCount
        &myDescriptorSetLayoutBinding[0]        // pBindings
    },

    // Information for second descriptor set with one descriptor binding
    {
        VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DESCRIPTOR_SET_LAYOUT_CREATE_INFO, // sType
        NULL,                                    // pNext
        0,                                       // flags
        1,                                       // bindingCount
    }
};

VkDescriptorSetLayout myDescriptorSetLayout[2];

// Create first descriptor set layout
myResult = vkCreateDescriptorSetLayout(
    myDevice,
    &myDescriptorSetLayoutCreateInfo[0],

To destroy a descriptor set layout, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkDestroyDescriptorSetLayout(VkDevice device, VkDescriptorSetLayout descriptorSetLayout, const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator);
```

- `device` is the logical device that destroys the descriptor set layout.
- `descriptorSetLayout` is the descriptor set layout to destroy.
- `pAllocator` controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkDestroyDescriptorSetLayout-descriptorSetLayout-00284**
  If `VkAllocationCallbacks` were provided when `descriptorSetLayout` was created, a compatible set of callbacks must be provided here.

- **VUID-vkDestroyDescriptorSetLayout-descriptorSetLayout-00285**
  If no `VkAllocationCallbacks` were provided when `descriptorSetLayout` was created, `pAllocator` must be `NULL`.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkDestroyDescriptorSetLayout-device-parameter
device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- VUID-vkDestroyDescriptorSetLayout-descriptorSetLayout-parameter
If descriptorSetLayout is not VK_NULL_HANDLE, descriptorSetLayout must be a valid VkDescriptorSetLayout handle

- VUID-vkDestroyDescriptorSetLayout-pAllocator-parameter
If pAllocator is not NULL, pAllocator must be a valid pointer to a valid VkAllocationCallbacks structure

- VUID-vkDestroyDescriptorSetLayout-descriptorSetLayout-parent
If descriptorSetLayout is a valid handle, it must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from device

Host Synchronization

- Host access to descriptorSetLayout must be externally synchronized

14.2.2. Pipeline Layouts

Access to descriptor sets from a pipeline is accomplished through a pipeline layout. Zero or more descriptor set layouts and zero or more push constant ranges are combined to form a pipeline layout object describing the complete set of resources that can be accessed by a pipeline. The pipeline layout represents a sequence of descriptor sets with each having a specific layout. This sequence of layouts is used to determine the interface between shader stages and shader resources. Each pipeline is created using a pipeline layout.

Pipeline layout objects are represented by VkPipelineLayout handles:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VK_DEFINE_NON_DISPATCHABLE_HANDLE(VkPipelineLayout)
```

To create a pipeline layout, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkCreatePipelineLayout(VkDevice device,
                              const VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo* pCreateInfo,
                              const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator,
                              VkPipelineLayout* pPipelineLayout);
```

- `device` is the logical device that creates the pipeline layout.
- `pCreateInfo` is a pointer to a VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo structure specifying the state of the
pipeline layout object.

- `pAllocator` controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
- `pPipelineLayout` is a pointer to a `VkPipelineLayout` handle in which the resulting pipeline layout object is returned.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- `VUID-vkCreatePipelineLayout-device-parameter` device must be a valid `VkDevice` handle
- `VUID-vkCreatePipelineLayout-pCreateInfo-parameter` `pCreateInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo` structure
- `VUID-vkCreatePipelineLayout-pAllocator-parameter` If `pAllocator` is not `NULL`, `pAllocator` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkAllocationCallbacks` structure
- `VUID-vkCreatePipelineLayout-pPipelineLayout-parameter` `pPipelineLayout` must be a valid pointer to a `VkPipelineLayout` handle

Return Codes

Success

- `VK_SUCCESS`

Failure

- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY`

The `VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkPipelineLayoutCreateFlags flags;
    uint32_tsetLayoutCount;
    const VkDescriptorSetLayout* pSetLayouts;
    uint32_t pushConstantRangeCount;
    const VkPushConstantRange* pPushConstantRanges;
} VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `flags` is reserved for future use.
- `setLayoutCount` is the number of descriptor sets included in the pipeline layout.
- `pSetLayouts` is a pointer to an array of `VkDescriptorSetLayout` objects.
- `pushConstantRangeCount` is the number of push constant ranges included in the pipeline layout.
- `pPushConstantRanges` is a pointer to an array of `VkPushConstantRange` structures defining a set of push constant ranges for use in a single pipeline layout. In addition to descriptor set layouts, a pipeline layout also describes how many push constants can be accessed by each stage of the pipeline.

**Note**

Push constants represent a high speed path to modify constant data in pipelines that is expected to outperform memory-backed resource updates.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo-setLayoutCount-00286**
  
  `setLayoutCount` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxBoundDescriptorSets`

- **VUID-VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo-pSetLayouts-00287**
  
  The total number of descriptors of the type `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLER` and `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER` accessible to any shader stage across all elements of `pSetLayouts` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxPerStageDescriptorSamplers`

- **VUID-VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo-pSetLayouts-00288**
  
  The total number of descriptors of the type `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER` and `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER_DYNAMIC` accessible to any shader stage across all elements of `pSetLayouts` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxPerStageDescriptorUniformBuffers`

- **VUID-VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo-pSetLayouts-00289**
  
  The total number of descriptors of the type `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER` and `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER_DYNAMIC` accessible to any shader stage across all elements of `pSetLayouts` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxPerStageDescriptorStorageBuffers`

- **VUID-VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo-pSetLayouts-01676**
  
  The total number of descriptors of the type `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT` accessible to any given shader stage across all elements of `pSetLayouts` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxPerStageDescriptorInputAttachments`

- **VUID-VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo-pSetLayouts-01677**
  
  The total number of descriptors of the type `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLER` and `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER` accessible across all shader stages and across all elements of `pSetLayouts` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxDescriptorSetSamplers`

- **VUID-VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo-pSetLayouts-01678**
  
  The total number of descriptors of the type `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER` accessible across all shader stages and across all elements of `pSetLayouts` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxDescriptorSetUniformBuffers`

- **VUID-VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo-pSetLayouts-01679**
  
  The total number of descriptors of the type `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_IMAGE` and `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER` accessible to any shader stage across all elements of `pSetLayouts` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxPerStageDescriptorStorageImages`
The total number of descriptors of the type `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER_DYNAMIC` accessible across all shader stages and across all elements of `pSetLayouts` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxDescriptorSetUniformBuffersDynamic`

- VUID-VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo-pSetLayouts-01680

The total number of descriptors of the type `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER` accessible across all shader stages and across all elements of `pSetLayouts` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxDescriptorSetStorageBuffers`

- VUID-VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo-pSetLayouts-01681

The total number of descriptors of the type `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER_DYNAMIC` accessible across all shader stages and across all elements of `pSetLayouts` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxDescriptorSetStorageBuffersDynamic`

- VUID-VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo-pSetLayouts-01682

The total number of descriptors of the type `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER`, `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLED_IMAGE`, and `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER` accessible across all shader stages and across all elements of `pSetLayouts` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxDescriptorSetSampledImages`

- VUID-VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo-pSetLayouts-01683

The total number of descriptors of the type `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_IMAGE`, and `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER` accessible across all shader stages and across all elements of `pSetLayouts` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxDescriptorSetStorageImages`

- VUID-VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo-pSetLayouts-01684

The total number of descriptors of the type `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT` accessible across all shader stages and across all elements of `pSetLayouts` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxDescriptorSetInputAttachments`

- VUID-VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo-descriptorType-03574

Any two elements of `pPushConstantRanges` must not include the same stage in `stageFlags`

- VUID-VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo-pSetLayouts-00293

`pSetLayouts` must not contain more than one descriptor set layout that was created with `VK_DESCRIPTOR_SET_LAYOUT_CREATE_PUSH_DESCRIPTOR_BIT_KHR` set

- VUID-VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo-descriptorType-03575

The total number of bindings in descriptor set layouts created without the `VK_DESCRIPTOR_SET_LAYOUT_CREATE_UPDATE_AFTER_BIND_POOL_BIT_KHR` bit set with a `descriptorType` of `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_KHR` accessible to any given shader stage across all elements of `pSetLayouts` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructurePropertiesKHR::maxPerStageDescriptorAccelerationStructures`

- VUID-VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo-descriptorType-03576

The total number of bindings with a `descriptorType` of `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_KHR` accessible to any given shader stage across all elements of `pSetLayouts` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructurePropertiesKHR::maxPerStageDescriptorUpdateAfterBindAccelerationStructures`

- VUID-VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo-descriptorType-03577
The total number of bindings in descriptor set layouts created without the `VK_DESCRIPTOR_SET_LAYOUT_CREATE_UPDATE_AFTER_BIND_POOL_BIT` bit set with a `descriptorType` of `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_KHR` accessible across all shader stages and across all elements of `pSetLayouts` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructurePropertiesKHR:maxDescriptorSetAccelerationStructures`

- `VUID-VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo-descriptorType-03574`

The total number of bindings with a `descriptorType` of `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_KHR` accessible across all shader stages and across all elements of `pSetLayouts` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructurePropertiesKHR:maxDescriptorSetUpdateAfterBindAccelerationStructures`

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- `VUID-VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo-sType-sType`
  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_LAYOUT_CREATE_INFO`

- `VUID-VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo-pNext-pNext`
  
  `pNext` must be `NULL`

- `VUID-VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo-flags-zerobitmask`
  
  `flags` must be `0`

- `VUID-VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo-pSetLayouts-parameter`
  
  If `setLayoutCount` is not `0`, `pSetLayouts` must be a valid pointer to an array of `setLayoutCount` valid `VkDescriptorSetLayout` handles

- `VUID-VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo-pPushConstantRanges-parameter`
  
  If `pushConstantRangeCount` is not `0`, `pPushConstantRanges` must be a valid pointer to an array of `pushConstantRangeCount` valid `VkPushConstantRange` structures

---

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkPipelineLayoutCreateFlags;
```

`VkPipelineLayoutCreateFlags` is a bitmask type for setting a mask, but is currently reserved for future use.

The `VkPushConstantRange` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkPushConstantRange {
    VkShaderStageFlags stageFlags;
    uint32_t offset;
    uint32_t size;
} VkPushConstantRange;
```
• **stageFlags** is a set of stage flags describing the shader stages that will access a range of push constants. If a particular stage is not included in the range, then accessing members of that range of push constants from the corresponding shader stage will return undefined values.

• **offset** and **size** are the start offset and size, respectively, consumed by the range. Both **offset** and **size** are in units of bytes and **must** be a multiple of 4. The layout of the push constant variables is specified in the shader.

### Valid Usage

- VUID-VkPushConstantRange-offset-00294
  
  **offset** **must** be less than `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxPushConstantsSize`

- VUID-VkPushConstantRange-offset-00295
  
  **offset** **must** be a multiple of 4

- VUID-VkPushConstantRange-size-00296
  
  **size** **must** be greater than 0

- VUID-VkPushConstantRange-size-00297
  
  **size** **must** be a multiple of 4

- VUID-VkPushConstantRange-size-00298
  
  **size** **must** be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxPushConstantsSize minus offset`

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkPushConstantRange-stageFlags-parameter
  
  **stageFlags** **must** be a valid combination of `VkShaderStageFlagBits` values

- VUID-VkPushConstantRange-stageFlags-requiredbitmask
  
  **stageFlags** **must** not be 0

Once created, pipeline layouts are used as part of pipeline creation (see **Pipelines**), as part of binding descriptor sets (see **Descriptor Set Binding**), and as part of setting push constants (see **Push Constant Updates**). Pipeline creation accepts a pipeline layout as input, and the layout **may** be used to map (set, binding, arrayElement) tuples to implementation resources or memory locations within a descriptor set. The assignment of implementation resources depends only on the bindings defined in the descriptor sets that comprise the pipeline layout, and not on any shader source.

All resource variables **statically used** in all shaders in a pipeline **must** be declared with a (set,binding,arrayElement) that exists in the corresponding descriptor set layout and is of an appropriate descriptor type and includes the set of shader stages it is used by in **stageFlags**. The pipeline layout **can** include entries that are not used by a particular pipeline, or that are dead-code eliminated from any of the shaders. The pipeline layout allows the application to provide a consistent set of bindings across multiple pipeline compiles, which enables those pipelines to be compiled in a way that the implementation **may** cheaply switch pipelines without reprogramming the bindings.
Similarly, the push constant block declared in each shader (if present) must only place variables at offsets that are each included in a push constant range with stageFlags including the bit corresponding to the shader stage that uses it. The pipeline layout can include ranges or portions of ranges that are not used by a particular pipeline, or for which the variables have been dead-code eliminated from any of the shaders.

There is a limit on the total number of resources of each type that can be included in bindings in all descriptor set layouts in a pipeline layout as shown in Pipeline Layout Resource Limits. The “Total Resources Available” column gives the limit on the number of each type of resource that can be included in bindings in all descriptor sets in the pipeline layout. Some resource types count against multiple limits. Additionally, there are limits on the total number of each type of resource that can be used in any pipeline stage as described in Shader Resource Limits.

Table 13. Pipeline Layout Resource Limits

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Total Resources Available</th>
<th>Resource Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>maxDescriptorSetSamplers</td>
<td>sampler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>combined image sampler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxDescriptorSetSampledImages</td>
<td>sampled image</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>combined image sampler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>uniform texel buffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxDescriptorSetStorageImages</td>
<td>storage image</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>storage texel buffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxDescriptorSetUniformBuffers</td>
<td>uniform buffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxDescriptorSetUniformBuffersDynamic</td>
<td>uniform buffer dynamic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxDescriptorSetStorageBuffers</td>
<td>storage buffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxDescriptorSetStorageBuffersDynamic</td>
<td>storage buffer dynamic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxDescriptorSetInputAttachments</td>
<td>input attachment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxDescriptorSetAccelerationStructures or maxDescriptorSetUpdateAfterBindAccelerationStructures</td>
<td>acceleration structure</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To destroy a pipeline layout, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkDestroyPipelineLayout(
    VkDevice device,
    VkPipelineLayout pipelineLayout,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator);
```

- `device` is the logical device that destroys the pipeline layout.
pipelineLayout is the pipeline layout to destroy.

dAllocator controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkDestroyPipelineLayout-pipelineLayout-00299**
  If VkAllocationCallbacks were provided when pipelineLayout was created, a compatible set of callbacks must be provided here.

- **VUID-vkDestroyPipelineLayout-pipelineLayout-00300**
  If no VkAllocationCallbacks were provided when pipelineLayout was created, pAllocator must be NULL.

- **VUID-vkDestroyPipelineLayout-pipelineLayout-02004**
  pipelineLayout must not have been passed to any vkCmd* command for any command buffers that are still in the recording state when vkDestroyPipelineLayout is called.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkDestroyPipelineLayout-device-parameter**
  device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- **VUID-vkDestroyPipelineLayout-pipelineLayout-parameter**
  If pipelineLayout is not VK_NULL_HANDLE, pipelineLayout must be a valid VkPipelineLayout handle.

- **VUID-vkDestroyPipelineLayout-pAllocator-parameter**
  If pAllocator is not NULL, pAllocator must be a valid pointer to a valid VkAllocationCallbacks structure.

- **VUID-vkDestroyPipelineLayout-pipelineLayout-parent**
  If pipelineLayout is a valid handle, it must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from device.

### Host Synchronization

- Host access to pipelineLayout must be externally synchronized.

### Pipeline Layout Compatibility

Two pipeline layouts are defined to be “compatible for push constants” if they were created with identical push constant ranges. Two pipeline layouts are defined to be “compatible for set N” if they were created with identically defined descriptor set layouts for sets zero through N, and if they were created with identical push constant ranges.

When binding a descriptor set (see Descriptor Set Binding) to set number N, if the previously bound descriptor sets for sets zero through N-1 were all bound using compatible pipeline layouts, then performing this binding does not disturb any of the lower numbered sets. If, additionally, the
previously bound descriptor set for set N was bound using a pipeline layout compatible for set N, then the bindings in sets numbered greater than N are also not disturbed.

Similarly, when binding a pipeline, the pipeline can correctly access any previously bound descriptor sets which were bound with compatible pipeline layouts, as long as all lower numbered sets were also bound with compatible layouts.

Layout compatibility means that descriptor sets can be bound to a command buffer for use by any pipeline created with a compatible pipeline layout, and without having bound a particular pipeline first. It also means that descriptor sets can remain valid across a pipeline change, and the same resources will be accessible to the newly bound pipeline.

Implementor’s Note

A consequence of layout compatibility is that when the implementation compiles a pipeline layout and maps pipeline resources to implementation resources, the mechanism for set N should only be a function of sets [0..N].

Note

Place the least frequently changing descriptor sets near the start of the pipeline layout, and place the descriptor sets representing the most frequently changing resources near the end. When pipelines are switched, only the descriptor set bindings that have been invalidated will need to be updated and the remainder of the descriptor set bindings will remain in place.

The maximum number of descriptor sets that can be bound to a pipeline layout is queried from physical device properties (see maxBoundDescriptorSets in Limits).
const VkDescriptorSetLayout layouts[] = { layout1, layout2 };

const VkPushConstantRange ranges[] = {
    {
        VK_SHADER_STAGE_VERTEX_BIT, // stageFlags
        0, // offset
        4 // size
    },
    {
        VK_SHADER_STAGE_FRAGMENT_BIT, // stageFlags
        4, // offset
        4 // size
    }
};

const VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo createInfo = {
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_LAYOUT_CREATE_INFO, // sType
    NULL, // pNext
    0, // flags
    2, // setLayoutCount
    layouts, // pSetLayouts
    2, // pushConstantRangeCount
    ranges, // pPushConstantRanges
};

VkPipelineLayout myPipelineLayout;
myResult = vkCreatePipelineLayout(myDevice, &createInfo, NULL, &myPipelineLayout);

### 14.2.3. Allocation of Descriptor Sets

A descriptor pool maintains a pool of descriptors, from which descriptor sets are allocated. Descriptor pools are externally synchronized, meaning that the application must not allocate and/or free descriptor sets from the same pool in multiple threads simultaneously.

Descriptor pools are represented by VkDescriptorPool handles:

```
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VK_DEFINE_NON_DISPATCHABLE_HANDLE(VkDescriptorPool)
```

To create a descriptor pool object, call:
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkCreateDescriptorPool(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkDescriptorPoolCreateInfo* pCreateInfo,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator,
    VkDescriptorPool* pDescriptorPool);

- **device** is the logical device that creates the descriptor pool.
- **pCreateInfo** is a pointer to a `VkDescriptorPoolCreateInfo` structure specifying the state of the descriptor pool object.
- **pAllocator** controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
- **pDescriptorPool** is a pointer to a `VkDescriptorPool` handle in which the resulting descriptor pool object is returned.

The created descriptor pool is returned in **pDescriptorPool**.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkCreateDescriptorPool-device-parameter**
  
  **device** must be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- **VUID-vkCreateDescriptorPool-pCreateInfo-parameter**
  
  **pCreateInfo** must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkDescriptorPoolCreateInfo` structure

- **VUID-vkCreateDescriptorPool-pAllocator-parameter**
  
  If **pAllocator** is not NULL, **pAllocator** must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkAllocationCallbacks` structure

- **VUID-vkCreateDescriptorPool-pDescriptorPool-parameter**
  
  **pDescriptorPool** must be a valid pointer to a `VkDescriptorPool` handle

### Return Codes

**Success**

- **VK_SUCCESS**

**Failure**

- **VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY**
- **VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY**

Additional information about the pool is passed in a `VkDescriptorPoolCreateInfo` structure:
typedef struct VkDescriptorPoolCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkDescriptorPoolCreateFlags flags;
    uint32_t maxSets;
    uint32_t poolSizeCount;
    const VkDescriptorPoolSize* pPoolSizes;
} VkDescriptorPoolCreateInfo;

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `flags` is a bitmask of `VkDescriptorPoolCreateFlagBits` specifying certain supported operations on the pool.
- `maxSets` is the maximum number of descriptor sets that can be allocated from the pool.
- `poolSizeCount` is the number of elements in `pPoolSizes`.
- `pPoolSizes` is a pointer to an array of `VkDescriptorPoolSize` structures, each containing a descriptor type and number of descriptors of that type to be allocated in the pool.

If multiple `VkDescriptorPoolSize` structures containing the same descriptor type appear in the `pPoolSizes` array then the pool will be created with enough storage for the total number of descriptors of each type.

Fragmentation of a descriptor pool is possible and may lead to descriptor set allocation failures. A failure due to fragmentation is defined as failing a descriptor set allocation despite the sum of all outstanding descriptor set allocations from the pool plus the requested allocation requiring no more than the total number of descriptors requested at pool creation. Implementations provide certain guarantees of when fragmentation must not cause allocation failure, as described below.

If a descriptor pool has not had any descriptor sets freed since it was created or most recently reset then fragmentation must not cause an allocation failure (note that this is always the case for a pool created without the `VK_DESCRIPTOR_POOL_CREATE_FREE_DESCRIPTOR_SET_BIT` bit set). Additionally, if all sets allocated from the pool since it was created or most recently reset use the same number of descriptors (of each type) and the requested allocation also uses that same number of descriptors (of each type), then fragmentation must not cause an allocation failure.

If an allocation failure occurs due to fragmentation, an application can create an additional descriptor pool to perform further descriptor set allocations.

**Valid Usage**

- `VUID-VkDescriptorPoolCreateInfo-maxSets-00301`
  - `maxSets` must be greater than 0
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkDescriptorPoolCreateInfo-sType-sType**
  
  *sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DESCRIPTOR_POOL_CREATE_INFO*

- **VUID-VkDescriptorPoolCreateInfo-pNext-pNext**
  
  *pNext must be NULL*

- **VUID-VkDescriptorPoolCreateInfo-flags-parameter**
  
  *flags must be a valid combination of VkDescriptorPoolCreateFlagBits values*

- **VUID-VkDescriptorPoolCreateInfo-pPoolSizes-parameter**
  
  *pPoolSizes must be a valid pointer to an array of poolSizeCount valid VkDescriptorPoolSize structures*

- **VUID-VkDescriptorPoolCreateInfo-poolSizeCount-arraylength**
  
  *poolSizeCount must be greater than 0*

Bits which can be set in VkDescriptorPoolCreateInfo::flags to enable operations on a descriptor pool are:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkDescriptorPoolCreateFlagBits {
    VK_DESCRIPTOR_POOL_CREATE_FREE_DESCRIPTOR_SET_BIT = 0x00000001,
} VkDescriptorPoolCreateFlagBits;
```

- **VK_DESCRIPTOR_POOL_CREATE_FREE_DESCRIPTOR_SET_BIT** specifies that descriptor sets can return their individual allocations to the pool, i.e. all of vkAllocateDescriptorSets, vkFreeDescriptorSets, and vkResetDescriptorPool are allowed. Otherwise, descriptor sets allocated from the pool must not be individually freed back to the pool, i.e. only vkAllocateDescriptorSets and vkResetDescriptorPool are allowed.

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkDescriptorPoolCreateFlags;
```

VkDescriptorPoolCreateFlags is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more VkDescriptorPoolCreateFlagBits.

The VkDescriptorPoolSize structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkDescriptorPoolSize {
    VkDescriptorType type;
    uint32_t descriptorCount;
} VkDescriptorPoolSize;
```

- **type** is the type of descriptor.
• `descriptorCount` is the number of descriptors of that type to allocate.

**Note**

When creating a descriptor pool that will contain descriptors for combined image samplers of multi-planar formats, an application needs to account for non-trivial descriptor consumption when choosing the `descriptorCount` value, as indicated by `VkSamplerYcbcrConversionImageFormatProperties::combinedImageSamplerDescriptorCount`.

---

**Valid Usage**

- VUID-VkDescriptorPoolSize-descriptorCount-00302
  `descriptorCount` must be greater than 0

---

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-VkDescriptorPoolSize-type-parameter
  `type` must be a valid `VkDescriptorType` value

To destroy a descriptor pool, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkDestroyDescriptorPool(
  VkDevice
  device,
  VkDescriptorPool
  descriptorPool,
  const VkAllocationCallbacks*
  pAllocator);
```

- `device` is the logical device that destroys the descriptor pool.
- `descriptorPool` is the descriptor pool to destroy.
- `pAllocator` controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.

When a pool is destroyed, all descriptor sets allocated from the pool are implicitly freed and become invalid. Descriptor sets allocated from a given pool do not need to be freed before destroying that descriptor pool.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkDestroyDescriptorPool-descriptorPool-00303**
  All submitted commands that refer to descriptorPool (via any allocated descriptor sets) **must** have completed execution

- **VUID-vkDestroyDescriptorPool-descriptorPool-00304**
  If VkAllocationCallbacks were provided when descriptorPool was created, a compatible set of callbacks **must** be provided here

- **VUID-vkDestroyDescriptorPool-descriptorPool-00305**
  If no VkAllocationCallbacks were provided when descriptorPool was created, pAllocator **must** be NULL

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkDestroyDescriptorPool-device-parameter**
  device **must** be a valid VkDevice handle

- **VUID-vkDestroyDescriptorPool-descriptorPool-parameter**
  If descriptorPool is not VK_NULL_HANDLE, descriptorPool **must** be a valid VkDescriptorPool handle

- **VUID-vkDestroyDescriptorPool-pAllocator-parameter**
  If pAllocator is not NULL, pAllocator **must** be a valid pointer to a valid VkAllocationCallbacks structure

- **VUID-vkDestroyDescriptorPool-descriptorPool-parent**
  If descriptorPool is a valid handle, it **must** have been created, allocated, or retrieved from device

Host Synchronization

- Host access to descriptorPool **must** be externally synchronized

Descriptor sets are allocated from descriptor pool objects, and are represented by VkDescriptorSet handles:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VK_DEFINE_NON_DISPATCHABLE_HANDLE(VkDescriptorSet)
```

To allocate descriptor sets from a descriptor pool, call:
VkResult vkAllocateDescriptorSets(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkDescriptorSetAllocateInfo* pAllocateInfo,
    VkDescriptorSet* pDescriptorSets);

- **device** is the logical device that owns the descriptor pool.
- **pAllocateInfo** is a pointer to a `VkDescriptorSetAllocateInfo` structure describing parameters of the allocation.
- **pDescriptorSets** is a pointer to an array of `VkDescriptorSet` handles in which the resulting descriptor set objects are returned.

The allocated descriptor sets are returned in **pDescriptorSets**.

When a descriptor set is allocated, the initial state is largely uninitialized and all descriptors are undefined. Descriptors also become undefined if the underlying resource is destroyed. Descriptor sets containing undefined descriptors can still be bound and used, subject to the following conditions:

- Descriptors that are statically used must have been populated before the descriptor set is consumed.
- Entries that are not used by a pipeline can have undefined descriptors.

If a call to `vkAllocateDescriptorSets` would cause the total number of descriptor sets allocated from the pool to exceed the value of `VkDescriptorPoolCreateInfo::maxSets` used to create `pAllocateInfo->descriptorPool`, then the allocation may fail due to lack of space in the descriptor pool. Similarly, the allocation may fail due to lack of space if the call to `vkAllocateDescriptorSets` would cause the number of any given descriptor type to exceed the sum of all the `descriptorCount` members of each element of `VkDescriptorPoolCreateInfo::pPoolSizes` with a type equal to that type.

If the allocation fails due to no more space in the descriptor pool, and not because of system or device memory exhaustion, then `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_POOL_MEMORY` must be returned.

`vkAllocateDescriptorSets` can be used to create multiple descriptor sets. If the creation of any of those descriptor sets fails, then the implementation must destroy all successfully created descriptor set objects from this command, set all entries of the **pDescriptorSets** array to **VK_NULL_HANDLE** and return the error.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkAllocateDescriptorSets-device-parameter**
  
  device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- **VUID-vkAllocateDescriptorSets-pAllocateInfo-parameter**
  
  pAllocateInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid VkDescriptorSetAllocateInfo structure

- **VUID-vkAllocateDescriptorSets-pDescriptorSets-parameter**
  
  pDescriptorSets must be a valid pointer to an array of pAllocateInfo->descriptorSetCount VkDescriptorSet handles

- **VUID-vkAllocateDescriptorSets-pAllocateInfo::descriptorSetCount-arraylength**
  
  pAllocateInfo->descriptorSetCount must be greater than 0

Host Synchronization

- Host access to pAllocateInfo->descriptorPool must be externally synchronized

Return Codes

**Success**

- VK_SUCCESS

**Failure**

- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_FRAGMENTED_POOL
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_POOL_MEMORY

The VkDescriptorSetAllocateInfo structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkDescriptorSetAllocateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkDescriptorPool descriptorPool;
    uint32_t descriptorSetCount;
    const VkDescriptorSetLayout* pSetLayouts;
} VkDescriptorSetAllocateInfo;
```

- sType is the type of this structure.
- pNext is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- descriptorPool is the pool which the sets will be allocated from.
• descriptorSetCount determines the number of descriptor sets to be allocated from the pool.
• pSetLayouts is a pointer to an array of descriptor set layouts, with each member specifying how the corresponding descriptor set is allocated.

Valid Usage

• VUID-VkDescriptorSetAllocateInfo-pSetLayouts-00308
Each element of pSetLayouts must not have been created with VK_DESCRIPTOR_SET_LAYOUT_CREATE_PUSH_DESCRIPTOR_BIT_KHR set

Valid Usage (Implicit)

• VUID-VkDescriptorSetAllocateInfo-sType-sType
sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DESCRIPTOR_SET_ALLOCATE_INFO
• VUID-VkDescriptorSetAllocateInfo-pNext-pNext
pNext must be NULL
• VUID-VkDescriptorSetAllocateInfo-descriptorPool-parameter
descriptorPool must be a valid VkDescriptorPool handle
• VUID-VkDescriptorSetAllocateInfo-pSetLayouts-parameter
pSetLayouts must be a valid pointer to an array of descriptorSetCount valid VkDescriptorSetLayout handles
• VUID-VkDescriptorSetAllocateInfo-descriptorSetCount-arraylength
descriptorSetCount must be greater than 0
• VUID-VkDescriptorSetAllocateInfo-commonparent
Both of descriptorPool, and the elements of pSetLayouts must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same VkDevice

To free allocated descriptor sets, call:

// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkFreeDescriptorSets(
    VkDevice device,
    VkDescriptorPool descriptorPool,
    uint32_t descriptorSetCount,
    const VkDescriptorSet* pDescriptorSets);

• device is the logical device that owns the descriptor pool.
• descriptorPool is the descriptor pool from which the descriptor sets were allocated.
• descriptorSetCount is the number of elements in the pDescriptorSets array.
• pDescriptorSets is a pointer to an array of handles to VkDescriptorSet objects.

After calling vkFreeDescriptorSets, all descriptor sets in pDescriptorSets are invalid.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkFreeDescriptorSets-pDescriptorSets-00309
  All submitted commands that refer to any element of `pDescriptorSets` must have completed execution.

- VUID-vkFreeDescriptorSets-pDescriptorSets-00310
  `pDescriptorSets` must be a valid pointer to an array of `descriptorSetCount` `VkDescriptorSet` handles, each element of which must either be a valid handle or `VK_NULL_HANDLE`.

- VUID-vkFreeDescriptorSets-descriptorPool-00312
  `descriptorPool` must have been created with the `VK_DESCRIPTOR_POOL_CREATE_FREE_DESCRIPTOR_SET_BIT` flag.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkFreeDescriptorSets-device-parameter
  `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle.

- VUID-vkFreeDescriptorSets-descriptorPool-parameter
  `descriptorPool` must be a valid `VkDescriptorPool` handle.

- VUID-vkFreeDescriptorSets-descriptorSetCount-arraylength
  `descriptorSetCount` must be greater than 0.

- VUID-vkFreeDescriptorSets-descriptorPool-parent
  `descriptorPool` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from `device`.

- VUID-vkFreeDescriptorSets-pDescriptorSets-parent
  Each element of `pDescriptorSets` that is a valid handle must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from `descriptorPool`.

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `descriptorPool` must be externally synchronized.

- Host access to each member of `pDescriptorSets` must be externally synchronized.

Return Codes

**Success**
- `VK_SUCCESS`

To return all descriptor sets allocated from a given pool to the pool, rather than freeing individual descriptor sets, call:
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkResetDescriptorPool(
    VkDevice device, 
    VkDescriptorPool descriptorPool, 
    VkDescriptorPoolResetFlags flags);

• `device` is the logical device that owns the descriptor pool.
• `descriptorPool` is the descriptor pool to be reset.
• `flags` is reserved for future use.

Resetting a descriptor pool recycles all of the resources from all of the descriptor sets allocated from the descriptor pool back to the descriptor pool, and the descriptor sets are implicitly freed.

Valid Usage

• `VUID-vkResetDescriptorPool-descriptorPool-00313`
  All uses of `descriptorPool` (via any allocated descriptor sets) must have completed execution

Valid Usage (Implicit)

• `VUID-vkResetDescriptorPool-device-parameter`
  `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle

• `VUID-vkResetDescriptorPool-descriptorPool-parameter`
  `descriptorPool` must be a valid `VkDescriptorPool` handle

• `VUID-vkResetDescriptorPool-flags-zerobitmask`
  `flags` must be 0

• `VUID-vkResetDescriptorPool-descriptorPool-parent`
  `descriptorPool` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from `device`

Host Synchronization

• Host access to `descriptorPool` must be externally synchronized

• Host access to any `VkDescriptorSet` objects allocated from `descriptorPool` must be externally synchronized

Return Codes

Success

• `VK_SUCCESS`


```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkDescriptorPoolResetFlags;
```

`VkDescriptorPoolResetFlags` is a bitmask type for setting a mask, but is currently reserved for future use.

### 14.2.4. Descriptor Set Updates

Once allocated, descriptor sets can be updated with a combination of write and copy operations. To update descriptor sets, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkUpdateDescriptorSets(
    VkDevice device,
    uint32_t descriptorWriteCount,
    const VkWriteDescriptorSet* pDescriptorWrites,
    uint32_t descriptorCopyCount,
    const VkCopyDescriptorSet* pDescriptorCopies);
```

- `device` is the logical device that updates the descriptor sets.
- `descriptorWriteCount` is the number of elements in the `pDescriptorWrites` array.
- `pDescriptorWrites` is a pointer to an array of `VkWriteDescriptorSet` structures describing the descriptor sets to write to.
- `descriptorCopyCount` is the number of elements in the `pDescriptorCopies` array.
- `pDescriptorCopies` is a pointer to an array of `VkCopyDescriptorSet` structures describing the descriptor sets to copy between.

The operations described by `pDescriptorWrites` are performed first, followed by the operations described by `pDescriptorCopies`. Within each array, the operations are performed in the order they appear in the array.

Each element in the `pDescriptorWrites` array describes an operation updating the descriptor set using descriptors for resources specified in the structure.

Each element in the `pDescriptorCopies` array is a `VkCopyDescriptorSet` structure describing an operation copying descriptors between sets.

If the `dstSet` member of any element of `pDescriptorWrites` or `pDescriptorCopies` is bound, accessed, or modified by any command that was recorded to a command buffer which is currently in the recording or executable state, that command buffer becomes invalid.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkUpdateDescriptorSets-pDescriptorWrites-06236
  For each element $i$ where $p\text{DescriptorWrites}[i].\text{descriptorType}$ is
  
  - $\text{VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER}$
  - $\text{VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER}$,
  
  elements of the $p\text{TexelBufferView}$ member of $p\text{DescriptorWrites}[i]$ must have been created on device

- VUID-vkUpdateDescriptorSets-pDescriptorWrites-06237
  For each element $i$ where $p\text{DescriptorWrites}[i].\text{descriptorType}$ is
  
  - $\text{VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER}$
  - $\text{VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER}$
  - $\text{VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER_DYNAMIC}$
  - $\text{VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER_DYNAMIC}$,
  
  the buffer member of any element of the $p\text{BufferInfo}$ member of $p\text{DescriptorWrites}[i]$ must have been created on device

- VUID-vkUpdateDescriptorSets-pDescriptorWrites-06238
  For each element $i$ where $p\text{DescriptorWrites}[i].\text{descriptorType}$ is
  
  - $\text{VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLER}$
  - $\text{VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER}$,
  
  and $\text{dstSet}$ was not allocated with a layout that included immutable samplers for $\text{dstBinding}$ with $\text{descriptorType}$, the sampler member of any element of the $p\text{ImageInfo}$ member of $p\text{DescriptorWrites}[i]$ must have been created on device

- VUID-vkUpdateDescriptorSets-pDescriptorWrites-06239
  For each element $i$ where $p\text{DescriptorWrites}[i].\text{descriptorType}$ is
  
  - $\text{VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLED_IMAGE}$
  - $\text{VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_IMAGE}$
  - $\text{VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT}$
  - $\text{VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER}$
  
  the $p\text{Image}$ member of any element of $p\text{DescriptorWrites}[i]$ must have been created on device

- VUID-vkUpdateDescriptorSets-pDescriptorWrites-06240
  For each element $i$ where $p\text{DescriptorWrites}[i].\text{descriptorType}$ is
  
  - $\text{VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_KHR}$,
  
  elements of the $p\text{AccelerationStructures}$ member of a $\text{VkWriteDescriptorSetAccelerationStructureKHR}$ structure in the $p\text{Next}$ chain of $p\text{DescriptorWrites}[i]$ must have been created on device

- VUID-vkUpdateDescriptorSets-dstSet-00314
  The $\text{dstSet}$ member of each element of $p\text{DescriptorWrites}$ or $p\text{DescriptorCopies}$ must not be used by any command that was recorded to a command buffer which is in the pending state
Valid Usage (Implicit)

• VUID-vkUpdateDescriptorSets-device-parameter
device must be a valid VkDevice handle

• VUID-vkUpdateDescriptorSets-pDescriptorWrites-parameter
  If descriptorWriteCount is not 0, pDescriptorWrites must be a valid pointer to an array of
descriptorWriteCount valid VkWriteDescriptorSet structures

• VUID-vkUpdateDescriptorSets-pDescriptorCopies-parameter
  If descriptorCopyCount is not 0, pDescriptorCopies must be a valid pointer to an array of
descriptorCopyCount valid VkCopyDescriptorSet structures

Host Synchronization

• Host access to pDescriptorWrites[].dstSet must be externally synchronized
• Host access to pDescriptorCopies[].dstSet must be externally synchronized

The VkWriteDescriptorSet structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkWriteDescriptorSet {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkDescriptorSet dstSet;
    uint32_t dstBinding;
    uint32_t dstArrayElement;
    uint32_t descriptorCount;
    VkDescriptorType descriptorType;
    const VkDescriptorImageInfo* pImageInfo;
    const VkDescriptorBufferInfo* pBufferInfo;
    const VkBufferView* pTexelBufferView;
} VkWriteDescriptorSet;
```

• sType is the type of this structure.
• pNext is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• dstSet is the destination descriptor set to update.
• dstBinding is the descriptor binding within that set.
• dstArrayElement is the starting element in that array.
• descriptorCount is the number of descriptors to update. descriptorCount is one of
  ◦ the number of elements in pImageInfo
  ◦ the number of elements in pBufferInfo
  ◦ the number of elements in pTexelBufferView

718 | Chapter 14. Resource Descriptors
- a value matching the `accelerationStructureCount` of a `VkWriteDescriptorSetAccelerationStructureKHR` structure in the `pNext` chain

- `descriptorType` is a `VkDescriptorType` specifying the type of each descriptor in `pImageInfo`, `pBufferInfo`, or `pTexelBufferView`, as described below. It must be the same type as that specified in `VkDescriptorSetLayoutBinding` for `dstSet` at `dstBinding`. The type of the descriptor also controls which array the descriptors are taken from.

- `pImageInfo` is a pointer to an array of `VkDescriptorImageInfo` structures or is ignored, as described below.

- `pBufferInfo` is a pointer to an array of `VkDescriptorBufferInfo` structures or is ignored, as described below.

- `pTexelBufferView` is a pointer to an array of `VkBufferView` handles as described in the `Buffer Views` section or is ignored, as described below.

Only one of `pImageInfo`, `pBufferInfo`, or `pTexelBufferView` members is used according to the descriptor type specified in the `descriptorType` member of the containing `VkWriteDescriptorSet` structure, or if `descriptorType` is `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_KHR`, in which case the source data for the descriptor writes is taken from the `VkWriteDescriptorSetAccelerationStructureKHR` structure in the `pNext` chain of `VkWriteDescriptorSet`, as specified below.

If the `dstBinding` has fewer than `descriptorCount` array elements remaining starting from `dstArrayElement`, then the remainder will be used to update the subsequent binding - `dstBinding+1` starting at array element zero. If a binding has a `descriptorCount` of zero, it is skipped. This behavior applies recursively, with the update affecting consecutive bindings as needed to update all `descriptorCount` descriptors. Consecutive bindings must have identical `elink::VkDescriptorType`, `elink::VkShaderStageFlags`, and immutable samplers references.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSet-dstBinding-00315**
  
  **dstBinding must** be less than or equal to the maximum value of **binding** of all `VkDescriptorSetLayoutBinding` structures specified when `dstSet`'s descriptor set layout was created.

- **VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSet-dstBinding-00316**
  
  **dstBinding must** be a binding with a non-zero **descriptorCount**

- **VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSet-descriptorCount-00317**
  
  All consecutive bindings updated via a single `VkWriteDescriptorSet` structure, except those with a **descriptorCount** of zero, **must** have identical **descriptorType** and **stageFlags**

- **VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSet-descriptorCount-00318**
  
  All consecutive bindings updated via a single `VkWriteDescriptorSet` structure, except those with a **descriptorCount** of zero, **must** all either use immutable samplers or **must** all not use immutable samplers

- **VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSet-descriptorType-00319**
  
  **descriptorType must** match the type of **dstBinding** within **dstSet**

- **VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSet-dstSet-00320**
  
  **dstSet must** be a valid `VkDescriptorSet` handle

- **VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSet-dstArrayElement-00321**
  
  The sum of **dstArrayElement** and **descriptorCount** **must** be less than or equal to the number of array elements in the descriptor set binding specified by **dstBinding**, and all applicable consecutive bindings, as described by **consecutive binding updates**

- **VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSet-descriptorType-00322**
  
  If **descriptorType** is `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLER`, `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER`, `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLED_IMAGE`, `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_IMAGE`, or `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT`, **pImageInfo must** be a valid pointer to an array of **descriptorCount** valid `VkDescriptorImageInfo` structures

- **VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSet-descriptorType-02994**
  
  If **descriptorType** is `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER` or `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER`, each element of **pTexelBufferView** **must** be either a valid `VkBufferView` handle or **VK_NULL_HANDLE**

- **VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSet-descriptorType-02995**
  
  If **descriptorType** is `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER` or `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER` and the **nullDescriptor** feature is not enabled, each element of **pTexelBufferView** **must** not be **VK_NULL_HANDLE**

- **VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSet-descriptorType-00324**
  
  If **descriptorType** is `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER`, `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER`, `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER_DYNAMIC`, or `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER_DYNAMIC`, **pBufferInfo must** be a valid pointer to an array of **descriptorCount** valid `VkDescriptorBufferInfo` structures

- **VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSet-descriptorType-00325**
  
  If **descriptorType** is `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER`, `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER`, `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER_DYNAMIC`, or `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER_DYNAMIC`, **pBufferInfo must** be a valid pointer to an array of **descriptorCount** valid `VkDescriptorBufferInfo` structures
If descriptorType is VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLER or VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER, and dstSet was not allocated with a layout that included immutable samplers for dstBinding with descriptorType, the sampler member of each element of pImageInfo must be a valid VkSampler object.

- VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSet-descriptorType-02996
  If descriptorType is VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER, VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLED_IMAGE, VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_IMAGE, or VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT, the imageView member of each element of pImageInfo must be either a valid VkImageView handle or VK_NULL_HANDLE.

- VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSet-descriptorType-02997
  If descriptorType is VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER, VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLED_IMAGE, VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_IMAGE, or VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT and the nullDescriptor feature is not enabled, the imageView member of each element of pImageInfo must not be VK_NULL_HANDLE.

- VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSet-descriptorType-02382
  If descriptorType is VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_KHR, the pNext chain must include a VkWriteDescriptorSetAccelerationStructureKHR structure whose accelerationStructureCount member equals descriptorCount.

- VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSet-descriptorType-01946
  If descriptorType is VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLED_IMAGE, the imageView member of each pImageInfo element must have been created without a VkSamplerYcbcrConversionInfo structure in its pNext chain.

- VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSet-descriptorType-02738
  If descriptorType is VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER, and any element of pBufferInfo has a imageView member that was created with a VkSamplerYcbcrConversionInfo structure in its pNext chain, then dstSet must have been allocated with a layout that included immutable samplers for dstBinding, and the corresponding immutable sampler must have been created with an identically defined VkSamplerYcbcrConversionInfo object.

- VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSet-descriptorType-01948
  If descriptorType is VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER, and dstSet was allocated with a layout that included immutable samplers for dstBinding, then the imageView member of each element of pBufferInfo which corresponds to an immutable sampler that enables sampler Y′CBCR conversion must have been created with a VkSamplerYcbcrConversionInfo structure in its pNext chain with an identically defined VkSamplerYcbcrConversionInfo to the corresponding immutable sampler.

- VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSet-descriptorType-00327
  If descriptorType is VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER or VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER_DYNAMIC, the offset member of each element of pBufferInfo must be a multiple of VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::minUniformBufferOffsetAlignment.

- VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSet-descriptorType-00328
  If descriptorType is VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER or VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER_DYNAMIC, the offset member of each element of pBufferInfo must be a multiple of VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::minStorageBufferOffsetAlignment.

Chapter 14. Resource Descriptors | 721
If `descriptorType` is `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER`, `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER_DYNAMIC`, `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER`, or `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER_DYNAMIC`, and the `buffer` member of any element of `pBufferInfo` is the handle of a non-sparse buffer, then that buffer **must** be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object.

If `descriptorType` is `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER` or `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER_DYNAMIC`, the `buffer` member of each element of `pBufferInfo` **must** have been created with `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_UNIFORM_BUFFER_BIT` set.

If `descriptorType` is `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER` or `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER_DYNAMIC`, the `buffer` member of each element of `pBufferInfo` **must** have been created with `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_STORAGE_BUFFER_BIT` set.

If `descriptorType` is `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER` or `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER_DYNAMIC`, the `range` member of each element of `pBufferInfo`, or the effective range if `range` is `VK_WHOLE_SIZE`, **must** be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxUniformBufferRange`.

If `descriptorType` is `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER` or `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER_DYNAMIC`, the `range` member of each element of `pBufferInfo`, or the effective range if `range` is `VK_WHOLE_SIZE`, **must** be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxStorageBufferRange`.

If `descriptorType` is `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER`, the `VkBuffer` that each element of `pTexelBufferView` was created from **must** have been created with `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT` set.

If `descriptorType` is `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER`, the `VkBuffer` that each element of `pTexelBufferView` was created from **must** have been created with `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT` set.

If `descriptorType` is `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_IMAGE` or `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT`, the `imageView` member of each element of `pImageInfo` **must** have been created with the identity swizzle.

If `descriptorType` is `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLED_IMAGE` or `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER`, the `imageView` member of each element of `pImageInfo` **must** have been created with `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_SAMPLED_BIT` set.

If `descriptorType` is `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLED_IMAGE` the `imageLayout` member of each element of `pImageInfo` **must** be a member of the list given in Sampled Image.

If `descriptorType` is `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLED_IMAGE` the `imageLayout` member of each element of `pImageInfo` **must** be a member of the list given in Sampled Image.
If \( \text{descriptorType} \) is VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER the imageLayout member of each element of \( p\text{ImageInfo} \) must be a member of the list given in Combined Image Sampler

- VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSet-descriptorType-04151
  If \( \text{descriptorType} \) is VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT the imageLayout member of each element of \( p\text{ImageInfo} \) must be a member of the list given in Input Attachment

- VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSet-descriptorType-04152
  If \( \text{descriptorType} \) is VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_IMAGE the imageLayout member of each element of \( p\text{ImageInfo} \) must be a member of the list given in Storage Image

- VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSet-descriptorType-00338
  If \( \text{descriptorType} \) is VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT, the imageView member of each element of \( p\text{ImageInfo} \) must have been created with VK_IMAGE_USAGE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT_BIT set

- VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSet-descriptorType-00339
  If \( \text{descriptorType} \) is VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_IMAGE, the imageView member of each element of \( p\text{ImageInfo} \) must have been created with VK_IMAGE_USAGE_STORAGE_BIT set

- VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSet-descriptorType-02752
  If \( \text{descriptorType} \) is VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLER, then dstSet must not have been allocated with a layout that included immutable samplers for dstBinding

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSet-sType-sType
  The sType value of each struct in the pNext chain must be unique

- VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSet-pNext-pNext
  The sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_WRITE_DESCRIPTOR_SET

- VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSet-descriptorType-parameter
  descriptorType must be a valid VkDescriptorType value

- VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSet-descriptorCount-arraylength
  descriptorCount must be greater than 0

- VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSet-commonparent
  Both of dstSet, and the elements of pTexelBufferView that are valid handles of non-ignored parameters must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same VkDevice

The type of descriptors in a descriptor set is specified by VkWriteDescriptorSet::descriptorType, which must be one of the values:
typedef enum VkDescriptorType {
  VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLER = 0,
  VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER = 1,
  VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLED_IMAGE = 2,
  VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_IMAGE = 3,
  VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER = 4,
  VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER = 5,
  VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER = 6,
  VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER = 7,
  VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER_DYNAMIC = 8,
  VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER_DYNAMIC = 9,
  VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT = 10,
  // Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
  VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_KHR = 1000150000
} VkDescriptorType;

• VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLER specifies a sampler descriptor.
• VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER specifies a combined image sampler descriptor.
• VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLED_IMAGE specifies a sampled image descriptor.
• VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_IMAGE specifies a storage image descriptor.
• VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER specifies a uniform texel buffer descriptor.
• VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER specifies a storage texel buffer descriptor.
• VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER specifies a uniform buffer descriptor.
• VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER specifies a storage buffer descriptor.
• VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER_DYNAMIC specifies a dynamic uniform buffer descriptor.
• VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER_DYNAMIC specifies a dynamic storage buffer descriptor.
• VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT specifies an input attachment descriptor.

When a descriptor set is updated via elements of VkWriteDescriptorSet, members of pImageInfo, pBufferInfo and pTexelBufferView are only accessed by the implementation when they correspond to descriptor type being defined - otherwise they are ignored. The members accessed are as follows for each descriptor type:

• For VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLER, only the sampler member of each element of VkWriteDescriptorSet::pImageInfo is accessed.
• For VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLED_IMAGE, VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_IMAGE, or VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT, only the imageView and imageLayout members of each element of VkWriteDescriptorSet::pImageInfo are accessed.
• For VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER, all members of each element of VkWriteDescriptorSet::pImageInfo are accessed.
• For VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER, VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER, VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER_DYNAMIC, or VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER_DYNAMIC, all
members of each element of `VkWriteDescriptorSet::pBufferInfo` are accessed.

- For `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER` or `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER`, each element of `VkWriteDescriptorSet::pTexelBufferView` is accessed.

When updating descriptors with a `descriptorType` of `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_KHR`, none of the `pImageInfo`, `pBufferInfo`, or `pTexelBufferView` members are accessed, instead the source data of the descriptor update operation is taken from the `VkWriteDescriptorSetAccelerationStructureKHR` structure in the `pNext` chain of `VkWriteDescriptorSet`.

The `VkDescriptorBufferInfo` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkDescriptorBufferInfo {
    VkBuffer buffer;
    VkDeviceSize offset;
    VkDeviceSize range;
} VkDescriptorBufferInfo;
```

- `buffer` is the buffer resource.
- `offset` is the offset in bytes from the start of `buffer`. Access to buffer memory via this descriptor uses addressing that is relative to this starting offset.
- `range` is the size in bytes that is used for this descriptor update, or `VK_WHOLE_SIZE` to use the range from `offset` to the end of the buffer.

**Note**

When setting `range` to `VK_WHOLE_SIZE`, the effective range **must** not be larger than the maximum range for the descriptor type (`maxUniformBufferRange` or `maxStorageBufferRange`). This means that `VK_WHOLE_SIZE` is not typically useful in the common case where uniform buffer descriptors are suballocated from a buffer that is much larger than `maxUniformBufferRange`.

For `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER_DYNAMIC` and `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER_DYNAMIC` descriptor types, `offset` is the base offset from which the dynamic offset is applied and `range` is the static size used for all dynamic offsets.
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkDescriptorBufferInfo-offset-00340
  offset must be less than the size of buffer

- VUID-VkDescriptorBufferInfo-range-00341
  If range is not equal to VK_WHOLE_SIZE, range must be greater than 0

- VUID-VkDescriptorBufferInfo-range-00342
  If range is not equal to VK_WHOLE_SIZE, range must be less than or equal to the size of buffer minus offset

- VUID-VkDescriptorBufferInfo-buffer-02998
  If the nullDescriptor feature is not enabled, buffer must not be VK_NULL_HANDLE

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkDescriptorBufferInfo-buffer-parameter
  If buffer is not VK_NULL_HANDLE, buffer must be a valid VkBuffer handle

The VkDescriptorImageInfo structure is defined as:

// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkDescriptorImageInfo {
    VkSampler sampler;
    VkImageView imageView;
    VkImageLayout imageLayout;
} VkDescriptorImageInfo;

- sampler is a sampler handle, and is used in descriptor updates for types VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLER and VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER if the binding being updated does not use immutable samplers.

- imageView is an image view handle, and is used in descriptor updates for types VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLED_IMAGE, VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_IMAGE, VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER, and VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT.

- imageLayout is the layout that the image subresources accessible from imageView will be in at the time this descriptor is accessed. imageLayout is used in descriptor updates for types VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLED_IMAGE, VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_IMAGE, VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER, and VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT.

Members of VkDescriptorImageInfo that are not used in an update (as described above) are ignored.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkDescriptorImageInfo-imageView-00343**
  
  `imageView` must not be 2D or 2D array image view created from a 3D image

- **VUID-VkDescriptorImageInfo-imageView-01976**
  
  If `imageView` is created from a depth/stencil image, the `aspectMask` used to create the `imageView` must include either `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_DEPTH_BIT` or `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_STENCIL_BIT` but not both

- **VUID-VkDescriptorImageInfo-imageLayout-00344**
  
  `imageLayout` must match the actual `VkImageLayout` of each subresource accessible from `imageView` at the time this descriptor is accessed as defined by the image layout matching rules

- **VUID-VkDescriptorImageInfo-sampler-01564**
  
  If `sampler` is used and the `VkFormat` of the image is a multi-planar format, the image must have been created with `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_MUTABLE_FORMAT_BIT`, and the `aspectMask` of the `imageView` must be `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT`, `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT` or (for three-plane formats only) `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT`

- **VUID-VkDescriptorImageInfo-mutableComparisonSamplers-04450**
  
  If the `VK_KHR_portability_subset` extension is enabled, and `VkPhysicalDevicePortabilitySubsetFeaturesKHR::mutableComparisonSamplers` is `VK_FALSE`, then `sampler` must have been created with `VkSamplerCreateInfo::compareEnable` set to `VK_FALSE`.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkDescriptorImageInfo-commonparent**
  
  Both of `imageView`, and `sampler` that are valid handles of non-ignored parameters must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`

The `VkWriteDescriptorSetAccelerationStructureKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
typedef struct VkWriteDescriptorSetAccelerationStructureKHR {
    VkStructureType     sType;
    const void*         pNext;
    uint32_t            accelerationStructureCount;
    const VkAccelerationStructureKHR* pAccelerationStructures;
} VkWriteDescriptorSetAccelerationStructureKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `accelerationStructureCount` is the number of elements in `pAccelerationStructures`.
- `pAccelerationStructures` is a pointer to an array of `VkAccelerationStructureKHR` structures.
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSetAccelerationStructureKHR-accelerationStructureCount-02236
  accelerationStructureCount must be equal to descriptorCount in the extended structure

- VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSetAccelerationStructureKHR-pAccelerationStructures-03579
  Each acceleration structure in pAccelerationStructures must have been created with a
type of VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_TOP_LEVEL_KHR or
VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_GENERIC_KHR

- VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSetAccelerationStructureKHR-pAccelerationStructures-03580
  If the nullDescriptor feature is not enabled, each element of pAccelerationStructures
must not be VK_NULL_HANDLE

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSetAccelerationStructureKHR-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_WRITE_DESCRIPTOR_SET_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_KHR

- VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSetAccelerationStructureKHR-pAccelerationStructures-parameter
  pAccelerationStructures must be a valid pointer to an array of accelerationStructureCount
valid or VK_NULL_HANDLE VkAccelerationStructureKHR handles

- VUID-VkWriteDescriptorSetAccelerationStructureKHR-accelerationStructureCount-arraylength
  accelerationStructureCount must be greater than 0

The VkCopyDescriptorSet structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkCopyDescriptorSet {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkDescriptorSet srcSet;
    uint32_t srcBinding;
    uint32_t srcArrayElement;
    VkDescriptorSet dstSet;
    uint32_t dstBinding;
    uint32_t dstArrayElement;
    uint32_t descriptorCount;
} VkCopyDescriptorSet;
```

- sType is the type of this structure.
- pNext is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- srcSet, srcBinding, and srcArrayElement are the source set, binding, and array element,
  respectively.
• **dstSet**, **dstBinding**, and **dstArrayElement** are the destination set, binding, and array element, respectively.

• **descriptorCount** is the number of descriptors to copy from the source to destination. If **descriptorCount** is greater than the number of remaining array elements in the source or destination binding, those affect consecutive bindings in a manner similar to **VkWriteDescriptorSet** above.

---

**Valid Usage**

- **VUID-VkCopyDescriptorSet-srcBinding-00345**
  
  srcBinding must be a valid binding within srcSet

- **VUID-VkCopyDescriptorSet-srcArrayElement-00346**
  
  The sum of srcArrayElement and descriptorCount must be less than or equal to the number of array elements in the descriptor set binding specified by srcBinding, and all applicable consecutive bindings, as described by consecutive binding updates

- **VUID-VkCopyDescriptorSet-dstBinding-00347**
  
  dstBinding must be a valid binding within dstSet

- **VUID-VkCopyDescriptorSet-dstArrayElement-00348**
  
  The sum of dstArrayElement and descriptorCount must be less than or equal to the number of array elements in the descriptor set binding specified by dstBinding, and all applicable consecutive bindings, as described by consecutive binding updates

- **VUID-VkCopyDescriptorSet-dstBinding-02632**
  
  The type of dstBinding within dstSet must be equal to the type of srcBinding within srcSet

- **VUID-VkCopyDescriptorSet-srcSet-00349**
  
  If srcSet is equal to dstSet, then the source and destination ranges of descriptors must not overlap, where the ranges may include array elements from consecutive bindings as described by consecutive binding updates

- **VUID-VkCopyDescriptorSet-dstBinding-02753**
  
  If the descriptor type of the descriptor set binding specified by dstBinding is VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLER, then dstSet must not have been allocated with a layout that included immutable samplers for dstBinding
14.2.5. Descriptor Update Templates

A descriptor update template specifies a mapping from descriptor update information in host memory to descriptors in a descriptor set. It is designed to avoid passing redundant information to the driver when frequently updating the same set of descriptors in descriptor sets.

Descriptor update template objects are represented by `VkDescriptorUpdateTemplate` handles:

```
VK_DEFINE_NON_DISPATCHABLE_HANDLE(VkDescriptorUpdateTemplate)
```

or the equivalent

```
// Provided by VK_KHR_descriptor_update_template
typedef VkDescriptorUpdateTemplate VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateKHR;
```

14.2.6. Descriptor Set Updates with Templates

Updating a large `VkDescriptorSet` array can be an expensive operation since an application must specify one `VkWriteDescriptorSet` structure for each descriptor or descriptor array to update, each of which re-specifies the same state when updating the same descriptor in multiple descriptor sets. For cases when an application wishes to update the same set of descriptors in multiple descriptor sets allocated using the same `VkDescriptorSetLayout`, `vkUpdateDescriptorSetWithTemplate` can be used as a replacement for `vkUpdateDescriptorSets`.

`VkDescriptorUpdateTemplate` allows implementations to convert a set of descriptor update operations on a single descriptor set to an internal format that, in conjunction with `vkUpdateDescriptorSetWithTemplate` or `vkCmdPushDescriptorSetWithTemplateKHR`, can be more efficient compared to calling `vkUpdateDescriptorSets` or `vkCmdPushDescriptorSetKHR`. The descriptors themselves are not specified in the `VkDescriptorUpdateTemplate`, rather, offsets into an application provided pointer to host memory are specified, which are combined with a pointer...
passed to `vkUpdateDescriptorSetWithTemplate` or `vkCmdPushDescriptorSetWithTemplateKHR`. This allows large batches of updates to be executed without having to convert application data structures into a strictly-defined Vulkan data structure.

To create a descriptor update template, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_descriptor_update_template
VkResult vkCreateDescriptorUpdateTemplateKHR(  
    VkDevice device,  
    const VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateCreateInfo* pCreateInfo,  
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator,  
    VkDescriptorUpdateTemplate* pDescriptorUpdateTemplate);
```

- **device** is the logical device that creates the descriptor update template.
- **pCreateInfo** is a pointer to a `VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateCreateInfo` structure specifying the set of descriptors to update with a single call to `vkCmdPushDescriptorSetWithTemplateKHR` or `vkUpdateDescriptorSetWithTemplate`.
- **pAllocator** controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
- **pDescriptorUpdateTemplate** is a pointer to a `VkDescriptorUpdateTemplate` handle in which the resulting descriptor update template object is returned.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkCreateDescriptorUpdateTemplate-device-parameter**  
  `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- **VUID-vkCreateDescriptorUpdateTemplate-pCreateInfo-parameter**  
  `pCreateInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateCreateInfo` structure

- **VUID-vkCreateDescriptorUpdateTemplate-pAllocator-parameter**  
  If `pAllocator` is not `NULL`, `pAllocator` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkAllocationCallbacks` structure

- **VUID-vkCreateDescriptorUpdateTemplate-pDescriptorUpdateTemplate-parameter**  
  `pDescriptorUpdateTemplate` must be a valid pointer to a `VkDescriptorUpdateTemplate` handle
Return Codes

**Success**
- VK_SUCCESS

**Failure**
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY

The `VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateCreateInfo` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateCreateFlags flags;
    uint32_t descriptorUpdateEntryCount;
    const VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateEntry* pDescriptorUpdateEntries;
    VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateType templateType;
    VkDescriptorSetLayout descriptorSetLayout;
    VkPipelineBindPoint pipelineBindPoint;
    VkPipelineLayout pipelineLayout;
    uint32_t set;
} VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateCreateInfo;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_descriptor_update_template
typedef VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateCreateInfo VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateCreateInfoKHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **flags** is reserved for future use.
- **descriptorUpdateEntryCount** is the number of elements in the `pDescriptorUpdateEntries` array.
- **pDescriptorUpdateEntries** is a pointer to an array of `VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateEntry` structures describing the descriptors to be updated by the descriptor update template.
- **templateType** Specifies the type of the descriptor update template. If set to `VK_DESCRIPTOR_UPDATE_TEMPLATE_TYPE_DESCRIPTOR_SET` it can only be used to update descriptor sets with a fixed `descriptorSetLayout`. If set to `VK_DESCRIPTOR_UPDATE_TEMPLATE_TYPE_PUSH_DESCRIPTORS_KHR` it can only be used to push descriptor sets using the provided `pipelineBindPoint`, `pipelineLayout`, and `set` number.
- **descriptorSetLayout** is the descriptor set layout used to build the descriptor update template. All descriptor sets which are going to be updated through the newly created descriptor update template must be created with a layout that matches (is the same as, or defined identically to)
pipelineBindPoint is a VkPipelineBindPoint indicating the type of the pipeline that will use the descriptors. This parameter is ignored if templateType is not VK_DESCRIPTOR_UPDATE_TEMPLATE_TYPE_PUSH_DESCRIPTORS_KHR.

pipelineLayout is a VkPipelineLayout object used to program the bindings. This parameter is ignored if templateType is not VK_DESCRIPTOR_UPDATE_TEMPLATE_TYPE_PUSH_DESCRIPTORS_KHR.

set is the set number of the descriptor set in the pipeline layout that will be updated. This parameter is ignored if templateType is not VK_DESCRIPTOR_UPDATE_TEMPLATE_TYPE_PUSH_DESCRIPTORS_KHR.

Valid Usage

- VUID-VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateCreateInfo-templateType-00350
  
  If templateType is VK_DESCRIPTOR_UPDATE_TEMPLATE_TYPE_DESCRIPTOR_SET, descriptorSetLayout must be a valid VkDescriptorSetLayout handle.

- VUID-VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateCreateInfo-templateType-00351
  
  If templateType is VK_DESCRIPTOR_UPDATE_TEMPLATE_TYPE_PUSH_DESCRIPTORS_KHR, pipelineBindPoint must be a valid VkPipelineBindPoint value.

- VUID-VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateCreateInfo-templateType-00352
  
  If templateType is VK_DESCRIPTOR_UPDATE_TEMPLATE_TYPE_PUSH_DESCRIPTORS_KHR, pipelineLayout must be a valid VkPipelineLayout handle.

- VUID-VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateCreateInfo-templateType-00353
  
  If templateType is VK_DESCRIPTOR_UPDATE_TEMPLATE_TYPE_PUSH_DESCRIPTORS_KHR, set must be the unique set number in the pipeline layout that uses a descriptor set layout that was created with VK_DESCRIPTOR_SET_LAYOUT_CREATE_PUSH_DESCRIPTOR_BIT_KHR.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateCreateInfo-sType-sType**
  - `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DESCRIPTOR_UPDATE_TEMPLATE_CREATE_INFO`

- **VUID-VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateCreateInfo-pNext-pNext**
  - `pNext` must be `NULL`

- **VUID-VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateCreateInfo-flags-zerobitmask**
  - `flags` must be `0`

- **VUID-VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateCreateInfo-pDescriptorUpdateEntries-parameter**
  - `pDescriptorUpdateEntries` must be a valid pointer to an array of `descriptorUpdateEntryCount` valid `VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateEntry` structures

- **VUID-VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateCreateInfo-templateType-parameter**
  - `templateType` must be a valid `VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateType` value

- **VUID-VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateCreateInfo-descriptorUpdateEntryCount-arraylength**
  - `descriptorUpdateEntryCount` must be greater than `0`

- **VUID-VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateCreateInfo-commonparent**
  - Both of `descriptorSetLayout`, and `pipelineLayout` that are valid handles of non-ignored parameters must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`

```c
typedef VkFlags VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateCreateFlags;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_descriptor_update_template
typedef VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateCreateFlags VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateCreateFlagsKHR;
```

`VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateCreateFlags` is a bitmask type for setting a mask, but is currently reserved for future use.

The descriptor update template type is determined by the `VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateCreateInfo::templateType` property, which takes the following values:
typedef enum VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateType {
    VK_DESCRIPTOR_UPDATE_TEMPLATE_TYPE_DESCRIPTOR_SET = 0,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_push_descriptor with VK_VERSION_1_1, VK_KHR_push_descriptor
    // with VK_KHR_descriptor_update_template, VK_KHR_descriptor_update_template with
    // VK_KHR_push_descriptor
    VK_DESCRIPTOR_UPDATE_TEMPLATE_TYPE_PUSH描述lasses_KHR = 1,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_descriptor_update_template
    VK_DESCRIPTOR_UPDATE_TEMPLATE_TYPE_DESCRIPTOR_SET_KHR =
    VK_DESCRIPTOR_UPDATE_TEMPLATE_TYPE_DESCRIPTOR_SET,
} VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateType;

or the equivalent

// Provided by VK_KHR_descriptor_update_template
typedef VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateType VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateTypeKHR;

• **VK_DESCRIPTOR_UPDATE_TEMPLATE_TYPE_DESCRIPTOR_SET** specifies that the descriptor update
template will be used for descriptor set updates only.

• **VK_DESCRIPTOR_UPDATE_TEMPLATE_TYPE_PUSH描述lasses_KHR** specifies that the descriptor update
template will be used for push descriptor updates only.

The **VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateEntry** structure is defined as:

typedef struct VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateEntry {
    uint32_t dstBinding;
    uint32_t dstArrayElement;
    uint32_t descriptorCount;
    VkDescriptorType descriptorType;
    size_t offset;
    size_t stride;
} VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateEntry;

or the equivalent

// Provided by VK_KHR_descriptor_update_template
typedef VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateEntry VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateEntryKHR;

• **dstBinding** is the descriptor binding to update when using this descriptor update template.

• **dstArrayElement** is the starting element in the array belonging to **dstBinding**.

• **descriptorCount** is the number of descriptors to update. If **descriptorCount** is greater than the
number of remaining array elements in the destination binding, those affect consecutive
bindings in a manner similar to **VkWriteDescriptorSet** above.

• **descriptorType** is a **VkDescriptorType** specifying the type of the descriptor.
• **offset** is the offset in bytes of the first binding in the raw data structure.
• **stride** is the stride in bytes between two consecutive array elements of the descriptor update informations in the raw data structure. The actual pointer **ptr** for each array element **j** of update entry **i** is computed using the following formula:

\[
\text{const char } \ast \text{ptr} = (\text{const char } \ast)pData \ast p\text{DescriptorUpdateEntries}[i].\text{offset} + j \ast p\text{DescriptorUpdateEntries}[i].\text{stride}
\]

The stride is useful in case the bindings are stored in structs along with other data.

---

### Valid Usage

- VUID-VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateEntry-dstBinding-00354

  **dstBinding** must be a valid binding in the descriptor set layout implicitly specified when using a descriptor update template to update descriptors

- VUID-VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateEntry-dstArrayElement-00355

  **dstArrayElement** and **descriptorCount** must be less than or equal to the number of array elements in the descriptor set binding implicitly specified when using a descriptor update template to update descriptors, and all applicable consecutive bindings, as described by consecutive binding updates

---

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateEntry-descriptorType-parameter

  **descriptorType** must be a valid **VkDescriptorType** value

---

To destroy a descriptor update template, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_descriptor_update_template
void vkDestroyDescriptorUpdateTemplateKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    VkDescriptorUpdateTemplate descriptorUpdateTemplate,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator);
```

- **device** is the logical device that has been used to create the descriptor update template
- **descriptorUpdateTemplate** is the descriptor update template to destroy.
- **pAllocator** controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkDestroyDescriptorUpdateTemplate-descriptorSetLayout-00356
  If VkAllocationCallbacks were provided when descriptorUpdateTemplate was created, a compatible set of callbacks must be provided here.

- VUID-vkDestroyDescriptorUpdateTemplate-descriptorSetLayout-00357
  If no VkAllocationCallbacks were provided when descriptorUpdateTemplate was created, pAllocator must be NULL.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkDestroyDescriptorUpdateTemplate-device-parameter
device must be a valid VkDevice handle.

- VUID-vkDestroyDescriptorUpdateTemplate-descriptorUpdateTemplate-parameter
  If descriptorUpdateTemplate is not VK_NULL_HANDLE, descriptorUpdateTemplate must be a valid VkDescriptorUpdateTemplate handle.

- VUID-vkDestroyDescriptorUpdateTemplate-pAllocator-parameter
  If pAllocator is not NULL, pAllocator must be a valid pointer to a valid VkAllocationCallbacks structure.

- VUID-vkDestroyDescriptorUpdateTemplate-descriptorUpdateTemplate-parent
  If descriptorUpdateTemplate is a valid handle, it must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from device.

Host Synchronization

- Host access to descriptorUpdateTemplate must be externally synchronized.

Once a VkDescriptorUpdateTemplate has been created, descriptor sets can be updated by calling:

```c
void vkUpdateDescriptorSetWithTemplateKHR(  
    VkDevice device,  
    VkDescriptorSet descriptorSet,  
    VkDescriptorUpdateTemplate descriptorUpdateTemplate,  
    const void* pData);
```

- device is the logical device that updates the descriptor set.
- descriptorSet is the descriptor set to update.
- descriptorUpdateTemplate is a VkDescriptorUpdateTemplate object specifying the update mapping between pData and the descriptor set to update.
- pData is a pointer to memory containing one or more VkDescriptorImageInfo,
 VkDescriptorBufferInfo, or VkBufferView structures or VkAccelerationStructureKHR handles used to write the descriptors.

Valid Usage

• VUID-vkUpdateDescriptorSetWithTemplate-pData-01685
  pData must be a valid pointer to a memory containing one or more valid instances of VkDescriptorImageInfo, VkDescriptorBufferInfo, or VkBufferView in a layout defined by descriptorUpdateTemplate when it was created with vkCreateDescriptorUpdateTemplate

Valid Usage (Implicit)

• VUID-vkUpdateDescriptorSetWithTemplate-device-parameter
  device must be a valid VkDevice handle

• VUID-vkUpdateDescriptorSetWithTemplate-descriptorSet-parameter
  descriptorSet must be a valid VkDescriptorSet handle

• VUID-vkUpdateDescriptorSetWithTemplate-descriptorUpdateTemplate-parameter
  descriptorUpdateTemplate must be a valid VkDescriptorUpdateTemplate handle

• VUID-vkUpdateDescriptorSetWithTemplate-descriptorUpdateTemplate-parent
  descriptorUpdateTemplate must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from device

Host Synchronization

• Host access to descriptorSet must be externally synchronized

API example

```c
struct AppBufferView {
    VkBufferView bufferView;
    uint32_t applicationRelatedInformation;
};

struct AppDataStructure {
    VkDescriptorImageInfo imageInfo; // a single image info
    VkDescriptorBufferInfo bufferInfoArray[3]; // 3 buffer infos in an array
    AppBufferView bufferView[2]; // An application defined structure containing a bufferView
    // ... some more application related data
};

const VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateEntry descriptorUpdateTemplateEntries[] = {
    // binding to a single image descriptor
    {
```

738 | Chapter 14. Resource Descriptors
0, // binding
0, // dstArrayElement
1, // descriptorCount
VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER,
offsetof(AppDataStructure, imageInfo),
0 // descriptor
0 // stride is not required if descriptorCount is 1
",

// binding to an array of buffer descriptors
{
1, // binding
0, // dstArrayElement
3, // descriptorCount
VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER,
offsetof(AppDataStructure, bufferInfoArray), // offset
sizeof(VkDescriptorBufferInfo) // stride, descriptor buffer
infos are compact
},

// binding to an array of buffer views
{
2, // binding
0, // dstArrayElement
2, // descriptorCount
VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER,
offsetof(AppDataStructure, bufferView) +
offsetof(AppBufferView, bufferView), // offset
sizeof(AppBufferView) // stride, bufferViews do not have to be compact
},
",

// create a descriptor update template for descriptor set updates
const VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateCreateInfo createInfo =
{
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DESCRIPTOR_UPDATE_TEMPLATE_CREATE_INFO, // sType
NULL, // pNext
3, // flags
descriptorUpdateEntryCount
descriptorUpdateTemplateEntries, // templateType
VK_DESCRIPTOR_UPDATE_TEMPLATE_TYPE_DESCRIPTOR_SET, // descriptorSetLayout
myLayout,
0, // pipelineBindPoint,
0, // pipelineLayout,
0, // set, ignored by
given templateType
};
VkDescriptorUpdateTemplate myDescriptorUpdateTemplate;
myResult = vkCreateDescriptorUpdateTemplate(
    myDevice,
    &createInfo,
    NULL,
    &myDescriptorUpdateTemplate);

AppDataStructure appData;

// fill appData here or cache it in your engine
vkUpdateDescriptorSetWithTemplate(myDevice, myDescriptorSet,
    myDescriptorUpdateTemplate, &appData);

### 14.2.7. Descriptor Set Binding

To bind one or more descriptor sets to a command buffer, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkCmdBindDescriptorSets(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    VkPipelineBindPoint pipelineBindPoint,
    VkPipelineLayout layout,
    uint32_t firstSet,
    uint32_t descriptorSetCount,
    const VkDescriptorSet* pDescriptorSets,
    uint32_t dynamicOffsetCount,
    const uint32_t* pDynamicOffsets);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer that the descriptor sets will be bound to.
- `pipelineBindPoint` is a `VkPipelineBindPoint` indicating the type of the pipeline that will use the descriptors. There is a separate set of bind points for each pipeline type, so binding one does not disturb the others.
- `layout` is a `VkPipelineLayout` object used to program the bindings.
- `firstSet` is the set number of the first descriptor set to be bound.
- `descriptorSetCount` is the number of elements in the `pDescriptorSets` array.
- `pDescriptorSets` is a pointer to an array of handles to `VkDescriptorSet` objects describing the descriptor sets to bind to.
- `dynamicOffsetCount` is the number of dynamic offsets in the `pDynamicOffsets` array.
- `pDynamicOffsets` is a pointer to an array of `uint32_t` values specifying dynamic offsets.

`vkCmdBindDescriptorSets` causes the sets numbered \([firstSet..firstSet+descriptorSetCount-1]\) to use the bindings stored in `pDescriptorSets[0..descriptorSetCount-1]` for subsequent bound pipeline commands set by `pipelineBindPoint`. Any bindings that were previously applied via these sets are
no longer valid.

Once bound, a descriptor set affects rendering of subsequent commands that interact with the given pipeline type in the command buffer until either a different set is bound to the same set number, or the set is disturbed as described in Pipeline Layout Compatibility.

A compatible descriptor set must be bound for all set numbers that any shaders in a pipeline access, at the time that a drawing or dispatching command is recorded to execute using that pipeline. However, if none of the shaders in a pipeline statically use any bindings with a particular set number, then no descriptor set need be bound for that set number, even if the pipeline layout includes a non-trivial descriptor set layout for that set number.

If any of the sets being bound include dynamic uniform or storage buffers, then pDynamicOffsets includes one element for each array element in each dynamic descriptor type binding in each set. Values are taken from pDynamicOffsets in an order such that all entries for set N come before set N+1; within a set, entries are ordered by the binding numbers in the descriptor set layouts; and within a binding array, elements are in order. dynamicOffsetCount must equal the total number of dynamic descriptors in the sets being bound.

The effective offset used for dynamic uniform and storage buffer bindings is the sum of the relative offset taken from pDynamicOffsets, and the base address of the buffer plus base offset in the descriptor set. The range of the dynamic uniform and storage buffer bindings is the buffer range as specified in the descriptor set.

Each of the pDescriptorSets must be compatible with the pipeline layout specified by layout. The layout used to program the bindings must also be compatible with the pipeline used in subsequent bound pipeline commands with that pipeline type, as defined in the Pipeline Layout Compatibility section.

The descriptor set contents bound by a call to vkCmdBindDescriptorSets may be consumed at the following times:

- during host execution of the command, or during shader execution of the resulting draws and dispatches, or any time in between.

Thus, the contents of a descriptor set binding must not be altered (overwritten by an update command, or freed) between the first point in time that it may be consumed, and when the command completes executing on the queue.

The contents of pDynamicOffsets are consumed immediately during execution of vkCmdBindDescriptorSets. Once all pending uses have completed, it is legal to update and reuse a descriptor set.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkCmdBindDescriptorSets-pDescriptorSets-00358**
  
  Each element of `pDescriptorSets` must have been allocated with a `VkDescriptorSetLayout` that matches (is the same as, or identically defined as) the `VkDescriptorSetLayout` at set `n` in `layout`, where `n` is the sum of `firstSet` and the index into `pDescriptorSets`

- **VUID-vkCmdBindDescriptorSets-dynamicOffsetCount-00359**
  
  `dynamicOffsetCount` must be equal to the total number of dynamic descriptors in `pDescriptorSets`

- **VUID-vkCmdBindDescriptorSets-firstSet-00360**
  
  The sum of `firstSet` and `descriptorSetCount` must be less than or equal to `VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo::setLayoutCount` provided when `layout` was created

- **VUID-vkCmdBindDescriptorSets-pipelineBindPoint-00361**
  
  `pipelineBindPoint` must be supported by the `commandBuffer`'s parent `VkCommandPool`'s queue family

- **VUID-vkCmdBindDescriptorSets-pDynamicOffsets-01971**
  
  Each element of `pDynamicOffsets` which corresponds to a descriptor binding with type `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER_DYNAMIC` must be a multiple of `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::minUniformBufferOffsetAlignment`

- **VUID-vkCmdBindDescriptorSets-pDynamicOffsets-01972**
  
  Each element of `pDynamicOffsets` which corresponds to a descriptor binding with type `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER_DYNAMIC` must be a multiple of `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::minStorageBufferOffsetAlignment`

- **VUID-vkCmdBindDescriptorSets-pDescriptorSets-01979**
  
  For each dynamic uniform or storage buffer binding in `pDescriptorSets`, the sum of the effective offset, as defined above, and the range of the binding must be less than or equal to the size of the buffer
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdBindDescriptorSets-commandBuffer-parameter
  
  `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle

- VUID-vkCmdBindDescriptorSets-pipelineBindPoint-parameter
  
  `pipelineBindPoint` must be a valid `VkPipelineBindPoint` value

- VUID-vkCmdBindDescriptorSets-layout-parameter
  
  `layout` must be a valid `VkPipelineLayout` handle

- VUID-vkCmdBindDescriptorSets-pDescriptorSets-parameter
  
  `pDescriptorSets` must be a valid pointer to an array of `descriptorSetCount` valid `VkDescriptorSet` handles

- VUID-vkCmdBindDescriptorSets-pDynamicOffsets-parameter
  
  If `dynamicOffsetCount` is not 0, `pDynamicOffsets` must be a valid pointer to an array of `dynamicOffsetCount uint32_t` values

- VUID-vkCmdBindDescriptorSets-commandBuffer-recording
  
  `commandBuffer` must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdBindDescriptorSets-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  
  The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support graphics, or compute operations

- VUID-vkCmdBindDescriptorSets-descriptorSetCount-arraylength
  
  `descriptorSetCount` must be greater than 0

- VUID-vkCmdBindDescriptorSets-commonparent
  
  Each of `commandBuffer`, `layout`, and the elements of `pDescriptorSets` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized

- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14.2.8. Push Descriptor Updates

In addition to allocating descriptor sets and binding them to a command buffer, an application can
record descriptor updates into the command buffer.

To push descriptor updates into a command buffer, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_push_descriptor
void vkCmdPushDescriptorSetKHR(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    VkPipelineBindPoint pipelineBindPoint,
    VkPipelineLayout layout,
    uint32_t set,
    uint32_t descriptorWriteCount,
    const VkWriteDescriptorSet* pDescriptorWrites);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer that the descriptors will be recorded in.
- `pipelineBindPoint` is a `VkPipelineBindPoint` indicating the type of the pipeline that will use the descriptors. There is a separate set of push descriptor bindings for each pipeline type, so binding one does not disturb the others.
- `layout` is a `VkPipelineLayout` object used to program the bindings.
- `set` is the set number of the descriptor set in the pipeline layout that will be updated.
- `descriptorWriteCount` is the number of elements in the `pDescriptorWrites` array.
- `pDescriptorWrites` is a pointer to an array of `VkWriteDescriptorSet` structures describing the descriptors to be updated.

Push descriptors are a small bank of descriptors whose storage is internally managed by the command buffer rather than being written into a descriptor set and later bound to a command buffer. Push descriptors allow for incremental updates of descriptors without managing the lifetime of descriptor sets.

When a command buffer begins recording, all push descriptors are undefined. Push descriptors can be updated incrementally and cause shaders to use the updated descriptors for subsequent bound pipeline commands with the pipeline type set by `pipelineBindPoint` until the descriptor is overwritten, or else until the set is disturbed as described in Pipeline Layout Compatibility. When the set is disturbed or push descriptors with a different descriptor set layout are set, all push descriptors are undefined.

Push descriptors that are statically used by a pipeline must not be undefined at the time that a drawing or dispatching command is recorded to execute using that pipeline. This includes immutable sampler descriptors, which must be pushed before they are accessed by a pipeline (the immutable samplers are pushed, rather than the samplers in `pDescriptorWrites`). Push descriptors that are not statically used can remain undefined.

Push descriptors do not use dynamic offsets. Instead, the corresponding non-dynamic descriptor types can be used and the `offset` member of `VkDescriptorBufferInfo` can be changed each time the descriptor is written.

Each element of `pDescriptorWrites` is interpreted as in `VkWriteDescriptorSet`, except the `dstSet` member is ignored.
To push an immutable sampler, use a `VkWriteDescriptorSet` with `dstBinding` and `dstArrayElement` selecting the immutable sampler's binding. If the descriptor type is `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLER`, the `pImageInfo` parameter is ignored and the immutable sampler is taken from the push descriptor set layout in the pipeline layout. If the descriptor type is `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER`, the `sampler` member of the `pImageInfo` parameter is ignored and the immutable sampler is taken from the push descriptor set layout in the pipeline layout.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkCmdPushDescriptorSetKHR-pipelineBindPoint-00363**
  
  `pipelineBindPoint` **must** be supported by the `commandBuffer`'s parent `VkCommandPool`'s queue family

- **VUID-vkCmdPushDescriptorSetKHR-set-00364**
  
  `set` **must** be less than `VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo::setLayoutCount` provided when `layout` was created

- **VUID-vkCmdPushDescriptorSetKHR-set-00365**
  
  `set` **must** be the unique set number in the pipeline layout that uses a descriptor set layout that was created with `VK_DESCRIPTOR_SET_LAYOUT_CREATE_PUSH_DESCRIPTOR_BIT_KHR`

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkCmdPushDescriptorSetKHR-commandBuffer-parameter**
  
  `commandBuffer` **must** be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle

- **VUID-vkCmdPushDescriptorSetKHR-pipelineBindPoint-parameter**
  
  `pipelineBindPoint` **must** be a valid `VkPipelineBindPoint` value

- **VUID-vkCmdPushDescriptorSetKHR-layout-parameter**
  
  `layout` **must** be a valid `VkPipelineLayout` handle

- **VUID-vkCmdPushDescriptorSetKHR-pDescriptorWrites-parameter**
  
  `pDescriptorWrites` **must** be a valid pointer to an array of `descriptorWriteCount` valid `VkWriteDescriptorSet` structures

- **VUID-vkCmdPushDescriptorSetKHR-commandBuffer-recording**
  
  `commandBuffer` **must** be in the `recording` state

- **VUID-vkCmdPushDescriptorSetKHR-commandBuffer-cmdpool**
  
  The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from **must** support graphics, or compute operations

- **VUID-vkCmdPushDescriptorSetKHR-descriptorWriteCount-arraylength**
  
  `descriptorWriteCount` **must** be greater than 0

- **VUID-vkCmdPushDescriptorSetKHR-commonparent**
  
  Both of `commandBuffer`, and `layout` **must** have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`
Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14.2.9. Push Descriptor Updates with Descriptor Update Templates

It is also possible to use a descriptor update template to specify the push descriptors to update. To do so, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_push_descriptor with VK_VERSION_1_1, VK_KHR_push_descriptor with VK_KHR_descriptor_update_template, VK_KHR_descriptor_update_template with VK_KHR_push_descriptor
void vkCmdPushDescriptorSetWithTemplateKHR(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    VkDescriptorUpdateTemplate descriptorUpdateTemplate,
    VkPipelineLayout layout,
    uint32_t set,
    const void* pData);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer that the descriptors will be recorded in.
- `descriptorUpdateTemplate` is a descriptor update template defining how to interpret the descriptor information in `pData`.
- `layout` is a `VkPipelineLayout` object used to program the bindings. It must be compatible with the layout used to create the `descriptorUpdateTemplate` handle.
- `set` is the set number of the descriptor set in the pipeline layout that will be updated. This must be the same number used to create the `descriptorUpdateTemplate` handle.
- `pData` is a pointer to memory containing descriptors for the templated update.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkCmdPushDescriptorSetWithTemplateKHR-commandBuffer-00366
  The `pipelineBindPoint` specified during the creation of the descriptor update template must be supported by the `commandBuffer`'s parent `VkCommandPool`'s queue family.

- VUID-vkCmdPushDescriptorSetWithTemplateKHR-pData-01686
  `pData` must be a valid pointer to a memory containing one or more valid instances of `VkDescriptorImageInfo`, `VkDescriptorBufferInfo`, or `VkBufferView` in a layout defined by `descriptorUpdateTemplate` when it was created with `vkCreateDescriptorUpdateTemplate`.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdPushDescriptorSetWithTemplateKHR-commandBuffer-parameter
  `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle.

- VUID-vkCmdPushDescriptorSetWithTemplateKHR-descriptorUpdateTemplate-parameter
  `descriptorUpdateTemplate` must be a valid `VkDescriptorUpdateTemplate` handle.

- VUID-vkCmdPushDescriptorSetWithTemplateKHR-layout-parameter
  `layout` must be a valid `VkPipelineLayout` handle.

- VUID-vkCmdPushDescriptorSetWithTemplateKHR-commandBuffer-recording
  `commandBuffer` must be in the recording state.

- VUID-vkCmdPushDescriptorSetWithTemplateKHR-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support graphics, or compute operations.

- VUID-vkCmdPushDescriptorSetWithTemplateKHR-commonparent
  Each of `commandBuffer`, `descriptorUpdateTemplate`, and `layout` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`.

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized.

- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized.

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
struct AppDataStructure
{
    VkDescriptorImageInfo imageInfo;       // a single image info
    // ... some more application related data
};

const VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateEntry descriptorUpdateTemplateEntries[] =
{
    // binding to a single image descriptor
    { 0, // binding
       0, // dstArrayElement
       1, // descriptorCount
       VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER, // descriptorType
       offsetof(AppDataStructure, imageInfo), // offset
       0, // stride is not required if

descriptorCount is 1
};

// create a descriptor update template for push descriptor set updates
const VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateCreateInfo createInfo =
{
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DESCRIPTOR_UPDATE_TEMPLATE_CREATE_INFO, // sType
    NULL, // pNext
    1, // flags

descriptorUpdateEntryCount
    descriptorUpdateTemplateEntries, //
pDescriptorUpdateEntries
    VK_DESCRIPTOR_UPDATE_TEMPLATE_TYPE_PUSH_DESCRIPTORS_KHR, // templateType
    0, // descriptorSetLayout,

    VK_PIPELINE_BIND_POINT_GRAPHICS, // pipelineBindPoint
    myPipelineLayout, // pipelineLayout
    0, // set
};

VkDescriptorUpdateTemplate myDescriptorUpdateTemplate;
myResult = vkCreateDescriptorUpdateTemplate(
    myDevice,
    &createInfo,
    NULL,
    &myDescriptorUpdateTemplate);

AppDataStructure appData;
// fill appData here or cache it in your engine
vkCmdPushDescriptorSetWithTemplateKHR(myCmdBuffer, myDescriptorUpdateTemplate,
    myPipelineLayout, 0, &appData);
14.2.10. Push Constant Updates

As described above in section Pipeline Layouts, the pipeline layout defines shader push constants which are updated via Vulkan commands rather than via writes to memory or copy commands.

Note
Push constants represent a high speed path to modify constant data in pipelines that is expected to outperform memory-backed resource updates.

To update push constants, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkCmdPushConstants(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    VkPipelineLayout layout,
    VkShaderStageFlags stageFlags,
    uint32_t offset,
    uint32_t size,
    const void* pValues);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer in which the push constant update will be recorded.
- `layout` is the pipeline layout used to program the push constant updates.
- `stageFlags` is a bitmask of `VkShaderStageFlagBits` specifying the shader stages that will use the push constants in the updated range.
- `offset` is the start offset of the push constant range to update, in units of bytes.
- `size` is the size of the push constant range to update, in units of bytes.
- `pValues` is a pointer to an array of `size` bytes containing the new push constant values.

When a command buffer begins recording, all push constant values are undefined.

Push constant values can be updated incrementally, causing shader stages in `stageFlags` to read the new data from `pValues` for push constants modified by this command, while still reading the previous data for push constants not modified by this command. When a bound pipeline command is issued, the bound pipeline's layout must be compatible with the layouts used to set the values of all push constants in the pipeline layout's push constant ranges, as described in Pipeline Layout Compatibility. Binding a pipeline with a layout that is not compatible with the push constant layout does not disturb the push constant values.

Note
As `stageFlags` needs to include all flags the relevant push constant ranges were created with, any flags that are not supported by the queue family that the `VkCommandPool` used to allocate `commandBuffer` was created on are ignored.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkCmdPushConstants-offset-01795
  For each byte in the range specified by `offset` and `size` and for each shader stage in `stageFlags`, there must be a push constant range in `layout` that includes that byte and that stage.

- VUID-vkCmdPushConstants-offset-01796
  For each byte in the range specified by `offset` and `size` and for each push constant range that overlaps that byte, `stageFlags` must include all stages in that push constant range's `VkPushConstantRange::stageFlags`.

- VUID-vkCmdPushConstants-offset-00368
  `offset` must be a multiple of 4.

- VUID-vkCmdPushConstants-size-00369
  `size` must be a multiple of 4.

- VUID-vkCmdPushConstants-offset-00370
  `offset` must be less than `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxPushConstantsSize`.

- VUID-vkCmdPushConstants-size-00371
  `size` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxPushConstantsSize` minus `offset`. 
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdPushConstants-commandBuffer-parameter
  commandBuffer must be a valid VkCommandBuffer handle

- VUID-vkCmdPushConstants-layout-parameter
  layout must be a valid VkPipelineLayout handle

- VUID-vkCmdPushConstants-stageFlags-parameter
  stageFlags must be a valid combination of VkShaderStageFlagBits values

- VUID-vkCmdPushConstants-stageFlags-requiredbitsetmask
  stageFlags must not be 0

- VUID-vkCmdPushConstants-pValues-parameter
  pValues must be a valid pointer to an array of size bytes

- VUID-vkCmdPushConstants-commandBuffer-recording
  commandBuffer must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdPushConstants-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must support graphics, or compute operations

- VUID-vkCmdPushConstants-size-arraylength
  size must be greater than 0

- VUID-vkCmdPushConstants-commonparent
  Both of commandBuffer, and layout must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same VkDevice

Host Synchronization

- Host access to commandBuffer must be externally synchronized

- Host access to the VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14.3. Physical Storage Buffer Access

To query a 64-bit buffer device address value through which buffer memory can be accessed in a shader, call:
Provided by VK_KHR_buffer_device_address

```c
VkDeviceAddress vkGetBufferDeviceAddressKHR(  
    VkDevice    device,  
    const VkBufferDeviceAddressInfo*  pInfo);
```

- `device` is the logical device that the buffer was created on.
- `pInfo` is a pointer to a `VkBufferDeviceAddressInfo` structure specifying the buffer to retrieve an address for.

The 64-bit return value is an address of the start of `pInfo->buffer`. The address range starting at this value and whose size is the size of the buffer can be used in a shader to access the memory bound to that buffer, using the `SPV_KHR_physical_storage_buffer` extension and the `PhysicalStorageBuffer` storage class. For example, this value can be stored in a uniform buffer, and the shader can read the value from the uniform buffer and use it to do a dependent read/write to this buffer. A value of zero is reserved as a “null” pointer and must not be returned as a valid buffer device address. All loads, stores, and atomics in a shader through `PhysicalStorageBuffer` pointers must access addresses in the address range of some buffer.

If the buffer was created with a non-zero value of `VkBufferOpaqueCaptureAddressCreateInfo::opaqueCaptureAddress` the return value will be the same address that was returned at capture time.

---

**Valid Usage**

- **VUID-vkGetBufferDeviceAddress-bufferDeviceAddress-03324**
  The `bufferDeviceAddress` or `VkPhysicalDeviceBufferDeviceAddressFeaturesEXT::bufferDeviceAddress` feature must be enabled

- **VUID-vkGetBufferDeviceAddress-device-03325**
  If `device` was created with multiple physical devices, then the `bufferDeviceAddressMultiDevice` or `VkPhysicalDeviceBufferDeviceAddressFeaturesEXT::bufferDeviceAddressMultiDevice` feature must be enabled

---

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- **VUID-vkGetBufferDeviceAddress-device-parameter**
  `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- **VUID-vkGetBufferDeviceAddress-pInfo-parameter**
  `pInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkBufferDeviceAddressInfo` structure

---

The `VkBufferDeviceAddressInfo` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkBufferDeviceAddressInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkBuffer buffer;
} VkBufferDeviceAddressInfo;

or the equivalent

// Provided by VK_KHR_buffer_device_address
typedef VkBufferDeviceAddressInfo VkBufferDeviceAddressInfoKHR;

• **sType** is the type of this structure.

• **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.

• **buffer** specifies the buffer whose address is being queried.

**Valid Usage**

• VUID-VkBufferDeviceAddressInfo-buffer-02600
  If **buffer** is non-sparse and was not created with the VK_BUFFER_CREATE_DEVICE_ADDRESS_CAPTURE_REPLAY_BIT flag, then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single VkDeviceMemory object

• VUID-VkBufferDeviceAddressInfo-buffer-02601
  **buffer** must have been created with VK_BUFFER_USAGE_SHADER_DEVICE_ADDRESS_BIT

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

• VUID-VkBufferDeviceAddressInfo-sType-sType
  **sType** must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BUFFER_DEVICE_ADDRESS_INFO

• VUID-VkBufferDeviceAddressInfo-pNext-pNext
  **pNext** must be **NULL**

• VUID-VkBufferDeviceAddressInfo-buffer-parameter
  **buffer** must be a valid VkBuffer handle

To query a 64-bit buffer opaque capture address, call:

// Provided by VK_KHR_buffer_device_address
uint64_t vkGetBufferOpaqueCaptureAddressKHR(
    VkDevice device,                     // The logical device that the buffer was created on.
    const VkBufferDeviceAddressInfo* pInfo);

• **device** is the logical device that the buffer was created on.
• `pInfo` is a pointer to a `VkBufferDeviceAddressInfo` structure specifying the buffer to retrieve an address for.

The 64-bit return value is an opaque capture address of the start of `pInfo->buffer`.

If the buffer was created with a non-zero value of `VkBufferOpaqueCaptureAddressCreateInfo::opaqueCaptureAddress` the return value **must** be the same address.

### Valid Usage

- VUID-vkGetBufferOpaqueCaptureAddress-None-03326
  The `bufferDeviceAddress` feature **must** be enabled

- VUID-vkGetBufferOpaqueCaptureAddress-device-03327
  If `device` was created with multiple physical devices, then the `bufferDeviceAddressMultiDevice` feature **must** be enabled

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetBufferOpaqueCaptureAddress-device-parameter
  `device` **must** be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- VUID-vkGetBufferOpaqueCaptureAddress-pInfo-parameter
  `pInfo` **must** be a valid pointer to a valid `VkBufferDeviceAddressInfo` structure
Chapter 15. Shader Interfaces

When a pipeline is created, the set of shaders specified in the corresponding `Vk*PipelineCreateInfo` structure are implicitly linked at a number of different interfaces.

- Shader Input and Output Interface
- Vertex Input Interface
- Fragment Output Interface
- Fragment Input Attachment Interface
- Ray Tracing Pipeline Interface
- Shader Resource Interface

Interface definitions make use of the following SPIR-V decorations:

- `DescriptorSet` and `Binding`
- `Location`, `Component`, and `Index`
- `Flat`, `NoPerspective`, `Centroid`, and `Sample`
- `Block` and `BufferBlock`
- `InputAttachmentIndex`
- `Offset`, `ArrayStride`, and `MatrixStride`
- `BuiltIn`

This specification describes valid uses for Vulkan of these decorations. Any other use of one of these decorations is invalid, with the exception that, when using SPIR-V versions 1.4 and earlier: `Block`, `BufferBlock`, `Offset`, `ArrayStride`, and `MatrixStride` can also decorate types and type members used by variables in the Private and Function storage classes.

**Note**

In this chapter, there are references to SPIR-V terms such as the `MeshNV` execution model. These terms will appear even in a build of the specification which does not support any extensions. This is as intended, since these terms appear in the unified SPIR-V specification without such qualifiers.

### 15.1. Shader Input and Output Interfaces

When multiple stages are present in a pipeline, the outputs of one stage form an interface with the inputs of the next stage. When such an interface involves a shader, shader outputs are matched against the inputs of the next stage, and shader inputs are matched against the outputs of the previous stage.

All the variables forming the shader input and output *interfaces* are listed as operands to the `OpEntryPoint` instruction and are declared with the `Input` or `Output` storage classes, respectively, in the SPIR-V module. These generally form the interfaces between consecutive shader stages,
regardless of any non-shader stages between the consecutive shader stages.

There are two classes of variables that can be matched between shader stages, built-in variables and user-defined variables. Each class has a different set of matching criteria.

Output variables of a shader stage have undefined values until the shader writes to them or uses the Initializer operand when declaring the variable.

15.1.1. Built-in Interface Block

Shader built-in variables meeting the following requirements define the built-in interface block. They must

- be explicitly declared (there are no implicit built-ins),
- be identified with a BuiltIn decoration,
- form object types as described in the Built-in Variables section, and
- be declared in a block whose top-level members are the built-ins.

There must be no more than one built-in interface block per shader per interface.

Built-ins must not have any Location or Component decorations.

15.1.2. User-defined Variable Interface

The non-built-in variables listed by OpEntryPoint with the Input or Output storage class form the user-defined variable interface. These must have SPIR-V numerical types or, recursively, composite types of such types. By default, the components of such types have a width of 32 or 64 bits. If an implementation supports storageInputOutput16, components can also have a width of 16 bits. These variables must be identified with a Location decoration and can also be identified with a Component decoration.

15.1.3. Interface Matching

An output variable, block, or structure member in a given shader stage has an interface match with an input variable, block, or structure member in a subsequent shader stage if they both adhere to the following conditions:

- They have equivalent decorations, other than:
  - Interpolation decorations
  - one is not decorated with Component and the other is declared with a Component of 0
- Their types match as follows:
  a. if the input is declared in a tessellation control or geometry shader as an OpTypeArray with an Element Type equivalent to the OpType* declaration of the output, and neither is a structure member; or
  b. if in any other case they are declared with an equivalent OpType* declaration.
- If both are structures and every member has an interface match.
The word "structure" above refers to both variables that have an \texttt{OpTypeStruct} type and interface blocks (which are also declared as \texttt{OpTypeStruct}).

All input variables and blocks \textbf{must} have an interface match in the preceding shader stage, except for built-in variables in fragment shaders. Shaders \textbf{can} declare and write to output variables that are not declared or read by the subsequent stage.

The value of an input variable is undefined if the preceding stage does not write to a matching output variable, as described above.

\textbf{15.1.4. Location Assignment}

This section describes location assignments for user-defined variables and how many locations are consumed by a given user-variable type. As mentioned above, some inputs and outputs have an additional level of arrayness relative to other shader inputs and outputs. This outer array level is removed from the type before considering how many locations the type consumes.

The \texttt{Location} value specifies an interface slot comprised of a 32-bit four-component vector conveyed between stages. The \texttt{Component} specifies components within these vector locations. Only types with widths of 16, 32 or 64 are supported in shader interfaces.

Inputs and outputs of the following types consume a single interface location:

- 16-bit scalar and vector types, and
- 32-bit scalar and vector types, and
- 64-bit scalar and 2-component vector types.

64-bit three- and four-component vectors consume two consecutive locations.

If a declared input or output is an array of size \(n\) and each element takes \(m\) locations, it will be assigned \(m \times n\) consecutive locations starting with the location specified.

If the declared input or output is an \(n \times m\) 16-, 32- or 64-bit matrix, it will be assigned multiple locations starting with the location specified. The number of locations assigned for each matrix will be the same as for an \(n\)-element array of \(m\)-component vectors.

An \texttt{OpVariable} with a structure type that is not a block must be decorated with a \texttt{Location}.

When an \texttt{OpVariable} with a structure type (either block or non-block) is decorated with a \texttt{Location}, the members in the structure type \textbf{must} not be decorated with a \texttt{Location}. The \texttt{OpVariable}'s members are assigned consecutive locations in declaration order, starting from the first member, which is assigned the location decoration from the \texttt{OpVariable}.

When a block-type \texttt{OpVariable} is declared without a \texttt{Location} decoration, each member in its structure type \textbf{must} be decorated with a \texttt{Location}. Types nested deeper than the top-level members \textbf{must} not have \texttt{Location} decorations.

The locations consumed by block and structure members are determined by applying the rules
above in a depth-first traversal of the instantiated members as though the structure or block member were declared as an input or output variable of the same type.

Any two inputs listed as operands on the same `OpEntryPoint` must not be assigned the same location, either explicitly or implicitly. Any two outputs listed as operands on the same `OpEntryPoint` must not be assigned the same location, either explicitly or implicitly.

The number of input and output locations available for a shader input or output interface are limited, and dependent on the shader stage as described in Shader Input and Output Locations. All variables in both the built-in interface block and the user-defined variable interface count against these limits. Each effective Location must have a value less than the number of locations available for the given interface, as specified in the "Locations Available" column in Shader Input and Output Locations.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shader Interface</th>
<th>Locations Available</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>vertex input</td>
<td><code>maxVertexInputAttributes</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>vertex output</td>
<td><code>maxVertexOutputComponents / 4</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tessellation control input</td>
<td><code>maxTessellationControlPerVertexInputComponents / 4</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tessellation control output</td>
<td><code>maxTessellationControlPerVertexOutputComponents / 4</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tessellation evaluation input</td>
<td><code>maxTessellationEvaluationInputComponents / 4</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tessellation evaluation output</td>
<td><code>maxTessellationEvaluationOutputComponents / 4</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geometry input</td>
<td><code>maxGeometryInputComponents / 4</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>geometry output</td>
<td><code>maxGeometryOutputComponents / 4</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fragment input</td>
<td><code>maxFragmentInputComponents / 4</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fragment output</td>
<td><code>maxFragmentOutputAttachments</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 15.1.5. Component Assignment

The `Component` decoration allows the Location to be more finely specified for scalars and vectors, down to the individual components within a location that are consumed. The components within a location are 0, 1, 2, and 3. A variable or block member starting at component N will consume components N, N+1, N+2, … up through its size. For 16- and 32-bit types, it is invalid if this sequence of components gets larger than 3. A scalar 64-bit type will consume two of these components in sequence, and a two-component 64-bit vector type will consume all four components available within a location. A three- or four-component 64-bit vector type must not specify a `Component` decoration. A three-component 64-bit vector type will consume all four components of the first location and components 0 and 1 of the second location. This leaves components 2 and 3 available for other component-qualified declarations.

A scalar or two-component 64-bit data type must not specify a `Component` decoration of 1 or 3. A `Component` decoration must not be specified for any type that is not a scalar or vector.
15.2. Vertex Input Interface

When the vertex stage is present in a pipeline, the vertex shader input variables form an interface with the vertex input attributes. The vertex shader input variables are matched by the `Location` and `Component` decorations to the vertex input attributes specified in the `pVertexInputState` member of the `VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo` structure.

The vertex shader input variables listed by `OpEntryPoint` with the `Input` storage class form the vertex input interface. These variables must be identified with a `Location` decoration and can also be identified with a `Component` decoration.

For the purposes of interface matching: variables declared without a `Component` decoration are considered to have a `Component` decoration of zero. The number of available vertex input locations is given by the `maxVertexInputAttributes` member of the `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits` structure.

See Attribute Location and Component Assignment for details.

All vertex shader inputs declared as above must have a corresponding attribute and binding in the pipeline.

15.3. Fragment Output Interface

When the fragment stage is present in a pipeline, the fragment shader outputs form an interface with the output attachments of the current subpass. The fragment shader output variables are matched by the `Location` and `Component` decorations to the color attachments specified in the `pColorAttachments` array of the `VkSubpassDescription` structure describing the subpass that the fragment shader is executed in.

The fragment shader output variables listed by `OpEntryPoint` with the `Output` storage class form the fragment output interface. These variables must be identified with a `Location` decoration. They can also be identified with a `Component` decoration and/or an `Index` decoration. For the purposes of interface matching: variables declared without a `Component` decoration are considered to have a `Component` decoration of zero, and variables declared without an `Index` decoration are considered to have an `Index` decoration of zero.

A fragment shader output variable identified with a `Location` decoration of `i` is directed to the color attachment indicated by `pColorAttachments[i]`, after passing through the blending unit as described in Blending, if enabled. Locations are consumed as described in Location Assignment. The number of available fragment output locations is given by the `maxFragmentOutputAttachments` member of the `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits` structure.

Components of the output variables are assigned as described in Component Assignment. Output components identified as 0, 1, 2, and 3 will be directed to the R, G, B, and A inputs to the blending unit, respectively, or to the output attachment if blending is disabled. If two variables are placed within the same location, they must have the same underlying type (floating-point or integer). The input values to blending or color attachment writes are undefined for components which do not correspond to a fragment shader output.

Fragment outputs identified with an `Index` of zero are directed to the first input of the blending unit.
associated with the corresponding Location. Outputs identified with an Index of one are directed to the second input of the corresponding blending unit.

No component aliasing of output variables is allowed, that is there must not be two output variables which have the same location, component, and index, either explicitly declared or implied.

Output values written by a fragment shader must be declared with either OpTypeFloat or OpTypeInt, and a Width of 32. If storageInputOutput16 is supported, output values written by a fragment shader can be also declared with either OpTypeFloat or OpTypeInt and a Width of 16. Composites of these types are also permitted. If the color attachment has a signed or unsigned normalized fixed-point format, color values are assumed to be floating-point and are converted to fixed-point as described in Conversion from Floating-Point to Normalized Fixed-Point; If the color attachment has an integer format, color values are assumed to be integers and converted to the bit-depth of the target. Any value that cannot be represented in the attachment’s format is undefined. For any other attachment format no conversion is performed. If the type of the values written by the fragment shader do not match the format of the corresponding color attachment, the resulting values are undefined for those components.

15.4. Fragment Input Attachment Interface

When a fragment stage is present in a pipeline, the fragment shader subpass inputs form an interface with the input attachments of the current subpass. The fragment shader subpass input variables are matched by InputAttachmentIndex decorations to the input attachments specified in the pInputAttachments array of the VkSubpassDescription structure describing the subpass that the fragment shader is executed in.

The fragment shader subpass input variables with the UniformConstant storage class and a decoration of InputAttachmentIndex that are statically used by OpEntryPoint form the fragment input attachment interface. These variables must be declared with a type of OpTypeImage, a Dim operand of SubpassData, an Arrayed operand of 0, and a Sampled operand of 2. The MS operand of the OpTypeImage must be 0 if the samples field of the corresponding VkAttachmentDescription is VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT and 1 otherwise.

A subpass input variable identified with an InputAttachmentIndex decoration of i reads from the input attachment indicated by pInputAttachments[i] member of VkSubpassDescription. If the subpass input variable is declared as an array of size N, it consumes N consecutive input attachments, starting with the index specified. There must not be more than one input variable with the same InputAttachmentIndex whether explicitly declared or implied by an array declaration. The number of available input attachment indices is given by the maxPerStageDescriptorInputAttachments member of the VkPhysicalDeviceLimits structure.

Variables identified with the InputAttachmentIndex must only be used by a fragment stage. The basic data type (floating-point, integer, unsigned integer) of the subpass input must match the basic format of the corresponding input attachment, or the values of subpass loads from these variables are undefined.

See Input Attachment for more details.
15.5. Ray Tracing Pipeline Interface

Ray tracing pipelines may have more stages than other pipelines with multiple instances of each stage and more dynamic interactions between the stages, but still have interface structures that obey the same general rules as interfaces between shader stages in other pipelines. The three types of inter-stage interface variables for ray tracing pipelines are:

- Ray payloads which contain data tracked for the entire lifetime of the ray.
- Hit attributes which contain data about a specific hit for the duration of its processing.
- Callable data for passing data into and out of a callable shader.

Ray payloads and callable data are used in explicit shader call instructions, so they have an incoming variant to distinguish the parameter passed to the invocation from any other payloads or data being used by subsequent shader call instructions.

An interface structure used between stages must match between the stages using it. Specifically:

- The hit attribute structure read in an any-hit or closest hit shader must be the same structure as the hit attribute structure written in the corresponding intersection shader in the same hit group.
- The incoming callable data for a callable shader must be the same structure as the callable data referenced by the execute callable instruction in the calling shader.
- The ray payload for a shader invoked by a ray tracing command must be the same structure for all shader stages using the payload for that ray.

Any shader with an incoming ray payload, incoming callable data, or hit attribute must only declare one variable of that type.

Table 15. Ray Pipeline Shader Interface

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Shader Stage</th>
<th>Ray Payload</th>
<th>Incoming Ray Payload</th>
<th>Hit Attribute</th>
<th>Callable Data</th>
<th>Incoming Callable Data</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Ray Generation</td>
<td>r/w</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>r/w</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intersection</td>
<td>r/w</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Any-Hit</td>
<td>r/w</td>
<td>r</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Closest Hit</td>
<td>r/w</td>
<td>r/w</td>
<td>r</td>
<td>r/w</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Miss</td>
<td>r/w</td>
<td>r/w</td>
<td></td>
<td>r/w</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Callable</td>
<td>r/w</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>r/w</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

15.6. Shader Resource Interface

When a shader stage accesses buffer or image resources, as described in the Resource Descriptors section, the shader resource variables must be matched with the pipeline layout that is provided at
pipeline creation time.

The set of shader variables that form the *shader resource interface* for a stage are the variables statically used by that stage's `OpEntryPoint` with a storage class of `Uniform`, `UniformConstant`, `StorageBuffer`, or `PushConstant`. For the fragment shader, this includes the *fragment input attachment interface*.

The shader resource interface consists of two sub-interfaces: the push constant interface and the descriptor set interface.

### 15.6.1. Push Constant Interface

The shader variables defined with a storage class of `PushConstant` that are statically used by the shader entry points for the pipeline define the *push constant interface*. They **must** be:

- typed as `OpTypeStruct`,
- identified with a `Block` decoration, and
- laid out explicitly using the `Offset`, `ArrayStride`, and `MatrixStride` decorations as specified in [Offset and Stride Assignment](https://www.khronos.org/registry/vulkan/specs/1.3-extensions/vulkan-1.3-extensions.txt).

There **must** be no more than one push constant block statically used per shader entry point.

Each statically used member of a push constant block **must** be placed at an `Offset` such that the entire member is entirely contained within the `VkPushConstantRange` for each `OpEntryPoint` that uses it, and the `stageFlags` for that range **must** specify the appropriate `VkShaderStageFlagBits` for that stage. The `Offset` decoration for any member of a push constant block **must** not cause the space required for that member to extend outside the range `[0, maxPushConstantsSize)`.

Any member of a push constant block that is declared as an array **must** only be accessed with *dynamically uniform* indices.

### 15.6.2. Descriptor Set Interface

The *descriptor set interface* is comprised of the shader variables with the storage class of `StorageBuffer`, `Uniform` or `UniformConstant` (including the variables in the *fragment input attachment interface*) that are statically used by the shader entry points for the pipeline.

These variables **must** have `DescriptorSet` and `Binding` decorations specified, which are assigned and matched with the `VkDescriptorSetLayout` objects in the pipeline layout as described in [DescriptorSet and Binding Assignment](https://www.khronos.org/registry/vulkan/specs/1.3-extensions/vulkan-1.3-extensions.txt).

The *Image Format* of an `OpTypeImage` declaration **must** not be `Unknown`, for variables which are used for `OpImageRead`, `OpImageSparseRead`, or `OpImageWrite` operations, except under the following conditions:

- For `OpImageWrite`, if the `shaderStorageImageWriteWithoutFormat` feature is enabled and the shader module declares the `StorageImageWriteWithoutFormat` capability.
- For `OpImageRead` or `OpImageSparseRead`, if the `shaderStorageImageReadWithoutFormat` feature is enabled and the shader module declares the `StorageImageReadWithoutFormat` capability.
• For OpImageRead, if Dim is SubpassData (indicating a read from an input attachment).

The Image Format of an OpTypeImage declaration must not be Unknown, for variables which are used for OpAtomic* operations.

Variables identified with the Uniform storage class are used to access transparent buffer backed resources. Such variables must be:

• typed as OpTypeStruct, or an array of this type,
• identified with a Block or BufferBlock decoration, and
• laid out explicitly using the Offset, ArrayStride, and MatrixStride decorations as specified in Offset and Stride Assignment.

Variables identified with the StorageBuffer storage class are used to access transparent buffer backed resources. Such variables must be:

• typed as OpTypeStruct, or an array of this type,
• identified with a Block decoration, and
• laid out explicitly using the Offset, ArrayStride, and MatrixStride decorations as specified in Offset and Stride Assignment.

The Offset decoration for any member of a Block-decorated variable in the Uniform storage class must not cause the space required for that variable to extend outside the range [0, maxUniformBufferRange). The Offset decoration for any member of a Block-decorated variable in the StorageBuffer storage class must not cause the space required for that variable to extend outside the range [0, maxStorageBufferRange).

Variables identified with a storage class of UniformConstant and a decoration of InputAttachmentIndex must be declared as described in Fragment Input Attachment Interface.

SPIR-V variables decorated with a descriptor set and binding that identify a combined image sampler descriptor can have a type of OpTypeImage, OpTypeSampler (Sampled=1), or OpTypeSampledImage.

Arrays of any of these types can be indexed with constant integral expressions. The following features must be enabled and capabilities must be declared in order to index such arrays with dynamically uniform or non-uniform indices:

• Storage images (except storage texel buffers and input attachments):
  • Dynamically uniform: shaderStorageImageArrayDynamicIndexing and StorageImageArrayDynamicIndexing
• Sampled images (except uniform texel buffers), samplers and combined image samplers:
  • Dynamically uniform: shaderSampledImageArrayDynamicIndexing and SampledImageArrayDynamicIndexing
• Uniform buffers:
  • Dynamically uniform: shaderUniformBufferArrayDynamicIndexing and UniformBufferArrayDynamicIndexing
• Storage buffers:
Dynamically uniform: `shaderStorageBufferArrayDynamicIndexing` and `StorageBufferArrayDynamicIndexing`.

Acceleration structures:
- Dynamically uniform: Always supported.
- Non-uniform: Always supported.

If an instruction loads from or stores to a resource (including atomics and image instructions) and the resource descriptor being accessed is loaded from an array element with a non-constant index, then the corresponding dynamic indexing feature **must** be enabled and the capability **must** be declared.

If the combined image sampler enables sampler Y′C_{bc}C_a conversion, it **must** be indexed only by constant integral expressions when aggregated into arrays in shader code, irrespective of the `shaderSampledImageArrayDynamicIndexing` feature.

### Table 16. Shader Resource and Descriptor Type Correspondence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resource type</th>
<th>Descriptor Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sampler</td>
<td><code>VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLER</code> or <code>VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sampled image</td>
<td><code>VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLED_IMAGE</code> or <code>VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>storage image</td>
<td><code>VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_IMAGE</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>combined image sampler</td>
<td><code>VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniform texel buffer</td>
<td><code>VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>storage texel buffer</td>
<td><code>VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniform buffer</td>
<td><code>VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER</code> or <code>VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER_DYNAMIC</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>storage buffer</td>
<td><code>VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER</code> or <code>VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER_DYNAMIC</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>input attachment</td>
<td><code>VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acceleration structure</td>
<td><code>VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_KHR</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Table 17. Shader Resource and Storage Class Correspondence

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resource type</th>
<th>Storage Class</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Decoration(s)¹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sampler</td>
<td>UniformConstant</td>
<td>OpTypeSampler</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sampled image</td>
<td>UniformConstant</td>
<td>OpTypeImage (Sampled=1)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>storage image</td>
<td>UniformConstant</td>
<td>OpTypeImage (Sampled=2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>combined image sampler</td>
<td>UniformConstant</td>
<td>OpTypeSampler, OpTypeSampledImage OpTypeImage (Sampled=1)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniform texel buffer</td>
<td>UniformConstant</td>
<td>OpTypeImage (Dim=Buffer, Sampled=1)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resource type</td>
<td>Storage Class</td>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Decoration(s)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>storage texel buffer</td>
<td>UniformConstant</td>
<td>OpTypeImage (Dim=Buffer, Sampled=2)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uniform buffer</td>
<td>Uniform</td>
<td>OpTypeStruct</td>
<td>Block, Offset, (ArrayStride), (MatrixStride)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>storage buffer</td>
<td>Uniform</td>
<td>OpTypeStruct</td>
<td>BufferBlock, Offset, (ArrayStride), (MatrixStride)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>StorageBuffer</td>
<td>OpTypeStruct</td>
<td>Block, Offset, (ArrayStride), (MatrixStride)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>input attachment</td>
<td>UniformConstant</td>
<td>OpTypeImage (Dim =SubpassData, Sampled=2)</td>
<td>InputAttachmentIndex</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acceleration structure</td>
<td>UniformConstant</td>
<td>OpTypeAccelerationStructureKHR</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1

In addition to DescriptorSet and Binding.

### 15.6.3. DescriptorSet and Binding Assignment

A variable decorated with a DescriptorSet decoration of s and a Binding decoration of b indicates that this variable is associated with the VkDescriptorSetLayoutBinding that has a binding equal to b in pSetLayouts[s] that was specified in VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo.

DescriptorSet decoration values must be between zero and maxBoundDescriptorSets minus one, inclusive. Binding decoration values can be any 32-bit unsigned integer value, as described in Descriptor Set Layout. Each descriptor set has its own binding name space.

If the Binding decoration is used with an array, the entire array is assigned that binding value. The array must be a single-dimensional array and size of the array must be no larger than the number of descriptors in the binding. The array must not be runtime-sized. The index of each element of the array is referred to as the arrayElement. For the purposes of interface matching and descriptor set operations, if a resource variable is not an array, it is treated as if it has an arrayElement of zero.

There is a limit on the number of resources of each type that can be accessed by a pipeline stage as shown in Shader Resource Limits. The “Resources Per Stage” column gives the limit on the number each type of resource that can be statically used for an entry point in any given stage in a pipeline. The “Resource Types” column lists which resource types are counted against the limit. Some resource types count against multiple limits.

The pipeline layout may include descriptor sets and bindings which are not referenced by any variables statically used by the entry points for the shader stages in the binding’s stageFlags.

However, if a variable assigned to a given DescriptorSet and Binding is statically used by the entry point for a shader stage, the pipeline layout must contain a descriptor set layout binding in that descriptor set layout and for that binding number, and that binding’s stageFlags must include the appropriate VkShaderStageFlagBits for that stage. The variable must be of a valid resource type.
determined by its SPIR-V type and storage class, as defined in Shader Resource and Storage Class Correspondence. The descriptor set layout binding must be of a corresponding descriptor type, as defined in Shader Resource and Descriptor Type Correspondence.

**Note**

There are no limits on the number of shader variables that can have overlapping set and binding values in a shader; but which resources are statically used has an impact. If any shader variable identifying a resource is statically used in a shader, then the underlying descriptor bound at the declared set and binding must support the declared type in the shader when the shader executes.

If multiple shader variables are declared with the same set and binding values, and with the same underlying descriptor type, they can all be statically used within the same shader. However, accesses are not automatically synchronized, and Aliased decorations should be used to avoid data hazards (see section 2.18.2 Aliasing in the SPIR-V specification).

If multiple shader variables with the same set and binding values are declared in a single shader, but with different declared types, where any of those are not supported by the relevant bound descriptor, that shader can only be executed if the variables with the unsupported type are not statically used.

A noteworthy example of using multiple statically-used shader variables sharing the same descriptor set and binding values is a descriptor of type VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER that has multiple corresponding shader variables in the UniformConstant storage class, where some could be OpTypeImage (Sampled=1), some could be OpTypeSampler, and some could be OpTypeSampledImage.

### Table 18. Shader Resource Limits

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Resources per Stage</th>
<th>Resource Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>maxPerStageDescriptorSamplers</td>
<td>sampler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>combined image sampler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxPerStageDescriptorSampledImages</td>
<td>sampled image</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>combined image sampler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>uniform texel buffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxPerStageDescriptorStorageImages</td>
<td>storage image</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>storage texel buffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxPerStageDescriptorUniformBuffers</td>
<td>uniform buffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>uniform buffer dynamic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxPerStageDescriptorStorageBuffers</td>
<td>storage buffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>storage buffer dynamic</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxPerStageDescriptorInputAttachments</td>
<td>input attachment¹</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Resources per Stage

| maxPerStageDescriptorAccelerationStructures or maxPerStageDescriptorUpdateAfterBindAccelerationStructures | acceleration structure |

1

Input attachments **can** only be used in the fragment shader stage.

### 15.6.4. Offset and Stride Assignment

Certain objects **must** be explicitly laid out using the **Offset**, **ArrayStride**, and **MatrixStride**, as described in [SPIR-V explicit layout validation rules](https://www.khronos.org/registry/spirv/specs/1.4/extensions/sync.html). All such layouts also **must** conform to the following requirements.

**Note**

The numeric order of **Offset** decorations does not need to follow member declaration order.

**Alignment Requirements**

There are different alignment requirements depending on the specific resources and on the features enabled on the device.

The **scalar alignment** of the type of an **OpTypeStruct** member is defined recursively as follows:

- A scalar of size $N$ has a scalar alignment of $N$.
- A vector or matrix type has a scalar alignment equal to that of its component type.
- An array type has a scalar alignment equal to that of its element type.
- A structure has a scalar alignment equal to the largest scalar alignment of any of its members.

The **base alignment** of the type of an **OpTypeStruct** member is defined recursively as follows:

- A scalar has a base alignment equal to its scalar alignment.
- A two-component vector has a base alignment equal to twice its scalar alignment.
- A three- or four-component vector has a base alignment equal to four times its scalar alignment.
- An array has a base alignment equal to the base alignment of its element type.
- A structure has a base alignment equal to the largest base alignment of any of its members. An empty structure has a base alignment equal to the size of the smallest scalar type permitted by the capabilities declared in the SPIR-V module. (e.g., for a 1 byte aligned empty struct in the **StorageBuffer** storage class, **StorageBuffer8BitAccess** or **UniformAndStorageBuffer8BitAccess** must be declared in the SPIR-V module.)
- A row-major matrix of $C$ columns has a base alignment equal to the base alignment of a vector of $C$ matrix components.
- A column-major matrix has a base alignment equal to the base alignment of the matrix column...
The extended alignment of the type of an OpTypeStruct member is similarly defined as follows:

- A scalar, vector or matrix type has an extended alignment equal to its base alignment.
- An array or structure type has an extended alignment equal to the largest extended alignment of any of its members, rounded up to a multiple of 16.

A member is defined to improperly straddle if either of the following are true:

- It is a vector with total size less than or equal to 16 bytes, and has Offset decorations placing its first byte at F and its last byte at L, where floor(F / 16) \neq floor(L / 16).
- It is a vector with total size greater than 16 bytes and has its Offset decorations placing its first byte at a non-integer multiple of 16.

**Standard Buffer Layout**

Every member of an OpTypeStruct that is required to be explicitly laid out must be aligned according to the first matching rule as follows. If the struct is contained in pointer types of multiple storage classes, it must satisfy the requirements for every storage class used to reference it.

1. If the workgroupMemoryExplicitLayoutScalarBlockLayout feature is enabled on the device and the storage class is Workgroup then every member must be aligned according to its scalar alignment.
2. All vectors must be aligned according to their scalar alignment.
3. If the uniformBufferStandardLayout feature is not enabled on the device, then any member of an OpTypeStruct with a storage class of Uniform and a decoration of Block must be aligned according to its extended alignment.
4. Every other member must be aligned according to its base alignment.

The memory layout must obey the following rules:

- The Offset decoration of any member must be a multiple of its alignment.
- Any ArrayStride or MatrixStride decoration must be a multiple of the alignment of the array or matrix as defined above.

If one of the conditions below applies

- The storage class is Workgroup, and either the struct member is not part of a Block or the workgroupMemoryExplicitLayoutScalarBlockLayout feature is not enabled on the device.
- The storage class is any other storage class.

The memory layout must also obey the following rules:

- Vectors must not improperly straddle, as defined above.
- The Offset decoration of a member must not place it between the end of a structure or an array and the next multiple of the alignment of that structure or array.
Note
The **std430 layout** in GLSL satisfies these rules for types using the base alignment. The **std140 layout** satisfies the rules for types using the extended alignment.

### 15.7. Built-In Variables

Built-in variables are accessed in shaders by declaring a variable decorated with a `BuiltIn` SPIR-V decoration. The meaning of each `BuiltIn` decoration is as follows. In the remainder of this section, the name of a built-in is used interchangeably with a term equivalent to a variable decorated with that particular built-in. Built-ins that represent integer values can be declared as either signed or unsigned 32-bit integers.

As mentioned above, some inputs and outputs have an additional level of arrayness relative to other shader inputs and outputs. This level of arrayness is not included in the type descriptions below, but must be included when declaring the built-in.

**BaseInstance**

Decorating a variable with the `BaseInstance` built-in will make that variable contain the integer value corresponding to the first instance that was passed to the command that invoked the current vertex shader invocation. `BaseInstance` is the `firstInstance` parameter to a **direct drawing command** or the `firstInstance` member of a structure consumed by an **indirect drawing command**.

**Valid Usage**

- **VUID-BaseInstance-BaseInstance-04181**
  The `BaseInstance` decoration must be used only within the **Vertex Execution Model**

- **VUID-BaseInstance-BaseInstance-04182**
  The variable decorated with `BaseInstance` must be declared using the **Input Storage Class**

- **VUID-BaseInstance-BaseInstance-04183**
  The variable decorated with `BaseInstance` must be declared as a scalar 32-bit integer value

**BaseVertex**

Decorating a variable with the `BaseVertex` built-in will make that variable contain the integer value corresponding to the first vertex or vertex offset that was passed to the command that invoked the current vertex shader invocation. For **non-indexed drawing commands**, this variable is the `firstVertex` parameter to a **direct drawing command** or the `firstVertex` member of the structure consumed by an **indirect drawing command**. For **indexed drawing commands**, this variable is the `vertexOffset` parameter to a **direct drawing command** or the `vertexOffset` member of the structure consumed by an **indirect drawing command**.
Valid Usage

- VUID-BaseVertex-BaseVertex-04184
  The `BaseVertex` decoration **must** be used only within the *Vertex Execution Model*

- VUID-BaseVertex-BaseVertex-04185
  The variable decorated with `BaseVertex` **must** be declared using the *Input Storage Class*

- VUID-BaseVertex-BaseVertex-04186
  The variable decorated with `BaseVertex` **must** be declared as a scalar 32-bit integer value

**ClipDistance**

Decorating a variable with the `ClipDistance` built-in decoration will make that variable contain the mechanism for controlling user clipping. `ClipDistance` is an array such that the `i`th element of the array specifies the clip distance for plane `i`. A clip distance of 0 means the vertex is on the plane, a positive distance means the vertex is inside the clip half-space, and a negative distance means the vertex is outside the clip half-space.

**Note**
The array variable decorated with `ClipDistance` is explicitly sized by the shader.

**Note**
In the last *pre-rasterization shader stage*, these values will be linearly interpolated across the primitive and the portion of the primitive with interpolated distances less than 0 will be considered outside the clip volume. If `ClipDistance` is then used by a fragment shader, `ClipDistance` contains these linearly interpolated values.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-ClipDistance-ClipDistance-04187**
  The `ClipDistance` decoration **must** be used only within the `MeshNV, Vertex, Fragment, TessellationControl, TessellationEvaluation, or Geometry Execution Model`.

- **VUID-ClipDistance-ClipDistance-04188**
  The variable decorated with `ClipDistance` within the `MeshNV or Vertex Execution Model` **must** be declared using the `Output Storage Class`.

- **VUID-ClipDistance-ClipDistance-04189**
  The variable decorated with `ClipDistance` within the `Fragment Execution Model` **must** be declared using the `Input Storage Class`.

- **VUID-ClipDistance-ClipDistance-04190**
  The variable decorated with `ClipDistance` within the `TessellationControl, TessellationEvaluation, or Geometry Execution Model` **must** not be declared in a `Storage Class` other than `Input or Output`.

- **VUID-ClipDistance-ClipDistance-04191**
  The variable decorated with `ClipDistance` **must** be declared as an array of 32-bit floating-point values.

**CullDistance**

Decorating a variable with the `CullDistance` built-in decoration will make that variable contain the mechanism for controlling user culling. If any member of this array is assigned a negative value for all vertices belonging to a primitive, then the primitive is discarded before rasterization.

---

**Note**
In fragment shaders, the values of the `CullDistance` array are linearly interpolated across each primitive.

---

**Note**
If `CullDistance` decorates an input variable, that variable will contain the corresponding value from the `CullDistance` decorated output variable from the previous shader stage.
Valid Usage

- VUID-CullDistance-CullDistance-04196
  The **CullDistance** decoration **must** be used only within the **MeshNV, Vertex, Fragment, TessellationControl, TessellationEvaluation**, or **Geometry Execution Model**

- VUID-CullDistance-CullDistance-04197
  The variable decorated with **CullDistance** within the **MeshNV** or **Vertex Execution Model** **must** be declared using the **Output Storage Class**

- VUID-CullDistance-CullDistance-04198
  The variable decorated with **CullDistance** within the **Fragment Execution Model** **must** be declared using the **Input Storage Class**

- VUID-CullDistance-CullDistance-04199
  The variable decorated with **CullDistance** within the **TessellationControl**, **TessellationEvaluation**, or **Geometry Execution Model** **must** not be declared using a **Storage Class** other than **Input** or **Output**

- VUID-CullDistance-CullDistance-04200
  The variable decorated with **CullDistance** **must** be declared as an array of 32-bit floating-point values

DeviceIndex

The **DeviceIndex** decoration **can** be applied to a shader input which will be filled with the device index of the physical device that is executing the current shader invocation. This value will be in the range \(0, \max(1, \text{physicalDeviceCount})\), where physicalDeviceCount is the \(\text{physicalDeviceCount}\) member of **VkDeviceGroupDeviceCreateInfo**.

Valid Usage

- VUID-DeviceIndex-DeviceIndex-04205
  The variable decorated with **DeviceIndex** **must** be declared using the **Input Storage Class**

- VUID-DeviceIndex-DeviceIndex-04206
  The variable decorated with **DeviceIndex** **must** be declared as a scalar 32-bit integer value

DrawIndex

Decorating a variable with the **DrawIndex** built-in will make that variable contain the integer value corresponding to the zero-based index of the drawing command that invoked the current vertex shader invocation. For **indirect drawing commands**, **DrawIndex** begins at zero and increments by one for each drawing command executed. The number of drawing commands is given by the **drawCount** parameter. For **direct drawing commands**, **DrawIndex** is always zero. **DrawIndex** is dynamically uniform.
Valid Usage

- VUID-DrawIndex-DrawIndex-04207
  The DrawIndex decoration must be used only within the Vertex, MeshNV, or TaskNV Execution Model

- VUID-DrawIndex-DrawIndex-04208
  The variable decorated with DrawIndex must be declared using the Input Storage Class

- VUID-DrawIndex-DrawIndex-04209
  The variable decorated with DrawIndex must be declared as a scalar 32-bit integer value

FragCoord

Decorating a variable with the FragCoord built-in decoration will make that variable contain the framebuffer coordinate \((x, y, z, \frac{1}{w})\) of the fragment being processed. The \((x,y)\) coordinate \((0,0)\) is the upper left corner of the upper left pixel in the framebuffer.

When Sample Shading is enabled, the x and y components of FragCoord reflect the location of one of the samples corresponding to the shader invocation.

Otherwise, the x and y components of FragCoord reflect the location of the center of the fragment.

The z component of FragCoord is the interpolated depth value of the primitive.

The w component is the interpolated \(\frac{1}{w}\).

The Centroid interpolation decoration is ignored, but allowed, on FragCoord.

Valid Usage

- VUID-FragCoord-FragCoord-04210
  The FragCoord decoration must be used only within the Fragment Execution Model

- VUID-FragCoord-FragCoord-04211
  The variable decorated with FragCoord must be declared using the Input Storage Class

- VUID-FragCoord-FragCoord-04212
  The variable decorated with FragCoord must be declared as a four-component vector of 32-bit floating-point values

FragDepth

To have a shader supply a fragment-depth value, the shader must declare the DepthReplacing execution mode. Such a shader’s fragment-depth value will come from the variable decorated with the FragDepth built-in decoration.

This value will be used for any subsequent depth testing performed by the implementation or writes to the depth attachment.
**Valid Usage**

- VUID-FragDepth-FragDepth-04213
  The `FragDepth` decoration **must** be used only within the Fragment Execution Model

- VUID-FragDepth-FragDepth-04214
  The variable decorated with `FragDepth` **must** be declared using the Output Storage Class

- VUID-FragDepth-FragDepth-04215
  The variable decorated with `FragDepth` **must** be declared as a scalar 32-bit floating-point value

- VUID-FragDepth-FragDepth-04216
  If the shader dynamically writes to the variable decorated with `FragDepth`, the DepthReplacing Execution Mode **must** be declared

**FrontFacing**

Decorating a variable with the `FrontFacing` built-in decoration will make that variable contain whether the fragment is front or back facing. This variable is non-zero if the current fragment is considered to be part of a front-facing polygon primitive or of a non-polygon primitive and is zero if the fragment is considered to be part of a back-facing polygon primitive.

**Valid Usage**

- VUID-FrontFacing-FrontFacing-04229
  The `FrontFacing` decoration **must** be used only within the Fragment Execution Model

- VUID-FrontFacing-FrontFacing-04230
  The variable decorated with `FrontFacing` **must** be declared using the Input Storage Class

- VUID-FrontFacing-FrontFacing-04231
  The variable decorated with `FrontFacing` **must** be declared as a boolean value

**GlobalInvocationId**

Decorating a variable with the `GlobalInvocationId` built-in decoration will make that variable contain the location of the current invocation within the global workgroup. Each component is equal to the index of the local workgroup multiplied by the size of the local workgroup plus `LocalInvocationId`.  

---

774 | Chapter 15. Shader Interfaces
Valid Usage

- VUID-GlobalInvocationId-GlobalInvocationId-04236
  The `GlobalInvocationId` decoration must be used only within the `GLCompute`, `MeshNV`, or `TaskNV Execution Model`.

- VUID-GlobalInvocationId-GlobalInvocationId-04237
  The variable decorated with `GlobalInvocationId` must be declared using the `Input Storage Class`.

- VUID-GlobalInvocationId-GlobalInvocationId-04238
  The variable decorated with `GlobalInvocationId` must be declared as a three-component vector of 32-bit integer values.

HelperInvocation

Decorating a variable with the `HelperInvocation` built-in decoration will make that variable contain whether the current invocation is a helper invocation. This variable is non-zero if the current fragment being shaded is a helper invocation and zero otherwise. A helper invocation is an invocation of the shader that is produced to satisfy internal requirements such as the generation of derivatives.

*Note*

It is very likely that a helper invocation will have a value of `SampleMask` fragment shader input value that is zero.

Valid Usage

- VUID-HelperInvocation-HelperInvocation-04239
  The `HelperInvocation` decoration must be used only within the `Fragment Execution Model`.

- VUID-HelperInvocation-HelperInvocation-04240
  The variable decorated with `HelperInvocation` must be declared using the `Input Storage Class`.

- VUID-HelperInvocation-HelperInvocation-04241
  The variable decorated with `HelperInvocation` must be declared as a boolean value.

HitKindKHR

A variable decorated with the `HitKindKHR` decoration will describe the intersection that triggered the execution of the current shader. The values are determined by the intersection shader. For user-defined intersection shaders this is the value that was passed to the “Hit Kind” operand of `OpReportIntersectionKHR`. For triangle intersection candidates, this will be one of `HitKindFrontFacingTriangleKHR` or `HitKindBackFacingTriangleKHR`.
Valid Usage

• VUID-HitKindKHR-HitKindKHR-04242
  The `HitKindKHR` decoration must be used only within the `AnyHitKHR` or `ClosestHitKHR` Execution Model

• VUID-HitKindKHR-HitKindKHR-04243
  The variable decorated with `HitKindKHR` must be declared using the Input Storage Class

• VUID-HitKindKHR-HitKindKHR-04244
  The variable decorated with `HitKindKHR` must be declared as a scalar 32-bit integer value

**IncomingRayFlagsKHR**

A variable with the `IncomingRayFlagsKHR` decoration will contain the ray flags passed in to the trace call that invoked this particular shader. Setting pipeline flags on the raytracing pipeline must not cause any corresponding flags to be set in variables with this decoration.

Valid Usage

• VUID-IncomingRayFlagsKHR-IncomingRayFlagsKHR-04248
  The `IncomingRayFlagsKHR` decoration must be used only within the `IntersectionKHR`, `AnyHitKHR`, `ClosestHitKHR`, or `MissKHR` Execution Model

• VUID-IncomingRayFlagsKHR-IncomingRayFlagsKHR-04249
  The variable decorated with `IncomingRayFlagsKHR` must be declared using the Input Storage Class

• VUID-IncomingRayFlagsKHR-IncomingRayFlagsKHR-04250
  The variable decorated with `IncomingRayFlagsKHR` must be declared as a scalar 32-bit integer value

**InstanceCustomIndexKHR**

A variable decorated with the `InstanceCustomIndexKHR` decoration will contain the application-defined value of the instance that intersects the current ray. This variable contains the value that was specified in `VkAccelerationStructureInstanceKHR::instanceCustomIndex` for the current acceleration structure instance in the lower 24 bits and the upper 8 bits will be zero.
Valid Usage

- VUID-InstanceCustomIndexKHR-InstanceCustomIndexKHR-04251
  The InstanceCustomIndexKHR decoration must be used only within the IntersectionKHR, AnyHitKHR, or ClosestHitKHR Execution Model

- VUID-InstanceCustomIndexKHR-InstanceCustomIndexKHR-04252
  The variable decorated with InstanceCustomIndexKHR must be declared using the Input Storage Class

- VUID-InstanceCustomIndexKHR-InstanceCustomIndexKHR-04253
  The variable decorated with InstanceCustomIndexKHR must be declared as a scalar 32-bit integer value

InstanceId

Decorating a variable in an intersection, any-hit, or closest hit shader with the InstanceId decoration will make that variable contain the index of the instance that intersects the current ray.

Valid Usage

- VUID-InstanceId-InstanceId-04254
  The InstanceId decoration must be used only within the IntersectionKHR, AnyHitKHR, or ClosestHitKHR Execution Model

- VUID-InstanceId-InstanceId-04255
  The variable decorated with InstanceId must be declared using the Input Storage Class

- VUID-InstanceId-InstanceId-04256
  The variable decorated with InstanceId must be declared as a scalar 32-bit integer value

InvocationId

Decorating a variable with the InvocationId built-in decoration will make that variable contain the index of the current shader invocation in a geometry shader, or the index of the output patch vertex in a tessellation control shader.

In a geometry shader, the index of the current shader invocation ranges from zero to the number of instances declared in the shader minus one. If the instance count of the geometry shader is one or is not specified, then InvocationId will be zero.
Valid Usage

- VUID-InvocationId-InvocationId-04257
  The **InvocationId** decoration **must** be used only within the **TessellationControl or Geometry Execution Model**

- VUID-InvocationId-InvocationId-04258
  The variable decorated with **InvocationId** **must** be declared using the **Input Storage Class**

- VUID-InvocationId-InvocationId-04259
  The variable decorated with **InvocationId** **must** be declared as a scalar 32-bit integer value

**InstanceId**

Decorating a variable in a vertex shader with the **InstanceId** built-in decoration will make that variable contain the index of the instance that is being processed by the current vertex shader invocation. **InstanceId** begins at the **firstInstance** parameter to **vkCmdDraw** or **vkCmdDrawIndexed** or at the **firstInstance** member of a structure consumed by **vkCmdDrawIndirect** or **vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect**.

Valid Usage

- VUID-InstanceId-InstanceId-04263
  The **InstanceId** decoration **must** be used only within the **Vertex Execution Model**

- VUID-InstanceId-InstanceId-04264
  The variable decorated with **InstanceId** **must** be declared using the **Input Storage Class**

- VUID-InstanceId-InstanceId-04265
  The variable decorated with **InstanceId** **must** be declared as a scalar 32-bit integer value

**LaunchIdKHR**

A variable decorated with the **LaunchIdKHR** decoration will specify the index of the work item being processed. One work item is generated for each of the \( \text{width} \times \text{height} \times \text{depth} \) items dispatched by a **vkCmdTraceRaysKHR** command. All shader invocations inherit the same value for variables decorated with **LaunchIdKHR**.
Valid Usage

- VUID-LaunchIdKHR-LaunchIdKHR-04266
  The `LaunchIdKHR` decoration must be used only within the `RayGenerationKHR`, `IntersectionKHR`, `AnyHitKHR`, `ClosestHitKHR`, `MissKHR`, or `CallableKHR` Execution Model.

- VUID-LaunchIdKHR-LaunchIdKHR-04267
  The variable decorated with `LaunchIdKHR` must be declared using the `Input Storage Class`.

- VUID-LaunchIdKHR-LaunchIdKHR-04268
  The variable decorated with `LaunchIdKHR` must be declared as a three-component vector of 32-bit integer values.

LaunchSizeKHR

A variable decorated with the `LaunchSizeKHR` decoration will contain the width, height, and depth dimensions passed to the `vkCmdTraceRaysKHR` command that initiated this shader execution. The width is in the first component, the height is in the second component, and the depth is in the third component.

Valid Usage

- VUID-LaunchSizeKHR-LaunchSizeKHR-04269
  The `LaunchSizeKHR` decoration must be used only within the `RayGenerationKHR`, `IntersectionKHR`, `AnyHitKHR`, `ClosestHitKHR`, `MissKHR`, or `CallableKHR` Execution Model.

- VUID-LaunchSizeKHR-LaunchSizeKHR-04270
  The variable decorated with `LaunchSizeKHR` must be declared using the `Input Storage Class`.

- VUID-LaunchSizeKHR-LaunchSizeKHR-04271
  The variable decorated with `LaunchSizeKHR` must be declared as a three-component vector of 32-bit integer values.

Layer

Decorating a variable with the `Layer` built-in decoration will make that variable contain the select layer of a multi-layer framebuffer attachment.

In a geometry shader, any variable decorated with `Layer` can be written with the framebuffer layer index to which the primitive produced by that shader will be directed.

If the last active pre-rasterization shader stage shader entry point’s interface does not include a variable decorated with `Layer`, then the first layer is used. If a pre-rasterization shader stage shader entry point’s interface includes a variable decorated with `Layer`, it must write the same value to `Layer` for all output vertices of a given primitive. If the `Layer` value is less than 0 or greater than or equal to the number of layers in the framebuffer, then primitives may still be rasterized, fragment shaders may be executed, and the framebuffer values for all layers are undefined.

+ In a fragment shader, a variable decorated with `Layer` contains the layer index of the primitive.
that the fragment invocation belongs to.

Valid Usage

• VUID-Layer-Layer-04272
  The Layer decoration must be used only within the MeshNV, Vertex, TessellationEvaluation, Geometry, or Fragment Execution Model

• VUID-Layer-Layer-04274
  The variable decorated with Layer within the MeshNV, Vertex, TessellationEvaluation, or Geometry Execution Model must be declared using the Output Storage Class

• VUID-Layer-Layer-04275
  The variable decorated with Layer within the Fragment Execution Model must be declared using the Input Storage Class

• VUID-Layer-Layer-04276
  The variable decorated with Layer must be declared as a scalar 32-bit integer value

LocalInvocationId

Decorating a variable with the LocalInvocationId built-in decoration will make that variable contain the location of the current compute shader invocation within the local workgroup. Each component ranges from zero through to the size of the workgroup in that dimension minus one.

Note

If the size of the workgroup in a particular dimension is one, then the LocalInvocationId in that dimension will be zero. If the workgroup is effectively two-dimensional, then LocalInvocationId.z will be zero. If the workgroup is effectively one-dimensional, then both LocalInvocationId.y and LocalInvocationId.z will be zero.

Valid Usage

• VUID-LocalInvocationId-LocalInvocationId-04281
  The LocalInvocationId decoration must be used only within the GLCompute, MeshNV, or TaskNV Execution Model

• VUID-LocalInvocationId-LocalInvocationId-04282
  The variable decorated with LocalInvocationId must be declared using the Input Storage Class

• VUID-LocalInvocationId-LocalInvocationId-04283
  The variable decorated with LocalInvocationId must be declared as a three-component vector of 32-bit integer values

LocalInvocationIndex

Decorating a variable with the LocalInvocationIndex built-in decoration will make that variable contain a one-dimensional representation of LocalInvocationId. This is computed as:
LocalInvocationIndex =
    LocalInvocationId.z * WorkgroupSize.x * WorkgroupSize.y +
    LocalInvocationId.y * WorkgroupSize.x +
    LocalInvocationId.x;

Valid Usage

• VUID-LocalInvocationIndex-LocalInvocationIndex-04284
  The `LocalInvocationIndex` decoration **must** be used only within the `GLCompute`, `MeshNV`, or `TaskNV` Execution Model

• VUID-LocalInvocationIndex-LocalInvocationIndex-04285
  The variable decorated with `LocalInvocationIndex` **must** be declared using the `Input Storage Class`

• VUID-LocalInvocationIndex-LocalInvocationIndex-04286
  The variable decorated with `LocalInvocationIndex` **must** be declared as a scalar 32-bit integer value

NumWorkgroups

Decorating a variable with the `NumWorkgroups` built-in decoration will make that variable contain the number of local workgroups that are part of the dispatch that the invocation belongs to. Each component is equal to the values of the workgroup count parameters passed into the dispatch commands.

Valid Usage

• VUID-NumWorkgroups-NumWorkgroups-04296
  The `NumWorkgroups` decoration **must** be used only within the `GLCompute` Execution Model

• VUID-NumWorkgroups-NumWorkgroups-04297
  The variable decorated with `NumWorkgroups` **must** be declared using the `Input Storage Class`

• VUID-NumWorkgroups-NumWorkgroups-04298
  The variable decorated with `NumWorkgroups` **must** be declared as a three-component vector of 32-bit integer values

ObjectRayDirectionKHR

A variable decorated with the `ObjectRayDirectionKHR` decoration will specify the direction of the ray being processed, in object space.
Valid Usage

- VUID-ObjectRayDirectionKHR-ObjectRayDirectionKHR-04299
  The `ObjectRayDirectionKHR` decoration must be used only within the `IntersectionKHR`, `AnyHitKHR`, or `ClosestHitKHR` Execution Model.

- VUID-ObjectRayDirectionKHR-ObjectRayDirectionKHR-04300
  The variable decorated with `ObjectRayDirectionKHR` must be declared using the `Input Storage Class`.

- VUID-ObjectRayDirectionKHR-ObjectRayDirectionKHR-04301
  The variable decorated with `ObjectRayDirectionKHR` must be declared as a three-component vector of 32-bit floating-point values.

**ObjectRayOriginKHR**

A variable decorated with the `ObjectRayOriginKHR` decoration will specify the origin of the ray being processed, in object space.

Valid Usage

- VUID-ObjectRayOriginKHR-ObjectRayOriginKHR-04302
  The `ObjectRayOriginKHR` decoration must be used only within the `IntersectionKHR`, `AnyHitKHR`, or `ClosestHitKHR` Execution Model.

- VUID-ObjectRayOriginKHR-ObjectRayOriginKHR-04303
  The variable decorated with `ObjectRayOriginKHR` must be declared using the `Input Storage Class`.

- VUID-ObjectRayOriginKHR-ObjectRayOriginKHR-04304
  The variable decorated with `ObjectRayOriginKHR` must be declared as a three-component vector of 32-bit floating-point values.

**ObjectToWorldKHR**

A variable decorated with the `ObjectToWorldKHR` decoration will contain the current object-to-world transformation matrix, which is determined by the instance of the current intersection.
Valid Usage

- VUID-ObjectToWorldKHR-ObjectToWorldKHR-04305
  The **ObjectToWorldKHR** decoration **must** be used only within the **IntersectionKHR, AnyHitKHR,** or **ClosestHitKHR Execution Model**

- VUID-ObjectToWorldKHR-ObjectToWorldKHR-04306
  The variable decorated with **ObjectToWorldKHR** **must** be declared using the **Input Storage Class**

- VUID-ObjectToWorldKHR-ObjectToWorldKHR-04307
  The variable decorated with **ObjectToWorldKHR** **must** be declared as a matrix with four columns of three-component vectors of 32-bit floating-point values

PatchVertices

Decorating a variable with the **PatchVertices** built-in decoration will make that variable contain the number of vertices in the input patch being processed by the shader. In a Tessellation Control Shader, this is the same as the name:patchControlPoints member of **VkPipelineTessellationStateCreateInfo**. In a Tessellation Evaluation Shader, **PatchVertices** is equal to the tessellation control output patch size. When the same shader is used in different pipelines where the patch sizes are configured differently, the value of the **PatchVertices** variable will also differ.

Valid Usage

- VUID-PatchVertices-PatchVertices-04308
  The **PatchVertices** decoration **must** be used only within the **TessellationControl or TessellationEvaluation Execution Model**

- VUID-PatchVertices-PatchVertices-04309
  The variable decorated with **PatchVertices** **must** be declared using the **Input Storage Class**

- VUID-PatchVertices-PatchVertices-04310
  The variable decorated with **PatchVertices** **must** be declared as a scalar 32-bit integer value

PointCoord

Decorating a variable with the **PointCoord** built-in decoration will make that variable contain the coordinate of the current fragment within the point being rasterized, normalized to the size of the point with origin in the upper left corner of the point, as described in **Basic Point Rasterization**. If the primitive the fragment shader invocation belongs to is not a point, then the variable decorated with **PointCoord** contains an undefined value.

*Note*

Depending on how the point is rasterized, **PointCoord** **may** never reach (0,0) or (1,1).
Valid Usage

• VUID-PointCoord-PointCoord-04311
  The **PointCoord** decoration **must** be used only within the **Fragment Execution Model**

• VUID-PointCoord-PointCoord-04312
  The variable decorated with **PointCoord** **must** be declared using the **Input Storage Class**

• VUID-PointCoord-PointCoord-04313
  The variable decorated with **PointCoord** **must** be declared as a two-component vector of 32-bit floating-point values

**PointSize**

Decorating a variable with the **PointSize** built-in decoration will make that variable contain the size of point primitives. The value written to the variable decorated with **PointSize** by the last **pre-rasterization shader stage** in the pipeline is used as the framebuffer-space size of points produced by rasterization.

*Note*

When **PointSize** decorates a variable in the **Input Storage Class**, it contains the data written to the output variable decorated with **PointSize** from the previous shader stage.

Valid Usage

• VUID-PointSize-PointSize-04314
  The **PointSize** decoration **must** be used only within the **MeshNV, Vertex, TessellationControl, TessellationEvaluation, or Geometry Execution Model**

• VUID-PointSize-PointSize-04315
  The variable decorated with **PointSize** within the **MeshNV or Vertex Execution Model** **must** be declared using the **Output Storage Class**

• VUID-PointSize-PointSize-04316
  The variable decorated with **PointSize** within the **TessellationControl, TessellationEvaluation, or Geometry Execution Model** **must** not be declared using a Storage Class other than **Input or Output**

• VUID-PointSize-PointSize-04317
  The variable decorated with **PointSize** **must** be declared as a scalar 32-bit floating-point value

**Position**

Decorating a variable with the **Position** built-in decoration will make that variable contain the position of the current vertex. In the last **pre-rasterization shader stage**, the value of the variable decorated with **Position** is used in subsequent primitive assembly, clipping, and rasterization operations.
**Note**

When `Position` decorates a variable in the **Input Storage Class**, it contains the data written to the output variable decorated with `Position` from the previous shader stage.

---

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-Position-Position-04318**
  
  The `Position` decoration **must** be used only within the **MeshNV, Vertex, TessellationControl, TessellationEvaluation**, or **Geometry Execution Model**

- **VUID-Position-Position-04319**
  
  The variable decorated with `Position` within **MeshNV** or **Vertex Execution Model must** be declared using the **Output Storage Class**

- **VUID-Position-Position-04320**
  
  The variable decorated with `Position` within **TessellationControl, TessellationEvaluation**, or **Geometry Execution Model must** not be declared using a **Storage Class other than Input or Output**

- **VUID-Position-Position-04321**
  
  The variable decorated with `Position` **must** be declared as a four-component vector of 32-bit floating-point values

---

**PrimitiveId**

Decorating a variable with the `PrimitiveId` built-in decoration will make that variable contain the index of the current primitive.

The index of the first primitive generated by a drawing command is zero, and the index is incremented after every individual point, line, or triangle primitive is processed.

For triangles drawn as points or line segments (see **Polygon Mode**), the primitive index is incremented only once, even if multiple points or lines are eventually drawn.

Variables decorated with `PrimitiveId` are reset to zero between each instance drawn.

Restarting a primitive topology using primitive restart has no effect on the value of variables decorated with `PrimitiveId`.

In tessellation control and tessellation evaluation shaders, it will contain the index of the patch within the current set of rendering primitives that corresponds to the shader invocation.

In a geometry shader, it will contain the number of primitives presented as input to the shader since the current set of rendering primitives was started.

In a fragment shader, it will contain the primitive index written by the geometry shader if a geometry shader is present, or with the value that would have been presented as input to the geometry shader had it been present.

In an intersection, any-hit, or closest hit shader, it will contain the index within the geometry of...
the triangle or bounding box being processed.

**Note**

When the `PrimitiveId` decoration is applied to an output variable in the geometry shader, the resulting value is seen through the `PrimitiveId` decorated input variable in the fragment shader.

The fragment shader using `PrimitiveId` will need to declare either the `Geometry` or `Tessellation` capability to satisfy the requirement SPIR-V has to use `PrimitiveId`.

---

**Valid Usage**

- **VUID-PrimitiveId-PrimitiveId-04330**
  
The `PrimitiveId` decoration must be used only within the `MeshNV`, `IntersectionKHR`, `AnyHitKHR`, `ClosestHitKHR`, `TessellationControl`, `TessellationEvaluation`, `Geometry`, or `Fragment Execution Model`.

- **VUID-PrimitiveId-Fragment-04331**
  
  If pipeline contains both the `Fragment` and `Geometry Execution Model` and a variable decorated with `PrimitiveId` is read from `Fragment` shader, then the `Geometry` shader must write to the output variables decorated with `PrimitiveId` in all execution paths.

- **VUID-PrimitiveId-Fragment-04332**
  
  If pipeline contains both the `Fragment` and `MeshNV Execution Model` and a variable decorated with `PrimitiveId` is read from `Fragment` shader, then the `MeshNV` shader must write to the output variables decorated with `PrimitiveId` in all execution paths.

- **VUID-PrimitiveId-Fragment-04333**
  
  If `Fragment Execution Model` contains a variable decorated with `PrimitiveId` either the `Geometry` or `Tessellation` capability must also be declared.

- **VUID-PrimitiveId-PrimitiveId-04334**
  
  The variable decorated with `PrimitiveId` within the `TessellationControl`, `TessellationEvaluation`, `Fragment`, `IntersectionKHR`, `AnyHitKHR`, or `ClosestHitKHR Execution Model` must be declared using the `Input Storage Class`.

- **VUID-PrimitiveId-PrimitiveId-04335**
  
  The variable decorated with `PrimitiveId` within the `Geometry Execution Model` must be declared using the `Input` or `Output Storage Class`.

- **VUID-PrimitiveId-PrimitiveId-04336**
  
  The variable decorated with `PrimitiveId` within the `MeshNV Execution Model` must be declared using the `Output Storage Class`.

- **VUID-PrimitiveId-PrimitiveId-04337**
  
  The variable decorated with `PrimitiveId` must be declared as a scalar 32-bit integer value.

---

**PrimitiveShadingRateKHR**

Decorating a variable with the `PrimitiveShadingRateKHR` built-in decoration will make that variable contain the primitive fragment shading rate.
The value written to the variable decorated with `PrimitiveShadingRateKHR` by the last pre-rasterization shader stage in the pipeline is used as the primitive fragment shading rate. Outputs in previous shader stages are ignored.

If the last active pre-rasterization shader stage shader entry point's interface does not include a variable decorated with `PrimitiveShadingRateKHR`, then it is as if the shader specified a fragment shading rate value of 0, indicating a horizontal and vertical rate of 1 pixel.

If a shader has `PrimitiveShadingRateKHR` in the output interface and there is an execution path through the shader that does not write to it, its value is undefined for executions of the shader that take that path.

---

**Valid Usage**

- **VUID-PrimitiveShadingRateKHR-PrimitiveShadingRateKHR-04484**
  
  The `PrimitiveShadingRateKHR` decoration **must** be used only within the MeshNV, Vertex, or Geometry Execution Model

- **VUID-PrimitiveShadingRateKHR-PrimitiveShadingRateKHR-04485**
  
  The variable decorated with `PrimitiveShadingRateKHR` **must** be declared using the Output Storage Class

- **VUID-PrimitiveShadingRateKHR-PrimitiveShadingRateKHR-04486**
  
  The variable decorated with `PrimitiveShadingRateKHR` **must** be declared as a scalar 32-bit integer value

- **VUID-PrimitiveShadingRateKHR-PrimitiveShadingRateKHR-04487**
  
  The value written to `PrimitiveShadingRateKHR` **must** include no more than one of Vertical2Pixels and Vertical4Pixels

- **VUID-PrimitiveShadingRateKHR-PrimitiveShadingRateKHR-04488**
  
  The value written to `PrimitiveShadingRateKHR` **must** include no more than one of Horizontal2Pixels and Horizontal4Pixels

- **VUID-PrimitiveShadingRateKHR-PrimitiveShadingRateKHR-04489**
  
  The value written to `PrimitiveShadingRateKHR` **must** not have any bits set other than those defined by Fragment Shading Rate Flags enumerants in the SPIR-V specification

---

**RayGeometryIndexKHR**

A variable decorated with the `RayGeometryIndexKHR` decoration will contain the geometry index for the acceleration structure geometry currently being shaded.
Valid Usage

- VUID-RayGeometryIndexKHR-RayGeometryIndexKHR-04345
  The `RayGeometryIndexKHR` decoration must be used only within the `IntersectionKHR`, `AnyHitKHR`, or `ClosestHitKHR` Execution Model

- VUID-RayGeometryIndexKHR-RayGeometryIndexKHR-04346
  The variable decorated with `RayGeometryIndexKHR` must be declared using the Input Storage Class

- VUID-RayGeometryIndexKHR-RayGeometryIndexKHR-04347
  The variable decorated with `RayGeometryIndexKHR` must be declared as a scalar 32-bit integer value

**RayTmaxKHR**

A variable decorated with the `RayTmaxKHR` decoration will contain the parametric $t_{\text{max}}$ value of the ray being processed. The value is independent of the space in which the ray origin and direction exist. The value is initialized to the parameter passed into `OpTraceRayKHR`.

The $t_{\text{max}}$ value changes throughout the lifetime of the ray that produced the intersection. In the closest hit shader, the value reflects the closest distance to the intersected primitive. In the any-hit shader, it reflects the distance to the primitive currently being intersected. In the intersection shader, it reflects the distance to the closest primitive intersected so far or the initial value. The value can change in the intersection shader after calling `OpReportIntersectionKHR` if the corresponding any-hit shader does not ignore the intersection. In a miss shader, the value is identical to the parameter passed into `OpTraceRayKHR`.

Valid Usage

- VUID-RayTmaxKHR-RayTmaxKHR-04348
  The `RayTmaxKHR` decoration must be used only within the `IntersectionKHR`, `AnyHitKHR`, `ClosestHitKHR`, or `MissKHR` Execution Model

- VUID-RayTmaxKHR-RayTmaxKHR-04349
  The variable decorated with `RayTmaxKHR` must be declared using the Input Storage Class

- VUID-RayTmaxKHR-RayTmaxKHR-04350
  The variable decorated with `RayTmaxKHR` must be declared as a scalar 32-bit floating-point value

**RayTminKHR**

A variable decorated with the `RayTminKHR` decoration will contain the parametric $t_{\text{min}}$ value of the ray being processed. The value is independent of the space in which the ray origin and direction exist. The value is given by the parameter passed into `OpTraceRayKHR`.

The $t_{\text{min}}$ value remains constant for the duration of the ray query.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-RayTminKHR-RayTminKHR-04351**
  The RayTminKHR decoration **must** be used only within the IntersectionKHR, AnyHitKHR, ClosestHitKHR, or MissKHR Execution Model.

- **VUID-RayTminKHR-RayTminKHR-04352**
  The variable decorated with RayTminKHR **must** be declared using the Input Storage Class.

- **VUID-RayTminKHR-RayTminKHR-04353**
  The variable decorated with RayTminKHR **must** be declared as a scalar 32-bit floating-point value.

**SampleId**

Decorating a variable with the SampleId built-in decoration will make that variable contain the coverage index for the current fragment shader invocation. SampleId ranges from zero to the number of samples in the framebuffer minus one. If a fragment shader entry point's interface includes an input variable decorated with SampleId, Sample Shading is considered enabled with a minSampleShading value of 1.0.

Valid Usage

- **VUID-SampleId-SampleId-04354**
  The SampleId decoration **must** be used only within the Fragment Execution Model.

- **VUID-SampleId-SampleId-04355**
  The variable decorated with SampleId **must** be declared using the Input Storage Class.

- **VUID-SampleId-SampleId-04356**
  The variable decorated with SampleId **must** be declared as a scalar 32-bit integer value.

**SampleMask**

Decorating a variable with the SampleMask built-in decoration will make any variable contain the coverage mask for the current fragment shader invocation.

A variable in the Input storage class decorated with SampleMask will contain a bitmask of the set of samples covered by the primitive generating the fragment during rasterization. It has a sample bit set if and only if the sample is considered covered for this fragment shader invocation. SampleMask[] is an array of integers. Bits are mapped to samples in a manner where bit B of mask M (SampleMask[M]) corresponds to sample $32 \times M + B$.

When state specifies multiple fragment shader invocations for a given fragment, the sample mask for any single fragment shader invocation specifies the subset of the covered samples for the fragment that correspond to the invocation. In this case, the bit corresponding to each covered sample will be set in exactly one fragment shader invocation.

A variable in the Output storage class decorated with SampleMask is an array of integers forming a bit array in a manner similar to an input variable decorated with SampleMask, but where each bit
represents coverage as computed by the shader. Modifying the sample mask by writing zero to a bit of `SampleMask` causes the sample to be considered uncovered. However, setting sample mask bits to one will never enable samples not covered by the original primitive. If the fragment shader is being evaluated at any frequency other than per-fragment, bits of the sample mask not corresponding to the current fragment shader invocation are ignored. This array **must** be sized in the fragment shader either implicitly or explicitly, to be no larger than the implementation-dependent maximum sample-mask (as an array of 32-bit elements), determined by the maximum number of samples. If a fragment shader entry point's interface includes an output variable decorated with `SampleMask`, the sample mask will be undefined for any array elements of any fragment shader invocations that fail to assign a value. If a fragment shader entry point's interface does not include an output variable decorated with `SampleMask`, the sample mask has no effect on the processing of a fragment.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-SampleMask-SampleMask-04357**
  The `SampleMask` decoration **must** be used only within the Fragment Execution Model

- **VUID-SampleMask-SampleMask-04358**
  The variable decorated with `SampleMask` **must** be declared using the Input or Output Storage Class

- **VUID-SampleMask-SampleMask-04359**
  The variable decorated with `SampleMask` **must** be declared as an array of 32-bit integer values

### SamplePosition

Decorating a variable with the `SamplePosition` built-in decoration will make that variable contain the sub-pixel position of the sample being shaded. The top left of the pixel is considered to be at coordinate (0,0) and the bottom right of the pixel is considered to be at coordinate (1,1).

If a fragment shader entry point's interface includes an input variable decorated with `SamplePosition`, Sample Shading is considered enabled with a `minSampleShading` value of 1.0.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-SamplePosition-SamplePosition-04360**
  The `SamplePosition` decoration **must** be used only within the Fragment Execution Model

- **VUID-SamplePosition-SamplePosition-04361**
  The variable decorated with `SamplePosition` **must** be declared using the Input Storage Class

- **VUID-SamplePosition-SamplePosition-04362**
  The variable decorated with `SamplePosition` **must** be declared as a two-component vector of 32-bit floating-point values
ShadingRateKHR

Decorating a variable with the ShadingRateKHR built-in decoration will make that variable contain the fragment shading rate for the current fragment invocation.

Valid Usage

- VUID-ShadingRateKHR-ShadingRateKHR-04490
  The ShadingRateKHR decoration must be used only within the Fragment Execution Model
- VUID-ShadingRateKHR-ShadingRateKHR-04491
  The variable decorated with ShadingRateKHR must be declared using the Input Storage Class
- VUID-ShadingRateKHR-ShadingRateKHR-04492
  The variable decorated with ShadingRateKHR must be declared as a scalar 32-bit integer value

TessCoord

Decorating a variable with the TessCoord built-in decoration will make that variable contain the three-dimensional (u,v,w) barycentric coordinate of the tessellated vertex within the patch. u, v, and w are in the range [0,1] and vary linearly across the primitive being subdivided. For the tessellation modes of Quads or IsoLines, the third component is always zero.

Valid Usage

- VUID-TessCoord-TessCoord-04387
  The TessCoord decoration must be used only within the TessellationEvaluation Execution Model
- VUID-TessCoord-TessCoord-04388
  The variable decorated with TessCoord must be declared using the Input Storage Class
- VUID-TessCoord-TessCoord-04389
  The variable decorated with TessCoord must be declared as a three-component vector of 32-bit floating-point values

TessLevelOuter

Decorating a variable with the TessLevelOuter built-in decoration will make that variable contain the outer tessellation levels for the current patch.

In tessellation control shaders, the variable decorated with TessLevelOuter can be written to, which controls the tessellation factors for the resulting patch. These values are used by the tessellator to control primitive tessellation and can be read by tessellation evaluation shaders.

In tessellation evaluation shaders, the variable decorated with TessLevelOuter can read the values written by the tessellation control shader.
Valid Usage

- VUID-TessLevelOuter-TessLevelOuter-04390
  The `TessLevelOuter` decoration must be used only within the `TessellationControl` or `TessellationEvaluation Execution Model`

- VUID-TessLevelOuter-TessLevelOuter-04391
  The variable decorated with `TessLevelOuter` within the `TessellationControl Execution Model` must be declared using the `Output Storage Class`

- VUID-TessLevelOuter-TessLevelOuter-04392
  The variable decorated with `TessLevelOuter` within the `TessellationEvaluation Execution Model` must be declared using the `Input Storage Class`

- VUID-TessLevelOuter-TessLevelOuter-04393
  The variable decorated with `TessLevelOuter` must be declared as an array of size four, containing 32-bit floating-point values

**TessLevelInner**

Decorating a variable with the `TessLevelInner` built-in decoration will make that variable contain the inner tessellation levels for the current patch.

In tessellation control shaders, the variable decorated with `TessLevelInner` can be written to, which controls the tessellation factors for the resulting patch. These values are used by the tessellator to control primitive tessellation and can be read by tessellation evaluation shaders.

In tessellation evaluation shaders, the variable decorated with `TessLevelInner` can read the values written by the tessellation control shader.

Valid Usage

- VUID-TessLevelInner-TessLevelInner-04394
  The `TessLevelInner` decoration must be used only within the `TessellationControl` or `TessellationEvaluation Execution Model`

- VUID-TessLevelInner-TessLevelInner-04395
  The variable decorated with `TessLevelInner` within the `TessellationControl Execution Model` must be declared using the `Output Storage Class`

- VUID-TessLevelInner-TessLevelInner-04396
  The variable decorated with `TessLevelInner` within the `TessellationEvaluation Execution Model` must be declared using the `Input Storage Class`

- VUID-TessLevelInner-TessLevelInner-04397
  The variable decorated with `TessLevelInner` must be declared as an array of size two, containing 32-bit floating-point values

**VertexIndex**

Decorating a variable with the `VertexIndex` built-in decoration will make that variable contain
the index of the vertex that is being processed by the current vertex shader invocation. For non-indexed draws, this variable begins at the `firstVertex` parameter to `vkCmdDraw` or the `firstVertex` member of a structure consumed by `vkCmdDrawIndirect` and increments by one for each vertex in the draw. For indexed draws, its value is the content of the index buffer for the vertex plus the `vertexOffset` parameter to `vkCmdDrawIndexed` or the `vertexOffset` member of the structure consumed by `vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect`.

**Note**

`VertexIndex` starts at the same starting value for each instance.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-VertexIndex-VertexIndex-04398**
  The `VertexIndex` decoration **must** be used only within the **Vertex Execution Model**

- **VUID-VertexIndex-VertexIndex-04399**
  The variable decorated with `VertexIndex` **must** be declared using the **Input Storage Class**

- **VUID-VertexIndex-VertexIndex-04400**
  The variable decorated with `VertexIndex` **must** be declared as a scalar 32-bit integer value

### ViewIndex

The `ViewIndex` decoration **can** be applied to a shader input which will be filled with the index of the view that is being processed by the current shader invocation.

If multiview is enabled in the render pass, this value will be one of the bits set in the view mask of the subpass the pipeline is compiled against. If multiview is not enabled in the render pass, this value will be zero.

**Valid Usage**

- **VUID-ViewIndex-ViewIndex-04401**
  The `ViewIndex` decoration **must not** be used within the **GLCompute Execution Model**

- **VUID-ViewIndex-ViewIndex-04402**
  The variable decorated with `ViewIndex` **must** be declared using the **Input Storage Class**

- **VUID-ViewIndex-ViewIndex-04403**
  The variable decorated with `ViewIndex` **must** be declared as a scalar 32-bit integer value

### ViewportIndex

Decorating a variable with the `ViewportIndex` built-in decoration will make that variable contain the index of the viewport.

In a geometry shader, the variable decorated with `ViewportIndex` can be written to with the viewport index to which the primitive produced by that shader will be directed.

The selected viewport index is used to select the viewport transform and scissor rectangle.
If the last active pre-rasterization shader stage shader entry point's interface does not include a variable decorated with ViewportIndex, then the first viewport is used. If a pre-rasterization shader stage shader entry point's interface includes a variable decorated with ViewportIndex, it **must** write the same value to ViewportIndex for all output vertices of a given primitive.

In a fragment shader, the variable decorated with ViewportIndex contains the viewport index of the primitive that the fragment invocation belongs to.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-ViewportIndex-ViewportIndex-04404**
  
  The ViewportIndex decoration **must** be used only within the MeshNV, Vertex, TessellationEvaluation, Geometry, or Fragment Execution Model

- **VUID-ViewportIndex-ViewportIndex-04406**
  
  The variable decorated with ViewportIndex within the MeshNV, Vertex, TessellationEvaluation, or Geometry Execution Model **must** be declared using the Output Storage Class

- **VUID-ViewportIndex-ViewportIndex-04407**
  
  The variable decorated with ViewportIndex within the Fragment Execution Model **must** be declared using the Input Storage Class

- **VUID-ViewportIndex-ViewportIndex-04408**
  
  The variable decorated with ViewportIndex **must** be declared as a scalar 32-bit integer value

---

**WorkgroupId**

Decorating a variable with the WorkgroupId built-in decoration will make that variable contain the global workgroup that the current invocation is a member of. Each component ranges from a base value to a base + count value, based on the parameters passed into the dispatching commands.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-WorkgroupId-WorkgroupId-04422**
  
  The WorkgroupId decoration **must** be used only within the GLCompute, MeshNV, or TaskNV Execution Model

- **VUID-WorkgroupId-WorkgroupId-04423**
  
  The variable decorated with WorkgroupId **must** be declared using the Input Storage Class

- **VUID-WorkgroupId-WorkgroupId-04424**
  
  The variable decorated with WorkgroupId **must** be declared as a three-component vector of 32-bit integer values

---

**WorkgroupSize**

Decorating an object with the WorkgroupSize built-in decoration will make that object contain the dimensions of a local workgroup. If an object is decorated with the WorkgroupSize decoration, this
takes precedence over any LocalSize execution mode.

Valid Usage

- VUID-WorkgroupSize-WorkgroupSize-04425
  The WorkgroupSize decoration must be used only within the GLCompute, MeshNV, or TaskNV Execution Model

- VUID-WorkgroupSize-WorkgroupSize-04426
  The variable decorated with WorkgroupSize must be a specialization constant or a constant

- VUID-WorkgroupSize-WorkgroupSize-04427
  The variable decorated with WorkgroupSize must be declared as a three-component vector of 32-bit integer values

WorldRayDirectionKHR

A variable decorated with the WorldRayDirectionKHR decoration will specify the direction of the ray being processed, in world space. The value is given by the parameter passed into OpTraceRayKHR.

Valid Usage

- VUID-WorldRayDirectionKHR-WorldRayDirectionKHR-04428
  The WorldRayDirectionKHR decoration must be used only within the IntersectionKHR, AnyHitKHR, ClosestHitKHR, or MissKHR Execution Model

- VUID-WorldRayDirectionKHR-WorldRayDirectionKHR-04429
  The variable decorated with WorldRayDirectionKHR must be declared using the Input Storage Class

- VUID-WorldRayDirectionKHR-WorldRayDirectionKHR-04430
  The variable decorated with WorldRayDirectionKHR must be declared as a three-component vector of 32-bit floating-point values

WorldRayOriginKHR

A variable decorated with the WorldRayOriginKHR decoration will specify the origin of the ray being processed, in world space. The value is given by the parameter passed into OpTraceRayKHR.
**Valid Usage**

- VUID-WorldRayOriginKHR-WorldRayOriginKHR-04431
  The `WorldRayOriginKHR` decoration must be used only within the `IntersectionKHR`, `AnyHitKHR`, `ClosestHitKHR`, or `MissKHR` Execution Model

- VUID-WorldRayOriginKHR-WorldRayOriginKHR-04432
  The variable decorated with `WorldRayOriginKHR` must be declared using the `Input Storage Class`

- VUID-WorldRayOriginKHR-WorldRayOriginKHR-04433
  The variable decorated with `WorldRayOriginKHR` must be declared as a three-component vector of 32-bit floating-point values

**WorldToObjectKHR**

A variable decorated with the `WorldToObjectKHR` decoration will contain the current world-to-object transformation matrix, which is determined by the instance of the current intersection.

**Valid Usage**

- VUID-WorldToObjectKHR-WorldToObjectKHR-04434
  The `WorldToObjectKHR` decoration must be used only within the `IntersectionKHR`, `AnyHitKHR`, or `ClosestHitKHR` Execution Model

- VUID-WorldToObjectKHR-WorldToObjectKHR-04435
  The variable decorated with `WorldToObjectKHR` must be declared using the `Input Storage Class`

- VUID-WorldToObjectKHR-WorldToObjectKHR-04436
  The variable decorated with `WorldToObjectKHR` must be declared as a matrix with four columns of three-component vectors of 32-bit floating-point values
Chapter 16. Image Operations

16.1. Image Operations Overview

Vulkan Image Operations are operations performed by those SPIR-V Image Instructions which take an OpTypeImage (representing a VkImageView) or OpTypeSampledImage (representing a (VkImageView, VkSampler) pair). Read, write, and atomic operations also take texel coordinates as operands, and return a value based on a neighborhood of texture elements (texels) within the image. Query operations return properties of the bound image or of the lookup itself. The “Depth” operand of OpTypeImage is ignored.

Note
Texel is a term which is a combination of the words texture and element. Early interactive computer graphics supported texture operations on textures, a small subset of the image operations on images described here. The discrete samples remain essentially equivalent, however, so we retain the historical term texel to refer to them.

Image Operations include the functionality of the following SPIR-V Image Instructions:

- **OpImageSample** and **OpImageSparseSample** read one or more neighboring texels of the image, and filter the texel values based on the state of the sampler.
  - Instructions with ImplicitLod in the name determine the LOD used in the sampling operation based on the coordinates used in neighboring fragments.
  - Instructions with ExplicitLod in the name determine the LOD used in the sampling operation based on additional coordinates.
  - Instructions with **Proj** in the name apply homogeneous projection to the coordinates.

- **OpImageFetch** and **OpImageSparseFetch** return a single texel of the image. No sampler is used.

- **OpImage*Gather** and **OpImageSparse*Gather** read neighboring texels and return a single component of each.

- **OpImageRead** (and **OpImageSparseRead**) and **OpImageWrite** read and write, respectively, a texel in the image. No sampler is used.

- Instructions with Dref in the name apply depth comparison on the texel values.

- Instructions with Sparse in the name additionally return a sparse residency code.


- **OpImageQueryLod** returns the lod parameters that would be used in a sample operation. The actual operation is not performed.

16.1.1. Texel Coordinate Systems

Images are addressed by texel coordinates. There are three texel coordinate systems:
• normalized texel coordinates [0.0, 1.0]
• unnormalized texel coordinates [0.0, width / height / depth]
• integer texel coordinates [0, width / height / depth]

SPIR-V OpImageFetch, OpImageSparseFetch, OpImageRead, OpImageSparseRead, and OpImageWrite instructions use integer texel coordinates. Other image instructions can use either normalized or unnormalized texel coordinates (selected by the unnormalizedCoordinates state of the sampler used in the instruction), but there are limitations on what operations, image state, and sampler state is supported. Normalized coordinates are logically converted to unnormalized as part of image operations, and certain steps are only performed on normalized coordinates. The array layer coordinate is always treated as unnormalized even when other coordinates are normalized.

Normalized texel coordinates are referred to as (s,t,r,q,a), with the coordinates having the following meanings:

• s: Coordinate in the first dimension of an image.
• t: Coordinate in the second dimension of an image.
• r: Coordinate in the third dimension of an image.
  ◦ (s,t,r) are interpreted as a direction vector for Cube images.
• q: Fourth coordinate, for homogeneous (projective) coordinates.
• a: Coordinate for array layer.

The coordinates are extracted from the SPIR-V operand based on the dimensionality of the image variable and type of instruction. For Proj instructions, the components are in order (s, [t,] [r,] q), with t and r being conditionally present based on the Dim of the image. For non-Proj instructions, the coordinates are (s [,t [,r [,a]]]), with t and r being conditionally present based on the Dim of the image and a being conditionally present based on the Arrayed property of the image. Projective image instructions are not supported on Arrayed images.

Unnormalized texel coordinates are referred to as (u,v,w,a), with the coordinates having the following meanings:

• u: Coordinate in the first dimension of an image.
• v: Coordinate in the second dimension of an image.
• w: Coordinate in the third dimension of an image.
• a: Coordinate for array layer.

Only the u and v coordinates are directly extracted from the SPIR-V operand, because only 1D and 2D (non-Arrayed) dimensionalities support unnormalized coordinates. The components are in order (u [,v]), with v being conditionally present when the dimensionality is 2D. When normalized coordinates are converted to unnormalized coordinates, all four coordinates are used.

Integer texel coordinates are referred to as (i,j,k,l,n), with the coordinates having the following meanings:

• i: Coordinate in the first dimension of an image.
• j: Coordinate in the second dimension of an image.
• k: Coordinate in the third dimension of an image.
• l: Coordinate for array layer.
• n: Index of the sample within the texel.

They are extracted from the SPIR-V operand in order (i [,j] [,k] [,l] [,n]), with j and k conditionally present based on the Dim of the image, and l conditionally present based on the Arrayed property of the image. n is conditionally present and is taken from the Sample image operand.

For all coordinate types, unused coordinates are assigned a value of zero.

![Texel Coordinate Systems, Linear Filtering](image)

The Texel Coordinate Systems - For the example shown of an 8×4 texel two dimensional image.

• Normalized texel coordinates:
  ◦ The s coordinate goes from 0.0 to 1.0.
  ◦ The t coordinate goes from 0.0 to 1.0.

• Unnormalized texel coordinates:
  ◦ The u coordinate within the range 0.0 to 8.0 is within the image, otherwise it is outside the image.
  ◦ The v coordinate within the range 0.0 to 4.0 is within the image, otherwise it is outside the image.

• Integer texel coordinates:
  ◦ The i coordinate within the range 0 to 7 addresses texels within the image, otherwise it is outside the image.
  ◦ The j coordinate within the range 0 to 3 addresses texels within the image, otherwise it is
outside the image.

- Also shown for linear filtering:
  - Given the unnormalized coordinates (u,v), the four texels selected are i_{j0}, i_{j0}, i_{j1}, and i_{j1}.
  - The fractions α and β.
  - Given the offset Δ_i and Δ_j, the four texels selected by the offset are i_{j'0}, i_{j'0}, i_{j'1}, and i_{j'1}.

\[ \text{Note} \]

For formats with reduced-resolution channels, Δ_i and Δ_j are relative to the resolution of the highest-resolution channel, and therefore may be divided by two relative to the unnormalized coordinate space of the lower-resolution channels.

![Figure 4. Texel Coordinate Systems, Nearest Filtering](image)

The Texel Coordinate Systems - For the example shown of an 8×4 texel two dimensional image.

- Texel coordinates as above. Also shown for nearest filtering:
  - Given the unnormalized coordinates (u,v), the texel selected is \( i_j \).
  - Given the offset Δ_i and Δ_j, the texel selected by the offset is \( i_j' \).

### 16.2. Conversion Formulas

#### 16.2.1. RGB to Shared Exponent Conversion

An RGB color (red, green, blue) is transformed to a shared exponent color \((\text{red}_{\text{shared}}, \text{green}_{\text{shared}}, \text{blue}_{\text{shared}}, \exp_{\text{shared}})\) as follows:

First, the components (red, green, blue) are clamped to \((\text{red}_{\text{clamped}}, \text{green}_{\text{clamped}}, \text{blue}_{\text{clamped}})\) as:
red\textsubscript{clamped} = \max(0, \min(\text{sharedexp\textsubscript{max}}, \text{red}))

green\textsubscript{clamped} = \max(0, \min(\text{sharedexp\textsubscript{max}}, \text{green}))

blue\textsubscript{clamped} = \max(0, \min(\text{sharedexp\textsubscript{max}}, \text{blue}))

where:

\[
\begin{align*}
N &= 9 \\
B &= 15 \\
E\textsubscript{max} &= 31 \\
\text{sharedexp\textsubscript{max}} &= \frac{(2^N - 1)}{2^N} \times 2^{(E\textsubscript{max} - B)}
\end{align*}
\]

\textbf{Note} 
NaN, if supported, is handled as in IEEE 754-2008 \texttt{minNum()} and \texttt{maxNum()}. This results in any NaN being mapped to zero.

The largest clamped component, \text{max\textsubscript{clamped}} is determined:

\text{max\textsubscript{clamped}} = \max(\text{red\textsubscript{clamped}}, \text{green\textsubscript{clamped}}, \text{blue\textsubscript{clamped}})

A preliminary shared exponent \text{exp}' is computed:

\[
\text{exp}' = \begin{cases} 
\log_2(\text{max\textsubscript{clamped}}) + (B + 1) & \text{for } \text{max\textsubscript{clamped}} > 2^{-(B + 1)} \\
0 & \text{for } \text{max\textsubscript{clamped}} \leq 2^{-(B + 1)}
\end{cases}
\]

The shared exponent \text{exp\textsubscript{shared}} is computed:

\[
\text{exp\textsubscript{shared}} = \begin{cases} 
\text{exp}' & \text{for } 0 \leq \text{exp\textsubscript{shared}} < 2^N \\
\text{exp}' + 1 & \text{for } \text{exp\textsubscript{shared}} = 2^N
\end{cases}
\]

Finally, three integer values in the range 0 to \(2^N\) are computed:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{red\textsubscript{shared}} &= \left\lfloor \frac{\text{red\textsubscript{clamped}}}{2^{(\text{exp\textsubscript{shared}} - B - N)}} + \frac{1}{2} \right\rfloor \\
\text{green\textsubscript{shared}} &= \left\lfloor \frac{\text{green\textsubscript{clamped}}}{2^{(\text{exp\textsubscript{shared}} - B - N)}} + \frac{1}{2} \right\rfloor \\
\text{blue\textsubscript{shared}} &= \left\lfloor \frac{\text{blue\textsubscript{clamped}}}{2^{(\text{exp\textsubscript{shared}} - B - N)}} + \frac{1}{2} \right\rfloor
\end{align*}
\]
16.2.2. Shared Exponent to RGB

A shared exponent color \( (\text{red}_{\text{shared}}, \text{green}_{\text{shared}}, \text{blue}_{\text{shared}}, \text{exp}_{\text{shared}}) \) is transformed to an RGB color \( (\text{red}, \text{green}, \text{blue}) \) as follows:

\[
\text{red} = \text{red}_{\text{shared}} \times 2^{(\text{exp}_{\text{shared}} - B - N)}
\]

\[
\text{green} = \text{green}_{\text{shared}} \times 2^{(\text{exp}_{\text{shared}} - B - N)}
\]

\[
\text{blue} = \text{blue}_{\text{shared}} \times 2^{(\text{exp}_{\text{shared}} - B - N)}
\]

where:

\[ N = 9 \text{ (number of mantissa bits per component)} \]

\[ B = 15 \text{ (exponent bias)} \]

16.3. Texel Input Operations

*Texel input instructions* are SPIR-V image instructions that read from an image. *Texel input operations* are a set of steps that are performed on state, coordinates, and texel values while processing a texel input instruction, and which are common to some or all texel input instructions. They include the following steps, which are performed in the listed order:

- **Validation operations**
  - Instruction/Sampler/Image validation
  - Coordinate validation
  - Sparse validation
  - Layout validation
- **Format conversion**
- **Texel replacement**
- **Depth comparison**
- **Conversion to RGBA**
- **Component swizzle**
- **Chroma reconstruction**
- **YCbCr conversion**

For texel input instructions involving multiple texels (for sampling or gathering), these steps are applied for each texel that is used in the instruction. Depending on the type of image instruction,
other steps are conditionally performed between these steps or involving multiple coordinate or texel values.

If **Chroma Reconstruction** is implicit, **Texel Filtering** instead takes place during chroma reconstruction, before **sampler Y'C_bC_r conversion** occurs.

### 16.3.1. Texel Input Validation Operations

*Texel input validation operations* inspect instruction/image/sampler state or coordinates, and in certain circumstances cause the texel value to be replaced or become undefined. There are a series of validations that the texel undergoes.

#### Instruction/Sampler/Image View Validation

There are a number of cases where a SPIR-V instruction can mismatch with the sampler, the image view, or both, and a number of further cases where the sampler can mismatch with the image view. In such cases the value of the texel returned is undefined.

These cases include:

- The sampler **borderColor** is an integer type and the image view **format** is not one of the *VkFormat* integer types or a stencil component of a depth/stencil format.
- The sampler **borderColor** is a float type and the image view **format** is not one of the *VkFormat* float types or a depth component of a depth/stencil format.
- The sampler **borderColor** is one of the opaque black colors (**VK_BORDER_COLOR_FLOAT_OPAQUE_BLACK** or **VK_BORDER_COLOR_INT_OPAQUE_BLACK**) and the image view **VkComponentSwizzle** for any of the **VkComponentMapping** components is not the **identity** swizzle.
- The **VkImageLayout** of any subresource in the image view does not match that specified in **VkDescriptorImageInfo::imageLayout** used to write the image descriptor.
- The SPIR-V Image Format is not compatible with the image view’s **format**.
- The sampler **unnormalizedCoordinates** is **VK_TRUE** and any of the limitations of unnormalized coordinates are violated.
- The SPIR-V instruction is one of the **OpImage*Dref* instructions and the sampler **compareEnable** is **VK_FALSE**
- The SPIR-V instruction is not one of the **OpImage*Dref* instructions and the sampler **compareEnable** is **VK_TRUE**
- The SPIR-V instruction is one of the **OpImage*Dref* instructions and the image view **format** is not one of the depth/stencil formats with a depth component, or the image view aspect is not **VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_DEPTH_BIT**.
- The SPIR-V instruction’s image variable’s properties are not compatible with the image view:
  - Rules for **viewType**:
    - **VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_1D** must have **Dim** = 1D, **Arrayed** = 0, **MS** = 0.
    - **VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D** must have **Dim** = 2D, **Arrayed** = 0.
    - **VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_3D** must have **Dim** = 3D, **Arrayed** = 0, **MS** = 0.
- `VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE` must have `Dim = Cube`, `Arrayed = 0`, `MS = 0`.
- `VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_1D_ARRAY` must have `Dim = 1D`, `Arrayed = 1`, `MS = 0`.
- `VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D_ARRAY` must have `Dim = 2D`, `Arrayed = 1`.
- `VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE_ARRAY` must have `Dim = Cube`, `Arrayed = 1`, `MS = 0`.

- If the image was created with `VkImageCreateInfo::samples` equal to `VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT`, the instruction must have `MS = 0`.
- If the image was created with `VkImageCreateInfo::samples` not equal to `VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT`, the instruction must have `MS = 1`.
- If the `Sampled` Type of the `OpTypeImage` does not match the numeric format of the image, as shown in the SPIR-V Sampled Type column of the Interpretation of Numeric Format table.
- If the signedness of any read or sample operation does not match the signedness of the image's format.

Only `OpImageSample*` and `OpImageSparseSample*` can be used with a sampler that enables `sampler Y'CbCr` conversion.

`OpImageFetch`, `OpImageSparseFetch`, `OpImage*Gather`, and `OpImageSparse*Gather` must not be used with a sampler that enables `sampler Y'CbCr` conversion.

The `ConstOffset` and `Offset` operands must not be used with a sampler that enables `sampler Y'CbCr` conversion.

### Integer Texel Coordinate Validation

Integer texel coordinates are validated against the size of the image level, and the number of layers and number of samples in the image. For SPIR-V instructions that use integer texel coordinates, this is performed directly on the integer coordinates. For instructions that use normalized or unnormalized texel coordinates, this is performed on the coordinates that result after conversion to integer texel coordinates.

If the integer texel coordinates do not satisfy all of the conditions

\[
0 \leq i < w_s \\
0 \leq j < h_s \\
0 \leq k < d_s \\
0 \leq l < \text{layers} \\
0 \leq n < \text{samples}
\]
where:

\( w_s \) = width of the image level

\( h_s \) = height of the image level

\( d_s \) = depth of the image level

layers = number of layers in the image

samples = number of samples per texel in the image

then the texel fails integer texel coordinate validation.

There are four cases to consider:

1. Valid Texel Coordinates

   • If the texel coordinates pass validation (that is, the coordinates lie within the image),
     then the texel value comes from the value in image memory.

2. Border Texel

   • If the texel coordinates fail validation, and
     • If the read is the result of an image sample instruction or image gather instruction, and
     • If the image is not a cube image,
     then the texel is a border texel and texel replacement is performed.

3. Invalid Texel

   • If the texel coordinates fail validation, and
     • If the read is the result of an image fetch instruction, image read instruction, or atomic instruction,
     then the texel is an invalid texel and texel replacement is performed.

4. Cube Map Edge or Corner

   Otherwise the texel coordinates lie beyond the edges or corners of the selected cube map face, and Cube map edge handling is performed.

**Cube Map Edge Handling**

If the texel coordinates lie beyond the edges or corners of the selected cube map face, the following
steps are performed. Note that this does not occur when using \texttt{VK_FILTER_NEAREST} filtering within a
mip level, since \texttt{VK_FILTER_NEAREST} is treated as using \texttt{VK_SAMPLER_ADDRESS_MODE_CLAMP_TO_EDGE}.

- Cube Map Edge Texel
  - If the texel lies beyond the selected cube map face in either only \(i\) or only \(j\), then the
    coordinates \((i,j)\) and the array layer \(l\) are transformed to select the adjacent texel from the
    appropriate neighboring face.

- Cube Map Corner Texel
  - If the texel lies beyond the selected cube map face in both \(i\) and \(j\), then there is no unique
    neighboring face from which to read that texel. The texel \textbf{should} be replaced by the average
    of the three values of the adjacent texels in each incident face. However, implementations
    \textbf{may} replace the cube map corner texel by other methods. The methods are subject to the
    constraint that if the three available texels have the same value, the resulting filtered texel
    \textbf{must} have that value.

**Sparse Validation**

If the texel reads from an unbound region of a sparse image, the texel is a \textit{sparse unbound texel}, and
processing continues with \textit{texel replacement}.

**Layout Validation**

If all planes of a \textit{disjoint multi-planar} image are not in the same \textit{image layout}, the image \textbf{must} not
be sampled with sampler \texttt{Y’C_aC_b} conversion enabled.

### 16.3.2. Format Conversion

Texels undergo a format conversion from the \texttt{VkFormat} of the image view to a vector of either
floating point or signed or unsigned integer components, with the number of components based on
the number of components present in the format.

- Color formats have one, two, three, or four components, according to the format.
- Depth/stencil formats are one component. The depth or stencil component is selected by the
  \texttt{aspectMask} of the image view.

Each component is converted based on its type and size (as defined in the \texttt{Format Definition} section
for each \texttt{VkFormat}), using the appropriate equations in \texttt{16-Bit Floating-Point Numbers}, \texttt{Unsigned
11-Bit Floating-Point Numbers}, \texttt{Unsigned 10-Bit Floating-Point Numbers}, \texttt{Fixed-Point Data
Conversion}, and \texttt{Shared Exponent to RGB}. Signed integer components smaller than 32 bits are sign-
extended.

If the image view format is sRGB, the color components are first converted as if they are UNORM,
and then sRGB to linear conversion is applied to the \(R\), \(G\), and \(B\) components as described in the
“sRGB EOTF” section of the \texttt{Khronos Data Format Specification}. The \(A\) component, if present, is
unchanged.

If the image view format is block-compressed, then the texel value is first decoded, then converted
based on the type and number of components defined by the compressed format.
16.3.3. Texel Replacement

A texel is replaced if it is one (and only one) of:

- a border texel,
- an invalid texel, or
- a sparse unbound texel.

Border texels are replaced with a value based on the image format and the `borderColor` of the sampler. The border color is:

Table 19. Border Color B

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sampler borderColor</th>
<th>Corresponding Border Color</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_BORDER_COLOR_FLOAT_TRANSPARENT_BLACK</td>
<td>( [B_r, B_g, B_b, B_a] = [0.0, 0.0, 0.0, 0.0] )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_BORDER_COLOR_FLOAT_OPAQUE_BLACK</td>
<td>( [B_r, B_g, B_b, B_a] = [0.0, 0.0, 0.0, 1.0] )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_BORDER_COLOR_FLOAT_OPAQUE_WHITE</td>
<td>( [B_r, B_g, B_b, B_a] = [1.0, 1.0, 1.0, 1.0] )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_BORDER_COLOR_INT_TRANSPARENT_BLACK</td>
<td>( [B_r, B_g, B_b, B_a] = [0, 0, 0, 0] )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_BORDER_COLOR_INT_OPAQUE_BLACK</td>
<td>( [B_r, B_g, B_b, B_a] = [0, 0, 0, 1] )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_BORDER_COLOR_INT_OPAQUE_WHITE</td>
<td>( [B_r, B_g, B_b, B_a] = [1, 1, 1, 1] )</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

The names `VK_BORDER_COLOR_*_TRANSPARENT_BLACK`, `VK_BORDER_COLOR_*_OPAQUE_BLACK`, and `VK_BORDER_COLOR_*_OPAQUE_WHITE` are meant to describe which components are zeros and ones in the vocabulary of compositing, and are not meant to imply that the numerical value of `VK_BORDER_COLOR_INT_OPAQUE_WHITE` is a saturating value for integers.

This is substituted for the texel value by replacing the number of components in the image format.

Table 20. Border Texel Components After Replacement

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Texel Aspect or Format</th>
<th>Component Assignment</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Depth aspect</td>
<td>( D = B_r )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stencil aspect</td>
<td>( S = B_r )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One component color format</td>
<td>Color(_r) = B(_r)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two component color format</td>
<td>([\text{Color}_r,\text{Color}_s]) = ([B_r,B_g])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Three component color format</td>
<td>([\text{Color}_r,\text{Color}_s,\text{Color}_b]) = ([B_r,B_g,B_b])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Four component color format</td>
<td>([\text{Color}_r,\text{Color}_s,\text{Color}_b,\text{Color}_a]) = ([B_r,B_g,B_b,B_a])</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The value returned by a read of an invalid texel is undefined, unless that read operation is from a buffer resource and the `robustBufferAccess` feature is enabled. In that case, an invalid texel is replaced as described by the `robustBufferAccess` feature.
If the `VkPhysicalDeviceSparseProperties::residencyNonResidentStrict` property is `VK_TRUE`, a sparse unbound texel is replaced with 0 or 0.0 values for integer and floating-point components of the image format, respectively.

If `residencyNonResidentStrict` is `VK_FALSE`, the value of the sparse unbound texel is undefined.

### 16.3.4. Depth Compare Operation

If the image view has a depth/stencil format, the depth component is selected by the `aspectMask`, and the operation is a `Dref` instruction, a depth comparison is performed. The value of the result $D$ is 1.0 if the result of the compare operation is `true`, and 0.0 otherwise. The compare operation is selected by the `compareOp` member of the sampler.

$$
\begin{align*}
&D = 1.0 \\
&D = 0.0
\end{align*}
$$

where $D_{\text{tex}}$ is the texel depth value and $D_{\text{ref}}$ is the reference value from the SPIR-V operand. If the image being sampled has a fixed-point format then the reference value is clamped to $[0, 1]$ before the comparison operation.

### 16.3.5. Conversion to RGBA

The texel is expanded from one, two, or three components to four components based on the image base color:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Texel Aspect or Format</th>
<th>RGBA Color</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Depth aspect</td>
<td>$[\text{Color}_r, \text{Color}_g, \text{Color}_b, \text{Color}_a] = [D, 0, 0, \text{one}]$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Stencil aspect</td>
<td>$[\text{Color}_r, \text{Color}_g, \text{Color}_b, \text{Color}_a] = [S, 0, 0, \text{one}]$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>One component color format</td>
<td>$[\text{Color}_r, \text{Color}_g, \text{Color}_b, \text{Color}_a] = [\text{Color}_r, 0, 0, \text{one}]$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Two component color format</td>
<td>$[\text{Color}_r, \text{Color}_g, \text{Color}_b, \text{Color}_a] = [\text{Color}_r, \text{Color}_g, 0, \text{one}]$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Three component color format</td>
<td>$[\text{Color}_r, \text{Color}_g, \text{Color}_b, \text{Color}_a] = [\text{Color}_r, \text{Color}_g, \text{Color}_b, \text{one}]$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Four component color format</td>
<td>$[\text{Color}_r, \text{Color}_g, \text{Color}_b, \text{Color}_a] = [\text{Color}_r, \text{Color}_g, \text{Color}_b, \text{Color}_a]$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

where one = 1.0f for floating-point formats and depth aspects, and one = 1 for integer formats and stencil aspects.

### 16.3.6. Component Swizzle

All texel input instructions apply a *swizzle* based on:
• the `VkComponentSwizzle` enums in the `components` member of the `VkImageViewCreateInfo` structure for the image being read if sampler $Y'\text{C}_b\text{C}_r$ conversion is not enabled, and

• the `VkComponentSwizzle` enums in the `components` member of the `VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo` structure for the sampler $Y'\text{C}_b\text{C}_r$ conversion if sampler $Y'\text{C}_b\text{C}_r$ conversion is enabled.

The swizzle can rearrange the components of the texel, or substitute zero or one for any components. It is defined as follows for each color component:

\[
\text{Color}', \text{component} = \begin{cases} 
\text{Color}_r & \text{for RED swizzle} \\
\text{Color}_g & \text{for GREEN swizzle} \\
\text{Color}_b & \text{for BLUE swizzle} \\
\text{Color}_a & \text{for ALPHA swizzle} \\
0 & \text{for ZERO swizzle} \\
\text{one} & \text{for ONE swizzle} \\
\text{identity} & \text{for IDENTITY swizzle}
\end{cases}
\]

where:

\[
\text{one} = \begin{cases} 
1.0f & \text{for floating point components} \\
1 & \text{for integer components}
\end{cases}
\]

\[
\text{identity} = \begin{cases} 
\text{Color}_r & \text{for component} = r \\
\text{Color}_g & \text{for component} = g \\
\text{Color}_b & \text{for component} = b \\
\text{Color}_a & \text{for component} = a
\end{cases}
\]

If the border color is one of the `VK_BORDER_COLOR_*_OPAQUE_BLACK` enums and the `VkComponentSwizzle` is not the identity swizzle for all components, the value of the texel after swizzle is undefined.

### 16.3.7. Sparse Residency

OpImageSparse* instructions return a structure which includes a residency code indicating whether any texels accessed by the instruction are sparse unbound texels. This code can be interpreted by the OpImageSparseTexelsResident instruction which converts the residency code to a boolean value.

### 16.3.8. Chroma Reconstruction

In some color models, the color representation is defined in terms of monochromatic light intensity (often called “luma”) and color differences relative to this intensity, often called “chroma”. It is common for color models other than RGB to represent the chroma channels at lower spatial resolution than the luma channel. This approach is used to take advantage of the eye’s lower spatial sensitivity to color compared with its sensitivity to brightness. Less commonly, the same approach is used with additive color, since the green channel dominates the eye’s sensitivity to light intensity and the spatial sensitivity to color introduced by red and blue is lower.

Lower-resolution channels are “downsampled” by resizing them to a lower spatial resolution than the channel representing luminance. This process is also commonly known as “chroma subsampling”. There is one luminance sample in each texture texel, but each chrominance sample may be shared among several texels in one or both texture dimensions.
• **.444** formats do not spatially downsample chroma values compared with luma: there are unique chroma samples for each texel.

• **.422** formats have downsampling in the x dimension (corresponding to $u$ or $s$ coordinates): they are sampled at half the resolution of luma in that dimension.

• **.420** formats have downsampling in the x dimension (corresponding to $u$ or $s$ coordinates) and the y dimension (corresponding to $v$ or $t$ coordinates): they are sampled at half the resolution of luma in both dimensions.

The process of reconstructing a full color value for texture access involves accessing both chroma and luma values at the same location. To generate the color accurately, the values of the lower-resolution channels at the location of the luma samples must be reconstructed from the lower-resolution sample locations, an operation known here as “chroma reconstruction” irrespective of the actual color model.

The location of the chroma samples relative to the luma coordinates is determined by the $x_{ChromaOffset}$ and $y_{ChromaOffset}$ members of the VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo structure used to create the sampler Y’C_bC_r conversion.

The following diagrams show the relationship between unnormalized ($u,v$) coordinates and ($i,j$) integer texel positions in the luma channel (shown in black, with circles showing integer sample positions) and the texel coordinates of reduced-resolution chroma channels, shown as crosses in red.

**Note**

If the chroma values are reconstructed at the locations of the luma samples by means of interpolation, chroma samples from outside the image bounds are needed; these are determined according to Wrapping Operation. These diagrams represent this by showing the bounds of the “chroma texel” extending beyond the image bounds, and including additional chroma sample positions where required for interpolation. The limits of a sample for NEAREST sampling is shown as a grid.
Figure 5. 422 downsampling, xChromaOffset=COSITED_EVEN

Figure 6. 422 downsampling, xChromaOffset=MIDPOINT
Figure 7. 420 downsampling, xChromaOffset=COSITED_EVEN, yChromaOffset=COSITED_EVEN

Figure 8. 420 downsampling, xChromaOffset=MIDPOINT, yChromaOffset=COSITED_EVEN
Reconstruction is implemented in one of two ways:

If the format of the image that is to be sampled sets `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_YCBCR_CONVERSION_CHROMA_RECONSTRUCTION_EXPLICIT_BIT`, or the `VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo`'s `forceExplicitReconstruction` is set to `VK_TRUE`, reconstruction is performed as an explicit step independent of filtering, described in the Explicit Reconstruction section.

If the format of the image that is to be sampled does not set `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_YCBCR_CONVERSION_CHROMA_RECONSTRUCTION_EXPLICIT_BIT` and if the
VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo’s `forceExplicitReconstruction` is set to `VK_FALSE`, reconstruction is performed as an implicit part of filtering prior to color model conversion, with no separate post-conversion texel filtering step, as described in the Implicit Reconstruction section.

**Explicit Reconstruction**

- If the `chromaFilter` member of the `VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo` structure is `VK_FILTER_NEAREST`:
  - If the format’s R and B channels are reduced in resolution in just width by a factor of two relative to the G channel (i.e. this is a “.422” format), the $\tau_{ijk}[level]$ values accessed by texel filtering are reconstructed as follows:
    
    $$
    \tau_R'(i, j) = \tau_R([i \times 0.5], [j \times 0.5])[level]
    
    \tau_B'(i, j) = \tau_B([i \times 0.5], [j \times 0.5])[level]
    $$
    
  - If the format’s R and B channels are reduced in resolution in width and height by a factor of two relative to the G channel (i.e. this is a “.420” format), the $\tau_{ijk}[level]$ values accessed by texel filtering are reconstructed as follows:
    
    $$
    \tau_R'(i, j) = \tau_R([i \times 0.5], [j \times 0.5])[level]
    
    \tau_B'(i, j) = \tau_B([i \times 0.5], [j \times 0.5])[level]
    $$

  - Note: `xChromaOffset` and `yChromaOffset` have no effect if `chromaFilter` is `VK_FILTER_NEAREST` for explicit reconstruction.

- If the `chromaFilter` member of the `VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo` structure is `VK_FILTER_LINEAR`:
  - If the format’s R and B channels are reduced in resolution in just width by a factor of two relative to the G channel (i.e. this is a “.422” format):
    - If `xChromaOffset` is `VK_CHROMA_LOCATION_COSITED_EVEN`:
      $$
      \tau_{RB}'(i, j) = \begin{cases} 
      \tau_{RB}([0.5 \times i], [0.5 \times j])[level], & 0.5 \times i = [0.5 \times i] \\
      0.5 \times \tau_{RB}([0.5 \times i], [0.5 \times j])[level] + \\
      0.5 \times \tau_{RB}([0.5 \times i] + 1, [0.5 \times j])[level], & 0.5 \times i \neq [0.5 \times i]
      \end{cases}
      $$
    - If `xChromaOffset` is `VK_CHROMA_LOCATION_MIDPOINT`:
      $$
      \tau_{RB}'(i, j) = \begin{cases} 
      0.25 \times \tau_{RB}([0.5 \times i] - 1, [0.5 \times j])[level] + \\
      0.75 \times \tau_{RB}([0.5 \times i], [0.5 \times j])[level], & 0.5 \times i = [0.5 \times i] \\
      0.75 \times \tau_{RB}([0.5 \times i], [0.5 \times j])[level] + \\
      0.25 \times \tau_{RB}([0.5 \times i] + 1, [0.5 \times j])[level], & 0.5 \times i \neq [0.5 \times i]
      \end{cases}
      $$
  - If the format’s R and B channels are reduced in resolution in width and height by a factor of two relative to the G channel (i.e. this is a “.420” format), a similar relationship applies. Due to the number of options, these formulae are expressed more concisely as follows:
Note

In the case where the texture itself is bilinearly interpolated as described in Texel Filtering, thus requiring four full-color samples for the filtering operation, and where the reconstruction of these samples uses bilinear interpolation in the chroma channels due to `chromaFilter=VK_FILTER_LINEAR`, up to nine chroma samples may be required, depending on the sample location.

### Implicit Reconstruction

Implicit reconstruction takes place by the samples being interpolated, as required by the filter settings of the sampler, except that `chromaFilter` takes precedence for the chroma samples.

If `chromaFilter` is `VK_FILTER_NEAREST`, an implementation may behave as if `xChromaOffset` and `yChromaOffset` were both `VK_CHROMA_LOCATION_MIDPOINT`, irrespective of the values set.

Note

This will not have any visible effect if the locations of the luma samples coincide with the location of the samples used for rasterization.

The sample coordinates are adjusted by the downsample factor of the channel (such that, for example, the sample coordinates are divided by two if the channel has a downsample factor of two relative to the luma channel):

\[
\begin{align*}
\tau_{RB}'(i, j) &= \tau_{RB}(i_{\text{floor}}, j_{\text{floor}})_{\text{level}} \times (1 - i_{\text{frac}}) \times (1 - j_{\text{frac}}) + \\
\tau_{RB}(i + i_{\text{floor}}, j_{\text{floor}})_{\text{level}} &= \tau_{RB}(i + j_{\text{floor}})_{\text{level}} \times (1 - i_{\text{frac}}) \times (1 - j_{\text{frac}}) + \\
\tau_{RB}(i_{\text{floor}}, j + j_{\text{floor}})_{\text{level}} &= \tau_{RB}(i + j_{\text{frac}}) \times (1 - j_{\text{frac}}) + \\
\tau_{RB}(i + i_{\text{floor}}, j + j_{\text{floor}})_{\text{level}} &= \tau_{RB}(i + j_{\text{frac}}) \times (1 - j_{\text{frac}})
\end{align*}
\]

#### 16.3.9. Sampler Y'CbCr Conversion

Sampler Y'CbCr conversion performs the following operations, which an implementation may combine into a single mathematical operation:

- Sampler Y'CbCr Range Expansion
Sampler Y'CbCr Model Conversion

Sampler Y'CbCr Range Expansion

Sampler Y'CbCr range expansion is applied to color channel values after all texel input operations which are not specific to sampler Y'CbCr conversion. For example, the input values to this stage have been converted using the normal format conversion rules.

Sampler Y'CbCr range expansion is not applied if ycbcrModel is VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_MODEL_CONVERSION_RGB_IDENTITY. That is, the shader receives the vector C'rgba as output by the Component Swizzle stage without further modification.

For other values of ycbcrModel, range expansion is applied to the texel channel values output by the Component Swizzle defined by the components member of VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo. Range expansion applies independently to each channel of the image. For the purposes of range expansion and Y'CbCr model conversion, the R and B channels contain color difference (chroma) values and the G channel contains luma. The A channel is not modified by sampler Y'CbCr range expansion.

The range expansion to be applied is defined by the ycbcrRange member of the VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo structure:

- If ycbcrRange is VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_RANGE_ITU_FULL, the following transformations are applied:

  \[ Y' = C'rgba[G], \]
  \[ C_B = C'rgba[B] - \frac{2^{(n-1)}}{(2^n-1)}, \]
  \[ C_R = C'rgba[R] - \frac{2^{(n-1)}}{(2^n-1)} \]

  \textit{Note}
  
  These formulae correspond to the “full range” encoding in the “Quantization schemes” chapter of the Khronos Data Format Specification.

  Should any future amendments be made to the ITU specifications from which these equations are derived, the formulae used by Vulkan may also be updated to maintain parity.

- If ycbcrRange is VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_RANGE_ITU_NARROW, the following transformations are applied:

  \[ Y' = \frac{C'rgba[G] \times (2^n - 1) - 16 \times 2^n - 8}{219 \times 2^n - 8}, \]
  \[ C_B = \frac{C'rgba[B] \times (2^n - 1) - 128 \times 2^n - 8}{224 \times 2^n - 8}, \]
  \[ C_R = \frac{C'rgba[R] \times (2^n - 1) - 128 \times 2^n - 8}{224 \times 2^n - 8} \]

  \textit{Note}
  
  These formulae correspond to the “narrow range” encoding in the “Quantization schemes” chapter of the Khronos Data Format Specification.
• \( n \) is the bit-depth of the channels in the format.

The precision of the operations performed during range expansion must be at least that of the source format.

An implementation may clamp the results of these range expansion operations such that \( Y' \) falls in the range \([0,1]\), and/or such that \( C_R \) and \( C_B \) fall in the range \([-0.5,0.5]\).

**Sampler \( Y'C_bC_R \) Model Conversion**

The range-expanded values are converted between color models, according to the color model conversion specified in the ycbcrModel member:

**VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_MODEL_CONVERSION_RGB_IDENTITY**

The color channels are not modified by the color model conversion since they are assumed already to represent the desired color model in which the shader is operating; \( Y'C_bC_R \) range expansion is also ignored.

**VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_MODEL_CONVERSION_YCBCR_IDENTITY**

The color channels are not modified by the color model conversion and are assumed to be treated as though in \( Y'C_bC_R \) form both in memory and in the shader; \( Y'C_bC_R \) range expansion is applied to the channels as for other \( Y'C_bC_R \) models, with the vector \((C_R,Y',C_B,A)\) provided to the shader.

**VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_MODEL_CONVERSION_YCBCR_709**

The color channels are transformed from a \( Y'C_bC_R \) representation to an \( R'G'B' \) representation as described in the “BT.709 \( Y'C_bC_R \) conversion” section of the Khronos Data Format Specification.

**VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_MODEL_CONVERSION_YCBCR_601**

The color channels are transformed from a \( Y'C_bC_R \) representation to an \( R'G'B' \) representation as described in the “BT.601 \( Y'C_bC_R \) conversion” section of the Khronos Data Format Specification.

**VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_MODEL_CONVERSION_YCBCR_2020**

The color channels are transformed from a \( Y'C_bC_R \) representation to an \( R'G'B' \) representation as described in the “BT.2020 \( Y'C_bC_R \) conversion” section of the Khronos Data Format Specification.

In this operation, each output channel is dependent on each input channel.

An implementation may clamp the \( R'G'B' \) results of these conversions to the range \([0,1]\).

The precision of the operations performed during model conversion must be at least that of the source format.

The alpha channel is not modified by these model conversions.
Sampling operations in a non-linear color space can introduce color and intensity shifts at sharp transition boundaries. To avoid this issue, the technically precise color correction sequence described in the “Introduction to Color Conversions” chapter of the Khronos Data Format Specification may be performed as follows:

- Calculate the unnormalized texel coordinates corresponding to the desired sample position.
- For a minFilter or magFilter of VK_FILTER_NEAREST:
  1. Calculate \((i, j)\) for the sample location as described under the “nearest filtering” formulae in \((u, v, w, a)\) to \((i, j, k, l, n)\) Transformation And Array Layer Selection
  2. Calculate the normalized texel coordinates corresponding to these integer coordinates.
  3. Sample using sampler Y’C_bC_a conversion at this location.
- For a minFilter or magFilter of VK_FILTER_LINEAR:
  1. Calculate \((i_0, i_1)\) for the sample location as described under the “linear filtering” formulae in \((u, v, w, a)\) to \((i, j, k, l, n)\) Transformation And Array Layer Selection
  2. Calculate the normalized texel coordinates corresponding to these integer coordinates.
  3. Sample using sampler Y’C_bC_a conversion at each of these locations.
  4. Convert the non-linear A’R’G’B’ outputs of the Y’C_bC_a conversions to linear ARGB values as described in the “Transfer Functions” chapter of the Khronos Data Format Specification.
  5. Interpolate the linear ARGB values using the \(\alpha\) and \(\beta\) values described in the “linear filtering” section of \((u, v, w, a)\) to \((i, j, k, l, n)\) Transformation And Array Layer Selection and the equations in Texel Filtering.

The additional calculations and, especially, additional number of sampling operations in the VK_FILTER_LINEAR case can be expected to have a performance impact compared with using the outputs directly. Since the variations from “correct” results are subtle for most content, the application author should determine whether a more costly implementation is strictly necessary.

If chromaFilter, and minFilter or magFilter are both VK_FILTER_NEAREST, these operations are redundant and sampling using sampler Y’C_bC_a conversion at the desired sample coordinates will produce the “correct” results without further processing.

### 16.4. Texel Output Operations

Texel output instructions are SPIR-V image instructions that write to an image.
operations are a set of steps that are performed on state, coordinates, and texel values while processing a texel output instruction, and which are common to some or all texel output instructions. They include the following steps, which are performed in the listed order:

- Validation operations
  - Format validation
  - Type validation
  - Coordinate validation
  - Sparse validation
- Texel output format conversion

### 16.4.1. Texel Output Validation Operations

Texel output validation operations inspect instruction/image state or coordinates, and in certain circumstances cause the write to have no effect. There are a series of validations that the texel undergoes.

**Texel Format Validation**

If the image format of the `OpTypeImage` is not compatible with the `VkImageView`'s format, the write causes the contents of the image's memory to become undefined.

**Texel Type Validation**

If the `Sampled Type` of the `OpTypeImage` does not match the type defined for the format, as specified in the SPIR-V Sampled Type column of the Interpretation of Numeric Format table, the write causes the value of the texel to become undefined. For integer types, if the signedness of the access does not match the signedness of the accessed resource, the write causes the value of the texel to become undefined.

### 16.4.2. Integer Texel Coordinate Validation

The integer texel coordinates are validated according to the same rules as for texel input coordinate validation.

If the texel fails integer texel coordinate validation, then the write has no effect.

### 16.4.3. Sparse Texel Operation

If the texel attempts to write to an unbound region of a sparse image, the texel is a sparse unbound texel. In such a case, if the `VkPhysicalDeviceSparseProperties::residencyNonResidentStrict` property is `VK_TRUE`, the sparse unbound texel write has no effect. If `residencyNonResidentStrict` is `VK_FALSE`, the write may have a side effect that becomes visible to other accesses to unbound texels in any resource, but will not be visible to any device memory allocated by the application.
16.4.4. Texel Output Format Conversion

If the image format is sRGB, a linear to sRGB conversion is applied to the R, G, and B components as described in the “sRGB EOTF” section of the Khronos Data Format Specification. The A component, if present, is unchanged.

Texels then undergo a format conversion from the floating point, signed, or unsigned integer type of the texel data to the `VkFormat` of the image view. Any unused components are ignored.

Each component is converted based on its type and size (as defined in the Format Definition section for each `VkFormat`). Floating-point outputs are converted as described in Floating-Point Format Conversions and Fixed-Point Data Conversion. Integer outputs are converted such that their value is preserved. The converted value of any integer that cannot be represented in the target format is undefined.

16.5. Normalized Texel Coordinate Operations

If the image sampler instruction provides normalized texel coordinates, some of the following operations are performed.

16.5.1. Projection Operation

For Proj image operations, the normalized texel coordinates \((s,t,r,q,a)\) and (if present) the \(D_{ref}\) coordinate are transformed as follows:

\[
\begin{align*}
    s &= \frac{s}{q}, & \text{for 1D, 2D, or 3D image} \\
    t &= \frac{t}{q}, & \text{for 2D or 3D image} \\
    r &= \frac{r}{q}, & \text{for 3D image} \\
    D_{ref} &= \frac{D_{ref}}{q}, & \text{if provided}
\end{align*}
\]

16.5.2. Derivative Image Operations

Derivatives are used for LOD selection. These derivatives are either implicit (in an ImplicitLod image instruction in a fragment shader) or explicit (provided explicitly by shader to the image instruction in any shader).

For implicit derivatives image instructions, the derivatives of texel coordinates are calculated in the same manner as derivative operations. That is:

\[
\begin{align*}
    \frac{\partial s}{\partial x} &= dPdx(s), & \frac{\partial s}{\partial y} &= dPdy(s), & \text{for 1D, 2D, Cube, or 3D image} \\
    \frac{\partial t}{\partial x} &= dPdx(t), & \frac{\partial t}{\partial y} &= dPdy(t), & \text{for 2D, Cube, or 3D image} \\
    \frac{\partial r}{\partial x} &= dPdx(r), & \frac{\partial r}{\partial y} &= dPdy(r), & \text{for Cube or 3D image}
\end{align*}
\]

Partial derivatives not defined above for certain image dimensionalities are set to zero.

For explicit LOD image instructions, if the optional SPIR-V operand \(\text{Grad}\) is provided, then the operand values are used for the derivatives. The number of components present in each derivative...
for a given image dimensionality matches the number of partial derivatives computed above.

If the *optional* SPIR-V operand `Lod` is provided, then derivatives are set to zero, the cube map derivative transformation is skipped, and the scale factor operation is skipped. Instead, the floating point scalar coordinate is directly assigned to \( \lambda_{\text{base}} \) as described in Level-of-Detail Operation.

### 16.5.3. Cube Map Face Selection and Transformations

For cube map image instructions, the \((s,t,r)\) coordinates are treated as a direction vector \((r_x, r_y, r_z)\). The direction vector is used to select a cube map face. The direction vector is transformed to a per-face texel coordinate system \((s_{\text{face}}, t_{\text{face}})\). The direction vector is also used to transform the derivatives to per-face derivatives.

### 16.5.4. Cube Map Face Selection

The direction vector selects one of the cube map’s faces based on the largest magnitude coordinate direction (the major axis direction). Since two or more coordinates can have identical magnitude, the implementation must have rules to disambiguate this situation.

The rules should have as the first rule that \( r_z \) wins over \( r_y \) and \( r_x \), and the second rule that \( r_y \) wins over \( r_x \). An implementation may choose other rules, but the rules must be deterministic and depend only on \((r_x, r_y, r_z)\).

The layer number (corresponding to a cube map face), the coordinate selections for \( s_{\text{c}}, t_{\text{c}}, r_{\text{c}} \), and the selection of derivatives, are determined by the major axis direction as specified in the following two tables.

*Table 22. Cube map face and coordinate selection*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Major Axis Direction</th>
<th>Layer Number</th>
<th>Cube Map Face</th>
<th>( s_{\text{c}} )</th>
<th>( t_{\text{c}} )</th>
<th>( r_{\text{c}} )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(+r_x)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>Positive X</td>
<td>(-r_z)</td>
<td>(-r_y)</td>
<td>( r_x)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-r_x)</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>Negative X</td>
<td>(+r_z)</td>
<td>(-r_y)</td>
<td>( r_x)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(+r_y)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>Positive Y</td>
<td>(+r_x)</td>
<td>(+r_z)</td>
<td>( r_y)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-r_y)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>Negative Y</td>
<td>(+r_x)</td>
<td>(-r_z)</td>
<td>( r_y)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(+r_z)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>Positive Z</td>
<td>(+r_x)</td>
<td>(-r_y)</td>
<td>( r_z)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-r_z)</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>Negative Z</td>
<td>(-r_x)</td>
<td>(-r_y)</td>
<td>( r_z)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Table 23. Cube map derivative selection*

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Major Axis Direction</th>
<th>( \partial s_{\text{c}} / \partial x )</th>
<th>( \partial s_{\text{c}} / \partial y )</th>
<th>( \partial t_{\text{c}} / \partial x )</th>
<th>( \partial t_{\text{c}} / \partial y )</th>
<th>( \partial r_{\text{c}} / \partial x )</th>
<th>( \partial r_{\text{c}} / \partial y )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>(+r_x)</td>
<td>(-\partial r_z / \partial x)</td>
<td>(-\partial r_z / \partial y)</td>
<td>(-\partial r_y / \partial x)</td>
<td>(-\partial r_y / \partial y)</td>
<td>(+\partial r_z / \partial x)</td>
<td>(+\partial r_z / \partial y)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(-r_x)</td>
<td>(+\partial r_z / \partial x)</td>
<td>(+\partial r_z / \partial y)</td>
<td>(-\partial r_y / \partial x)</td>
<td>(-\partial r_y / \partial y)</td>
<td>(-\partial r_z / \partial x)</td>
<td>(-\partial r_z / \partial y)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
16.5.5. Cube Map Coordinate Transformation

\[
\begin{align*}
    s_{face} &= \frac{1}{2} \times s_e + \frac{1}{2} \\
    t_{face} &= \frac{1}{2} \times t_e + \frac{1}{2}
\end{align*}
\]

16.5.6. Cube Map Derivative Transformation

\[
\begin{align*}
    \frac{\partial s_{face}}{\partial x} &= \frac{\partial}{\partial x} \left( \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{s_e}{r_c} + \frac{1}{2} \right) \\
    \frac{\partial s_{face}}{\partial y} &= \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{\partial}{\partial y} \left( \frac{s_e}{r_c} \right) \\
    \frac{\partial t_{face}}{\partial x} &= \frac{1}{2} \times \left( \frac{r_c}{s_e} \times \frac{\partial s_e}{\partial x} - s_e \times \frac{\partial r_c}{\partial x} \right) \\
    \frac{\partial t_{face}}{\partial y} &= \frac{1}{2} \times \left( \frac{r_c}{s_e} \times \frac{\partial t_e}{\partial y} - t_e \times \frac{\partial r_c}{\partial y} \right)
\end{align*}
\]

16.5.7. Scale Factor Operation, Level-of-Detail Operation and Image Level(s) Selection

LOD selection can be either explicit (provided explicitly by the image instruction) or implicit (determined from a scale factor calculated from the derivatives). The LOD must be computed with `mipmapPrecisionBits` of accuracy.

Scale Factor Operation

The magnitude of the derivatives are calculated by:

\[
\begin{align*}
    m_{ux} &= |\partial s/\partial x| \times w_{base} \\
    m_{vy} &= |\partial t/\partial y| \times h_{base}
\end{align*}
\]
\[ m_{wx} = |\partial r/\partial x| \times d_{base} \]

\[ m_{uy} = |\partial s/\partial y| \times w_{base} \]

\[ m_{vy} = |\partial t/\partial y| \times h_{base} \]

\[ m_{wy} = |\partial r/\partial y| \times d_{base} \]

where:

\[ \partial t/\partial x = \partial t/\partial y = 0 \text{ (for 1D images)} \]

\[ \partial r/\partial x = \partial r/\partial y = 0 \text{ (for 1D, 2D or Cube images)} \]

and:

\[ w_{base} = \text{image.w} \]

\[ h_{base} = \text{image.h} \]

\[ d_{base} = \text{image.d} \]

(for the baseMipLevel, from the image descriptor).

A point sampled in screen space has an elliptical footprint in texture space. The minimum and maximum scale factors \((\rho_{\text{min}}, \rho_{\text{max}})\) should be the minor and major axes of this ellipse.

The scale factors \(\rho_x\) and \(\rho_y\), calculated from the magnitude of the derivatives in \(x\) and \(y\), are used to compute the minimum and maximum scale factors.

\(\rho_x\) and \(\rho_y\), may be approximated with functions \(f_x\) and \(f_y\), subject to the following constraints:

\[
\begin{align*}
    f_x &\text{ is continuous and monotonically increasing in each of } m_{ux}, m_{vx}, \text{ and } m_{wx} \\
    f_y &\text{ is continuous and monotonically increasing in each of } m_{uy}, m_{vy}, \text{ and } m_{wy} \\
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\max(|m_{ux}|, |m_{vx}|, |m_{wx}|) \leq f_x \leq \sqrt{2}(|m_{ux}| + |m_{vx}| + |m_{wx}|) \\
\max(|m_{uy}|, |m_{vy}|, |m_{wy}|) \leq f_y \leq \sqrt{2}(|m_{uy}| + |m_{vy}| + |m_{wy}|)
\]

The minimum and maximum scale factors \((\rho_{\text{min}}, \rho_{\text{max}})\) are determined by:
\[ \rho_{\text{max}} = \max(\rho_x, \rho_y) \]

\[ \rho_{\text{min}} = \min(\rho_x, \rho_y) \]

The ratio of anisotropy is determined by:

\[ \eta = \min(\rho_{\text{max}}/\rho_{\text{min}}, \max_{\text{Aniso}}) \]

where:

\[ \text{sampler}.\max_{\text{Aniso}} = \max_{\text{Anisotropy}} \text{(from sampler descriptor)} \]

\[ \text{limits}.\max_{\text{Aniso}} = \max_{\text{SamplerAnisotropy}} \text{(from physical device limits)} \]

\[ \max_{\text{Aniso}} = \min(\text{sampler}.\max_{\text{Aniso}}, \text{limits}.\max_{\text{Aniso}}) \]

If \( \rho_{\text{max}} = \rho_{\text{min}} = 0 \), then all the partial derivatives are zero, the fragment’s footprint in texel space is a point, and \( \eta \) should be treated as 1. If \( \rho_{\text{max}} \neq 0 \) and \( \rho_{\text{min}} = 0 \) then all partial derivatives along one axis are zero, the fragment’s footprint in texel space is a line segment, and \( \eta \) should be treated as \( \max_{\text{Aniso}} \). However, anytime the footprint is small in texel space the implementation may use a smaller value of \( \eta \), even when \( \rho_{\text{min}} \) is zero or close to zero. If either \( \text{VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures}.\text{samplerAnisotropy} \) or \( \text{VkSamplerCreateInfo}.\text{anisotropyEnable} \) are \( \text{VK_FALSE} \), \( \max_{\text{Aniso}} \) is set to 1.

If \( \eta = 1 \), sampling is isotropic. If \( \eta > 1 \), sampling is anisotropic.

The sampling rate (\( N \)) is derived as:

\[ N = \lceil \eta \rceil \]

An implementation may round \( N \) up to the nearest supported sampling rate. An implementation may use the value of \( N \) as an approximation of \( \eta \).

**Level-of-Detail Operation**

The LOD parameter \( \lambda \) is computed as follows:

\[ \lambda_{\text{base}}(x, y) = \begin{cases} \text{shaderOp.Lod} & \text{(from optional SPIR-V operand)} \\ \log_2 \left( \frac{\rho_{\text{max}}}{\eta} \right) & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \]

\[ \lambda'(x, y) = \lambda_{\text{base}} + \text{clamp} \left( \text{sampler.bias} + \text{shaderOp.bias}, -\max_{\text{SamplerLodBias}}, \max_{\text{SamplerLodBias}} \right) \]

\[ \lambda = \begin{cases} \text{lod}_{\text{max}}, & \lambda' > \text{lod}_{\text{max}} \\ \lambda', & \text{lod}_{\text{min}} \leq \lambda' \leq \text{lod}_{\text{max}} \\ \text{lod}_{\text{min}}, & \lambda' < \text{lod}_{\text{min}} \\ \text{undefined}, & \text{lod}_{\text{min}} > \text{lod}_{\text{max}} \end{cases} \]
where:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{sampler.bias} &= \text{mipLodBias} \\
\text{shaderOp.bias} &= \begin{cases} 
\text{Bias} & \text{(from optional SPIR-V operand)} \\
0 & \text{otherwise}
\end{cases} \\
\text{sampler.lod}_{\text{min}} &= \text{minLod} \\
\text{shaderOp.lod}_{\text{min}} &= \begin{cases} 
\text{MinLod} & \text{(from optional SPIR-V operand)} \\
0 & \text{otherwise}
\end{cases}
\end{align*}
\]

and \text{maxSamplerLodBias} is the value of the \text{VkPhysicalDeviceLimits} feature \text{maxSamplerLodBias}.

**Image Level(s) Selection**

The image level(s) \(d, d_{hi}, \text{ and } d_{lo}\) which texels are read from are determined by an image-level parameter \(d_i\), which is computed based on the LOD parameter, as follows:

\[
d_i = \begin{cases} 
\text{nearest}(d'), & \text{mipmapMode is } \text{VK_SAMPLER_MIPMAP_MODE_NEAREST} \\
d', & \text{otherwise}
\end{cases}
\]

where:

\[
d' = \text{levelbase} + \text{clamp}(\lambda, 0, q)
\]

\[
\text{nearest}(d') = \begin{cases} 
\lfloor d' + 0.5 \rfloor - 1, & \text{preferred} \\
\lfloor d' + 0.5 \rfloor, & \text{alternative}
\end{cases}
\]

and:

\[
\text{levelbase} = \text{baseMipLevel}
\]

\[
q = \text{levelCount} - 1
\]

\text{baseMipLevel} and \text{levelCount} are taken from the \text{subresourceRange} of the image view.

If the sampler’s \text{mipmapMode} is \text{VK_SAMPLER_MIPMAP_MODE_NEAREST}, then the level selected is \(d = d_i\).

If the sampler’s \text{mipmapMode} is \text{VK_SAMPLER_MIPMAP_MODE_LINEAR}, two neighboring levels are selected:

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{dhi} &= \lfloor d_i \rfloor \\
\text{dlo} &= \min(d_{hi} + 1, q) \\
\delta &= d_i - d_{hi}
\end{align*}
\]

\(\delta\) is the fractional value, quantized to the number of mipmap precision bits, used for linear filtering between levels.

**16.5.8. (s,t,r,q,a) to (u,v,w,a) Transformation**

The normalized texel coordinates are scaled by the image level dimensions and the array layer is selected.
This transformation is performed once for each level used in filtering (either $d$, or $d_{hi}$ and $d_{lo}$).

\[
\begin{align*}
    u(x, y) &= s(x, y) \times \text{width}_{scale} + \Delta_i \\
    v(x, y) &= \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for 1D images} \\
    t(x, y) \times \text{height}_{scale} + \Delta_j & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \\
    w(x, y) &= \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for 2D or Cube images} \\
    r(x, y) \times \text{depth}_{scale} + \Delta_k & \text{otherwise} \end{cases} \\
    a(x, y) &= \begin{cases} a(x, y) & \text{for array images} \\
    0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}
\end{align*}
\]

where:

\[
\begin{align*}
    \text{width}_{scale} &= \text{width}_{level} \\
    \text{height}_{scale} &= \text{height}_{level} \\
    \text{depth}_{scale} &= \text{depth}_{level}
\end{align*}
\]

and where $(\Delta_i, \Delta_j, \Delta_k)$ are taken from the image instruction if it includes a ConstOffset or Offset operand, otherwise they are taken to be zero.

Operations then proceed to Unnormalized Texel Coordinate Operations.

### 16.6. Unnormalized Texel Coordinate Operations

#### 16.6.1. $(u,v,w,a)$ to $(i,j,k,l,n)$ Transformation And Array Layer Selection

The unnormalized texel coordinates are transformed to integer texel coordinates relative to the selected mipmap level.

The layer index $l$ is computed as:

\[
l = \text{clamp}(\text{RNE}(a), 0, \text{layerCount} - 1) + \text{baseArrayLayer}
\]

where \text{layerCount} is the number of layers in the image subresource range of the image view, \text{baseArrayLayer} is the first layer from the subresource range, and where:

\[
\text{RNE}(a) = \begin{cases} \text{roundTiesToEven}(a) & \text{preferred, from IEEE Std 754-2008 Floating-Point Arithmetic} \\
    \lfloor a + 0.5 \rfloor & \text{alternative} \end{cases}
\]

The sample index $n$ is assigned the value 0.

Nearest filtering (\text{VK_FILTER_NEAREST}) computes the integer texel coordinates that the unnormalized coordinates lie within:
where:

\[
\begin{align*}
  i &= \lfloor u + \text{shift} \rfloor \\
  j &= \lfloor v + \text{shift} \rfloor \\
  k &= \lfloor w + \text{shift} \rfloor
\end{align*}
\]

shift = 0.0

Linear filtering (VK_FILTER_LINEAR) computes a set of neighboring coordinates which bound the unnormalized coordinates. The integer texel coordinates are combinations of \(i_0\) or \(i_1\), \(j_0\) or \(j_1\), \(k_0\) or \(k_1\), as well as weights \(\alpha\), \(\beta\), and \(\gamma\).

\[
\begin{align*}
  i_0 &= \lfloor u - \text{shift} \rfloor \\
  i_1 &= i_0 + 1 \\
  j_0 &= \lfloor v - \text{shift} \rfloor \\
  j_1 &= j_0 + 1 \\
  k_0 &= \lfloor w - \text{shift} \rfloor \\
  k_1 &= k_0 + 1
\end{align*}
\]

\[
\begin{align*}
  \alpha &= \text{frac}(u - \text{shift}) \\
  \beta &= \text{frac}(v - \text{shift}) \\
  \gamma &= \text{frac}(w - \text{shift})
\end{align*}
\]

where:

shift = 0.5

and where:

\[
\text{frac}(x) = x - \lfloor x \rfloor
\]

where the number of fraction bits retained is specified by \texttt{VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::subTexelPrecisionBits}.

### 16.7. Integer Texel Coordinate Operations

The \texttt{OpImageFetch} and \texttt{OpImageFetchSparse} SPIR-V instructions may supply a LOD from which texels are to be fetched using the optional SPIR-V operand \texttt{Lod}. Other integer-coordinate operations must not. If the \texttt{Lod} is provided then it must be an integer.

The image level selected is:

\[
\begin{align*}
  d &= \text{level}_{\text{base}} + \begin{cases} \\
  \text{Lod} & \text{(from optional SPIR-V operand)} \\
  0 & \text{otherwise}
\end{cases}
\end{align*}
\]

If \(d\) does not lie in the range \([\text{baseMipLevel, baseMipLevel + levelCount}]\) then any values fetched are undefined, and any writes (if supported) are discarded.
16.8. Image Sample Operations

16.8.1. Wrapping Operation

_Cube_ images ignore the wrap modes specified in the sampler. Instead, if _VK_FILTER_NEAREST_ is used within a mip level then _VK_SAMPLER_ADDRESS_MODE_CLAMP_TO_EDGE_ is used, and if _VK_FILTER_LINEAR_ is used within a mip level then sampling at the edges is performed as described earlier in the _Cube map edge handling_ section.

The first integer texel coordinate _i_ is transformed based on the _addressModeU_ parameter of the sampler.

\[
    i = \begin{cases} 
        \frac{i \mod \text{size}}{(\text{size} - 1) - \text{mirror}((i \mod (2 \times \text{size})) - \text{size})} & \text{for repeat} \\
        \text{clamp}(i, 0, \text{size} - 1) & \text{for mirrored repeat} \\
        \text{clamp}(i, -1, \text{size}) & \text{for clamp to edge} \\
        \text{clamp}(\text{mirror}(i), 0, \text{size} - 1) & \text{for clamp to border} \\
        \text{clamp}(\text{mirror}(i), 0, \text{size} - 1) & \text{for mirror clamp to edge}
    \end{cases}
\]

where:

\[
    \text{mirror}(n) = \begin{cases} 
        n & \text{for } n \geq 0 \\
        -1(n + 1) & \text{otherwise}
    \end{cases}
\]

_j_ (for 2D and _Cube_ image) and _k_ (for 3D image) are similarly transformed based on the _addressModeV_ and _addressModeW_ parameters of the sampler, respectively.

16.8.2. Texel Gathering

SPIR-V instructions with _Gather_ in the name return a vector derived from 4 texels in the base level of the image view. The rules for the _VK_FILTER_LINEAR_ minification filter are applied to identify the four selected texels. Each texel is then converted to an RGBA value according to _conversion to RGBA_ and then _swizzled_. A four-component vector is then assembled by taking the component indicated by the _Component_ value in the instruction from the swizzled color value of the four texels. If the operation does not use the _ConstOffsets_ image operand then the four texels form the 2 \( \times \) 2 rectangle used for texture filtering:

\[
    \tau[R] = \tau_{i0,j0}[\text{level}_{\text{base}}][\text{comp}] \\
    \tau[G] = \tau_{i1,j0}[\text{level}_{\text{base}}][\text{comp}] \\
    \tau[B] = \tau_{i0,j1}[\text{level}_{\text{base}}][\text{comp}] \\
    \tau[A] = \tau_{i1,j1}[\text{level}_{\text{base}}][\text{comp}]
\]

If the operation does use the _ConstOffsets_ image operand then the offsets allow a custom filter to be defined:

\[
    \tau[R] = \tau_{i0,j0} + \lambda_0[\text{level}_{\text{base}}][\text{comp}] \\
    \tau[G] = \tau_{i0,j0} + \lambda_1[\text{level}_{\text{base}}][\text{comp}] \\
    \tau[B] = \tau_{i0,j0} + \lambda_2[\text{level}_{\text{base}}][\text{comp}] \\
    \tau[A] = \tau_{i0,j0} + \lambda_3[\text{level}_{\text{base}}][\text{comp}]
\]

where:
OpImage*Gather must not be used on a sampled image with sampler Y’C_aC_b conversion enabled.

16.8.3. Texel Filtering

Texel filtering is first performed for each level (either d or d_hi and d_lo).

If \( \lambda \) is less than or equal to zero, the texture is said to be magnified, and the filter mode within a mip level is selected by the magFilter in the sampler. If \( \lambda \) is greater than zero, the texture is said to be minified, and the filter mode within a mip level is selected by the minFilter in the sampler.

**Texel Nearest Filtering**

Within a mip level, VK_FILTER_NEAREST filtering selects a single value using the (i, j, k) texel coordinates, with all texels taken from layer l.

\[
\tau[level] = \begin{cases} 
\tau_{ijk}[level], & \text{for 3D image} \\
\tau_{ij}[level], & \text{for 2D or Cube image} \\
\tau_{i}[level], & \text{for 1D image}
\end{cases}
\]

**Texel Linear Filtering**

Within a mip level, VK_FILTER_LINEAR filtering combines 8 (for 3D), 4 (for 2D or Cube), or 2 (for 1D) texel values, together with their linear weights. The linear weights are derived from the fractions computed earlier:

\[
w_{i_0} = (1 - \alpha) \\
w_{i_1} = (\alpha) \\
w_{j_0} = (1 - \beta) \\
w_{j_1} = (\beta) \\
w_{k_0} = (1 - \gamma) \\
w_{k_1} = (\gamma)
\]

The values of multiple texels, together with their weights, are combined using a weighted average to produce a filtered value:

\[
\tau_{3D} = \sum_{k=k_0}^{k_1} \sum_{j=j_0}^{j_1} \sum_{i=i_0}^{i_1} (w_i)(w_j)(w_k)\tau_{ijk}
\]

\[
\tau_{2D} = \sum_{j=j_0}^{j_1} \sum_{i=i_0}^{i_1} (w_j)(w_i)\tau_{ij}
\]

\[
\tau_{1D} = \sum_{i=i_0}^{i_1} (w_i)\tau_{i}
\]
Texel Mipmap Filtering

**VK_SAMPLER_MIPMAP_MODE_NEAREST** filtering returns the value of a single mipmap level, \( \tau = \tau[d] \).

**VK_SAMPLER_MIPMAP_MODE_LINEAR** filtering combines the values of multiple mipmap levels (\( \tau[hi] \) and \( \tau[lo] \)), together with their linear weights.

The linear weights are derived from the fraction computed earlier:

\[
\begin{align*}
    w_{hi} &= (1 - \delta) \\
    w_{lo} &= \delta
\end{align*}
\]

The values of multiple mipmap levels together with their linear weights, are combined using a weighted average to produce a final filtered value:

\[
\tau = (w_{hi})\tau[hi] + (w_{lo})\tau[lo]
\]

Texel Anisotropic Filtering

Anisotropic filtering is enabled by the `anisotropyEnable` in the sampler. When enabled, the image filtering scheme accounts for a degree of anisotropy.

The particular scheme for anisotropic texture filtering is implementation-dependent. Implementations **should** consider the `magFilter`, `minFilter` and `mipmapMode` of the sampler to control the specifics of the anisotropic filtering scheme used. In addition, implementations **should** consider `minLod` and `maxLod` of the sampler.

The following describes one particular approach to implementing anisotropic filtering for the 2D Image case, implementations **may** choose other methods:

Given a `magFilter`, `minFilter` of **VK_FILTER_LINEAR** and a `mipmapMode` of **VK_SAMPLER_MIPMAP_MODE_NEAREST**:

Instead of a single isotropic sample, \( N \) isotropic samples are sampled within the image footprint of the image level \( d \) to approximate an anisotropic filter. The sum \( \tau_{2D\text{Aniso}} \) is defined using the single isotropic \( \tau_{2D}(u,v) \) at level \( d \).

\[
\begin{align*}
    \tau_{2D\text{Aniso}} &= \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^{N} \tau_{2D}\left(u\left(x - \frac{1}{2} + \frac{i}{N+1}, y\right), \left(v\left(x - \frac{1}{2} + \frac{i}{N+1}, y\right)\right)\right), & \text{when } \rho_y > \rho_x \\
    \tau_{2D\text{Aniso}} &= \frac{1}{N} \sum_{i=1}^{N} \tau_{2D}\left(u\left(x, y - \frac{1}{2} + \frac{i}{N+1}\right), \left(v\left(x, y - \frac{1}{2} + \frac{i}{N+1}\right)\right)\right), & \text{when } \rho_y \geq \rho_x
\end{align*}
\]

16.9. Image Operation Steps

Each step described in this chapter is performed by a subset of the image instructions:

- Texel Input Validation Operations, Format Conversion, Texel Replacement, Conversion to RGBA, and Component Swizzle: Performed by all instructions except `OpImageWrite`.
- Depth Comparison: Performed by `OpImage*Dref` instructions.
• All Texel output operations: Performed by `OpImageWrite`.
• Projection: Performed by all `OpImage*Proj` instructions.
• Derivative Image Operations, Cube Map Operations, Scale Factor Operation, Level-of-Detail Operation and Image Level(s) Selection, and Texel Anisotropic Filtering: Performed by all `OpImageSample*` and `OpImageSparseSample*` instructions.
• (s,t,r,q,a) to (u,v,w,a) Transformation, Wrapping, and (u,v,w,a) to (i,j,k,l,n) Transformation And Array Layer Selection: Performed by all `OpImageSample`, `OpImageSparseSample`, and `OpImage*Gather` instructions.
• Texel Gathering: Performed by `OpImage*Gather` instructions.
• Texel Filtering: Performed by all `OpImageSample*` and `OpImageSparseSample*` instructions.
• Sparse Residency: Performed by all `OpImageSparse*` instructions.

16.10. Image Query Instructions

16.10.1. Image Property Queries

`OpImageQuerySize`, `OpImageQuerySizeLod`, `OpImageQueryLevels`, and `OpImageQuerySamples` query properties of the image descriptor that would be accessed by a shader image operation.

`OpImageQuerySizeLod` returns the size of the image level identified by the Level of Detail operand. If that level does not exist in the image, then the value returned is undefined.

16.10.2. Lod Query

`OpImageQueryLod` returns the Lod parameters that would be used in an image operation with the given image and coordinates. The steps described in this chapter are performed as if for `OpImageSampleImplicitLod`, up to Scale Factor Operation, Level-of-Detail Operation and Image Level(s) Selection. The return value is the vector $(\lambda', d)$. These values may be subject to implementation-specific maxima and minima for very large, out-of-range values.
Chapter 17. Queries

Queries provide a mechanism to return information about the processing of a sequence of Vulkan commands. Query operations are asynchronous, and as such, their results are not returned immediately. Instead, their results, and their availability status are stored in a Query Pool. The state of these queries can be read back on the host, or copied to a buffer object on the device.

The supported query types are Occlusion Queries, Pipeline Statistics Queries, Result Status Queries, Video Encode Bitstream Queries, and Timestamp Queries. Performance Queries are supported if the associated extension is available.

Several additional queries with specific purposes associated with ray tracing are available if the corresponding extensions are supported, as described for VkQueryType.

17.1. Query Pools

Queries are managed using query pool objects. Each query pool is a collection of a specific number of queries of a particular type.

Query pools are represented by VkQueryPool handles:

// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VK_DEFINE_NON_DISPATCHABLE_HANDLE(VkQueryPool)

To create a query pool, call:

// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkCreateQueryPool(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkQueryPoolCreateInfo* pCreateInfo,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator,
    VkQueryPool* pQueryPool);

- device is the logical device that creates the query pool.
- pCreateInfo is a pointer to a VkQueryPoolCreateInfo structure containing the number and type of queries to be managed by the pool.
- pAllocator controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
- pQueryPool is a pointer to a VkQueryPool handle in which the resulting query pool object is returned.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkCreateQueryPool-device-parameter**
  
  *device* must be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- **VUID-vkCreateQueryPool-pCreateInfo-parameter**
  
  *pCreateInfo* must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkQueryPoolCreateInfo` structure

- **VUID-vkCreateQueryPool-pAllocator-parameter**
  
  If *pAllocator* is not `NULL`, *pAllocator* must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkAllocationCallbacks` structure

- **VUID-vkCreateQueryPool-pQueryPool-parameter**
  
  *pQueryPool* must be a valid pointer to a `VkQueryPool` handle

Return Codes

**Success**

- `VK_SUCCESS`

**Failure**

- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY`

The `VkQueryPoolCreateInfo` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkQueryPoolCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pParent;
    VkQueryPoolCreateFlags flags;
    VkQueryType queryType;
    uint32_t queryCount;
    VkQueryPipelineStatisticFlags pipelineStatistics;
} VkQueryPoolCreateInfo;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **flags** is reserved for future use.
- **queryType** is a `VkQueryType` value specifying the type of queries managed by the pool.
- **queryCount** is the number of queries managed by the pool.
- **pipelineStatistics** is a bitmask of `VkQueryPipelineStatisticFlagBits` specifying which counters will be returned in queries on the new pool, as described below in Pipeline Statistics Queries.

`pipelineStatistics` is ignored if `queryType` is not `VK_QUERY_TYPE_PIPELINE_STATISTICS`. 
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkQueryPoolCreateInfo-queryType-00791
  If the pipeline statistics queries feature is not enabled, queryType must not be VK_QUERY_TYPE_PIPELINE_STATISTICS.

- VUID-VkQueryPoolCreateInfo-queryType-00792
  If queryType is VK_QUERY_TYPE_PIPELINE_STATISTICS, pipelineStatistics must be a valid combination of VkQueryPipelineStatisticFlagBits values.

- VUID-VkQueryPoolCreateInfo-queryType-03222
  If queryType is VK_QUERY_TYPE_PERFORMANCE_QUERY_KHR, the pNext chain must include a VkQueryPoolPerformanceCreateInfoKHR structure.

- VUID-VkQueryPoolCreateInfo-queryCount-02763
  queryCount must be greater than 0.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkQueryPoolCreateInfo-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_QUERY_POOL_CREATE_INFO.

- VUID-VkQueryPoolCreateInfo-pNext-pNext
  Each pNext member of any structure (including this one) in the pNext chain must be either NULL or a pointer to a valid instance of VkQueryPoolPerformanceCreateInfoKHR or VkVideoProfileKHR.

- VUID-VkQueryPoolCreateInfo-sType-unique
  The sType value of each struct in the pNext chain must be unique.

- VUID-VkQueryPoolCreateInfo-flags-zerobitmask
  flags must be 0.

- VUID-VkQueryPoolCreateInfo-queryType-parameter
  queryType must be a valid VkQueryType value.

// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkQueryPoolCreateFlags;

VkQueryPoolCreateFlags is a bitmask type for setting a mask, but is currently reserved for future use.

The VkQueryPoolPerformanceCreateInfoKHR structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkQueryPoolPerformanceCreateInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    uint32_t queueFamilyIndex;
    uint32_t counterIndexCount;
    const uint32_t* pCounterIndices;
} VkQueryPoolPerformanceCreateInfoKHR;

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `queueFamilyIndex` is the queue family index to create this performance query pool for.
- `counterIndexCount` is the length of the `pCounterIndices` array.
- `pCounterIndices` is a pointer to an array of indices into the `vkEnumeratePhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyPerformanceQueryCountersKHR::pCounters` to enable in this performance query pool.

**Valid Usage**

- VUID-VkQueryPoolPerformanceCreateInfoKHR-queueFamilyIndex-03236
  `queueFamilyIndex` must be a valid queue family index of the device

- VUID-VkQueryPoolPerformanceCreateInfoKHR-performanceCounterQueryPools-03237
  The `performanceCounterQueryPools` feature must be enabled

- VUID-VkQueryPoolPerformanceCreateInfoKHR-pCounterIndices-03321
  Each element of `pCounterIndices` must be in the range of counters reported by `vkEnumeratePhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyPerformanceQueryCountersKHR` for the queue family specified in `queueFamilyIndex`

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-VkQueryPoolPerformanceCreateInfoKHR-sType-sType
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_QUERY_POOL_PERFORMANCE_CREATE_INFO_KHR`

- VUID-VkQueryPoolPerformanceCreateInfoKHR-pCounterIndices-parameter
  `pCounterIndices` must be a valid pointer to an array of `counterIndexCount uint32_t` values

- VUID-VkQueryPoolPerformanceCreateInfoKHR-counterIndexCount-arraylength
  `counterIndexCount` must be greater than 0

To query the number of passes required to query a performance query pool on a physical device, call:
void vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyPerformanceQueryPassesKHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    const VkQueryPoolPerformanceCreateInfoKHR* pPerformanceQueryCreateInfo,
    uint32_t* pNumPasses);

- `physicalDevice` is the handle to the physical device whose queue family performance query counter properties will be queried.
- `pPerformanceQueryCreateInfo` is a pointer to a `VkQueryPoolPerformanceCreateInfoKHR` of the performance query that is to be created.
- `pNumPasses` is a pointer to an integer related to the number of passes required to query the performance query pool, as described below.

The `pPerformanceQueryCreateInfo` member `VkQueryPoolPerformanceCreateInfoKHR::queueFamilyIndex` must be a queue family of `physicalDevice`. The number of passes required to capture the counters specified in the `pPerformanceQueryCreateInfo` member `VkQueryPoolPerformanceCreateInfoKHR::pCounters` is returned in `pNumPasses`.

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyPerformanceQueryPassesKHR-physicalDevice-parameter `physicalDevice` must be a valid `VkPhysicalDevice` handle
- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyPerformanceQueryPassesKHR-pPerformanceQueryCreateInfo-parameter `pPerformanceQueryCreateInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkQueryPoolPerformanceCreateInfoKHR` structure
- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyPerformanceQueryPassesKHR-pNumPasses-parameter `pNumPasses` must be a valid pointer to a `uint32_t` value

To destroy a query pool, call:

void vkDestroyQueryPool(
    VkDevice device,
    VkQueryPool queryPool,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator);

- `device` is the logical device that destroys the query pool.
- `queryPool` is the query pool to destroy.
- `pAllocator` controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkDestroyQueryPool-queryPool-00793
  All submitted commands that refer to `queryPool` must have completed execution

- VUID-vkDestroyQueryPool-queryPool-00794
  If `VkAllocationCallbacks` were provided when `queryPool` was created, a compatible set of callbacks must be provided here

- VUID-vkDestroyQueryPool-queryPool-00795
  If no `VkAllocationCallbacks` were provided when `queryPool` was created, `pAllocator` must be `NULL`

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkDestroyQueryPool-device-parameter
  `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- VUID-vkDestroyQueryPool-queryPool-parameter
  If `queryPool` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, `queryPool` must be a valid `VkQueryPool` handle

- VUID-vkDestroyQueryPool-pAllocator-parameter
  If `pAllocator` is not `NULL`, `pAllocator` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkAllocationCallbacks` structure

- VUID-vkDestroyQueryPool-queryPool-parent
  If `queryPool` is a valid handle, it must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from `device`

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `queryPool` must be externally synchronized

Possible values of `VkQueryPoolCreateInfo::queryType`, specifying the type of queries managed by the pool, are:
typedef enum VkQueryType {

    VK_QUERY_TYPE_OCCLUSION = 0,
    VK_QUERY_TYPE_PIPELINE_STATISTICS = 1,
    VK_QUERY_TYPE_TIMESTAMP = 2,

    #ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
        // Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
        VK_QUERY_TYPE_RESULT_STATUS_ONLY_KHR = 1000023000,
    #endif

    // Provided by VK_KHR_performance_query
    VK_QUERY_TYPE_PERFORMANCE_QUERY_KHR = 1000116000,

    // Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
    VK_QUERY_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_COMPACTED_SIZE_KHR = 1000150000,
    VK_QUERY_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_SERIALIZATION_SIZE_KHR = 1000150001,

    #ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
        // Provided by VK_KHR_video_encode_queue
        VK_QUERY_TYPE_VIDEO_ENCODE_BITSTREAM_BUFFER_RANGE_KHR = 1000299000,
    #endif

    VkQueryType
};

• VK_QUERY_TYPE_OCCLUSION specifies an occlusion query.
• VK_QUERY_TYPE_PIPELINE_STATISTICS specifies a pipeline statistics query.
• VK_QUERY_TYPE_TIMESTAMP specifies a timestamp query.
• VK_QUERY_TYPE_PERFORMANCE_QUERY_KHR specifies a performance query.
• VK_QUERY_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_COMPACTED_SIZE_KHR specifies an acceleration structure size query for use with vkCmdWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR or vkWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR.
• VK_QUERY_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_SERIALIZATION_SIZE_KHR specifies a serialization acceleration structure size query.
• VK_QUERY_TYPE_RESULT_STATUS_ONLY_KHR specifies a result status query.
• VK_QUERY_TYPE_VIDEO_ENCODE_BITSTREAM_BUFFER_RANGE_KHR specifies a video encode bitstream range query.

17.2. Query Operation

The operation of queries is controlled by the commands vkCmdBeginQuery, vkCmdEndQuery, vkCmdResetQueryPool, vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults, vkCmdWriteTimestamp2KHR, and vkCmdWriteTimestamp.

In order for a VkCommandBuffer to record query management commands, the queue family for which its VkCommandPool was created must support the appropriate type of operations (graphics, compute) suitable for the query type of a given query pool.

Each query in a query pool has a status that is either unavailable or available, and also has state to
store the numerical results of a query operation of the type requested when the query pool was created. Resetting a query via `vkCmdResetQueryPool` sets the status to unavailable and makes the numerical results undefined. Performing a query operation with `vkCmdBeginQuery` and `vkCmdEndQuery` changes the status to available when the query finishes, and updates the numerical results. Both the availability status and numerical results are retrieved by calling either `vkGetQueryPoolResults` or `vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults`.

Query commands, for the same query and submitted to the same queue, execute in their entirety in submission order, relative to each other. In effect there is an implicit execution dependency from each such query command to all query commands previously submitted to the same queue. There is one significant exception to this; if the flags parameter of `vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults` does not include `VK_QUERY_RESULT_WAIT_BIT`, execution of `vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults` may happen-before the results of `vkCmdEndQuery` are available.

After query pool creation, each query **must** be reset before it is used. Queries **must** also be reset between uses.

If a logical device includes multiple physical devices, then each command that writes a query **must** execute on a single physical device, and any call to `vkCmdBeginQuery` **must** execute the corresponding `vkCmdEndQuery` command on the same physical device.

To reset a range of queries in a query pool on a queue, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkCmdResetQueryPool(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    VkQueryPool queryPool,
    uint32_t firstQuery,
    uint32_t queryCount);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which this command will be recorded.
- `queryPool` is the handle of the query pool managing the queries being reset.
- `firstQuery` is the initial query index to reset.
- `queryCount` is the number of queries to reset.

When executed on a queue, this command sets the status of query indices `[firstQuery, firstQuery + queryCount - 1]` to unavailable.

If the `queryType` used to create `queryPool` was `VK_QUERY_TYPE_PERFORMANCE_QUERY_KHR`, this command sets the status of query indices `[firstQuery, firstQuery + queryCount - 1]` to unavailable for each pass of `queryPool`, as indicated by a call to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyPerformanceQueryPassesKHR`. 
Note
Because `vkCmdResetQueryPool` resets all the passes of the indicated queries, applications must not record a `vkCmdResetQueryPool` command for a `queryPool` created with `VK_QUERY_TYPE_PERFORMANCE_QUERY_KHR` in a command buffer that needs to be submitted multiple times as indicated by a call to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyPerformanceQueryPassesKHR`. Otherwise applications will never be able to complete the recorded queries.

Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkCmdResetQueryPool-firstQuery-00796**
  `firstQuery` must be less than the number of queries in `queryPool`

- **VUID-vkCmdResetQueryPool-firstQuery-00797**
  The sum of `firstQuery` and `queryCount` must be less than or equal to the number of queries in `queryPool`

- **VUID-vkCmdResetQueryPool-None-02841**
  All queries used by the command must not be active

- **VUID-vkCmdResetQueryPool-firstQuery-02862**
  If `queryPool` was created with `VK_QUERY_TYPE_PERFORMANCE_QUERY_KHR`, this command must not be recorded in a command buffer that, either directly or through secondary command buffers, also contains begin commands for a query from the set of queries `[firstQuery, firstQuery + queryCount - 1]`

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkCmdResetQueryPool-commandBuffer-parameter**
  `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle

- **VUID-vkCmdResetQueryPool-queryPool-parameter**
  `queryPool` must be a valid `VkQueryPool` handle

- **VUID-vkCmdResetQueryPool-commandBuffer-recording**
  `commandBuffer` must be in the recording state

- **VUID-vkCmdResetQueryPool-commandBuffer-cmdpool**
  The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support graphics, or compute operations

- **VUID-vkCmdResetQueryPool-renderpass**
  This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance

- **VUID-vkCmdResetQueryPool-commonparent**
  Both of `commandBuffer`, and `queryPool` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`
Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized.
- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized.

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Graphics, Compute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Once queries are reset and ready for use, query commands can be issued to a command buffer. Occlusion queries and pipeline statistics queries count events - drawn samples and pipeline stage invocations, respectively - resulting from commands that are recorded between a `vkCmdBeginQuery` command and a `vkCmdEndQuery` command within a specified command buffer, effectively scoping a set of drawing and/or dispatching commands. Timestamp queries write timestamps to a query pool. Performance queries record performance counters to a query pool.

A query must begin and end in the same command buffer, although if it is a primary command buffer, and the inherited queries feature is enabled, it can execute secondary command buffers during the query operation. For a secondary command buffer to be executed while a query is active, it must set the `occlusionQueryEnable`, `queryFlags`, and/or `pipelineStatistics` members of `VkCommandBufferInheritanceInfo` to conservative values, as described in the Command Buffer Recording section. A query must either begin and end inside the same subpass of a render pass instance, or must both begin and end outside of a render pass instance (i.e. contain entire render pass instances).

If queries are used while executing a render pass instance that has multiview enabled, the query uses N consecutive query indices in the query pool (starting at `query`) where N is the number of bits set in the view mask in the subpass the query is used in. How the numerical results of the query are distributed among the queries is implementation-dependent. For example, some implementations may write each view's results to a distinct query, while other implementations may write the total result to the first query and write zero to the other queries. However, the sum of the results in all the queries must accurately reflect the total result of the query summed over all views. Applications can sum the results from all the queries to compute the total result.

Queries used with multiview rendering must not span subpasses, i.e. they must begin and end in the same subpass.

To begin a query, call:
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0

void vkCmdBeginQuery(  
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,  
    VkQueryPool queryPool,  
    uint32_t query,  
    VkQueryControlFlags flags);

• commandBuffer is the command buffer into which this command will be recorded.
• queryPool is the query pool that will manage the results of the query.
• query is the query index within the query pool that will contain the results.
• flags is a bitmask of VkQueryControlFlagBits specifying constraints on the types of queries that can be performed.

If the queryType of the pool is VK_QUERY_TYPE_OCCLUSION and flags contains VK_QUERY_CONTROL_PRECISE_BIT, an implementation must return a result that matches the actual number of samples passed. This is described in more detail in Occlusion Queries.

After beginning a query, that query is considered active within the command buffer it was called in until that same query is ended. Queries active in a primary command buffer when secondary command buffers are executed are considered active for those secondary command buffers.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkCmdBeginQuery-None-00807
  All queries used by the command must be unavailable

- VUID-vkCmdBeginQuery-queryType-02804
  The queryType used to create queryPool must not be VK_QUERY_TYPE_TIMESTAMP

- VUID-vkCmdBeginQuery-queryType-04728
  The queryType used to create queryPool must not be
  VK_QUERY_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_COMPACTED_SIZE_KHR
  or
  VK_QUERY_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_SERIALIZATION_SIZE_KHR

- VUID-vkCmdBeginQuery-queryType-00800
  If the precise occlusion queries feature is not enabled, or the queryType used to create
  queryPool was not VK_QUERY_TYPE_OCCLUSION, flags must not contain
  VK_QUERY_CONTROL_PRECISE_BIT

- VUID-vkCmdBeginQuery-query-00802
  query must be less than the number of queries in queryPool

- VUID-vkCmdBeginQuery-queryType-00803
  If the queryType used to create queryPool was VK_QUERY_TYPE_OCCLUSION, the VkCommandPool
  that commandBuffer was allocated from must support graphics operations

- VUID-vkCmdBeginQuery-queryType-00804
  If the queryType used to create queryPool was VK_QUERY_TYPE_PIPELINE_STATISTICS and any
  of the pipelineStatistics indicate graphics operations, the VkCommandPool that
  commandBuffer was allocated from must support graphics operations

- VUID-vkCmdBeginQuery-queryType-00805
  If the queryType used to create queryPool was VK_QUERY_TYPE_PIPELINE_STATISTICS and any
  of the pipelineStatistics indicate compute operations, the VkCommandPool that
  commandBuffer was allocated from must support compute operations

- VUID-vkCmdBeginQuery-query-00808
  If called within a render pass instance, the sum of query and the number of bits set in the
  current subpass's view mask must be less than or equal to the number of queries in queryPool

- VUID-vkCmdBeginQuery-queryType-04862
  If the queryType used to create queryPool was
  VK_QUERY_TYPE_VIDEO_ENCODE_BITSTREAM_BUFFER_RANGE_KHR
  the VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must support video encode operations

- VUID-vkCmdBeginQuery-queryPool-01922
  queryPool must have been created with a queryType that differs from that of any queries
  that are active within commandBuffer

- VUID-vkCmdBeginQuery-queryPool-03223
  If queryPool was created with a queryType of VK_QUERY_TYPE_PERFORMANCE_QUERY_KHR, the
  profiling lock must have been held before vkBeginCommandBuffer was called on
  commandBuffer

- VUID-vkCmdBeginQuery-queryPool-03224
If `queryPool` was created with a `queryType` of `VK_QUERY_TYPE_PERFORMANCE_QUERY_KHR` and one of the counters used to create `queryPool` was `VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_SCOPE_COMMAND_BUFFER_KHR`, the query begin must be the first recorded command in `commandBuffer`.

- VUID-vkCmdBeginQuery-queryPool-03225
  If `queryPool` was created with a `queryType` of `VK_QUERY_TYPE_PERFORMANCE_QUERY_KHR` and one of the counters used to create `queryPool` was `VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_SCOPE_RENDER_PASS_KHR`, the begin command must not be recorded within a render pass instance.

- VUID-vkCmdBeginQuery-queryPool-03226
  If `queryPool` was created with a `queryType` of `VK_QUERY_TYPE_PERFORMANCE_QUERY_KHR` and another query pool with a `queryType` `VK_QUERY_TYPE_PERFORMANCE_QUERY_KHR` has been used within `commandBuffer`, its parent primary command buffer or secondary command buffer recorded within the same parent primary command buffer as `commandBuffer`, the `performanceCounterMultipleQueryPools` feature must be enabled.

- VUID-vkCmdBeginQuery,None-02863
  If `queryPool` was created with a `queryType` of `VK_QUERY_TYPE_PERFORMANCE_QUERY_KHR`, this command must not be recorded in a command buffer that, either directly or through secondary command buffers, also contains a `vkCmdResetQueryPool` command affecting the same query.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdBeginQuery-commandBuffer-parameter
  `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle.

- VUID-vkCmdBeginQuery-queryPool-parameter
  `queryPool` must be a valid `VkQueryPool` handle.

- VUID-vkCmdBeginQuery-flags-parameter
  `flags` must be a valid combination of `VkQueryControlFlagBits` values.

- VUID-vkCmdBeginQuery-commandBuffer-recording
  `commandBuffer` must be in the recording state.

- VUID-vkCmdBeginQuery-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support graphics, or compute operations.

- VUID-vkCmdBeginQuery-commonparent
  Both of `commandBuffer`, and `queryPool` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`
Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` **must** be externally synchronized.
- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from **must** be externally synchronized.

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Bits which **can** be set in `vkCmdBeginQuery::flags`, specifying constraints on the types of queries that **can** be performed, are:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkQueryControlFlagBits {
    VK_QUERY_CONTROL_PRECISE_BIT = 0x00000001,
} VkQueryControlFlagBits;
```

- `VK_QUERY_CONTROL_PRECISE_BIT` specifies the precision of occlusion queries.

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkQueryControlFlags;
```

`VkQueryControlFlags` is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more `VkQueryControlFlagBits`.

To end a query after the set of desired drawing or dispatching commands is executed, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkCmdEndQuery(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,  
    VkQueryPool queryPool,          
    uint32_t query);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which this command will be recorded.
- `queryPool` is the query pool that is managing the results of the query.
- `query` is the query index within the query pool where the result is stored.

As queries operate asynchronously, ending a query does not immediately set the query's status to available. A query is considered **finished** when the final results of the query are ready to be retrieved by `vkGetQueryPoolResults` and `vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults`, and this is when the
query's status is set to available.

Once a query is ended the query **must** finish in finite time, unless the state of the query is changed using other commands, e.g. by issuing a reset of the query.

**Valid Usage**

- **VUID-vkCmdEndQuery-None-01923**
  All queries used by the command **must** be active

- **VUID-vkCmdEndQuery-query-00810**
  query **must** be less than the number of queries in **queryPool**

- **VUID-vkCmdEndQuery-query-00812**
  If **vkCmdEndQuery** is called within a render pass instance, the sum of query and the number of bits set in the current subpass's view mask **must** be less than or equal to the number of queries in **queryPool**

- **VUID-vkCmdEndQuery-queryPool-03227**
  If **queryPool** was created with a **queryType** of **VK_QUERY_TYPE_PERFORMANCE_QUERY_KHR** and one or more of the counters used to create **queryPool** was **VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_SCOPE_COMMAND_BUFFER_KHR**, the **vkCmdEndQuery** **must** be the last recorded command in **commandBuffer**

- **VUID-vkCmdEndQuery-queryPool-03228**
  If **queryPool** was created with a **queryType** of **VK_QUERY_TYPE_PERFORMANCE_QUERY_KHR** and one or more of the counters used to create **queryPool** was **VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_SCOPE_RENDER_PASS_KHR**, the **vkCmdEndQuery** **must** not be recorded within a render pass instance

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- **VUID-vkCmdEndQuery-commandBuffer-parameter**
  **commandBuffer** **must** be a valid **VkCommandBuffer** handle

- **VUID-vkCmdEndQuery-queryPool-parameter**
  **queryPool** **must** be a valid **VkQueryPool** handle

- **VUID-vkCmdEndQuery-commandBuffer-recording**
  **commandBuffer** **must** be in the **recording** state

- **VUID-vkCmdEndQuery-commandBuffer-cmdpool**
  The **VkCommandPool** that **commandBuffer** was allocated from **must** support graphics, or compute operations

- **VUID-vkCmdEndQuery-commonparent**
  Both of **commandBuffer**, and **queryPool** **must** have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same **VkDevice**
Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized.
- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized.

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

An application can retrieve results either by requesting they be written into application-provided memory, or by requesting they be copied into a `VkBuffer`. In either case, the layout in memory is defined as follows:

- The first query’s result is written starting at the first byte requested by the command, and each subsequent query’s result begins `stride` bytes later.
- Occlusion queries, pipeline statistics queries, and timestamp queries store results in a tightly packed array of unsigned integers, either 32- or 64-bits as requested by the command, storing the numerical results and, if requested, the availability status.
- Performance queries store results in a tightly packed array whose type is determined by the `unit` member of the corresponding `VkPerformanceCounterKHR`.
- If `VK_QUERY_RESULT_WITH_AVAILABILITY_BIT` is used, the final element of each query’s result is an integer indicating whether the query’s result is available, with any non-zero value indicating that it is available.
- If `VK_QUERY_RESULT_WITH_STATUS_BIT_KHR` is used, the final element of each query’s result is an integer value indicating that status of the query result. Positive values indicate success, negative values indicate failure, and 0 indicates that the result is not yet available. Specific error codes are encoded in the `VkQueryResultStatusKHR` enumeration.
- Occlusion queries write one integer value - the number of samples passed. Pipeline statistics queries write one integer value for each bit that is enabled in the `pipelineStatistics` when the pool is created, and the statistics values are written in bit order starting from the least significant bit. Timestamp queries write one integer value. Performance queries write one `VkPerformanceCounterResultKHR` value for each `VkPerformanceCounterKHR` in the query.
- If more than one query is retrieved and `stride` is not at least as large as the size of the array of values corresponding to a single query, the values written to memory are undefined.

To retrieve status and results for a set of queries, call:
VkResult vkGetQueryPoolResults(
    VkDevice device, 
    VkQueryPool queryPool, 
    uint32_t firstQuery, 
    uint32_t queryCount, 
    size_t dataSize, 
    void* pData, 
    VkDeviceSize stride, 
    VkQueryResultFlags flags);

- **device** is the logical device that owns the query pool.
- **queryPool** is the query pool managing the queries containing the desired results.
- **firstQuery** is the initial query index.
- **queryCount** is the number of queries to read.
- **dataSize** is the size in bytes of the buffer pointed to by **pData**.
- **pData** is a pointer to a user-allocated buffer where the results will be written.
- **stride** is the stride in bytes between results for individual queries within **pData**.
- **flags** is a bitmask of **VkQueryResultFlagBits** specifying how and when results are returned.

The range of queries read is defined by \([\text{firstQuery}, \text{firstQuery} + \text{queryCount} - 1]\). For pipeline statistics queries, each query index in the pool contains one integer value for each bit that is enabled in **VkQueryPoolCreateInfo::pipelineStatistics** when the pool is created.

If no bits are set in **flags**, and all requested queries are in the available state, results are written as an array of 32-bit unsigned integer values. The behavior when not all queries are available, is described **below**.

If **VK_QUERY_RESULT_64_BIT** is not set and the result overflows a 32-bit value, the value **may** either wrap or saturate. Similarly, if **VK_QUERY_RESULT_64_BIT** is set and the result overflows a 64-bit value, the value **may** either wrap or saturate.

If **VK_QUERY_RESULT_WAIT_BIT** is set, Vulkan will wait for each query to be in the available state before retrieving the numerical results for that query. In this case, **vkGetQueryPoolResults** is guaranteed to succeed and return **VK_SUCCESS** if the queries become available in a finite time (i.e. if they have been issued and not reset). If queries will never finish (e.g. due to being reset but not issued), then **vkGetQueryPoolResults** **may** not return in finite time.

If **VK_QUERY_RESULT_WAIT_BIT** and **VK_QUERY_RESULT_PARTIAL_BIT** are both not set then no result values are written to **pData** for queries that are in the unavailable state at the time of the call, and **vkGetQueryPoolResults** returns **VK_NOT_READY**. However, availability state is still written to **pData** for those queries if **VK_QUERY_RESULT_WITH_AVAILABILITY_BIT** is set. Similarly, the status is still written to **pData** for those queries if **VK_QUERY_RESULT_WITH_STATUS_BIT_KHR** is set.

If **VK_QUERY_RESULT_WAIT_BIT** is not set, **vkGetQueryPoolResults** **may** return **VK_NOT_READY** if there are queries in the unavailable state.
Applications must take care to ensure that use of the VK_QUERY_RESULT_WAIT_BIT bit has the desired effect.

For example, if a query has been used previously and a command buffer records the commands `vkCmdResetQueryPool`, `vkCmdBeginQuery`, and `vkCmdEndQuery` for that query, then the query will remain in the available state until the `vkCmdResetQueryPool` command executes on a queue. Applications can use fences or events to ensure that a query has already been reset before checking for its results or availability status. Otherwise, a stale value could be returned from a previous use of the query.

The above also applies when VK_QUERY_RESULT_WAIT_BIT is used in combination with VK_QUERY_RESULT_WITH_AVAILABILITY_BIT. In this case, the returned availability status may reflect the result of a previous use of the query unless the `vkCmdResetQueryPool` command has been executed since the last use of the query.

A similar situation can arise with the VK_QUERY_RESULT_WITH_STATUS_BIT_KHR flag.

Applications can double-buffer query pool usage, with a pool per frame, and reset queries at the end of the frame in which they are read.

If VK_QUERY_RESULT_PARTIAL_BIT is set, VK_QUERY_RESULT_WAIT_BIT is not set, and the query's status is unavailable, an intermediate result value between zero and the final result value is written to pData for that query.

If VK_QUERY_RESULT_WITH_AVAILABILITY_BIT is set, the final integer value written for each query is non-zero if the query's status was available or zero if the status was unavailable. When VK_QUERY_RESULT_WITH_AVAILABILITY_BIT is used, implementations must guarantee that if they return a non-zero availability value then the numerical results must be valid, assuming the results are not reset by a subsequent command.

Satisfying this guarantee may require careful ordering by the application, e.g. to read the availability status before reading the results.

If VK_QUERY_RESULT_WITH_STATUS_BIT_KHR is set, the final integer value written for each query indicates whether the result is available or not, and whether an error occurred. A value of zero indicates that the results are not yet available. Positive values indicate that the operations within the query completed successfully, and the query results are valid. Negative values indicate that the operations within the query completed unsuccessfully.

Specific result codes are defined by the VkQueryResultStatusKHR enumeration.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkGetQueryPoolResults-firstQuery-00813**
  
  *firstQuery must be less than the number of queries in queryPool*

- **VUID-vkGetQueryPoolResults-flags-02828**
  
  If `VK_QUERY_RESULT_64_BIT` is not set in flags and the `queryType` used to create queryPool was not `VK_QUERY_TYPE_PERFORMANCE_QUERY_KHR`, then `pData` and `stride` must be multiples of 4

- **VUID-vkGetQueryPoolResults-flags-00815**
  
  If `VK_QUERY_RESULT_64_BIT` is set in flags then `pData` and `stride` must be multiples of 8

- **VUID-vkGetQueryPoolResults-queryType-03229**
  
  If the `queryType` used to create queryPool was `VK_QUERY_TYPE_PERFORMANCE_QUERY_KHR`, then `pData` and `stride` must be multiples of the size of `VkPerformanceCounterResultKHR`

- **VUID-vkGetQueryPoolResults-queryType-04519**
  
  If the `queryType` used to create queryPool was `VK_QUERY_TYPE_PERFORMANCE_QUERY_KHR`, then `stride` must be large enough to contain `VkQueryPoolPerformanceCreateInfoKHR::counterIndexCount` used to create queryPool times the size of `VkPerformanceCounterResultKHR`

- **VUID-vkGetQueryPoolResults-firstQuery-00816**
  
  The sum of `firstQuery` and `queryCount` must be less than or equal to the number of queries in queryPool

- **VUID-vkGetQueryPoolResults-dataSize-00817**
  
  `dataSize` must be large enough to contain the result of each query, as described here

- **VUID-vkGetQueryPoolResults-queryType-00818**
  
  If the `queryType` used to create queryPool was `VK_QUERY_TYPE_TIMESTAMP`, flags must not contain `VK_QUERY_RESULT_PARTIAL_BIT`

- **VUID-vkGetQueryPoolResults-queryType-03230**
  
  If the `queryType` used to create queryPool was `VK_QUERY_TYPE_PERFORMANCE_QUERY_KHR`, flags must not contain `VK_QUERY_RESULT_WITH_AVAILABILITY_BIT`, `VK_QUERY_RESULT_PARTIAL_BIT` or `VK_QUERY_RESULT_64_BIT`

- **VUID-vkGetQueryPoolResults-queryType-03231**
  
  If the `queryType` used to create queryPool was `VK_QUERY_TYPE_PERFORMANCE_QUERY_KHR`, the queryPool must have been recorded once for each pass as retrieved via a call to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyPerformanceQueryPassesKHR`

- **VUID-vkGetQueryPoolResults-queryType-04810**
  
  If the `queryType` used to create queryPool was `VK_QUERY_TYPE_RESULT_STATUS_ONLY_KHR`, flags must include `VK_QUERY_RESULT_WITH_STATUS_BIT_KHR`

- **VUID-vkGetQueryPoolResults-flags-04811**
  
  If flags includes `VK_QUERY_RESULT_WITH_STATUS_BIT_KHR`, it must not include `VK_QUERY_RESULT_WITH_AVAILABILITY_BIT`
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetQueryPoolResults-device-parameter
  device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- VUID-vkGetQueryPoolResults-queryPool-parameter
  queryPool must be a valid VkQueryPool handle

- VUID-vkGetQueryPoolResults-pData-parameter
  pData must be a valid pointer to an array of dataSize bytes

- VUID-vkGetQueryPoolResults-flags-parameter
  flags must be a valid combination of VkQueryResultFlagBits values

- VUID-vkGetQueryPoolResults-dataSize-arraylength
  dataSize must be greater than 0

- VUID-vkGetQueryPoolResults-queryPool-parent
  queryPool must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from device

Return Codes

Success
- VK_SUCCESS
- VK_NOT_READY

Failure
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST

Bits which can be set in vkGetQueryPoolResults::flags and vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults::flags, specifying how and when results are returned, are:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkQueryResultFlagBits {
    VK_QUERY_RESULT_64_BIT = 0x00000001,
    VK_QUERY_RESULT_WAIT_BIT = 0x00000002,
    VK_QUERY_RESULT_WITH_AVAILABILITY_BIT = 0x00000004,
    VK_QUERY_RESULT_PARTIAL_BIT = 0x00000008,
#ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
    VK_QUERY_RESULT_WITH_STATUS_BIT_KHR = 0x00000010,
#endif
} VkQueryResultFlagBits;
```

- VK_QUERY_RESULT_64_BIT specifies the results will be written as an array of 64-bit unsigned
integer values. If this bit is not set, the results will be written as an array of 32-bit unsigned integer values.

- **VK_QUERY_RESULT_WAIT_BIT** specifies that Vulkan will wait for each query’s status to become available before retrieving its results.
- **VK_QUERY_RESULT_WITH_AVAILABILITY_BIT** specifies that the availability status accompanies the results.
- **VK_QUERY_RESULT_PARTIAL_BIT** specifies that returning partial results is acceptable.
- **VK_QUERY_RESULT_WITH_STATUS_BIT_KHR** specifies that the last value returned in the query is a `VkQueryResultStatusKHR` value.

```cpp
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkQueryResultFlags;
```

`VkQueryResultFlags` is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more `VkQueryResultFlagBits`.

Specific status codes that **can** be returned from a query are:

```cpp
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
typedef enum VkQueryResultStatusKHR {
    VK_QUERY_RESULT_STATUS_ERROR_KHR = -1,
    VK_QUERY_RESULT_STATUS_NOT_READY_KHR = 0,
    VK_QUERY_RESULT_STATUS_COMPLETE_KHR = 1,
} VkQueryResultStatusKHR;
```

- **VK_QUERY_RESULT_STATUS_NOT_READY_KHR** specifies that the query result is not yet available.
- **VK_QUERY_RESULT_STATUS_ERROR_KHR** specifies that operations did not complete successfully.
- **VK_QUERY_RESULT_STATUS_COMPLETE_KHR** specifies that operations completed successfully and the query result is available.

To copy query statuses and numerical results directly to buffer memory, call:

```cpp
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    VkQueryPool queryPool,
    uint32_t firstQuery,
    uint32_t queryCount,
    VkBuffer dstBuffer,
    VkDeviceSize dstOffset,
    VkDeviceSize stride,
    VkQueryResultFlags flags);
```

- **commandBuffer** is the command buffer into which this command will be recorded.
- **queryPool** is the query pool managing the queries containing the desired results.
• **firstQuery** is the initial query index.

• **queryCount** is the number of queries. **firstQuery** and **queryCount** together define a range of queries.

• **dstBuffer** is a **VkBuffer** object that will receive the results of the copy command.

• **dstOffset** is an offset into **dstBuffer**.

• **stride** is the stride in bytes between results for individual queries within **dstBuffer**. The required size of the backing memory for **dstBuffer** is determined as described above for **vkGetQueryPoolResults**.

• **flags** is a bitmask of **VkQueryResultFlagBits** specifying how and when results are returned.

**vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults** is guaranteed to see the effect of previous uses of **vkCmdResetQueryPool** in the same queue, without any additional synchronization. Thus, the results will always reflect the most recent use of the query.

**flags** has the same possible values described above for the **flags** parameter of **vkGetQueryPoolResults**, but the different style of execution causes some subtle behavioral differences. Because **vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults** executes in order with respect to other query commands, there is less ambiguity about which use of a query is being requested.

Results for all requested occlusion queries, pipeline statistics queries, and timestamp queries are written as 64-bit unsigned integer values if **VK_QUERY_RESULT_64_BIT** is set or 32-bit unsigned integer values otherwise. Performance queries store results in a tightly packed array whose type is determined by the **unit** member of the corresponding **VkPerformanceCounterKHR**.

If neither of **VK_QUERY_RESULT_WAIT_BIT** and **VK_QUERY_RESULT_WITH_AVAILABILITY_BIT** are set, results are only written out for queries in the available state.

If **VK_QUERY_RESULT_WAIT_BIT** is set, the implementation will wait for each query’s status to be in the available state before retrieving the numerical results for that query. This is guaranteed to reflect the most recent use of the query on the same queue, assuming that the query is not being simultaneously used by other queries. If the query does not become available in a finite amount of time (e.g. due to not issuing a query since the last reset), a **VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST** error **may** occur.

Similarly, if **VK_QUERY_RESULT_WITH_AVAILABILITY_BIT** is set and **VK_QUERY_RESULT_WAIT_BIT** is not set, the availability is guaranteed to reflect the most recent use of the query on the same queue, assuming that the query is not being simultaneously used by other queues. As with **vkGetQueryPoolResults**, implementations **must** guarantee that if they return a non-zero availability value, then the numerical results are valid.

If **VK_QUERY_RESULT_PARTIAL_BIT** is set, **VK_QUERY_RESULT_WAIT_BIT** is not set, and the query’s status is unavailable, an intermediate result value between zero and the final result value is written for that query.

**VK_QUERY_RESULT_PARTIAL_BIT** **must** not be used if the pool’s **queryType** is **VK_QUERY_TYPE_TIMESTAMP**.

**vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults** is considered to be a transfer operation, and its writes to buffer memory **must** be synchronized using **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TRANSFER_BIT** and **VK_ACCESS_TRANSFER_WRITE_BIT** before using the results.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults-dstOffset-00819
  \textit{dstOffset} must be less than the size of \textit{dstBuffer}

- VUID-vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults-firstQuery-00820
  \textit{firstQuery} must be less than the number of queries in \textit{queryPool}

- VUID-vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults-firstQuery-00821
  The sum of \textit{firstQuery} and \textit{queryCount} must be less than or equal to the number of queries in \textit{queryPool}

- VUID-vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults-flags-00822
  If \textit{VK_QUERY_RESULT_64_BIT} is not set in \textit{flags} then \textit{dstOffset} and \textit{stride} must be multiples of 4

- VUID-vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults-flags-00823
  If \textit{VK_QUERY_RESULT_64_BIT} is set in \textit{flags} then \textit{dstOffset} and \textit{stride} must be multiples of 8

- VUID-vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults-dstBuffer-00824
  \textit{dstBuffer} must have enough storage, from \textit{dstOffset}, to contain the result of each query, as described here

- VUID-vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults-dstBuffer-00825
  \textit{dstBuffer} must have been created with \textit{VK_BUFFER_USAGE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT} usage flag

- VUID-vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults-dstBuffer-00826
  If \textit{dstBuffer} is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single \textit{VkDeviceMemory} object

- VUID-vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults-queryType-00827
  If the \textit{queryType} used to create \textit{queryPool} was \textit{VK_QUERY_TYPE_TIMESTAMP}, \textit{flags} must not contain \textit{VK_QUERY_RESULT_PARTIAL_BIT}

- VUID-vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults-queryType-03232
  If the \textit{queryType} used to create \textit{queryPool} was \textit{VK_QUERY_TYPE_PERFORMANCE_QUERY_KHR}, \textit{VkPhysicalDevicePerformanceQueryPropertiesKHR::allowCommandBufferQueryCopies} must be \textit{VK_TRUE}

- VUID-vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults-queryType-03233
  If the \textit{queryType} used to create \textit{queryPool} was \textit{VK_QUERY_TYPE_PERFORMANCE_QUERY_KHR}, \textit{flags} must not contain \textit{VK_QUERY_RESULT_WITH_AVAILABILITY_BIT}, \textit{VK_QUERY_RESULT_PARTIAL_BIT} or \textit{VK_QUERY_RESULT_64_BIT}

- VUID-vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults-queryType-03234
  If the \textit{queryType} used to create \textit{queryPool} was \textit{VK_QUERY_TYPE_PERFORMANCE_QUERY_KHR}, the \textit{queryPool} must have been submitted once for each pass as retrieved via a call to \textit{vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyPerformanceQueryPassesKHR}

- VUID-vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults-queryType-04812
  \textit{vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults} must not be called if the \textit{queryType} used to create \textit{queryPool} was \textit{VK_QUERY_TYPE_VIDEO_ENCODE_BITSTREAM_BUFFER_RANGE_KHR} or \textit{VK_QUERY_TYPE_RESULT_STATUS_ONLY_KHR}
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults-commandBuffer-parameter**
  - `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults-queryPool-parameter**
  - `queryPool` must be a valid `VkQueryPool` handle

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults-dstBuffer-parameter**
  - `dstBuffer` must be a valid `VkBuffer` handle

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults-flags-parameter**
  - `flags` must be a valid combination of `VkQueryResultFlagBits` values

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults-commandBuffer-recording**
  - `commandBuffer` must be in the recording state

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults-commandBuffer-cmdpool**
  - The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support graphics, or compute operations

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults-renderpass**
  - This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults-commonparent**
  - Each of `commandBuffer`, `dstBuffer`, and `queryPool` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Rendering operations such as clears, MSAA resolves, attachment load/store operations, and blits may count towards the results of queries. This behavior is implementation-dependent and may vary depending on the path used within an implementation. For example, some implementations have several types of clears, some of which may include vertices and some not.
17.3. Occlusion Queries

Occlusion queries track the number of samples that pass the per-fragment tests for a set of drawing commands. As such, occlusion queries are only available on queue families supporting graphics operations. The application can then use these results to inform future rendering decisions. An occlusion query is begun and ended by calling `vkCmdBeginQuery` and `vkCmdEndQuery`, respectively. When an occlusion query begins, the count of passing samples always starts at zero. For each drawing command, the count is incremented as described in Sample Counting. If flags does not contain `VK_QUERY_CONTROL_PRECISE_BIT` an implementation may generate any non-zero result value for the query if the count of passing samples is non-zero.

Note

Not setting `VK_QUERY_CONTROL_PRECISE_BIT` mode may be more efficient on some implementations, and should be used where it is sufficient to know a boolean result on whether any samples passed the per-fragment tests. In this case, some implementations may only return zero or one, indifferent to the actual number of samples passing the per-fragment tests.

When an occlusion query finishes, the result for that query is marked as available. The application can then either copy the result to a buffer (via `vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults`) or request it be put into host memory (via `vkGetQueryPoolResults`).

Note

If occluding geometry is not drawn first, samples can pass the depth test, but still not be visible in a final image.

17.4. Pipeline Statistics Queries

Pipeline statistics queries allow the application to sample a specified set of `VkPipeline` counters. These counters are accumulated by Vulkan for a set of either drawing or dispatching commands while a pipeline statistics query is active. As such, pipeline statistics queries are available on queue families supporting either graphics or compute operations. The availability of pipeline statistics queries is indicated by the `pipelineStatisticsQuery` member of the `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures` object (see `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures` and `vkCreateDevice` for detecting and requesting this query type on a `VkDevice`).

A pipeline statistics query is begun and ended by calling `vkCmdBeginQuery` and `vkCmdEndQuery`, respectively. When a pipeline statistics query begins, all statistics counters are set to zero. While the query is active, the pipeline type determines which set of statistics are available, but these must be configured on the query pool when it is created. If a statistic counter is issued on a command buffer that does not support the corresponding operation, the value of that counter is undefined after the query has finished. At least one statistic counter relevant to the operations supported on the recording command buffer must be enabled.

Bits which can be set to individually enable pipeline statistics counters for query pools with `VkQueryPoolCreateInfo::pipelineStatistics`, and for secondary command buffers with `VkCommandBufferInheritanceInfo::pipelineStatistics`, are:
typedef enum VkQueryPipelineStatisticFlagBits {
    VK_QUERY_PIPELINE_STATISTIC_INPUT_ASSEMBLY_VERTICES_BIT = 0x00000001,
    VK_QUERY_PIPELINE_STATISTIC_INPUT_ASSEMBLY_PRIMITIVES_BIT = 0x00000002,
    VK_QUERY_PIPELINE_STATISTIC_VERTEX_SHADER_INVOCATIONS_BIT = 0x00000004,
    VK_QUERY_PIPELINE_STATISTIC_GEOMETRY_SHADER_INVOCATIONS_BIT = 0x00000008,
    VK_QUERY_PIPELINE_STATISTIC_GEOMETRY_SHADER_PRIMITIVES_BIT = 0x00000010,
    VK_QUERY_PIPELINE_STATISTIC_CLIPPING_INVOCATIONS_BIT = 0x00000020,
    VK_QUERY_PIPELINE_STATISTIC_CLIPPING_PRIMITIVES_BIT = 0x00000040,
    VK_QUERY_PIPELINE_STATISTIC_FRAGMENT_SHADER_INVOCATIONS_BIT = 0x00000080,
    VK_QUERY_PIPELINE_STATISTIC_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_SHADER_PATCHES_BIT = 0x00000100,
    VK_QUERY_PIPELINE_STATISTIC_TESSELLATION_EVALUATION_SHADER_INVOCATIONS_BIT = 0x00000200,
    VK_QUERY_PIPELINE_STATISTIC_COMPUTE_SHADER_INVOCATIONS_BIT = 0x00000400,
} VkQueryPipelineStatisticFlagBits;

- VK_QUERY_PIPELINE_STATISTIC_INPUT_ASSEMBLY_VERTICES_BIT specifies that queries managed by the pool will count the number of vertices processed by the input assembly stage. Vertices corresponding to incomplete primitives may contribute to the count.
- VK_QUERY_PIPELINE_STATISTIC_INPUT_ASSEMBLY_PRIMITIVES_BIT specifies that queries managed by the pool will count the number of primitives processed by the input assembly stage. If primitive restart is enabled, restarting the primitive topology has no effect on the count. Incomplete primitives may be counted.
- VK_QUERY_PIPELINE_STATISTIC_VERTEX_SHADER_INVOCATIONS_BIT specifies that queries managed by the pool will count the number of vertex shader invocations. This counter’s value is incremented each time a vertex shader is invoked.
- VK_QUERY_PIPELINE_STATISTIC_GEOMETRY_SHADER_INVOCATIONS_BIT specifies that queries managed by the pool will count the number of geometry shader invocations. This counter’s value is incremented each time a geometry shader is invoked. In the case of instanced geometry shaders, the geometry shader invocations count is incremented for each separate instanced invocation.
- VK_QUERY_PIPELINE_STATISTIC_GEOMETRY_SHADER_PRIMITIVES_BIT specifies that queries managed by the pool will count the number of primitives generated by geometry shader invocations. The counter’s value is incremented each time the geometry shader emits a primitive. Restarting primitive topology using the SPIR-V instructions OpEndPrimitive or OpEndStreamPrimitive has no effect on the geometry shader output primitives count.
- VK_QUERY_PIPELINE_STATISTIC_CLIPPING_INVOCATIONS_BIT specifies that queries managed by the pool will count the number of primitives processed by the Primitive Clipping stage of the pipeline. The counter’s value is incremented each time a primitive reaches the primitive clipping stage.
- VK_QUERY_PIPELINE_STATISTIC_CLIPPING_PRIMITIVES_BIT specifies that queries managed by the pool will count the number of primitives output by the Primitive Clipping stage of the pipeline. The actual number of primitives output by the primitive clipping stage for a particular input primitive is implementation-dependent but must satisfy the following conditions:
If at least one vertex of the input primitive lies inside the clipping volume, the counter is incremented by one or more.

Otherwise, the counter is incremented by zero or more.

- **VK_QUERY_PIPELINE_STATISTIC_FRAGMENT_SHADER_INVOCATIONS_BIT** specifies that queries managed by the pool will count the number of fragment shader invocations. The counter's value is incremented each time the fragment shader is invoked.

- **VK_QUERY_PIPELINE_STATISTIC_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_SHADER_PATCHES_BIT** specifies that queries managed by the pool will count the number of patches processed by the tessellation control shader. The counter's value is incremented once for each patch for which a tessellation control shader is invoked.

- **VK_QUERY_PIPELINE_STATISTIC_TESSELLATION_EVALUATION_SHADER_INVOCATIONS_BIT** specifies that queries managed by the pool will count the number of invocations of the tessellation evaluation shader. The counter's value is incremented each time the tessellation evaluation shader is invoked.

- **VK_QUERY_PIPELINE_STATISTIC_COMPUTE_SHADER_INVOCATIONS_BIT** specifies that queries managed by the pool will count the number of compute shader invocations. The counter's value is incremented every time the compute shader is invoked. Implementations may skip the execution of certain compute shader invocations or execute additional compute shader invocations for implementation-dependent reasons as long as the results of rendering otherwise remain unchanged.

These values are intended to measure relative statistics on one implementation. Various device architectures will count these values differently. Any or all counters may be affected by the issues described in Query Operation.

**Note**

For example, tile-based rendering devices may need to replay the scene multiple times, affecting some of the counts.

If a pipeline has `rasterizerDiscardEnable` enabled, implementations may discard primitives after the final pre-rasterization shader stage. As a result, if `rasterizerDiscardEnable` is enabled, the clipping input and output primitives counters may not be incremented.

When a pipeline statistics query finishes, the result for that query is marked as available. The application can copy the result to a buffer (via `vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults`), or request it be put into host memory (via `vkGetQueryPoolResults`).

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkQueryPipelineStatisticFlags;
```

`VkQueryPipelineStatisticFlags` is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more `VkQueryPipelineStatisticFlagBits`. 
17.5. Timestamp Queries

Timestamps provide applications with a mechanism for timing the execution of commands. A timestamp is an integer value generated by the VkPhysicalDevice. Unlike other queries, timestamps do not operate over a range, and so do not use vkCmdBeginQuery or vkCmdEndQuery. The mechanism is built around a set of commands that allow the application to tell the VkPhysicalDevice to write timestamp values to a query pool and then either read timestamp values on the host (using vkGetQueryPoolResults) or copy timestamp values to a VkBuffer (using vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults). The application can then compute differences between timestamps to determine execution time.

The number of valid bits in a timestamp value is determined by the VkQueueFamilyProperties::timestampValidBits property of the queue on which the timestamp is written. Timestamps are supported on any queue which reports a non-zero value for timestampValidBits via vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties. If the timestampComputeAndGraphics limit is VK_TRUE, timestamps are supported by every queue family that supports either graphics or compute operations (see VkQueueFamilyProperties).

The number of nanoseconds it takes for a timestamp value to be incremented by 1 can be obtained from VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::timestampPeriod after a call to vkGetPhysicalDeviceProperties.

To request a timestamp, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2
void vkCmdWriteTimestamp2KHR(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    VkPipelineStageFlags2KHR stage,
    VkQueryPool queryPool,
    uint32_t query);
```

- **commandBuffer** is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
- **stage** specifies a stage of the pipeline.
- **queryPool** is the query pool that will manage the timestamp.
- **query** is the query within the query pool that will contain the timestamp.

When `vkCmdWriteTimestamp2KHR` is submitted to a queue, it defines an execution dependency on commands that were submitted before it, and writes a timestamp to a query pool.

The first synchronization scope includes all commands that occur earlier in submission order. The synchronization scope is limited to operations on the pipeline stage specified by `stage`.

The second synchronization scope includes only the timestamp write operation.

When the timestamp value is written, the availability status of the query is set to available.
If an implementation is unable to detect completion and latch the timer at any specific stage of the pipeline, it may instead do so at any logically later stage.

Comparisons between timestamps are not meaningful if the timestamps are written by commands submitted to different queues.

An example of such a comparison is subtracting an older timestamp from a newer one to determine the execution time of a sequence of commands.

If `vkCmdWriteTimestamp2KHR` is called while executing a render pass instance that has multiview enabled, the timestamp uses \( N \) consecutive query indices in the query pool (starting at query) where \( N \) is the number of bits set in the view mask of the subpass the command is executed in. The resulting query values are determined by an implementation-dependent choice of one of the following behaviors:

- The first query is a timestamp value and (if more than one bit is set in the view mask) zero is written to the remaining queries. If two timestamps are written in the same subpass, the sum of the execution time of all views between those commands is the difference between the first query written by each command.

- All \( N \) queries are timestamp values. If two timestamps are written in the same subpass, the sum of the execution time of all views between those commands is the sum of the difference between corresponding queries written by each command. The difference between corresponding queries may be the execution time of a single view.

In either case, the application can sum the differences between all \( N \) queries to determine the total execution time.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkCmdWriteTimestamp2KHR-stage-03929
  If the geometry shaders feature is not enabled, stage must not contain `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT_KHR`.

- VUID-vkCmdWriteTimestamp2KHR-stage-03930
  If the tessellation shaders feature is not enabled, stage must not contain `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_TESSellation_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT_KHR` or `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_TESSellation_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT_KHR`.

- VUID-vkCmdWriteTimestamp2KHR-synchronization2-03858
  The synchronization2 feature must be enabled.

- VUID-vkCmdWriteTimestamp2KHR-stage-03859
  Stage must only include a single pipeline stage.

- VUID-vkCmdWriteTimestamp2KHR-stage-03860
  Stage must only include stages valid for the queue family that was used to create the command pool that `commandBuffer` was allocated from.

- VUID-vkCmdWriteTimestamp2KHR-queryPool-03861
  QueryPool must have been created with a `queryType` of `VK_QUERY_TYPE_TIMESTAMP`.

- VUID-vkCmdWriteTimestamp2KHR-queryPool-03862
  The query identified by `queryPool` and `query` must be unavailable.

- VUID-vkCmdWriteTimestamp2KHR-timestampValidBits-03863
  The command pool’s queue family must support a non-zero `timestampValidBits`.

- VUID-vkCmdWriteTimestamp2KHR-query-04903
  Query must be less than the number of queries in `queryPool`.

- VUID-vkCmdWriteTimestamp2KHR-None-03864
  All queries used by the command must be unavailable.

- VUID-vkCmdWriteTimestamp2KHR-query-03865
  If `vkCmdWriteTimestamp2KHR` is called within a render pass instance, the sum of `query` and the number of bits set in the current subpass’s view mask must be less than or equal to the number of queries in `queryPool`.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteTimestamp2KHR-commandBuffer-parameter**
  
  `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteTimestamp2KHR-stage-parameter**
  
  `stage` must be a valid combination of `VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR` values

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteTimestamp2KHR-stage-requiredbitmask**
  
  `stage` must not be 0

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteTimestamp2KHR-queryPool-parameter**
  
  `queryPool` must be a valid `VkQueryPool` handle

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteTimestamp2KHR-commandBuffer-recording**
  
  `commandBuffer` must be in the recording state

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteTimestamp2KHR-commandBuffer-cmdpool**
  
  The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support transfer, graphics, or compute operations

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteTimestamp2KHR-commonparent**
  
  Both of `commandBuffer`, and `queryPool` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To request a timestamp, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkCmdWriteTimestamp1_0(
    VkCommandBuffer
    commandBuffer,
    VkPipelineStageFlagBits
    pipelineStage,
    VkQueryPool
    queryPool,
    uint32_t
    query);
```
• `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
• `pipelineStage` is a `VkPipelineStageFlagBits` value, specifying a stage of the pipeline.
• `queryPool` is the query pool that will manage the timestamp.
• `query` is the query within the query pool that will contain the timestamp.

`vkCmdWriteTimestamp` latches the value of the timer when all previous commands have completed executing as far as the specified pipeline stage, and writes the timestamp value to memory. When the timestamp value is written, the availability status of the query is set to available.

**Note**

If an implementation is unable to detect completion and latch the timer at any specific stage of the pipeline, it **may** instead do so at any logically later stage.

Comparisons between timestamps are not meaningful if the timestamps are written by commands submitted to different queues.

**Note**

An example of such a comparison is subtracting an older timestamp from a newer one to determine the execution time of a sequence of commands.

If `vkCmdWriteTimestamp` is called while executing a render pass instance that has multiview enabled, the timestamp uses N consecutive query indices in the query pool (starting at `query`) where N is the number of bits set in the view mask of the subpass the command is executed in. The resulting query values are determined by an implementation-dependent choice of one of the following behaviors:

- The first query is a timestamp value and (if more than one bit is set in the view mask) zero is written to the remaining queries. If two timestamps are written in the same subpass, the sum of the execution time of all views between those commands is the difference between the first query written by each command.
- All N queries are timestamp values. If two timestamps are written in the same subpass, the sum of the execution time of all views between those commands is the sum of the difference between corresponding queries written by each command. The difference between corresponding queries **may** be the execution time of a single view.

In either case, the application **can** sum the differences between all N queries to determine the total execution time.
**Valid Usage**

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteTimestamp-pipelineStage-04074**
  
  *pipelineStage* must be a valid stage for the queue family that was used to create the command pool that *commandBuffer* was allocated from.

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteTimestamp-pipelineStage-04075**
  
  If the *geometry shaders* feature is not enabled, *pipelineStage* must not be *VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT*.

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteTimestamp-pipelineStage-04076**
  
  If the *tessellation shaders* feature is not enabled, *pipelineStage* must not be *VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT* or *VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT*.

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteTimestamp-queryPool-01416**
  
  *queryPool* must have been created with a *queryType* of *VK_QUERY_TYPE_TIMESTAMP*.

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteTimestamp-queryPool-00828**
  
  The query identified by *queryPool* and *query* must be unavailable.

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteTimestamp-timestampValidBits-00829**
  
  The command pool's queue family must support a non-zero *timestampValidBits*.

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteTimestamp-query-04904**
  
  *query* must be less than the number of queries in *queryPool*.

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteTimestamp-None-00830**
  
  All queries used by the command must be unavailable.

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteTimestamp-query-00831**
  
  If *vkCmdWriteTimestamp* is called within a render pass instance, the sum of *query* and the number of bits set in the current subpass’s view mask must be less than or equal to the number of queries in *queryPool*. 
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteTimestamp-commandBuffer-parameter**
  
  `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteTimestamp-pipelineStage-parameter**
  
  `pipelineStage` must be a valid `VkPipelineStageFlagBits` value

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteTimestamp-queryPool-parameter**
  
  `queryPool` must be a valid `VkQueryPool` handle

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteTimestamp-commandBuffer-recording**
  
  `commandBuffer` must be in the recording state

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteTimestamp-commandBuffer-cmdpool**

  The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support transfer, graphics, or compute operations

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteTimestamp-commonparent**

  Both of `commandBuffer`, and `queryPool` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

17.6. Performance Queries

*Performance queries* provide applications with a mechanism for getting performance counter information about the execution of command buffers, render passes, and commands.

Each queue family advertises the performance counters that *can* be queried on a queue of that family via a call to `vkEnumeratePhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyPerformanceQueryCountersKHR`. Implementations *may* limit access to performance counters based on platform requirements or only to specialized drivers for development purposes.
Performance queries use the existing `vkCmdBeginQuery` and `vkCmdEndQuery` to control what command buffers, render passes, or commands to get performance information for.

Implementations **may** require multiple passes where the command buffer, render passes, or commands being recorded are the same and are executed on the same queue to record performance counter data. This is achieved by submitting the same batch and providing a `VkPerformanceQuerySubmitInfoKHR` structure containing a counter pass index. The number of passes required for a given performance query pool **can** be queried via a call to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyPerformanceQueryPassesKHR`.

Performance counter results from a performance query pool **can** be obtained with the command `vkGetQueryPoolResults`.

Performance query results are returned in an array of `VkPerformanceCounterResultKHR` unions containing the data associated with each counter in the query, stored in the same order as the counters supplied in `pCounterIndices` when creating the performance query. The `VkPerformanceCounterKHR::unit` enumeration specifies how to parse the counter data.

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_performance_query
typedef union VkPerformanceCounterResultKHR {
    int32_t    int32;
    int64_t    int64;
    uint32_t   uint32;
    uint64_t   uint64;
    float      float32;
    double     float64;
} VkPerformanceCounterResultKHR;
```

### 17.6.1. Profiling Lock

To record and submit a command buffer that contains a performance query pool the profiling lock **must** be held. The profiling lock **must** be acquired prior to any call to `vkBeginCommandBuffer` that will be using a performance query pool. The profiling lock **must** be held while any command buffer that contains a performance query pool is in the *recording, executable, or pending state*. To acquire the profiling lock, call:
VkResult vkAcquireProfilingLockKHR(
  VkDevice device,
  const VkAcquireProfilingLockInfoKHR* pInfo);

- **device** is the logical device to profile.
- **pInfo** is a pointer to a `VkAcquireProfilingLockInfoKHR` structure which contains information about how the profiling is to be acquired.

Implementations may allow multiple actors to hold the profiling lock concurrently.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkAcquireProfilingLockKHR-device-parameter
  device must be a valid `VkDevice` handle
- VUID-vkAcquireProfilingLockKHR-pInfo-parameter
  pInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkAcquireProfilingLockInfoKHR` structure

### Return Codes

**Success**
- `VK_SUCCESS`

**Failure**
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY`
- `VK_TIMEOUT`

The `VkAcquireProfilingLockInfoKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_performance_query
typedef struct VkAcquireProfilingLockInfoKHR {
  VkStructureType sType;
  const void* pNext;
  VkAcquireProfilingLockFlagsKHR flags;
  uint64_t timeout;
} VkAcquireProfilingLockInfoKHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **flags** is reserved for future use.
- **timeout** indicates how long the function waits, in nanoseconds, if the profiling lock is not available.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkAcquireProfilingLockInfoKHR-sType-sType
  
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ACQUIRE_PROFILING_LOCK_INFO_KHR

- VUID-VkAcquireProfilingLockInfoKHR-pNext-pNext
  
  pNext must be NULL

- VUID-VkAcquireProfilingLockInfoKHR-flags-zerobitmask
  
  flags must be 0

If timeout is 0, vkAcquireProfilingLockKHR will not block while attempting to acquire the profiling lock. If timeout is UINT64_MAX, the function will not return until the profiling lock was acquired.

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_performance_query
typedef enum VkAcquireProfilingLockFlagBitsKHR {
} VkAcquireProfilingLockFlagBitsKHR;
```

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_performance_query
typedef VkFlags VkAcquireProfilingLockFlagsKHR;
```

VkAcquireProfilingLockFlagsKHR is a bitmask type for setting a mask, but is currently reserved for future use.

To release the profiling lock, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_performance_query
void vkReleaseProfilingLockKHR(
    VkDevice device);
```

- device is the logical device to cease profiling on.

Valid Usage

- VUID-vkReleaseProfilingLockKHR-device-03235
  
  The profiling lock of device must have been held via a previous successful call to vkAcquireProfilingLockKHR

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkReleaseProfilingLockKHR-device-parameter
  
  device must be a valid VkDevice handle
17.7. Result Status Queries

Result status queries are used for a single purpose - to check whether a set of operations has completed successfully or not, using the `VK_QUERY_RESULT_WITH_STATUS_BIT_KHR` flag.

No other data is written to such a query.

17.8. Video Encode Bitstream Buffer Range

Bitstream buffer range queries describe the range of bytes written in the bitstream buffer by video encode commands.

When an encode command is recorded within a bitstream buffer range query, two values are written to the query slot. The first value is an offset into the bitstream buffer where the encoded video data was written. This offset is an additional offset from the start of the range specified by the application. The second value is a size value describing the number of bytes written to the bitstream buffer beyond the offset.

One slot is consumed for each slice in each command recorded between a begin and end query pair.
Chapter 18. Clear Commands

18.1. Clearing Images Outside A Render Pass Instance

Color and depth/stencil images can be cleared outside a render pass instance using `vkCmdClearColorImage` or `vkCmdClearDepthStencilImage`, respectively. These commands are only allowed outside of a render pass instance.

To clear one or more subranges of a color image, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkCmdClearColorImage(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    VkImage image,
    VkImageLayout imageLayout,
    const VkClearColorValue* pColor,
    uint32_t rangeCount,
    const VkImageSubresourceRange* pRanges);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
- `image` is the image to be cleared.
- `imageLayout` specifies the current layout of the image subresource ranges to be cleared, and must be `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHARED_PRESENT_KHR`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL` or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_TRANSFER_DST_OPTIMAL`.
- `pColor` is a pointer to a `VkClearColorValue` structure containing the values that the image subresource ranges will be cleared to (see Clear Values below).
- `rangeCount` is the number of image subresource range structures in `pRanges`.
- `pRanges` is a pointer to an array of `VkImageSubresourceRange` structures describing a range of mipmap levels, array layers, and aspects to be cleared, as described in Image Views.

Each specified range in `pRanges` is cleared to the value specified by `pColor`. 
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkCmdClearColorImage-image-01993
  The format features of image must contain VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT

- VUID-vkCmdClearColorImage-image-00002
  image must have been created with VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT usage flag

- VUID-vkCmdClearColorImage-image-01545
  image must not use a format listed in Formats requiring sampler Y'CbCr conversion for VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT image views

- VUID-vkCmdClearColorImage-image-00003
  If image is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single VkDeviceMemory object

- VUID-vkCmdClearColorImage-imageLayout-00004
  imageLayout must specify the layout of the image subresource ranges of image specified in pRanges at the time this command is executed on a VkDevice

- VUID-vkCmdClearColorImage-imageLayout-01394
  imageLayout must be VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_TRANSFER_DST_OPTIMAL, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL, or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHARED_PRESENT_KHR

- VUID-vkCmdClearColorImage-aspectMask-02498
  The VkImageSubresourceRange::aspectMask members of the elements of the pRanges array must each only include VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT

- VUID-vkCmdClearColorImage-baseMipLevel-01470
  The VkImageSubresourceRange::baseMipLevel members of the elements of the pRanges array must each be less than the mipLevels specified in VkImageCreateInfo when image was created

- VUID-vkCmdClearColorImage-pRanges-01692
  For each VkImageSubresourceRange element of pRanges, if the levelCount member is not VK_REMAINING_MIP_LEVELS, then baseMipLevel + levelCount must be less than the mipLevels specified in VkImageCreateInfo when image was created

- VUID-vkCmdClearColorImage-baseArrayLayer-01472
  The VkImageSubresourceRange::baseArrayLayer members of the elements of the pRanges array must each be less than the arrayLayers specified in VkImageCreateInfo when image was created

- VUID-vkCmdClearColorImage-pRanges-01693
  For each VkImageSubresourceRange element of pRanges, if the layerCount member is not VK_REMAINING_ARRAY_LAYERS, then baseArrayLayer + layerCount must be less than the arrayLayers specified in VkImageCreateInfo when image was created

- VUID-vkCmdClearColorImage-image-00007
  image must not have a compressed or depth/stencil format

- VUID-vkCmdClearColorImage-pColor-04961
  pColor must be a valid pointer to a VkClearColorValue union
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkCmdClearColorImage-commandBuffer-parameter**
  - `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle
- **VUID-vkCmdClearColorImage-image-parameter**
  - `image` must be a valid `VkImage` handle
- **VUID-vkCmdClearColorImage-imageLayout-parameter**
  - `imageLayout` must be a valid `VkImageLayout` value
- **VUID-vkCmdClearColorImage-pRanges-parameter**
  - `pRanges` must be a valid pointer to an array of `rangeCount` valid `VkImageSubresourceRange` structures
- **VUID-vkCmdClearColorImage-commandBuffer-recording**
  - `commandBuffer` must be in the recording state
- **VUID-vkCmdClearColorImage-commandBuffer-cmdpool**
  - The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support graphics, or compute operations
- **VUID-vkCmdClearColorImage-renderpass**
  - This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance
- **VUID-vkCmdClearColorImage-rangeCount-arraylength**
  - `rangeCount` must be greater than 0
- **VUID-vkCmdClearColorImage-commonparent**
  - Both of `commandBuffer`, and `image` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To clear one or more subranges of a depth/stencil image, call:
```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkCmdClearDepthStencilImage(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    VkImage image,
    VkImageLayout imageLayout,
    const VkClearDepthStencilValue* pDepthStencil,
    uint32_t rangeCount,
    const VkImageSubresourceRange* pRanges);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
- `image` is the image to be cleared.
- `imageLayout` specifies the current layout of the image subresource ranges to be cleared, and must be `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL` or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_TRANSFER_DST_OPTIMAL`.
- `pDepthStencil` is a pointer to a `VkClearDepthStencilValue` structure containing the values that the depth and stencil image subresource ranges will be cleared to (see Clear Values below).
- `rangeCount` is the number of image subresource range structures in `pRanges`.
- `pRanges` is a pointer to an array of `VkImageSubresourceRange` structures describing a range of mipmap levels, array layers, and aspects to be cleared, as described in Image Views.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkCmdClearDepthStencilImage-image-01994
  The **format features** of *image* **must** contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT`

- VUID-vkCmdClearDepthStencilImage-image-00009
  *image* **must** have been created with `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT` usage flag

- VUID-vkCmdClearDepthStencilImage-image-00010
  If *image* is non-sparse then it **must** be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object

- VUID-vkCmdClearDepthStencilImage-imageLayout-00011
  *imageLayout** must specify the layout of the image subresource ranges of *image* specified in `pRanges` at the time this command is executed on a `VkDevice`

- VUID-vkCmdClearDepthStencilImage-imageLayout-00012
  *imageLayout** must be either of `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_TRANSFER_DST_OPTIMAL` or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL`

- VUID-vkCmdClearDepthStencilImage-aspectMask-02824
  The `VkImageSubresourceRange::aspectMask` member of each element of the `pRanges` array **must** not include bits other than `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_DEPTH_BIT` or `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_STENCIL_BIT`

- VUID-vkCmdClearDepthStencilImage-image-02825
  If the *image*'s format does not have a stencil component, then the `VkImageSubresourceRange::aspectMask` member of each element of the `pRanges` array **must** not include the `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_STENCIL_BIT` bit

- VUID-vkCmdClearDepthStencilImage-image-02826
  If the *image*'s format does not have a depth component, then the `VkImageSubresourceRange::aspectMask` member of each element of the `pRanges` array **must** not include the `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_DEPTH_BIT` bit

- VUID-vkCmdClearDepthStencilImage-baseMipLevel-01474
  The `VkImageSubresourceRange::baseMipLevel` members of the elements of the `pRanges` array **must** each be less than the `mipLevels` specified in `VkImageCreateInfo` when *image* was created

- VUID-vkCmdClearDepthStencilImage-pRanges-01694
  For each `VkImageSubresourceRange` element of `pRanges`, if the `levelCount` member is not `VK_REMAINING_MIP_LEVELS`, then `baseMipLevel + levelCount` **must** be less than the `mipLevels` specified in `VkImageCreateInfo` when *image* was created

- VUID-vkCmdClearDepthStencilImage-baseArrayLayer-01476
  The `VkImageSubresourceRange::baseArrayLayer` members of the elements of the `pRanges` array **must** each be less than the `arrayLayers` specified in `VkImageCreateInfo` when *image* was created

- VUID-vkCmdClearDepthStencilImage-pRanges-01695
  For each `VkImageSubresourceRange` element of `pRanges`, if the `layerCount` member is not `VK_REMAINING_ARRAY_LAYERS`, then `baseArrayLayer + layerCount` **must** be less than the `arrayLayers` specified in `VkImageCreateInfo` when *image* was created
image must have a depth/stencil format

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdClearDepthStencilImage-commandBuffer-parameter
  commandBuffer must be a valid VkCommandBuffer handle
- VUID-vkCmdClearDepthStencilImage-image-parameter
  image must be a valid VkImage handle
- VUID-vkCmdClearDepthStencilImage-imageLayout-parameter
  imageLayout must be a valid VkImageLayout value
- VUID-vkCmdClearDepthStencilImage-pDepthStencil-parameter
  pDepthStencil must be a valid pointer to a valid VkClearDepthStencilValue structure
- VUID-vkCmdClearDepthStencilImage-pRanges-parameter
  pRanges must be a valid pointer to an array of rangeCount valid VkImageSubresourceRange structures
- VUID-vkCmdClearDepthStencilImage-commandBuffer-recording
  commandBuffer must be in the recording state
- VUID-vkCmdClearDepthStencilImage-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must support graphics operations
- VUID-vkCmdClearDepthStencilImage-renderpass
  This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance
- VUID-vkCmdClearDepthStencilImage-rangeCount-arraylength
  rangeCount must be greater than 0
- VUID-vkCmdClearDepthStencilImage-commonparent
  Both of commandBuffer, and image must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same VkDevice

Host Synchronization

- Host access to commandBuffer must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must be externally synchronized
Clears outside render pass instances are treated as transfer operations for the purposes of memory barriers.

### 18.2. Clearing Images Inside A Render Pass Instance

To clear one or more regions of color and depth/stencil attachments inside a render pass instance, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkCmdClearAttachments(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    uint32_t attachmentCount,
    const VkClearAttachment* pAttachments,
    uint32_t rectCount,
    const VkClearRect* pRects);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
- `attachmentCount` is the number of entries in the `pAttachments` array.
- `pAttachments` is a pointer to an array of `VkClearAttachment` structures defining the attachments to clear and the clear values to use. If any attachment index to be cleared is not backed by an image view, then the clear has no effect.
- `rectCount` is the number of entries in the `pRects` array.
- `pRects` is a pointer to an array of `VkClearRect` structures defining regions within each selected attachment to clear.

Unlike other clear commands, `vkCmdClearAttachments` executes as a drawing command, rather than a transfer command, with writes performed by it executing in rasterization order. Clears to color attachments are executed as color attachment writes, by the `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_OUTPUT_BIT` stage. Clears to depth/stencil attachments are executed as depth writes and writes by the `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_EARLY_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT` and `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_LATE_FRAGMENT_TESTS_BIT` stages.

`vkCmdClearAttachments` is not affected by the bound pipeline state.
Note

It's generally advised that attachments are cleared by using the `VK_ATTACHMENT_LOAD_OP_CLEAR` load operation at the start of rendering, which will be more efficient on some implementations.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkCmdClearAttachments-aspectMask-02501**
  If the `aspectMask` member of any element of `pAttachments` contains `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT`, then the `colorAttachment` member of that element must either refer to a color attachment which is `VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED`, or must be a valid color attachment.

- **VUID-vkCmdClearAttachments-aspectMask-02502**
  If the `aspectMask` member of any element of `pAttachments` contains `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_DEPTH_BIT`, then the current subpass' depth/stencil attachment must either be `VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED`, or must have a depth component.

- **VUID-vkCmdClearAttachments-aspectMask-02503**
  If the `aspectMask` member of any element of `pAttachments` contains `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_STENCIL_BIT`, then the current subpass' depth/stencil attachment must either be `VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED`, or must have a stencil component.

- **VUID-vkCmdClearAttachments-rect-02682**
  The `rect` member of each element of `pRects` must have an `extent.width` greater than 0.

- **VUID-vkCmdClearAttachments-rect-02683**
  The `rect` member of each element of `pRects` must have an `extent.height` greater than 0.

- **VUID-vkCmdClearAttachments-pRects-00016**
  The rectangular region specified by each element of `pRects` must be contained within the render area of the current render pass instance.

- **VUID-vkCmdClearAttachments-pRects-00017**
  The layers specified by each element of `pRects` must be contained within every attachment that `pAttachments` refers to.

- **VUID-vkCmdClearAttachments-layerCount-01934**
  The `layerCount` member of each element of `pRects` must not be 0.

- **VUID-vkCmdClearAttachments-baseArrayLayer-00018**
  If the render pass instance this is recorded in uses multiview, then `baseArrayLayer` must be zero and `layerCount` must be one.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdClearAttachments-commandBuffer-parameter
  `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle

- VUID-vkCmdClearAttachments-pAttachments-parameter
  `pAttachments` must be a valid pointer to an array of `attachmentCount` valid `VkClearAttachment` structures

- VUID-vkCmdClearAttachments-pRects-parameter
  `pRects` must be a valid pointer to an array of `rectCount` `VkClearRect` structures

- VUID-vkCmdClearAttachments-commandBuffer-recording
  `commandBuffer` must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdClearAttachments-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support graphics operations

- VUID-vkCmdClearAttachments-renderpass
  This command must only be called inside of a render pass instance

- VUID-vkCmdClearAttachments-attachmentCount-arraylength
  `attachmentCount` must be greater than 0

- VUID-vkCmdClearAttachments-rectCount-arraylength
  `rectCount` must be greater than 0

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized

- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Inside</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The `VkClearRect` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkClearRect {
    VkRect2D rect;
    uint32_t baseArrayLayer;
    uint32_t layerCount;
} VkClearRect;

- rect is the two-dimensional region to be cleared.
- baseArrayLayer is the first layer to be cleared.
- layerCount is the number of layers to clear.

The layers \([\text{baseArrayLayer}, \text{baseArrayLayer} + \text{layerCount}]\) counting from the base layer of the attachment image view are cleared.

The VkClearAttachment structure is defined as:

typedef struct VkClearAttachment {
    VkImageAspectFlags aspectMask;
    uint32_t colorAttachment;
    VkClearValue clearValue;
} VkClearAttachment;

- aspectMask is a mask selecting the color, depth and/or stencil aspects of the attachment to be cleared.
- colorAttachment is only meaningful if \(\text{VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT}\) is set in aspectMask, in which case it is an index into the currently bound color attachments.
- clearValue is the color or depth/stencil value to clear the attachment to, as described in Clear Values below.

Valid Usage

- VUID-VkClearAttachment-aspectMask-00019
  If aspectMask includes \(\text{VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT}\), it must not include \(\text{VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_DEPTH_BIT}\) or \(\text{VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_STENCIL_BIT}\)

- VUID-VkClearAttachment-aspectMask-00020
  aspectMask must not include \(\text{VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_METADATA_BIT}\)

- VUID-VkClearAttachment-clearValue-00021
  clearValue must be a valid VkClearValue union
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkClearAttachment-aspectMask-parameter
  aspectMask must be a valid combination of VkImageAspectFlagBits values

- VUID-VkClearAttachment-aspectMask-requiredbitmask
  aspectMask must not be 0

18.3. Clear Values

The VkClearColorValue structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef union VkClearColorValue {
    float float32[4];
    int32_t int32[4];
    uint32_t uint32[4];
} VkClearColorValue;
```

- float32 are the color clear values when the format of the image or attachment is one of the formats in the Interpretation of Numeric Format table other than signed integer (SINT) or unsigned integer (UINT). Floating point values are automatically converted to the format of the image, with the clear value being treated as linear if the image is sRGB.

- int32 are the color clear values when the format of the image or attachment is signed integer (SINT). Signed integer values are converted to the format of the image by casting to the smaller type (with negative 32-bit values mapping to negative values in the smaller type). If the integer clear value is not representable in the target type (e.g. would overflow in conversion to that type), the clear value is undefined.

- uint32 are the color clear values when the format of the image or attachment is unsigned integer (UINT). Unsigned integer values are converted to the format of the image by casting to the integer type with fewer bits.

The four array elements of the clear color map to R, G, B, and A components of image formats, in order.

If the image has more than one sample, the same value is written to all samples for any pixels being cleared.

The VkClearDepthStencilValue structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkClearDepthStencilValue {
    float depth;
    uint32_t stencil;
} VkClearDepthStencilValue;
```
• **depth** is the clear value for the depth aspect of the depth/stencil attachment. It is a floating-point value which is automatically converted to the attachment’s format.

• **stencil** is the clear value for the stencil aspect of the depth/stencil attachment. It is a 32-bit integer value which is converted to the attachment’s format by taking the appropriate number of LSBs.

---

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkClearDepthStencilValue-depth-02506**
  
  *depth* **must** be between 0.0 and 1.0, inclusive

The **VkClearValue** union is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef union VkClearValue {
    VkClearColorValue color;
    VkClearDepthStencilValue depthStencil;
} VkClearValue;
```

- **color** specifies the color image clear values to use when clearing a color image or attachment.

- **depthStencil** specifies the depth and stencil clear values to use when clearing a depth/stencil image or attachment.

This union is used where part of the API requires either color or depth/stencil clear values, depending on the attachment, and defines the initial clear values in the **VkRenderPassBeginInfo** structure.

### 18.4. Filling Buffers

**To clear buffer data, call:**

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkCmdFillBuffer(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    VkBuffer dstBuffer,
    VkDeviceSize dstOffset,
    VkDeviceSize size,
    uint32_t data);
```

- **commandBuffer** is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.

- **dstBuffer** is the buffer to be filled.

- **dstOffset** is the byte offset into the buffer at which to start filling, and **must** be a multiple of 4.

- **size** is the number of bytes to fill, and **must** be either a multiple of 4, or **VK_WHOLE_SIZE** to fill the range from **offset** to the end of the buffer. If **VK_WHOLE_SIZE** is used and the remaining size of the
buffer is not a multiple of 4, then the nearest smaller multiple is used.

- **data** is the 4-byte word written repeatedly to the buffer to fill **size** bytes of data. The data word is written to memory according to the host endianness.

`vkCmdFillBuffer` is treated as “transfer” operation for the purposes of synchronization barriers. The `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT` must be specified in **usage** of `VkBufferCreateInfo` in order for the buffer to be compatible with `vkCmdFillBuffer`.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkCmdFillBuffer-dstOffset-00024**
  
  `dstOffset` must be less than the size of `dstBuffer`

- **VUID-vkCmdFillBuffer-dstOffset-00025**
  
  `dstOffset` must be a multiple of **4**

- **VUID-vkCmdFillBuffer-size-00026**
  
  If **size** is not equal to `VK_WHOLE_SIZE`, **size** must be greater than **0**

- **VUID-vkCmdFillBuffer-size-00027**
  
  If **size** is not equal to `VK_WHOLE_SIZE`, **size** must be less than or equal to the size of `dstBuffer` minus `dstOffset`

- **VUID-vkCmdFillBuffer-size-00028**
  
  If **size** is not equal to `VK_WHOLE_SIZE`, **size** must be a multiple of **4**

- **VUID-vkCmdFillBuffer-dstBuffer-00029**
  
  `dstBuffer` must have been created with `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT` usage flag

- **VUID-vkCmdFillBuffer-dstBuffer-00031**
  
  If `dstBuffer` is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdFillBuffer-commandBuffer-parameter
  commandBuffer must be a valid VkCommandBuffer handle

- VUID-vkCmdFillBuffer-dstBuffer-parameter
  dstBuffer must be a valid VkBuffer handle

- VUID-vkCmdFillBuffer-commandBuffer-recording
  commandBuffer must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdFillBuffer-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must support transfer, graphics or compute operations

- VUID-vkCmdFillBuffer-renderpass
  This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance

- VUID-vkCmdFillBuffer-commonparent
  Both of commandBuffer, and dstBuffer must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same VkDevice

Host Synchronization

- Host access to commandBuffer must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

18.5. Updating Buffers

To update buffer data inline in a command buffer, call:
```c
void vkCmdUpdateBuffer(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    VkBuffer dstBuffer,
    VkDeviceSize dstOffset,
    VkDeviceSize dataSize,
    const void* pData);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
- `dstBuffer` is a handle to the buffer to be updated.
- `dstOffset` is the byte offset into the buffer to start updating, and **must** be a multiple of 4.
- `dataSize` is the number of bytes to update, and **must** be a multiple of 4.
- `pData` is a pointer to the source data for the buffer update, and **must** be at least `dataSize` bytes in size.

`dataSize` **must** be less than or equal to 65536 bytes. For larger updates, applications **can** use buffer to buffer copies.

---

**Note**

Buffer updates performed with `vkCmdUpdateBuffer` first copy the data into command buffer memory when the command is recorded (which requires additional storage and may incur an additional allocation), and then copy the data from the command buffer into `dstBuffer` when the command is executed on a device.

The additional cost of this functionality compared to buffer to buffer copies means it is only recommended for very small amounts of data, and is why it is limited to only 65536 bytes.

Applications **can** work around this by issuing multiple `vkCmdUpdateBuffer` commands to different ranges of the same buffer, but it is strongly recommended that they **should** not.

The source data is copied from the user pointer to the command buffer when the command is called.

`vkCmdUpdateBuffer` is only allowed outside of a render pass. This command is treated as “transfer” operation, for the purposes of synchronization barriers. The `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT` **must** be specified in `usage` of `VkBufferCreateInfo` in order for the buffer to be compatible with `vkCmdUpdateBuffer`. 
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkCmdUpdateBuffer-dstOffset-00032
  **dstOffset** must be less than the size of **dstBuffer**

- VUID-vkCmdUpdateBuffer-dataSize-00033
  **dataSize** must be less than or equal to the size of **dstBuffer** minus **dstOffset**

- VUID-vkCmdUpdateBuffer-dstBuffer-00034
  **dstBuffer** must have been created with VK_BUFFER_USAGE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT usage flag

- VUID-vkCmdUpdateBuffer-dstBuffer-00035
  If **dstBuffer** is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single VkDeviceMemory object

- VUID-vkCmdUpdateBuffer-dstOffset-00036
  **dstOffset** must be a multiple of 4

- VUID-vkCmdUpdateBuffer-dataSize-00037
  **dataSize** must be less than or equal to 65536

- VUID-vkCmdUpdateBuffer-dataSize-00038
  **dataSize** must be a multiple of 4

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdUpdateBuffer-commandBuffer-parameter
  **commandBuffer** must be a valid VkCommandBuffer handle

- VUID-vkCmdUpdateBuffer-dstBuffer-parameter
  **dstBuffer** must be a valid VkBuffer handle

- VUID-vkCmdUpdateBuffer-pData-parameter
  **pData** must be a valid pointer to an array of **dataSize** bytes

- VUID-vkCmdUpdateBuffer-commandBuffer-recording
  **commandBuffer** must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdUpdateBuffer-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The VkCommandPool that **commandBuffer** was allocated from must support transfer, graphics, or compute operations

- VUID-vkCmdUpdateBuffer-renderpass
  This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance

- VUID-vkCmdUpdateBuffer-dataSize-arraylength
  **dataSize** must be greater than 0

- VUID-vkCmdUpdateBuffer-commonparent
  Both of **commandBuffer**, and **dstBuffer** must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same VkDevice
Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Note
The `pData` parameter was of type `uint32_t*` instead of `void*` prior to version 1.0.19 of the Specification and `VK_HEADER_VERSION` 19 of the Vulkan Header Files. This was a historical anomaly, as the source data may be of other types.
Chapter 19. Copy Commands

An application can copy buffer and image data using several methods depending on the type of data transfer. Data can be copied between buffer objects with `vkCmdCopyBuffer2KHR` and `vkCmdCopyBuffer` and a portion of an image can be copied to another image with `vkCmdCopyImage2KHR` and `vkCmdCopyImage`. Image data can also be copied to and from buffer memory using `vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer2KHR`, `vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer`, `vkCmdCopyBufferToImage2KHR`, and `vkCmdCopyBufferToImage`. Image data can be blitted (with or without scaling and filtering) with `vkCmdBlitImage2KHR` and `vkCmdBlitImage`. Multisampled images can be resolved to a non-multisampled image with `vkCmdResolveImage2KHR` and `vkCmdResolveImage`.

19.1. Common Operation

The following valid usage rules apply to all copy commands:

- Copy commands must be recorded outside of a render pass instance.
- The set of all bytes bound to all the source regions must not overlap the set of all bytes bound to the destination regions.
- The set of all bytes bound to each destination region must not overlap the set of all bytes bound to another destination region.
- Copy regions must be non-empty.
- Regions must not extend outside the bounds of the buffer or image level, except that regions of compressed images can extend as far as the dimension of the image level rounded up to a complete compressed texel block.
- Source image subresources must be in either the `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL` or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_TRANSFER_SRC_OPTIMAL` layout. Destination image subresources must be in the `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHARED_PRESENT_KHR`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL` or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_TRANSFER_DST_OPTIMAL` layout. As a consequence, if an image subresource is used as both source and destination of a copy, it must be in the `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL` layout.
- Source images must have `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT` in their format features.
- Destination images must have `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT` in their format features.
- Source buffers must have been created with the `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT` usage bit enabled and destination buffers must have been created with the `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT` usage bit enabled.
- Source images must have been created with `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT` set in `VkImageCreateInfo::usage`
- Destination images must have been created with `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT` set in `VkImageCreateInfo::usage`

All copy commands are treated as “transfer” operations for the purposes of synchronization barriers.

All copy commands that have a source format with an X component in its format description read undefined values from those bits.
All copy commands that have a destination format with an X component in its format description write undefined values to those bits.

### 19.2. Copying Data Between Buffers

To copy data between buffer objects, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkCmdCopyBuffer(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    VkBuffer srcBuffer,
    VkBuffer dstBuffer,
    uint32_t regionCount,
    const VkBufferCopy* pRegions);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
- `srcBuffer` is the source buffer.
- `dstBuffer` is the destination buffer.
- `regionCount` is the number of regions to copy.
- `pRegions` is a pointer to an array of `VkBufferCopy` structures specifying the regions to copy.

Each region in `pRegions` is copied from the source buffer to the same region of the destination buffer. `srcBuffer` and `dstBuffer` can be the same buffer or alias the same memory, but the resulting values are undefined if the copy regions overlap in memory.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkCmdCopyBuffer-srcOffset-00113
  The `srcOffset` member of each element of `pRegions` must be less than the size of `srcBuffer`.

- VUID-vkCmdCopyBuffer-dstOffset-00114
  The `dstOffset` member of each element of `pRegions` must be less than the size of `dstBuffer`.

- VUID-vkCmdCopyBuffer-size-00115
  The `size` member of each element of `pRegions` must be less than or equal to the size of `srcBuffer` minus `srcOffset`.

- VUID-vkCmdCopyBuffer-size-00116
  The `size` member of each element of `pRegions` must be less than or equal to the size of `dstBuffer` minus `dstOffset`.

- VUID-vkCmdCopyBuffer-pRegions-00117
  The union of the source regions, and the union of the destination regions, specified by the elements of `pRegions`, must not overlap in memory.

- VUID-vkCmdCopyBuffer-srcBuffer-00118
  `srcBuffer` must have been created with `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT` usage flag.

- VUID-vkCmdCopyBuffer-srcBuffer-00119
  If `srcBuffer` is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object.

- VUID-vkCmdCopyBuffer-dstBuffer-00120
  `dstBuffer` must have been created with `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT` usage flag.

- VUID-vkCmdCopyBuffer-dstBuffer-00121
  If `dstBuffer` is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyBuffer-commandBuffer-parameter**
  
  `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyBuffer-srcBuffer-parameter**
  
  `srcBuffer` must be a valid `VkBuffer` handle

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyBuffer-dstBuffer-parameter**
  
  `dstBuffer` must be a valid `VkBuffer` handle

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyBuffer-pRegions-parameter**
  
  `pRegions` must be a valid pointer to an array of `regionCount` valid `VkBufferCopy` structures

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyBuffer-commandBuffer-recording**
  
  `commandBuffer` must be in the recording state

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyBuffer-commandBuffer-cmdpool**
  
  The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support transfer, graphics, or compute operations

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyBuffer-renderpass**
  
  This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyBuffer-regionCount-arraylength**
  
  `regionCount` must be greater than 0

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyBuffer-commonparent**
  
  Each of `commandBuffer`, `dstBuffer`, and `srcBuffer` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized

- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Transfer, Graphics, Compute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The `VkBufferCopy` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkBufferCopy {
    VkDeviceSize srcOffset;
    VkDeviceSize dstOffset;
    VkDeviceSize size;
} VkBufferCopy;

• srcOffset is the starting offset in bytes from the start of srcBuffer.
• dstOffset is the starting offset in bytes from the start of dstBuffer.
• size is the number of bytes to copy.

Valid Usage

• VUID-VkBufferCopy-size-01988
  The size must be greater than 0

A more extensible version of the copy buffer command is defined below.

To copy data between buffer objects, call:

// Provided by VK_KHR_copy_commands2
void vkCmdCopyBuffer2KHR(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    const VkCopyBufferInfo2KHR* pCopyBufferInfo);

• commandBuffer is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
• pCopyBufferInfo is a pointer to a VkCopyBufferInfo2KHR structure describing the copy parameters.

This command is functionally identical to vkCmdCopyBuffer, but includes extensible sub-structures that include sType and pNext parameters, allowing them to be more easily extended.

Valid Usage
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdCopyBuffer2KHR-commandBuffer-parameter
  commandBuffer must be a valid VkCommandBuffer handle

- VUID-vkCmdCopyBuffer2KHR-pCopyBufferInfo-parameter
  pCopyBufferInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid VkCopyBufferInfo2KHR structure

- VUID-vkCmdCopyBuffer2KHR-commandBuffer-recording
  commandBuffer must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdCopyBuffer2KHR-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must support transfer, graphics, or compute operations

- VUID-vkCmdCopyBuffer2KHR-renderpass
  This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance

Host Synchronization

- Host access to commandBuffer must be externally synchronized

- Host access to the VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The VkCopyBufferInfo2KHR structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_copy_commands2
typedef struct VkCopyBufferInfo2KHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkBuffer srcBuffer;
    VkBuffer dstBuffer;
    uint32_t regionCount;
    const VkBufferCopy2KHR* pRegions;
} VkCopyBufferInfo2KHR;
```

- sType is the type of this structure.
- pNext is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• **srcBuffer** is the source buffer.
• **dstBuffer** is the destination buffer.
• **regionCount** is the number of regions to copy.
• **pRegions** is a pointer to an array of **VkBufferCopy2KHR** structures specifying the regions to copy.

Members defined by this structure with the same name as parameters in **vkCmdCopyBuffer** have the identical effect to those parameters; the child structure **VkBufferCopy2KHR** is a variant of **VkBufferCopy** which includes **sType** and **pNext** parameters, allowing it to be extended.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkCopyBufferInfo2KHR-srcOffset-00113**
  The **srcOffset** member of each element of **pRegions** must be less than the size of **srcBuffer**

- **VUID-VkCopyBufferInfo2KHR-dstOffset-00114**
  The **dstOffset** member of each element of **pRegions** must be less than the size of **dstBuffer**

- **VUID-VkCopyBufferInfo2KHR-size-00115**
  The **size** member of each element of **pRegions** must be less than or equal to the size of **srcBuffer** minus **srcOffset**

- **VUID-VkCopyBufferInfo2KHR-size-00116**
  The **size** member of each element of **pRegions** must be less than or equal to the size of **dstBuffer** minus **dstOffset**

- **VUID-VkCopyBufferInfo2KHR-pRegions-00117**
  The union of the source regions, and the union of the destination regions, specified by the elements of **pRegions**, must not overlap in memory

- **VUID-VkCopyBufferInfo2KHR-srcBuffer-00118**
  **srcBuffer** must have been created with **VK_BUFFER_USAGE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT** usage flag

- **VUID-VkCopyBufferInfo2KHR-srcBuffer-00119**
  If **srcBuffer** is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single **VkDeviceMemory** object

- **VUID-VkCopyBufferInfo2KHR-dstBuffer-001120**
  **dstBuffer** must have been created with **VK_BUFFER_USAGE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT** usage flag

- **VUID-VkCopyBufferInfo2KHR-dstBuffer-001121**
  If **dstBuffer** is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single **VkDeviceMemory** object
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkCopyBufferInfo2KHR-sType-sType**
  - `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COPY_BUFFER_INFO_2_KHR`

- **VUID-VkCopyBufferInfo2KHR-pNext-pNext**
  - `pNext` must be `NULL`

- **VUID-VkCopyBufferInfo2KHR-srcBuffer-parameter**
  - `srcBuffer` must be a valid `VkBuffer` handle

- **VUID-VkCopyBufferInfo2KHR-dstBuffer-parameter**
  - `dstBuffer` must be a valid `VkBuffer` handle

- **VUID-VkCopyBufferInfo2KHR-pRegions-parameter**
  - `pRegions` must be a valid pointer to an array of `regionCount` valid `VkBufferCopy2KHR` structures

- **VUID-VkCopyBufferInfo2KHR-regionCount-arraylength**
  - `regionCount` must be greater than `0`

- **VUID-VkCopyBufferInfo2KHR-commonparent**
  - Both of `dstBuffer`, and `srcBuffer` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`

The `VkBufferCopy2KHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_copy_commands2
typedef struct VkBufferCopy2KHR {
    VkStructureType     sType;
    const void*         pNext;
    VkDeviceSize        srcOffset;
    VkDeviceSize        dstOffset;
    VkDeviceSize        size;
} VkBufferCopy2KHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **srcOffset** is the starting offset in bytes from the start of `srcBuffer`.
- **dstOffset** is the starting offset in bytes from the start of `dstBuffer`.
- **size** is the number of bytes to copy.

Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkBufferCopy2KHR-size-01988**
  - The `size` must be greater than `0`
19.3. Copying Data Between Images

`vkCmdCopyImage` performs image copies in a similar manner to a host memcpy. It does not perform general-purpose conversions such as scaling, resizing, blending, color-space conversion, or format conversions. Rather, it simply copies raw image data. `vkCmdCopyImage` can copy between images with different formats, provided the formats are compatible as defined below.

To copy data between image objects, call:

```c
/* Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0 */
void vkCmdCopyImage(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    VkImage srcImage,    
    VkImageLayout srcImageLayout,
    VkImage dstImage,    
    VkImageLayout dstImageLayout,
    uint32_t regionCount,
    const VkImageCopy* pRegions);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
- `srcImage` is the source image.
- `srcImageLayout` is the current layout of the source image subresource.
- `dstImage` is the destination image.
- `dstImageLayout` is the current layout of the destination image subresource.
- `regionCount` is the number of regions to copy.
- `pRegions` is a pointer to an array of `VkImageCopy` structures specifying the regions to copy.

Each region in `pRegions` is copied from the source image to the same region of the destination image. `srcImage` and `dstImage` can be the same image or alias the same memory.

The formats of `srcImage` and `dstImage` must be compatible. Formats are compatible if they share the same class, as shown in the Compatible Formats table. Depth/stencil formats must match exactly.

If either `srcImage` or `dstImage` has a multi-planar format, regions of each plane to be copied must be specified separately using the `srcSubresource` and `dstSubresource` members of the `VkImageCopy` structure. In this case, the `aspectMask` of the `srcSubresource` or `dstSubresource` that refers to the multi-planar image must be `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT`, `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT`, or...
VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT. For the purposes of vkCmdCopyImage, each plane of a multi-planar image is treated as having the format listed in Compatible formats of planes of multi-planar formats for the plane identified by the aspectMask of the corresponding subresource. This applies both to VkFormat and to coordinates used in the copy, which correspond to texels in the plane rather than how these texels map to coordinates in the image as a whole.

Note
For example, the VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT plane of a VK_FORMAT_G8_B8R8_2PLANE_420_UNORM image is compatible with an image of format VK_FORMAT_R8G8_UNORM and (less usefully) with the VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT plane of an image of format VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6_R10X6_3PLANE_420_UNORM_3PACK16, as each texel is 2 bytes in size.

vkCmdCopyImage allows copying between size-compatible compressed and uncompressed internal formats. Formats are size-compatible if the texel block size of the uncompressed format is equal to the texel block size of the compressed format. Such a copy does not perform on-the-fly compression or decompression. When copying from an uncompressed format to a compressed format, each texel of uncompressed data of the source image is copied as a raw value to the corresponding compressed texel block of the destination image. When copying from a compressed format to an uncompressed format, each compressed texel block of the source image is copied as a raw value to the corresponding texel of uncompressed data in the destination image. Thus, for example, it is legal to copy between a 128-bit uncompressed format and a compressed format which has a 128-bit sized compressed texel block representing 4×4 texels (using 8 bits per texel), or between a 64-bit uncompressed format and a compressed format which has a 64-bit sized compressed texel block representing 4×4 texels (using 4 bits per texel).

When copying between compressed and uncompressed formats the extent members represent the texel dimensions of the source image and not the destination. When copying from a compressed image to an uncompressed image the image texel dimensions written to the uncompressed image will be source extent divided by the compressed texel block dimensions. When copying from an uncompressed image to a compressed image the image texel dimensions written to the compressed image will be the source extent multiplied by the compressed texel block dimensions. In both cases the number of bytes read and the number of bytes written will be identical.

Copying to or from block-compressed images is typically done in multiples of the compressed texel block size. For this reason the extent must be a multiple of the compressed texel block dimension. There is one exception to this rule which is required to handle compressed images created with dimensions that are not a multiple of the compressed texel block dimensions: if the srcImage is compressed, then:

- If extent.width is not a multiple of the compressed texel block width, then (extent.width + srcOffset.x) must equal the image subresource width.
- If extent.height is not a multiple of the compressed texel block height, then (extent.height + srcOffset.y) must equal the image subresource height.
- If extent.depth is not a multiple of the compressed texel block depth, then (extent.depth + srcOffset.z) must equal the image subresource depth.
Similarly, if the $dstImage$ is compressed, then:

- If $extent.width$ is not a multiple of the compressed texel block width, then $(extent.width + dstOffset.x)$ must equal the image subresource width.
- If $extent.height$ is not a multiple of the compressed texel block height, then $(extent.height + dstOffset.y)$ must equal the image subresource height.
- If $extent.depth$ is not a multiple of the compressed texel block depth, then $(extent.depth + dstOffset.z)$ must equal the image subresource depth.

This allows the last compressed texel block of the image in each non-multiple dimension to be included as a source or destination of the copy.

“_422” image formats that are not multi-planar are treated as having a 2×1 compressed texel block for the purposes of these rules.

`vkCmdCopyImage` can be used to copy image data between multisample images, but both images must have the same number of samples.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-pRegions-00124
  The union of all source regions, and the union of all destination regions, specified by the elements of `pRegions`, must not overlap in memory

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-srcImage-01995
  The format features of `srcImage` must contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT`

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-srcImage-00126
  `srcImage` must have been created with `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT` usage flag

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-srcImage-01546
  If `srcImage` is non-sparse then the image or disjoint plane to be copied must be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-srcImageLayout-00128
  `srcImageLayout` must specify the layout of the image subresources of `srcImage` specified in `pRegions` at the time this command is executed on a `VkDevice`

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-srcImageLayout-01917
  `srcImageLayout` must be `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_TRANSFER_SRC_OPTIMAL`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL`, or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHARED_PRESENT_KHR`

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-dstImage-01996
  The format features of `dstImage` must contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT`

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-dstImage-00131
  `dstImage` must have been created with `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT` usage flag

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-dstImage-01547
  If `dstImage` is non-sparse then the image or disjoint plane that is the destination of the copy must be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-dstImageLayout-00133
  `dstImageLayout` must specify the layout of the image subresources of `dstImage` specified in `pRegions` at the time this command is executed on a `VkDevice`

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-dstImageLayout-01395
  `dstImageLayout` must be `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_TRANSFER_DST_OPTIMAL`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL`, or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHARED_PRESENT_KHR`

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-srcImage-01548
  If the `VkFormat` of each of `srcImage` and `dstImage` is not a multi-planar format, the `VkFormat` of each of `srcImage` and `dstImage` must be compatible, as defined above

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-None-01549
  In a copy to or from a plane of a multi-planar image, the `VkFormat` of the image and plane must be compatible according to the description of compatible planes for the plane being copied

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-srcSubresource-00136
  The sample count of `srcImage` and `dstImage` must match

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-srcSubresource-01696
  The `srcSubresource.mipLevel` member of each element of `pRegions` must be less than the...
**mipLevels** specified in `VkImageCreateInfo` when `srcImage` was created

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-dstSubresource-01697**
  The `dstSubresource.mipLevel` member of each element of `pRegions` **must** be less than the `mipLevels` specified in `VkImageCreateInfo` when `dstImage` was created

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-srcSubresource-01698**
  The `srcSubresource.baseArrayLayer + srcSubresource.layerCount` of each element of `pRegions` **must** be less than or equal to the `arrayLayers` specified in `VkImageCreateInfo` when `srcImage` was created

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-dstSubresource-01699**
  The `dstSubresource.baseArrayLayer + dstSubresource.layerCount` of each element of `pRegions` **must** be less than or equal to the `arrayLayers` specified in `VkImageCreateInfo` when `dstImage` was created

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-srcOffset-01783**
  The `srcOffset` and `extent` members of each element of `pRegions` **must** respect the image transfer granularity requirements of `commandBuffer`'s command pool's queue family, as described in `VkQueueFamilyProperties`

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-dstOffset-01784**
  The `dstOffset` and `extent` members of each element of `pRegions` **must** respect the image transfer granularity requirements of `commandBuffer`'s command pool's queue family, as described in `VkQueueFamilyProperties`

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-srcImage-01551**
  If neither `srcImage` nor `dstImage` has a multi-planar image format then for each element of `pRegions`, `srcSubresource.aspectMask` and `dstSubresource.aspectMask` **must** match

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-srcImage-01552**
  If `srcImage` has a `VkFormat` with two planes then for each element of `pRegions`, `srcSubresource.aspectMask` **must** be `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT` or `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT`

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-srcImage-01553**
  If `srcImage` has a `VkFormat` with three planes then for each element of `pRegions`, `srcSubresource.aspectMask` **must** be `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT`, `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT`, or `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT`

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-dstImage-01554**
  If `dstImage` has a `VkFormat` with two planes then for each element of `pRegions`, `dstSubresource.aspectMask` **must** be `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT` or `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT`

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-dstImage-01555**
  If `dstImage` has a `VkFormat` with three planes then for each element of `pRegions`, `dstSubresource.aspectMask` **must** be `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT`, `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT`, or `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT`

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-srcImage-01556**
  If `srcImage` has a multi-planar image format and the `dstImage` does not have a multi-planar image format, then for each element of `pRegions`, `dstSubresource.aspectMask` **must** be `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT`

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-dstImage-01557**
If `dstImage` has a multi-planar image format and the `srcImage` does not have a multi-planar image format, then for each element of `pRegions`, `srcSubresource.aspectMask` must be `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT`.

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-srcImage-04443
  If `srcImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `srcSubresource.baseArrayLayer` must be 0 and `srcSubresource.layerCount` must be 1.

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-dstImage-04444
  If `dstImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `dstSubresource.baseArrayLayer` must be 0 and `dstSubresource.layerCount` must be 1.

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-aspectMask-00142
  For each element of `pRegions`, `srcSubresource.aspectMask` must specify aspects present in `srcImage`.

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-aspectMask-00143
  For each element of `pRegions`, `dstSubresource.aspectMask` must specify aspects present in `dstImage`.

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-srcOffset-00144
  For each element of `pRegions`, `srcOffset.x` and `(extent.width + srcOffset.x)` must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the width of the specified `srcSubresource` of `srcImage`.

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-srcOffset-00145
  For each element of `pRegions`, `srcOffset.y` and `(extent.height + srcOffset.y)` must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the height of the specified `srcSubresource` of `srcImage`.

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-srcOffset-00146
  If `srcImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `srcOffset.y` must be 0 and `extent.height` must be 1.

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-srcOffset-00147
  For each element of `pRegions`, `srcOffset.z` and `(extent.depth + srcOffset.z)` must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the depth of the specified `srcSubresource` of `srcImage`.

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-srcImage-01785
  If `srcImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `srcOffset.z` must be 0 and `extent.depth` must be 1.

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-dstImage-01786
  If `dstImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `dstOffset.z` must be 0 and `extent.depth` must be 1.

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-srcImage-01787
  If `srcImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `srcOffset.z` must be 0.

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-dstImage-01788
  If `dstImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `dstOffset.z` must be 0.

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-srcImage-01790
  If `srcImage` and `dstImage` are both of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D`, then for each element of...
**pRegions, extent.depth must be 1**

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-srcImage-01791**
  If `srcImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D`, and `dstImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `extent.depth` must equal `srcSubresource.layerCount`.

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-dstImage-01792**
  If `dstImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D`, and `srcImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `extent.depth` must equal `dstSubresource.layerCount`.

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-dstOffset-00150**
  For each element of `pRegions`, `dstOffset.x` and `(extent.width + dstOffset.x)` must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the width of the specified `dstSubresource` of `dstImage`.

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-dstOffset-00151**
  For each element of `pRegions`, `dstOffset.y` and `(extent.height + dstOffset.y)` must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the height of the specified `dstSubresource` of `dstImage`.

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-dstImage-00152**
  If `dstImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `dstOffset.y` must be 0 and `extent.height` must be 1.

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-dstOffset-00153**
  For each element of `pRegions`, `dstOffset.z` and `(extent.depth + dstOffset.z)` must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the depth of the specified `dstSubresource` of `dstImage`.

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-srcImage-01727**
  If `srcImage` is a blocked image, then for each element of `pRegions`, all members of `srcOffset` must be a multiple of the corresponding dimensions of the compressed texel block.

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-srcImage-01728**
  If `srcImage` is a blocked image, then for each element of `pRegions`, `extent.width` must be a multiple of the compressed texel block width or `(extent.width + srcOffset.x)` must equal the width of the specified `srcSubresource` of `srcImage`.

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-srcImage-01729**
  If `srcImage` is a blocked image, then for each element of `pRegions`, `extent.height` must be a multiple of the compressed texel block height or `(extent.height + srcOffset.y)` must equal the height of the specified `srcSubresource` of `srcImage`.

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-srcImage-01730**
  If `srcImage` is a blocked image, then for each element of `pRegions`, `extent.depth` must be a multiple of the compressed texel block depth or `(extent.depth + srcOffset.z)` must equal the depth of the specified `srcSubresource` of `srcImage`.

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-dstImage-01731**
  If `dstImage` is a blocked image, then for each element of `pRegions`, all members of `dstOffset` must be a multiple of the corresponding dimensions of the compressed texel block.
the width of the specified dstSubresource of dstImage

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-dstImage-01733
  If dstImage is a blocked image, then for each element of pRegions, extent.height must be a multiple of the compressed texel block height or (extent.height + dstOffset.y) must equal the height of the specified dstSubresource of dstImage

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-dstImage-01734
  If dstImage is a blocked image, then for each element of pRegions, extent.depth must be a multiple of the compressed texel block depth or (extent.depth + dstOffset.z) must equal the depth of the specified dstSubresource of dstImage

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-commandBuffer-parameter
commandBuffer must be a valid VkCommandBuffer handle

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-srcImage-parameter
srcImage must be a valid VkImage handle

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-srcImageLayout-parameter
srcImageLayout must be a valid VkImageLayout value

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-dstImage-parameter
dstImage must be a valid VkImage handle

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-dstImageLayout-parameter
dstImageLayout must be a valid VkImageLayout value

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-pRegions-parameter
pRegions must be a valid pointer to an array of regionCount valid VkImageCopy structures

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-commandBuffer-recording
commandBuffer must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-commandBuffer-cmdpool
The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must support transfer, graphics, or compute operations

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-renderpass
This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-regionCount-arraylength
regionCount must be greater than 0

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImage-commonparent
Each of commandBuffer, dstImage, and srcImage must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same VkDevice
Host Synchronization

- Host access to commandBuffer must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The VkImageCopy structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkImageCopy {
    VkImageSubresourceLayers srcSubresource;
    VkOffset3D srcOffset;
    VkImageSubresourceLayers dstSubresource;
    VkOffset3D dstOffset;
    VkExtent3D extent;
} VkImageCopy;
```

- srcSubresource and dstSubresource are VkImageSubresourceLayers structures specifying the image subresources of the images used for the source and destination image data, respectively.
- srcOffset and dstOffset select the initial x, y, and z offsets in texels of the sub-regions of the source and destination image data.
- extent is the size in texels of the image to copy in width, height and depth.

For VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D images, copies are performed slice by slice starting with the z member of the srcOffset or dstOffset, and copying depth slices. For images with multiple layers, copies are performed layer by layer starting with the baseArrayLayer member of the srcSubresource or dstSubresource and copying layerCount layers. Image data can be copied between images with different image types. If one image is VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D and the other image is VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D with multiple layers, then each slice is copied to or from a different layer.

Copies involving a multi-planar image format specify the region to be copied in terms of the plane to be copied, not the coordinates of the multi-planar image. This means that copies accessing the R/B planes of “.422” format images must fit the copied region within half the width of the parent image, and that copies accessing the R/B planes of “.420” format images must fit the copied region within half the width and height of the parent image.
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkImageCopy-extent-00140
  The number of slices of the `extent` (for 3D) or layers of the `srcSubresource` (for non-3D) must match the number of slices of the `extent` (for 3D) or layers of the `dstSubresource` (for non-3D).

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkImageCopy-srcSubresource-parameter
  `srcSubresource` must be a valid `VkImageSubresourceLayers` structure

- VUID-VkImageCopy-dstSubresource-parameter
  `dstSubresource` must be a valid `VkImageSubresourceLayers` structure

The `VkImageSubresourceLayers` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkImageSubresourceLayers {
    VkImageAspectFlags aspectMask;
    uint32_t mipLevel;
    uint32_t baseArrayLayer;
    uint32_t layerCount;
} VkImageSubresourceLayers;
```

- `aspectMask` is a combination of `VkImageAspectFlagBits`, selecting the color, depth and/or stencil aspects to be copied.
- `mipLevel` is the mipmap level to copy
- `baseArrayLayer` and `layerCount` are the starting layer and number of layers to copy.

Valid Usage

- VUID-VkImageSubresourceLayers-aspectMask-00167
  If `aspectMask` contains `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT`, it must not contain either of `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_DEPTH_BIT` or `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_STENCIL_BIT`

- VUID-VkImageSubresourceLayers-aspectMask-00168
  `aspectMask` must not contain `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_METADATA_BIT`

- VUID-VkImageSubresourceLayers-layerCount-01700
  `layerCount` must be greater than 0
A more extensible version of the copy image command is defined below.

To copy data between image objects, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_copy_commands2
void vkCmdCopyImage2KHR(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    const VkCopyImageInfo2KHR* pCopyImageInfo);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
- `pCopyImageInfo` is a pointer to a `VkCopyImageInfo2KHR` structure describing the copy parameters.

This command is functionally identical to `vkCmdCopyImage`, but includes extensible sub-structures that include `sType` and `pNext` parameters, allowing them to be more easily extended.
Host Synchronization

• Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized
• Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Transfer, Graphics, Compute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The `VkCopyImageInfo2KHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_copy_commands2
typedef struct VkCopyImageInfo2KHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkImage srcImage;
    VkImageLayout srcImageLayout;
    VkImage dstImage;
    VkImageLayout dstImageLayout;
    uint32_t regionCount;
    const VkImageCopy2KHR* pRegions;
} VkCopyImageInfo2KHR;
```

• `sType` is the type of this structure.
• `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• `srcImage` is the source image.
• `srcImageLayout` is the current layout of the source image subresource.
• `dstImage` is the destination image.
• `dstImageLayout` is the current layout of the destination image subresource.
• `regionCount` is the number of regions to copy.
• `pRegions` is a pointer to an array of `VkImageCopy2KHR` structures specifying the regions to copy.
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-pRegions-00124
  The union of all source regions, and the union of all destination regions, specified by the elements of pRegions, **must** not overlap in memory

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-srcImage-01995
  The **format features** of **srcImage** **must** contain **VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT**

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-srcImage-00126
  **srcImage** **must** have been created with **VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT** usage flag

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-srcImage-01546
  If **srcImage** is non-sparse then the image or **disjoint** plane to be copied **must** be bound completely and contiguously to a single **VkDeviceMemory** object

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-srcImageLayout-00128
  **srcImageLayout** **must** specify the layout of the image subresources of **srcImage** specified in pRegions at the time this command is executed on a **VkDevice**

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-srcImageLayout-01917
  **srcImageLayout** **must** be **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_TRANSFER_SRC_OPTIMAL**, **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL**, or **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHARED_PRESENT_KHR**

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-dstImage-01996
  The **format features** of **dstImage** **must** contain **VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT**

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-dstImage-00131
  **dstImage** **must** have been created with **VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT** usage flag

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-dstImage-01547
  If **dstImage** is non-sparse then the image or **disjoint** plane that is the destination of the copy **must** be bound completely and contiguously to a single **VkDeviceMemory** object

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-dstImageLayout-00133
  **dstImageLayout** **must** specify the layout of the image subresources of **dstImage** specified in pRegions at the time this command is executed on a **VkDevice**

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-dstImageLayout-01395
  **dstImageLayout** **must** be **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_TRANSFER_DST_OPTIMAL**, **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL**, or **VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHARED_PRESENT_KHR**

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-srcImage-01548
  If the **VkFormat** of each of **srcImage** and **dstImage** is not a **multi-planar format**, the **VkFormat** of each of **srcImage** and **dstImage** **must** be compatible, as defined above

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-None-01549
  In a copy to or from a plane of a **multi-planar image**, the **VkFormat** of the image and plane **must** be compatible according to the description of compatible planes for the plane being copied

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-srcImage-00136
  The sample count of **srcImage** and **dstImage** **must** match

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-srcSubresource-01696
  The **srcSubresource.mipLevel** member of each element of pRegions **must** be less than the...
mipLevels specified in VkImageCreateInfo when srcImage was created

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-dstSubresource-01697
  The dstSubresource.mipLevel member of each element of pRegions must be less than the mipLevels specified in VkImageCreateInfo when dstImage was created

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-srcSubresource-01698
  The srcSubresource.baseArrayLayer + srcSubresource.layerCount of each element of pRegions must be less than or equal to the arrayLayers specified in VkImageCreateInfo when srcImage was created

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-dstSubresource-01699
  The dstSubresource.baseArrayLayer + dstSubresource.layerCount of each element of pRegions must be less than or equal to the arrayLayers specified in VkImageCreateInfo when dstImage was created

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-srcOffset-01783
  The srcOffset and extent members of each element of pRegions must respect the image transfer granularity requirements of commandBuffer’s command pool’s queue family, as described in VkQueueFamilyProperties

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-dstOffset-01784
  The dstOffset and extent members of each element of pRegions must respect the image transfer granularity requirements of commandBuffer’s command pool’s queue family, as described in VkQueueFamilyProperties

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-srcImage-01551
  If neither srcImage nor dstImage has a multi-planar image format then for each element of pRegions, srcSubresource.aspectMask and dstSubresource.aspectMask must match

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-srcImage-01552
  If srcImage has a VkFormat with two planes then for each element of pRegions, srcSubresource.aspectMask must be VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT or VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-srcImage-01553
  If srcImage has a VkFormat with three planes then for each element of pRegions, srcSubresource.aspectMask must be VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT, VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT, or VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-dstImage-01554
  If dstImage has a VkFormat with two planes then for each element of pRegions, dstSubresource.aspectMask must be VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT or VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-dstImage-01555
  If dstImage has a VkFormat with three planes then for each element of pRegions, dstSubresource.aspectMask must be VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT, VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT, or VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-srcImage-01556
  If srcImage has a multi-planar image format and the dstImage does not have a multi-planar image format, then for each element of pRegions, dstSubresource.aspectMask must be VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-dstImage-01557
If `dstImage` has a multi-planar image format and the `srcImage` does not have a multi-planar image format, then for each element of `pRegions`, `srcSubresource.aspectMask` must be `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT`.

- **VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-srcImage-04443**
  If `srcImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `srcSubresource.baseArrayLayer` must be 0 and `srcSubresource.layerCount` must be 1.

- **VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-dstImage-04444**
  If `dstImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `dstSubresource.baseArrayLayer` must be 0 and `dstSubresource.layerCount` must be 1.

- **VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-aspectMask-00142**
  For each element of `pRegions`, `srcSubresource.aspectMask` must specify aspects present in `srcImage`.

- **VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-aspectMask-00143**
  For each element of `pRegions`, `dstSubresource.aspectMask` must specify aspects present in `dstImage`.

- **VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-srcOffset-00144**
  For each element of `pRegions`, `srcOffset.x` and `(extent.width + srcOffset.x)` must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the width of the specified `srcSubresource` of `srcImage`.

- **VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-srcOffset-00145**
  For each element of `pRegions`, `srcOffset.y` and `(extent.height + srcOffset.y)` must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the height of the specified `srcSubresource` of `srcImage`.

- **VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-srcImage-01785**
  If `srcImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `srcOffset.y` must be 0 and `extent.height` must be 1.

- **VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-dstImage-01786**
  If `dstImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `dstOffset.z` must be 0 and `extent.depth` must be 1.

- **VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-srcImage-01787**
  If `srcImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `srcOffset.z` must be 0.

- **VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-dstImage-01788**
  If `dstImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `dstOffset.z` must be 0.

- **VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-srcImage-01790**
  If `srcImage` and `dstImage` are both of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D`, then for each element of...
pRegions, extent.depth must be 1

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-srcImage-01791
  If srcImage is of type VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D, and dstImage is of type VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D, then for each element of pRegions, extent.depth must equal srcSubresource.layerCount

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-dstImage-01792
  If dstImage is of type VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D, and srcImage is of type VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D, then for each element of pRegions, extent.depth must equal dstSubresource.layerCount

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-dstOffset-00150
  For each element of pRegions, dstOffset.x and (extent.width + dstOffset.x) must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the width of the specified dstSubresource of dstImage

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-dstOffset-00151
  For each element of pRegions, dstOffset.y and (extent.height + dstOffset.y) must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the height of the specified dstSubresource of dstImage

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-dstImage-00152
  If dstImage is of type VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D, then for each element of pRegions, dstOffset.y must be 0 and extent.height must be 1

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-dstOffset-00153
  For each element of pRegions, dstOffset.z and (extent.depth + dstOffset.z) must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the depth of the specified dstSubresource of dstImage

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-srcImage-01727
  If srcImage is a blocked image, then for each element of pRegions, all members of srcOffset must be a multiple of the corresponding dimensions of the compressed texel block

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-srcImage-01728
  If srcImage is a blocked image, then for each element of pRegions, extent.width must be a multiple of the compressed texel block width or (extent.width + srcOffset.x) must equal the width of the specified srcSubresource of srcImage

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-srcImage-01729
  If srcImage is a blocked image, then for each element of pRegions, extent.height must be a multiple of the compressed texel block height or (extent.height + srcOffset.y) must equal the height of the specified srcSubresource of srcImage

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-srcImage-01730
  If srcImage is a blocked image, then for each element of pRegions, extent.depth must be a multiple of the compressed texel block depth or (extent.depth + srcOffset.z) must equal the depth of the specified srcSubresource of srcImage

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-dstImage-01731
  If dstImage is a blocked image, then for each element of pRegions, all members of dstOffset must be a multiple of the corresponding dimensions of the compressed texel block

- VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-dstImage-01732
  If dstImage is a blocked image, then for each element of pRegions, extent.width must be a multiple of the compressed texel block width or (extent.width + dstOffset.x) must equal
the width of the specified dstSubresource of dstImage

• VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-dstImage-01733
  If dstImage is a blocked image, then for each element of pRegions, extent.height must be a multiple of the compressed texel block height or (extent.height + dstOffset.y) must equal the height of the specified dstSubresource of dstImage

• VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-dstImage-01734
  If dstImage is a blocked image, then for each element of pRegions, extent.depth must be a multiple of the compressed texel block depth or (extent.depth + dstOffset.z) must equal the depth of the specified dstSubresource of dstImage

Valid Usage (Implicit)

• VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COPY_IMAGE_INFO_2_KHR

• VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-pNext-pNext
  pNext must be NULL

• VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-srcImage-parameter
  srcImage must be a valid VkImage handle

• VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-srcImageLayout-parameter
  srcImageLayout must be a valid VkImageLayout value

• VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-dstImage-parameter
  dstImage must be a valid VkImage handle

• VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-dstImageLayout-parameter
  dstImageLayout must be a valid VkImageLayout value

• VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-pRegions-parameter
  pRegions must be a valid pointer to an array of regionCount valid VkImageCopy2KHR structures

• VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-regionCount-arraylength
  regionCount must be greater than 0

• VUID-VkCopyImageInfo2KHR-commonparent
  Both of dstImage, and srcImage must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same VkDevice

The VkImageCopy2KHR structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkImageCopy2KHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkImageSubresourceLayers srcSubresource;
    VkOffset3D srcOffset;
    VkImageSubresourceLayers dstSubresource;
    VkOffset3D dstOffset;
    VkExtent3D extent;
} VkImageCopy2KHR;

• sType is the type of this structure.
• pNext is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• srcSubresource and dstSubresource are VkImageSubresourceLayers structures specifying the image subresources of the images used for the source and destination image data, respectively.
• srcOffset and dstOffset select the initial x, y, and z offsets in texels of the sub-regions of the source and destination image data.
• extent is the size in texels of the image to copy in width, height and depth.

Valid Usage

• VUID-VkImageCopy2KHR-extent-00140
  The number of slices of the extent (for 3D) or layers of the srcSubresource (for non-3D) must match the number of slices of the extent (for 3D) or layers of the dstSubresource (for non-3D)

Valid Usage (Implicit)

• VUID-VkImageCopy2KHR-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_COPY_2_KHR
• VUID-VkImageCopy2KHR-pNext-pNext
  pNext must be NULL
• VUID-VkImageCopy2KHR-srcSubresource-parameter
  srcSubresource must be a valid VkImageSubresourceLayers structure
• VUID-VkImageCopy2KHR-dstSubresource-parameter
  dstSubresource must be a valid VkImageSubresourceLayers structure

19.4. Copying Data Between Buffers and Images

To copy data from a buffer object to an image object, call:
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0

void vkCmdCopyBufferToImage(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    VkBuffer srcBuffer,
    VkImage dstImage,
    VkImageLayout dstImageLayout,
    uint32_t regionCount,
    const VkBufferImageCopy* pRegions);

• commandBuffer is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
• srcBuffer is the source buffer.
• dstImage is the destination image.
• dstImageLayout is the layout of the destination image subresources for the copy.
• regionCount is the number of regions to copy.
• pRegions is a pointer to an array of VkBufferImageCopy structures specifying the regions to copy.

Each region in pRegions is copied from the specified region of the source buffer to the specified region of the destination image.

If dstImage has a multi-planar format, regions of each plane to be a target of a copy must be specified separately using the pRegions member of the VkBufferImageCopy structure. In this case, the aspectMask of imageSubresource must be VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT, VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT, or VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT. For the purposes of vkCmdCopyBufferToImage, each plane of a multi-planar image is treated as having the format listed in Compatible formats of planes of multi-planar formats for the plane identified by the aspectMask of the corresponding subresource. This applies both to VkFormat and to coordinates used in the copy, which correspond to texels in the plane rather than how these texels map to coordinates in the image as a whole.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyBufferToImage-pRegions-06217**
  The image region specified by each element of `pRegions` must be contained within the specified `imageSubresource` of `dstImage`.

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyBufferToImage-pRegions-00171**
  `srcBuffer` must be large enough to contain all buffer locations that are accessed according to `Buffer and Image Addressing`, for each element of `pRegions`.

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyBufferToImage-pRegions-00173**
  The union of all source regions, and the union of all destination regions, specified by the elements of `pRegions`, must not overlap in memory.

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyBufferToImage-srcBuffer-00174**
  `srcBuffer` must have been created with `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT` usage flag.

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyBufferToImage-dstImage-01997**
  The format features of `dstImage` must contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT`.

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyBufferToImage-srcBuffer-00176**
  If `srcBuffer` is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object.

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyBufferToImage-dstImage-00177**
  `dstImage` must have been created with `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT` usage flag.

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyBufferToImage-dstImage-00178**
  If `dstImage` is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object.

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyBufferToImage-dstImage-00179**
  `dstImage` must have a sample count equal to `VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT`.

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyBufferToImage-dstImageLayout-00180**
  `dstImageLayout` must specify the layout of the image subresources of `dstImage` specified in `pRegions` at the time this command is executed on a `VkDevice`.

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyBufferToImage-dstImageLayout-01396**
  `dstImageLayout` must be `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_TRANSFER_DST_OPTIMAL`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL`, or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHARED_PRESENT_KHR`.

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyBufferToImage-imageSubresource-01701**
  The `imageSubresource.mipLevel` member of each element of `pRegions` must be less than the `mipLevels` specified in `VkImageCreateInfo` when `dstImage` was created.

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyBufferToImage-imageSubresource-01702**
  The `imageSubresource.baseArrayLayer + imageSubresource.layerCount` of each element of `pRegions` must be less than or equal to the `arrayLayers` specified in `VkImageCreateInfo` when `dstImage` was created.

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyBufferToImage-imageOffset-01793**
  The `imageOffset` and `imageExtent` members of each element of `pRegions` must respect the image transfer granularity requirements of `commandBuffer`'s command pool's queue family, as described in `VkQueueFamilyProperties`.

914 | Chapter 19. Copy Commands
For each element of `pRegions` whose `imageSubresource` contains a depth aspect, the data in `srcBuffer` must be in the range [0,1].

If the queue family used to create the `VkCommandPool` which `commandBuffer` was allocated from does not support `VK_QUEUE_GRAPHICS_BIT`, for each element of `pRegions`, the `aspectMask` member of `imageSubresource` must not be `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_DEPTH_BIT` or `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_STENCIL_BIT`.

For each element of `pRegions`, `imageOffset.x` and `(imageExtent.width + imageOffset.x)` must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the width of the specified `imageSubresource` of `dstImage`.

For each element of `pRegions`, `imageOffset.y` and `(imageExtent.height + imageOffset.y)` must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the height of the specified `imageSubresource` of `dstImage`.

If `dstImage` does not have either a depth/stencil or a multi-planar format, then for each element of `pRegions`, `bufferOffset` must be a multiple of the format’s texel block size.

If `dstImage` has a multi-planar format, then for each element of `pRegions`, `bufferOffset` must be a multiple of the element size of the compatible format for the format and the `aspectMask` of the `imageSubresource` as defined in Compatible formats of planes of multi-planar formats.

If `dstImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `imageOffset.y` must be 0 and `imageExtent.height` must be 1.

For each element of `pRegions`, `imageOffset.z` and `(imageExtent.depth + imageOffset.z)` must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the depth of the specified `imageSubresource` of `dstImage`.

If `dstImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D` or `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `imageOffset.z` must be 0 and `imageExtent.depth` must be 1.

If `dstImage` is a blocked image, for each element of `pRegions`, `bufferRowLength` must be a multiple of the compressed texel block width.

If `dstImage` is a blocked image, for each element of `pRegions`, `bufferImageHeight` must be a multiple of the compressed texel block height.

If `dstImage` is a blocked image, for each element of `pRegions`, all members of `imageOffset` must be a multiple of the corresponding dimensions of the compressed texel block.
If `dstImage` is a blocked image, for each element of `pRegions`, `bufferOffset` must be a multiple of the compressed texel block size in bytes.

If `dstImage` is a blocked image, for each element of `pRegions`, `imageExtent.width` must be a multiple of the compressed texel block width or `(imageExtent.width + imageOffset.x)` must equal the width of the specified `imageSubresource` of `dstImage`.

If `dstImage` is a blocked image, for each element of `pRegions`, `imageExtent.height` must be a multiple of the compressed texel block height or `(imageExtent.height + imageOffset.y)` must equal the height of the specified `imageSubresource` of `dstImage`.

If `dstImage` is a blocked image, for each element of `pRegions`, `imageExtent.depth` must be a multiple of the compressed texel block depth or `(imageExtent.depth + imageOffset.z)` must equal the depth of the specified `imageSubresource` of `dstImage`.

For each element of `pRegions`, `imageSubresource.aspectMask` must specify aspects present in `dstImage`.

If `dstImage` has a multi-planar format, then for each element of `pRegions`, `imageSubresource.aspectMask` must be `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT`, `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT`, or `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT` (with `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT` valid only for image formats with three planes).

If `dstImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D`, for each element of `pRegions`, `imageSubresource.baseArrayLayer` must be 0 and `imageSubresource.layerCount` must be 1.

If `dstImage` is not a blocked image, for each element of `pRegions`, `bufferRowLength` multiplied by the texel block size of `dstImage` must be less than or equal to \(2^{31} - 1\).

If `dstImage` is a blocked image, for each element of `pRegions`, `bufferRowLength` divided by the compressed texel block width and then multiplied by the texel block size of `dstImage` must be less than or equal to \(2^{31} - 1\).

If the queue family used to create the `VkCommandPool` which `commandBuffer` was allocated from does not support `VK_QUEUE_GRAPHICS_BIT` or `VK_QUEUE_COMPUTE_BIT`, the `bufferOffset` member of any element of `pRegions` must be a multiple of 4.

If `dstImage` has a depth/stencil format, the `bufferOffset` member of any element of `pRegions` must be a multiple of 4.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdCopyBufferToImage-commandBuffer-parameter
  commandBuffer must be a valid VkCommandBuffer handle
- VUID-vkCmdCopyBufferToImage-srcBuffer-parameter
  srcBuffer must be a valid VkBuffer handle
- VUID-vkCmdCopyBufferToImage-dstImage-parameter
  dstImage must be a valid VkImage handle
- VUID-vkCmdCopyBufferToImage-dstImageLayout-parameter
  dstImageLayout must be a valid VkImageLayout value
- VUID-vkCmdCopyBufferToImage-pRegions-parameter
  pRegions must be a valid pointer to an array of regionCount valid VkBufferImageCopy structures
- VUID-vkCmdCopyBufferToImage-commandBuffer-recording
  commandBuffer must be in the recording state
- VUID-vkCmdCopyBufferToImage-commandBuffer-cmddpool
  The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must support transfer, graphics, or compute operations
- VUID-vkCmdCopyBufferToImage-renderpass
  This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance
- VUID-vkCmdCopyBufferToImage-regionCount-arraylength
  regionCount must be greater than 0
- VUID-vkCmdCopyBufferToImage-commonparent
  Each of commandBuffer, dstImage, and srcBuffer must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same VkDevice

Host Synchronization

- Host access to commandBuffer must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To copy data from an image object to a buffer object, call:
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0

```c
void vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    VkImage srcImage,
    VkImageLayout srcImageLayout,
    VkBuffer dstBuffer,
    uint32_t regionCount,
    const VkBufferImageCopy* pRegions);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
- `srcImage` is the source image.
- `srcImageLayout` is the layout of the source image subresources for the copy.
- `dstBuffer` is the destination buffer.
- `regionCount` is the number of regions to copy.
- `pRegions` is a pointer to an array of `VkBufferImageCopy` structures specifying the regions to copy.

Each region in `pRegions` is copied from the specified region of the source image to the specified region of the destination buffer.

If `srcImage` has a multi-planar format, regions of each plane to be a source of a copy must be specified separately using the `pRegions` member of the `VkBufferImageCopy` structure. In this case, the `aspectMask` of `imageSubresource` must be `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT`, `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT`, or `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT`. For the purposes of `vkCmdCopyBufferToImage`, each plane of a multi-planar image is treated as having the format listed in `Compatible formats of planes of multi-planar formats` for the plane identified by the `aspectMask` of the corresponding subresource. This applies both to `VkFormat` and to coordinates used in the copy, which correspond to texels in the `plane` rather than how these texels map to coordinates in the image as a whole.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer-pRegions-06220
  The image region specified by each element of `pRegions` must be contained within the specified `imageSubresource` of `srcImage`.

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer-pRegions-00183
  `dstBuffer` must be large enough to contain all buffer locations that are accessed according to Buffer and Image Addressing, for each element of `pRegions`.

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer-pRegions-00184
  The union of all source regions, and the union of all destination regions, specified by the elements of `pRegions`, must not overlap in memory.

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer-srcImage-00186
  `srcImage` must have been created with `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT` usage flag.

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer-srcImage-01998
  The format features of `srcImage` must contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT`.

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer-srcImage-00187
  If `srcImage` is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object.

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer-dstBuffer-00191
  `dstBuffer` must have been created with `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT` usage flag.

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer-dstBuffer-00192
  If `dstBuffer` is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object.

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer-srcImage-00188
  `srcImage` must have a sample count equal to `VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT`.

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer-srcImageLayout-00189
  `srcImageLayout` must specify the layout of the image subresources of `srcImage` specified in `pRegions` at the time this command is executed on a `VkDevice`.

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer-srcImageLayout-01397
  `srcImageLayout` must be `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_TRANSFER_SRC_OPTIMAL`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL`, or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHARED_PRESENT_KHR`.

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer-imageSubresource-01703
  The `imageSubresource.mipLevel` member of each element of `pRegions` must be less than the `mipLevels` specified in `VkImageCreateInfo` when `srcImage` was created.

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer-imageSubresource-01704
  The `imageSubresource.baseArrayLayer + imageSubresource.layerCount` of each element of `pRegions` must be less than or equal to the `arrayLayers` specified in `VkImageCreateInfo` when `srcImage` was created.

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer-imageOffset-01794
  The `imageOffset` and `imageExtent` members of each element of `pRegions` must respect the image transfer granularity requirements of `commandBuffer`'s command pool's queue family, as described in `VkQueueFamilyProperties`.
For each element of \texttt{pRegions}, \texttt{imageOffset.x} and \((\texttt{imageExtent.width} + \texttt{imageOffset.x})\) \textbf{must} both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the width of the specified \texttt{imageSubresource} of \texttt{srcImage}.

For each element of \texttt{pRegions}, \texttt{imageOffset.y} and \((\texttt{imageExtent.height} + \texttt{imageOffset.y})\) \textbf{must} both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the height of the specified \texttt{imageSubresource} of \texttt{srcImage}.

If \texttt{srcImage} does not have either a depth/stencil or a \texttt{multi-planar format}, then for each element of \texttt{pRegions}, \texttt{bufferOffset} \textbf{must} be a multiple of the format's texel block size.

If \texttt{srcImage} has a \texttt{multi-planar format}, then for each element of \texttt{pRegions}, \texttt{bufferOffset} \textbf{must} be a multiple of the element size of the compatible format for the format and the \texttt{aspectMask} of the \texttt{imageSubresource} as defined in \texttt{Compatible formats of planes of multi-planar formats}.

If \texttt{srcImage} is of type \texttt{VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D}, then for each element of \texttt{pRegions}, \texttt{imageOffset.y} \textbf{must} be 0 and \texttt{imageExtent.height} \textbf{must} be 1.

For each element of \texttt{pRegions}, \texttt{imageOffset.z} and \((\texttt{imageExtent.depth} + \texttt{imageOffset.z})\) \textbf{must} both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the depth of the specified \texttt{imageSubresource} of \texttt{srcImage}.

If \texttt{srcImage} is of type \texttt{VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D} or \texttt{VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D}, then for each element of \texttt{pRegions}, \texttt{imageOffset.z} \textbf{must} be 0 and \texttt{imageExtent.depth} \textbf{must} be 1.

If \texttt{srcImage} is a \texttt{blocked image}, for each element of \texttt{pRegions}, \texttt{bufferRowLength} \textbf{must} be a multiple of the compressed texel block width.

If \texttt{srcImage} is a \texttt{blocked image}, for each element of \texttt{pRegions}, \texttt{bufferImageHeight} \textbf{must} be a multiple of the compressed texel block height.

If \texttt{srcImage} is a \texttt{blocked image}, for each element of \texttt{pRegions}, all members of \texttt{imageOffset} \textbf{must} be a multiple of the corresponding dimensions of the compressed texel block.

If \texttt{srcImage} is a \texttt{blocked image}, for each element of \texttt{pRegions}, \texttt{bufferOffset} \textbf{must} be a multiple of the compressed texel block size in bytes.

If \texttt{srcImage} is a \texttt{blocked image}, for each element of \texttt{pRegions}, \texttt{imageExtent.width} \textbf{must} be a multiple of the compressed texel block width or \((\texttt{imageExtent.width} + \texttt{imageOffset.x})\) \textbf{must} equal the width of the specified \texttt{imageSubresource} of \texttt{srcImage}.
If `srcImage` is a **blocked image**, for each element of `pRegions`, `imageExtent.height` must be a multiple of the compressed texel block height or `(imageExtent.height + imageOffset.y)` must equal the height of the specified `imageSubresource` of `srcImage`.

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer-imageExtent-00209**
  If `srcImage` is a **blocked image**, for each element of `pRegions`, `imageExtent.depth` must be a multiple of the compressed texel block depth or `(imageExtent.depth + imageOffset.z)` must equal the depth of the specified `imageSubresource` of `srcImage`.

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer-aspectMask-00211**
  For each element of `pRegions`, `imageSubresource.aspectMask` must specify aspects present in `srcImage`.

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer-aspectMask-01560**
  If `srcImage` has a **multi-planar format**, then for each element of `pRegions`, `imageSubresource.aspectMask` must be `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT`, `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT`, or `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT` (with `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT` valid only for image formats with three planes).

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer-baseArrayLayer-00213**
  If `srcImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D`, for each element of `pRegions`, `imageSubresource.baseArrayLayer` must be 0 and `imageSubresource.layerCount` must be 1.

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer-pRegions-04725**
  If `srcImage` is not a **blocked image**, for each element of `pRegions`, `bufferRowLength` multiplied by the texel block size of `srcImage` must be less than or equal to $2^{31} - 1$.

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer-pRegions-04726**
  If `srcImage` is a **blocked image**, for each element of `pRegions`, `bufferRowLength` divided by the compressed texel block width and then multiplied by the texel block size of `srcImage` must be less than or equal to $2^{31} - 1$.

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer-commandBuffer-04052**
  If the queue family used to create the `VkCommandPool` which `commandBuffer` was allocated from does not support `VK_QUEUE_GRAPHICS_BIT` or `VK_QUEUE_COMPUTE_BIT`, the `bufferOffset` member of any element of `pRegions` must be a multiple of 4.

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer-srcImage-04053**
  If `srcImage` has a depth/stencil format, the `bufferOffset` member of any element of `pRegions` must be a multiple of 4.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle
- `srcImage` must be a valid `VkImage` handle
- `srcImageLayout` must be a valid `VkImageLayout` value
- `dstBuffer` must be a valid `VkBuffer` handle
- `pRegions` must be a valid pointer to an array of `regionCount` valid `VkBufferImageCopy` structures
- `commandBuffer` must be in the recording state
- The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support transfer, graphics, or compute operations
- This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance
- `regionCount` must be greater than 0
- Each of `commandBuffer`, `dstBuffer`, and `srcImage` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For both `vkCmdCopyBufferToImage` and `vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer`, each element of `pRegions` is a
structure defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkBufferImageCopy {
    VkDeviceSize bufferOffset;
    uint32_t bufferRowLength;
    uint32_t bufferImageHeight;
    VkImageSubresourceLayers imageSubresource;
    VkOffset3D imageOffset;
    VkExtent3D imageExtent;
} VkBufferImageCopy;
```

- **bufferOffset** is the offset in bytes from the start of the buffer object where the image data is copied from or to.
- **bufferRowLength** and **bufferImageHeight** specify in texels a subregion of a larger two- or three-dimensional image in buffer memory, and control the addressing calculations. If either of these values is zero, that aspect of the buffer memory is considered to be tightly packed according to the **imageExtent**.
- **imageSubresource** is a `VkImageSubresourceLayers` used to specify the specific image subresources of the image used for the source or destination image data.
- **imageOffset** selects the initial x, y, z offsets in texels of the sub-region of the source or destination image data.
- **imageExtent** is the size in texels of the image to copy in width, height and depth.

When copying to or from a depth or stencil aspect, the data in buffer memory uses a layout that is a (mostly) tightly packed representation of the depth or stencil data. Specifically:

- data copied to or from the stencil aspect of any depth/stencil format is tightly packed with one `VK_FORMAT_S8_UINT` value per texel.
- data copied to or from the depth aspect of a `VK_FORMAT_D16_UNORM` or `VK_FORMAT_D16_UNORM_S8_UINT` format is tightly packed with one `VK_FORMAT_D16_UNORM` value per texel.
- data copied to or from the depth aspect of a `VK_FORMAT_D32_SFLOAT` or `VK_FORMAT_D32_SFLOAT_S8_UINT` format is tightly packed with one `VK_FORMAT_D32_SFLOAT` value per texel.
- data copied to or from the depth aspect of a `VK_FORMAT_X8_D24_UNORM_PACK32` or `VK_FORMAT_D24_UNORM_S8_UINT` format is packed with one 32-bit word per texel with the D24 value in the LSBs of the word, and undefined values in the eight MSBs.

**Note**

To copy both the depth and stencil aspects of a depth/stencil format, two entries in `pRegions` can be used, where one specifies the depth aspect in **imageSubresource**, and the other specifies the stencil aspect.

Because depth or stencil aspect buffer to image copies may require format conversions on some implementations, they are not supported on queues that do not support graphics.
When copying to a depth aspect, the data in buffer memory must be in the range [0,1], or the resulting values are undefined.

Copies are done layer by layer starting with image layer baseArrayLayer member of imageSubresource.layerCount layers are copied from the source image or to the destination image.

For purpose of valid usage statements here and in related copy commands, a blocked image is defined as:

- an image with a single-plane, “_422” format, which is treated as a format with a $2 \times 1$ compressed texel block, or
- a compressed image.

Valid Usage

- VUID-VkBufferImageCopy-bufferRowLength-00195
  bufferRowLength must be 0, or greater than or equal to the width member of imageExtent

- VUID-VkBufferImageCopy-bufferImageHeight-00196
  bufferImageHeight must be 0, or greater than or equal to the height member of imageExtent

- VUID-VkBufferImageCopy-aspectMask-00212
  The aspectMask member of imageSubresource must only have a single bit set

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkBufferImageCopy-imageSubresource-parameter
  imageSubresource must be a valid VkImageSubresourceLayers structure

More extensible versions of the commands to copy between buffers and images are defined below.

To copy data from a buffer object to an image object, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_copy_commands2
void vkCmdCopyBufferToImage2KHR(
  VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
  const VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR* pCopyBufferToImageInfo);
```

- commandBuffer is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
- pCopyBufferToImageInfo is a pointer to a VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR structure describing the copy parameters.

This command is functionally identical to vkCmdCopyBufferToImage, but includes extensible sub-structures that include sType and pNext parameters, allowing them to be more easily extended.
Valid Usage

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdCopyBufferToImage2KHR-commandBuffer-parameter
  `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle

- VUID-vkCmdCopyBufferToImage2KHR-pCopyBufferToImageInfo-parameter
  `pCopyBufferToImageInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR` structure

- VUID-vkCmdCopyBufferToImage2KHR-commandBuffer-recording
  `commandBuffer` must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdCopyBufferToImage2KHR-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support transfer, graphics, or compute operations

- VUID-vkCmdCopyBufferToImage2KHR-renderpass
  This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The `VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkBuffer srcBuffer;
    VkImage dstImage;
    VkImageLayout dstImageLayout;
    uint32_t regionCount;
    const VkBufferImageCopy2KHR* pRegions;
} VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR;

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **srcBuffer** is the source buffer.
- **dstImage** is the destination image.
- **dstImageLayout** is the layout of the destination image subresources for the copy.
- **regionCount** is the number of regions to copy.
- **pRegions** is a pointer to an array of `VkBufferImageCopy2KHR` structures specifying the regions to copy.
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR-pRegions-00172
  The image region specified by each element of `pRegions` **must** be contained within the specified `imageSubresource` of `dstImage`.

- VUID-VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR-pRegions-00171
  `srcBuffer` **must** be large enough to contain all buffer locations that are accessed according to `Buffer and Image Addressing`, for each element of `pRegions`.

- VUID-VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR-pRegions-00173
  The union of all source regions, and the union of all destination regions, specified by the elements of `pRegions`, **must** not overlap in memory.

- VUID-VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR-srcBuffer-00174
  `srcBuffer` **must** have been created with `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT` usage flag.

- VUID-VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR-dstImage-00177
  The format features of `dstImage` **must** contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT`.

- VUID-VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR-dstImage-00178
  If `srcBuffer` is non-sparse then it **must** be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object.

- VUID-VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR-dstImage-00179
  `dstImage` **must** have been created with `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT` usage flag.

- VUID-VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR-dstImage-00176
  If `dstImage` is non-sparse then it **must** be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object.

- VUID-VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR-dstImage-00179
  `dstImage` **must** have a sample count equal to `VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT`.

- VUID-VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR-dstImageLayout-00180
  `dstImageLayout` **must** specify the layout of the image subresources of `dstImage` specified in `pRegions` at the time this command is executed on a `VkDevice`.

- VUID-VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR-dstImageLayout-01396
  `dstImageLayout` **must** be `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_TRANSFER_DST_OPTIMAL`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL`, or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHARED_PRESENT_KHR`.

- VUID-VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR-imageSubresource-01701
  The `imageSubresource.mipLevel` member of each element of `pRegions` **must** be less than the `mipLevels` specified in `VkImageCreateInfo` when `dstImage` was created.

- VUID-VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR-imageSubresource-01702
  The `imageSubresource.baseArrayLayer + imageSubresource.layerCount` of each element of `pRegions` **must** be less than or equal to the `arrayLayers` specified in `VkImageCreateInfo` when `dstImage` was created.

- VUID-VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR-imageOffset-01793
  The `imageOffset` and `imageExtent` members of each element of `pRegions` **must** respect the image transfer granularity requirements of `commandBuffer`’s command pool’s queue family, as described in `VkQueueFamilyProperties`.
For each element of `pRegions` whose `imageSubresource` contains a depth aspect, the data in `srcBuffer` must be in the range \([0,1]\)

If the queue family used to create the `VkCommandPool` which `commandBuffer` was allocated from does not support `VK_QUEUE_GRAPHICS_BIT`, for each element of `pRegions`, the `aspectMask` member of `imageSubresource` must not be `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_DEPTH_BIT` or `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_STENCIL_BIT`

For each element of `pRegions` not containing `VkCopyCommandTransformInfoQCOM` in its `pNext` chain, `imageOffset.x` and \((\text{imageExtent.width} + \text{imageOffset.x})\)` must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the width of the specified `imageSubresource` of `dstImage`

For each element of `pRegions` not containing `VkCopyCommandTransformInfoQCOM` in its `pNext` chain, `imageOffset.y` and \((\text{imageExtent.height} + \text{imageOffset.y})\)` must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the height of the specified `imageSubresource` of `dstImage`

If `dstImage` does not have either a depth/stencil or a multi-planar format, then for each element of `pRegions`, `bufferOffset` must be a multiple of the format’s texel block size

If `dstImage` has a multi-planar format, then for each element of `pRegions`, `bufferOffset` must be a multiple of the element size of the compatible format for the format and the `aspectMask` of the `imageSubresource` as defined in Compatible formats of planes of multi-planar formats

If `dstImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `imageOffset.y` must be 0 and `imageExtent.height` must be 1

For each element of `pRegions`, `imageOffset.z` and \((\text{imageExtent.depth} + \text{imageOffset.z})\)` must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the depth of the specified `imageSubresource` of `dstImage`

If `dstImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D` or `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `imageOffset.z` must be 0 and `imageExtent.depth` must be 1

If `dstImage` is a blocked image, for each element of `pRegions`, `bufferRowLength` must be a multiple of the compressed texel block width

If `dstImage` is a blocked image, for each element of `pRegions`, `bufferImageHeight` must be a multiple of the compressed texel block height

If `dstImage` is a blocked image, for each element of `pRegions`, all members of `imageOffset`
must be a multiple of the corresponding dimensions of the compressed texel block

- VUID-VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR-bufferOffset-00206

  If `dstImage` is a **blocked image**, for each element of `pRegions`, `bufferOffset` must be a multiple of the compressed texel block size in bytes

- VUID-VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR-imageExtent-00207

  If `dstImage` is a **blocked image**, for each element of `pRegions`, `imageExtent.width` must be a multiple of the compressed texel block width or `(imageExtent.width + imageOffset.x)` must equal the width of the specified `imageSubresource` of `dstImage`

- VUID-VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR-imageExtent-00208

  If `dstImage` is a **blocked image**, for each element of `pRegions`, `imageExtent.height` must be a multiple of the compressed texel block height or `(imageExtent.height + imageOffset.y)` must equal the height of the specified `imageSubresource` of `dstImage`

- VUID-VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR-imageExtent-00209

  If `dstImage` is a **blocked image**, for each element of `pRegions`, `imageExtent.depth` must be a multiple of the compressed texel block depth or `(imageExtent.depth + imageOffset.z)` must equal the depth of the specified `imageSubresource` of `dstImage`

- VUID-VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR-aspectMask-00211

  For each element of `pRegions`, `imageSubresource.aspectMask` must specify aspects present in `dstImage`

- VUID-VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR-aspectMask-01560

  If `dstImage` has a **multi-planar format**, then for each element of `pRegions`, `imageSubresource.aspectMask` must be `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT`, `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT`, or `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT` (with `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT` valid only for image formats with three planes)

- VUID-VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR-baseArrayLayer-00213

  If `dstImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D`, for each element of `pRegions`, `imageSubresource.baseArrayLayer` must be `0` and `imageSubresource.layerCount` must be `1`

- VUID-VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR-pRegions-04725

  If `dstImage` is not a **blocked image**, for each element of `pRegions`, `bufferRowLength` multiplied by the texel block size of `dstImage` must be less than or equal to $2^{31}-1$

- VUID-VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR-pRegions-04726

  If `dstImage` is a **blocked image**, for each element of `pRegions`, `bufferRowLength` divided by the compressed texel block width and then multiplied by the texel block size of `dstImage` must be less than or equal to $2^{31}-1$

- VUID-VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR-commandBuffer-04052

  If the queue family used to create the `VkCommandPool` which `commandBuffer` was allocated from does not support `VK_QUEUE_GRAPHICS_BIT` or `VK_QUEUE_COMPUTE_BIT`, the `bufferOffset` member of any element of `pRegions` must be a multiple of `4`

- VUID-VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR-srcImage-04053

  If `dstImage` has a depth/stencil format, the `bufferOffset` member of any element of `pRegions` must be a multiple of `4`
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR-sType-sType**
  sType must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COPY_BUFFER_TO_IMAGE_INFO_2_KHR`

- **VUID-VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR-pNext-pNext**
  pNext must be NULL

- **VUID-VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR-srcBuffer-parameter**
  srcBuffer must be a valid `VkBuffer` handle

- **VUID-VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR-dstImage-parameter**
  dstImage must be a valid `VkImage` handle

- **VUID-VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR-dstImageLayout-parameter**
  dstImageLayout must be a valid `VkImageLayout` value

- **VUID-VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR-pRegions-parameter**
  pRegions must be a valid pointer to an array of regionCount valid `VkBufferImageCopy2KHR` structures

- **VUID-VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR-regionCount-arraylength**
  regionCount must be greater than 0

- **VUID-VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR-commonparent**
  Both of dstImage, and srcBuffer must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`

To copy data from an image object to a buffer object, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_copy_commands2
void vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer2KHR(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,        // commandBuffer is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
    const VkCopyImageToBufferInfo2KHR* pCopyImageToBufferInfo);        // pCopyImageToBufferInfo is a pointer to a VkCopyImageToBufferInfo2KHR structure describing the copy parameters.
```

This command is functionally identical to `vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer`, but includes extensible substructures that include *sType and pNext* parameters, allowing them to be more easily extended.

Valid Usage
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer2KHR-commandBuffer-parameter
  
  `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer2KHR-pCopyImageToBufferInfo-parameter
  
  `pCopyImageToBufferInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkCopyImageToBufferInfo2KHR` structure

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer2KHR-commandBuffer-recording
  
  `commandBuffer` must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer2KHR-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  
  The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support transfer, graphics, or compute operations

- VUID-vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer2KHR-renderpass
  
  This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized

- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Transfer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The `VkCopyImageToBufferInfo2KHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_copy_commands2
typedef struct VkCopyImageToBufferInfo2KHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkImage srcImage;
    VkImageLayout srcImageLayout;
    VkBuffer dstBuffer;
    uint32_t regionCount;
    const VkBufferImageCopy2KHR* pRegions;
} VkCopyImageToBufferInfo2KHR;
```
• **sType** is the type of this structure.

• **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.

• **srcImage** is the source image.

• **srcImageLayout** is the layout of the source image subresources for the copy.

• **dstBuffer** is the destination buffer.

• **regionCount** is the number of regions to copy.

• **pRegions** is a pointer to an array of `VkBufferImageCopy2KHR` structures specifying the regions to copy.
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkCopyImageToBufferInfo2KHR-pRegions-00182
  The image region specified by each element of pRegions must be contained within the specified imageSubresource of srcImage

- VUID-VkCopyImageToBufferInfo2KHR-pRegions-00183
dstBuffer must be large enough to contain all buffer locations that are accessed according to Buffer and Image Addressing, for each element of pRegions

- VUID-VkCopyImageToBufferInfo2KHR-pRegions-00184
  The union of all source regions, and the union of all destination regions, specified by the elements of pRegions, must not overlap in memory

- VUID-VkCopyImageToBufferInfo2KHR-srcImage-00186
  srcImage must have been created with VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT usage flag

- VUID-VkCopyImageToBufferInfo2KHR-srcImage-00187
  If srcImage is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single VkDeviceMemory object

- VUID-VkCopyImageToBufferInfo2KHR-dstBuffer-00191
dstBuffer must have been created with VK_BUFFER_USAGE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT usage flag

- VUID-VkCopyImageToBufferInfo2KHR-dstBuffer-00192
  If dstBuffer is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single VkDeviceMemory object

- VUID-VkCopyImageToBufferInfo2KHR-srcImage-00188
  srcImage must have a sample count equal to VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT

- VUID-VkCopyImageToBufferInfo2KHR-srcImageLayout-00189
  srcImageLayout must specify the layout of the image subresources of srcImage specified in pRegions at the time this command is executed on a VkDevice

- VUID-VkCopyImageToBufferInfo2KHR-srcImageLayout-01397
  srcImageLayout must be VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_TRANSFER_SRC_OPTIMAL, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL, or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHARED_PRESENT_KHR

- VUID-VkCopyImageToBufferInfo2KHR-imageSubresource-01703
  The imageSubresource.mipLevel member of each element of pRegions must be less than the mipLevels specified in VkImageCreateInfo when srcImage was created

- VUID-VkCopyImageToBufferInfo2KHR-imageSubresource-01704
  The imageSubresource.baseArrayLayer + imageSubresource.layerCount of each element of pRegions must be less than or equal to the arrayLayers specified in VkImageCreateInfo when srcImage was created

- VUID-VkCopyImageToBufferInfo2KHR-imageOffset-01794
  The imageOffset and imageExtent members of each element of pRegions must respect the image transfer granularity requirements of commandBuffer’s command pool’s queue family, as described in VkQueueFamilyProperties
For each element of `pRegions` not containing `VkCopyCommandTransformInfoQCOM` in its `pNext` chain, `imageOffset.x` and `(imageExtent.width + imageOffset.x)` must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the width of the specified `imageSubresource` of `srcImage`.

For each element of `pRegions` not containing `VkCopyCommandTransformInfoQCOM` in its `pNext` chain, `imageOffset.y` and `(imageExtent.height + imageOffset.y)` must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the height of the specified `imageSubresource` of `srcImage`.

If `srcImage` does not have either a depth/stencil or a multi-planar format, then for each element of `pRegions`, `bufferOffset` must be a multiple of the format's texel block size.

If `srcImage` has a multi-planar format, then for each element of `pRegions`, `bufferOffset` must be a multiple of the element size of the compatible format for the format and the `aspectMask` of the `imageSubresource` as defined in Compatible formats of planes of multi-planar formats.

If `srcImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `imageOffset.y` must be 0 and `imageExtent.height` must be 1.

For each element of `pRegions`, `imageOffset.z` and `(imageExtent.depth + imageOffset.z)` must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the depth of the specified `imageSubresource` of `srcImage`.

If `srcImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D` or `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `imageOffset.z` must be 0 and `imageExtent.depth` must be 1.

If `srcImage` is a blocked image, for each element of `pRegions`, `bufferRowLength` must be a multiple of the compressed texel block width.

If `srcImage` is a blocked image, for each element of `pRegions`, `bufferImageHeight` must be a multiple of the compressed texel block height.

If `srcImage` is a blocked image, for each element of `pRegions`, all members of `imageOffset` must be a multiple of the corresponding dimensions of the compressed texel block.

If `srcImage` is a blocked image, for each element of `pRegions`, `bufferOffset` must be a multiple of the compressed texel block size in bytes.

If `srcImage` is a blocked image, for each element of `pRegions`, `imageExtent.width` must be a multiple of the compressed texel block width or `(imageExtent.width + imageOffset.x)` must equal the width of the specified `imageSubresource` of `srcImage`. 
If `srcImage` is a **blocked image**, for each element of `pRegions`, `imageExtent.height` **must** be a multiple of the compressed texel block height or \((imageExtent.height + imageOffset.y)\) **must** equal the height of the specified `imageSubresource` of `srcImage`.

If `srcImage` is a **blocked image**, for each element of `pRegions`, `imageExtent.depth` **must** be a multiple of the compressed texel block depth or \((imageExtent.depth + imageOffset.z)\) **must** equal the depth of the specified `imageSubresource` of `srcImage`.

For each element of `pRegions`, `imageSubresource.aspectMask` **must** specify aspects present in `srcImage`.

If `srcImage` has a **multi-planar format**, then for each element of `pRegions`, `imageSubresource.aspectMask` **must** be `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT`, `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT`, or `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT` (with `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT` valid only for image formats with three planes).

If `srcImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D`, for each element of `pRegions`, `imageSubresource.baseArrayLayer` **must** be `0` and `imageSubresource.layerCount` **must** be `1`.

If `srcImage` is not a **blocked image**, for each element of `pRegions`, `bufferRowLength` multiplied by the texel block size of `srcImage` **must** be less than or equal to \(2^{31}-1\).

If `srcImage` is a **blocked image**, for each element of `pRegions`, `bufferRowLength` divided by the compressed texel block width and then multiplied by the texel block size of `srcImage` **must** be less than or equal to \(2^{31}-1\).

If the queue family used to create the `VkCommandPool` which `commandBuffer` was allocated from does not support `VK_QUEUE_GRAPHICS_BIT` or `VK_QUEUE_COMPUTE_BIT`, the `bufferOffset` member of any element of `pRegions` **must** be a multiple of `4`.

If `srcImage` has a depth/stencil format, the `bufferOffset` member of any element of `pRegions` **must** be a multiple of `4`.

Chapter 19. Copy Commands | 935
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkCopyImageToBufferInfo2KHR-sType-sType
  - `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COPY_IMAGE_TO_BUFFER_INFO_2_KHR`
- VUID-VkCopyImageToBufferInfo2KHR-pNext-pNext
  - `pNext` must be `NULL`
- VUID-VkCopyImageToBufferInfo2KHR-srcImage-parameter
  - `srcImage` must be a valid `VkImage` handle
- VUID-VkCopyImageToBufferInfo2KHR-srcImageLayout-parameter
  - `srcImageLayout` must be a valid `VkImageLayout` value
- VUID-VkCopyImageToBufferInfo2KHR-dstBuffer-parameter
  - `dstBuffer` must be a valid `VkBuffer` handle
- VUID-VkCopyImageToBufferInfo2KHR-pRegions-parameter
  - `pRegions` must be a valid pointer to an array of `regionCount` valid `VkBufferImageCopy2KHR` structures
- VUID-VkCopyImageToBufferInfo2KHR-regionCount-arraylength
  - `regionCount` must be greater than 0
- VUID-VkCopyImageToBufferInfo2KHR-commonparent
  - Both of `dstBuffer`, and `srcImage` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`

For both `vkCmdCopyBufferToImage2KHR` and `vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer2KHR`, each element of `pRegions` is a structure defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_copy_commands2
typedef struct VkBufferImageCopy2KHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkDeviceSize bufferOffset;
    uint32_t bufferRowLength;
    uint32_t bufferImageHeight;
    VkImageSubresourceLayers imageSubresource;
    VkOffset3D imageOffset;
    VkExtent3D imageExtent;
} VkBufferImageCopy2KHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `bufferOffset` is the offset in bytes from the start of the buffer object where the image data is copied from or to.
- `bufferRowLength` and `bufferImageHeight` specify in texels a subregion of a larger two- or three-dimensional image in buffer memory, and control the addressing calculations. If either of these
values is zero, that aspect of the buffer memory is considered to be tightly packed according to the `imageExtent`.

- `imageSubresource` is a `VkImageSubresourceLayers` used to specify the specific image subresources of the image used for the source or destination image data.

- `imageOffset` selects the initial \(x, y, z\) offsets in texels of the sub-region of the source or destination image data.

- `imageExtent` is the size in texels of the image to copy in \(width, height\) and \(depth\).

This structure is functionally identical to `VkBufferImageCopy`, but adds `sType` and `pNext` parameters, allowing it to be more easily extended.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkBufferImageCopy2KHR-bufferRowLength-00195**
  
  `bufferRowLength` must be 0, or greater than or equal to the `width` member of `imageExtent`

- **VUID-VkBufferImageCopy2KHR-bufferImageHeight-00196**
  
  `bufferImageHeight` must be 0, or greater than or equal to the `height` member of `imageExtent`

- **VUID-VkBufferImageCopy2KHR-aspectMask-00212**
  
  The `aspectMask` member of `imageSubresource` must only have a single bit set

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkBufferImageCopy2KHR-sType-sType**
  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BUFFER_IMAGE_COPY_2_KHR`

- **VUID-VkBufferImageCopy2KHR-pNext-pNext**
  
  `pNext` must be NULL

- **VUID-VkBufferImageCopy2KHR-imageSubresource-parameter**
  
  `imageSubresource` must be a valid `VkImageSubresourceLayers` structure

### 19.4.1. Buffer and Image Addressing

Pseudocode for image/buffer addressing of uncompressed formats is:
rowLength = region->bufferRowLength;
if (rowLength == 0)
    rowLength = region->imageExtent.width;

imageHeight = region->bufferImageHeight;
if (imageHeight == 0)
    imageHeight = region->imageExtent.height;

texelBlockSize = <texel block size of the format of the src/dstImage>;

diff of (x,y,z) = region->bufferOffset + ((z * imageHeight) + y) * rowLength + x) * texelBlockSize;

where x,y,z range from (0,0,0) to region->imageExtent.{width,height,depth}.

Note that imageOffset does not affect addressing calculations for buffer memory. Instead, bufferOffset can be used to select the starting address in buffer memory.

For block-compressed formats, all parameters are still specified in texels rather than compressed texel blocks, but the addressing math operates on whole compressed texel blocks. Pseudocode for compressed copy addressing is:

rowLength = region->bufferRowLength;
if (rowLength == 0)
    rowLength = region->imageExtent.width;

imageHeight = region->bufferImageHeight;
if (imageHeight == 0)
    imageHeight = region->imageExtent.height;

compressedTexelBlockSizeInBytes = <compressed texel block size taken from the src/dstImage>;
rowLength = (rowLength + compressedTexelBlockWidth - 1) / compressedTexelBlockWidth;
imageHeight = (imageHeight + compressedTexelBlockHeight - 1) / compressedTexelBlockHeight;

diff of (x,y,z) = region->bufferOffset + ((z * imageHeight) + y) * rowLength + x) * compressedTexelBlockSizeInBytes;

where x,y,z range from (0,0,0) to region->imageExtent.{width/ compressedTexelBlockWidth,height/compressedTexelBlockHeight,depth/compressedTexelBlock Depth}.

Copying to or from block-compressed images is typically done in multiples of the compressed texel block size. For this reason the imageExtent must be a multiple of the compressed texel block dimension. There is one exception to this rule which is required to handle compressed images created with dimensions that are not a multiple of the compressed texel block dimensions:
• If `imageExtent.width` is not a multiple of the compressed texel block width, then 
(`imageExtent.width + imageOffset.x`) must equal the image subresource width.

• If `imageExtent.height` is not a multiple of the compressed texel block height, then 
(`imageExtent.height + imageOffset.y`) must equal the image subresource height.

• If `imageExtent.depth` is not a multiple of the compressed texel block depth, then 
(`imageExtent.depth + imageOffset.z`) must equal the image subresource depth.

This allows the last compressed texel block of the image in each non-multiple dimension to be 
included as a source or destination of the copy.

19.5. Image Copies with Scaling

To copy regions of a source image into a destination image, potentially performing format 
conversion, arbitrary scaling, and filtering, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkCmdBlitImage(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer, 
    VkImage srcImage, 
    VkImageLayout srcImageLayout, 
    VkImage dstImage, 
    VkImageLayout dstImageLayout, 
    uint32_t regionCount, 
    const VkImageBlit* pRegions, 
    VkFilter filter);
```

• `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.

• `srcImage` is the source image.

• `srcImageLayout` is the layout of the source image subresources for the blit.

• `dstImage` is the destination image.

• `dstImageLayout` is the layout of the destination image subresources for the blit.

• `regionCount` is the number of regions to blit.

• `pRegions` is a pointer to an array of `VkImageBlit` structures specifying the regions to blit.

• `filter` is a `VkFilter` specifying the filter to apply if the blits require scaling.

`vkCmdBlitImage` must not be used for multisampled source or destination images. Use 
`vkCmdResolveImage` for this purpose.

As the sizes of the source and destination extents can differ in any dimension, texels in the source 
extent are scaled and filtered to the destination extent. Scaling occurs via the following operations:

• For each destination texel, the integer coordinate of that texel is converted to an unnormalized 
texture coordinate, using the effective inverse of the equations described in unnormalized to 
integer conversion:
\[ u_{\text{base}} = i + \frac{1}{2} \]

\[ v_{\text{base}} = j + \frac{1}{2} \]

\[ w_{\text{base}} = k + \frac{1}{2} \]

- These base coordinates are then offset by the first destination offset:

\[ u_{\text{offset}} = u_{\text{base}} - x_{\text{dst0}} \]

\[ v_{\text{offset}} = v_{\text{base}} - y_{\text{dst0}} \]

\[ w_{\text{offset}} = w_{\text{base}} - z_{\text{dst0}} \]

\[ a_{\text{offset}} = a - \text{baseArrayCount}_{\text{dst}} \]

- The scale is determined from the source and destination regions, and applied to the offset coordinates:

\[ \text{scale}_{u} = \frac{(x_{\text{src1}} - x_{\text{src0}})}{(x_{\text{dst1}} - x_{\text{dst0}})} \]

\[ \text{scale}_{v} = \frac{(y_{\text{src1}} - y_{\text{src0}})}{(y_{\text{dst1}} - y_{\text{dst0}})} \]

\[ \text{scale}_{w} = \frac{(z_{\text{src1}} - z_{\text{src0}})}{(z_{\text{dst1}} - z_{\text{dst0}})} \]

\[ u_{\text{scaled}} = u_{\text{offset}} \times \text{scale}_{u} \]

\[ v_{\text{scaled}} = v_{\text{offset}} \times \text{scale}_{v} \]

\[ w_{\text{scaled}} = w_{\text{offset}} \times \text{scale}_{w} \]

- Finally the source offset is added to the scaled coordinates, to determine the final unnormalized coordinates used to sample from \textit{srcImage}:

\[ u = u_{\text{scaled}} + x_{\text{src0}} \]
\[ v = v_{\text{scaled}} + y_{\text{src0}} \]

\[ w = w_{\text{scaled}} + z_{\text{src0}} \]

\[ q = \text{mipLevel} \]

\[ a = a_{\text{offset}} + \text{baseArrayCount}_{\text{src}} \]

These coordinates are used to sample from the source image, as described in the Image Operations chapter, with the filter mode equal to that of filter, a mipmap mode of \text{VK_SAMPLER_MIPMAP_MODE_NEAREST} and an address mode of \text{VK_SAMPLER_ADDRESS_MODE_CLAMP_TO_EDGE}. Implementations must clamp at the edge of the source image, and may additionally clamp to the edge of the source region.

**Note**

Due to allowable rounding errors in the generation of the source texture coordinates, it is not always possible to guarantee exactly which source texels will be sampled for a given blit. As rounding errors are implementation-dependent, the exact results of a blitting operation are also implementation-dependent.

Blits are done layer by layer starting with the baseArrayLayer member of srcSubresource for the source and dstSubresource for the destination. layerCount layers are blitted to the destination image.

When blitting 3D textures, slices in the destination region bounded by dstOffsets[0].z and dstOffsets[1].z are sampled from slices in the source region bounded by srcOffsets[0].z and srcOffsets[1].z. If the filter parameter is \text{VK_FILTER_LINEAR} then the value sampled from the source image is taken by doing linear filtering using the interpolated \( z \) coordinate represented by \( w \) in the previous equations. If the filter parameter is \text{VK_FILTER_NEAREST} then the value sampled from the source image is taken from the single nearest slice, with an implementation-dependent arithmetic rounding mode.

The following filtering and conversion rules apply:

- Integer formats can only be converted to other integer formats with the same signedness.
- No format conversion is supported between depth/stencil images. The formats must match.
- Format conversions on unorm, snorm, unscaled and packed float formats of the copied aspect of the image are performed by first converting the pixels to float values.
- For sRGB source formats, nonlinear RGB values are converted to linear representation prior to filtering.
- After filtering, the float values are first clamped and then cast to the destination image format. In case of sRGB destination format, linear RGB values are converted to nonlinear representation before writing the pixel to the image.
Signed and unsigned integers are converted by first clamping to the representable range of the destination format, then casting the value.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-pRegions-00215**
  The source region specified by each element of `pRegions` must be a region that is contained within `srcImage`.

- **VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-pRegions-00216**
  The destination region specified by each element of `pRegions` must be a region that is contained within `dstImage`.

- **VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-pRegions-00217**
  The union of all destination regions, specified by the elements of `pRegions`, must not overlap in memory with any texel that may be sampled during the blit operation.

- **VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-srcImage-01999**
  The format features of `srcImage` must contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLIT_SRC_BIT`.

- **VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-srcImage-01561**
  `srcImage` must not use a format listed in Formats requiring sampler Y'CbCr conversion for `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT` image views.

- **VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-srcImage-00219**
  `srcImage` must have been created with `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT` usage flag.

- **VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-srcImage-00220**
  If `srcImage` is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object.

- **VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-srcImageLayout-00221**
  `srcImageLayout` must specify the layout of the image subresources of `srcImage` specified in `pRegions` at the time this command is executed on a `VkDevice`.

- **VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-srcImageLayout-01398**
  `srcImageLayout` must be `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHARED_PRESENT_KHR`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_TRANSFER_SRC_OPTIMAL` or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT General`.

- **VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-dstImage-02000**
  The format features of `dstImage` must contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLIT_DST_BIT`.

- **VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-dstImage-01562**
  `dstImage` must not use a format listed in Formats requiring sampler Y'CbCr conversion for `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT` image views.

- **VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-dstImage-00224**
  `dstImage` must have been created with `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT` usage flag.

- **VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-dstImage-00225**
  If `dstImage` is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object.

- **VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-dstImageLayout-00226**
  `dstImageLayout` must specify the layout of the image subresources of `dstImage` specified in `pRegions` at the time this command is executed on a `VkDevice`.

- **VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-dstImageLayout-01399**
  `dstImageLayout` must be `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHARED_PRESENT_KHR`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_TRANSFER_SRC_OPTIMAL` or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT General`.
VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_TRANSFER_DST_OPTIMAL or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL

- VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-srcImage-00229
  If either of `srcImage` or `dstImage` was created with a signed integer `VkFormat`, the other must also have been created with a signed integer `VkFormat`

- VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-srcImage-00230
  If either of `srcImage` or `dstImage` was created with an unsigned integer `VkFormat`, the other must also have been created with an unsigned integer `VkFormat`

- VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-srcImage-00231
  If either of `srcImage` or `dstImage` was created with a depth/stencil format, the other must have exactly the same format

- VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-srcImage-00232
  If `srcImage` was created with a depth/stencil format, `filter` must be `VK_FILTER_NEAREST`

- VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-srcImage-00233
  `srcImage` must have been created with a `samples` value of `VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT`

- VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-dstImage-00234
  `dstImage` must have been created with a `samples` value of `VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT`

- VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-filter-02001
  If `filter` is `VK_FILTER_LINEAR`, then the `format features` of `srcImage` must contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT`

- VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-srcSubresource-01705
  The `srcSubresource.mipLevel` member of each element of `pRegions` must be less than the `mipLevels` specified in `VkImageCreateInfo` when `srcImage` was created

- VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-dstSubresource-01706
  The `dstSubresource.mipLevel` member of each element of `pRegions` must be less than the `mipLevels` specified in `VkImageCreateInfo` when `dstImage` was created

- VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-srcSubresource-01707
  The `srcSubresource.baseArrayLayer + srcSubresource.layerCount` of each element of `pRegions` must be less than or equal to the `arrayLayers` specified in `VkImageCreateInfo` when `srcImage` was created

- VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-dstSubresource-01708
  The `dstSubresource.baseArrayLayer + dstSubresource.layerCount` of each element of `pRegions` must be less than or equal to the `arrayLayers` specified in `VkImageCreateInfo` when `dstImage` was created

- VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-srcImage-00240
  If either `srcImage` or `dstImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `srcSubresource.baseArrayLayer` and `dstSubresource.baseArrayLayer` must each be 0, and `srcSubresource.layerCount` and `dstSubresource.layerCount` must each be 1

- VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-aspectMask-00241
  For each element of `pRegions`, `srcSubresource.aspectMask` must specify aspects present in `srcImage`

- VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-aspectMask-00242
  For each element of `pRegions`, `dstSubresource.aspectMask` must specify aspects present in `dstImage`
For each element of `pRegions`, `srcOffsets[0].x` and `srcOffsets[1].x` must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the width of the specified `srcSubresource` of `srcImage`.

For each element of `pRegions`, `srcOffsets[0].y` and `srcOffsets[1].y` must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the height of the specified `srcSubresource` of `srcImage`.

If `srcImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `srcOffsets[0].y` must be 0 and `srcOffsets[1].y` must be 1.

For each element of `pRegions`, `srcOffsets[0].z` and `srcOffsets[1].z` must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the depth of the specified `srcSubresource` of `srcImage`.

If `srcImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D` or `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `srcOffsets[0].z` must be 0 and `srcOffsets[1].z` must be 1.

For each element of `pRegions`, `dstOffsets[0].x` and `dstOffsets[1].x` must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the width of the specified `dstSubresource` of `dstImage`.

For each element of `pRegions`, `dstOffsets[0].y` and `dstOffsets[1].y` must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the height of the specified `dstSubresource` of `dstImage`.

If `dstImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `dstOffsets[0].y` must be 0 and `dstOffsets[1].y` must be 1.

For each element of `pRegions`, `dstOffsets[0].z` and `dstOffsets[1].z` must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the depth of the specified `dstSubresource` of `dstImage`.

If `dstImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D` or `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `dstOffsets[0].z` must be 0 and `dstOffsets[1].z` must be 1.
**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-commandBuffer-parameter
  
  `commandBuffer must be a valid VkCommandBuffer handle`

- VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-srcImage-parameter
  
  `srcImage must be a valid VkImage handle`

- VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-srcImageLayout-parameter
  
  `srcImageLayout must be a valid VkImageLayout value`

- VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-dstImage-parameter
  
  `dstImage must be a valid VkImage handle`

- VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-dstImageLayout-parameter
  
  `dstImageLayout must be a valid VkImageLayout value`

- VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-pRegions-parameter
  
  `pRegions must be a valid pointer to an array of regionCount valid VkImageBlit structures`

- VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-filter-parameter
  
  `filter must be a valid VkFilter value`

- VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-commandBuffer-recording
  
  `commandBuffer must be in the recording state`

- VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  
  The VkCommandPool that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support graphics operations

- VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-renderpass
  
  This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance

- VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-regionCount-arraylength
  
  `regionCount must be greater than 0`

- VUID-vkCmdBlitImage-commonparent
  
  Each of `commandBuffer`, `dstImage`, and `srcImage` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same VkDevice

**Host Synchronization**

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized

- Host access to the VkCommandPool that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized
null
To copy regions of a source image into a destination image, potentially performing format conversion, arbitrary scaling, and filtering, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_copy_commands2
void vkCmdBlitImage2KHR(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    const VkBlitImageInfo2KHR* pBlitImageInfo);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
- `pBlitImageInfo` is a pointer to a `VkBlitImageInfo2KHR` structure describing the blit parameters.

This command is functionally identical to `vkCmdBlitImage`, but includes extensible sub-structures that include `sType` and `pNext` parameters, allowing them to be more easily extended.

**Valid Usage**

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-vkCmdBlitImage2KHR-commandBuffer-parameter
  `commandBuffer` **must** be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle
- VUID-vkCmdBlitImage2KHR-pBlitImageInfo-parameter
  `pBlitImageInfo` **must** be a valid pointer to a valid `VkBlitImageInfo2KHR` structure
- VUID-vkCmdBlitImage2KHR-commandBuffer-recording
  `commandBuffer` **must** be in the **recording state**
- VUID-vkCmdBlitImage2KHR-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from **must** support graphics operations
- VUID-vkCmdBlitImage2KHR-renderpass
  This command **must** only be called outside of a render pass instance

**Host Synchronization**

- Host access to `commandBuffer` **must** be externally synchronized
- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from **must** be externally synchronized
The **VkBlitImageInfo2KHR** structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_copy_commands2
typedef struct VkBlitImageInfo2KHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkImage srcImage;
    VkImageLayout srcImageLayout;
    VkImage dstImage;
    VkImageLayout dstImageLayout;
    uint32_t regionCount;
    const VkImageBlit2KHR* pRegions;
    VkFilter filter;
} VkBlitImageInfo2KHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **srcImage** is the source image.
- **srcImageLayout** is the layout of the source image subresources for the blit.
- **dstImage** is the destination image.
- **dstImageLayout** is the layout of the destination image subresources for the blit.
- **regionCount** is the number of regions to blit.
- **pRegions** is a pointer to an array of **VkImageBlit2KHR** structures specifying the regions to blit.
- **filter** is a **VkFilter** specifying the filter to apply if the blits require scaling.
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkBlitImageInfo2KHR-pRegions-00215
  The source region specified by each element of `pRegions` must be a region that is contained within `srcImage`.

- VUID-VkBlitImageInfo2KHR-pRegions-00216
  The destination region specified by each element of `pRegions` must be a region that is contained within `dstImage`.

- VUID-VkBlitImageInfo2KHR-pRegions-00217
  The union of all destination regions, specified by the elements of `pRegions`, must not overlap in memory with any texel that may be sampled during the blit operation.

- VUID-VkBlitImageInfo2KHR-srcImage-01999
  The format features of `srcImage` must contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLIT_SRC_BIT`.

- VUID-VkBlitImageInfo2KHR-srcImage-01561
  `srcImage` must not use a format listed in Formats requiring sampler Y′CbCr conversion for `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT` image views.

- VUID-VkBlitImageInfo2KHR-srcImage-00219
  `srcImage` must have been created with `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT` usage flag.

- VUID-VkBlitImageInfo2KHR-srcImage-00220
  If `srcImage` is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object.

- VUID-VkBlitImageInfo2KHR-srcImageLayout-00221
  `srcImageLayout` must specify the layout of the image subresources of `srcImage` specified in `pRegions` at the time this command is executed on a `VkDevice`.

- VUID-VkBlitImageInfo2KHR-srcImageLayout-01398
  `srcImageLayout` must be `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHARED_PRESENT_KHR`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_TRANSFER_SRC_OPTIMAL` or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL`.

- VUID-VkBlitImageInfo2KHR-dstImage-02000
  The format features of `dstImage` must contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLIT_DST_BIT`.

- VUID-VkBlitImageInfo2KHR-dstImage-01562
  `dstImage` must not use a format listed in Formats requiring sampler Y′CbCr conversion for `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT` image views.

- VUID-VkBlitImageInfo2KHR-dstImage-00224
  `dstImage` must have been created with `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT` usage flag.

- VUID-VkBlitImageInfo2KHR-dstImage-00225
  If `dstImage` is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object.

- VUID-VkBlitImageInfo2KHR-dstImageLayout-00226
  `dstImageLayout` must specify the layout of the image subresources of `dstImage` specified in `pRegions` at the time this command is executed on a `VkDevice`.

- VUID-VkBlitImageInfo2KHR-dstImageLayout-01399
  `dstImageLayout` must be `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHARED_PRESENT_KHR`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_TRANSFER_DST_OPTIMAL` or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL`.

950 | Chapter 19. Copy Commands
VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_TRANSFER_DST_OPTIMAL or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL

- **VUID-VkBlitImageInfo2KHR-srcImage-00229**
  If either of srcImage or dstImage was created with a signed integer VkFormat, the other must also have been created with a signed integer VkFormat

- **VUID-VkBlitImageInfo2KHR-srcImage-00230**
  If either of srcImage or dstImage was created with an unsigned integer VkFormat, the other must also have been created with an unsigned integer VkFormat

- **VUID-VkBlitImageInfo2KHR-srcImage-00231**
  If either of srcImage or dstImage was created with a depth/stencil format, the other must have exactly the same format

- **VUID-VkBlitImageInfo2KHR-srcImage-00232**
  If either of srcImage or dstImage was created with a depth/stencil format, filter must be VK_FILTER_NEAREST

- **VUID-VkBlitImageInfo2KHR-srcImage-00233**
  srcImage must have been created with a samples value of VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT

- **VUID-VkBlitImageInfo2KHR-dstImage-00234**
  dstImage must have been created with a samples value of VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT

- **VUID-VkBlitImageInfo2KHR-filter-02001**
  If filter is VK_FILTER_LINEAR, then the format features of srcImage must contain VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT

- **VUID-VkBlitImageInfo2KHR-srcSubresource-01705**
  The srcSubresource.mipLevel member of each element of pRegions must be less than the mipLevels specified in VkImageCreateInfo when srcImage was created

- **VUID-VkBlitImageInfo2KHR-dstSubresource-01706**
  The dstSubresource.mipLevel member of each element of pRegions must be less than the mipLevels specified in VkImageCreateInfo when dstImage was created

- **VUID-VkBlitImageInfo2KHR-srcSubresource-01707**
  The srcSubresource.baseArrayLayer + srcSubresource.layerCount of each element of pRegions must be less than or equal to the arrayLayers specified in VkImageCreateInfo when srcImage was created

- **VUID-VkBlitImageInfo2KHR-dstSubresource-01708**
  The dstSubresource.baseArrayLayer + dstSubresource.layerCount of each element of pRegions must be less than or equal to the arrayLayers specified in VkImageCreateInfo when dstImage was created

- **VUID-VkBlitImageInfo2KHR-srcImage-00240**
  If either srcImage or dstImage is of type VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D, then for each element of pRegions, srcSubresource.baseArrayLayer and dstSubresource.baseArrayLayer must each be 0, and srcSubresource.layerCount and dstSubresource.layerCount must each be 1

- **VUID-VkBlitImageInfo2KHR-aspectMask-00241**
  For each element of pRegions, srcSubresource.aspectMask must specify aspects present in srcImage

- **VUID-VkBlitImageInfo2KHR-aspectMask-00242**
  For each element of pRegions, dstSubresource.aspectMask must specify aspects present in dstImage
For each element of `pRegions`, `srcOffsets[0].x` and `srcOffsets[1].x` must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the width of the specified `srcSubresource` of `srcImage`.

For each element of `pRegions`, `srcOffsets[0].y` and `srcOffsets[1].y` must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the height of the specified `srcSubresource` of `srcImage`.

If `srcImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `srcOffsets[0].y` must be 0 and `srcOffsets[1].y` must be 1.

For each element of `pRegions`, `dstOffsets[0].x` and `dstOffsets[1].x` must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the width of the specified `dstSubresource` of `dstImage`.

For each element of `pRegions`, `dstOffsets[0].y` and `dstOffsets[1].y` must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the height of the specified `dstSubresource` of `dstImage`.

If `dstImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `dstOffsets[0].y` must be 0 and `dstOffsets[1].y` must be 1.

For each element of `pRegions`, `dstOffsets[0].z` and `dstOffsets[1].z` must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the depth of the specified `dstSubresource` of `dstImage`.

If `dstImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D` or `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `dstOffsets[0].z` must be 0 and `dstOffsets[1].z` must be 1.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BLIT_IMAGE_INFO_2_KHR`
- `pNext` must be `NULL`
- `srcImage` must be a valid `VkImage` handle
- `srcImageLayout` must be a valid `VkImageLayout` value
- `dstImage` must be a valid `VkImage` handle
- `dstImageLayout` must be a valid `VkImageLayout` value
- `pRegions` must be a valid pointer to an array of `regionCount` valid `VkImageBlit2KHR` structures
- `filter` must be a valid `VkFilter` value
- `regionCount` must be greater than 0

Both of `dstImage`, and `srcImage` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`

The `VkImageBlit2KHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_copy_commands2
typedef struct VkImageBlit2KHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkImageSubresourceLayers srcSubresource;
    VkOffset3D srcOffsets[2];
    VkImageSubresourceLayers dstSubresource;
    VkOffset3D dstOffsets[2];
} VkImageBlit2KHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `srcSubresource` is the subresource to blit from.
- `srcOffsets` is a pointer to an array of two `VkOffset3D` structures specifying the bounds of the source region within `srcSubresource`. 
• `dstSubresource` is the subresource to blit into.

• `dstOffsets` is a pointer to an array of two `VkOffset3D` structures specifying the bounds of the destination region within `dstSubresource`.

For each element of the `pRegions` array, a blit operation is performed for the specified source and destination regions.

Valid Usage

- VUID-VkImageBlit2KHR-aspectMask-00238
  The `aspectMask` member of `srcSubresource` and `dstSubresource` must match

- VUID-VkImageBlit2KHR-layerCount-00239
  The `layerCount` member of `srcSubresource` and `dstSubresource` must match

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkImageBlit2KHR-sType-sType
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_BLIT_2_KHR`

- VUID-VkImageBlit2KHR-pNext-pNext
  `pNext` must be `NULL`

- VUID-VkImageBlit2KHR-srcSubresource-parameter
  `srcSubresource` must be a valid `VkImageSubresourceLayers` structure

- VUID-VkImageBlit2KHR-dstSubresource-parameter
  `dstSubresource` must be a valid `VkImageSubresourceLayers` structure

19.6. Resolving Multisample Images

To resolve a multisample color image to a non-multisample color image, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkCmdResolveImage(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,  // Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
    VkImage srcImage,               // Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
    VkImageLayout srcImageLayout,   // Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
    VkImage dstImage,               // Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
    VkImageLayout dstImageLayout,   // Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
    uint32_t regionCount,           // Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
    const VkImageResolve* pRegions); // Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
```

• `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.

• `srcImage` is the source image.

• `srcImageLayout` is the layout of the source image subresources for the resolve.
• **dstImage** is the destination image.
• **dstImageLayout** is the layout of the destination image subresources for the resolve.
• **regionCount** is the number of regions to resolve.
• **pRegions** is a pointer to an array of **VkImageResolve** structures specifying the regions to resolve.

During the resolve the samples corresponding to each pixel location in the source are converted to a single sample before being written to the destination. If the source formats are floating-point or normalized types, the sample values for each pixel are resolved in an implementation-dependent manner. If the source formats are integer types, a single sample's value is selected for each pixel.

**srcOffset** and **dstOffset** select the initial x, y, and z offsets in texels of the sub-regions of the source and destination image data. **extent** is the size in texels of the source image to resolve in **width**, **height** and **depth**. Each element of **pRegions** must be a region that is contained within its corresponding image.

Resolves are done layer by layer starting with **baseArrayLayer** member of **srcSubresource** for the source and **dstSubresource** for the destination. **layerCount** layers are resolved to the destination image.
Valid Usage

• VUID-vkCmdResolveImage-pRegions-00255
  The union of all source regions, and the union of all destination regions, specified by the elements of pRegions, must not overlap in memory

• VUID-vkCmdResolveImage-srcImage-00256
  If srcImage is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single VkDeviceMemory object

• VUID-vkCmdResolveImage-srcImage-00257
  srcImage must have a sample count equal to any valid sample count value other than VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT

• VUID-vkCmdResolveImage-dstImage-00258
  If dstImage is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single VkDeviceMemory object

• VUID-vkCmdResolveImage-dstImage-00259
  dstImage must have a sample count equal to VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT

• VUID-vkCmdResolveImage-srcImageLayout-00260
  srcImageLayout must specify the layout of the image subresources of srcImage specified in pRegions at the time this command is executed on a VkDevice

• VUID-vkCmdResolveImage-srcImageLayout-01400
  srcImageLayout must be VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHARED_PRESENT_KHR, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_TRANSFER_SRC_OPTIMAL or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL

• VUID-vkCmdResolveImage-dstImageLayout-00262
  dstImageLayout must specify the layout of the image subresources of dstImage specified in pRegions at the time this command is executed on a VkDevice

• VUID-vkCmdResolveImage-dstImageLayout-01401
  dstImageLayout must be VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHARED_PRESENT_KHR, VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_TRANSFER_DST_OPTIMAL or VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL

• VUID-vkCmdResolveImage-dstImage-02003
  The format features of dstImage must contain VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT

• VUID-vkCmdResolveImage-srcImage-01386
  srcImage and dstImage must have been created with the same image format

• VUID-vkCmdResolveImage-srcSubresource-01709
  The srcSubresource.mipLevel member of each element of pRegions must be less than the mipLevels specified in VkImageCreateInfo when srcImage was created

• VUID-vkCmdResolveImage-dstSubresource-01710
  The dstSubresource.mipLevel member of each element of pRegions must be less than the mipLevels specified in VkImageCreateInfo when dstImage was created

• VUID-vkCmdResolveImage-srcSubresource-01711
  The srcSubresource.baseArrayLayer + srcSubresource.layerCount of each element of pRegions must be less than or equal to the arrayLayers specified in VkImageCreateInfo when srcImage was created
The `dstSubresource.baseArrayLayer + dstSubresource.layerCount` of each element of `pRegions` **must** be less than or equal to the `arrayLayers` specified in `VkImageCreateInfo` when `dstImage` was created.

If either `srcImage` or `dstImage` are of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `srcSubresource.baseArrayLayer` **must** be 0 and `srcSubresource.layerCount` **must** be 1.

If either `srcImage` or `dstImage` are of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `dstSubresource.baseArrayLayer` **must** be 0 and `dstSubresource.layerCount` **must** be 1.

For each element of `pRegions`, `srcOffset.x` and `(extent.width + srcOffset.x)` **must** both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the width of the specified `srcSubresource` of `srcImage`.

For each element of `pRegions`, `srcOffset.y` and `(extent.height + srcOffset.y)` **must** both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the height of the specified `srcSubresource` of `srcImage`.

If `srcImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `srcOffset.y` **must** be 0 and `extent.height` **must** be 1.

For each element of `pRegions`, `srcOffset.z` and `(extent.depth + srcOffset.z)` **must** both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the depth of the specified `srcSubresource` of `srcImage`.

If `srcImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D` or `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `srcOffset.z` **must** be 0 and `extent.depth` **must** be 1.

For each element of `pRegions`, `dstOffset.x` and `(extent.width + dstOffset.x)` **must** both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the width of the specified `dstSubresource` of `dstImage`.

For each element of `pRegions`, `dstOffset.y` and `(extent.height + dstOffset.y)` **must** both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the height of the specified `dstSubresource` of `dstImage`.

If `dstImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `dstOffset.y` **must** be 0 and `extent.height` **must** be 1.

For each element of `pRegions`, `dstOffset.z` and `(extent.depth + dstOffset.z)` **must** both be
greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the depth of the specified dstSubresource of dstImage

- VUID-vkCmdResolveImage-dstImage-00278
  If dstImage is of type VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D or VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D, then for each element of pRegions, dstOffset.z must be 0 and extent.depth must be 1

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdResolveImage-commandBuffer-parameter
  commandBuffer must be a valid VkCommandBuffer handle

- VUID-vkCmdResolveImage-srcImage-parameter
  srcImage must be a valid VkImage handle

- VUID-vkCmdResolveImage-srcImageLayout-parameter
  srcImageLayout must be a valid VkImageLayout value

- VUID-vkCmdResolveImage-dstImage-parameter
  dstImage must be a valid VkImage handle

- VUID-vkCmdResolveImage-dstImageLayout-parameter
  dstImageLayout must be a valid VkImageLayout value

- VUID-vkCmdResolveImage-pRegions-parameter
  pRegions must be a valid pointer to an array of regionCount valid VkImageResolve structures

- VUID-vkCmdResolveImage-commandBuffer-recording
  commandBuffer must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdResolveImage-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must support graphics operations

- VUID-vkCmdResolveImage-renderpass
  This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance

- VUID-vkCmdResolveImage-regionCount-arraylength
  regionCount must be greater than 0

- VUID-vkCmdResolveImage-commonparent
  Each of commandBuffer, dstImage, and srcImage must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same VkDevice

Host Synchronization

- Host access to commandBuffer must be externally synchronized

- Host access to the VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must be externally synchronized
The `VkImageResolve` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkImageResolve {
    VkImageSubresourceLayers srcSubresource;
    VkOffset3D srcOffset;
    VkImageSubresourceLayers dstSubresource;
    VkOffset3D dstOffset;
    VkExtent3D extent;
} VkImageResolve;
```

- `srcSubresource` and `dstSubresource` are `VkImageSubresourceLayers` structures specifying the image subresources of the images used for the source and destination image data, respectively. Resolve of depth/stencil images is not supported.
- `srcOffset` and `dstOffset` select the initial x, y, and z offsets in texels of the sub-regions of the source and destination image data.
- `extent` is the size in texels of the source image to resolve in width, height and depth.

**Valid Usage**

- VUID-VkImageResolve-aspectMask-00266
  The `aspectMask` member of `srcSubresource` and `dstSubresource` must only contain `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT`

- VUID-VkImageResolve-layerCount-00267
  The `layerCount` member of `srcSubresource` and `dstSubresource` must match

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-VkImageResolve-srcSubresource-parameter
  `srcSubresource` must be a valid `VkImageSubresourceLayers` structure

- VUID-VkImageResolve-dstSubresource-parameter
  `dstSubresource` must be a valid `VkImageSubresourceLayers` structure

A more extensible version of the resolve image command is defined below.

To resolve a multisample image to a non-multisample image, call:
```c
void vkCmdResolveImage2KHR(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    const VkResolveImageInfo2KHR* pResolveImageInfo);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
- `pResolveImageInfo` is a pointer to a `VkResolveImageInfo2KHR` structure describing the resolve parameters.

This command is functionally identical to `vkCmdResolveImage`, but includes extensible substructures that include `sType` and `pNext` parameters, allowing them to be more easily extended.

### Valid Usage

#### Valid Usage (Implicit)
- VUID-vkCmdResolveImage2KHR-commandBuffer-parameter
  `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle
- VUID-vkCmdResolveImage2KHR-pResolveImageInfo-parameter
  `pResolveImageInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkResolveImageInfo2KHR` structure
- VUID-vkCmdResolveImage2KHR-commandBuffer-recording
  `commandBuffer` must be in the recording state
- VUID-vkCmdResolveImage2KHR-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support graphics operations
- VUID-vkCmdResolveImage2KHR-renderpass
  This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance

### Host Synchronization
- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized

### Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The `VkResolveImageInfo2KHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_copy_commands2
typedef struct VkResolveImageInfo2KHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkImage srcImage;
    VkImageLayout srcImageLayout;
    VkImage dstImage;
    VkImageLayout dstImageLayout;
    uint32_t regionCount;
    const VkImageResolve2KHR* pRegions;
} VkResolveImageInfo2KHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `srcImage` is the source image.
- `srcImageLayout` is the layout of the source image subresources for the resolve.
- `dstImage` is the destination image.
- `dstImageLayout` is the layout of the destination image subresources for the resolve.
- `regionCount` is the number of regions to resolve.
- `pRegions` is a pointer to an array of `VkImageResolve2KHR` structures specifying the regions to resolve.
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkResolveImageInfo2KHR-pRegions-00255
  The union of all source regions, and the union of all destination regions, specified by the elements of pRegions, must not overlap in memory

- VUID-VkResolveImageInfo2KHR-srcImage-00256
  If srcImage is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single VkDeviceMemory object

- VUID-VkResolveImageInfo2KHR-srcImage-00257
  srcImage must have a sample count equal to any valid sample count value other than VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT

- VUID-VkResolveImageInfo2KHR-dstImage-00258
  If dstImage is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single VkDeviceMemory object

- VUID-VkResolveImageInfo2KHR-dstImage-00259
  dstImage must have a sample count equal to VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT

- VUID-VkResolveImageInfo2KHR-srcImageLayout-01400
  srcImageLayout must specify the layout of the image subresources of srcImage specified in pRegions at the time this command is executed on a VkDevice

- VUID-VkResolveImageInfo2KHR-srcImageLayout-01401
  dstImageLayout must specify the layout of the image subresources of dstImage specified in pRegions at the time this command is executed on a VkDevice

- VUID-VkResolveImageInfo2KHR-dstImageLayout-01402
  The format features of dstImage must contain VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT

- VUID-VkResolveImageInfo2KHR-srcImage-01386
  srcImage and dstImage must have been created with the same image format

- VUID-VkResolveImageInfo2KHR-srcSubresource-01709
  The srcSubresource.mipLevel member of each element of pRegions must be less than the mipLevels specified in VkImageCreateInfo when srcImage was created

- VUID-VkResolveImageInfo2KHR-dstSubresource-01710
  The dstSubresource.mipLevel member of each element of pRegions must be less than the mipLevels specified in VkImageCreateInfo when dstImage was created

- VUID-VkResolveImageInfo2KHR-srcSubresource-01711
  The srcSubresource.baseArrayLayer + srcSubresource.layerCount of each element of pRegions must be less than or equal to the arrayLayers specified in VkImageCreateInfo when srcImage was created
The `dstSubresource.baseArrayLayer + dstSubresource.layerCount` of each element of `pRegions` must be less than or equal to the `arrayLayers` specified in `VkImageCreateInfo` when `dstImage` was created.

If either `srcImage` or `dstImage` are of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `srcSubresource.baseArrayLayer` must be 0 and `srcSubresource.layerCount` must be 1.

If either `srcImage` or `dstImage` are of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `dstSubresource.baseArrayLayer` must be 0 and `dstSubresource.layerCount` must be 1.

For each element of `pRegions`, `srcOffset.x` and `(extent.width + srcOffset.x)` must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the width of the specified `srcSubresource` of `srcImage`.

For each element of `pRegions`, `srcOffset.y` and `(extent.height + srcOffset.y)` must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the height of the specified `srcSubresource` of `srcImage`.

If `srcImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `srcOffset.y` must be 0 and `extent.height` must be 1.

For each element of `pRegions`, `srcOffset.z` and `(extent.depth + srcOffset.z)` must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the depth of the specified `srcSubresource` of `srcImage`.

If `srcImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D` or `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `srcOffset.z` must be 0 and `extent.depth` must be 1.

For each element of `pRegions`, `dstOffset.x` and `(extent.width + dstOffset.x)` must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the width of the specified `dstSubresource` of `dstImage`.

For each element of `pRegions`, `dstOffset.y` and `(extent.height + dstOffset.y)` must both be greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the height of the specified `dstSubresource` of `dstImage`.

If `dstImage` is of type `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D`, then for each element of `pRegions`, `dstOffset.y` must be 0 and `extent.height` must be 1.

For each element of `pRegions`, `dstOffset.z` and `(extent.depth + dstOffset.z)` must both be
greater than or equal to 0 and less than or equal to the depth of the specified dstSubresource of dstImage

- VUID-VkResolveImageInfo2KHR-dstImage-00278
  If dstImage is of type VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D or VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D, then for each element of pRegions, dstOffset.z must be 0 and extent.depth must be 1

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkResolveImageInfo2KHR-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RESOLVE_IMAGE_INFO_2_KHR

- VUID-VkResolveImageInfo2KHR-pNext-pNext
  pNext must be NULL

- VUID-VkResolveImageInfo2KHR-srcImage-parameter
  srcImage must be a valid VkImage handle

- VUID-VkResolveImageInfo2KHR-srcImageLayout-parameter
  srcImageLayout must be a valid VkImageLayout value

- VUID-VkResolveImageInfo2KHR-dstImage-parameter
  dstImage must be a valid VkImage handle

- VUID-VkResolveImageInfo2KHR-dstImageLayout-parameter
  dstImageLayout must be a valid VkImageLayout value

- VUID-VkResolveImageInfo2KHR-pRegions-parameter
  pRegions must be a valid pointer to an array of regionCount valid VkImageResolve2KHR structures

- VUID-VkResolveImageInfo2KHR-regionCount-arraylength
  regionCount must be greater than 0

- VUID-VkResolveImageInfo2KHR-commonparent
  Both of dstImage, and srcImage must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same VkDevice

The VkImageResolve2KHR structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_copy_commands2
typedef struct VkImageResolve2KHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkImageSubresourceLayers srcSubresource;
    VkOffset3D srcOffset;
    VkImageSubresourceLayers dstSubresource;
    VkOffset3D dstOffset;
    VkExtent3D extent;
} VkImageResolve2KHR;
```
• **sType** is the type of this structure.

• **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.

• **srcSubresource** and **dstSubresource** are **VkImageSubresourceLayers** structures specifying the image subresources of the images used for the source and destination image data, respectively. Resolve of depth/stencil images is not supported.

• **srcOffset** and **dstOffset** select the initial $x$, $y$, and $z$ offsets in texels of the sub-regions of the source and destination image data.

• **extent** is the size in texels of the source image to resolve in **width**, **height** and **depth**.

---

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkImageResolve2KHR-aspectMask-00266**
  The **aspectMask** member of **srcSubresource** and **dstSubresource** must only contain **VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT**

- **VUID-VkImageResolve2KHR-layerCount-00267**
  The **layerCount** member of **srcSubresource** and **dstSubresource** must match

---

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkImageResolve2KHR-sType-sType**
  **sType** must be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_RESOLVE_2_KHR**

- **VUID-VkImageResolve2KHR-pNext-pNext**
  **pNext** must be **NULL**

- **VUID-VkImageResolve2KHR-srcSubresource-parameter**
  **srcSubresource** must be a valid **VkImageSubresourceLayers** structure

- **VUID-VkImageResolve2KHR-dstSubresource-parameter**
  **dstSubresource** must be a valid **VkImageSubresourceLayers** structure
Chapter 20. Drawing Commands

Drawing commands (commands with Draw in the name) provoke work in a graphics pipeline. Drawing commands are recorded into a command buffer and when executed by a queue, will produce work which executes according to the bound graphics pipeline. A graphics pipeline must be bound to a command buffer before any drawing commands are recorded in that command buffer.

Each draw is made up of zero or more vertices and zero or more instances, which are processed by the device and result in the assembly of primitives. Primitives are assembled according to the pInputAssemblyState member of the VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo structure, which is of type VkPipelineInputAssemblyStateCreateInfo:

```
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkPipelineInputAssemblyStateCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkPipelineInputAssemblyStateCreateFlags flags;
    VkPrimitiveTopology topology;
    VkBool32 primitiveRestartEnable;
} VkPipelineInputAssemblyStateCreateInfo;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `flags` is reserved for future use.
- `topology` is a VkPrimitiveTopology defining the primitive topology, as described below.
- `primitiveRestartEnable` controls whether a special vertex index value is treated as restarting the assembly of primitives. This enable only applies to indexed draws (`vkCmdDrawIndexed`, and `vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect`), and the special index value is either 0xFFFFFFFF when the `indexType` parameter of `vkCmdBindIndexBuffer` is equal to VK_INDEX_TYPE_UINT32, or 0xFFFF when `indexType` is equal to VK_INDEX_TYPE_UINT16. Primitive restart is not allowed for “list” topologies.

Restarting the assembly of primitives discards the most recent index values if those elements formed an incomplete primitive, and restarts the primitive assembly using the subsequent indices, but only assembling the immediately following element through the end of the originally specified elements. The primitive restart index value comparison is performed before adding the `vertexOffset` value to the index value.
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkPipelineInputAssemblyStateCreateInfo-topology-00428
  If topology is VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_POINT_LIST, VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_LINE_LIST, VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_TRIANGLE_LIST, VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_LINE_LIST_WITH_ADJACENCY, VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_TRIANGLE_LIST_WITH_ADJACENCY or VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_PATCH_LIST, primitiveRestartEnable must be VK_FALSE

- VUID-VkPipelineInputAssemblyStateCreateInfo-topology-00429
  If the geometry shaders feature is not enabled, topology must not be any of VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_LINE_LIST_WITH_ADJACENCY, VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_LINE_STRIP_WITH_ADJACENCY, VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_TRIANGLE_LIST_WITH_ADJACENCY or VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_TRIANGLE_STRIP_WITH_ADJACENCY

- VUID-VkPipelineInputAssemblyStateCreateInfo-topology-00430
  If the tessellation shaders feature is not enabled, topology must not be VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_PATCH_LIST

- VUID-VkPipelineInputAssemblyStateCreateInfo-triangleFans-04452
  If the VK_KHR_portability_subset extension is enabled, and VkPhysicalDevicePortabilitySubsetFeaturesKHR::triangleFans is VK_FALSE, topology must not be VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_TRIANGLE_FAN

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkPipelineInputAssemblyStateCreateInfo-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_INPUT_ASSEMBLY_STATE_CREATE_INFO

- VUID-VkPipelineInputAssemblyStateCreateInfo-pNext-pNext
  pNext must be NULL

- VUID-VkPipelineInputAssemblyStateCreateInfo-flags-zerobitmask
  flags must be 0

- VUID-VkPipelineInputAssemblyStateCreateInfo-topology-parameter
  topology must be a valid VkPrimitiveTopology value

// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkPipelineInputAssemblyStateCreateFlags;

VkPipelineInputAssemblyStateCreateFlags is a bitmask type for setting a mask, but is currently reserved for future use.

20.1. Primitive Topologies

Primitive topology determines how consecutive vertices are organized into primitives, and determines the type of primitive that is used at the beginning of the graphics pipeline. The effective
topology for later stages of the pipeline is altered by tessellation or geometry shading (if either is in use) and depends on the execution modes of those shaders.

The primitive topologies defined by \texttt{VkPrimitiveTopology} are:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkPrimitiveTopology {
    VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_POINT_LIST = 0,
    VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_LINE_LIST = 1,
    VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_LINE_STRIP = 2,
    VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_TRIANGLE_LIST = 3,
    VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_TRIANGLE_STRIP = 4,
    VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_TRIANGLE_FAN = 5,
    VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_LINE_LIST_WITH_ADJACENCY = 6,
    VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_LINE_STRIP_WITH_ADJACENCY = 7,
    VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_TRIANGLE_LIST_WITH_ADJACENCY = 8,
    VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_TRIANGLE_STRIP_WITH_ADJACENCY = 9,
    VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_PATCH_LIST = 10,
} VkPrimitiveTopology;
```

- \texttt{VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_POINT_LIST} specifies a series of separate point primitives.
- \texttt{VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_LINE_LIST} specifies a series of separate line primitives.
- \texttt{VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_LINE_STRIP} specifies a series of connected line primitives with consecutive lines sharing a vertex.
- \texttt{VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_TRIANGLE_LIST} specifies a series of separate triangle primitives.
- \texttt{VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_TRIANGLE_STRIP} specifies a series of connected triangle primitives with consecutive triangles sharing an edge.
- \texttt{VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_TRIANGLE_FAN} specifies a series of connected triangle primitives with all triangles sharing a common vertex. If the \texttt{VK_KHR_portability_subset} extension is enabled, and \texttt{VkPhysicalDevicePortabilitySubsetFeaturesKHR::triangleFans} is \texttt{VK_FALSE}, then triangle fans are not supported by the implementation, and \texttt{VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_TRIANGLE_FAN} must not be used.
- \texttt{VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_LINE_LIST_WITH_ADJACENCY} specifies a series of separate line primitives with adjacency.
- \texttt{VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_LINE_STRIP_WITH_ADJACENCY} specifies a series of connected line primitives with adjacency, with consecutive primitives sharing three vertices.
- \texttt{VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_TRIANGLE_LIST_WITH_ADJACENCY} specifies a series of separate triangle primitives with adjacency.
- \texttt{VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_TRIANGLE_STRIP_WITH_ADJACENCY} specifies connected triangle primitives with adjacency, with consecutive triangles sharing an edge.
- \texttt{VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_PATCH_LIST} specifies separate patch primitives.

Each primitive topology, and its construction from a list of vertices, is described in detail below with a supporting diagram, according to the following key:
### 20.1.1. Point Lists

When the topology is `VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_POINT_LIST`, each consecutive vertex defines a single point primitive, according to the equation:

\[
p_i = \{v_i\}
\]

As there is only one vertex, that vertex is the provoking vertex. The number of primitives generated is equal to `vertexCount`.

![Diagram of point list](image)

### 20.1.2. Line Lists

When the topology is `VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_LINE_LIST`, each consecutive pair of vertices defines a single line primitive, according to the equation:

\[
p_i = \{v_{2i}, v_{2i+1}\}
\]

The number of primitives generated is equal to ⌊`vertexCount`/2⌋.

The provoking vertex for \(p_i\) is \(v_{2i}\).
20.1.3. Line Strips

When the topology is `VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_LINE_STRIP`, one line primitive is defined by each vertex and the following vertex, according to the equation:

\[ p_i = \{v_i, v_{i+1}\} \]

The number of primitives generated is equal to \(\max(0, \text{vertexCount}-1)\).

The provoking vertex for \(p_i\) is \(v_i\).

20.1.4. Triangle Lists

When the topology is `VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_TRIANGLE_LIST`, each consecutive set of three vertices defines a single triangle primitive, according to the equation:

\[ p_i = \{v_{3i}, v_{3i+1}, v_{3i+2}\} \]

The number of primitives generated is equal to \(\lfloor \text{vertexCount}/3 \rfloor\).

The provoking vertex for \(p_i\) is \(v_{3i}\).

20.1.5. Triangle Strips

When the topology is `VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_TRIANGLE_STRIP`, one triangle primitive is defined by each vertex and the two vertices that follow it, according to the equation:

\[ p_i = \{v_i, v_{i+(1+i\%2)}, v_{i+(2-i\%2)}\} \]

The number of primitives generated is equal to \(\max(0, \text{vertexCount}-2)\).

The provoking vertex for \(p_i\) is \(v_i\).
The ordering of the vertices in each successive triangle is reversed, so that the winding order is consistent throughout the strip.

### 20.1.6. Triangle Fans

When the topology is `VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_TRIANGLE_FAN`, triangle primitives are defined around a shared common vertex, according to the equation:

\[ p_i = \{v_{i+1}, v_{i+2}, v_0\} \]

The number of primitives generated is equal to \(\max(0, \text{vertexCount} - 2)\).

The provoking vertex for \(p_i\) is \(v_{i+1}\).

If the `VK_KHR_portability_subset` extension is enabled, and `VkPhysicalDevicePortabilitySubsetFeaturesKHR::triangleFans` is `VK_FALSE`, then triangle fans are not supported by the implementation, and `VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_TRIANGLE_FAN` must not be used.

### 20.1.7. Line Lists With Adjacency

When the topology is `VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_LINE_LIST_WITH_ADJACENCY`, each consecutive set of four vertices defines a single line primitive with adjacency, according to the equation:

\[ p_i = \{v_{4i}, v_{4i+1}, v_{4i+2}, v_{4i+3}\} \]

A line primitive is described by the second and third vertices of the total primitive, with the remaining two vertices only accessible in a geometry shader.

The number of primitives generated is equal to \(\lfloor \text{vertexCount}/4 \rfloor\).

The provoking vertex for \(p_i\) is \(v_{4i+1}\).
20.1.8. Line Strips With Adjacency

When the topology is VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_LINE_STRIP_WITH_ADJACENCY, one line primitive with adjacency is defined by each vertex and the following vertex, according to the equation:

\[ p_i = \{v_i, v_{i+1}, v_{i+2}, v_{i+3}\} \]

A line primitive is described by the second and third vertices of the total primitive, with the remaining two vertices only accessible in a geometry shader.

The number of primitives generated is equal to \( \max(0, \text{vertexCount}-3) \).

The provoking vertex for \( p_i \) is \( v_{i+1} \).

20.1.9. Triangle Lists With Adjacency

When the topology is VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_TRIANGLE_LIST_WITH_ADJACENCY, each consecutive set of six vertices defines a single triangle primitive with adjacency, according to the equations:

\[ p_i = \{v_{6i}, v_{6i+1}, v_{6i+2}, v_{6i+3}, v_{6i+4}, v_{6i+5}\} \]

A triangle primitive is described by the first, third, and fifth vertices of the total primitive, with the remaining three vertices only accessible in a geometry shader.

The number of primitives generated is equal to \( \lfloor \text{vertexCount}/6 \rfloor \).

The provoking vertex for \( p_i \) is \( v_{6i} \).
20.1.10. Triangle Strips With Adjacency

When the topology is `VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_TRIANGLE_STRIP_WITH_ADJACENCY`, one triangle primitive with adjacency is defined by each vertex and the following 5 vertices.

The number of primitives generated, \( n \), is equal to \( \lfloor \max(0, \text{vertexCount} - 4)/2 \rfloor \).

If \( n=1 \), the primitive is defined as:

\[
p = \{ v_0, v_1, v_2, v_5, v_4, v_3 \}
\]

If \( n>1 \), the total primitive consists of different vertices according to where it is in the strip:

\[
p_i = \{ v_{2i}, v_{2i+1}, v_{2i+2}, v_{2i+4}, v_{2i+6}, v_{2i+3} \} \quad \text{when } i=0
\]

\[
p_i = \{ v_{2i}, v_{2i+3}, v_{2i+5}, v_{2i+4}, v_{2i+6}, v_{2i+2} \} \quad \text{when } i>0, i<n-1, \text{ and } i\%2=1
\]

\[
p_i = \{ v_{2i}, v_{2i+2}, v_{2i+4}, v_{2i+6}, v_{2i+3}, v_{2i+5} \} \quad \text{when } i>0, i<n-1, \text{ and } i\%2=0
\]

\[
p_i = \{ v_{2i}, v_{2i+3}, v_{2i+4}, v_{2i+5}, v_{2i+6}, v_{2i+2} \} \quad \text{when } i=n-1 \text{ and } i\%2=1
\]

\[
p_i = \{ v_{2i}, v_{2i+3}, v_{2i+5}, v_{2i+4}, v_{2i+6}, v_{2i+2} \} \quad \text{when } i=n-1 \text{ and } i\%2=0
\]

A triangle primitive is described by the first, third, and fifth vertices of the total primitive in all cases, with the remaining three vertices only accessible in a geometry shader.

**Note**

The ordering of the vertices in each successive triangle is altered so that the winding order is consistent throughout the strip.

The provoking vertex for \( p_i \) is always \( v_{2i} \).
20.1.11. Patch Lists

When the topology is VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_PATCH_LIST, each consecutive set of m vertices defines a single patch primitive, according to the equation:

\[ p_i = \{v_{mi}, v_{mi+1}, \ldots, v_{mi+(m-2)}, v_{mi+(m-1)}\} \]

where m is equal to VkPipelineTessellationStateCreateInfo::patchControlPoints.

Patch lists are never passed to vertex post-processing, and as such no provoking vertex is defined for patch primitives. The number of primitives generated is equal to \( \lfloor \text{vertexCount}/m \rfloor \).

The vertices comprising a patch have no implied geometry, and are used as inputs to tessellation shaders and the fixed-function tessellator to generate new point, line, or triangle primitives.

20.2. Primitive Order

Primitives generated by drawing commands progress through the stages of the graphics pipeline in primitive order. Primitive order is initially determined in the following way:

1. Submission order determines the initial ordering
2. For indirect drawing commands, the order in which accessed instances of the VkDrawIndirectCommand are stored in buffer, from lower indirect buffer addresses to higher addresses.
3. If a drawing command includes multiple instances, the order in which instances are executed, from lower numbered instances to higher.

4. The order in which primitives are specified by a drawing command:
   - For non-indexed draws, from vertices with a lower numbered \texttt{vertexIndex} to a higher numbered \texttt{vertexIndex}.
   - For indexed draws, vertices sourced from a lower index buffer addresses to higher addresses.

Within this order implementations further sort primitives:

5. If tessellation shading is active, by an implementation-dependent order of new primitives generated by \texttt{tessellation}.

6. If geometry shading is active, by the order new primitives are generated by \texttt{geometry shading}.

7. If the \texttt{polygon mode} is not \texttt{VK_POLYGON_MODE_FILL}, by an implementation-dependent ordering of the new primitives generated within the original primitive.

Primitive order is later used to define \texttt{rasterization order}, which determines the order in which fragments output results to a framebuffer.

20.3. Programmable Primitive Shading

Once primitives are assembled, they proceed to the vertex shading stage of the pipeline. If the draw includes multiple instances, then the set of primitives is sent to the vertex shading stage multiple times, once for each instance.

It is implementation-dependent whether vertex shading occurs on vertices that are discarded as part of incomplete primitives, but if it does occur then it operates as if they were vertices in complete primitives and such invocations \texttt{can} have side effects.

Vertex shading receives two per-vertex inputs from the primitive assembly stage - the \texttt{vertexIndex} and the \texttt{instanceIndex}. How these values are generated is defined below, with each command.

Drawing commands fall roughly into two categories:

- Non-indexed drawing commands present a sequential \texttt{vertexIndex} to the vertex shader. The sequential index is generated automatically by the device (see \texttt{Fixed-Function Vertex Processing} for details on both specifying the vertex attributes indexed by \texttt{vertexIndex}, as well as binding vertex buffers containing those attributes to a command buffer). These commands are:
  - \texttt{vkCmdDraw}
  - \texttt{vkCmdDrawIndirect}
  - \texttt{vkCmdDrawIndirectCountKHR}

- Indexed drawing commands read index values from an \texttt{index buffer} and use this to compute the \texttt{vertexIndex} value for the vertex shader. These commands are:
  - \texttt{vkCmdDrawIndexed}
  - \texttt{vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect}
To bind an index buffer to a command buffer, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkCmdBindIndexBuffer(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,  // Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
    VkBuffer buffer,  // Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
    VkDeviceSize offset,  // Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
    VkIndexType indexType  // Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command is recorded.
- `buffer` is the buffer being bound.
- `offset` is the starting offset in bytes within `buffer` used in index buffer address calculations.
- `indexType` is a `VkIndexType` value specifying whether indices are treated as 16 bits or 32 bits.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkCmdBindIndexBuffer-offset-00431**
  
  `offset` must be less than the size of `buffer`

- **VUID-vkCmdBindIndexBuffer-offset-00432**
  
  The sum of `offset` and the address of the range of `VkDeviceMemory` object that is backing `buffer`, must be a multiple of the type indicated by `indexType`

- **VUID-vkCmdBindIndexBuffer-buffer-00433**
  
  `buffer` must have been created with the `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_INDEX_BUFFER_BIT` flag

- **VUID-vkCmdBindIndexBuffer-buffer-00434**
  
  If `buffer` is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object

- **VUID-vkCmdBindIndexBuffer-indexType-02507**
  
  `indexType` must not be `VK_INDEX_TYPE_NONE_KHR`
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdBindIndexBuffer-commandBuffer-parameter
  commandBuffer must be a valid VkCommandBuffer handle

- VUID-vkCmdBindIndexBuffer-buffer-parameter
  buffer must be a valid VkBuffer handle

- VUID-vkCmdBindIndexBuffer-indexType-parameter
  indexType must be a valid VkIndexType value

- VUID-vkCmdBindIndexBuffer-commandBuffer-recording
  commandBuffer must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdBindIndexBuffer-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must support graphics operations

- VUID-vkCmdBindIndexBuffer-commonparent
  Both of buffer, and commandBuffer must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same VkDevice

Host Synchronization

- Host access to commandBuffer must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Possible values of vkCmdBindIndexBuffer::indexType, specifying the size of indices, are:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkIndexType {
    VK_INDEX_TYPE_UINT16 = 0,
    VK_INDEX_TYPE_UINT32 = 1,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
    VK_INDEX_TYPE_NONE_KHR = 1000165000,
} VkIndexType;
```

- VK_INDEX_TYPE_UINT16 specifies that indices are 16-bit unsigned integer values.
• **VK_INDEX_TYPE_UINT32** specifies that indices are 32-bit unsigned integer values.
• **VK_INDEX_TYPE_NONE_KHR** specifies that no indices are provided.

The parameters for each drawing command are specified directly in the command or read from buffer memory, depending on the command. Drawing commands that source their parameters from buffer memory are known as *indirect* drawing commands.

All drawing commands interact with the Robust Buffer Access feature.

To record a non-indexed draw, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkCmdDraw(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    uint32_t vertexCount,
    uint32_t instanceCount,
    uint32_t firstVertex,
    uint32_t firstInstance);
```

• **commandBuffer** is the command buffer into which the command is recorded.
• **vertexCount** is the number of vertices to draw.
• **instanceCount** is the number of instances to draw.
• **firstVertex** is the index of the first vertex to draw.
• **firstInstance** is the instance ID of the first instance to draw.

When the command is executed, primitives are assembled using the current primitive topology and **vertexCount** consecutive vertex indices with the first **vertexIndex** value equal to **firstVertex**. The primitives are drawn **instanceCount** times with **instanceIndex** starting with **firstInstance** and increasing sequentially for each instance. The assembled primitives execute the bound graphics pipeline.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkCmdDraw-magFilter-04553
  If a VkSampler created with magFilter or minFilter equal to VK_FILTER_LINEAR and compareEnable equal to VK_FALSE is used to sample a VkImageView as a result of this command, then the image view’s format features must contain VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT

- VUID-vkCmdDraw-mipmapMode-04770
  If a VkSampler created with mipmapMode equal to VK_SAMPLER_MIPMAP_MODE_LINEAR and compareEnable equal to VK_FALSE is used to sample a VkImageView as a result of this command, then the image view’s format features must contain VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT

- VUID-vkCmdDraw-None-02691
  If a VkImageView is accessed using atomic operations as a result of this command, then the image view’s format features must contain VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_ATOMIC_BIT

- VUID-vkCmdDraw-None-02697
  For each set $n$ that is statically used by the VkPipeline bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command, a descriptor set must have been bound to $n$ at the same pipeline bind point, with a VkPipelineLayout that is compatible for set $n$, with the VkPipelineLayout used to create the current VkPipeline, as described in Pipeline Layout Compatibility

- VUID-vkCmdDraw-None-02698
  For each push constant that is statically used by the VkPipeline bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command, a push constant value must have been set for the same pipeline bind point, with a VkPipelineLayout that is compatible for push constants, with the VkPipelineLayout used to create the current VkPipeline, as described in Pipeline Layout Compatibility

- VUID-vkCmdDraw-None-02699
  Descriptors in each bound descriptor set, specified via vkCmdBindDescriptorSets, must be valid if they are statically used by the VkPipeline bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command

- VUID-vkCmdDraw-None-02700
  A valid pipeline must be bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command

- VUID-vkCmdDraw-commandBuffer-02701
  If the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command requires any dynamic state, that state must have been set or inherited (if the [VK_NV_inherited_viewport_scissor] extension is enabled) for commandBuffer, and done so after any previously bound pipeline with the corresponding state not specified as dynamic

- VUID-vkCmdDraw-None-02859
  There must not have been any calls to dynamic state setting commands for any state not specified as dynamic in the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command, since that pipeline was bound

- VUID-vkCmdDraw-None-02702
  If the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a
A `VkSampler` object that uses unnormalized coordinates, that sampler **must** not be used to sample from any `VkImage` with a `VkImageView` of the type `VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_3D`, `VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE`, `VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_1D_ARRAY`, `VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D_ARRAY` or `VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE_ARRAY`, in any shader stage.

- **VUID-vkCmdDraw-None-02703**
  If the `VkPipeline` object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a `VkSampler` object that uses unnormalized coordinates, that sampler **must** not be used with any of the SPIR-V `OpImageSample*` or `OpImageSparseSample*` instructions with `ImplicitLod`, `Dref` or `Proj` in their name, in any shader stage.

- **VUID-vkCmdDraw-None-02704**
  If the `VkPipeline` object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a `VkSampler` object that uses unnormalized coordinates, that sampler **must** not be used with any of the SPIR-V `OpImageSample*` or `OpImageSparseSample*` instructions that includes a LOD bias or any offset values, in any shader stage.

- **VUID-vkCmdDraw-None-02705**
  If the robust buffer access feature is not enabled, and if the `VkPipeline` object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a uniform buffer, it **must** not access values outside of the range of the buffer as specified in the descriptor set bound to the same pipeline bind point.

- **VUID-vkCmdDraw-None-02706**
  If the robust buffer access feature is not enabled, and if the `VkPipeline` object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a storage buffer, it **must** not access values outside of the range of the buffer as specified in the descriptor set bound to the same pipeline bind point.

- **VUID-vkCmdDraw-None-04115**
  If a `VkImageView` is accessed using `OpImageWrite` as a result of this command, then the Type of the Texel operand of that instruction **must** have at least as many components as the image view’s format.

- **VUID-vkCmdDraw-OpImageWrite-04469**
  If a `VkBufferView` is accessed using `OpImageWrite` as a result of this command, then the Type of the Texel operand of that instruction **must** have at least as many components as the buffer view’s format.

- **VUID-vkCmdDraw-renderPass-02684**
  The current render pass **must** be compatible with the `renderPass` member of the `VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo` structure specified when creating the `VkPipeline` bound to `VK_PIPELINE_BIND_POINT_GRAPHICS`.

- **VUID-vkCmdDraw-subpass-02685**
  The subpass index of the current render pass **must** be equal to the `subpass` member of the `VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo` structure specified when creating the `VkPipeline` bound to `VK_PIPELINE_BIND_POINT_GRAPHICS`.

- **VUID-vkCmdDraw-None-02686**
  Every input attachment used by the current subpass **must** be bound to the pipeline via a descriptor set.

- **VUID-vkCmdDraw-None-04584**
Image subresources used as attachments in the current render pass must not be accessed in any way other than as an attachment by this command, except for cases involving read-only access to depth/stencil attachments as described in the Render Pass chapter.

- VUID-vkCmdDraw-maxMultiviewInstanceIndex-02688
  If the draw is recorded in a render pass instance with multiview enabled, the maximum instance index must be less than or equal to VkPhysicalDeviceMultiviewProperties::maxMultiviewInstanceIndex

- VUID-vkCmdDraw-blendEnable-04727
  If rasterization is not disabled in the bound graphics pipeline, then for each color attachment in the subpass, if the corresponding image view's format features do not contain VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BLEND_BIT, then the blendEnable member of the corresponding element of the pAttachments member of pColorBlendState must be VK_FALSE

- VUID-vkCmdDraw-rasterizationSamples-04740
  If rasterization is not disabled in the bound graphics pipeline, and neither the [VK_AMD_mixed_attachment_samples] nor the [VK_NV_framebuffer_mixed_samples] extensions are enabled, then VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo::rasterizationSamples must be the same as the current subpass color and/or depth/stencil attachments

- VUID-vkCmdDraw-None-04007
  All vertex input bindings accessed via vertex input variables declared in the vertex shader entry point's interface must have either valid or VK_NULL_HANDLE buffers bound

- VUID-vkCmdDraw-None-04008
  If the nullDescriptor feature is not enabled, all vertex input bindings accessed via vertex input variables declared in the vertex shader entry point's interface must not be VK_NULL_HANDLE

- VUID-vkCmdDraw-None-02721
  For a given vertex buffer binding, any attribute data fetched must be entirely contained within the corresponding vertex buffer binding, as described in Vertex Input Description

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdDraw-commandBuffer-parameter
  commandBuffer must be a valid VkCommandBuffer handle

- VUID-vkCmdDraw-commandBuffer-recording
  commandBuffer must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdDraw-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must support graphics operations

- VUID-vkCmdDraw-renderpass
  This command must only be called inside of a render pass instance
Host Synchronization

- Host access to commandBuffer must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Inside</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To record an indexed draw, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkCmdDrawIndexed(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    uint32_t indexCount,
    uint32_t instanceCount,
    uint32_t firstIndex,
    int32_t vertexOffset,
    uint32_t firstInstance);
```

- commandBuffer is the command buffer into which the command is recorded.
- indexCount is the number of vertices to draw.
- instanceCount is the number of instances to draw.
- firstIndex is the base index within the index buffer.
- vertexOffset is the value added to the vertex index before indexing into the vertex buffer.
- firstInstance is the instance ID of the first instance to draw.

When the command is executed, primitives are assembled using the current primitive topology and indexCount vertices whose indices are retrieved from the index buffer. The index buffer is treated as an array of tightly packed unsigned integers of size defined by the `vkCmdBindIndexBuffer` ::indexType parameter with which the buffer was bound.

The first vertex index is at an offset of firstIndex × indexSize + offset within the bound index buffer, where offset is the offset specified by `vkCmdBindIndexBuffer` and indexSize is the byte size of the type specified by indexType. Subsequent index values are retrieved from consecutive locations in the index buffer. Indices are first compared to the primitive restart value, then zero extended to 32 bits (if the indexType is VK_INDEX_TYPE_UINT16) and have vertexOffset added to them, before being supplied as the vertexIndex value.

The primitives are drawn instanceCount times with instanceIndex starting with firstInstance and
increasing sequentially for each instance. The assembled primitives execute the bound graphics pipeline.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexed-magFilter-04553**
  
  If a `VkSampler` created with `magFilter` or `minFilter` equal to `VK_FILTER_LINEAR` and `compareEnable` equal to `VK_FALSE` is used to sample a `VkImageView` as a result of this command, then the image view’s `format features` must contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT`.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexed-mipmapMode-04770**
  
  If a `VkSampler` created with `mipmapMode` equal to `VK_SAMPLER_MIPMAP_MODE_LINEAR` and `compareEnable` equal to `VK_FALSE` is used to sample a `VkImageView` as a result of this command, then the image view’s `format features` must contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT`.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexed-None-02691**
  
  If a `VkImageView` is accessed using atomic operations as a result of this command, then the image view’s `format features` must contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_ATOMIC_BIT`.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexed-None-02697**
  
  For each set `n` that is statically used by the `VkPipeline` bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command, a descriptor set must have been bound to `n` at the same pipeline bind point, with a `VkPipelineLayout` that is compatible for set `n`, with the `VkPipelineLayout` used to create the current `VkPipeline`, as described in Pipeline Layout Compatibility.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexed-None-02698**
  
  For each push constant that is statically used by the `VkPipeline` bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command, a push constant value must have been set for the same `pipeline bind point`, with a `VkPipelineLayout` that is compatible for push constants, with the `VkPipelineLayout` used to create the current `VkPipeline`, as described in Pipeline Layout Compatibility.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexed-None-02699**
  
  Descriptors in each bound descriptor set, specified via `vkCmdBindDescriptorSets`, must be valid if they are statically used by the `VkPipeline` bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexed-None-02700**
  
  A valid pipeline must be bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexed-commandBuffer-02701**
  
  If the `VkPipeline` object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command requires any dynamic state, that state must have been set or inherited (if the [VK_NV_inherited_viewport_scissor] extension is enabled) for `commandBuffer`, and done so after any previously bound pipeline with the corresponding state not specified as dynamic.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexed-None-02859**
  
  There must not have been any calls to dynamic state setting commands for any state not specified as dynamic in the `VkPipeline` object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command, since that pipeline was bound.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexed-None-02702**
  
  If the `VkPipeline` object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a
 VkSampler object that uses unnormalized coordinates, that sampler **must** not be used to sample from any VkImage with a VkImageView of the type VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_3D, VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE, VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_1D_ARRAY, VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D_ARRAY or VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE_ARRAY, in any shader stage

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexed-None-02703
  If the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a VkSampler object that uses unnormalized coordinates, that sampler **must** not be used with any of the SPIR-V OpImageSample* or OpImageSparseSample* instructions with ImplicitLod, Dref or Proj in their name, in any shader stage

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexed-None-02704
  If the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a VkSampler object that uses unnormalized coordinates, that sampler **must** not be used with any of the SPIR-V OpImageSample* or OpImageSparseSample* instructions that includes a LOD bias or any offset values, in any shader stage

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexed-None-02705
  If the robust buffer access feature is not enabled, and if the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a uniform buffer, it **must** not access values outside of the range of the buffer as specified in the descriptor set bound to the same pipeline bind point

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexed-None-02706
  If the robust buffer access feature is not enabled, and if the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a storage buffer, it **must** not access values outside of the range of the buffer as specified in the descriptor set bound to the same pipeline bind point

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexed-None-04115
  If a VkImageView is accessed using OpImageWrite as a result of this command, then the Type of the Texel operand of that instruction **must** have at least as many components as the image view’s format

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexed-OpImageWrite-04469
  If a VkBufferView is accessed using OpImageWrite as a result of this command, then the Type of the Texel operand of that instruction **must** have at least as many components as the buffer view’s format

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexed-renderPass-02684
  The current render pass **must** be compatible with the renderPass member of the VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo structure specified when creating the VkPipeline bound to VK_PIPELINE_BIND_POINT_GRAPHICS

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexed-subpass-02685
  The subpass index of the current render pass **must** be equal to the subpass member of the VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo structure specified when creating the VkPipeline bound to VK_PIPELINE_BIND_POINT_GRAPHICS

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexed-None-02686
  Every input attachment used by the current subpass **must** be bound to the pipeline via a descriptor set

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexed-None-04584
Image subresources used as attachments in the current render pass must not be accessed in any way other than as an attachment by this command, except for cases involving read-only access to depth/stencil attachments as described in the Render Pass chapter.

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexed-maxMultiviewInstanceIndex-02688
  If the draw is recorded in a render pass instance with multiview enabled, the maximum instance index must be less than or equal to VkPhysicalDeviceMultiviewProperties::maxMultiviewInstanceIndex

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexed-blendEnable-04727
  If rasterization is not disabled in the bound graphics pipeline, then for each color attachment in the subpass, if the corresponding image view's format features do not contain VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BLEND_BIT, then the blendEnable member of the corresponding element of the pAttachments member of pColorBlendState must be VK_FALSE

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexed-rasterizationSamples-04740
  If rasterization is not disabled in the bound graphics pipeline, and neither the [VK_AMD_mixed_attachment_samples] nor the [VK_NV_framebuffer_mixed_samples] extensions are enabled, then VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo::rasterizationSamples must be the same as the current subpass color and/or depth/stencil attachments

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexed-None-04007
  All vertex input bindings accessed via vertex input variables declared in the vertex shader entry point's interface must have either valid or VK_NULL_HANDLE buffers bound

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexed-None-04008
  If the nullDescriptor feature is not enabled, all vertex input bindings accessed via vertex input variables declared in the vertex shader entry point's interface must not be VK_NULL_HANDLE

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexed-None-02721
  For a given vertex buffer binding, any attribute data fetched must be entirely contained within the corresponding vertex buffer binding, as described in Vertex Input Description

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexed-firstIndex-04932
  \((\text{indexSize} \times (\text{firstIndex} + \text{indexCount}) + \text{offset})\) must be less than or equal to the size of the bound index buffer, with indexSize being based on the type specified by indexType, where the index buffer, indexType, and offset are specified via vkCmdBindIndexBuffer
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexed-commandBuffer-parameter
  commandBuffer must be a valid VkCommandBuffer handle

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexed-commandBuffer-recording
  commandBuffer must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexed-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must support graphics operations

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexed-renderpass
  This command must only be called inside of a render pass instance

Host Synchronization

- Host access to commandBuffer must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Inside</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To record a non-indexed indirect drawing command, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkCmdDrawIndirect(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    VkBuffer buffer,
    VkDeviceSize offset,
    uint32_t drawCount,
    uint32_t stride);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command is recorded.
- `buffer` is the buffer containing draw parameters.
- `offset` is the byte offset into `buffer` where parameters begin.
- `drawCount` is the number of draws to execute, and can be zero.
- `stride` is the byte stride between successive sets of draw parameters.
vkCmdDrawIndirect behaves similarly to vkCmdDraw except that the parameters are read by the device from a buffer during execution. drawCount draws are executed by the command, with parameters taken from buffer starting at offset and increasing by stride bytes for each successive draw. The parameters of each draw are encoded in an array of VkDrawIndirectCommand structures. If drawCount is less than or equal to one, stride is ignored.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-magFilter-04553**
  If a VkSampler created with `magFilter` or `minFilter` equal to `VK_FILTER_LINEAR` and `compareEnable` equal to `VK_FALSE` is used to sample a VkImageView as a result of this command, then the image view's `format features` must contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT`.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-mipmapMode-04770**
  If a VkSampler created with `mipmapMode` equal to `VK_SAMPLER_MIPMAP_MODE_LINEAR` and `compareEnable` equal to `VK_FALSE` is used to sample a VkImageView as a result of this command, then the image view's `format features` must contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT`.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-None-02691**
  If a VkImageView is accessed using atomic operations as a result of this command, then the image view's `format features` must contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_ATOMIC_BIT`.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-None-02697**
  For each set `n` that is statically used by the VkPipeline bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command, a descriptor set must have been bound to `n` at the same pipeline bind point, with a VkPipelineLayout that is compatible for set `n`, with the VkPipelineLayout used to create the current VkPipeline, as described in Pipeline Layout Compatibility.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-None-02698**
  For each push constant that is statically used by the VkPipeline bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command, a push constant value must have been set for the same pipeline bind point, with a VkPipelineLayout that is compatible for push constants, with the VkPipelineLayout used to create the current VkPipeline, as described in Pipeline Layout Compatibility.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-None-02699**
  Descriptors in each bound descriptor set, specified via `vkCmdBindDescriptorSets`, must be valid if they are statically used by the VkPipeline bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-None-02700**
  A valid pipeline must be bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-commandBuffer-02701**
  If the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command requires any dynamic state, that state must have been set or inherited (if the [VK_NV_inherited_viewport_scissor] extension is enabled) for `commandBuffer`, and done so after any previously bound pipeline with the corresponding state not specified as dynamic.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-None-02859**
  There must not have been any calls to dynamic state setting commands for any state not specified as dynamic in the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command, since that pipeline was bound.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-None-02702**
  If the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a...
VkSampler object that uses unnormalized coordinates, that sampler must not be used to sample from any VkImage with a VkImageView of the type VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_3D, VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE, VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_1D_ARRAY, VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D_ARRAY or VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE_ARRAY, in any shader stage

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-None-02703
  If the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a VkSampler object that uses unnormalized coordinates, that sampler must not be used with any of the SPIR-V OpImageSample* or OpImageSparseSample* instructions with ImplicitLod, Dref or Proj in their name, in any shader stage

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-None-02704
  If the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a VkSampler object that uses unnormalized coordinates, that sampler must not be used with any of the SPIR-V OpImageSample* or OpImageSparseSample* instructions that includes a LOD bias or any offset values, in any shader stage

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-None-02705
  If the robust buffer access feature is not enabled, and if the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a uniform buffer, it must not access values outside of the range of the buffer as specified in the descriptor set bound to the same pipeline bind point

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-None-02706
  If the robust buffer access feature is not enabled, and if the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a storage buffer, it must not access values outside of the range of the buffer as specified in the descriptor set bound to the same pipeline bind point

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-OpImageWrite-04469
  If a VkBufferView is accessed using OpImageWrite as a result of this command, then the Type of the Texel operand of that instruction must have at least as many components as the buffer view's format

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-None-04115
  If a VkImageView is accessed using OpImageWrite as a result of this command, then the Type of the Texel operand of that instruction must have at least as many components as the image view's format

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-renderPass-02684
  The current render pass must be compatible with the renderPass member of the VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo structure specified when creating the VkPipeline bound to VK_PIPELINE_BIND_POINT_GRAPHICS

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-subpass-02685
  The subpass index of the current render pass must be equal to the subpass member of the VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo structure specified when creating the VkPipeline bound to VK_PIPELINE_BIND_POINT_GRAPHICS

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-None-02686
  Every input attachment used by the current subpass must be bound to the pipeline via a descriptor set

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-None-04584
Image subresources used as attachments in the current render pass must not be accessed in any way other than as an attachment by this command, except for cases involving read-only access to depth/stencil attachments as described in the Render Pass chapter.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-maxMultiviewInstanceIndex-02688**
  If the draw is recorded in a render pass instance with multiview enabled, the maximum instance index must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceMultiviewProperties::maxMultiviewInstanceIndex`.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-blendEnable-04727**
  If rasterization is not disabled in the bound graphics pipeline, then for each color attachment in the subpass, if the corresponding image view’s format features do not contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BLEND_BIT`, then the `blendEnable` member of the corresponding element of the `pAttachments` member of `pColorBlendState` must be `VK_FALSE`.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-rasterizationSamples-04740**
  If rasterization is not disabled in the bound graphics pipeline, and neither the [VK_AMD_mixed_attachment_samples] nor the [VK_NV_framebuffer_mixed_samples] extensions are enabled, then `VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo::rasterizationSamples` must be the same as the current subpass color and/or depth/stencil attachments.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-None-04007**
  All vertex input bindings accessed via vertex input variables declared in the vertex shader entry point’s interface must have either valid or `VK_NULL_HANDLE` buffers bound.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-None-04008**
  If the nullDescriptor feature is not enabled, all vertex input bindings accessed via vertex input variables declared in the vertex shader entry point’s interface must not be `VK_NULL_HANDLE`.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-None-02721**
  For a given vertex buffer binding, any attribute data fetched must be entirely contained within the corresponding vertex buffer binding, as described in Vertex Input Description.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-buffer-02708**
  If `buffer` is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-buffer-02709**
  `buffer` must have been created with the `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_INDIRECT_BUFFER_BIT` bit set.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-offset-02710**
  `offset` must be a multiple of 4.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-drawCount-02718**
  If the multi-draw indirect feature is not enabled, `drawCount` must be 0 or 1.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-drawCount-02719**
  `drawCount` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxDrawIndirectCount`.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-firstInstance-00478**
  If the drawIndirectFirstInstance feature is not enabled, all the `firstInstance` members of...
the `VkDrawIndirectCommand` structures accessed by this command must be 0

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-drawCount-00476
  If `drawCount` is greater than 1, `stride` must be a multiple of 4 and must be greater than or equal to `sizeof(VkDrawIndirectCommand)`

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-drawCount-00487
  If `drawCount` is equal to 1, `(offset + sizeof(VkDrawIndirectCommand))` must be less than or equal to the size of `buffer`

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-drawCount-00488
  If `drawCount` is greater than 1, `(stride × (drawCount - 1) + offset + sizeof(VkDrawIndirectCommand))` must be less than or equal to the size of `buffer`

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-commandBuffer-parameter
  `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-buffer-parameter
  `buffer` must be a valid `VkBuffer` handle

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-commandBuffer-recording
  `commandBuffer` must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support graphics operations

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-renderpass
  This command must only be called inside of a render pass instance

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirect-commonparent
  Both of `buffer`, and `commandBuffer` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Inside</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The `VkDrawIndirectCommand` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkDrawIndirectCommand {
    uint32_t vertexCount;
    uint32_t instanceCount;
    uint32_t firstVertex;
    uint32_t firstInstance;
} VkDrawIndirectCommand;
```

- `vertexCount` is the number of vertices to draw.
- `instanceCount` is the number of instances to draw.
- `firstVertex` is the index of the first vertex to draw.
- `firstInstance` is the instance ID of the first instance to draw.

The members of `VkDrawIndirectCommand` have the same meaning as the similarly named parameters of `vkCmdDraw`.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkDrawIndirectCommand-None-00500**
  For a given vertex buffer binding, any attribute data fetched must be entirely contained within the corresponding vertex buffer binding, as described in [Vertex Input Description](#).

- **VUID-VkDrawIndirectCommand-firstInstance-00501**
  If the `drawIndirectFirstInstance` feature is not enabled, `firstInstance` must be 0.

To record a non-indexed draw call with a draw call count sourced from a buffer, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_draw_indirect_count
void vkCmdDrawIndirectCountKHR(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,  // command buffer into which the command is recorded.
    VkBuffer buffer,  // buffer containing draw parameters.
    VkDeviceSize offset,  // byte offset into buffer where parameters begin.
    VkBuffer countBuffer,  // buffer containing the draw count.
    VkDeviceSize countBufferOffset,  // byte offset into countBuffer where the draw count begins.
    uint32_t maxDrawCount,  // maximum draw count.
    uint32_t stride);  // stride.
```
• **maxDrawCount** specifies the maximum number of draws that will be executed. The actual number of executed draw calls is the minimum of the count specified in **countBuffer** and **maxDrawCount**.

• **stride** is the byte stride between successive sets of draw parameters.

**vkCmdDrawIndirectCount** behaves similarly to **vkCmdDrawIndirect** except that the draw count is read by the device from a buffer during execution. The command will read an unsigned 32-bit integer from **countBuffer** located at **countBufferOffset** and use this as the draw count.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-magFilter-04553
  If a `VkSampler` created with `magFilter` or `minFilter` equal to `VK_FILTER_LINEAR` and `compareEnable` equal to `VK_FALSE` is used to sample a `VkImageView` as a result of this command, then the image view's format features must contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT`

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-mipmapMode-04770
  If a `VkSampler` created with `mipmapMode` equal to `VK_SAMPLER_MIPMAP_MODE_LINEAR` and `compareEnable` equal to `VK_FALSE` is used to sample a `VkImageView` as a result of this command, then the image view's format features must contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT`

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-None-02691
  If a `VkImageView` is accessed using atomic operations as a result of this command, then the image view's format features must contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_ATOMIC_BIT`

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-None-02697
  For each set n that is statically used by the `VkPipeline` bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command, a descriptor set must have been bound to n at the same pipeline bind point, with a `VkPipelineLayout` that is compatible for set n, with the `VkPipelineLayout` used to create the current `VkPipeline`, as described in Pipeline Layout Compatibility

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-None-02698
  For each push constant that is statically used by the `VkPipeline` bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command, a push constant value must have been set for the same pipeline bind point, with a `VkPipelineLayout` that is compatible for push constants, with the `VkPipelineLayout` used to create the current `VkPipeline`, as described in Pipeline Layout Compatibility

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-None-02699
  Descriptors in each bound descriptor set, specified via `vkCmdBindDescriptorSets`, must be valid if they are statically used by the `VkPipeline` bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-None-02700
  A valid pipeline must be bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-commandBuffer-02701
  If the `VkPipeline` object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command requires any dynamic state, that state must have been set or inherited (if the `[VK_NV_inherited_viewport_scissor]` extension is enabled) for `commandBuffer`, and done so after any previously bound pipeline with the corresponding state not specified as dynamic

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-None-02859
  There must not have been any calls to dynamic state setting commands for any state not specified as dynamic in the `VkPipeline` object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command, since that pipeline was bound

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-None-02702
  If the `VkPipeline` object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a
VkSampler object that uses unnormalized coordinates, that sampler **must** not be used to sample from any VkImage with a VkImageView of the type VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_3D, VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE, VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_1D_ARRAY, VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D_ARRAY or VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE_ARRAY, in any shader stage

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-None-02703
  If the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a VkSampler object that uses unnormalized coordinates, that sampler **must** not be used with any of the SPIR-V OpImageSample* or OpImageSparseSample* instructions with ImplicitLod, Dref or Proj in their name, in any shader stage

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-None-02704
  If the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a VkSampler object that uses unnormalized coordinates, that sampler **must** not be used with any of the SPIR-V OpImageSample* or OpImageSparseSample* instructions that includes a LOD bias or any offset values, in any shader stage

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-None-02705
  If the robust buffer access feature is not enabled, and if the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a uniform buffer, it **must** not access values outside of the range of the buffer as specified in the descriptor set bound to the same pipeline bind point

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-None-02706
  If the robust buffer access feature is not enabled, and if the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a storage buffer, it **must** not access values outside of the range of the buffer as specified in the descriptor set bound to the same pipeline bind point

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-OpImageWrite-04469
  If a VkBufferView is accessed using OpImageWrite as a result of this command, then the Type of the Texel operand of that instruction **must** have at least as many components as the buffer view's format

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-renderPass-02684
  The current render pass **must** be **compatible** with the renderPass member of the VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo structure specified when creating the VkPipeline bound to VK_PIPELINE_BIND_POINT_GRAPHICS

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-subpass-02685
  The subpass index of the current render pass **must** be equal to the subpass member of the VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo structure specified when creating the VkPipeline bound to VK_PIPELINE_BIND_POINT_GRAPHICS

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-None-02686
  Every input attachment used by the current subpass **must** be bound to the pipeline via a descriptor set

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-None-04584
Image subresources used as attachments in the current render pass must not be accessed in any way other than as an attachment by this command, except for cases involving read-only access to depth/stencil attachments as described in the Render Pass chapter

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-maxMultiviewInstanceIndex-02688
  If the draw is recorded in a render pass instance with multiview enabled, the maximum instance index must be less than or equal to VkPhysicalDeviceMultiviewProperties::maxMultiviewInstanceIndex

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-blendEnable-04727
  If rasterization is not disabled in the bound graphics pipeline, then for each color attachment in the subpass, if the corresponding image view's format features do not contain VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BLEND_BIT, then the blendEnable member of the corresponding element of the pAttachments member of pColorBlendState must be VK_FALSE

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-rasterizationSamples-04740
  If rasterization is not disabled in the bound graphics pipeline, and neither the [VK_AMD_mixed_attachment_samples] nor the [VK_NV_framebuffer_mixed_samples] extensions are enabled, then VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo::rasterizationSamples must be the same as the current subpass color and/or depth/stencil attachments

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-None-04007
  All vertex input bindings accessed via vertex input variables declared in the vertex shader entry point's interface must have either valid or VK_NULL_HANDLE buffers bound

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-None-04008
  If the nullDescriptor feature is not enabled, all vertex input bindings accessed via vertex input variables declared in the vertex shader entry point's interface must not be VK_NULL_HANDLE

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-None-02721
  For a given vertex buffer binding, any attribute data fetched must be entirely contained within the corresponding vertex buffer binding, as described in Vertex Input Description

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-buffer-02708
  If buffer is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single VkDeviceMemory object

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-buffer-02709
  buffer must have been created with the VK_BUFFER_USAGE_INDIRECT_BUFFER_BIT bit set

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-offset-02710
  offset must be a multiple of 4

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-countBuffer-02714
  If countBuffer is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single VkDeviceMemory object

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-countBuffer-02715
  countBuffer must have been created with the VK_BUFFER_USAGE_INDIRECT_BUFFER_BIT bit set

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-countBufferOffset-02716
`countBufferOffset` **must** be a multiple of 4

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-countBuffer-02717
  The count stored in `countBuffer` **must** be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxDrawIndirectCount`

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-countBufferOffset-04129
  `(countBufferOffset + sizeof(uint32_t))` **must** be less than or equal to the size of `countBuffer`

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-stride-03110
  `stride` **must** be a multiple of 4 and **must** be greater than or equal to `sizeof(VkDrawIndirectCommand)`

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-maxDrawCount-03111
  If `maxDrawCount` is greater than or equal to 1, `(stride × (maxDrawCount - 1) + offset + sizeof(VkDrawIndirectCommand))` **must** be less than or equal to the size of `buffer`

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-countBuffer-03121
  If the count stored in `countBuffer` is equal to 1, `(offset + sizeof(VkDrawIndirectCommand))` **must** be less than or equal to the size of `buffer`

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-countBuffer-03122
  If the count stored in `countBuffer` is greater than 1, `(stride × (drawCount - 1) + offset + sizeof(VkDrawIndirectCommand))` **must** be less than or equal to the size of `buffer`

---

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-commandBuffer-parameter
  `commandBuffer` **must** be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-buffer-parameter
  `buffer` **must** be a valid `VkBuffer` handle

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-countBuffer-parameter
  `countBuffer` **must** be a valid `VkBuffer` handle

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-commandBuffer-recording
  `commandBuffer` **must** be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from **must** support graphics operations

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-renderpass
  This command **must** only be called inside of a render pass instance

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndirectCount-commonparent
  Each of `buffer`, `commandBuffer`, and `countBuffer` **must** have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`
Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized.
- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized.

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Inside</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To record an indexed indirect drawing command, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer, 
    VkBuffer buffer, 
    VkDeviceSize offset, 
    uint32_t drawCount, 
    uint32_t stride);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command is recorded.
- `buffer` is the buffer containing draw parameters.
- `offset` is the byte offset into `buffer` where parameters begin.
- `drawCount` is the number of draws to execute, and can be zero.
- `stride` is the byte stride between successive sets of draw parameters.

`vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect` behaves similarly to `vkCmdDrawIndexed` except that the parameters are read by the device from a buffer during execution. `drawCount` draws are executed by the command, with parameters taken from `buffer` starting at `offset` and increasing by `stride` bytes for each successive draw. The parameters of each draw are encoded in an array of `VkDrawIndexedIndirectCommand` structures. If `drawCount` is less than or equal to one, `stride` is ignored.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-magFilter-04553
  If a `VkSampler` created with `magFilter` or `minFilter` equal to `VK_FILTER_LINEAR` and `compareEnable` equal to `VK_FALSE` is used to sample a `VkImageView` as a result of this command, then the image view’s format features must contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT`.

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-mipmapMode-04770
  If a `VkSampler` created with `mipmapMode` equal to `VK_SAMPLER_MIPMAP_MODE_LINEAR` and `compareEnable` equal to `VK_FALSE` is used to sample a `VkImageView` as a result of this command, then the image view’s format features must contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT`.

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-None-02691
  If a `VkImageView` is accessed using atomic operations as a result of this command, then the image view’s format features must contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_ATOMIC_BIT`.

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-None-02697
  For each set `n` that is statically used by the `VkPipeline` bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command, a descriptor set must have been bound to `n` at the same pipeline bind point, with a `VkPipelineLayout` that is compatible for set `n`, with the `VkPipelineLayout` used to create the current `VkPipeline`, as described in Pipeline Layout Compatibility.

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-None-02698
  For each push constant that is statically used by the `VkPipeline` bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command, a push constant value must have been set for the same pipeline bind point, with a `VkPipelineLayout` that is compatible for push constants, with the `VkPipelineLayout` used to create the current `VkPipeline`, as described in Pipeline Layout Compatibility.

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-None-02699
  Descriptors in each bound descriptor set, specified via `vkCmdBindDescriptorSets`, must be valid if they are statically used by the `VkPipeline` bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command.

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-None-02700
  A valid pipeline must be bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command.

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-None-02701
  If the `VkPipeline` object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command requires any dynamic state, that state must have been set or inherited (if the `[VK_NV_inherited_viewport_scissor]` extension is enabled) for `commandBuffer`, and done so after any previously bound pipeline with the corresponding state not specified as dynamic.

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-None-02859
  There must not have been any calls to dynamic state setting commands for any state not specified as dynamic in the `VkPipeline` object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command, since that pipeline was bound.

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-None-02702
  If the `VkPipeline` object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a...
 VkSampler object that uses unnormalized coordinates, that sampler must not be used to sample from any VkImage with a VkImageView of the type VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_3D, VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE, VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_1D_ARRAY, VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D_ARRAY or VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE_ARRAY, in any shader stage

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-None-02703
  If the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a VkSampler object that uses unnormalized coordinates, that sampler must not be used with any of the SPIR-V OpImageSample* or OpImageSparseSample* instructions with ImplicitLod, Dref or Proj in their name, in any shader stage

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-None-02704
  If the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a VkSampler object that uses unnormalized coordinates, that sampler must not be used with any of the SPIR-V OpImageSample* or OpImageSparseSample* instructions that includes a LOD bias or any offset values, in any shader stage

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-None-02705
  If the robust buffer access feature is not enabled, and if the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a uniform buffer, it must not access values outside of the range of the buffer as specified in the descriptor set bound to the same pipeline bind point

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-None-02706
  If the robust buffer access feature is not enabled, and if the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a storage buffer, it must not access values outside of the range of the buffer as specified in the descriptor set bound to the same pipeline bind point

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-None-04115
  If a VkImageView is accessed using OpImageWrite as a result of this command, then the Type of the Texel operand of that instruction must have at least as many components as the image view’s format

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-OpImageWrite-04469
  If a VkBufferView is accessed using OpImageWrite as a result of this command, then the Type of the Texel operand of that instruction must have at least as many components as the buffer view’s format

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-renderPass-02684
  The current render pass must be compatible with the renderPass member of the VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo structure specified when creating the VkPipeline bound to VK_PIPELINE_BIND_POINT_GRAPHICS

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-subpass-02685
  The subpass index of the current render pass must be equal to the subpass member of the VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo structure specified when creating the VkPipeline bound to VK_PIPELINE_BIND_POINT_GRAPHICS

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-None-02686
  Every input attachment used by the current subpass must be bound to the pipeline via a descriptor set

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-None-04584

Chapter 20. Drawing Commands | 1001
Image subresources used as attachments in the current render pass must not be accessed in any way other than as an attachment by this command, except for cases involving read-only access to depth/stencil attachments as described in the Render Pass chapter.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-maxMultiviewInstanceIndex-02688**
  If the draw is recorded in a render pass instance with multiview enabled, the maximum instance index must be less than or equal to \( \text{VkPhysicalDeviceMultiviewProperties::maxMultiviewInstanceIndex} \).

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-blendEnable-04727**
  If rasterization is not disabled in the bound graphics pipeline, then for each color attachment in the subpass, if the corresponding image view's format features do not contain \( \text{VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BLEND_BIT} \), then the blendEnable member of the corresponding element of the pAttachments member of pColorBlendState must be VK_FALSE.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-rasterizationSamples-04740**
  If rasterization is not disabled in the bound graphics pipeline, and neither the [VK_AMD_mixed_attachment_samples] nor the [VK_NV_framebuffer_mixed_samples] extensions are enabled, then \( \text{VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo::rasterizationSamples} \) must be the same as the current subpass color and/or depth/stencil attachments.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-None-04007**
  All vertex input bindings accessed via vertex input variables declared in the vertex shader entry point's interface must have either valid or VK_NULL_HANDLE buffers bound.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-None-04008**
  If the nullDescriptor feature is not enabled, all vertex input bindings accessed via vertex input variables declared in the vertex shader entry point's interface must not be VK_NULL_HANDLE.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-None-02721**
  For a given vertex buffer binding, any attribute data fetched must be entirely contained within the corresponding vertex buffer binding, as described in Vertex Input Description.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-buffer-02708**
  If buffer is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single VkDeviceMemory object.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-buffer-02709**
  buffer must have been created with the VK_BUFFER_USAGE_INDIRECT_BUFFER_BIT bit set.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-offset-02710**
  offset must be a multiple of 4.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-drawCount-02718**
  If the multi-draw indirect feature is not enabled, drawCount must be 0 or 1.

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-drawCount-02719**
  drawCount must be less than or equal to \( \text{VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxDrawIndirectCount} \).

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-drawCount-00528**
  If drawCount is greater than 1, stride must be a multiple of 4 and must be greater than or
equal to sizeof(VkDrawIndexedIndirectCommand)

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-firstInstance-00530
  If the `drawIndirectFirstInstance` feature is not enabled, all the `firstInstance` members of the `VkDrawIndexedIndirectCommand` structures accessed by this command must be 0

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-drawCount-00539
  If `drawCount` is equal to 1, `(offset + sizeof(VkDrawIndexedIndirectCommand))` must be less than or equal to the size of `buffer`

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-drawCount-00540
  If `drawCount` is greater than 1, `(stride × (drawCount - 1) + offset + sizeof(VkDrawIndexedIndirectCommand))` must be less than or equal to the size of `buffer`

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-commandBuffer-parameter
  `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-buffer-parameter
  `buffer` must be a valid `VkBuffer` handle

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-commandBuffer-recording
  `commandBuffer` must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support graphics operations

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-renderpass
  This command must only be called inside of a render pass instance

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect-commonparent
  Both of `buffer`, and `commandBuffer` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`

**Host Synchronization**

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized

- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized

**Command Properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Inside</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The `VkDrawIndexedIndirectCommand` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkDrawIndexedIndirectCommand {
    uint32_t indexCount;
    uint32_t instanceCount;
    uint32_t firstIndex;
    int32_t vertexOffset;
    uint32_t firstInstance;
} VkDrawIndexedIndirectCommand;
```

- `indexCount` is the number of vertices to draw.
- `instanceCount` is the number of instances to draw.
- `firstIndex` is the base index within the index buffer.
- `vertexOffset` is the value added to the vertex index before indexing into the vertex buffer.
- `firstInstance` is the instance ID of the first instance to draw.

The members of `VkDrawIndexedIndirectCommand` have the same meaning as the similarly named parameters of `vkCmdDrawIndexed`.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkDrawIndexedIndirectCommand-None-00552**
  For a given vertex buffer binding, any attribute data fetched **must** be entirely contained within the corresponding vertex buffer binding, as described in [Vertex Input Description](#).

- **VUID-VkDrawIndexedIndirectCommand-indexSize-00553**
  
  \[(\text{indexSize} \times (\text{firstIndex} + \text{indexCount}) + \text{offset})\] **must** be less than or equal to the size of the bound index buffer, with `indexSize` being based on the type specified by `indexType`, where the index buffer, `indexType`, and `offset` are specified via `vkCmdBindIndexBuffer`.

- **VUID-VkDrawIndexedIndirectCommand-firstInstance-00554**
  If the `drawIndirectFirstInstance` feature is not enabled, `firstInstance` **must** be 0.

To record an indexed draw call with a draw call count sourced from a buffer, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_draw_indirect_count
void vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCountKHR(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    VkBuffer buffer,
    VkDeviceSize offset,
    VkBuffer countBuffer,
    VkDeviceSize countBufferOffset,
    uint32_t maxDrawCount,
    uint32_t stride);
```
• **commandBuffer** is the command buffer into which the command is recorded.
• **buffer** is the buffer containing draw parameters.
• **offset** is the byte offset into **buffer** where parameters begin.
• **countBuffer** is the buffer containing the draw count.
• **countBufferOffset** is the byte offset into **countBuffer** where the draw count begins.
• **maxDrawCount** specifies the maximum number of draws that will be executed. The actual number of executed draw calls is the minimum of the count specified in **countBuffer** and **maxDrawCount**.
• **stride** is the byte stride between successive sets of draw parameters.

**vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount** behaves similarly to **vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect** except that the draw count is read by the device from a buffer during execution. The command will read an unsigned 32-bit integer from **countBuffer** located at **countBufferOffset** and use this as the draw count.
Valid Usage

• VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-magFilter-04553
  If a `VkSampler` created with `magFilter` or `minFilter` equal to `VK_FILTER_LINEAR` and `compareEnable` equal to `VK_FALSE` is used to sample a `VkImageView` as a result of this command, then the image view’s `format features` must contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT`

• VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-mipmapMode-04770
  If a `VkSampler` created with `mipmapMode` equal to `VK_SAMPLER_MIPMAP_MODE_LINEAR` and `compareEnable` equal to `VK_FALSE` is used to sample a `VkImageView` as a result of this command, then the image view’s `format features` must contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT`

• VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-None-02691
  If a `VkImageView` is accessed using atomic operations as a result of this command, then the image view's `format features` must contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_ATOMIC_BIT`

• VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-None-02697
  For each set `n` that is statically used by the `VkPipeline` bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command, a descriptor set must have been bound to `n` at the same pipeline bind point, with a `VkPipelineLayout` that is compatible for set `n`, with the `VkPipelineLayout` used to create the current `VkPipeline`, as described in `Pipeline Layout Compatibility`

• VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-None-02698
  For each push constant that is statically used by the `VkPipeline` bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command, a push constant value must have been set for the same pipeline bind point, with a `VkPipelineLayout` that is compatible for push constants, with the `VkPipelineLayout` used to create the current `VkPipeline`, as described in `Pipeline Layout Compatibility`

• VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-None-02699
  Descriptors in each bound descriptor set, specified via `vkCmdBindDescriptorSets`, must be valid if they are statically used by the `VkPipeline` bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command

• VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-None-02700
  A valid pipeline must be bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command

• VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-commandBuffer-02701
  If the `VkPipeline` object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command requires any dynamic state, that state must have been set or inherited (if the [VK_NV_inherited_viewport_scissor] extension is enabled) for `commandBuffer`, and done so after any previously bound pipeline with the corresponding state not specified as dynamic

• VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-None-02859
  There must not have been any calls to dynamic state setting commands for any state not specified as dynamic in the `VkPipeline` object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command, since that pipeline was bound

• VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-None-02702
  If the `VkPipeline` object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a
**VkSampler** object that uses unnormalized coordinates, that sampler **must** not be used to sample from any **VkImage** with a **VkImageView** of the type **VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_3D**, **VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE**, **VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_1D_ARRAY**, **VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D_ARRAY** or **VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE_ARRAY**, in any shader stage

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-None-02703**
  If the **VkPipeline** object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a **VkSampler** object that uses unnormalized coordinates, that sampler **must** not be used with any of the SPIR-V **OpImageSample** or **OpImageSparseSample** instructions with **ImplicitLod**, **Dref** or **Proj** in their name, in any shader stage

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-None-02704**
  If the **VkPipeline** object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a **VkSampler** object that uses unnormalized coordinates, that sampler **must** not be used with any of the SPIR-V **OpImageSample** or **OpImageSparseSample** instructions that includes a LOD bias or any offset values, in any shader stage

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-None-02705**
  If the robust buffer access feature is not enabled, and if the **VkPipeline** object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a uniform buffer, it **must** not access values outside of the range of the buffer as specified in the descriptor set bound to the same pipeline bind point

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-None-02706**
  If the robust buffer access feature is not enabled, and if the **VkPipeline** object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a storage buffer, it **must** not access values outside of the range of the buffer as specified in the descriptor set bound to the same pipeline bind point

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-OpImageWrite-04469**
  If a **VkBufferView** is accessed using **OpImageWrite** as a result of this command, then the Type of the Texel operand of that instruction **must** have at least as many components as the buffer view's format

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-renderPass-02684**
  The current render pass **must** be compatible with the renderPass member of the **VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo** structure specified when creating the **VkPipeline** bound to **VK_PIPELINE_BIND_POINT_GRAPHICS**

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-subpass-02685**
  The subpass index of the current render pass **must** be equal to the subpass member of the **VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo** structure specified when creating the **VkPipeline** bound to **VK_PIPELINE_BIND_POINT_GRAPHICS**

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-None-02686**
  Every input attachment used by the current subpass **must** be bound to the pipeline via a descriptor set

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-None-04584**
Image subresources used as attachments in the current render pass must not be accessed in any way other than as an attachment by this command, except for cases involving read-only access to depth/stencil attachments as described in the Render Pass chapter

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-maxMultiviewInstanceIndex-02688**
  If the draw is recorded in a render pass instance with multiview enabled, the maximum instance index must be less than or equal to VkPhysicalDeviceMultiviewProperties::maxMultiviewInstanceIndex

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-blendEnable-04727**
  If rasterization is not disabled in the bound graphics pipeline, then for each color attachment in the subpass, if the corresponding image view’s format features do not contain VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BLEND_BIT, then the blendEnable member of the corresponding element of the pAttachments member of pColorBlendState must be VK_FALSE

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-rasterizationSamples-04740**
  If rasterization is not disabled in the bound graphics pipeline, and neither the [VK_AMD_mixed_attachment_samples] nor the [VK_NV_framebuffer_mixed_samples] extensions are enabled, then VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo::rasterizationSamples must be the same as the current subpass color and/or depth/stencil attachments

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-None-04007**
  All vertex input bindings accessed via vertex input variables declared in the vertex shader entry point’s interface must have either valid or VK_NULL_HANDLE buffers bound

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-None-04008**
  If the nullDescriptor feature is not enabled, all vertex input bindings accessed via vertex input variables declared in the vertex shader entry point’s interface must not be VK_NULL_HANDLE

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-None-02721**
  For a given vertex buffer binding, any attribute data fetched must be entirely contained within the corresponding vertex buffer binding, as described in Vertex Input Description

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-buffer-02708**
  If buffer is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single VkDeviceMemory object

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-buffer-02709**
  buffer must have been created with the VK_BUFFER_USAGE_INDIRECT_BUFFER_BIT bit set

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-offset-02710**
  offset must be a multiple of 4

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-countBuffer-02714**
  If countBuffer is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single VkDeviceMemory object

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-countBuffer-02715**
  countBuffer must have been created with the VK_BUFFER_USAGE_INDIRECT_BUFFER_BIT bit set

- **VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-countBufferOffset-02716**
  countBufferOffset must be a multiple of 4
**countBufferOffset** must be a multiple of 4

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-countBuffer-02717
  The count stored in **countBuffer** must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxDrawIndirectCount`

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-countBufferOffset-04129
  `(countBufferOffset + sizeof(uint32_t))` must be less than or equal to the size of **countBuffer**

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-stride-03142
  **stride** must be a multiple of 4 and must be greater than or equal to `sizeof(VkDrawIndexedIndirectCommand)`

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-maxDrawCount-03143
  If `maxDrawCount` is greater than or equal to 1, `(stride × (maxDrawCount - 1) + offset + sizeof(VkDrawIndexedIndirectCommand))` must be less than or equal to the size of **buffer**

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-countBuffer-03153
  If count stored in **countBuffer** is equal to 1, `(offset + sizeof(VkDrawIndexedIndirectCommand))` must be less than or equal to the size of **buffer**

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-countBuffer-03154
  If count stored in **countBuffer** is greater than 1, `(stride × (drawCount - 1) + offset + sizeof(VkDrawIndexedIndirectCommand))` must be less than or equal to the size of **buffer**

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-commandBuffer-parameter
  **commandBuffer** must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-buffer-parameter
  **buffer** must be a valid `VkBuffer` handle

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-countBuffer-parameter
  **countBuffer** must be a valid `VkBuffer` handle

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-commandBuffer-recording
  **commandBuffer** must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The `VkCommandPool` that **commandBuffer** was allocated from must support graphics operations

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-renderpass
  This command must only be called inside of a render pass instance

- VUID-vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount-commonparent
  Each of **buffer**, **commandBuffer**, and **countBuffer** must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`
Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Inside</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Vertex fetching is controlled via configurable state, as a logically distinct graphics pipeline stage.

### 21.1. Vertex Attributes

Vertex shaders can define input variables, which receive vertex attribute data transferred from one or more VkBuffer(s) by drawing commands. Vertex shader input variables are bound to buffers via an indirect binding where the vertex shader associates a vertex input attribute number with each variable, vertex input attributes are associated to vertex input bindings on a per-pipeline basis, and vertex input bindings are associated with specific buffers on a per-draw basis via the `vkCmdBindVertexBuffers` command. Vertex input attribute and vertex input binding descriptions also contain format information controlling how data is extracted from buffer memory and converted to the format expected by the vertex shader.

There are `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxVertexInputAttributes` number of vertex input attributes and `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxVertexInputBindings` number of vertex input bindings (each referred to by zero-based indices), where there are at least as many vertex input attributes as there are vertex input bindings. Applications can store multiple vertex input attributes interleaved in a single buffer, and use a single vertex input binding to access those attributes.

In GLSL, vertex shaders associate input variables with a vertex input attribute number using the `location` layout qualifier. The `component` layout qualifier associates components of a vertex shader input variable with components of a vertex input attribute.

**GLSL example**

```glsl
// Assign location M to variableName
layout (location=M, component=2) in vec2 variableName;

// Assign locations [N,N+L) to the array elements of variableNameArray
layout (location=N) in vec4 variableNameArray[L];
```

In SPIR-V, vertex shaders associate input variables with a vertex input attribute number using the `Location` decoration. The `Component` decoration associates components of a vertex shader input variable with components of a vertex input attribute. The `Location` and `Component` decorations are specified via the `OpDecorate` instruction.
21.1.1. Attribute Location and Component Assignment

Vertex shaders allow Location and Component decorations on input variable declarations. The Location decoration specifies which vertex input attribute is used to read and interpret the data that a variable will consume. The Component decoration allows the location to be more finely specified for scalars and vectors, down to the individual components within a location that are consumed. The components within a location are 0, 1, 2, and 3. A variable starting at component N will consume components N, N+1, N+2, ... up through its size. For single precision types, it is invalid if the sequence of components gets larger than 3.

When a vertex shader input variable declared using a 16- or 32-bit scalar or vector data type is assigned a location, its value(s) are taken from the components of the input attribute specified with the corresponding VkVertexInputAttributeDescription::location. The components used depend on the type of variable and the Component decoration specified in the variable declaration, as identified in Input attribute components accessed by 16-bit and 32-bit input variables. Any 16-bit or 32-bit scalar or vector input will consume a single location. For 16-bit and 32-bit data types, missing components are filled in with default values as described below.

Table 24. Input attribute components accessed by 16-bit and 32-bit input variables
Components indicated by “o” are available for use by other input variables which are sourced from the same attribute, and if used, are either filled with the corresponding component from the input format (if present), or the default value.

When a vertex shader input variable declared using a 32-bit floating point matrix type is assigned a location $i$, its values are taken from consecutive input attributes starting with the corresponding `VkVertexInputAttributeDescription::location`. Such matrices are treated as an array of column vectors with values taken from the input attributes identified in `Input attributes accessed by 32-bit input matrix variables`. The `VkVertexInputAttributeDescription::format` must be specified with a `VkFormat` that corresponds to the appropriate type of column vector. The `Component` decoration must not be used with matrix types.

### Table 25. Input attributes accessed by 32-bit input matrix variables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Data type</th>
<th>Column vector type</th>
<th>Locations consumed</th>
<th>Components consumed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>mat2</td>
<td>two-component vector</td>
<td>i, i+1</td>
<td>(x, y, o, o), (x, y, o, o)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mat2x3</td>
<td>three-component vector</td>
<td>i, i+1</td>
<td>(x, y, z, o), (x, y, z, o)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mat2x4</td>
<td>four-component vector</td>
<td>i, i+1</td>
<td>(x, y, z, w), (x, y, z, w)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mat3x2</td>
<td>two-component vector</td>
<td>i, i+1, i+2</td>
<td>(x, y, o, o), (x, y, o, o), (x, y, o, o)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mat3</td>
<td>three-component vector</td>
<td>i, i+1, i+2</td>
<td>(x, y, z, o), (x, y, z, o), (x, y, z, o)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mat3x4</td>
<td>four-component vector</td>
<td>i, i+1, i+2</td>
<td>(x, y, z, w), (x, y, z, w), (x, y, z, w)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mat4x2</td>
<td>two-component vector</td>
<td>i, i+1, i+2, i+3</td>
<td>(x, y, o, o), (x, y, o, o), (x, y, o, o), (x, y, o, o)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Components indicated by “o” are available for use by other input variables which are sourced from
the same attribute, and if used, are either filled with the corresponding component from the input
(if present), or the default value.

When a vertex shader input variable declared using a scalar or vector 64-bit data type is assigned a
location \( i \), its values are taken from consecutive input attributes starting with the corresponding
VkVertexInputAttributeDescription::location. The locations and components used depend on the
type of variable and the Component decoration specified in the variable declaration, as identified in
Input attribute locations and components accessed by 64-bit input variables. For 64-bit data types,
no default attribute values are provided. Input variables must not use more components than
provided by the attribute. Input attributes which have one- or two-component 64-bit formats will
consume a single location. Input attributes which have three- or four-component 64-bit formats will
consume two consecutive locations. A 64-bit scalar data type will consume two components, and a
64-bit two-component vector data type will consume all four components available within a
location. A three- or four-component 64-bit data type must not specify a component. A three-
component 64-bit data type will consume all four components of the first location and components
0 and 1 of the second location. This leaves components 2 and 3 available for other component-
qualified declarations. A four-component 64-bit data type will consume all four components of the
first location and all four components of the second location. It is invalid for a scalar or two-
component 64-bit data type to specify a component of 1 or 3.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Input format</th>
<th>Locations consumed</th>
<th>64-bit data type</th>
<th>Location decoration</th>
<th>Component decoration</th>
<th>32-bit component consumed</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R64</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>scalar</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>0 or unspecified</td>
<td>(x, y, -, -)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R64G64</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>scalar</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>0 or unspecified</td>
<td>(x, y, o, o)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>scalar</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>(o, o, z, w)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>two-component vector</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>0 or unspecified</td>
<td>(x, y, z, w)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 26. Input attribute locations and components accessed by 64-bit input variables
### Components indicated by “o” are available for use by other input variables which are sourced from the same attribute. Components indicated by “-” are not available for input variables as there are no default values provided for 64-bit data types, and there is no data provided by the input format.

When a vertex shader input variable declared using a 64-bit floating-point matrix type is assigned a location $i$, its values are taken from consecutive input attribute locations. Such matrices are treated as an array of column vectors with values taken from the input attributes as shown in Input attribute locations and components accessed by 64-bit input variables. Each column vector starts at the location immediately following the last location of the previous column vector. The number of attributes and components assigned to each matrix is determined by the matrix dimensions and ranges from two to eight locations.
When a vertex shader input variable declared using an array type is assigned a location, its values are taken from consecutive input attributes starting with the corresponding `VkVertexInputAttributeDescription::location`. The number of attributes and components assigned to each element are determined according to the data type of the array elements and `Component` decoration (if any) specified in the declaration of the array, as described above. Each element of the array, in order, is assigned to consecutive locations, but all at the same specified component within each location.

Only input variables declared with the data types and component decorations as specified above are supported. Location aliasing is causing two variables to have the same location number. Component aliasing is assigning the same (or overlapping) component number for two location aliases. Location aliasing is allowed only if it does not cause component aliasing. Further, when location aliasing, the aliases sharing the location must all have the same SPIR-V floating-point component type or all have the same width integer-type components.

### 21.2. Vertex Input Description

Applications specify vertex input attribute and vertex input binding descriptions as part of graphics pipeline creation by setting the `VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo::pVertexInputState` pointer to a `VkPipelineVertexInputStateCreateInfo` structure.

The `VkPipelineVertexInputStateCreateInfo` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkPipelineVertexInputStateCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkPipelineVertexInputStateCreateFlags flags;
    uint32_t vertexBindingDescriptionCount;
    const VkVertexInputBindingDescription* pVertexBindingDescriptions;
    uint32_t vertexAttributeDescriptionCount;
    const VkVertexInputAttributeDescription* pVertexAttributeDescriptions;
} VkPipelineVertexInputStateCreateInfo;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `flags` is reserved for future use.
- `vertexBindingDescriptionCount` is the number of vertex binding descriptions provided in `pVertexBindingDescriptions`.
- `pVertexBindingDescriptions` is a pointer to an array of `VkVertexInputBindingDescription` structures.
- `vertexAttributeDescriptionCount` is the number of vertex attribute descriptions provided in `pVertexAttributeDescriptions`.
- `pVertexAttributeDescriptions` is a pointer to an array of `VkVertexInputAttributeDescription` structures.
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkPipelineVertexInputStateCreateInfo-vertexBindingDescriptionCount-00613
  vertexBindingDescriptionCount must be less than or equal to \texttt{VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxVertexInputBindings}

- VUID-VkPipelineVertexInputStateCreateInfo-vertexAttributeDescriptionCount-00614
  vertexAttributeDescriptionCount must be less than or equal to \texttt{VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxVertexInputAttributes}

- VUID-VkPipelineVertexInputStateCreateInfo-binding-00615
  For every binding specified by each element of \texttt{pVertexAttributeDescriptions}, a \texttt{VkVertexInputBindingDescription} must exist in \texttt{pVertexBindingDescriptions} with the same value of binding

- VUID-VkPipelineVertexInputStateCreateInfo-pVertexBindingDescriptions-00616
  All elements of \texttt{pVertexBindingDescriptions} must describe distinct binding numbers

- VUID-VkPipelineVertexInputStateCreateInfo-pVertexAttributeDescriptions-00617
  All elements of \texttt{pVertexAttributeDescriptions} must describe distinct attribute locations

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkPipelineVertexInputStateCreateInfo-sType-sType
  \texttt{sType} must be \texttt{VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_VERTEX_INPUT_STATE_CREATE_INFO}

- VUID-VkPipelineVertexInputStateCreateInfo-pNext-pNext
  \texttt{pNext} must be NULL

- VUID-VkPipelineVertexInputStateCreateInfo-flags-zerobitmask
  \texttt{flags} must be 0

- VUID-VkPipelineVertexInputStateCreateInfo-pVertexBindingDescriptions-parameter
  If vertexBindingDescriptionCount is not 0, \texttt{pVertexBindingDescriptions} must be a valid pointer to an array of vertexBindingDescriptionCount valid \texttt{VkVertexInputBindingDescription} structures

- VUID-VkPipelineVertexInputStateCreateInfo-pVertexAttributeDescriptions-parameter
  If vertexAttributeDescriptionCount is not 0, \texttt{pVertexAttributeDescriptions} must be a valid pointer to an array of vertexAttributeDescriptionCount valid \texttt{VkVertexInputAttributeDescription} structures

```
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkPipelineVertexInputStateCreateFlags;
```

\texttt{VkPipelineVertexInputStateCreateFlags} is a bitmask type for setting a mask, but is currently reserved for future use.

Each vertex input binding is specified by the \texttt{VkVertexInputBindingDescription} structure, defined as:
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkVertexInputBindingDescription {
    uint32_t binding;
    uint32_t stride;
    VkVertexInputRate inputRate;
} VkVertexInputBindingDescription;

• binding is the binding number that this structure describes.
• stride is the byte stride between consecutive elements within the buffer.
• inputRate is a VkVertexInputRate value specifying whether vertex attribute addressing is a function of the vertex index or of the instance index.

### Valid Usage

- VUID-VkVertexInputBindingDescription-binding-00618
  binding must be less than VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxVertexInputBindings
- VUID-VkVertexInputBindingDescription-stride-00619
  stride must be less than or equal to VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxVertexInputBindingStride
- VUID-VkVertexInputBindingDescription-stride-04456
  If the VK_KHR_portability_subset extension is enabled, stride must be a multiple of, and at least as large as, VkPhysicalDevicePortabilitySubsetPropertiesKHR::minVertexInputBindingStrideAlignment

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkVertexInputBindingDescription-inputRate-parameter
  inputRate must be a valid VkVertexInputRate value

Possible values of VkVertexInputBindingDescription::inputRate, specifying the rate at which vertex attributes are pulled from buffers, are:

// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkVertexInputRate {
    VK_VERTEX_INPUT_RATE_VERTEX = 0,
    VK_VERTEX_INPUT_RATE_INSTANCE = 1,
} VkVertexInputRate;

• VK_VERTEX_INPUT_RATE_VERTEX specifies that vertex attribute addressing is a function of the vertex index.
• VK_VERTEX_INPUT_RATE_INSTANCE specifies that vertex attribute addressing is a function of the instance index.

Each vertex input attribute is specified by the VkVertexInputAttributeDescription structure, defined
typedef struct VkVertexInputAttributeDescription {
    uint32_t location;
    uint32_t binding;
    VkFormat format;
    uint32_t offset;
} VkVertexInputAttributeDescription;

• **location** is the shader input location number for this attribute.
• **binding** is the binding number which this attribute takes its data from.
• **format** is the size and type of the vertex attribute data.
• **offset** is a byte offset of this attribute relative to the start of an element in the vertex input binding.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkVertexInputAttributeDescription-location-00620**
  location must be less than VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxVertexInputAttributes

- **VUID-VkVertexInputAttributeDescription-binding-00621**
  binding must be less than VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxVertexInputBindings

- **VUID-VkVertexInputAttributeDescription-offset-00622**
  offset must be less than or equal to VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxVertexInputAttributeOffset

- **VUID-VkVertexInputAttributeDescription-format-00623**
  format must be allowed as a vertex buffer format, as specified by the VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_VERTEX_BUFFER_BIT flag in VkFormatProperties::bufferFeatures returned by vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties

- **VUID-VkVertexInputAttributeDescription-vertexAttributeAccessBeyondStride-04457**
  If the VK_KHR_portability_subset extension is enabled, and VkPhysicalDevicePortabilitySubsetFeaturesKHR::vertexAttributeAccessBeyondStride is VK_FALSE, the sum of offset plus the size of the vertex attribute data described by format must not be greater than stride in the VkVertexInputBindingDescription referenced in binding

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkVertexInputAttributeDescription-format-parameter**
  format must be a valid VkFormat value

To bind vertex buffers to a command buffer for use in subsequent drawing commands, call:
void vkCmdBindVertexBuffers(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    uint32_t firstBinding,
    uint32_t bindingCount,
    const VkBuffer* pBuffers,
    const VkDeviceSize* pOffsets);

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command is recorded.
- `firstBinding` is the index of the first vertex input binding whose state is updated by the command.
- `bindingCount` is the number of vertex input bindings whose state is updated by the command.
- `pBuffers` is a pointer to an array of buffer handles.
- `pOffsets` is a pointer to an array of buffer offsets.

The values taken from elements i of `pBuffers` and `pOffsets` replace the current state for the vertex input binding `firstBinding + i`, for i in `[0, bindingCount)`. The vertex input binding is updated to start at the offset indicated by `pOffsets[i]` from the start of the buffer `pBuffers[i]`. All vertex input attributes that use each of these bindings will use these updated addresses in their address calculations for subsequent drawing commands.

**Valid Usage**

- VUID-vkCmdBindVertexBuffers-firstBinding-00624
  `firstBinding` must be less than `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxVertexInputBindings`

- VUID-vkCmdBindVertexBuffers-firstBinding-00625
  The sum of `firstBinding` and `bindingCount` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxVertexInputBindings`

- VUID-vkCmdBindVertexBuffers-pOffsets-00626
  All elements of `pOffsets` must be less than the size of the corresponding element in `pBuffers`

- VUID-vkCmdBindVertexBuffers-pBuffers-00627
  All elements of `pBuffers` must have been created with the `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_VERTEX_BUFFER_BIT` flag

- VUID-vkCmdBindVertexBuffers-pBuffers-00628
  Each element of `pBuffers` that is non-sparse must be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object

- VUID-vkCmdBindVertexBuffers-pBuffers-04001
  If the `nullDescriptor` feature is not enabled, all elements of `pBuffers` must not be `VK_NULL_HANDLE`
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdBindVertexBuffers-commandBuffer-parameter
  commandBuffer must be a valid VkCommandBuffer handle

- VUID-vkCmdBindVertexBuffers-pBuffers-parameter
  pBuffers must be a valid pointer to an array of bindingCount valid or VK_NULL_HANDLE VkBuffer handles

- VUID-vkCmdBindVertexBuffers-pOffsets-parameter
  pOffsets must be a valid pointer to an array of bindingCount VkDeviceSize values

- VUID-vkCmdBindVertexBuffers-commandBuffer-recording
  commandBuffer must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdBindVertexBuffers-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must support graphics operations

- VUID-vkCmdBindVertexBuffers-bindingCount-arraylength
  bindingCount must be greater than 0

- VUID-vkCmdBindVertexBuffers-commonparent
  Both of commandBuffer, and the elements of pBuffers that are valid handles of non-ignored parameters must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same VkDevice

Host Synchronization

- Host access to commandBuffer must be externally synchronized

- Host access to the VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The address of each attribute for each vertexIndex and instanceIndex is calculated as follows:

- Let attribDesc be the member of VkPipelineVertexInputStateCreateInfo::pVertexAttributeDescriptions with VkVertexInputAttributeDescription::location equal to the vertex input attribute number.

- Let bindingDesc be the member of VkPipelineVertexInputStateCreateInfo::pVertexBindingDescriptions with VkVertexInputAttributeDescription::binding equal to attribDesc.binding.
Let `vertexIndex` be the index of the vertex within the draw (a value between `firstVertex` and `firstVertex + vertexCount` for `vkCmdDraw`, or a value taken from the index buffer for `vkCmdDrawIndexed`), and let `instanceIndex` be the instance number of the draw (a value between `firstInstance` and `firstInstance + instanceCount`).

```cpp
bufferBindingAddress = buffer[binding].baseAddress + offset[binding];

if (bindingDesc.inputRate == VK_VERTEX_INPUT_RATE_VERTEX)
    vertexOffset = vertexIndex * bindingDesc.stride;
else
    vertexOffset = instanceIndex * bindingDesc.stride;

attribAddress = bufferBindingAddress + vertexOffset + attribDesc.offset;
```

For each attribute, raw data is extracted starting at `attribAddress` and is converted from the `VkVertexInputAttributeDescription`'s `format` to either floating-point, unsigned integer, or signed integer based on the base type of the format; the base type of the format **must** match the base type of the input variable in the shader. The input variable in the shader **must** be declared as a 64-bit data type if and only if `format` is a 64-bit data type. If `format` is a packed format, `attribAddress` **must** be a multiple of the size in bytes of the whole attribute data type as described in Packed Formats. Otherwise, `attribAddress` **must** be a multiple of the size in bytes of the component type indicated by `format` (see Formats). For attributes that are not 64-bit data types, each component is converted to the format of the input variable based on its type and size (as defined in the Format Definition section for each `VkFormat`), using the appropriate equations in 16-Bit Floating-Point Numbers, Unsigned 11-Bit Floating-Point Numbers, Unsigned 10-Bit Floating-Point Numbers, Fixed-Point Data Conversion, and Shared Exponent to RGB. Signed integer components smaller than 32 bits are sign-extended. Attributes that are not 64-bit data types are expanded to four components in the same way as described in conversion to RGBA. The number of components in the vertex shader input variable need not exactly match the number of components in the format. If the vertex shader has fewer components, the extra components are discarded.
Chapter 22. Tessellation

Tessellation involves three pipeline stages. First, a tessellation control shader transforms control points of a patch and can produce per-patch data. Second, a fixed-function tessellator generates multiple primitives corresponding to a tessellation of the patch in \((u,v)\) or \((u,v,w)\) parameter space. Third, a tessellation evaluation shader transforms the vertices of the tessellated patch, for example to compute their positions and attributes as part of the tessellated surface. The tessellator is enabled when the pipeline contains both a tessellation control shader and a tessellation evaluation shader.

22.1. Tessellator

If a pipeline includes both tessellation shaders (control and evaluation), the tessellator consumes each input patch (after vertex shading) and produces a new set of independent primitives (points, lines, or triangles). These primitives are logically produced by subdividing a geometric primitive (rectangle or triangle) according to the per-patch outer and inner tessellation levels written by the tessellation control shader. These levels are specified using the built-in variables \texttt{TessLevelOuter} and \texttt{TessLevelInner}, respectively. This subdivision is performed in an implementation-dependent manner. If no tessellation shaders are present in the pipeline, the tessellator is disabled and incoming primitives are passed through without modification.

The type of subdivision performed by the tessellator is specified by an \texttt{OpExecutionMode} instruction in the tessellation evaluation or tessellation control shader using one of execution modes \texttt{Triangles}, \texttt{Quads}, and \texttt{IsoLines}. Other tessellation-related execution modes can also be specified in either the tessellation control or tessellation evaluation shaders, and if they are specified in both then the modes must be the same.

Tessellation execution modes include:

- \texttt{Triangles}, \texttt{Quads}, and \texttt{IsoLines}. These control the type of subdivision and topology of the output primitives. One mode must be set in at least one of the tessellation shader stages. If the \texttt{VK_KHR_portability_subset} extension is enabled, and \texttt{VkPhysicalDevicePortabilitySubsetFeaturesKHR::tessellationIsolines} is \texttt{VK_FALSE}, then isoline tessellation is not supported by the implementation, and \texttt{IsoLines} must not be used in either tessellation shader stage.

- \texttt{VertexOrderCw} and \texttt{VertexOrderCcw}. These control the orientation of triangles generated by the tessellator. One mode must be set in at least one of the tessellation shader stages.

- \texttt{PointMode}. Controls generation of points rather than triangles or lines. This functionality defaults to disabled, and is enabled if either shader stage includes the execution mode. If the \texttt{VK_KHR_portability_subset} extension is enabled, and \texttt{VkPhysicalDevicePortabilitySubsetFeaturesKHR::tessellationPointMode} is \texttt{VK_FALSE}, then point mode tessellation is not supported by the implementation, and \texttt{PointMode} must not be used in either tessellation shader stage.

- \texttt{SpacingEqual}, \texttt{SpacingFractionalEven}, and \texttt{SpacingFractionalOdd}. Controls the spacing of segments on the edges of tessellated primitives. One mode must be set in at least one of the tessellation shader stages.
• **OutputVertices.** Controls the size of the output patch of the tessellation control shader. One value **must** be set in at least one of the tessellation shader stages.

For triangles, the tessellator subdivides a triangle primitive into smaller triangles. For quads, the tessellator subdivides a rectangle primitive into smaller triangles. For isolines, the tessellator subdivides a rectangle primitive into a collection of line segments arranged in strips stretching across the rectangle in the u dimension (i.e. the coordinates in `TessCoord` are of the form (0,x) through (1,x) for all tessellation evaluation shader invocations that share a line).

Each vertex produced by the tessellator has an associated (u,v,w) or (u,v) position in a normalized parameter space, with parameter values in the range [0,1], as illustrated in figures `Domain parameterization for tessellation primitive modes (upper-left origin)` and `Domain parameterization for tessellation primitive modes (lower-left origin)`. The domain space can have either an upper-left or lower-left origin, selected by the `domainOrigin` member of `VkPipelineTessellationDomainOriginStateCreateInfo`.

![Figure 11. Domain parameterization for tessellation primitive modes (upper-left origin)](image-url)
In the domain parameterization diagrams, the coordinates illustrate the value of \texttt{TessCoord} at the corners of the domain. The labels on the edges indicate the inner (IL0 and IL1) and outer (OL0 through OL3) tessellation level values used to control the number of subdivisions along each edge of the domain.

For triangles, the vertex's position is a barycentric coordinate \((u,v,w)\), where \(u + v + w = 1.0\), and indicates the relative influence of the three vertices of the triangle on the position of the vertex. For quads and isolines, the position is a \((u,v)\) coordinate indicating the relative horizontal and vertical position of the vertex relative to the subdivided rectangle. The subdivision process is explained in more detail in subsequent sections.

### 22.2. Tessellator Patch Discard

A patch is discarded by the tessellator if any relevant outer tessellation level is less than or equal to zero.

Patches will also be discarded if any relevant outer tessellation level corresponds to a floating-point NaN (not a number) in implementations supporting NaN.

No new primitives are generated and the tessellation evaluation shader is not executed for patches that are discarded. For \texttt{Quads}, all four outer levels are relevant. For \texttt{Triangles} and \texttt{Isolines}, only the first three or two outer levels, respectively, are relevant. Negative inner levels will not cause a patch to be discarded; they will be clamped as described below.
22.3. Tessellator Spacing

Each of the tessellation levels is used to determine the number and spacing of segments used to subdivide a corresponding edge. The method used to derive the number and spacing of segments is specified by an OpExecutionMode in the tessellation control or tessellation evaluation shader using one of the identifiers SpacingEqual, SpacingFractionalEven, or SpacingFractionalOdd.

If SpacingEqual is used, the floating-point tessellation level is first clamped to \([1, \text{maxLevel}]\), where maxLevel is the implementation-dependent maximum tessellation level (VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxTessellationGenerationLevel). The result is rounded up to the nearest integer \(n\), and the corresponding edge is divided into \(n\) segments of equal length in \((u,v)\) space.

If SpacingFractionalEven is used, the tessellation level is first clamped to \([2, \text{maxLevel}]\) and then rounded up to the nearest even integer \(n\). If SpacingFractionalOdd is used, the tessellation level is clamped to \([1, \text{maxLevel} - 1]\) and then rounded up to the nearest odd integer \(n\). If \(n\) is one, the edge will not be subdivided. Otherwise, the corresponding edge will be divided into \(n - 2\) segments of equal length, and two additional segments of equal length that are typically shorter than the other segments. The length of the two additional segments relative to the others will decrease monotonically with \(n - f\), where \(f\) is the clamped floating-point tessellation level. When \(n - f\) is zero, the additional segments will have equal length to the other segments. As \(n - f\) approaches 2.0, the relative length of the additional segments approaches zero. The two additional segments must be placed symmetrically on opposite sides of the subdivided edge. The relative location of these two segments is implementation-dependent, but must be identical for any pair of subdivided edges with identical values of \(f\).

When tessellating triangles or quads using point mode with fractional odd spacing, the tessellator may produce interior vertices that are positioned on the edge of the patch if an inner tessellation level is less than or equal to one. Such vertices are considered distinct from vertices produced by subdividing the outer edge of the patch, even if there are pairs of vertices with identical coordinates.

22.4. Tessellation Primitive Ordering

Few guarantees are provided for the relative ordering of primitives produced by tessellation, as they pertain to primitive order.

- The output primitives generated from each input primitive are passed to subsequent pipeline stages in an implementation-dependent order.
- All output primitives generated from a given input primitive are passed to subsequent pipeline stages before any output primitives generated from subsequent input primitives.

22.5. Tessellator Vertex Winding Order

When the tessellator produces triangles (in the Triangles or Quads modes), the orientation of all triangles is specified with an OpExecutionMode of VertexOrderCw or VertexOrderCcw in the tessellation control or tessellation evaluation shaders. If the order is VertexOrderCw, the vertices of all generated triangles will have clockwise ordering in \((u,v)\) or \((u,v,w)\) space. If the order is VertexOrderCcw, the
vertices will have counter-clockwise ordering in that space.

If the tessellation domain has an upper-left origin, the vertices of a triangle have counter-clockwise ordering if

\[ a = u_0 v_1 - u_1 v_0 + u_1 v_2 - u_2 v_1 + u_2 v_0 - u_0 v_2 \]

is negative, and clockwise ordering if \( a \) is positive. \( u_i \) and \( v_i \) are the \( u \) and \( v \) coordinates in normalized parameter space of the \( i \)th vertex of the triangle. If the tessellation domain has a lower-left origin, the vertices of a triangle have counter-clockwise ordering if \( a \) is positive, and clockwise ordering if \( a \) is negative.

**Note**

The value \( a \) is proportional (with a positive factor) to the signed area of the triangle.

In **Triangles** mode, even though the vertex coordinates have a \( w \) value, it does not participate directly in the computation of \( a \), being an affine combination of \( u \) and \( v \).

### 22.6. Triangle Tessellation

If the tessellation primitive mode is **Triangles**, an equilateral triangle is subdivided into a collection of triangles covering the area of the original triangle. First, the original triangle is subdivided into a collection of concentric equilateral triangles. The edges of each of these triangles are subdivided, and the area between each triangle pair is filled by triangles produced by joining the vertices on the subdivided edges. The number of concentric triangles and the number of subdivisions along each triangle except the outermost is derived from the first inner tessellation level. The edges of the outermost triangle are subdivided independently, using the first, second, and third outer tessellation levels to control the number of subdivisions of the \( u = 0 \) (left), \( v = 0 \) (bottom), and \( w = 0 \) (right) edges, respectively. The second inner tessellation level and the fourth outer tessellation level have no effect in this mode.

If the first inner tessellation level and all three outer tessellation levels are exactly one after clamping and rounding, only a single triangle with \((u,v,w)\) coordinates of \((0,0,1)\), \((1,0,0)\), and \((0,1,0)\) is generated. If the inner tessellation level is one and any of the outer tessellation levels is greater than one, the inner tessellation level is treated as though it were originally specified as \( 1 + \varepsilon \) and will result in a two- or three-segment subdivision depending on the tessellation spacing. When used with fractional odd spacing, the three-segment subdivision may produce **inner vertices** positioned on the edge of the triangle.

If any tessellation level is greater than one, tessellation begins by producing a set of concentric inner triangles and subdividing their edges. First, the three outer edges are temporarily subdivided using the clamped and rounded first inner tessellation level and the specified tessellation spacing, generating \( n \) segments. For the outermost inner triangle, the inner triangle is degenerate — a single point at the center of the triangle — if \( n \) is two. Otherwise, for each corner of the outer triangle, an inner triangle corner is produced at the intersection of two lines extended perpendicular to the
corner's two adjacent edges running through the vertex of the subdivided outer edge nearest that corner. If \( n \) is three, the edges of the inner triangle are not subdivided and it is the final triangle in the set of concentric triangles. Otherwise, each edge of the inner triangle is divided into \( n - 2 \) segments, with the \( n - 1 \) vertices of this subdivision produced by intersecting the inner edge with lines perpendicular to the edge running through the \( n - 1 \) innermost vertices of the subdivision of the outer edge. Once the outermost inner triangle is subdivided, the previous subdivision process repeats itself, using the generated triangle as an outer triangle. This subdivision process is illustrated in Inner Triangle Tessellation.

![Inner Triangle Tessellation](image)

**Caption**

In the Inner Triangle Tessellation diagram, inner tessellation levels of (a) five and (b) four are shown (not to scale). Solid black circles depict vertices along the edges of the concentric triangles. The edges of inner triangles are subdivided by intersecting the edge with segments perpendicular to the edge passing through each inner vertex of the subdivided outer edge. Dotted lines depict edges connecting corresponding vertices on the inner and outer triangle edges.

Once all the concentric triangles are produced and their edges are subdivided, the area between each pair of adjacent inner triangles is filled completely with a set of non-overlapping triangles. In this subdivision, two of the three vertices of each triangle are taken from adjacent vertices on a subdivided edge of one triangle; the third is one of the vertices on the corresponding edge of the other triangle. If the innermost triangle is degenerate (i.e., a point), the triangle containing it is subdivided into six triangles by connecting each of the six vertices on that triangle with the center point. If the innermost triangle is not degenerate, that triangle is added to the set of generated triangles as-is.

After the area corresponding to any inner triangles is filled, the tessellator generates triangles to cover the area between the outermost triangle and the outermost inner triangle. To do this, the temporary subdivision of the outer triangle edge above is discarded. Instead, the \( u = 0 \), \( v = 0 \), and \( w = 0 \) edges are subdivided according to the first, second, and third outer tessellation levels, respectively, and the tessellation spacing. The original subdivision of the first inner triangle is retained. The area between the outer and first inner triangles is completely filled by non-overlapping triangles as described above. If the first (and only) inner triangle is degenerate, a set of triangles is produced by connecting each vertex on the outer triangle edges with the center point.
After all triangles are generated, each vertex in the subdivided triangle is assigned a barycentric (u,v,w) coordinate based on its location relative to the three vertices of the outer triangle.

The algorithm used to subdivide the triangular domain in (u,v,w) space into individual triangles is implementation-dependent. However, the set of triangles produced will completely cover the domain, and no portion of the domain will be covered by multiple triangles.

Output triangles are generated with a topology similar to triangle lists, except that the order in which each triangle is generated, and the order in which the vertices are generated for each triangle, are implementation-dependent. However, the order of vertices in each triangle is consistent across the domain as described in Tessellator Vertex Winding Order.

**22.7. Quad Tessellation**

If the tessellation primitive mode is Quads, a rectangle is subdivided into a collection of triangles covering the area of the original rectangle. First, the original rectangle is subdivided into a regular mesh of rectangles, where the number of rectangles along the u = 0 and u = 1 (vertical) and v = 0 and v = 1 (horizontal) edges are derived from the first and second inner tessellation levels, respectively. All rectangles, except those adjacent to one of the outer rectangle edges, are decomposed into triangle pairs. The outermost rectangle edges are subdivided independently, using the first, second, third, and fourth outer tessellation levels to control the number of subdivisions of the u = 0 (left), v = 0 (bottom), u = 1 (right), and v = 1 (top) edges, respectively. The area between the inner rectangles of the mesh and the outer rectangle edges are filled by triangles produced by joining the vertices on the subdivided outer edges to the vertices on the edge of the inner rectangle mesh.

If both clamped inner tessellation levels and all four clamped outer tessellation levels are exactly one, only a single triangle pair covering the outer rectangle is generated. Otherwise, if either clamped inner tessellation level is one, that tessellation level is treated as though it was originally specified as $1 + \varepsilon$ and will result in a two- or three-segment subdivision depending on the tessellation spacing. When used with fractional odd spacing, the three-segment subdivision may produce inner vertices positioned on the edge of the rectangle.

If any tessellation level is greater than one, tessellation begins by subdividing the u = 0 and u = 1 edges of the outer rectangle into m segments using the clamped and rounded first inner tessellation level and the tessellation spacing. The v = 0 and v = 1 edges are subdivided into n segments using the second inner tessellation level. Each vertex on the u = 0 and v = 0 edges are joined with the corresponding vertex on the u = 1 and v = 1 edges to produce a set of vertical and horizontal lines that divide the rectangle into a grid of smaller rectangles. The primitive generator emits a pair of non-overlapping triangles covering each such rectangle not adjacent to an edge of the outer rectangle. The boundary of the region covered by these triangles forms an inner rectangle, the edges of which are subdivided by the grid vertices that lie on the edge. If either m or n is two, the inner rectangle is degenerate, and one or both of the rectangle's edges consist of a single point. This subdivision is illustrated in Figure Inner Quad Tessellation.
In the Inner Quad Tessellation diagram, inner quad tessellation levels of (a) (4,2) and (b) (7,4) are shown. The regions highlighted in red in figure (b) depict the 10 inner rectangles, each of which will be subdivided into two triangles. Solid black circles depict vertices on the boundary of the outer and inner rectangles, where the inner rectangle of figure (a) is degenerate (a single line segment). Dotted lines depict the horizontal and vertical edges connecting corresponding vertices on the inner and outer rectangle edges.

After the area corresponding to the inner rectangle is filled, the tessellator must produce triangles to cover the area between the inner and outer rectangles. To do this, the subdivision of the outer rectangle edge above is discarded. Instead, the $u = 0$, $v = 0$, $u = 1$, and $v = 1$ edges are subdivided according to the first, second, third, and fourth outer tessellation levels, respectively, and the tessellation spacing. The original subdivision of the inner rectangle is retained. The area between the outer and inner rectangles is completely filled by non-overlapping triangles. Two of the three vertices of each triangle are adjacent vertices on a subdivided edge of one rectangle; the third is one of the vertices on the corresponding edge of the other rectangle. If either edge of the innermost rectangle is degenerate, the area near the corresponding outer edges is filled by connecting each vertex on the outer edge with the single vertex making up the inner edge.

The algorithm used to subdivide the rectangular domain in (u,v) space into individual triangles is implementation-dependent. However, the set of triangles produced will completely cover the domain, and no portion of the domain will be covered by multiple triangles.

Output triangles are generated with a topology similar to triangle lists, except that the order in which each triangle is generated, and the order in which the vertices are generated for each triangle, are implementation-dependent. However, the order of vertices in each triangle is consistent across the domain as described in Tessellator Vertex Winding Order.

### 22.8. Isoline Tessellation

If the tessellation primitive mode is IsoLines, a set of independent horizontal line segments is drawn. The segments are arranged into connected strips called isolines, where the vertices of each isoline have a constant v coordinate and u coordinates covering the full range [0,1]. The number of
isolines generated is derived from the first outer tessellation level; the number of segments in each isoline is derived from the second outer tessellation level. Both inner tessellation levels and the third and fourth outer tessellation levels have no effect in this mode.

As with quad tessellation above, isoline tessellation begins with a rectangle. The \( u = 0 \) and \( u = 1 \) edges of the rectangle are subdivided according to the first outer tessellation level. For the purposes of this subdivision, the tessellation spacing mode is ignored and treated as equal_spacing. An isoline is drawn connecting each vertex on the \( u = 0 \) rectangle edge to the corresponding vertex on the \( u = 1 \) rectangle edge, except that no line is drawn between \((0,1)\) and \((1,1)\). If the number of isolines on the subdivided \( u = 0 \) and \( u = 1 \) edges is \( n \), this process will result in \( n \) equally spaced lines with constant \( v \) coordinates of \( 0, \frac{1}{n}, \frac{2}{n}, \ldots, \frac{n-1}{n} \).

Each of the \( n \) isolines is then subdivided according to the second outer tessellation level and the tessellation spacing, resulting in \( m \) line segments. Each segment of each line is emitted by the tessellator. These line segments are generated with a topology similar to line lists, except that the order in which each line is generated, and the order in which the vertices are generated for each line segment, are implementation-dependent.

\[ \text{Note} \]
If the \text{VK_KHR_portability_subset} extension is enabled, and \text{VkPhysicalDevicePortabilitySubsetFeaturesKHR::tessellationIsolines} is \text{VK_FALSE}, then isoline tessellation is not supported by the implementation.

### 22.9. Tessellation Point Mode

For all primitive modes, the tessellator is capable of generating points instead of lines or triangles. If the tessellation control or tessellation evaluation shader specifies the \text{OpExecutionMode PointMode}, the primitive generator will generate one point for each distinct vertex produced by tessellation, rather than emitting triangles or lines. Otherwise, the tessellator will produce a collection of line segments or triangles according to the primitive mode. These points are generated with a topology similar to point lists, except the order in which the points are generated for each input primitive is undefined.

\[ \text{Note} \]
If the \text{VK_KHR_portability_subset} extension is enabled, and \text{VkPhysicalDevicePortabilitySubsetFeaturesKHR::tessellationPointMode} is \text{VK_FALSE}, then tessellation point mode is not supported by the implementation.

### 22.10. Tessellation Pipeline State

The \text{pTessellationState} member of \text{VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo} is a pointer to a \text{VkPipelineTessellationStateCreateInfo} structure.

The \text{VkPipelineTessellationStateCreateInfo} structure is defined as:
**typedef** struct VkPipelineTessellationStateCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void*pNext;
    VkPipelineTessellationStateCreateFlags flags;
    uint32_t patchControlPoints;
} VkPipelineTessellationStateCreateInfo;

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **flags** is reserved for future use.
- **patchControlPoints** is the number of control points per patch.

**Valid Usage**

- VUID-VkPipelineTessellationStateCreateInfo-patchControlPoints-01214
  patchControlPoints must be greater than zero and less than or equal to VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxTessellationPatchSize

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-VkPipelineTessellationStateCreateInfo-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_TESSELLATION_STATE_CREATE_INFO

- VUID-VkPipelineTessellationStateCreateInfo-pNext-pNext
  pNext must be NULL or a pointer to a valid instance of VkPipelineTessellationDomainOriginStateCreateInfo

- VUID-VkPipelineTessellationStateCreateInfo-sType-unique
  The sType value of each struct in the pNext chain must be unique

- VUID-VkPipelineTessellationStateCreateInfo-flags-zerobitmask
  flags must be 0

**typedef** VkFlags VkPipelineTessellationStateCreateFlags;

 VkPipelineTessellationStateCreateFlags is a bitmask type for setting a mask, but is currently reserved for future use.

The VkPipelineTessellationDomainOriginStateCreateInfo structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkPipelineTessellationDomainOriginStateCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType      sType;
    const void*           pNext;
    VkTessellationDomainOrigin  domainOrigin;
} VkPipelineTessellationDomainOriginStateCreateInfo;

or the equivalent

// Provided by VK_KHR_maintenance2
typedef VkPipelineTessellationDomainOriginStateCreateInfo
VkPipelineTessellationDomainOriginStateCreateInfoKHR;

• `sType` is the type of this structure.
• `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• `domainOrigin` is a `VkTessellationDomainOrigin` value controlling the origin of the tessellation domain space.

If the `VkPipelineTessellationDomainOriginStateCreateInfo` structure is included in the `pNext` chain of `VkPipelineTessellationStateCreateInfo`, it controls the origin of the tessellation domain. If this structure is not present, it is as if `domainOrigin` was `VK_TESSELLATION_DOMAIN_ORIGIN_UPPER_LEFT`.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

• VUID-VkPipelineTessellationDomainOriginStateCreateInfo-sType-sType
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_TESSELLATION_DOMAIN_ORIGIN_STATE_CREATE_INFO`

• VUID-VkPipelineTessellationDomainOriginStateCreateInfo-domainOrigin-parameter
  `domainOrigin` must be a valid `VkTessellationDomainOrigin` value

The possible tessellation domain origins are specified by the `VkTessellationDomainOrigin` enumeration:

typedef enum VkTessellationDomainOrigin {
    VK_TESSELLATION_DOMAIN_ORIGIN_UPPER_LEFT    = 0,
    VK_TESSELLATION_DOMAIN_ORIGIN_LOWER_LEFT   = 1,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_maintenance2
    VK_TESSELLATION_DOMAIN_ORIGIN_UPPER_LEFT_KHR = VK_TESSELLATION_DOMAIN_ORIGIN_UPPER_LEFT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_maintenance2
    VK_TESSELLATION_DOMAIN_ORIGIN_LOWER_LEFT_KHR = VK_TESSELLATION_DOMAIN_ORIGIN_LOWER_LEFT,
} VkTessellationDomainOrigin;

or the equivalent
// Provided by VK_KHR_maintenance2

typedef VkTessellationDomainOrigin VkTessellationDomainOriginKHR;

- **VK_TESSELLATION_DOMAIN_ORIGIN_UPPER_LEFT** specifies that the origin of the domain space is in the upper left corner, as shown in figure Domain parameterization for tessellation primitive modes (upper-left origin).

- **VK_TESSELLATION_DOMAIN_ORIGIN_LOWER_LEFT** specifies that the origin of the domain space is in the lower left corner, as shown in figure Domain parameterization for tessellation primitive modes (lower-left origin).

This enum affects how the VertexOrderCw and VertexOrderCcw tessellation execution modes are interpreted, since the winding is defined relative to the orientation of the domain.
Chapter 23. Geometry Shading

The geometry shader operates on a group of vertices and their associated data assembled from a single input primitive, and emits zero or more output primitives and the group of vertices and their associated data required for each output primitive. Geometry shading is enabled when a geometry shader is included in the pipeline.

23.1. Geometry Shader Input Primitives

Each geometry shader invocation has access to all vertices in the primitive (and their associated data), which are presented to the shader as an array of inputs.

The input primitive type expected by the geometry shader is specified with an `OpExecutionMode` instruction in the geometry shader, and **must** match the incoming primitive type specified by either the pipeline's **primitive topology** if tessellation is inactive, or the **tessellation mode** if tessellation is active, as follows:

- **An input primitive type of** `InputPoints` **must** **only** be used with a pipeline topology of `VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_POINT_LIST`, or with a tessellation shader that specifies `PointMode`. The input arrays always contain one element, as described by the **point list topology** or **tessellation in point mode**.

- **An input primitive type of** `InputLines` **must** **only** be used with a pipeline topology of `VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_LINE_LIST` or `VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_LINE_STRIP`, or with a tessellation shader specifying `IsoLines` that does not specify `PointMode`. The input arrays always contain two elements, as described by the **line list topology** or **line strip topology**, or by **isoline tessellation**.

- **An input primitive type of** `InputLinesAdjacency` **must** **only** be used when tessellation is inactive, with a pipeline topology of `VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_LINE_LIST_WITH_ADJACENCY` or `VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_LINE_STRIP_WITH_ADJACENCY`. The input arrays always contain four elements, as described by the **line list with adjacency topology** or **line strip with adjacency topology**.

- **An input primitive type of** `Triangles` **must** **only** be used with a pipeline topology of `VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_TRIANGLE_LIST`, `VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_TRIANGLE_STRIP`, or `VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_TRIANGLE_FAN`; or with a tessellation shader specifying `Quads` or `Triangles` that does not specify `PointMode`. The input arrays always contain three elements, as described by the **triangle list topology**, **triangle strip topology**, or **triangle fan topology**, or by **triangle or quad tessellation**. Vertices **may** be in a different absolute order to that specified by the topology, but **must** adhere to the specified winding order.

- **An input primitive type of** `InputTrianglesAdjacency` **must** **only** be used when tessellation is inactive, with a pipeline topology of `VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_TRIANGLE_LIST_WITH_ADJACENCY` or `VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_TRIANGLE_STRIP_WITH_ADJACENCY`. The input arrays always contain six elements, as described by the **triangle list with adjacency topology** or **triangle strip with adjacency topology**. Vertices **may** be in a different absolute order to that specified by the topology, but **must** adhere to the specified winding order, and the vertices making up the main primitive **must** still occur at the first, third, and fifth index.
23.2. Geometry Shader Output Primitives

A geometry shader generates primitives in one of three output modes: points, line strips, or triangle strips. The primitive mode is specified in the shader using an `OpExecutionMode` instruction with the `OutputPoints`, `OutputLineStrip` or `OutputTriangleStrip` modes, respectively. Each geometry shader must include exactly one output primitive mode.

The vertices output by the geometry shader are assembled into points, lines, or triangles based on the output primitive type and the resulting primitives are then further processed as described in Rasterization. If the number of vertices emitted by the geometry shader is not sufficient to produce a single primitive, vertices corresponding to incomplete primitives are not processed by subsequent pipeline stages. The number of vertices output by the geometry shader is limited to a maximum count specified in the shader.

The maximum output vertex count is specified in the shader using an `OpExecutionMode` instruction with the mode set to `OutputVertices` and the maximum number of vertices that will be produced by the geometry shader specified as a literal. Each geometry shader must specify a maximum output vertex count.

23.3. Multiple Invocations of Geometry Shaders

Geometry shaders can be invoked more than one time for each input primitive. This is known as geometry shader instancing and is requested by including an `OpExecutionMode` instruction with `mode` specified as `Invocations` and the number of invocations specified as an integer literal.

In this mode, the geometry shader will execute at least n times for each input primitive, where n is the number of invocations specified in the `OpExecutionMode` instruction. The instance number is available to each invocation as a built-in input using `InvocationId`.

23.4. Geometry Shader Primitive Ordering

Limited guarantees are provided for the relative ordering of primitives produced by a geometry shader, as they pertain to primitive order.

- For instanced geometry shaders, the output primitives generated from each input primitive are passed to subsequent pipeline stages using the invocation number to order the primitives, from least to greatest.

- All output primitives generated from a given input primitive are passed to subsequent pipeline stages before any output primitives generated from subsequent input primitives.
Chapter 24. Fixed-Function Vertex Post-Processing

After pre-rasterization shader stages, the following fixed-function operations are applied to vertices of the resulting primitives:

- Flat shading (see Flat Shading).
- Primitive clipping, including client-defined half-spaces (see Primitive Clipping).
- Shader output attribute clipping (see Clipping Shader Outputs).
- Perspective division on clip coordinates (see Coordinate Transformations).
- Viewport mapping, including depth range scaling (see Controlling the Viewport).
- Front face determination for polygon primitives (see Basic Polygon Rasterization).

Next, rasterization is performed on primitives as described in chapter Rasterization.

24.1. Flat Shading

Flat shading a vertex output attribute means to assign all vertices of the primitive the same value for that output. The output values assigned are those of the provoking vertex of the primitive. Flat shading is applied to those vertex attributes that match fragment input attributes which are decorated as Flat.

If neither geometry nor tessellation shading is active, the provoking vertex is determined by the primitive topology defined by VkPipelineInputAssemblyStateCreateInfo::topology used to execute the drawing command.

If geometry shading is active, the provoking vertex is determined by the primitive topology defined by the OutputPoints, OutputLineStrips, or OutputTriangleStrips execution mode.

If tessellation shading is active but geometry shading is not, the provoking vertex may be any of the vertices in each primitive.

24.2. Primitive Clipping

Primitives are culled against the cull volume and then clipped to the clip volume. In clip coordinates, the view volume is defined by:

\[-w_c \leq x_c \leq w_c \]
\[-w_c \leq y_c \leq w_c \]
\[0 \leq z_c \leq w_c \]

This view volume can be further restricted by as many as VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxClipDistances client-defined half-spaces.

The cull volume is the intersection of up to VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxCullDistances client-defined half-spaces (if no client-defined cull half-spaces are enabled, culling against the cull volume is
A shader must write a single cull distance for each enabled cull half-space to elements of the \texttt{CullDistance} array. If the cull distance for any enabled cull half-space is negative for all of the vertices of the primitive under consideration, the primitive is discarded. Otherwise the primitive is clipped against the clip volume as defined below.

The clip volume is the intersection of up to \texttt{VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxClipDistances} client-defined half-spaces with the view volume (if no client-defined clip half-spaces are enabled, the clip volume is the view volume).

A shader must write a single clip distance for each enabled clip half-space to elements of the \texttt{ClipDistance} array. Clip half-space \(i\) is then given by the set of points satisfying the inequality

\[
c_i(P) \geq 0
\]

where \(c_i(P)\) is the clip distance \(i\) at point \(P\). For point primitives, \(c_i(P)\) is simply the clip distance for the vertex in question. For line and triangle primitives, per-vertex clip distances are interpolated using a weighted mean, with weights derived according to the algorithms described in sections \texttt{Basic Line Segment Rasterization} and \texttt{Basic Polygon Rasterization}, using the perspective interpolation equations.

The number of client-defined clip and cull half-spaces that are enabled is determined by the explicit size of the built-in arrays \texttt{ClipDistance} and \texttt{CullDistance}, respectively, declared as an output in the interface of the entry point of the final shader stage before clipping.

Depth clamping is enabled or disabled via the \texttt{depthClampEnable} enable of the \texttt{VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateInfo} structure. Depth clipping is disabled when \texttt{depthClampEnable} is \(\texttt{VK_TRUE}\). When depth clipping is disabled, the plane equation

\[
0 \leq z_c \leq w_c
\]

(see the clip volume definition above) is ignored by view volume clipping (effectively, there is no near or far plane clipping).

If the primitive under consideration is a point or line segment, then clipping passes it unchanged if its vertices lie entirely within the clip volume.

Possible values of \texttt{VkPhysicalDevicePointClippingProperties::pointClippingBehavior}, specifying clipping behavior of a point primitive whose vertex lies outside the clip volume, are:
typedef enum VkPointClippingBehavior {
    VK_POINT_CLIPPING_BEHAVIOR_ALL_CLIP_PLANES = 0,
    VK_POINT_CLIPPING_BEHAVIOR_USER_CLIP_PLANES_ONLY = 1,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_maintenance2
    VK_POINT_CLIPPING_BEHAVIOR_ALL_CLIP_PLANES_KHR = VK_POINT_CLIPPING_BEHAVIOR_ALL_CLIP_PLANES,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_maintenance2
    VK_POINT_CLIPPING_BEHAVIOR_USER_CLIP_PLANES_ONLY_KHR = VK_POINT_CLIPPING_BEHAVIOR_USER_CLIP_PLANES_ONLY,
} VkPointClippingBehavior;

or the equivalent

// Provided by VK_KHR_maintenance2
typedef VkPointClippingBehavior VkPointClippingBehaviorKHR;

- **VK_POINT_CLIPPING_BEHAVIOR_ALL_CLIP_PLANES** specifies that the primitive is discarded if the vertex lies outside any clip plane, including the planes bounding the view volume.

- **VK_POINT_CLIPPING_BEHAVIOR_USER_CLIP_PLANES_ONLY** specifies that the primitive is discarded only if the vertex lies outside any user clip plane.

If either of a line segment's vertices lie outside of the clip volume, the line segment may be clipped, with new vertex coordinates computed for each vertex that lies outside the clip volume. A clipped line segment endpoint lies on both the original line segment and the boundary of the clip volume.

This clipping produces a value, $0 \leq t \leq 1$, for each clipped vertex. If the coordinates of a clipped vertex are $P$ and the unclipped line segment's vertex coordinates are $P_1$ and $P_2$, then $t$ satisfies the following equation

$$P = tP_1 + (1-t)P_2.$$

$t$ is used to clip vertex output attributes as described in [Clipping Shader Outputs](#).

If the primitive is a polygon, it passes unchanged if every one of its edges lies entirely inside the clip volume, and is either clipped or discarded otherwise. If the edges of the polygon intersect the boundary of the clip volume, the intersecting edges are reconnected by new edges that lie along the boundary of the clip volume - in some cases requiring the introduction of new vertices into a polygon.

If a polygon intersects an edge of the clip volume's boundary, the clipped polygon must include a point on this boundary edge.

Primitives rendered with user-defined half-spaces must satisfy a complementarity criterion. Suppose a series of primitives is drawn where each vertex $i$ has a single specified clip distance $d_i$ (or a number of similarly specified clip distances, if multiple half-spaces are enabled). Next, suppose that the same series of primitives are drawn again with each such clip distance replaced by $-d_i$ (and...
the graphics pipeline is otherwise the same). In this case, primitives must not be missing any pixels, and pixels must not be drawn twice in regions where those primitives are cut by the clip planes.

24.3. Clipping Shader Outputs

Next, vertex output attributes are clipped. The output values associated with a vertex that lies within the clip volume are unaffected by clipping. If a primitive is clipped, however, the output values assigned to vertices produced by clipping are clipped.

Let the output values assigned to the two vertices \( P_1 \) and \( P_2 \) of an unclipped edge be \( c_1 \) and \( c_2 \). The value of \( t \) (see Primitive Clipping) for a clipped point \( P \) is used to obtain the output value associated with \( P \) as

\[
c = t \cdot c_1 + (1-t) \cdot c_2.
\]

(Multiplying an output value by a scalar means multiplying each of \( x, y, z, \) and \( w \) by the scalar.)

Since this computation is performed in clip space before division by \( w_c \), clipped output values are perspective-correct.

Polygon clipping creates a clipped vertex along an edge of the clip volume’s boundary. This situation is handled by noting that polygon clipping proceeds by clipping against one half-space at a time. Output value clipping is done in the same way, so that clipped points always occur at the intersection of polygon edges (possibly already clipped) with the clip volume’s boundary.

For vertex output attributes whose matching fragment input attributes are decorated with NoPerspective, the value of \( t \) used to obtain the output value associated with \( P \) will be adjusted to produce results that vary linearly in framebuffer space.

Output attributes of integer or unsigned integer type must always be flat shaded. Flat shaded attributes are constant over the primitive being rasterized (see Basic Line Segment Rasterization and Basic Polygon Rasterization), and no interpolation is performed. The output value \( c \) is taken from either \( c_1 \) or \( c_2 \), since flat shading has already occurred and the two values are identical.

24.4. Coordinate Transformations

Clip coordinates for a vertex result from shader execution, which yields a vertex coordinate Position.

Perspective division on clip coordinates yields normalized device coordinates, followed by a viewport transformation (see Controlling the Viewport) to convert these coordinates into framebuffer coordinates.

If a vertex in clip coordinates has a position given by

\[
\begin{bmatrix}
  x_c \\
  y_c \\
  z_c \\
  w_c
\end{bmatrix}
\]
then the vertex’s normalized device coordinates are

\[
\begin{pmatrix}
x_d \\
y_d \\
z_d 
\end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix}
x_c \\
y_c \\
z_c 
\end{pmatrix}
\]

### 24.5. Controlling the Viewport

The viewport transformation is determined by the selected viewport’s width and height in pixels, \( p_x \) and \( p_y \), respectively, and its center \((o_x, o_y)\) (also in pixels), as well as its depth range min and max determining a depth range scale value \( p_z \) and a depth range bias value \( o_z \) (defined below). The vertex’s framebuffer coordinates \((x_f, y_f, z_f)\) are given by

\[
x_f = (p_x / 2) x_d + o_x
\]

\[
y_f = (p_y / 2) y_d + o_y
\]

\[
z_f = p_z \times z_d + o_z
\]

Multiple viewports are available, numbered zero up to \( \text{VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxViewports} \) minus one. The number of viewports used by a pipeline is controlled by the \( \text{viewportCount} \) member of the \( \text{VkPipelineViewportStateCreateInfo} \) structure used in pipeline creation.

\( x_f \) and \( y_f \) have limited precision, where the number of fractional bits retained is specified by \( \text{VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::subPixelPrecisionBits} \).

The \( \text{VkPipelineViewportStateCreateInfo} \) structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkPipelineViewportStateCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkPipelineViewportStateCreateFlags flags;
    uint32_t viewportCount;
    const VkViewport* pViewports;
    uint32_t scissorCount;
    const VkRect2D* pScissors;
} VkPipelineViewportStateCreateInfo;
```

- \( \text{sType} \) is the type of this structure.
- \( \text{pNext} \) is \( \text{NULL} \) or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- \( \text{flags} \) is reserved for future use.
- \( \text{viewportCount} \) is the number of viewports used by the pipeline.
- `pViewports` is a pointer to an array of `VkViewport` structures, defining the viewport transforms. If the viewport state is dynamic, this member is ignored.

- `scissorCount` is the number of scissors and must match the number of viewports.

- `pScissors` is a pointer to an array of `VkRect2D` structures defining the rectangular bounds of the scissor for the corresponding viewport. If the scissor state is dynamic, this member is ignored.

**Valid Usage**

- VUID-VkPipelineViewportStateCreateInfo-viewportCount-01216
  If the multiple viewports feature is not enabled, `viewportCount` must not be greater than 1

- VUID-VkPipelineViewportStateCreateInfo-scissorCount-01217
  If the multiple viewports feature is not enabled, `scissorCount` must not be greater than 1

- VUID-VkPipelineViewportStateCreateInfo-viewportCount-01218
  `viewportCount` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxViewports`

- VUID-VkPipelineViewportStateCreateInfo-scissorCount-01219
  `scissorCount` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxViewports`

- VUID-VkPipelineViewportStateCreateInfo-scissorCount-01220
  `scissorCount` and `viewportCount` must be identical

- VUID-VkPipelineViewportStateCreateInfo-x-02821
  The `x` and `y` members of `offset` member of any element of `pScissors` must be greater than or equal to 0

- VUID-VkPipelineViewportStateCreateInfo-offset-02822
  Evaluation of `(offset.x + extent.width)` must not cause a signed integer addition overflow for any element of `pScissors`

- VUID-VkPipelineViewportStateCreateInfo-offset-02823
  Evaluation of `(offset.y + extent.height)` must not cause a signed integer addition overflow for any element of `pScissors`

- VUID-VkPipelineViewportStateCreateInfo-viewportCount-arraylength
  `viewportCount` must be greater than 0

- VUID-VkPipelineViewportStateCreateInfo-scissorCount-arraylength
  `scissorCount` must be greater than 0

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-VkPipelineViewportStateCreateInfo-sType-sType
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_VIEWPORT_STATE_CREATE_INFO`

- VUID-VkPipelineViewportStateCreateInfo-pNext-pNext
  `pNext` must be `NULL`

- VUID-VkPipelineViewportStateCreateInfo-flags-zerobitmask
  `flags` must be 0
**VkPipelineViewportStateCreateFlags** is a bitmask type for setting a mask, but is currently reserved for future use.

If a geometry shader is active and has an output variable decorated with `ViewportIndex`, the viewport transformation uses the viewport corresponding to the value assigned to `ViewportIndex` taken from an implementation-dependent vertex of each primitive. If `ViewportIndex` is outside the range zero to `viewportCount` minus one for a primitive, or if the geometry shader did not assign a value to `ViewportIndex` for all vertices of a primitive due to flow control, the values resulting from the viewport transformation of the vertices of such primitives are undefined. If no geometry shader is active, or if the geometry shader does not have an output decorated with `ViewportIndex`, the viewport numbered zero is used by the viewport transformation.

A single vertex **can** be used in more than one individual primitive, in primitives such as `VK_PRIMITIVE_TOPOLOGY_TRIANGLE_STRIP`. In this case, the viewport transformation is applied separately for each primitive.

If the bound pipeline state object was not created with the `VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_VIEWPORT` dynamic state enabled, viewport transformation parameters are specified using the `pViewports` member of `VkPipelineViewportStateCreateInfo` in the pipeline state object. If the pipeline state object was created with the `VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_VIEWPORT` dynamic state enabled, the viewport transformation parameters are dynamically set and changed with the command:

```c
void vkCmdSetViewport(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    uint32_t firstViewport,
    uint32_t viewportCount,
    const VkViewport* pViewports);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
- `firstViewport` is the index of the first viewport whose parameters are updated by the command.
- `viewportCount` is the number of viewports whose parameters are updated by the command.
- `pViewports` is a pointer to an array of `VkViewport` structures specifying viewport parameters.

The viewport parameters taken from element `i` of `pViewports` replace the current state for the viewport index `firstViewport + i`, for `i` in `[0, viewportCount)`. 

---

Chapter 24. Fixed-Function Vertex Post-Processing | 1043
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkCmdSetViewport-firstViewport-01223
  The sum of firstViewport and viewportCount must be between 1 and 
  VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxViewports, inclusive

- VUID-vkCmdSetViewport-firstViewport-01224
  If the multiple viewports feature is not enabled, firstViewport must be 0

- VUID-vkCmdSetViewport-viewportCount-01225
  If the multiple viewports feature is not enabled, viewportCount must be 1

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdSetViewport-commandBuffer-parameter
  commandBuffer must be a valid VkCommandBuffer handle

- VUID-vkCmdSetViewport-pViewports-parameter
  pViewports must be a valid pointer to an array of viewportCount valid VkViewport structures

- VUID-vkCmdSetViewport-commandBuffer-recording
  commandBuffer must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdSetViewport-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must support graphics operations

- VUID-vkCmdSetViewport-viewportCount-arraylength
  viewportCount must be greater than 0

Host Synchronization

- Host access to commandBuffer must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Both VkPipelineViewportStateCreateInfo and vkCmdSetViewport use VkViewport to set the viewport transformation parameters.
The *VkViewport* structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkViewport {
    float  x;
    float  y;
    float  width;
    float  height;
    float  minDepth;
    float  maxDepth;
} VkViewport;
```

- *x* and *y* are the viewport's upper left corner \((x,y)\).
- *width* and *height* are the viewport's width and height, respectively.
- *minDepth* and *maxDepth* are the depth range for the viewport.

**Note**
Despite their names, *minDepth* **can** be less than, equal to, or greater than *maxDepth*.

The framebuffer depth coordinate \(z\) **may** be represented using either a fixed-point or floating-point representation. However, a floating-point representation **must** be used if the depth/stencil attachment has a floating-point depth component. If an m-bit fixed-point representation is used, we assume that it represents each value \(\frac{k}{2^m-1}\), where \(k \in \{ 0, 1, \ldots, 2^m-1 \}\), as \(k\) (e.g. 1.0 is represented in binary as a string of all ones).

The viewport parameters shown in the above equations are found from these values as

\[
\begin{align*}
o_x &= x + \frac{\text{width}}{2} \\
o_y &= y + \frac{\text{height}}{2} \\
o_z &= \text{minDepth} \\
p_x &= \text{width} \\
p_y &= \text{height} \\
p_z &= \text{maxDepth} - \text{minDepth}.
\end{align*}
\]

The application **can** specify a negative term for *height*, which has the effect of negating the y coordinate in clip space before performing the transform. When using a negative *height*, the
application should also adjust the y value to point to the lower left corner of the viewport instead of the upper left corner. Using the negative height allows the application to avoid having to negate the y component of the Position output from the last pre-rasterization shader stage.

The width and height of the implementation-dependent maximum viewport dimensions must be greater than or equal to the width and height of the largest image which can be created and attached to a framebuffer.

The floating-point viewport bounds are represented with an implementation-dependent precision.

**Valid Usage**

- VUID-VkViewport-width-01770
  width must be greater than 0.0

- VUID-VkViewport-width-01771
  width must be less than or equal to VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxViewportDimensions[0]

- VUID-VkViewport-height-01773
  The absolute value of height must be less than or equal to VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxViewportDimensions[1]

- VUID-VkViewport-x-01774
  x must be greater than or equal to viewportBoundsRange[0]

- VUID-VkViewport-x-01232
  (x + width) must be less than or equal to viewportBoundsRange[1]

- VUID-VkViewport-y-01775
  y must be greater than or equal to viewportBoundsRange[0]

- VUID-VkViewport-y-01776
  y must be less than or equal to viewportBoundsRange[1]

- VUID-VkViewport-y-01777
  (y + height) must be greater than or equal to viewportBoundsRange[0]

- VUID-VkViewport-y-01233
  (y + height) must be less than or equal to viewportBoundsRange[1]

- VUID-VkViewport-minDepth-02540
  minDepth must be between 0.0 and 1.0, inclusive

- VUID-VkViewport-maxDepth-02541
  maxDepth must be between 0.0 and 1.0, inclusive
Chapter 25. Rasterization

Rasterization is the process by which a primitive is converted to a two-dimensional image. Each discrete location of this image contains associated data such as depth, color, or other attributes.

Rasterizing a primitive begins by determining which squares of an integer grid in framebuffer coordinates are occupied by the primitive, and assigning one or more depth values to each such square. This process is described below for points, lines, and polygons.

A grid square, including its (x,y) framebuffer coordinates, z (depth), and associated data added by fragment shaders, is called a fragment. A fragment is located by its upper left corner, which lies on integer grid coordinates.

Rasterization operations also refer to a fragment’s sample locations, which are offset by fractional values from its upper left corner. The rasterization rules for points, lines, and triangles involve testing whether each sample location is inside the primitive. Fragments need not actually be square, and rasterization rules are not affected by the aspect ratio of fragments. Display of non-square grids, however, will cause rasterized points and line segments to appear fatter in one direction than the other.

We assume that fragments are square, since it simplifies antialiasing and texturing. After rasterization, fragments are processed by fragment operations.

Several factors affect rasterization, including the members of VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateInfo and VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo.

The VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateInfo structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateFlags flags;
    VkBool32 depthClampEnable;
    VkBool32 rasterizerDiscardEnable;
    VkPolygonMode polygonMode;
    VkCullModeFlags cullMode;
    VkFrontFace frontFace;
    float depthBiasConstantFactor;
    float depthBiasClamp;
    float depthBiasSlopeFactor;
    float lineWidth;
} VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateInfo;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **flags** is reserved for future use.
• **depthClampEnable** controls whether to clamp the fragment’s depth values as described in *Depth Test*. Enabling depth clamp will also disable clipping primitives to the z planes of the frustrum as described in *Primitive Clipping*.

• **rasterizerDiscardEnable** controls whether primitives are discarded immediately before the rasterization stage.

• **polygonMode** is the triangle rendering mode. See *VkPolygonMode*.

• **cullMode** is the triangle facing direction used for primitive culling. See *VkCullModeFlagBits*.

• **frontFace** is a *VkFrontFace* value specifying the front-facing triangle orientation to be used for culling.

• **depthBiasEnable** controls whether to bias fragment depth values.

• **depthBiasConstantFactor** is a scalar factor controlling the constant depth value added to each fragment.

• **depthBiasClamp** is the maximum (or minimum) depth bias of a fragment.

• **depthBiasSlopeFactor** is a scalar factor applied to a fragment's slope in depth bias calculations.

• **lineWidth** is the width of rasterized line segments.

---

**Valid Usage**

• **VUID-VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateInfo-depthClampEnable-00782**

  If the *depth clamping* feature is not enabled, **depthClampEnable** **must** be **VK_FALSE**

• **VUID-VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateInfo-polygonMode-01413**

  If the *non-solid fill modes* feature is not enabled, **polygonMode** **must** be **VK_POLYGON_MODE_FILL**

• **VUID-VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateInfo-pointPolygons-04458**

  If the *VK_KHR_portability_subset* extension is enabled, and **VkPhysicalDevicePortabilitySubsetFeaturesKHR::pointPolygons** **is** **VK_FALSE**, and **rasterizerDiscardEnable** is **VK_FALSE**, **polygonMode** **must not** be **VK_POLYGON_MODE_POINT**
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **sType** must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_RASTERIZATION_STATE_CREATE_INFO`
- **pNext** must be `NULL`
- **flags** must be `0`
- **polygonMode** must be a valid `VkPolygonMode` value
- **cullMode** must be a valid combination of `VkCullModeFlagBits` values
- **frontFace** must be a valid `VkFrontFace` value

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateFlags;
```

**VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateFlags** is a bitmask type for setting a mask, but is currently reserved for future use.

The **VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo** structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateFlags flags;
    VkSampleCountFlagBits rasterizationSamples;
    VkBool32 sampleShadingEnable;
    float minSampleShading;
    const VkSampleMask* pSampleMask;
    VkBool32 alphaToOneEnable;
    } VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **flags** is reserved for future use.
- **rasterizationSamples** is a `VkSampleCountFlagBits` value specifying the number of samples used in rasterization.
- **sampleShadingEnable** can be used to enable Sample Shading.
• **minSampleShading** specifies a minimum fraction of sample shading if \texttt{sampleShadingEnable} is set to \texttt{VK_TRUE}.

• \texttt{pSampleMask} is a pointer to an array of \texttt{VkSampleMask} values used in the \texttt{sample mask test}.

• \texttt{alphaToCoverageEnable} controls whether a temporary coverage value is generated based on the alpha component of the fragment's first color output as specified in the \textbf{Multisample Coverage} section.

• \texttt{alphaToOneEnable} controls whether the alpha component of the fragment's first color output is replaced with one as described in \textbf{Multisample Coverage}.

Each bit in the sample mask is associated with a unique \textbf{sample index} as defined for the \textbf{coverage mask}. Each bit \texttt{b} for mask word \texttt{w} in the sample mask corresponds to sample index \texttt{i}, where \texttt{i} = \texttt{32 × w + b}. \texttt{pSampleMask} has a length equal to \lceil \texttt{rasterizationSamples} \texttt{/ 32} \rceil \texttt{words}.

If \texttt{pSampleMask} is \texttt{NULL}, it is treated as if the mask has all bits set to 1.

---

**Valid Usage**

- \textbf{VUID-VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo-sampleShadingEnable-00784}
  If the \textbf{sample rate shading} feature is not enabled, \texttt{sampleShadingEnable} must be \texttt{VK_FALSE}

- \textbf{VUID-VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo-alphaToOneEnable-00785}
  If the \textbf{alpha to one} feature is not enabled, \texttt{alphaToOneEnable} must be \texttt{VK_FALSE}

- \textbf{VUID-VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo-minSampleShading-00786}
  \texttt{minSampleShading} must be in the range [0,1]

---

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- \textbf{VUID-VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo-sType-sType}
  \texttt{sType} must be \texttt{VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_MULTISAMPLE_STATE_CREATE_INFO}

- \textbf{VUID-VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo-pNext-pNext}
  \texttt{pNext} must be \texttt{NULL}

- \textbf{VUID-VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo-flags-zerobitmask}
  \texttt{flags} must be 0

- \textbf{VUID-VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo-rasterizationSamples-parameter}
  \texttt{rasterizationSamples} must be a valid \texttt{VkSampleCountFlagBits} value

- \textbf{VUID-VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo-pSampleMask-parameter}
  If \texttt{pSampleMask} is not \texttt{NULL}, \texttt{pSampleMask} must be a valid pointer to an array of \lceil \texttt{rasterizationSamples} \texttt{/ 32} \rceil \texttt{VkSampleMask} values

---

// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateFlags;

\textbf{VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateFlags} is a bitmask type for setting a mask, but is currently
The elements of the sample mask array are of type `VkSampleMask`, each representing 32 bits of coverage information:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef uint32_t VkSampleMask;
```

Rasterization only generates fragments which cover one or more pixels inside the framebuffer. Pixels outside the framebuffer are never considered covered in the fragment. Fragments which would be produced by application of any of the primitive rasterization rules described below but which lie outside the framebuffer are not produced, nor are they processed by any later stage of the pipeline, including any of the fragment operations.

Surviving fragments are processed by fragment shaders. Fragment shaders determine associated data for fragments, and can also modify or replace their assigned depth values.

### 25.1. Discarding Primitives Before Rasterization

Primitives are discarded before rasterization if the `rasterizerDiscardEnable` member of `VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateInfo` is enabled. When enabled, primitives are discarded after they are processed by the last active shader stage in the pipeline before rasterization.

### 25.2. Rasterization Order

Within a subpass of a render pass instance, for a given (x,y,layer,sample) sample location, the following operations are guaranteed to execute in rasterization order, for each separate primitive that includes that sample location:

1. Fragment operations, in the order defined
2. Blending, logic operations, and color writes

Execution of these operations for each primitive in a subpass occurs in primitive order.

### 25.3. Multisampling

Multisampling is a mechanism to antialias all Vulkan primitives: points, lines, and polygons. The technique is to sample all primitives multiple times at each pixel. Each sample in each framebuffer attachment has storage for a color, depth, and/or stencil value, such that per-fragment operations apply to each sample independently. The color sample values can be later resolved to a single color (see Resolving Multisample Images and the Render Pass chapter for more details on how to resolve multisample images to non-multisample images).

Vulkan defines rasterization rules for single-sample modes in a way that is equivalent to a multisample mode with a single sample in the center of each fragment.

Each fragment includes a coverage mask with a single bit for each sample in the fragment, and a
number of depth values and associated data for each sample. An implementation may choose to assign the same associated data to more than one sample. The location for evaluating such associated data may be anywhere within the fragment area including the fragment's center location \((x_f, y_f)\) or any of the sample locations. When \texttt{rasterizationSamples} is \texttt{VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT}, the fragment's center location must be used. The different associated data values need not all be evaluated at the same location.

It is understood that each pixel has \texttt{rasterizationSamples} locations associated with it. These locations are exact positions, rather than regions or areas, and each is referred to as a sample point. The sample points associated with a pixel must be located inside or on the boundary of the unit square that is considered to bound the pixel. Furthermore, the relative locations of sample points may be identical for each pixel in the framebuffer, or they may differ.

If the current pipeline includes a fragment shader with one or more variables in its interface decorated with \texttt{Sample} and \texttt{Input}, the data associated with those variables will be assigned independently for each sample. The values for each sample must be evaluated at the location of the sample. The data associated with any other variables not decorated with \texttt{Sample} and \texttt{Input} need not be evaluated independently for each sample.

A coverage mask is generated for each fragment, based on which samples within that fragment are determined to be within the area of the primitive that generated the fragment.

Single pixel fragments have one set of samples. Multi-pixel fragments defined by setting the fragment shading rate have one set of samples per pixel. Each set of samples has a number of samples determined by \texttt{VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo::rasterizationSamples}. Each sample in a set is assigned a unique sample index \(i\) in the range \([0, \texttt{rasterizationSamples})\).

Each sample in a fragment is also assigned a unique coverage index \(j\) in the range \([0, n \times \texttt{rasterizationSamples})\), where \(n\) is the number of sets in the fragment. If the fragment contains a single set of samples, the coverage index is always equal to the sample index.

If the fragment shading rate is set, the coverage index \(j\) is determined as a function of the pixel index \(p\), the sample index \(i\), and the number of rasterization samples \(r\) as:

\[
j = i + r \times ((f_w \times f_h) - 1 - p)
\]

where the pixel index \(p\) is determined as a function of the pixel's framebuffer location \((x,y)\) and the fragment size \((f_w, f_h)\):

\[
p_x = x \% f_w
\]

\[
p_y = y \% f_h
\]

\[
p = p_x + (p_y \times f_w)
\]

The table below illustrates the pixel index for multi-pixel fragments:
Table 27. Pixel indices - 1 wide

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>1x1</th>
<th>1x2</th>
<th>1x4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image1" alt="1x1 pixel indices" /></td>
<td><img src="image2" alt="1x2 pixel indices" /></td>
<td><img src="image3" alt="1x4 pixel indices" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 28. Pixel indices - 2 wide

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>2x1</th>
<th>2x2</th>
<th>2x4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image4" alt="2x1 pixel indices" /></td>
<td><img src="image5" alt="2x2 pixel indices" /></td>
<td><img src="image6" alt="2x4 pixel indices" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 29. Pixel indices - 4 wide

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>4x1</th>
<th>4x2</th>
<th>4x4</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image7" alt="4x1 pixel indices" /></td>
<td><img src="image8" alt="4x2 pixel indices" /></td>
<td><img src="image9" alt="4x4 pixel indices" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The coverage mask includes $B$ bits packed into $W$ words, defined as:
\[ B = n \times \text{rasterizationSamples} \]

\[ W = \lceil B/32 \rceil \]

Bit \( b \) in coverage mask word \( w \) is \( 1 \) if the sample with coverage index \( j = 32w + b \) is covered, and \( 0 \) otherwise.

If the `standardSampleLocations` member of `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits` is `VK_TRUE`, then the sample counts `VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT`, `VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_2_BIT`, `VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_4_BIT`, `VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_8_BIT`, and `VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_16_BIT` have sample locations as listed in the following table, with the \( i \)th entry in the table corresponding to sample index \( i \). `VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_32_BIT` and `VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_64_BIT` do not have standard sample locations. Locations are defined relative to an origin in the upper left corner of the fragment.
Table 30. Standard sample locations

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Sample count</th>
<th>Sample Locations</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT</strong></td>
<td>(0.5,0.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_2_BIT</strong></td>
<td>(0.75,0.75)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.25,0.25)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_4_BIT</strong></td>
<td>(0.375, 0.125)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.875, 0.375)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.125, 0.625)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.625, 0.875)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_8_BIT</strong></td>
<td>(0.5625, 0.3125)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.4375, 0.6875)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.8125, 0.5625)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.3125, 0.1875)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.1875, 0.8125)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.625, 0.4375)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.6875, 0.9375)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.9375, 0.0625)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_16_BIT</strong></td>
<td>(0.5625, 0.5625)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.4375, 0.3125)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.3125, 0.625)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.75, 0.4375)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.1875, 0.375)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.625, 0.8125)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.8125, 0.6875)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.6875, 0.1875)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.375, 0.875)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.5, 0.0625)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.25, 0.125)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.125, 0.75)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.0, 0.5)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.9375, 0.25)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.875, 0.9375)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>(0.0625, 0.0)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Diagram" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
25.4. Fragment Shading Rates

The features advertised by `VkPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRateFeaturesKHR` allow an application to control the shading rate of a given fragment shader invocation.

The fragment shading rate strongly interacts with Multisampling, and the set of available rates for an implementation may be restricted by sample rate.

To query available shading rates, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_fragment_shading_rate
VkResult vkGetPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRatesKHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    uint32_t* pFragmentShadingRateCount,
    VkPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRateKHR* pFragmentShadingRates);
```

- `physicalDevice` is the handle to the physical device whose properties will be queried.
- `pFragmentShadingRateCount` is a pointer to an integer related to the number of fragment shading rates available or queried, as described below.
- `pFragmentShadingRates` is either `NULL` or a pointer to an array of `VkPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRateKHR` structures.

If `pFragmentShadingRates` is `NULL`, then the number of fragment shading rates available is returned in `pFragmentShadingRateCount`. Otherwise, `pFragmentShadingRateCount` must point to a variable set by the user to the number of elements in the `pFragmentShadingRates` array, and on return the variable is overwritten with the number of structures actually written to `pFragmentShadingRates`. If `pFragmentShadingRateCount` is less than the number of fragment shading rates available, at most `pFragmentShadingRateCount` structures will be written, and `VK_INCOMPLETE` will be returned instead of `VK_SUCCESS`, to indicate that not all the available fragment shading rates were returned.

The returned array of fragment shading rates must be ordered from largest `fragmentSize.width` value to smallest, and each set of fragment shading rates with the same `fragmentSize.width` value must be ordered from largest `fragmentSize.height` to smallest. Any two entries in the array must not have the same `fragmentSize` values.

For any entry in the array, the following rules also apply:

- The value of `fragmentSize.width` must be less than or equal to `maxFragmentSize.width`.
- The value of `fragmentSize.width` must be greater than or equal to 1.
- The value of `fragmentSize.width` must be a power-of-two.
- The value of `fragmentSize.height` must be less than or equal to `maxFragmentSize.height`.
- The value of `fragmentSize.height` must be greater than or equal to 1.
- The value of `fragmentSize.height` must be a power-of-two.
- The highest sample count in `sampleCounts` must be less than or equal to `maxFragmentShadingRateRasterizationSamples`.
• The product of `fragmentSize.width`, `fragmentSize.height`, and the highest sample count in `sampleCounts` must be less than or equal to `maxFragmentShadingRateCoverageSamples`.

Implementations must support at least the following shading rates:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th><code>sampleCounts</code></th>
<th><code>fragmentSize</code></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>`VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT</td>
<td>VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_4_BIT`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>`VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT</td>
<td>VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_4_BIT`</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>~0</td>
<td>{1,1}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If `framebufferColorSampleCounts` includes `VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_2_BIT`, the required rates must also include `VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_2_BIT`.

Note

Including the {1,1} fragment size is done for completeness; it has no actual effect on the support of rendering without setting the fragment size. All sample counts are supported for this rate.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRatesKHR-physicalDevice-parameter  
  `physicalDevice` must be a valid `VkPhysicalDevice` handle
- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRatesKHR-pFragmentShadingRateCount-parameter  
  `pFragmentShadingRateCount` must be a valid pointer to a `uint32_t` value
- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRatesKHR-pFragmentShadingRates-parameter  
  If the value referenced by `pFragmentShadingRateCount` is not 0, and `pFragmentShadingRates` is not NULL, `pFragmentShadingRates` must be a valid pointer to an array of `pFragmentShadingRateCount` `VkPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRateKHR` structures

Return Codes

Success

- `VK_SUCCESS`
- `VK_INCOMPLETE`

Failure

- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY`

The `VkPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRateKHR` structure is defined as
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRateKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkSampleCountFlags sampleCounts;
    VkExtent2D fragmentSize;
} VkPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRateKHR;

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **sampleCounts** is a bitmask of sample counts for which the shading rate described by **fragmentSize** is supported.
- **fragmentSize** is a **VkExtent2D** describing the width and height of a supported shading rate.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRateKHR-sType-sType
  
  sType must be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_KHR**

- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRateKHR-pNext-pNext
  
  pNext must be NULL

Fragment shading rates can be set at three points, with the three rates combined to determine the final shading rate.

#### 25.4.1. Pipeline Fragment Shading Rate

The pipeline fragment shading rate can be set on a per-draw basis by either setting the rate in a graphics pipeline, or dynamically via vkCmdSetFragmentShadingRateKHR.

The **VkPipelineFragmentShadingRateStateCreateInfoKHR** structure is defined as:

```
// Provided by VK_KHR_fragment_shading_rate
typedef struct VkPipelineFragmentShadingRateStateCreateInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkExtent2D fragmentSize;
    VkFragmentShadingRateCombinerOpKHR combinerOps[2];
} VkPipelineFragmentShadingRateStateCreateInfoKHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **fragmentSize** specifies a **VkExtent2D** structure containing the fragment size used to define the pipeline fragment shading rate for drawing commands using this pipeline.
• **combinerOps** specifies a `VkFragmentShadingRateCombinerOpKHR` value determining how the pipeline, primitive, and attachment shading rates are combined for fragments generated by drawing commands using the created pipeline.

If the `pNext` chain of `VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo` includes a `VkPipelineFragmentShadingRateStateCreateInfoKHR` structure, then that structure includes parameters that control the pipeline fragment shading rate.

If this structure is not present, `fragmentSize` is considered to be equal to (1,1), and both elements of `combinerOps` are considered to be equal to `VK_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_COMBINER_OP_KEEP_KHR`.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkPipelineFragmentShadingRateStateCreateInfoKHR-sType-sType
  sType must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_STATE_CREATE_INFO_KHR`
- VUID-VkPipelineFragmentShadingRateStateCreateInfoKHR-combinerOps-parameter
  Any given element of `combinerOps` must be a valid `VkFragmentShadingRateCombinerOpKHR` value

If a pipeline state object is created with `VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_KHR` enabled, the pipeline fragment shading rate and combiner operation is set by the command:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_fragment_shading_rate
void vkCmdSetFragmentShadingRateKHR(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    const VkExtent2D* pFragmentSize,
    const VkFragmentShadingRateCombinerOpKHR combinerOps[2]);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
- `pFragmentSize` specifies the pipeline fragment shading rate for subsequent drawing commands.
- `combinerOps` specifies a `VkFragmentShadingRateCombinerOpKHR` determining how the pipeline, primitive, and attachment shading rates are combined for fragments generated by subsequent drawing commands.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkCmdSetFragmentShadingRateKHR-pipelineFragmentShadingRate-04507
  If `pipelineFragmentShadingRate` is not enabled, `pFragmentSize->width` must be 1

- VUID-vkCmdSetFragmentShadingRateKHR-pipelineFragmentShadingRate-04508
  If `pipelineFragmentShadingRate` is not enabled, `pFragmentSize->height` must be 1

- VUID-vkCmdSetFragmentShadingRateKHR-pipelineFragmentShadingRate-04509
  One of `pipelineFragmentShadingRate`, `primitiveFragmentShadingRate`, or `attachmentFragmentShadingRate` must be enabled

- VUID-vkCmdSetFragmentShadingRateKHR-primitiveFragmentShadingRate-04510
  If the `primitiveFragmentShadingRate` feature is not enabled, `combinerOps[0]` must be `VK_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_COMBINER_OP_KEEP_KHR`

- VUID-vkCmdSetFragmentShadingRateKHR-attachmentFragmentShadingRate-04511
  If the `attachmentFragmentShadingRate` feature is not enabled, `combinerOps[1]` must be `VK_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_COMBINER_OP_KEEP_KHR`

- VUID-vkCmdSetFragmentShadingRateKHR-fragmentSizeNonTrivialCombinerOps-04512
  If the `fragmentSizeNonTrivialCombinerOps` limit is not supported, elements of `combinerOps` must be either `VK_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_COMBINER_OP_KEEP_KHR` or `VK_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_COMBINER_OP_REPLACE_KHR`

- VUID-vkCmdSetFragmentShadingRateKHR-pFragmentSize-04513
  `pFragmentSize->width` must be greater than or equal to 1

- VUID-vkCmdSetFragmentShadingRateKHR-pFragmentSize-04514
  `pFragmentSize->height` must be greater than or equal to 1

- VUID-vkCmdSetFragmentShadingRateKHR-pFragmentSize-04515
  `pFragmentSize->width` must be a power-of-two value

- VUID-vkCmdSetFragmentShadingRateKHR-pFragmentSize-04516
  `pFragmentSize->height` must be a power-of-two value

- VUID-vkCmdSetFragmentShadingRateKHR-pFragmentSize-04517
  `pFragmentSize->width` must be less than or equal to 4

- VUID-vkCmdSetFragmentShadingRateKHR-pFragmentSize-04518
  `pFragmentSize->height` must be less than or equal to 4
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdSetFragmentShadingRateKHR-commandBuffer-parameter
  \texttt{commandBuffer} must be a valid \texttt{VkCommandBuffer} handle

- VUID-vkCmdSetFragmentShadingRateKHR-pFragmentSize-parameter
  \texttt{pFragmentSize} must be a valid pointer to a valid \texttt{VkExtent2D} structure

- VUID-vkCmdSetFragmentShadingRateKHR-combinerOps-parameter
  Any given element of \texttt{combinerOps} must be a valid \texttt{VkFragmentShadingRateCombinerOpKHR} value

- VUID-vkCmdSetFragmentShadingRateKHR-commandBuffer-recording
  \texttt{commandBuffer} must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdSetFragmentShadingRateKHR-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The \texttt{VkCommandPool} that \texttt{commandBuffer} was allocated from must support graphics operations

Host Synchronization

- Host access to \texttt{commandBuffer} must be externally synchronized

- Host access to the \texttt{VkCommandPool} that \texttt{commandBuffer} was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

25.4.2. Primitive Fragment Shading Rate

The \textit{primitive fragment shading rate} can be set via the \texttt{PrimitiveShadingRateKHR} built-in in the last active \textit{pre-rasterization shader stage}. The rate associated with a given primitive is sourced from the value written to \texttt{PrimitiveShadingRateKHR} by that primitive’s \textit{provoking vertex}.

25.4.3. Attachment Fragment Shading Rate

The \textit{attachment shading rate} can be set by including \texttt{VkFragmentShadingRateAttachmentInfoKHR} in a subpass to define a \textit{fragment shading rate attachment}. Each pixel in the framebuffer is assigned an attachment fragment shading rate by the corresponding texel in the fragment shading rate attachment, according to:

\[
x' = \text{floor}(x / \text{region}_x)
\]
\[ y' = \text{floor}(y / \text{region}_y) \]

where \( x' \) and \( y' \) are the coordinates of a texel in the fragment shading rate attachment, \( x \) and \( y \) are the coordinates of the pixel in the framebuffer, and \( \text{region}_x \) and \( \text{region}_y \) are the size of the region each texel corresponds to, as defined by the \text{shadingRateAttachmentTexelSize} member of \text{VkFragmentShadingRateAttachmentInfoKHR}.

If \text{multiview} is enabled and the shading rate attachment has multiple layers, the shading rate attachment texel is selected from the layer determined by the \text{ViewIndex} built-in. If \text{multiview} is disabled, and both the shading rate attachment and the framebuffer have multiple layers, the shading rate attachment texel is selected from the layer determined by the \text{Layer} built-in. Otherwise, the texel is unconditionally selected from the first layer of the attachment.

The fragment size is encoded into the first component of the identified texel as follows:

\[
\text{size}_w = 2^{(\text{texel}/4)\&3} \\
\text{size}_h = 2^{(\text{texel}\&3)}
\]

where \text{texel} is the value in the first component of the identified texel, and \text{size}_w and \text{size}_h are the width and height of the fragment size, decoded from the texel.

If no fragment shading rate attachment is specified, this size is calculated as \text{size}_w = \text{size}_h = 1. Applications \text{must} not specify a width or height greater than 4 by this method.

The \text{Fragment Shading Rate} enumeration in SPIR-V adheres to the above encoding.

### 25.4.4. Combining the Fragment Shading Rates

The final rate \( (C_{xy}') \) used for fragment shading \text{must} be one of the rates returned by \text{vkGetPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRatesKHR} for the sample count used by rasterization.

If any of the following conditions are met, \( C_{xy}' \text{ must} be set to \( \{1,1\} \):

- If \text{Sample Shading} is enabled.
- The \text{fragmentShadingRateWithSampleMask} limit is not supported, and \text{VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo::pSampleMask} contains a zero value in any bit used by fragment operations.
- The \text{fragmentShadingRateWithShaderSampleMask} is not supported, and the fragment shader has \text{SampleMask} in the input or output interface.
- The \text{fragmentShadingRateWithShaderDepthStencilWrites} limit is not supported, and the fragment shader declares the \text{FragDepth} built-in.

Otherwise, each of the specified shading rates are combined and then used to derive the value of \( C_{xy}' \). As there are three ways to specify shading rates, two combiner operations are specified - between the \text{pipeline} and \text{primitive} shading rates, and between the result of that and the
attachment shading rate.

The equation used for each combiner operation is defined by `VkFragmentShadingRateCombinerOpKHR`:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_fragment_shading_rate
typedef enum VkFragmentShadingRateCombinerOpKHR {
    VK_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_COMBINER_OP_KEEP_KHR = 0,
    VK_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_COMBINER_OP_REPLACE_KHR = 1,
    VK_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_COMBINER_OP_MIN_KHR = 2,
    VK_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_COMBINER_OP_MAX_KHR = 3,
    VK_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_COMBINER_OP_MUL_KHR = 4,
} VkFragmentShadingRateCombinerOpKHR;
```

- `VK_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_COMBINER_OP_KEEP_KHR` specifies a combiner operation of `combine(A_{xy}, B_{xy}) = A_{xy}`.
- `VK_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_COMBINER_OP_REPLACE_KHR` specifies a combiner operation of `combine(A_{xy}, B_{xy}) = B_{xy}`.
- `VK_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_COMBINER_OP_MIN_KHR` specifies a combiner operation of `combine(A_{xy}, B_{xy}) = \min(A_{xy}, B_{xy})`.
- `VK_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_COMBINER_OP_MAX_KHR` specifies a combiner operation of `combine(A_{xy}, B_{xy}) = \max(A_{xy}, B_{xy})`.
- `VK_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_COMBINER_OP_MUL_KHR` specifies a combiner operation of `combine(A_{xy}, B_{xy}) = A_{xy} \times B_{xy}`.

where `combine(A_{xy}, B_{xy})` is the combine operation, and `A_{xy}` and `B_{xy}` are the inputs to the operation.

If `fragmentShadingRateStrictMultiplyCombiner` is `VK_FALSE`, using `VK_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_COMBINER_OP_MUL_KHR` with values of 1 for both `A` and `B` in the same dimension results in the value 2 being produced for that dimension. See the definition of `fragmentShadingRateStrictMultiplyCombiner` for more information.

These operations are performed in a component-wise fashion.

This is used to generate a combined fragment area using the equation:

\[ C_{xy} = \text{combine}(A_{xy}, B_{xy}) \]

where \( C_{xy} \) is the combined fragment area result, and \( A_{xy} \) and \( B_{xy} \) are the fragment areas of the fragment shading rates being combined.

Two combine operations are performed, first with \( A_{xy} \) equal to the pipeline fragment shading rate and \( B_{xy} \) equal to the primitive fragment shading rate, with the combine() operation selected by combinerOps[0]. A second combination is then performed, with \( A_{xy} \) equal to the result of the first combination and \( B_{xy} \) equal to the attachment fragment shading rate, with the combine() operation selected by combinerOps[1]. The result of the second combination is used as the final fragment shading rate, reported via the `ShadingRateKHR` built-in.
Implementations may clamp the \( C_{xy} \) result of each combiner operation separately, or only after the second combiner operation.

If the final combined rate is one of the rates returned by `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRatesKHR` for the sample count used by rasterization, \( C_{xy}' = C_{xy} \). Otherwise, \( C_{xy}' \) is selected from the rates returned by `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRatesKHR` for the sample count used by rasterization. From this list of supported rates, the following steps are applied in order, to select a single value:

1. Keep only rates where \( C_x' \leq C_x \) and \( C_y' \leq C_y \).
   - Implementations may also keep rates where \( C_x' \leq C_y \) and \( C_y' \leq C_x \).
2. Keep only rates with the highest area (\( C_x' \times C_y' \)).
3. Keep only rates with the lowest aspect ratio (\( C_x' + C_y' \)).
4. In cases where a wide (e.g. 4x1) and tall (e.g. 1x4) rate remain, the implementation may choose either rate. However, it must choose this rate consistently for the same shading rates, and combiner operations for the lifetime of the `VkDevice`.

### 25.5. Sample Shading

Sample shading can be used to specify a minimum number of unique samples to process for each fragment. If sample shading is enabled an implementation must provide a minimum of \( \max(\lceil \minSampleShadingFactor \times \text{totalSamples} \rceil, 1) \) unique associated data for each fragment, where \( \minSampleShadingFactor \) is the minimum fraction of sample shading. \( \text{totalSamples} \) is the value of `VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo::rasterizationSamples` specified at pipeline creation time. These are associated with the samples in an implementation-dependent manner. When \( \minSampleShadingFactor \) is 1.0, a separate set of associated data are evaluated for each sample, and each set of values is evaluated at the sample location.

Sample shading is enabled for a graphics pipeline:

- If the interface of the fragment shader entry point of the graphics pipeline includes an input variable decorated with `SampleId` or `SamplePosition`. In this case \( \minSampleShadingFactor \) takes the value 1.0.
- Else if the `sampleShadingEnable` member of the `VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo` structure specified when creating the graphics pipeline is set to `VK_TRUE`. In this case \( \minSampleShadingFactor \) takes the value of `VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo::minSampleShading`.

Otherwise, sample shading is considered disabled.

### 25.6. Points

A point is drawn by generating a set of fragments in the shape of a square centered around the vertex of the point. Each vertex has an associated point size that controls the width/height of that square. The point size is taken from the (potentially clipped) shader built-in `PointSize` written by:

- the geometry shader, if active;
• the tessellation evaluation shader, if active and no geometry shader is active;
• the vertex shader, otherwise

and clamped to the implementation-dependent point size range \([\text{pointSizeRange}[0], \text{pointSizeRange}[1]]\). The value written to \text{PointSize} must be greater than zero.

Not all point sizes need be supported, but the size 1.0 must be supported. The range of supported sizes and the size of evenly-spaced gradations within that range are implementation-dependent. The range and gradations are obtained from the \text{pointSizeRange} and \text{pointSizeGranularity} members of \text{VkPhysicalDeviceLimits}. If, for instance, the size range is from 0.1 to 2.0 and the gradation size is 0.1, then the sizes 0.1, 0.2, ..., 1.9, 2.0 are supported. Additional point sizes may also be supported. There is no requirement that these sizes be equally spaced. If an unsupported size is requested, the nearest supported size is used instead.

### 25.6.1. Basic Point Rasterization

Point rasterization produces a fragment for each fragment area group of framebuffer pixels with one or more sample points that intersect a region centered at the point's \((x_f, y_f)\). This region is a square with side equal to the current point size. Coverage bits that correspond to sample points that intersect the region are 1, other coverage bits are 0. All fragments produced in rasterizing a point are assigned the same associated data, which are those of the vertex corresponding to the point. However, the fragment shader built-in \text{PointCoord} contains point sprite texture coordinates. The \(s\) and \(t\) point sprite texture coordinates vary from zero to one across the point horizontally left-to-right and vertically top-to-bottom, respectively. The following formulas are used to evaluate \(s\) and \(t\):

\[
\begin{align*}
    s &= \frac{1}{2} + \frac{(x_p - x_f)}{\text{size}} \\
    t &= \frac{1}{2} + \frac{(y_p - y_f)}{\text{size}}
\end{align*}
\]

where \(\text{size}\) is the point's size; \((x_p,y_p)\) is the location at which the point sprite coordinates are evaluated - this may be the framebuffer coordinates of the fragment center, or the location of a sample; and \((x_f,y_f)\) is the exact, unrounded framebuffer coordinate of the vertex for the point.

### 25.7. Line Segments

Each line segment has an associated width. The line width is specified by the \text{VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateInfo::lineWidth} property of the currently active pipeline, if the pipeline was not created with \text{VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_LINE_WIDTH} enabled.

Otherwise, the line width is set by calling \text{vkCmdSetLineWidth}:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkCmdSetLineWidth(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer, 
    float lineWidth);
```

• \text{commandBuffer} is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
• **lineWidth** is the width of rasterized line segments.

### Valid Usage

- VUID-vkCmdSetLineWidth-lineWidth-00788
  If the *wide lines* feature is not enabled, **lineWidth** must be 1.0

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdSetLineWidth-commandBuffer-parameter
  **commandBuffer** must be a valid **VkCommandBuffer** handle
- VUID-vkCmdSetLineWidth-commandBuffer-recording
  **commandBuffer** must be in the recording state
- VUID-vkCmdSetLineWidth-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The **VkCommandPool** that **commandBuffer** was allocated from must support graphics operations

### Host Synchronization

- Host access to **commandBuffer** must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the **VkCommandPool** that **commandBuffer** was allocated from must be externally synchronized

### Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Not all line widths need be supported for line segment rasterization, but width 1.0 antialiased segments must be provided. The range and gradations are obtained from the **lineWidthRange** and **lineWidthGranularity** members of **VkPhysicalDeviceLimits**. If, for instance, the size range is from 0.1 to 2.0 and the gradation size is 0.1, then the sizes 0.1, 0.2, ..., 1.9, 2.0 are supported. Additional line widths may also be supported. There is no requirement that these widths be equally spaced. If an unsupported width is requested, the nearest supported width is used instead.

### 25.7.1. Basic Line Segment Rasterization

Rasterized line segments produce fragments which intersect a rectangle centered on the line segment. Two of the edges are parallel to the specified line segment; each is at a distance of one-half the current width from that segment in directions perpendicular to the direction of the line. The other two edges pass through the line endpoints and are perpendicular to the direction of the
specified line segment. Coverage bits that correspond to sample points that intersect the rectangle are 1, other coverage bits are 0.

Next we specify how the data associated with each rasterized fragment are obtained. Let \( \mathbf{p}_r = (x_d, y_d) \) be the framebuffer coordinates at which associated data are evaluated. This may be the center of a fragment or the location of a sample within the fragment. When \texttt{rasterizationSamples} is \texttt{VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT}, the fragment center \textbf{must} be used. Let \( \mathbf{p}_a = (x_a, y_a) \) and \( \mathbf{p}_b = (x_b, y_b) \) be initial and final endpoints of the line segment, respectively. Set

\[
    t = \frac{(\mathbf{p}_r - \mathbf{p}_a) \cdot (\mathbf{p}_b - \mathbf{p}_a)}{|| \mathbf{p}_b - \mathbf{p}_a ||^2}
\]

(Note that \( t = 0 \) at \( \mathbf{p}_a \) and \( t = 1 \) at \( \mathbf{p}_b \). Also note that this calculation projects the vector from \( \mathbf{p}_a \) to \( \mathbf{p}_r \) onto the line, and thus computes the normalized distance of the fragment along the line.)

The value of an associated datum \( f \) for the fragment, whether it be a shader output or the clip \( w \) coordinate, \textbf{must} be determined using perspective interpolation:

\[
    f = \frac{(1-t)f_a / w_a + tf_b / w_b}{(1-t) / w_a + t / w_b}
\]

where \( f_a \) and \( f_b \) are the data associated with the starting and ending endpoints of the segment, respectively; \( w_a \) and \( w_b \) are the clip \( w \) coordinates of the starting and ending endpoints of the segment, respectively.

Depth values for lines \textbf{must} be determined using linear interpolation:

\[
    z = (1 - t) z_a + t z_b
\]

where \( z_a \) and \( z_b \) are the depth values of the starting and ending endpoints of the segment, respectively.

The \texttt{NoPerspective} and \texttt{Flat} interpolation decorations \textbf{can} be used with fragment shader inputs to declare how they are interpolated. When neither decoration is applied, perspective interpolation is performed as described above. When the \texttt{NoPerspective} decoration is used, linear interpolation is performed in the same fashion as for depth values, as described above. When the \texttt{Flat} decoration is used, no interpolation is performed, and outputs are taken from the corresponding input value of the \texttt{provoking vertex} corresponding to that primitive.

The above description documents the preferred method of line rasterization, and \textbf{must} be used when the implementation advertises the \texttt{strictLines} limit in \texttt{VkPhysicalDeviceLimits} as \texttt{VK_TRUE}.

When \texttt{strictLines} is \texttt{VK_FALSE}, the edges of the lines are generated as a parallelogram surrounding the original line. The major axis is chosen by noting the axis in which there is the greatest distance between the line start and end points. If the difference is equal in both directions then the X axis is chosen as the major axis. Edges 2 and 3 are aligned to the minor axis and are centered on the endpoints of the line as in \texttt{Non strict lines}, and each is \texttt{lineWidth} long. Edges 0 and 1 are parallel to the line and connect the endpoints of edges 2 and 3. Coverage bits that correspond to sample points that intersect the parallelogram are 1, other coverage bits are 0.
Samples that fall exactly on the edge of the parallelogram follow the polygon rasterization rules.

Interpolation occurs as if the parallelogram was decomposed into two triangles where each pair of vertices at each end of the line has identical attributes.

Figure 15. Non strict lines

Only when `strictLines` is `VK_FALSE` implementations may deviate from the non-strict line algorithm described above in the following ways:

- Implementations may instead interpolate each fragment according to the formula in Basic Line Segment Rasterization using the original line segment endpoints.
- Rasterization of non-antialiased non-strict line segments may be performed using the rules defined in Bresenham Line Segment Rasterization.

25.7.2. Bresenham Line Segment Rasterization

Non-strict lines may also follow these rasterization rules for non-antialiased lines.

Line segment rasterization begins by characterizing the segment as either x-major or y-major. x-major line segments have slope in the closed interval [-1,1]; all other line segments are y-major (slope is determined by the segment’s endpoints). We specify rasterization only for x-major segments except in cases where the modifications for y-major segments are not self-evident.

Ideally, Vulkan uses a diamond-exit rule to determine those fragments that are produced by rasterizing a line segment. For each fragment f with center at framebuffer coordinates $x_f$ and $y_f$, define a diamond-shaped region that is the intersection of four half planes:

$$R_f = \{(x, y)| |x - x_f| + |y - y_f| < \frac{1}{2}\}$$

Essentially, a line segment starting at $p_a$ and ending at $p_b$ produces those fragments $f$ for which the segment intersects $R_a$, except if $p_b$ is contained in $R_a$. 

To avoid difficulties when an endpoint lies on a boundary of $R$, we (in principle) perturb the supplied endpoints by a tiny amount. Let $p_a$ and $p_b$ have framebuffer coordinates $(x_a, y_a)$ and $(x_b, y_b)$, respectively. Obtain the perturbed endpoints $p_a'$ given by $(x_a, y_a) - (\epsilon, \epsilon^2)$ and $p_b'$ given by $(x_b, y_b) - (\epsilon, \epsilon^2)$. Rasterizing the line segment starting at $p_a$ and ending at $p_b$ produces those fragments $f$ for which the segment starting at $p_a'$ and ending on $p_b'$ intersects $R$, except if $p_b'$ is contained in $R$. $\epsilon$ is chosen to be so small that rasterizing the line segment produces the same fragments when $\delta$ is substituted for $\epsilon$ for any $0 < \delta \leq \epsilon$.

When $p_a$ and $p_b$ lie on fragment centers, this characterization of fragments reduces to Bresenham’s algorithm with one modification: lines produced in this description are “half-open,” meaning that the final fragment (corresponding to $p_b$) is not drawn. This means that when rasterizing a series of connected line segments, shared endpoints will be produced only once rather than twice (as would occur with Bresenham’s algorithm).

Implementations may use other line segment rasterization algorithms, subject to the following rules:

- The coordinates of a fragment produced by the algorithm must not deviate by more than one unit in either $x$ or $y$ framebuffer coordinates from a corresponding fragment produced by the diamond-exit rule.
- The total number of fragments produced by the algorithm must not differ from that produced by the diamond-exit rule by no more than one.
- For an $x$-major line, two fragments that lie in the same framebuffer-coordinate column must not be produced (for a $y$-major line, two fragments that lie in the same framebuffer-coordinate row must not be produced).
- If two line segments share a common endpoint, and both segments are either $x$-major (both left-to-right or both right-to-left) or $y$-major (both bottom-to-top or both top-to-bottom), then rasterizing both segments must not produce duplicate fragments. Fragments also must not be omitted so as to interrupt continuity of the connected segments.
The actual width \( w \) of Bresenham lines is determined by rounding the line width to the nearest integer, clamping it to the implementation-dependent \( \text{lineWidthRange} \) (with both values rounded to the nearest integer), then clamping it to be no less than 1.

Bresenham line segments of width other than one are rasterized by offsetting them in the minor direction (for an x-major line, the minor direction is y, and for a y-major line, the minor direction is x) and producing a row or column of fragments in the minor direction. If the line segment has endpoints given by \((x_0, y_0)\) and \((x_1, y_1)\) in framebuffer coordinates, the segment with endpoints \((x_0, y_0 - \frac{w - 1}{2})\) and \((x_1, y_1 - \frac{w - 1}{2})\) is rasterized, but instead of a single fragment, a column of fragments of height \( w \) (a row of fragments of length \( w \) for a y-major segment) is produced at each x (y for y-major) location. The lowest fragment of this column is the fragment that would be produced by rasterizing the segment of width 1 with the modified coordinates.

The preferred method of attribute interpolation for a wide line is to generate the same attribute values for all fragments in the row or column described above, as if the adjusted line was used for interpolation and those values replicated to the other fragments, except for \( \text{FragCoord} \) which is interpolated as usual. Implementations \textbf{may} instead interpolate each fragment according to the formula in \textit{Basic Line Segment Rasterization}, using the original line segment endpoints.

When Bresenham lines are being rasterized, sample locations \textbf{may} all be treated as being at the pixel center (this \textbf{may} affect attribute and depth interpolation).

\textbf{Note}

The sample locations described above are \textbf{not} used for determining coverage, they are only used for things like attribute interpolation. The rasterization rules that determine coverage are defined in terms of whether the line intersects \textit{pixels}, as opposed to the point sampling rules used for other primitive types. So these rules are independent of the sample locations. One consequence of this is that Bresenham lines cover the same pixels regardless of the number of rasterization samples, and cover all samples in those pixels (unless masked out or killed).

\textbf{25.8. Polygons}

A polygon results from the decomposition of a triangle strip, triangle fan or a series of independent triangles. Like points and line segments, polygon rasterization is controlled by several variables in the \textit{VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateInfo} structure.

\textbf{25.8.1. Basic Polygon Rasterization}

The first step of polygon rasterization is to determine whether the triangle is \textit{back-facing} or \textit{front-facing}. This determination is made based on the sign of the (clipped or unclipped) polygon’s area computed in framebuffer coordinates. One way to compute this area is:

\[
a = -\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} x_i y_{i+1}^1 - x_{i+1} y_i^1
\]

where \( x_i \) and \( y_i \) are the x and y framebuffer coordinates of the ith vertex of the n-vertex polygon (vertices are numbered starting at zero for the purposes of this computation) and \( i \oplus 1 \) is \((i + 1) \mod 1070 | \text{Chapter 25. Rasterization} \)
The interpretation of the sign of a is determined by the `VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateInfo::frontFace` property of the currently active pipeline. Possible values are:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkFrontFace {
    VK_FRONT_FACE_COUNTER_CLOCKWISE = 0,
    VK_FRONT_FACE_CLOCKWISE = 1,
} VkFrontFace;
```

- `VK_FRONT_FACE_COUNTER_CLOCKWISE` specifies that a triangle with positive area is considered front-facing.
- `VK_FRONT_FACE_CLOCKWISE` specifies that a triangle with negative area is considered front-facing.

Any triangle which is not front-facing is back-facing, including zero-area triangles.

Once the orientation of triangles is determined, they are culled according to the `VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateInfo::cullMode` property of the currently active pipeline. Possible values are:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkCullModeFlagBits {
    VK_CULL_MODE_NONE = 0,
    VK_CULL_MODE_FRONT_BIT = 0x00000001,
    VK_CULL_MODE_BACK_BIT = 0x00000002,
    VK_CULL_MODE_FRONT_AND_BACK = 0x00000003,
} VkCullModeFlagBits;
```

- `VK_CULL_MODE_NONE` specifies that no triangles are discarded
- `VK_CULL_MODE_FRONT_BIT` specifies that front-facing triangles are discarded
- `VK_CULL_MODE_BACK_BIT` specifies that back-facing triangles are discarded
- `VK_CULL_MODE_FRONT_AND_BACK` specifies that all triangles are discarded.

Following culling, fragments are produced for any triangles which have not been discarded.

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkCullModeFlags;
```

`VkCullModeFlags` is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more `VkCullModeFlagBits`.

The rule for determining which fragments are produced by polygon rasterization is called *point sampling*. The two-dimensional projection obtained by taking the x and y framebuffer coordinates of the polygon’s vertices is formed. Fragments are produced for any fragment area groups of pixels for which any sample points lie inside of this polygon. Coverage bits that correspond to sample points
points that satisfy the point sampling criteria are 1, other coverage bits are 0. Special treatment is
given to a sample whose sample location lies on a polygon edge. In such a case, if two polygons lie
on either side of a common edge (with identical endpoints) on which a sample point lies, then
exactly one of the polygons must result in a covered sample for that fragment during rasterization.
As for the data associated with each fragment produced by rasterizing a polygon, we begin by
specifying how these values are produced for fragments in a triangle.

Barycentric coordinates are a set of three numbers, a, b, and c, each in the range [0,1], with \(a + b + c = 1\). These coordinates uniquely specify any point \(p\) within the triangle or on the triangle’s boundary as

\[
p = a p_a + b p_b + c p_c
\]

where \(p_a, p_b,\) and \(p_c\) are the vertices of the triangle. \(a, b,\) and \(c\) are determined by:

\[
\begin{align*}
a &= \frac{A(p_bp_c)}{A(p_ap_bp_c)}, & b &= \frac{A(p_c p_a)}{A(p_ap_bp_c)}, & c &= \frac{A(p_a p_b)}{A(p_ap_bp_c)},
\end{align*}
\]

where \(A(lmn)\) denotes the area in framebuffer coordinates of the triangle with vertices \(l, m,\) and \(n.\)

Denote an associated datum at \(p_a, p_b,\) or \(p_c\) as \(f_a, f_b,\) or \(f_c,\) respectively.

The value of an associated datum \(f\) for a fragment produced by rasterizing a triangle, whether it be
a shader output or the clip \(w\) coordinate, must be determined using perspective interpolation:

\[
f = \frac{af_a/w_a + bf_b/w_b + cf_c/w_c}{a/w_a + b/w_b + c/w_c}
\]

where \(w_a, w_b,\) and \(w_c\) are the clip \(w\) coordinates of \(p_a, p_b,\) and \(p_c,\) respectively. \(a, b,\) and \(c\) are the
barycentric coordinates of the location at which the data are produced - this must be the location of
the fragment center or the location of a sample. When \(\text{rasterizationSamples is VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT, the fragment center must be used.}\)

Depth values for triangles must be determined using linear interpolation:

\[
z = a z_a + b z_b + c z_c
\]

where \(z_a, z_b,\) and \(z_c\) are the depth values of \(p_a, p_b,\) and \(p_c,\) respectively.

The NoPerspective and Flat interpolation decorations can be used with fragment shader inputs to
declare how they are interpolated. When neither decoration is applied, perspective interpolation is
performed as described above. When the NoPerspective decoration is used, linear interpolation is
performed in the same fashion as for depth values, as described above. When the Flat decoration is
used, no interpolation is performed, and outputs are taken from the corresponding input value of
the provoking vertex corresponding to that primitive.

For a polygon with more than three edges, such as are produced by clipping a triangle, a convex
combination of the values of the datum at the polygon’s vertices must be used to obtain the value
assigned to each fragment produced by the rasterization algorithm. That is, it must be the case that
at every fragment
where \( n \) is the number of vertices in the polygon and \( f_i \) is the value of \( f \) at vertex \( i \). For each \( i \), \( 0 \leq a_i \leq 1 \) and \( \sum_{i=1}^{n} a_i = 1 \). The values of \( a_i \) may differ from fragment to fragment, but at vertex \( i \), \( a_i = 1 \) and \( a_j = 0 \) for \( j \neq i \).

**Note**

One algorithm that achieves the required behavior is to triangulate a polygon (without adding any vertices) and then treat each triangle individually as already discussed. A scan-line rasterizer that linearly interpolates data along each edge and then linearly interpolates data across each horizontal span from edge to edge also satisfies the restrictions (in this case the numerator and denominator of perspective interpolation are iterated independently, and a division is performed for each fragment).

### 25.8.2. Polygon Mode

Possible values of the `VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateInfo::polygonMode` property of the currently active pipeline, specifying the method of rasterization for polygons, are:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkPolygonMode {
    VK_POLYGON_MODE_FILL = 0,
    VK_POLYGON_MODE_LINE = 1,
    VK_POLYGON_MODE_POINT = 2,
} VkPolygonMode;
```

- `VK_POLYGON_MODE_POINT` specifies that polygon vertices are drawn as points.
- `VK_POLYGON_MODE_LINE` specifies that polygon edges are drawn as line segments.
- `VK_POLYGON_MODE_FILL` specifies that polygons are rendered using the polygon rasterization rules in this section.

These modes affect only the final rasterization of polygons: in particular, a polygon's vertices are shaded and the polygon is clipped and possibly culled before these modes are applied.

### 25.8.3. Depth Bias

The depth values of all fragments generated by the rasterization of a polygon can be offset by a single value that is computed for that polygon. This behavior is controlled by the `depthBiasEnable`, `depthBiasConstantFactor`, `depthBiasClamp`, and `depthBiasSlopeFactor` members of `VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateInfo`, or by the corresponding parameters to the `vkCmdSetDepthBias` command if depth bias state is dynamic.
```c
void vkCmdSetDepthBias(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    float depthBiasConstantFactor,
    float depthBiasClamp,
    float depthBiasSlopeFactor);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
- `depthBiasConstantFactor` is a scalar factor controlling the constant depth value added to each fragment.
- `depthBiasClamp` is the maximum (or minimum) depth bias of a fragment.
- `depthBiasSlopeFactor` is a scalar factor applied to a fragment’s slope in depth bias calculations.

If `depthBiasEnable` is `VK_FALSE` at draw time, no depth bias is applied and the fragment’s depth values are unchanged.

`depthBiasSlopeFactor` scales the maximum depth slope of the polygon, and `depthBiasConstantFactor` scales the minimum resolvable difference of the depth buffer. The resulting values are summed to produce the depth bias value which is then clamped to a minimum or maximum value specified by `depthBiasClamp`, `depthBiasSlopeFactor`, `depthBiasConstantFactor`, and `depthBiasClamp` can each be positive, negative, or zero.

The maximum depth slope $m$ of a triangle is

$$m = \sqrt{\left(\frac{\partial z_f}{\partial x_f}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{\partial z_f}{\partial y_f}\right)^2}$$

where $(x_0, y_0, z_0)$ is a point on the triangle. $m$ may be approximated as

$$m = \max\left(\left|\frac{\partial z_f}{\partial x_f}\right|, \left|\frac{\partial z_f}{\partial y_f}\right|\right).$$

The minimum resolvable difference $r$ is a parameter that depends on the depth buffer representation. It is the smallest difference in framebuffer coordinate $z$ values that is guaranteed to remain distinct throughout polygon rasterization and in the depth buffer. All pairs of fragments generated by the rasterization of two polygons with otherwise identical vertices, but $z_f$ values that differ by $r$, will have distinct depth values.

For fixed-point depth buffer representations, $r$ is constant throughout the range of the entire depth buffer. Its value is implementation-dependent but must be at most

$$r = 2 \times 2^n$$

for an $n$-bit buffer. For floating-point depth buffers, there is no single minimum resolvable difference. In this case, the minimum resolvable difference for a given polygon is dependent on the maximum exponent, $e$, in the range of $z$ values spanned by the primitive. If $n$ is the number of bits in the floating-point mantissa, the minimum resolvable difference, $r$, for the given primitive is
defined as
\[ r = 2^{-e_n} \]
If no depth buffer is present, \( r \) is undefined.

The bias value \( o \) for a polygon is

\[
o = \text{dbclamp}(m \times \text{depthBiasSlopeFactor} + r \times \text{depthBiasConstantFactor})
\]
where
\[
\text{dbclamp}(x) =
\begin{cases}
  x & \text{depthBiasClamp = 0 or NaN} \\
  \min(x, \text{depthBiasClamp}) & \text{depthBiasClamp > 0} \\
  \max(x, \text{depthBiasClamp}) & \text{depthBiasClamp < 0}
\end{cases}
\]

\( m \) is computed as described above. If the depth buffer uses a fixed-point representation, \( m \) is a function of depth values in the range \([0,1]\), and \( o \) is applied to depth values in the same range.

---

**Valid Usage**

- VUID-vkCmdSetDepthBias-depthBiasClamp-00790
  If the **depth bias clamping** feature is not enabled, \text{depthBiasClamp} must be 0.0

---

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-vkCmdSetDepthBias-commandBuffer-parameter
  commandBuffer must be a valid VkCommandBuffer handle

- VUID-vkCmdSetDepthBias-commandBuffer-recording
  commandBuffer must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdSetDepthBias-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must support graphics operations

---

**Host Synchronization**

- Host access to commandBuffer must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must be externally synchronized

---

**Command Properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

---

Chapter 25. Rasterization | 1075
Chapter 26. Fragment Operations

Fragments produced by rasterization go through a number of operations to determine whether or how values produced by fragment shading are written to the framebuffer.

The following fragment operations adhere to rasterization order, and are typically performed in this order:

1. **Scissor test**
2. **Sample mask test**
3. **Fragment shading**
4. **Multisample coverage**
5. **Depth bounds test**
6. **Stencil test**
7. **Depth test**
8. **Sample counting**
9. **Coverage reduction**

The coverage mask generated by rasterization describes the initial coverage of each sample covered by the fragment. Fragment operations will update the coverage mask to add or subtract coverage where appropriate. If a fragment operation results in all bits of the coverage mask being 0, the fragment is discarded, and no further operations are performed. Fragments can also be programmatically discarded in a fragment shader by executing one of:

- `OpTerminateInvocation`
- `OpKill`.

When one of the fragment operations in this chapter is described as “replacing” a fragment shader output, that output is replaced unconditionally, even if no fragment shader previously wrote to that output.

If early per-fragment operations are enabled, fragment shading and multisample coverage operations are instead performed after sample counting.

Once all fragment operations have completed, fragment shader outputs for covered color attachment samples pass through framebuffer operations.

### 26.1. Scissor Test

The scissor test compares the framebuffer coordinates \((x_f, y_f)\) of each sample covered by a fragment against a **scissor rectangle** at the index equal to the fragment’s `ViewportIndex`.

Each scissor rectangle is defined by a `VkRect2D`. These values are either set by the `VkPipelineViewportStateCreateInfo` structure during pipeline creation, or dynamically by the `vkCmdSetScissor` command.
A given sample is considered inside a scissor rectangle if \( x_\text{f} \) is in the range \([VkRect2D::offset.x, VkRect2D::offset.x + VkRect2D::extent.x]\), and \( y_\text{f} \) is in the range \([VkRect2D::offset.y, VkRect2D::offset.y + VkRect2D::extent.y]\). Samples with coordinates outside the scissor rectangle at the corresponding ViewportIndex will have their coverage set to 0.

The scissor rectangles can be set dynamically with the command:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkCmdSetScissor(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    uint32_t firstScissor,
    uint32_t scissorCount,
    const VkRect2D* pScissors);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
- `firstScissor` is the index of the first scissor whose state is updated by the command.
- `scissorCount` is the number of scissors whose rectangles are updated by the command.
- `pScissors` is a pointer to an array of `VkRect2D` structures defining scissor rectangles.

The scissor rectangles taken from element \( i \) of `pScissors` replace the current state for the scissor index \( \text{firstScissor} + i \), for \( i \) in \([0, \text{scissorCount}]\).

This command sets the state for a given draw when the graphics pipeline is created with `VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_SCISSOR` set in `VkPipelineDynamicStateCreateInfo::pDynamicStates`.

**Valid Usage**

- VUID-vkCmdSetScissor-firstScissor-00592
  The sum of `firstScissor` and `scissorCount` must be between 1 and `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxViewports`, inclusive

- VUID-vkCmdSetScissor-firstScissor-00593
  If the multiple viewports feature is not enabled, `firstScissor` must be 0

- VUID-vkCmdSetScissor-scissorCount-00594
  If the multiple viewports feature is not enabled, `scissorCount` must be 1

- VUID-vkCmdSetScissor-x-00595
  The \( x \) and \( y \) members of `offset` member of any element of `pScissors` must be greater than or equal to 0

- VUID-vkCmdSetScissor-offset-00596
  Evaluation of \((\text{offset.x} + \text{extent.width})\) must not cause a signed integer addition overflow for any element of `pScissors`

- VUID-vkCmdSetScissor-offset-00597
  Evaluation of \((\text{offset.y} + \text{extent.height})\) must not cause a signed integer addition overflow for any element of `pScissors`
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdSetScissor-commandBuffer-parameter
  commandBuffer must be a valid VkCommandBuffer handle

- VUID-vkCmdSetScissor-pScissors-parameter
  pScissors must be a valid pointer to an array of scissorCount VkRect2D structures

- VUID-vkCmdSetScissor-commandBuffer-recording
  commandBuffer must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdSetScissor-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must support graphics operations

- VUID-vkCmdSetScissor-scissorCount-arraylength
  scissorCount must be greater than 0

Host Synchronization

- Host access to commandBuffer must be externally synchronized

- Host access to the VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

26.2. Sample Mask Test

The sample mask test compares the coverage mask for a fragment with the sample mask defined by VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo::pSampleMask.

Each bit of the coverage mask is associated with a sample index as described in the rasterization chapter. If the bit in VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo::pSampleMask which is associated with that same sample index is set to 0, the coverage mask bit is set to 0.

26.3. Multisample Coverage

If a fragment shader is active and its entry point’s interface includes a built-in output variable decorated with SampleMask, the coverage mask is ANDed with the bits of the SampleMask built-in to generate a new coverage mask. If sample shading is enabled, bits written to SampleMask corresponding to samples that are not being shaded by the fragment shader invocation are ignored.
If no fragment shader is active, or if the active fragment shader does not include \texttt{SampleMask} in its interface, the coverage mask is not modified.

Next, the fragment alpha value and coverage mask are modified based on the \texttt{alphaToCoverageEnable} and \texttt{alphaToOneEnable} members of the \texttt{VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo} structure.

All alpha values in this section refer only to the alpha component of the fragment shader output that has a \texttt{Location} and \texttt{Index} decoration of zero (see the \texttt{Fragment Output Interface} section). If that shader output has an integer or unsigned integer type, then these operations are skipped.

If \texttt{alphaToCoverageEnable} is enabled, a temporary coverage mask is generated where each bit is determined by the fragment's alpha value, which is ANDed with the fragment coverage mask.

No specific algorithm is specified for converting the alpha value to a temporary coverage mask. It is intended that the number of 1’s in this value be proportional to the alpha value (clamped to \([0,1]\)), with all 1’s corresponding to a value of 1.0 and all 0’s corresponding to 0.0. The algorithm \textbf{may} be different at different framebuffer coordinates.

\textbf{Note}

Using different algorithms at different framebuffer coordinates \textbf{may} help to avoid artifacts caused by regular coverage sample locations.

Finally, if \texttt{alphaToOneEnable} is enabled, each alpha value is replaced by the maximum representable alpha value for fixed-point color buffers, or by 1.0 for floating-point buffers. Otherwise, the alpha values are not changed.

### 26.4. Depth and Stencil Operations

Pipeline state controlling the \texttt{depth bounds tests}, \texttt{stencil test}, and \texttt{depth test} is specified through the members of the \texttt{VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo} structure.

The \texttt{VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo} structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateFlags flags;
    VkBool32 depthTestEnable;
    VkBool32 depthWriteEnable;
    VkBool32 depthCompareOp;
    VkBool32 depthBoundsTestEnable;
    VkBool32 stencilTestEnable;
    VkStencilOpState front;
    VkStencilOpState back;
    float minDepthBounds;
    float maxDepthBounds;
} VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo;

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **flags** is reserved for future use.
- **depthTestEnable** controls whether depth testing is enabled.
- **depthWriteEnable** controls whether depth writes are enabled when depthTestEnable is VK_TRUE. Depth writes are always disabled when depthTestEnable is VK_FALSE.
- **depthCompareOp** is the comparison operator used in the depth test.
- **depthBoundsTestEnable** controls whether depth bounds testing is enabled.
- **stencilTestEnable** controls whether stencil testing is enabled.
- **front** and **back** control the parameters of the stencil test.
- **minDepthBounds** is the minimum depth bound used in the depth bounds test.
- **maxDepthBounds** is the maximum depth bound used in the depth bounds test.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo-depthBoundsTestEnable-00598**
  If the depth bounds testing feature is not enabled, depthBoundsTestEnable must be VK_FALSE.

- **VUID-VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo-separateStencilMaskRef-04453**
  If the VK_KHR_portability_subset extension is enabled, and VkPhysicalDevicePortabilitySubsetFeaturesKHR::separateStencilMaskRef is VK_FALSE, and the value of VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo::stencilTestEnable is VK_TRUE, and the value of VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateInfo::cullMode is VK_CULL_MODE_NONE, the value of reference in each of the VkStencilOpState structs in front and back must be the same.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo-sType-sType**: `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_DEPTH_STENCIL_STATE_CREATE_INFO`
- **VUID-VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo-pNext-pNext**: `pNext` must be `NULL`
- **VUID-VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo-flags-zerobitmask**: `flags` must be `0`
- **VUID-VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo-depthCompareOp-parameter**: `depthCompareOp` must be a valid `VkCompareOp` value
- **VUID-VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo-front-parameter**: `front` must be a valid `VkStencilOpState` structure
- **VUID-VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo-back-parameter**: `back` must be a valid `VkStencilOpState` structure

```
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateFlags;
```

`VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateFlags` is a bitmask type for setting a mask, but is currently reserved for future use.

### 26.5. Depth Bounds Test

The depth bounds test compares the depth value \( z_a \) in the depth/stencil attachment at each sample’s framebuffer coordinates \((x_f, y_f)\) and sample index \( i \) against a set of depth bounds.

The depth bounds are determined by two floating point values defining a minimum (\( \text{minDepthBounds} \)) and maximum (\( \text{maxDepthBounds} \)) depth value. These values are either set by the `VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo` structure during pipeline creation, or dynamically by `vkCmdSetDepthBounds`.

A given sample is considered within the depth bounds if \( z_a \) is in the range \([\text{minDepthBounds}, \text{maxDepthBounds}]\). Samples with depth attachment values outside of the depth bounds will have their coverage set to \( 0 \).

If the depth bounds test is disabled, or if there is no depth attachment, the coverage mask is unmodified by this operation.

To dynamically set the depth bounds range values call:
void vkCmdSetDepthBounds(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    float minDepthBounds,
    float maxDepthBounds);

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
- `minDepthBounds` is the minimum depth bound.
- `maxDepthBounds` is the maximum depth bound.

This command sets the state for a given draw when the graphics pipeline is created with `VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_DEPTH_BOUNDS` set in `VkPipelineDynamicStateCreateInfo::pDynamicStates`.

### Valid Usage

- VUID-vkCmdSetDepthBounds-minDepthBounds-02508
  - `minDepthBounds` must be between 0.0 and 1.0, inclusive

- VUID-vkCmdSetDepthBounds-maxDepthBounds-02509
  - `maxDepthBounds` must be between 0.0 and 1.0, inclusive

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdSetDepthBounds-commandBuffer-parameter
  - `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle

- VUID-vkCmdSetDepthBounds-commandBuffer-recording
  - `commandBuffer` must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdSetDepthBounds-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  - The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support graphics operations

### Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized

- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized
26.6. Stencil Test

The stencil test compares the stencil attachment value $s_a$ in the depth/stencil attachment at each sample's framebuffer coordinates $(x_f, y_f)$ and sample index $i$ against a stencil reference value.

If the stencil test is not enabled, as specified by `VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo::stencilTestEnable`, or if there is no stencil attachment, the coverage mask is unmodified by this operation.

The stencil test is controlled by one of two sets of stencil-related state, the front stencil state and the back stencil state. Stencil tests and writes use the back stencil state when processing fragments generated by back-facing polygons, and the front stencil state when processing fragments generated by front-facing polygons or any other primitives.

The comparison performed is based on the `VkCompareOp`, compare mask $s_c$, and stencil reference value $s_r$ of the relevant state set. The compare mask and stencil reference value are set by either the `VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo` structure during pipeline creation, or by the `vkCmdSetStencilCompareMask` and `vkCmdSetStencilReference` commands respectively. The compare operation is set by `VkStencilOpState::compareOp` during pipeline creation.

The stencil reference and attachment values $s_r$ and $s_a$ are each independently combined with the compare mask $s_c$ using a logical AND operation to create masked reference and attachment values $s'_{sr}$ and $s'_{sa}$. $s'_{sr}$ and $s'_{sa}$ are used as A and B, respectively, in the operation specified by `VkCompareOp`.

If the comparison evaluates to false, the coverage for the sample is set to 0.

A new stencil value $s_g$ is generated according to a stencil operation defined by `VkStencilOp` parameters set by `VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo`. If the stencil test fails, `failOp` defines the stencil operation used. If the stencil test passes however, the stencil op used is based on the depth test - if it passes, `VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo::passOp` is used, otherwise `VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo::depthFailOp` is used.

The stencil attachment value $s_a$ is then updated with the generated stencil value $s_g$ according to the write mask $s_w$ defined by `VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo::writeMask` as:

$$s_a = (s_a \& \neg s_w) \mid (s_g \& s_w)$$

The `VkStencilOpState` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkStencilOpState {
    VkStencilOp failOp;
    VkStencilOp passOp;
    VkStencilOp depthFailOp;
    VkCompareOp compareOp;
    uint32_t compareMask;
    uint32_t writeMask;
    uint32_t reference;
} VkStencilOpState;

• **failOp** is a `VkStencilOp` value specifying the action performed on samples that fail the stencil test.

• **passOp** is a `VkStencilOp` value specifying the action performed on samples that pass both the depth and stencil tests.

• **depthFailOp** is a `VkStencilOp` value specifying the action performed on samples that pass the stencil test and fail the depth test.

• **compareOp** is a `VkCompareOp` value specifying the comparison operator used in the stencil test.

• **compareMask** selects the bits of the unsigned integer stencil values participating in the stencil test.

• **writeMask** selects the bits of the unsigned integer stencil values updated by the stencil test in the stencil framebuffer attachment.

• **reference** is an integer reference value that is used in the unsigned stencil comparison.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkStencilOpState-failOp-parameter
  **failOp** must be a valid `VkStencilOp` value

- VUID-VkStencilOpState-passOp-parameter
  **passOp** must be a valid `VkStencilOp` value

- VUID-VkStencilOpState-depthFailOp-parameter
  **depthFailOp** must be a valid `VkStencilOp` value

- VUID-VkStencilOpState-compareOp-parameter
  **compareOp** must be a valid `VkCompareOp` value

To dynamically set the stencil compare mask call:

```c
void vkCmdSetStencilCompareMask(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    VkStencilFaceFlags faceMask,
    uint32_t compareMask);
```
• **commandBuffer** is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
• **faceMask** is a bitmask of **VkStencilFaceFlagBits** specifying the set of stencil state for which to update the compare mask.
• **compareMask** is the new value to use as the stencil compare mask.

This command sets the state for a given draw when the graphics pipeline is created with **VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_STENCIL_COMPARE_MASK** set in **VkPipelineDynamicStateCreateInfo::pDynamicStates**.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)
- **VUID-vkCmdSetStencilCompareMask-commandBuffer-parameter**
  - **commandBuffer** must be a valid **VkCommandBuffer** handle
- **VUID-vkCmdSetStencilCompareMask-faceMask-parameter**
  - **faceMask** must be a valid combination of **VkStencilFaceFlagBits** values
- **VUID-vkCmdSetStencilCompareMask-faceMask-required bitmask**
  - **faceMask** must not be **0**
- **VUID-vkCmdSetStencilCompareMask-commandBuffer-recording**
  - **commandBuffer** must be in the recording state
- **VUID-vkCmdSetStencilCompareMask-commandBuffer-cmdpool**
  - The **VkCommandPool** that **commandBuffer** was allocated from must support graphics operations

### Host Synchronization
- Host access to **commandBuffer** must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the **VkCommandPool** that **commandBuffer** was allocated from must be externally synchronized

### Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**VkStencilFaceFlagBits** values are:
typedef enum VkStencilFaceFlagBits {
    VK_STENCIL_FACE_FRONT_BIT = 0x00000001,
    VK_STENCIL_FACE_BACK_BIT = 0x00000002,
    VK_STENCIL_FACE_FRONT_AND_BACK = 0x00000003,
    VK_STENCIL_FRONT_AND_BACK = VK_STENCIL_FACE_FRONT_AND_BACK,
} VkStencilFaceFlagBits;

- **VK_STENCIL_FACE_FRONT_BIT** specifies that only the front set of stencil state is updated.
- **VK_STENCIL_FACE_BACK_BIT** specifies that only the back set of stencil state is updated.
- **VK_STENCIL_FACE_FRONT_AND_BACK** is the combination of **VK_STENCIL_FACE_FRONT_BIT** and **VK_STENCIL_FACE_BACK_BIT**, and specifies that both sets of stencil state are updated.

typedef VkFlags VkStencilFaceFlags;

VkStencilFaceFlags is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more VkStencilFaceFlagBits.

To dynamically set the stencil write mask call:

```c
void vkCmdSetStencilWriteMask(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    VkStencilFaceFlags faceMask,
    uint32_t writeMask);
```

- **commandBuffer** is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
- **faceMask** is a bitmask of VkStencilFaceFlagBits specifying the set of stencil state for which to update the write mask, as described above for vkCmdSetStencilCompareMask.
- **writeMask** is the new value to use as the stencil write mask.

This command sets the state for a given draw when the graphics pipeline is created with VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_STENCIL_WRITE_MASK set in VkPipelineDynamicStateCreateInfo::pDynamicStates.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdSetStencilWriteMask-commandBuffer-parameter
  `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle

- VUID-vkCmdSetStencilWriteMask-faceMask-parameter
  `faceMask` must be a valid combination of `VkStencilFaceFlagBits` values

- VUID-vkCmdSetStencilWriteMask-faceMask-required bitmask
  `faceMask` must not be 0

- VUID-vkCmdSetStencilWriteMask-commandBuffer-recording
  `commandBuffer` must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdSetStencilWriteMask-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support graphics operations

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized

- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To dynamically set the stencil reference value call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkCmdSetStencilReference(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    VkStencilFaceFlags faceMask,
    uint32_t reference);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
- `faceMask` is a bitmask of `VkStencilFaceFlagBits` specifying the set of stencil state for which to update the reference value, as described above for `vkCmdSetStencilCompareMask`.
- `reference` is the new value to use as the stencil reference value.

This command sets the state for a given draw when the graphics pipeline is created with `VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_STENCIL_REFERENCE` set in `VkPipelineDynamicStateCreateInfo::pDynamicStates`. 
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdSetStencilReference-commandBuffer-parameter
  commandBuffer must be a valid VkCommandBuffer handle

- VUID-vkCmdSetStencilReference-faceMask-parameter
  faceMask must be a valid combination of VkStencilFaceFlagBits values

- VUID-vkCmdSetStencilReference-faceMask-requiredbitmask
  faceMask must not be 0

- VUID-vkCmdSetStencilReference-commandBuffer-recording
  commandBuffer must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdSetStencilReference-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must support graphics operations

Host Synchronization

- Host access to commandBuffer must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Possible values of VkStencilOpState::compareOp, specifying the stencil comparison function, are:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkCompareOp {
    VK_COMPARE_OP_NEVER = 0,
    VK_COMPARE_OP_LESS = 1,
    VK_COMPARE_OP_EQUAL = 2,
    VK_COMPARE_OP_LESS_OR_EQUAL = 3,
    VK_COMPARE_OP_GREATER = 4,
    VK_COMPARE_OP_NOT_EQUAL = 5,
    VK_COMPARE_OP_GREATER_OR_EQUAL = 6,
    VK_COMPARE_OP_ALWAYS = 7,
} VkCompareOp;
```

- VK_COMPARE_OP_NEVER specifies that the test evaluates to false.
• **VK_COMPARE_OP_LESS** specifies that the test evaluates \( A < B \).
• **VK_COMPARE_OP_EQUAL** specifies that the test evaluates \( A = B \).
• **VK_COMPARE_OP_LESS_OR_EQUAL** specifies that the test evaluates \( A \leq B \).
• **VK_COMPARE_OP_GREATER** specifies that the test evaluates \( A > B \).
• **VK_COMPARE_OP_NOT_EQUAL** specifies that the test evaluates \( A \neq B \).
• **VK_COMPARE_OP_GREATER_OR_EQUAL** specifies that the test evaluates \( A \geq B \).

Possible values of the `failOp`, `passOp`, and `depthFailOp` members of `VkStencilOpState`, specifying what happens to the stored stencil value if this or certain subsequent tests fail or pass, are:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkStencilOp {
    VK_STENCIL_OP_KEEP = 0,
    VK_STENCIL_OP_ZERO = 1,
    VK_STENCIL_OP_REPLACE = 2,
    VK_STENCIL_OP_INCREMENT_AND_CLAMP = 3,
    VK_STENCIL_OP_DECREMENT_AND_CLAMP = 4,
    VK_STENCIL_OP_INVERT = 5,
    VK_STENCIL_OP_INCREMENT_AND_WRAP = 6,
    VK_STENCIL_OP_DECREMENT_AND_WRAP = 7,
} VkStencilOp;
```

• **VK_STENCIL_OP_KEEP** keeps the current value.
• **VK_STENCIL_OP_ZERO** sets the value to 0.
• **VK_STENCIL_OP_REPLACE** sets the value to *reference*.
• **VK_STENCIL_OP_INCREMENT_AND_CLAMP** increments the current value and clamps to the maximum representable unsigned value.
• **VK_STENCIL_OP_DECREMENT_AND_CLAMP** decrements the current value and clamps to 0.
• **VK_STENCIL_OP_INVERT** bitwise-inverts the current value.
• **VK_STENCIL_OP_INCREMENT_AND_WRAP** increments the current value and wraps to 0 when the maximum value would have been exceeded.
• **VK_STENCIL_OP_DECREMENT_AND_WRAP** decrements the current value and wraps to the maximum possible value when the value would go below 0.

For purposes of increment and decrement, the stencil bits are considered as an unsigned integer.

### 26.7. Depth Test

The depth test compares the depth value \( z_a \) in the depth/stencil attachment at each sample's framebuffer coordinates \((x_f, y_f)\) and *sample index* \( i \) against the sample's depth value \( z_r \). If there is no depth attachment then the depth test is skipped.
The depth test occurs in three stages, as detailed in the following sections.

26.7.1. Depth Clamping and Range Adjustment

If \texttt{VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateInfo::depthClampEnable} is enabled, before the sample’s \( z_i \) is compared to \( z_a \), \( z_i \) is clamped to \([\min(n,f),\max(n,f)]\), where \( n \) and \( f \) are the \( \text{minDepth} \) and \( \text{maxDepth} \) depth range values of the viewport used by this fragment, respectively.

If depth clamping is not enabled and \( z_i \) is not in the range \([0, 1]\) then \( z_i \) is undefined following this step.

26.7.2. Depth Comparison

If the depth test is not enabled, as specified by \texttt{VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo::depthTestEnable}, then this step is skipped.

The comparison performed is based on the \texttt{VkCompareOp}, set by \texttt{VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo::depthCompareOp} during pipeline creation. \( z_i \) and \( z_a \) are used as \( A \) and \( B \), respectively, in the operation specified by the \texttt{VkCompareOp}.

If the comparison evaluates to false, the coverage for the sample is set to 0.

26.7.3. Depth Buffer Writes

If depth writes are enabled, as specified by \texttt{VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo::depthWriteEnable}, and the comparison evaluated to true, the depth attachment value \( z_a \) is set to the sample’s depth value \( z_i \).

26.8. Sample Counting

Occlusion queries use query pool entries to track the number of samples that pass all the per-fragment tests. The mechanism of collecting an occlusion query value is described in \textit{Occlusion Queries}.

The occlusion query sample counter increments by one for each sample with a coverage value of 1 in each fragment that survives all the per-fragment tests, including scissor, sample mask, alpha to coverage, stencil, and depth tests.

26.9. Coverage Reduction

Coverage reduction takes the coverage information for a fragment and converts that to a boolean coverage value for each color sample in each pixel covered by the fragment.

26.9.1. Pixel Coverage

Coverage for each pixel is first extracted from the total fragment coverage mask. This consists of \texttt{rasterizationSamples} unique coverage samples for each pixel in the fragment area, each with a unique \texttt{sample index}. If the fragment only contains a single pixel, coverage for the pixel is
equivalent to the fragment coverage.

If the fragment shading rate is set, and the fragment covers multiple pixels, each pixel’s coverage consists of the coverage samples with a pixel index matching that pixel, and each sample retains its unique sample index \(i\).

### 26.9.2. Color Sample Coverage

Once pixel coverage is determined, coverage for each individual color sample corresponding to that pixel is determined.

The number of \(\text{rasterizationSamples}\) is identical to the number of samples in the color attachments. A color sample is covered if the pixel coverage sample with the same sample index \(i\) is covered.
Chapter 27. The Framebuffer

27.1. Blending

Blending combines the incoming source fragment’s R, G, B, and A values with the destination R, G, B, and A values of each sample stored in the framebuffer at the fragment’s \((x_f, y_f)\) location. Blending is performed for each color sample covered by the fragment, rather than just once for each fragment.

Source and destination values are combined according to the blend operation, quadruplets of source and destination weighting factors determined by the blend factors, and a blend constant, to obtain a new set of R, G, B, and A values, as described below.

Blending is computed and applied separately to each color attachment used by the subpass, with separate controls for each attachment.

Prior to performing the blend operation, signed and unsigned normalized fixed-point color components undergo an implied conversion to floating-point as specified by Conversion from Normalized Fixed-Point to Floating-Point. Blending computations are treated as if carried out in floating-point, and basic blend operations are performed with a precision and dynamic range no lower than that used to represent destination components.

Note
Blending is only defined for floating-point, UNORM, SNORM, and sRGB formats. Within those formats, the implementation may only support blending on some subset of them. Which formats support blending is indicated by VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BLEND_BIT.

The pipeline blend state is included in the VkPipelineColorBlendStateCreateInfo structure during graphics pipeline creation:

The VkPipelineColorBlendStateCreateInfo structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkPipelineColorBlendStateCreateInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkPipelineColorBlendStateCreateFlags flags;
    VkBool32 logicOpEnable;
    VkLogicOp logicOp;
    uint32_t attachmentCount;
    const VkPipelineColorBlendAttachmentState* pAttachments;
    float blendConstants[4];
} VkPipelineColorBlendStateCreateInfo;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• **flags** is reserved for future use.
• **logicOpEnable** controls whether to apply Logical Operations.
• **logicOp** selects which logical operation to apply.
• **attachmentCount** is the number of VkPipelineColorBlendAttachmentState elements in pAttachments.
• **pAttachments** is a pointer to an array of per target attachment states.
• **blendConstants** is a pointer to an array of four values used as the R, G, B, and A components of the blend constant that are used in blending, depending on the blend factor.

Each element of the pAttachments array is a VkPipelineColorBlendAttachmentState structure specifying per-target blending state for each individual color attachment. If the independent blending feature is not enabled on the device, all VkPipelineColorBlendAttachmentState elements in the pAttachments array must be identical.

The value of attachmentCount must be greater than the index of all color attachments that are not VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED in VkSubpassDescription::pColorAttachments or VkSubpassDescription2::pColorAttachments for the subpass in which this pipeline is used.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkPipelineColorBlendStateCreateInfo-pAttachments-00605**
  If the independent blending feature is not enabled, all elements of pAttachments must be identical

- **VUID-VkPipelineColorBlendStateCreateInfo-logicOpEnable-00606**
  If the logic operations feature is not enabled, logicOpEnable must be VK_FALSE

- **VUID-VkPipelineColorBlendStateCreateInfo-logicOpEnable-00607**
  If logicOpEnable is VK_TRUE, logicOp must be a valid VkLogicOp value

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkPipelineColorBlendStateCreateInfo-sType-sType**
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_COLOR_BLEND_STATE_CREATE_INFO

- **VUID-VkPipelineColorBlendStateCreateInfo-pNext-pNext**
  pNext must be NULL

- **VUID-VkPipelineColorBlendStateCreateInfo-flags-zerobitmask**
  flags must be 0

- **VUID-VkPipelineColorBlendStateCreateInfo-pAttachments-parameter**
  If attachmentCount is not 0, pAttachments must be a valid pointer to an array of attachmentCount valid VkPipelineColorBlendAttachmentState structures

// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkPipelineColorBlendStateCreateFlags;
 VkPipelineColorBlendStateCreateFlags is a bitmask type for setting a mask, but is currently reserved for future use.

The VkPipelineColorBlendAttachmentState structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkPipelineColorBlendAttachmentState {
    VkBool32 blendEnable;
    VkBlendFactor srcColorBlendFactor;
    VkBlendFactor dstColorBlendFactor;
    VkBlendOp colorBlendOp;
    VkBlendFactor srcAlphaBlendFactor;
    VkBlendFactor dstAlphaBlendFactor;
    VkBlendOp alphaBlendOp;
    VkColorComponentFlags colorWriteMask;
} VkPipelineColorBlendAttachmentState;
```

- **blendEnable** controls whether blending is enabled for the corresponding color attachment. If blending is not enabled, the source fragment's color for that attachment is passed through unmodified.
- **srcColorBlendFactor** selects which blend factor is used to determine the source factors \((S_r, S_g, S_b)\).
- **dstColorBlendFactor** selects which blend factor is used to determine the destination factors \((D_r, D_g, D_b)\).
- **colorBlendOp** selects which blend operation is used to calculate the RGB values to write to the color attachment.
- **srcAlphaBlendFactor** selects which blend factor is used to determine the source factor \(S_a\).
- **dstAlphaBlendFactor** selects which blend factor is used to determine the destination factor \(D_a\).
- **alphaBlendOp** selects which blend operation is use to calculate the alpha values to write to the color attachment.
- **colorWriteMask** is a bitmask of VkColorComponentFlagBits specifying which of the R, G, B, and/or A components are enabled for writing, as described for the Color Write Mask.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkPipelineColorBlendAttachmentState-srcColorBlendFactor-00608**
  If the dual source blending feature is not enabled, `srcColorBlendFactor` must not be `VK_BLEND_FACTOR_SRC1_COLOR`, `VK_BLEND_FACTOR_ONE_MINUS_SRC1_COLOR`, `VK_BLEND_FACTOR_SRC1_ALPHA`, or `VK_BLEND_FACTOR_ONE_MINUS_SRC1_ALPHA`.

- **VUID-VkPipelineColorBlendAttachmentState-dstColorBlendFactor-00609**
  If the dual source blending feature is not enabled, `dstColorBlendFactor` must not be `VK_BLEND_FACTOR_SRC1_COLOR`, `VK_BLEND_FACTOR_ONE_MINUS_SRC1_COLOR`, `VK_BLEND_FACTOR_SRC1_ALPHA`, or `VK_BLEND_FACTOR_ONE_MINUS_SRC1_ALPHA`.

- **VUID-VkPipelineColorBlendAttachmentState-srcAlphaBlendFactor-00610**
  If the dual source blending feature is not enabled, `srcAlphaBlendFactor` must not be `VK_BLEND_FACTOR_SRC1_COLOR`, `VK_BLEND_FACTOR_ONE_MINUS_SRC1_COLOR`, `VK_BLEND_FACTOR_SRC1_ALPHA`, or `VK_BLEND_FACTOR_ONE_MINUS_SRC1_ALPHA`.

- **VUID-VkPipelineColorBlendAttachmentState-dstAlphaBlendFactor-00611**
  If the dual source blending feature is not enabled, `dstAlphaBlendFactor` must not be `VK_BLEND_FACTOR_SRC1_COLOR`, `VK_BLEND_FACTOR_ONE_MINUS_SRC1_COLOR`, `VK_BLEND_FACTOR_SRC1_ALPHA`, or `VK_BLEND_FACTOR_ONE_MINUS_SRC1_ALPHA`.

- **VUID-VkPipelineColorBlendAttachmentState-constantAlphaColorBlendFactors-04454**
  If the `VK_KHR_portability_subset` extension is enabled, and `VkPhysicalDevicePortabilitySubsetFeaturesKHR::constantAlphaColorBlendFactors` is `VK_FALSE`, `srcColorBlendFactor` must not be `VK_BLEND_FACTOR_CONSTANT_ALPHA` or `VK_BLEND_FACTOR_ONE_MINUS_CONSTANT_ALPHA`.

- **VUID-VkPipelineColorBlendAttachmentState-constantAlphaColorBlendFactors-04455**
  If the `VK_KHR_portability_subset` extension is enabled, and `VkPhysicalDevicePortabilitySubsetFeaturesKHR::constantAlphaColorBlendFactors` is `VK_FALSE`, `dstColorBlendFactor` must not be `VK_BLEND_FACTOR_CONSTANT_ALPHA` or `VK_BLEND_FACTOR_ONE_MINUS_CONSTANT_ALPHA`.

Chapter 27. The Framebuffer | 1095
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **srcColorBlendFactor** must be a valid `VkBlendFactor` value
- **dstColorBlendFactor** must be a valid `VkBlendFactor` value
- **colorBlendOp** must be a valid `VkBlendOp` value
- **srcAlphaBlendFactor** must be a valid `VkBlendFactor` value
- **dstAlphaBlendFactor** must be a valid `VkBlendFactor` value
- **alphaBlendOp** must be a valid `VkBlendOp` value
- **colorWriteMask** must be a valid combination of `VkColorComponentFlagBits` values

### 27.1.1. Blend Factors

The source and destination color and alpha blending factors are selected from the enum:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkBlendFactor{
    VK_BLEND_FACTOR_ZERO = 0,
    VK_BLEND_FACTOR_ONE = 1,
    VK_BLEND_FACTOR_SRC_COLOR = 2,
    VK_BLEND_FACTOR_ONE_MINUS_SRC_COLOR = 3,
    VK_BLEND_FACTOR_DST_COLOR = 4,
    VK_BLEND_FACTOR_ONE_MINUS_DST_COLOR = 5,
    VK_BLEND_FACTOR_SRC_ALPHA = 6,
    VK_BLEND_FACTOR_ONE_MINUS_SRC_ALPHA = 7,
    VK_BLEND_FACTOR_DST_ALPHA = 8,
    VK_BLEND_FACTOR_ONE_MINUS_DST_ALPHA = 9,
    VK_BLEND_FACTOR_CONSTANT_COLOR = 10,
    VK_BLEND_FACTOR_ONE_MINUS_CONSTANT_COLOR = 11,
    VK_BLEND_FACTOR_CONSTANT_ALPHA = 12,
    VK_BLEND_FACTOR_ONE_MINUS_CONSTANT_ALPHA = 13,
    VK_BLEND_FACTOR_SRC1_COLOR = 14,
    VK_BLEND_FACTOR_SRC1_ALPHA = 15,
    VK_BLEND_FACTOR_ONE_MINUS_SRC1_COLOR = 16,
    VK_BLEND_FACTOR_ONE_MINUS_SRC1_ALPHA = 17,
    VK_BLEND_FACTOR_SRC1_COLOR = 18,
} VkBlendFactor;
```

The semantics of the enum values are described in the table below:
Table 31. Blend Factors

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VkBlendFactor</th>
<th>RGB Blend Factors $(S_r,S_g,S_b)$ or $(D_r,D_g,D_b)$</th>
<th>Alpha Blend Factor $(S_a$ or $D_a)$</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_BLEND_FACTOR_ZERO</td>
<td>(0,0,0)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_BLEND_FACTOR_ONE</td>
<td>(1,1,1)</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_BLEND_FACTOR_SRC_COLOR</td>
<td>$(R_{s0},G_{s0},B_{s0})$</td>
<td>$A_{s0}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_BLEND_FACTOR_ONE_MINUS_SRC_COLOR</td>
<td>$(1-R_{s0},1-G_{s0},1-B_{s0})$</td>
<td>$1-A_{s0}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_BLEND_FACTOR_DST_COLOR</td>
<td>$(R_d,G_d,B_d)$</td>
<td>$A_d$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_BLEND_FACTOR_ONE_MINUS_DST_COLOR</td>
<td>$(1-R_d,1-G_d,1-B_d)$</td>
<td>$1-A_d$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_BLEND_FACTOR_SRC_ALPHA</td>
<td>$(A_{s0},A_{s0},A_{s0})$</td>
<td>$A_{s0}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_BLEND_FACTOR_ONE_MINUS_SRC_ALPHA</td>
<td>$(1-A_{s0},1-A_{s0},1-A_{s0})$</td>
<td>$1-A_{s0}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_BLEND_FACTOR_DST_ALPHA</td>
<td>$(A_d,A_d,A_d)$</td>
<td>$A_d$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_BLEND_FACTOR_ONE_MINUS_DST_ALPHA</td>
<td>$(1-A_d,1-A_d,1-A_d)$</td>
<td>$1-A_d$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_BLEND_FACTOR_CONSTANT_COLOR</td>
<td>$(R_c,G_c,B_c)$</td>
<td>$A_c$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_BLEND_FACTOR_ONE_MINUS_CONSTANT_COLOR</td>
<td>$(1-R_c,1-G_c,1-B_c)$</td>
<td>$1-A_c$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_BLEND_FACTOR_CONSTANT_ALPHA</td>
<td>$(A_c,A_c,A_c)$</td>
<td>$A_c$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_BLEND_FACTOR_ONE_MINUS_CONSTANT_ALPHA</td>
<td>$(1-A_c,1-A_c,1-A_c)$</td>
<td>$1-A_c$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_BLEND_FACTOR_SRC_ALPHA_SATURATE</td>
<td>$(f,f,f); f = \min(A_{s0},1-A_d)$</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_BLEND_FACTOR_SRC1_COLOR</td>
<td>$(R_{s1},G_{s1},B_{s1})$</td>
<td>$A_{s1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_BLEND_FACTOR_ONE_MINUS_SRC1_COLOR</td>
<td>$(1-R_{s1},1-G_{s1},1-B_{s1})$</td>
<td>$1-A_{s1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_BLEND_FACTOR_SRC1_ALPHA</td>
<td>$(A_{s1},A_{s1},A_{s1})$</td>
<td>$A_{s1}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_BLEND_FACTOR_ONE_MINUS_SRC1_ALPHA</td>
<td>$(1-A_{s1},1-A_{s1},1-A_{s1})$</td>
<td>$1-A_{s1}$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In this table, the following conventions are used:

- $R_{s0},G_{s0},B_{s0}$ and $A_{s0}$ represent the first source color R, G, B, and A components, respectively, for the fragment output location corresponding to the color attachment being blended.

- $R_{s1},G_{s1},B_{s1}$ and $A_{s1}$ represent the second source color R, G, B, and A components, respectively, used in dual source blending modes, for the fragment output location corresponding to the color attachment being blended.

- $R_d,G_d,B_d$ and $A_d$ represent the R, G, B, and A components of the destination color. That is, the color currently in the corresponding color attachment for this fragment/sample.

- $R_c,G_c,B_c$ and $A_c$ represent the blend constant R, G, B, and A components, respectively.

If the pipeline state object is created without the `VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_BLEND_CONSTANTS` dynamic state enabled then the blend constant $(R_c,G_c,B_c,A_c)$ is specified via the `blendConstants` member of `VkPipelineColorBlendStateCreateInfo`.
Otherwise, to dynamically set and change the blend constant, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkCmdSetBlendConstants(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,  
    const float blendConstants[4]);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
- `blendConstants` is a pointer to an array of four values specifying the R, G, B, and A components of the blend constant color used in blending, depending on the blend factor.

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-vkCmdSetBlendConstants-commandBuffer-parameter: `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle
- VUID-vkCmdSetBlendConstants-commandBuffer-recording: `commandBuffer` must be in the recording state
- VUID-vkCmdSetBlendConstants-commandBuffer-cmdpool: The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support graphics operations

**Host Synchronization**

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized

**Command Properties**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Both</td>
<td>Graphics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 27.1.2. Dual-Source Blending

Blend factors that use the secondary color input \((R_s, G_s, B_s, A_s)\) \((\text{VK_BLEND_FACTOR_SRC1_COLOR, VK_BLEND_FACTOR_ONE_MINUS_SRC1_COLOR, VK_BLEND_FACTOR_SRC1_ALPHA, and VK_BLEND_FACTOR_ONE_MINUS_SRC1_ALPHA})\) may consume implementation resources that could otherwise be used for rendering to multiple color attachments. Therefore, the number of color attachments that can be used in a framebuffer may be lower when using dual-source blending.

Dual-source blending is only supported if the `dualSrcBlend` feature is enabled.
The maximum number of color attachments that can be used in a subpass when using dual-source blending functions is implementation-dependent and is reported as the `maxFragmentDualSrcAttachments` member of `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits`.

When using a fragment shader with dual-source blending functions, the color outputs are bound to the first and second inputs of the blender using the Index decoration, as described in Fragment Output Interface. If the second color input to the blender is not written in the shader, or if no output is bound to the second input of a blender, the result of the blending operation is not defined.

### 27.1.3. Blend Operations

Once the source and destination blend factors have been selected, they along with the source and destination components are passed to the blending operations. RGB and alpha components can use different operations. Possible values of `VkBlendOp`, specifying the operations, are:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkBlendOp {
    VK_BLEND_OP_ADD = 0,
    VK_BLEND_OP_SUBTRACT = 1,
    VK_BLEND_OP_REVERSE_SUBTRACT = 2,
    VK_BLEND_OP_MIN = 3,
    VK_BLEND_OP_MAX = 4,
} VkBlendOp;
```
The semantics of the basic blend operations are described in the table below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VkBlendOp</th>
<th>RGB Components</th>
<th>Alpha Component</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_BLEND_OP_ADD</td>
<td>( R = R_{s0} \times S_r + R_d \times D_r )</td>
<td>( A = A_{s0} \times S_a + A_d \times D_a )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( G = G_{s0} \times S_g + G_d \times D_g )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( B = B_{s0} \times S_b + B_d \times D_b )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_BLEND_OP_SUBTRACT</td>
<td>( R = R_{s0} \times S_r - R_d \times D_r )</td>
<td>( A = A_{s0} \times S_a - A_d \times D_a )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( G = G_{s0} \times S_g - G_d \times D_g )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( B = B_{s0} \times S_b - B_d \times D_b )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_BLEND_OP_REVERSE_SUBTRACT</td>
<td>( R = R_d \times D_r - R_{s0} \times S_r )</td>
<td>( A = A_d \times D_a - A_{s0} \times S_a )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( G = G_d \times D_g - G_{s0} \times S_g )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( B = B_d \times D_b - B_{s0} \times S_b )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_BLEND_OP_MIN</td>
<td>( R = \text{min}(R_{s0}, R_d) )</td>
<td>( A = \text{min}(A_{s0}, A_d) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( G = \text{min}(G_{s0}, G_d) )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( B = \text{min}(B_{s0}, B_d) )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_BLEND_OP_MAX</td>
<td>( R = \text{max}(R_{s0}, R_d) )</td>
<td>( A = \text{max}(A_{s0}, A_d) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( G = \text{max}(G_{s0}, G_d) )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>( B = \text{max}(B_{s0}, B_d) )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In this table, the following conventions are used:

- \( R_{s0}, G_{s0}, B_{s0} \) and \( A_{s0} \) represent the first source color \( R, G, B, \) and \( A \) components, respectively.
- \( R_d, G_d, B_d \) and \( A_d \) represent the \( R, G, B, \) and \( A \) components of the destination color. That is, the color currently in the corresponding color attachment for this fragment/sample.
- \( S_r, S_g, S_b \) and \( S_a \) represent the source blend factor \( R, G, B, \) and \( A \) components, respectively.
- \( D_r, D_g, D_b \) and \( D_a \) represent the destination blend factor \( R, G, B, \) and \( A \) components, respectively.

The blending operation produces a new set of values \( R, G, B \) and \( A \), which are written to the framebuffer attachment. If blending is not enabled for this attachment, then \( R, G, B \) and \( A \) are assigned \( R_{s0}, G_{s0}, B_{s0} \) and \( A_{s0} \), respectively.

If the color attachment is fixed-point, the components of the source and destination values and blend factors are each clamped to \([0,1]\) or \([-1,1]\) respectively for an unsigned normalized or signed normalized color attachment prior to evaluating the blend operations. If the color attachment is floating-point, no clamping occurs.

If the numeric format of a framebuffer attachment uses sRGB encoding, the \( R, G, \) and \( B \) destination color values (after conversion from fixed-point to floating-point) are considered to be encoded for the sRGB color space and hence are linearized prior to their use in blending. Each \( R, G, \) and \( B \) component is converted from nonlinear to linear as described in the “sRGB EOTF” section of the Khronos Data Format Specification. If the format is not sRGB, no linearization is performed.

If the numeric format of a framebuffer attachment uses sRGB encoding, then the final \( R, G \) and \( B \) values are converted into the nonlinear sRGB representation before being written to the framebuffer attachment as described in the “sRGB EOTF” section of the Khronos Data Format Specification.

---

1100 | Chapter 27. The Framebuffer
If the numeric format of a framebuffer color attachment is not sRGB encoded then the resulting \(c\) values for R, G and B are unmodified. The value of A is never sRGB encoded. That is, the alpha component is always stored in memory as linear.

If the framebuffer color attachment is `VK_ATTACHMENT_UNUSED`, no writes are performed through that attachment. Writes are not performed to framebuffer color attachments greater than or equal to the `VkSubpassDescription::colorAttachmentCount` or `VkSubpassDescription2::colorAttachmentCount` value.

### 27.2. Logical Operations

The application can enable a logical operation between the fragment's color values and the existing value in the framebuffer attachment. This logical operation is applied prior to updating the framebuffer attachment. Logical operations are applied only for signed and unsigned integer and normalized integer framebuffers. Logical operations are not applied to floating-point or sRGB format color attachments.

Logical operations are controlled by the `logicOpEnable` and `logicOp` members of `VkPipelineColorBlendStateCreateInfo`. If `logicOpEnable` is `VK_TRUE`, then a logical operation selected by `logicOp` is applied between each color attachment and the fragment's corresponding output value, and blending of all attachments is treated as if it were disabled. Any attachments using color formats for which logical operations are not supported simply pass through the color values unmodified. The logical operation is applied independently for each of the red, green, blue, and alpha components. The `logicOp` is selected from the following operations:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkLogicOp {
    VK_LOGIC_OP_CLEAR = 0,
    VK_LOGIC_OP_AND = 1,
    VK_LOGIC_OP_AND_REVERSE = 2,
    VK_LOGIC_OP_COPY = 3,
    VK_LOGIC_OP_AND_INVERTED = 4,
    VK_LOGIC_OP_NO_OP = 5,
    VK_LOGIC_OP_XOR = 6,
    VK_LOGIC_OP_OR = 7,
    VK_LOGIC_OP_NOR = 8,
    VK_LOGIC_OP_EQUIVALENT = 9,
    VK_LOGIC_OP_INVERT = 10,
    VK_LOGIC_OP_OR_REVERSE = 11,
    VK_LOGIC_OP_COPY_INVERTED = 12,
    VK_LOGIC_OP_OR_INVERTED = 13,
    VK_LOGIC_OP_NAND = 14,
    VK_LOGIC_OP_SET = 15,
} VkLogicOp;
```
The logical operations supported by Vulkan are summarized in the following table in which

- \( \neg \) is bitwise invert,
- \( \land \) is bitwise and,
- \( \lor \) is bitwise or,
- \( \oplus \) is bitwise exclusive or,
- \( s \) is the fragment's \( R_{s0}, G_{s0}, B_{s0} \) or \( A_{s0} \) component value for the fragment output corresponding to the color attachment being updated, and
- \( d \) is the color attachment's \( R, G, B \) or \( A \) component value:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Mode</th>
<th>Operation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_LOGIC_OP_CLEAR</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_LOGIC_OP_AND</td>
<td>( s \land d )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_LOGIC_OP_AND_REVERSE</td>
<td>( s \land \neg d )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_LOGIC_OP_COPY</td>
<td>( s )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_LOGIC_OP_AND_INVERTED</td>
<td>( \neg s \land d )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_LOGIC_OP_NO_OP</td>
<td>( d )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_LOGIC_OP_XOR</td>
<td>( s \oplus d )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_LOGIC_OP_OR</td>
<td>( s \lor d )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_LOGIC_OP_NOR</td>
<td>( \neg (s \lor d) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_LOGIC_OP_EQUIVALENT</td>
<td>( \neg (s \oplus d) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_LOGIC_OP_INVERT</td>
<td>( \neg d )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_LOGIC_OP_OR_REVERSE</td>
<td>( s \lor \neg d )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_LOGIC_OP_COPY_INVERTED</td>
<td>( \neg s )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_LOGIC_OP_OR_INVERTED</td>
<td>( \neg s \lor d )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_LOGIC_OP_NAND</td>
<td>( \neg (s \land d) )</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_LOGIC_OP_SET</td>
<td>all 1s</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The result of the logical operation is then written to the color attachment as controlled by the component write mask, described in Blend Operations.

### 27.3. Color Write Mask

Bits which **can** be set in `VkPipelineColorBlendAttachmentState::colorWriteMask` to determine whether the final color values \( R, G, B \) and \( A \) are written to the framebuffer attachment are:
typedef enum VkColorComponentFlagBits {
    VK_COLOR_COMPONENT_R_BIT = 0x00000001,
    VK_COLOR_COMPONENT_G_BIT = 0x00000002,
    VK_COLOR_COMPONENT_B_BIT = 0x00000004,
    VK_COLOR_COMPONENT_A_BIT = 0x00000008,
} VkColorComponentFlagBits;

- **VK_COLOR_COMPONENT_R_BIT** specifies that the R value is written to the color attachment for the appropriate sample. Otherwise, the value in memory is unmodified.
- **VK_COLOR_COMPONENT_G_BIT** specifies that the G value is written to the color attachment for the appropriate sample. Otherwise, the value in memory is unmodified.
- **VK_COLOR_COMPONENT_B_BIT** specifies that the B value is written to the color attachment for the appropriate sample. Otherwise, the value in memory is unmodified.
- **VK_COLOR_COMPONENT_A_BIT** specifies that the A value is written to the color attachment for the appropriate sample. Otherwise, the value in memory is unmodified.

The color write mask operation is applied regardless of whether blending is enabled.

typedef VkFlags VkColorComponentFlags;

*VkColorComponentFlags* is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more *VkColorComponentFlagBits*. 
Chapter 28. Dispatching Commands

Dispatching commands (commands with Dispatch in the name) provoke work in a compute pipeline. Dispatching commands are recorded into a command buffer and when executed by a queue, will produce work which executes according to the bound compute pipeline. A compute pipeline must be bound to a command buffer before any dispatching commands are recorded in that command buffer.

To record a dispatch, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkCmdDispatch(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    uint32_t groupCountX,
    uint32_t groupCountY,
    uint32_t groupCountZ);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
- `groupCountX` is the number of local workgroups to dispatch in the X dimension.
- `groupCountY` is the number of local workgroups to dispatch in the Y dimension.
- `groupCountZ` is the number of local workgroups to dispatch in the Z dimension.

When the command is executed, a global workgroup consisting of \( \text{groupCountX} \times \text{groupCountY} \times \text{groupCountZ} \) local workgroups is assembled.
Valid Usage

• **VUID-vkCmdDispatch-magFilter-04553**
  If a `VkSampler` created with `magFilter` or `minFilter` equal to `VK_FILTER_LINEAR` and `compareEnable` equal to `VK_FALSE` is used to sample a `VkImageView` as a result of this command, then the image view's `format features` **must** contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT`.

• **VUID-vkCmdDispatch-mipmapMode-04770**
  If a `VkSampler` created with `mipmapMode` equal to `VK_SAMPLER_MIPMAP_MODE_LINEAR` and `compareEnable` equal to `VK_FALSE` is used to sample a `VkImageView` as a result of this command, then the image view's `format features` **must** contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT`.

• **VUID-vkCmdDispatch-None-02691**
  If a `VkImageView` is accessed using atomic operations as a result of this command, then the image view's `format features` **must** contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_ATOMIC_BIT`.

• **VUID-vkCmdDispatch-None-02697**
  For each set `n` that is statically used by the `VkPipeline` bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command, a descriptor set **must** have been bound to `n` at the same pipeline bind point, with a `VkPipelineLayout` that is compatible for set `n`, with the `VkPipelineLayout` used to create the current `VkPipeline`, as described in **Pipeline Layout Compatibility**.

• **VUID-vkCmdDispatch-None-02698**
  For each push constant that is statically used by the `VkPipeline` bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command, a push constant value **must** have been set for the same pipeline bind point, with a `VkPipelineLayout` that is compatible for push constants, with the `VkPipelineLayout` used to create the current `VkPipeline`, as described in **Pipeline Layout Compatibility**.

• **VUID-vkCmdDispatch-None-02699**
  Descriptors in each bound descriptor set, specified via `vkCmdBindDescriptorSets`, **must** be valid if they are statically used by the `VkPipeline` bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command.

• **VUID-vkCmdDispatch-None-02700**
  A valid pipeline **must** be bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command.

• **VUID-vkCmdDispatch-commandBuffer-02701**
  If the `VkPipeline` object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command requires any dynamic state, that state **must** have been set or inherited (if the `[VK_NV_inherited_viewport_scissor]` extension is enabled) for `commandBuffer`, and done so after any previously bound pipeline with the corresponding state not specified as dynamic.

• **VUID-vkCmdDispatch-None-02859**
  There **must** not have been any calls to dynamic state setting commands for any state not specified as dynamic in the `VkPipeline` object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command, since that pipeline was bound.

• **VUID-vkCmdDispatch-None-02702**
  If the `VkPipeline` object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a
 VkSampler object that uses unnormalized coordinates, that sampler must not be used to sample from any VkImage with a VkImageView of the type VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_3D, VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE, VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_1D_ARRAY, VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D_ARRAY or VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE_ARRAY, in any shader stage

- VUID-vkCmdDispatch-None-02703
  If the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a VkSampler object that uses unnormalized coordinates, that sampler must not be used with any of the SPIR-V OpImageSample* or OpImageSparseSample* instructions with ImplicitLod, Dref or Proj in their name, in any shader stage

- VUID-vkCmdDispatch-None-02704
  If the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a VkSampler object that uses unnormalized coordinates, that sampler must not be used with any of the SPIR-V OpImageSample* or OpImageSparseSample* instructions that includes a LOD bias or any offset values, in any shader stage

- VUID-vkCmdDispatch-None-02705
  If the robust buffer access feature is not enabled, and if the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a uniform buffer, it must not access values outside of the range of the buffer as specified in the descriptor set bound to the same pipeline bind point

- VUID-vkCmdDispatch-None-02706
  If the robust buffer access feature is not enabled, and if the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a storage buffer, it must not access values outside of the range of the buffer as specified in the descriptor set bound to the same pipeline bind point

- VUID-vkCmdDispatch-OpImageWrite-04469
  If a VkBufferView is accessed using OpImageWrite as a result of this command, then the Type of the Texel operand of that instruction must have at least as many components as the buffer view’s format

- VUID-vkCmdDispatch-OpImageWrite-04469
  If a VkImageView is accessed using OpImageWrite as a result of this command, then the Type of the Texel operand of that instruction must have at least as many components as the image view’s format

- VUID-vkCmdDispatch-groupCountX-00386
  groupCountX must be less than or equal to VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxComputeWorkGroupCount[0]

- VUID-vkCmdDispatch-groupCountY-00387
  groupCountY must be less than or equal to VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxComputeWorkGroupCount[1]

- VUID-vkCmdDispatch-groupCountZ-00388
  groupCountZ must be less than or equal to VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxComputeWorkGroupCount[2]
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdDispatch-commandBuffer-parameter
  commandBuffer must be a valid VkCommandBuffer handle

- VUID-vkCmdDispatch-commandBuffer-recording
  commandBuffer must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdDispatch-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must support compute operations

- VUID-vkCmdDispatch-renderpass
  This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance

Host Synchronization

- Host access to commandBuffer must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To record an indirect dispatching command, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkCmdDispatchIndirect(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    VkBuffer buffer,
    VkDeviceSize offset);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
- `buffer` is the buffer containing dispatch parameters.
- `offset` is the byte offset into `buffer` where parameters begin.

`vkCmdDispatchIndirect` behaves similarly to `vkCmdDispatch` except that the parameters are read by the device from a buffer during execution. The parameters of the dispatch are encoded in a `VkDispatchIndirectCommand` structure taken from `buffer` starting at `offset`. 
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkCmdDispatchIndirect-magFilter-04553
  If a VkSampler created with magFilter or minFilter equal to VK_FILTER_LINEAR and compareEnable equal to VK_FALSE is used to sample a VkImageView as a result of this command, then the image view’s format features must contain VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT

- VUID-vkCmdDispatchIndirect-mipmapMode-04770
  If a VkSampler created with mipmapMode equal to VK_SAMPLER_MIPMAP_MODE_LINEAR and compareEnable equal to VK_FALSE is used to sample a VkImageView as a result of this command, then the image view’s format features must contain VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT

- VUID-vkCmdDispatchIndirect-None-02691
  If a VkImageView is accessed using atomic operations as a result of this command, then the image view’s format features must contain VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_ATOMIC_BIT

- VUID-vkCmdDispatchIndirect-None-02697
  For each set n that is statically used by the VkPipeline bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command, a descriptor set must have been bound to n at the same pipeline bind point, with a VkPipelineLayout that is compatible for set n, with the VkPipelineLayout used to create the current VkPipeline, as described in Pipeline Layout Compatibility

- VUID-vkCmdDispatchIndirect-None-02698
  For each push constant that is statically used by the VkPipeline bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command, a push constant value must have been set for the same pipeline bind point, with a VkPipelineLayout that is compatible for push constants, with the VkPipelineLayout used to create the current VkPipeline, as described in Pipeline Layout Compatibility

- VUID-vkCmdDispatchIndirect-None-02699
  Descriptors in each bound descriptor set, specified via vkCmdBindDescriptorSets, must be valid if they are statically used by the VkPipeline bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command

- VUID-vkCmdDispatchIndirect-None-02700
  A valid pipeline must be bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command

- VUID-vkCmdDispatchIndirect-commandBuffer-02701
  If the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command requires any dynamic state, that state must have been set or inherited (if the [VK_NV_inherited_viewport_scissor] extension is enabled) for commandBuffer, and done so after any previously bound pipeline with the corresponding state not specified as dynamic

- VUID-vkCmdDispatchIndirect-None-02859
  There must not have been any calls to dynamic state setting commands for any state not specified as dynamic in the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command, since that pipeline was bound

- VUID-vkCmdDispatchIndirect-None-02702
  If the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a
VkSampler object that uses unnormalized coordinates, that sampler **must** not be used to sample from any VkImage with a VkImageView of the type VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_3D, VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE, VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_1D_ARRAY, VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D_ARRAY or VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE_ARRAY, in any shader stage

- **VUID-vkCmdDispatchIndirect-None-02703**
  If the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a VkSampler object that uses unnormalized coordinates, that sampler **must** not be used with any of the SPIR-V OpImageSample* or OpImageSparseSample* instructions with ImplicitLod, Dref or Proj in their name, in any shader stage

- **VUID-vkCmdDispatchIndirect-None-02704**
  If the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a VkSampler object that uses unnormalized coordinates, that sampler **must** not be used with any of the SPIR-V OpImageSample* or OpImageSparseSample* instructions that includes a LOD bias or any offset values, in any shader stage

- **VUID-vkCmdDispatchIndirect-None-02705**
  If the robust buffer access feature is not enabled, and if the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a uniform buffer, it **must** not access values outside of the range of the buffer as specified in the descriptor set bound to the same pipeline bind point

- **VUID-vkCmdDispatchIndirect-None-02706**
  If the robust buffer access feature is not enabled, and if the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a storage buffer, it **must** not access values outside of the range of the buffer as specified in the descriptor set bound to the same pipeline bind point

- **VUID-vkCmdDispatchIndirect-None-04115**
  If a VkImageView is accessed using OpImageWrite as a result of this command, then the Type of the Texel operand of that instruction **must** have at least as many components as the image view’s format

- **VUID-vkCmdDispatchIndirect-OpImageWrite-04469**
  If a VkBufferView is accessed using OpImageWrite as a result of this command, then the Type of the Texel operand of that instruction **must** have at least as many components as the buffer view’s format

- **VUID-vkCmdDispatchIndirect-buffer-02708**
  If buffer is non-sparse then it **must** be bound completely and contiguously to a single VkDeviceMemory object

- **VUID-vkCmdDispatchIndirect-buffer-02709**
  buffer **must** have been created with the VK_BUFFER_USAGE_INDIRECT_BUFFER_BIT bit set

- **VUID-vkCmdDispatchIndirect-offset-02710**
  offset **must** be a multiple of 4

- **VUID-vkCmdDispatchIndirect-offset-00407**
  The sum of offset and the size of VkDispatchIndirectCommand **must** be less than or equal to the size of buffer
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdDispatchIndirect-commandBuffer-parameter
  
  commandBuffer must be a valid VkCommandBuffer handle

- VUID-vkCmdDispatchIndirect-buffer-parameter
  
  buffer must be a valid VkBuffer handle

- VUID-vkCmdDispatchIndirect-commandBuffer-recording
  
  commandBuffer must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdDispatchIndirect-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  
  The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must support compute operations

- VUID-vkCmdDispatchIndirect-renderpass
  
  This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance

- VUID-vkCmdDispatchIndirect-commonparent
  
  Both of buffer, and commandBuffer must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same VkDevice

Host Synchronization

- Host access to commandBuffer must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The VkDispatchIndirectCommand structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkDispatchIndirectCommand {
    uint32_t x;
    uint32_t y;
    uint32_t z;
} VkDispatchIndirectCommand;
```

- x is the number of local workgroups to dispatch in the X dimension.
- y is the number of local workgroups to dispatch in the Y dimension.
• $z$ is the number of local workgroups to dispatch in the Z dimension.

The members of `VkDispatchIndirectCommand` have the same meaning as the corresponding parameters of `vkCmdDispatch`.

**Valid Usage**

- VUID-VkDispatchIndirectCommand-x-00417
  - $x$ must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxComputeWorkGroupCount[0]`
- VUID-VkDispatchIndirectCommand-y-00418
  - $y$ must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxComputeWorkGroupCount[1]`
- VUID-VkDispatchIndirectCommand-z-00419
  - $z$ must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxComputeWorkGroupCount[2]`

To record a dispatch using non-zero base values for the components of `WorkgroupId`, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_device_group
void vkCmdDispatchBaseKHR(
  VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
  uint32_t baseGroupX,
  uint32_t baseGroupY,
  uint32_t baseGroupZ,
  uint32_t groupCountX,
  uint32_t groupCountY,
  uint32_t groupCountZ);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
- `baseGroupX` is the start value for the X component of `WorkgroupId`.
- `baseGroupY` is the start value for the Y component of `WorkgroupId`.
- `baseGroupZ` is the start value for the Z component of `WorkgroupId`.
- `groupCountX` is the number of local workgroups to dispatch in the X dimension.
- `groupCountY` is the number of local workgroups to dispatch in the Y dimension.
- `groupCountZ` is the number of local workgroups to dispatch in the Z dimension.

When the command is executed, a global workgroup consisting of $\text{groupCountX} \times \text{groupCountY} \times \text{groupCountZ}$ local workgroups is assembled, with `WorkgroupId` values ranging from $[\text{baseGroup}* + \text{groupCount*}]$ in each component. `vkCmdDispatch` is equivalent to `vkCmdDispatchBase(0,0,0,\text{groupCountX},\text{groupCountY},\text{groupCountZ})`. 
Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkCmdDispatchBase-magFilter-04553**
  If a `VkSampler` created with `magFilter` or `minFilter` equal to `VK_FILTER_LINEAR` and `compareEnable` equal to `VK_FALSE` is used to sample a `VkImageView` as a result of this command, then the image view’s format features must contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT`.

- **VUID-vkCmdDispatchBase-mipmapMode-04770**
  If a `VkSampler` created with `mipmapMode` equal to `VK_SAMPLER_MIPMAP_MODE_LINEAR` and `compareEnable` equal to `VK_FALSE` is used to sample a `VkImageView` as a result of this command, then the image view’s format features must contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT`.

- **VUID-vkCmdDispatchBase-None-02691**
  If a `VkImageView` is accessed using atomic operations as a result of this command, then the image view’s format features must contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_ATOMIC_BIT`.

- **VUID-vkCmdDispatchBase-None-02697**
  For each set `n` that is statically used by the `VkPipeline` bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command, a descriptor set must have been bound to `n` at the same pipeline bind point, with a `VkPipelineLayout` that is compatible for set `n`, with the `VkPipelineLayout` used to create the current `VkPipeline`, as described in Pipeline Layout Compatibility.

- **VUID-vkCmdDispatchBase-None-02698**
  For each push constant that is statically used by the `VkPipeline` bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command, a push constant value must have been set for the same pipeline bind point, with a `VkPipelineLayout` that is compatible for push constants, with the `VkPipelineLayout` used to create the current `VkPipeline`, as described in Pipeline Layout Compatibility.

- **VUID-vkCmdDispatchBase-None-02699**
  Descriptors in each bound descriptor set, specified via `vkCmdBindDescriptorSets`, must be valid if they are statically used by the `VkPipeline` bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command.

- **VUID-vkCmdDispatchBase-None-02700**
  A valid pipeline must be bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command.

- **VUID-vkCmdDispatchBase-commandBuffer-02701**
  If the `VkPipeline` object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command requires any dynamic state, that state must have been set or inherited (if the [VK_NV_inherited_viewport_scissor] extension is enabled) for `commandBuffer`, and done so after any previously bound pipeline with the corresponding state not specified as dynamic.

- **VUID-vkCmdDispatchBase-None-02859**
  There must not have been any calls to dynamic state setting commands for any state not specified as dynamic in the `VkPipeline` object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command, since that pipeline was bound.

- **VUID-vkCmdDispatchBase-None-02702**
  If the `VkPipeline` object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a
 VkSampler object that uses unnormalized coordinates, that sampler **must** not be used to sample from any VkImage with a VkImageView of the type VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_3D, VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE, VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_1D_ARRAY, VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D_ARRAY or VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE_ARRAY, in any shader stage

- VUID-vkCmdDispatchBase-None-02703
  If the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a VkSampler object that uses unnormalized coordinates, that sampler **must** not be used with any of the SPIR-V OpImageSample* or OpImageSparseSample* instructions with ImplicitLod, Dref or Proj in their name, in any shader stage

- VUID-vkCmdDispatchBase-None-02704
  If the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a VkSampler object that uses unnormalized coordinates, that sampler **must** not be used with any of the SPIR-V OpImageSample* or OpImageSparseSample* instructions that includes a LOD bias or any offset values, in any shader stage

- VUID-vkCmdDispatchBase-None-02705
  If the robust buffer access feature is not enabled, and if the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a uniform buffer, it **must** not access values outside of the range of the buffer as specified in the descriptor set bound to the same pipeline bind point

- VUID-vkCmdDispatchBase-None-02706
  If the robust buffer access feature is not enabled, and if the VkPipeline object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a storage buffer, it **must** not access values outside of the range of the buffer as specified in the descriptor set bound to the same pipeline bind point

- VUID-vkCmdDispatchBase-OpImageWrite-04469
  If a VkBufferView is accessed using OpImageWrite as a result of this command, then the Type of the Texel operand of that instruction **must** have at least as many components as the buffer view’s format

- VUID-vkCmdDispatchBase-OpImageWrite-04469
  If a VkImageView is accessed using OpImageWrite as a result of this command, then the Type of the Texel operand of that instruction **must** have at least as many components as the image view’s format

- VUID-vkCmdDispatchBase-baseGroupX-00421
  baseGroupX **must** be less than VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxComputeWorkGroupCount[0]

- VUID-vkCmdDispatchBase-baseGroupX-00422
  baseGroupY **must** be less than VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxComputeWorkGroupCount[1]

- VUID-vkCmdDispatchBase-baseGroupZ-00423
  baseGroupZ **must** be less than VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxComputeWorkGroupCount[2]

- VUID-vkCmdDispatchBase-groupCountX-00424
  groupCountX **must** be less than or equal to VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxComputeWorkGroupCount[0] minus baseGroupX

- VUID-vkCmdDispatchBase-groupCountY-00425
  groupCountY **must** be less than or equal to VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxComputeWorkGroupCount[1] minus baseGroupY
$\max\text{ComputeWorkGroupCount}[1] \text{ minus baseGroupY}$

- **VUID-vkCmdDispatchBase-groupCountZ-00426**

  groupCountZ must be less than or equal to VkPhysicalDeviceLimits$\max\text{ComputeWorkGroupCount}[2] \text{ minus baseGroupZ}$

- **VUID-vkCmdDispatchBase-baseGroupX-00427**

  If any of baseGroupX, baseGroupY, or baseGroupZ are not zero, then the bound compute pipeline must have been created with the VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_DISPATCH_BASE flag

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkCmdDispatchBase-commandBuffer-parameter**

  commandBuffer must be a valid VkCommandBuffer handle

- **VUID-vkCmdDispatchBase-commandBuffer-recording**

  commandBuffer must be in the recording state

- **VUID-vkCmdDispatchBase-commandBuffer-cmdpool**

  The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must support compute operations

- **VUID-vkCmdDispatchBase-renderpass**

  This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance

### Host Synchronization

- Host access to commandBuffer must be externally synchronized

- Host access to the VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must be externally synchronized

### Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Chapter 29. Sparse Resources

As documented in Resource Memory Association, VkBuffer and VkImage resources in Vulkan must be bound completely and contiguously to a single VkDeviceMemory object. This binding must be done before the resource is used, and the binding is immutable for the lifetime of the resource.

Sparse resources relax these restrictions and provide these additional features:

• Sparse resources can be bound non-contiguously to one or more VkDeviceMemory allocations.
• Sparse resources can be re-bound to different memory allocations over the lifetime of the resource.
• Sparse resources can have descriptors generated and used orthogonally with memory binding commands.

29.1. Sparse Resource Features

Sparse resources have several features that must be enabled explicitly at resource creation time. The features are enabled by including bits in the flags parameter of VkImageCreateInfo or VkBufferCreateInfo. Each feature also has one or more corresponding feature enables specified in VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures.

• Sparse binding is the base feature, and provides the following capabilities:
  ◦ Resources can be bound at some defined (sparse block) granularity.
  ◦ The entire resource must be bound to memory before use regardless of regions actually accessed.
  ◦ No specific mapping of image region to memory offset is defined, i.e. the location that each texel corresponds to in memory is implementation-dependent.
  ◦ Sparse buffers have a well-defined mapping of buffer range to memory range, where an offset into a range of the buffer that is bound to a single contiguous range of memory corresponds to an identical offset within that range of memory.
  ◦ Requested via the VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT and VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT bits.
  ◦ A sparse image created using VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT (but not VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT) supports all formats that non-sparse usage supports, and supports both VK_IMAGE_TILING_OPTIMAL and VK_IMAGE_TILING_LINEAR tiling.

• Sparse Residency builds on (and requires) the sparseBinding feature. It includes the following capabilities:
  ◦ Resources do not have to be completely bound to memory before use on the device.
  ◦ Images have a prescribed sparse image block layout, allowing specific rectangular regions of the image to be bound to specific offsets in memory allocations.
  ◦ Consistency of access to unbound regions of the resource is defined by the absence or presence of VkPhysicalDeviceSparseProperties::residencyNonResidentStrict. If this property is present, accesses to unbound regions of the resource are well defined and behave as if the
data bound is populated with all zeros; writes are discarded. When this property is absent, accesses are considered safe, but reads will return undefined values.

- Requested via the `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT` and `VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT` bits.
- Sparse residency support is advertised on a finer grain via the following features:

  - `sparseResidencyBuffer`: Support for creating `VkBuffer` objects with the `VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT`.
  - `sparseResidencyImage2D`: Support for creating 2D single-sampled `VkImage` objects with `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT`.
  - `sparseResidencyImage3D`: Support for creating 3D `VkImage` objects with `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT`.
  - `sparseResidency2Samples`: Support for creating 2D `VkImage` objects with 2 samples and `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT`.
  - `sparseResidency4Samples`: Support for creating 2D `VkImage` objects with 4 samples and `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT`.
  - `sparseResidency8Samples`: Support for creating 2D `VkImage` objects with 8 samples and `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT`.
  - `sparseResidency16Samples`: Support for creating 2D `VkImage` objects with 16 samples and `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT`.

Implementations supporting `sparseResidencyImage2D` are only required to support sparse 2D, single-sampled images. Support for sparse 3D and MSAA images is optional and can be enabled via `sparseResidencyImage3D`, `sparseResidency2Samples`, `sparseResidency4Samples`, `sparseResidency8Samples`, and `sparseResidency16Samples`.

- A sparse image created using `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT` supports all non-compressed color formats with power-of-two element size that non-sparse usage supports. Additional formats may also be supported and can be queried via `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatProperties`. `VK_IMAGE_TILING_LINEAR` tiling is not supported.

  - Sparse aliasing provides the following capability that can be enabled per resource:

    Allows physical memory ranges to be shared between multiple locations in the same sparse resource or between multiple sparse resources, with each binding of a memory location observing a consistent interpretation of the memory contents.

    See [Sparse Memory Aliasing](#) for more information.

### 29.2. Sparse Buffers and Fully-Resident Images

Both `VkBuffer` and `VkImage` objects created with the `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT` or `VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT` bits can be thought of as a linear region of address space. In the `VkImage` case if `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT` is not used, this linear region is entirely opaque, meaning that there is no application-visible mapping between texel location and memory.
Unless `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT` or `VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT` are also used, the entire resource **must** be bound to one or more `VkDeviceMemory` objects before use.

### 29.2.1. Sparse Buffer and Fully-Resident Image Block Size

The sparse block size in bytes for sparse buffers and fully-resident images is reported as `VkMemoryRequirements::alignment`. `alignment` represents both the memory alignment requirement and the binding granularity (in bytes) for sparse resources.

### 29.3. Sparse Partially-Resident Buffers

`VkBuffer` objects created with the `VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT` bit allow the buffer to be made only partially resident. Partially resident `VkBuffer` objects are allocated and bound identically to `VkBuffer` objects using only the `VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT` feature. The only difference is the ability for some regions of the buffer to be unbound during device use.

### 29.4. Sparse Partially-Resident Images

`VkImage` objects created with the `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT` bit allow specific rectangular regions of the image called sparse image blocks to be bound to specific ranges of memory. This allows the application to manage residency at either image subresource or sparse image block granularity. Each image subresource (outside of the mip tail) starts on a sparse block boundary and has dimensions that are integer multiples of the corresponding dimensions of the sparse image block.

**Note**

Applications **can** use these types of images to control LOD based on total memory consumption. If memory pressure becomes an issue the application **can** unbind and disable specific mipmap levels of images without having to recreate resources or modify texel data of unaffected levels.

The application **can** also use this functionality to access subregions of the image in a “megatexture” fashion. The application **can** create a large image and only populate the region of the image that is currently being used in the scene.

### 29.4.1. Accessing Unbound Regions

The following member of `VkPhysicalDeviceSparseProperties` affects how data in unbound regions of sparse resources are handled by the implementation:

- `residencyNonResidentStrict`

If this property is not present, reads of unbound regions of the image will return undefined values. Both reads and writes are still considered **safe** and will not affect other resources or populated regions of the image.
If this property is present, all reads of unbound regions of the image will behave as if the region was bound to memory populated with all zeros; writes will be discarded.

Formatted accesses to unbound memory **may** still alter some component values in the natural way for those accesses, e.g. substituting a value of one for alpha in formats that do not have an alpha component.

Example: Reading the alpha component of an unbacked VK_FORMAT_R8_UNORM image will return a value of 1.0f.

See [Physical Device Enumeration](#) for instructions for retrieving physical device properties.

### Implementor’s Note

For implementations that **cannot** natively handle access to unbound regions of a resource, the implementation **may** allocate and bind memory to the unbound regions. Reads and writes to unbound regions will access the implementation-managed memory instead.

Given that the values resulting from reads of unbound regions are undefined in this scenario, implementations **may** use the same physical memory for all unbound regions of multiple resources within the same process.

#### 29.4.2. Mip Tail Regions

Sparse images created using `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT` (without also using `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT`) have no specific mapping of image region or image subresource to memory offset defined, so the entire image **can** be thought of as a linear opaque address region. However, images created with `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT` do have a prescribed sparse image block layout, and hence each image subresource **must** start on a sparse block boundary. Within each array layer, the set of mip levels that have a smaller size than the sparse block size in bytes are grouped together into a **mip tail region**.

If the `VK_sparse_image_formatAlignedMipSize_BIT` flag is present in the `flags` member of `VkSparseImageFormatProperties`, for the image's `format`, then any mip level which has dimensions that are not integer multiples of the corresponding dimensions of the sparse image block, and all subsequent mip levels, are also included in the mip tail region.

The following member of `VkPhysicalDeviceSparseProperties` **may** affect how the implementation places mip levels in the mip tail region:

- `residencyAlignedMipSize`

Each mip tail region is bound to memory as an opaque region (i.e. **must** be bound using a `VkSparseImageOpaqueMemoryBindInfo` structure) and **may** be of a size greater than or equal to the sparse block size in bytes. This size is guaranteed to be an integer multiple of the sparse block size in bytes.
An implementation may choose to allow each array-layer's mip tail region to be bound to memory independently or require that all array-layer's mip tail regions be treated as one. This is dictated by VK_SPARSE_IMAGE_FORMAT_SINGLE_MIPTAIL_BIT in VkSparseImageMemoryRequirements::flags.

The following diagrams depict how VK_SPARSE_IMAGE_FORMAT_ALIGNED_MIP_SIZE_BIT and VK_SPARSE_IMAGE_FORMAT_SINGLE_MIPTAIL_BIT alter memory usage and requirements.

Figure 17. Sparse Image

In the absence of VK_SPARSE_IMAGE_FORMAT_ALIGNED_MIP_SIZE_BIT and VK_SPARSE_IMAGE_FORMAT_SINGLE_MIPTAIL_BIT, each array layer contains a mip tail region containing texel data for all mip levels smaller than the sparse image block in any dimension.

Mip levels that are as large or larger than a sparse image block in all dimensions can be bound individually. Right-edges and bottom-edges of each level are allowed to have partially used sparse blocks. Any bound partially-used-sparse-blocks must still have their full sparse block size in bytes allocated in memory.
When `VK_SPARSE_IMAGE_FORMAT_SINGLE_MIPTAIL_BIT` is present all array layers will share a single mip tail region.

![Figure 18. Sparse Image with Single Mip Tail](image)

**Note**

The mip tail regions are presented here in 2D arrays simply for figure size reasons. Each mip tail is logically a single array of sparse blocks with an implementation-dependent mapping of texels or compressed texel blocks to sparse blocks.
When `VK_SPARSE_IMAGE_FORMAT_ALIGNED_MIP_SIZE_BIT` is present the first mip level that would contain partially used sparse blocks begins the mip tail region. This level and all subsequent levels are placed in the mip tail. Only the first $N$ mip levels whose dimensions are an exact multiple of the sparse image block dimensions can be bound and unbound on a sparse block basis.

![Sparse Image with Aligned Mip Size and Single Mip Tail](image)

**Figure 20. Sparse Image with Aligned Mip Size and Single Mip Tail**

**Note**

The mip tail region is presented here in a 2D array simply for figure size reasons. It is logically a single array of sparse blocks with an implementation-dependent mapping of texels or compressed texel blocks to sparse blocks.

When both `VK_SPARSE_IMAGE_FORMAT_ALIGNED_MIP_SIZE_BIT` and `VK_SPARSE_IMAGE_FORMAT_SINGLE_MIPTAIL_BIT` are present the constraints from each of these flags are in effect.

### 29.4.3. Standard Sparse Image Block Shapes

Standard sparse image block shapes define a standard set of dimensions for sparse image blocks that depend on the format of the image. Layout of texels or compressed texel blocks within a sparse image block is implementation-dependent. All currently defined standard sparse image block shapes are 64 KB in size.

For block-compressed formats (e.g. `VK_FORMAT_BC5_UNORM_BLOCK`), the texel size is the size of the compressed texel block (e.g. 128-bit for BC5) thus the dimensions of the standard sparse image block shapes apply in terms of compressed texel blocks.
**Note**

For block-compressed formats, the dimensions of a sparse image block in terms of texels can be calculated by multiplying the sparse image block dimensions by the compressed texel block dimensions.
Table 34. Standard Sparse Image Block Shapes (Single Sample)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TEXEL SIZE (bits)</th>
<th>Block Shape (2D)</th>
<th>Block Shape (3D)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8-Bit</td>
<td>256 × 256 × 1</td>
<td>64 × 32 × 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16-Bit</td>
<td>256 × 128 × 1</td>
<td>32 × 32 × 32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32-Bit</td>
<td>128 × 128 × 1</td>
<td>32 × 32 × 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64-Bit</td>
<td>128 × 64 × 1</td>
<td>32 × 16 × 16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128-Bit</td>
<td>64 × 64 × 1</td>
<td>16 × 16 × 16</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 35. Standard Sparse Image Block Shapes (MSAA)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>TEXEL SIZE (bits)</th>
<th>Block Shape (2X)</th>
<th>Block Shape (4X)</th>
<th>Block Shape (8X)</th>
<th>Block Shape (16X)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8-Bit</td>
<td>128 × 256 × 1</td>
<td>128 × 128 × 1</td>
<td>64 × 128 × 1</td>
<td>64 × 64 × 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16-Bit</td>
<td>128 × 128 × 1</td>
<td>128 × 64 × 1</td>
<td>64 × 64 × 1</td>
<td>64 × 32 × 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32-Bit</td>
<td>64 × 128 × 1</td>
<td>64 × 64 × 1</td>
<td>32 × 64 × 1</td>
<td>32 × 32 × 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64-Bit</td>
<td>64 × 64 × 1</td>
<td>64 × 32 × 1</td>
<td>32 × 32 × 1</td>
<td>32 × 16 × 1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128-Bit</td>
<td>32 × 64 × 1</td>
<td>32 × 32 × 1</td>
<td>16 × 32 × 1</td>
<td>16 × 16 × 1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Implementations that support the standard sparse image block shape for all formats listed in the Standard Sparse Image Block Shapes (Single Sample) and Standard Sparse Image Block Shapes (MSAA) tables may advertise the following VkPhysicalDeviceSparseProperties:

- `residencyStandard2DBlockShape`
- `residencyStandard2DMultisampleBlockShape`
- `residencyStandard3DBlockShape`

Reporting each of these features does not imply that all possible image types are supported as sparse. Instead, this indicates that no supported sparse image of the corresponding type will use custom sparse image block dimensions for any formats that have a corresponding standard sparse image block shape.

### 29.4.4. Custom Sparse Image Block Shapes

An implementation that does not support a standard image block shape for a particular sparse partially-resident image may choose to support a custom sparse image block shape for it instead. The dimensions of such a custom sparse image block shape are reported in VkSparseImageFormatProperties::imageGranularity. As with standard sparse image block shapes, the size in bytes of the custom sparse image block shape will be reported in VkMemoryRequirements::alignment.

Custom sparse image block dimensions are reported through vkGetPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatProperties and vkGetImageSparseMemoryRequirements.

An implementation must not support both the standard sparse image block shape and a custom
sparse image block shape for the same image. The standard sparse image block shape must be used if it is supported.

### 29.4.5. Multiple Aspects

Partially resident images are allowed to report separate sparse properties for different aspects of the image. One example is for depthStencil images where the implementation separates the depth and stencil data into separate planes. Another reason for multiple aspects is to allow the application to manage memory allocation for implementation-private metadata associated with the image. See the figure below:

**Figure 21. Multiple Aspect Sparse Image**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Depth</th>
<th>Stencil</th>
<th>Metadata</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Mip Level 0" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Mip Level 1" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Mip Level 2" /></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><img src="image" alt="Mip Level 3" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Mip Tail" /></td>
<td><img src="image" alt="Mip Tail" /></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Note*

The mip tail regions are presented here in 2D arrays simply for figure size reasons. Each mip tail is logically a single array of sparse blocks with an implementation-dependent mapping of texels or compressed texel blocks to sparse blocks.

In the figure above the depth, stencil, and metadata aspects all have unique sparse properties. The per-texel stencil data is $\frac{1}{4}$ the size of the depth data, hence the stencil sparse blocks include $4 \times$ the number of texels. The sparse block size in bytes for all of the aspects is identical and defined by `VkMemoryRequirements::alignment`.

**Metadata**

The metadata aspect of an image has the following constraints:
• All metadata is reported in the mip tail region of the metadata aspect.
• All metadata must be bound prior to device use of the sparse image.

29.5. Sparse Memory Aliasing

By default sparse resources have the same aliasing rules as non-sparse resources. See Memory Aliasing for more information.

VkDevice objects that have the sparseResidencyAliased feature enabled are able to use the VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_ALIASED_BIT and VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_ALIASED_BIT flags for resource creation. These flags allow resources to access physical memory bound into multiple locations within one or more sparse resources in a data consistent fashion. This means that reading physical memory from multiple aliased locations will return the same value.

Care must be taken when performing a write operation to aliased physical memory. Memory dependencies must be used to separate writes to one alias from reads or writes to another alias. Writes to aliased memory that are not properly guarded against accesses to different aliases will have undefined results for all accesses to the aliased memory.

Applications that wish to make use of data consistent sparse memory aliasing must abide by the following guidelines:

• All sparse resources that are bound to aliased physical memory must be created with the VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_ALIASED_BIT / VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_ALIASED_BIT flag.
• All resources that access aliased physical memory must interpret the memory in the same way. This implies the following:
  ◦ Buffers and images cannot alias the same physical memory in a data consistent fashion. The physical memory ranges must be used exclusively by buffers or used exclusively by images for data consistency to be guaranteed.
  ◦ Memory in sparse image mip tail regions cannot access aliased memory in a data consistent fashion.
  ◦ Sparse images that alias the same physical memory must have compatible formats and be using the same sparse image block shape in order to access aliased memory in a data consistent fashion.

Failure to follow any of the above guidelines will require the application to abide by the normal, non-sparse resource aliasing rules. In this case memory cannot be accessed in a data consistent fashion.

Note

Enabling sparse resource memory aliasing can be a way to lower physical memory use, but it may reduce performance on some implementations. An application developer can test on their target HW and balance the memory / performance trade-offs measured.
29.6. Sparse Resource Implementation Guidelines (Informative)
This section is Informative. It is included to aid in implementors’ understanding of sparse resources.

Device Virtual Address

The basic **sparseBinding** feature allows the resource to reserve its own device virtual address range at resource creation time rather than relying on a bind operation to set this. Without any other creation flags, no other constraints are relaxed compared to normal resources. All pages **must** be bound to physical memory before the device accesses the resource.

The **sparse residency** features allow sparse resources to be used even when not all pages are bound to memory. Implementations that support access to unbound pages without causing a **fault** **may** support **residencyNonResidentStrict**.

Not faulting on access to unbound pages is not enough to support **residencyNonResidentStrict**. An implementation **must** also guarantee that reads after writes to unbound regions of the resource always return data for the read as if the memory contains zeros. Depending on any caching hierarchy of the implementation this **may** not always be possible.

Any implementation that does not fault, but does not guarantee correct read values **must** not support **residencyNonResidentStrict**.

Any implementation that **cannot** access unbound pages without causing a fault will require the implementation to bind the entire device virtual address range to physical memory. Any pages that the application does not bind to memory **may** be bound to one (or more) "`placeholder" physical page(s) allocated by the implementation. Given the following properties:

- A process **must** not access memory from another process
- Reads return undefined values

It is sufficient for each host process to allocate these placeholder pages and use them for all resources in that process. Implementations **may** allocate more often (per instance, per device, or per resource).

Binding Memory

The byte size reported in **VkMemoryRequirements::size** **must** be greater than or equal to the amount of physical memory **required** to fully populate the resource. Some implementations require “holes” in the device virtual address range that are never accessed. These holes **may** be included in the **size** reported for the resource.

Including or not including the device virtual address holes in the resource size will alter how the implementation provides support for **VkSparseImageOpaqueMemoryBindInfo**. This operation **must** be supported for all sparse images, even ones created with **VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT**.

- If the holes are included in the size, this bind function becomes very easy. In most cases the **resourceOffset** is simply a device virtual address offset and the implementation can easily determine what device virtual address to bind. The cost is that the application **may**
allocate more physical memory for the resource than it needs.

- If the holes are not included in the size, the application can allocate less physical memory than otherwise for the resource. However, in this case the implementation must account for the holes when mapping resourceOffset to the actual device virtual address intended to be mapped.

\[ \text{Note} \]

If the application always uses VkSparseImageMemoryBindInfo to bind memory for the non-tail mip levels, any holes that are present in the resource size may never be bound.

Since VkSparseImageMemoryBindInfo uses texel locations to determine which device virtual addresses to bind, it is impossible to bind device virtual address holes with this operation.

**Binding Metadata Memory**

All metadata for sparse images have their own sparse properties and are embedded in the mip tail region for said properties. See the Multiaspect section for details.

Given that metadata is in a mip tail region, and the mip tail region must be reported as contiguous (either globally or per-array-layer), some implementations will have to resort to complicated offset → device virtual address mapping for handling VkSparseImageOpaqueMemoryBindInfo.

To make this easier on the implementation, the VK_SPARSE_MEMORY_BIND_METADATA_BIT explicitly specifies when metadata is bound with VkSparseImageOpaqueMemoryBindInfo. When this flag is not present, the resourceOffset may be treated as a strict device virtual address offset.

When VK_SPARSE_MEMORY_BIND_METADATA_BIT is present, the resourceOffset must have been derived explicitly from the imageMipTailOffset in the sparse resource properties returned for the metadata aspect. By manipulating the value returned for imageMipTailOffset, the resourceOffset does not have to correlate directly to a device virtual address offset, and may instead be whatever value makes it easiest for the implementation to derive the correct device virtual address.

### 29.7. Sparse Resource API

The APIs related to sparse resources are grouped into the following categories:

- Physical Device Features
- Physical Device Sparse Properties
- Sparse Image Format Properties
- Sparse Resource Creation
- Sparse Resource Memory Requirements
- Binding Resource Memory
29.7.1. Physical Device Features

Some sparse-resource related features are reported and enabled in VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures. These features must be supported and enabled on the VkDevice object before applications can use them. See Physical Device Features for information on how to get and set enabled device features, and for more detailed explanations of these features.

Sparse Physical Device Features

- **sparseBinding**: Support for creating VkBuffer and VkImage objects with the VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT and VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT flags, respectively.
- **sparseResidencyBuffer**: Support for creating VkBuffer objects with the VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT flag.
- **sparseResidencyImage2D**: Support for creating 2D single-sampled VkImage objects with VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT.
- **sparseResidencyImage3D**: Support for creating 3D VkImage objects with VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT.
- **sparseResidency2Samples**: Support for creating 2D VkImage objects with 2 samples and VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT.
- **sparseResidency4Samples**: Support for creating 2D VkImage objects with 4 samples and VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT.
- **sparseResidency8Samples**: Support for creating 2D VkImage objects with 8 samples and VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT.
- **sparseResidency16Samples**: Support for creating 2D VkImage objects with 16 samples and VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT.
- **sparseResidencyAliased**: Support for creating VkBuffer and VkImage objects with the VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_ALIASED_BIT and VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_ALIASED_BIT flags, respectively.

29.7.2. Physical Device Sparse Properties

Some features of the implementation are not possible to disable, and are reported to allow applications to alter their sparse resource usage accordingly. These read-only capabilities are reported in the VkPhysicalDeviceProperties::sparseProperties member, which is a VkPhysicalDeviceSparseProperties structure.

The VkPhysicalDeviceSparseProperties structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceSparseProperties {
    VkBool32 residencyStandard2DBlockShape;
    VkBool32 residencyStandard2DMultisampleBlockShape;
    VkBool32 residencyStandard3DBlockShape;
    VkBool32 residencyAlignedMipSize;
    VkBool32 residencyNonResidentStrict;
} VkPhysicalDeviceSparseProperties;
```
• residencyStandard2DBlockShape is VK_TRUE if the physical device will access all single-sample 2D sparse resources using the standard sparse image block shapes (based on image format), as described in the Standard Sparse Image Block Shapes (Single Sample) table. If this property is not supported the value returned in the imageGranularity member of the VkSparseImageFormatProperties structure for single-sample 2D images is not required to match the standard sparse image block dimensions listed in the table.

• residencyStandard2DMultisampleBlockShape is VK_TRUE if the physical device will access all multisample 2D sparse resources using the standard sparse image block shapes (based on image format), as described in the Standard Sparse Image Block Shapes (MSAA) table. If this property is not supported, the value returned in the imageGranularity member of the VkSparseImageFormatProperties structure for multisample 2D images is not required to match the standard sparse image block dimensions listed in the table.

• residencyStandard3DBlockShape is VK_TRUE if the physical device will access all 3D sparse resources using the standard sparse image block shapes (based on image format), as described in the Standard Sparse Image Block Shapes (Single Sample) table. If this property is not supported, the value returned in the imageGranularity member of the VkSparseImageFormatProperties structure for 3D images is not required to match the standard sparse image block dimensions listed in the table.

• residencyAlignedMipSize is VK_TRUE if images with mip level dimensions that are not integer multiples of the corresponding dimensions of the sparse image block may be placed in the mip tail. If this property is not reported, only mip levels with dimensions smaller than the imageGranularity member of the VkSparseImageFormatProperties structure will be placed in the mip tail. If this property is reported the implementation is allowed to return VK_SPARSE_IMAGE_FORMAT_ALIGNED_MIP_SIZE_BIT in the flags member of VkSparseImageFormatProperties, indicating that mip level dimensions that are not integer multiples of the corresponding dimensions of the sparse image block will be placed in the mip tail.

• residencyNonResidentStrict specifies whether the physical device can consistently access non-resident regions of a resource. If this property is VK_TRUE, access to non-resident regions of resources will be guaranteed to return values as if the resource was populated with 0; writes to non-resident regions will be discarded.

29.7.3. Sparse Image Format Properties

Given that certain aspects of sparse image support, including the sparse image block dimensions, may be implementation-dependent, vkGetPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatProperties can be used to query for sparse image format properties prior to resource creation. This command is used to check whether a given set of sparse image parameters is supported and what the sparse image block shape will be.

Sparse Image Format Properties API

The VkSparseImageFormatProperties structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkSparseImageFormatProperties {
    VkImageAspectFlags aspectMask;
    VkExtent3D imageGranularity;
    VkSparseImageFormatFlags flags;
} VkSparseImageFormatProperties;

- **aspectMask** is a bitmask `VkImageAspectFlagBits` specifying which aspects of the image the properties apply to.

- **imageGranularity** is the width, height, and depth of the sparse image block in texels or compressed texel blocks.

- **flags** is a bitmask of `VkSparseImageFormatFlagBits` specifying additional information about the sparse resource.

Bits which may be set in `VkSparseImageFormatProperties::flags`, specifying additional information about the sparse resource, are:

typedef enum VkSparseImageFormatFlagBits {
    VK_SPARSE_IMAGE_FORMAT_SINGLE_MIPTAIL_BIT = 0x00000001,
    VK_SPARSE_IMAGE_FORMAT_ALIGNED_MIP_SIZE_BIT = 0x00000002,
    VK_SPARSE_IMAGE_FORMAT_NONSTANDARD_BLOCK_SIZE_BIT = 0x00000004,
} VkSparseImageFormatFlagBits;

- **VK_SPARSE_IMAGE_FORMAT_SINGLE_MIPTAIL_BIT** specifies that the image uses a single mip tail region for all array layers.

- **VK_SPARSE_IMAGE_FORMAT_ALIGNED_MIP_SIZE_BIT** specifies that the first mip level whose dimensions are not integer multiples of the corresponding dimensions of the sparse image block begins the mip tail region.

- **VK_SPARSE_IMAGE_FORMAT_NONSTANDARD_BLOCK_SIZE_BIT** specifies that the image uses non-standard sparse image block dimensions, and the `imageGranularity` values do not match the standard sparse image block dimensions for the given format.

typedef VkFlags VkSparseImageFormatFlags;

`VkSparseImageFormatFlags` is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more `VkSparseImageFormatFlagBits`.

`vkGetPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatProperties` returns an array of `VkSparseImageFormatProperties`. Each element will describe properties for one set of image aspects that are bound simultaneously in the image. This is usually one element for each aspect in the image, but for interleaved depth/stencil images there is only one element describing the combined aspects.
void vkGetPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatProperties(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    VkFormat format,
    VkImageType type,
    VkSampleCountFlagBits samples,
    VkImageUsageFlags usage,
    VkImageTiling tiling,
    uint32_t* pPropertyCount,
    VkSparseImageFormatProperties* pProperties);

- **physicalDevice** is the physical device from which to query the sparse image format properties.
- **format** is the image format.
- **type** is the dimensionality of image.
- **samples** is a `VkSampleCountFlagBits` value specifying the number of samples per texel.
- **usage** is a bitmask describing the intended usage of the image.
- **tiling** is the tiling arrangement of the texel blocks in memory.
- **pPropertyCount** is a pointer to an integer related to the number of sparse format properties available or queried, as described below.
- **pProperties** is either `NULL` or a pointer to an array of `VkSparseImageFormatProperties` structures.

If `pProperties` is `NULL`, then the number of sparse format properties available is returned in `pPropertyCount`. Otherwise, `pPropertyCount` must point to a variable set by the user to the number of elements in the `pProperties` array, and on return the variable is overwritten with the number of structures actually written to `pProperties`. If `pPropertyCount` is less than the number of sparse format properties available, at most `pPropertyCount` structures will be written.

If `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT` is not supported for the given arguments, `pPropertyCount` will be set to zero upon return, and no data will be written to `pProperties`.

Multiple aspects are returned for depth/stencil images that are implemented as separate planes by the implementation. The depth and stencil data planes each have unique `VkSparseImageFormatProperties` data.

Depth/stencil images with depth and stencil data interleaved into a single plane will return a single `VkSparseImageFormatProperties` structure with the `aspectMask` set to `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_DEPTH_BIT` | `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_STENCIL_BIT`. 
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatProperties-samples-01094

  `samples` must be a bit value that is set in `VkImageFormatProperties::sampleCounts` returned by `vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties` with `format`, `type`, `tiling`, and `usage` equal to those in this command and `flags` equal to the value that is set in `VkImageCreateInfo ::flags` when the image is created.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatProperties-physicalDevice-parameter

  `physicalDevice` must be a valid `VkPhysicalDevice` handle.

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatProperties-format-parameter

  `format` must be a valid `VkFormat` value.

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatProperties-type-parameter

  `type` must be a valid `VkImageType` value.

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatProperties-samples-parameter

  `samples` must be a valid `VkSampleCountFlagBits` value.

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatProperties-usage-parameter

  `usage` must be a valid combination of `VkImageUsageFlagBits` values.

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatProperties-usage-requiredbitmask

  `usage` must not be 0.

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatProperties-tiling-parameter

  `tiling` must be a valid `VkImageTiling` value.

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatProperties-pPropertyCount-parameter

  `pPropertyCount` must be a valid pointer to a `uint32_t` value.


  If the value referenced by `pPropertyCount` is not 0, and `pProperties` is not NULL, `pProperties` must be a valid pointer to an array of `pPropertyCount` `VkSparseImageFormatProperties` structures.

`vkGetPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatProperties2` returns an array of `VkSparseImageFormatProperties2`. Each element will describe properties for one set of image aspects that are bound simultaneously in the image. This is usually one element for each aspect in the image, but for interleaved depth/stencil images there is only one element describing the combined aspects.
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2
void vkGetPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatProperties2KHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    const VkPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatInfo2* pFormatInfo,
    uint32_t* pPropertyCount,
    VkSparseImageFormatProperties2* pProperties);

• physicalDevice is the physical device from which to query the sparse image format properties.
• pFormatInfo is a pointer to a VkPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatInfo2 structure containing input parameters to the command.
• pPropertyCount is a pointer to an integer related to the number of sparse format properties available or queried, as described below.
• pProperties is either NULL or a pointer to an array of VkSparseImageFormatProperties2 structures.

vkGetPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatProperties2 behaves identically to vkGetPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatProperties, with the ability to return extended information by adding extending structures to the pNext chain of its pProperties parameter.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

• VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatProperties2-physicalDevice-parameter
  physicalDevice must be a valid VkPhysicalDevice handle

• VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatProperties2-pFormatInfo-parameter
  pFormatInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid VkPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatInfo2 structure

• VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatProperties2-pPropertyCount-parameter
  pPropertyCount must be a valid pointer to a uint32_t value

• VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatProperties2-pProperties-parameter
  If the value referenced by pPropertyCount is not 0, and pProperties is not NULL, pProperties must be a valid pointer to an array of pPropertyCount VkSparseImageFormatProperties2 structures

The VkPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatInfo2 structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatInfo2 {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkFormat format;
    VkImageType type;
    VkSampleCountFlagBits samples;
    VkImageUsageFlags usage;
    VkImageTiling tiling;
} VkPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatInfo2;

or the equivalent

// Provided by VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2
typedef VkPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatInfo2
    VkPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatInfo2KHR;

• **sType** is the type of this structure.
• **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• **format** is the image format.
• **type** is the dimensionality of image.
• **samples** is a **VkSampleCountFlagBits** value specifying the number of samples per texel.
• **usage** is a bitmask describing the intended usage of the image.
• **tiling** is the tiling arrangement of the texel blocks in memory.

Valid Usage

• VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatInfo2-samples-01095
  
  **samples** **must** be a bit value that is set in **VkImageFormatProperties::sampleCounts** returned by **vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties** with **format**, **type**, **tiling**, and **usage** equal to those in this command and **flags** equal to the value that is set in **VkImageCreateInfo::flags** when the image is created
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatInfo2-sType-sType
  *sType* must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SPARSE_IMAGE_FORMAT_INFO_2`

- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatInfo2-pNext-pNext
  *pNext* must be `NULL`

- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatInfo2-format-parameter
  *format* must be a valid `VkFormat` value

- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatInfo2-type-parameter
  *type* must be a valid `VkImageType` value

- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatInfo2-samples-parameter
  *samples* must be a valid `VkSampleCountFlagBits` value

- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatInfo2-usage-parameter
  *usage* must be a valid combination of `VkImageUsageFlagBits` values

- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatInfo2-usage-requiredbitmask
  *usage* must not be `0`

- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatInfo2-tiling-parameter
  *tiling* must be a valid `VkImageTiling` value

The `VkSparseImageFormatProperties2` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkSparseImageFormatProperties2 {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkSparseImageFormatProperties properties;
} VkSparseImageFormatProperties2;
```

or the equivalent

```
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2
typedef VkSparseImageFormatProperties2 VkSparseImageFormatProperties2KHR;
```

- *sType* is the type of this structure.
- *pNext* is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- *properties* is a `VkSparseImageFormatProperties` structure which is populated with the same values as in `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatProperties`. 
29.7.4. Sparse Resource Creation

Sparse resources require that one or more sparse feature flags be specified (as part of the `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures` structure described previously in the Physical Device Features section) when calling `vkCreateDevice`. When the appropriate device features are enabled, the `VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_*` and `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_*` flags can be used. See `vkCreateBuffer` and `vkCreateImage` for details of the resource creation APIs.

Note

Specifying `VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT` or `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT` requires specifying `VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT` or `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT`, respectively, as well. This means that resources must be created with the appropriate *_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT to be used with the sparse binding command (`vkQueueBindSparse`).

29.7.5. Sparse Resource Memory Requirements

Sparse resources have specific memory requirements related to binding sparse memory. These memory requirements are reported differently for `VkBuffer` objects and `VkImage` objects.

Buffer and Fully-Resident Images

Buffers (both fully and partially resident) and fully-resident images can be bound to memory using only the data from `VkMemoryRequirements`. For all sparse resources the `VkMemoryRequirements::alignment` member specifies both the bindable sparse block size in bytes and required alignment of `VkDeviceMemory`.

Partially Resident Images

Partially resident images have a different method for binding memory. As with buffers and fully resident images, the `VkMemoryRequirements::alignment` field specifies the bindable sparse block size in bytes for the image.

Requesting sparse memory requirements for `VkImage` objects using `vkGetImageSparseMemoryRequirements` will return an array of one or more `VkSparseImageMemoryRequirements` structures. Each structure describes the sparse memory requirements for a group of aspects of the image.

The sparse image must have been created using the `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT` flag to
retrieve valid sparse image memory requirements.

Sparse Image Memory Requirements

The `VkSparseImageMemoryRequirements` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkSparseImageMemoryRequirements {
    VkSparseImageFormatProperties formatProperties;
    uint32_t imageMipTailFirstLod;
    VkDeviceSize imageMipTailSize;
    VkDeviceSize imageMipTailOffset;
    VkDeviceSize imageMipTailStride;
} VkSparseImageMemoryRequirements;
```

- `formatProperties` is a `VkSparseImageFormatProperties` structure specifying properties of the image format.
- `imageMipTailFirstLod` is the first mip level at which image subresources are included in the mip tail region.
- `imageMipTailSize` is the memory size (in bytes) of the mip tail region. If `formatProperties.flags` contains `VK_SPARSE_IMAGE_FORMAT_SINGLE_MIPTAIL_BIT`, this is the size of the whole mip tail, otherwise this is the size of the mip tail of a single array layer. This value is guaranteed to be a multiple of the sparse block size in bytes.
- `imageMipTailOffset` is the opaque memory offset used with `VkSparseImageOpaqueMemoryBindInfo` to bind the mip tail region(s).
- `imageMipTailStride` is the offset stride between each array-layer's mip tail, if `formatProperties.flags` does not contain `VK_SPARSE_IMAGE_FORMAT_SINGLE_MIPTAIL_BIT` (otherwise the value is undefined).

To query sparse memory requirements for an image, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkGetImageSparseMemoryRequirements(
    VkDevice device,
    VkImage image,
    uint32_t* pSparseMemoryRequirementCount,
    VkSparseImageMemoryRequirements* pSparseMemoryRequirements);
```

- `device` is the logical device that owns the image.
- `image` is the `VkImage` object to get the memory requirements for.
- `pSparseMemoryRequirementCount` is a pointer to an integer related to the number of sparse memory requirements available or queried, as described below.
- `pSparseMemoryRequirements` is either `NULL` or a pointer to an array of `VkSparseImageMemoryRequirements` structures.
If `pSparseMemoryRequirements` is `NULL`, then the number of sparse memory requirements available is returned in `pSparseMemoryRequirementCount`. Otherwise, `pSparseMemoryRequirementCount` must point to a variable set by the user to the number of elements in the `pSparseMemoryRequirements` array, and on return the variable is overwritten with the number of structures actually written to `pSparseMemoryRequirements`. If `pSparseMemoryRequirementCount` is less than the number of sparse memory requirements available, at most `pSparseMemoryRequirementCount` structures will be written.

If the image was not created with `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT` then `pSparseMemoryRequirementCount` will be set to zero and `pSparseMemoryRequirements` will not be written to.

**Note**

It is legal for an implementation to report a larger value in `VkMemoryRequirements::size` than would be obtained by adding together memory sizes for all `VkSparseImageMemoryRequirements` returned by `vkGetImageSparseMemoryRequirements`. This may occur when the implementation requires unused padding in the address range describing the resource.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetImageSparseMemoryRequirements-device-parameter
  - `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle
- VUID-vkGetImageSparseMemoryRequirements-image-parameter
  - `image` must be a valid `VkImage` handle
- VUID-vkGetImageSparseMemoryRequirements-pSparseMemoryRequirementCount-parameter
  - `pSparseMemoryRequirementCount` must be a valid pointer to a `uint32_t` value
- VUID-vkGetImageSparseMemoryRequirements-pSparseMemoryRequirements-parameter
  - If the value referenced by `pSparseMemoryRequirementCount` is not 0, and `pSparseMemoryRequirements` is not `NULL`, `pSparseMemoryRequirements` must be a valid pointer to an array of `pSparseMemoryRequirementCount` `VkSparseImageMemoryRequirements` structures
- VUID-vkGetImageSparseMemoryRequirements-image-parent
  - `image` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from `device`

To query sparse memory requirements for an image, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_memory_requirements2
void vkGetImageSparseMemoryRequirements2KHR(
    VkDevice device, 
    const VkImageSparseMemoryRequirementsInfo2* pInfo, 
    uint32_t* pSparseMemoryRequirementCount, 
    VkSparseImageMemoryRequirements2* pSparseMemoryRequirements);
```

- `device` is the logical device that owns the image.
• pInfo is a pointer to a VkImageSparseMemoryRequirementsInfo2 structure containing parameters required for the memory requirements query.

• pSparseMemoryRequirementCount is a pointer to an integer related to the number of sparse memory requirements available or queried, as described below.

• pSparseMemoryRequirements is either NULL or a pointer to an array of VkSparseImageMemoryRequirements2 structures.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

• VUID-vkGetImageSparseMemoryRequirements2-device-parameter
device must be a valid VkDevice handle

• VUID-vkGetImageSparseMemoryRequirements2-pInfo-parameter
pInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid VkImageSparseMemoryRequirementsInfo2 structure

• VUID-vkGetImageSparseMemoryRequirements2-pSparseMemoryRequirementCount-parameter
pSparseMemoryRequirementCount must be a valid pointer to a uint32_t value

• VUID-vkGetImageSparseMemoryRequirements2-pSparseMemoryRequirements-parameter
If the value referenced by pSparseMemoryRequirementCount is not 0, and pSparseMemoryRequirements is not NULL, pSparseMemoryRequirements must be a valid pointer to an array of pSparseMemoryRequirementCount VkSparseImageMemoryRequirements2 structures

The VkImageSparseMemoryRequirementsInfo2 structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkImageSparseMemoryRequirementsInfo2 {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkImage image;
} VkImageSparseMemoryRequirementsInfo2;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_memory_requirements2
typedef VkImageSparseMemoryRequirementsInfo2 VkImageSparseMemoryRequirementsInfo2KHR;
```

• sType is the type of this structure.

•pNext is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.

• image is the image to query.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkImageSparseMemoryRequirementsInfo2-sType-sType**
  
  *sType* must be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_SPARSE_MEMORY_REQUIREMENTS_INFO_2**

- **VUID-VkImageSparseMemoryRequirementsInfo2-pNext-pNext**
  
  *pNext* must be NULL

- **VUID-VkImageSparseMemoryRequirementsInfo2-image-parameter**
  
  *image* must be a valid **VkImage** handle

The **VkSparseImageMemoryRequirements2** structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkSparseImageMemoryRequirements2 {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkSparseImageMemoryRequirements memoryRequirements;
} VkSparseImageMemoryRequirements2;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_memory_requirements2
typedef VkSparseImageMemoryRequirements2 VkSparseImageMemoryRequirements2KHR;
```

- *sType* is the type of this structure.
- *pNext* is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- *memoryRequirements* is a **VkSparseImageMemoryRequirements** structure describing the memory requirements of the sparse image.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkSparseImageMemoryRequirements2-sType-sType**
  
  *sType* must be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SPARSE_IMAGE_MEMORY_REQUIREMENTS_2**

- **VUID-VkSparseImageMemoryRequirements2-pNext-pNext**
  
  *pNext* must be NULL

### 29.7.6. Binding Resource Memory

Non-sparse resources are backed by a single physical allocation prior to device use (via **vkBindImageMemory** or **vkBindBufferMemory**), and their backing must not be changed. On the other hand, sparse resources can be bound to memory non-contiguously and these bindings can be altered during the lifetime of the resource.
It is important to note that freeing a VkDeviceMemory object with vkFreeMemory will not cause resources (or resource regions) bound to the memory object to become unbound. Applications must not access resources bound to memory that has been freed.

Sparse memory bindings execute on a queue that includes the VK_QUEUE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT bit. Applications must use synchronization primitives to guarantee that other queues do not access ranges of memory concurrently with a binding change. Applications can access other ranges of the same resource while a bind operation is executing.

Implementations must provide a guarantee that simultaneously binding sparse blocks while another queue accesses those same sparse blocks via a sparse resource must not access memory owned by another process or otherwise corrupt the system.

While some implementations may include VK_QUEUE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT support in queue families that also include graphics and compute support, other implementations may only expose a VK_QUEUE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT-only queue family. In either case, applications must use synchronization primitives to explicitly request any ordering dependencies between sparse memory binding operations and other graphics/compute/transfer operations, as sparse binding operations are not automatically ordered against command buffer execution, even within a single queue.

When binding memory explicitly for the VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_METADATA_BIT the application must use the VK_SPARSE_MEMORY_BIND_METADATA_BIT in the VkSparseMemoryBind::flags field when binding memory. Binding memory for metadata is done the same way as binding memory for the mip tail, with the addition of the VK_SPARSE_MEMORY_BIND_METADATA_BIT flag.

Binding the mip tail for any aspect must only be performed using VkSparseImageOpaqueMemoryBindInfo. If formatProperties.flags contains VK_SPARSE_IMAGE_FORMAT_SINGLE_MIPTAIL_BIT, then it can be bound with a single VkSparseMemoryBind structure, with resourceOffset = imageMipTailOffset and size = imageMipTailSize.

If formatProperties.flags does not contain VK_SPARSE_IMAGE_FORMAT_SINGLE_MIPTAIL_BIT then the offset for the mip tail in each array layer is given as:

```
arrayMipTailOffset = imageMipTailOffset + arrayLayer * imageMipTailStride;
```

and the mip tail can be bound with layerCount VkSparseMemoryBind structures, each using size = imageMipTailSize and resourceOffset = arrayMipTailOffset as defined above.

Sparse memory binding is handled by the following APIs and related data structures.
Sparse Memory Binding Functions

The `VkSparseMemoryBind` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkSparseMemoryBind {
    VkDeviceSize resourceOffset;
    VkDeviceSize size;
    VkDeviceMemory memory;
    VkDeviceSize memoryOffset;
    VkSparseMemoryBindFlags flags;
} VkSparseMemoryBind;
```

- `resourceOffset` is the offset into the resource.
- `size` is the size of the memory region to be bound.
- `memory` is the `VkDeviceMemory` object that the range of the resource is bound to. If `memory` is `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, the range is unbound.
- `memoryOffset` is the offset into the `VkDeviceMemory` object to bind the resource range to. If `memory` is `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, this value is ignored.
- `flags` is a bitmask of `VkSparseMemoryBindFlagBits` specifying usage of the binding operation.

The binding range `[resourceOffset, resourceOffset + size)` has different constraints based on `flags`. If `flags` contains `VK_SPARSE_MEMORY_BIND_METADATA_BIT`, the binding range **must** be within the mip tail region of the metadata aspect. This metadata region is defined by:

```
metadataRegion = [base, base + imageSizeTailSize)
```

```
base = imageSizeTailOffset + imageSizeTailStride × n
```

and `imageSizeTailOffset`, `imageSizeTailSize`, and `imageSizeTailStride` values are from the `VkSparseImageMemoryRequirements` corresponding to the metadata aspect of the image, and `n` is a valid array layer index for the image,

`imageSizeTailStride` is considered to be zero for aspects where `VkSparseImageMemoryRequirements::formatProperties.flags` contains `VK_SPARSE_IMAGE_FORMAT_SINGLE_MIPTAIL_BIT`.

If `flags` does not contain `VK_SPARSE_MEMORY_BIND_METADATA_BIT`, the binding range **must** be within the range `[0, `VkMemoryRequirements::size`).
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkSparseMemoryBind-memory-01096**
  
  If `memory` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, `memory` and `memoryOffset` must match the memory requirements of the resource, as described in section Resource Memory Association

- **VUID-VkSparseMemoryBind-memory-01097**
  
  If `memory` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, `memory` must not have been created with a memory type that reports `VK_MEMORY_PROPERTY_LAZILY_ALLOCATED_BIT` bit set

- **VUID-VkSparseMemoryBind-size-01098**
  
  `size` must be greater than 0

- **VUID-VkSparseMemoryBind-resourceOffset-01099**
  
  `resourceOffset` must be less than the size of the resource

- **VUID-VkSparseMemoryBind-size-01100**
  
  `size` must be less than or equal to the size of the resource minus `resourceOffset`

- **VUID-VkSparseMemoryBind-memoryOffset-01101**
  
  `memoryOffset` must be less than the size of `memory`

- **VUID-VkSparseMemoryBind-size-01102**
  
  `size` must be less than or equal to the size of `memory` minus `memoryOffset`

- **VUID-VkSparseMemoryBind-memory-02730**
  
  If `memory` was created with `VkExportMemoryAllocateInfo::handleTypes` not equal to 0, at least one handle type it contained must also have been set in `VkExternalMemoryBufferCreateInfo::handleTypes` or `VkExternalMemoryImageCreateInfo::handleTypes` when the resource was created

- **VUID-VkSparseMemoryBind-memory-02731**
  
  If `memory` was created by a memory import operation, the external handle type of the imported memory must also have been set in `VkExternalMemoryBufferCreateInfo::handleTypes` or `VkExternalMemoryImageCreateInfo::handleTypes` when the resource was created

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkSparseMemoryBind-memory-parameter**
  
  If `memory` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, `memory` must be a valid `VkDeviceMemory` handle

- **VUID-VkSparseMemoryBind-flags-parameter**
  
  `flags` must be a valid combination of `VkSparseMemoryBindFlagBits` values

Bits which can be set in `VkSparseMemoryBind::flags`, specifying usage of a sparse memory binding operation, are:
typedef enum VkSparseMemoryBindFlagBits {
    VK_SPARSE_MEMORY_BIND_METADATA_BIT = 0x00000001,
} VkSparseMemoryBindFlagBits;

- **VK_SPARSE_MEMORY_BIND_METADATA_BIT** specifies that the memory being bound is only for the metadata aspect.

typedef VkFlags VkSparseMemoryBindFlags;

VkSparseMemoryBindFlags is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more VkSparseMemoryBindFlagBits.

Memory is bound to VkBuffer objects created with the **VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT** flag using the following structure:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkSparseBufferMemoryBindInfo {
    VkBuffer buffer;
    uint32_t bindCount;
    const VkSparseMemoryBind* pBinds;
} VkSparseBufferMemoryBindInfo;
```

- **buffer** is the VkBuffer object to be bound.
- **bindCount** is the number of VkSparseMemoryBind structures in the pBinds array.
- **pBinds** is a pointer to an array of VkSparseMemoryBind structures.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkSparseBufferMemoryBindInfo-buffer-parameter**
  - **buffer must** be a valid VkBuffer handle

- **VUID-VkSparseBufferMemoryBindInfo-pBinds-parameter**
  - **pBinds must** be a valid pointer to an array of bindCount valid VkSparseMemoryBind structures

- **VUID-VkSparseBufferMemoryBindInfo-bindCount-arraylength**
  - **bindCount must** be greater than 0

Memory is bound to opaque regions of VkImage objects created with the **VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT** flag using the following structure:
```c
typedef struct VkSparseImageOpaqueMemoryBindInfo {
    VkImage image;
    uint32_t bindCount;
    const VkSparseMemoryBind* pBinds;
} VkSparseImageOpaqueMemoryBindInfo;
```

- `image` is the `VkImage` object to be bound.
- `bindCount` is the number of `VkSparseMemoryBind` structures in the `pBinds` array.
- `pBinds` is a pointer to an array of `VkSparseMemoryBind` structures.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkSparseImageOpaqueMemoryBindInfo-pBinds-01103**
  If the `flags` member of any element of `pBinds` contains `VK_SPARSE_MEMORY_BIND_METADATA_BIT`, the binding range defined **must** be within the mip tail region of the metadata aspect of `image`.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkSparseImageOpaqueMemoryBindInfo-image-parameter**
  `image` **must** be a valid `VkImage` handle

- **VUID-VkSparseImageOpaqueMemoryBindInfo-pBinds-parameter**
  `pBinds` **must** be a valid pointer to an array of `bindCount` valid `VkSparseMemoryBind` structures

- **VUID-VkSparseImageOpaqueMemoryBindInfo-bindCount-arraylength**
  `bindCount` **must** be greater than `0`
This operation is normally used to bind memory to fully-resident sparse images or for mip tail regions of partially resident images. However, it can also be used to bind memory for the entire binding range of partially resident images.

In case flags does not contain `VK_SPARSE_MEMORY_BIND_METADATA_BIT`, the resourceOffset is in the range $[0, \text{VkMemoryRequirements}::\text{size}]$. This range includes data from all aspects of the image, including metadata. For most implementations this will probably mean that the resourceOffset is a simple device address offset within the resource. It is possible for an application to bind a range of memory that includes both resource data and metadata. However, the application would not know what part of the image the memory is used for, or if any range is being used for metadata.

When flags contains `VK_SPARSE_MEMORY_BIND_METADATA_BIT`, the binding range specified must be within the mip tail region of the metadata aspect. In this case the resourceOffset is not required to be a simple device address offset within the resource. However, it is defined to be within $[\text{imageMipTailOffset}, \text{imageMipTailOffset} + \text{imageMipTailSize})$ for the metadata aspect. See `VkSparseMemoryBind` for the full constraints on binding region with this flag present.

Memory can be bound to sparse image blocks of `VkImage` objects created with the `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT` flag using the following structure:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkSparseImageMemoryBindInfo {
    VkImage image;
    uint32_t bindCount;
    const VkSparseImageMemoryBind* pBinds;
} VkSparseImageMemoryBindInfo;
```

- `image` is the `VkImage` object to be bound
- `bindCount` is the number of `VkSparseImageMemoryBind` structures in `pBinds` array
- `pBinds` is a pointer to an array of `VkSparseImageMemoryBind` structures
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkSparseImageMemoryBindInfo-subresource-01722
  The `subresource.mipLevel` member of each element of `pBinds` must be less than the `mipLevels` specified in `VkImageCreateInfo` when `image` was created.

- VUID-VkSparseImageMemoryBindInfo-subresource-01723
  The `subresource.arrayLayer` member of each element of `pBinds` must be less than the `arrayLayers` specified in `VkImageCreateInfo` when `image` was created.

- VUID-VkSparseImageMemoryBindInfo-image-02901
  `image` must have been created with `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT` set.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkSparseImageMemoryBindInfo-image-parameter
  `image` must be a valid `VkImage` handle.

- VUID-VkSparseImageMemoryBindInfo-pBinds-parameter
  `pBinds` must be a valid pointer to an array of `bindCount` valid `VkSparseImageMemoryBind` structures.

- VUID-VkSparseImageMemoryBindInfo-bindCount-arraylength
  `bindCount` must be greater than 0.

The `VkSparseImageMemoryBind` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkSparseImageMemoryBind {
    VkImageSubresource subresource;
    VkOffset3D offset;
    VkExtent3D extent;
    VkDeviceMemory memory;
    VkDeviceSize memoryOffset;
    VkSparseMemoryBindFlags flags;
} VkSparseImageMemoryBind;
```

- `subresource` is the image `aspect` and region of interest in the image.
- `offset` are the coordinates of the first texel within the image subresource to bind.
- `extent` is the size in texels of the region within the image subresource to bind. The extent must be a multiple of the sparse image block dimensions, except when binding sparse image blocks along the edge of an image subresource it can instead be such that any coordinate of `offset + extent` equals the corresponding dimensions of the image subresource.
- `memory` is the `VkDeviceMemory` object that the sparse image blocks of the image are bound to. If `memory` is `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, the sparse image blocks are unbound.
- `memoryOffset` is an offset into `VkDeviceMemory` object. If `memory` is `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, this value...
• flags are sparse memory binding flags.

Valid Usage

• VUID-VkSparseImageMemoryBind-memory-01104
  If the sparse aliased residency feature is not enabled, and if any other resources are bound to ranges of memory, the range of memory being bound must not overlap with those bound ranges.

• VUID-VkSparseImageMemoryBind-memory-01105
  memory and memoryOffset must match the memory requirements of the calling command’s image, as described in section Resource Memory Association.

• VUID-VkSparseImageMemoryBind-subresource-01106
  subresource must be a valid image subresource for image (see Image Views).

• VUID-VkSparseImageMemoryBind-offset-01107
  offset.x must be a multiple of the sparse image block width (VkSparseImageFormatProperties::imageGranularity.width) of the image.

• VUID-VkSparseImageMemoryBind-extent-01108
  extent.width must either be a multiple of the sparse image block width of the image, or else (extent.width + offset.x) must equal the width of the image subresource.

• VUID-VkSparseImageMemoryBind-offset-01109
  offset.y must be a multiple of the sparse image block height (VkSparseImageFormatProperties::imageGranularity.height) of the image.

• VUID-VkSparseImageMemoryBind-extent-01110
  extent.height must either be a multiple of the sparse image block height of the image, or else (extent.height + offset.y) must equal the height of the image subresource.

• VUID-VkSparseImageMemoryBind-offset-01111
  offset.z must be a multiple of the sparse image block depth (VkSparseImageFormatProperties::imageGranularity.depth) of the image.

• VUID-VkSparseImageMemoryBind-extent-01112
  extent.depth must either be a multiple of the sparse image block depth of the image, or else (extent.depth + offset.z) must equal the depth of the image subresource.

• VUID-VkSparseImageMemoryBind-memory-02732
  If memory was created with VkExportMemoryAllocateInfo::handleTypes not equal to 0, at least one handle type it contained must also have been set in VkExternalMemoryImageCreateInfo::handleTypes when the image was created.

• VUID-VkSparseImageMemoryBind-memory-02733
  If memory was created by a memory import operation, the external handle type of the imported memory must also have been set in VkExternalMemoryImageCreateInfo::handleTypes when image was created.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkSparseImageMemoryBind-subresource-parameter
  subresource must be a valid VkImageSubresource structure

- VUID-VkSparseImageMemoryBind-memory-parameter
  If memory is not VK_NULL_HANDLE, memory must be a valid VkDeviceMemory handle

- VUID-VkSparseImageMemoryBind-flags-parameter
  flags must be a valid combination of VkSparseMemoryBindFlagBits values

To submit sparse binding operations to a queue, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkQueueBindSparse(
    VkQueue queue,        // Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
    uint32_t bindInfoCount,    // Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
    const VkBindSparseInfo* pBindInfo,    // Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
    VkFence fence);    // Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
```

- `queue` is the queue that the sparse binding operations will be submitted to.
- `bindInfoCount` is the number of elements in the `pBindInfo` array.
- `pBindInfo` is a pointer to an array of `VkBindSparseInfo` structures, each specifying a sparse binding submission batch.
- `fence` is an optional handle to a fence to be signaled. If `fence` is not VK_NULL_HANDLE, it defines a fence signal operation.

`vkQueueBindSparse` is a queue submission command, with each batch defined by an element of `pBindInfo` as a `VkBindSparseInfo` structure. Batches begin execution in the order they appear in `pBindInfo`, but may complete out of order.

Within a batch, a given range of a resource must not be bound more than once. Across batches, if a range is to be bound to one allocation and offset and then to another allocation and offset, then the application must guarantee (usually using semaphores) that the binding operations are executed in the correct order, as well as to order binding operations against the execution of command buffer submissions.

As no operation to `vkQueueBindSparse` causes any pipeline stage to access memory, synchronization primitives used in this command effectively only define execution dependencies.

Additional information about fence and semaphore operation is described in the synchronization chapter.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkQueueBindSparse-fence-01113
  If fence is not VK_NULL_HANDLE, fence must be unsignaled

- VUID-vkQueueBindSparse-fence-01114
  If fence is not VK_NULL_HANDLE, fence must not be associated with any other queue command that has not yet completed execution on that queue

- VUID-vkQueueBindSparse-pSignalSemaphores-01115
  Each element of the pSignalSemaphores member of each element of pBindInfo must be unsignaled when the semaphore signal operation it defines is executed on the device

- VUID-vkQueueBindSparse-pWaitSemaphores-01116
  When a semaphore wait operation referring to a binary semaphore defined by any element of the pWaitSemaphores member of any element of pBindInfo executes on queue, there must be no other queues waiting on the same semaphore

- VUID-vkQueueBindSparse-pWaitSemaphores-01117
  All elements of the pWaitSemaphores member of all elements of the pBindInfo parameter referring to a binary semaphore must be semaphores that are signaled, or have semaphore signal operations previously submitted for execution

- VUID-vkQueueBindSparse-pWaitSemaphores-03245
  All elements of the pWaitSemaphores member of all elements of pBindInfo created with a VkSemaphoreType of VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_BINARY must reference a semaphore signal operation that has been submitted for execution and any semaphore signal operations on which it depends (if any) must have also been submitted for execution

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkQueueBindSparse-queue-parameter
  queue must be a valid VkQueue handle

- VUID-vkQueueBindSparse-pBindInfo-parameter
  If bindInfoCount is not 0, pBindInfo must be a valid pointer to an array of bindInfoCount valid VkBindSparseInfo structures

- VUID-vkQueueBindSparse-fence-parameter
  If fence is not VK_NULL_HANDLE, fence must be a valid VkFence handle

- VUID-vkQueueBindSparse-queuetype
  The queue must support sparse binding operations

- VUID-vkQueueBindSparse-commonparent
  Both of fence, and queue that are valid handles of non-ignored parameters must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same VkDevice
Host Synchronization

- Host access to queue must be externally synchronized
- Host access to `pBindInfo[].pBufferBinds[].buffer` must be externally synchronized
- Host access to `pBindInfo[].pImageOpaqueBinds[].image` must be externally synchronized
- Host access to `pBindInfo[].pImageBinds[].image` must be externally synchronized
- Host access to fence must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>SPARSE_BINDING</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Return Codes

**Success**

- `VK_SUCCESS`

**Failure**

- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST`

The `VkBindSparseInfo` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkBindSparseInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    uint32_t waitSemaphoreCount;
    const VkSemaphore* pWaitSemaphores;
    uint32_t bufferBindCount;
    const VkSparseBufferMemoryBindInfo* pBufferBinds;
    uint32_t imageOpaqueBindCount;
    const VkSparseImageOpaqueMemoryBindInfo* pImageOpaqueBinds;
    uint32_t imageBindCount;
    const VkSparseImageMemoryBindInfo* pImageBinds;
    uint32_t signalSemaphoreCount;
    const VkSemaphore* pSignalSemaphores;
} VkBindSparseInfo;
```
• **sType** is the type of this structure.

• **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.

• **waitSemaphoreCount** is the number of semaphores upon which to wait before executing the sparse binding operations for the batch.

• **pWaitSemaphores** is a pointer to an array of semaphores upon which to wait on before the sparse binding operations for this batch begin execution. If semaphores to wait on are provided, they define a **semaphore wait operation**.

• **bufferBindCount** is the number of sparse buffer bindings to perform in the batch.

• ** pBufferBinds** is a pointer to an array of **VkSparseBufferMemoryBindInfo** structures.

• **imageOpaqueBindCount** is the number of opaque sparse image bindings to perform.

• **pImageOpaqueBinds** is a pointer to an array of **VkSparseImageOpaqueMemoryBindInfo** structures, indicating opaque sparse image bindings to perform.

• **imageBindCount** is the number of sparse image bindings to perform.

• **pImageBinds** is a pointer to an array of **VkSparseImageMemoryBindInfo** structures, indicating sparse image bindings to perform.

• **signalSemaphoreCount** is the number of semaphores to be signaled once the sparse binding operations specified by the structure have completed execution.

• **pSignalSemaphores** is a pointer to an array of semaphores which will be signaled when the sparse binding operations for this batch have completed execution. If semaphores to be signaled are provided, they define a **semaphore signal operation**.
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkBindSparseInfo-pWaitSemaphores-03246
  If any element of `pWaitSemaphores` or `pSignalSemaphores` was created with a `VkSemaphoreType` of `VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE` then the `pNext` chain must include a `VkTimelineSemaphoreSubmitInfo` structure

- VUID-VkBindSparseInfo-pNext-03247
  If the `pNext` chain of this structure includes a `VkTimelineSemaphoreSubmitInfo` structure and any element of `pWaitSemaphores` was created with a `VkSemaphoreType` of `VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE` then its `waitSemaphoreValueCount` member must equal `waitSemaphoreCount`

- VUID-VkBindSparseInfo-pNext-03248
  If the `pNext` chain of this structure includes a `VkTimelineSemaphoreSubmitInfo` structure and any element of `pSignalSemaphores` was created with a `VkSemaphoreType` of `VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE` then its `signalSemaphoreValueCount` member must equal `signalSemaphoreCount`

- VUID-VkBindSparseInfo-pSignalSemaphores-03249
  For each element of `pSignalSemaphores` created with a `VkSemaphoreType` of `VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE` the corresponding element of `VkTimelineSemaphoreSubmitInfo::pSignalSemaphoreValues` must have a value greater than the current value of the semaphore when the semaphore signal operation is executed

- VUID-VkBindSparseInfo-pWaitSemaphores-03250
  For each element of `pWaitSemaphores` created with a `VkSemaphoreType` of `VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE` the corresponding element of `VkTimelineSemaphoreSubmitInfo::pWaitSemaphoreValues` must have a value which does not differ from the current value of the semaphore or from the value of any outstanding semaphore wait or signal operation on that semaphore by more than `maxTimelineSemaphoreValueDifference`

- VUID-VkBindSparseInfo-pSignalSemaphores-03251
  For each element of `pSignalSemaphores` created with a `VkSemaphoreType` of `VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE` the corresponding element of `VkTimelineSemaphoreSubmitInfo::pSignalSemaphoreValues` must have a value which does not differ from the current value of the semaphore or from the value of any outstanding semaphore wait or signal operation on that semaphore by more than `maxTimelineSemaphoreValueDifference`
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkBindSparseInfo-sType-sType**
  
  `sType` **must** be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BIND_SPARSE_INFO`  

- **VUID-VkBindSparseInfo-pNext-pNext**
  
  Each `pNext` member of any structure (including this one) in the `pNext` chain **must** be either `NULL` or a pointer to a valid instance of `VkDeviceGroupBindSparseInfo` or `VkTimelineSemaphoreSubmitInfo`.

- **VUID-VkBindSparseInfo-sType-unique**
  
  The `sType` value of each struct in the `pNext` chain **must** be unique.

- **VUID-VkBindSparseInfo-pWaitSemaphores-parameter**
  
  If `waitSemaphoreCount` is not 0, `pWaitSemaphores` **must** be a valid pointer to an array of `waitSemaphoreCount` valid `VkSemaphore` handles.

- **VUID-VkBindSparseInfo-pBufferBinds-parameter**
  
  If `bufferBindCount` is not 0, ` pBufferBinds` **must** be a valid pointer to an array of `bufferBindCount` valid `VkSparseBufferMemoryBindInfo` structures.

- **VUID-VkBindSparseInfo-pImageOpaqueBinds-parameter**
  
  If `imageOpaqueBindCount` is not 0, `pImageOpaqueBinds` **must** be a valid pointer to an array of `imageOpaqueBindCount` valid `VkSparseImageOpaqueMemoryBindInfo` structures.

- **VUID-VkBindSparseInfo-pImageBinds-parameter**
  
  If `imageBindCount` is not 0, `pImageBinds` **must** be a valid pointer to an array of `imageBindCount` valid `VkSparseImageMemoryBindInfo` structures.

- **VUID-VkBindSparseInfo-pSignalSemaphores-parameter**
  
  If `signalSemaphoreCount` is not 0, `pSignalSemaphores` **must** be a valid pointer to an array of `signalSemaphoreCount` valid `VkSemaphore` handles.

- **VUID-VkBindSparseInfo-commonparent**
  
  Both of the elements of `pSignalSemaphores`, and the elements of `pWaitSemaphores` that are valid handles of non-ignored parameters **must** have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`.

To specify the values to use when waiting for and signaling semaphores created with a `VkSemaphoreType` of `VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE`, add a `VkTimelineSemaphoreSubmitInfo` structure to the `pNext` chain of the `VkBindSparseInfo` structure.

If the `pNext` chain of `VkBindSparseInfo` includes a `VkDeviceGroupBindSparseInfo` structure, then that structure includes device indices specifying which instance of the resources and memory are bound.

The `VkDeviceGroupBindSparseInfo` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkDeviceGroupBindSparseInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    uint32_t resourceDeviceIndex;
    uint32_t memoryDeviceIndex;
} VkDeviceGroupBindSparseInfo;

or the equivalent

// Provided by VK_KHR_device_group
typedef VkDeviceGroupBindSparseInfo VkDeviceGroupBindSparseInfoKHR;

• sType is the type of this structure.
• pNext is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• resourceDeviceIndex is a device index indicating which instance of the resource is bound.
• memoryDeviceIndex is a device index indicating which instance of the memory the resource instance is bound to.

These device indices apply to all buffer and image memory binds included in the batch pointing to this structure. The semaphore waits and signals for the batch are executed only by the physical device specified by the resourceDeviceIndex.

If this structure is not present, resourceDeviceIndex and memoryDeviceIndex are assumed to be zero.

Valid Usage

• VUID-VkDeviceGroupBindSparseInfo-resourceDeviceIndex-01118 resourceDeviceIndex and memoryDeviceIndex must both be valid device indices
• VUID-VkDeviceGroupBindSparseInfo-memoryDeviceIndex-01119 Each memory allocation bound in this batch must have allocated an instance for memoryDeviceIndex

Valid Usage (Implicit)

• VUID-VkDeviceGroupBindSparseInfo-sType-sType sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEVICE_GROUP_BIND_SPARSE_INFO
Chapter 30. Window System Integration (WSI)

This chapter discusses the window system integration (WSI) between the Vulkan API and the various forms of displaying the results of rendering to a user. Since the Vulkan API can be used without displaying results, WSI is provided through the use of optional Vulkan extensions. This chapter provides an overview of WSI. See the appendix for additional details of each WSI extension, including which extensions must be enabled in order to use each of the functions described in this chapter.

30.1. WSI Platform

A platform is an abstraction for a window system, OS, etc. Some examples include MS Windows, Android, and Wayland. The Vulkan API may be integrated in a unique manner for each platform.

The Vulkan API does not define any type of platform object. Platform-specific WSI extensions are defined, each containing platform-specific functions for using WSI. Use of these extensions is guarded by preprocessor symbols as defined in the Window System-Specific Header Control appendix.

In order for an application to be compiled to use WSI with a given platform, it must either:

- #define the appropriate preprocessor symbol prior to including the vulkan.h header file, or
- include vulkan_core.h and any native platform headers, followed by the appropriate platform-specific header.

The preprocessor symbols and platform-specific headers are defined in the Window System Extensions and Headers table.

Each platform-specific extension is an instance extension. The application must enable instance extensions with vkCreateInstance before using them.

30.2. WSI Surface

Native platform surface or window objects are abstracted by surface objects, which are represented by VkSurfaceKHR handles:

```cpp
// Provided by VK_KHR_surface
VK_DEFINE_NON_DISPATCHABLE_HANDLE(VkSurfaceKHR)
```

The VK_KHR_surface extension declares the VkSurfaceKHR object, and provides a function for destroying VkSurfaceKHR objects. Separate platform-specific extensions each provide a function for creating a VkSurfaceKHR object for the respective platform. From the application’s perspective this is an opaque handle, just like the handles of other Vulkan objects.
Note
On certain platforms, the Vulkan loader and ICDs may have conventions that treat the handle as a pointer to a structure containing the platform-specific information about the surface. This will be described in the documentation for the loader-ICD interface, and in the `vk_icd.h` header file of the LoaderAndTools source-code repository. This does not affect the loader-layer interface; layers may wrap `VkSurfaceKHR` objects.

30.2.1. Android Platform

To create a `VkSurfaceKHR` object for an Android native window, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_android_surface
VkResult vkCreateAndroidSurfaceKHR(
    VkInstance instance,
    const VkAndroidSurfaceCreateInfoKHR* pCreateInfo,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator,
    VkSurfaceKHR* pSurface);
```

- `instance` is the instance to associate the surface with.
- `pCreateInfo` is a pointer to a `VkAndroidSurfaceCreateInfoKHR` structure containing parameters affecting the creation of the surface object.
- `pAllocator` is the allocator used for host memory allocated for the surface object when there is no more specific allocator available (see Memory Allocation).
- `pSurface` is a pointer to a `VkSurfaceKHR` handle in which the created surface object is returned.

During the lifetime of a surface created using a particular `ANativeWindow` handle any attempts to create another surface for the same `ANativeWindow` and any attempts to connect to the same `ANativeWindow` through other platform mechanisms will fail.

Note
In particular, only one `VkSurfaceKHR` can exist at a time for a given window. Similarly, a native window cannot be used by both a `VkSurfaceKHR` and `EGLSurface` simultaneously.

If successful, `vkCreateAndroidSurfaceKHR` increments the `ANativeWindow`'s reference count, and `vkDestroySurfaceKHR` will decrement it.

On Android, when a swapchain's `imageExtent` does not match the surface's `currentExtent`, the presentable images will be scaled to the surface's dimensions during presentation. `minImageExtent` is (1,1), and `maxImageExtent` is the maximum image size supported by the consumer. For the system compositor, `currentExtent` is the window size (i.e. the consumer's preferred size).
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkCreateAndroidSurfaceKHR-instance-parameter**
  
  `instance` must be a valid `VkInstance` handle

- **VUID-vkCreateAndroidSurfaceKHR-pCreateInfo-parameter**
  
  `pCreateInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkAndroidSurfaceCreateInfoKHR` structure

- **VUID-vkCreateAndroidSurfaceKHR-pAllocator-parameter**
  
  If `pAllocator` is not `NULL`, `pAllocator` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkAllocationCallbacks` structure

- **VUID-vkCreateAndroidSurfaceKHR-pSurface-parameter**
  
  `pSurface` must be a valid pointer to a `VkSurfaceKHR` handle

Return Codes

**Success**

- `VK_SUCCESS`

**Failure**

- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_NATIVE_WINDOW_IN_USE_KHR`

The `VkAndroidSurfaceCreateInfoKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_android_surface
typedef struct VkAndroidSurfaceCreateInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkAndroidSurfaceCreateFlagsKHR flags;
    ANativeWindow* window;
} VkAndroidSurfaceCreateInfoKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `flags` is reserved for future use.
- `window` is a pointer to the `ANativeWindow` to associate the surface with.

Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkAndroidSurfaceCreateInfoKHR-window-01248**
  
  `window` must point to a valid Android `ANativeWindow`
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkAndroidSurfaceCreateInfoKHR-sType-sType**
  
  *sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ANDROID_SURFACE_CREATE_INFO_KHR*

- **VUID-VkAndroidSurfaceCreateInfoKHR-pNext-pNext**
  
  *pNext must be NULL*

- **VUID-VkAndroidSurfaceCreateInfoKHR-flags-zerobitmask**
  
  *flags must be 0*

To remove an unnecessary compile-time dependency, an incomplete type definition of `ANativeWindow` is provided in the Vulkan headers:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_android_surface
struct ANativeWindow;
```

The actual `ANativeWindow` type is defined in Android NDK headers.

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_android_surface
typedef VkFlags VkAndroidSurfaceCreateFlagsKHR;
```

`VkAndroidSurfaceCreateFlagsKHR` is a bitmask type for setting a mask, but is currently reserved for future use.

### 30.2.2. Wayland Platform

To create a `VkSurfaceKHR` object for a Wayland surface, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_wayland_surface
VkResult vkCreateWaylandSurfaceKHR(
    VkInstance instance,
    const VkWaylandSurfaceCreateInfoKHR* pCreateInfo,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator,
    VkSurfaceKHR* pSurface);
```

- **instance** is the instance to associate the surface with.
- **pCreateInfo** is a pointer to a `VkWaylandSurfaceCreateInfoKHR` structure containing parameters affecting the creation of the surface object.
- **pAllocator** is the allocator used for host memory allocated for the surface object when there is no more specific allocator available (see Memory Allocation).
- **pSurface** is a pointer to a `VkSurfaceKHR` handle in which the created surface object is returned.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCreateWaylandSurfaceKHR-instance-parameter
  instance must be a valid VkInstance handle

- VUID-vkCreateWaylandSurfaceKHR-pCreateInfo-parameter
  pCreateInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid VkWaylandSurfaceCreateInfoKHR structure

- VUID-vkCreateWaylandSurfaceKHR-pAllocator-parameter
  If pAllocator is not NULL, pAllocator must be a valid pointer to a valid VkAllocationCallbacks structure

- VUID-vkCreateWaylandSurfaceKHR-pSurface-parameter
  pSurface must be a valid pointer to a VkSurfaceKHR handle

Return Codes

Success
- VK_SUCCESS

Failure
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY

The VkWaylandSurfaceCreateInfoKHR structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_wayland_surface
typedef struct VkWaylandSurfaceCreateInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void*pNext;
    VkWaylandSurfaceCreateFlagsKHR flags;
    struct wl_display*display;
    struct wl_surface*surface;
} VkWaylandSurfaceCreateInfoKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `flags` is reserved for future use.
- `display` and `surface` are pointers to the Wayland `wl_display` and `wl_surface` to associate the surface with.
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkWaylandSurfaceCreateInfoKHR-display-01304
  display must point to a valid Wayland wl_display

- VUID-VkWaylandSurfaceCreateInfoKHR-surface-01305
  surface must point to a valid Wayland wl_surface

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkWaylandSurfaceCreateInfoKHR-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_WAYLAND_SURFACE_CREATE_INFO_KHR

- VUID-VkWaylandSurfaceCreateInfoKHR-pNext-pNext
  pNext must be NULL

- VUID-VkWaylandSurfaceCreateInfoKHR-flags-zerobitmask
  flags must be 0

On Wayland, currentExtent is the special value (0xFFFFFFFF, 0xFFFFFFFF), indicating that the surface size will be determined by the extent of a swapchain targeting the surface. Whatever the application sets a swapchain's imageExtent to will be the size of the window, after the first image is presented. minImageExtent is (1,1), and maxImageExtent is the maximum supported surface size. Any calls to vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfacePresentModesKHR on a surface created with vkCreateWaylandSurfaceKHR are required to return VK_PRESENT_MODE_MAILBOX_KHR as one of the valid present modes.

Some Vulkan functions may send protocol over the specified wl_display connection when using a swapchain or presentable images created from a VkSurfaceKHR referring to a wl_surface. Applications must therefore ensure that both the wl_display and the wl_surface remain valid for the lifetime of any VkSwapchainKHR objects created from a particular wl_display and wl_surface. Also, calling vkQueuePresentKHR will result in Vulkan sending wl_surface.commit requests to the underlying wl_surface of each VkSwapchainKHR objects referenced by pPresentInfo. If the swapchain is created with a present mode of VK_PRESENT_MODE_MAILBOX_KHR or VK_PRESENT_MODE_IMMEDIATE_KHR, then the corresponding wl_surface.attach, wl_surface.damage, and wl_surface.commit request must be issued by the implementation during the call to vkQueuePresentKHR and must not be issued by the implementation outside of vkQueuePresentKHR. This ensures that any Wayland requests sent by the client after the call to vkQueuePresentKHR returns will be received by the compositor after the wl_surface.commit. Regardless of the mode of swapchain creation, a new wl_event_queue must be created for each successful vkCreateWaylandSurfaceKHR call, and every Wayland object created by the implementation must be assigned to this event queue. If the platform provides Wayland 1.11 or greater, this must be implemented by the use of Wayland proxy object wrappers, to avoid race conditions.

If the application wishes to synchronize any window changes with a particular frame, such requests must be sent to the Wayland display server prior to calling vkQueuePresentKHR. For full control over interactions between Vulkan rendering and other Wayland protocol requests and events, a present mode of VK_PRESENT_MODE_MAILBOX_KHR should be used.
VkWaylandSurfaceCreateFlagsKHR is a bitmask type for setting a mask, but is currently reserved for future use.

### 30.2.3. Win32 Platform

To create a VkSurfaceKHR object for a Win32 window, call:

```c
#include <vk吱builtin.h>

uint32_t vkCreateWin32SurfaceKHR(
    VkInstance instance,
    const VkWin32SurfaceCreateInfoKHR* pCreateInfo,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator,
    VkSurfaceKHR* pSurface
);
```

- **instance** is the instance to associate the surface with.
- **pCreateInfo** is a pointer to a VkWin32SurfaceCreateInfoKHR structure containing parameters affecting the creation of the surface object.
- **pAllocator** is the allocator used for host memory allocated for the surface object when there is no more specific allocator available (see Memory Allocation).
- **pSurface** is a pointer to a VkSurfaceKHR handle in which the created surface object is returned.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkCreateWin32SurfaceKHR-instance-parameter**
  - instance must be a valid VkInstance handle
- **VUID-vkCreateWin32SurfaceKHR-pCreateInfo-parameter**
  - pCreateInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid VkWin32SurfaceCreateInfoKHR structure
- **VUID-vkCreateWin32SurfaceKHR-pAllocator-parameter**
  - If pAllocator is not NULL, pAllocator must be a valid pointer to a valid VkAllocationCallbacks structure
- **VUID-vkCreateWin32SurfaceKHR-pSurface-parameter**
  - pSurface must be a valid pointer to a VkSurfaceKHR handle
Return Codes

Success

• VK_SUCCESS

Failure

• VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
• VK_ERROR_OUT_OFDEVICE_MEMORY

The VkWin32SurfaceCreateInfoKHR structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_win32_surface
typedef struct VkWin32SurfaceCreateInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkWin32SurfaceCreateFlagsKHR flags;
    HINSTANCE hinstance;
    HWND hwnd;
} VkWin32SurfaceCreateInfoKHR;
```

• sType is the type of this structure.
• pNext is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• flags is reserved for future use.
• hinstance is the Win32 HINSTANCE for the window to associate the surface with.
• hwnd is the Win32 HWND for the window to associate the surface with.

Valid Usage

• VUID-VkWin32SurfaceCreateInfoKHR-hinstance-01307
  hinstance must be a valid Win32 HINSTANCE

• VUID-VkWin32SurfaceCreateInfoKHR hwnd-01308
  hwnd must be a valid Win32 HWND

Valid Usage (Implicit)

• VUID-VkWin32SurfaceCreateInfoKHR-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_WIN32_SURFACE_CREATE_INFO_KHR

• VUID-VkWin32SurfaceCreateInfoKHR-pNext-pNext
  pNext must be NULL

• VUID-VkWin32SurfaceCreateInfoKHR-flags-zerobitmask
  flags must be 0
With Win32, `minImageExtent`, `maxImageExtent`, and `currentExtent` must always equal the window size.

The `currentExtent` of a Win32 surface must have both `width` and `height` greater than 0, or both of them 0.

**Note**
Due to above restrictions, it is only possible to create a new swapchain on this platform with `imageExtent` being equal to the current size of the window.

The window size may become (0, 0) on this platform (e.g. when the window is minimized), and so a swapchain cannot be created until the size changes.

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_win32_surface
typedef VkFlags VkWin32SurfaceCreateFlagsKHR;
```

`VkWin32SurfaceCreateFlagsKHR` is a bitmask type for setting a mask, but is currently reserved for future use.

### 30.2.4. XCB Platform

To create a `VkSurfaceKHR` object for an X11 window, using the XCB client-side library, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_xcb_surface
VkResult vkCreateXcbSurfaceKHR(
    VkInstance instance,
    const VkXcbSurfaceCreateInfoKHR* pCreateInfo,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator,
    VkSurfaceKHR* pSurface);
```

- `instance` is the instance to associate the surface with.
- `pCreateInfo` is a pointer to a `VkXcbSurfaceCreateInfoKHR` structure containing parameters affecting the creation of the surface object.
- `pAllocator` is the allocator used for host memory allocated for the surface object when there is no more specific allocator available (see Memory Allocation).
- `pSurface` is a pointer to a `VkSurfaceKHR` handle in which the created surface object is returned.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkCreateXcbSurfaceKHR-instance-parameter**
  instance **must** be a valid `VkInstance` handle

- **VUID-vkCreateXcbSurfaceKHR-pCreateInfo-parameter**
  `pCreateInfo` **must** be a valid pointer to a valid `VkXcbSurfaceCreateInfoKHR` structure

- **VUID-vkCreateXcbSurfaceKHR-pAllocator-parameter**
  If `pAllocator` is not `NULL`, `pAllocator` **must** be a valid pointer to a valid `VkAllocationCallbacks` structure

- **VUID-vkCreateXcbSurfaceKHR-pSurface-parameter**
  `pSurface` **must** be a valid pointer to a `VkSurfaceKHR` handle

Return Codes

**Success**
- **VK_SUCCESS**

**Failure**
- **VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY**
- **VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY**

The `VkXcbSurfaceCreateInfoKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_xcb_surface
typedef struct VkXcbSurfaceCreateInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkXcbSurfaceCreateFlagsKHR flags;
    xcb_connection_t* connection;
    xcb_window_t window;
} VkXcbSurfaceCreateInfoKHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **flags** is reserved for future use.
- **connection** is a pointer to an `xcb_connection_t` to the X server.
- **window** is the `xcb_window_t` for the X11 window to associate the surface with.
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkXcbSurfaceCreateInfoKHR-connection-01310
  connection must point to a valid X11 xcb_connection_t

- VUID-VkXcbSurfaceCreateInfoKHR-window-01311
  window must be a valid X11 xcb_window_t

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkXcbSurfaceCreateInfoKHR-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_XCB_SURFACE_CREATE_INFO_KHR

- VUID-VkXcbSurfaceCreateInfoKHR-pNext-pNext
  pNext must be NULL

- VUID-VkXcbSurfaceCreateInfoKHR-flags-zerobitmask
  flags must be 0

With Xcb, `minImageExtent`, `maxImageExtent`, and `currentExtent` must always equal the window size.

The `currentExtent` of an Xcb surface must have both width and height greater than 0, or both of them 0.

**Note**

Due to above restrictions, it is only possible to create a new swapchain on this platform with `imageExtent` being equal to the current size of the window.

The window size may become (0, 0) on this platform (e.g. when the window is minimized), and so a swapchain cannot be created until the size changes.

Some Vulkan functions may send protocol over the specified xcb connection when using a swapchain or presentable images created from a `VkSurfaceKHR` referring to an xcb window. Applications must therefore ensure the xcb connection is available to Vulkan for the duration of any functions that manipulate such swapchains or their presentable images, and any functions that build or queue command buffers that operate on such presentable images. Specifically, applications using Vulkan with xcb-based swapchains must

- Avoid holding a server grab on an xcb connection while waiting for Vulkan operations to complete using a swapchain derived from a different xcb connection referring to the same X server instance. Failing to do so may result in deadlock.

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_xcb_surface
typedef VkFlags VkXcbSurfaceCreateFlagsKHR;
```

`VkXcbSurfaceCreateFlagsKHR` is a bitmask type for setting a mask, but is currently reserved for future use.
30.2.5. Xlib Platform

To create a `VkSurfaceKHR` object for an X11 window, using the Xlib client-side library, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_xlib_surface
VkResult vkCreateXlibSurfaceKHR(
    VkInstance instance,
    const VkXlibSurfaceCreateInfoKHR* pCreateInfo,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator,
    VkSurfaceKHR* pSurface);
```

- `instance` is the instance to associate the surface with.
- `pCreateInfo` is a pointer to a `VkXlibSurfaceCreateInfoKHR` structure containing the parameters affecting the creation of the surface object.
- `pAllocator` is the allocator used for host memory allocated for the surface object when there is no more specific allocator available (see Memory Allocation).
- `pSurface` is a pointer to a `VkSurfaceKHR` handle in which the created surface object is returned.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- `VUID-vkCreateXlibSurfaceKHR-instance-parameter` 
  `instance` must be a valid `VkInstance` handle

- `VUID-vkCreateXlibSurfaceKHR-pCreateInfo-parameter` 
  `pCreateInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkXlibSurfaceCreateInfoKHR` structure

- `VUID-vkCreateXlibSurfaceKHR-pAllocator-parameter` 
  If `pAllocator` is not NULL, `pAllocator` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkAllocationCallbacks` structure

- `VUID-vkCreateXlibSurfaceKHR-pSurface-parameter` 
  `pSurface` must be a valid pointer to a `VkSurfaceKHR` handle

### Return Codes

**Success**
- `VK_SUCCESS`

**Failure**
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY`

The `VkXlibSurfaceCreateInfoKHR` structure is defined as:
// Provided by VK_KHR_xlib_surface

typedef struct VkXlibSurfaceCreateInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkXlibSurfaceCreateFlagsKHR flags;
    Display* dpy;
    Window window;
} VkXlibSurfaceCreateInfoKHR;

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `flags` is reserved for future use.
- `dpy` is a pointer to an Xlib `Display` connection to the X server.
- `window` is an Xlib `Window` to associate the surface with.

**Valid Usage**

- VUID-VkXlibSurfaceCreateInfoKHR-dpy-01313
  
  `dpy` must point to a valid Xlib `Display`

- VUID-VkXlibSurfaceCreateInfoKHR-window-01314
  
  `window` must be a valid Xlib `Window`

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-VkXlibSurfaceCreateInfoKHR-sType-sType
  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_XLIB_SURFACE_CREATE_INFO_KHR`

- VUID-VkXlibSurfaceCreateInfoKHR-pNext-pNext
  
  `pNext` must be `NULL`

- VUID-VkXlibSurfaceCreateInfoKHR-flags-zerobitmask
  
  `flags` must be 0

With Xlib, `minImageExtent`, `maxImageExtent`, and `currentExtent` must always equal the window size.

The `currentExtent` of an Xlib surface must have both `width` and `height` greater than 0, or both of them 0.

**Note**

Due to above restrictions, it is only possible to create a new swapchain on this platform with `imageExtent` being equal to the current size of the window.

The window size may become (0, 0) on this platform (e.g. when the window is minimized), and so a swapchain cannot be created until the size changes.
Some Vulkan functions may send protocol over the specified Xlib Display connection when using a swapchain or presentable images created from a VkSurfaceKHR referring to an Xlib window. Applications must therefore ensure the display connection is available to Vulkan for the duration of any functions that manipulate such swapchains or their presentable images, and any functions that build or queue command buffers that operate on such presentable images. Specifically, applications using Vulkan with Xlib-based swapchains must

- Avoid holding a server grab on a display connection while waiting for Vulkan operations to complete using a swapchain derived from a different display connection referring to the same X server instance. Failing to do so may result in deadlock.

Some implementations may require threads to implement some presentation modes so applications must call XInitThreads() before calling any other Xlib functions.

```cpp
// Provided by VK_KHR_xlib_surface
typedef VkFlags VkXlibSurfaceCreateFlagsKHR;
```

VkXlibSurfaceCreateFlagsKHR is a bitmask type for setting a mask, but is currently reserved for future use.

### 30.2.6. Platform-Independent Information

Once created, VkSurfaceKHR objects can be used in this and other extensions, in particular the VK_KHR_swapchain extension.

Several WSI functions return VK_ERROR_SURFACE_LOST_KHR if the surface becomes no longer available. After such an error, the surface (and any child swapchain, if one exists) should be destroyed, as there is no way to restore them to a not-lost state. Applications may attempt to create a new VkSurfaceKHR using the same native platform window object, but whether such re-creation will succeed is platform-dependent and may depend on the reason the surface became unavailable. A lost surface does not otherwise cause devices to be lost.

To destroy a VkSurfaceKHR object, call:

```cpp
// Provided by VK_KHR_surface
void vkDestroySurfaceKHR(
    VkInstance instance,        // instance used to create the surface.
    VkSurfaceKHR surface,       // surface to destroy.
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator);      // allocator used for host memory allocated for the surface object when there is no more specific allocator available (see Memory Allocation).
```

Destroying a VkSurfaceKHR merely severs the connection between Vulkan and the native surface, and does not imply destroying the native surface, closing a window, or similar behavior.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkDestroySurfaceKHR-surface-01266
  All VkSwapchainKHR objects created for surface must have been destroyed prior to destroying surface

- VUID-vkDestroySurfaceKHR-surface-01267
  If VkAllocationCallbacks were provided when surface was created, a compatible set of callbacks must be provided here

- VUID-vkDestroySurfaceKHR-surface-01268
  If no VkAllocationCallbacks were provided when surface was created, pAllocator must be NULL

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkDestroySurfaceKHR-instance-parameter
  instance must be a valid VkInstance handle

- VUID-vkDestroySurfaceKHR-surface-parameter
  If surface is not VK_NULL_HANDLE, surface must be a valid VkSurfaceKHR handle

- VUID-vkDestroySurfaceKHR-pAllocator-parameter
  If pAllocator is not NULL, pAllocator must be a valid pointer to a valid VkAllocationCallbacks structure

- VUID-vkDestroySurfaceKHR-surface-parent
  If surface is a valid handle, it must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from instance

Host Synchronization

- Host access to surface must be externally synchronized

30.3. Presenting Directly to Display Devices

In some environments applications can also present Vulkan rendering directly to display devices without using an intermediate windowing system. This can be useful for embedded applications, or implementing the rendering/presentation backend of a windowing system using Vulkan. The VK_KHR_display extension provides the functionality necessary to enumerate display devices and create VkSurfaceKHR objects that target displays.

30.3.1. Display Enumeration

Displays are represented by VkDisplayKHR handles:
Various functions are provided for enumerating the available display devices present on a Vulkan physical device. To query information about the available displays, call:

```c
VkResult vkGetPhysicalDeviceDisplayPropertiesKHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    uint32_t* pPropertyCount,
    VkDisplayPropertiesKHR* pProperties);
```

- `physicalDevice` is a physical device.
- `pPropertyCount` is a pointer to an integer related to the number of display devices available or queried, as described below.
- `pProperties` is either `NULL` or a pointer to an array of `VkDisplayPropertiesKHR` structures.

If `pProperties` is `NULL`, then the number of display devices available for `physicalDevice` is returned in `pPropertyCount`. Otherwise, `pPropertyCount` must point to a variable set by the user to the number of elements in the `pProperties` array, and on return the variable is overwritten with the number of structures actually written to `pProperties`. If the value of `pPropertyCount` is less than the number of display devices for `physicalDevice`, at most `pPropertyCount` structures will be written, and `VK_INCOMPLETE` will be returned instead of `VK_SUCCESS`, to indicate that not all the available properties were returned.

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- `VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceDisplayPropertiesKHR-physicalDevice-parameter` physicalDevice **must** be a valid `VkPhysicalDevice` handle
- `VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceDisplayPropertiesKHR-pPropertyCount-parameter` pPropertyCount **must** be a valid pointer to a `uint32_t` value
- `VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceDisplayPropertiesKHR-pProperties-parameter` If the value referenced by `pPropertyCount` is not 0, and `pProperties` is not `NULL`, `pProperties` **must** be a valid pointer to an array of `pPropertyCount` `VkDisplayPropertiesKHR` structures
Return Codes

Success

- VK_SUCCESS
- VK_INCOMPLETE

Failure

- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY

The `VkDisplayPropertiesKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_display
typedef struct VkDisplayPropertiesKHR {
    VkDisplayKHR display;
    const char* displayName;
    VkExtent2D physicalDimensions;
    VkExtent2D physicalResolution;
    VkSurfaceTransformFlagsKHR supportedTransforms;
    VkBool32 planeReorderPossible;
    VkBool32 persistentContent;
} VkDisplayPropertiesKHR;
```

- **display** is a handle that is used to refer to the display described here. This handle will be valid for the lifetime of the Vulkan instance.

- **displayName** is **NULL** or a pointer to a null-terminated UTF-8 string containing the name of the display. Generally, this will be the name provided by the display’s EDID. If **NULL**, no suitable name is available. If not **NULL**, the string pointed to must remain accessible and unmodified as long as **display** is valid.

- **physicalDimensions** describes the physical width and height of the visible portion of the display, in millimeters.

- **physicalResolution** describes the physical, native, or preferred resolution of the display.

  **Note**

  For devices which have no natural value to return here, implementations **should** return the maximum resolution supported.

- **supportedTransforms** is a bitmask of `VkSurfaceTransformFlagBitsKHR` describing which transforms are supported by this display.

- **planeReorderPossible** tells whether the planes on this display can have their z order changed. If this is **VK_TRUE**, the application can re-arrange the planes on this display in any order relative to each other.

- **persistentContent** tells whether the display supports self-refresh/internal buffering. If this is
true, the application can submit persistent present operations on swapchains created against this display.

Note
Persistent presents may have higher latency, and may use less power when the screen content is updated infrequently, or when only a portion of the screen needs to be updated in most frames.

To query information about the available displays, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_display_properties2
VkResult vkGetPhysicalDeviceDisplayProperties2KHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    uint32_t* pPropertyCount,
    VkDisplayProperties2KHR* pProperties);
```

- `physicalDevice` is a physical device.
- `pPropertyCount` is a pointer to an integer related to the number of display devices available or queried, as described below.
- `pProperties` is either NULL or a pointer to an array of `VkDisplayProperties2KHR` structures.

`vkGetPhysicalDeviceDisplayProperties2KHR` behaves similarly to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceDisplayPropertiesKHR`, with the ability to return extended information via chained output structures.

Valid Usage (Implicit)
- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceDisplayProperties2KHR-physicalDevice-parameter `physicalDevice` must be a valid `VkPhysicalDevice` handle
- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceDisplayProperties2KHR-pPropertyCount-parameter `pPropertyCount` must be a valid pointer to a `uint32_t` value
- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceDisplayProperties2KHR-pProperties-parameter

If the value referenced by `pPropertyCount` is not 0, and `pProperties` is not NULL, `pProperties` must be a valid pointer to an array of `pPropertyCount` `VkDisplayProperties2KHR` structures.
Return Codes

**Success**
- VK_SUCCESS
- VK_INCOMPLETE

**Failure**
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY

The `VkDisplayProperties2KHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_display_properties2
typedef struct VkDisplayProperties2KHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkDisplayPropertiesKHR displayProperties;
} VkDisplayProperties2KHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `displayProperties` is a `VkDisplayPropertiesKHR` structure.

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- `VUID-VkDisplayProperties2KHR-sType-sType`
  - `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DISPLAY_PROPERTIES_2_KHR`
- `VUID-VkDisplayProperties2KHR-pNext-pNext`
  - `pNext` must be NULL

**Display Planes**

Images are presented to individual planes on a display. Devices **must** support at least one plane on each display. Planes **can** be stacked and blended to composite multiple images on one display. Devices **may** support only a fixed stacking order and fixed mapping between planes and displays, or they **may** allow arbitrary application specified stacking orders and mappings between planes and displays. To query the properties of device display planes, call:
// Provided by VK_KHR_display

VkResult vkGetPhysicalDeviceDisplayPlanePropertiesKHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    uint32_t* pPropertyCount,
    VkDisplayPlanePropertiesKHR* pProperties);

- `physicalDevice` is a physical device.
- `pPropertyCount` is a pointer to an integer related to the number of display planes available or queried, as described below.
- `pProperties` is either `NULL` or a pointer to an array of `VkDisplayPlanePropertiesKHR` structures.

If `pProperties` is `NULL`, then the number of display planes available for `physicalDevice` is returned in `pPropertyCount`. Otherwise, `pPropertyCount` must point to a variable set by the user to the number of elements in the `pProperties` array, and on return the variable is overwritten with the number of structures actually written to `pProperties`. If the value of `pPropertyCount` is less than the number of display planes for `physicalDevice`, at most `pPropertyCount` structures will be written.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceDisplayPlanePropertiesKHR-physicalDevice-parameter**
  - `physicalDevice` must be a valid `VkPhysicalDevice` handle
- **VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceDisplayPlanePropertiesKHR-pPropertyCount-parameter**
  - `pPropertyCount` must be a valid pointer to a `uint32_t` value
- **VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceDisplayPlanePropertiesKHR-pProperties-parameter**
  - If the value referenced by `pPropertyCount` is not 0, and `pProperties` is not `NULL`, `pProperties` must be a valid pointer to an array of `pPropertyCount` `VkDisplayPlanePropertiesKHR` structures

### Return Codes

**Success**

- `VK_SUCCESS`
- `VK_INCOMPLETE`

**Failure**

- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY`

The `VkDisplayPlanePropertiesKHR` structure is defined as:

---

1176 | Chapter 30. Window System Integration (WSI)
// Provided by VK_KHR_display
typedef struct VkDisplayPlanePropertiesKHR {
    VkDisplayKHR  currentDisplay;
    uint32_t       currentStackIndex;
} VkDisplayPlanePropertiesKHR;

• currentDisplay is the handle of the display the plane is currently associated with. If the plane is not currently attached to any displays, this will be VK_NULL_HANDLE.

• currentStackIndex is the current z-order of the plane. This will be between 0 and the value returned by vkGetPhysicalDeviceDisplayPlanePropertiesKHR in pPropertyCount.

To query the properties of a device’s display planes, call:

// Provided by VK_KHR_get_display_properties2
VkResult vkGetPhysicalDeviceDisplayPlaneProperties2KHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,  
    uint32_t* pPropertyCount,        
    VkDisplayPlaneProperties2KHR* pProperties);

• physicalDevice is a physical device.

• pPropertyCount is a pointer to an integer related to the number of display planes available or queried, as described below.

• pProperties is either NULL or a pointer to an array of VkDisplayPlaneProperties2KHR structures.

vkGetPhysicalDeviceDisplayPlaneProperties2KHR behaves similarly to vkGetPhysicalDeviceDisplayPlanePropertiesKHR, with the ability to return extended information via chained output structures.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

• VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceDisplayPlaneProperties2KHR-physicalDevice-parameter physicalDevice must be a valid VkPhysicalDevice handle

• VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceDisplayPlaneProperties2KHR-pPropertyCount-parameter pPropertyCount must be a valid pointer to a uint32_t value

• VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceDisplayPlaneProperties2KHR-pProperties-parameter If the value referenced by pPropertyCount is not 0, and pProperties is not NULL, pProperties must be a valid pointer to an array of pPropertyCount VkDisplayPlaneProperties2KHR structures
Return Codes

**Success**
- VK_SUCCESS
- VK_INCOMPLETE

**Failure**
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY

The `VkDisplayPlaneProperties2KHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_display_properties2
typedef struct VkDisplayPlaneProperties2KHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkDisplayPlanePropertiesKHR displayPlaneProperties;
} VkDisplayPlaneProperties2KHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `displayPlaneProperties` is a `VkDisplayPlanePropertiesKHR` structure.

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- `VUID-VkDisplayPlaneProperties2KHR-sType-sType`
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DISPLAY_PLANEPERTIES_2_KHR`

- `VUID-VkDisplayPlaneProperties2KHR-pNext-pNext`
  `pNext` must be NULL

To determine which displays a plane is usable with, call

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_display
VkResult vkGetDisplayPlaneSupportedDisplaysKHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    uint32_t planeIndex,
    uint32_t* pDisplayCount,
    VkDisplayKHR* pDisplays);
```

- `physicalDevice` is a physical device.
- `planeIndex` is the plane which the application wishes to use, and must be in the range [0, physical device plane count - 1].
• **pDisplayCount** is a pointer to an integer related to the number of displays available or queried, as described below.

• **pDisplays** is either **NULL** or a pointer to an array of **VkDisplayKHR** handles.

If **pDisplays** is **NULL**, then the number of displays usable with the specified **planeIndex** for **physicalDevice** is returned in **pDisplayCount**. Otherwise, **pDisplayCount** must point to a variable set by the user to the number of elements in the **pDisplays** array, and on return the variable is overwritten with the number of handles actually written to **pDisplays**. If the value of **pDisplayCount** is less than the number of usable display-plane pairs for **physicalDevice**, at most **pDisplayCount** handles will be written, and **VK_INCOMPLETE** will be returned instead of **VK_SUCCESS**, to indicate that not all the available pairs were returned.

### Valid Usage

- VUID-vkGetDisplayPlaneSupportedDisplaysKHR-planeIndex-01249
  
  **planeIndex** must be less than the number of display planes supported by the device as determined by calling **vkGetPhysicalDeviceDisplayPlanePropertiesKHR**

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetDisplayPlaneSupportedDisplaysKHR-physicalDevice-parameter
  
  **physicalDevice** must be a valid **VkPhysicalDevice** handle

- VUID-vkGetDisplayPlaneSupportedDisplaysKHR-pDisplayCount-parameter
  
  **pDisplayCount** must be a valid pointer to a **uint32_t** value

- VUID-vkGetDisplayPlaneSupportedDisplaysKHR-pDisplays-parameter
  
  If the value referenced by **pDisplayCount** is not 0, and **pDisplays** is not **NULL**, **pDisplays** must be a valid pointer to an array of **pDisplayCount** **VkDisplayKHR** handles

### Return Codes

**Success**

- **VK_SUCCESS**
- **VK_INCOMPLETE**

**Failure**

- **VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY**
- **VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY**

Additional properties of displays are queried using specialized query functions.

### Display Modes

Display modes are represented by **VkDisplayModeKHR** handles:
Each display has one or more supported modes associated with it by default. These built-in modes are queried by calling:

```cpp
// Provided by VK_KHR_display
VK_DEFINE_NON_DISPATCHABLE_HANDLE(VkDisplayModeKHR)
```

```cpp
void vkGetDisplayModePropertiesKHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    VkDisplayKHR display,
    uint32_t* pPropertyCount,
    VkDisplayModePropertiesKHR* pProperties);
```

- `physicalDevice` is the physical device associated with `display`.
- `display` is the display to query.
- `pPropertyCount` is a pointer to an integer related to the number of display modes available or queried, as described below.
- `pProperties` is either `NULL` or a pointer to an array of `VkDisplayModePropertiesKHR` structures.

If `pProperties` is `NULL`, then the number of display modes available on the specified `display` for `physicalDevice` is returned in `pPropertyCount`. Otherwise, `pPropertyCount` must point to a variable set by the user to the number of elements in the `pProperties` array, and on return the variable is overwritten with the number of structures actually written to `pProperties`. If the value of `pPropertyCount` is less than the number of display modes for `physicalDevice`, at most `pPropertyCount` structures will be written, and `VK_INCOMPLETE` will be returned instead of `VK_SUCCESS`, to indicate that not all the available display modes were returned.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetDisplayModePropertiesKHR-physicalDevice-parameter
  `physicalDevice` must be a valid `VkPhysicalDevice` handle

- VUID-vkGetDisplayModePropertiesKHR-display-parameter
  `display` must be a valid `VkDisplayKHR` handle

- VUID-vkGetDisplayModePropertiesKHR-pPropertyCount-parameter
  `pPropertyCount` must be a valid pointer to a `uint32_t` value

- VUID-vkGetDisplayModePropertiesKHR-pProperties-parameter
  If the value referenced by `pPropertyCount` is not 0, and `pProperties` is not `NULL`, `pProperties` must be a valid pointer to an array of `pPropertyCount` `VkDisplayModePropertiesKHR` structures

- VUID-vkGetDisplayModePropertiesKHR-display-parent
  `display` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from `physicalDevice`
Return Codes

Success
- `VK_SUCCESS`
- `VK_INCOMPLETE`

Failure
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY`

The `VkDisplayModePropertiesKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_display
typedef struct VkDisplayModePropertiesKHR {
    VkDisplayModeKHR displayMode;
    VkDisplayModeParametersKHR parameters;
} VkDisplayModePropertiesKHR;
```

- `displayMode` is a handle to the display mode described in this structure. This handle will be valid for the lifetime of the Vulkan instance.
- `parameters` is a `VkDisplayModeParametersKHR` structure describing the display parameters associated with `displayMode`.

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_display
typedef VkFlags VkDisplayModeCreateFlagsKHR;
```

`VkDisplayModeCreateFlagsKHR` is a bitmask type for setting a mask, but is currently reserved for future use.

To query the properties of a device’s built-in display modes, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_display_properties2
VkResult vkGetDisplayModeProperties2KHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    VkDisplayKHR display,
    uint32_t* pPropertyCount,
    VkDisplayModeProperties2KHR* pProperties);
```

- `physicalDevice` is the physical device associated with `display`.
- `display` is the display to query.
- `pPropertyCount` is a pointer to an integer related to the number of display modes available or queried, as described below.
• **pProperties** is either **NULL** or a pointer to an array of **VkDisplayModeProperties2KHR** structures.

`vkGetDisplayModeProperties2KHR` behaves similarly to `vkGetDisplayModePropertiesKHR`, with the ability to return extended information via chained output structures.

---

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- **VUID-vkGetDisplayModeProperties2KHR-physicalDevice-parameter**
  - **physicalDevice** must be a valid **VkPhysicalDevice** handle

- **VUID-vkGetDisplayModeProperties2KHR-display-parameter**
  - **display** must be a valid **VkDisplayKHR** handle

- **VUID-vkGetDisplayModeProperties2KHR-pPropertyCount-parameter**
  - **pPropertyCount** must be a valid pointer to a **uint32_t** value

- **VUID-vkGetDisplayModeProperties2KHR-pProperties-parameter**
  - If the value referenced by **pPropertyCount** is not 0, and **pProperties** is not **NULL**, **pProperties** must be a valid pointer to an array of **pPropertyCount** **VkDisplayModeProperties2KHR** structures

- **VUID-vkGetDisplayModeProperties2KHR-display-parent**
  - **display** must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from **physicalDevice**

---

**Return Codes**

**Success**

- **VK_SUCCESS**
- **VK_INCOMPLETE**

**Failure**

- **VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY**
- **VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY**

---

The **VkDisplayModeProperties2KHR** structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_display_properties2
typedef struct VkDisplayModeProperties2KHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkDisplayModePropertiesKHR displayModeProperties;
} VkDisplayModeProperties2KHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **displayModeProperties** is a **VkDisplayModePropertiesKHR** structure.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkDisplayModeProperties2KHR-sType-sType
  
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DISPLAY_MODE_PROPERTIES_2_KHR

- VUID-VkDisplayModeProperties2KHR-pNext-pNext
  
  pNext must be NULL

The VkDisplayModeParametersKHR structure is defined as:

```
// Provided by VK_KHR_display
typedef struct VkDisplayModeParametersKHR {
    VkExtent2D visibleRegion;
    uint32_t refreshRate;
} VkDisplayModeParametersKHR;
```

- visibleRegion is the 2D extents of the visible region.
- refreshRate is a uint32_t that is the number of times the display is refreshed each second multiplied by 1000.

**Note**

For example, a 60Hz display mode would report a refreshRate of 60,000.

Valid Usage

- VUID-VkDisplayModeParametersKHR-width-01990
  
  The width member of visibleRegion must be greater than 0

- VUID-VkDisplayModeParametersKHR-height-01991
  
  The height member of visibleRegion must be greater than 0

- VUID-VkDisplayModeParametersKHR-refreshRate-01992
  
  refreshRate must be greater than 0

Additional modes may also be created by calling:

```
// Provided by VK_KHR_display
VkResult vkCreateDisplayModeKHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice, 
    VkDisplayKHR display, 
    const VkDisplayModeCreateInfoKHR* pCreateInfo, 
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator, 
    VkDisplayModeKHR* pMode);
```

- physicalDevice is the physical device associated with display.
- **display** is the display to create an additional mode for.
- **pCreateInfo** is a pointer to a `VkDisplayModeCreateInfoKHR` structure describing the new mode to create.
- **pAllocator** is the allocator used for host memory allocated for the display mode object when there is no more specific allocator available (see Memory Allocation).
- **pMode** is a pointer to a `VkDisplayModeKHR` handle in which the mode created is returned.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCreateDisplayModeKHR-physicalDevice-parameter
  - `physicalDevice` must be a valid `VkPhysicalDevice` handle
- VUID-vkCreateDisplayModeKHR-display-parameter
  - `display` must be a valid `VkDisplayKHR` handle
- VUID-vkCreateDisplayModeKHR-pCreateInfo-parameter
  - `pCreateInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkDisplayModeCreateInfoKHR` structure
- VUID-vkCreateDisplayModeKHR-pAllocator-parameter
  - If `pAllocator` is not `NULL`, `pAllocator` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkAllocationCallbacks` structure
- VUID-vkCreateDisplayModeKHR-pMode-parameter
  - `pMode` must be a valid pointer to a `VkDisplayModeKHR` handle
- VUID-vkCreateDisplayModeKHR-display-parent
  - `display` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from `physicalDevice`

### Host Synchronization

- Host access to `display` must be externally synchronized

### Return Codes

**Success**
- `VK_SUCCESS`

**Failure**
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_INITIALIZATION_FAILED`

The `VkDisplayModeCreateInfoKHR` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkDisplayModeCreateInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkDisplayModeCreateFlagsKHR flags;
    VkDisplayModeParametersKHR parameters;
} VkDisplayModeCreateInfoKHR;

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **flags** is reserved for future use, and must be zero.
- **parameters** is a VkDisplayModeParametersKHR structure describing the display parameters to use in creating the new mode. If the parameters are not compatible with the specified display, the implementation must return VK_ERROR_INITIALIZATION_FAILED.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkDisplayModeCreateInfoKHR-sType-sType
  - **sType** must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DISPLAY_MODE_CREATE_INFO_KHR
- VUID-VkDisplayModeCreateInfoKHR-pNext-pNext
  - **pNext** must be NULL
- VUID-VkDisplayModeCreateInfoKHR-flags-zerobitmask
  - **flags** must be 0
- VUID-VkDisplayModeCreateInfoKHR-parameters-parameter
  - **parameters** must be a valid VkDisplayModeParametersKHR structure

Applications that wish to present directly to a display must select which layer, or “plane” of the display they wish to target, and a mode to use with the display. Each display supports at least one plane. The capabilities of a given mode and plane combination are determined by calling:

```plaintext
// Provided by VK_KHR_display
VkResult vkGetDisplayPlaneCapabilitiesKHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    VkDisplayModeKHR mode,
    uint32_t planeIndex,
    VkDisplayPlaneCapabilitiesKHR* pCapabilities);
```

- **physicalDevice** is the physical device associated with the display specified by **mode**
- **mode** is the display mode the application intends to program when using the specified plane. Note this parameter also implicitly specifies a display.
- **planeIndex** is the plane which the application intends to use with the display, and is less than the number of display planes supported by the device.
• **pCapabilities** is a pointer to a `VkDisplayPlaneCapabilitiesKHR` structure in which the capabilities are returned.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetDisplayPlaneCapabilitiesKHR-physicalDevice-parameter<br>
  `physicalDevice` must be a valid `VkPhysicalDevice` handle
- VUID-vkGetDisplayPlaneCapabilitiesKHR-mode-parameter<br>
  `mode` must be a valid `VkDisplayModeKHR` handle
- VUID-vkGetDisplayPlaneCapabilitiesKHR-pCapabilities-parameter<br>
  `pCapabilities` must be a valid pointer to a `VkDisplayPlaneCapabilitiesKHR` structure

### Host Synchronization

- Host access to `mode` must be externally synchronized

### Return Codes

#### Success
- `VK_SUCCESS`

#### Failure
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY`

The `VkDisplayPlaneCapabilitiesKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_display
typedef struct VkDisplayPlaneCapabilitiesKHR {
    VkDisplayPlaneAlphaFlagsKHR supportedAlpha;
    VkOffset2D minSrcPosition;
    VkOffset2D maxSrcPosition;
    VkExtent2D minSrcExtent;
    VkExtent2D maxSrcExtent;
    VkOffset2D minDstPosition;
    VkOffset2D maxDstPosition;
    VkExtent2D minDstExtent;
    VkExtent2D maxDstExtent;
} VkDisplayPlaneCapabilitiesKHR;
```

- **supportedAlpha** is a bitmask of `VkDisplayPlaneAlphaFlagBitsKHR` describing the supported alpha blending modes.
- **minSrcPosition** is the minimum source rectangle offset supported by this plane using the
specified mode.

- **maxSrcPosition** is the maximum source rectangle offset supported by this plane using the specified mode. The $x$ and $y$ components of **maxSrcPosition** must each be greater than or equal to the $x$ and $y$ components of **minSrcPosition**, respectively.

- **minSrcExtent** is the minimum source rectangle size supported by this plane using the specified mode.

- **maxSrcExtent** is the maximum source rectangle size supported by this plane using the specified mode.

- **minDstPosition**, **maxDstPosition**, **minDstExtent**, **maxDstExtent** all have similar semantics to their corresponding *Src* equivalents, but apply to the output region within the mode rather than the input region within the source image. Unlike the *Src* offsets, **minDstPosition** and **maxDstPosition** may contain negative values.

The minimum and maximum position and extent fields describe the implementation limits, if any, as they apply to the specified display mode and plane. Vendors may support displaying a subset of a swapchain's presentable images on the specified display plane. This is expressed by returning **minSrcPosition**, **maxSrcPosition**, **minSrcExtent**, and **maxSrcExtent** values that indicate a range of possible positions and sizes which may be used to specify the region within the presentable images that source pixels will be read from when creating a swapchain on the specified display mode and plane.

Vendors may also support mapping the presentable images' content to a subset or superset of the visible region in the specified display mode. This is expressed by returning **minDstPosition**, **maxDstPosition**, **minDstExtent** and **maxDstExtent** values that indicate a range of possible positions and sizes which may be used to describe the region within the display mode that the source pixels will be mapped to.

Other vendors may support only a 1-1 mapping between pixels in the presentable images and the display mode. This may be indicated by returning (0,0) for **minSrcPosition**, **maxSrcPosition**, **minDstPosition**, and **maxDstPosition**, and (display mode width, display mode height) for **minSrcExtent**, **maxSrcExtent**, **minDstExtent**, and **maxDstExtent**.

The value **supportedAlpha** must contain at least one valid VkDisplayPlaneAlphaFlagBitsKHR bit.

These values indicate the limits of the implementation's individual fields. Not all combinations of values within the offset and extent ranges returned in VkDisplayPlaneCapabilitiesKHR are guaranteed to be supported. Presentation requests specifying unsupported combinations may fail.

To query the capabilities of a given mode and plane combination, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_display_properties2
VkResult vkGetDisplayPlaneCapabilities2KHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    const VkDisplayPlaneInfo2KHR* pDisplayPlaneInfo,
    VkDisplayPlaneCapabilities2KHR* pCapabilities);
```

- **physicalDevice** is the physical device associated with **pDisplayPlaneInfo**.
• **pDisplayPlaneInfo** is a pointer to a `VkDisplayPlaneInfo2KHR` structure describing the plane and mode.

• **pCapabilities** is a pointer to a `VkDisplayPlaneCapabilities2KHR` structure in which the capabilities are returned.

`vkGetDisplayPlaneCapabilities2KHR` behaves similarly to `vkGetDisplayPlaneCapabilitiesKHR`, with the ability to specify extended inputs via chained input structures, and to return extended information via chained output structures.

---

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkGetDisplayPlaneCapabilities2KHR-physicalDevice-parameter**
  
  `physicalDevice` must be a valid `VkPhysicalDevice` handle

- **VUID-vkGetDisplayPlaneCapabilities2KHR-pDisplayPlaneInfo-parameter**
  
  `pDisplayPlaneInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkDisplayPlaneInfo2KHR` structure

- **VUID-vkGetDisplayPlaneCapabilities2KHR-pCapabilities-parameter**
  
  `pCapabilities` must be a valid pointer to a `VkDisplayPlaneCapabilities2KHR` structure

---

### Return Codes

**Success**

- **VK_SUCCESS**

**Failure**

- **VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY**
- **VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY**

---

The `VkDisplayPlaneInfo2KHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_display_properties2
typedef struct VkDisplayPlaneInfo2KHR {
    VkStructureType         sType;
    const void*             pNext;
    VkDisplayModeKHR        mode;
    uint32_t                planeIndex;
} VkDisplayPlaneInfo2KHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **mode** is the display mode the application intends to program when using the specified plane.
**Note**
This parameter also implicitly specifies a display.

- **planeIndex** is the plane which the application intends to use with the display.

The members of **VkDisplayPlaneInfo2KHR** correspond to the arguments to **vkGetDisplayPlaneCapabilitiesKHR**, with **sType** and **pNext** added for extensibility.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkDisplayPlaneInfo2KHR-sType-sType**
  - **sType** must be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DISPLAY_PLANE_INFO_2_KHR**

- **VUID-VkDisplayPlaneInfo2KHR-pNext-pNext**
  - **pNext** must be **NULL**

- **VUID-VkDisplayPlaneInfo2KHR-mode-parameter**
  - **mode** must be a valid **VkDisplayModeKHR** handle

### Host Synchronization

- Host access to **mode** must be externally synchronized

The **VkDisplayPlaneCapabilities2KHR** structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_display_properties2
typedef struct VkDisplayPlaneCapabilities2KHR {
    VkStructureType   sType;
    void*             pNext;
    VkDisplayPlaneCapabilitiesKHR capabilities;
} VkDisplayPlaneCapabilities2KHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **capabilities** is a **VkDisplayPlaneCapabilitiesKHR** structure.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkDisplayPlaneCapabilities2KHR-sType-sType**
  - **sType** must be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DISPLAY_PLANE_CAPABILITIES_2_KHR**

- **VUID-VkDisplayPlaneCapabilities2KHR-pNext-pNext**
  - **pNext** must be **NULL**
30.3.2. Display Surfaces

A complete display configuration includes a mode, one or more display planes and any parameters describing their behavior, and parameters describing some aspects of the images associated with those planes. Display surfaces describe the configuration of a single plane within a complete display configuration. To create a `VkSurfaceKHR` object for a display plane, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_display
VkResult vkCreateDisplayPlaneSurfaceKHR(
    VkInstance instance,
    const VkDisplaySurfaceCreateInfoKHR* pCreateInfo,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator,
    VkSurfaceKHR* pSurface);
```

- `instance` is the instance corresponding to the physical device the targeted display is on.
- `pCreateInfo` is a pointer to a `VkDisplaySurfaceCreateInfoKHR` structure specifying which mode, plane, and other parameters to use, as described below.
- `pAllocator` is the allocator used for host memory allocated for the surface object when there is no more specific allocator available (see Memory Allocation).
- `pSurface` is a pointer to a `VkSurfaceKHR` handle in which the created surface is returned.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCreateDisplayPlaneSurfaceKHR-instance-parameter
  `instance` must be a valid `VkInstance` handle
- VUID-vkCreateDisplayPlaneSurfaceKHR-pCreateInfo-parameter
  `pCreateInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkDisplaySurfaceCreateInfoKHR` structure
- VUID-vkCreateDisplayPlaneSurfaceKHR-pAllocator-parameter
  If `pAllocator` is not NULL, `pAllocator` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkAllocationCallbacks` structure
- VUID-vkCreateDisplayPlaneSurfaceKHR-pSurface-parameter
  `pSurface` must be a valid pointer to a `VkSurfaceKHR` handle

Return Codes

Success
- VK_SUCCESS

Failure
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY

The `VkDisplaySurfaceCreateInfoKHR` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkDisplaySurfaceCreateInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkDisplaySurfaceCreateFlagsKHR flags;
    VkDisplayModeKHR displayMode;
    uint32_t planeIndex;
    uint32_t planeStackIndex;
    VkSurfaceTransformFlagBitsKHR transform;
    float globalAlpha;
    VkDisplayPlaneAlphaFlagBitsKHR alphaMode;
    VkExtent2D imageExtent;
} VkDisplaySurfaceCreateInfoKHR;

• **sType** is the type of this structure.
• **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• **flags** is reserved for future use, and **must** be zero.
• **displayMode** is a VkDisplayModeKHR handle specifying the mode to use when displaying this surface.
• **planeIndex** is the plane on which this surface appears.
• **planeStackIndex** is the z-order of the plane.
• **transform** is a VkSurfaceTransformFlagBitsKHR value specifying the transformation to apply to images as part of the scanout operation.
• **globalAlpha** is the global alpha value. This value is ignored if **alphaMode** is not VK_DISPLAY_PLANE_ALPHA_GLOBAL_BIT_KHR.
• **alphaMode** is a VkDisplayPlaneAlphaFlagBitsKHR value specifying the type of alpha blending to use.
• **imageExtent** is the size of the presentable images to use with the surface.

**Note**
Creating a display surface **must** not modify the state of the displays, planes, or other resources it names. For example, it **must** not apply the specified mode to be set on the associated display. Application of display configuration occurs as a side effect of presenting to a display surface.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkDisplaySurfaceCreateInfoKHR-planeIndex-01252**
  
  `planeIndex` **must** be less than the number of display planes supported by the device as determined by calling `vkGetPhysicalDeviceDisplayPlanePropertiesKHR`.

- **VUID-VkDisplaySurfaceCreateInfoKHR-planeReorderPossible-01253**
  
  If the `planeReorderPossible` member of the `VkDisplayPropertiesKHR` structure returned by `vkGetPhysicalDeviceDisplayPropertiesKHR` for the display corresponding to `displayMode` is `VK_TRUE` then `planeStackIndex` **must** be less than the number of display planes supported by the device as determined by calling `vkGetPhysicalDeviceDisplayPlanePropertiesKHR`; otherwise `planeStackIndex` **must** equal the `currentStackIndex` member of `VkDisplayPlanePropertiesKHR` returned by `vkGetPhysicalDeviceDisplayPlanePropertiesKHR` for the display plane corresponding to `displayMode`.

- **VUID-VkDisplaySurfaceCreateInfoKHR-alphaMode-01254**
  
  If `alphaMode` is `VK_DISPLAY_PLANE_ALPHA_GLOBAL_BIT_KHR` then `globalAlpha` **must** be between 0 and 1, inclusive.

- **VUID-VkDisplaySurfaceCreateInfoKHR-alphaMode-01255**
  
  `alphaMode` **must** be one of the bits present in the `supportedAlpha` member of `VkDisplayPlaneCapabilitiesKHR` for the display plane corresponding to `displayMode`.

- **VUID-VkDisplaySurfaceCreateInfoKHR-width-01256**
  
  The `width` and `height` members of `imageExtent` **must** be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxImageDimension2D`.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkDisplaySurfaceCreateInfoKHR-sType-sType**
  
  `sType` **must** be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DISPLAY_SURFACE_CREATE_INFO_KHR`.

- **VUID-VkDisplaySurfaceCreateInfoKHR-pNext-pNext**
  
  `pNext` **must** be `NULL`.

- **VUID-VkDisplaySurfaceCreateInfoKHR-flags-zerobitmask**
  
  `flags` **must** be 0.

- **VUID-VkDisplaySurfaceCreateInfoKHR-displayMode-parameter**
  
  `displayMode` **must** be a valid `VkDisplayModeKHR` handle.

- **VUID-VkDisplaySurfaceCreateInfoKHR-transform-parameter**
  
  `transform` **must** be a valid `VkSurfaceTransformFlagBitsKHR` value.

- **VUID-VkDisplaySurfaceCreateInfoKHR-alphaMode-parameter**
  
  `alphaMode` **must** be a valid `VkDisplayPlaneAlphaFlagBitsKHR` value.

// Provided by VK_KHR_display

typedef VkFlags VkDisplaySurfaceCreateFlagsKHR;
**VkDisplaySurfaceCreateFlagsKHR** is a bitmask type for setting a mask, but is currently reserved for future use.

Possible values of **VkDisplaySurfaceCreateInfoKHR::alphaMode**, specifying the type of alpha blending to use on a display, are:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_display
typedef enum VkDisplayPlaneAlphaFlagBitsKHR {
    VK_DISPLAY_PLANE_ALPHA_OPAQUE_BIT_KHR = 0x00000001,
    VK_DISPLAY_PLANE_ALPHA_GLOBAL_BIT_KHR = 0x00000002,
    VK_DISPLAY_PLANE_ALPHA_PER_PIXEL_BIT_KHR = 0x00000004,
    VK_DISPLAY_PLANE_ALPHA_PER_PIXEL_PREMULTIPLIED_BIT_KHR = 0x00000008,
} VkDisplayPlaneAlphaFlagBitsKHR;
```

- **VK_DISPLAY_PLANE_ALPHA_OPAQUE_BIT_KHR** specifies that the source image will be treated as opaque.
- **VK_DISPLAY_PLANE_ALPHA_GLOBAL_BIT_KHR** specifies that a global alpha value must be specified that will be applied to all pixels in the source image.
- **VK_DISPLAY_PLANE_ALPHA_PER_PIXEL_BIT_KHR** specifies that the alpha value will be determined by the alpha channel of the source image's pixels. If the source format contains no alpha values, no blending will be applied. The source alpha values are not premultiplied into the source image's other color channels.
- **VK_DISPLAY_PLANE_ALPHA_PER_PIXEL_PREMULTIPLIED_BIT_KHR** is equivalent to **VK_DISPLAY_PLANE_ALPHA_PER_PIXEL_BIT_KHR**, except the source alpha values are assumed to be premultiplied into the source image's other color channels.

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_display
typedef VkFlags VkDisplayPlaneAlphaFlagsKHR;
```

**VkDisplayPlaneAlphaFlagsKHR** is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more **VkDisplayPlaneAlphaFlagBitsKHR**.

### 30.4. Querying for WSI Support

Not all physical devices will include WSI support. Within a physical device, not all queue families will support presentation. WSI support and compatibility can be determined in a platform-neutral manner (which determines support for presentation to a particular surface object) and additionally may be determined in platform-specific manners (which determine support for presentation on the specified physical device but do not guarantee support for presentation to a particular surface object).

To determine whether a queue family of a physical device supports presentation to a given surface, call:
VkResult vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceSupportKHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    uint32_t queueFamilyIndex,
    VkSurfaceKHR surface,
    VkBool32* pSupported);

- **physicalDevice** is the physical device.
- **queueFamilyIndex** is the queue family.
- **surface** is the surface.
- **pSupported** is a pointer to a `VkBool32`, which is set to `VK_TRUE` to indicate support, and `VK_FALSE` otherwise.

**Valid Usage**

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceSupportKHR-queueFamilyIndex-01269
  queueFamilyIndex must be less than pQueueFamilyPropertyCount returned by
  vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties for the given physicalDevice

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceSupportKHR-physicalDevice-parameter
  physicalDevice must be a valid `VkPhysicalDevice` handle
- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceSupportKHR-surface-parameter
  surface must be a valid `VkSurfaceKHR` handle
- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceSupportKHR-pSupported-parameter
  pSupported must be a valid pointer to a `VkBool32` value
- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceSupportKHR-commonparent
  Both of physicalDevice, and surface must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from
  the same `VkInstance`

**Return Codes**

**Success**
- `VK_SUCCESS`

**Failure**
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_SURFACE_LOST_KHR`
30.4.1. Android Platform

On Android, all physical devices and queue families must be capable of presentation with any native window. As a result there is no Android-specific query for these capabilities.

30.4.2. Wayland Platform

To determine whether a queue family of a physical device supports presentation to a Wayland compositor, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_wayland_surface
VkBool32 vkGetPhysicalDeviceWaylandPresentationSupportKHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,           // physical device
    uint32_t queueFamilyIndex,                 // queue family index
    struct wl_display* display);              // display
```

- `physicalDevice` is the physical device.
- `queueFamilyIndex` is the queue family index.
- `display` is a pointer to the `wl_display` associated with a Wayland compositor.

This platform-specific function can be called prior to creating a surface.

### Valid Usage

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceWaylandPresentationSupportKHR-queueFamilyIndex-01306
  queueFamilyIndex must be less than `pQueueFamilyPropertyCount` returned by `vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties` for the given `physicalDevice`.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceWaylandPresentationSupportKHR-physicalDevice-parameter
  `physicalDevice` must be a valid `VkPhysicalDevice` handle

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceWaylandPresentationSupportKHR-display-parameter
  `display` must be a valid pointer to a `wl_display` value

30.4.3. Win32 Platform

To determine whether a queue family of a physical device supports presentation to the Microsoft Windows desktop, call:
// Provided by VK_KHR_win32_surface
VkBool32 vkGetPhysicalDeviceWin32PresentationSupportKHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    uint32_t queueFamilyIndex);

- `physicalDevice` is the physical device.
- `queueFamilyIndex` is the queue family index.

This platform-specific function can be called prior to creating a surface.

Valid Usage

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceWin32PresentationSupportKHR-queueFamilyIndex-01309
  queueFamilyIndex must be less than `pQueueFamilyPropertyCount` returned by
  `vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties` for the given `physicalDevice`

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceWin32PresentationSupportKHR-physicalDevice-parameter
  `physicalDevice` must be a valid `VkPhysicalDevice` handle

30.4.4. XCB Platform

To determine whether a queue family of a physical device supports presentation to an X11 server, using the XCB client-side library, call:

// Provided by VK_KHR_xcb_surface
VkBool32 vkGetPhysicalDeviceXcbPresentationSupportKHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    uint32_t queueFamilyIndex,
    xcb_connection_t* connection,
    xcb_visualid_t visual_id);

- `physicalDevice` is the physical device.
- `queueFamilyIndex` is the queue family index.
- `connection` is a pointer to an `xcb_connection_t` to the X server.
- `visual_id` is an X11 visual (`xcb_visualid_t`).

This platform-specific function can be called prior to creating a surface.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceXcbPresentationSupportKHR-queueFamilyIndex-01312
  queueFamilyIndex must be less than pQueueFamilyPropertyCount returned by vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties for the given physicalDevice

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceXcbPresentationSupportKHR-physicalDevice-parameter
  physicalDevice must be a valid VkPhysicalDevice handle
- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceXcbPresentationSupportKHR-connection-parameter
  connection must be a valid pointer to an xcb_connection_t value

30.4.5. Xlib Platform

To determine whether a queue family of a physical device supports presentation to an X11 server, using the Xlib client-side library, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_xlib_surface
VkBool32 vkGetPhysicalDeviceXlibPresentationSupportKHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,     // physicalDevice is the physical device.
    uint32_t queueFamilyIndex,           // queueFamilyIndex is the queue family index.
    Display* dpy,                        // dpy is a pointer to an Xlib Display connection to the server.
    VisualID visualID)                  // visualId is an X11 visual (VisualID).
```

This platform-specific function can be called prior to creating a surface.

Valid Usage

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceXlibPresentationSupportKHR-queueFamilyIndex-01315
  queueFamilyIndex must be less than pQueueFamilyPropertyCount returned by vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties for the given physicalDevice
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceXlibPresentationSupportKHR-physicalDevice-parameter
  physicalDevice must be a valid VkPhysicalDevice handle

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceXlibPresentationSupportKHR-dpy-parameter
  dpy must be a valid pointer to a Display value

30.5. Surface Queries

The capabilities of a swapchain targeting a surface are the intersection of the capabilities of the WSI platform, the native window or display, and the physical device. The resulting capabilities can be obtained with the queries listed below in this section.

Note

In addition to the surface capabilities as obtained by surface queries below, swapchain images are also subject to ordinary image creation limits as reported by vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties. As an application is instructed by the appropriate Valid Usage sections, both the surface capabilities and the image creation limits have to be satisfied whenever swapchain images are created.

30.5.1. Surface Capabilities

To query the basic capabilities of a surface, needed in order to create a swapchain, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_surface
VkResult vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice, 
    VkSurfaceKHR surface, 
    VkSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR* pSurfaceCapabilities);
```

- physicalDevice is the physical device that will be associated with the swapchain to be created, as described for vkCreateSwapchainKHR.

- surface is the surface that will be associated with the swapchain.

- pSurfaceCapabilities is a pointer to a VkSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR structure in which the capabilities are returned.

Valid Usage

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR-surface-06211
  surface must be supported by physicalDevice, as reported by vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceSupportKHR or an equivalent platform-specific mechanism.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR-physicalDevice-parameter
  physicalDevice must be a valid VkPhysicalDevice handle

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR-surface-parameter
  surface must be a valid VkSurfaceKHR handle

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR-pSurfaceCapabilities-parameter
  pSurfaceCapabilities must be a valid pointer to a VkSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR structure

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR-commonparent
  Both of physicalDevice, and surface must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same VkInstance

Return Codes

Success
- VK_SUCCESS

Failure
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_SURFACE_LOST_KHR

The VkSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_surface
typedef struct VkSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR {
    uint32_t minImageCount;
    uint32_t maxImageCount;
    VkExtent2D currentExtent;
    VkExtent2D minImageExtent;
    VkExtent2D maxImageExtent;
    uint32_t maxImageArrayLayers;
    VkSurfaceTransformFlagsKHR supportedTransforms;
    VkSurfaceTransformFlagBitsKHR currentTransform;
    VkCompositeAlphaFlagsKHR supportedCompositeAlpha;
    VkImageUsageFlags supportedUsageFlags;
} VkSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR;
```

- minImageCount is the minimum number of images the specified device supports for a swapchain created for the surface, and will be at least one.

- maxImageCount is the maximum number of images the specified device supports for a swapchain created for the surface, and will be either 0, or greater than or equal to minImageCount. A value of 0 means that there is no limit on the number of images, though there may be limits related to
the total amount of memory used by presentable images.

- **currentExtent** is the current width and height of the surface, or the special value (0xFFFFFFFF, 0xFFFFFFFF) indicating that the surface size will be determined by the extent of a swapchain targeting the surface.

- **minImageExtent** contains the smallest valid swapchain extent for the surface on the specified device. The width and height of the extent will each be less than or equal to the corresponding width and height of **currentExtent**, unless **currentExtent** has the special value described above.

- **maxImageExtent** contains the largest valid swapchain extent for the surface on the specified device. The width and height of the extent will each be greater than or equal to the corresponding width and height of **minImageExtent**. The width and height of the extent will each be greater than or equal to the corresponding width and height of **currentExtent**, unless **currentExtent** has the special value described above.

- **maxImageArrayLayers** is the maximum number of layers presentable images can have for a swapchain created for this device and surface, and will be at least one.

- **supportedTransforms** is a bitmask of **VkSurfaceTransformFlagBitsKHR** indicating the presentation transforms supported for the surface on the specified device. At least one bit will be set.

- **currentTransform** is **VkSurfaceTransformFlagBitsKHR** value indicating the surface's current transform relative to the presentation engine's natural orientation.

- **supportedCompositeAlpha** is a bitmask of **VkCompositeAlphaFlagBitsKHR**, representing the alpha compositing modes supported by the presentation engine for the surface on the specified device, and at least one bit will be set. Opaque composition can be achieved in any alpha compositing mode by either using an image format that has no alpha component, or by ensuring that all pixels in the presentable images have an alpha value of 1.0.

- **supportedUsageFlags** is a bitmask of **VkImageUsageFlagBits** representing the ways the application can use the presentable images of a swapchain created with **VkPresentModeKHR** set to **VK_PRESENT_MODE_IMMEDIATE_KHR**, **VK_PRESENT_MODE_MAILBOX_KHR**, **VK_PRESENT_MODE_FIFO_KHR** or **VK_PRESENT_MODE_FIFO_RELAXED_KHR** for the surface on the specified device. **VK_IMAGE_USAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT** must be included in the set. Implementations may support additional usages.

---

**Note**

Supported usage flags of a presentable image when using **VK_PRESENT_MODE_SHARED_DEMAND_REFRESH_KHR** or **VK_PRESENT_MODE_SHARED_CONTINUOUS_REFRESH_KHR** presentation mode are provided by **VkSharedPresentSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR::sharedPresentSupportedUsageFlags**.

**Note**

Formulas such as min(N, **maxImageCount**) are not correct, since **maxImageCount** may be zero.

---

To query the basic capabilities of a surface defined by the core or extensions, call:
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_surface_capabilities2

VkResult vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceCapabilities2KHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    const VkPhysicalDeviceSurfaceInfo2KHR* pSurfaceInfo,
    VkSurfaceCapabilities2KHR* pSurfaceCapabilities);

- `physicalDevice` is the physical device that will be associated with the swapchain to be created, as described for `vkCreateSwapchainKHR`.
- `pSurfaceInfo` is a pointer to a `VkPhysicalDeviceSurfaceInfo2KHR` structure describing the surface and other fixed parameters that would be consumed by `vkCreateSwapchainKHR`.
- `pSurfaceCapabilities` is a pointer to a `VkSurfaceCapabilities2KHR` structure in which the capabilities are returned.

`vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceCapabilities2KHR` behaves similarly to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR`, with the ability to specify extended inputs via chained input structures, and to return extended information via chained output structures.

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceCapabilities2KHR-physicalDevice-parameter `physicalDevice` must be a valid `VkPhysicalDevice` handle
- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceCapabilities2KHR-pSurfaceInfo-parameter `pSurfaceInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkPhysicalDeviceSurfaceInfo2KHR` structure
- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceCapabilities2KHR-pSurfaceCapabilities-parameter `pSurfaceCapabilities` must be a valid pointer to a `VkSurfaceCapabilities2KHR` structure

**Return Codes**

**Success**

- VK_SUCCESS

**Failure**

- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_SURFACE_LOST_KHR

The `VkPhysicalDeviceSurfaceInfo2KHR` structure is defined as:
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_surface_capabilities2

typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceSurfaceInfo2KHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkSurfaceKHR surface;
} VkPhysicalDeviceSurfaceInfo2KHR;

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **surface** is the surface that will be associated with the swapchain.

The members of **VkPhysicalDeviceSurfaceInfo2KHR** correspond to the arguments to **vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR**, with **sType** and **pNext** added for extensibility.

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceSurfaceInfo2KHR-sType-sType
  
  **sType** **must** be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SURFACE_INFO_2_KHR**

- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceSurfaceInfo2KHR-pNext-pNext
  
  **pNext** **must** be **NULL**

- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceSurfaceInfo2KHR-surface-parameter
  
  **surface** **must** be a valid **VkSurfaceKHR** handle

The **VkSurfaceCapabilities2KHR** structure is defined as:

// Provided by VK_KHR_get_surface_capabilities2

typedef struct VkSurfaceCapabilities2KHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR surfaceCapabilities;
} VkSurfaceCapabilities2KHR;

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **surfaceCapabilities** is a **VkSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR** structure describing the capabilities of the specified surface.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkSurfaceCapabilities2KHR-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SURFACE_CAPABILITIES_2_KHR

- VUID-VkSurfaceCapabilities2KHR-pNext-pNext
  Each pNext member of any structure (including this one) in the pNext chain must be either NULL or a pointer to a valid instance of VkSharedPresentSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR or VkSurfaceProtectedCapabilitiesKHR

- VUID-VkSurfaceCapabilities2KHR-sType-unique
  The sType value of each struct in the pNext chain must be unique

An application queries if a protected VkSurfaceKHR is displayable on a specific windowing system using VkSurfaceProtectedCapabilitiesKHR, which can be passed in pNext parameter of VkSurfaceCapabilities2KHR.

The VkSurfaceProtectedCapabilitiesKHR structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_surface_protected_capabilities
typedef struct VkSurfaceProtectedCapabilitiesKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkBool32 supportsProtected;
} VkSurfaceProtectedCapabilitiesKHR;
```

- sType is the type of this structure.
- pNext is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- supportsProtected specifies whether a protected swapchain created from VkPhysicalDeviceSurfaceInfo2KHR::surface for a particular windowing system can be displayed on screen or not. If supportsProtected is VK_TRUE, then creation of swapchains with the VK_SWAPCHAIN_CREATE_PROTECTED_BIT_KHR flag set must be supported for surface.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkSurfaceProtectedCapabilitiesKHR-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SURFACE_PROTECTED_CAPABILITIES_KHR

The VkSharedPresentSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkSharedPresentSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkImageUsageFlags sharedPresentSupportedUsageFlags;
} VkSharedPresentSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR;

• sType is the type of this structure.
• pNext is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• sharedPresentSupportedUsageFlags is a bitmask of VkImageUsageFlagBits representing the ways
the application can use the shared presentable image from a swapchain created with
VkPresentModeKHR set to VK_PRESENT_MODE_SHARED_DEMAND_REFRESH_KHR or
VK_PRESENT_MODE_SHARED_CONTINUOUS_REFRESH_KHR for the surface on the specified device.
VK_IMAGE_USAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT must be included in the set but implementations may
support additional usages.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

• VUID-VkSharedPresentSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR-sType-sType

sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SHARED_PRESENT_SURFACE_CAPABILITIES_KHR

Bits which may be set in VkSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR::supportedTransforms indicating the
presentation transforms supported for the surface on the specified device, and possible values of
VkSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR::currentTransform indicating the surface’s current transform relative to
the presentation engine’s natural orientation, are:

typedef enum VkSurfaceTransformFlagBitsKHR {
    VK_SURFACE_TRANSFORM_IDENTITY_BIT_KHR = 0x00000001,
    VK_SURFACE_TRANSFORM_ROTATE_90_BIT_KHR = 0x00000002,
    VK_SURFACE_TRANSFORM_ROTATE_180_BIT_KHR = 0x00000004,
    VK_SURFACE_TRANSFORM_ROTATE_270_BIT_KHR = 0x00000008,
    VK_SURFACE_TRANSFORM_HORIZONTAL_MIRROR_BIT_KHR = 0x00000010,
    VK_SURFACE_TRANSFORM_HORIZONTAL_MIRROR_ROTATE_90_BIT_KHR = 0x00000020,
    VK_SURFACE_TRANSFORM_HORIZONTAL_MIRROR_ROTATE_180_BIT_KHR = 0x00000040,
    VK_SURFACE_TRANSFORM_HORIZONTAL_MIRROR_ROTATE_270_BIT_KHR = 0x00000080,
    VK_SURFACE_TRANSFORM_INHERIT_BIT_KHR = 0x00000100,
} VkSurfaceTransformFlagBitsKHR;

• VK_SURFACE_TRANSFORM_IDENTITY_BIT_KHR specifies that image content is presented without being
transformed.
• VK_SURFACE_TRANSFORM_ROTATE_90_BIT_KHR specifies that image content is rotated 90 degrees
clockwise.
• VK_SURFACE_TRANSFORM_ROTATE_180_BIT_KHR specifies that image content is rotated 180 degrees
clockwise.

- **VK_SURFACE_TRANSFORM_ROTATE_270_BIT_KHR** specifies that image content is rotated 270 degrees clockwise.

- **VK_SURFACE_TRANSFORM_HORIZONTAL_MIRROR_BIT_KHR** specifies that image content is mirrored horizontally.

- **VK_SURFACE_TRANSFORM_HORIZONTAL_MIRROR_ROTATE_90_BIT_KHR** specifies that image content is mirrored horizontally, then rotated 90 degrees clockwise.

- **VK_SURFACE_TRANSFORM_HORIZONTAL_MIRROR_ROTATE_180_BIT_KHR** specifies that image content is mirrored horizontally, then rotated 180 degrees clockwise.

- **VK_SURFACE_TRANSFORM_HORIZONTAL_MIRROR_ROTATE_270_BIT_KHR** specifies that image content is mirrored horizontally, then rotated 270 degrees clockwise.

- **VK_SURFACE_TRANSFORM_INHERIT_BIT_KHR** specifies that the presentation transform is not specified, and is instead determined by platform-specific considerations and mechanisms outside Vulkan.

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_display
typedef VkFlags VkSurfaceTransformFlagsKHR;
```

The `VkSurfaceTransformFlagsKHR` is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more `VkSurfaceTransformFlagBitsKHR`.

The `supportedCompositeAlpha` member is of type `VkCompositeAlphaFlagBitsKHR`, which contains the following values:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_surface
typedef enum VkCompositeAlphaFlagBitsKHR {
    VK_COMPOSITE_ALPHA_OPAQUE_BIT_KHR = 0x00000001,
    VK_COMPOSITE_ALPHA_PRE_MULTIPLIED_BIT_KHR = 0x00000002,
    VK_COMPOSITE_ALPHA_POST_MULTIPLIED_BIT_KHR = 0x00000004,
    VK_COMPOSITE_ALPHA_INHERIT_BIT_KHR = 0x00000008,
} VkCompositeAlphaFlagBitsKHR;
```

These values are described as follows:

- **VK_COMPOSITE_ALPHA_OPAQUE_BIT_KHR**: The alpha channel, if it exists, of the images is ignored in the compositing process. Instead, the image is treated as if it has a constant alpha of 1.0.

- **VK_COMPOSITE_ALPHA_PRE_MULTIPLIED_BIT_KHR**: The alpha channel, if it exists, of the images is respected in the compositing process. The non-alpha channels of the image are expected to already be multiplied by the alpha channel by the application.

- **VK_COMPOSITE_ALPHA_POST_MULTIPLIED_BIT_KHR**: The alpha channel, if it exists, of the images is respected in the compositing process. The non-alpha channels of the image are not expected to already be multiplied by the alpha channel by the application; instead, the compositor will multiply the non-alpha channels of the image by the alpha channel during compositing.

- **VK_COMPOSITE_ALPHA_INHERIT_BIT_KHR**: The way in which the presentation engine treats the alpha
channel in the images is unknown to the Vulkan API. Instead, the application is responsible for setting the composite alpha blending mode using native window system commands. If the application does not set the blending mode using native window system commands, then a platform-specific default will be used.

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_surface
typedef VkFlags VkCompositeAlphaFlagsKHR;
```

**VkCompositeAlphaFlagsKHR** is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more **VkCompositeAlphaFlagBitsKHR**.

### 30.5.2. Surface Format Support

To query the supported swapchain format-color space pairs for a surface, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_surface
VkResult vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceFormatsKHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    VkSurfaceKHR surface,
    uint32_t* pSurfaceFormatCount,
    VkSurfaceFormatKHR* pSurfaceFormats);
```

- **physicalDevice** is the physical device that will be associated with the swapchain to be created, as described for **vkCreateSwapchainKHR**.
- **surface** is the surface that will be associated with the swapchain.
- **pSurfaceFormatCount** is a pointer to an integer related to the number of format pairs available or queried, as described below.
- **pSurfaceFormats** is either NULL or a pointer to an array of **VkSurfaceFormatKHR** structures.

If **pSurfaceFormats** is NULL, then the number of format pairs supported for the given **surface** is returned in **pSurfaceFormatCount**. Otherwise, **pSurfaceFormatCount** must point to a variable set by the user to the number of elements in the **pSurfaceFormats** array, and on return the variable is overwritten with the number of structures actually written to **pSurfaceFormats**. If the value of **pSurfaceFormatCount** is less than the number of format pairs supported, at most **pSurfaceFormatCount** structures will be written, and **VK_INCOMPLETE** will be returned instead of **VK_SUCCESS**, to indicate that not all the available format pairs were returned.

The number of format pairs supported must be greater than or equal to 1. **pSurfaceFormats** must not contain an entry whose value for **format** is **VK_FORMAT_UNDEFINED**.

If **pSurfaceFormats** includes an entry whose value for **colorSpace** is **VK_COLOR_SPACE_SRGB_NONLINEAR_KHR** and whose value for **format** is a UNORM (or SRGB) format and the corresponding SRGB (or UNORM) format is a color renderable format for **VK_IMAGE_TILING_OPTIMAL**, then **pSurfaceFormats** must also contain an entry with the same value for **colorSpace** and **format** equal to the corresponding SRGB (or UNORM) format.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceFormatsKHR-surface-06211
  surface must be supported by physicalDevice, as reported by vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceSupportKHR or an equivalent platform-specific mechanism

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceFormatsKHR-physicalDevice-parameter
  physicalDevice must be a valid VkPhysicalDevice handle

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceFormatsKHR-surface-parameter
  surface must be a valid VkSurfaceKHR handle

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceFormatsKHR-pSurfaceFormatCount-parameter
  pSurfaceFormatCount must be a valid pointer to a uint32_t value

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceFormatsKHR-pSurfaceFormats-parameter
  If the value referenced by pSurfaceFormatCount is not 0, and pSurfaceFormats is not NULL, pSurfaceFormats must be a valid pointer to an array of pSurfaceFormatCount VkSurfaceFormatKHR structures

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceFormatsKHR-commonparent
  Both of physicalDevice, and surface must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same VkInstance

Return Codes

Success
- VK_SUCCESS
- VK_INCOMPLETE

Failure
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_SURFACE_LOST_KHR

The VkSurfaceFormatKHR structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_surface
typedef struct VkSurfaceFormatKHR {
    VkFormat format;
    VkColorSpaceKHR colorSpace;
} VkSurfaceFormatKHR;
```
• **format** is a `VkFormat` that is compatible with the specified surface.

• **colorSpace** is a presentation `VkColorSpaceKHR` that is compatible with the surface.

To query the supported swapchain format tuples for a surface, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_surface_capabilities2
VkResult vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceFormats2KHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    const VkPhysicalDeviceSurfaceInfo2KHR* pSurfaceInfo,
    uint32_t* pSurfaceFormatCount,
    VkSurfaceFormat2KHR* pSurfaceFormats);
```

• **physicalDevice** is the physical device that will be associated with the swapchain to be created, as described for `vkCreateSwapchainKHR`.

• **pSurfaceInfo** is a pointer to a `VkPhysicalDeviceSurfaceInfo2KHR` structure describing the surface and other fixed parameters that would be consumed by `vkCreateSwapchainKHR`.

• **pSurfaceFormatCount** is a pointer to an integer related to the number of format tuples available or queried, as described below.

• **pSurfaceFormats** is either `NULL` or a pointer to an array of `VkSurfaceFormat2KHR` structures.

`vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceFormats2KHR` behaves similarly to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceFormatsKHR`, with the ability to be extended via `pNext` chains.

If `pSurfaceFormats` is `NULL`, then the number of format tuples supported for the given `surface` is returned in `pSurfaceFormatCount`. Otherwise, `pSurfaceFormatCount` must point to a variable set by the user to the number of elements in the `pSurfaceFormats` array, and on return the variable is overwritten with the number of structures actually written to `pSurfaceFormats`. If the value of `pSurfaceFormatCount` is less than the number of format tuples supported, at most `pSurfaceFormatCount` structures will be written, and **VK_INCOMPLETE** will be returned instead of **VK_SUCCESS**, to indicate that not all the available values were returned.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceFormats2KHR-pSurfaceInfo-06210**

  `pSurfaceInfo->surface` must be supported by `physicalDevice`, as reported by `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceSupportKHR` or an equivalent platform-specific mechanism.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceFormats2KHR-physicalDevice-parameter
  `physicalDevice` must be a valid `VkPhysicalDevice` handle

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceFormats2KHR-pSurfaceInfo-parameter
  `pSurfaceInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkPhysicalDeviceSurfaceInfo2KHR` structure

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceFormats2KHR-pSurfaceFormatCount-parameter
  `pSurfaceFormatCount` must be a valid pointer to a `uint32_t` value

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceFormats2KHR-pSurfaceFormats-parameter
  If the value referenced by `pSurfaceFormatCount` is not 0, and `pSurfaceFormats` is not `NULL`, `pSurfaceFormats` must be a valid pointer to an array of `pSurfaceFormatCount` `VkSurfaceFormat2KHR` structures

Return Codes

Success

- VK_SUCCESS
- VK_INCOMPLETE

Failure

- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_SURFACE_LOST_KHR

The `VkSurfaceFormat2KHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_surface_capabilities2
typedef struct VkSurfaceFormat2KHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkSurfaceFormatKHR surfaceFormat;
} VkSurfaceFormat2KHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `surfaceFormat` is a `VkSurfaceFormatKHR` structure describing a format-color space pair that is compatible with the specified surface.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkSurfaceFormat2KHR-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SURFACE_FORMAT_2_KHR
- VUID-VkSurfaceFormat2KHR-pNext-pNext
  pNext must be NULL

While the format of a presentable image refers to the encoding of each pixel, the colorSpace determines how the presentation engine interprets the pixel values. A color space in this document refers to a specific color space (defined by the chromaticities of its primaries and a white point in CIE Lab), and a transfer function that is applied before storing or transmitting color data in the given color space.

Possible values of VkSurfaceFormatKHR::colorSpace, specifying supported color spaces of a presentation engine, are:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_surface
typedef enum VkColorSpaceKHR {
    VK_COLOR_SPACE_SRGB_NONLINEAR_KHR = 0,
    VK_COLORSPACE_SRGB_NONLINEAR_KHR = VK_COLOR_SPACE_SRGB_NONLINEAR_KHR,
} VkColorSpaceKHR;
```

- VK_COLOR_SPACE_SRGB_NONLINEAR_KHR specifies support for the sRGB color space.

30.5.3. Surface Presentation Mode Support

To query the supported presentation modes for a surface, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_surface
VkResult vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfacePresentModesKHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    VkSurfaceKHR surface,
    uint32_t* pPresentModeCount,
    VkPresentModeKHR* pPresentModes);
```

- physicalDevice is the physical device that will be associated with the swapchain to be created, as described for vkCreateSwapchainKHR.
- surface is the surface that will be associated with the swapchain.
- pPresentModeCount is a pointer to an integer related to the number of presentation modes available or queried, as described below.
- pPresentModes is either NULL or a pointer to an array of VkPresentModeKHR values, indicating the supported presentation modes.

If pPresentModes is NULL, then the number of presentation modes supported for the given surface is
returned in \texttt{pPresentModeCount}. Otherwise, \texttt{pPresentModeCount} must point to a variable set by the user to the number of elements in the \texttt{pPresentModes} array, and on return the variable is overwritten with the number of values actually written to \texttt{pPresentModes}. If the value of \texttt{pPresentModeCount} is less than the number of presentation modes supported, at most \texttt{pPresentModeCount} values will be written, and \texttt{VK_INCOMPLETE} will be returned instead of \texttt{VK_SUCCESS}, to indicate that not all the available modes were returned.

### Valid Usage

- \textbf{VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfacePresentModesKHR-surface-06211}  
  \texttt{surface} must be supported by \texttt{physicalDevice}, as reported by \texttt{vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceSupportKHR} or an equivalent platform-specific mechanism

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- \textbf{VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfacePresentModesKHR-physicalDevice-parameter}  
  \texttt{physicalDevice} must be a valid \texttt{VkPhysicalDevice} handle

- \textbf{VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfacePresentModesKHR-surface-parameter}  
  \texttt{surface} must be a valid \texttt{VkSurfaceKHR} handle

- \textbf{VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfacePresentModesKHR-pPresentModeCount-parameter}  
  \texttt{pPresentModeCount} must be a valid pointer to a \texttt{uint32_t} value

- \textbf{VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfacePresentModesKHR-pPresentModes-parameter}  
  If the value referenced by \texttt{pPresentModeCount} is not 0, and \texttt{pPresentModes} is not NULL, \texttt{pPresentModes} must be a valid pointer to an array of \texttt{pPresentModeCount} \texttt{VkPresentModeKHR} values

- \textbf{VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfacePresentModesKHR-commonparent}  
  Both of \texttt{physicalDevice}, and \texttt{surface} must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same \texttt{VkInstance}

### Return Codes

#### Success

- \texttt{VK_SUCCESS}
- \texttt{VK_INCOMPLETE}

#### Failure

- \texttt{VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY}
- \texttt{VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY}
- \texttt{VK_ERROR_SURFACE_LOST_KHR}

Possible values of elements of the \texttt{vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfacePresentModesKHR::pPresentModes} array, indicating the supported presentation modes for a surface, are:
```c
typedef enum VkPresentModeKHR {
    VK_PRESENT_MODE_IMMEDIATE_KHR = 0,
    VK_PRESENT_MODE_MAILBOX_KHR = 1,
    VK_PRESENT_MODE_FIFO_KHR = 2,
    VK_PRESENT_MODE_FIFO_RELAXED_KHR = 3,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_shared_presentable_image
    VK_PRESENT_MODE_SHARED_DEMAND_REFRESH_KHR = 1000111000,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_shared_presentable_image
    VK_PRESENT_MODE_SHARED_CONTINUOUS_REFRESH_KHR = 1000111001,
} VkPresentModeKHR;
```

- **VK_PRESENT_MODE_IMMEDIATE_KHR** specifies that the presentation engine does not wait for a vertical blanking period to update the current image, meaning this mode may result in visible tearing. No internal queuing of presentation requests is needed, as the requests are applied immediately.

- **VK_PRESENT_MODE_MAILBOX_KHR** specifies that the presentation engine waits for the next vertical blanking period to update the current image. Tearing cannot be observed. An internal single-entry queue is used to hold pending presentation requests. If the queue is full when a new presentation request is received, the new request replaces the existing entry, and any images associated with the prior entry become available for re-use by the application. One request is removed from the queue and processed during each vertical blanking period in which the queue is non-empty.

- **VK_PRESENT_MODE_FIFO_KHR** specifies that the presentation engine waits for the next vertical blanking period to update the current image. Tearing cannot be observed. An internal queue is used to hold pending presentation requests. New requests are appended to the end of the queue, and one request is removed from the beginning of the queue and processed during each vertical blanking period in which the queue is non-empty. This is the only value of presentMode that is required to be supported.

- **VK_PRESENT_MODE_FIFO_RELAXED_KHR** specifies that the presentation engine generally waits for the next vertical blanking period to update the current image. If a vertical blanking period has already passed since the last update of the current image then the presentation engine does not wait for another vertical blanking period for the update, meaning this mode may result in visible tearing in this case. This mode is useful for reducing visual stutter with an application that will mostly present a new image before the next vertical blanking period, but may occasionally be late, and present a new image just after the next vertical blanking period. An internal queue is used to hold pending presentation requests. New requests are appended to the end of the queue, and one request is removed from the beginning of the queue and processed during or after each vertical blanking period in which the queue is non-empty.

- **VK_PRESENT_MODE_SHARED_DEMAND_REFRESH_KHR** specifies that the presentation engine and application have concurrent access to a single image, which is referred to as a shared presentable image. The presentation engine is only required to update the current image after a new presentation request is received. Therefore the application must make a presentation request whenever an update is required. However, the presentation engine may update the current image at any point, meaning this mode may result in visible tearing.
• **VK_PRESENT_MODE_SHARED_CONTINUOUS_REFRESH_KHR** specifies that the presentation engine and application have concurrent access to a single image, which is referred to as a *shared presentable image*. The presentation engine periodically updates the current image on its regular refresh cycle. The application is only required to make one initial presentation request, after which the presentation engine must update the current image without any need for further presentation requests. The application can indicate the image contents have been updated by making a presentation request, but this does not guarantee the timing of when it will be updated. This mode may result in visible tearing if rendering to the image is not timed correctly.

The supported **VkImageUsageFlagBits** of the presentable images of a swapchain created for a surface may differ depending on the presentation mode, and can be determined as per the table below:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Presentation mode</th>
<th>Image usage flags</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_PRESENT_MODE_IMMEDIATE_KHR</td>
<td>VkSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR::supportedUsageFlags</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_PRESENT_MODE_MAILBOX_KHR</td>
<td>VkSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR::supportedUsageFlags</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_PRESENT_MODE_FIFO_KHR</td>
<td>VkSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR::supportedUsageFlags</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_PRESENT_MODE_FIFO_RELAXED_KHR</td>
<td>VkSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR::supportedUsageFlags</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_PRESENT_MODE_SHARED_DEMAND_REFRESH_KHR</td>
<td>VkSharedPresentSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR::sharedPresentSupportedUsageFlags</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_PRESENT_MODE_SHARED_CONTINUOUS_REFRESH_KHR</td>
<td>VkSharedPresentSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR::sharedPresentSupportedUsageFlags</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**
For reference, the mode indicated by **VK_PRESENT_MODE_FIFO_KHR** is equivalent to the behavior of {wgl|glX|egl}SwapBuffers with a swap interval of 1, while the mode indicated by **VK_PRESENT_MODE_FIFO_RELAXED_KHR** is equivalent to the behavior of {wgl|glX}SwapBuffers with a swap interval of -1 (from the {WGL|GLX}_EXT_swap_control_tear extensions).

## 30.6. Device Group Queries

A logical device that represents multiple physical devices may support presenting from images on more than one physical device, or combining images from multiple physical devices.

To query these capabilities, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_swapchain with VK_VERSION_1_1, VK_KHR_device_group with VK_KHR_surface
VkResult vkGetDeviceGroupPresentCapabilitiesKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    VkDeviceGroupPresentCapabilitiesKHR* pDeviceGroupPresentCapabilities);
```
• device is the logical device.

• pDeviceGroupPresentCapabilities is a pointer to a VkDeviceGroupPresentCapabilitiesKHR structure in which the device's capabilities are returned.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

• VUID-vkGetDeviceGroupPresentCapabilitiesKHR-device-parameter
device must be a valid VkDevice handle

• VUID-vkGetDeviceGroupPresentCapabilitiesKHR-pDeviceGroupPresentCapabilities-parameter
pDeviceGroupPresentCapabilities must be a valid pointer to a VkDeviceGroupPresentCapabilitiesKHR structure

Return Codes

Success
• VK_SUCCESS

Failure
• VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
• VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY

The VkDeviceGroupPresentCapabilitiesKHR structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkDeviceGroupPresentCapabilitiesKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    uint32_t presentMask[VK_MAX_DEVICE_GROUP_SIZE];
    VkDeviceGroupPresentModeFlagsKHR modes;
} VkDeviceGroupPresentCapabilitiesKHR;
```

• sType is the type of this structure.

• pNext is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.

• presentMask is an array of VK_MAX_DEVICE_GROUP_SIZE uint32_t masks, where the mask at element i is non-zero if physical device i has a presentation engine, and where bit j is set in element i if physical device i can present swapchain images from physical device j. If element i is non-zero, then bit i must be set.

• modes is a bitmask of VkDeviceGroupPresentModeFlagBitsKHR indicating which device group presentation modes are supported.

modes always has VK_DEVICE_GROUP_PRESENT_MODE_LOCAL_BIT_KHR set.
The present mode flags are also used when presenting an image, in
`VkDeviceGroupPresentInfoKHR::mode`.

If a device group only includes a single physical device, then `modes` must equal `VK_DEVICE_GROUP_PRESENT_MODE_LOCAL_BIT_KHR`.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- `VUID-VkDeviceGroupPresentCapabilitiesKHR-sType-sType`  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPEDEVICE_GROUP_PRESENT_CAPABILITIES_KHR`  
- `VUID-VkDeviceGroupPresentCapabilitiesKHR-pNext-pNext`  
  `pNext` must be `NULL`  

Bits which may be set in `VkDeviceGroupPresentCapabilitiesKHR::modes` to indicate which device group presentation modes are supported are:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_swapchain with VK_VERSION_1_1, VK_KHR_device_group with VK_KHR_surface
typedef enum VkDeviceGroupPresentModeFlagBitsKHR {
    VKDEVICEGROUP_PRESENT_MODE_LOCAL_BIT_KHR = 0x00000001,
    VKDEVICEGROUP_PRESENT_MODE_REMOTE_BIT_KHR = 0x00000002,
    VKDEVICEGROUP_PRESENT_MODE_SUM_BIT_KHR = 0x00000004,
    VKDEVICEGROUP_PRESENT_MODE_LOCAL_MULTI_DEVICE_BIT_KHR = 0x00000008,
} VkDeviceGroupPresentModeFlagBitsKHR;
```

- `VK_DEVICE_GROUP_PRESENT_MODE_LOCAL_BIT_KHR` specifies that any physical device with a presentation engine can present its own swapchain images.
- `VK_DEVICE_GROUP_PRESENT_MODE_REMOTE_BIT_KHR` specifies that any physical device with a presentation engine can present swapchain images from any physical device in its `presentMask`.
- `VK_DEVICE_GROUP_PRESENT_MODE_SUM_BIT_KHR` specifies that any physical device with a presentation engine can present the sum of swapchain images from any physical devices in its `presentMask`.
- `VK_DEVICE_GROUP_PRESENT_MODE_LOCAL_MULTI_DEVICE_BIT_KHR` specifies that multiple physical devices with a presentation engine can each present their own swapchain images.

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_swapchain with VK_VERSION_1_1, VK_KHR_device_group with VK_KHR_surface
typedef VkFlags VkDeviceGroupPresentModeFlagsKHR;
```

`VkDeviceGroupPresentModeFlagsKHR` is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more `VkDeviceGroupPresentModeFlagBitsKHR`.

Some surfaces may not be capable of using all the device group present modes.

To query the supported device group present modes for a particular surface, call:
Provided by VK_KHR_swapchain with VK_VERSION_1_1, VK_KHR_device_group with VK_KHR_surface

```c
VkResult vkGetDeviceGroupSurfacePresentModesKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    VkSurfaceKHR surface,
    VkDeviceGroupPresentModeFlagsKHR* pModes);
```

- `device` is the logical device.
- `surface` is the surface.
- `pModes` is a pointer to a `VkDeviceGroupPresentModeFlagsKHR` in which the supported device group present modes for the surface are returned.

The modes returned by this command are not invariant, and may change in response to the surface being moved, resized, or occluded. These modes must be a subset of the modes returned by `vkGetDeviceGroupPresentCapabilitiesKHR`.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkGetDeviceGroupSurfacePresentModesKHR-surface-06212**
  - `surface` must be supported by all physical devices associated with `device`, as reported by `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceSupportKHR` or an equivalent platform-specific mechanism.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkGetDeviceGroupSurfacePresentModesKHR-device-parameter**
  - `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle.
- **VUID-vkGetDeviceGroupSurfacePresentModesKHR-surface-parameter**
  - `surface` must be a valid `VkSurfaceKHR` handle.
- **VUID-vkGetDeviceGroupSurfacePresentModesKHR-pModes-parameter**
  - `pModes` must be a valid pointer to a `VkDeviceGroupPresentModeFlagsKHR` value.
- **VUID-vkGetDeviceGroupSurfacePresentModesKHR-commonparent**
  - Both of `device`, and `surface` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkInstance`.

### Host Synchronization

- Host access to `surface` must be externally synchronized.
## Return Codes

### Success
- VK_SUCCESS

### Failure
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_SURFACE_LOST_KHR

When using `VK_DEVICE_GROUP_PRESENT_MODE_LOCAL_MULTI_DEVICE_BIT_KHR`, the application may need to know which regions of the surface are used when presenting locally on each physical device. Presentation of swapchain images to this surface need only have valid contents in the regions returned by this command.

To query a set of rectangles used in presentation on the physical device, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_swapchain with VK_VERSION_1_1, VK_KHR_device_group with
// VK_KHR_surface
VkResult vkGetPhysicalDevicePresentRectanglesKHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    VkSurfaceKHR surface,
    uint32_t* pRectCount,
    VkRect2D* pRects);
```

- `physicalDevice` is the physical device.
- `surface` is the surface.
- `pRectCount` is a pointer to an integer related to the number of rectangles available or queried, as described below.
- `pRects` is either `NULL` or a pointer to an array of `VkRect2D` structures.

If `pRects` is `NULL`, then the number of rectangles used when presenting the given `surface` is returned in `pRectCount`. Otherwise, `pRectCount` must point to a variable set by the user to the number of elements in the `pRects` array, and on return the variable is overwritten with the number of structures actually written to `pRects`. If the value of `pRectCount` is less than the number of rectangles, at most `pRectCount` structures will be written, and `VK_INCOMPLETE` will be returned instead of `VK_SUCCESS`, to indicate that not all the available rectangles were returned.

The values returned by this command are not invariant, and may change in response to the surface being moved, resized, or occluded.

The rectangles returned by this command must not overlap.
30.7. Present Wait

Applications wanting to control the pacing of the application by monitoring when presentation processes have completed to limit the number of outstanding images queued for presentation, need to have a method of being signaled during the presentation process.
Providing a mechanism which allows applications to block, waiting for a specific step of the presentation process to complete allows them to control the amount of outstanding work (and hence the potential lag in responding to user input or changes in the rendering environment).

The \texttt{VK_KHR_present_wait} extension allows applications to tell the presentation engine at the \texttt{vkQueuePresentKHR} call that it plans on waiting for presentation by passing a \texttt{VkPresentIdKHR} structure. The \texttt{presentId} passed in that structure may then be passed to a future \texttt{vkWaitForPresentKHR} call to cause the application to block until that presentation is finished.

### 30.8. WSI Swapchain

A swapchain object (a.k.a. swapchain) provides the ability to present rendering results to a surface. Swapchain objects are represented by \texttt{VkSwapchainKHR} handles:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_swapchain
VK_DEFINE_NON_DISPATCHABLE_HANDLE(VkSwapchainKHR)
```

A swapchain is an abstraction for an array of presentable images that are associated with a surface. The presentable images are represented by \texttt{VkImage} objects created by the platform. One image (which \texttt{can} be an array image for multiview/stereoscopic-3D surfaces) is displayed at a time, but multiple images \texttt{can} be queued for presentation. An application renders to the image, and then queues the image for presentation to the surface.

A native window \texttt{cannot} be associated with more than one non-retired swapchain at a time. Further, swapchains \texttt{cannot} be created for native windows that have a non-Vulkan graphics API surface associated with them.

- **Note**
  - The presentation engine is an abstraction for the platform’s compositor or display engine.

- The presentation engine \texttt{may} be synchronous or asynchronous with respect to the application and/or logical device.

- Some implementations \texttt{may} use the device’s graphics queue or dedicated presentation hardware to perform presentation.

The presentable images of a swapchain are owned by the presentation engine. An application \texttt{can} acquire use of a presentable image from the presentation engine. Use of a presentable image \texttt{must} occur only after the image is returned by \texttt{vkAcquireNextImageKHR}, and before it is released by \texttt{vkQueuePresentKHR}. This includes transitioning the image layout and rendering commands.

An application \texttt{can} acquire use of a presentable image with \texttt{vkAcquireNextImageKHR}. After acquiring a presentable image and before modifying it, the application \texttt{must} use a synchronization primitive to ensure that the presentation engine has finished reading from the image. The application \texttt{can} then transition the image’s layout, queue rendering commands to it, etc. Finally, the application presents the image with \texttt{vkQueuePresentKHR}, which releases the acquisition of the image.
The presentation engine controls the order in which presentable images are acquired for use by the application.

**Note**
This allows the platform to handle situations which require out-of-order return of images after presentation. At the same time, it allows the application to generate command buffers referencing all of the images in the swapchain at initialization time, rather than in its main loop.

How this all works is described below.

If a swapchain is created with `presentMode` set to either `VK_PRESENT_MODE_SHARED_DEMAND_REFRESH_KHR` or `VK_PRESENT_MODE_SHARED_CONTINUOUS_REFRESH_KHR`, a single presentable image can be acquired, referred to as a shared presentable image. A shared presentable image may be concurrently accessed by the application and the presentation engine, without transitioning the image’s layout after it is initially presented.

- **With `VK_PRESENT_MODE_SHARED_DEMAND_REFRESH_KHR`,** the presentation engine is only required to update to the latest contents of a shared presentable image after a present. The application must call `vkQueuePresentKHR` to guarantee an update. However, the presentation engine may update from it at any time.

- **With `VK_PRESENT_MODE_SHARED_CONTINUOUS_REFRESH_KHR`,** the presentation engine will automatically present the latest contents of a shared presentable image during every refresh cycle. The application is only required to make one initial call to `vkQueuePresentKHR`, after which the presentation engine will update from it without any need for further present calls. The application can indicate the image contents have been updated by calling `vkQueuePresentKHR`, but this does not guarantee the timing of when updates will occur.

The presentation engine may access a shared presentable image at any time after it is first presented. To avoid tearing, an application should coordinate access with the presentation engine. This requires presentation engine timing information through platform-specific mechanisms and ensuring that color attachment writes are made available during the portion of the presentation engine’s refresh cycle they are intended for.

**Note**
The `VK_KHR_shared_presentable_image` extension does not provide functionality for determining the timing of the presentation engine’s refresh cycles.

In order to query a swapchain’s status when rendering to a shared presentable image, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_shared_presentable_image
VkResult vkGetSwapchainStatusKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    VkSwapchainKHR swapchain);
```

- `device` is the device associated with `swapchain`. 

• `swapchain` is the swapchain to query.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkGetSwapchainStatusKHR-device-parameter**
  - `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle
- **VUID-vkGetSwapchainStatusKHR-swapchain-parameter**
  - `swapchain` must be a valid `VkSwapchainKHR` handle
- **VUID-vkGetSwapchainStatusKHR-commonparent**
  - Both of `device`, and `swapchain` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkInstance`

### Host Synchronization

- Host access to `swapchain` must be externally synchronized

### Return Codes

#### Success

- `VK_SUCCESS`
- `VK_SUBOPTIMAL_KHR`

#### Failure

- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST`
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DATE_KHR`
- `VK_ERROR_SURFACE_LOST_KHR`

The possible return values for `vkGetSwapchainStatusKHR` should be interpreted as follows:

- `VK_SUCCESS` specifies the presentation engine is presenting the contents of the shared presentable image, as per the swapchain’s `VkPresentModeKHR`.
- `VK_SUBOPTIMAL_KHR` the swapchain no longer matches the surface properties exactly, but the presentation engine is presenting the contents of the shared presentable image, as per the swapchain’s `VkPresentModeKHR`.
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DATE_KHR` the surface has changed in such a way that it is no longer compatible with the swapchain.
- `VK_ERROR_SURFACE_LOST_KHR` the surface is no longer available.
Note
The swapchain state may be cached by implementations, so applications should regularly call `vkGetSwapchainStatusKHR` when using a swapchain with `VkPresentModeKHR` set to `VK_PRESENT_MODE_SHARED_CONTINUOUS_REFRESH_KHR`.

To create a swapchain, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_swapchain
VkResult vkCreateSwapchainKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR* pCreateInfo,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator,
    VkSwapchainKHR* pSwapchain);
```

- `device` is the device to create the swapchain for.
- `pCreateInfo` is a pointer to a `VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR` structure specifying the parameters of the created swapchain.
- `pAllocator` is the allocator used for host memory allocated for the swapchain object when there is no more specific allocator available (see Memory Allocation).
- `pSwapchain` is a pointer to a `VkSwapchainKHR` handle in which the created swapchain object will be returned.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCreateSwapchainKHR-device-parameter
  - `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle
- VUID-vkCreateSwapchainKHR-pCreateInfo-parameter
  - `pCreateInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR` structure
- VUID-vkCreateSwapchainKHR-pAllocator-parameter
  - If `pAllocator` is not `NULL`, `pAllocator` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkAllocationCallbacks` structure
- VUID-vkCreateSwapchainKHR-pSwapchain-parameter
  - `pSwapchain` must be a valid pointer to a `VkSwapchainKHR` handle

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `pCreateInfo->surface` must be externally synchronized
- Host access to `pCreateInfo->oldSwapchain` must be externally synchronized
## Return Codes

### Success
- VK_SUCCESS

### Failure
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST
- VK_ERROR_SURFACE_LOST_KHR
- VK_ERROR_NATIVE_WINDOW_IN_USE_KHR
- VK_ERROR_INITIALIZATION_FAILED

The `VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_swapchain
typedef struct VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkSwapchainCreateFlagsKHR flags;
    VkSurfaceKHR surface;
    uint32_t minImageCount;
    VkFormat imageFormat;
    VkColorSpaceKHR imageColorSpace;
    VkExtent2D imageExtent;
    VkExtent2D imageArrayLayers;
    VkImageUsageFlags imageUsage;
    VkSharingMode imageSharingMode;
    uint32_t queueFamilyIndexCount;
    const uint32_t* pQueueFamilyIndices;
    VkSurfaceTransformFlagBitsKHR preTransform;
    VkCompositeAlphaFlagBitsKHR compositeAlpha;
    VkPresentModeKHR presentMode;
    VkBool32 clipped;
    VkSwapchainKHR oldSwapchain;
} VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **flags** is a bitmask of `VkSwapchainCreateFlagBitsKHR` indicating parameters of the swapchain creation.
- **surface** is the surface onto which the swapchain will present images. If the creation succeeds, the swapchain becomes associated with `surface`. 
• **minImageCount** is the minimum number of presentable images that the application needs. The implementation will either create the swapchain with at least that many images, or it will fail to create the swapchain.

• **imageFormat** is a *VkFormat* value specifying the format the swapchain image(s) will be created with.

• **imageColorSpace** is a *VkColorSpaceKHR* value specifying the way the swapchain interprets image data.

• **imageExtent** is the size (in pixels) of the swapchain image(s). The behavior is platform-dependent if the image extent does not match the surface’s `currentExtent` as returned by `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR`.

---

**Note**

On some platforms, it is normal that **maxImageExtent** may become `(0, 0)`, for example when the window is minimized. In such a case, it is not possible to create a swapchain due to the Valid Usage requirements.

• **imageArrayLayers** is the number of views in a multiview/stereo surface. For non-stereoscopic-3D applications, this value is 1.

• **imageUsage** is a bitmask of *VkImageUsageFlagBits* describing the intended usage of the (acquired) swapchain images.

• **imageSharingMode** is the sharing mode used for the image(s) of the swapchain.

• **queueFamilyIndexCount** is the number of queue families having access to the image(s) of the swapchain when **imageSharingMode** is **VK_SHARING_MODE_CONCURRENT**.

• **pQueueFamilyIndices** is a pointer to an array of queue family indices having access to the images(s) of the swapchain when **imageSharingMode** is **VK_SHARING_MODE_CONCURRENT**.

• **preTransform** is a *VkSurfaceTransformFlagBitsKHR* value describing the transform, relative to the presentation engine’s natural orientation, applied to the image content prior to presentation. If it does not match the **currentTransform** value returned by `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR`, the presentation engine will transform the image content as part of the presentation operation.

• **compositeAlpha** is a *VkCompositeAlphaFlagBitsKHR* value indicating the alpha compositing mode to use when this surface is composited together with other surfaces on certain window systems.

• **presentMode** is the presentation mode the swapchain will use. A swapchain’s present mode determines how incoming present requests will be processed and queued internally.

• **clipped** specifies whether the Vulkan implementation is allowed to discard rendering operations that affect regions of the surface that are not visible.

  - If set to **VK_TRUE**, the presentable images associated with the swapchain may not own all of their pixels. Pixels in the presentable images that correspond to regions of the target surface obscured by another window on the desktop, or subject to some other clipping mechanism will have undefined content when read back. Fragment shaders may not execute for these pixels, and thus any side effects they would have had will not occur. Setting **VK_TRUE** does not guarantee any clipping will occur, but allows more efficient presentation methods to be used on some platforms.
If set to `VK_FALSE`, presentable images associated with the swapchain will own all of the pixels they contain.

**Note**
Applications **should** set this value to `VK_TRUE` if they do not expect to read back the content of presentable images before presenting them or after reacquiring them, and if their fragment shaders do not have any side effects that require them to run for all pixels in the presentable image.

- `oldSwapchain` is `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, or the existing non-retired swapchain currently associated with `surface`. Providing a valid `oldSwapchain` **may** aid in the resource reuse, and also allows the application to still present any images that are already acquired from it.

Upon calling `vkCreateSwapchainKHR` with an `oldSwapchain` that is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, `oldSwapchain` is retired — even if creation of the new swapchain fails. The new swapchain is created in the non-retired state whether or not `oldSwapchain` is `VK_NULL_HANDLE`.

Upon calling `vkCreateSwapchainKHR` with an `oldSwapchain` that is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, any images from `oldSwapchain` that are not acquired by the application **may** be freed by the implementation, which **may** occur even if creation of the new swapchain fails. The application **can** destroy `oldSwapchain` to free all memory associated with `oldSwapchain`.

**Note**
Multiple retired swapchains **can** be associated with the same `VkSurfaceKHR` through multiple uses of `oldSwapchain` that outnumber calls to `vkDestroySwapchainKHR`.

After `oldSwapchain` is retired, the application **can** pass to `vkQueuePresentKHR` any images it had already acquired from `oldSwapchain`. E.g., an application may present an image from the old swapchain before an image from the new swapchain is ready to be presented. As usual, `vkQueuePresentKHR` **may** fail if `oldSwapchain` has entered a state that causes `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DATE_KHR` to be returned.

The application **can** continue to use a shared presentable image obtained from `oldSwapchain` until a presentable image is acquired from the new swapchain, as long as it has not entered a state that causes it to return `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DATE_KHR`. 
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-surface-01270**
  
  **surface** must be a surface that is supported by the device as determined using `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceSupportKHR`.

- **VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-minImageCount-01272**
  
  **minImageCount** must be less than or equal to the value returned in the **maxImageCount** member of the `VkSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR` structure returned by `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR` for the surface if the returned **maxImageCount** is not zero.

- **VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-presentMode-02839**
  
  If **presentMode** is not `VK_PRESENT_MODE_SHARED_DEMAND_REFRESH_KHR` nor `VK_PRESENT_MODE_SHARED_CONTINUOUS_REFRESH_KHR`, then **minImageCount** must be greater than or equal to the value returned in the **minImageCount** member of the `VkSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR` structure returned by `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR` for the surface.

- **VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-minImageCount-01383**
  
  **minImageCount** must be 1 if **presentMode** is either `VK_PRESENT_MODE_SHARED_DEMAND_REFRESH_KHR` or `VK_PRESENT_MODE_SHARED_CONTINUOUS_REFRESH_KHR`.

- **VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-imageFormat-01273**
  
  **imageFormat** and **imageColorSpace** must match the **format** and **colorSpace** members, respectively, of one of the `VkSurfaceFormatKHR` structures returned by `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceFormatsKHR` for the surface.

- **VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-imageExtent-01274**
  
  **imageExtent** must be between **minImageExtent** and **maxImageExtent**, inclusive, where **minImageExtent** and **maxImageExtent** are members of the `VkSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR` structure returned by `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR` for the surface.

- **VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-imageExtent-01689**
  
  **imageExtent** members **width** and **height** must both be non-zero.

- **VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-imageArrayLayers-01275**
  
  **imageArrayLayers** must be greater than 0 and less than or equal to the **maxImageArrayLayers** member of the `VkSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR` structure returned by `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR` for the surface.

- **VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-presentMode-01427**
  
  If **presentMode** is `VK_PRESENT_MODE_IMMEDIATE_KHR`, `VK_PRESENT_MODE_MAILBOX_KHR`, `VK_PRESENT_MODE_FIFO_KHR` or `VK_PRESENT_MODE_FIFO_RELAXED_KHR`, **imageUsage** must be a subset of the supported usage flags present in the **supportedUsageFlags** member of the `VkSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR` structure returned by `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR` for the surface.

- **VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-imageUsage-01384**
  
  If **presentMode** is `VK_PRESENT_MODE_SHARED_DEMAND_REFRESH_KHR` or `VK_PRESENT_MODE_SHARED_CONTINUOUS_REFRESH_KHR`, **imageUsage** must be a subset of the supported usage flags present in the **sharedPresentSupportedUsageFlags** member of the
VkSharedPresentSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR structure returned by vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceCapabilities2KHR for surface

- VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-imageSharingMode-01277
  If `imageSharingMode` is `VK_SHARING_MODE_CONCURRENT`, `pQueueFamilyIndices` must be a valid pointer to an array of `queueFamilyIndexCount uint32_t` values

- VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-imageSharingMode-01278
  If `imageSharingMode` is `VK_SHARING_MODE_CONCURRENT`, `queueFamilyIndexCount` must be greater than 1

- VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-imageSharingMode-01428
  If `imageSharingMode` is `VK_SHARING_MODE_CONCURRENT`, each element of `pQueueFamilyIndices` must be unique and must be less than `pQueueFamilyPropertyCount` returned by either vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties or vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties2 for the physicalDevice that was used to create device

- VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-preTransform-01279
  `preTransform` must be one of the bits present in the `supportedTransforms` member of the VkSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR structure returned by vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR for the surface

- VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-compositeAlpha-01280
  `compositeAlpha` must be one of the bits present in the `supportedCompositeAlpha` member of the VkSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR structure returned by vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR for the surface

- VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-presentMode-01281
  `presentMode` must be one of the VkPresentModeKHR values returned by vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfacePresentModesKHR for the surface

- VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-physicalDeviceCount-01429
  If the logical device was created with VkDeviceGroupDeviceCreateInfo::physicalDeviceCount equal to 1, `flags` must not contain `VK_SWAPCHAIN_CREATE_SPLIT_INSTANCE_BIND_REGIONS_BIT_KHR`

- VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-oldSwapchain-01933
  If `oldSwapchain` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, `oldSwapchain` must be a non-retired swapchain associated with native window referred to by `surface`

- VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-imageFormat-01778
  The implied image creation parameters of the swapchain must be supported as reported by vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties

- VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-flags-03168
  If `flags` contains `VK_SWAPCHAIN_CREATE_MUTABLE_FORMAT_BIT_KHR` then the `pNext` chain must include a VkImageFormatListCreateInfo structure with a `viewFormatCount` greater than zero and `pViewFormats` must have an element equal to `imageFormat`

- VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-pNext-04099
  If a VkImageFormatListCreateInfo structure was included in the `pNext` chain and VkImageFormatListCreateInfo::viewFormatCount is not zero then all of the formats in VkImageFormatListCreateInfo::pViewFormats must be compatible with the `format` as described in the compatibility table
If flags does not contain VK_SWAPCHAIN_CREATE_MUTABLE_FORMAT_BIT_KHR and the pNext chain include a VkImageFormatListCreateInfo structure then VkImageFormatListCreateInfo::viewFormatCount must be 0 or 1.

If flags contains VK_SWAPCHAIN_CREATE_PROTECTED_BIT_KHR, then VkSurfaceProtectedCapabilitiesKHR::supportsProtected must be VK_TRUE in the VkSurfaceProtectedCapabilitiesKHR structure returned by vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceCapabilities2KHR for surface.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-sType-sType**
  - The `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SWAPCHAIN_CREATE_INFO_KHR`.

- **VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-pNext-pNext**
  - Each `pNext` member of any structure (including this one) in the `pNext` chain must be either `NULL` or a pointer to a valid instance of `VkDeviceGroupSwapchainCreateInfoKHR` or `VkImageFormatListCreateInfo`.

- **VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-sType-unique**
  - The `sType` value of each struct in the `pNext` chain must be unique.

- **VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-flags-parameter**
  - The `flags` must be a valid combination of `VkSwapchainCreateFlagBitsKHR` values.

- **VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-surface-parameter**
  - The `surface` must be a valid `VkSurfaceKHR` handle.

- **VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-imageFormat-parameter**
  - The `imageFormat` must be a valid `VkFormat` value.

- **VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-imageColorSpace-parameter**
  - The `imageColorSpace` must be a valid `VkColorSpaceKHR` value.

- **VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-imageUsage-parameter**
  - The `imageUsage` must be a valid combination of `VkImageUsageFlagsKHR` values.

- **VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-imageUsage-requiredmask**
  - The `imageUsage` must not be `0`.

- **VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-imageSharingMode-parameter**
  - The `imageSharingMode` must be a valid `VkSharingMode` value.

- **VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-preTransform-parameter**
  - The `preTransform` must be a valid `VkSurfaceTransformFlagBitsKHR` value.

- **VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-compositeAlpha-parameter**
  - The `compositeAlpha` must be a valid `VkCompositeAlphaFlagBitsKHR` value.

- **VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-presentMode-parameter**
  - The `presentMode` must be a valid `VkPresentModeKHR` value.

- **VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-oldSwapchain-parameter**
  - If `oldSwapchain` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, `oldSwapchain` must be a valid `VkSwapchainKHR` handle.

- **VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-oldSwapchain-parent**
  - If `oldSwapchain` is a valid handle, it must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from `surface`.

- **VUID-VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-commonparent**
  - Both of `oldSwapchain`, and `surface` that are valid handles of non-ignored parameters must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkInstance`.

Bits which can be set in `VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR::flags`, specifying parameters of swapchain...
creation, are:

```c
typedef enum VkSwapchainCreateFlagBitsKHR {
    // Provided by VK_KHR_swapchain with VK_VERSION_1_1, VK_KHR_device_group with
    VK_SWAPCHAIN_CREATE_SPLIT_INSTANCE_BIND_REGIONS_BIT_KHR = 0x00000001,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_swapchain
    // Provided by VK_KHR_swapchain with VK_VERSION_1_1, VK_KHR_device_group with
    VK_SWAPCHAIN_CREATE_PROTECTED_BIT_KHR = 0x00000002,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_swapchain_mutable_format
    VK_SWAPCHAIN_CREATE_MUTABLE_FORMAT_BIT_KHR = 0x00000004,
} VkSwapchainCreateFlagBitsKHR;
```

- **VK_SWAPCHAIN_CREATE_SPLIT_INSTANCE_BIND_REGIONS_BIT_KHR** specifies that images created from the swapchain (i.e. with the `swapchain` member of `VkImageSwapchainCreateInfoKHR` set to this swapchain's handle) **must** use `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPLIT_INSTANCE_BIND_REGIONS_BIT`.

- **VK_SWAPCHAIN_CREATE_MUTABLE_FORMAT_BIT_KHR** specifies that the images of the swapchain can be used to create a `VkImageView` with a different format than what the swapchain was created with. The list of allowed image view formats is specified by adding a `VkImageFormatListCreateInfo` structure to the `pNext` chain of `VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR`. In addition, this flag also specifies that the swapchain can be created with usage flags that are not supported for the format the swapchain is created with but are supported for at least one of the allowed image view formats.

```c
typedef VkFlags VkSwapchainCreateFlagsKHR;
```

`VkSwapchainCreateFlagsKHR` is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more `VkSwapchainCreateFlagBitsKHR`.

If the `pNext` chain of `VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR` includes a `VkDeviceGroupSwapchainCreateInfoKHR` structure, then that structure includes a set of device group present modes that the swapchain **can** be used with.

The `VkDeviceGroupSwapchainCreateInfoKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkDeviceGroupSwapchainCreateInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkDeviceGroupPresentModeFlagsKHR modes;
} VkDeviceGroupSwapchainCreateInfoKHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• **modes** is a bitfield of modes that the swapchain can be used with.

If this structure is not present, **modes** is considered to be `VK_DEVICE_GROUP_PRESENT_MODE_LOCAL_BIT_KHR`.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkDeviceGroupSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-sType-sType**
  - `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEVICE_GROUP_SWAPCHAIN_CREATE_INFO_KHR`

- **VUID-VkDeviceGroupSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-modes-parameter**
  - `modes` must be a valid combination of `VkDeviceGroupPresentModeFlagBitsKHR` values

- **VUID-VkDeviceGroupSwapchainCreateInfoKHR-modes-requiredbitmask**
  - `modes` must not be 0

As mentioned above, if `vkCreateSwapchainKHR` succeeds, it will return a handle to a swapchain containing an array of at least `minImageCount` presentable images.

While acquired by the application, presentable images can be used in any way that equivalent non-presentable images can be used. A presentable image is equivalent to a non-presentable image created with the following `VkImageCreateInfo` parameters:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VkImageCreateInfo Field</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>flags</td>
<td>VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPLIT_INSTANCE_BIND_REGIONS_BIT is set if <code>VK_SWAPCHAIN_CREATE_SPLIT_INSTANCE_BIND_REGIONS_BIT_KHR</code> is set. If <code>VK_IMAGE_CREATE_MUTABLE_FORMAT_BIT</code> and <code>VK_IMAGE_CREATE_EXTENDED_USAGE_BIT_KHR</code> are both set if <code>VK_SWAPCHAIN_CREATE_MUTABLE_FORMAT_BIT_KHR</code> is set, all other bits are unset.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>imageType</td>
<td>VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>format</td>
<td><code>pCreateInfo-&gt;imageFormat</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>extent</td>
<td><code>{pCreateInfo-&gt;imageExtent.width, pCreateInfo-&gt;imageExtent.height, 1}</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mipLevels</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>arrayLayers</td>
<td><code>pCreateInfo-&gt;imageArrayLayers</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>samples</td>
<td>VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tiling</td>
<td>VK_IMAGE_TILING_OPTIMAL</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>usage</td>
<td><code>pCreateInfo-&gt;imageUsage</code></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sharingMode</td>
<td><code>pCreateInfo-&gt;imageSharingMode</code></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The **surface** must not be destroyed until after the swapchain is destroyed.

If `oldSwapchain` is `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, and the native window referred to by `surface` is already associated with a Vulkan swapchain, `VK_ERROR_NATIVE_WINDOW_IN_USE_KHR` must be returned.

If the native window referred to by `surface` is already associated with a non-Vulkan graphics API surface, `VK_ERROR_NATIVE_WINDOW_IN_USE_KHR` must be returned.

The native window referred to by `surface` must not become associated with a non-Vulkan graphics API surface before all associated Vulkan swapchains have been destroyed.

Like core functions, several WSI functions, including `vkCreateSwapchainKHR` return `VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST` if the logical device was lost. See Lost Device. As with most core objects, `VkSwapchainKHR` is a child of the device and is affected by the lost state; it must be destroyed before destroying the `VkDevice`. However, `VkSurfaceKHR` is not a child of any `VkDevice` and is not otherwise affected by the lost device. After successfully recreating a `VkDevice`, the same `VkSurfaceKHR` can be used to create a new `VkSwapchainKHR`, provided the previous one was destroyed.

**Note**

As mentioned in Lost Device, after a lost device event, the `VkPhysicalDevice` may also be lost. If other `VkPhysicalDevice` are available, they can be used together with the same `VkSurfaceKHR` to create the new `VkSwapchainKHR`, however the application must query the surface capabilities again, because they may differ on a per-physical device basis.

To destroy a swapchain object call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_swapchain
void vkDestroySwapchainKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    VkSwapchainKHR swapchain,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator);
```

- `device` is the `VkDevice` associated with `swapchain`.
- `swapchain` is the swapchain to destroy.
- `pAllocator` is the allocator used for host memory allocated for the swapchain object when there is no more specific allocator available (see Memory Allocation).

The application must not destroy a swapchain until after completion of all outstanding operations on images that were acquired from the swapchain. `swapchain` and all associated `VkImage` handles are destroyed, and must not be acquired or used any more by the application. The memory of each
VkImage will only be freed after that image is no longer used by the presentation engine. For example, if one image of the swapchain is being displayed in a window, the memory for that image may not be freed until the window is destroyed, or another swapchain is created for the window. Destroying the swapchain does not invalidate the parent VkSurfaceKHR, and a new swapchain can be created with it.

When a swapchain associated with a display surface is destroyed, if the image most recently presented to the display surface is from the swapchain being destroyed, then either any display resources modified by presenting images from any swapchain associated with the display surface must be reverted by the implementation to their state prior to the first present performed on one of these swapchains, or such resources must be left in their current state.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkDestroySwapchainKHR-swapchain-01282**
  
  All uses of presentable images acquired from swapchain must have completed execution

- **VUID-vkDestroySwapchainKHR-swapchain-01283**
  
  If VkAllocationCallbacks were provided when swapchain was created, a compatible set of callbacks must be provided here

- **VUID-vkDestroySwapchainKHR-swapchain-01284**
  
  If no VkAllocationCallbacks were provided when swapchain was created, pAllocator must be NULL

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkDestroySwapchainKHR-device-parameter**
  
  device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- **VUID-vkDestroySwapchainKHR-swapchain-parameter**
  
  If swapchain is not VK_NULL_HANDLE, swapchain must be a valid VkSwapchainKHR handle

- **VUID-vkDestroySwapchainKHR-pAllocator-parameter**
  
  If pAllocator is not NULL, pAllocator must be a valid pointer to a valid VkAllocationCallbacks structure

- **VUID-vkDestroySwapchainKHR-commonparent**
  
  Both of device, and swapchain that are valid handles of non-ignored parameters must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same VkInstance

### Host Synchronization

- Host access to swapchain must be externally synchronized

When the VK_KHR_display_swapchain extension is enabled, multiple swapchains that share presentable images are created by calling:
Provided by VK_KHR_display_swapchain

```c
VkResult vkCreateSharedSwapchainsKHR(
  VkDevice device,
  uint32_t swapchainCount,
  const VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR* pCreateInfos,
  const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator,
  VkSwapchainKHR* pSwapchains);
```

- **device** is the device to create the swapchains for.
- **swapchainCount** is the number of swapchains to create.
- **pCreateInfos** is a pointer to an array of `VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR` structures specifying the parameters of the created swapchains.
- **pAllocator** is the allocator used for host memory allocated for the swapchain objects when there is no more specific allocator available (see Memory Allocation).
- **pSwapchains** is a pointer to an array of `VkSwapchainKHR` handles in which the created swapchain objects will be returned.

`vkCreateSharedSwapchainsKHR` is similar to `vkCreateSwapchainKHR`, except that it takes an array of `VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR` structures, and returns an array of swapchain objects.

The swapchain creation parameters that affect the properties and number of presentable images **must** match between all the swapchains. If the displays used by any of the swapchains do not use the same presentable image layout or are incompatible in a way that prevents sharing images, swapchain creation will fail with the result code `VK_ERROR_INCOMPATIBLE_DISPLAY_KHR`. If any error occurs, no swapchains will be created. Images presented to multiple swapchains **must** be re-acquired from all of them before transitioning away from `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_PRESENT_SRC_KHR`. After destroying one or more of the swapchains, the remaining swapchains and the presentable images **can** continue to be used.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkCreateSharedSwapchainsKHR-device-parameter**
  
  *device must be a valid* `VkDevice` *handle*

- **VUID-vkCreateSharedSwapchainsKHR-pCreateInfos-parameter**
  
  *pCreateInfos must be a valid pointer to an array of* `swapchainCount` *valid* `VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR` *structures*

- **VUID-vkCreateSharedSwapchainsKHR-pAllocator-parameter**
  
  *If* `pAllocator` *is not NULL, pAllocator must be a valid pointer to a valid* `VkAllocationCallbacks` *structure*

- **VUID-vkCreateSharedSwapchainsKHR-pSwapchains-parameter**
  
  *pSwapchains must be a valid pointer to an array of* `swapchainCount` *`VkSwapchainKHR` handles*

- **VUID-vkCreateSharedSwapchainsKHR-swapchainCount-arraylength**
  
  *swapchainCount must be greater than 0*

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `pCreateInfos[].surface` must be externally synchronized
- Host access to `pCreateInfos[].oldSwapchain` must be externally synchronized

Return Codes

**Success**

- `VK_SUCCESS`

**Failure**

- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_INCOMPATIBLE_DISPLAY_KHR`
- `VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST`
- `VK_ERROR_SURFACE_LOST_KHR`

To obtain the array of presentable images associated with a swapchain, call:
// Provided by VK_KHR_swapchain

```c
VkResult vkGetSwapchainImagesKHR(
  VkDevice device,
  VkSwapchainKHR swapchain,
  uint32_t* pSwapchainImageCount,
  VkImage* pSwapchainImages);
```

- **device** is the device associated with **swapchain**.
- **swapchain** is the swapchain to query.
- **pSwapchainImageCount** is a pointer to an integer related to the number of presentable images available or queried, as described below.
- **pSwapchainImages** is either **NULL** or a pointer to an array of **VkImage** handles.

If **pSwapchainImages** is **NULL**, then the number of presentable images for **swapchain** is returned in **pSwapchainImageCount**. Otherwise, **pSwapchainImageCount** must point to a variable set by the user to the number of elements in the **pSwapchainImages** array, and on return the variable is overwritten with the number of structures actually written to **pSwapchainImages**. If the value of **pSwapchainImageCount** is less than the number of presentable images for **swapchain**, at most **pSwapchainImageCount** structures will be written, and **VK_INCOMPLETE** will be returned instead of **VK_SUCCESS**, to indicate that not all the available presentable images were returned.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkGetSwapchainImagesKHR-device-parameter**
  **device** must be a valid **VkDevice** handle

- **VUID-vkGetSwapchainImagesKHR-swapchain-parameter**
  **swapchain** must be a valid **VkSwapchainKHR** handle

- **VUID-vkGetSwapchainImagesKHR-pSwapchainImageCount-parameter**
  **pSwapchainImageCount** must be a valid pointer to a **uint32_t** value

- **VUID-vkGetSwapchainImagesKHR-pSwapchainImages-parameter**
  If the value referenced by **pSwapchainImageCount** is not 0, and **pSwapchainImages** is not **NULL**, **pSwapchainImages** must be a valid pointer to an array of **pSwapchainImageCount** **VkImage** handles

- **VUID-vkGetSwapchainImagesKHR-commonparent**
  Both of **device**, and **swapchain** must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same **VkInstance**
Return Codes

Success

• VK_SUCCESS
• VK_INCOMPLETE

Failure

• VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
• VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY

Note

By knowing all presentable images used in the swapchain, the application can create command buffers that reference these images prior to entering its main rendering loop.

Images returned by vkGetSwapchainImagesKHR are fully backed by memory before they are passed to the application. All presentable images are initially in the VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_UNDEFINED layout, thus before using presentable images, the application must transition them to a valid layout for the intended use.

Further, the lifetime of presentable images is controlled by the implementation, so applications must not destroy a presentable image. See vkDestroySwapchainKHR for further details on the lifetime of presentable images.

Images can also be created by using vkCreateImage with VkImageSwapchainCreateInfoKHR and bound to swapchain memory using vkBindImageMemory2KHR with VkBindImageMemorySwapchainInfoKHR. These images can be used anywhere swapchain images are used, and are useful in logical devices with multiple physical devices to create peer memory bindings of swapchain memory. These images and bindings have no effect on what memory is presented. Unlike images retrieved from vkGetSwapchainImagesKHR, these images must be destroyed with vkDestroyImage.

To acquire an available presentable image to use, and retrieve the index of that image, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_swapchain
VkResult vkAcquireNextImageKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    VkSwapchainKHR swapchain,
    uint64_t timeout,
    VkSemaphore semaphore,
    VkFence fence,
    uint32_t*pImageIndex);
```

• device is the device associated with swapchain.
• swapchain is the non-retired swapchain from which an image is being acquired.
• **timeout** specifies how long the function waits, in nanoseconds, if no image is available.
• **semaphore** is `VK_NULL_HANDLE` or a semaphore to signal.
• **fence** is `VK_NULL_HANDLE` or a fence to signal.
• **pImageIndex** is a pointer to a `uint32_t` in which the index of the next image to use (i.e. an index into the array of images returned by `vkGetSwapchainImagesKHR`) is returned.

### Valid Usage

- VUID-vkAcquireNextImageKHR-swapchain-01285
  - `swapchain` **must** not be in the retired state

- VUID-vkAcquireNextImageKHR-semaphore-01286
  - If **semaphore** is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE` it **must** be unsignaled

- VUID-vkAcquireNextImageKHR-semaphore-01779
  - If **semaphore** is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE` it **must** not have any uncompleted signal or wait operations pending

- VUID-vkAcquireNextImageKHR-fence-01287
  - If **fence** is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE` it **must** be unsignaled and **must** not be associated with any other queue command that has not yet completed execution on that queue

- VUID-vkAcquireNextImageKHR-semaphore-01780
  - **semaphore** and **fence** **must** not both be equal to `VK_NULL_HANDLE`

- VUID-vkAcquireNextImageKHR-swapchain-01802
  - If the number of currently acquired images is greater than the difference between the number of images in **swapchain** and the value of `VkSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR::minImageCount` as returned by a call to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceCapabilities2KHR` with the **surface** used to create **swapchain**, **timeout** **must** not be `UINT64_MAX`

- VUID-vkAcquireNextImageKHR-semaphore-03265
  - **semaphore** **must** have a `VkSemaphoreType` of `VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_BINARY`
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkAcquireNextImageKHR-device-parameter
  device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- VUID-vkAcquireNextImageKHR-swapchain-parameter
  swapchain must be a valid VkSwapchainKHR handle

- VUID-vkAcquireNextImageKHR-semaphore-parameter
  If semaphore is not VK_NULL_HANDLE, semaphore must be a valid VkSemaphore handle

- VUID-vkAcquireNextImageKHR-fence-parameter
  If fence is not VK_NULL_HANDLE, fence must be a valid VkFence handle

- VUID-vkAcquireNextImageKHR-pImageIndex-parameter
  pImageIndex must be a valid pointer to a uint32_t value

- VUID-vkAcquireNextImageKHR-semaphore-parent
  If semaphore is a valid handle, it must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from device

- VUID-vkAcquireNextImageKHR-fence-parent
  If fence is a valid handle, it must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from device

- VUID-vkAcquireNextImageKHR-commonparent
  Both of device, and swapchain that are valid handles of non-ignored parameters must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same VkInstance

Host Synchronization

- Host access to swapchain must be externally synchronized
- Host access to semaphore must be externally synchronized
- Host access to fence must be externally synchronized
Return Codes

Success
• VK_SUCCESS
• VK_TIMEOUT
• VK_NOT_READY
• VK_SUBOPTIMAL_KHR

Failure
• VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
• VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY
• VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST
• VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DATE_KHR
• VK_ERROR_SURFACE_LOST_KHR

When successful, vkAcquireNextImageKHR acquires a presentable image from swapchain that an application can use, and sets pImageIndex to the index of that image within the swapchain. The presentation engine may not have finished reading from the image at the time it is acquired, so the application must use semaphore and/or fence to ensure that the image layout and contents are not modified until the presentation engine reads have completed. If semaphore is not VK_NULL_HANDLE, the application may assume that, once vkAcquireNextImageKHR returns, the semaphore signal operation referenced by semaphore has been submitted for execution. The order in which images are acquired is implementation-dependent, and may be different than the order the images were presented.

If timeout is zero, then vkAcquireNextImageKHR does not wait, and will either successfully acquire an image, or fail and return VK_NOT_READY if no image is available.

If the specified timeout period expires before an image is acquired, vkAcquireNextImageKHR returns VK_TIMEOUT. If timeout is UINT64_MAX, the timeout period is treated as infinite, and vkAcquireNextImageKHR will block until an image is acquired or an error occurs.

vkAcquireNextImageKHR should not be called if the number of images that the application has currently acquired is greater than the difference between the number of images in swapchain and the value of VkSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR::minImageCount. If vkAcquireNextImageKHR is called when the number of images that the application has currently acquired is less or equal than the difference between the number of images in swapchain and the value of VkSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR::minImageCount, vkAcquireNextImageKHR must return in finite time with an allowed VkResult code.
Note
Returning a result in finite time guarantees that the implementation cannot
deadlock an application, or suspend its execution indefinitely with correct API
usage. Acquiring too many images at once may block indefinitely, which is covered
by valid usage when attempting to use \texttt{UINT64\_MAX}. For example, a scenario here is
when a compositor holds on to images which are currently being presented, and
there are not any vacant images left to be acquired.

If an image is acquired successfully, \texttt{vkAcquireNextImageKHR} must either return \texttt{VK\_SUCCESS} or
\texttt{VK\_SUBOPTIMAL\_KHR}. The implementation may return \texttt{VK\_SUBOPTIMAL\_KHR} if the swapchain no longer
matches the surface properties exactly, but can still be used for presentation.

Note
\texttt{VK\_SUBOPTIMAL\_KHR} may happen, for example, if the platform surface has been
resized but the platform is able to scale the presented images to the new size to
produce valid surface updates. It is up to the application to decide whether it
prefers to continue using the current swapchain in this state, or to re-create the
swapchain to better match the platform surface properties.

If the swapchain images no longer match native surface properties, either \texttt{VK\_SUBOPTIMAL\_KHR} or
\texttt{VK\_ERROR\_OUT\_OF\_DATE\_KHR} must be returned. If \texttt{VK\_ERROR\_OUT\_OF\_DATE\_KHR} is returned, no image is
acquired and attempts to present previously acquired images to the swapchain will also fail with
\texttt{VK\_ERROR\_OUT\_OF\_DATE\_KHR}. Applications need to create a new swapchain for the surface to continue
presenting if \texttt{VK\_ERROR\_OUT\_OF\_DATE\_KHR} is returned.

If device loss occurs (see Lost Device) before the timeout has expired, \texttt{vkAcquireNextImageKHR} must
return in finite time with either one of the allowed success codes, or \texttt{VK\_ERROR\_DEVICE\_LOST}.

If \texttt{semaphore} is not \texttt{VK\_NULL\_HANDLE}, the semaphore must be unsignaled, with no signal or wait
operations pending. It will become signaled when the application can use the image.

Note
Use of \texttt{semaphore} allows rendering operations to be recorded and submitted before
the presentation engine has completed its use of the image.

If \texttt{fence} is not equal to \texttt{VK\_NULL\_HANDLE}, the fence must be unsignaled, with no signal operations
pending. It will become signaled when the application can use the image.

Note
Applications should not rely on \texttt{vkAcquireNextImageKHR} blocking in order to meter
their rendering speed. The implementation may return from this function
immediately regardless of how many presentation requests are queued, and
regardless of when queued presentation requests will complete relative to the call.
Instead, applications can use \texttt{fence} to meter their frame generation work to match
the presentation rate.

An application must wait until either the \texttt{semaphore} or \texttt{fence} is signaled before accessing the image’s
Note

When the presentable image will be accessed by some stage \( S \), the recommended idiom for ensuring correct synchronization is:

- The `VkSubmitInfo` used to submit the image layout transition for execution includes `vkAcquireNextImageKHR::semaphore` in its `pWaitSemaphores` member, with the corresponding element of `pWaitDstStageMask` including \( S \).

- The synchronization command that performs any necessary image layout transition includes \( S \) in both the `srcStageMask` and `dstStageMask`.

After a successful return, the image indicated by `pImageIndex` and its data will be unmodified compared to when it was presented.

Note

Exclusive ownership of presentable images corresponding to a swapchain created with `VK_SHARING_MODE_EXCLUSIVE` as defined in Resource Sharing is not altered by a call to `vkAcquireNextImageKHR`. That means upon the first acquisition from such a swapchain presentable images are not owned by any queue family, while at subsequent acquisitions the presentable images remain owned by the queue family the image was previously presented on.

The possible return values for `vkAcquireNextImageKHR` depend on the `timeout` provided:

- `VK_SUCCESS` is returned if an image became available.
- `VK_ERROR_SURFACE_LOST_KHR` is returned if the surface becomes no longer available.
- `VK_NOT_READY` is returned if `timeout` is zero and no image was available.
- `VK_TIMEOUT` is returned if `timeout` is greater than zero and less than `UINT64_MAX`, and no image became available within the time allowed.
- `VK_SUBOPTIMAL_KHR` is returned if an image became available, and the swapchain no longer matches the surface properties exactly, but can still be used to present to the surface successfully.

Note

This may happen, for example, if the platform surface has been resized but the platform is able to scale the presented images to the new size to produce valid surface updates. It is up to the application to decide whether it prefers to continue using the current swapchain indefinitely or temporarily in this state, or to re-create the swapchain to better match the platform surface properties.

- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DATE_KHR` is returned if the surface has changed in such a way that it is no longer compatible with the swapchain, and further presentation requests using the swapchain will fail. Applications must query the new surface properties and recreate their swapchain if they wish to continue presenting to the surface.
If the native surface and presented image sizes no longer match, presentation may fail. If presentation does succeed, the mapping from the presented image to the native surface is implementation-defined. It is the application’s responsibility to detect surface size changes and react appropriately. If presentation fails because of a mismatch in the surface and presented image sizes, a VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DATE_KHR error will be returned.

Note

For example, consider a 4x3 window/surface that gets resized to be 3x4 (taller than wider). On some window systems, the portion of the window/surface that was previously and still is visible (the 3x3 part) will contain the same contents as before, while the remaining parts of the window will have undefined contents. Other window systems may squash/stretch the image to fill the new window size without any undefined contents, or apply some other mapping.

To acquire an available presentable image to use, and retrieve the index of that image, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_swapchain with VK_VERSION_1_1, VK_KHR_device_group with VK_KHR_swapchain
VkResult vkAcquireNextImage2KHR(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkAcquireNextImageInfoKHR* pAcquireInfo,
    uint32_t* pImageIndex);
```

- `device` is the device associated with `swapchain`.
- `pAcquireInfo` is a pointer to a `VkAcquireNextImageInfoKHR` structure containing parameters of the acquire.
- `pImageIndex` is a pointer to a `uint32_t` that is set to the index of the next image to use.

Valid Usage

- `VUID-vkAcquireNextImage2KHR-swapchain-01803`
  If the number of currently acquired images is greater than the difference between the number of images in the `swapchain` member of `pAcquireInfo` and the value of `VkSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR::minImageCount` as returned by a call to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceCapabilities2KHR` with the `surface` used to create `swapchain`, the `timeout` member of `pAcquireInfo` must not be `UINT64_MAX`
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkAcquireNextImage2KHR-device-parameter**
  - `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle
- **VUID-vkAcquireNextImage2KHR-pAcquireInfo-parameter**
  - `pAcquireInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkAcquireNextImageInfoKHR` structure
- **VUID-vkAcquireNextImage2KHR-pImageIndex-parameter**
  - `pImageIndex` must be a valid pointer to a `uint32_t` value

Return Codes

**Success**

- VK_SUCCESS
- VK_TIMEOUT
- VK_NOT_READY
- VK_SUBOPTIMAL_KHR

**Failure**

- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DATE_KHR
- VK_ERROR_SURFACE_LOST_KHR

The `VkAcquireNextImageInfoKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_swapchain with VK_VERSION_1_1, VK_KHR_device_group with VK_KHR_swapchain
typedef struct VkAcquireNextImageInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkSwapchainKHR swapchain;
    uint64_t timeout;
    VkSemaphore semaphore;
    VkFence fence;
    uint32_t deviceMask;
} VkAcquireNextImageInfoKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `swapchain` is a non-retired swapchain from which an image is acquired.
• **timeout** specifies how long the function waits, in nanoseconds, if no image is available.

• **semaphore** is **VK_NULL_HANDLE** or a semaphore to signal.

• **fence** is **VK_NULL_HANDLE** or a fence to signal.

• **deviceMask** is a mask of physical devices for which the swapchain image will be ready to use when the semaphore or fence is signaled.

If **vkAcquireNextImageKHR** is used, the device mask is considered to include all physical devices in the logical device.

**Note**

**vkAcquireNextImage2KHR** signals at most one semaphore, even if the application requests waiting for multiple physical devices to be ready via the **deviceMask**. However, only a single physical device **can** wait on that semaphore, since the semaphore becomes unsignaled when the wait succeeds. For other physical devices to wait for the image to be ready, it is necessary for the application to submit semaphore signal operation(s) to that first physical device to signal additional semaphore(s) after the wait succeeds, which the other physical device(s) **can** wait upon.

**Valid Usage**

• **VUID-VkAcquireNextImageInfoKHR-swapchain-01675**

  **swapchain** must not be in the retired state

• **VUID-VkAcquireNextImageInfoKHR-semaphore-01288**

  If **semaphore** is not **VK_NULL_HANDLE** it **must** be unsignaled

• **VUID-VkAcquireNextImageInfoKHR-semaphore-01781**

  If **semaphore** is not **VK_NULL_HANDLE** it **must** not have any uncompleted signal or wait operations pending

• **VUID-VkAcquireNextImageInfoKHR-fence-01289**

  If **fence** is not **VK_NULL_HANDLE** it **must** be unsignaled and **must** not be associated with any other queue command that has not yet completed execution on that queue

• **VUID-VkAcquireNextImageInfoKHR-semaphore-01782**

  **semaphore** and **fence** **must** not both be equal to **VK_NULL_HANDLE**

• **VUID-VkAcquireNextImageInfoKHR-deviceMask-01290**

  **deviceMask** must be a valid device mask

• **VUID-VkAcquireNextImageInfoKHR-deviceMask-01291**

  **deviceMask** must not be zero

• **VUID-VkAcquireNextImageInfoKHR-semaphore-03266**

  **semaphore** **must** have a **VkSemaphoreType** of **VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_BINARY**
**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- **VUID-VkAcquireNextImageInfoKHR-sType-sType**
  
  *sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ACQUIRE_NEXT_IMAGE_INFO_KHR*

- **VUID-VkAcquireNextImageInfoKHR-pNext-pNext**
  
  *pNext must be NULL*

- **VUID-VkAcquireNextImageInfoKHR-swaponchain-parameter**
  
  *swapchain must be a valid VkSwapchainKHR handle*

- **VUID-VkAcquireNextImageInfoKHR-semaphore-parameter**
  
  *If semaphore is not VK_NULL_HANDLE, semaphore must be a valid VkSemaphore handle*

- **VUID-VkAcquireNextImageInfoKHR-fence-parameter**
  
  *If fence is not VK_NULL_HANDLE, fence must be a valid VkFence handle*

- **VUID-VkAcquireNextImageInfoKHR-commonparent**
  
  *Each of fence, semaphore, and swapchain that are valid handles of non-ignored parameters must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same VkInstance*

**Host Synchronization**

- Host access to **swapchain** must be externally synchronized
- Host access to **semaphore** must be externally synchronized
- Host access to **fence** must be externally synchronized

After queueing all rendering commands and transitioning the image to the correct layout, to queue an image for presentation, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_swapchain
VkResult vkQueuePresentKHR(VkQueue queue, const VkPresentInfoKHR* pPresentInfo);
```

- **queue** is a queue that is capable of presentation to the target surface’s platform on the same device as the image’s swapchain.
- **pPresentInfo** is a pointer to a VkPresentInfoKHR structure specifying parameters of the presentation.

**Note**

There is no requirement for an application to present images in the same order that they were acquired - applications can arbitrarily present any image that is currently acquired.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkQueuePresentKHR-pSwapchains-01292**

  Each element of `pSwapchains` member of `pPresentInfo` must be a swapchain that is created for a surface for which presentation is supported from `queue` as determined using a call to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceSupportKHR`.

- **VUID-vkQueuePresentKHR-pSwapchains-01293**

  If more than one member of `pSwapchains` was created from a display surface, all display surfaces referenced that refer to the same display must use the same display mode.

- **VUID-vkQueuePresentKHR-pWaitSemaphores-01294**

  When a semaphore wait operation referring to a binary semaphore defined by the elements of the `pWaitSemaphores` member of `pPresentInfo` executes on `queue`, there must be no other queues waiting on the same semaphore.

- **VUID-vkQueuePresentKHR-pWaitSemaphores-01295**

  All elements of the `pWaitSemaphores` member of `pPresentInfo` must be semaphores that are signaled, or have semaphore signal operations previously submitted for execution.

- **VUID-vkQueuePresentKHR-pWaitSemaphores-03267**

  All elements of the `pWaitSemaphores` member of `pPresentInfo` must be created with a `VkSemaphoreType` of `VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_BINARY`.

- **VUID-vkQueuePresentKHR-pWaitSemaphores-03268**

  All elements of the `pWaitSemaphores` member of `pPresentInfo` must reference a semaphore signal operation that has been submitted for execution and any semaphore signal operations on which it depends (if any) must have also been submitted for execution.

Any writes to memory backing the images referenced by the `pImageIndices` and `pSwapchains` members of `pPresentInfo`, that are available before `vkQueuePresentKHR` is executed, are automatically made visible to the read access performed by the presentation engine. This automatic visibility operation for an image happens-after the semaphore signal operation, and happens-before the presentation engine accesses the image.

Queueing an image for presentation defines a set of queue operations, including waiting on the semaphores and submitting a presentation request to the presentation engine. However, the scope of this set of queue operations does not include the actual processing of the image by the presentation engine.

**Note**

The origin of the native orientation of the surface coordinate system is not specified in the Vulkan specification; it depends on the platform. For most platforms the origin is by default upper-left, meaning the pixel of the presented `VkImage` at coordinates (0,0) would appear at the upper left pixel of the platform surface (assuming `VK_SURFACE_TRANSFORM_IDENTITY_BIT_KHR`, and the display standing the right way up).

If `vkQueuePresentKHR` fails to enqueue the corresponding set of queue operations, it may return `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY` or `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY`. If it does, the implementation must...
ensure that the state and contents of any resources or synchronization primitives referenced is unaffected by the call or its failure.

If `vkQueuePresentKHR` fails in such a way that the implementation is unable to make that guarantee, the implementation must return `VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST`.

However, if the presentation request is rejected by the presentation engine with an error `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DATE_KHR`, or `VK_ERROR_SURFACE_LOST_KHR`, the set of queue operations are still considered to be enqueued and thus any semaphore wait operation specified in `VkPresentInfoKHR` will execute when the corresponding queue operation is complete.

Calls to `vkQueuePresentKHR` may block, but must return in finite time.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkQueuePresentKHR-queue-parameter
  - `queue` must be a valid `VkQueue` handle
- VUID-vkQueuePresentKHR-pPresentInfo-parameter
  - `pPresentInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkPresentInfoKHR` structure

### Host Synchronization

- Host access to `queue` must be externally synchronized
- Host access to `pPresentInfo->pWaitSemaphores[]` must be externally synchronized
- Host access to `pPresentInfo->pSwapchains[]` must be externally synchronized

### Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
**Return Codes**

**Success**
- VK_SUCCESS
- VK_SUBOPTIMAL_KHR

**Failure**
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DATE_KHR
- VK_ERROR_SURFACE_LOST_KHR

The `VkPresentInfoKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_swapchain
typedef struct VkPresentInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    uint32_t waitSemaphoreCount;
    const VkSemaphore* pWaitSemaphores;
    uint32_t swapchainCount;
    const VkSwapchainKHR* pSwapchains;
    const uint32_t* pImageIndices;
    VkResult* pResults;
} VkPresentInfoKHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **waitSemaphoreCount** is the number of semaphores to wait for before issuing the present request. The number may be zero.
- **pWaitSemaphores** is NULL or a pointer to an array of `VkSemaphore` objects with `waitSemaphoreCount` entries, and specifies the semaphores to wait for before issuing the present request.
- **swapchainCount** is the number of swapchains being presented to by this command.
- **pSwapchains** is a pointer to an array of `VkSwapchainKHR` objects with `swapchainCount` entries. A given swapchain must not appear in this list more than once.
- **pImageIndices** is a pointer to an array of indices into the array of each swapchain's presentable images, with `swapchainCount` entries. Each entry in this array identifies the image to present on the corresponding entry in the `pSwapchains` array.
- **pResults** is a pointer to an array of `VkResult` typed elements with `swapchainCount` entries. Applications that do not need per-swapchain results can use NULL for `pResults`. If non-NULL, each entry in `pResults` will be set to the `VkResult` for presenting the swapchain corresponding to the
Before an application can present an image, the image’s layout must be transitioned to the `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_PRESENT_SRC_KHR` layout, or for a shared presentable image the `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHARED_PRESENT_KHR` layout.

**Note**
When transitioning the image to `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHARED_PRESENT_KHR` or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_PRESENT_SRC_KHR`, there is no need to delay subsequent processing, or perform any visibility operations (as `vkQueuePresentKHR` performs automatic visibility operations). To achieve this, the `dstAccessMask` member of the `VkImageMemoryBarrier` should be set to 0, and the `dstStageMask` parameter should be set to `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_BOTTOM_OF_PIPE_BIT`.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkPresentInfoKHR-pImageIndices-01430**
  Each element of `pImageIndices` must be the index of a presentable image acquired from the swapchain specified by the corresponding element of the `pSwapchains` array, and the presented image subresource must be in the `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_PRESENT_SRC_KHR` or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHARED_PRESENT_KHR` layout at the time the operation is executed on a `VkDevice`.

- **VUID-VkPresentInfoKHR-pNext-06235**
  If a `VkPresentIdKHR` structure is included in the `pNext` chain, and the `presentId` feature is not enabled, each `presentIds` entry in that structure must be NULL.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkPresentInfoKHR-sType-sType**
  
  *sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PRESENT_INFO_KHR*

- **VUID-VkPresentInfoKHR-pNext-pNext**
  
  Each *pNext* member of any structure (including this one) in the *pNext* chain must be either NULL or a pointer to a valid instance of VkDeviceGroupPresentInfoKHR, VkDisplayPresentInfoKHR, VkPresentIdKHR, or VkPresentRegionsKHR.

- **VUID-VkPresentInfoKHR-sType-unique**
  
  The *sType* value of each struct in the *pNext* chain must be unique.

- **VUID-VkPresentInfoKHR-pWaitSemaphores-parameter**
  
  If *waitSemaphoreCount* is not 0, *pWaitSemaphores* must be a valid pointer to an array of *waitSemaphoreCount* valid VkSemaphore handles.

- **VUID-VkPresentInfoKHR-pSwapchains-parameter**
  
  *pSwapchains* must be a valid pointer to an array of *swapchainCount* valid VkSwapchainKHR handles.

- **VUID-VkPresentInfoKHR-pImageIndices-parameter**
  
  *pImageIndices* must be a valid pointer to an array of *swapchainCount* uint32_t values.

- **VUID-VkPresentInfoKHR-pResults-parameter**
  
  If *pResults* is not NULL, *pResults* must be a valid pointer to an array of *swapchainCount* VkResult values.

- **VUID-VkPresentInfoKHR-swapchainCount-arraylength**
  
  *swapchainCount* must be greater than 0.

- **VUID-VkPresentInfoKHR-commonparent**
  
  Both of the elements of *pSwapchains*, and the elements of *pWaitSemaphores* that are valid handles of non-ignored parameters must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same VkInstance.

When the VK_KHR_incremental_present extension is enabled, additional fields can be specified that allow an application to specify that only certain rectangular regions of the presentable images of a swapchain are changed. This is an optimization hint that a presentation engine may use to only update the region of a surface that is actually changing. The application still must ensure that all pixels of a presented image contain the desired values, in case the presentation engine ignores this hint. An application can provide this hint by adding a VkPresentRegionsKHR structure to the *pNext* chain of the VkPresentInfoKHR structure.

The VkPresentRegionsKHR structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkPresentRegionsKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    uint32_t swapchainCount;
    const VkPresentRegionKHR* pRegions;
} VkPresentRegionsKHR;

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **swapchainCount** is the number of swapchains being presented to by this command.
- **pRegions** is NULL or a pointer to an array of VkPresentRegionKHR elements with swapchainCount entries. If not NULL, each element of **pRegions** contains the region that has changed since the last present to the swapchain in the corresponding entry in the VkPresentInfoKHR::pSwapchains array.

Valid Usage

- VUID-VkPresentRegionsKHR-swapchainCount-01260
  swapchainCount must be the same value as VkPresentInfoKHR:swapchainCount, where VkPresentInfoKHR is included in the pNext chain of this VkPresentRegionsKHR structure

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkPresentRegionsKHR-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PRESENT_REGIONS_KHR

- VUID-VkPresentRegionsKHR-pRegions-parameter
  If pRegions is not NULL, pRegions must be a valid pointer to an array of swapchainCount valid VkPresentRegionKHR structures

- VUID-VkPresentRegionsKHR-swapchainCount-arraylength
  swapchainCount must be greater than 0

For a given image and swapchain, the region to present is specified by the VkPresentRegionKHR structure, which is defined as:

typedef struct VkPresentRegionKHR {
    uint32_t rectangleCount;
    const VkRectLayerKHR* pRectangles;
} VkPresentRegionKHR;

- **rectangleCount** is the number of rectangles in pRectangles, or zero if the entire image has changed and should be presented.
• \texttt{pRectangles} is either \texttt{NULL} or a pointer to an array of \texttt{VkRectLayerKHR} structures. The \texttt{VkRectLayerKHR} structure is the framebuffer coordinates, plus layer, of a portion of a presentable image that has changed and \textbf{must} be presented. If non-\texttt{NULL}, each entry in \texttt{pRectangles} is a rectangle of the given image that has changed since the last image was presented to the given swapchain. The rectangles \textbf{must} be specified relative to \texttt{VkSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR::currentTransform}, regardless of the swapchain’s \texttt{preTransform}. The presentation engine will apply the \texttt{preTransform} transformation to the rectangles, along with any further transformation it applies to the image content.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- \textbf{VUID-VkPresentRegionKHR-pRectangles-parameter}  
  If \texttt{rectangleCount} is not 0, and \texttt{pRectangles} is not \texttt{NULL}, \texttt{pRectangles} \textbf{must} be a valid pointer to an array of \texttt{rectangleCount} valid \texttt{VkRectLayerKHR} structures.

The \texttt{VkRectLayerKHR} structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_incremental_present
typedef struct VkRectLayerKHR {
    VkOffset2D offset;
    VkExtent2D extent;
    uint32_t layer;
} VkRectLayerKHR;
```

- \texttt{offset} is the origin of the rectangle, in pixels.
- \texttt{extent} is the size of the rectangle, in pixels.
- \texttt{layer} is the layer of the image. For images with only one layer, the value of \texttt{layer} \textbf{must} be 0.

Some platforms allow the size of a surface to change, and then scale the pixels of the image to fit the surface. \texttt{VkRectLayerKHR} specifies pixels of the swapchain’s image(s), which will be constant for the life of the swapchain.

### Valid Usage

- \textbf{VUID-VkRectLayerKHR-offset-04864}  
  The sum of \texttt{offset} and \texttt{extent}, after being transformed according to the \texttt{preTransform} member of the \texttt{VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR} structure, \textbf{must} be no greater than the \texttt{imageExtent} member of the \texttt{VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR} structure passed to \texttt{vkCreateSwapchainKHR}.

- \textbf{VUID-VkRectLayerKHR-layer-01262}  
  \texttt{layer} \textbf{must} be less than the \texttt{imageArrayLayers} member of the \texttt{VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR} structure passed to \texttt{vkCreateSwapchainKHR}.

When the \texttt{VK_KHR_display_swapchain} extension is enabled additional fields \textbf{can} be specified when...
presenting an image to a swapchain by setting \( \text{VkPresentInfoKHR}.\text{pNext} \) to point to a \( \text{VkDisplayPresentInfoKHR} \) structure.

The \( \text{VkDisplayPresentInfoKHR} \) structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_display_swapchain
typedef struct VkDisplayPresentInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkRect2D srcRect;
    VkRect2D dstRect;
    VkBool32 persistent;
} VkDisplayPresentInfoKHR;
```

- \( \text{sType} \) is the type of this structure.
- \( \text{pNext} \) is \text{NULL} or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- \( \text{srcRect} \) is a rectangular region of pixels to present. It \textbf{must} be a subset of the image being presented. If \( \text{VkDisplayPresentInfoKHR} \) is not specified, this region will be assumed to be the entire presentable image.
- \( \text{dstRect} \) is a rectangular region within the visible region of the swapchain's display mode. If \( \text{VkDisplayPresentInfoKHR} \) is not specified, this region will be assumed to be the entire visible region of the swapchain's mode. If the specified rectangle is a subset of the display mode's visible region, content from display planes below the swapchain's plane will be visible outside the rectangle. If there are no planes below the swapchain's, the area outside the specified rectangle will be black. If portions of the specified rectangle are outside of the display's visible region, pixels mapping only to those portions of the rectangle will be discarded.
- \( \text{persistent} \): If this is \text{VK_TRUE}, the display engine will enable buffered mode on displays that support it. This allows the display engine to stop sending content to the display until a new image is presented. The display will instead maintain a copy of the last presented image. This allows less power to be used, but \textbf{may} increase presentation latency. If \( \text{VkDisplayPresentInfoKHR} \) is not specified, persistent mode will not be used.

If the extent of the \( \text{srcRect} \) and \( \text{dstRect} \) are not equal, the presented pixels will be scaled accordingly.
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkDisplayPresentInfoKHR-srcRect-01257
  
  `srcRect` **must** specify a rectangular region that is a subset of the image being presented

- VUID-VkDisplayPresentInfoKHR-dstRect-01258
  
  `dstRect` **must** specify a rectangular region that is a subset of the `visibleRegion` parameter of the display mode the swapchain being presented uses

- VUID-VkDisplayPresentInfoKHR-persistentContent-01259
  
  If the `persistentContent` member of the `VkDisplayPropertiesKHR` structure returned by `vkGetPhysicalDeviceDisplayPropertiesKHR` for the display the present operation targets is `VK_FALSE`, then `persistent` **must** be `VK_FALSE`

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkDisplayPresentInfoKHR-sType-sType

  `sType` **must** be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DISPLAY_PRESENT_INFO_KHR`

If the `pNext` chain of `VkPresentInfoKHR` includes a `VkDeviceGroupPresentInfoKHR` structure, then that structure includes an array of device masks and a device group present mode.

The `VkDeviceGroupPresentInfoKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkDeviceGroupPresentInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    uint32_t swapchainCount;
    const uint32_t* pDeviceMasks;
    VkDeviceGroupPresentModeFlagBitsKHR mode;
} VkDeviceGroupPresentInfoKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `swapchainCount` is zero or the number of elements in `pDeviceMasks`.
- `pDeviceMasks` is a pointer to an array of device masks, one for each element of `VkPresentInfoKHR::pSwapchains`.
- `mode` is a `VkDeviceGroupPresentModeFlagBitsKHR` value specifying the device group present mode that will be used for this present.

If `mode` is `VKDEVICEGROUP_PRESENT_MODE_LOCAL_BIT_KHR`, then each element of `pDeviceMasks` selects which instance of the swapchain image is presented. Each element of `pDeviceMasks` **must** have exactly one bit set, and the corresponding physical device **must** have a presentation engine as
reported by VkDeviceGroupPresentCapabilitiesKHR.

If mode is VK_DEVICE_GROUP_PRESENT_MODE_REMOTE_BIT_KHR, then each element of pDeviceMasks selects which instance of the swapchain image is presented. Each element of pDeviceMasks must have exactly one bit set, and some physical device in the logical device must include that bit in its VkDeviceGroupPresentCapabilitiesKHR::presentMask.

If mode is VK_DEVICE_GROUP_PRESENT_MODE_SUM_BIT_KHR, then each element of pDeviceMasks selects which instances of the swapchain image are component-wise summed and the sum of those images is presented. If the sum in any component is outside the representable range, the value of that component is undefined. Each element of pDeviceMasks must have a value for which all set bits are set in one of the elements of VkDeviceGroupPresentCapabilitiesKHR::presentMask.

If mode is VK_DEVICE_GROUP_PRESENT_MODE_LOCAL_MULTI_DEVICE_BIT_KHR, then each element of pDeviceMasks selects which instance(s) of the swapchain images are presented. For each bit set in each element of pDeviceMasks, the corresponding physical device must have a presentation engine as reported by VkDeviceGroupPresentCapabilitiesKHR.

If VkDeviceGroupPresentInfoKHR is not provided or swapchainCount is zero then the masks are considered to be 1. If VkDeviceGroupPresentInfoKHR is not provided, mode is considered to be VK_DEVICE_GROUP_PRESENT_MODE_LOCAL_BIT_KHR.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkDeviceGroupPresentInfoKHR-swapchainCount-01297**
  - `swapchainCount` must equal 0 or `VkPresentInfoKHR::swapchainCount`

- **VUID-VkDeviceGroupPresentInfoKHR-mode-01298**
  - If `mode` is `VK_DEVICE_GROUP_PRESENT_MODE_LOCAL_BIT_KHR`, then each element of `pDeviceMasks` must have exactly one bit set, and the corresponding element of `VkDeviceGroupPresentCapabilitiesKHR::presentMask` must be non-zero

- **VUID-VkDeviceGroupPresentInfoKHR-mode-01299**
  - If `mode` is `VK_DEVICE_GROUP_PRESENT_MODE_REMOTE_BIT_KHR`, then each element of `pDeviceMasks` must have exactly one bit set, and some physical device in the logical device must include that bit in its `VkDeviceGroupPresentCapabilitiesKHR::presentMask`

- **VUID-VkDeviceGroupPresentInfoKHR-mode-01300**
  - If `mode` is `VK_DEVICE_GROUP_PRESENT_MODE_SUM_BIT_KHR`, then each element of `pDeviceMasks` must have a value for which all set bits are set in one of the elements of `VkDeviceGroupPresentCapabilitiesKHR::presentMask`

- **VUID-VkDeviceGroupPresentInfoKHR-mode-01301**
  - If `mode` is `VK_DEVICE_GROUP_PRESENT_MODE_LOCAL_MULTI_DEVICE_BIT_KHR`, then for each bit set in each element of `pDeviceMasks`, the corresponding element of `VkDeviceGroupPresentCapabilitiesKHR::presentMask` must be non-zero

- **VUID-VkDeviceGroupPresentInfoKHR-pDeviceMasks-01302**
  - The value of each element of `pDeviceMasks` must be equal to the device mask passed in `VkAcquireNextImageInfoKHR::deviceMask` when the image index was last acquired

- **VUID-VkDeviceGroupPresentInfoKHR-mode-01303**
  - `mode` must have exactly one bit set, and that bit must have been included in `VkDeviceGroupSwapchainCreateInfoKHR::modes`

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkDeviceGroupPresentInfoKHR-sType-sType**
  - `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEVICE_GROUP_PRESENT_INFO_KHR`

- **VUID-VkDeviceGroupPresentInfoKHR-pDeviceMasks-parameter**
  - If `swapchainCount` is not 0, `pDeviceMasks` must be a valid pointer to an array of `swapchainCount uint32_t` values

- **VUID-VkDeviceGroupPresentInfoKHR-mode-parameter**
  - `mode` must be a valid `VkDeviceGroupPresentModeFlagBitsKHR` value

The `VkPresentIdKHR` structure is defined as:
// Provided by VK_KHR_present_id

typedef struct VkPresentIdKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    uint32_t swapchainCount;
    const uint64_t* pPresentIds;
} VkPresentIdKHR;

• sType is the type of this structure.
• pNext is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• swapchainCount is the number of swapchains being presented to the vkQueuePresentKHR command.
• pPresentIds is NULL or a pointer to an array of uint64_t with swapchainCount entries. If not NULL, each non-zero value in pPresentIds specifies the present id to be associated with the presentation of the swapchain with the same index in the vkQueuePresentKHR call.

For applications to be able to reference specific presentation events queued by a call to vkQueuePresentKHR, an identifier needs to be associated with them. When the presentId feature is enabled, applications can include the VkPresentIdKHR structure in the pNext chain of the VkPresentInfoKHR structure to supply identifiers.

Each VkSwapchainKHR has a presentId associated with it. This value is initially set to zero when the VkSwapchainKHR is created.

When a VkPresentIdKHR structure with a non-NULL pPresentIds is included in the pNext chain of a VkPresentInfoKHR structure, each pSwapchains entry has a presentId associated in the pPresentIds array at the same index as the swapchain in the pSwapchains array. If this presentId is non-zero, then the application can later use this value to refer to that image presentation. A value of zero indicates that this presentation has no associated presentId. A non-zero presentId must be greater than any non-zero presentId passed previously by the application for the same swapchain.

There is no requirement for any precise timing relationship between the presentation of the image to the user and the update of the presentId value, but implementations should make this as close as possible to the presentation of the first pixel in the new image to the user.

Valid Usage

• VUID-VkPresentIdKHR-swapchainCount-04998
  swapchainCount must be the same value as VkPresentInfoKHR::swapchainCount, where this VkPresentIdKHR is in the pNext-chain of the VkPresentInfoKHR structure

• VUID-VkPresentIdKHR-presentIds-04999
  Each presentIds entry must be greater than any previous presentIds entry passed for the associated pSwapchains entry
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkPresentIdKHR-sType-sType**
  
  *sType* must be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PRESENT_ID_KHR**

- **VUID-VkPresentIdKHR-pPresentIds-parameter**
  
  If *pPresentIds* is not **NULL**, *pPresentIds* must be a valid pointer to an array of *swapchainCount* uint64_t values

- **VUID-VkPresentIdKHR-swapchainCount-arraylength**
  
  *swapchainCount* must be greater than 0

When the **presentWait** feature is enabled, an application can wait for an image to be presented to the user by first specifying a presentId for the target presentation by adding a **VkPresentIdKHR** structure to the **pNext** chain of the **VkPresentInfoKHR** structure and then waiting for that presentation to complete by calling:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_present_wait
VkResult vkWaitForPresentKHR(
    VkDevice
    device,
    VkSwapchainKHR
    swapchain,
    uint64_t
    presentId,
    uint64_t
    timeout);
```

- **device** is the device associated with **swapchain**.
- **swapchain** is the non-retired swapchain on which an image was queued for presentation.
- **presentId** is the presentation presentId to wait for.
- **timeout** is the timeout period in units of nanoseconds. **timeout** is adjusted to the closest value allowed by the implementation-dependent timeout accuracy, which may be substantially longer than one nanosecond, and may be longer than the requested period.

**vkWaitForPresentKHR** waits for the presentId associated with **swapchain** to be increased in value so that it is at least equal to **presentId**.

For **VK_PRESENT_MODE_MAILBOX_KHR** (or other present mode where images may be replaced in the presentation queue) any wait of this type associated with such an image must be signaled no later than a wait associated with the replacing image would be signaled.

When the presentation has completed, the presentId associated with the related **pSwapChains** entry will be increased in value so that it is at least equal to the value provided in the **VkPresentIdKHR** structure.

There is no requirement for any precise timing relationship between the presentation of the image to the user and the update of the presentId value, but implementations should make this as close as possible to the presentation of the first pixel in the new image to the user.

The call to **vkWaitForPresentKHR** will block until either the presentId associated with **swapchain** is
greater than or equal to `presentId`, or `timeout` nanoseconds passes. When the swapchain becomes `OUT_OF_DATE`, the call will either return `VK_SUCCESS` (if the image was delivered to the presentation engine and may have been presented to the user) or will return early with status `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DATE_KHR` (if the image was not presented to the user).

As an exception to the normal rules for objects which are externally synchronized, the `swapchain` passed to `vkWaitForPresentKHR` may be simultaneously used by other threads in calls to functions other than `vkDestroySwapchainKHR`. Access to the swapchain data associated with this extension must be atomic within the implementation.

### Valid Usage

- VUID-vkWaitForPresentKHR-swapchain-04997
  
  `swapchain` **must not be in the retired state**

- VUID-vkWaitForPresentKHR-presentWait-06234
  
  The `presentWait` feature **must be enabled**

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkWaitForPresentKHR-device-parameter
  
  `device` **must be a valid `VkDevice` handle**

- VUID-vkWaitForPresentKHR-swapchain-parameter
  
  `swapchain` **must be a valid `VkSwapchainKHR` handle**

- VUID-vkWaitForPresentKHR-commonparent
  
  Both of `device`, and `swapchain` **must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkInstance`**

### Host Synchronization

- Host access to `swapchain` **must be externally synchronized**

### Return Codes

#### Success

- `VK_SUCCESS`
- `VK_TIMEOUT`

#### Failure

- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY`
- `VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST`
vkQueuePresentKHR, releases the acquisition of the images referenced by imageIndices. The queue family corresponding to the queue vkQueuePresentKHR is executed on must have ownership of the presented images as defined in Resource Sharing. vkQueuePresentKHR does not alter the queue family ownership, but the presented images must not be used again before they have been reacquired using vkAcquireNextImageKHR.

The processing of the presentation happens in issue order with other queue operations, but semaphores have to be used to ensure that prior rendering and other commands in the specified queue complete before the presentation begins. The presentation command itself does not delay processing of subsequent commands on the queue, however, presentation requests sent to a particular queue are always performed in order. Exact presentation timing is controlled by the semantics of the presentation engine and native platform in use.

If an image is presented to a swapchain created from a display surface, the mode of the associated display will be updated, if necessary, to match the mode specified when creating the display surface. The mode switch and presentation of the specified image will be performed as one atomic operation.

The result codes VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DATE_KHR and VK_SUBOPTIMAL_KHR have the same meaning when returned by vkQueuePresentKHR as they do when returned by vkAcquireNextImageKHR. If multiple swapchains are presented, the result code is determined applying the following rules in order:

- If the device is lost, VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST is returned.
- If any of the target surfaces are no longer available the error VK_ERROR_SURFACE_LOST_KHR is returned.
- If any of the presents would have a result of VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DATE_KHR if issued separately then VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DATE_KHR is returned.
- If any of the presents would have a result of VK_SUBOPTIMAL_KHR if issued separately then VK_SUBOPTIMAL_KHR is returned.
- Otherwise VK_SUCCESS is returned.

Presentation is a read-only operation that will not affect the content of the presentable images. Upon reacquiring the image and transitioning it away from the VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_PRESENT_SRC_KHR layout, the contents will be the same as they were prior to transitioning the image to the present source layout and presenting it. However, if a mechanism other than Vulkan is used to modify the platform window associated with the swapchain, the content of all presentable images in the swapchain becomes undefined.

Note

The application can continue to present any acquired images from a retired swapchain as long as the swapchain has not entered a state that causes vkQueuePresentKHR to return VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DATE_KHR.
Chapter 31. Deferred Host Operations

Certain Vulkan commands are inherently expensive for the host CPU to execute. It is often desirable to offload such work onto background threads, and to parallelize the work across multiple CPUs. The concept of deferrable commands allows applications and drivers to coordinate the execution of expensive host commands using an application-managed thread pool.

The VK_KHR_deferred_host_operations extension defines the infrastructure and usage patterns for deferrable commands, but does not specify any commands as deferrable. This is left to additional dependant extensions. Commands must not be deferred unless the deferral is specifically allowed by another extension which depends on VK_KHR_deferred_host_operations. This specification will refer to such extensions as deferral extensions.

31.1. Requesting Deferral

When an application requests an operation deferral, the implementation may defer the operation. When deferral is requested and the implementation defers any operation, the implementation must return VK_OPERATION_DEFERRED_KHR as the success code if no errors occurred. When deferral is requested, the implementation should defer the operation when the workload is significant, however if the implementation chooses not to defer any of the requested operations and instead executes all of them immediately, the implementation must return VK_OPERATION_NOT_DEFERRED_KHR as the success code if no errors occurred.

A deferred operation is created complete with an initial result value of VK_SUCCESS. The deferred operation becomes pending when an operation has been successfully deferred with that deferred operation object.

A deferred operation is considered pending until the deferred operation completes. A pending deferred operation becomes complete when it has been fully executed by one or more threads. Pending deferred operations will never complete until they are joined by an application thread, using vkDeferredOperationJoinKHR. Applications can join multiple threads to the same deferred operation, enabling concurrent execution of subtasks within that operation.

The application can query the status of a VkDeferredOperationKHR using the vkGetDeferredOperationMaxConcurrencyKHR or vkGetDeferredOperationResultKHR commands.

Parameters to the command requesting a deferred operation may be accessed at any time until the deferred operation enters the pending state. While a deferred operation is pending:

- Externally synchronized parameters must not be accessed.
- Pointer parameters must not be modified (e.g. reallocated/freed).
- The contents of pointer parameters which may be read by the command must not be modified.
- The contents of pointer parameters which may be written by the command must not be read.
- Vulkan object parameters must not be passed as externally synchronized parameters to any other command.

When the deferred operation is complete, the application should call
vkGetDeferredOperationResultKHR to obtain the VkResult indicating success or failure of the operation. The VkResult value returned will be one of the values that the command requesting the deferred operation is able to return. Writes to output parameters of the requesting command will happen-before the deferred operation is complete.

31.2. Deferred Host Operations API

The VkDeferredOperationKHR handle is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_deferred_host_operations
VK_DEFINE_NON_DISPATCHABLE_HANDLE(VkDeferredOperationKHR)
```

This handle refers to a tracking structure which manages the execution state for a deferred command.

To construct the tracking object for a deferred command, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_deferred_host_operations
VkResult vkCreateDeferredOperationKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator,
    VkDeferredOperationKHR* pDeferredOperation);
```

- `device` is the device which owns operation.
- `pAllocator` controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
- `pDeferredOperation` is a pointer to a handle in which the created VkDeferredOperationKHR is returned.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCreateDeferredOperationKHR-device-parameter
  device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- VUID-vkCreateDeferredOperationKHR-pAllocator-parameter
  If pAllocator is not NULL, pAllocator must be a valid pointer to a valid VkAllocationCallbacks structure

- VUID-vkCreateDeferredOperationKHR-pDeferredOperation-parameter
  pDeferredOperation must be a valid pointer to a VkDeferredOperationKHR handle
## Return Codes

### Success
- **VK_SUCCESS**

### Failure
- **VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY**

To assign a thread to a deferred operation, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_deferred_host_operations
VkResult vkDeferredOperationJoinKHR(
    VkDevice device,  // The device which owns the operation.
    VkDeferredOperationKHR operation);  // The deferred operation that the calling thread should work on.
```

- `device` is the device which owns `operation`.
- `operation` is the deferred operation that the calling thread should work on.

The `vkDeferredOperationJoinKHR` command will execute a portion of the deferred operation on the calling thread.

The return value will be one of the following:

- A return value of **VK_SUCCESS** indicates that `operation` is complete. The application **should** use `vkGetDeferredOperationResultKHR` to retrieve the result of `operation`.

- A return value of **VK_THREAD_DONE_KHR** indicates that the deferred operation is not complete, but there is no work remaining to assign to threads. Future calls to `vkDeferredOperationJoinKHR` are not necessary and will simply harm performance. This situation **may** occur when other threads executing `vkDeferredOperationJoinKHR` are about to complete `operation`, and the implementation is unable to partition the workload any further.

- A return value of **VK_THREAD_IDLE_KHR** indicates that the deferred operation is not complete, and there is no work for the thread to do at the time of the call. This situation **may** occur if the operation encounters a temporary reduction in parallelism. By returning **VK_THREAD_IDLE_KHR**, the implementation is signaling that it expects that more opportunities for parallelism will emerge as execution progresses, and that future calls to `vkDeferredOperationJoinKHR` **can** be beneficial. In the meantime, the application **can** perform other work on the calling thread.

Implementations **must** guarantee forward progress by enforcing the following invariants:

1. If only one thread has invoked `vkDeferredOperationJoinKHR` on a given operation, that thread **must** execute the operation to completion and return **VK_SUCCESS**.

2. If multiple threads have concurrently invoked `vkDeferredOperationJoinKHR` on the same operation, then at least one of them **must** complete the operation and return **VK_SUCCESS**.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkDeferredOperationJoinKHR-device-parameter
device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- VUID-vkDeferredOperationJoinKHR-operation-parameter
operation must be a valid VkDeferredOperationKHR handle

- VUID-vkDeferredOperationJoinKHR-operation-parent
operation must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from device

Return Codes

Success

- VK_SUCCESS
- VK_THREAD_DONE_KHR
- VK_THREAD_IDLE_KHR

Failure

- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY

When a deferred operation is completed, the application can destroy the tracking object by calling:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_deferred_host_operations
void vkDestroyDeferredOperationKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    VkDeferredOperationKHR operation,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator);
```

- `device` is the device which owns `operation`.
- `operation` is the completed operation to be destroyed.
- `pAllocator` controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkDestroyDeferredOperationKHR-operation-03434
  If *VkAllocationCallbacks* were provided when *operation* was created, a compatible set of callbacks must be provided here.

- VUID-vkDestroyDeferredOperationKHR-operation-03435
  If no *VkAllocationCallbacks* were provided when *operation* was created, *pAllocator* must be NULL.

- VUID-vkDestroyDeferredOperationKHR-operation-03436
  *operation* must be completed.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkDestroyDeferredOperationKHR-device-parameter
  *device* must be a valid *VkDevice* handle.

- VUID-vkDestroyDeferredOperationKHR-operation-parameter
  If *operation* is not *VK_NULL_HANDLE*, *operation* must be a valid *VkDeferredOperationKHR* handle.

- VUID-vkDestroyDeferredOperationKHR-pAllocator-parameter
  If *pAllocator* is not NULL, *pAllocator* must be a valid pointer to a valid *VkAllocationCallbacks* structure.

- VUID-vkDestroyDeferredOperationKHR-operation-parent
  If *operation* is a valid handle, it must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from *device*.

Host Synchronization

- Host access to *operation* must be externally synchronized.

To query the number of additional threads that can usefully be joined to a deferred operation, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_deferred_host_operations
uint32_t vkGetDeferredOperationMaxConcurrencyKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    VkDeferredOperationKHR operation);
```

- *device* is the device which owns *operation*.
- *operation* is the deferred operation to be queried.

The returned value is the maximum number of threads that can usefully execute a deferred operation concurrently, reported for the state of the deferred operation at the point this command is called. This value is intended to be used to better schedule work onto available threads.
Applications can join any number of threads to the deferred operation and expect it to eventually complete, though excessive joins may return VK_THREAD_DONE_KHR immediately, performing no useful work.

If operation is complete, vkGetDeferredOperationMaxConcurrencyKHR returns zero.

If operation is currently joined to any threads, the value returned by this command may immediately be out of date.

If operation is pending, implementations must not return zero unless at least one thread is currently executing vkDeferredOperationJoinKHR on operation. If there are such threads, the implementation should return an estimate of the number of additional threads which it could profitably use.

Implementations may return $2^{32} - 1$ to indicate that the maximum concurrency is unknown and cannot be easily derived. Implementations may return values larger than the maximum concurrency available on the host CPU. In these situations, an application should clamp the return value rather than oversubscribing the machine.

Note

The recommended usage pattern for applications is to query this value once, after deferral, and schedule no more than the specified number of threads to join the operation. Each time a joined thread receives VK_THREAD_IDLE_KHR, the application should schedule an additional join at some point in the future, but is not required to do so.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetDeferredOperationMaxConcurrencyKHR-device-parameter
  - device must be a valid VkDevice handle
- VUID-vkGetDeferredOperationMaxConcurrencyKHR-operation-parameter
  - operation must be a valid VkDeferredOperationKHR handle
- VUID-vkGetDeferredOperationMaxConcurrencyKHR-operation-parent
  - operation must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from device

The vkGetDeferredOperationResultKHR function is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_deferred_host_operations
VkResult vkGetDeferredOperationResultKHR(
    VkDevice device,  // device is the device which owns operation.
    VkDeferredOperationKHR operation);  // operation is the operation whose deferred result is being queried.
```

If no command has been deferred on operation, vkGetDeferredOperationResultKHR returns
If the deferred operation is pending, `vkGetDeferredOperationResultKHR` returns `VK_NOT_READY`.

If the deferred operation is complete, it returns the appropriate return value from the original command. This value must be one of the `VkResult` values which could have been returned by the original command if the operation had not been deferred.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- device must be a valid `VkDevice` handle
- operation must be a valid `VkDeferredOperationKHR` handle
- operation must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from device

### Return Codes

**Success**

- `VK_SUCCESS`
- `VK_NOT_READY`
32.1. Acceleration Structures

*Acceleration structures* are data structures used by the implementation to efficiently manage scene geometry as it is traversed during a ray tracing query. The application is responsible for managing acceleration structure objects (see *Acceleration Structures*), including allocation, destruction, executing builds or updates, and synchronizing resources used during ray tracing queries.

There are two types of acceleration structures, *top level acceleration structures* and *bottom level acceleration structures*.

An acceleration structure is considered to be constructed if an *acceleration structure build command* or *copy command* has been executed with the given acceleration structure as the destination.

![Diagram of acceleration structure](image)

*Figure 22. Acceleration Structure*

The diagram shows the relationship between top and bottom level acceleration structures.

32.1.1. Geometry

*Geometries* refer to a triangle or axis-aligned bounding box.

32.1.2. Top Level Acceleration Structures

Opaque acceleration structure for an array of instances. The descriptor or device address referencing this is the starting point for traversal.
The top level acceleration structure takes a reference to any bottom level acceleration structure referenced by its instances. Those bottom level acceleration structure objects must be valid when the top level acceleration structure is accessed.

### 32.1.3. Bottom Level Acceleration Structures

Opaque acceleration structure for an array of geometries.

### 32.1.4. Acceleration Structure Update Rules

The API defines two types of operations to produce acceleration structures from geometry:

- A **build** operation is used to construct an acceleration structure.
- An **update** operation is used to modify an existing acceleration structure.

An update operation imposes certain constraints on the input, in exchange for considerably faster execution. When performing an update, the application is required to provide a full description of the acceleration structure, but is prohibited from changing anything other than instance definitions, transform matrices, and vertex or AABB positions. All other aspects of the description must exactly match the one from the original build.

More precisely, the application must not use an update operation to do any of the following:

- Change primitives or instances from **active** to **inactive** (as defined in Inactive Primitives and Instances).
- Change the index or vertex formats of triangle geometry.
- Change triangle geometry transform pointers from null to non-null or vice versa.
- Change the number of geometries or instances in the structure.
- Change the geometry flags for any geometry in the structure.
- Change the number of vertices or primitives for any geometry in the structure.

### 32.1.5. Inactive Primitives and Instances

Acceleration structures allow the use of particular input values to signal **inactive** primitives or instances.

An **inactive** triangle is one for which the first (X) component of each vertex is NaN. If any other vertex component is NaN, and the first is not, the behavior is undefined. If the vertex format does not have a NaN representation, then all triangles are considered active.

An **inactive** instance is one whose acceleration structure handle is **VK_NULL_HANDLE**.

An **inactive** AABB is one for which the minimum X coordinate is NaN. If any other component is NaN, and the first is not, the behavior is undefined.

In the above definitions, "NaN" refers to any type of NaN. Signaling, non-signaling, quiet, loud, or otherwise.
An inactive object is considered invisible to all rays, and should not be represented in the acceleration structure. Implementations should ensure that the presence of inactive objects does not seriously degrade traversal performance.

Inactive objects are counted in the auto-generated index sequences which are provided to shaders via InstanceId and PrimitiveId SPIR-V decorations. This allows objects in the scene to change freely between the active and inactive states, without affecting the layout of any arrays which are being indexed using the ID values.

Any transition between the active and inactive states requires a full acceleration structure rebuild. Applications must not perform an acceleration structure update where an object is active in the source acceleration structure but would be inactive in the destination, or vice versa.

### 32.1.6. Building Acceleration Structures

To build acceleration structures call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
void vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,  // Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
    uint32_t infoCount,              // Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
    const VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR* pInfos,  // Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
    const VkAccelerationStructureBuildRangeInfoKHR* const* ppBuildRangeInfos);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
- `infoCount` is the number of acceleration structures to build. It specifies the number of the `pInfos` structures and `ppBuildRangeInfos` pointers that must be provided.
- `pInfos` is a pointer to an array of `infoCount` `VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR` structures defining the geometry used to build each acceleration structure.
- `ppBuildRangeInfos` is a pointer to an array of `infoCount` pointers to arrays of `VkAccelerationStructureBuildRangeInfoKHR` structures. Each `ppBuildRangeInfos[i]` is a pointer to an array of `pInfos[i].geometryCount` `VkAccelerationStructureBuildRangeInfoKHR` structures defining dynamic offsets to the addresses where geometry data is stored, as defined by `pInfos[i]`.

The `vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR` command provides the ability to initiate multiple acceleration structures builds, however there is no ordering or synchronization implied between any of the individual acceleration structure builds.

**Note**

This means that an application cannot build a top-level acceleration structure in the same `vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR` call as the associated bottom-level or instance acceleration structures are being built. There also cannot be any memory aliasing between any acceleration structure memories or scratch memories being used by any of the builds.
synchronized with the `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR` pipeline stage and an access type of `VK_ACCESS_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_READ_BIT_KHR` or `VK_ACCESS_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_WRITE_BIT_KHR`. Similarly for accesses to each `VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR::srcAccelerationStructure` and `VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR::dstAccelerationStructure`.

Accesses to other input buffers as identified by any used values of `VkAccelerationStructureGeometryTrianglesDataKHR::vertexData`, `VkAccelerationStructureGeometryTrianglesDataKHR::indexData`, `VkAccelerationStructureGeometryTrianglesDataKHR::transformData`, `VkAccelerationStructureGeometryAabbsDataKHR::data`, and `VkAccelerationStructureGeometryInstancesDataKHR::data` must be synchronized with the `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR` pipeline stage and an access type of `VK_ACCESS_SHADER_READ_BIT`.

1272 | Chapter 32. Acceleration Structures
Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-mode-04628**
  The mode member of each element of pInfos must be a valid VkBuildAccelerationStructureModeKHR value.

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-srcAccelerationStructure-04629**
  If the srcAccelerationStructure member of any element of pInfos is not VK_NULL_HANDLE, the srcAccelerationStructure member must be a valid VkAccelerationStructureKHR handle.

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-04630**
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, its srcAccelerationStructure member must not be VK_NULL_HANDLE.

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03403**
  The srcAccelerationStructure member of any element of pInfos must not be the same acceleration structure as the dstAccelerationStructure member of any other element of pInfos.

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-dstAccelerationStructure-03698**
  The dstAccelerationStructure member of any element of pInfos must not be the same acceleration structure as the dstAccelerationStructure member of any other element of pInfos.

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-dstAccelerationStructure-03800**
  The dstAccelerationStructure member of any element of pInfos must be a valid VkAccelerationStructureKHR handle.

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03699**
  For each element of pInfos, if its type member is VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_TOP_LEVEL_KHR, its dstAccelerationStructure member must have been created with a value of VkAccelerationStructureCreateInfoKHR::type equal to either VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_TOP_LEVEL_KHR or VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_GENERIC_KHR.

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03700**
  For each element of pInfos, if its type member is VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BOTTOM_LEVEL_KHR, its dstAccelerationStructure member must have been created with a value of VkAccelerationStructureCreateInfoKHR::type equal to either VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BOTTOM_LEVEL_KHR or VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_GENERIC_KHR.

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03663**
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, inactive primitives in its srcAccelerationStructure member must not be made active.

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03664**
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, active primitives in its srcAccelerationStructure member must not be made inactive.
The dstAccelerationStructure member of any element of pInfos must not be referenced by
the geometry.instances.data member of any element of pGeometries or ppGeometries
with a geometryType of VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_INSTANCES_KHR in any other element of pInfos

The range of memory backing the dstAccelerationStructure member of any element of
pInfos that is accessed by this command must not overlap the memory backing the
srcAccelerationStructure member of any other element of pInfos with a mode equal to
VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, which is accessed by this command

The range of memory backing the dstAccelerationStructure member of any element of
pInfos that is accessed by this command must not overlap the memory backing the
dstAccelerationStructure member of any other element of pInfos, which is accessed by
this command

The range of memory backing the dstAccelerationStructure member of any element of
pInfos that is accessed by this command must not overlap the memory backing the
scratchData member of any element of pInfos (including the same element), which is
accessed by this command

The range of memory backing the scratchData member of any element of pInfos that is
accessed by this command must not overlap the memory backing the scratchData
member of any other element of pInfos, which is accessed by this command

The range of memory backing the scratchData member of any element of pInfos that is
accessed by this command must not overlap the memory backing the
srcAccelerationStructure member of any element of pInfos with a mode equal to
VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR (including the same element), which is
accessed by this command

The range of memory backing the dstAccelerationStructure member of any element of
pInfos that is accessed by this command must not overlap the memory backing any
acceleration structure referenced by the geometry.instances.data member of any element of
pGeometries or ppGeometries with a geometryType of VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_INSTANCES_KHR in
any other element of pInfos, which is accessed by this command

For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is
VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, its srcAccelerationStructure member
must have previously been constructed with
VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_ALLOW_UPDATE_BIT_KHR set in
VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR::flags in the build

For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is
VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, its srcAccelerationStructure and
dstAccelerationStructure members must either be the same
 VkAccelerationStructureKHR, or not have any memory aliasing

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03758
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, its geometryCount member must have the same value which was specified when srcAccelerationStructure was last built.

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03759
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, its flags member must have the same value which was specified when srcAccelerationStructure was last built.

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03760
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, its type member must have the same value which was specified when srcAccelerationStructure was last built.

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03761
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, then for each VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR structure referred to by its pGeometries or ppGeometries members, its geometryType member must have the same value which was specified when srcAccelerationStructure was last built.

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03762
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, then for each VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR structure referred to by its pGeometries or ppGeometries members, its flags member must have the same value which was specified when srcAccelerationStructure was last built.

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03763
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, then for each VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR structure referred to by its pGeometries or ppGeometries members, if geometryType is VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR, its geometry.triangles.vertexFormat member must have the same value which was specified when srcAccelerationStructure was last built.

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03764
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, then for each VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR structure referred to by its pGeometries or ppGeometries members, if geometryType is VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR, its geometry.triangles.maxVertex member must have the same value which was specified when srcAccelerationStructure was last built.

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03765
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, then for each VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR structure referred to by its pGeometries or ppGeometries members, if geometryType is VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR, its geometry.triangles.indexType member must have the same value which was specified when srcAccelerationStructure was last built.
when srcAccelerationStructure was last built

• VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03766
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, then for each VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR structure referred to by its pGeometries or ppGeometries members, if geometryType is VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR, if its geometry.triangles.transformData address was NULL when srcAccelerationStructure was last built, then it must be NULL

• VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03767
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, then for each VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR structure referred to by its pGeometries or ppGeometries members, if geometryType is VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR, if its geometry.triangles.transformData address was not NULL when srcAccelerationStructure was last built, then it must not be NULL

• VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03768
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, then for each VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR structure referred to by its pGeometries or ppGeometries members, if geometryType is VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR, and geometry.triangles.indexType is not VK_INDEX_TYPE_NONE_KHR, then the value of each index referenced must be the same as the corresponding index value when srcAccelerationStructure was last built

• VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-primitiveCount-03769
  For each VkAccelerationStructureBuildRangeInfoKHR referenced by this command, its primitiveCount member must have the same value which was specified when srcAccelerationStructure was last built

• VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-firstVertex-03770
  For each VkAccelerationStructureBuildRangeInfoKHR referenced by this command, if the corresponding geometry uses indices, its firstVertex member must have the same value which was specified when srcAccelerationStructure was last built

• VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03801
  For each element of pInfos[i].pGeometries or pInfos[i].ppGeometries with a geometryType of VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_INSTANCES_KHR, the corresponding ppBuildRangeInfos[i][j].primitiveCount must be less than or equal to VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructurePropertiesKHR::maxInstanceCount

• VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03707
  For each element of pInfos, the buffer used to create its dstAccelerationStructure member must be bound to device memory

• VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03708
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR the buffer used to create its srcAccelerationStructure member must be bound to device memory

• VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03709
For each element of `pInfos`, the buffer used to create each acceleration structure referenced by the `geometry.instances.data` member of any element of `pGeometries` or `ppGeometries` with a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_INSTANCES_KHR` must be bound to device memory

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03671**
  If `pInfos[i].mode` is `VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_BUILD_KHR`, all addresses between `pInfos[i].scratchData.deviceAddress` and `pInfos[i].scratchData.deviceAddress + N - 1` must be in the buffer device address range of the same buffer, where `N` is given by the `build ScratchSize` member of the `VkAccelerationStructureBuildSizesInfoKHR` structure returned from a call to `vkGetAccelerationStructureBuildSizesKHR` with an identical `VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR` structure and primitive count

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03672**
  If `pInfos[i].mode` is `VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR`, all addresses between `pInfos[i].scratchData.deviceAddress` and `pInfos[i].scratchData.deviceAddress + N - 1` must be in the buffer device address range of the same buffer, where `N` is given by the `update ScratchSize` member of the `VkAccelerationStructureBuildSizesInfoKHR` structure returned from a call to `vkGetAccelerationStructureBuildSizesKHR` with an identical `VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR` structure and primitive count

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-geometry-03673**
  The buffers from which the buffer device addresses for all of the `geometry.triangles.vertexData`, `geometry.triangles.indexData`, `geometry.triangles.transformData`, `geometry.aabbs.data`, and `geometry.instances.data` members of all `pInfos[i].pGeometries` and `pInfos[i].ppGeometries` are queried must have been created with the `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_INPUT_READ_ONLY_BIT_KHR` usage flag

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03674**
  The buffer from which the buffer device address `pInfos[i].scratchData.deviceAddress` is queried must have been created with `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_STORAGE_BUFFER_BIT` usage flag

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03802**
  For each element of `pInfos`, its `scratchData.deviceAddress` member must be a valid device address obtained from `vkGetBufferDeviceAddress`

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03803**
  For each element of `pInfos`, if `scratchData.deviceAddress` is the address of a non-sparse buffer then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03710**
  For each element of `pInfos`, its `scratchData.deviceAddress` member must be a multiple of `VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructurePropertiesKHR::minAccelerationStructureScratchOffsetAlignment`

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03804**
  For any element of `pInfos[i].pGeometries` or `pInfos[i].ppGeometries` with a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR`, `geometry.triangles.vertexData.deviceAddress` must be a valid device address obtained from `vkGetBufferDeviceAddress`

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03805**
For any element of \texttt{pInfos[i].pGeometries} or \texttt{pInfos[i].ppGeometries} with a \texttt{geometryType} of \texttt{VK\_GEOMETRY\_TYPE\__TRIANGLES\_KHR}, if \texttt{geometry.triangles.vertexData.deviceAddress} is the address of a non-sparse buffer then it \textbf{must} be bound completely and contiguously to a single \texttt{VkDeviceMemory} object

- VUID\texttt{-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03711}

  For any element of \texttt{pInfos[i].pGeometries} or \texttt{pInfos[i].ppGeometries} with a \texttt{geometryType} of \texttt{VK\_GEOMETRY\_TYPE\__TRIANGLES\_KHR}, \texttt{geometry.triangles.vertexData.deviceAddress} \textbf{must} be aligned to the size in bytes of the smallest component of the format in \texttt{vertexFormat}

- VUID\texttt{-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03806}

  For any element of \texttt{pInfos[i].pGeometries} or \texttt{pInfos[i].ppGeometries} with a \texttt{geometryType} of \texttt{VK\_GEOMETRY\_TYPE\__TRIANGLES\_KHR}, if \texttt{geometry.triangles.indexType} is not \texttt{VK\_INDEX\_TYPE\_NONE\_KHR}, \texttt{geometry.triangles.indexData.deviceAddress} \textbf{must} be a valid device address obtained from \texttt{vkGetBufferDeviceAddress}

- VUID\texttt{-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03808}

  For any element of \texttt{pInfos[i].pGeometries} or \texttt{pInfos[i].ppGeometries} with a \texttt{geometryType} of \texttt{VK\_GEOMETRY\_TYPE\__TRIANGLES\_KHR}, if \texttt{geometry.triangles.indexType} is not \texttt{VK\_INDEX\_TYPE\_NONE\_KHR}, if \texttt{geometry.triangles.indexData.deviceAddress} is the address of a non-sparse buffer then it \textbf{must} be bound completely and contiguously to a single \texttt{VkDeviceMemory} object

- VUID\texttt{-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03712}

  For any element of \texttt{pInfos[i].pGeometries} or \texttt{pInfos[i].ppGeometries} with a \texttt{geometryType} of \texttt{VK\_GEOMETRY\_TYPE\__TRIANGLES\_KHR}, and with \texttt{geometry.triangles.indexType} not equal to \texttt{VK\_INDEX\_TYPE\_NONE\_KHR}, \texttt{geometry.triangles.indexData.deviceAddress} \textbf{must} be aligned to the size in bytes of the type in \texttt{indexType}

- VUID\texttt{-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03810}

  For any element of \texttt{pInfos[i].pGeometries} or \texttt{pInfos[i].ppGeometries} with a \texttt{geometryType} of \texttt{VK\_GEOMETRY\_TYPE\__TRIANGLES\_KHR}, if \texttt{geometry.triangles.transformData.deviceAddress} is not \texttt{0}, it \textbf{must} be a valid device address obtained from \texttt{vkGetBufferDeviceAddress}

- VUID\texttt{-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03811}

  For any element of \texttt{pInfos[i].pGeometries} or \texttt{pInfos[i].ppGeometries} with a \texttt{geometryType} of \texttt{VK\_GEOMETRY\_TYPE\__TRIANGLES\_KHR}, if \texttt{geometry.triangles.transformData.deviceAddress} is not \texttt{0}, it \textbf{must} be aligned to 16 bytes

- VUID\texttt{-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03812}

  For any element of \texttt{pInfos[i].pGeometries} or \texttt{pInfos[i].ppGeometries} with a \texttt{geometryType} of \texttt{VK\_GEOMETRY\_TYPE\_AABBS\_KHR}, \texttt{geometry.aabbs.data.deviceAddress} \textbf{must} be a valid device address obtained from \texttt{vkGetBufferDeviceAddress}

- VUID\texttt{-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03813}

  For any element of \texttt{pInfos[i].pGeometries} or \texttt{pInfos[i].ppGeometries} with a \texttt{geometryType} of \texttt{VK\_GEOMETRY\_TYPE\_AABBS\_KHR}, \texttt{geometry.aabbs.data.deviceAddress} is the address of a non-
sparse buffer then it **must** be bound completely and contiguously to a single

**VkDeviceMemory** object

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03714
  For any element of `pInfos[i].pGeometries` or `pInfos[i].ppGeometries` with a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_AABB5s_KHR`, `geometry.aabbs.data.deviceAddress` **must** be aligned to 8 bytes

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03715
  For any element of `pInfos[i].pGeometries` or `pInfos[i].ppGeometries` with a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_INSTANCES_KHR`, if `geometry.arrayOfPointers` is `VK_FALSE`, `geometry.instances.data.deviceAddress` **must** be aligned to 16 bytes

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03716
  For any element of `pInfos[i].pGeometries` or `pInfos[i].ppGeometries` with a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_INSTANCES_KHR`, if `geometry.arrayOfPointers` is `VK_TRUE`, each element of `geometry.instances.data.deviceAddress` in device memory **must** be aligned to 16 bytes

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03813
  For any element of `pInfos[i].pGeometries` or `pInfos[i].ppGeometries` with a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_INSTANCES_KHR`, `geometry.instances.data.deviceAddress` **must** be a valid device address obtained from `vkGetBufferDeviceAddress`

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03814
  For any element of `pInfos[i].pGeometries` or `pInfos[i].ppGeometries` with a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_INSTANCES_KHR`, if `geometry.instances.data.deviceAddress` is the address of a non-sparse buffer then it **must** be bound completely and contiguously to a single

  **VkDeviceMemory** object

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03815
  For any element of `pInfos[i].pGeometries` or `pInfos[i].ppGeometries` with a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_INSTANCES_KHR`, each `VkAccelerationStructureInstanceKHR::accelerationStructureReference` value in `geometry.instances.data.deviceAddress` **must** be a valid device address containing a value obtained from `vkGetAccelerationStructureDeviceAddressKHR`

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03675
  For each `pInfos[i]`, `dstAccelerationStructure` **must** have been created with a value of `VkAccelerationStructureCreateInfoKHR::size` greater than or equal to the memory size required by the build operation, as returned by `vkGetAccelerationStructureBuildSizesKHR` with `pBuildInfo = pInfos[i]` and with each element of the `pMaxPrimitiveCounts` array greater than or equal to the equivalent `ppBuildRangeInfos[i][j].primitiveCount` values for `j` in `[0, pInfos[i].geometryCount]`

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-ppBuildRangeInfos-03676
  Each element of `ppBuildRangeInfos[i]` **must** be a valid pointer to an array of `pInfos[i].geometryCount` `VkAccelerationStructureBuildRangeInfoKHR` structures
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-commandBuffer-parameter**
  - `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle.

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-parameter**
  - `pInfos` must be a valid pointer to an array of `infoCount` valid `VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR` structures.

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-ppBuildRangeInfos-parameter**
  - `ppBuildRangeInfos` must be a valid pointer to an array of `infoCount` `VkAccelerationStructureBuildRangeInfoKHR` structures.

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-commandBuffer-recording**
  - `commandBuffer` must be in the recording state.

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-commandBuffer-cmdpool**
  - The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support compute operations.

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-renderpass**
  - This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance.

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-infoCount-arraylength**
  - `infoCount` must be greater than 0.

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized.
- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized.

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To build acceleration structures with some parameters sourced on the device call:
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure

void vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    uint32_t infoCount,
    const VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR* pInfos,
    const VkDeviceAddress* pIndirectDeviceAddresses,
    const uint32_t* pIndirectStrides,
    const uint32_t** ppMaxPrimitiveCounts);

• `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.

• `infoCount` is the number of acceleration structures to build.

• `pInfos` is a pointer to an array of `infoCount` `VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR` structures defining the geometry used to build each acceleration structure.

• `pIndirectDeviceAddresses` is a pointer to an array of `infoCount` buffer device addresses which point to `pInfos[i].geometryCount` `VkAccelerationStructureBuildRangeInfoKHR` structures defining dynamic offsets to the addresses where geometry data is stored, as defined by `pInfos[i]`.

• `pIndirectStrides` is a pointer to an array of `infoCount` byte strides between elements of `pIndirectDeviceAddresses`.

• `ppMaxPrimitiveCounts` is a pointer to an array of `infoCount` pointers to arrays of `pInfos[i].geometryCount` values indicating the maximum number of primitives that will be built by this command for each geometry.

Accesses to acceleration structures, scratch buffers, vertex buffers, index buffers, and instance buffers must be synchronized as with `vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR`.

Accesses to any element of `pIndirectDeviceAddresses` **must** be synchronized with the `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR` pipeline stage and an access type of `VK_ACCESS_INDIRECT_COMMAND_READ_BIT`.

Chapter 32. Acceleration Structures | 1281
Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-mode-04628**
  The `mode` member of each element of `pInfos` must be a valid `VkBuildAccelerationStructureModeKHR` value.

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-srcAccelerationStructure-04629**
  If the `srcAccelerationStructure` member of any element of `pInfos` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, the `srcAccelerationStructure` member must be a valid `VkAccelerationStructureKHR` handle.

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-04630**
  For each element of `pInfos`, if its `mode` member is `VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR`, its `srcAccelerationStructure` member must not be `VK_NULL_HANDLE`.

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03403**
  The `srcAccelerationStructure` member of any element of `pInfos` must not be the same acceleration structure as the `dstAccelerationStructure` member of any other element of `pInfos`.

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-dstAccelerationStructure-03698**
  The `dstAccelerationStructure` member of any element of `pInfos` must not be the same acceleration structure as the `dstAccelerationStructure` member of any other element of `pInfos`.

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-dstAccelerationStructure-03800**
  The `dstAccelerationStructure` member of any element of `pInfos` must be a valid `VkAccelerationStructureKHR` handle.

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03699**
  For each element of `pInfos`, if its `type` member is `VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_TOP_LEVEL_KHR`, its `dstAccelerationStructure` member must have been created with a value of `VkAccelerationStructureCreateInfoKHR::type` equal to either `VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_TOP_LEVEL_KHR` or `VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_GENERIC_KHR`.

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03700**
  For each element of `pInfos`, if its `type` member is `VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BOTTOM_LEVEL_KHR`, its `dstAccelerationStructure` member must have been created with a value of `VkAccelerationStructureCreateInfoKHR::type` equal to either `VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BOTTOM_LEVEL_KHR` or `VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_GENERIC_KHR`.

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03663**
  For each element of `pInfos`, if its `mode` member is `VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR`, inactive primitives in its `srcAccelerationStructure` member must not be made active.

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03664**
  For each element of `pInfos`, if its `mode` member is `VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR`, active primitives in its `srcAccelerationStructure` member must not be made inactive.
The `dstAccelerationStructure` member of any element of `pInfos` must not be referenced by the `geometry.instances.data` member of any element of `pGeometries` or `ppGeometries` with a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_INSTANCES_KHR` in any other element of `pInfos`.

The range of memory backing the `dstAccelerationStructure` member of any element of `pInfos` that is accessed by this command must not overlap the memory backing the `srcAccelerationStructure` member of any other element of `pInfos` with a `mode` equal to `VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR`, which is accessed by this command.

The range of memory backing the `dstAccelerationStructure` member of any element of `pInfos` that is accessed by this command must not overlap the memory backing the `scratchData` member of any element of `pInfos` (including the same element), which is accessed by this command.

The range of memory backing the `scratchData` member of any element of `pInfos` that is accessed by this command must not overlap the memory backing the `scratchData` member of any other element of `pInfos`, which is accessed by this command.

The range of memory backing the `scratchData` member of any element of `pInfos` that is accessed by this command must not overlap the memory backing any acceleration structure referenced by the `geometry.instances.data` member of any element of `pGeometries` or `ppGeometries` with a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_INSTANCES_KHR` in any other element of `pInfos`, which is accessed by this command.

For each element of `pInfos`, if its `mode` member is `VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR`, its `srcAccelerationStructure` member must have previously been constructed with `VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_ALLOW_UPDATE_BIT_KHR` set in `VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR::flags` in the build.

For each element of `pInfos`, if its `mode` member is `VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR`, its `srcAccelerationStructure` and `dstAccelerationStructure` members must either be the same...
VkAccelerationStructureKHR, or not have any memory aliasing

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03758
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, its geometryCount member must have the same value which was specified when srcAccelerationStructure was last built

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03759
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, its flags member must have the same value which was specified when srcAccelerationStructure was last built

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03760
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, its type member must have the same value which was specified when srcAccelerationStructure was last built

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03761
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, then for each VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR structure referred to by its pGeometries or ppGeometries members, its geometryType member must have the same value which was specified when srcAccelerationStructure was last built

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03762
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, then for each VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR structure referred to by its pGeometries or ppGeometries members, its flags member must have the same value which was specified when srcAccelerationStructure was last built

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03763
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, then for each VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR structure referred to by its pGeometries or ppGeometries members, if geometryType is VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR, its geometry.triangles.vertexFormat member must have the same value which was specified when srcAccelerationStructure was last built

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03764
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, then for each VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR structure referred to by its pGeometries or ppGeometries members, if geometryType is VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR, its geometry.triangles.maxVertex member must have the same value which was specified when srcAccelerationStructure was last built

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03765
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, then for each VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR structure referred to by its pGeometries or ppGeometries members, if geometryType is VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR, its geometry.triangles.indexType member must have the same value which was specified
when srcAccelerationStructure was last built

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03766
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is
  VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, then for each
  VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR structure referred to by its
  pGeometries or ppGeometries members, if geometryType is
  VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR, if its
gallery.triangles.transformData address was NULL when srcAccelerationStructure was last built, then it must be NULL

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03767
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is
  VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, then for each
  VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR structure referred to by its
  pGeometries or ppGeometries members, if geometryType is
  VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR, if its
gallery.triangles.transformData address was not NULL when srcAccelerationStructure was last built, then it must not be NULL

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03768
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is
  VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, then for each
  VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR structure referred to by its
  pGeometries or ppGeometries members, if geometryType is
  VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR, and
gallery.triangles.indexType is not VK_INDEX_TYPE_NONE_KHR, then the value of each index
referenced must be the same as the corresponding index value when srcAccelerationStructure was last built

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-primitiveCount-03769
  For each VkAccelerationStructureBuildRangeInfoKHR referenced by this command, its
  primitiveCount member must have the same value which was specified when
  srcAccelerationStructure was last built

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-firstVertex-03770
  For each VkAccelerationStructureBuildRangeInfoKHR referenced by this command, if the
  corresponding geometry uses indices, its firstVertex member must have the same value
  which was specified when srcAccelerationStructure was last built

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03801
  For each element of pInfos[i].pGeometries or pInfos[i].ppGeometries with a geometryType of
  VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_INSTANCES_KHR, the corresponding ppMaxPrimitiveCounts[i][j] must be less
  than or equal to VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructurePropertiesKHR::maxInstanceCount

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03707
  For each element of pInfos, the buffer used to create its
dstAccelerationStructure member must be bound to device memory

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03708
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is
  VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR the buffer used to create its
  srcAccelerationStructure member must be bound to device memory

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03709
  For each element of pInfos, the buffer used to create each acceleration structure
referenced by the `geometry.instances.data` member of any element of `pGeometries` or `ppGeometries` with a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_INSTANCES_KHR` must be bound to device memory.

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03671**
  If `pInfos[i].mode` is `VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_BUILD_KHR`, all addresses between `pInfos[i].scratchData.deviceAddress` and `pInfos[i].scratchData.deviceAddress + N - 1` must be in the buffer device address range of the same buffer, where `N` is given by the `buildScratchSize` member of the `VkAccelerationStructureBuildSizesInfoKHR` structure returned from a call to `vkGetAccelerationStructureBuildSizesKHR` with an identical `VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR` structure and primitive count.

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03672**
  If `pInfos[i].mode` is `VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR`, all addresses between `pInfos[i].scratchData.deviceAddress` and `pInfos[i].scratchData.deviceAddress + N - 1` must be in the buffer device address range of the same buffer, where `N` is given by the `updateScratchSize` member of the `VkAccelerationStructureBuildSizesInfoKHR` structure returned from a call to `vkGetAccelerationStructureBuildSizesKHR` with an identical `VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR` structure and primitive count.

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-geometry-03673**
  The buffers from which the buffer device addresses for all of the `geometry.triangles.vertexData`, `geometry.triangles.indexData`, `geometry.triangles.transformData`, `geometry.aabbs.data`, and `geometry.instances.data` members of all `pInfos[i].pGeometries` and `pInfos[i].ppGeometries` are queried must have been created with the `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_INPUT_READ_ONLY_BIT_KHR` usage flag.

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03674**
  The buffer from which the buffer device address `pInfos[i].scratchData.deviceAddress` is queried must have been created with `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_STORAGE_BUFFER_BIT` usage flag.

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03802**
  For each element of `pInfos`, its `scratchData.deviceAddress` member must be a valid device address obtained from `vkGetBufferDeviceAddress`.

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03803**
  For each element of `pInfos`, if `scratchData.deviceAddress` is the address of a non-sparse buffer then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object.

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03710**
  For each element of `pInfos`, its `scratchData.deviceAddress` member must be a multiple of `VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructurePropertiesKHR::minAccelerationStructureScratchOffsetAlignment`.

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03804**
  For any element of `pInfos[i].pGeometries` or `pInfos[i].ppGeometries` with a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR`, `geometry.triangles.vertexData.deviceAddress` must be a valid device address obtained from `vkGetBufferDeviceAddress`.

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03805**
  For any element of `pInfos[i].pGeometries` or `pInfos[i].ppGeometries` with a `geometryType` of...
**VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR**, if `geometry.triangles.vertexData.deviceAddress` is the address of a non-sparse buffer then it **must** be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03711**
  For any element of `pInfos[i].pGeometries` or `pInfos[i].ppGeometries` with a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR`, `geometry.triangles.vertexData.deviceAddress` **must** be aligned to the size in bytes of the smallest component of the format in `vertexFormat`

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03806**
  For any element of `pInfos[i].pGeometries` or `pInfos[i].ppGeometries` with a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR`, if `geometry.triangles.indexType` is not `VK_INDEX_TYPE_NONE_KHR`, `geometry.triangles.indexData.deviceAddress` **must** be a valid device address obtained from `vkGetBufferDeviceAddress`

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03807**
  For any element of `pInfos[i].pGeometries` or `pInfos[i].ppGeometries` with a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR`, if `geometry.triangles.indexType` is not `VK_INDEX_TYPE_NONE_KHR`, if `geometry.triangles.indexData.deviceAddress` is the address of a non-sparse buffer then it **must** be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03712**
  For any element of `pInfos[i].pGeometries` or `pInfos[i].ppGeometries` with a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR`, and with `geometry.triangles.indexType` not equal to `VK_INDEX_TYPE_NONE_KHR`, `geometry.triangles.indexData.deviceAddress` **must** be aligned to the size in bytes of the type in `indexType`

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03808**
  For any element of `pInfos[i].pGeometries` or `pInfos[i].ppGeometries` with a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR`, if `geometry.triangles.transformData.deviceAddress` is not 0, it **must** be a valid device address obtained from `vkGetBufferDeviceAddress`

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03809**
  For any element of `pInfos[i].pGeometries` or `pInfos[i].ppGeometries` with a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR`, if `geometry.triangles.transformData.deviceAddress` is the address of a non-sparse buffer then it **must** be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03810**
  For any element of `pInfos[i].pGeometries` or `pInfos[i].ppGeometries` with a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR`, if `geometry.triangles.transformData.deviceAddress` is not 0, it **must** be aligned to 16 bytes

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03811**
  For any element of `pInfos[i].pGeometries` or `pInfos[i].ppGeometries` with a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_AABBS_KHR`, `geometry.aabbs.data.deviceAddress` **must** be a valid device address obtained from `vkGetBufferDeviceAddress`

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03812**
  For any element of `pInfos[i].pGeometries` or `pInfos[i].ppGeometries` with a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_AABBS_KHR`, if `geometry.aabbs.data.deviceAddress` is the address of a non-sparse buffer then it **must** be bound completely and contiguously to a single
For any element of `pInfos[i].pGeometries` or `pInfos[i].ppGeometries` with a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_AABBS_KHR`, `geometry.aabbs.data.deviceAddress` must be aligned to 8 bytes.

For any element of `pInfos[i].pGeometries` or `pInfos[i].ppGeometries` with a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_INSTANCES_KHR`, if `geometry.arrayOfPointers` is `VK_FALSE`, `geometry.instances.data.deviceAddress` must be aligned to 16 bytes.

For any element of `pInfos[i].pGeometries` or `pInfos[i].ppGeometries` with a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_INSTANCES_KHR`, if `geometry.arrayOfPointers` is `VK_TRUE`, each element of `geometry.instances.data.deviceAddress` in device memory must be aligned to 16 bytes.

For any element of `pInfos[i].pGeometries` or `pInfos[i].ppGeometries` with a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_INSTANCES_KHR`, if `geometry.instances.data.deviceAddress` is the address of a non-sparse buffer then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object.

For any element of `pIndirectDeviceAddresses`, if the buffer from which it was queried is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object.

For any element of `pIndirectDeviceAddresses`, the buffer from which it was queried must have been created with the `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_INDIRECT_BUFFER_BIT` bit set.
Each element of \texttt{pIndirectDeviceAddresses} must be a multiple of 4

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pIndirectStrides-03787
  Each element of \texttt{pIndirectStrides} must be a multiple of 4

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-commandBuffer-03649
  \texttt{commandBuffer} must not be a protected command buffer

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-accelerationStructureIndirectBuild-03650
  The \texttt{VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructureFeaturesKHR::accelerationStructureIndirectBuild} feature must be enabled

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pIndirectDeviceAddresses-03651
  Each \texttt{VkAccelerationStructureBuildRangeInfoKHR} structure referenced by any element of \texttt{pIndirectDeviceAddresses} must be a valid \texttt{VkAccelerationStructureBuildRangeInfoKHR} structure

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-03652
  \texttt{pInfos}[i].\texttt{dstAccelerationStructure} must have been created with a value of \texttt{VkAccelerationStructureCreateInfoKHR::size} greater than or equal to the memory size required by the build operation, as returned by \texttt{vkGetAccelerationStructureBuildSizesKHR} with \texttt{pBuildInfo = pInfos[i]} and \texttt{pMaxPrimitiveCounts = ppMaxPrimitiveCounts[i]}

- VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-ppMaxPrimitiveCounts-03653
  Each \texttt{ppMaxPrimitiveCounts[i][j]} must be greater than or equal to the the \texttt{primitiveCount} value specified by the \texttt{VkAccelerationStructureBuildRangeInfoKHR} structure located at \texttt{pIndirectDeviceAddresses[i] + (j \times pIndirectStrides[i])}
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-commandBuffer-parameter**
  
  `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pInfos-parameter**
  
  `pInfos` must be a valid pointer to an array of `infoCount` valid `VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR` structures

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pIndirectDeviceAddresses-parameter**
  
  `pIndirectDeviceAddresses` must be a valid pointer to an array of `infoCount` `VkDeviceAddress` values

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-pIndirectStrides-parameter**
  
  `pIndirectStrides` must be a valid pointer to an array of `infoCount` `uint32_t` values

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-ppMaxPrimitiveCounts-parameter**
  
  `ppMaxPrimitiveCounts` must be a valid pointer to an array of `infoCount` `uint32_t` values

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-commandBuffer-recording**
  
  `commandBuffer` must be in the recording state

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-commandBuffer-cmdpool**
  
  The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support compute operations

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-renderpass**
  
  This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance

- **VUID-vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR-infoCount-arraylength**
  
  `infoCount` must be greater than 0

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized

- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The `VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkAccelerationStructureTypeKHR type;
    VkBuildAccelerationStructureFlagsKHR flags;
    VkBuildAccelerationStructureModeKHR mode;
    VkAccelerationStructureKHR srcAccelerationStructure;
    VkAccelerationStructureKHR dstAccelerationStructure;
    uint32_t geometryCount;
    const VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR* pGeometries;
    const VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR* const* ppGeometries;
    VkDeviceOrHostAddressKHR scratchData;
} VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR;

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **type** is a **VkAccelerationStructureTypeKHR** value specifying the type of acceleration structure being built.
- **flags** is a bitmask of **VkBuildAccelerationStructureFlagBitsKHR** specifying additional parameters of the acceleration structure.
- **mode** is a **VkBuildAccelerationStructureModeKHR** value specifying the type of operation to perform.
- **srcAccelerationStructure** is a pointer to an existing acceleration structure that is to be used to update the **dst** acceleration structure when **mode** is **VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR**.
- **dstAccelerationStructure** is a pointer to the target acceleration structure for the build.
- **geometryCount** specifies the number of geometries that will be built into **dstAccelerationStructure**.
- **pGeometries** is a pointer to an array of **VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR** structures.
- **ppGeometries** is a pointer to an array of pointers to **VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR** structures.
- **scratchData** is the device or host address to memory that will be used as scratch memory for the build.

Only one of **pGeometries** or **ppGeometries** can be a valid pointer, the other must be **NULL**. Each element of the non-NULL array describes the data used to build each acceleration structure geometry.

The index of each element of the **pGeometries** or **ppGeometries** members of **VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR** is used as the **geometry index** during ray traversal. The geometry index is available in ray shaders via the **RayGeometryIndexKHR** built-in, and is used to determine hit and intersection shaders executed during traversal. The geometry index is available to ray queries via the **OpRayQueryGetIntersectionGeometryIndexKHR** instruction.
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR-type-03654
  
  **type** must not be VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_GENERIC_KHR

- VUID-VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR-pGeometries-03788
  
  Only one of *pGeometries* or *ppGeometries* can be a valid pointer, the other must be NULL

- VUID-VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR-type-03789
  
  If *type* is VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_TOP_LEVEL_KHR, the *geometryType* member of elements of either *pGeometries* or *ppGeometries* must be VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_INSTANCES_KHR

- VUID-VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR-type-03790
  
  If *type* is VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_TOP_LEVEL_KHR, *geometryCount* must be 1

- VUID-VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR-type-03791
  
  If *type* is VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BOTTOM_LEVEL_KHR the *geometryType* member of elements of either *pGeometries* or *ppGeometries* must not be VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_INSTANCES_KHR

- VUID-VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR-type-03792
  
  If *type* is VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BOTTOM_LEVEL_KHR then the *geometryType* member of each geometry in either *pGeometries* or *ppGeometries* must be the same

- VUID-VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR-type-03793
  
  If *type* is VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BOTTOM_LEVEL_KHR then *geometryCount* must be less than or equal to *VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructurePropertiesKHR::*maxGeometryCount

- VUID-VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR-type-03794
  
  If *type* is VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BOTTOM_LEVEL_KHR and the *geometryType* member of either *pGeometries* or *ppGeometries* is VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_AABBs_KHR, the total number of AABBs in all geometries must be less than or equal to *VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructurePropertiesKHR::*maxPrimitiveCount

- VUID-VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR-type-03795
  
  If *type* is VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BOTTOM_LEVEL_KHR and the *geometryType* member of either *pGeometries* or *ppGeometries* is VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR, the total number of triangles in all geometries must be less than or equal to *VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructurePropertiesKHR::*maxPrimitiveCount

- VUID-VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR-flags-03796
  
  If *flags* has the VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_PREFER_FAST_TRACE_BIT_KHR bit set, then it must not have the VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_PREFER_FAST_BUILD_BIT_KHR bit set
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR-sType-sType**
  - `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_GEOMETRY_INFO_KHR`
- **VUID-VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR-pNext-pNext**
  - `pNext` must be `NULL`
- **VUID-VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR-type-parameter**
  - `type` must be a valid `VkAccelerationStructureTypeKHR` value
- **VUID-VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR-flags-parameter**
  - `flags` must be a valid combination of `VkBuildAccelerationStructureFlagBitsKHR` values
- **VUID-VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR-pGeometries-parameter**
  - If `geometryCount` is not 0, and `pGeometries` is not NULL, `pGeometries` must be a valid pointer to an array of `geometryCount` valid `VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR` structures
- **VUID-VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR-ppGeometries-parameter**
  - If `geometryCount` is not 0, and `ppGeometries` is not NULL, `ppGeometries` must be a valid pointer to an array of `geometryCount` valid pointers to valid `VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR` structures
- **VUID-VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR-commonparent**
  - Both of `dstAccelerationStructure`, and `srcAccelerationStructure` that are valid handles of non-ignored parameters must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same `VkDevice`

The `VkBuildAccelerationStructureModeKHR` enumeration is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
typedef enum VkBuildAccelerationStructureModeKHR {
    VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_BUILD_KHR = 0,
    VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR = 1,
} VkBuildAccelerationStructureModeKHR;
```

- **`VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_BUILD_KHR`** specifies that the destination acceleration structure will be built using the specified geometries.
- **`VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR`** specifies that the destination acceleration structure will be built using data in a source acceleration structure, updated by the specified geometries.

The `VkDeviceOrHostAddressKHR` union is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
typedef union VkDeviceOrHostAddressKHR {
    VkDeviceAddress deviceAddress;
    void* hostAddress;
} VkDeviceOrHostAddressKHR;
```
• `deviceAddress` is a buffer device address as returned by the `vkGetBufferDeviceAddressKHR` command.

• `hostAddress` is a host memory address.

The `VkDeviceOrHostAddressConstKHR` union is defined as:

```plaintext
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
typedef union VkDeviceOrHostAddressConstKHR {
    VkDeviceAddress deviceAddress;
    const void* hostAddress;
} VkDeviceOrHostAddressConstKHR;
```

• `deviceAddress` is a buffer device address as returned by the `vkGetBufferDeviceAddressKHR` command.

• `hostAddress` is a const host memory address.

The `VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR` structure is defined as:

```plaintext
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
typedef struct VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkGeometryTypeKHR geometryType;
    VkAccelerationStructureGeometryDataKHR geometry;
    VkGeometryFlagsKHR flags;
} VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR;
```

• `sType` is the type of this structure.

• `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.

• `geometryType` describes which type of geometry this `VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR` refers to.

• `geometry` is a `VkAccelerationStructureGeometryDataKHR` union describing the geometry data for the relevant geometry type.

• `flags` is a bitmask of `VkGeometryFlagBitsKHR` values describing additional properties of how the geometry should be built.
### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR-sType-sType**
  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_GEOMETRY_KHR`.

- **VUID-VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR-pNext-pNext**
  
  `pNext` must be `NULL`.

- **VUID-VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR-geometryType-parameter**
  
  `geometryType` must be a valid `VkGeometryTypeKHR` value.

- **VUID-VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR-triangles-parameter**
  
  If `geometryType` is `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR`, the `triangles` member of `geometry` must be a valid `VkAccelerationStructureGeometryTrianglesDataKHR` structure.

- **VUID-VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR-aabbs-parameter**
  
  If `geometryType` is `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_AABBS_KHR`, the `aabbs` member of `geometry` must be a valid `VkAccelerationStructureGeometryAabbsDataKHR` structure.

- **VUID-VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR-instances-parameter**
  
  If `geometryType` is `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_INSTANCES_KHR`, the `instances` member of `geometry` must be a valid `VkAccelerationStructureGeometryInstancesDataKHR` structure.

- **VUID-VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR-flags-parameter**
  
  `flags` must be a valid combination of `VkGeometryFlagBitsKHR` values.

The `VkAccelerationStructureGeometryDataKHR` union is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
typedef union VkAccelerationStructureGeometryDataKHR {
    VkAccelerationStructureGeometryTrianglesDataKHR triangles;
    VkAccelerationStructureGeometryAabbsDataKHR aabbs;
    VkAccelerationStructureGeometryInstancesDataKHR instances;
} VkAccelerationStructureGeometryDataKHR;
```

- `triangles` is a `VkAccelerationStructureGeometryTrianglesDataKHR` structure.
- `aabbs` is a `VkAccelerationStructureGeometryAabbsDataKHR` structure.
- `instances` is a `VkAccelerationStructureGeometryInstancesDataKHR` structure.

The `VkAccelerationStructureGeometryTrianglesDataKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
```
typedef struct VkAccelerationStructureGeometryTrianglesDataKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkFormat vertexFormat;
    VkDeviceOrHostAddressConstKHR vertexData;
    VkDeviceSize vertexStride;
    uint32_t maxVertex;
    VkIndexType indexType;
   VkDeviceOrHostAddressConstKHR indexData;
    VkDeviceOrHostAddressConstKHR transformData;
} VkAccelerationStructureGeometryTrianglesDataKHR;

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **vertexFormat** is the **VkFormat** of each vertex element.
- **vertexData** is a device or host address to memory containing vertex data for this geometry.
- **maxVertex** is the highest index of a vertex that will be addressed by a build command using this structure.
- **vertexStride** is the stride in bytes between each vertex.
- **indexType** is the **VkIndexType** of each index element.
- **indexData** is a device or host address to memory containing index data for this geometry.
- **transformData** is a device or host address to memory containing an optional reference to a **VkTransformMatrixKHR** structure defining a transformation that should be applied to vertices in this geometry.

**Note**

Unlike the stride for vertex buffers in **VkVertexInputBindingDescription** for graphics pipelines which must not exceed **maxVertexInputBindingStride, vertexStride** for acceleration structure geometry is instead restricted to being a 32-bit value.
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkAccelerationStructureGeometryTrianglesDataKHR-vertexStride-03735
  vertexStride must be a multiple of the size in bytes of the smallest component of vertexFormat.

- VUID-VkAccelerationStructureGeometryTrianglesDataKHR-vertexStride-03819
  vertexStride must be less than or equal to $2^{32}-1$.

- VUID-VkAccelerationStructureGeometryTrianglesDataKHR-vertexFormat-03797
  vertexFormat must support the VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_VERTEX_BUFFER_BIT_KHR in VkFormatProperties::bufferFeatures as returned by vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties2.

- VUID-VkAccelerationStructureGeometryTrianglesDataKHR-indexType-03798
  indexType must be VK_INDEX_TYPE_UINT16, VK_INDEX_TYPE_UINT32, or VK_INDEX_TYPE_NONE_KHR.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkAccelerationStructureGeometryTrianglesDataKHR-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_GEOMETRY_TRIANGLES_DATA_KHR.

- VUID-VkAccelerationStructureGeometryTrianglesDataKHR-pNext-pNext
  pNext must be NULL.

- VUID-VkAccelerationStructureGeometryTrianglesDataKHR-vertexFormat-parameter
  vertexFormat must be a valid VkFormat value.

- VUID-VkAccelerationStructureGeometryTrianglesDataKHR-indexType-parameter
  indexType must be a valid VkIndexType value.

The VkTransformMatrixKHR structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
typedef struct VkTransformMatrixKHR {
    float   matrix[3][4];
} VkTransformMatrixKHR;
```

- matrix is a 3x4 row-major affine transformation matrix.

Valid Usage

- VUID-VkTransformMatrixKHR-matrix-03799
  The first three columns of matrix must define an invertible 3x3 matrix.

The VkAccelerationStructureGeometryAabbsDataKHR structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkAccelerationStructureGeometryAabbsDataKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkDeviceOrHostAddressConstKHR data;
    VkDeviceSize stride;
} VkAccelerationStructureGeometryAabbsDataKHR;

• **sType** is the type of this structure.
• **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• **data** is a device or host address to memory containing **VkAabbPositionsKHR** structures containing position data for each axis-aligned bounding box in the geometry.
• **stride** is the stride in bytes between each entry in **data**. The stride **must** be a multiple of 8.

**Valid Usage**

- VUID-VkAccelerationStructureGeometryAabbsDataKHR-stride-03545
  stride **must** be a multiple of 8
- VUID-VkAccelerationStructureGeometryAabbsDataKHR-stride-03820
  stride **must** be less than or equal to $2^{32}-1$

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-VkAccelerationStructureGeometryAabbsDataKHR-sType-sType
  sType **must** be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_GEOMETRY_AABBS_DATA_KHR**
- VUID-VkAccelerationStructureGeometryAabbsDataKHR-pNext-pNext
  pNext **must** be NULL

The **VkAabbPositionsKHR** structure is defined as:

// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
typedef struct VkAabbPositionsKHR {
    float minX;
    float minY;
    float minZ;
    float maxX;
    float maxY;
    float maxZ;
} VkAabbPositionsKHR;

• **minX** is the x position of one opposing corner of a bounding box.
• **minY** is the y position of one opposing corner of a bounding box.
• \textbf{minZ} is the z position of one opposing corner of a bounding box.
• \textbf{maxX} is the x position of the other opposing corner of a bounding box.
• \textbf{maxY} is the y position of the other opposing corner of a bounding box.
• \textbf{maxZ} is the z position of the other opposing corner of a bounding box.

### Valid Usage

- VUID-VkAabbPositionsKHR-minX-03546
  \textbf{minX} must be less than or equal to \textbf{maxX}

- VUID-VkAabbPositionsKHR-minY-03547
  \textbf{minY} must be less than or equal to \textbf{maxY}

- VUID-VkAabbPositionsKHR-minZ-03548
  \textbf{minZ} must be less than or equal to \textbf{maxZ}

The \texttt{VkAccelerationStructureGeometryInstancesDataKHR} structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
typedef struct VkAccelerationStructureGeometryInstancesDataKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkBool32 arrayOfPointers;
    VkDeviceOrHostAddressConstKHR data;
} VkAccelerationStructureGeometryInstancesDataKHR;
```

• \texttt{sType} is the type of this structure.
• \texttt{pNext} is \texttt{NULL} or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• \texttt{arrayOfPointers} specifies whether \texttt{data} is used as an array of addresses or just an array.
• \texttt{data} is either the address of an array of device or host addresses referencing individual \texttt{VkAccelerationStructureInstanceKHR} structures if \texttt{arrayOfPointers} is \texttt{VK_TRUE}, or the address of an array of \texttt{VkAccelerationStructureInstanceKHR} structures. Addresses and \texttt{VkAccelerationStructureInstanceKHR} structures are tightly packed.
\texttt{VkAccelerationStructureMotionInstanceNV} have a stride of 160 bytes.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkAccelerationStructureGeometryInstancesDataKHR-sType-sType
  \texttt{sType} must be \texttt{VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_GEOMETRY_INSTANCES_DATA_KHR}

- VUID-VkAccelerationStructureGeometryInstancesDataKHR-pNext-pNext
  \texttt{pNext} must be \texttt{NULL}

\textit{Acceleration structure instances can} be built into top-level acceleration structures. Each acceleration structure instance is a separate entry in the top-level acceleration structure which
includes all the geometry of a bottom-level acceleration structure at a transformed location. Multiple instances can point to the same bottom level acceleration structure.

An acceleration structure instance is defined by the structure:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
typedef struct VkAccelerationStructureInstanceKHR {
    VkTransformMatrixKHR transform;
    uint32_t instanceCustomIndex:24;
    uint32_t mask:8;
    uint32_t instanceShaderBindingTableRecordOffset:24;
    VkGeometryInstanceFlagsKHR flags:8;
    uint64_t accelerationStructureReference;
} VkAccelerationStructureInstanceKHR;
```

- **transform** is a `VkTransformMatrixKHR` structure describing a transformation to be applied to the acceleration structure.
- **instanceCustomIndex** is a 24-bit user-specified index value accessible to ray shaders in the `InstanceCustomIndexKHR` built-in.
- **mask** is an 8-bit visibility mask for the geometry. The instance may only be hit if `rayMask & instance.mask != 0`
- **instanceShaderBindingTableRecordOffset** is a 24-bit offset used in calculating the hit shader binding table index.
- **flags** is an 8-bit mask of `VkGeometryInstanceFlagBitsKHR` values to apply to this instance.
- **accelerationStructureReference** is either:
  - a device address containing the value obtained from `vkGetAccelerationStructureDeviceAddressKHR` (used by device operations which reference acceleration structures) or,
  - a `VkAccelerationStructureKHR` object (used by host operations which reference acceleration structures).

The C language specification does not define the ordering of bit-fields, but in practice, this struct produces the correct layout with existing compilers. The intended bit pattern is for the following:

- **instanceCustomIndex** and **mask** occupy the same memory as if a single `uint32_t` was specified in their place
  - **instanceCustomIndex** occupies the 24 least significant bits of that memory
  - **mask** occupies the 8 most significant bits of that memory
- **instanceShaderBindingTableRecordOffset** and **flags** occupy the same memory as if a single `uint32_t` was specified in their place
  - **instanceShaderBindingTableRecordOffset** occupies the 24 least significant bits of that memory
  - **flags** occupies the 8 most significant bits of that memory

If a compiler produces code that diverges from that pattern, applications must employ another
method to set values according to the correct bit pattern.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkAccelerationStructureInstanceKHR-flags-parameter**
  
  `flags` must be a valid combination of `VkGeometryInstanceFlagBitsKHR` values

Possible values of `flags` in the instance modifying the behavior of that instance are:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
typedef enum VkGeometryInstanceFlagBitsKHR {
    VK_GEOMETRY_INSTANCE_TRIANGLE_FACING_CULL_DISABLE_BIT_KHR = 0x00000001,
    VK_GEOMETRY_INSTANCE_TRIANGLE_FLIP_FACING_BIT_KHR = 0x00000002,
    VK_GEOMETRY_INSTANCE_FORCE_OPAQUE_BIT_KHR = 0x00000004,
    VK_GEOMETRY_INSTANCE_FORCE_NO_OPAQUE_BIT_KHR = 0x00000008,
    VK_GEOMETRY_INSTANCE_TRIANGLE_FRONT_COUNTERCLOCKWISE_BIT_KHR =
        VK_GEOMETRY_INSTANCE_TRIANGLE_FLIP_FACING_BIT_KHR,
} VkGeometryInstanceFlagBitsKHR;
```

- **VK_GEOMETRY_INSTANCE_TRIANGLE_FACING_CULL_DISABLE_BIT_KHR** disables face culling for this instance.

- **VK_GEOMETRY_INSTANCE_TRIANGLE_FLIP_FACING_BIT_KHR** indicates that the facing determination for geometry in this instance is inverted. Because the facing is determined in object space, an instance transform does not change the winding, but a geometry transform does.

- **VK_GEOMETRY_INSTANCE_FORCE_OPAQUE_BIT_KHR** causes this instance to act as though `VK_GEOMETRY_OPAQUE_BIT_KHR` were specified on all geometries referenced by this instance. This behavior can be overridden by the SPIR-V `NoOpaqueKHR` ray flag.

- **VK_GEOMETRY_INSTANCE_FORCE_NO_OPAQUE_BIT_KHR** causes this instance to act as though `VK_GEOMETRY_OPAQUE_BIT_KHR` were not specified on all geometries referenced by this instance. This behavior can be overridden by the SPIR-V `OpaqueKHR` ray flag.

**VK_GEOMETRY_INSTANCE_FORCE_NO_OPAQUE_BIT_KHR** and **VK_GEOMETRY_INSTANCE_FORCE_OPAQUE_BIT_KHR** must not be used in the same flag.

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
typedef VkFlags VkGeometryInstanceFlagsKHR;
```

`VkGeometryInstanceFlagsKHR` is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more `VkGeometryInstanceFlagBitsKHR`.

`VkAccelerationStructureBuildRangeInfoKHR` is defined as:
typedef struct VkAccelerationStructureBuildRangeInfoKHR {
    uint32_t primitiveCount;
    uint32_t primitiveOffset;
    uint32_t firstVertex;
    uint32_t transformOffset;
} VkAccelerationStructureBuildRangeInfoKHR;

• primitiveCount defines the number of primitives for a corresponding acceleration structure geometry.

• primitiveOffset defines an offset in bytes into the memory where primitive data is defined.

• firstVertex is the index of the first vertex to build from for triangle geometry.

• transformOffset defines an offset in bytes into the memory where a transform matrix is defined.

The primitive count and primitive offset are interpreted differently depending on the VkGeometryTypeKHR used:

• For geometries of type VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR, primitiveCount is the number of triangles to be built, where each triangle is treated as 3 vertices.
  ◦ If the geometry uses indices, primitiveCount × 3 indices are consumed from VkAccelerationStructureGeometryTrianglesDataKHR::indexData, starting at an offset of primitiveOffset. The value of firstVertex is added to the index values before fetching vertices.
  ◦ If the geometry does not use indices, primitiveCount × 3 vertices are consumed from VkAccelerationStructureGeometryTrianglesDataKHR::vertexData, starting at an offset of primitiveOffset + VkAccelerationStructureGeometryTrianglesDataKHR::vertexStride × firstVertex.
  ◦ If VkAccelerationStructureGeometryTrianglesDataKHR::transformData is not NULL, a single VkTransformMatrixKHR structure is consumed from VkAccelerationStructureGeometryTrianglesDataKHR::transformData, at an offset of transformOffset. This transformation matrix is used by all triangles.

• For geometries of type VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_AABBS_KHR, primitiveCount is the number of axis-aligned bounding boxes. primitiveCount VkAabbPositionsKHR structures are consumed from VkAccelerationStructureGeometryAabbsDataKHR::data, starting at an offset of primitiveOffset.

• For geometries of type VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_INSTANCES_KHR, primitiveCount is the number of acceleration structures. primitiveCount VkAccelerationStructureInstanceKHR structures are consumed from VkAccelerationStructureGeometryInstancesDataKHR::data, starting at an offset of primitiveOffset.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkAccelerationStructureBuildRangeInfoKHR-primitiveOffset-03656**
  For geometries of type `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR`, if the geometry uses indices, the offset `primitiveOffset` from `VkAccelerationStructureGeometryTrianglesDataKHR::indexData` must be a multiple of the element size of `VkAccelerationStructureGeometryTrianglesDataKHR::indexType`

- **VUID-VkAccelerationStructureBuildRangeInfoKHR-primitiveOffset-03657**
  For geometries of type `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR`, if the geometry does not use indices, the offset `primitiveOffset` from `VkAccelerationStructureGeometryTrianglesDataKHR::vertexData` must be a multiple of the component size of `VkAccelerationStructureGeometryTrianglesDataKHR::vertexFormat`

- **VUID-VkAccelerationStructureBuildRangeInfoKHR-transformOffset-03658**
  For geometries of type `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR`, the offset `transformOffset` from `VkAccelerationStructureGeometryTrianglesDataKHR::transformData` must be a multiple of 16

- **VUID-VkAccelerationStructureBuildRangeInfoKHR-primitiveOffset-03659**
  For geometries of type `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_AABBS_KHR`, the offset `primitiveOffset` from `VkAccelerationStructureGeometryAabbsDataKHR::data` must be a multiple of 8

- **VUID-VkAccelerationStructureBuildRangeInfoKHR-primitiveOffset-03660**
  For geometries of type `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_INSTANCES_KHR`, the offset `primitiveOffset` from `VkAccelerationStructureGeometryInstancesDataKHR::data` must be a multiple of 16

### 32.1.7. Copying Acceleration Structures

An additional command exists for copying acceleration structures without updating their contents. The acceleration structure object can be compacted in order to improve performance. Before copying, an application must query the size of the resulting acceleration structure.

To query acceleration structure size parameters call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
void vkCmdWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,                  // Command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
    uint32_t accelerationStructureCount,          // Count of acceleration structures for which to query the property.
    const VkAccelerationStructureKHR* pAccelerationStructures, // Pointer to an array of existing previously built acceleration
    VkQueryType queryType,                        // Type of the query.
    VkQueryPool queryPool,                       // Query pool to use.
    uint32_t firstQuery);                        // First query in the query range.
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
- `accelerationStructureCount` is the count of acceleration structures for which to query the property.
- `pAccelerationStructures` is a pointer to an array of existing previously built acceleration
structures.

- **queryType** is a `VkQueryType` value specifying the type of queries managed by the pool.
- **queryPool** is the query pool that will manage the results of the query.
- **firstQuery** is the first query index within the query pool that will contain the `accelerationStructureCount` number of results.

Accesses to any of the acceleration structures listed in `pAccelerationStructures` must be synchronized with the `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR` pipeline stage and an access type of `VK_ACCESS_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_READ_BIT_KHR`.

- If `queryType` is `VK_QUERY_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_COMPACTED_SIZE_KHR`, then the value written out is the number of bytes required by a compacted acceleration structure.
- If `queryType` is `VK_QUERY_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_SERIALIZATION_SIZE_KHR`, then the value written out is the number of bytes required by a serialized acceleration structure.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR-queryPool-02493**
  
  `queryPool` must have been created with a `queryType` matching `queryType`

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR-queryPool-02494**
  
  The queries identified by `queryPool` and `firstQuery` must be unavailable

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR-buffer-03736**
  
  The buffer used to create each acceleration structure in `pAccelerationStructures` must be bound to device memory

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR-query-04880**
  
  The sum of `query` plus `accelerationStructureCount` must be less than or equal to the number of queries in `queryPool`

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR-pAccelerationStructures-04964**
  
  All acceleration structures in `pAccelerationStructures` must have been built prior to the execution of this command

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR-accelerationStructures-03431**
  
  All acceleration structures in `pAccelerationStructures` must have been built with `VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_ALLOW_COMPACTION_BIT_KHR` if `queryType` is `VK_QUERY_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_COMPACTED_SIZE_KHR`

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR-queryType-03432**
  
  `queryType` must be `VK_QUERY_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_COMPACTED_SIZE_KHR` or `VK_QUERY_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_SERIALIZATION_SIZE_KHR`
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR-commandBuffer-parameter**
  commandBuffer must be a valid VkCommandBuffer handle

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR-pAccelerationStructures-parameter**
  pAccelerationStructures must be a valid pointer to an array of accelerationStructureCount valid VkAccelerationStructureKHR handles

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR-queryType-parameter**
  queryType must be a valid VkQueryType value

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR-queryPool-parameter**
  queryPool must be a valid VkQueryPool handle

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR-commandBuffer-recording**
  commandBuffer must be in the recording state

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR-commandBuffer-cmdpool**
  The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must support compute operations

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR-renderpass**
  This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR-accelerationStructureCount-arraylength**
  accelerationStructureCount must be greater than 0

- **VUID-vkCmdWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR-commonparent**
  Each of commandBuffer, queryPool, and the elements of pAccelerationStructures must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same VkDevice

Host Synchronization

- Host access to commandBuffer must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

To copy an acceleration structure call:
void vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureKHR(
    const VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    const VkCopyAccelerationStructureInfoKHR* pInfo);

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
- `pInfo` is a pointer to a `VkCopyAccelerationStructureInfoKHR` structure defining the copy operation.

This command copies the `pInfo->src` acceleration structure to the `pInfo->dst` acceleration structure in the manner specified by `pInfo->mode`.

Accesses to `pInfo->src` and `pInfo->dst` must be synchronized with the `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR` pipeline stage and an access type of `VK_ACCESS_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_READ_BIT_KHR` or `VK_ACCESS_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_WRITE_BIT_KHR` as appropriate.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureKHR-buffer-03737**
  The buffer used to create `pInfo->src` must be bound to device memory

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureKHR-buffer-03738**
  The buffer used to create `pInfo->dst` must be bound to device memory

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureKHR-commandBuffer-parameter**
  `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureKHR-pInfo-parameter**
  `pInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkCopyAccelerationStructureInfoKHR` structure

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureKHR-commandBuffer-recording**
  `commandBuffer` must be in the recording state

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureKHR-commandBuffer-cmdpool**
  The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support compute operations

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureKHR-renderpass**
  This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance
Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The `VkCopyAccelerationStructureInfoKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
typedef struct VkCopyAccelerationStructureInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType      sType;
    const void*          pNext;
    VkAccelerationStructureKHR src;
    VkAccelerationStructureKHR dst;
    VkCopyAccelerationStructureModeKHR mode;
} VkCopyAccelerationStructureInfoKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `src` is the source acceleration structure for the copy.
- `dst` is the target acceleration structure for the copy.
- `mode` is a `VkCopyAccelerationStructureModeKHR` value that specifies additional operations to perform during the copy.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkCopyAccelerationStructureInfoKHR-mode-03410**
  
  **mode** must be **VK_COPY_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_COMPACT_KHR** or **VK_COPY_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_CLONE_KHR**

- **VUID-VkCopyAccelerationStructureInfoKHR-src-04963**
  
  The source acceleration structure **src** must have been constructed prior to the execution of this command.

- **VUID-VkCopyAccelerationStructureInfoKHR-src-03411**
  
  If **mode** is **VK_COPY_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_COMPACT_KHR**, **src** must have been constructed with **VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_ALLOW_COMPACTION_BIT_KHR** in the build.

- **VUID-VkCopyAccelerationStructureInfoKHR-buffer-03718**
  
  The buffer used to create **src** must be bound to device memory.

- **VUID-VkCopyAccelerationStructureInfoKHR-buffer-03719**
  
  The buffer used to create **dst** must be bound to device memory.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkCopyAccelerationStructureInfoKHR-sType-sType**
  
  **sType** must be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COPY_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_INFO_KHR**

- **VUID-VkCopyAccelerationStructureInfoKHR-pNext-pNext**
  
  **pNext** must be **NULL**

- **VUID-VkCopyAccelerationStructureInfoKHR-src-parameter**
  
  **src** must be a valid **VkAccelerationStructureKHR** handle.

- **VUID-VkCopyAccelerationStructureInfoKHR-dst-parameter**
  
  **dst** must be a valid **VkAccelerationStructureKHR** handle.

- **VUID-VkCopyAccelerationStructureInfoKHR-mode-parameter**
  
  **mode** must be a valid **VkCopyAccelerationStructureModeKHR** value.

- **VUID-VkCopyAccelerationStructureInfoKHR-commonparent**
  
  Both of **dst**, and **src** must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same **VkDevice**.

Possible values of **mode** specifying additional operations to perform during the copy are:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
typedef enum VkCopyAccelerationStructureModeKHR {
    VK_COPY_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_CLONE_KHR = 0,
    VK_COPY_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_COMPACT_KHR = 1,
    VK_COPY_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_SERIALIZE_KHR = 2,
    VK_COPY_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_DESERIALIZE_KHR = 3,
} VkCopyAccelerationStructureModeKHR;
```
• **VK_COPY_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_CLONE_KHR** creates a direct copy of the acceleration structure specified in `src` into the one specified by `dst`. The `dst` acceleration structure must have been created with the same parameters as `src`. If `src` contains references to other acceleration structures, `dst` will reference the same acceleration structures.

• **VK_COPY_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_COMPACT_KHR** creates a more compact version of an acceleration structure `src` into `dst`. The acceleration structure `dst` must have been created with a size at least as large as that returned by `vkCmdWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR` or `vkWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR` after the build of the acceleration structure specified by `src`. If `src` contains references to other acceleration structures, `dst` will reference the same acceleration structures.

• **VK_COPY_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_SERIALIZE_KHR** serializes the acceleration structure to a semi-opaque format which can be reloaded on a compatible implementation.

• **VK_COPY_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_DESERIALIZE_KHR** deserializes the semi-opaque serialization format in the buffer to the acceleration structure.

To copy an acceleration structure to device memory call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
void vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    const VkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryInfoKHR* pInfo);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
- `pInfo` is an a pointer to a `VkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryInfoKHR` structure defining the copy operation.

Accesses to `pInfo->src` must be synchronized with the `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR` pipeline stage and an access type of `VK_ACCESS_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_READ_BIT_KHR`. Accesses to the buffer indicated by `pInfo->dst.deviceAddress` must be synchronized with the `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR` pipeline stage and an access type of `VK_ACCESS_TRANSFER_WRITE_BIT`.

This command produces the same results as `vkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR`, but writes its result to a device address, and is executed on the device rather than the host. The output may not necessarily be bit-for-bit identical, but it can be equally used by either `vkCmdCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR` or `vkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR`.

The defined header structure for the serialized data consists of:

- **VK_UUID_SIZE** bytes of data matching `VkPhysicalDeviceIDProperties::driverUUID`
- **VK_UUID_SIZE** bytes of data identifying the compatibility for comparison using `vkGetDeviceAccelerationStructureCompatibilityKHR`
- A 64-bit integer of the total size matching the value queried using `VK_QUERY_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE.Serialization_SIZE_KHR`
- A 64-bit integer of the deserialized size to be passed in to `VkAccelerationStructureCreateInfoKHR`
A 64-bit integer of the count of the number of acceleration structure handles following. This will be zero for a bottom-level acceleration structure. For top-level acceleration structures this number is implementation-dependent; the number of and ordering of the handles may not match the instance descriptions which were used to build the acceleration structure.

The corresponding handles matching the values returned by `vkGetAccelerationStructureDeviceAddressKHR` are tightly packed in the buffer following the count. The application is expected to store a mapping between those handles and the original application-generated bottom-level acceleration structures to provide when deserializing. The serialized data is written to the buffer (or read from the buffer) according to the host endianness.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR-pInfo-03739**
  
  `pInfo->dst.deviceAddress` **must** be a valid device address for a buffer bound to device memory

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR-pInfo-03740**
  
  `pInfo->dst.deviceAddress` **must** be aligned to 256 bytes

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR-pInfo-03741**

  If the buffer pointed to by `pInfo->dst.deviceAddress` is non-sparse then it **must** be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR-None-03559**

  The buffer used to create `pInfo->src` **must** be bound to device memory

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR-commandBuffer-parameter**

  `commandBuffer` **must** be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR-pInfo-parameter**

  `pInfo` **must** be a valid pointer to a valid `VkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryInfoKHR` structure

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR-commandBuffer-recording**

  `commandBuffer` **must** be in the recording state

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR-commandBuffer-cmdpool**

  The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from **must** support compute operations

- **VUID-vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR-renderpass**

  This command **must** only be called outside of a render pass instance
Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized.
- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized.

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
typedef struct VkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryInfoKHR {
  VkStructureType sType;
  const void* pNext;
  VkAccelerationStructureKHR src;
  VkDeviceOrHostAddressKHR dst;
  VkCopyAccelerationStructureModeKHR mode;
} VkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryInfoKHR;

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `src` is the source acceleration structure for the copy.
- `dst` is the device or host address to memory which is the target for the copy.
- `mode` is a `VkCopyAccelerationStructureModeKHR` value that specifies additional operations to perform during the copy.

Valid Usage

- VUID-VkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryInfoKHR-src-04959
  The source acceleration structure `src` must have been constructed prior to the execution of this command.

- VUID-VkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryInfoKHR-dst-03561
  The memory pointed to by `dst` must be at least as large as the serialization size of `src`, as reported by `vkWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR` or `vkCmdWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR` with a query type of `VK_QUERY_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE.Serialization_SIZE_KHR`.

- VUID-VkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryInfoKHR-mode-03412
  `mode` must be `VK_COPY_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE.MODE_SERIALIZE_KHR`.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryInfoKHR-sType-sType**
  
sType must be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COPY_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TO_MEMORY_INFO_KHR**

- **VUID-VkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryInfoKHR-pNext-pNext**
  
pNext must be **NULL**

- **VUID-VkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryInfoKHR-src-parameter**
  
src must be a valid **VkAccelerationStructureKHR** handle

- **VUID-VkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryInfoKHR-mode-parameter**
  
mode must be a valid **VkCopyAccelerationStructureModeKHR** value

To copy device memory to an acceleration structure call:

```c
void vkCmdCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    const VkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureInfoKHR* pInfo);
```

- **commandBuffer** is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.

- **pInfo** is a pointer to a **VkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureInfoKHR** structure defining the copy operation.

Accesses to **pInfo->dst** must be synchronized with the **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR** pipeline stage and an access type of **VK_ACCESS_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_WRITE_BIT_KHR**. Accesses to the buffer indicated by **pInfo->src.deviceAddress** must be synchronized with the **VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR** pipeline stage and an access type of **VK_ACCESS_TRANSFER_READ_BIT**.

This command can accept acceleration structures produced by either **vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR** or **vkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR**.

The structure provided as input to deserialize is as described in **vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR**, with any acceleration structure handles filled in with the newly-queried handles to bottom level acceleration structures created before deserialization. These do not need to be built at deserialization time, but must be created.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkCmdCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR-pInfo-03742
  pInfo->src.deviceAddress must be a valid device address for a buffer bound to device memory
- VUID-vkCmdCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR-pInfo-03743
  pInfo->src.deviceAddress must be aligned to 256 bytes
- VUID-vkCmdCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR-pInfo-03744
  If the buffer pointed to by pInfo->src.deviceAddress is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single VkDeviceMemory object
- VUID-vkCmdCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR-buffer-03745
  The buffer used to create pInfo->dst must be bound to device memory

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR-commandBuffer-parameter
  commandBuffer must be a valid VkCommandBuffer handle
- VUID-vkCmdCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR-pInfo-parameter
  pInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid VkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureInfoKHR structure
- VUID-vkCmdCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR-commandBuffer-recording
  commandBuffer must be in the recording state
- VUID-vkCmdCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must support compute operations
- VUID-vkCmdCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR-renderpass
  This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance

Host Synchronization

- Host access to commandBuffer must be externally synchronized
- Host access to the VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The `VkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureInfoKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
typedef struct VkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkDeviceOrHostAddressConstKHR src;
    VkAccelerationStructureKHR dst;
    VkCopyAccelerationStructureModeKHR mode;
} VkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureInfoKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `src` is the device or host address to memory containing the source data for the copy.
- `dst` is the target acceleration structure for the copy.
- `mode` is a `VkCopyAccelerationStructureModeKHR` value that specifies additional operations to perform during the copy.

**Valid Usage**

- VUID-VkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureInfoKHR-src-04960
  The source memory pointed to by `src` must contain data previously serialized using `vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR`, potentially modified to relocate acceleration structure references as described in that command.

- VUID-VkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureInfoKHR-mode-03413
  `mode` must be `VK_COPY_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_DESERIALIZE_KHR`.

- VUID-VkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureInfoKHR-pInfo-03414
  The data in `src` must have a format compatible with the destination physical device as returned by `vkGetDeviceAccelerationStructureCompatibilityKHR`.

- VUID-VkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureInfoKHR-dst-03746
  `dst` must have been created with a size greater than or equal to that used to serialize the data in `src`.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureInfoKHR-sType-sType
  - sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COPY_MEMORY_TO_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_INFO_KHR

- VUID-VkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureInfoKHR-pNext-pNext
  - pNext must be NULL

- VUID-VkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureInfoKHR-dst-parameter
  - dst must be a valid VkAccelerationStructureKHR handle

- VUID-VkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureInfoKHR-mode-parameter
  - mode must be a valid VkCopyAccelerationStructureModeKHR value

To check if a serialized acceleration structure is compatible with the current device call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
void vkGetDeviceAccelerationStructureCompatibilityKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkAccelerationStructureVersionInfoKHR* pVersionInfo,
    VkAccelerationStructureCompatibilityKHR* pCompatibility);
```

- `device` is the device to check the version against.
- `pVersionInfo` is a pointer to a VkAccelerationStructureVersionInfoKHR structure specifying version information to check against the device.
- `pCompatibility` is a pointer to a VkAccelerationStructureCompatibilityKHR value in which compatibility information is returned.

Valid Usage

- VUID-vkGetDeviceAccelerationStructureCompatibilityKHR-rayTracingPipeline-03661
  - The rayTracingPipeline or rayQuery feature must be enabled

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetDeviceAccelerationStructureCompatibilityKHR-device-parameter
  - device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- VUID-vkGetDeviceAccelerationStructureCompatibilityKHR-pVersionInfo-parameter
  - pVersionInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid VkAccelerationStructureVersionInfoKHR structure

- VUID-vkGetDeviceAccelerationStructureCompatibilityKHR-pCompatibility-parameter
  - pCompatibility must be a valid pointer to a VkAccelerationStructureCompatibilityKHR value
The `VkAccelerationStructureVersionInfoKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
typedef struct VkAccelerationStructureVersionInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    const uint8_t* pVersionData;
} VkAccelerationStructureVersionInfoKHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **pVersionData** is a pointer to the version header of an acceleration structure as defined in `vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR`

**Note**

`pVersionData` is a *pointer* to an array of \(2 \times VK_UUID_SIZE\) `uint8_t` values instead of two `VK_UUID_SIZE` arrays as the expected use case for this member is to be pointed at the header of an previously serialized acceleration structure (via `vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR` or `vkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR`) that is loaded in memory. Using arrays would necessitate extra memory copies of the UUIDs.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkAccelerationStructureVersionInfoKHR-sType-sType
  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_VERSION_INFO_KHR`

- VUID-VkAccelerationStructureVersionInfoKHR-pNext-pNext
  
  `pNext` must be **NULL**

- VUID-VkAccelerationStructureVersionInfoKHR-pVersionData-parameter
  
  `pVersionData` must be a valid pointer to an array of \(2 \times VK_UUID_SIZE\) `uint8_t` values

Possible values of `pCompatibility` returned by `vkGetDeviceAccelerationStructureCompatibilityKHR` are:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
typedef enum VkAccelerationStructureCompatibilityKHR {
    VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_COMPATIBILITY_COMPATIBLE_KHR = 0,
    VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_COMPATIBILITY_INCOMPATIBLE_KHR = 1,
} VkAccelerationStructureCompatibilityKHR;
```

- **VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_COMPATIBILITY_COMPATIBLE_KHR** if the `pVersionData` version acceleration structure is compatible with device.
- **VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_COMPATIBILITY_INCOMPATIBLE_KHR** if the `pVersionData` version
acceleration structure is not compatible with device.

### 32.2. Host Acceleration Structure Operations

Implementations are also required to provide host implementations of the acceleration structure operations if the `accelerationStructureHostCommands` feature is enabled:

- `vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR` corresponding to `vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR`
- `vkCopyAccelerationStructureKHR` corresponding to `vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureKHR`
- `vkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR` corresponding to `vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR`
- `vkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR` corresponding to `vkCmdCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR`
- `vkWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR` corresponding to `vkCmdWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR`

These commands are functionally equivalent to their device counterparts, except that they are executed on the host timeline, rather than being enqueued into command buffers.

All acceleration structures used by the host commands **must** be bound to host-visible memory, and all input data for acceleration structure builds **must** be referenced using host addresses instead of device addresses. Applications are not required to map acceleration structure memory when using the host commands.

**Note**

The `vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR` and `vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR` may use different algorithms, and thus are not required to produce identical structures. The structures produced by these two commands may exhibit different memory footprints or traversal performance, but should strive to be similar where possible.

Apart from these details, the host and device operations are interchangeable. For example, an application can use `vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR` to build a structure, compact it on the device using `vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureKHR`, and serialize the result using `vkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR`.

**Note**

For efficient execution, acceleration structures manipulated using these commands should always be bound to host cached memory, as the implementation may need to repeatedly read and write this memory during the execution of the command.

To build acceleration structures on the host, call:
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure

VkResult vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    VkDeferredOperationKHR deferredOperation,
    uint32_t infoCount,
    const VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR* pInfos,
    const VkAccelerationStructureBuildRangeInfoKHR* const* ppBuildRangeInfos);

- `device` is the `VkDevice` for which the acceleration structures are being built.

- `deferredOperation` is an optional `VkDeferredOperationKHR` to request deferral for this command.

- `infoCount` is the number of acceleration structures to build. It specifies the number of the `pInfos` structures and `ppBuildRangeInfos` pointers that must be provided.

- `pInfos` is a pointer to an array of `infoCount` `VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR` structures defining the geometry used to build each acceleration structure.

- `ppBuildRangeInfos` is a pointer to an array of `infoCount` pointers to arrays of `VkAccelerationStructureBuildRangeInfoKHR` structures defining dynamic offsets to the addresses where geometry data is stored, as defined by `pInfos[i].geometryCount` `VkAccelerationStructureBuildRangeInfoKHR` structures.

This command fulfills the same task as `vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR` but is executed by the host.

The `vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR` command provides the ability to initiate multiple acceleration structures builds, however there is no ordering or synchronization implied between any of the individual acceleration structure builds.

**Note**

This means that an application cannot build a top-level acceleration structure in the same `vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR` call as the associated bottom-level or instance acceleration structures are being built. There also cannot be any memory aliasing between any acceleration structure memories or scratch memories being used by any of the builds.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-mode-04628
  The **mode** member of each element of **pInfos** must be a valid
  VkBuildAccelerationStructureModeKHR value

- VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-srcAccelerationStructure-04629
  If the **srcAccelerationStructure** member of any element of **pInfos** is not
  VK_NULL_HANDLE, the **srcAccelerationStructure** member must be a valid
  VkAccelerationStructureKHR handle

- VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-04630
  For each element of **pInfos**, if its **mode** member is
  VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, its **srcAccelerationStructure** member
  must not be VK_NULL_HANDLE

- VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03403
  The **srcAccelerationStructure** member of any element of **pInfos** must not be the same
  acceleration structure as the **dstAccelerationStructure** member of any other element of
  **pInfos**

- VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-dstAccelerationStructure-03698
  The **dstAccelerationStructure** member of any element of **pInfos** must not be the same
  acceleration structure as the **dstAccelerationStructure** member of any other element of
  **pInfos**

- VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-dstAccelerationStructure-03800
  The **dstAccelerationStructure** member of any element of **pInfos** must be a valid
  VkAccelerationStructureKHR handle

- VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03699
  For each element of **pInfos**, if its **type** member is
  VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_TOP_LEVEL_KHR, its **dstAccelerationStructure** member
  must have been created with a value of VkAccelerationStructureCreateInfoKHR::**type**
  equal to either VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_TOP_LEVEL_KHR or
  VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_GENERIC_KHR

- VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03700
  For each element of **pInfos**, if its **type** member is
  VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BOTTOM_LEVEL_KHR, its **dstAccelerationStructure** member
  must have been created with a value of VkAccelerationStructureCreateInfoKHR::**type**
  equal to either VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BOTTOM_LEVEL_KHR or
  VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_GENERIC_KHR

- VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03663
  For each element of **pInfos**, if its **mode** member is
  VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, inactive primitives in its
  **srcAccelerationStructure** member must not be made active

- VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03664
  For each element of **pInfos**, if its **mode** member is
  VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, active primitives in its
  **srcAccelerationStructure** member must not be made inactive
The \texttt{dstAccelerationStructure} member of any element of \texttt{pInfos} must not be referenced by the \texttt{geometry.instances.data} member of any element of \texttt{pGeometries} or \texttt{ppGeometries} with a \texttt{geometryType} of \texttt{VK\_GEOMETRY\_TYPE\_INSTANCES\_KHR} in any other element of \texttt{pInfos}.

The range of memory backing the \texttt{dstAccelerationStructure} member of any element of \texttt{pInfos} that is accessed by this command must not overlap the memory backing the \texttt{srcAccelerationStructure} member of any other element of \texttt{pInfos} with a \texttt{mode} equal to \texttt{VK\_BUILD\_ACCELERATION\_STRUCTURE\_MODE\_UPDATE\_KHR}, which is accessed by this command.

The range of memory backing the \texttt{dstAccelerationStructure} member of any element of \texttt{pInfos} that is accessed by this command must not overlap the memory backing the \texttt{scratchData} member of any other element of \texttt{pInfos}, which is accessed by this command.

The range of memory backing the \texttt{scratchData} member of any element of \texttt{pInfos} that is accessed by this command must not overlap the memory backing the \texttt{scratchData} member of any other element of \texttt{pInfos}, which is accessed by this command.

The range of memory backing the \texttt{scratchData} member of any element of \texttt{pInfos} that is accessed by this command must not overlap the memory backing the \texttt{srcAccelerationStructure} member of any element of \texttt{pInfos} with a \texttt{mode} equal to \texttt{VK\_BUILD\_ACCELERATION\_STRUCTURE\_MODE\_UPDATE\_KHR} (including the same element), which is accessed by this command.

The range of memory backing the \texttt{dstAccelerationStructure} member of any element of \texttt{pInfos} that is accessed by this command must not overlap the memory backing any acceleration structure referenced by the \texttt{geometry.instances.data} member of any element of \texttt{pGeometries} or \texttt{ppGeometries} with a \texttt{geometryType} of \texttt{VK\_GEOMETRY\_TYPE\_INSTANCES\_KHR} in any other element of \texttt{pInfos}, which is accessed by this command.

For each element of \texttt{pInfos}, if its \texttt{mode} member is \texttt{VK\_BUILD\_ACCELERATION\_STRUCTURE\_MODE\_UPDATE\_KHR}, its \texttt{srcAccelerationStructure} member must have previously been constructed with \texttt{VK\_BUILD\_ACCELERATION\_STRUCTURE\_ALLOW\_UPDATE\_BIT\_KHR} set in \texttt{VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR::flags} in the build.

For each element of \texttt{pInfos}, if its \texttt{mode} member is \texttt{VK\_BUILD\_ACCELERATION\_STRUCTURE\_MODE\_UPDATE\_KHR}, its \texttt{srcAccelerationStructure} and \texttt{dstAccelerationStructure} members must either be the same.
 VkAccelerationStructureKHR, or not have any memory aliasing

- VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03758
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is 
  VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, its geometryCount member must have 
  the same value which was specified when srcAccelerationStructure was last built

- VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03759
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is 
  VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, its flags member must have the same 
  value which was specified when srcAccelerationStructure was last built

- VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03760
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is 
  VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, its type member must have the same 
  value which was specified when srcAccelerationStructure was last built

- VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03761
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is 
  VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, then for each 
  VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR structure referred to by its pGeometries or 
  ppGeometries members, its geometryType member must have the same value which was 
  specified when srcAccelerationStructure was last built

- VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03762
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is 
  VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, then for each 
  VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR structure referred to by its pGeometries or 
  ppGeometries members, its flags member must have the same value which was specified 
  when srcAccelerationStructure was last built

- VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03763
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is 
  VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, then for each 
  VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR structure referred to by its pGeometries or 
  ppGeometries members, if geometryType is VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR, its 
  geometry.triangles.vertexFormat member must have the same value which was specified 
  when srcAccelerationStructure was last built

- VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03764
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is 
  VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, then for each 
  VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR structure referred to by its pGeometries or 
  ppGeometries members, if geometryType is VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR, its 
  geometry.triangles.maxVertex member must have the same value which was specified 
  when srcAccelerationStructure was last built

- VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03765
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is 
  VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR, then for each 
  VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR structure referred to by its pGeometries or 
  ppGeometries members, if geometryType is VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR, its 
  geometry.triangles.indexType member must have the same value which was specified
when `srcAccelerationStructure` was last built

- **VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03766**
  For each element of `pInfos`, if its `mode` member is `VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR`, then for each `VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR` structure referred to by its `pGeometries` or `ppGeometries` members, if `geometryType` is `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR`, if its `geometry.triangles.transformData` address was NULL when `srcAccelerationStructure` was last built, then it must be NULL

- **VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03767**
  For each element of `pInfos`, if its `mode` member is `VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR`, then for each `VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR` structure referred to by its `pGeometries` or `ppGeometries` members, if `geometryType` is `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR`, if its `geometry.triangles.transformData` address was not NULL when `srcAccelerationStructure` was last built, then it must not be NULL

- **VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03768**
  For each element of `pInfos`, if its `mode` member is `VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR`, then for each `VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR` structure referred to by its `pGeometries` or `ppGeometries` members, if `geometryType` is `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR`, and `geometry.triangles.indexType` is not `VK_INDEX_TYPE_NONE_KHR`, then the value of each index referenced must be the same as the corresponding index value when `srcAccelerationStructure` was last built

- **VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-primitiveCount-03769**
  For each `VkAccelerationStructureBuildRangeInfoKHR` referenced by this command, its `primitiveCount` member must have the same value which was specified when `srcAccelerationStructure` was last built

- **VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-firstVertex-03770**
  For each `VkAccelerationStructureBuildRangeInfoKHR` referenced by this command, if the corresponding geometry uses indices, its `firstVertex` member must have the same value which was specified when `srcAccelerationStructure` was last built

- **VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03801**
  For each element of `pInfos[i].pGeometries` or `pInfos[i].ppGeometries` with a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_INSTANCES_KHR`, the corresponding `ppBuildRangeInfos[i][j].primitiveCount` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructurePropertiesKHR::maxInstanceCount`

- **VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03801**
  For each `pInfos[i].ppBuildRangeInfos` with a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_INSTANCES_KHR`, the corresponding `ppBuildRangeInfos[i][j].primitiveCount` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructurePropertiesKHR::maxInstanceCount`

- **VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-ppBuildRangeInfos-03676**
  For each `pInfos[i].ppBuildRangeInfos` with a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_INSTANCES_KHR`, the corresponding `ppBuildRangeInfos[i][j].primitiveCount` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructurePropertiesKHR::maxInstanceCount`
Each element of `ppBuildRangeInfos[i]` **must** be a valid pointer to an array of `pInfos[i].geometryCount` `VkAccelerationStructureBuildRangeInfoKHR` structures.

- **VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-deferredOperation-03677**
  
  If `deferredOperation` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, it **must** be a valid `VkDeferredOperationKHR` object.

- **VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-deferredOperation-03678**
  
  Any previous deferred operation that was associated with `deferredOperation` **must** be complete.

- **VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03722**
  
  For each element of `pInfos`, the buffer used to create its `dstAccelerationStructure` member **must** be bound to host-visible device memory.

- **VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03723**
  
  For each element of `pInfos`, if its `mode` member is `VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR`, the buffer used to create its `srcAccelerationStructure` member **must** be bound to host-visible device memory.

- **VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03724**
  
  For each element of `pInfos`, the buffer used to create each acceleration structure referenced by the `geometry.instances.data` member of any element of `pGeometries` or `ppGeometries` with a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_INSTANCES_KHR` **must** be bound to host-visible device memory.

- **VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-accelerationStructureHostCommands-03581**
  
  The `VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructureFeaturesKHR::accelerationStructureHostCommands` feature **must** be enabled.

- **VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03725**
  
  If `pInfos[i].mode` is `VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_BUILD_KHR`, all addresses between `pInfos[i].scratchData.hostAddress` and `pInfos[i].scratchData.hostAddress + N - 1` **must** be valid host memory, where `N` is given by the `build scratchSize` member of the `VkAccelerationStructureBuildSizesInfoKHR` structure returned from a call to `vkGetAccelerationStructureBuildSizesKHR` with an identical `VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR` structure and primitive count.

- **VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03726**
  
  If `pInfos[i].mode` is `VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR`, all addresses between `pInfos[i].scratchData.hostAddress` and `pInfos[i].scratchData.hostAddress + N - 1` **must** be valid host memory, where `N` is given by the `update scratchSize` member of the `VkAccelerationStructureBuildSizesInfoKHR` structure returned from a call to `vkGetAccelerationStructureBuildSizesKHR` with an identical `VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR` structure and primitive count.

- **VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03771**
  
  For any element of `pInfos[i].pGeometries` or `pInfos[i].ppGeometries` with a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR`, `geometry.triangles.vertexData.hostAddress` **must** be a valid host address.

- **VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03772**
  
  For any element of `pInfos[i].pGeometries` or `pInfos[i].ppGeometries` with a `geometryType` of...
VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR, if geometry.triangles.indexType is not VK_INDEX_TYPE_NONE_KHR, geometry.triangles.indexData.hostAddress must be a valid host address

- VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03773
  For any element of pInfos[i].pGeometries or pInfos[i].ppGeometries with a geometryType of VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR, if geometry.triangles.transformData.hostAddress is not 0, it must be a valid host address

- VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03774
  For any element of pInfos[i].pGeometries or pInfos[i].ppGeometries with a geometryType of VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_AABBS_KHR, geometry.aabbs.data.hostAddress must be a valid host address

- VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03775
  For each element of pInfos, the buffer used to create its dstAccelerationStructure member must be bound to memory that was not allocated with multiple instances

- VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03776
  For each element of pInfos, if its mode member is VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_UPDATE_KHR the buffer used to create its srcAccelerationStructure member must be bound to memory that was not allocated with multiple instances

- VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03777
  For each element of pInfos, the buffer used to create each acceleration structure referenced by the geometry.instances.data member of any element of pGeometries or ppGeometries with a geometryType of VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_INSTANCES_KHR must be bound to memory that was not allocated with multiple instances

- VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03778
  For any element of pInfos[i].pGeometries or pInfos[i].ppGeometries with a geometryType of VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_INSTANCES_KHR, geometry.instances.data.hostAddress must be a valid host address

- VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-03779
  For any element of pInfos[i].pGeometries or pInfos[i].ppGeometries with a geometryType of VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_INSTANCES_KHR, each VkAccelerationStructureInstanceKHR: :accelerationStructureReference value in geometry.instances.data.hostAddress must be a valid VkAccelerationStructureKHR object
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-device-parameter
device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-deferredOperation-parameter
If deferredOperation is not VK_NULL_HANDLE, deferredOperation must be a valid VkDeferredOperationKHR handle

- VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-pInfos-parameter
pInfos must be a valid pointer to an array of infoCount valid VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR structures

- VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-ppBuildRangeInfos-parameter
ppBuildRangeInfos must be a valid pointer to an array of infoCount VkAccelerationStructureBuildRangeInfoKHR structures

- VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-infoCount-arraylength
infoCount must be greater than 0

- VUID-vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR-deferredOperation-parent
If deferredOperation is a valid handle, it must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from device

Return Codes

Success
- VK_SUCCESS
- VK_OPERATION_DEFERRED_KHR
- VK_OPERATION_NOT_DEFERRED_KHR

Failure
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY

To copy or compact an acceleration structure on the host, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
VkResult vkCopyAccelerationStructureKHR(
    VkDevice device,              // Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
    VkDeferredOperationKHR deferredOperation,    // Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
    const VkCopyAccelerationStructureInfoKHR* pInfo);
```

- device is the device which owns the acceleration structures.
- deferredOperation is an optional VkDeferredOperationKHR to request deferral for this command.
• `pInfo` is a pointer to a `VkCopyAccelerationStructureInfoKHR` structure defining the copy operation.

This command fulfills the same task as `vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureKHR` but is executed by the host.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkCopyAccelerationStructureKHR-deferredOperation-03677**
  If `deferredOperation` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, it **must** be a valid `VkDeferredOperationKHR` object

- **VUID-vkCopyAccelerationStructureKHR-buffer-03727**
  The buffer used to create `pInfo->src` **must** be bound to host-visible device memory

- **VUID-vkCopyAccelerationStructureKHR-buffer-03728**
  The buffer used to create `pInfo->dst` **must** be bound to host-visible device memory

- **VUID-vkCopyAccelerationStructureKHR-accelerationStructureHostCommands-03582**
  The `VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructureFeaturesKHR`::`accelerationStructureHostCommands` feature **must** be enabled

- **VUID-vkCopyAccelerationStructureKHR-buffer-03780**
  The buffer used to create `pInfo->src` **must** be bound to memory that was not allocated with multiple instances

- **VUID-vkCopyAccelerationStructureKHR-buffer-03781**
  The buffer used to create `pInfo->dst` **must** be bound to memory that was not allocated with multiple instances

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkCopyAccelerationStructureKHR-device-parameter**
  `device` **must** be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- **VUID-vkCopyAccelerationStructureKHR-deferredOperation-parameter**
  If `deferredOperation` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, `deferredOperation` **must** be a valid `VkDeferredOperationKHR` handle

- **VUID-vkCopyAccelerationStructureKHR-pInfo-parameter**
  `pInfo` **must** be a valid pointer to a valid `VkCopyAccelerationStructureInfoKHR` structure

- **VUID-vkCopyAccelerationStructureKHR-deferredOperation-parent**
  If `deferredOperation` is a valid handle, it **must** have been created, allocated, or retrieved from `device`
## Return Codes

### Success
- VK_SUCCESS
- VK_OPERATION_DEFERRED_KHR
- VK_OPERATION_NOT_DEFERRED_KHR

### Failure
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY

To copy host accessible memory to an acceleration structure, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
VkResult vkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    VkDeferredOperationKHR deferredOperation,
    const VkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureInfoKHR* pInfo);
```

- `device` is the device which owns `pInfo->dst`.
- `deferredOperation` is an optional `VkDeferredOperationKHR` to request deferral for this command.
- `pInfo` is a pointer to a `VkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureInfoKHR` structure defining the copy operation.

This command fulfills the same task as `vkCmdCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR` but is executed by the host.

This command can accept acceleration structures produced by either `vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR` or `vkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR`. 
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR-deferredOperation-03677
  If `deferredOperation` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, it **must** be a valid `VkDeferredOperationKHR` object.

- VUID-vkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR-deferredOperation-03678
  Any previous deferred operation that was associated with `deferredOperation` **must** be complete.

- VUID-vkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR-pInfo-03729
  `pInfo->src.hostAddress` **must** be a valid host pointer.

- VUID-vkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR-pInfo-03750
  `pInfo->src.hostAddress` **must** be aligned to 16 bytes.

- VUID-vkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR-buffer-03730
  The buffer used to create `pInfo->dst` **must** be bound to host-visible device memory.

- VUID-vkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR-accelerationStructureHostCommands-03583
  The `VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructureFeaturesKHR::accelerationStructureHostCommands` feature **must** be enabled.

- VUID-vkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR-buffer-03782
  The buffer used to create `pInfo->dst` **must** be bound to memory that was not allocated with multiple instances.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR-device-parameter
  `device` **must** be a valid `VkDevice` handle.

- VUID-vkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR-deferredOperation-parameter
  If `deferredOperation` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, `deferredOperation` **must** be a valid `VkDeferredOperationKHR` handle.

- VUID-vkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR-pInfo-parameter
  `pInfo` **must** be a valid pointer to a valid `VkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureInfoKHR` structure.

- VUID-vkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR-deferredOperation-parent
  If `deferredOperation` is a valid handle, it **must** have been created, allocated, or retrieved from `device`. 
Return Codes

**Success**
- VK_SUCCESS
- VK_OPERATION_DEFERRED_KHR
- VK_OPERATION_NOT_DEFERRED_KHR

**Failure**
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY

To copy an acceleration structure to host accessible memory, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
VkResult vkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    VkDeferredOperationKHR deferredOperation,
    const VkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryInfoKHR* pInfo);
```

- `device` is the device which owns `pInfo->src`.
- `deferredOperation` is an optional `VkDeferredOperationKHR` to request deferral for this command.
- `pInfo` is a pointer to a `VkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryInfoKHR` structure defining the copy operation.

This command fulfills the same task as `vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR` but is executed by the host.

This command produces the same results as `vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR`, but writes its result directly to a host pointer, and is executed on the host rather than the device. The output may not necessarily be bit-for-bit identical, but it can be equally used by either `vkCmdCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR` or `vkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR`. 
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR-deferredOperation-03677
  If `deferredOperation` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, it must be a valid `VkDeferredOperationKHR` object

- VUID-vkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR-deferredOperation-03678
  Any previous deferred operation that was associated with `deferredOperation` must be complete

- VUID-vkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR-buffer-03731
  The buffer used to create `pInfo->src` must be bound to host-visible device memory

- VUID-vkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR-pInfo-03732
  `pInfo->dst.hostAddress` must be a valid host pointer

- VUID-vkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR-pInfo-03751
  `pInfo->dst.hostAddress` must be aligned to 16 bytes

- VUID-vkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR-accelerationStructureHostCommands-03584
  The `VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructureFeaturesKHR::accelerationStructureHostCommands` feature must be enabled

- VUID-vkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR-buffer-03783
  The buffer used to create `pInfo->src` must be bound to memory that was not allocated with multiple instances

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR-device-parameter
  `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- VUID-vkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR-deferredOperation-parameter
  If `deferredOperation` is not `VK_NULL_HANDLE`, `deferredOperation` must be a valid `VkDeferredOperationKHR` handle

- VUID-vkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR-pInfo-parameter
  `pInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryInfoKHR` structure

- VUID-vkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR-deferredOperation-parent
  If `deferredOperation` is a valid handle, it must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from `device`
Return Codes

Success

• VK_SUCCESS
• VK_OPERATION_DEFERRED_KHR
• VK_OPERATION_NOT_DEFERRED_KHR

Failure

• VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
• VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY

To query acceleration structure size parameters on the host, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure

VkResult vkWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR(
    VkDevice device,                      // device, owns the acceleration structures
    uint32_t accelerationStructureCount,  // count of acceleration structures
    const VkAccelerationStructureKHR* pAccelerationStructures,  // pointer to array of previously built acceleration structures
    VkQueryType queryType,                // property to be queried
    size_t dataSize,                      // size of buffer pointed to by pData
    void* pData,                          // user-allocated buffer for results
    size_t stride                         // stride between results
);
```

- `device` is the device which owns the acceleration structures in `pAccelerationStructures`.
- `accelerationStructureCount` is the count of acceleration structures for which to query the property.
- `pAccelerationStructures` is a pointer to an array of existing previously built acceleration structures.
- `queryType` is a `VkQueryType` value specifying the property to be queried.
- `dataSize` is the size in bytes of the buffer pointed to by `pData`.
- `pData` is a pointer to a user-allocated buffer where the results will be written.
- `stride` is the stride in bytes between results for individual queries within `pData`.

This command fulfills the same task as `vkCmdWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR` but is executed by the host.
Valid Usage

- VUID-vkWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR-pAccelerationStructures-04964
  All acceleration structures in `pAccelerationStructures` must have been built prior to the execution of this command.

- VUID-vkWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR-accelerationStructures-03431
  All acceleration structures in `pAccelerationStructures` must have been built with `VK_BUILD_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_ALLOW_COMPACTION_BIT_KHR` if `queryType` is `VK_QUERY_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_COMPACTED_SIZE_KHR`.

- VUID-vkWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR-queryType-03432
  `queryType` must be `VK_QUERY_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_COMPACTED_SIZE_KHR` or `VK_QUERY_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_SERIALIZATION_SIZE_KHR`.

- VUID-vkWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR-queryType-03448
  If `queryType` is `VK_QUERY_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_COMPACTED_SIZE_KHR`, then `stride` must be a multiple of the size of `VkDeviceSize`.

- VUID-vkWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR-queryType-03449
  If `queryType` is `VK_QUERY_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_COMPACTED_SIZE_KHR`, then `data` must point to a `VkDeviceSize`.

- VUID-vkWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR-queryType-03450
  If `queryType` is `VK_QUERY_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_SERIALIZATION_SIZE_KHR`, then `stride` must be a multiple of the size of `VkDeviceSize`.

- VUID-vkWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR-queryType-03451
  If `queryType` is `VK_QUERY_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_SERIALIZATION_SIZE_KHR`, then `data` must point to a `VkDeviceSize`.

- VUID-vkWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR-dataSize-03452
  `dataSize` must be greater than or equal to `accelerationStructureCount*stride`.

- VUID-vkWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR-buffer-03733
  The buffer used to create each acceleration structure in `pAccelerationStructures` must be bound to host-visible device memory.

- VUID-vkWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR-accelerationStructureHostCommands-03585
  The `VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructureFeaturesKHR::accelerationStructureHostCommands` feature must be enabled.

- VUID-vkWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR-buffer-03784
  The buffer used to create each acceleration structure in `pAccelerationStructures` must be bound to memory that was not allocated with multiple instances.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **device** must be a valid `VkDevice` handle
- **pAccelerationStructures** must be a valid pointer to an array of `accelerationStructureCount` valid `VkAccelerationStructureKHR` handles
- **queryType** must be a valid `VkQueryType` value
- **pData** must be a valid pointer to an array of `dataSize` bytes
- **accelerationStructureCount** must be greater than 0
- **dataSize** must be greater than 0
- Each element of **pAccelerationStructures** must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from **device**

Return Codes

**Success**

- **VK_SUCCESS**

**Failure**

- **VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY**
- **VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY**
Chapter 33. Ray Traversal

The ray traversal process identifies and handles intersections between a ray and geometries in an acceleration structure.

Ray traversal cannot be started by a Vulkan API command directly - a shader must execute `OpRayQueryProceedKHR` or `OpTraceRayKHR`. When the `rayTracingPipeline` feature is enabled, `OpTraceRayKHR` can be used for ray tracing in a ray tracing pipeline. When the `rayQuery` feature is enabled, `OpRayQueryProceedKHR` can be used in any shader stage.

33.1. Ray Intersection Candidate Determination

Once tracing begins, rays are tested against geometries in an acceleration structure to determine if a hit occurred between them, initially based only on their geometric properties (i.e. their vertices). The implementation performs similar operations to that of rasterization, but with the effective viewport determined by the parameters of the ray, and the geometry transformed into a space determined by that viewport.

The vertices of each primitive are transformed from acceleration structure space $\mathbb{A}$ to ray space $\mathbb{R}$ according to the ray origin and direction as follows:

$$
\begin{pmatrix}
  x_r \\
  y_r \\
  z_r
\end{pmatrix}
= \begin{pmatrix}
  a_x(1-c) + c & a_xa_y(1-c) - sa_z & a_xa_z(1-c) + sa_y \\
  a_ya_x(1-c) + sa_z & a_y(1-c) + c & a_ya_z(1-c) - sa_x \\
  a_za_x(1-c) - sa_y & a_za_y(1-c) + sa_x & a_z(1-c) + c
\end{pmatrix}
\begin{pmatrix}
  x_{as} - o_x \\
  y_{as} - o_y \\
  z_{as} - o_z
\end{pmatrix}
$$

$a$ is the axis of rotation from the unnormalized ray direction vector $\mathbf{d}$ to the axis vector $\mathbf{k}$:

$$
\mathbf{a} = \begin{cases} 
\frac{\mathbf{d} \times \mathbf{k}}{||\mathbf{d} \times \mathbf{k}||} & \text{if } ||\mathbf{d} \times \mathbf{k}|| \neq 0 \\
\begin{pmatrix}
  0 \\
  0 \\
  1
\end{pmatrix} & \text{if } ||\mathbf{d} \times \mathbf{k}|| = 0
\end{cases}
$$

$s$ and $c$ are the sine and cosine of the angle of rotation about $\mathbf{a}$ from $\mathbf{d}$ to $\mathbf{k}$:

$$
c = \frac{\mathbf{d} \cdot \mathbf{k}}{||\mathbf{d}||}$$

$$
s = \sqrt{1 - c^2}
$$

$k$ is the unit vector:

$$
\mathbf{k} = \begin{pmatrix} 
0 \\
0 \\
-1
\end{pmatrix}
$$

$o$ and $\mathbf{d}$ are the ray origin and unnormalized direction, respectively; the vector described by $x_{as}$, $y_{as}$, and $z_{as}$ is any position in acceleration structure space; and the vector described by $x_r$, $y_r$, and $z_r$ is the same position in ray space.

An intersection candidate is a unique point of intersection between a ray and a geometric primitive. For any primitive that has within its bounds a position $\mathbf{x} \mathbf{y} \mathbf{z}_{as}$ such that
where \( t = \frac{-z_r}{||d||} \), an intersection candidate exists.

Triangle primitive bounds consist of all points on the plane formed by the three vertices and within the bounds of the edges between the vertices, subject to the watertightness constraints below. AABB primitive bounds consist of all points within an implementation-defined bound which includes the specified box.

\[
\begin{align*}
  x_r &= 0 \\
  y_r &= 0 \\
  t_{\text{min}} &< -\frac{z_r}{||d||} < t_{\text{max}} \quad \text{if the primitive is a triangle,} \\
  t_{\text{min}} &\leq -\frac{z_r}{||d||} \leq t_{\text{max}} \quad \text{otherwise}
\end{align*}
\]

Triangle primitive bounds consist of all points on the plane formed by the three vertices and within the bounds of the edges between the vertices, subject to the watertightness constraints below. AABB primitive bounds consist of all points within an implementation-defined bound which includes the specified box.

\[
\begin{align*}
  x_r &= 0 \\
  y_r &= 0 \\
  t_{\text{min}} &< -\frac{z_r}{||d||} < t_{\text{max}} \quad \text{if the primitive is a triangle,} \\
  t_{\text{min}} &\leq -\frac{z_r}{||d||} \leq t_{\text{max}} \quad \text{otherwise}
\end{align*}
\]

(where \( t = \frac{-z_r}{||d||} \)), an intersection candidate exists.

Triangle primitive bounds consist of all points on the plane formed by the three vertices and within the bounds of the edges between the vertices, subject to the watertightness constraints below. AABB primitive bounds consist of all points within an implementation-defined bound which includes the specified box.

\[
\begin{align*}
  x_r &= 0 \\
  y_r &= 0 \\
  t_{\text{min}} &< -\frac{z_r}{||d||} < t_{\text{max}} \quad \text{if the primitive is a triangle,} \\
  t_{\text{min}} &\leq -\frac{z_r}{||d||} \leq t_{\text{max}} \quad \text{otherwise}
\end{align*}
\]

(\text{where } t = \frac{-z_r}{||d||}), \text{ an intersection candidate exists.}

The determination of this condition is performed in an implementation specific manner, and may be performed with floating point operations. Due to the complexity and number of operations involved, inaccuracies are expected, particularly as the scale of values involved begins to diverge. Implementations should take efforts to maintain as much precision as possible.

Note

The bounds of the AABB including all points internal to the bound implies that a ray started within the AABB will hit that AABB.

Figure 23. Ray intersection candidate

The determination of this condition is performed in an implementation specific manner, and may be performed with floating point operations. Due to the complexity and number of operations involved, inaccuracies are expected, particularly as the scale of values involved begins to diverge. Implementations should take efforts to maintain as much precision as possible.

Another likely case is when the origin of a ray is set to a position on a previously intersected surface, and its \( t_{\text{min}} \) is zero or near zero; an intersection may be detected on the emitting surface. This case can usually be mitigated by offsetting \( t_{\text{min}} \) slightly.

In the case of AABB geometries, implementations may increase their size in an acceleration structure in order to mitigate precision issues. This may result in false positive intersections being reported to the application.

For triangle intersection candidates, the \( b \) and \( c \) barycentric coordinates on the triangle where the above condition is met are made available to future shading. If the ray was traced with
OpTraceRayKHR, these values are available as a vector of 2 32-bit floating point values in the HitAttributeKHR storage class.

Once an intersection candidate is determined, it proceeds through the following operations, in order:

1. Ray Intersection Culling
2. Ray Intersection Confirmation
3. Ray Closest Hit Determination
4. Ray Result Determination

The sections below describe the exact details of these tests. There is no ordering guarantee between operations performed on different intersection candidates.

### 33.1.1. Watertightness

For a set of triangles with identical transforms, within a single instance:

- Any set of two or more triangles where all triangles have one vertex with an identical position value, that vertex is a *shared vertex*.
- Any set of two triangles with two shared vertices that were specified in the same *winding order* in each triangle have a *shared edge* defined by those vertices.

A *closed fan* is a set of three or more triangles where:

- All triangles in the set have the same shared vertex as one of their vertices.
- All edges that include the above vertex are shared edges.
- All above shared edges are shared by exactly two triangles from the set.
- No two triangles in the set intersect, except at shared edges.
- Every triangle in the set is joined to every other triangle in the set by a series of the above shared edges.

Implementations *should* not double-hit or miss when a ray intersects a shared edge, or a shared vertex of a closed fan.

### 33.2. Ray Intersection Culling

Candidate intersections go through several phases of culling before confirmation as an actual hit. There is no particular ordering dependency between the different culling operations.

#### 33.2.1. Ray Primitive Culling

If the rayTraversalPrimitiveCulling or rayQuery features are enabled, the SkipTrianglesKHR and SkipAABBsKHR ray flags can be specified when tracing a ray.

If SkipTrianglesKHR was included in the Ray Flags operand of the ray trace instruction, and the
intersection is with a triangle primitive, the intersection is dropped, and no further processing of
this intersection occurs. If VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_SKIP_TRIANGLES_BIT_KHR was included in
the pipeline, traversal with OpTraceRayKHR calls will all behave as if SkipTrianglesKHR was included in
its Ray Flags operand.

If SkipAABBsKHR was included in the Ray Flags operand of the ray trace instruction, and the
intersection is with an AABB primitive, the intersection is dropped, and no further processing of
this intersection occurs. If VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_SKIP_AABBS_BIT_KHR was included in the
pipeline, traversal with OpTraceRayKHR calls will all behave as if SkipAABBsKHR was included in its Ray
Flags operand.

33.2.2. Ray Mask Culling

Instances can be made invisible to particular rays based on the value of
VkAccelerationStructureInstanceKHR::mask used to add that instance to a top-level acceleration
structure, and the Cull Mask parameter used to trace the ray.

For the instance which is intersected, if mask & Cull Mask == 0, the intersection is dropped, and no
further processing occurs.

33.2.3. Ray Face Culling

As in polygon rasterization, one of the stages of ray traversal is to determine if a triangle primitive
is back- or front-facing, and primitives can be culled based on that facing.

If the intersection candidate is with an AABB primitive, this operation is skipped.

**Determination**

When a ray intersects a triangle primitive, the order that vertices are specified for the polygon
affects whether the ray intersects the front or back face. Front or back facing is determined in the
same way as they are for rasterization, based on the sign of the polygon's area but using the ray
space coordinates instead of framebuffer coordinates. One way to compute this area is:

\[ a = -\frac{1}{2} \sum_{i=0}^{n-1} x_i^{e_1} y_i^{e_1} - x_i^{e_1} y_i \]

where \(x_i\) and \(y_i\) are the x and y ray space coordinates of the \(i\)th vertex of the \(n\)-vertex polygon
(vertices are numbered starting at zero for the purposes of this computation) and \(i \oplus 1\) is \((i + 1) \mod n\).

By default, if \(a\) is negative then the intersection is with the front face of the triangle, otherwise it is
with the back face. If VK_GEOMETRY_INSTANCE_TRIANGLE_FLIP_FACING_BIT_KHR is included in
VkAccelerationStructureInstanceKHR::flags for the instance containing the intersected triangle,
this determination is reversed. Additionally, if \(a\) is 0, the intersection candidate is treated as not
intersecting with any face, irrespective of the sign.
In a left-handed coordinate system, an intersection will be with the front face of a triangle if the vertices of the triangle, as defined in index order, appear from the ray’s perspective in a clockwise rotation order. VK_GEOMETRY_INSTANCE_TRIANGLE_FLIP_FACING_BIT_KHR was previously annotated as VK_GEOMETRY_INSTANCE_TRIANGLE_FRONT_COUNTERCLOCKWISE_BIT_KHR because of this.

If the ray was traced with OpTraceRayKHR, the HitKindKHR built-in is set to HitKindFrontFacingTriangleKHR if the intersection is with front-facing geometry, and HitKindBackFacingTriangleKHR if the intersection is with back-facing geometry, for shader stages considering this intersection.

If the ray was traced with OpRayQueryProceedKHR, OpRayQueryGetIntersectionFrontFaceKHR will return true for intersection candidates with front faces, or false for back faces.

Culling
If CullBackFacingTrianglesKHR was included in the Ray Flags parameter of the ray trace instruction, and the intersection is determined as with the back face of a triangle primitive, the intersection is dropped, and no further processing of this intersection occurs.

If CullFrontFacingTrianglesKHR was included in the Ray Flags parameter of the ray trace instruction, and the intersection is determined as with the front face of a triangle primitive, the intersection is dropped, and no further processing of this intersection occurs.

This culling is disabled if VK_GEOMETRY_INSTANCE_TRIANGLE_FACING_CULL_DISABLE_BIT_KHR was included in VkAccelerationStructureInstanceKHR::flags for the instance which the intersected geometry belongs to.

Intersection candidates that have not intersected with any face (a == 0) are unconditionally culled, irrespective of ray flags and geometry instance flags.

33.2.4. Ray Opacity Culling

Each geometry in the acceleration structure may be considered either opaque or not. Opaque geometries continue through traversal as normal, whereas non-opaque geometries need to be either confirmed or discarded by shader code. Intersection candidates can also be culled based on their opacity.

Determination
Each individual intersection candidate is initially determined as opaque if VK_GEOMETRY_OPAQUE_BIT_KHR was included in the VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR::flags when the geometry it intersected with was built, otherwise it is considered non-opaque.

If the intersection candidate was generated by an intersection shader, the intersection is initially considered to have opacity matching the AABB candidate that it was generated from.

However, this opacity can be overridden when it is built into an instance. Setting VK_GEOMETRY_INSTANCE_FORCE_OPAQUE_BIT_KHR in VkAccelerationStructureInstanceKHR::flags will force all geometries in the instance to be considered opaque. Similarly,
**VK_GEOMETRY_INSTANCE_FORCE_NO_OPAQUE_BIT_KHR** will force all geometries in the instance to be considered non-opaque.

This can again be overridden by including **OpaqueKHR** or **NoOpaqueKHR** in the **Ray Flags** parameter when tracing a ray. **OpaqueKHR** forces all geometries to behave as if they are opaque, regardless of their build parameters. Similarly, **NoOpaqueKHR** forces all geometries to behave as if they are non-opaque.

If the ray was traced with **OpRayQueryProceedKHR**, to determine the opacity of AABB intersection candidates, **OpRayQueryGetIntersectionCandidateAABBOpaqueKHR** can be used. This instruction will return **true** for opaque intersection candidates, and **false** for non-opaque intersection candidates.

**Culling**

If **CullOpaqueKHR** is included in the **Ray Flags** parameter when tracing a ray, an intersection with a geometry that is considered opaque is dropped, and no further processing occurs.

If **CullNoOpaqueKHR** is included in the **Ray Flags** parameter when tracing a ray, an intersection with a geometry that is considered non-opaque is dropped, and no further processing occurs.

### 33.3. Ray Intersection Confirmation

Depending on the opacity of intersected geometry and whether it is a triangle or an AABB, candidate intersections are further processed to determine the eventual hit result. Candidates generated from AABB intersections run through the same confirmation process as triangle hits.

#### 33.3.1. AABB Intersection Candidates

For an intersection candidate with an AABB geometry generated by **Ray Intersection Candidate Determination**, shader code is executed to determine whether any hits should be reported to the traversal infrastructure; no further processing of this intersection candidate occurs. The occurrence of an AABB intersection candidate does not guarantee the ray intersects the primitive bounds. To avoid propagating false intersections the application should verify the intersection candidate before reporting any hits.

If the ray was traced with **OpTraceRayKHR**, an **intersection shader** is invoked from the **Shader Binding Table** according to the specified indexing for the intersected geometry. If this shader calls **OpReportIntersectionKHR**, a new intersection candidate is generated as described below. If the intersection shader is **VK_SHADER_UNUSED_KHR** (which is only allowed for a zero shader group) then no further processing of the intersection candidate occurs.

Each new candidate generated as a result of this processing is a generated intersection candidate that intersects the AABB geometry, with a t value equal to the Hit parameter of the **OpReportIntersectionKHR** instruction. The new generated candidate is then independently run through **Ray Intersection Confirmation** as a generated intersection.

If the ray was traced with **OpRayQueryProceedKHR**, control is returned to the shader which executed **OpRayQueryProceedKHR**, returning **true**. The resulting ray query has a candidate intersection type of **RayQueryCandidateIntersectionAABBKHR**, **OpRayQueryGenerateIntersectionKHR** can be called to commit a new intersection candidate with committed intersection type of...
RayQueryCommittedIntersectionGeneratedKHR. Further ray query processing can be continued by executing OpRayQueryProceedKHR with the same ray query, or intersection can be terminated with OpRayQueryTerminateKHR. Unlike rays traced with OpTraceRayKHR, candidates generated in this way skip generated intersection candidate confirmation; applications should make this determination before generating the intersection.

This operation may be executed multiple times for the same intersection candidate.

### 33.3.2. Triangle and Generated Intersection Candidates

For triangle and generated intersection candidates, additional shader code may be executed based on the intersection’s opacity.

If the intersection is opaque, the candidate is immediately confirmed as a valid hit and passes to the next stage of processing.

For non-opaque intersection candidates, shader code is executed to determine whether a hit occurred or not.

If the ray was traced with OpTraceRayKHR, an any-hit shader is invoked from the Shader Binding Table according to the specified indexing. If this shader calls OpIgnoreIntersectionKHR, the candidate is dropped and no further processing of the candidate occurs. If the any-hit shader identified is VK_SHADER_UNUSED_KHR, the candidate is immediately confirmed as a valid hit and passes to the next stage of processing.

If the ray was traced with OpRayQueryProceedKHR, control is returned to the shader which executed OpRayQueryProceedKHR, returning true. As only triangle candidates participate in this operation with ray queries, the resulting candidate intersection type is always RayQueryCandidateIntersectionTriangleKHR. OpRayQueryConfirmIntersectionKHR can be called on the ray query to confirm the candidate as a hit with committed intersection type of RayQueryCommittedIntersectionTriangleKHR. Further ray query processing can be continued by executing OpRayQueryProceedKHR with the same ray query, or intersection can be terminated with OpRayQueryTerminateKHR. If OpRayQueryConfirmIntersectionKHR has not been executed, the candidate is dropped and no further processing of the candidate occurs.

This operation may be executed multiple times for the same intersection candidate unless VK_GEOMETRY_NO_DUPLICATE_ANY_HIT_INVOCATION_BIT_KHR was specified for the intersected geometry.

### 33.4. Ray Closest Hit Determination

Unless the ray was traced with the TerminateOnFirstHitKHR ray flag, the implementation must track the closest confirmed hit until all geometries have been tested and either confirmed or dropped.

After an intersection candidate is confirmed, its t value is compared to \( t_{\text{max}} \) to determine which intersection is closer, where \( t \) is the parametric distance along the ray at which the intersection occurred.

- If \( t < t_{\text{max}} \), \( t_{\text{max}} \) is set to \( t \) and the candidate is set as the current closest hit.
- If \( t > t_{\text{max}} \), the candidate is dropped and no further processing of that candidate occurs.
• If \( t = t_{\text{max}} \), the candidate may be set as the current closest hit or dropped.

If \text{TerminateOnFirstHitKHR} was included in the \text{Ray Flags} used to trace the ray, once the first hit is confirmed, the ray trace is terminated.

### 33.5. Ray Result Determination

Once all candidates have finished processing the prior stages, or if the ray is forcibly terminated, the final result of the ray trace is determined.

If a closest hit result was identified by \text{Ray Closest Hit Determination}, a closest hit has occurred; otherwise the final result is a miss.

For rays traced with \text{OpTraceRayKHR}, if a closest hit result was identified, a closest hit shader is invoked from the \text{Shader Binding Table} according to the specified indexing for the intersected geometry. Control returns to the shader that executed \text{OpTraceRayKHR} once this shader returns. This shader is skipped if either the ray flags included \text{SkipClosestHitShaderKHR}, or if the closest hit shader identified is \text{VK_SHADER_UNUSED_KHR}.

For rays traced with \text{OpTraceRayKHR} where no hit result was identified, the miss shader identified by the \text{Miss Index} parameter of \text{OpTraceRayKHR} is invoked. Control returns to the shader that executed \text{OpTraceRayKHR} once this shader returns. This shader is skipped if the miss shader identified is \text{VK_SHADER_UNUSED_KHR}.

If the ray was traced with \text{OpRayQueryProceedKHR}, control is returned to the shader which executed \text{OpRayQueryProceedKHR}, returning \text{false}. If a closest hit was identified by \text{Ray Closest Hit Determination}, the ray query will now have a committed intersection type of \text{RayQueryCommittedIntersectionGeneratedKHR} or \text{RayQueryCommittedIntersectionTriangleKHR}. If no closest hit was identified, the committed intersection type will be \text{RayQueryCommittedIntersectionNoneKHR}.

No further processing of a ray query occurs after this result is determined.
Chapter 34. Ray Tracing

Ray tracing uses a separate rendering pipeline from both the graphics and compute pipelines (see Ray Tracing Pipeline).

![Ray Tracing Pipeline](image)

Figure 24. Ray tracing pipeline execution

Caption

Interaction between the different shader stages in the ray tracing pipeline

Within the ray tracing pipeline, OpTraceRayKHR can be called to perform a **ray traversal** that invokes the various ray tracing shader stages during its execution. The relationship between the ray tracing pipeline object and the geometries present in the acceleration structure traversed is passed into the ray tracing command in a VkBuffer object known as a **shader binding table**. OpExecuteCallableKHR can also be used in ray tracing pipelines to invoke a **callable shader**.

During execution, control alternates between scheduling and other operations. The scheduling functionality is implementation-specific and is responsible for workload execution. The shader stages are programmable. **Traversal**, which refers to the process of traversing acceleration structures to find potential intersections of rays with geometry, is fixed function.

The programmable portions of the pipeline are exposed in a single-ray programming model, with each invocation handling one ray at a time. Memory operations can be synchronized using standard memory barriers. The Workgroup scope and variables with a storage class of Workgroup must not be used in the ray tracing pipeline.

### 34.1. Shader Call Instructions

A **shader call** is an instruction which may cause execution to continue elsewhere by creating one or more invocations that execute a different shader stage.

The shader call instructions are:

- **OpTraceRayKHR** which may invoke intersection, any-hit, closest hit, or miss shaders,
- **OpReportIntersectionKHR** which may invoke any-hit shaders, and
- **OpExecuteCallableKHR** which will invoke a callable shader.
Pipeline trace ray instructions can be used recursively; invoked shaders can themselves execute pipeline trace ray instructions, to a maximum depth defined by the maxRayRecursionDepth limit.

Shaders directly invoked from the API always have a recursion depth of 0; each shader executed by a pipeline trace ray instruction has a recursion depth one higher than the recursion depth of the shader which invoked it. Applications must not invoke a shader with a recursion depth greater than the value of maxPipelineRayRecursionDepth specified in the pipeline.

There is no explicit recursion limit for other shader call instructions which may recurse (e.g. OpExecuteCallableKHR) but there is an upper bound determined by the stack size.

An invocation repack instruction is a ray tracing shader call instruction where the implementation may change the set of invocations that are executing. When a repack instruction is encountered, the invocation is suspended and a new invocation begins and executes the instruction. After executing the repack instruction (which may result in other ray tracing shader stages executing) the new invocation ends and the original invocation is resumed, but it may be resumed in a different subgroup or at a different SubgroupLocalInvocationId within the same subgroup. When a subset of invocations in a subgroup execute the invocation repack instruction, those that do not execute it remain in the same subgroup at the same SubgroupLocalInvocationId.

The OpTraceRayKHR, OpReportIntersectionKHR, and OpExecuteCallableKHR instructions are invocation repack instructions.

When a ray tracing shader executes a dynamic instance of an invocation repack instruction which results in another ray tracing shader being invoked, their instructions are related by shader-call-order.

For ray tracing invocations that are shader-call-related:

- memory operations on StorageBuffer, Image, and ShaderRecordBufferKHR storage classes can be synchronized using the ShaderCallKHR scope.
- the CallableDataKHR, IncomingCallableDataKHR, RayPayloadKHR, HitAttributeKHR, and IncomingRayPayloadKHR storage classes are system-synchronized and no application availability and visibility operations are required.
- memory operations within a single invocation before and after the invocation repack instruction are ordered by program-order and do not require explicit synchronization.

34.2. Ray Tracing Commands

Ray tracing commands provoke work in the ray tracing pipeline. Ray tracing commands are recorded into a command buffer and when executed by a queue will produce work that executes according to the currently bound ray tracing pipeline. A ray tracing pipeline must be bound to a command buffer before any ray tracing commands are recorded in that command buffer.

To dispatch ray tracing use:
```c
void vkCmdTraceRaysKHR(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    const VkStridedDeviceAddressRegionKHR* pRaygenShaderBindingTable,
    const VkStridedDeviceAddressRegionKHR* pMissShaderBindingTable,
    const VkStridedDeviceAddressRegionKHR* pHitShaderBindingTable,
    const VkStridedDeviceAddressRegionKHR* pCallableShaderBindingTable,
    uint32_t width,
    uint32_t height,
    uint32_t depth);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
- `pRaygenShaderBindingTable` is a `VkStridedDeviceAddressRegionKHR` that holds the shader binding table data for the ray generation shader stage.
- `pMissShaderBindingTable` is a `VkStridedDeviceAddressRegionKHR` that holds the shader binding table data for the miss shader stage.
- `pHitShaderBindingTable` is a `VkStridedDeviceAddressRegionKHR` that holds the shader binding table data for the hit shader stage.
- `pCallableShaderBindingTable` is a `VkStridedDeviceAddressRegionKHR` that holds the shader binding table data for the callable shader stage.
- `width` is the width of the ray trace query dimensions.
- `height` is height of the ray trace query dimensions.
- `depth` is depth of the ray trace query dimensions.

When the command is executed, a ray generation group of `width × height × depth` rays is assembled.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-magFilter-04553**
  If a `VkSampler` created with `magFilter` or `minFilter` equal to `VK_FILTER_LINEAR` and `compareEnable` equal to `VK_FALSE` is used to sample a `VkImageView` as a result of this command, then the image view's format features **must** contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT`.

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-mipmapMode-04770**
  If a `VkSampler` created with `mipmapMode` equal to `VK_SAMPLER_MIPMAP_MODE_LINEAR` and `compareEnable` equal to `VK_FALSE` is used to sample a `VkImageView` as a result of this command, then the image view's format features **must** contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT`.

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-None-02691**
  If a `VkImageView` is accessed using atomic operations as a result of this command, then the image view's format features **must** contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_ATOMIC_BIT`.

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-None-02697**
  For each set $n$ that is statically used by the `VkPipeline` bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command, a descriptor set **must** have been bound to $n$ at the same pipeline bind point, with a `VkPipelineLayout` that is compatible for set $n$, with the `VkPipelineLayout` used to create the current `VkPipeline`, as described in Pipeline Layout Compatibility.

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-None-02698**
  For each push constant that is statically used by the `VkPipeline` bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command, a push constant value **must** have been set for the same pipeline bind point, with a `VkPipelineLayout` that is compatible for push constants, with the `VkPipelineLayout` used to create the current `VkPipeline`, as described in Pipeline Layout Compatibility.

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-None-02699**
  Descriptors in each bound descriptor set, specified via `vkCmdBindDescriptorSets`, **must** be valid if they are statically used by the `VkPipeline` bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command.

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-None-02700**
  A valid pipeline **must** be bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command.

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-commandBuffer-02701**
  If the `VkPipeline` object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command requires any dynamic state, that state **must** have been set or inherited (if the `[VK_NV_inherited_viewport_scissor]` extension is enabled) for `commandBuffer`, and done so after any previously bound pipeline with the corresponding state not specified as dynamic.

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-None-02859**
  There **must** not have been any calls to dynamic state setting commands for any state not specified as dynamic in the `VkPipeline` object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command, since that pipeline was bound.

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-None-02702**
  If the `VkPipeline` object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a...
**VkSampler** object that uses unnormalized coordinates, that sampler must not be used to sample from any **VkImage** with a **VkImageView** of the type **VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_3D**, **VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE**, **VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_1D_ARRAY**, **VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D_ARRAY** or **VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE_ARRAY**, in any shader stage

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-None-02703**
  If the **VkPipeline** object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a **VkSampler** object that uses unnormalized coordinates, that sampler must not be used with any of the SPIR-V **OpImageSample* or OpImageSparseSample* instructions with ImplicitLod, Dref or Proj in their name, in any shader stage

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-None-02704**
  If the **VkPipeline** object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a **VkSampler** object that uses unnormalized coordinates, that sampler must not be used with any of the SPIR-V **OpImageSample* or OpImageSparseSample* instructions that includes a LOD bias or any offset values, in any shader stage

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-None-02705**
  If the robust buffer access feature is not enabled, and if the **VkPipeline** object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a uniform buffer, it must not access values outside of the range of the buffer as specified in the descriptor set bound to the same pipeline bind point

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-None-02706**
  If the robust buffer access feature is not enabled, and if the **VkPipeline** object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a storage buffer, it must not access values outside of the range of the buffer as specified in the descriptor set bound to the same pipeline bind point

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-OpImageWrite-04469**
  If a **VkBufferView** is accessed using **OpImageWrite** as a result of this command, then the Type of the Texel operand of that instruction must have at least as many components as the buffer view’s format

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-None-03429**
  Any shader group handle referenced by this call must have been queried from the currently bound ray tracing pipeline

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-maxPipelineRayRecursionDepth-03679**
  This command must not cause a shader call instruction to be executed from a shader invocation with a recursion depth greater than the value of maxPipelineRayRecursionDepth used to create the bound ray tracing pipeline

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-pRayGenShaderBindingTable-03680**
  If the buffer from which **pRayGenShaderBindingTable->deviceAddress** was queried is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single **VkDeviceMemory** object
The buffer from which the `pRayGenShaderBindingTable->deviceAddress` is queried must have been created with the `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_SHADER_BINDING_TABLE_BIT_KHR` usage flag

`pRayGenShaderBindingTable->deviceAddress` must be a multiple of `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR::shaderGroupBaseAlignment`

The size member of `pRayGenShaderBindingTable` must be equal to its stride member

If the buffer from which `pMissShaderBindingTable->deviceAddress` was queried is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object

The buffer from which the `pMissShaderBindingTable->deviceAddress` is queried must have been created with the `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_SHADER_BINDING_TABLE_BIT_KHR` usage flag

`pMissShaderBindingTable->deviceAddress` must be a multiple of `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR::shaderGroupBaseAlignment`

The stride member of `pMissShaderBindingTable` must be a multiple of `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR::shaderGroupHandleAlignment`

The stride member of `pMissShaderBindingTable` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR::maxShaderGroupStride`

If the buffer from which `pHitShaderBindingTable->deviceAddress` was queried is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object

The buffer from which the `pHitShaderBindingTable->deviceAddress` is queried must have been created with the `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_SHADER_BINDING_TABLE_BIT_KHR` usage flag

`pHitShaderBindingTable->deviceAddress` must be a multiple of `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR::shaderGroupBaseAlignment`

The stride member of `pHitShaderBindingTable` must be a multiple of `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR::shaderGroupHandleAlignment`

The stride member of `pHitShaderBindingTable` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR::maxShaderGroupStride`

If the buffer from which `pCallableShaderBindingTable->deviceAddress` was queried is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object
• VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-pCallableShaderBindingTable-03692
  The buffer from which the `pCallableShaderBindingTable->deviceAddress` is queried must have been created with the `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_SHADER_BINDING_TABLE_BIT_KHR` usage flag.

• VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-pCallableShaderBindingTable-03693
  `pCallableShaderBindingTable->deviceAddress` must be a multiple of `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR::shaderGroupBaseAlignment`

• VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-stride-03694
  The `stride` member of `pCallableShaderBindingTable` must be a multiple of `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR::shaderGroupHandleAlignment`

• VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-stride-04041
  The `stride` member of `pCallableShaderBindingTable` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR::maxShaderGroupStride`

• VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-flags-03696
  If the currently bound ray tracing pipeline was created with flags that included `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_CLOSEST_HIT_SHADERS_BIT_KHR`, the `deviceAddress` member of `pHitShaderBindingTable` must not be zero.

• VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-flags-03697
  If the currently bound ray tracing pipeline was created with flags that included `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_INTERSECTION_SHADERS_BIT_KHR`, the `deviceAddress` member of `pHitShaderBindingTable` must not be zero.

• VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-flags-03511
  If the currently bound ray tracing pipeline was created with flags that included `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_MISS_SHADERS_BIT_KHR`, the shader group handle identified by `pMissShaderBindingTable` must not be set to zero.

• VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-flags-03512
  If the currently bound ray tracing pipeline was created with flags that included `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_ANY_HIT_SHADERS_BIT_KHR`, entries in `pHitShaderBindingTable` accessed as a result of this command in order to execute an any-hit shader must not be set to zero.

• VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-flags-03513
  If the currently bound ray tracing pipeline was created with flags that included `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_CLOSEST_HIT_SHADERS_BIT_KHR`, entries in `pHitShaderBindingTable` accessed as a result of this command in order to execute a closest hit shader must not be set to zero.

• VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-flags-03514
  If the currently bound ray tracing pipeline was created with flags that included `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_INTERSECTION_SHADERS_BIT_KHR`, entries in `pHitShaderBindingTable` accessed as a result of this command in order to execute an intersection shader must not be set to zero.

• VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-pHitShaderBindingTable-04735
  Any non-zero hit shader group entries in `pHitShaderBindingTable` accessed by this call from a geometry with a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR` must have been...
Any non-zero hit shader group entries in `pHitShaderBindingTable` accessed by this call from a geometry with a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_AABBS_KHR` **must** have been created with `VKRAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_TYPE_PROCEDURAL_HIT_GROUP_KHR`.

`commandBuffer` **must not** be a protected command buffer.

`width` **must** be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxComputeWorkGroupCount[0] × VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxComputeWorkGroupSize[0]`.

`height` **must** be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxComputeWorkGroupCount[1] × VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxComputeWorkGroupSize[1]`.


`width` × `height` × `depth` **must** be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR::maxRayDispatchInvocationCount`.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-commandBuffer-parameter**
  
  `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-pRaygenShaderBindingTable-parameter**
  
  `pRaygenShaderBindingTable` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkStridedDeviceAddressRegionKHR` structure

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-pMissShaderBindingTable-parameter**
  
  `pMissShaderBindingTable` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkStridedDeviceAddressRegionKHR` structure

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-pHitShaderBindingTable-parameter**
  
  `pHitShaderBindingTable` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkStridedDeviceAddressRegionKHR` structure

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-pCallableShaderBindingTable-parameter**
  
  `pCallableShaderBindingTable` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkStridedDeviceAddressRegionKHR` structure

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-commandBuffer-recording**
  
  `commandBuffer` must be in the recording state

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-commandBuffer-cmdpool**

  The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support compute operations

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysKHR-renderpass**

  This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized

- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The `VkStridedDeviceAddressRegionKHR` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkStridedDeviceAddressRegionKHR {
    VkDeviceAddress deviceAddress;
    VkDeviceSize stride;
    VkDeviceSize size;
} VkStridedDeviceAddressRegionKHR;

- **deviceAddress** is the device address (as returned by the `vkGetBufferDeviceAddress` command) at which the region starts, or zero if the region is unused.
- **stride** is the byte stride between consecutive elements.
- **size** is the size in bytes of the region starting at `deviceAddress`.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkStridedDeviceAddressRegionKHR-size-04631**
  If `size` is not zero, all addresses between `deviceAddress` and `deviceAddress + size - 1` must be in the buffer device address range of the same buffer

- **VUID-VkStridedDeviceAddressRegionKHR-size-04632**
  If `size` is not zero, `stride` must be less than or equal to the size of the buffer from which `deviceAddress` was queried

To dispatch ray tracing, with some parameters sourced on the device, use:

```
// Provided by VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline
void vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    const VkStridedDeviceAddressRegionKHR* pRaygenShaderBindingTable,
    const VkStridedDeviceAddressRegionKHR* pMissShaderBindingTable,
    const VkStridedDeviceAddressRegionKHR* pHitShaderBindingTable,
    const VkStridedDeviceAddressRegionKHR* pCallableShaderBindingTable,
    VkDeviceAddress indirectDeviceAddress);
```

- **commandBuffer** is the command buffer into which the command will be recorded.
- **pRaygenShaderBindingTable** is a `VkStridedDeviceAddressRegionKHR` that holds the shader binding table data for the ray generation shader stage.
- **pMissShaderBindingTable** is a `VkStridedDeviceAddressRegionKHR` that holds the shader binding table data for the miss shader stage.
- **pHitShaderBindingTable** is a `VkStridedDeviceAddressRegionKHR` that holds the shader binding table data for the hit shader stage.
- **pCallableShaderBindingTable** is a `VkStridedDeviceAddressRegionKHR` that holds the shader binding table data for the callable shader stage.
- **indirectDeviceAddress** is a buffer device address which is a pointer to a `VkTraceRaysIndirectCommandKHR` structure containing the trace ray parameters.
vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR behaves similarly to vkCmdTraceRaysKHR except that the ray trace query dimensions are read by the device from indirectDeviceAddress during execution.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR-magFilter-04553**
  If a `VkSampler` created with `magFilter` or `minFilter` equal to `VK_FILTER_LINEAR` and `compareEnable` equal to `VK_FALSE` is used to sample a `VkImageView` as a result of this command, then the image view's format features **must** contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT`

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR-mipmapMode-04770**
  If a `VkSampler` created with `mipmapMode` equal to `VK_SAMPLER_MIPMAP_MODE_LINEAR` and `compareEnable` equal to `VK_FALSE` is used to sample a `VkImageView` as a result of this command, then the image view's format features **must** contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT`

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR-None-02691**
  If a `VkImageView` is accessed using atomic operations as a result of this command, then the image view's format features **must** contain `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_ATOMIC_BIT`

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR-None-02697**
  For each set $n$ that is statically used by the `VkPipeline` bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command, a descriptor set **must** have been bound to $n$ at the same pipeline bind point, with a `VkPipelineLayout` that is compatible for set $n$, with the `VkPipelineLayout` used to create the current `VkPipeline`, as described in Pipeline Layout Compatibility

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR-None-02698**
  For each push constant that is statically used by the `VkPipeline` bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command, a push constant value **must** have been set for the same pipeline bind point, with a `VkPipelineLayout` that is compatible for push constants, with the `VkPipelineLayout` used to create the current `VkPipeline`, as described in Pipeline Layout Compatibility

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR-None-02699**
  Descriptors in each bound descriptor set, specified via `vkCmdBindDescriptorSets`, **must** be valid if they are statically used by the `VkPipeline` bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR-None-02700**
  A valid pipeline **must** be bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR-commandBuffer-02701**
  If the `VkPipeline` object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command requires any dynamic state, that state **must** have been set or inherited (if the `[VK_NV_inherited_viewport_scissor]` extension is enabled) for `commandBuffer`, and done so after any previously bound pipeline with the corresponding state not specified as dynamic

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR-None-02859**
  There **must not** have been any calls to dynamic state setting commands for any state not specified as dynamic in the `VkPipeline` object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command, since that pipeline was bound

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR-None-02702**
  If the `VkPipeline` object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a
A `VkSampler` object that uses unnormalized coordinates, that sampler **must** not be used to sample from any `VkImage` with a `VkImageView` of the type `VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_3D`, `VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE`, `VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_1D_ARRAY`, `VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_2D_ARRAY` or `VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE_ARRAY` in any shader stage.

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR-None-02703**
  If the `VkPipeline` object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a `VkSampler` object that uses unnormalized coordinates, that sampler **must** not be used with any of the SPIR-V `OpImageSample*` or `OpImageSparseSample*` instructions with `ImplicitLod`, `Dref` or `Proj` in their name, in any shader stage.

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR-None-02704**
  If the `VkPipeline` object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a `VkSampler` object that uses unnormalized coordinates, that sampler **must** not be used with any of the SPIR-V `OpImageSample*` or `OpImageSparseSample*` instructions that includes a LOD bias or any offset values, in any shader stage.

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR-None-02705**
  If the `robust buffer access` feature is not enabled, and if the `VkPipeline` object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a uniform buffer, it **must** not access values outside of the range of the buffer as specified in the descriptor set bound to the same pipeline bind point.

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR-None-02706**
  If the `robust buffer access` feature is not enabled, and if the `VkPipeline` object bound to the pipeline bind point used by this command accesses a storage buffer, it **must** not access values outside of the range of the buffer as specified in the descriptor set bound to the same pipeline bind point.

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR-None-04115**
  If a `VkImageView` is accessed using `OpImageWrite` as a result of this command, then the `Type` of the `Texel` operand of that instruction **must** have at least as many components as the image view’s format.

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR-OpImageWrite-04469**
  If a `VkBufferView` is accessed using `OpImageWrite` as a result of this command, then the `Type` of the `Texel` operand of that instruction **must** have at least as many components as the buffer view’s format.

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR-None-03429**
  Any shader group handle referenced by this call **must** have been queried from the currently bound ray tracing pipeline.

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR-maxPipelineRayRecursionDepth-03679**
  This command **must** not cause a shader call instruction to be executed from a shader invocation with a `recursion depth` greater than the value of `maxPipelineRayRecursionDepth` used to create the bound ray tracing pipeline.

- **VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR-pRayGenShaderBindingTable-03680**
  If the buffer from which `pRayGenShaderBindingTable->deviceAddress` was queried is non-sparse then it **must** be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object.
The buffer from which the `pRayGenShaderBindingTable->deviceAddress` is queried must have been created with the `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_SHADER_BINDING_TABLE_BIT_KHR` usage flag.

The `pRayGenShaderBindingTable->deviceAddress` must be a multiple of `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR::shaderGroupBaseAlignment`.

The `size` member of `pRayGenShaderBindingTable` must be equal to its `stride` member.

If the buffer from which `pMissShaderBindingTable->deviceAddress` was queried is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object.

The buffer from which the `pMissShaderBindingTable->deviceAddress` is queried must have been created with the `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_SHADER_BINDING_TABLE_BIT_KHR` usage flag.

The `pMissShaderBindingTable->deviceAddress` must be a multiple of `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR::shaderGroupBaseAlignment`.

The `stride` member of `pMissShaderBindingTable` must be a multiple of `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR::shaderGroupHandleAlignment`.

The `stride` member of `pMissShaderBindingTable` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR::maxShaderGroupStride`.

If the buffer from which `pHitShaderBindingTable->deviceAddress` was queried is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object.

The buffer from which the `pHitShaderBindingTable->deviceAddress` is queried must have been created with the `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_SHADER_BINDING_TABLE_BIT_KHR` usage flag.

The `pHitShaderBindingTable->deviceAddress` must be a multiple of `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR::shaderGroupBaseAlignment`.

The `stride` member of `pHitShaderBindingTable` must be a multiple of `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR::shaderGroupHandleAlignment`.

The `stride` member of `pHitShaderBindingTable` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR::maxShaderGroupStride`.

If the buffer from which `pCallableShaderBindingTable->deviceAddress` was queried is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object.
The buffer from which the `pCallableShaderBindingTable->deviceAddress` is queried must have been created with the `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_SHADER_BINDING_TABLE_BIT_KHR` usage flag.

`pCallableShaderBindingTable->deviceAddress` must be a multiple of `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR::shaderGroupBaseAlignment`.

The `stride` member of `pCallableShaderBindingTable` must be a multiple of `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR::shaderGroupHandleAlignment`.

The `stride` member of `pCallableShaderBindingTable` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR::maxShaderGroupStride`.

If the currently bound ray tracing pipeline was created with flags that included `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_CLOSEST_HIT_SHADERS_BIT_KHR`, the `deviceAddress` member of `pHitShaderBindingTable` must not be zero.

If the currently bound ray tracing pipeline was created with flags that included `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_INTERSECTION_SHADERS_BIT_KHR`, the `deviceAddress` member of `pHitShaderBindingTable` must not be zero.

If the currently bound ray tracing pipeline was created with flags that included `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_MISS_SHADERS_BIT_KHR`, the shader group handle identified by `pMissShaderBindingTable` must not be set to zero.

If the currently bound ray tracing pipeline was created with flags that included `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_ANY_HIT_SHADERS_BIT_KHR`, entries in `pHitShaderBindingTable` accessed as a result of this command in order to execute an any-hit shader must not be set to zero.

If the currently bound ray tracing pipeline was created with flags that included `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_CLOSEST_HIT_SHADERS_BIT_KHR`, entries in `pHitShaderBindingTable` accessed as a result of this command in order to execute a closest hit shader must not be set to zero.

If the currently bound ray tracing pipeline was created with flags that included `VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_INTERSECTION_SHADERS_BIT_KHR`, entries in `pHitShaderBindingTable` accessed as a result of this command in order to execute an intersection shader must not be set to zero.

Any non-zero hit shader group entries in `pHitShaderBindingTable` accessed by this call from a geometry with a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_TRIANGLES_KHR` must have been...
Any non-zero hit shader group entries in `pHitShaderBindingTable` accessed by this call from a geometry with a `geometryType` of `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_AABBS_KHR` must have been created with `VK_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_TYPE_PROCEDURAL_HIT_GROUP_KHR`.

If the buffer from which `indirectDeviceAddress` was queried is non-sparse then it must be bound completely and contiguously to a single `VkDeviceMemory` object.

The buffer from which `indirectDeviceAddress` was queried must have been created with the `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_INDIRECT_BUFFER_BIT` bit set.

`indirectDeviceAddress` must be a multiple of 4.

`commandBuffer` must not be a protected command buffer.

All device addresses between `indirectDeviceAddress` and `indirectDeviceAddress + sizeof(VkTraceRaysIndirectCommandKHR) - 1` must be in the buffer device address range of the same buffer.

The `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelineFeaturesKHR::rayTracingPipelineTraceRaysIndirect` feature must be enabled.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR-commandBuffer-parameter
  
  `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle.

- VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR-pRaygenShaderBindingTable-parameter
  
  `pRaygenShaderBindingTable` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkStridedDeviceAddressRegionKHR` structure.

- VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR-pMissShaderBindingTable-parameter
  
  `pMissShaderBindingTable` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkStridedDeviceAddressRegionKHR` structure.

- VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR-pHitShaderBindingTable-parameter
  
  `pHitShaderBindingTable` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkStridedDeviceAddressRegionKHR` structure.

- VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR-pCallableShaderBindingTable-parameter
  
  `pCallableShaderBindingTable` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkStridedDeviceAddressRegionKHR` structure.

- VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR-commandBuffer-recording
  
  `commandBuffer` must be in the recording state.

- VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  
  The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support compute operations.

- VUID-vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR-renderpass
  
  This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance.

Host Synchronization

- Host access to `commandBuffer` must be externally synchronized.

- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized.

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Compute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Secondary</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The `VkTraceRaysIndirectCommandKHR` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkTraceRaysIndirectCommandKHR {
    uint32_t width;
    uint32_t height;
    uint32_t depth;
} VkTraceRaysIndirectCommandKHR;

- **width** is the width of the ray trace query dimensions.
- **height** is height of the ray trace query dimensions.
- **depth** is depth of the ray trace query dimensions.

The members of VkTraceRaysIndirectCommandKHR have the same meaning as the similarly named parameters of vkCmdTraceRaysKHR.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkTraceRaysIndirectCommandKHR-width-03638**
  
  width must be less than or equal to VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxComputeWorkGroupCount[0] × VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxComputeWorkGroupSize[0]

- **VUID-VkTraceRaysIndirectCommandKHR-height-03639**
  
  height must be less than or equal to VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxComputeWorkGroupCount[1] × VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxComputeWorkGroupSize[1]

- **VUID-VkTraceRaysIndirectCommandKHR-depth-03640**
  
  depth must be less than or equal to VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxComputeWorkGroupCount[2] × VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxComputeWorkGroupSize[2]

- **VUID-VkTraceRaysIndirectCommandKHR-width-03641**
  
  width × height × depth must be less than or equal to VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR::maxRayDispatchInvocationCount

### 34.3. Shader Binding Table

A **shader binding table** is a resource which establishes the relationship between the ray tracing pipeline and the acceleration structures that were built for the ray tracing pipeline. It indicates the shaders that operate on each geometry in an acceleration structure. In addition, it contains the resources accessed by each shader, including indices of textures, buffer device addresses, and constants. The application allocates and manages shader binding tables as VkBuffer objects.

Each entry in the shader binding table consists of shaderGroupHandleSize bytes of data, either as queried by vkGetRayTracingShaderGroupHandlesKHR to refer to those specified shaders, or all zeros to refer to a zero shader group. A zero shader group behaves as though it is a shader group consisting entirely of VK_SHADER_UNUSED_KHR. The remainder of the data specified by the stride is application-visible data that can be referenced by a ShaderRecordBufferKHR block in the shader.

The shader binding tables to use in a ray tracing pipeline are passed to the vkCmdTraceRaysKHR, or
vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR commands. Shader binding tables are read-only in shaders that are executing on the ray tracing pipeline.

Shader variables identified with the ShaderRecordBufferKHR storage class are used to access the provided shader binding table. Such variables must be:

- typed as `OpTypeStruct`, or an array of this type,
- identified with a `Block` decoration, and
- laid out explicitly using the `Offset`, `ArrayStride`, and `MatrixStride` decorations as specified in Offset and Stride Assignment.

The `Offset` decoration for any member of a `Block`-decorated variable in the ShaderRecordBufferKHR storage class must not cause the space required for that variable to extend outside the range \([0, \text{maxStorageBufferRange})\).

Accesses to the shader binding table from ray tracing pipelines must be synchronized with the VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_BIT_KHR pipeline stage and an access type of VK_ACCESS_SHADER_READ_BIT.

**Note**
Because different shader record buffers can be associated with the same shader, a shader variable with ShaderRecordBufferKHR storage class will not be dynamically uniform if different invocations of the same shader can reference different data in the shader record buffer, such as if the same shader occurs twice in the shader binding table with a different shader record buffer. In this case, indexing resources based on values in the ShaderRecordBufferKHR storage class, the index should be decorated as `NonUniform`.

### 34.3.1. Indexing Rules

In order to execute the correct shaders and access the correct resources during a ray tracing dispatch, the implementation must be able to locate shader binding table entries at various stages of execution. This is accomplished by defining a set of indexing rules that compute shader binding table record positions relative to the buffer’s base address in memory. The application must organize the contents of the shader binding table’s memory in a way that application of the indexing rules will lead to correct records.

**Ray Generation Shaders**

Only one ray generation shader is executed per ray tracing dispatch.

For `vkCmdTraceRaysKHR`, the location of the ray generation shader is specified by the `pRaygenShaderBindingTable->deviceAddress` parameter—there is no indexing. All data accessed must be less than `pRaygenShaderBindingTable->size` bytes from `deviceAddress`. `pRaygenShaderBindingTable->stride` is unused, and must be equal to `pRaygenShaderBindingTable->size`.
Hit Shaders

The base for the computation of intersection, any-hit, and closest hit shader locations is the `instanceShaderBindingTableRecordOffset` value stored with each instance of a top-level acceleration structure (`VkAccelerationStructureInstanceKHR`). This value determines the beginning of the shader binding table records for a given instance.

In the following rule, `geometryIndex` refers to the `geometry index` of the intersected geometry within the instance.

The `sbtRecordOffset` and `sbtRecordStride` values are passed in as parameters to `traceRayEXT()` calls made in the shaders. See Section 8.19 (Ray Tracing Functions) of the OpenGL Shading Language Specification for more details. In SPIR-V, these correspond to the `SBTOffset` and `SBTStride` parameters to the `OpTraceRayKHR` instruction.

The result of this computation is then added to `pHitShaderBindingTable->deviceAddress`, a device address passed to `vkCmdTraceRaysKHR`.

For `vkCmdTraceRaysKHR`, the complete rule to compute a hit shader binding table record address in the `pHitShaderBindingTable` is:

\[
pHitShaderBindingTable->deviceAddress + pHitShaderBindingTable->stride \times (instanceShaderBindingTableRecordOffset + geometryIndex \times sbtRecordStride + sbtRecordOffset)
\]

All data accessed must be less than `pHitShaderBindingTable->size` bytes from the base address.

Miss Shaders

A miss shader is executed whenever a ray query fails to find an intersection for the given scene geometry. Multiple miss shaders may be executed throughout a ray tracing dispatch.

The base for the computation of miss shader locations is `pMissShaderBindingTable->deviceAddress`, a device address passed into `vkCmdTraceRaysKHR`.

The `missIndex` value is passed in as a parameter to `traceRayEXT()` calls made in the shaders. See Section 8.19 (Ray Tracing Functions) of the OpenGL Shading Language Specification for more details. In SPIR-V, this corresponds to the `MissIndex` parameter to the `OpTraceRayKHR` instruction.

For `vkCmdTraceRaysKHR`, the complete rule to compute a miss shader binding table record address in the `pMissShaderBindingTable` is:

\[
pMissShaderBindingTable->deviceAddress + pMissShaderBindingTable->stride \times missIndex
\]

All data accessed must be less than `pMissShaderBindingTable->size` bytes from the base address.

Callable Shaders

A callable shader is executed when requested by a ray tracing shader. Multiple callable shaders may be executed throughout a ray tracing dispatch.
The base for the computation of callable shader locations is `pCallableShaderBindingTable->deviceAddress`, a device address passed into `vkCmdTraceRaysKHR`.

The `sbtRecordIndex` value is passed in as a parameter to `executeCallableEXT()` calls made in the shaders. See Section 8.19 (Ray Tracing Functions) of the OpenGL Shading Language Specification for more details. In SPIR-V, this corresponds to the `SBTIndex` parameter to the `OpExecuteCallableKHR` instruction.

For `vkCmdTraceRaysKHR`, the complete rule to compute a callable shader binding table record address in the `pCallableShaderBindingTable` is:

\[
pCallableShaderBindingTable->deviceAddress + pCallableShaderBindingTable->stride \times sbtRecordIndex
\]

All data accessed must be less than `pCallableShaderBindingTable->size` bytes from the base address.

### 34.4. Ray Tracing Pipeline Stack

Ray tracing pipelines have a potentially large set of shaders which may be invoked in various call chain combinations to perform ray tracing. To store parameters for a given shader execution, an implementation may use a stack of data in memory. This stack must be sized to the sum of the stack sizes of all shaders in any call chain executed by the application.

If the stack size is not set explicitly, the stack size for a pipeline is:

\[
\text{rayGenStackMax} + \min(1, \text{maxPipelineRayRecursionDepth}) \times \max(\text{closestHitStackMax}, \text{missStackMax}, \text{intersectionStackMax} + \text{anyHitStackMax}) + \max(0, \text{maxPipelineRayRecursionDepth} - 1) \times \max(\text{closestHitStackMax}, \text{missStackMax}) + 2 \times \text{callableStackMax}
\]

where `rayGenStackMax`, `closestHitStackMax`, `missStackMax`, `anyHitStackMax`, `intersectionStackMax`, and `callableStackMax` are the maximum stack values queried by the respective shader stages for any shaders in any shader groups defined by the pipeline.

This stack size is potentially significant, so an application may want to provide a more accurate stack size after pipeline compilation. The value that the application provides is the maximum value of the sum of all shaders in a call chain across all possible call chains, taking into account any application specific knowledge about the properties of the call chains.
Note

For example, if an application has two types of closest hit and miss shaders that it can use but the first level of rays will only use the first kind (possibly reflection) and the second level will only use the second kind (occlusion or shadow ray, for example) then the application can compute the stack size by something similar to:

\[
\text{rayGenStack} + \max(\text{closestHit1Stack, miss1Stack}) + \max(\text{closestHit2Stack, miss2Stack})
\]

This is guaranteed to be no larger than the default stack size computation which assumes that both call levels may be the larger of the two.
Chapter 35. Video Decode and Encode Operations

Vulkan implementations can expose video decode and encode engines, which are independent from the graphics and compute engines. Video decode and encode is performed by recording video operations and submitting them to video decode and encode queues. Vulkan provides core support for video decode and encode and can support a variety of video codecs through individual extensions built on the core video support.

The subsections below detail the fundamental components and operation of Vulkan video.

35.1. Technical Terminology and Semantics

35.1.1. Video Picture Resources

Video Picture Resources contain format information, can be multidimensional and may have associated metadata. The metadata can include implementation-private details required for the decode or encode operations and application managed color-space related information.

In Vulkan, a Video Picture Resource is represented by a VkImage. The VkImageView, representing the VkImage, is used with the decode operations as Output and Decoded Picture Buffer (DPB), and with the encode operation as Input and Reconstructed Video Picture Resource.

35.1.2. Reference Picture

Video Reference Picture is a Video Picture Resource that can be used in the video decode or encode process to provide predictions of the values of samples in the subsequently decoded or encoded pictures.

35.1.3. Decoded Output Picture

The pixels resulting from the video decoding process are stored in a Decoded Output Picture, represented by a VkImageView. This can be shared with the Encoder Reconstructed or Decoder DPB Video Picture Resources. It can also be used as an input for Video Encode, Graphics, Compute processing, or WSI presentation.

35.1.4. Input Picture to Encode

The primary source of input pixels for the video encoding process is the Input Picture to Encode, represented by a VkImageView. This can be shared with the Encoder Reconstructed or Decoder DPB Video Picture Resources. It can be a direct target of Video Decode, Graphics, Compute processing, or WSI presentation.

35.1.5. Decoded Picture Buffer (DPB)

Previously decoded pictures are used by video codecs to provide predictions of the values of samples in the subsequently decoded pictures. At the decoder, such Video Picture Resources are
35.1.6. Reconstructed Pictures

An integral part of the video decoding pipeline is the reconstruction of pictures from the compressed stream. A similar stage exists in the video encoding pipeline as well. Such reconstructed pictures may be used as Reference Pictures for subsequently decoded or encoded pictures. The correct use of such Reference Pictures is driven by the video compression standard, the implementation, and the application-specific use cases.

This specification refers to the collection of the Decoded Picture Buffer and Reconstructed Pictures as Decoded Picture Buffer (DPB) Set, or only, DPB.

35.1.7. Decoded Picture Buffer (DPB) Slot

Decoded Picture Buffer (DPB) Slot represents a single or multi-layer indexed Reference Picture's entry within the Video Session's DPB Set. A valid DPB Slot index starts from zero and goes up to the maximum of N - 1, where N is the number of Reference Picture entries requested for a Video Session.

35.1.8. Reference Picture Metadata

The opaque DPB Slot state managed by the implementation may contain Reference Picture Metadata, present when the picture resource associated with the DPB Slot is used as a reference picture in one or more video decode or encode operations.

An implementation or application may have other Picture Metadata related to the Video Picture Resource or the DPB Slot, but such data is outside the scope of this specification.

Note:

The video decode or encode implementation does not maintain internal references to the Reference Pictures, beyond the Reference Picture Metadata. It is the responsibility of the Vulkan Application to create, manage, and destroy, as well as to provide those Video Picture Resources, when required, during the decoding or encoding process.

35.1.9. Color Space Metadata

Color Space Metadata is the additional static or dynamic state associated with a Video Picture Resource specifying the color volume (the color primaries, white point, and luminance range) of the display that was used in mastering the video content. The use of Color Space Metadata is outside the scope of the current version of the video core specification.

35.2. Introduction

This chapter discusses extensions supporting Video Decode or Encode operations. Video Decode and Encode operations are supported by queues with an advertised queue capability of VK_QUEUE_VIDEO_DECODE_BIT_KHR and VK_QUEUE_VIDEO_ENCODE_BIT_KHR, respectively. Video Decode or
Encode queue operation support allows for Vulkan applications to cooperate closely with other graphics or compute operations seamlessly and efficiently, therefore improving the overall application performance.

### 35.2.1. Video Decode Queue

`VK_KHR_video_decode_queue` adds a video decode queue type bit `VK_QUEUE_VIDEO_DECODE_BIT_KHR` to `VkQueueFlagBits`. As in the case of other queue types, an application must use `vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties` to query whether the physical device has support for the Video Decode Queue. When the implementation reports the `VK_QUEUE_VIDEO_DECODE_BIT_KHR` bit for a queue family, it advertises general support for Vulkan queue operations described in Devices and Queues.

### 35.2.2. Video Encode Queue

`VK_KHR_video_encode_queue` adds a video encode queue type bit `VK_QUEUE_VIDEO_ENCODE_BIT_KHR` to `VkQueueFlagBits`. As in the case of other queue types, an application must use `vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties` to query whether the physical device has support for the Video Encode Queue. When the implementation reports the `VK_QUEUE_VIDEO_ENCODE_BIT_KHR` bit for a queue family, it advertises general support for Vulkan queue operations described in Devices and Queues.

The rest of the chapter focuses, specifically, on Video Decode and Encode queue operations.

### 35.2.3. Video Session

Before performing any video decoding or encoding operations, the application must create a Video Session instance, of type `VkVideoSessionKHR`. A Video Session instance is an immutable object and supports a single compression standard (for example, H.264, H.265, VP9, AV1, etc.). The implementation uses the `VkVideoSessionKHR` object to maintain the video state for the video decode or video encode operation. A Video Session instance is created specifically:

- For a particular video compression standard;
- For video decoding or video encoding;
- With maximum supported decoded or encoded picture width/height;
- With the maximum number of supported DPB or Reconstructed Pictures slots that can be allocated;
- With the maximum number of Reference Pictures that can be used simultaneously for video decode or encode operations;
- Codec color and features profile;
- Color Space format description (not supported with this version of the specification);

`VkVideoSessionKHR` represents a single video decode or encode stream. For each concurrently used stream, a separate instance of `VkVideoSessionKHR` is required. After the application has finished with the processing of a stream, it can reuse the Video Session instance for another, provided that the configuration parameters between the two usages are compatible (as determined by the video
compression standard in use). Once the VkVideoSessionKHR instance has been created, the video compression standard and profiles, Input / Output / DPB formats, and the settings like the maximum extent cannot be changed.

The values of the following VkVideoSessionKHR parameters can be updated each frame, subject to the restrictions imposed on parameter updates by the video compression standard in use:

- decoded or encoded picture size
- number of active DPB or Reconstructed Picture slots
- number of Reference Pictures in use,
- color space and color space metadata
- color space metadata.

The updated parameters must not exceed the maximum limits specified when creating the VkVideoSessionKHR instance.

35.2.4. Video Session Device Memory Heaps

After creating a Video Session instance, and before the object can be used for any of the decode or encode operations, the application must allocate and bind device memory resources to the Video Session object. An implementation may require one or more device memory heaps of different memory types, as reported by the vkGetVideoSessionMemoryRequirementsKHR function, to be bound with the vkBindVideoSessionMemoryKHR function to the Video Session. For more information about the Video Session Device Memory, please refer to the Binding the Session Object Device Memory section, below.

35.2.5. Video Session Parameters

A lot of codec standards require parameters that are in use for the entire video stream. For example, H.264/AVC and HEVC standards require sequence and picture parameter sets (SPS and PPS) that apply to multiple Video Decode and Encode frames, layers, and sub-layers. Vulkan Video uses Video Session Parameters objects to store such standard parameters. The application creates one or more Video Session Parameters Objects against a Video Session, with a set of common Video Parameters that are required for the processing of the video content. During the object creation, the implementation stores the parameters to the created instance. During command buffer recording, it is the responsibility of the application to provide the Video Session Parameters object containing the parameters that are necessary for the processing the portion of the stream under consideration.

35.2.6. Video Picture Subresources

For Video Picture Resources, an application has the option to use single or multi-layer images for image views. The layer to be used during decode or encode operations can be specified when the image view is being created with the VkImageSubresourceRange::baseArrayLayer parameter, and/or within the resource binding operations in command buffer by using the VkVideoPictureResourceKHR::baseArrayLayer parameter.
Both Video Decode and Encode operations only work with a single layer at the time.

The Image views representing the Input / Output / DPB Video Picture Resources could have been created with sizes bigger than the coded size that is used with Video Decode and Encode operations. This allows for the same Video Picture Resources to be reused when there is a change in the input video content resolution. The effective coded size of the Video Picture Resources used for Video Decode and Encode operations is provided with VkVideoPictureResourceKHR::extent parameter of each resource in use.

Many codec standards require the coded and Video Picture Resources' sizes to match.

Video Session DPB and Reconstructed Video Picture Resources

The video compression standard chosen may require the use of Reference Pictures. In Vulkan Video, like any other Video Picture Resources, the Reference Pictures are represented with Image Views.

When an application requires Reference Picture Resources, it creates and then associates image views, representing these resources, with Video Session DPB or Reconstructed slots while recording the command buffer.

Decoded output pictures may be used as reference pictures in future video decode operations. The same pictures may be used in texture sampling operations or in the (WSI) presentation pipeline. Representing the DPB's Video Picture Resources by image views makes it possible to accommodate all these use cases in a “zero-copy” fashion. Also, it provides more fine-grained control of the application over the efficient usage of the DPB and Reconstructed Device Memory Resources.

Video Session DPB and Reconstructed Slot Resource Management

Before Video Picture Resources can be used as Reference Picture Resources, Video Session DPB or Reconstructed Slots must be associated with those resources.

The application allocates a DPB or Reconstructed Slot and associates it with a Video Picture Resource and then sets up the resource as a target of decode or encode operation. After successfully decoding or encoding a picture with the targeted DPB or Reconstructed Slot, in addition to the Reference Picture pixel data, the implementation may generate an opaque Reference Picture Metadata for that video session Slot and its associated Video Picture Resource.

Subsequently, one or more DPB or Reconstructed video session Slots, along with their associated Video Picture Resources, can be used as Reference Picture's source for the video decode or encode operations.

If Reference Pictures were to be required for decoding or encoding of the video bitstream, the VkVideoSessionCreateInfoKHR::maxReferencePicturesSlotsCount must be set to a value bigger than 0 when the instance of the Video Session object is created.
Up to `VkVideoSessionCreateInfoKHR::maxReferencePicturesSlotsCount` slots can be activated with `Video Picture Resources` for a video session and up to `VkVideoSessionCreateInfoKHR::maxReferencePicturesActiveCount` active slots can be used as DPB or Reconstructed `Reference Pictures` within a single decode or encode operation.

When the implementation is associating `Reference Picture Metadata` with the `Video Picture Resources` themselves, such data must be independent of the `Video Session` to allow for those `Video Picture Resources` to be shared with other `Video Session` instances. All of the `Video Session`-dependent `Reference Picture Metadata` must only be associated with the `Video Session DPB` or `Reconstructed Slots`.

The application with the help of the implementation is responsible for managing the individual DPB, or Reconstructed Slots that belong to a single `Video Session DPB` set:

- The application maintains the Slot allocation and per-slot `Reference Picture Resources`;
- Implementation maintains global and per-slot opaque `Reference Picture Metadata`;

The application also manages the mapping between the codec-specific picture IDs and DPB Slots.

When a Video Picture is decoded and is set as a `Reference Picture` against a Video Session DPB Slot, or is encoded and a Reconstructed Video Picture Resource is associated with a Video Session DPB Slot then:

- The `Video Picture Resource` associated with the Slot is filled with the decoded or reconstructed pixel data;
- The implementation generates the DPB Slot’s `Reference Picture Metadata`;

When a DPB’s Slot is deactivated, or a different `Video Picture Resource` is used with the Slot, or the content of the `Video Picture Resource` is modified, the `Reference Picture Metadata` associated with the DPB Slot gets invalidated by the implementation. Subsequent attempts to use such, invalidated, DPB Slot as a Reference source would produce undefined results.

**Video Session DPB Slot subresources**

DPB Reference Picture’s coded width and height can change, dynamically, via `VkVideoPictureResourceKHR::extent`, and the picture parameters from the codec-specific extensions. When a DPB Slot is activated as a Reference Picture and a decode or encode operation is performed against that slot, the coded extent can be recorded by the implementation to the corresponding DPB Slot’s metadata state. Subsequently, when the Reference Pictures are used with the decoded Output or encoded Input Picture, their coded extent can differ. Decoding or encoding pictures, using picture sizes, different from the previously produced Reference Pictures should be used with care, not to conflict with the codec standard and the implementation’s support for that. It is the responsibility of the application to ensure that valid DPB Set of Reference Pictures are in use, according to the codec standard.

In addition, the `Video Picture Resources` extent cannot exceed the `VkVideoSessionCreateInfoKHR::maxCodedExtent`.

---

Chapter 35. Video Decode and Encode Operations | 1369
Note:
Coding Standards such as VP9 and AV1 allow for images with different sizes to be used as Reference Pictures. Others, like H.264 and H.265, do not support Reference Pictures with different sizes. Using Reference Pictures with incompatible sizes with such standards would render undefined results.

The application is in control of the allocation and use of the system resource

In Vulkan Video, the application has complete control over how and when system resources are used. The Vulkan Video framework provides the following tools to ensure that device and host memory resources are used in an optimal way:

- The video application can allocate or destroy the number of allocated Output or Input Pictures, and can grow, or shrink the DPB set of Reference Pictures, dynamically, based on the changing video content requirement.
- Reference Pictures can be shared with the decoded Output or encoded Input pictures.
- The application can use sparse memory for the images, representing Video Picture Resources. The use of sparse memory would allow the application to remove the Device Memory backing of the image resources when the DPB Slot is not in active use. Furthermore, if the sparse residency feature is supported by the implementation (see Sparse Resources), then images can be, partially, bound with the resource memory. This feature is particularly important when using video content with a significant change of decoded or encoded resolution.
- If the implementation supports image arrays, and sparse memory resources, then the application can remove the Device Memory backing of image array layers that are not used by any DPB Slots.

Using DPB and Reconstructed Slot's Associated Resources

Before a DPB Slot is to become Valid for use with a Reference Picture, it requires memory resources to be bound to it.

Some of the memory resources required for the DPB Slot, are opaquely managed by the implementation and, internally, allocated from the Session’s Device Memory Heaps. The application provides the image resources of one or more Reference Pictures, in the VkVideoBeginCodingInfoKHR::pReferenceSlots as part of the vkCmdBeginVideoCodingKHR command.

If a DPB Slot was already used with an image view, and a new image view or a VK_NULL_HANDLE handle is used with that Slot, then the DPB Slot’s state will be invalidated by the implementation. If a DPB Slot were to be reused with the same image view, the state of the Slot would not change.

Video Session Activating DPB Slot as a Reference

Before a DPB Slot is to be used for a Reference Pictures index, it must be activated. The activation of a DPB Slot is done within the vkCmdDecodeVideoKHR command’s VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR::slotIndex field for the decode operations, and within the vkCmdEncodeVideoKHR command’s VkVideoEncodeInfoKHR::slotIndex field for the encode operations.
While activating a Slot for DPB, it **must** already have an associated image view, within the `VkVideoBeginCodingInfoKHR::pReferenceSlots` in the `vkCmdBeginVideoCodingKHR` command and **Device Memory** backing of the the **image resources** **must** be resident.

When a **DPB Slot** were to be activated, the `VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR::slotIndex` for decode, or `VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR::slotIndex` for encode, **must** be set to the application's allocated DPB Slot's index. When activating a **DPB Slot**, the application will perform a decode or encode operation against its Slot's index in order to enable its state as a **Valid Picture Reference**. If a **DPB Slot** is activated, but a decode or encode operation is not performed against that Slot's index, or the decode or encode operation was unsuccessful, then the **DPB Slot** would remain in the **Invalid Picture Reference** state (see below the **DPB Slot States**).

By just providing a **Video Picture Resources** for a **DPB Slot** within the `VkVideoBeginCodingInfoKHR::pReferenceSlots`, and without successfully performing a decode or encode operation against that Slot, the **DPB Slot's** state **cannot** be changed to **Valid Picture Reference**. If the **DPB Slots** were already in **Valid Picture Reference**, and there is no **Video Picture Resources** associated with the **DPB Slot** for a decode or encode operation, the state **DPB Slot** would not change. However, if an application is referring to a valid **DPB Slot** in its current decode or encode operations, then a valid image view **must** be provided for that Slot within `VkVideoPictureResourceKHR::imageViewBinding` for that decode or encode operation.

**Video Session Invalidating DPB Slot’s Reference State**

When a **DPB Slot** is invalidated, its state is set to **Invalid Picture Reference**. Using a **DPB Slot** as a **Reference Picture** index for video decode or encode operations while the Slot is in **Invalid Picture Reference** state would render undefined results.

**Video Session ****DPB Slot States**

To help understand the valid use of the **Video Session DPB** and its resource management, this section aims to explain the different states and correct usage of **DPB Slots**.

There are four (4) states that a **DPB Slot** could be in:

- Picture Reference Unused;
- Invalid Picture Reference;
- Updating Picture Reference;
- Valid Picture Reference;

The different states are outlined within the **DPB Slot States** and **DPB Slot States Flow Diagram** below.

All DPB Slot management operations are performed via the `VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR::slotIndex` or `VkVideoEncodeInfoKHR::slotIndex` field.

All DPB resource binding, invalidating, and activating Slot management operations are performed, by the implementation, **before** the decoding or encoding commands, based on the `VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR::slotIndex` or `VkVideoEncodeInfoKHR::slotIndex` field and the entries from the `VkVideoBeginCodingInfoKHR::pReferenceSlots`. The application **cannot** move a DPB Slot from a **Picture Reference Unused** to **Updating Picture Reference** state, implicitly, within a decode or...
encode command operation. Such a DPB Slot must first be transitioned to an Invalid Picture Reference state using VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR::slotIndex or VkVideoEncodeInfoKHR::slotIndex, as part of a decode command. For more details, see Video Picture Decode Modes.

When using sparse memory resources, it would be acceptable and valid behavior for the application to unbind the memory while the DPB Slot is any of the DPB Slot states, provided the command buffers, in a pending state, do not reference any such Video Picture Resources.

Accessing unbound regions of the sparse memory resources by the decoder or encoder, regardless if those are used as Output, Input, DPB or Reconstructed Video Picture Resources, would render undefined results. The VkPhysicalDeviceSparseProperties::residencyNonResidentStrict property reported by the implementation does not offer guarantees on the behavior of decode or encode operations when it comes to accessing unbound regions. However, both reads and writes are still considered safe and will not affect other resources or populated regions of the image.

**Table 37. Video Session DPB Slot States**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>DPB Slot State</th>
<th>Moving to DPB Slot State</th>
<th>Exiting DPB Slot State</th>
<th>Retain Video Picture Resource Memory</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Picture Reference Unused</td>
<td>* Bind Device Memory; * Reset decode or encode state; * Invalidate, delete or unbind memory of a Picture Reference associated with Reference DPB Slot</td>
<td>* Activate Reference DPB Slot → Invalid Picture Reference</td>
<td>Application Controlled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Invalid Picture Reference</td>
<td>* Activate Reference DPB Slot; * Unsuccessful video decode or encode operation;</td>
<td>* Start decode or encode operation with an active Reference DPB Slot target → Updating Picture Reference; * Updating a Picture Resource outside the decoder or encoder or deleting or removing the memory binding(sparse) → Picture Reference Unused;</td>
<td>Application Controlled</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Updating Picture Reference</td>
<td>Start decode or encode operation with an active Reference DPB Slot target;</td>
<td>Decode or encode operation with an active Reference DPB Slot target Completed Successfully → Valid Picture Reference; Unsuccessful video decode or encode operation → Invalid Picture Reference</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Valid Picture Reference</td>
<td>Video decode or encode operation with an active Reference DPB Slot target Completed Successfully;</td>
<td>* Replace Reference DPB Slot → Invalid Picture Reference; * Invalidate, delete or unbind memory of a Picture Reference of the Reference DPB Slot → Picture Reference Unused;</td>
<td>Yes</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
35.3. Video Physical Device Capabilities

35.3.1. Supported Video Codec Operations Enumeration

The structure `VkVideoQueueFamilyProperties2KHR` may be chained to `VkQueueFamilyProperties2` when calling `vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties2` to retrieve the video codec operations supported for the physical device queue family index.

The `VkVideoQueueFamilyProperties2KHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
typedef struct VkVideoQueueFamilyProperties2KHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkVideoCodecOperationFlagsKHR videoCodecOperations;
} VkVideoQueueFamilyProperties2KHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `videoCodecOperations` is a bitmask of `VkVideoCodecOperationFlagBitsKHR` specifying supported video codec operation(s).
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkVideoQueueFamilyProperties2KHR-sType-sType**
  - `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_QUEUE_FAMILY_PROPERTIES_2_KHR`

- **VUID-VkVideoQueueFamilyProperties2KHR-videoCodecOperations-parameter**
  - `videoCodecOperations` must be a valid combination of `VkVideoCodecOperationFlagBitsKHR` values

- **VUID-VkVideoQueueFamilyProperties2KHR-videoCodecOperations-required bitmask**
  - `videoCodecOperations` must not be `0`

The codec operations are defined with the `VkVideoCodecOperationFlagBitsKHR` enum:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
typedef enum VkVideoCodecOperationFlagBitsKHR {
    VK_VIDEO_CODEC_OPERATION_INVALID_BIT_KHR = 0,
} VkVideoCodecOperationFlagBitsKHR;
```

Each decode or encode codec-specific extension extends this enumeration with the appropriate bit corresponding to the extension’s codec operation:

- **VK_VIDEO_CODEC_OPERATION_INVALID_BIT_KHR** - No video operations are supported for this queue family.

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
typedef VkFlags VkVideoCodecOperationFlagsKHR;
```

`VkVideoCodecOperationFlagsKHR` is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more `VkVideoCodecOperationFlagBitsKHR`.

### 35.3.2. Video Profiles

A video profile is defined by `VkVideoProfileKHR` structure as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
typedef struct VkVideoProfileKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkVideoCodecOperationFlagBitsKHR videoCodecOperation;
    VkVideoChromaSubsamplingFlagsKHR chromaSubsampling;
    VkVideoComponentBitDepthFlagsKHR lumaBitDepth;
    VkVideoComponentBitDepthFlagsKHR chromaBitDepth;
} VkVideoProfileKHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
• `pNext` is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• `videoCodecOperation` is a `VkVideoCodecOperationFlagBitsKHR` value specifying a video codec operation.
• `chromaSubsampling` is a bitmask of `VkVideoChromaSubsamplingFlagBitsKHR` specifying video chroma subsampling information.
• `lumaBitDepth` is a bitmask of `VkVideoComponentBitDepthFlagBitsKHR` specifying video luma bit depth information.
• `chromaBitDepth` is a bitmask of `VkVideoComponentBitDepthFlagBitsKHR` specifying video chroma bit depth information.

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
typedef enum VkVideoChromaSubsamplingFlagBitsKHR {
    VK_VIDEO_CHROMA_SUBSAMPLING_INVALID_BIT_KHR = 0,
    VK_VIDEO_CHROMA_SUBSAMPLING_MONOCHROME_BIT_KHR = 0x00000001,
    VK_VIDEO_CHROMA_SUBSAMPLING_420_BIT_KHR = 0x00000002,
    VK_VIDEO_CHROMA_SUBSAMPLING_422_BIT_KHR = 0x00000004,
    VK_VIDEO_CHROMA_SUBSAMPLING_444_BIT_KHR = 0x00000008,
} VkVideoChromaSubsamplingFlagBitsKHR;
```

The video format chroma subsampling is defined with the following enums:
- **VK_VIDEO_CHROMA_SUBSAMPLING_MONOCHROME_BIT_KHR** - the format is monochrome.

- **VK_VIDEO_CHROMA_SUBSAMPLING_420_BIT_KHR** - the format is 4:2:0 chroma subsampled. The two chroma components are each subsampled at a factor of 2 both horizontally and vertically.

- **VK_VIDEO_CHROMA_SUBSAMPLING_422_BIT_KHR** - the format is 4:2:2 chroma subsampled. The two chroma components are sampled at half the sample rate of luma. The horizontal chroma resolution is halved.

- **VK_VIDEO_CHROMA_SUBSAMPLING_444_BIT_KHR** - the format is 4:4:4 chroma sampled. Each of the three YCbCr components have the same sample rate, thus there is no chroma subsampling.

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
typedef VkFlags VkVideoChromaSubsamplingFlagsKHR;
```

**VkVideoChromaSubsamplingFlagsKHR** is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more **VkVideoChromaSubsamplingFlagBitsKHR**.

The video format component bit depth is defined with the following enums:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
typedef enum VkVideoComponentBitDepthFlagBitsKHR {
    VK_VIDEO_COMPONENT_BIT_DEPTH_INVALID_KHR = 0,
    VK_VIDEO_COMPONENT_BIT_DEPTH_8_BIT_KHR = 0x00000001,
    VK_VIDEO_COMPONENT_BIT_DEPTH_10_BIT_KHR = 0x00000004,
    VK_VIDEO_COMPONENT_BIT_DEPTH_12_BIT_KHR = 0x00000010,
} VkVideoComponentBitDepthFlagBitsKHR;
```

- **VK_VIDEO_COMPONENT_BIT_DEPTH_8_BIT_KHR** - the format component bit depth is 8 bits.
- **VK_VIDEO_COMPONENT_BIT_DEPTH_10_BIT_KHR** - the format component bit depth is 10 bits.
- **VK_VIDEO_COMPONENT_BIT_DEPTH_12_BIT_KHR** - the format component bit depth is 12 bits.

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
typedef VkFlags VkVideoComponentBitDepthFlagsKHR;
```

**VkVideoComponentBitDepthFlagsKHR** is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more **VkVideoComponentBitDepthFlagBitsKHR**.

A video profile is provided when querying capabilities or image formats for video using **vkGetPhysicalDeviceVideoCapabilitiesKHR** or **vkGetPhysicalDeviceVideoFormatPropertiesKHR**, respectively. A video profile is also provided when creating resources (images, video sessions, etc.) used by video queues. Each instance of **VkVideoProfileKHR** must chain a codec-operation specific video profile extension structure, corresponding to the codec-operation specified in **VkVideoProfileKHR::videoCodecOperation**. Additional information is provided in each codec-operation-specific video extension.
To query video decode or encode capabilities for a specific codec, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
VkResult vkGetPhysicalDeviceVideoCapabilitiesKHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    const VkVideoProfileKHR* pVideoProfile,
    VkVideoCapabilitiesKHR* pCapabilities);
```

- `physicalDevice` is the physical device whose video decode or encode capabilities will be queried.
- `pVideoProfile` is a pointer to a `VkVideoProfileKHR` structure with a chained codec-operation specific video profile structure.
- `pCapabilities` is a pointer to a `VkVideoCapabilitiesKHR` structure in which the capabilities are returned.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- `VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceVideoCapabilitiesKHR-physicalDevice-parameter` physicalDevice must be a valid `VkPhysicalDevice` handle
- `VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceVideoCapabilitiesKHR-pVideoProfile-parameter` pVideoProfile must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkVideoProfileKHR` structure
- `VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceVideoCapabilitiesKHR-pCapabilities-parameter` pCapabilities must be a valid pointer to a `VkVideoCapabilitiesKHR` structure

### Return Codes

**Success**

- VK_SUCCESS

**Failure**

- VK_ERROR_EXTENSION_NOT_PRESENT
- VK_ERROR_INITIALIZATION_FAILED
- VK_ERROR_FEATURE_NOT_PRESENT
- VK_ERROR_FORMAT_NOT_SUPPORTED

If `pVideoProfile` and chained codec-operation specific profile is not supported, `VK_ERROR_FORMAT_NOT_SUPPORTED` is returned.

Otherwise, the implementation will fill `pCapabilities` with capabilities associated with this video profile.

The `VkVideoCapabilitiesKHR` structure is defined as:
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue

typedef struct VkVideoCapabilitiesKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkVideoCapabilityFlagsKHR capabilityFlags;
    VkDeviceSize minBitstreamBufferOffsetAlignment;
    VkDeviceSize minBitstreamBufferSizeAlignment;
    VkExtent2D videoPictureExtentGranularity;
    VkExtent2D minExtent;
    VkExtent2D maxExtent;
    uint32_t maxReferencePicturesSlotsCount;
    uint32_t maxReferencePicturesActiveCount;
} VkVideoCapabilitiesKHR;

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **capabilityFlags** is a bitmask of **VkVideoCapabilityFlagBitsKHR** specifying capability flags.
- **minBitstreamBufferOffsetAlignment** is the minimum alignment for the input or output bitstream buffer offset.
- **minBitstreamBufferSizeAlignment** is the minimum alignment for the input or output bitstream buffer size.
- **videoPictureExtentGranularity** is the minimum size alignment of the extent with the required padding for the decoded or encoded video images.
- **minExtent** is the minimum width and height of the decoded or encoded video.
- **maxExtent** is the maximum width and height of the decoded or encoded video.
- **maxReferencePicturesSlotsCount** is the maximum number of DPB Slots supported by the implementation for a single video session instance.
- **maxReferencePicturesActiveCount** is the maximum slots that can be used as Reference Pictures with a single decode or encode operation.

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-VkVideoCapabilitiesKHR-sType-sType
  
  **sType** must be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_CAPABILITIES_KHR**

- VUID-VkVideoCapabilitiesKHR-pNext-pNext
  
  **pNext** must be **NULL**

The **VkVideoCapabilitiesKHR** flags are defined with the following enumeration:
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
typedef enum VkVideoCapabilityFlagBitsKHR {
    VK_VIDEO_CAPABILITY_PROTECTED_CONTENT_BIT_KHR = 0x00000001,
    VK_VIDEO_CAPABILITY_SEPARATE_REFERENCE_IMAGES_BIT_KHR = 0x00000002,
} VkVideoCapabilityFlagBitsKHR;

• **VK_VIDEO_CAPABILITY_PROTECTED_CONTENT_BIT_KHR** - the decode or encode session supports protected content.

• **VK_VIDEO_CAPABILITY_SEPARATE_REFERENCE_IMAGES_BIT_KHR** - the DPB or Reconstructed Video Picture Resources for the video session may be created as a separate VkImage for each DPB picture. If not supported, the DPB must be created as single multi-layered image where each layer represents one of the DPB Video Picture Resources.

// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
typedef VkFlags VkVideoCapabilityFlagsKHR;

VkVideoCapabilityFlagsKHR is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more VkVideoCapabilityFlagBitsKHR.

### 35.3.4. Enumeration of Supported Video Output, Input and DPB Formats

To enumerate the supported output, input and DPB image formats for a specific codec operation and video profile, call:

// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
VkResult vkGetPhysicalDeviceVideoFormatPropertiesKHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    const VkPhysicalDeviceVideoFormatInfoKHR* pVideoFormatInfo,
    uint32_t* pVideoFormatPropertyCount,
    VkVideoFormatPropertiesKHR* pVideoFormatProperties);

• **physicalDevice** is the physical device being queried.

• **pVideoFormatInfo** is a pointer to a VkPhysicalDeviceVideoFormatInfoKHR structure specifying the codec and video profile for which information is returned.

• **pVideoFormatPropertyCount** is a pointer to an integer related to the number of video format properties available or queried, as described below.

• **pVideoFormatProperties** is a pointer to an array of VkVideoFormatPropertiesKHR structures in which supported formats are returned.

If **pVideoFormatProperties** is NULL, then the number of video format properties supported for the given **physicalDevice** is returned in **pVideoFormatPropertyCount**. Otherwise, **pVideoFormatPropertyCount** must point to a variable set by the user to the number of elements in the **pVideoFormatProperties** array, and on return the variable is overwritten with the number of values actually written to **pVideoFormatProperties**. If the value of **pVideoFormatPropertyCount** is less than the
number of video format properties supported, at most \( pVideoFormatPropertyCount \) values will be written to \( pVideoFormatProperties \), and \( VK_INCOMPLETE \) will be returned instead of \( VK_SUCCESS \), to indicate that not all the available values were returned.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceVideoFormatPropertiesKHR-imageUsage-04844**
  
  The `imageUsage` enum of `VkPhysicalDeviceVideoFormatInfoKHR` must contain at least one of the following video image usage bit(s): `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODE_DST_BIT_KHR`, `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODE_DPB_BIT_KHR`, `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_SRC_BIT_KHR`, or `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_DPB_BIT_KHR`.

### Note

For most use cases, only decode or encode related usage flags are going to be specified. For a use case such as transcode, if the image were to be shared between decode and encode session(s), then both decode and encode related usage flags can be set.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceVideoFormatPropertiesKHR-physicalDevice-parameter**
  
  `physicalDevice` must be a valid `VkPhysicalDevice` handle.

- **VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceVideoFormatPropertiesKHR-pVideoFormatInfo-parameter**
  
  `pVideoFormatInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkPhysicalDeviceVideoFormatInfoKHR` structure.

- **VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceVideoFormatPropertiesKHR-pVideoFormatPropertyCount-parameter**
  
  `pVideoFormatPropertyCount` must be a valid pointer to a `uint32_t` value.

- **VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceVideoFormatPropertiesKHR-pVideoFormatProperties-parameter**
  
  If the value referenced by `pVideoFormatPropertyCount` is not 0, and `pVideoFormatProperties` is not NULL, `pVideoFormatProperties` must be a valid pointer to an array of `VkVideoFormatPropertiesKHR` structures.

### Return Codes

**Success**

- `VK_SUCCESS`
- `VK_INCOMPLETE`

**Failure**

- `VK_ERROR_EXTENSION_NOT_PRESENT`
- `VK_ERROR_INITIALIZATION_FAILED`
- `VK_ERROR_FORMAT_NOT_SUPPORTED`
The **VkPhysicalDeviceVideoFormatInfoKHR** input structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceVideoFormatInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkImageUsageFlags imageUsage;
    const VkVideoProfilesKHR* pVideoProfiles;
} VkPhysicalDeviceVideoFormatInfoKHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **imageUsage** is a bitmask of **VkImageUsageFlagBits** specifying intended video image usages.
- **pVideoProfiles** is a pointer to a **VkVideoProfilesKHR** structure providing the video profile(s) of video session(s) that will use the image. For most use cases, the image is used by a single video session and a single video profile is provided. For a use case such as transcode, where a decode session output image may be used as encode input for one or more encode sessions, multiple video profiles representing the video sessions that will share the image may be provided.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceVideoFormatInfoKHR-sType-sType**
  - **sType** must be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_VIDEO_FORMAT_INFO_KHR**
- **VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceVideoFormatInfoKHR-pNext-pNext**
  - **pNext** must be NULL

The **VkVideoProfilesKHR** structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
typedef struct VkVideoProfilesKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    uint32_t profileCount;
    const VkVideoProfileKHR* pProfiles;
} VkVideoProfilesKHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **profileCount** is an integer which holds the number of video profiles included in **pProfiles**.
- **pProfiles** is a pointer to an array of **VkVideoProfileKHR** structures. Each **VkVideoProfileKHR** structure must chain the corresponding codec-operation specific extension video profile structure.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkVideoProfilesKHR-sType-sType
  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_PROFILES_KHR`

- VUID-VkVideoProfilesKHR-pProfiles-parameter
  
  `pProfiles` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkVideoProfileKHR` structure

The `VkVideoFormatPropertiesKHR` output structure for `vkGetPhysicalDeviceVideoFormatPropertiesKHR` is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
typedef struct VkVideoFormatPropertiesKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkFormat format;
} VkVideoFormatPropertiesKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `format` is one of the supported formats reported by the implementation.

If the `pVideoProfiles` provided in input structure `pVideoFormatInfo` are not supported, `VK_ERROR_FORMAT_NOT_SUPPORTED` is returned. If the implementation requires an opaque video decode or encode DPB, then when querying with the corresponding video decode or encode DPB image usage in `imageUsage`, only one image format is returned: `VK_FORMAT_UNDEFINED`.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkVideoFormatPropertiesKHR-sType-sType
  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_FORMAT_PROPERTIES_KHR`

- VUID-VkVideoFormatPropertiesKHR-pNext-pNext
  
  `pNext` must be `NULL`

Before creating an image, the application should obtain the supported image creation parameters by querying with `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties2` or `vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties2` using one of the reported `pImageFormats` and adding `VkVideoProfilesKHR` to the `pNext` chain of `VkFormatProperties2`.

35.4. Video Session Objects

35.4.1. Video Session

Video session objects are abstracted and represented by `VkVideoSessionKHR` handles:
Creating a Video Session

To create a video session object, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
VK_DEFINE_NON_DISPATCHABLE_HANDLE(VkVideoSessionKHR)
```

### VkResult vkCreateVideoSessionKHR(VkDevice device, const VkVideoSessionCreateInfoKHR* pCreateInfo, const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator, VkVideoSessionKHR* pVideoSession);

- **device** is the logical device that creates the decode or encode session object.
- **pCreateInfo** is a pointer to a `VkVideoSessionCreateInfoKHR` structure containing parameters specifying the creation of the decode or encode session.
- **pAllocator** controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
- **pVideoSession** is a pointer to a `VkVideoSessionKHR` structure specifying the decode or encode video session object which will be created by this function when it returns `VK_SUCCESS`.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCreateVideoSessionKHR-device-parameter
  
  device must be a valid `VkDevice` handle

- VUID-vkCreateVideoSessionKHR-pCreateInfo-parameter
  
  pCreateInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkVideoSessionCreateInfoKHR` structure

- VUID-vkCreateVideoSessionKHR-pAllocator-parameter
  
  If pAllocator is not NULL, pAllocator must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkAllocationCallbacks` structure

- VUID-vkCreateVideoSessionKHR-pVideoSession-parameter
  
  pVideoSession must be a valid pointer to a `VkVideoSessionKHR` handle
Return Codes

**Success**
- VK_SUCCESS

**Failure**
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_INITIALIZATION_FAILED
- VK_ERROR_INCOMPATIBLE_DRIVER
- VK_ERROR_FEATURE_NOT_PRESENT

The `VkVideoSessionCreateInfoKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
typedef struct VkVideoSessionCreateInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    uint32_t queueFamilyIndex;
    VkVideoSessionCreateFlagsKHR flags;
    const VkVideoProfileKHR* pVideoProfile;
    VkFormat pictureFormat;
    VkExtent2D maxCodedExtent;
    VkFormat referencePicturesFormat;
    uint32_t maxReferencePicturesSlotsCount;
    uint32_t maxReferencePicturesActiveCount;
} VkVideoSessionCreateInfoKHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **queueFamilyIndex** is the queue family of the created video session.
- **flags** is a bitmask of `VkVideoSessionCreateFlagBitsKHR` specifying creation flags.
- **pVideoProfile** is a pointer to a `VkVideoProfileKHR` structure.
- **pictureFormat** is the format of the image views representing decoded Output or encoded Input pictures.
- **maxCodedExtent** is the maximum width and height of the coded pictures that this instance will be able to support.
- **referencePicturesFormat** is the format of the DPB image views representing the Reference Pictures.
- **maxReferencePicturesSlotsCount** is the maximum number of DPB Slots that can be activated with associated Video Picture Resources for the created video session.
• `maxReferencePicturesActiveCount` is the maximum number of active DPB Slots that can be used as Dpb or Reconstructed Reference Pictures within a single decode or encode operation for the created video session.
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkVideoSessionCreateInfoKHR-pVideoProfile-04845
  pVideoProfile must be a pointer to a valid VkVideoProfileKHR structure whose pNext chain must include a valid codec-specific profile structure.

- VUID-VkVideoSessionCreateInfoKHR-maxReferencePicturesSlotsCount-04846
  If Reference Pictures are required for use with the created video session, the maxReferencePicturesSlotsCount must be set to a value bigger than 0.

- VUID-VkVideoSessionCreateInfoKHR-maxReferencePicturesSlotsCount-04847
  maxReferencePicturesSlotsCount cannot exceed the implementation reported VkVideoCapabilitiesKHR::maxReferencePicturesSlotsCount.

- VUID-VkVideoSessionCreateInfoKHR-maxReferencePicturesActiveCount-04848
  If Reference Pictures are required for use with the created video session, the maxReferencePicturesActiveCount must be set to a value bigger than 0.

- VUID-VkVideoSessionCreateInfoKHR-maxReferencePicturesActiveCount-04849
  maxReferencePicturesActiveCount cannot exceed the implementation reported VkVideoCapabilitiesKHR::maxReferencePicturesActiveCount.

- VUID-VkVideoSessionCreateInfoKHR-maxReferencePicturesActiveCount-04850
  maxReferencePicturesActiveCount cannot exceed the maxReferencePicturesSlotsCount.

- VUID-VkVideoSessionCreateInfoKHR-maxCodedExtent-04851
  maxCodedExtent cannot be smaller than VkVideoCapabilitiesKHR::minExtent and bigger than VkVideoCapabilitiesKHR::maxExtent.

- VUID-VkVideoSessionCreateInfoKHR-referencePicturesFormat-04852
  referencePicturesFormat must be one of the supported formats in VkVideoFormatPropertiesKHR format returned by the vkGetPhysicalDeviceVideoFormatPropertiesKHR when the VkPhysicalDeviceVideoFormatInfoKHR imageUsage contains VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODE_DPB_BIT_KHR or VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_DPB_BIT_KHR depending on the session codec operation.

- VUID-VkVideoSessionCreateInfoKHR-pictureFormat-04853
  pictureFormat for decode output must be one of the supported formats in VkVideoFormatPropertiesKHR format returned by the vkGetPhysicalDeviceVideoFormatPropertiesKHR when the VkPhysicalDeviceVideoFormatInfoKHR imageUsage contains VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODER_DSB_BIT_KHR.

- VUID-VkVideoSessionCreateInfoKHR-pictureFormat-04854
  pictureFormat targeting encode operations must be one of the supported formats in VkVideoFormatPropertiesKHR format returned by the vkGetPhysicalDeviceVideoFormatPropertiesKHR when the VkPhysicalDeviceVideoFormatInfoKHR imageUsage contains VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODER_DSB_BIT_KHR.
### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkVideoSessionCreateInfoKHR-sType-sType**
  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_SESSION_CREATE_INFO_KHR`.

- **VUID-VkVideoSessionCreateInfoKHR-pNext-pNext**
  
  `pNext` must be `NULL`.

- **VUID-VkVideoSessionCreateInfoKHR-flags-parameter**
  
  `flags` must be a valid combination of `VkVideoSessionCreateFlagBitsKHR` values.

- **VUID-VkVideoSessionCreateInfoKHR-pVideoProfile-parameter**

  `pVideoProfile` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkVideoProfileKHR` structure.

- **VUID-VkVideoSessionCreateInfoKHR-pictureFormat-parameter**

  `pictureFormat` must be a valid `VkFormat` value.

- **VUID-VkVideoSessionCreateInfoKHR-referencePicturesFormat-parameter**

  `referencePicturesFormat` must be a valid `VkFormat` value.

The decode or encode session creation flags defined with the following enums:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
typedef enum VkVideoSessionCreateFlagBitsKHR {
    VK_VIDEO_SESSION_CREATE_DEFAULT_KHR = 0,
    VK_VIDEO_SESSION_CREATE_PROTECTED_CONTENT_BIT_KHR = 0x00000001,
} VkVideoSessionCreateFlagBitsKHR;
```

- **VK_VIDEO_SESSION_CREATE_PROTECTED_CONTENT_BIT_KHR** - create the video session for use with protected video content.

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
typedef VkFlags VkVideoSessionCreateFlagsKHR;
```

`VkVideoSessionCreateFlagsKHR` is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more `VkVideoSessionCreateFlagBitsKHR`.

### 35.4.2. Destroying a Video Session

To destroy a decode session object, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
void vkDestroyVideoSessionKHR(
    VkDevice device, 
    VkVideoSessionKHR videoSession, 
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator);
```

- **device** is the device that was used for the creation of the video session.
• **videoSession** is the decode or encode video session to be destroyed.
• **pAllocator** controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-vkDestroyVideoSessionKHR-device-parameter
  
  `- device must be a valid VkDevice handle`

- VUID-vkDestroyVideoSessionKHR-videoSession-parameter
  
  `- videoSession must be a valid VkVideoSessionKHR handle`

- VUID-vkDestroyVideoSessionKHR-pAllocator-parameter
  
  `- If pAllocator is not NULL, pAllocator must be a valid pointer to a valid VkAllocationCallbacks structure`

- VUID-vkDestroyVideoSessionKHR-videoSession-parent
  
  `- videoSession must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from device`

### 35.4.3. Video Session Memory Resource Management

#### Obtaining the Video Session Object Device Memory Requirements

To get memory requirements for a video session, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
VkResult vkGetVideoSessionMemoryRequirementsKHR(
    VkDevice device,          
    VkVideoSessionKHR videoSession,  
    uint32_t* pVideoSessionMemoryRequirementsCount,  
    VkVideoGetMemoryPropertiesKHR* pVideoSessionMemoryRequirements);  
```

- **device** is the logical device that owns the video session.
- **videoSession** is the video session to query.
- **pVideoSessionMemoryRequirementsCount** is a pointer to an integer related to the number of memory heap requirements available or queried, as described below.
- **pVideoSessionMemoryRequirements** is `NULL` or a pointer to an array of VkVideoGetMemoryPropertiesKHR structures in which the memory heap requirements of the video session are returned.

If `pVideoSessionMemoryRequirements` is `NULL`, then the number of memory heap types required for the video session is returned in `pVideoSessionMemoryRequirementsCount`. Otherwise, `pVideoSessionMemoryRequirementsCount` must point to a variable set by the user with the number of elements in the `pVideoSessionMemoryRequirements` array, and on return the variable is overwritten with the number of formats actually written to `pVideoSessionMemoryRequirements`. If `pVideoSessionMemoryRequirementsCount` is less than the number of memory heap types required for the video session, then at most `pVideoSessionMemoryRequirementsCount` elements will be written to `pVideoSessionMemoryRequirements`, and `VK_INCOMPLETE` will be returned, instead of `VK_SUCCESS`, to...
indicate that not all required memory heap types were returned.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetVideoSessionMemoryRequirementsKHR-device-parameter
device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- VUID-vkGetVideoSessionMemoryRequirementsKHR-videoSession-parameter
videoSession must be a valid VkVideoSessionKHR handle

- VUID-vkGetVideoSessionMemoryRequirementsKHR-pVideoSessionMemoryRequirementsCount-parameter
pVideoSessionMemoryRequirementsCount must be a valid pointer to a uint32_t value

If the value referenced by pVideoSessionMemoryRequirementsCount is not 0, and
pVideoSessionMemoryRequirements is not NULL, pVideoSessionMemoryRequirements must be a
valid pointer to an array of pVideoSessionMemoryRequirementsCount
VkVideoGetMemoryPropertiesKHR structures

- VUID-vkGetVideoSessionMemoryRequirementsKHR-videoSession-parent
videoSession must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from device

Return Codes

Success
- VK_SUCCESS
- VK_INCOMPLETE

Failure
- VK_ERROR_INITIALIZATION_FAILED

The VkVideoGetMemoryPropertiesKHR structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
typedef struct VkVideoGetMemoryPropertiesKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    uint32_t memoryBindIndex;
    VkMemoryRequirements2* pMemoryRequirements;
} VkVideoGetMemoryPropertiesKHR;
```

- sType is the type of this structure.
- pNext is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- memoryBindIndex is the memory bind index of the memory heap type described by the
  information returned in pMemoryRequirements.
- pMemoryRequirements is a pointer to a VkMemoryRequirements2 structure in which the requested
memory heap requirements for the heap with index `memoryBindIndex` are returned.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkVideoGetMemoryPropertiesKHR-sType-sType
  - `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_GET_MEMORY_PROPERTIES_KHR`
- VUID-VkVideoGetMemoryPropertiesKHR-pNext-pNext
  - `pNext` must be `NULL`
- VUID-VkVideoGetMemoryPropertiesKHR-pMemoryRequirements-parameter
  - `pMemoryRequirements` must be a valid pointer to a `VkMemoryRequirements2` structure

### Binding the Session Object Device Memory

To attach memory to a video session object, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
VkResult vkBindVideoSessionMemoryKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    VkVideoSessionKHR videoSession,
    uint32_t videoSessionBindMemoryCount,
    const VkVideoBindMemoryKHR* pVideoSessionBindMemories);
```

- `device` is the logical device that owns the video session's memory.
- `videoSession` is the video session to be bound with device memory.
- `videoSessionBindMemoryCount` is the number of `pVideoSessionBindMemories` to be bound.
- `pVideoSessionBindMemories` is a pointer to an array of `VkVideoBindMemoryKHR` structures specifying memory regions to be bound to a device memory heap.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkBindVideoSessionMemoryKHR-device-parameter
  - `device` must be a valid `VkDevice` handle
- VUID-vkBindVideoSessionMemoryKHR-videoSession-parameter
  - `videoSession` must be a valid `VkVideoSessionKHR` handle
- VUID-vkBindVideoSessionMemoryKHR-pVideoSessionBindMemories-parameter
  - `pVideoSessionBindMemories` must be a valid pointer to an array of `videoSessionBindMemoryCount` valid `VkVideoBindMemoryKHR` structures
- VUID-vkBindVideoSessionMemoryKHR-videoSessionBindMemoryCount-arraylength
  - `videoSessionBindMemoryCount` must be greater than `0`
- VUID-vkBindVideoSessionMemoryKHR-videoSession-parent
  - `videoSession` must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from `device`
Return Codes

Success
• VK_SUCCESS

Failure
• VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
• VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY
• VK_ERROR_INITIALIZATION_FAILED

The `VkVideoBindMemoryKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
typedef struct VkVideoBindMemoryKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    uint32_t memoryBindIndex;
    VkDeviceMemory memory;
    VkDeviceSize memoryOffset;
    VkDeviceSize memorySize;
} VkVideoBindMemoryKHR;
```

• `sType` is the type of this structure.
• `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• `memoryBindIndex` is the index of the device memory heap returned in `VkVideoGetMemoryPropertiesKHR::memoryBindIndex` from `vkGetVideoSessionMemoryRequirementsKHR`.
• `memory` is the allocated device memory to be bound to the video session's heap with index `memoryBindIndex`.
• `memoryOffset` is the start offset of the region of `memory` which is to be bound.
• `memorySize` is the size in bytes of the region of `memory`, starting from `memoryOffset` bytes, to be bound.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

• `VUID-VkVideoBindMemoryKHR-sType-sType`
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_BIND_MEMORY_KHR`
• `VUID-VkVideoBindMemoryKHR-pNext-pNext`
  `pNext` must be `NULL`
• `VUID-VkVideoBindMemoryKHR-memory-parameter`
  `memory` must be a valid `VkDeviceMemory` handle
35.4.4. Video Session Parameters

This specification supports several classes of preprocessed parameters stored in Video Session Parameters objects. The Video Session Parameters objects reduces the number of parameters being dispatched and then processed by the implementation while recording video command buffers.

35.4.5. Creating Video Session Parameters

Video session parameter objects are represented by VkVideoSessionParametersKHR handles:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
VK_DEFINE_NON_DISPATCHABLE_HANDLE(VkVideoSessionParametersKHR)
```

To create a video session parameters object, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
VkResult vkCreateVideoSessionParametersKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    const VkVideoSessionParametersCreateInfoKHR* pCreateInfo,
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator,
    VkVideoSessionParametersKHR* pVideoSessionParameters);
```

- `device` is the logical device that was used for the creation of the video session object.
- `pCreateInfo` is a pointer to VkVideoSessionParametersCreateInfoKHR structure specifying the video session parameters.
- `pAllocator` controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.
- `pVideoSessionParameters` is a pointer to a VkVideoSessionParametersKHR handle in which the video session parameters object is returned.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCreateVideoSessionParametersKHR-device-parameter
  `device` must be a valid VkDevice handle

- VUID-vkCreateVideoSessionParametersKHR-pCreateInfo-parameter
  `pCreateInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid VkVideoSessionParametersCreateInfoKHR structure

- VUID-vkCreateVideoSessionParametersKHR-pAllocator-parameter
  If `pAllocator` is not NULL, `pAllocator` must be a valid pointer to a valid VkAllocationCallbacks structure

- VUID-vkCreateVideoSessionParametersKHR-pVideoSessionParameters-parameter
  `pVideoSessionParameters` must be a valid pointer to a VkVideoSessionParametersKHR handle
Return Codes

Success

- VK_SUCCESS

Failure

- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_TOO_MANY_OBJECTS

The **VkVideoSessionParametersCreateInfoKHR** structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
typedef struct VkVideoSessionParametersCreateInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkVideoSessionParametersKHR videoSessionParametersTemplate;
    VkVideoSessionKHR videoSession;
} VkVideoSessionParametersCreateInfoKHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **videoSessionParametersTemplate** is **VK_NULL_HANDLE** or a valid handle to a **VkVideoSessionParametersKHR** object. If this parameter represents a valid handle, then the underlying Video Session Parameters object will be used as a template for constructing the new video session parameters object. All of the template object’s current parameters will be inherited by the new object in such a case. Optionally, some of the template’s parameters can be updated or new parameters added to the newly constructed object via the extension-specific parameters.
- **videoSession** is the video session object against which the video session parameters object is going to be created.

Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkVideoSessionParametersCreateInfoKHR-videoSessionParametersTemplate-04855**

  If **videoSessionParametersTemplate** represents a valid handle, it **must** have been created against **videoSession**
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkVideoSessionParametersCreateInfoKHR-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_SESSION_PARAMETERS_CREATE_INFO_KHR

- VUID-VkVideoSessionParametersCreateInfoKHR-pNext-pNext
  pNext must be NULL

- VUID-VkVideoSessionParametersCreateInfoKHR-videoSessionParametersTemplate-parameter
  videoSessionParametersTemplate must be a valid VkVideoSessionParametersKHR handle

- VUID-VkVideoSessionParametersCreateInfoKHR-videoSession-parameter
  videoSession must be a valid VkVideoSessionKHR handle

- VUID-VkVideoSessionParametersCreateInfoKHR-videoSessionParametersTemplate-parent
  videoSessionParametersTemplate must have been created, allocated, or retrieved from
  videoSession

- VUID-VkVideoSessionParametersCreateInfoKHR-commonparent
  Both of videoSession, and videoSessionParametersTemplate must have been created,
  allocated, or retrieved from the same VkDevice

35.4.6. Updating the parameters of the Video Session Parameters object

To update, add, or remove video session parameters state, call:

```cpp
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
VkResult vkUpdateVideoSessionParametersKHR(
    VkDevice device,
    VkVideoSessionParametersKHR videoSessionParameters,
    const VkVideoSessionParametersUpdateInfoKHR* pUpdateInfo);
```

- `device` is the logical device that was used for the creation of the video session object.
- `videoSessionParameters` is the video session object that is going to be updated.
- `pUpdateInfo` is a pointer to a `VkVideoSessionParametersUpdateInfoKHR` structure containing the session parameters update information.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkUpdateVideoSessionParametersKHR-device-parameter
  device must be a valid VkDevice handle

- VUID-vkUpdateVideoSessionParametersKHR-videoSessionParameters-parameter
  videoSessionParameters must be a valid VkVideoSessionParametersKHR handle

- VUID-vkUpdateVideoSessionParametersKHR-pUpdateInfo-parameter
  pUpdateInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid VkVideoSessionParametersUpdateInfoKHR structure
Return Codes

Success
- VK_SUCCESS

Failure
- VK_ERROR_INITIALIZATION_FAILED
- VK_ERROR_TOO_MANY_OBJECTS

The `VkVideoSessionParametersUpdateInfoKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
typedef struct VkVideoSessionParametersUpdateInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    uint32_t updateSequenceCount;
} VkVideoSessionParametersUpdateInfoKHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **updateSequenceCount** is the sequence number of the object update with parameters, starting from 1 and incrementing the value by one with each subsequent update.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- `VUID-VkVideoSessionParametersUpdateInfoKHR-sType-sType
  sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_SESSION_PARAMETERS_UPDATE_INFO_KHR`
- `VUID-VkVideoSessionParametersUpdateInfoKHR-pNext-pNext
  pNext` must be `NULL`

35.4.7. Destroying Video Session Parameters

To destroy a video session object, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
void vkDestroyVideoSessionParametersKHR(
    VkDevice device,            
    VkVideoSessionParametersKHR videoSessionParameters,  
    const VkAllocationCallbacks* pAllocator);
```

- **device** is the device the video session was created with.
- **videoSessionParameters** is the video session parameters object to be destroyed.
• pAllocator controls host memory allocation as described in the Memory Allocation chapter.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkDestroyVideoSessionParametersKHR-device-parameter device must be a valid VkDevice handle
- VUID-vkDestroyVideoSessionParametersKHR-videoSessionParameters-parameter videoSessionParameters must be a valid VkVideoSessionParametersKHR handle
- VUID-vkDestroyVideoSessionParametersKHR-pAllocator-parameter If pAllocator is not NULL, pAllocator must be a valid pointer to a valid VkAllocationCallbacks structure

35.4.8. Video Encode and Decode commands

To start video decode or encode operations, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
void vkCmdBeginVideoCodingKHR(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    const VkVideoBeginCodingInfoKHR* pBeginInfo);
```

- commandBuffer is the command buffer to be used when recording commands for the video decode or encode operations.
- pBeginInfo is a pointer to a VkVideoBeginCodingInfoKHR structure.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdBeginVideoCodingKHR-commandBuffer-parameter commandBuffer must be a valid VkCommandBuffer handle
- VUID-vkCmdBeginVideoCodingKHR-pBeginInfo-parameter pBeginInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid VkVideoBeginCodingInfoKHR structure
- VUID-vkCmdBeginVideoCodingKHR-commandBuffer-recording commandBuffer must be in the recording state
- VUID-vkCmdBeginVideoCodingKHR-commandBuffer-cmdpool The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must support decode, or encode operations
- VUID-vkCmdBeginVideoCodingKHR-renderpass This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance
- VUID-vkCmdBeginVideoCodingKHR-bufferlevel commandBuffer must be a primary VkCommandBuffer
Host Synchronization

- Host access to the VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must be externally synchronized.

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Decode, Encode</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The VkVideoBeginCodingInfoKHR structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
typedef struct VkVideoBeginCodingInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkVideoBeginCodingFlagsKHR flags;
    VkVideoCodingQualityPresetFlagsKHR codecQualityPreset;
    VkVideoSessionKHR videoSession;
    VkVideoSessionParametersKHR videoSessionParameters;
    uint32_t referenceSlotCount;
    const VkVideoReferenceSlotKHR* pReferenceSlots;
} VkVideoBeginCodingInfoKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `flags` is reserved for future use.
- `codecQualityPreset` is a bitmask of VkVideoCodingQualityPresetFlagBitsKHR specifying the Video Decode or Encode quality preset.
- `videoSession` is the video session object to be bound for the processing of the video commands.
- `videoSessionParameters` is VK_NULL_HANDLE or a handle of a VkVideoSessionParametersKHR object to be used for the processing of the video commands. If VK_NULL_HANDLE, then no video session parameters apply to this command buffer context.
- `referenceSlotCount` is the number of reference slot entries provided in `pReferenceSlots`.
- `pReferenceSlots` is a pointer to an array of VkVideoReferenceSlotKHR structures specifying reference slots, used within the video command context between this vkCmdBeginVideoCodingKHR command and the vkCmdEndVideoCodingKHR command that follows. Each reference slot provides a slot index and the VkVideoPictureResourceKHR specifying the reference picture resource bound to this slot index. A slot index must not appear more than once in `pReferenceSlots` in a given command.
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkVideoBeginCodingInfoKHR-referenceSlotCount-04856
  \[\text{VkVideoBeginCodingInfoKHR::referenceSlotCount must not exceed the value specified in } \]
  \[\text{VkVideoSessionCreateInfoKHR::maxReferencePicturesSlotsCount } \]
  \[\text{when creating the video session object that is being provided in videoSession} \]

- VUID-VkVideoBeginCodingInfoKHR-videoSessionParameters-04857
  If \text{videoSessionParameters} is not \text{VK_NULL_HANDLE}, it \textbf{must} have been created using \text{videoSession} as a parent object.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkVideoBeginCodingInfoKHR-sType-sType
  \text{sType must be } \text{VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_BEGIN_CODING_INFO_KHR}

- VUID-VkVideoBeginCodingInfoKHR-pNext-pNext
  \text{pNext must be NULL}

- VUID-VkVideoBeginCodingInfoKHR-flags-zerobitmask
  \text{flags must be } 0

- VUID-VkVideoBeginCodingInfoKHR-codecQualityPreset-parameter
  \text{codecQualityPreset must be a valid combination of } \text{VkVideoCodingQualityPresetFlagBitsKHR} \text{ values}

- VUID-VkVideoBeginCodingInfoKHR-codecQualityPreset-requiredbitmask
  \text{codecQualityPreset must not be } 0

- VUID-VkVideoBeginCodingInfoKHR-videoSession-parameter
  \text{videoSession must be a valid } \text{VkVideoSessionKHR} \text{ handle}

- VUID-VkVideoBeginCodingInfoKHR-videoSessionParameters-parameter
  If \text{videoSessionParameters} is not \text{VK_NULL_HANDLE}, \text{videoSessionParameters} must be a valid \text{VkVideoSessionParametersKHR} \text{ handle}

- VUID-VkVideoBeginCodingInfoKHR-pReferenceSlots-parameter
  \text{pReferenceSlots must be a valid pointer to an array of } \text{referenceSlotCount} \text{ valid } \text{VkVideoReferenceSlotKHR} \text{ structures}

- VUID-VkVideoBeginCodingInfoKHR-referenceSlotCount-arraylength
  \text{referenceSlotCount must be greater than } 0

- VUID-VkVideoBeginCodingInfoKHR-videoSessionParameters-parent
  If \text{videoSessionParameters} is a valid handle, it \textbf{must} have been created, allocated, or retrieved from \text{videoSession}

- VUID-VkVideoBeginCodingInfoKHR-commonparent
  Both of \text{videoSession}, and \text{videoSessionParameters} that are valid handles of non-ignored parameters \textbf{must} have been created, allocated, or retrieved from the same \text{VkDevice}

The decode preset types are defined with the following:
typedef enum VkVideoCodingQualityPresetFlagBitsKHR {
    VK_VIDEO_CODING_QUALITY_PRESET_DEFAULT_BIT_KHR = 0,
    VK_VIDEO_CODING_QUALITY_PRESET_NORMAL_BIT_KHR = 0x00000001,
    VK_VIDEO_CODING_QUALITY_PRESET_POWER_BIT_KHR = 0x00000002,
    VK_VIDEO_CODING_QUALITY_PRESET_QUALITY_BIT_KHR = 0x00000004,
} VkVideoCodingQualityPresetFlagBitsKHR;

• VK_VIDEO_CODING_QUALITY_PRESET_NORMAL_BIT_KHR defines normal decode case.
• VK_VIDEO_CODING_QUALITY_PRESET_POWER_BIT_KHR defines power efficient case.
• VK_VIDEO_CODING_QUALITY_PRESET_QUALITY_BIT_KHR defines quality focus case.

typedef VkFlags VkVideoCodingQualityPresetFlagsKHR;

VkVideoCodingQualityPresetFlagsKHR is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more
VkVideoCodingQualityPresetFlagBitsKHR.

The VkVideoReferenceSlotKHR structure is defined as:

typedef struct VkVideoReferenceSlotKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    int8_t slotIndex;
    const VkVideoPictureResourceKHR* pPictureResource;
} VkVideoReferenceSlotKHR;

• sType is the type of this structure.
• pNext is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• slotIndex is the unique reference slot index used for the encode or decode operation.
• pPictureResource is a pointer to a VkVideoPictureResourceKHR structure describing the picture
  resource bound to this slot index.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

• VUID-VkVideoReferenceSlotKHR-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_REFERENCE_SLOT_KHR

• VUID-VkVideoReferenceSlotKHR-pNext-pNext
  pNext must be NULL

• VUID-VkVideoReferenceSlotKHR-pPictureResource-parameter
  pPictureResource must be a valid pointer to a valid VkVideoPictureResourceKHR structure
The `VkVideoPictureResourceKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
typedef struct VkVideoPictureResourceKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkOffset2D codedOffset;
    VkExtent2D codedExtent;
    uint32_t baseArrayLayer;
    VkImageView imageViewBinding;
} VkVideoPictureResourceKHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **codedOffset** is the offset to be used for the picture resource.
- **codedExtent** is the extent to be used for the picture resource.
- **baseArrayLayer** is the first array layer to be accessed for the Decode or Encode Operations.
- **imageViewBinding** is a `VkImageView` image view representing this picture resource.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- `VUID-VkVideoPictureResourceKHR-sType-sType`  
  **sType** must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_PICTURE_RESOURCE_KHR`  
- `VUID-VkVideoPictureResourceKHR-pNext-pNext`  
  **pNext** must be `NULL`  
- `VUID-VkVideoPictureResourceKHR-imageViewBinding-parameter`  
  **imageViewBinding** must be a valid `VkImageView` handle

### 35.4.9. End of the Video Session

To end video decode or encode operations, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
void vkCmdEndVideoCodingKHR(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    const VkVideoEndCodingInfoKHR* pEndCodingInfo);
```

- **commandBuffer** is the command buffer to be filled by this function.
- **pEndCodingInfo** is a pointer to a `VkVideoEndCodingInfoKHR` structure.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdEndVideoCodingKHR-commandBuffer-parameter
  `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle
- VUID-vkCmdEndVideoCodingKHR-pEndCodingInfo-parameter
  `pEndCodingInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkVideoEndCodingInfoKHR` structure
- VUID-vkCmdEndVideoCodingKHR-commandBuffer-recording
  `commandBuffer` must be in the recording state
- VUID-vkCmdEndVideoCodingKHR-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support decode, or encode operations
- VUID-vkCmdEndVideoCodingKHR-renderpass
  This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance
- VUID-vkCmdEndVideoCodingKHR-bufferlevel
  `commandBuffer` must be a primary `VkCommandBuffer`

Host Synchronization

- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Decode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Encode</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The `VkVideoEndCodingInfoKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
typedef struct VkVideoEndCodingInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkVideoEndCodingFlagsKHR flags;
} VkVideoEndCodingInfoKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `flags` is reserved for future use.
35.4.10. Video Session Control Command

To apply dynamic controls to video decode or video operations, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
void vkCmdControlVideoCodingKHR(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    const VkVideoCodingControlInfoKHR* pCodingControlInfo);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer to be filled by this function for setting encode rate control parameters.
- `pCodingControlInfo` is a pointer to a `VkVideoCodingControlInfoKHR` structure.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- `commandBuffer` must be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle
- `pCodingControlInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkVideoCodingControlInfoKHR` structure
- `commandBuffer` must be in the recording state
- The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must support decode, or encode operations
- This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance
- `commandBuffer` must be a primary `VkCommandBuffer`
Host Synchronization

- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from must be externally synchronized.

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Decode</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Encode</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The `VkVideoCodingControlInfoKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VKKHR_video_queue
typedef struct VkVideoCodingControlInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkVideoCodingControlFlagsKHR flags;
} VkVideoCodingControlInfoKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `flags` is a bitmask of `VkVideoCodingControlFlagsKHR` specifying control flags.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- `VUID-VkVideoCodingControlInfoKHR-sType-sType`  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_CODING_CONTROL_INFO_KHR`

- `VUID-VkVideoCodingControlInfoKHR-pNext-pNext`  
  `pNext` must be `NULL` or a pointer to a valid instance of `VkVideoEncodeRateControlInfoKHR`

- `VUID-VkVideoCodingControlInfoKHR-sType-unique`  
  The `sType` value of each struct in the `pNext` chain must be unique

- `VUID-VkVideoCodingControlInfoKHR-flags-parameter`  
  `flags` must be a valid combination of `VkVideoCodingControlFlagBitsKHR` values

The `vkCmdControlVideoCodingKHR` flags are defined with the following enumeration:
• **VK_VIDEO_CODING_CONTROL_RESET_BIT_KHR** indicates a request for the bound video session context to be reset to init state.

**35.5. Video Decode Operations**

Before the application can start recording Vulkan command buffers for the Video Decode Operations, it **must** do the following, beforehand:

1. Ensure that the implementation can decode the Video Content by querying the supported codec operations and profiles using `vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties2`.

2. By using `vkGetPhysicalDeviceVideoFormatPropertiesKHR` and providing one or more video profiles, choose the Vulkan formats supported by the implementation. The formats for output and reference pictures **must** be queried and chosen separately. Refer to the section on enumeration of supported video formats.

3. Before creating an image to be used as a video picture resource, obtain the supported image creation parameters by querying with `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties2` and `vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties2` using one of the reported formats and adding `VkVideoProfilesKHR` to the `pNext` chain of `VkFormatProperties2`. When querying the parameters with `vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties2` for images targeting decoded output and reference (DPB) pictures, the `VkPhysicalDeviceImageFormatInfo2::usage` field should contain `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODE_DST_BIT_KHR` and `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODE_DPB_BIT_KHR`, respectively.

4. Create none, some, or all of the required images for the decoded output and reference pictures. More Video Picture Resources can be created at some later point if needed while processing the decoded content. Also, if the decoded picture size is expected to change, the images can be created based on the maximum decoded content size required.

5. Create the video session to be used for video decode operations. Before creating the Decode Video Session, the decode capabilities **should** be queried with `vkGetPhysicalDeviceVideoCapabilitiesKHR` to obtain the limits of the parameters allowed by the implementation for a particular codec profile.

6. Bind memory resources with the decode video session by calling `vkBindVideoSessionMemoryKHR`. The video session **cannot** be used until memory resources
are allocated and bound to it. In order to determine the required memory sizes and heap types of the device memory allocations, `vkGetVideoSessionMemoryRequirementsKHR` should be called.

7. Create one or more **Session Parameter objects** for use across command buffer recording operations, if required by the codec extension in use. These objects **must** be created against a video session with the parameters required by the codec. Each Session Parameter object created is a child object of the associated Session object and **cannot** be bound in the command buffer with any other Session Object.

The recording of Video Decode Commands against a Vulkan command buffer consists of the following sequence:

1. **vkCmdBeginVideoCodingKHR** starts the recording of one or more Video Decode operations in the command buffer. For each Video Decode Command operation, a Video Session **must** be bound to the command buffer within this command. This command establishes a Vulkan Video Decode Context that consists of the bound Video Session Object, Session Parameters Object, and the required Video Picture Resources. The established Video Decode Context is in effect until the **vkCmdEndVideoCodingKHR** command is recorded. If more Video Decode operations are to be required after the **vkCmdEndVideoCodingKHR** command, another Video Decode Context can be started with the **vkCmdBeginVideoCodingKHR** command.

2. **vkCmdDecodeVideoKHR** specifies one or more compressed data buffers to be decoded. The `VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR` parameters, and the codec extension structures chained to this, specify the details of the decode operation.

3. **vkCmdControlVideoCodingKHR** records operations against the decoded data, decoding device, or the Video Session state.

4. **vkCmdEndVideoCodingKHR** signals the end of the recording of the Vulkan Video Decode Context, as established by **vkCmdBeginVideoCodingKHR**.

In addition to the above, the following commands **can** be recorded between **vkCmdBeginVideoCodingKHR** and **vkCmdEndVideoCodingKHR**:

- Query operations
- Global Memory Barriers
- Buffer Memory Barriers
- Image Memory Barriers (these **must** be used to transition the Video Picture Resources to the proper `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_VIDEO_DECODE_DPB_KHR` and `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_VIDEO_DECODE_DST_KHR` layouts).
- Pipeline Barriers
- Events
- Timestamps
- Device Groups (device mask)

The following Video Decode related commands **must** be recorded **outside** the Vulkan Video Decode Context established with the **vkCmdBeginVideoCodingKHR** and **vkCmdEndVideoCodingKHR** commands:
35.5.1. Video Picture Decode Modes

There are a few ways that the `vkCmdDecodeVideoKHR` can be configured for the Video Picture Decode Operations, based on:

- if the output resource would need to be used as Reference Picture for subsequent decode operations and;
- if DPB Slots are required for use as Reference Pictures indexes.

The most basic Video Picture Decode operation with the `vkCmdDecodeVideoKHR` command is to output the decoded pixel data without using any DPB Reference Pictures and without updating any DPB Slots indexes.

In this case, the following `VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR` parameters must be set:

- `VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR::pSetupReferenceSlot->pPictureResource->imageViewBinding` must be a valid `VkImageView`. This `VkImageView` represents the output resource where the decoded pixels will be populated after a successful decode operation.
- `VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR::pSetupReferenceSlot->slotIndex` must be an invalid DPB Slot index (-1) since the decoded picture is not intended to be used as a reference picture with subsequent video decode operations.
- The value of the `VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR::referenceSlotCount` can be 0 and `VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR::pReferenceSlots` can be NULL.
- If `VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR::pReferenceSlots` is not NULL, it can still have entries representing DPB Slot indexes with a Valid Picture Reference. The codec extension selects the actual use of the Reference Pictures by referring to a DPB Slot index with a Valid Picture Reference.

Video Picture Decode operations with the `vkCmdDecodeVideoKHR` command, requiring one or more Reference Pictures for the predictions of the values of samples for the decoded output picture would require DPB Slots with Valid Picture Reference.

In this case, the following `VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR` parameters must be set:

- `VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR::pSetupReferenceSlot->pPictureResource->imageViewBinding` must be a valid `VkImageView`. This `VkImageView` represents the output resource where the decoded pixels will be populated after a successful decode operation.
- `VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR::pSetupReferenceSlot->slotIndex` must be an invalid DPB Slot index (-1) since the decoded picture is not intended to be used as a reference picture with subsequent video decode operations.
- The value of the `VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR::referenceSlotCount` must not be 0 and `VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR::pReferenceSlots` should represent at least the number of the reference slots required for the decode operation. The codec extension selects the actual use of the
**Reference Pictures** by referring to a DPB Slot index with a Valid Picture Reference. If the implementation does not use an opaque DPB, each DPB slot representing a reference picture must refer to a valid image view. The image views must represent the same image resources that were used to create the reference picture for the corresponding DPB Slot index.

- **VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR::pReferenceSlots** can still have entries representing DPB Slot indexes with a Valid Picture Reference.

After the `vkCmdDecodeVideoKHR` operation is completed successfully, the `VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR::pSetupReferenceSlot->pPictureResource->imageViewBinding` pixel data will be updated with the decoded content. The operation will not update any DPB Slot with Reference Pictures data. However, any DPB Slot activation, invalidation, or deactivation operations requested via `VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR::pReferenceSlots` are still going to be performed.

![Diagram showing the decoding process](image)

**Figure 26. Decoding a Frame to VkImageView without a slot update for a Reference Picture**

**Video Picture Decode with a Reference Picture slot update and using optional Reference Pictures**

When it is known that the picture to be decoded will be used as a reference picture for subsequent decode operations, one of the available DPB Slots needs to be selected for activation and update operations as part of the `vkCmdDecodeVideoKHR` command.

Based on whether a decode operation with reference pictures or without reference pictures is required, the `vkCmdDecodeVideoKHR` should be configured with parameters as described in the previous sections. In addition, one of the available DPB Slots must be selected by the application, activated with resources and then set-up for an update with the decode operation.

In this case, the following `VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR` parameters must be set:

- **VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR::pSetupReferenceSlot->pPictureResource->imageViewBinding** must be a
valid VkImageView. This VkImageView represents the output resource where the decoded pixels will be populated after a successful decode operation. If the implementation does not use an opaque DPB, both the output and reference picture resource coincide.

- VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR::pSetupReferenceSlot->slotIndex must be a valid DPB Slot index selected by the application, based on the currently available slots.
- VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR::pReferenceSlots can still have entries representing DPB Slot indexes with a Valid Picture Reference.

After the vkCmdDecodeVideoKHR operation has completed successfully, the decoded content will be available in the resource provided for VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR::pSetupReferenceSlot->pPictureResource->imageViewBinding. In addition, this operation will update the selected DPB Slot with Reference Pictures data. Any other DPB Slot activation, invalidation, or deactivation operation requested via the VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR::pReferenceSlots are going to be performed as well.

![Diagram](image.png)

**Figure 27. Decoding a Frame to VkImageView with an update to a Reference Pictures DPB Slot**

### 35.5.2. Video Decode Command Buffer Commands

To decode a frame, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_decode_queue
void vkCmdDecodeVideoKHR(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    const VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR* pFrameInfo);
```

- `commandBuffer` is the command buffer to be filled with this function for decode frame command.
- `pFrameInfo` is a pointer to a VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR structure.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkCmdDecodeVideoKHR-commandBuffer-parameter
  commandBuffer must be a valid VkCommandBuffer handle

- VUID-vkCmdDecodeVideoKHR-pFrameInfo-parameter
  pFrameInfo must be a valid pointer to a valid VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR structure

- VUID-vkCmdDecodeVideoKHR-commandBuffer-recording
  commandBuffer must be in the recording state

- VUID-vkCmdDecodeVideoKHR-commandBuffer-cmdpool
  The VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must support decode operations

- VUID-vkCmdDecodeVideoKHR-renderpass
  This command must only be called outside of a render pass instance

- VUID-vkCmdDecodeVideoKHR-bufferlevel
  commandBuffer must be a primary VkCommandBuffer

Host Synchronization

- Host access to the VkCommandPool that commandBuffer was allocated from must be externally synchronized

Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Decode</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkVideoDecodeFlagsKHR flags;
    VkOffset2D codedOffset;
    VkExtent2D codedExtent;
    VkBuffer srcBuffer;
    VkDeviceSize srcBufferOffset;
    VkDeviceSize srcBufferRange;
    VkVideoPictureResourceKHR dstPictureResource;
    const VkVideoReferenceSlotKHR* pSetupReferenceSlot;
    uint32_t referenceSlotCount;
    const VkVideoReferenceSlotKHR* pReferenceSlots;
} VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR;

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure. All the codec specific structures related to each frame (picture parameters, quantization matrix, etc.) **must** be chained here and pass to decode session with the function call `vkCmdDecodeVideoKHR`.
- **flags** is a bitmask of `VkVideoDecodeFlagBitsKHR` specifying decode flags, reserved for future versions of this specification.
- **codedOffset** is the coded offset of the decode operations. The purpose of this field is interpreted based on the codec extension.
- **codedExtent** is the coded size of the decode operations.
- **srcBuffer** is the source buffer that holds the encoded bitstream.
- **srcBufferOffset** is the buffer offset where the valid encoded bitstream starts in srcBuffer. It **must** meet the alignment requirement `minBitstreamBufferOffsetAlignment` within `VkVideoCapabilitiesKHR` queried with the `vkGetPhysicalDeviceVideoCapabilitiesKHR` function.
- **srcBufferRange** is the size of the srcBuffer with valid encoded bitstream, starting from `srcBufferOffset`. It **must** meet the alignment requirement `minBitstreamBufferSizeAlignment` within `VkVideoCapabilitiesKHR` queried with the `vkGetPhysicalDeviceVideoCapabilitiesKHR` function.
- **dstPictureResource** is the destination Decoded Output Picture Resource.
- **pSetupReferenceSlot** is NULL or a pointer to a `VkVideoReferenceSlotKHR` structure used for generating a DPB reference slot and Picture Resource. `pSetupReferenceSlot->slotIndex` specifies the slot index number to use as a target for producing the DPB data. `slotIndex` **must** reference a valid entry as specified in `VkVideoBeginCodingInfoKHR` via the `pReferenceSlots` within the `vkCmdBeginVideoCodingKHR` command that established the Vulkan Video Decode Context for this command.
- **referenceSlotCount** is the number of the DPB Reference Pictures that will be used when this decoding operation is executing.
- **pReferenceSlots** is a pointer to an array of `VkVideoReferenceSlotKHR` structures specifying the
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR-sType-sType
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_DECODE_INFO_KHR`

- VUID-VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR-pNext-pNext
  `pNext` must be `NULL`

- VUID-VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR-flags-parameter
  `flags` must be a valid combination of `VkVideoDecodeFlagBitsKHR` values

- VUID-VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR-srcBuffer-parameter
  `srcBuffer` must be a valid `VkBuffer` handle

- VUID-VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR-dstPictureResource-parameter
  `dstPictureResource` must be a valid `VkVideoPictureResourceKHR` structure

- VUID-VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR-pSetupReferenceSlot-parameter
  `pSetupReferenceSlot` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkVideoReferenceSlotKHR` structure

- VUID-VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR-pReferenceSlots-parameter
  `pReferenceSlots` must be a valid pointer to an array of `referenceSlotCount` valid `VkVideoReferenceSlotKHR` structures

- VUID-VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR-referenceSlotCount-arraylength
  `referenceSlotCount` must be greater than 0

The `vkCmdDecodeVideoKHR` flags are defined with the following enumeration:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_decode_queue
typedef enum VkVideoDecodeFlagBitsKHR {
    VK_VIDEO_Decode_Default_KHR = 0,
    VK_VIDEO_Decode_RESERVED_0_BIT_KHR = 0x00000001
} VkVideoDecodeFlagBitsKHR;
```

- `VK_VIDEO_Decode_RESERVED_0_BIT_KHR` The current version of the specification has reserved this value for future use.

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_decode_queue
typedef VkFlags VkVideoDecodeFlagsKHR;
```

`VkVideoDecodeFlagsKHR` is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more `VkVideoDecodeFlagBitsKHR`. 

DPB Reference pictures that will be used when this decoding operation is executing.
35.6. Video Encode Operations

Before the application can start recording Vulkan command buffers for the Video Encode Operations, it must do the following, beforehand:

1. Ensure that the implementation can encode the Video Content by querying the supported codec operations and profiles using \texttt{vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties2}.

2. By using \texttt{vkGetPhysicalDeviceVideoFormatPropertiesKHR} and providing one or more video profiles, choose the Vulkan formats supported by the implementation. The formats for input and reference pictures must be queried and chosen separately. Refer to the section on enumeration of supported video formats.

3. Before creating an image to be used as a video picture resource, obtain the supported image creation parameters by querying with \texttt{vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties2} and \texttt{vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties2} using one of the reported formats and adding \texttt{VkVideoProfilesKHR} to the \texttt{pNext} chain of \texttt{VkFormatProperties2}. When querying the parameters with \texttt{vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties2} for images targeting input and reference (DPB) pictures, the \texttt{VkPhysicalDeviceImageFormatInfo2::usage} field should contain \texttt{VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_SRC_BIT_KHR} and \texttt{VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_DPB_BIT_KHR}, respectively.

4. Create none, some, or all of the required images for the input and reference pictures. More Video Picture Resources can be created at some later point if needed while processing the content to be encoded. Also, if the size of the picture to be encoded is expected to change, the images can be created based on the maximum expected content size.

5. Create the video session to be used for video encode operations. Before creating the Encode Video Session, the encode capabilities should be queried with \texttt{vkGetPhysicalDeviceVideoCapabilitiesKHR} to obtain the limits of the parameters allowed by the implementation for a particular codec profile.

6. Bind memory resources with the encode video session by calling \texttt{vkBindVideoSessionMemoryKHR}. The video session cannot be used until memory resources are allocated and bound to it. In order to determine the required memory sizes and heap types of the device memory allocations, \texttt{vkGetVideoSessionMemoryRequirementsKHR} should be called.

7. Create one or more Session Parameter objects for use across command buffer recording operations, if required by the codec extension in use. These objects must be created against a video session with the parameters required by the codec. Each Session Parameter object created is a child object of the associated Session object and cannot be bound in the command buffer with any other Session Object.

The recording of Video Encode Commands against a Vulkan Command Buffer consists of the following sequence:

1. \texttt{vkCmdBeginVideoCodingKHR} starts the recording of one or more Video Encode operations in the command buffer. For each Video Encode Command operation, a Video Session must be bound to the command buffer within this command. This command establishes a Vulkan Video Encode Context that consists of the bound Video Session Object, Session Parameters Object, and the required Video Picture Resources. The established Video Encode Context is in effect until the
vkCmdEndVideoCodingKHR command is recorded. If more Video Encode operations are to be required after the vkCmdEndVideoCodingKHR command, another Video Encode Context can be started with the vkCmdBeginVideoCodingKHR command.

2. **vkCmdEncodeVideoKHR** specifies one or more frames to be encoded. The VkVideoEncodeInfoKHR parameters, and the codec extension structures chained to this, specify the details of the encode operation.

3. **vkCmdControlVideoCodingKHR** records operations against the encoded data, encoding device, or the Video Session state.

4. **vkCmdEndVideoCodingKHR** signals the end of the recording of the Vulkan Video Encode Context, as established by vkCmdBeginVideoCodingKHR.

In addition to the above, the following commands can be recorded between vkCmdBeginVideoCodingKHR and vkCmdEndVideoCodingKHR:

- Query operations
- Global Memory Barriers
- Buffer Memory Barriers
- Image Memory Barriers (these must be used to transition the Video Picture Resources to the proper VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_VIDEO_ENCODE_SRC_KHR and VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_VIDEO_ENCODE_DPB_KHR layouts).
- Pipeline Barriers
- Events
- Timestamps
- Device Groups (device mask)

The following Video Encode related commands must be recorded outside the Vulkan Video Encode Context established with the vkCmdBeginVideoCodingKHR and vkCmdEndVideoCodingKHR commands:

- Sparse Memory Binding
- Copy Commands
- Clear Commands

35.6.1. **Video Encode Vulkan Command Buffer Commands**

To launch an encode operation that results in bitstream generation, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_encode_queue
void vkCmdEncodeVideoKHR(
    VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer,
    const VkVideoEncodeInfoKHR* pEncodeInfo);
```

- **commandBuffer** is the command buffer to be filled with this function for encoding to generate a
bitstream.

- `pEncodeInfo` is a pointer to a `VkVideoEncodeInfoKHR` structure.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkCmdEncodeVideoKHR-commandBuffer-parameter**
  
  `commandBuffer` **must** be a valid `VkCommandBuffer` handle

- **VUID-vkCmdEncodeVideoKHR-pEncodeInfo-parameter**
  
  `pEncodeInfo` **must** be a valid pointer to a valid `VkVideoEncodeInfoKHR` structure

- **VUID-vkCmdEncodeVideoKHR-commandBuffer-recording**

  `commandBuffer` **must** be in the **recording state**

- **VUID-vkCmdEncodeVideoKHR-commandBuffer-cmdpool**

  The `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from **must** support encode operations

- **VUID-vkCmdEncodeVideoKHR-renderpass**

  This command **must** only be called outside of a render pass instance

- **VUID-vkCmdEncodeVideoKHR-bufferlevel**

  `commandBuffer` **must** be a primary `VkCommandBuffer`

### Host Synchronization

- Host access to the `VkCommandPool` that `commandBuffer` was allocated from **must** be externally synchronized

### Command Properties

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Command Buffer Levels</th>
<th>Render Pass Scope</th>
<th>Supported Queue Types</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Primary</td>
<td>Outside</td>
<td>Encode</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The `VkVideoEncodeInfoKHR` structure is defined as:
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_encode_queue

typedef struct VkVideoEncodeInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkVideoEncodeFlagsKHR flags;
    uint32_t qualityLevel;
    VkExtent2D codedExtent;
    VkBuffer dstBitstreamBuffer;
    VkDeviceSize dstBitstreamBufferOffset;
    VkDeviceSize dstBitstreamBufferMaxRange;
    VkVideoPictureResourceKHR srcPictureResource;
    const VkVideoReferenceSlotKHR* pSetupReferenceSlot;
    uint32_t referenceSlotCount;
    const VkVideoReferenceSlotKHR* pReferenceSlots;
} VkVideoEncodeInfoKHR;

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is a pointer to a structure extending this structure. A codec-specific extension structure must be chained to specify what bitstream unit to generate with this encode operation.
- `flags` is a bitmask of `VkVideoEncodeFlagBitsKHR` specifying encode flags, and is reserved for future versions of this specification.
- `qualityLevel` is the coding quality level of the encoding. It is defined by the codec-specific extensions.
- `codedExtent` is the coded size of the encode operations.
- `dstBitstreamBuffer` is the buffer where the encoded bitstream output will be produced.
- `dstBitstreamBufferOffset` is the offset in the `dstBitstreamBuffer` where the encoded bitstream output will start. `dstBitstreamBufferOffset`'s value must be aligned to `VkVideoCapabilitiesKHR::minBitstreamBufferOffsetAlignment`, as reported by the implementation.
- `dstBitstreamBufferMaxRange` is the maximum size of the `dstBitstreamBuffer` that can be used while the encoded bitstream output is produced. `dstBitstreamBufferMaxRange`'s value must be aligned to `VkVideoCapabilitiesKHR::minBitstreamBufferSizeAlignment`, as reported by the implementation.
- `srcPictureResource` is the Picture Resource of the Input Picture to be encoded by the operation.
- `pSetupReferenceSlot` is a pointer to a `VkVideoReferenceSlotKHR` structure used for generating a reconstructed reference slot and Picture Resource. `pSetupReferenceSlot->slotIndex` specifies the slot index number to use as a target for producing the Reconstructed (DPB) data. `pSetupReferenceSlot` must be one of the entries provided in `VkVideoBeginCodingInfoKHR` via the `pReferenceSlots` within the `vkCmdBeginVideoCodingKHR` command that established the Vulkan Video Encode Context for this command.
- `referenceSlotCount` is the number of Reconstructed Reference Pictures that will be used when this encoding operation is executing.
- `pReferenceSlots` is `NULL` or a pointer to an array of `VkVideoReferenceSlotKHR` structures that will be used when this encoding operation is executing. Each entry in `pReferenceSlots` must be one
of the entries provided in VkVideoBeginCodingInfoKHR via the pReferenceSlots within the vkCmdBeginVideoCodingKHR command that established the Vulkan Video Encode Context for this command.

Multiple vkCmdEncodeVideoKHR commands may be recorded within a Vulkan Video Encode Context. The execution of each vkCmdEncodeVideoKHR command will result in generating codec-specific bitstream units. These bitstream units are generated consecutively into the bitstream buffer specified in dstBitstreamBuffer of VkVideoEncodeInfoKHR within the vkCmdBeginVideoCodingKHR command. The produced bitstream is the sum of all these bitstream units, including any padding between the bitstream units. Any bitstream padding must be filled with data compliant to the codec standard so as not to cause any syntax errors during decoding of the bitstream units with the padding included. The range of the bitstream buffer written can be queried via video encode bitstream buffer range queries.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkVideoEncodeInfoKHR-sType-sType**
  
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_ENCODE_INFO_KHR

- **VUID-VkVideoEncodeInfoKHR-pNext-pNext**
  
  pNext must be NULL

- **VUID-VkVideoEncodeInfoKHR-flags-parameter**
  
  flags must be a valid combination of VkVideoEncodeFlagBitsKHR values

- **VUID-VkVideoEncodeInfoKHR-dstBitstreamBuffer-parameter**
  
  dstBitstreamBuffer must be a valid VkBuffer handle

- **VUID-VkVideoEncodeInfoKHR-srcPictureResource-parameter**
  
  srcPictureResource must be a valid VkVideoPictureResourceKHR structure

- **VUID-VkVideoEncodeInfoKHR-pSetupReferenceSlot-parameter**
  
  pSetupReferenceSlot must be a valid pointer to a valid VkVideoReferenceSlotKHR structure

- **VUID-VkVideoEncodeInfoKHR-pReferenceSlots-parameter**
  
  pReferenceSlots must be a valid pointer to an array of referenceSlotCount valid VkVideoReferenceSlotKHR structures

- **VUID-VkVideoEncodeInfoKHR-referenceSlotCount-arraylength**
  
  referenceSlotCount must be greater than 0

The vkCmdEncodeVideoKHR flags are defined with the following enumeration:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_encode_queue
typedef enum VkVideoEncodeFlagBitsKHR {
    VK_VIDEO_ENCODE_DEFAULT_KHR = 0,
    VK_VIDEO_ENCODE_RESERVED_0_BIT_KHR = 0x00000001,
} VkVideoEncodeFlagBitsKHR;
```

- **VK_VIDEO_ENCODE_RESERVED_0_BIT_KHR** The current version of the specification has reserved this
value for future use.

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_encode_queue
typedef VkFlags VkVideoEncodeFlagsKHR;
```

`VkVideoEncodeFlagsKHR` is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more `VkVideoEncodeFlagBitsKHR`.

The `VkVideoEncodeRateControlInfoKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_encode_queue
typedef struct VkVideoEncodeRateControlInfoKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkVideoEncodeRateControlFlagsKHR flags;
    VkVideoEncodeRateControlModeFlagBitsKHR rateControlMode;
    uint32_t averageBitrate;
    uint16_t peakToAverageBitrateRatio;
    uint16_t frameRateNumerator;
    uint16_t frameRateDenominator;
    uint32_t virtualBufferSizeInMs;
} VkVideoEncodeRateControlInfoKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `flags` is a bitmask of `VkVideoEncodeRateControlModeFlagBitsKHR` specifying encode rate control flags.
- `rateControlMode` is a `VkVideoEncodeRateControlModeFlagBitsKHR` value specifying the encode rate control mode.
- `averageBitrate` is the average bitrate in bits/second. Valid when rate control is not `VK_VIDEO_ENCODE_RATE_CONTROL_MODE_NONE_BIT_KHR`.
- `peakToAverageBitrateRatio` is the peak bitrate to average bitrate in percentage. Valid when rate control is `VK_VIDEO_ENCODE_RATE_CONTROL_MODE_VBR_BIT_KHR`.
- `frameRateNumerator` is the numerator of the frame rate. Valid when rate control is not `VK_VIDEO_ENCODE_RATE_CONTROL_MODE_NONE_BIT_KHR`.
- `frameRateDenominator` is the denominator of the frame rate. Valid when rate control is not `VK_VIDEO_ENCODE_RATE_CONTROL_MODE_NONE_BIT_KHR`.
- `virtualBufferSizeInMs` is the leaky bucket model virtual buffer size in milliseconds, with respect to peak bitrate. Valid when rate control is not `VK_VIDEO_ENCODE_RATE_CONTROL_MODE_NONE_BIT_KHR`. For example, virtual buffer size is \((\text{virtualBufferSizeInMs} \times \text{peakToAverageBitrateRatio} \times \text{averageBitrate}) / 100000\).

A codec-specific extension structure for further rate control parameter settings may be chained to `VkVideoEncodeRateControlInfoKHR`. 
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkVideoEncodeRateControlInfoKHR-sType-sType**
  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_ENCODE_RATE_CONTROL_INFO_KHR`

- **VUID-VkVideoEncodeRateControlInfoKHR-flags-parameter**
  
  `flags` must be a valid combination of `VkVideoEncodeRateControlFlagBitsKHR` values

- **VUID-VkVideoEncodeRateControlInfoKHR-flags-required bitmask**
  
  `flags` must not be 0

- **VUID-VkVideoEncodeRateControlInfoKHR-rateControlMode-parameter**
  
  `rateControlMode` must be a valid `VkVideoEncodeRateControlModeFlagBitsKHR` value

The rate control modes are defined with the following enums:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_encode_queue
typedef enum VkVideoEncodeRateControlModeFlagBitsKHR {
    VK_VIDEO_ENCODE_RATE_CONTROL_MODE_NONE_BIT_KHR = 0,
    VK_VIDEO_ENCODE_RATE_CONTROL_MODE_CBR_BIT_KHR = 1,
    VK_VIDEO_ENCODE_RATE_CONTROL_MODE_VBR_BIT_KHR = 2,
} VkVideoEncodeRateControlModeFlagBitsKHR;
```

- **VK_VIDEO_ENCODE_RATE_CONTROL_MODE_NONE_BIT_KHR** for disabling rate control.
- **VK_VIDEO_ENCODE_RATE_CONTROL_MODE_CBR_BIT_KHR** for constant bitrate rate control mode.
- **VK_VIDEO_ENCODE_RATE_CONTROL_MODE_VBR_BIT_KHR** for variable bitrate rate control mode.

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_encode_queue
typedef VkFlags VkVideoEncodeRateControlModeFlagsKHR;
```

`VkVideoEncodeRateControlModeFlagsKHR` is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more `VkVideoEncodeRateControlModeFlagBitsKHR`.

The `vkCmdControlVideoCodingKHR` flags are defined with the following enumeration:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_encode_queue
typedef enum VkVideoEncodeRateControlFlagBitsKHR {
    VK_VIDEO_ENCODE_RATE_CONTROL_DEFAULT_KHR = 0,
    VK_VIDEO_ENCODE_RATE_CONTROL_RESET_BIT_KHR = 0x00000001,
} VkVideoEncodeRateControlFlagBitsKHR;
```

- **VK_VIDEO_ENCODE_RESERVED_0_BIT_KHR** The current version of the specification has reserved this value for future use.
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_encode_queue

typedef VkFlags VkVideoEncodeRateControlFlagsKHR;

VkVideoEncodeRateControlFlagsKHR is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more
VkVideoEncodeRateControlFlagBitsKHR.
Chapter 36. Extending Vulkan

New functionality may be added to Vulkan via either new extensions or new versions of the core, or new versions of an extension in some cases.

This chapter describes how Vulkan is versioned, how compatibility is affected between different versions, and compatibility rules that are followed by the Vulkan Working Group.

36.1. Instance and Device Functionality

Commands that enumerate instance properties, or that accept a `VkInstance` object as a parameter, are considered instance-level functionality. Commands that enumerate physical device properties, or that accept a `VkDevice` object or any of a device's child objects as a parameter, are considered device-level functionality.

**Note**

Vulkan 1.0 initially specified new physical device enumeration functionality as instance-level, requiring it to be included in an instance extension. As the capabilities of device-level functionality require discovery via physical device enumeration, this led to the situation where many device extensions required an instance extension as well. To alleviate this extra work, `VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2` (and subsequently Vulkan 1.1) redefined device-level functionality to include physical device enumeration.

36.2. Core Versions

The Vulkan Specification is regularly updated with bug fixes and clarifications. Occasionally new functionality is added to the core and at some point it is expected that there will be a desire to perform a large, breaking change to the API. In order to indicate to developers how and when these changes are made to the specification, and to provide a way to identify each set of changes, the Vulkan API maintains a version number.

36.2.1. Version Numbers

The Vulkan version number comprises four parts indicating the variant, major, minor and patch version of the Vulkan API Specification.

The **variant** indicates the variant of the Vulkan API supported by the implementation. This is always 0 for the Vulkan API.
Note

A non-zero variant indicates the API is a variant of the Vulkan API and applications will typically need to be modified to run against it. The variant field was a later addition to the version number, added in version 1.2.175 of the Specification. As Vulkan uses variant 0, this change is fully backwards compatible with the previous version number format for Vulkan implementations. New version number macros have been added for this change and the old macros deprecated. For existing applications using the older format and macros, an implementation with non-zero variant will decode as a very high Vulkan version. The high version number should be detectable by applications performing suitable version checking.

The *major version* indicates a significant change in the API, which will encompass a wholly new version of the specification.

The *minor version* indicates the incorporation of new functionality into the core specification.

The *patch version* indicates bug fixes, clarifications, and language improvements have been incorporated into the specification.

Compatibility guarantees made about versions of the API sharing any of the same version numbers are documented in Core Versions

The version number is used in several places in the API. In each such use, the version numbers are packed into a 32-bit integer as follows:

- The variant is a 3-bit integer packed into bits 31-29.
- The major version is a 7-bit integer packed into bits 28-22.
- The minor version number is a 10-bit integer packed into bits 21-12.
- The patch version number is a 12-bit integer packed into bits 11-0.

`VK_API_VERSION_VARIANT` extracts the API variant number from a packed version number:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
#define VK_API_VERSION_VARIANT(version) ((uint32_t)(version) >> 29)
```

`VK_API_VERSION_MAJOR` extracts the API major version number from a packed version number:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
#define VK_API_VERSION_MAJOR(version) (((uint32_t)(version) >> 22) & 0x7FU)
```

`VK_VERSION_MAJOR` extracts the API major version number from a packed version number:
VK_API_VERSION_MINOR extracts the API minor version number from a packed version number:

```c
#define VK_API_VERSION_MINOR(version) (((uint32_t)(version) >> 12) & 0x3FFU)
```

VK_VERSION_MINOR extracts the API minor version number from a packed version number:

```c
#define VK_VERSION_MINOR(version) (((uint32_t)(version) >> 12) & 0x3FFU)
```

VK_API_VERSION_PATCH extracts the API patch version number from a packed version number:

```c
#define VK_API_VERSION_PATCH(version) ((uint32_t)(version) & 0xFFFU)
```

VK_VERSION_PATCH extracts the API patch version number from a packed version number:

```c
#define VK_VERSION_PATCH(version) ((uint32_t)(version) & 0xFFFU)
```

VK_MAKE_API_VERSION constructs an API version number.

```c
#define VK_MAKE_API_VERSION(variant, major, minor, patch) 
    ((((uint32_t)(variant)) << 29) | ((((uint32_t)(major)) << 22) | 
    ((((uint32_t)(minor)) << 12) | ((uint32_t)(patch)))
```

- **variant** is the variant number.
- **major** is the major version number.
- **minor** is the minor version number.
- **patch** is the patch version number.

VK_MAKE_VERSION constructs an API version number.
• **major** is the major version number.
• **minor** is the minor version number.
• **patch** is the patch version number.

**VK_API_VERSION_1_0** returns the API version number for Vulkan 1.0.0.

// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
// DEPRECATED: This define is deprecated. VK_MAKE_API_VERSION should be used instead.
#define VK_MAKE_VERSION(major, minor, patch) 
((((uint32_t)(major)) << 22) | (((uint32_t)(minor)) << 12) | ((uint32_t)(patch)))

36.2.2. Querying Version Support

**Note**

In Vulkan 1.0, there is no mechanism to detect the separate versions of instance-level and device-level functionality supported. However, the **vkEnumerateInstanceVersion** command was added in Vulkan 1.1 to determine the supported version of instance-level functionality - querying for this function via **vkGetInstanceProcAddr** will return **NULL** on implementations that only support Vulkan 1.0 functionality. For more information on this, please refer to the Vulkan 1.1 specification.

The version of device-level functionality can be queried by calling **vkGetPhysicalDeviceProperties** or **vkGetPhysicalDeviceProperties2**, and is returned in **VkPhysicalDeviceProperties::apiVersion**, encoded as described in **Version Numbers**.

36.3. Layers

When a layer is enabled, it inserts itself into the call chain for Vulkan commands the layer is interested in. Layers can be used for a variety of tasks that extend the base behavior of Vulkan beyond what is required by the specification - such as call logging, tracing, validation, or providing additional extensions.

**Note**

For example, an implementation is not expected to check that the value of enums used by the application fall within allowed ranges. Instead, a validation layer would do those checks and flag issues. This avoids a performance penalty during production use of the application because those layers would not be enabled in production.
### Note

Vulkan layers **may** wrap object handles (i.e. return a different handle value to the application than that generated by the implementation). This is generally discouraged, as it increases the probability of incompatibilities with new extensions. The validation layers wrap handles in order to track the proper use and destruction of each object. See the “Vulkan Loader Specification and Architecture Overview” document for additional information.

To query the available layers, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkEnumerateInstanceLayerProperties(
    uint32_t* pPropertyCount,
    VkLayerProperties* pProperties);
```

- `pPropertyCount` is a pointer to an integer related to the number of layer properties available or queried, as described below.
- `pProperties` is either `NULL` or a pointer to an array of `VkLayerProperties` structures.

If `pProperties` is `NULL`, then the number of layer properties available is returned in `pPropertyCount`. Otherwise, `pPropertyCount` must point to a variable set by the user to the number of elements in the `pProperties` array, and on return the variable is overwritten with the number of structures actually written to `pProperties`. If `pPropertyCount` is less than the number of layer properties available, at most `pPropertyCount` structures will be written, and `VK_INCOMPLETE` will be returned instead of `VK_SUCCESS`, to indicate that not all the available properties were returned.

The list of available layers may change at any time due to actions outside of the Vulkan implementation, so two calls to `vkEnumerateInstanceLayerProperties` with the same parameters may return different results, or retrieve different `pPropertyCount` values or `pProperties` contents. Once an instance has been created, the layers enabled for that instance will continue to be enabled and valid for the lifetime of that instance, even if some of them become unavailable for future instances.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkEnumerateInstanceLayerProperties-pPropertyCount-parameter
  `pPropertyCount` must be a valid pointer to a `uint32_t` value

- VUID-vkEnumerateInstanceLayerProperties-pProperties-parameter
  If the value referenced by `pPropertyCount` is not 0, and `pProperties` is not `NULL`, `pProperties` must be a valid pointer to an array of `pPropertyCount` `VkLayerProperties` structures
Return Codes

Success

• VK_SUCCESS
• VK_INCOMPLETE

Failure

• VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
• VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY

The `VkLayerProperties` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkLayerProperties {
    char    layerName[VK_MAX_EXTENSION_NAME_SIZE];
    uint32_t specVersion;
    uint32_t implementationVersion;
    char    description[VK_MAX_DESCRIPTION_SIZE];
} VkLayerProperties;
```

• `layerName` is an array of `VK_MAX_EXTENSION_NAME_SIZE` `char` containing a null-terminated UTF-8 string which is the name of the layer. Use this name in the `ppEnabledLayerNames` array passed in the `VkInstanceCreateInfo` structure to enable this layer for an instance.

• `specVersion` is the Vulkan version the layer was written to, encoded as described in Version Numbers.

• `implementationVersion` is the version of this layer. It is an integer, increasing with backward compatible changes.

• `description` is an array of `VK_MAX_DESCRIPTION_SIZE` `char` containing a null-terminated UTF-8 string which provides additional details that can be used by the application to identify the layer.

`VK_MAX_EXTENSION_NAME_SIZE` is the length in `char` values of an array containing a layer or extension name string, as returned in `VkLayerProperties::layerName`, `VkExtensionProperties::extensionName`, and other queries.

```c
#define VK_MAX_EXTENSION_NAME_SIZE        256U
```

`VK_MAX_DESCRIPTION_SIZE` is the length in `char` values of an array containing a string with additional descriptive information about a query, as returned in `VkLayerProperties::description` and other queries.

```c
#define VK_MAX_DESCRIPTION_SIZE           256U
```

To enable a layer, the name of the layer should be added to the `ppEnabledLayerNames` member of
VkInstanceCreateInfo when creating a VkInstance.

Loader implementations may provide mechanisms outside the Vulkan API for enabling specific layers. Layers enabled through such a mechanism are implicitly enabled, while layers enabled by including the layer name in the ppEnabledLayerNames member of VkInstanceCreateInfo are explicitly enabled. Implicitly enabled layers are loaded before explicitly enabled layers, such that implicitly enabled layers are closer to the application, and explicitly enabled layers are closer to the driver. Except where otherwise specified, implicitly enabled and explicitly enabled layers differ only in the way they are enabled, and the order in which they are loaded. Explicitly enabling a layer that is implicitly enabled results in this layer being loaded as an implicitly enabled layer; it has no additional effect.

36.3.1. Device Layer Deprecation

Previous versions of this specification distinguished between instance and device layers. Instance layers were only able to intercept commands that operate on VkInstance and VkPhysicalDevice, except they were not able to intercept vkCreateDevice. Device layers were enabled for individual devices when they were created, and could only intercept commands operating on that device or its child objects.

Device-only layers are now deprecated, and this specification no longer distinguishes between instance and device layers. Layers are enabled during instance creation, and are able to intercept all commands operating on that instance or any of its child objects. At the time of deprecation there were no known device-only layers and no compelling reason to create one.

In order to maintain compatibility with implementations released prior to device-layer deprecation, applications should still enumerate and enable device layers. The behavior of vkEnumerateDeviceLayerProperties and valid usage of the ppEnabledLayerNames member of VkDeviceCreateInfo maximizes compatibility with applications written to work with the previous requirements.

To enumerate device layers, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkEnumerateDeviceLayerProperties(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    uint32_t* pPropertyCount,
    VkLayerProperties* pProperties);
```

- pPropertyCount is a pointer to an integer related to the number of layer properties available or queried.
- pProperties is either NULL or a pointer to an array of VkLayerProperties structures.

If pProperties is NULL, then the number of layer properties available is returned in pPropertyCount. Otherwise, pPropertyCount must point to a variable set by the user to the number of elements in the pProperties array, and on return the variable is overwritten with the number of structures actually written to pProperties. If pPropertyCount is less than the number of layer properties available, at most pPropertyCount structures will be written, and VK_INCOMPLETE will be returned instead of
VK_SUCCESS, to indicate that not all the available properties were returned.

The list of layers enumerated by `vkEnumerateDeviceLayerProperties` must be exactly the sequence of layers enabled for the instance. The members of `VkLayerProperties` for each enumerated layer must be the same as the properties when the layer was enumerated by `vkEnumerateInstanceLayerProperties`.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- `VUID-vkEnumerateDeviceLayerProperties-physicalDevice-parameter` physicalDevice must be a valid `VkPhysicalDevice` handle
- `VUID-vkEnumerateDeviceLayerProperties-pPropertyCount-parameter` pPropertyCount must be a valid pointer to a `uint32_t` value
- `VUID-vkEnumerateDeviceLayerProperties-pProperties-parameter` If the value referenced by pPropertyCount is not 0, and pProperties is not NULL, pProperties must be a valid pointer to an array of pPropertyCount `VkLayerProperties` structures

### Return Codes

**Success**
- VK_SUCCESS
- VK_INCOMPLETE

**Failure**
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY

The `ppEnabledLayerNames` and enabledLayerCount members of `VkDeviceCreateInfo` are deprecated and their values must be ignored by implementations. However, for compatibility, only an empty list of layers or a list that exactly matches the sequence enabled at instance creation time are valid, and validation layers should issue diagnostics for other cases.

Regardless of the enabled layer list provided in `VkDeviceCreateInfo`, the sequence of layers active for a device will be exactly the sequence of layers enabled when the parent instance was created.

### 36.4. Extensions

Extensions may define new Vulkan commands, structures, and enumerants. For compilation purposes, the interfaces defined by registered extensions, including new structures and enumerants as well as function pointer types for new commands, are defined in the Khronos-supplied `vulkan_core.h` together with the core API. However, commands defined by extensions may not be available for static linking - in which case function pointers to these commands should be queried at runtime as described in Command Function Pointers. Extensions may be provided by layers as well as by a Vulkan implementation.
Because extensions may extend or change the behavior of the Vulkan API, extension authors should add support for their extensions to the Khronos validation layers. This is especially important for new commands whose parameters have been wrapped by the validation layers. See the “Vulkan Loader Specification and Architecture Overview” document for additional information.

**Note**

To enable an instance extension, the name of the extension can be added to the `ppEnabledExtensionNames` member of `VkInstanceCreateInfo` when creating a `VkInstance`.

To enable a device extension, the name of the extension can be added to the `ppEnabledExtensionNames` member of `VkDeviceCreateInfo` when creating a `VkDevice`.

Physical-Device-Level functionality does not have any enabling mechanism and can be used as long as the `VkPhysicalDevice` supports the device extension as determined by `vkEnumerateDeviceExtensionProperties`.

Enabling an extension (with no further use of that extension) does not change the behavior of functionality exposed by the core Vulkan API or any other extension, other than making valid the use of the commands, enums and structures defined by that extension.

Valid Usage sections for individual commands and structures do not currently contain which extensions have to be enabled in order to make their use valid, although they might do so in the future. It is defined only in the Valid Usage for Extensions section.

### 36.4.1. Instance Extensions

Instance extensions add new instance-level functionality to the API, outside of the core specification.

To query the available instance extensions, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkEnumerateInstanceExtensionProperties(
    const char* pLayerName,
    uint32_t* pPropertyCount,
    VkExtensionProperties* pProperties);
```

- `pLayerName` is either `NULL` or a pointer to a null-terminated UTF-8 string naming the layer to retrieve extensions from.
- `pPropertyCount` is a pointer to an integer related to the number of extension properties available or queried, as described below.
- `pProperties` is either `NULL` or a pointer to an array of `VkExtensionProperties` structures.

When `pLayerName` parameter is `NULL`, only extensions provided by the Vulkan implementation or by
implicitly enabled layers are returned. When pLayerName is the name of a layer, the instance extensions provided by that layer are returned.

If pProperties is NULL, then the number of extensions properties available is returned in pPropertyCount. Otherwise, pPropertyCount must point to a variable set by the user to the number of elements in the pProperties array, and on return the variable is overwritten with the number of structures actually written to pProperties. If pPropertyCount is less than the number of extension properties available, at most pPropertyCount structures will be written, and VK_INCOMPLETE will be returned instead of VK_SUCCESS, to indicate that not all the available properties were returned.

Because the list of available layers may change externally between calls to vkEnumerateInstanceExtensionProperties, two calls may retrieve different results if a pLayerName is available in one call but not in another. The extensions supported by a layer may also change between two calls, e.g. if the layer implementation is replaced by a different version between those calls.

Implementations must not advertise any pair of extensions that cannot be enabled together due to behavioral differences, or any extension that cannot be enabled against the advertised version.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

• VUID-vkEnumerateInstanceExtensionProperties-pLayerName-parameter
  If pLayerName is not NULL, pLayerName must be a null-terminated UTF-8 string

• VUID-vkEnumerateInstanceExtensionProperties-pPropertyCount-parameter
  pPropertyCount must be a valid pointer to a uint32_t value

• VUID-vkEnumerateInstanceExtensionProperties-pProperties-parameter
  If the value referenced by pPropertyCount is not 0, and pProperties is not NULL, pProperties must be a valid pointer to an array of pPropertyCount VkExtensionProperties structures

Return Codes

Success
  • VK_SUCCESS
  • VK_INCOMPLETE

Failure
  • VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
  • VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY
  • VK_ERROR_LAYER_NOT_PRESENT

36.4.2. Device Extensions

Device extensions add new device-level functionality to the API, outside of the core specification.
To query the extensions available to a given physical device, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkEnumerateDeviceExtensionProperties(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    const char* pLayerName,
    uint32_t* pPropertyCount,
    VkExtensionProperties* pProperties);
```

- `physicalDevice` is the physical device that will be queried.
- `pLayerName` is either `NULL` or a pointer to a null-terminated UTF-8 string naming the layer to retrieve extensions from.
- `pPropertyCount` is a pointer to an integer related to the number of extension properties available or queried, and is treated in the same fashion as the `vkEnumerateInstanceExtensionProperties::pPropertyCount` parameter.
- `pProperties` is either `NULL` or a pointer to an array of `VkExtensionProperties` structures.

When `pLayerName` parameter is `NULL`, only extensions provided by the Vulkan implementation or by implicitly enabled layers are returned. When `pLayerName` is the name of a layer, the device extensions provided by that layer are returned.

Implementations must not advertise any pair of extensions that cannot be enabled together due to behavioral differences, or any extension that cannot be enabled against the advertised version.

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-vkEnumerateDeviceExtensionProperties-physicalDevice-parameter
  physicalDevice must be a valid `VkPhysicalDevice` handle

- VUID-vkEnumerateDeviceExtensionProperties-pLayerName-parameter
  If `pLayerName` is not `NULL`, `pLayerName` must be a null-terminated UTF-8 string

- VUID-vkEnumerateDeviceExtensionProperties-pPropertyCount-parameter
  `pPropertyCount` must be a valid pointer to a `uint32_t` value

- VUID-vkEnumerateDeviceExtensionProperties-pProperties-parameter
  If the value referenced by `pPropertyCount` is not 0, and `pProperties` is not `NULL`, `pProperties` must be a valid pointer to an array of `pPropertyCount` `VkExtensionProperties` structures
Return Codes

Success
• VK_SUCCESS
• VK_INCOMPLETE

Failure
• VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
• VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY
• VK_ERROR_LAYER_NOT_PRESENT

The `VkExtensionProperties` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkExtensionProperties {
    char extensionName[VK_MAX_EXTENSION_NAME_SIZE];
    uint32_t specVersion;
} VkExtensionProperties;
```

• `extensionName` is an array of `VK_MAX_EXTENSION_NAME_SIZE` char containing a null-terminated UTF-8 string which is the name of the extension.

• `specVersion` is the version of this extension. It is an integer, incremented with backward compatible changes.

36.5. Extension Dependencies

Some extensions are dependent on other extensions, or on specific core API versions, to function. To enable extensions with dependencies, any required extensions must also be enabled through the same API mechanisms when creating an instance with `vkCreateInstance` or a device with `vkCreateDevice`. Each extension which has such dependencies documents them in the appendix summarizing that extension.

If an extension is supported (as queried by `vkEnumerateInstanceExtensionProperties` or `vkEnumerateDeviceExtensionProperties`), then required extensions of that extension must also be supported for the same instance or physical device.

Any device extension that has an instance extension dependency that is not enabled by `vkCreateInstance` is considered to be unsupported, hence it must not be returned by `vkEnumerateDeviceExtensionProperties` for any `VkPhysicalDevice` child of the instance. Instance extensions do not have dependencies on device extensions.

If a required extension has been promoted to another extension or to a core API version, then as a general rule, the dependency is also satisfied by the promoted extension or core version. This will be true so long as any features required by the original extension are also required or enabled by the promoted extension or core version. However, in some cases an extension is promoted while
making some of its features optional in the promoted extension or core version. In this case, the dependency may not be satisfied. The only way to be certain is to look at the descriptions of the original dependency and the promoted version in the Layers & Extensions and Core Revisions appendices.

Note
There is metadata in vk.xml describing some aspects of promotion, especially requires, promotedto and deprecatedby attributes of <extension> tags. However, the metadata does not yet fully describe this scenario. In the future, we may extend the XML schema to describe the full set of extensions and versions satisfying a dependency.

36.6. Compatibility Guarantees (Informative)

This section is marked as informal as there is no binding responsibility on implementations of the Vulkan API - these guarantees are however a contract between the Vulkan Working Group and developers using this Specification.

36.6.1. Core Versions

Each of the major, minor, and patch versions of the Vulkan specification provide different compatibility guarantees.

Patch Versions

A difference in the patch version indicates that a set of bug fixes or clarifications have been made to the Specification. Informative enums returned by Vulkan commands that will not affect the runtime behavior of a valid application may be added in a patch version (e.g. VkVendorId).

The specification's patch version is strictly increasing for a given major version of the specification; any change to a specification as described above will result in the patch version being increased by 1. Patch versions are applied to all minor versions, even if a given minor version is not affected by the provoking change.

Specifications with different patch versions but the same major and minor version are fully compatible with each other - such that a valid application written against one will work with an implementation of another.

Note
If a patch version includes a bug fix or clarification that could have a significant impact on developer expectations, these will be highlighted in the change log. Generally the Vulkan Working Group tries to avoid these kinds of changes, instead fixing them in either an extension or core version.

Minor Versions

Changes in the minor version of the specification indicate that new functionality has been added to the core specification. This will usually include new interfaces in the header, and may also include
behavior changes and bug fixes. Core functionality may be deprecated in a minor version, but will not be obsoleted or removed.

The specification’s minor version is strictly increasing for a given major version of the specification; any change to a specification as described above will result in the minor version being increased by 1. Changes that can be accommodated in a patch version will not increase the minor version.

Specifications with a lower minor version are backwards compatible with an implementation of a specification with a higher minor version for core functionality and extensions issued with the KHR vendor tag. Vendor and multi-vendor extensions are not guaranteed to remain functional across minor versions, though in general they are with few exceptions - see Obsoletion for more information.

**Major Versions**

A difference in the major version of specifications indicates a large set of changes which will likely include interface changes, behavioral changes, removal of deprecated functionality, and the modification, addition, or replacement of other functionality.

The specification’s major version is monotonically increasing; any change to the specification as described above will result in the major version being increased. Changes that can be accommodated in a patch or minor version will not increase the major version.

The Vulkan Working Group intends to only issue a new major version of the Specification in order to realise significant improvements to the Vulkan API that will necessarily require breaking compatibility.

A new major version will likely include a wholly new version of the specification to be issued - which could include an overhaul of the versioning semantics for the minor and patch versions. The patch and minor versions of a specification are therefore not meaningful across major versions. If a major version of the specification includes similar versioning semantics, it is expected that the patch and the minor version will be reset to 0 for that major version.

### 36.6.2. Extensions

A KHR extension must be able to be enabled alongside any other KHR extension, and for any minor or patch version of the core Specification beyond the minimum version it requires. A multi-vendor extension should be able to be enabled alongside any KHR extension or other multi-vendor extension, and for any minor or patch version of the core Specification beyond the minimum version it requires. A vendor extension should be able to be enabled alongside any KHR extension, multi-vendor extension, or other vendor extension from the same vendor, and for any minor or patch version of the core Specification beyond the minimum version it requires. A vendor extension may be able to be enabled alongside vendor extensions from another vendor.

The one other exception to this is if a vendor or multi-vendor extension is made obsolete by either a core version or another extension, which will be highlighted in the extension appendix.
**Promotion**

Extensions, or features of an extension, **may** be promoted to a new core version of the API, or a newer extension which an equal or greater number of implementors are in favour of.

When extension functionality is promoted, minor changes **may** be introduced, limited to the following:

- Naming
- Non-intrusive parameters changes
- Feature advertisement/enablement
- Combining structure parameters into larger structures
- Author ID suffixes changed or removed

**Note**

If extension functionality is promoted, there is no guarantee of direct compatibility, however it should require little effort to port code from the original feature to the promoted one.

The Vulkan Working Group endeavours to ensure that larger changes are marked as either deprecated or obsoleted as appropriate, and can do so retroactively if necessary.

Extensions that are promoted are listed as being promoted in their extension appendices, with reference to where they were promoted to.

When an extension is promoted, any backwards compatibility aliases which exist in the extension will **not** be promoted.

**Note**

As a hypothetical example, if the `VK_KHR_surface` extension were promoted to part of a future core version, the `VK_COLOR_SPACE_SRGB_NONLINEAR_KHR` token defined by that extension would be promoted to `VK_COLOR_SPACE_SRGB_NONLINEAR`. However, the `VK_COLORSPACE_SRGB_NONLINEAR_KHR` token aliases `VK_COLOR_SPACE_SRGB_NONLINEAR_KHR`. The `VK_COLORSPACE_SRGB_NONLINEAR_KHR` would not be promoted, because it is a backwards compatibility alias that exists only due to a naming mistake when the extension was initially published.

**Deprecation**

Extensions **may** be marked as deprecated when the intended use cases either become irrelevant or can be solved in other ways. Generally, a new feature will become available to solve the use case in another extension or core version of the API, but it is not guaranteed.
Features that are intended to replace deprecated functionality have no guarantees of compatibility, and applications may require drastic modification in order to make use of the new features.

Extensions that are deprecated are listed as being deprecated in their extension appendices, with an explanation of the deprecation and any features that are relevant.

**Obsoletion**

Occasionally, an extension will be marked as obsolete if a new version of the core API or a new extension is fundamentally incompatible with it. An obsoleted extension must not be used with the extension or core version that obsoleted it.

Extensions that are obsoleted are listed as being obsoleted in their extension appendices, with reference to what they were obsoleted by.

**Aliases**

When an extension is promoted or deprecated by a newer feature, some or all of its functionality may be replicated into the newer feature. Rather than duplication of all the documentation and definitions, the specification instead identifies the identical commands and types as aliases of one another. Each alias is mentioned together with the definition it aliases, with the older aliases marked as “equivalents”. Each alias of the same command has identical behavior, and each alias of the same type has identical meaning - they can be used interchangeably in an application with no compatibility issues.

For promoted types, the aliased extension type is semantically identical to the new core type. The C99 headers simply typedef the older aliases to the promoted types.

For promoted command aliases, however, there are two separate entry point definitions, due to the fact that the C99 ABI has no way to alias command definitions without resorting to macros. Calling via either entry point definition will produce identical behavior within the bounds of the specification, and should still invoke the same entry point in the implementation. Debug tools may use separate entry points with different debug behavior; to write the appropriate command name to an output log, for instance.

**Special Use Extensions**

Some extensions exist only to support a specific purpose or specific class of application. These are referred to as “special use extensions”. Use of these extensions in applications not meeting the special use criteria is not recommended.

Special use cases are restricted, and only those defined below are used to describe extensions:

*Table 38. Extension Special Use Cases*
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Special Use</th>
<th>XML Tag</th>
<th>Full Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>CAD support</td>
<td>cadsupport</td>
<td>Extension is intended to support specialized functionality used by CAD/CAM apps.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D3D support</td>
<td>d3demulation</td>
<td>Extension is intended to support D3D emulation layers, and apps ported from D3D,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>by adding functionality specific to D3D.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Developer tools</td>
<td>devtools</td>
<td>Extension is intended to support developer tools such as capture-replay libraries.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Debugging tools</td>
<td>debugging</td>
<td>Extension is intended for use by apps when debugging.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OpenGL / ES support</td>
<td>gleulation</td>
<td>Extension is intended to support OpenGL and/or OpenGL ES emulation layers, and</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>apps ported from those APIs, by adding functionality specific to those APIs.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Special use extensions are identified in the metadata for each such extension in the Layers & Extensions appendix, using the name in the “Special Use” column above.

Special use extensions are also identified in `vk.xml` with the short name in “XML Tag” column above, as described in the “API Extensions (extension tag)” section of the registry schema documentation.
Chapter 37. Features

Features describe functionality which is not supported on all implementations. Features are properties of the physical device. Features are optional, and must be explicitly enabled before use. Support for features is reported and enabled on a per-feature basis.

Note
Features are reported via the basic VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures structure, as well as the extensible structure VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2, which was added in the VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2 extension and included in Vulkan 1.1. When new features are added in future Vulkan versions or extensions, each extension should introduce one new feature structure, if needed. This structure can be added to the pNext chain of the VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2 structure.

For convenience, new core versions of Vulkan may introduce new unified feature structures for features promoted from extensions. At the same time, the extension’s original feature structure (if any) is also promoted to the core API, and is an alias of the extension’s structure. This results in multiple names for the same feature: in the original extension’s feature structure and the promoted structure alias, in the unified feature structure. When a feature was implicitly supported and enabled in the extension, but an explicit name was added during promotion, then the extension itself acts as an alias for the feature as listed in the table below.

All aliases of the same feature in the core API must be reported consistently: either all must be reported as supported, or none of them. When a promoted extension is available, any corresponding feature aliases must be supported.

Table 39. Extension Feature Aliases

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Extension</th>
<th>Feature(s)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

To query supported features, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures* pFeatures);
```

- `physicalDevice` is the physical device from which to query the supported features.
- `pFeatures` is a pointer to a VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures structure in which the physical device features are returned. For each feature, a value of VK_TRUE specifies that the feature is supported on this physical device, and VK_FALSE specifies that the feature is not supported.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures-physicalDevice-parameter
  `physicalDevice` must be a valid `VkPhysicalDevice` handle
- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures-pFeatures-parameter
  `pFeatures` must be a valid pointer to a `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures` structure

Fine-grained features used by a logical device **must** be enabled at `VkDevice` creation time. If a feature is enabled that the physical device does not support, `VkDevice` creation will fail and return `VK_ERROR_FEATURE_NOT_PRESENT`.

The fine-grained features are enabled by passing a pointer to the `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures` structure via the `pEnabledFeatures` member of the `VkDeviceCreateInfo` structure that is passed into the `vkCreateDevice` call. If a member of `pEnabledFeatures` is set to `VK_TRUE` or `VK_FALSE`, then the device will be created with the indicated feature enabled or disabled, respectively. Features **can** also be enabled by using the `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2` structure.

If an application wishes to enable all features supported by a device, it **can** simply pass in the `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures` structure that was previously returned by `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures`. To disable an individual feature, the application **can** set the desired member to `VK_FALSE` in the same structure. Setting `pEnabledFeatures` to `NULL` and not including a `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2` in the `pNext` chain of `VkDeviceCreateInfo` is equivalent to setting all members of the structure to `VK_FALSE`.

> Note
> Some features, such as `robustBufferAccess`, **may** incur a runtime performance cost. Application writers **should** carefully consider the implications of enabling all supported features.

To query supported features defined by the core or extensions, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2
void vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2KHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2* pFeatures);
```

- `physicalDevice` is the physical device from which to query the supported features.
- `pFeatures` is a pointer to a `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2` structure in which the physical device features are returned.

Each structure in `pFeatures` and its `pNext` chain contains members corresponding to fine-grained features. `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2` writes each member to a boolean value indicating whether that feature is supported.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2-physicalDevice-parameter PhysicalDevice must be a valid VkPhysicalDevice handle
- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2-pFeatures-parameter 
PFeatures must be a valid pointer to a VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2 structure

The VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2 structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2 {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures features;
} VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2
typedef VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2 VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2KHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `features` is a VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures structure describing the fine-grained features of the Vulkan 1.0 API.

The `pNext` chain of this structure is used to extend the structure with features defined by extensions. This structure can be used in vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2 or can be included in the `pNext` chain of a VkDeviceCreateInfo structure, in which case it controls which features are enabled in the device in lieu of `pEnabledFeatures`.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2-sType-sType 
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_FEATURES_2

The VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures {
    VkBool32 robustBufferAccess;
    VkBool32 fullDrawIndexUint32;
    VkBool32 imageCubeArray;
    VkBool32 independentBlend;
} VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures;
```
VkBool32 geometryShader;
VkBool32 tessellationShader;
VkBool32 sampleRateShading;
VkBool32 dualSrcBlend;
VkBool32 logicOp;
VkBool32 multiDrawIndirect;
VkBool32 drawIndirectFirstInstance;
VkBool32 depthClamp;
VkBool32 depthBiasClamp;
VkBool32 fillModeNonSolid;
VkBool32 depthBounds;
VkBool32 wideLines;
VkBool32 largePoints;
VkBool32 alphaToOne;
VkBool32 multiViewport;
VkBool32 samplerAnisotropy;
VkBool32 textureCompressionETC2;
VkBool32 textureCompressionASTC_LDR;
VkBool32 textureCompressionBC;
VkBool32 occlusionQueryPrecise;
VkBool32 pipelineStatisticsQuery;
VkBool32 vertexPipelineStoresAndAtomics;
VkBool32 fragmentStoresAndAtomics;
VkBool32 shaderTessellationAndGeometryPointSize;
VkBool32 shaderImageGatherExtended;
VkBool32 shaderStorageImageExtendedFormats;
VkBool32 shaderStorageImageMultisample;
VkBool32 shaderStorageImageReadWithoutFormat;
VkBool32 shaderStorageImageWriteWithoutFormat;
VkBool32 shaderUniformBufferArrayDynamicIndexing;
VkBool32 shaderSampledImageArrayDynamicIndexing;
VkBool32 shaderStorageBufferArrayDynamicIndexing;
VkBool32 shaderStorageImageArrayDynamicIndexing;
VkBool32 shaderClipDistance;
VkBool32 shaderCullDistance;
VkBool32 shaderFloat64;
VkBool32 shaderInt64;
VkBool32 shaderInt16;
VkBool32 shaderResourceResidency;
VkBool32 shaderResourceMinLod;
VkBool32 sparseBinding;
VkBool32 sparseResidencyBuffer;
VkBool32 sparseResidencyImage2D;
VkBool32 sparseResidencyImage3D;
VkBool32 sparseResidency2Samples;
VkBool32 sparseResidency4Samples;
VkBool32 sparseResidency8Samples;
VkBool32 sparseResidency16Samples;
VkBool32 sparseResidencyAliased;
VkBool32 variableMultisampleRate;
VkBool32 inheritedQueries;
This structure describes the following features:

- **robustBufferAccess** specifies that accesses to buffers are bounds-checked against the range of the buffer descriptor (as determined by `VkDescriptorBufferInfo::range`, `VkBufferViewCreateInfo::range`, or the size of the buffer). Out of bounds accesses **must not** cause application termination, and the effects of shader loads, stores, and atomics **must** conform to an implementation-dependent behavior as described below.

  ◦ A buffer access is considered to be out of bounds if any of the following are true:

    * The pointer was formed by `OpImageTexelPointer` and the coordinate is less than zero or greater than or equal to the number of whole elements in the bound range.
    
    * The pointer was not formed by `OpImageTexelPointer` and the object pointed to is not wholly contained within the bound range. This includes accesses performed via *variable pointers* where the buffer descriptor being accessed cannot be statically determined. Uninitialized pointers and pointers equal to `OpConstantNull` are treated as pointing to a zero-sized object, so all accesses through such pointers are considered to be out of bounds. Buffer accesses through buffer device addresses are not bounds-checked.

    ◎ **Note**

      If a SPIR-V `OpLoad` instruction loads a structure and the tail end of the structure is out of bounds, then all members of the structure are considered out of bounds even if the members at the end are not statically used.

      ◦ If any buffer access is determined to be out of bounds, then any other access of the same type (load, store, or atomic) to the same buffer that accesses an address less than 16 bytes away from the out of bounds address **may also** be considered out of bounds.

      ◦ If the access is a load that reads from the same memory locations as a prior store in the same shader invocation, with no other intervening accesses to the same memory locations in that shader invocation, then the result of the load **may** be the value stored by the store instruction, even if the access is out of bounds. If the load is `Volatile`, then an out of bounds load **must** return the appropriate out of bounds value.

      ◦ Out-of-bounds buffer loads will return any of the following values:

        * Values from anywhere within the memory range(s) bound to the buffer (possibly including bytes of memory past the end of the buffer, up to the end of the bound range).
        
        * Zero values, or (0,0,0,x) vectors for vector reads where x is a valid value represented in the type of the vector components and **may** be any of:

          ◎ 0, 1, or the maximum representable positive integer value, for signed or unsigned integer components

          ◎ 0.0 or 1.0, for floating-point components

          ◎ Out-of-bounds writes **may** modify values within the memory range(s) bound to the buffer, but **must not** modify any other memory.
Out-of-bounds atomics **may** modify values within the memory range(s) bound to the buffer, but **must** not modify any other memory, and return an undefined value.

Vertex input attributes are considered out of bounds if the offset of the attribute in the bound vertex buffer range plus the size of the attribute is greater than either:

- `vertexBufferRangeSize`, if `bindingStride == 0`; or
- \((vertexBufferRangeSize - (vertexBufferRangeSize \% bindingStride))\)

where `vertexBufferRangeSize` is the byte size of the memory range bound to the vertex buffer binding and `bindingStride` is the byte stride of the corresponding vertex input binding. Further, if any vertex input attribute using a specific vertex input binding is out of bounds, then all vertex input attributes using that vertex input binding for that vertex shader invocation are considered out of bounds.

- If a vertex input attribute is out of bounds, it will be assigned one of the following values:
  - Values from anywhere within the memory range(s) bound to the buffer, converted according to the format of the attribute.
  - Zero values, format converted according to the format of the attribute.
  - Zero values, or \((0,0,0,x)\) vectors, as described above.

If `robustBufferAccess` is not enabled, applications **must** not perform out of bounds accesses.

- **fullDrawIndexUint32** specifies the full 32-bit range of indices is supported for indexed draw calls when using a `VkIndexType` of `VK_INDEX_TYPE_UINT32`. `maxDrawIndexedIndexValue` is the maximum index value that **may** be used (aside from the primitive restart index, which is always \(2^{32}-1\) when the `VkIndexType` is `VK_INDEX_TYPE_UINT32`). If this feature is supported, `maxDrawIndexedIndexValue` **must** be \(2^{32}-1\); otherwise it **must** be no smaller than \(2^{24}-1\). See `maxDrawIndexedIndexValue`.

- **imageCubeArray** specifies whether image views with a `VkImageViewType` of `VK_IMAGE_VIEW_TYPE_CUBE_ARRAY` **can** be created, and that the corresponding `SampledCubeArray` and `ImageCubeArray` SPIR-V capabilities **can** be used in shader code.

- **independentBlend** specifies whether the `VkPipelineColorBlendAttachmentState` settings are controlled independently per-attachment. If this feature is not enabled, the `VkPipelineColorBlendAttachmentState` settings for all color attachments **must** be identical. Otherwise, a different `VkPipelineColorBlendAttachmentState` **can** be provided for each bound color attachment.

- **geometryShader** specifies whether geometry shaders are supported. If this feature is not enabled, the `VK_SHADER_STAGE_GEOMETRY_BIT` and `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_GEOMETRY_SHADER_BIT` enum values **must** not be used. This also specifies whether shader modules **can** declare the `Geometry` capability.

- **tessellationShader** specifies whether tessellation control and evaluation shaders are supported. If this feature is not enabled, the `VK_SHADER_STAGE_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_BIT`, `VK_SHADER_STAGE_TESSELLATION_EVALUATION_BIT`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_CONTROL_SHADER_BIT`, `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_TESSELLATION_EVALUATION_SHADER_BIT`, and `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_TESSELLATION_STATE_CREATE_INFO` enum values **must** not be used.
This also specifies whether shader modules can declare the Tessellation capability.

- **sampleRateShading** specifies whether Sample Shading and multisample interpolation are supported. If this feature is not enabled, the sampleShadingEnable member of the VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo structure must be set to VK_FALSE and the minSampleShading member is ignored. This also specifies whether shader modules can declare the SampleRateShading capability.

- **dualSrcBlend** specifies whether blend operations which take two sources are supported. If this feature is not enabled, the VK_BLEND_FACTOR_SRC1_COLOR, VK_BLEND_FACTOR_ONE_MINUS_SRC1_COLOR, VK_BLEND_FACTOR_SRC1_ALPHA, and VK_BLEND_FACTOR_ONE_MINUS_SRC1_ALPHA enum values must not be used as source or destination blending factors. See Dual-Source Blending.

- **logicOp** specifies whether logic operations are supported. If this feature is not enabled, the logicOpEnable member of the VkPipelineColorBlendStateCreateInfo structure must be set to VK_FALSE, and the logicOp member is ignored.

- **multiDrawIndirect** specifies whether multiple draw indirect is supported. If this feature is not enabled, the drawCount parameter to the vkCmdDrawIndirect and vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect commands must be 0 or 1. The maxDrawIndirectCount member of the VkPhysicalDeviceLimits structure must also be 1 if this feature is not supported. See maxDrawIndirectCount.

- **drawIndirectFirstInstance** specifies whether indirect drawing calls support the firstInstance parameter. If this feature is not enabled, the firstInstance member of all VkDrawIndirectCommand and VkDrawIndexedIndirectCommand structures that are provided to the vkCmdDrawIndirect and vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect commands must be 0.

- **depthClamp** specifies whether depth clamping is supported. If this feature is not enabled, the depthClampEnable member of the VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateInfo structure must be set to VK_FALSE. Otherwise, setting depthClampEnable to VK_TRUE will enable depth clamping.

- **depthBiasClamp** specifies whether depth bias clamping is supported. If this feature is not enabled, the depthBiasClamp member of the VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateInfo structure must be set to 0.0 unless the VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_DEPTH_BIAS dynamic state is enabled, and the depthBiasClamp parameter to vkCmdSetDepthBias must be set to 0.0.

- **fillModeNonSolid** specifies whether point and wireframe fill modes are supported. If this feature is not enabled, the VK_POLYGON_MODE_POINT and VK_POLYGON_MODE_LINE enum values must not be used.

- **depthBounds** specifies whether depth bounds tests are supported. If this feature is not enabled, the depthBoundsTestEnable member of the VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo structure must be set to VK_FALSE. When depthBoundsTestEnable is set to VK_FALSE, the minDepthBounds and maxDepthBounds members of the VkPipelineDepthStencilStateCreateInfo structure are ignored.

- **wideLines** specifies whether lines with width other than 1.0 are supported. If this feature is not enabled, the lineWidth member of the VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateInfo structure must be set to 1.0 unless the VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_LINE_WIDTH dynamic state is enabled, and the lineWidth parameter to vkCmdSetLineWidth must be set to 1.0. When this feature is supported, the range and granularity of supported line widths are indicated by the lineWidthRange and lineWidthGranularity members of the VkPhysicalDeviceLimits structure, respectively.

- **largePoints** specifies whether points with size greater than 1.0 are supported. If this feature is not enabled, only a point size of 1.0 written by a shader is supported. The range and granularity
of supported point sizes are indicated by the `pointSizeRange` and `pointSizeGranularity` members of the `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits` structure, respectively.

- **alphaToOne** specifies whether the implementation is able to replace the alpha value of the fragment shader color output in the `Multisample Coverage` fragment operation. If this feature is not enabled, then the `alphaToOneEnable` member of the `VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo` structure must be set to `VK_FALSE`. Otherwise setting `alphaToOneEnable` to `VK_TRUE` will enable alpha-to-one behavior.

- **multiViewport** specifies whether more than one viewport is supported. If this feature is not enabled:
  
  - The `viewportCount` and `scissorCount` members of the `VkPipelineViewportStateCreateInfo` structure must be set to 1.
  - The `firstViewport` and `viewportCount` parameters to the `vkCmdSetViewport` command must be set to 0 and 1, respectively.
  - The `firstScissor` and `scissorCount` parameters to the `vkCmdSetScissor` command must be set to 0 and 1, respectively.

- **samplerAnisotropy** specifies whether anisotropic filtering is supported. If this feature is not enabled, the `anisotropyEnable` member of the `VkSamplerCreateInfo` structure must be `VK_FALSE`.

- **textureCompressionETC2** specifies whether all of the ETC2 and EAC compressed texture formats are supported. If this feature is enabled, then the `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_BIT`, `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLIT_SRC_BIT` and `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT` features must be supported in `optimalTilingFeatures` for the following formats:
  
  - `VK_FORMAT_ETC2_R8G8B8_UNORM_BLOCK`
  - `VK_FORMAT_ETC2_R8G8B8_SRGB_BLOCK`
  - `VK_FORMAT_ETC2_R8G8B8A1_UNORM_BLOCK`
  - `VK_FORMAT_ETC2_R8G8B8A1_SRGB_BLOCK`
  - `VK_FORMAT_ETC2_R8G8B8A8_UNORM_BLOCK`
  - `VK_FORMAT_ETC2_R8G8B8A8_SRGB_BLOCK`
  - `VK_FORMAT_EAC_R11_UNORM_BLOCK`
  - `VK_FORMAT_EAC_R11_SNORM_BLOCK`
  - `VK_FORMAT_EAC_R11G11_UNORM_BLOCK`
  - `VK_FORMAT_EAC_R11G11_SNORM_BLOCK`

To query for additional properties, or if the feature is not enabled, `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties` and `vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties` can be used to check for supported properties of individual formats as normal.

- **textureCompressionASTC_LDR** specifies whether all of the ASTC LDR compressed texture formats are supported. If this feature is enabled, then the `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_BIT`, `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLIT_SRC_BIT` and `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT` features must be supported in `optimalTilingFeatures` for the following formats:
  
  - `VK_FORMAT_ASTC_4x4_UNORM_BLOCK`
- VK_FORMAT_ASTC_4x4_SRGB_BLOCK
- VK_FORMAT_ASTC_5x4_UNORM_BLOCK
- VK_FORMAT_ASTC_5x4_SRGB_BLOCK
- VK_FORMAT_ASTC_5x5_UNORM_BLOCK
- VK_FORMAT_ASTC_5x5_SRGB_BLOCK
- VK_FORMAT_ASTC_6x5_UNORM_BLOCK
- VK_FORMAT_ASTC_6x5_SRGB_BLOCK
- VK_FORMAT_ASTC_6x6_UNORM_BLOCK
- VK_FORMAT_ASTC_6x6_SRGB_BLOCK
- VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x5_UNORM_BLOCK
- VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x5_SRGB_BLOCK
- VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x6_UNORM_BLOCK
- VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x6_SRGB_BLOCK
- VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x8_UNORM_BLOCK
- VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x8_SRGB_BLOCK
- VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x5_UNORM_BLOCK
- VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x5_SRGB_BLOCK
- VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x6_UNORM_BLOCK
- VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x6_SRGB_BLOCK
- VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x8_UNORM_BLOCK
- VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x8_SRGB_BLOCK
- VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x10_UNORM_BLOCK
- VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x10_SRGB_BLOCK
- VK_FORMAT_ASTC_12x10_UNORM_BLOCK
- VK_FORMAT_ASTC_12x10_SRGB_BLOCK
- VK_FORMAT_ASTC_12x12_UNORM_BLOCK
- VK_FORMAT_ASTC_12x12_SRGB_BLOCK

To query for additional properties, or if the feature is not enabled, `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties` and `vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties` can be used to check for supported properties of individual formats as normal.

- `textureCompressionBC` specifies whether all of the BC compressed texture formats are supported. If this feature is enabled, then the `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_BIT`, `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLIT_SRC_BIT` and `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT` features must be supported in `optimalTilingFeatures` for the following formats:
  - VK_FORMAT_BC1_RGB_UNORM_BLOCK
To query for additional properties, or if the feature is not enabled, `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties` and `vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties` can be used to check for supported properties of individual formats as normal.

- **occlusionQueryPrecise** specifies whether occlusion queries returning actual sample counts are supported. Occlusion queries are created in a `VkQueryPool` by specifying the `queryType` of `VK_QUERY_TYPE_OCCLUSION` in the `VkQueryPoolCreateInfo` structure which is passed to `vkCreateQueryPool`. If this feature is enabled, queries of this type can enable `VK_QUERY_CONTROL_PRECISE_BIT` in the `flags` parameter to `vkCmdBeginQuery`. If this feature is not supported, the implementation supports only boolean occlusion queries. When any samples are passed, boolean queries will return a non-zero result value, otherwise a result value of zero is returned. When this feature is enabled and `VK_QUERY_CONTROL_PRECISE_BIT` is set, occlusion queries will report the actual number of samples passed.

- **pipelineStatisticsQuery** specifies whether the pipeline statistics queries are supported. If this feature is not enabled, queries of type `VK_QUERY_TYPE_PIPELINE_STATISTICS` cannot be created, and none of the `VkQueryPipelineStatisticFlagBits` bits can be set in the `pipelineStatistics` member of the `VkQueryPoolCreateInfo` structure.

- **vertexPipelineStoresAndAtomics** specifies whether storage buffers and images support stores and atomic operations in the vertex, tessellation, and geometry shader stages. If this feature is not enabled, all storage image, storage texel buffer, and storage buffer variables used by these stages in shader modules must be decorated with the `NonWritable` decoration (or the `readonly` memory qualifier in GLSL).

- **fragmentStoresAndAtomics** specifies whether storage buffers and images support stores and atomic operations in the fragment shader stage. If this feature is not enabled, all storage image, storage texel buffer, and storage buffer variables used by the fragment stage in shader modules must be decorated with the `NonWritable` decoration (or the `readonly` memory qualifier in GLSL).
• \texttt{shaderTessellationAndGeometryPointSize} specifies whether the \texttt{PointSize} built-in decoration is available in the tessellation control, tessellation evaluation, and geometry shader stages. If this feature is not enabled, members decorated with the \texttt{PointSize} built-in decoration \textbf{must} not be read from or written to and all points written from a tessellation or geometry shader will have a size of 1.0. This also specifies whether shader modules \textbf{can} declare the \texttt{TessellationPointSize} capability for tessellation control and evaluation shaders, or if the shader modules \textbf{can} declare the \texttt{GeometryPointSize} capability for geometry shaders. An implementation supporting this feature \textbf{must} also support one or both of the \texttt{tessellationShader} or \texttt{geometryShader} features.

• \texttt{shaderImageGatherExtended} specifies whether the extended set of image gather instructions are available in shader code. If this feature is not enabled, the \texttt{OpImage*Gather} instructions do not support the \texttt{Offset} and \texttt{ConstOffsets} operands. This also specifies whether shader modules \textbf{can} declare the \texttt{ImageGatherExtended} capability.

• \texttt{shaderStorageImageExtendedFormats} specifies whether all the “storage image extended formats” below are supported; if this feature is supported, then the \texttt{VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_BIT} \textbf{must} be supported in \texttt{optimalTilingFeatures} for the following formats:

  - \texttt{VK_FORMAT_R16G16_SFLOAT}
  - \texttt{VK_FORMAT_B10G11R11_UFLOAT_PACK32}
  - \texttt{VK_FORMAT_R16_SFLOAT}
  - \texttt{VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16A16_UNORM}
  - \texttt{VK_FORMAT_A2B10G10R10_UNORM_PACK32}
  - \texttt{VK_FORMAT_R16G16_UNORM}
  - \texttt{VK_FORMAT_R8G8_UNORM}
  - \texttt{VK_FORMAT_R16_UNORM}
  - \texttt{VK_FORMAT_R8_UNORM}
  - \texttt{VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16A16_SNORM}
  - \texttt{VK_FORMAT_R16G16_SNORM}
  - \texttt{VK_FORMAT_R8G8_SNORM}
  - \texttt{VK_FORMAT_R16_SNORM}
  - \texttt{VK_FORMAT_R8_SNORM}
  - \texttt{VK_FORMAT_R16G16_SINT}
  - \texttt{VK_FORMAT_R8G8_SINT}
  - \texttt{VK_FORMAT_R16_SINT}
  - \texttt{VK_FORMAT_R8_SINT}
  - \texttt{VK_FORMAT_A2B10G10R10_UINT_PACK32}
  - \texttt{VK_FORMAT_R16G16_UINT}
  - \texttt{VK_FORMAT_R8G8_UINT}
  - \texttt{VK_FORMAT_R16_UINT}
  - \texttt{VK_FORMAT_R8_UINT}
Note

shaderStorageImageExtendedFormats feature only adds a guarantee of format support, which is specified for the whole physical device. Therefore enabling or disabling the feature via vkCreateDevice has no practical effect.

To query for additional properties, or if the feature is not supported, vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties and vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties can be used to check for supported properties of individual formats, as usual rules allow.

VK_FORMAT_R32G32_UINT, VK_FORMAT_R32G32_SINT, and VK_FORMAT_R32G32_SFLOAT from StorageImageExtendedFormats SPIR-V capability, are already covered by core Vulkan mandatory format support.

• shaderStorageImageMultisample specifies whether multisampled storage images are supported. If this feature is not enabled, images that are created with a usage that includes VK_IMAGE_USAGE_STORAGE_BIT must be created with samples equal to VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT. This also specifies whether shader modules can declare the StorageImageMultisample and ImageMSArray capabilities.

• shaderStorageImageReadWithoutFormat specifies whether storage images require a format qualifier to be specified when reading from storage images. If this feature is not enabled, the OpImageRead instruction must not have an OpTypeImage of Unknown. This also specifies whether shader modules can declare the StorageImageReadWithoutFormat capability.

• shaderStorageImageWriteWithoutFormat specifies whether storage images require a format qualifier to be specified when writing to storage images. If this feature is not enabled, the OpImageWrite instruction must not have an OpTypeImage of Unknown. This also specifies whether shader modules can declare the StorageImageWriteWithoutFormat capability.

• shaderUniformBufferArrayDynamicIndexing specifies whether arrays of uniform buffers can be indexed by dynamically uniform integer expressions in shader code. If this feature is not enabled, resources with a descriptor type of VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER or VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER_DYNAMIC must be indexed only by constant integral expressions when aggregated into arrays in shader code. This also specifies whether shader modules can declare the UniformBufferArrayDynamicIndexing capability.

• shaderSampledImageArrayDynamicIndexing specifies whether arrays of samplers or sampled images can be indexed by dynamically uniform integer expressions in shader code. If this feature is not enabled, resources with a descriptor type of VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLER, VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER, or VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLED_IMAGE must be indexed only by constant integral expressions when aggregated into arrays in shader code. This also specifies whether shader modules can declare the SampledImageArrayDynamicIndexing capability.

• shaderStorageBufferArrayDynamicIndexing specifies whether arrays of storage buffers can be indexed by dynamically uniform integer expressions in shader code. If this feature is not enabled, resources with a descriptor type of VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER or VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER_DYNAMIC must be indexed only by constant integral expressions when aggregated into arrays in shader code. This also specifies whether shader modules can declare the StorageBufferArrayDynamicIndexing capability.
• **shaderStorageImageArrayDynamicIndexing** specifies whether arrays of storage images can be indexed by dynamically uniform integer expressions in shader code. If this feature is not enabled, resources with a descriptor type of `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_IMAGE` must be indexed only by constant integral expressions when aggregated into arrays in shader code. This also specifies whether shader modules can declare the `StorageImageArrayDynamicIndexing` capability.

• **shaderClipDistance** specifies whether clip distances are supported in shader code. If this feature is not enabled, any members decorated with the `ClipDistance` built-in decoration must not be read from or written to in shader modules. This also specifies whether shader modules can declare the `ClipDistance` capability.

• **shaderCullDistance** specifies whether cull distances are supported in shader code. If this feature is not enabled, any members decorated with the `CullDistance` built-in decoration must not be read from or written to in shader modules. This also specifies whether shader modules can declare the `CullDistance` capability.

• **shaderFloat64** specifies whether 64-bit floats (doubles) are supported in shader code. If this feature is not enabled, 64-bit floating-point types must not be used in shader code. This also specifies whether shader modules can declare the `Float64` capability. Declaring and using 64-bit floats is enabled for all storage classes that SPIR-V allows with the `Float64` capability.

• **shaderInt64** specifies whether 64-bit integers (signed and unsigned) are supported in shader code. If this feature is not enabled, 64-bit integer types must not be used in shader code. This also specifies whether shader modules can declare the `Int64` capability. Declaring and using 64-bit integers is enabled for all storage classes that SPIR-V allows with the `Int64` capability.

• **shaderInt16** specifies whether 16-bit integers (signed and unsigned) are supported in shader code. If this feature is not enabled, 16-bit integer types must not be used in shader code. This also specifies whether shader modules can declare the `Int16` capability. However, this only enables a subset of the storage classes that SPIR-V allows for the `Int16` SPIR-V capability: Declaring and using 16-bit integers in the `Private`, `Workgroup` (for non-Block variables), and `Function` storage classes is enabled, while declaring them in the interface storage classes (e.g., `UniformConstant`, `Uniform`, `StorageBuffer`, `Input`, `Output`, and `PushConstant`) is not enabled.

• **shaderResourceResidency** specifies whether image operations that return resource residency information are supported in shader code. If this feature is not enabled, the `OpImageSparse*` instructions must not be used in shader code. This also specifies whether shader modules can declare the `SparseResidency` capability. The feature requires at least one of the `sparseResidency*` features to be supported.

• **shaderResourceMinLod** specifies whether image operations specifying the minimum resource LOD are supported in shader code. If this feature is not enabled, the `MinLod` image operand must not be used in shader code. This also specifies whether shader modules can declare the `MinLod` capability.

• **sparseBinding** specifies whether resource memory can be managed at opaque sparse block level instead of at the object level. If this feature is not enabled, resource memory must be bound only on a per-object basis using the `vkBindBufferMemory` and `vkBindImageMemory` commands. In this case, buffers and images must not be created with `VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT` and `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT` set in the `flags` member of the `VkBufferCreateInfo` and `VkImageCreateInfo` structures, respectively. Otherwise resource memory can be managed as described in `Sparse Resource Features`.

Chapter 37. Features | 1449
• `sparseResidencyBuffer` specifies whether the device can access partially resident buffers. If this feature is not enabled, buffers must not be created with `VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT` set in the `flags` member of the `VkBufferCreateInfo` structure.

• `sparseResidencyImage2D` specifies whether the device can access partially resident 2D images with 1 sample per pixel. If this feature is not enabled, images with an `imageType` of `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D` and `samples` set to `VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT` must not be created with `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT` set in the `flags` member of the `VkImageCreateInfo` structure.

• `sparseResidencyImage3D` specifies whether the device can access partially resident 3D images. If this feature is not enabled, images with an `imageType` of `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D` must not be created with `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT` set in the `flags` member of the `VkImageCreateInfo` structure.

• `sparseResidency2Samples` specifies whether the physical device can access partially resident 2D images with 2 samples per pixel. If this feature is not enabled, images with an `imageType` of `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D` and `samples` set to `VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_2_BIT` must not be created with `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT` set in the `flags` member of the `VkImageCreateInfo` structure.

• `sparseResidency4Samples` specifies whether the physical device can access partially resident 2D images with 4 samples per pixel. If this feature is not enabled, images with an `imageType` of `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D` and `samples` set to `VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_4_BIT` must not be created with `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT` set in the `flags` member of the `VkImageCreateInfo` structure.

• `sparseResidency8Samples` specifies whether the physical device can access partially resident 2D images with 8 samples per pixel. If this feature is not enabled, images with an `imageType` of `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D` and `samples` set to `VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_8_BIT` must not be created with `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT` set in the `flags` member of the `VkImageCreateInfo` structure.

• `sparseResidency16Samples` specifies whether the physical device can access partially resident 2D images with 16 samples per pixel. If this feature is not enabled, images with an `imageType` of `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D` and `samples` set to `VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_16_BIT` must not be created with `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT` set in the `flags` member of the `VkImageCreateInfo` structure.

• `sparseResidencyAliased` specifies whether the physical device can correctly access data aliased into multiple locations. If this feature is not enabled, the `VK_BUFFER_CREATE_SPARSE_ALIASED_BIT` and `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_ALIASED_BIT` enum values must not be used in `flags` members of the `VkBufferCreateInfo` and `VkImageCreateInfo` structures, respectively.

• `variableMultisampleRate` specifies whether all pipelines that will be bound to a command buffer during a subpass which uses no attachments must have the same value for `VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo::rasterizationSamples`. If set to `VK_TRUE`, the implementation supports variable multisample rates in a subpass which uses no attachments. If set to `VK_FALSE`, then all pipelines bound in such a subpass must have the same multisample rate. This has no effect in situations where a subpass uses any attachments.

• `inheritedQueries` specifies whether a secondary command buffer may be executed while a query is active.
The `VkPhysicalDeviceVariablePointersFeatures` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceVariablePointersFeatures {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkBool32 variablePointersStorageBuffer;
    VkBool32 variablePointers;
} VkPhysicalDeviceVariablePointersFeatures;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_variable_pointers
typedef VkPhysicalDeviceVariablePointersFeatures
    VkPhysicalDeviceVariablePointersFeaturesKHR;
```

This structure describes the following features:

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **variablePointersStorageBuffer** specifies whether the implementation supports the SPIR-V `VariablePointersStorageBuffer` capability. When this feature is not enabled, shader modules **must** not declare the `SPV_KHR_variable_pointers` extension or the `VariablePointersStorageBuffer` capability.
- **variablePointers** specifies whether the implementation supports the SPIR-V `VariablePointers` capability. When this feature is not enabled, shader modules **must** not declare the `VariablePointers` capability.

If the `VkPhysicalDeviceVariablePointersFeatures` structure is included in the `pNext` chain of the `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2` structure passed to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2`, it is filled in to indicate whether each corresponding feature is supported. `VkPhysicalDeviceVariablePointersFeatures` can also be used in the `pNext` chain of `VkDeviceCreateInfo` to selectively enable these features.

### Valid Usage

- **VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceVariablePointersFeatures-variablePointers-01431**
  If **variablePointers** is enabled then **variablePointersStorageBuffer** **must** also be enabled

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceVariablePointersFeatures-sType-sType**
  **sType** **must** be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_VARIABLE_POINTERS_FEATURES`
The `VkPhysicalDeviceMultiviewFeatures` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceMultiviewFeatures {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkBool32 multiview;
    VkBool32 multiviewGeometryShader;
    VkBool32 multiviewTessellationShader;
} VkPhysicalDeviceMultiviewFeatures;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_multiview
typedef VkPhysicalDeviceMultiviewFeatures VkPhysicalDeviceMultiviewFeaturesKHR;
```

This structure describes the following features:

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **multiview** specifies whether the implementation supports multiview rendering within a render pass. If this feature is not enabled, the view mask of each subpass **must** always be zero.
- **multiviewGeometryShader** specifies whether the implementation supports multiview rendering within a render pass, with geometry shaders. If this feature is not enabled, then a pipeline compiled against a subpass with a non-zero view mask **must** not include a geometry shader.
- **multiviewTessellationShader** specifies whether the implementation supports multiview rendering within a render pass, with tessellation shaders. If this feature is not enabled, then a pipeline compiled against a subpass with a non-zero view mask **must** not include any tessellation shaders.

If the `VkPhysicalDeviceMultiviewFeatures` structure is included in the `pNext` chain of the `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2` structure passed to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2`, it is filled in to indicate whether each corresponding feature is supported. `VkPhysicalDeviceMultiviewFeatures` can also be used in the `pNext` chain of `VkDeviceCreateInfo` to selectively enable these features.

**Valid Usage**

- **VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceMultiviewFeatures-multiviewGeometryShader-00580**
  If `multiviewGeometryShader` is enabled then `multiview` **must** also be enabled
- **VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceMultiviewFeatures-multiviewTessellationShader-00581**
  If `multiviewTessellationShader` is enabled then `multiview` **must** also be enabled
The `VkPhysicalDeviceShaderAtomicInt64Features` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceShaderAtomicInt64Features {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkBool32 shaderBufferInt64Atomics;
    VkBool32 shaderSharedInt64Atomics;
} VkPhysicalDeviceShaderAtomicInt64Features;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_shader_atomic_int64
typedef VkPhysicalDeviceShaderAtomicInt64Features
    VkPhysicalDeviceShaderAtomicInt64FeaturesKHR;
```

This structure describes the following features:

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `shaderBufferInt64Atomics` indicates whether shaders can perform 64-bit unsigned and signed integer atomic operations on buffers.
- `shaderSharedInt64Atomics` indicates whether shaders can perform 64-bit unsigned and signed integer atomic operations on shared memory.

If the `VkPhysicalDeviceShaderAtomicInt64Features` structure is included in the `pNext` chain of the `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2` structure passed to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2`, it is filled in to indicate whether each corresponding feature is supported. `VkPhysicalDeviceShaderAtomicInt64Features` can also be used in the `pNext` chain of `VkDeviceCreateInfo` to selectively enable these features.

The `VkPhysicalDevice8BitStorageFeatures` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkPhysicalDevice8BitStorageFeatures {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void*pNext;
    VkBool32 storageBuffer8BitAccess;
    VkBool32 uniformAndStorageBuffer8BitAccess;
    VkBool32 storagePushConstant8;
} VkPhysicalDevice8BitStorageFeatures;

or the equivalent

    // Provided by VK_KHR_8bit_storage
    typedef VkPhysicalDevice8BitStorageFeatures VkPhysicalDevice8BitStorageFeaturesKHR;

This structure describes the following features:

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **storageBuffer8BitAccess** indicates whether objects in the StorageBuffer, ShaderRecordBufferKHR, or PhysicalStorageBuffer storage class with the Block decoration can have 8-bit integer members. If this feature is not enabled, 8-bit integer members must not be used in such objects. This also indicates whether shader modules can declare the StorageBuffer8BitAccess capability.
- **uniformAndStorageBuffer8BitAccess** indicates whether objects in the Uniform storage class with the Block decoration can have 8-bit integer members. If this feature is not enabled, 8-bit integer members must not be used in such objects. This also indicates whether shader modules can declare the UniformAndStorageBuffer8BitAccess capability.
- **storagePushConstant8** indicates whether objects in the PushConstant storage class can have 8-bit integer members. If this feature is not enabled, 8-bit integer members must not be used in such objects. This also indicates whether shader modules can declare the StoragePushConstant8 capability.

If the **VkPhysicalDevice8BitStorageFeatures** structure is included in the pNext chain of the **VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2** structure passed to vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2, it is filled in to indicate whether each corresponding feature is supported. **VkPhysicalDevice8BitStorageFeatures** can also be used in the pNext chain of VkDeviceCreateInfo to selectively enable these features.

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-VkPhysicalDevice8BitStorageFeatures-sType-sType
  
  sType **must** be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_8BIT_STORAGE_FEATURES

The **VkPhysicalDevice16BitStorageFeatures** structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkPhysicalDevice16BitStorageFeatures {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkBool32 storageBuffer16BitAccess;
    VkBool32 uniformAndStorageBuffer16BitAccess;
    VkBool32 storagePushConstant16;
    VkBool32 storageInputOutput16;
} VkPhysicalDevice16BitStorageFeatures;

or the equivalent

// Provided by VK_KHR_16bit_storage
typedef VkPhysicalDevice16BitStorageFeatures VkPhysicalDevice16BitStorageFeaturesKHR;

This structure describes the following features:

• **sType** is the type of this structure.

• **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.

• **storageBuffer16BitAccess** specifies whether objects in the StorageBuffer, ShaderRecordBufferKHR, or PhysicalStorageBuffer storage class with the Block decoration can have 16-bit integer and 16-bit floating-point members. If this feature is not enabled, 16-bit integer or 16-bit floating-point members must not be used in such objects. This also specifies whether shader modules can declare the StorageBuffer16BitAccess capability.

• **uniformAndStorageBuffer16BitAccess** specifies whether objects in the Uniform storage class with the Block decoration can have 16-bit integer and 16-bit floating-point members. If this feature is not enabled, 16-bit integer or 16-bit floating-point members must not be used in such objects. This also specifies whether shader modules can declare the UniformAndStorageBuffer16BitAccess capability.

• **storagePushConstant16** specifies whether objects in the PushConstant storage class can have 16-bit integer and 16-bit floating-point members. If this feature is not enabled, 16-bit integer or floating-point members must not be used in such objects. This also specifies whether shader modules can declare the StoragePushConstant16 capability.

• **storageInputOutput16** specifies whether objects in the Input and Output storage classes can have 16-bit integer and 16-bit floating-point members. If this feature is not enabled, 16-bit integer or 16-bit floating-point members must not be used in such objects. This also specifies whether shader modules can declare the StorageInputOutput16 capability.

If the VkPhysicalDevice16BitStorageFeatures structure is included in the pNext chain of the VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2 structure passed to vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2, it is filled in to indicate whether each corresponding feature is supported. VkPhysicalDevice16BitStorageFeatures can also be used in the pNext chain of VkDeviceCreateInfo to selectively enable these features.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkPhysicalDevice16BitStorageFeatures-sType-sType
  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_16BIT_STORAGE_FEATURES`

The `VkPhysicalDeviceShaderFloat16Int8Features` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceShaderFloat16Int8Features {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkBool32 shaderFloat16;
    VkBool32 shaderInt8;
} VkPhysicalDeviceShaderFloat16Int8Features;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_shader_float16_int8
typedef VkPhysicalDeviceShaderFloat16Int8Features VkPhysicalDeviceShaderFloat16Int8FeaturesKHR;
```

This structure describes the following features:

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `shaderFloat16` indicates whether 16-bit floats (halves) are supported in shader code. This also indicates whether shader modules can declare the `Float16` capability. However, this only enables a subset of the storage classes that SPIR-V allows for the `Float16` SPIR-V capability: Declaring and using 16-bit floats in the `Private`, `Workgroup` (for non-Block variables), and `Function` storage classes is enabled, while declaring them in the interface storage classes (e.g., `UniformConstant`, `Uniform`, `StorageBuffer`, `Input`, `Output`, and `PushConstant`) is not enabled.
- `shaderInt8` indicates whether 8-bit integers (signed and unsigned) are supported in shader code. This also indicates whether shader modules can declare the `Int8` capability. However, this only enables a subset of the storage classes that SPIR-V allows for the `Int8` SPIR-V capability: Declaring and using 8-bit integers in the `Private`, `Workgroup` (for non-Block variables), and `Function` storage classes is enabled, while declaring them in the interface storage classes (e.g., `UniformConstant`, `Uniform`, `StorageBuffer`, `Input`, `Output`, and `PushConstant`) is not enabled.

If the `VkPhysicalDeviceShaderFloat16Int8Features` structure is included in the `pNext` chain of the `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2` structure passed to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2`, it is filled in to indicate whether each corresponding feature is supported. `VkPhysicalDeviceShaderFloat16Int8Features` can also be used in the `pNext` chain of `VkDeviceCreateInfo` to selectively enable these features.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceShaderFloat16Int8Features-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SHADER_FLOAT16_INT8_FEATURES

The `VkPhysicalDeviceShaderClockFeaturesKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_shader_clock
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceShaderClockFeaturesKHR {
  VkStructureType sType;
  void* pNext;
  VkBool32 shaderSubgroupClock;
  VkBool32 shaderDeviceClock;
} VkPhysicalDeviceShaderClockFeaturesKHR;
```

This structure describes the following features:

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `shaderSubgroupClock` indicates whether shaders can perform Subgroup scoped clock reads.
- `shaderDeviceClock` indicates whether shaders can perform Device scoped clock reads.

If the `VkPhysicalDeviceShaderClockFeaturesKHR` structure is included in the `pNext` chain of the `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2` structure passed to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2`, it is filled in to indicate whether each corresponding feature is supported. `VkPhysicalDeviceShaderClockFeaturesKHR` can also be used in the `pNext` chain of `VkDeviceCreateInfo` to selectively enable these features.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceShaderClockFeaturesKHR-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SHADER_CLOCK_FEATURES_KHR

The `VkPhysicalDeviceSamplerYcbcrConversionFeatures` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceSamplerYcbcrConversionFeatures {
  VkStructureType sType;
  void* pNext;
  VkBool32 samplerYcbcrConversion;
} VkPhysicalDeviceSamplerYcbcrConversionFeatures;
```

or the equivalent
This structure describes the following feature:

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.

- `samplerYcbcrConversion` specifies whether the implementation supports sampler Y′CbCr conversion. If `samplerYcbcrConversion` is `VK_FALSE`, sampler Y′CbCr conversion is not supported, and samplers using sampler Y′CbCr conversion must not be used.

If the `VkPhysicalDeviceSamplerYcbcrConversionFeatures` structure is included in the `pNext` chain of the `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2` structure passed to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2`, it is filled in to indicate whether each corresponding feature is supported. `VkPhysicalDeviceSamplerYcbcrConversionFeatures` can also be used in the `pNext` chain of `VkDeviceCreateInfo` to selectively enable these features.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- `VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceSamplerYcbcrConversionFeatures-sType-sType`  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SAMPLER_YCBCR_CONVERSION_FEATURES`

The `VkPhysicalDeviceVulkanMemoryModelFeatures` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceVulkanMemoryModelFeatures {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkBool32 vulkanMemoryModel;
    VkBool32 vulkanMemoryModelDeviceScope;
    VkBool32 vulkanMemoryModelAvailabilityVisibilityChains;
} VkPhysicalDeviceVulkanMemoryModelFeatures;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_vulkan_memory_model  
typedef VkPhysicalDeviceVulkanMemoryModelFeatures  
VkPhysicalDeviceVulkanMemoryModelFeaturesKHR;
```

This structure describes the following features:

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
• `vulkanMemoryModel` indicates whether the Vulkan Memory Model is supported, as defined in Vulkan Memory Model. This also indicates whether shader modules can declare the `vulkanMemoryModel` capability.

• `vulkanMemoryModelDeviceScope` indicates whether the Vulkan Memory Model can use Device scope synchronization. This also indicates whether shader modules can declare the `vulkanMemoryModelDeviceScope` capability.

• `vulkanMemoryModelAvailabilityVisibilityChains` indicates whether the Vulkan Memory Model can use availability and visibility chains with more than one element.

If the `VkPhysicalDeviceVulkanMemoryModelFeaturesKHR` structure is included in the `pNext` chain of the `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2` structure passed to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2`, it is filled in to indicate whether each corresponding feature is supported. `VkPhysicalDeviceVulkanMemoryModelFeaturesKHR` can also be used in the `pNext` chain of `VkDeviceCreateInfo` to selectively enable these features.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

• VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceVulkanMemoryModelFeatures-sType-sType
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_VULKAN_MEMORY_MODEL_FEATURES`.

The `VkPhysicalDeviceUniformBufferStandardLayoutFeatures` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceUniformBufferStandardLayoutFeatures {
    VkStructureType      sType;
    void*                pNext;
    VkBool32             uniformBufferStandardLayout;
} VkPhysicalDeviceUniformBufferStandardLayoutFeatures;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_uniform_buffer_standard_layout
typedef VkPhysicalDeviceUniformBufferStandardLayoutFeatures
VkPhysicalDeviceUniformBufferStandardLayoutFeaturesKHR;
```

This structure describes the following feature:

• `sType` is the type of this structure.

• `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.

• `uniformBufferStandardLayout` indicates that the implementation supports the same layouts for uniform buffers as for storage and other kinds of buffers. See Standard Buffer Layout.

If the `VkPhysicalDeviceUniformBufferStandardLayoutFeatures` structure is included in the `pNext` chain of the `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2` structure passed to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2`, it is filled in to indicate whether each corresponding feature is supported.
VkPhysicalDeviceUniformBufferStandardLayoutFeatures can also be used in the pNext chain of VkDeviceCreateInfo to selectively enable these features.

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceUniformBufferStandardLayoutFeatures-sType-sType
  
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_UNIFORM_BUFFER_STANDARD_LAYOUT_FEATURES

The VkPhysicalDeviceBufferDeviceAddressFeatures structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceBufferDeviceAddressFeatures {
    VkStructureType       sType;
    void*                 pNext;
    VkBool32              bufferDeviceAddress;
    VkBool32              bufferDeviceAddressCaptureReplay;
    VkBool32              bufferDeviceAddressMultiDevice;
} VkPhysicalDeviceBufferDeviceAddressFeatures;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_buffer_device_address
typedef VkPhysicalDeviceBufferDeviceAddressFeatures
    VkPhysicalDeviceBufferDeviceAddressFeaturesKHR;
```

This structure describes the following features:

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **bufferDeviceAddress** indicates that the implementation supports accessing buffer memory in shaders as storage buffers via an address queried from vkGetBufferDeviceAddress.
- **bufferDeviceAddressCaptureReplay** indicates that the implementation supports saving and reusing buffer and device addresses, e.g. for trace capture and replay.
- **bufferDeviceAddressMultiDevice** indicates that the implementation supports the bufferDeviceAddress, rayTracingPipeline and rayQuery features for logical devices created with multiple physical devices. If this feature is not supported, buffer and acceleration structure addresses must not be queried on a logical device created with more than one physical device.

**Note**

bufferDeviceAddressMultiDevice exists to allow certain legacy platforms to be able to support bufferDeviceAddress without needing to support shared GPU virtual addresses for multi-device configurations.

See vkGetBufferDeviceAddress for more information.
If the `VkPhysicalDeviceBufferDeviceAddressFeatures` structure is included in the `pNext` chain of the `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2` structure passed to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2`, it is filled in to indicate whether each corresponding feature is supported. `VkPhysicalDeviceBufferDeviceAddressFeatures` can also be used in the `pNext` chain of `VkDeviceCreateInfo` to selectively enable these features.

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- `VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceBufferDeviceAddressFeatures-sType-sType`  
  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_BUFFER_DEVICE_ADDRESS_FEATURES`

The `VkPhysicalDeviceImagelessFramebufferFeatures` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceImagelessFramebufferFeatures {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkBool32 imagelessFramebuffer;
} VkPhysicalDeviceImagelessFramebufferFeatures;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_imageless_framebuffer  
typedef VkPhysicalDeviceImagelessFramebufferFeatures  
VkPhysicalDeviceImagelessFramebufferFeaturesKHR;
```

This structure describes the following feature:

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `imagelessFramebuffer` indicates that the implementation supports specifying the image view for attachments at render pass begin time via `VkRenderPassAttachmentBeginInfo`.

If the `VkPhysicalDeviceImagelessFramebufferFeatures` structure is included in the `pNext` chain of the `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2` structure passed to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2`, it is filled in to indicate whether each corresponding feature is supported. `VkPhysicalDeviceImagelessFramebufferFeatures` can also be used in the `pNext` chain of `VkDeviceCreateInfo` to selectively enable these features.

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- `VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceImagelessFramebufferFeatures-sType-sType`  
  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_IMAGELESS_FRAMEBUFFER_FEATURES`

The `VkPhysicalDeviceTimelineSemaphoreFeatures` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_timeline_semaphore
```
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceTimelineSemaphoreFeatures {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkBool32 timelineSemaphore;
} VkPhysicalDeviceTimelineSemaphoreFeatures;

or the equivalent

// Provided by VK_KHR_timeline_semaphore
typedef VkPhysicalDeviceTimelineSemaphoreFeatures
VkPhysicalDeviceTimelineSemaphoreFeaturesKHR;

This structure describes the following feature:

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **timelineSemaphore** indicates whether semaphores created with a VkSemaphoreType of VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE are supported.

If the VkPhysicalDeviceTimelineSemaphoreFeatures structure is included in the pNext chain of the VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2 structure passed to vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2, it is filled in to indicate whether each corresponding feature is supported. VkPhysicalDeviceTimelineSemaphoreFeatures can also be used in the pNext chain of VkDeviceCreateInfo to selectively enable these features.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceTimelineSemaphoreFeatures-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_TIMELINE_SEMAPHORE_FEATURES

The VkPhysicalDeviceSeparateDepthStencilLayoutsFeatures structure is defined as:

typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceSeparateDepthStencilLayoutsFeatures {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkBool32 separateDepthStencilLayouts;
} VkPhysicalDeviceSeparateDepthStencilLayoutsFeatures;

or the equivalent

// Provided by VK_KHR_separate_depth_stencil_layouts
typedef VkPhysicalDeviceSeparateDepthStencilLayoutsFeatures
VkPhysicalDeviceSeparateDepthStencilLayoutsFeaturesKHR;
This structure describes the following feature:

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.

- **separateDepthStencilLayouts** indicates whether the implementation supports a `VkImageMemoryBarrier` for a depth/stencil image with only one of `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_DEPTH_BIT` or `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_STENCIL_BIT` set, and whether `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL`, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL`, or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL` can be used.

If the `VkPhysicalDeviceSeparateDepthStencilLayoutsFeatures` structure is included in the **pNext** chain of the `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2` structure passed to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2`, it is filled in to indicate whether each corresponding feature is supported. `VkPhysicalDeviceSeparateDepthStencilLayoutsFeatures` can also be used in the **pNext** chain of `VkDeviceCreateInfo` to selectively enable these features.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceSeparateDepthStencilLayoutsFeatures-sType-sType

  sType must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SEPARATE_DEPTH_STENCIL_LAYOUTS_FEATURES`.

The `VkPhysicalDevicePipelineExecutablePropertiesFeaturesKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_pipeline_executable_properties
typedef struct VkPhysicalDevicePipelineExecutablePropertiesFeaturesKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkBool32 pipelineExecutableInfo;
} VkPhysicalDevicePipelineExecutablePropertiesFeaturesKHR;
```

This structure describes the following feature:

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **pipelineExecutableInfo** indicates that the implementation supports reporting properties and statistics about the pipeline executables associated with a compiled pipeline.

If the `VkPhysicalDevicePipelineExecutablePropertiesFeaturesKHR` structure is included in the **pNext** chain of the `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2` structure passed to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2`, it is filled in to indicate whether each corresponding feature is supported. `VkPhysicalDevicePipelineExecutablePropertiesFeaturesFeaturesKHR` can also be used in the **pNext** chain of `VkDeviceCreateInfo` to selectively enable these features.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_PIPELINE_EXECUTABLE_PROPERTIES_FEATURES_KHR`

The `VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructureFeaturesKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructureFeaturesKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkBool32 accelerationStructure;
    VkBool32 accelerationStructureCaptureReplay;
    VkBool32 accelerationStructureIndirectBuild;
    VkBool32 accelerationStructureHostCommands;
    VkBool32 descriptorBindingAccelerationStructureUpdateAfterBind;
} VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructureFeaturesKHR;
```

This structure describes the following features:

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **accelerationStructure** indicates whether the implementation supports the acceleration structure functionality. See [Acceleration Structures](#).
- **accelerationStructureCaptureReplay** indicates whether the implementation supports saving and reusing acceleration structure device addresses, e.g. for trace capture and replay.
- **accelerationStructureIndirectBuild** indicates whether the implementation supports indirect acceleration structure build commands, e.g. `vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR`.
- **accelerationStructureHostCommands** indicates whether the implementation supports host side acceleration structure commands, e.g. `vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR`, `vkCopyAccelerationStructureKHR`, `vkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR`, `vkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR`, `vkWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR`.
- **descriptorBindingAccelerationStructureUpdateAfterBind** indicates whether the implementation supports updating acceleration structure descriptors after a set is bound. If this feature is not enabled, `VK_DESCRIPTOR_BINDING_UPDATE_AFTER_BIND_BIT` must not be used with `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_KHR`.

If the `VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructureFeaturesKHR` structure is included in the `pNext` chain of the `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2` structure passed to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2`, it is filled in to indicate whether each corresponding feature is supported. `VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructureFeaturesKHR` can also be used in the `pNext` chain of `VkDeviceCreateInfo` to selectively enable these features.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructureFeaturesKHR-sType-sType

  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_FEATURES_KHR`.

The `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelineFeaturesKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelineFeaturesKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkBool32 rayTracingPipeline;
    VkBool32 rayTracingPipelineShaderGroupHandleCaptureReplay;
    VkBool32 rayTracingPipelineShaderGroupHandleCaptureReplayMixed;
    VkBool32 rayTracingPipelineTraceRaysIndirect;
    VkBool32 rayTraversalPrimitiveCulling;
} VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelineFeaturesKHR;
```

This structure describes the following features:

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `rayTracingPipeline` indicates whether the implementation supports the ray tracing pipeline functionality. See Ray Tracing.
- `rayTracingPipelineShaderGroupHandleCaptureReplay` indicates whether the implementation supports saving and reusing shader group handles, e.g. for trace capture and replay.
- `rayTracingPipelineShaderGroupHandleCaptureReplayMixed` indicates whether the implementation supports reuse of shader group handles being arbitrarily mixed with creation of non-reused shader group handles. If this is `VK_FALSE`, all reused shader group handles must be specified before any non-reused handles may be created.
- `rayTracingPipelineTraceRaysIndirect` indicates whether the implementation supports indirect ray tracing commands, e.g. `vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR.`
- `rayTraversalPrimitiveCulling` indicates whether the implementation supports primitive culling during ray traversal.

If the `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelineFeaturesKHR` structure is included in the `pNext` chain of the `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2` structure passed to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2`, it is filled in to indicate whether each corresponding feature is supported. `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelineFeaturesKHR` can also be used in the `pNext` chain of `VkDeviceCreateInfo` to selectively enable these features.
Valid Usage

- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelineFeaturesKHR-rayTracingPipelineShaderGroupHandleCaptureReplayMixed-03575

If `rayTracingPipelineShaderGroupHandleCaptureReplayMixed` is `VK_TRUE`, `rayTracingPipelineShaderGroupHandleCaptureReplay` must also be `VK_TRUE`.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelineFeaturesKHR-sType-sType

`sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_RAY_TRACING_PIPELINE_FEATURES_KHR`.

The `VkPhysicalDeviceRayQueryFeaturesKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_ray_query
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceRayQueryFeaturesKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkBool32 rayQuery;
} VkPhysicalDeviceRayQueryFeaturesKHR;
```

This structure describes the following feature:

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `rayQuery` indicates whether the implementation supports ray query (`OpRayQueryProceedKHR`) functionality.

If the `VkPhysicalDeviceRayQueryFeaturesKHR` structure is included in the `pNext` chain of the `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2` structure passed to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2`, it is filled in to indicate whether each corresponding feature is supported. `VkPhysicalDeviceRayQueryFeaturesKHR` can also be used in the `pNext` chain of `VkDeviceCreateInfo` to selectively enable these features.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceRayQueryFeaturesKHR-sType-sType

`sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_RAY_QUERY_FEATURES_KHR`.

The `VkPhysicalDeviceZeroInitializeWorkgroupMemoryFeaturesKHR` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceZeroInitializeWorkgroupMemoryFeaturesKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkBool32 shaderZeroInitializeWorkgroupMemory;
} VkPhysicalDeviceZeroInitializeWorkgroupMemoryFeaturesKHR;

This structure describes the following feature:

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **shaderZeroInitializeWorkgroupMemory** specifies whether the implementation supports initializing a variable in Workgroup storage class.

If the `VkPhysicalDeviceZeroInitializeWorkgroupMemoryFeaturesKHR` structure is included in the `pNext` chain of the `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2` structure passed to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2`, it is filled in to indicate whether each corresponding feature is supported. `VkPhysicalDeviceZeroInitializeWorkgroupMemoryFeaturesKHR` can also be used in the `pNext` chain of `VkDeviceCreateInfo` to selectively enable these features.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceZeroInitializeWorkgroupMemoryFeaturesKHR-sType-sType
  *sType* must be
  `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_ZERO_INITIALIZE_WORKGROUP_MEMORY_FEATURES_KHR`

The `VkPhysicalDeviceShaderSubgroupUniformControlFlowFeaturesKHR` structure is defined as:

typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceShaderSubgroupUniformControlFlowFeaturesKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkBool32 shaderSubgroupUniformControlFlow;
} VkPhysicalDeviceShaderSubgroupUniformControlFlowFeaturesKHR;

This structure describes the following feature:

- **shaderSubgroupUniformControlFlow** specifies whether the implementation supports the shader execution mode `SubgroupUniformControlFlowKHR`

If the `VkPhysicalDevicePrivateDataFeaturesEXT` structure is included in the `pNext` chain of the `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2` structure passed to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2`, it is filled in to indicate whether each corresponding feature is supported. `VkPhysicalDevicePrivateDataFeaturesEXT` can also be used in the `pNext` chain of `VkDeviceCreateInfo` to selectively enable these features.
nullDescriptor support requires the [VK_EXT_robustness2] extension.

The VkPhysicalDeviceShaderTerminateInvocationFeaturesKHR structure is defined as:

```
// Provided by VK_KHR_shader_terminate_invocation
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceShaderTerminateInvocationFeaturesKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkBool32 shaderTerminateInvocation;
} VkPhysicalDeviceShaderTerminateInvocationFeaturesKHR;
```

This structure describes the following feature:

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **shaderTerminateInvocation** specifies whether the implementation supports SPIR-V modules that use the SPV_KHR_terminate_invocation extension.

If the VkPhysicalDeviceShaderTerminateInvocationFeaturesKHR structure is included in the pNext chain of the VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2 structure passed to vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2, it is filled in to indicate whether each corresponding feature is supported. VkPhysicalDeviceShaderTerminateInvocationFeaturesKHR can also be used in the pNext chain of VkDeviceCreateInfo to selectively enable these features.
This structure describes the following features:

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **constantAlphaColorBlendFactors** indicates whether this implementation supports constant *alpha* *Blend Factors* used as source or destination *color Blending*.
- **events** indicates whether this implementation supports synchronization using *Events*.
- **imageViewFormatReinterpretation** indicates whether this implementation supports a *VkImageView* being created with a texel format containing a different number of components, or a different number of bits in each component, than the texel format of the underlying *VkImage*.
- **imageViewFormatSwizzle** indicates whether this implementation supports remapping format components using *VkImageViewCreateInfo::components*.
- **imageView2DOn3DImage** indicates whether this implementation supports a *VkImage* being created with the `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_2D_ARRAY_COMPATIBLE_BIT` flag set, permitting a 2D or 2D array image view to be created on a 3D *VkImage*.
- **multisampleArrayImage** indicates whether this implementation supports a *VkImage* being created as a 2D array with multiple samples per texel.
- **mutableComparisonSamplers** indicates whether this implementation allows descriptors with comparison samplers to be updated.
- **pointPolygons** indicates whether this implementation supports Rasterization using a *point Polygon Mode*.
- **samplerMipLodBias** indicates whether this implementation supports setting a *mipmap LOD bias value* when creating a sampler.
• **separateStencilMaskRef** indicates whether this implementation supports separate front and back Stencil Test reference values.

• **shaderSampleRateInterpolationFunctions** indicates whether this implementation supports fragment shaders which use the **InterpolationFunction** capability and the extended instructions **InterpolateAtCentroid**, **InterpolateAtOffset**, and **InterpolateAtSample** from the GLSL.std.450 extended instruction set. This member is only meaningful if the **sampleRateShading** feature is supported.

• **tessellationIsolines** indicates whether this implementation supports isoline output from the **Tessellation** stage of a graphics pipeline. This member is only meaningful if **tessellation shaders** are supported.

• **tessellationPointMode** indicates whether this implementation supports point output from the **Tessellation** stage of a graphics pipeline. This member is only meaningful if **tessellation shaders** are supported.

• **triangleFans** indicates whether this implementation supports Triangle Fans primitive topology.

• **vertexAttributeAccessBeyondStride** indicates whether this implementation supports accessing a vertex input attribute beyond the stride of the corresponding vertex input binding.

If the **VkPhysicalDevicePortabilitySubsetFeaturesKHR** structure is included in the **pNext** chain of the **VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2** structure passed to **vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2**, it is filled in to indicate whether each corresponding feature is supported. **VkPhysicalDevicePortabilitySubsetFeaturesKHR** can also be used in the **pNext** chain of **VkDeviceCreateInfo** to selectively enable these features.

---

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-VkPhysicalDevicePortabilitySubsetFeaturesKHR-sType-sType

  **sType** must be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_PORTABILITY_SUBSET_FEATURES_KHR**

The **VkPhysicalDevicePerformanceQueryFeaturesKHR** structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_performance_query
typedef struct VkPhysicalDevicePerformanceQueryFeaturesKHR {
    VkStructureType                      sType;
    void*                                pNext;
    VkBool32                             performanceCounterQueryPools;
    VkBool32                             performanceCounterMultipleQueryPools;
} VkPhysicalDevicePerformanceQueryFeaturesKHR;
```

This structure describes the following features:

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **performanceCounterQueryPools** indicates whether the implementation supports performance counter query pools.
• `performanceCounterMultipleQueryPools` indicates whether the implementation supports using multiple performance query pools in a primary command buffer and secondary command buffers executed within it.

If the `VkPhysicalDevicePerformanceQueryFeaturesKHR` structure is included in the `pNext` chain of the `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2` structure passed to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2`, it is filled in to indicate whether each corresponding feature is supported. `VkPhysicalDevicePerformanceQueryFeaturesKHR` can also be used in the `pNext` chain of `VkDeviceCreateInfo` to selectively enable these features.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkPhysicalDevicePerformanceQueryFeaturesKHR-sType-sType
  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_PERFORMANCE_QUERY_FEATURES_KHR`

The `VkPhysicalDeviceWorkgroupMemoryExplicitLayoutFeaturesKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_workgroup_memory_explicit_layout
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceWorkgroupMemoryExplicitLayoutFeaturesKHR {
    VkStructureType    sType;
    void*              pNext;
    VkBool32           workgroupMemoryExplicitLayout;
    VkBool32           workgroupMemoryExplicitLayoutScalarBlockLayout;
    VkBool32           workgroupMemoryExplicitLayout8BitAccess;
    VkBool32           workgroupMemoryExplicitLayout16BitAccess;
} VkPhysicalDeviceWorkgroupMemoryExplicitLayoutFeaturesKHR;
```

This structure describes the following features:

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `workgroupMemoryExplicitLayout` indicates whether the implementation supports the SPIR-V `WorkgroupMemoryExplicitLayoutKHR` capability.
- `workgroupMemoryExplicitLayoutScalarBlockLayout` indicates whether the implementation supports scalar alignment for laying out Workgroup Blocks.
- `workgroupMemoryExplicitLayout8BitAccess` indicates whether objects in the Workgroup storage class with the `Block` decoration can have 8-bit integer members. If this feature is not enabled, 8-bit integer members must not be used in such objects. This also indicates whether shader modules can declare the `WorkgroupMemoryExplicitLayout8BitAccessKHR` capability.
- `workgroupMemoryExplicitLayout16BitAccess` indicates whether objects in the Workgroup storage class with the `Block` decoration can have 16-bit integer and 16-bit floating-point members. If this feature is not enabled, 16-bit integer or 16-bit floating-point members must not be used in such objects. This also indicates whether shader modules can declare the `WorkgroupMemoryExplicitLayout16BitAccessKHR` capability.
If the `VkPhysicalDeviceWorkgroupMemoryExplicitLayoutFeaturesKHR` structure is included in the `pNext` chain of the `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2` structure passed to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2`, it is filled in to indicate whether each corresponding feature is supported. `VkPhysicalDeviceWorkgroupMemoryExplicitLayoutFeaturesKHR` can also be used in the `pNext` chain of `VkDeviceCreateInfo` to selectively enable these features.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- `VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceWorkgroupMemoryExplicitLayoutFeaturesKHR-sType-sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_WORKGROUP_MEMORY_EXPLICIT_LAYOUT_FEATURES_KHR`

The `VkPhysicalDeviceSynchronization2FeaturesKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_synchronization2
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceSynchronization2FeaturesKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkBool32 synchronization2;
} VkPhysicalDeviceSynchronization2FeaturesKHR;
```

This structure describes the following feature:

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `synchronization2` indicates whether the implementation supports the new set of synchronization commands introduced in `VK_KHR_synchronization2`.

If the `VkPhysicalDeviceSynchronization2FeaturesKHR` structure is included in the `pNext` chain of the `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2` structure passed to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2`, it is filled in to indicate whether each corresponding feature is supported. `VkPhysicalDeviceSynchronization2FeaturesKHR` can also be used in the `pNext` chain of `VkDeviceCreateInfo` to selectively enable these features.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

- `VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceSynchronization2FeaturesKHR-sType-sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SYNCHRONIZATION_2_FEATURES_KHR`

The `VkPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRateFeaturesKHR` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRateFeaturesKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkBool32 pipelineFragmentShadingRate;
    VkBool32 primitiveFragmentShadingRate;
    VkBool32 attachmentFragmentShadingRate;
} VkPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRateFeaturesKHR;

This structure describes the following features:

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **pipelineFragmentShadingRate** indicates that the implementation supports the pipeline fragment shading rate.
- **primitiveFragmentShadingRate** indicates that the implementation supports the primitive fragment shading rate.
- **attachmentFragmentShadingRate** indicates that the implementation supports the attachment fragment shading rate.

If the `VkPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRateFeaturesKHR` structure is included in the `pNext` chain of the `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2` structure passed to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2`, it is filled in to indicate whether each corresponding feature is supported. `VkPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRateFeaturesKHR` can also be used in the `pNext` chain of `VkDeviceCreateInfo` to selectively enable these features.

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRateFeaturesKHR-sType-sType

  `sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_FEATURES_KHR`

The `VkPhysicalDevicePresentIdFeaturesKHR` structure is defined as:

```
// Provided by VK_KHR_present_id
typedef struct VkPhysicalDevicePresentIdFeaturesKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkBool32 presentId;
} VkPhysicalDevicePresentIdFeaturesKHR;
```

This structure describes the following feature:

- **presentId** indicates that the implementation supports specifying present ID values in the `VkPresentIdKHR` extension to the `VkPresentInfoKHR` struct.
If the `VkPhysicalDevicePresentIdFeaturesKHR` structure is included in the `pNext` chain of the `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2` structure passed to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2`, it is filled in to indicate whether each corresponding feature is supported. `VkPhysicalDevicePresentIdFeaturesKHR` can also be used in the `pNext` chain of `VkDeviceCreateInfo` to selectively enable these features.

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-VkPhysicalDevicePresentIdFeaturesKHR-sType-sType
  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_PRESENT_ID_FEATURES_KHR`

The `VkPhysicalDevicePresentWaitFeaturesKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_present_wait
typedef struct VkPhysicalDevicePresentWaitFeaturesKHR {
    VkStructureType     sType;
    void*                pNext;
    VkBool32             presentWait;
} VkPhysicalDevicePresentWaitFeaturesKHR;
```

This structure describes the following feature:

- `presentWait` indicates that the implementation supports `vkWaitForPresentKHR`.

If the `VkPhysicalDevicePresentWaitFeaturesKHR` structure is included in the `pNext` chain of the `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2` structure passed to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2`, it is filled in to indicate whether each corresponding feature is supported. `VkPhysicalDevicePresentWaitFeaturesKHR` can also be used in the `pNext` chain of `VkDeviceCreateInfo` to selectively enable these features.

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-VkPhysicalDevicePresentWaitFeaturesKHR-sType-sType
  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_PRESENT_WAIT_FEATURES_KHR`

### 37.1. Feature Requirements

All Vulkan graphics implementations must support the following features:

- `robustBufferAccess`, unless the `VK_KHR_portability_subset` extension is enabled.
- `uniformBufferStandardLayout`, if Vulkan 1.2 or the `VK_KHR_uniform_buffer_standard_layout` extension is supported.
- `variablePointersStorageBuffer`, if the `VK_KHR_variable_pointers` extension is supported.
- `storageBuffer8BitAccess`, if the `VK_KHR_8bit_storage` extension is supported.
- `StorageBuffer8BitAccess`, if `uniformAndStorageBuffer8BitAccess` is enabled.
- `imagelessFramebuffer`, if Vulkan 1.2 or the `VK_KHR_imageless_framebuffer` extension is supported.
• **separateDepthStencilLayouts**, if Vulkan 1.2 or the VK_KHR_separate_depth_stencil_layouts extension is supported.

• **timelineSemaphore**, if Vulkan 1.2 or the VK_KHR_timeline_semaphore extension is supported.

• If the VK_KHR_acceleration_structure extension is supported:
  ◦ **accelerationStructure**
  ◦ All the features required by the [VK_EXT_descriptor_indexing] extension.
  ◦ descriptorBindingAccelerationStructureUpdateAfterBind
  ◦ **bufferDeviceAddress** from the VK_KHR_buffer_device_address extension.

• If the VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline extension is supported:
  ◦ **accelerationStructure** from VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
  ◦ **rayTracingPipeline**
  ◦ **rayTracingPipelineTraceRaysIndirect**
  ◦ **rayTraversalPrimitiveCulling**, if **rayQuery** is supported from VK_KHR_ray_query
  ◦ the VK_KHR_pipeline_library extension.

• If the VK_KHR_ray_query extension is supported:
  ◦ **accelerationStructure** from VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
  ◦ **rayQuery**

• **shaderSubgroupExtendedTypes**, if Vulkan 1.2 or the VK_KHR_shader_subgroup_extended_types extension is supported.

• **samplerYcbcrConversion**, if the VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion extension is supported.

• **pipelineExecutableInfo**, if the VK_KHR_pipeline_executable_properties extension is supported.

• **vulkanMemoryModel**, if the VK_KHR_vulkan_memory_model extension is supported.

• **bufferDeviceAddress**, if the VK_KHR_buffer_device_address extension is supported.

• **performanceCounterQueryPools**, if the VK_KHR_performance_query extension is supported.

• **shaderSubgroupClock**, if the VK_KHR_shader_clock extension is supported.

• **shaderBufferInt64Atomics**, if the VK_KHR_shader_atomic_int64 extension is supported.

• **shaderInt64**, if the shaderSharedInt64Atomics or shaderBufferInt64Atomics features are supported.

• **shaderFloat16** or **shaderInt8**, if the VK_KHR_shader_float16_int8 extension is supported.

• **storageBuffer16BitAccess**, if the VK_KHR_16bit_storage extension is supported.

• **storageBuffer16BitAccess**, if uniformAndStorageBuffer16BitAccess is enabled.

• **pipelineFragmentShadingRate**, if the VK_KHR_fragment_shading_rate extension is supported.

• **shaderTerminateInvocation** if the VK_KHR_shader_terminate_invocation extension is supported.

• **shaderZeroInitializeWorkgroupMem**, if the VK_KHR_zero_initialize_workgroup_memory extension is supported.

• **workgroupMemoryExplicitLayout**, if the VK_KHR_workgroup_memory_explicit_layout extension is supported.
• `synchronization2` if the `VK_KHR_synchronization2` extension is supported.
• `shaderSubgroupUniformControlFlow`, if the `VK_KHR_shader_subgroup_uniform_control_flow` extension is supported.
• `presentId`, if the `VK_KHR_present_id` extension is supported.
• `presentWait`, if the `VK_KHR_present_wait` extension is supported.

All other features defined in the Specification are optional.
Chapter 38. Limits

*Limits* are implementation-dependent minimums, maximums, and other device characteristics that an application *may* need to be aware of.

**Note**

Limits are reported via the basic `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits` structure as well as the extensible structure `VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2`, which was added in `VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2` and included in Vulkan 1.1. When limits are added in future Vulkan versions or extensions, each extension should introduce one new limit structure, if needed. This structure can be added to the `pNext` chain of the `VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2` structure.

The `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceLimits {
    uint32_t maxImageDimension1D;
    uint32_t maxImageDimension2D;
    uint32_t maxImageDimension3D;
    uint32_t maxImageDimensionCube;
    uint32_t maxImageArrayLayers;
    uint32_t maxTexelBufferElements;
    uint32_t maxUniformBufferRange;
    uint32_t maxStorageBufferRange;
    uint32_t maxPushConstantsSize;
    uint32_t maxMemoryAllocationCount;
    uint32_t maxSamplerAllocationCount;
    VkDeviceSize bufferImageGranularity;
    VkDeviceSize sparseAddressSpaceSize;
    uint32_t maxBoundDescriptorSets;
    uint32_t maxPerStageDescriptorSamplers;
    uint32_t maxPerStageDescriptorUniformBuffers;
    uint32_t maxPerStageDescriptorStorageBuffers;
    uint32_t maxPerStageDescriptorSampledImages;
    uint32_t maxPerStageDescriptorStorageImages;
    uint32_t maxPerStageDescriptorInputAttachments;
    uint32_t maxPerStageResources;
    uint32_t maxDescriptorSetSamplers;
    uint32_t maxDescriptorSetUniformBuffers;
    uint32_t maxDescriptorSetUniformBuffersDynamic;
    uint32_t maxDescriptorSetStorageBuffers;
    uint32_t maxDescriptorSetStorageBuffersDynamic;
    uint32_t maxDescriptorSetSampledImages;
    uint32_t maxDescriptorSetStorageImages;
    uint32_t maxDescriptorSetInputAttachments;
    uint32_t maxVertexInputAttributes;
    uint32_t maxVertexInputBindings;
    uint32_t maxVertexInputAttributeOffset;
} VkPhysicalDeviceLimits;
```
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t maxVertexInputBindingStride</td>
<td>Maximum stride for vertex input bindings</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t maxVertexOutputComponents</td>
<td>Maximum components for vertex output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t maxTessellationGenerationLevel</td>
<td>Maximum level for tessellation generation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t maxTessellationPatchSize</td>
<td>Maximum patch size for tessellation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t maxTessellationControlPerVertexInputComponents</td>
<td>Maximum components for vertex input in tessellation control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t maxTessellationControlPerVertexOutputComponents</td>
<td>Maximum components for vertex output in tessellation control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t maxTessellationControlPerPatchOutputComponents</td>
<td>Maximum components for patch output in tessellation control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t maxTessellationControlTotalOutputComponents</td>
<td>Maximum components in tessellation control</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t maxTessellationEvaluationInputComponents</td>
<td>Maximum components for input in tessellation evaluation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t maxTessellationEvaluationOutputComponents</td>
<td>Maximum components for output in tessellation evaluation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t maxGeometryShaderInvocations</td>
<td>Maximum invocations for geometry shader</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t maxGeometryInputComponents</td>
<td>Maximum components for geometry input</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t maxGeometryOutputComponents</td>
<td>Maximum components for geometry output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t maxGeometryOutputVertices</td>
<td>Maximum output vertices for geometry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t maxGeometryTotalOutputComponents</td>
<td>Total output components in geometry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t maxFragmentInputComponents</td>
<td>Maximum components for fragment input</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t maxFragmentOutputAttachments</td>
<td>Maximum attachments for fragment output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t maxFragmentDualSrcAttachments</td>
<td>Maximum dual source attachments for fragment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t maxFragmentCombinedOutputResources</td>
<td>Maximum resources for combined output</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t maxComputeSharedMemorySize</td>
<td>Maximum size for shared memory in compute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t maxComputeWorkGroupCount[3]</td>
<td>Maximum work group count in compute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t maxComputeWorkGroupInvocations</td>
<td>Maximum invocations for work group</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t maxComputeWorkGroupSize[3]</td>
<td>Maximum size for work group in compute</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t subPixelPrecisionBits</td>
<td>Subpixel precision bits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t subTexelPrecisionBits</td>
<td>Subtexel precision bits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t.mipmapPrecisionBits</td>
<td>Mipmap precision bits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t maxDrawIndexedIndexValue</td>
<td>Maximum index value for draw indexed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t maxDrawIndirectCount</td>
<td>Maximum indirect count for draw</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>float maxSamplerLodBias</td>
<td>Maximum sampler lod bias</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>float maxSamplerAnisotropy</td>
<td>Maximum sampler anisotropy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t maxViewports</td>
<td>Maximum viewports</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>float viewportBoundsRange[2]</td>
<td>Viewport bounds range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t viewportSubPixelBits</td>
<td>Viewport subpixel bits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>size_t minMemoryMapAlignment</td>
<td>Minimum memory map alignment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkDeviceSize minTexelBufferOffsetAlignment</td>
<td>Minimum alignment for texel buffer offset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkDeviceSize minUniformBufferOffsetAlignment</td>
<td>Minimum alignment for uniform buffer offset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkDeviceSize minStorageBufferOffsetAlignment</td>
<td>Minimum alignment for storage buffer offset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>int32_t minTexelOffset</td>
<td>Minimum texel offset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t maxTexelOffset</td>
<td>Maximum texel offset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>int32_t minTexelGatherOffset</td>
<td>Minimum texel gather offset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t maxTexelGatherOffset</td>
<td>Maximum texel gather offset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>float minInterpolationOffset</td>
<td>Minimum interpolation offset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>float maxInterpolationOffset</td>
<td>Maximum interpolation offset</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t subPixelInterpolationOffsetBits</td>
<td>Subpixel interpolation offset bits</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t maxFramebufferWidth</td>
<td>Maximum framebuffer width</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t maxFramebufferHeight</td>
<td>Maximum framebuffer height</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t maxFramebufferLayers</td>
<td>Maximum framebuffer layers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkSampleCountFlags framebufferColorSampleCounts</td>
<td>Sample counts for framebuffer color</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkSampleCountFlags framebufferDepthSampleCounts</td>
<td>Sample counts for framebuffer depth</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkSampleCountFlags framebufferStencilSampleCounts</td>
<td>Sample counts for framebuffer stencil</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
VkSampleCountFlags framebufferNoAttachmentsSampleCounts;
uint32_t maxColorAttachments;
VkSampleCountFlags sampledImageColorSampleCounts;
VkSampleCountFlags sampledImageIntegerSampleCounts;
VkSampleCountFlags sampledImageDepthSampleCounts;
VkSampleCountFlags sampledImageStencilSampleCounts;
VkSampleCountFlags storageImageSampleCounts;
uint32_t maxSampleMaskWords;
VkBool32 timestampComputeAndGraphics;
float timestampPeriod;
uint32_t maxClipDistances;
uint32_t maxCullDistances;
uint32_t maxCombinedClipAndCullDistances;
uint32_t discreteQueuePriorities;
float pointSizeRange[2];
float lineWidthRange[2];
float pointSizeGranularity;
float lineWidthGranularity;
VkBool32 strictLines;
VkBool32 standardSampleLocations;
VkDeviceSize optimalBufferCopyOffsetAlignment;
VkDeviceSize optimalBufferCopyRowPitchAlignment;
VkDeviceSize nonCoherentAtomSize;
}

The VkPhysicalDeviceLimits are properties of the physical device. These are available in the limits member of the VkPhysicalDeviceProperties structure which is returned from vkGetPhysicalDeviceProperties.

- **maxImageDimension1D** is the largest dimension (width) that is guaranteed to be supported for all images created with an imageType of VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D. Some combinations of image parameters (format, usage, etc.) may allow support for larger dimensions, which can be queried using vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties.

- **maxImageDimension2D** is the largest dimension (width or height) that is guaranteed to be supported for all images created with an imageType of VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D and without VK_IMAGE_CREATE_CUBE_COMPATIBLE_BIT set in flags. Some combinations of image parameters (format, usage, etc.) may allow support for larger dimensions, which can be queried using vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties.

- **maxImageDimension3D** is the largest dimension (width, height, or depth) that is guaranteed to be supported for all images created with an imageType of VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D. Some combinations of image parameters (format, usage, etc.) may allow support for larger dimensions, which can be queried using vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties.

- **maxImageDimensionCube** is the largest dimension (width or height) that is guaranteed to be supported for all images created with an imageType of VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D and with VK_IMAGE_CREATE_CUBE_COMPATIBLE_BIT set in flags. Some combinations of image parameters (format, usage, etc.) may allow support for larger dimensions, which can be queried using vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties.

- **maxImageArrayLayers** is the maximum number of layers (arrayLayers) for an image.
• **maxTexelBufferElements** is the maximum number of addressable texels for a buffer view created on a buffer which was created with the `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT` or `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT` set in the `usage` member of the `VkBufferCreateInfo` structure.

• **maxUniformBufferRange** is the maximum value that can be specified in the `range` member of a `VkDescriptorBufferInfo` structure passed to `vkUpdateDescriptorSets` for descriptors of type `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER` or `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER_DYNAMIC`.

• **maxStorageBufferRange** is the maximum value that can be specified in the `range` member of a `VkDescriptorBufferInfo` structure passed to `vkUpdateDescriptorSets` for descriptors of type `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER` or `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER_DYNAMIC`.

• **maxPushConstantsSize** is the maximum size, in bytes, of the pool of push constant memory. For each of the push constant ranges indicated by the `pPushConstantRanges` member of the `VkPipelineLayoutCreateInfo` structure, `(offset + size)` must be less than or equal to this limit.

• **maxMemoryAllocationCount** is the maximum number of device memory allocations, as created by `vkAllocateMemory`, which can simultaneously exist.

• **maxSamplerAllocationCount** is the maximum number of sampler objects, as created by `vkCreateSampler`, which can simultaneously exist on a device.

• **bufferImageGranularity** is the granularity, in bytes, at which buffer or linear image resources, and optimal image resources can be bound to adjacent offsets in the same `VkDeviceMemory` object without aliasing. See Buffer-Image Granularity for more details.

• **sparseAddressSpaceSize** is the total amount of address space available, in bytes, for sparse memory resources. This is an upper bound on the sum of the sizes of all sparse resources, regardless of whether any memory is bound to them.

• **maxBoundDescriptorSets** is the maximum number of descriptor sets that can be simultaneously used by a pipeline. All `DescriptorSet` decorations in shader modules must have a value less than `maxBoundDescriptorSets`. See Descriptor Sets.

• **maxPerStageDescriptorSamplers** is the maximum number of samplers that can be accessible to a single shader stage in a pipeline layout. Descriptors with a type of `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLER` or `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER` count against this limit. A descriptor is accessible to a shader stage when the `stageFlags` member of the `VkDescriptorSetLayoutBinding` structure has the bit for that shader stage set. See Sampler and Combined Image Sampler.

• **maxPerStageDescriptorUniformBuffers** is the maximum number of uniform buffers that can be accessible to a single shader stage in a pipeline layout. Descriptors with a type of `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER` or `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER_DYNAMIC` count against this limit. A descriptor is accessible to a shader stage when the `stageFlags` member of the `VkDescriptorSetLayoutBinding` structure has the bit for that shader stage set. See Uniform Buffer and Dynamic Uniform Buffer.

• **maxPerStageDescriptorStorageBuffers** is the maximum number of storage buffers that can be accessible to a single shader stage in a pipeline layout. Descriptors with a type of `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER` or `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER_DYNAMIC` count against this limit. A descriptor is accessible to a pipeline shader stage when the `stageFlags` member of the `VkDescriptorSetLayoutBinding` structure has the bit for that shader stage set. See Storage Buffer and Dynamic Storage Buffer.
• **maxPerStageDescriptorSampledImages** is the maximum number of sampled images that can be accessible to a single shader stage in a pipeline layout. Descriptors with a type of `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER`, `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLED_IMAGE`, or `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER` count against this limit. A descriptor is accessible to a pipeline shader stage when the `stageFlags` member of the `VkDescriptorSetLayoutBinding` structure has the bit for that shader stage set. See Combined Image Sampler, Sampled Image, and Uniform Texel Buffer.

• **maxPerStageDescriptorStorageImages** is the maximum number of storage images that can be accessible to a single shader stage in a pipeline layout. Descriptors with a type of `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_IMAGE`, or `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER` count against this limit. A descriptor is accessible to a pipeline shader stage when the `stageFlags` member of the `VkDescriptorSetLayoutBinding` structure has the bit for that shader stage set. See Storage Image, and Storage Texel Buffer.

• **maxPerStageDescriptorInputAttachments** is the maximum number of input attachments that can be accessible to a single shader stage in a pipeline layout. Descriptors with a type of `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT` count against this limit. A descriptor is accessible to a pipeline shader stage when the `stageFlags` member of the `VkDescriptorSetLayoutBinding` structure has the bit for that shader stage set. These are only supported for the fragment stage. See Input Attachment.

• **maxPerStageResources** is the maximum number of resources that can be accessible to a single shader stage in a pipeline layout. Descriptors with a type of `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER`, `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLED_IMAGE`, `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_IMAGE`, `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER`, `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER`, `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER_DYNAMIC`, `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER`, `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER_DYNAMIC`, `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER_DYNAMIC`, or `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT` count against this limit. For the fragment shader stage the framebuffer color attachments also count against this limit.

• **maxDescriptorSetSamplers** is the maximum number of samplers that can be included in a pipeline layout. Descriptors with a type of `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLER` or `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER` count against this limit. See Sampler and Combined Image Sampler.

• **maxDescriptorSetUniformBuffers** is the maximum number of uniform buffers that can be included in a pipeline layout. Descriptors with a type of `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER` or `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER_DYNAMIC` count against this limit. See Uniform Buffer and Dynamic Uniform Buffer.

• **maxDescriptorSetUniformBuffersDynamic** is the maximum number of dynamic uniform buffers that can be included in a pipeline layout. Descriptors with a type of `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER_DYNAMIC` count against this limit. See Dynamic Uniform Buffer.

• **maxDescriptorSetStorageBuffers** is the maximum number of storage buffers that can be included in a pipeline layout. Descriptors with a type of `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER` or `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER_DYNAMIC` count against this limit. See Storage Buffer and Dynamic Storage Buffer.

• **maxDescriptorSetStorageBuffersDynamic** is the maximum number of dynamic storage buffers that
can be included in a pipeline layout. Descriptors with a type of `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER_DYNAMIC` count against this limit. See Dynamic Storage Buffer.

- **maxDescriptorSetSampledImages** is the maximum number of sampled images that can be included in a pipeline layout. Descriptors with a type of `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_COMBINED_IMAGE_SAMPLER`, `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_SAMPLED_IMAGE`, or `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER` count against this limit. See Combined Image Sampler, Sampled Image, and Uniform Texel Buffer.

- **maxDescriptorSetStorageImages** is the maximum number of storage images that can be included in a pipeline layout. Descriptors with a type of `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_IMAGE`, or `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER` count against this limit. See Storage Image, and Storage Texel Buffer.

- **maxDescriptorSetInputAttachments** is the maximum number of input attachments that can be included in a pipeline layout. Descriptors with a type of `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_INPUT_ATTACHMENT` count against this limit. See Input Attachment.

- **maxVertexInputAttributes** is the maximum number of vertex input attributes that can be specified for a graphics pipeline. These are described in the array of `VkVertexInputAttributeDescription` structures that are provided at graphics pipeline creation time via the `pVertexAttributeDescriptions` member of the `VkPipelineVertexInputStateCreateInfo` structure. See Vertex Attributes and Vertex Input Description.

- **maxVertexInputBindings** is the maximum number of vertex buffers that can be specified for providing vertex attributes to a graphics pipeline. These are described in the array of `VkVertexInputBindingDescription` structures that are provided at graphics pipeline creation time via the `pVertexBindingDescriptions` member of the `VkPipelineVertexInputStateCreateInfo` structure. The `binding` member of `VkVertexInputBindingDescription` must be less than this limit. See Vertex Input Description.

- **maxVertexInputAttributeOffset** is the maximum vertex input attribute offset that can be added to the vertex input binding stride. The `offset` member of the `VkVertexInputAttributeDescription` structure must be less than or equal to this limit. See Vertex Input Description.

- **maxVertexInputBindingStride** is the maximum vertex input binding stride that can be specified in a vertex input binding. The `stride` member of the `VkVertexInputBindingDescription` structure must be less than or equal to this limit. See Vertex Input Description.

- **maxVertexOutputComponents** is the maximum number of components of output variables which can be output by a vertex shader. See Vertex Shaders.

- **maxTessellationGenerationLevel** is the maximum tessellation generation level supported by the fixed-function tessellation primitive generator. See Tessellation.

- **maxTessellationPatchSize** is the maximum patch size, in vertices, of patches that can be processed by the tessellation control shader and tessellation primitive generator. The `patchControlPoints` member of the `VkPipelineTessellationStateCreateInfo` structure specified at pipeline creation time and the value provided in the `OutputVertices` execution mode of shader modules must be less than or equal to this limit. See Tessellation.

- **maxTessellationControlPerVertexInputComponents** is the maximum number of components of input variables which can be provided as per-vertex inputs to the tessellation control shader stage.

- **maxTessellationControlPerVertexOutputComponents** is the maximum number of components of
per-vertex output variables which can be output from the tessellation control shader stage.

- **maxTessellationControlPerPatchOutputComponents** is the maximum number of components of per-patch output variables which can be output from the tessellation control shader stage.

- **maxTessellationControlTotalOutputComponents** is the maximum total number of components of per-vertex and per-patch output variables which can be output from the tessellation control shader stage.

- **maxTessellationEvaluationInputComponents** is the maximum number of components of input variables which can be provided as per-vertex inputs to the tessellation evaluation shader stage.

- **maxTessellationEvaluationOutputComponents** is the maximum number of components of per-vertex output variables which can be output from the tessellation evaluation shader stage.

- **maxGeometryShaderInvocations** is the maximum invocation count supported for instanced geometry shaders. The value provided in the **Invocations** execution mode of shader modules must be less than or equal to this limit. See **Geometry Shading**.

- **maxGeometryInputComponents** is the maximum number of components of input variables which can be provided as inputs to the geometry shader stage.

- **maxGeometryOutputComponents** is the maximum number of components of output variables which can be output from the geometry shader stage.

- **maxGeometryOutputVertices** is the maximum number of vertices which can be emitted by any geometry shader.

- **maxGeometryTotalOutputComponents** is the maximum total number of components of output variables, across all emitted vertices, which can be output from the geometry shader stage.

- **maxFragmentInputComponents** is the maximum number of components of input variables which can be provided as inputs to the fragment shader stage.

- **maxFragmentOutputAttachments** is the maximum number of output attachments which can be written to by the fragment shader stage.

- **maxFragmentDualSrcAttachments** is the maximum number of output attachments which can be written to by the fragment shader stage when blending is enabled and one of the dual source blend modes is in use. See **Dual-Source Blending** and dualSrcBlend.

- **maxFragmentCombinedOutputResources** is the total number of storage buffers, storage images, and output Location decorated color attachments (described in **Fragment Output Interface**) which can be used in the fragment shader stage.

- **maxComputeSharedMemorySize** is the maximum total storage size, in bytes, available for variables declared with the **Workgroup** storage class in shader modules (or with the **shared** storage qualifier in GLSL) in the compute shader stage. When variables declared with the **Workgroup** storage class are explicitly laid out (hence they are also decorated with **Block**), the amount of storage consumed is the size of the largest Block variable, not counting any padding at the end. The amount of storage consumed by the non-Block variables declared with the **Workgroup** storage class is implementation-dependent. However, the amount of storage consumed may not exceed the largest block size that would be obtained if all active non-Block variables declared with **Workgroup** storage class were assigned offsets in an arbitrary order by successively taking the smallest valid offset according to the **Standard Storage Buffer Layout** rules. (This is equivalent to...
using the GLSL std430 layout rules.)

- `maxComputeWorkGroupCount[3]` is the maximum number of local workgroups that can be dispatched by a single dispatching command. These three values represent the maximum number of local workgroups for the X, Y, and Z dimensions, respectively. The workgroup count parameters to the dispatching commands must be less than or equal to the corresponding limit. See Dispatching Commands.

- `maxComputeWorkGroupInvocations` is the maximum total number of compute shader invocations in a single local workgroup. The product of the X, Y, and Z sizes, as specified by the `LocalSize` execution mode in shader modules or by the object decorated by the `WorkgroupSize` decoration, must be less than or equal to this limit.

- `maxComputeWorkGroupSize[3]` is the maximum size of a local compute workgroup, per dimension. These three values represent the maximum local workgroup size in the X, Y, and Z dimensions, respectively. The `x`, `y`, and `z` sizes, as specified by the `LocalSize` execution mode or by the object decorated by the `WorkgroupSize` decoration in shader modules, must be less than or equal to the corresponding limit.

- `subPixelPrecisionBits` is the number of bits of subpixel precision in framebuffer coordinates `x_f` and `y_f`. See Rasterization.

- `subTexelPrecisionBits` is the number of bits of precision in the division along an axis of an image used for minification and magnification filters. `2^subTexelPrecisionBits` is the actual number of divisions along each axis of the image represented. Sub-texel values calculated during image sampling will snap to these locations when generating the filtered results.

- `mipmapPrecisionBits` is the number of bits of division that the LOD calculation for mipmap fetching get snapped to when determining the contribution from each mip level to the mip filtered results. `2^mipmapPrecisionBits` is the actual number of divisions.

- `maxDrawIndexedIndexValue` is the maximum index value that can be used for indexed draw calls when using 32-bit indices. This excludes the primitive restart index value of 0xFFFFFFFF. See fullDrawIndexUint32.

- `maxDrawIndirectCount` is the maximum draw count that is supported for indirect draw calls. See multiDrawIndirect.

- `maxSamplerLodBias` is the maximum absolute sampler LOD bias. The sum of the `mipLodBias` member of the `VkSamplerCreateInfo` structure and the `Bias` operand of image sampling operations in shader modules (or 0 if no `Bias` operand is provided to an image sampling operation) are clamped to the range `[-maxSamplerLodBias, +maxSamplerLodBias]`. See [samplers-mipLodBias].

- `maxSamplerAnisotropy` is the maximum degree of sampler anisotropy. The maximum degree of anisotropic filtering used for an image sampling operation is the minimum of the `maxAnisotropy` member of the `VkSamplerCreateInfo` structure and this limit. See [samplers-maxAnisotropy].

- `maxViewports` is the maximum number of active viewports. The `viewportCount` member of the `VkPipelineViewportStateCreateInfo` structure that is provided at pipeline creation must be less than or equal to this limit.

- `maxViewportDimensions[2]` are the maximum viewport dimensions in the X (width) and Y (height) dimensions, respectively. The maximum viewport dimensions must be greater than or equal to the largest image which can be created and used as a framebuffer attachment. See Controlling
the Viewport.

- **viewportBoundsRange** is the [minimum, maximum] range that the corners of a viewport must be contained in. This range must be at least \([-2 \times \text{size}, 2 \times \text{size} - 1]\), where \(\text{size} = \max(\maxViewportDimensions[0], \maxViewportDimensions[1])\). See Controlling the Viewport.

**Note**

The intent of the \text{viewportBoundsRange} limit is to allow a maximum sized viewport to be arbitrarily shifted relative to the output target as long as at least some portion intersects. This would give a bounds limit of \([-\text{size} + 1, 2 \times \text{size} - 1]\) which would allow all possible non-empty-set intersections of the output target and the viewport. Since these numbers are typically powers of two, picking the signed number range using the smallest possible number of bits ends up with the specified range.

- **viewportSubPixelBits** is the number of bits of subpixel precision for viewport bounds. The subpixel precision that floating-point viewport bounds are interpreted at is given by this limit.

- **minMemoryMapAlignment** is the minimum required alignment, in bytes, of host visible memory allocations within the host address space. When mapping a memory allocation with \text{vkMapMemory}, subtracting \text{offset} bytes from the returned pointer will always produce an integer multiple of this limit. See Host Access to Device Memory Objects.

- **minTexelBufferOffsetAlignment** is the minimum required alignment, in bytes, for the \text{offset} member of the \text{VkBufferViewCreateInfo} structure for texel buffers. \text{VkBufferViewCreateInfo::offset} must be a multiple of this value.

- **minUniformBufferOffsetAlignment** is the minimum required alignment, in bytes, for the \text{offset} member of the \text{VkDescriptorBufferInfo} structure for uniform buffers. When a descriptor of type \text{VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER} or \text{VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_BUFFER_DYNAMIC} is updated, the \text{offset} must be an integer multiple of this limit. Similarly, dynamic offsets for uniform buffers must be multiples of this limit.

- **minStorageBufferOffsetAlignment** is the minimum required alignment, in bytes, for the \text{offset} member of the \text{VkDescriptorBufferInfo} structure for storage buffers. When a descriptor of type \text{VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER} or \text{VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_BUFFER_DYNAMIC} is updated, the \text{offset} must be an integer multiple of this limit. Similarly, dynamic offsets for storage buffers must be multiples of this limit.

- **minTexelOffset** is the minimum offset value for the \text{ConstOffset} image operand of any of the \text{OpImageSample*} or \text{OpImageFetch*} image instructions.

- **maxTexelOffset** is the maximum offset value for the \text{ConstOffset} image operand of any of the \text{OpImageSample*} or \text{OpImageFetch*} image instructions.

- **minTexelGatherOffset** is the minimum offset value for the \text{Offset}, \text{ConstOffset}, or \text{ConstOffsets} image operands of any of the \text{OpImage*Gather} image instructions.

- **maxTexelGatherOffset** is the maximum offset value for the \text{Offset}, \text{ConstOffset}, or \text{ConstOffsets} image operands of any of the \text{OpImage*Gather} image instructions.

- **minInterpolationOffset** is the base minimum (inclusive) negative offset value for the \text{Offset} operand of the \text{InterpolateAtOffset} extended instruction.
• `maxInterpolationOffset` is the base maximum (inclusive) positive offset value for the `Offset` operand of the `InterpolateAtOffset` extended instruction.

• `subPixelInterpolationOffsetBits` is the number of fractional bits that the `x` and `y` offsets to the `InterpolateAtOffset` extended instruction may be rounded to as fixed-point values.

• `maxFramebufferWidth` is the maximum width for a framebuffer. The `width` member of the `VkFramebufferCreateInfo` structure must be less than or equal to this limit.

• `maxFramebufferHeight` is the maximum height for a framebuffer. The `height` member of the `VkFramebufferCreateInfo` structure must be less than or equal to this limit.

• `maxFramebufferLayers` is the maximum layer count for a layered framebuffer. The `layers` member of the `VkFramebufferCreateInfo` structure must be less than or equal to this limit.

• `framebufferColorSampleCounts` is a bitmask of `VkSampleCountFlagBits` indicating the color sample counts that are supported for all framebuffer color attachments with floating- or fixed-point formats. There is no limit that specifies the color sample counts that are supported for all color attachments with integer formats.

• `framebufferDepthSampleCounts` is a bitmask of `VkSampleCountFlagBits` indicating the supported depth sample counts for all framebuffer depth/stencil attachments, when the format includes a depth component.

• `framebufferStencilSampleCounts` is a bitmask of `VkSampleCountFlagBits` indicating the supported stencil sample counts for all framebuffer depth/stencil attachments, when the format includes a stencil component.

• `framebufferNoAttachmentsSampleCounts` is a bitmask of `VkSampleCountFlagBits` indicating the supported sample counts for a subpass which uses no attachments.

• `maxColorAttachments` is the maximum number of color attachments that can be used by a subpass in a render pass. The `colorAttachmentCount` member of the `VkSubpassDescription` or `VkSubpassDescription2` structure must be less than or equal to this limit.

• `sampledImageColorSampleCounts` is a bitmask of `VkSampleCountFlagBits` indicating the sample counts supported for all 2D images created with `VK_IMAGE_TILING_OPTIMAL`, usage containing `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_SAMPLED_BIT`, and a non-integer color format.

• `sampledImageIntegerSampleCounts` is a bitmask of `VkSampleCountFlagBits` indicating the sample counts supported for all 2D images created with `VK_IMAGE_TILING_OPTIMAL`, usage containing `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_SAMPLED_BIT`, and an integer color format.

• `sampledImageDepthSampleCounts` is a bitmask of `VkSampleCountFlagBits` indicating the sample counts supported for all 2D images created with `VK_IMAGE_TILING_OPTIMAL`, usage containing `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_SAMPLED_BIT`, and a depth format.

• `sampledImageStencilSampleCounts` is a bitmask of `VkSampleCountFlagBits` indicating the sample counts supported for all 2D images created with `VK_IMAGE_TILING_OPTIMAL`, usage containing `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_SAMPLED_BIT`, and a stencil format.

• `storageImageSampleCounts` is a bitmask of `VkSampleCountFlagBits` indicating the sample counts supported for all 2D images created with `VK_IMAGE_TILING_OPTIMAL`, and usage containing `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_STORAGE_BIT`.

• `maxSampleMaskWords` is the maximum number of array elements of a variable decorated with the SampleMask built-in decoration.
• timestampComputeAndGraphics specifies support for timestamps on all graphics and compute queues. If this limit is set to VK_TRUE, all queues that advertise the VK_QUEUE_GRAPHICS_BIT or VK_QUEUE_COMPUTE_BIT in the VkQueueFamilyProperties::queueFlags support VkQueueFamilyProperties::timestampValidBits of at least 36. See Timestamp Queries.

• timestampPeriod is the number of nanoseconds required for a timestamp query to be incremented by 1. See Timestamp Queries.

• maxClipDistances is the maximum number of clip distances that can be used in a single shader stage. The size of any array declared with the ClipDistance built-in decoration in a shader module must be less than or equal to this limit.

• maxCullDistances is the maximum number of cull distances that can be used in a single shader stage. The size of any array declared with the CullDistance built-in decoration in a shader module must be less than or equal to this limit.

• maxCombinedClipAndCullDistances is the maximum combined number of clip and cull distances that can be used in a single shader stage. The sum of the sizes of any pair of arrays declared with the ClipDistance and CullDistance built-in decoration used by a single shader stage in a shader module must be less than or equal to this limit.

• discreteQueuePriorities is the number of discrete priorities that can be assigned to a queue based on the value of each member of VkDeviceQueueCreateInfo::pQueuePriorities. This must be at least 2, and levels must be spread evenly over the range, with at least one level at 1.0, and another at 0.0. See Queue Priority.

• pointSizeRange[2] is the range [minimum, maximum] of supported sizes for points. Values written to variables decorated with the PointSize built-in decoration are clamped to this range.

• lineWidthRange[2] is the range [minimum, maximum] of supported widths for lines. Values specified by the lineWidth member of the VkPipelineRasterizationStateCreateInfo or the lineWidth parameter to vkCmdSetLineWidth are clamped to this range.

• pointSizeGranularity is the granularity of supported point sizes. Not all point sizes in the range defined by pointSizeRange are supported. This limit specifies the granularity (or increment) between successive supported point sizes.

• lineWidthGranularity is the granularity of supported line widths. Not all line widths in the range defined by lineWidthRange are supported. This limit specifies the granularity (or increment) between successive supported line widths.

• strictLines specifies whether lines are rasterized according to the preferred method of rasterization. If set to VK_FALSE, lines may be rasterized under a relaxed set of rules. If set to VK_TRUE, lines are rasterized as per the strict definition. See Basic Line Segment Rasterization.

• standardSampleLocations specifies whether rasterization uses the standard sample locations as documented in Multisampling. If set to VK_TRUE, the implementation uses the documented sample locations. If set to VK_FALSE, the implementation may use different sample locations.

• optimalBufferCopyOffsetAlignment is the optimal buffer offset alignment in bytes for vkCmdCopyBufferToImage2KHR, vkCmdCopyBufferToImage, vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer2KHR, and vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer. The per texel alignment requirements are enforced, but applications should use the optimal alignment for optimal performance and power use.

• optimalBufferCopyRowPitchAlignment is the optimal buffer row pitch alignment in bytes for vkCmdCopyBufferToImage2KHR, vkCmdCopyBufferToImage, vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer2KHR,
and vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer. Row pitch is the number of bytes between texels with the same X coordinate in adjacent rows (Y coordinates differ by one). The per texel alignment requirements are enforced, but applications should use the optimal alignment for optimal performance and power use.

- **nonCoherentAtomSize** is the size and alignment in bytes that bounds concurrent access to host-mapped device memory.

1

For all bitmasks of VkSampleCountFlagBits, the sample count limits defined above represent the minimum supported sample counts for each image type. Individual images may support additional sample counts, which are queried using vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties as described in Supported Sample Counts.

Bits which may be set in the sample count limits returned by VkPhysicalDeviceLimits, as well as in other queries and structures representing image sample counts, are:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkSampleCountFlagBits {
    VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT = 0x00000001,
    VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_2_BIT = 0x00000002,
    VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_4_BIT = 0x00000004,
    VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_8_BIT = 0x00000008,
    VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_16_BIT = 0x00000010,
    VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_32_BIT = 0x00000020,
    VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_64_BIT = 0x00000040,
} VkSampleCountFlagBits;
```

- **VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT** specifies an image with one sample per pixel.
- **VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_2_BIT** specifies an image with 2 samples per pixel.
- **VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_4_BIT** specifies an image with 4 samples per pixel.
- **VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_8_BIT** specifies an image with 8 samples per pixel.
- **VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_16_BIT** specifies an image with 16 samples per pixel.
- **VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_32_BIT** specifies an image with 32 samples per pixel.
- **VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_64_BIT** specifies an image with 64 samples per pixel.

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkSampleCountFlags;
```

**VkSampleCountFlags** is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more VkSampleCountFlagBits.

The VkPhysicalDevicePushDescriptorPropertiesKHR structure is defined as:
// Provided by VK_KHR_push_descriptor
typedef struct VkPhysicalDevicePushDescriptorPropertiesKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    uint32_t maxPushDescriptors;
} VkPhysicalDevicePushDescriptorPropertiesKHR;

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `maxPushDescriptors` is the maximum number of descriptors that can be used in a descriptor set created with VK_DESCRIPTOR_SET_LAYOUT_CREATE_PUSH_DESCRIPTOR_BIT_KHR set.

If the `VkPhysicalDevicePushDescriptorPropertiesKHR` structure is included in the `pNext` chain of the `VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2` structure passed to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceProperties2`, it is filled in with each corresponding implementation-dependent property.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkPhysicalDevicePushDescriptorPropertiesKHR-sType-sType
  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_PUSH_DESCRIPTOR_PROPERTIES_KHR`

The `VkPhysicalDeviceMultiviewProperties` structure is defined as:

typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceMultiviewProperties {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    uint32_t maxMultiviewViewCount;
    uint32_t maxMultiviewInstanceIndex;
} VkPhysicalDeviceMultiviewProperties;

or the equivalent

// Provided by VK_KHR_multiview
typedef VkPhysicalDeviceMultiviewProperties VkPhysicalDeviceMultiviewPropertiesKHR;

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `maxMultiviewViewCount` is one greater than the maximum view index that can be used in a subpass.
- `maxMultiviewInstanceIndex` is the maximum valid value of instance index allowed to be generated by a drawing command recorded within a subpass of a multiview render pass instance.
If the `VkPhysicalDeviceMultiviewProperties` structure is included in the `pNext` chain of the `VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2` structure passed to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceProperties2`, it is filled in with each corresponding implementation-dependent property.

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- `VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceMultiviewProperties-sType-sType`
  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_MULTIVIEW_PROPERTIES`

The `VkPhysicalDeviceFloatControlsProperties` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceFloatControlsProperties {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkShaderFloatControlsIndependence denormBehaviorIndependence;
    VkShaderFloatControlsIndependence roundingModeIndependence;
    VkBool32 shaderSignedZeroInfNanPreserveFloat16;
    VkBool32 shaderSignedZeroInfNanPreserveFloat32;
    VkBool32 shaderSignedZeroInfNanPreserveFloat64;
    VkBool32 shaderDenormPreserveFloat16;
    VkBool32 shaderDenormPreserveFloat32;
    VkBool32 shaderDenormPreserveFloat64;
    VkBool32 shaderDenormFlushToZeroFloat16;
    VkBool32 shaderDenormFlushToZeroFloat32;
    VkBool32 shaderDenormFlushToZeroFloat64;
    VkBool32 shaderRoundingModeRTEFloat16;
    VkBool32 shaderRoundingModeRTEFloat32;
    VkBool32 shaderRoundingModeRTEFloat64;
    VkBool32 shaderRoundingModeRTZFloat16;
    VkBool32 shaderRoundingModeRTZFloat32;
    VkBool32 shaderRoundingModeRTZFloat64;
} VkPhysicalDeviceFloatControlsProperties;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_shader_float_controls
typedef VkPhysicalDeviceFloatControlsProperties
    VkPhysicalDeviceFloatControlsPropertiesKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
  - `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `denormBehaviorIndependence` is a `VkShaderFloatControlsIndependence` value indicating whether, and how, denorm behavior can be set independently for different bit widths.
- `roundingModeIndependence` is a `VkShaderFloatControlsIndependence` value indicating whether, and how, rounding modes can be set independently for different bit widths.
• shaderSignedZeroInfNanPreserveFloat16 is a boolean value indicating whether sign of a zero, Nans and ±∞ can be preserved in 16-bit floating-point computations. It also indicates whether the SignedZeroInfNanPreserve execution mode can be used for 16-bit floating-point types.

• shaderSignedZeroInfNanPreserveFloat32 is a boolean value indicating whether sign of a zero, Nans and ±∞ can be preserved in 32-bit floating-point computations. It also indicates whether the SignedZeroInfNanPreserve execution mode can be used for 32-bit floating-point types.

• shaderSignedZeroInfNanPreserveFloat64 is a boolean value indicating whether sign of a zero, Nans and ±∞ can be preserved in 64-bit floating-point computations. It also indicates whether the SignedZeroInfNanPreserve execution mode can be used for 64-bit floating-point types.

• shaderDenormPreserveFloat16 is a boolean value indicating whether denormals can be preserved in 16-bit floating-point computations. It also indicates whether the DenormPreserve execution mode can be used for 16-bit floating-point types.

• shaderDenormPreserveFloat32 is a boolean value indicating whether denormals can be preserved in 32-bit floating-point computations. It also indicates whether the DenormPreserve execution mode can be used for 32-bit floating-point types.

• shaderDenormPreserveFloat64 is a boolean value indicating whether denormals can be preserved in 64-bit floating-point computations. It also indicates whether the DenormPreserve execution mode can be used for 64-bit floating-point types.

• shaderDenormFlushToZeroFloat16 is a boolean value indicating whether denormals can be flushed to zero in 16-bit floating-point computations. It also indicates whether the DenormFlushToZero execution mode can be used for 16-bit floating-point types.

• shaderDenormFlushToZeroFloat32 is a boolean value indicating whether denormals can be flushed to zero in 32-bit floating-point computations. It also indicates whether the DenormFlushToZero execution mode can be used for 32-bit floating-point types.

• shaderDenormFlushToZeroFloat64 is a boolean value indicating whether denormals can be flushed to zero in 64-bit floating-point computations. It also indicates whether the DenormFlushToZero execution mode can be used for 64-bit floating-point types.

• shaderRoundingModeRTEFloat16 is a boolean value indicating whether an implementation supports the round-to-nearest-even rounding mode for 16-bit floating-point arithmetic and conversion instructions. It also indicates whether the RoundingModeRTE execution mode can be used for 16-bit floating-point types.

• shaderRoundingModeRTEFloat32 is a boolean value indicating whether an implementation supports the round-to-nearest-even rounding mode for 32-bit floating-point arithmetic and conversion instructions. It also indicates whether the RoundingModeRTE execution mode can be used for 32-bit floating-point types.

• shaderRoundingModeRTEFloat64 is a boolean value indicating whether an implementation supports the round-to-nearest-even rounding mode for 64-bit floating-point arithmetic and conversion instructions. It also indicates whether the RoundingModeRTE execution mode can be used for 64-bit floating-point types.

• shaderRoundingModeRTZFloat16 is a boolean value indicating whether an implementation supports the round-towards-zero rounding mode for 16-bit floating-point arithmetic and conversion instructions. It also indicates whether the RoundingModeRTZ execution mode can be used for 16-bit floating-point types.
• *shaderRoundingModeRTZFloat32* is a boolean value indicating whether an implementation supports the round-towards-zero rounding mode for 32-bit floating-point arithmetic and conversion instructions. It also indicates whether the *RoundingModeRTZ* execution mode can be used for 32-bit floating-point types.

• *shaderRoundingModeRTZFloat64* is a boolean value indicating whether an implementation supports the round-towards-zero rounding mode for 64-bit floating-point arithmetic and conversion instructions. It also indicates whether the *RoundingModeRTZ* execution mode can be used for 64-bit floating-point types.

If the *VkPhysicalDeviceFloatControlsProperties* structure is included in the *pNext* chain of the *VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2* structure passed to *vkGetPhysicalDeviceProperties2*, it is filled in with each corresponding implementation-dependent property.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceFloatControlsProperties-sType-sType**
  - `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_FLOAT_CONTROLS_PROPERTIES`

Values which may be returned in the *denormBehaviorIndependence* and *roundingModeIndependence* fields of *VkPhysicalDeviceFloatControlsProperties* are:

```c
typedef enum VkShaderFloatControlsIndependence {
    VK_SHADER_FLOAT_CONTROLS_INDEPENDENCE_32_BIT_ONLY = 0,
    VK_SHADER_FLOAT_CONTROLS_INDEPENDENCE_ALL = 1,
    VK_SHADER_FLOAT_CONTROLS_INDEPENDENCE_NONE = 2,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_shader_float_controls
    VK_SHADER_FLOAT_CONTROLS_INDEPENDENCE_32_BIT_ONLY_KHR =
        VK_SHADER_FLOAT_CONTROLS_INDEPENDENCE_32_BIT_ONLY,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_shader_float_controls
    VK_SHADER_FLOAT_CONTROLS_INDEPENDENCE_ALL_KHR =
        VK_SHADER_FLOAT_CONTROLS_INDEPENDENCE_ALL,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_shader_float_controls
    VK_SHADER_FLOAT_CONTROLS_INDEPENDENCE_NONE_KHR =
        VK_SHADER_FLOAT_CONTROLS_INDEPENDENCE_NONE,
} VkShaderFloatControlsIndependence;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_shader_float_controls
typedef VkShaderFloatControlsIndependence VkShaderFloatControlsIndependenceKHR;
```

- **VK_SHADER_FLOAT_CONTROLS_INDEPENDENCE_32_BIT_ONLY** specifies that shader float controls for 32-bit floating point can be set independently; other bit widths must be set identically to each other.
- **VK_SHADER_FLOAT_CONTROLS_INDEPENDENCE_ALL** specifies that shader float controls for all bit widths can be set independently.
• **VK_SHADER_FLOAT_CONTROLS_INDEPENDENCE_NONE** specifies that shader float controls for all bit widths must be set identically.

The **VkPhysicalDevicePointClippingProperties** structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkPhysicalDevicePointClippingProperties {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkPointClippingBehavior pointClippingBehavior;
} VkPhysicalDevicePointClippingProperties;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_maintenance2
typedef VkPhysicalDevicePointClippingProperties
VkPhysicalDevicePointClippingPropertiesKHR;
```

• **sType** is the type of this structure.

• **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.

• **pointClippingBehavior** is a **VkPointClippingBehavior** value specifying the point clipping behavior supported by the implementation.

If the **VkPhysicalDevicePointClippingProperties** structure is included in the **pNext** chain of the **VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2** structure passed to **vkGetPhysicalDeviceProperties2**, it is filled in with each corresponding implementation-dependent property.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

```c
• VUID-VkPhysicalDevicePointClippingProperties-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_POINT_CLIPPING_PROPERTIES
```

The **VkPhysicalDeviceMaintenance3Properties** structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceMaintenance3Properties {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    uint32_t maxPerSetDescriptors;
    VkDeviceSize maxMemoryAllocationSize;
} VkPhysicalDeviceMaintenance3Properties;
```

or the equivalent

```c
Chapter 38. Limits | 1493
```
typedef VkPhysicalDeviceMaintenance3Properties
VkPhysicalDeviceMaintenance3PropertiesKHR;

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `maxPerSetDescriptors` is a maximum number of descriptors (summed over all descriptor types) in a single descriptor set that is guaranteed to satisfy any implementation-dependent constraints on the size of a descriptor set itself. Applications can query whether a descriptor set that goes beyond this limit is supported using `vkGetDescriptorSetLayoutSupport`.
- `maxMemoryAllocationSize` is the maximum size of a memory allocation that can be created, even if there is more space available in the heap.

If the `VkPhysicalDeviceMaintenance3Properties` structure is included in the `pNext` chain of the `VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2` structure passed to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceProperties2`, it is filled in with each corresponding implementation-dependent property.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- `VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceMaintenance3Properties-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_MAINTENANCE_3_PROPERTIES`

The `VkPhysicalDeviceDepthStencilResolveProperties` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceDepthStencilResolveProperties {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkResolveModeFlags supportedDepthResolveModes;
    VkResolveModeFlags supportedStencilResolveModes;
    VkBool32 independentResolveNone;
    VkBool32 independentResolve;
} VkPhysicalDeviceDepthStencilResolveProperties;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_depth_stencil_resolve
typedef VkPhysicalDeviceDepthStencilResolveProperties
VkPhysicalDeviceDepthStencilResolvePropertiesKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `supportedDepthResolveModes` is a bitmask of `VkResolveModeFlagBits` indicating the set of
supported depth resolve modes. VK_RESOLVE_MODE_SAMPLE_ZERO_BIT must be included in the set but implementations may support additional modes.

- supportedStencilResolveModes is a bitmask of VkResolveModeFlagBits indicating the set of supported stencil resolve modes. VK_RESOLVE_MODE_SAMPLE_ZERO_BIT must be included in the set but implementations may support additional modes. VK_RESOLVE_MODE_AVERAGE_BIT must not be included in the set.

- independentResolveNone is VK_TRUE if the implementation supports setting the depth and stencil resolve modes to different values when one of those modes is VK_RESOLVE_MODE_NONE. Otherwise the implementation only supports setting both modes to the same value.

- independentResolve is VK_TRUE if the implementation supports all combinations of the supported depth and stencil resolve modes, including setting either depth or stencil resolve mode to VK_RESOLVE_MODE_NONE. An implementation that supports independentResolve must also support independentResolveNone.

If the VkPhysicalDeviceDepthStencilResolveProperties structure is included in the pNext chain of the VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2 structure passed to vkGetPhysicalDeviceProperties2, it is filled in with each corresponding implementation-dependent property.

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceDepthStencilResolveProperties-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_DEPTH_STENCIL_RESOLVE_PROPERTIES

The VkPhysicalDevicePerformanceQueryPropertiesKHR structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_performance_query
typedef struct VkPhysicalDevicePerformanceQueryPropertiesKHR {
    VkStructureType                      sType;
    void*                                 pNext;
    VkBool32                              allowCommandBufferQueryCopies;
} VkPhysicalDevicePerformanceQueryPropertiesKHR;
```

- sType is the type of this structure.
- pNext is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- allowCommandBufferQueryCopies is VK_TRUE if the performance query pools are allowed to be used with vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults.

If the VkPhysicalDevicePerformanceQueryPropertiesKHR structure is included in the pNext chain of the VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2 structure passed to vkGetPhysicalDeviceProperties2, it is filled in with each corresponding implementation-dependent property.
Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkPhysicalDevicePerformanceQueryPropertiesKHR-sType-sType
  
  **sType** must be **VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_PERFORMANCE_QUERY_PROPERTIES_KHR**

The **VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructurePropertiesKHR** structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructurePropertiesKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    uint64_t maxGeometryCount;
    uint64_t maxInstanceCount;
    uint64_t maxPrimitiveCount;
    uint32_t maxPerStageDescriptorAccelerationStructures;
    uint32_t maxPerStageDescriptorUpdateAfterBindAccelerationStructures;
    uint32_t maxDescriptorSetAccelerationStructures;
    uint32_t maxDescriptorSetUpdateAfterBindAccelerationStructures;
    uint32_t minAccelerationStructureScratchOffsetAlignment;
} VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructurePropertiesKHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **maxGeometryCount** is the maximum number of geometries in the bottom level acceleration structure.
- **maxInstanceCount** is the maximum number of instances in the top level acceleration structure.
- **maxPrimitiveCount** is the maximum number of triangles or AABBs in all geometries in the bottom level acceleration structure.
- **maxPerStageDescriptorAccelerationStructures** is the maximum number of acceleration structure bindings that can be accessible to a single shader stage in a pipeline layout. Descriptor bindings with a descriptor type of **VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_KHR** count against this limit. Only descriptor bindings in descriptor set layouts created without the **VK_DESCRIPTOR_SET_LAYOUT_CREATE_UPDATE_AFTER_BIND_POOL_BIT** bit set count against this limit.
- **maxPerStageDescriptorUpdateAfterBindAccelerationStructures** is similar to **maxPerStageDescriptorAccelerationStructures** but counts descriptor bindings from descriptor sets created with or without the **VK_DESCRIPTOR_SET_LAYOUT_CREATE_UPDATE_AFTER_BIND_POOL_BIT** bit set.
- **maxDescriptorSetAccelerationStructures** is the maximum number of acceleration structure descriptors that can be included in descriptor bindings in a pipeline layout across all pipeline shader stages and descriptor set numbers. Descriptor bindings with a descriptor type of **VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_KHR** count against this limit. Only descriptor bindings in descriptor set layouts created without the **VK_DESCRIPTOR_SET_LAYOUT_CREATE_UPDATE_AFTER_BIND_POOL_BIT** bit set count against this limit.
• \texttt{maxDescriptorSetUpdateAfterBindAccelerationStructures} is similar to \texttt{maxDescriptorSetAccelerationStructures} but counts descriptor bindings from descriptor sets created with or without the \texttt{VK_DESCRIPTOR_SET_LAYOUT_CREATE_UPDATE_AFTER_BIND_POOL_BIT} bit set.

• \texttt{minAccelerationStructureScratchOffsetAlignment} is the minimum \textbf{required} alignment, in bytes, for scratch data passed in to an acceleration structure build command.

If the \texttt{VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructurePropertiesKHR} structure is included in the \texttt{pNext} chain of the \texttt{VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2} structure passed to \texttt{vkGetPhysicalDeviceProperties2}, it is filled in with each corresponding implementation-dependent property.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- \texttt{VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructurePropertiesKHR-sType-sType} 
  \texttt{sType} must be \texttt{VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_ACCELERATIONSTRUCTURE_PROPERTIES_KHR}

The \texttt{VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR} structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    uint32_t shaderGroupHandleSize;
    uint32_t maxRayRecursionDepth;
    uint32_t maxShaderGroupStride;
    uint32_t shaderGroupBaseAlignment;
    uint32_t shaderGroupHandleCaptureReplaySize;
    uint32_t maxRayDispatchInvocationCount;
    uint32_t shaderGroupHandleAlignment;
    uint32_t maxRayHitAttributeSize;
} VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR;
```

- \texttt{sType} is the type of this structure.
- \texttt{pNext} is \texttt{NULL} or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- \texttt{shaderGroupHandleSize} is the size in bytes of the shader header.
- \texttt{maxRayRecursionDepth} is the maximum number of levels of ray recursion allowed in a trace command.
- \texttt{maxShaderGroupStride} is the maximum stride in bytes allowed between shader groups in the shader binding table.
- \texttt{shaderGroupBaseAlignment} is the \textbf{required} alignment in bytes for the base of the shader binding table.
- \texttt{shaderGroupHandleCaptureReplaySize} is the number of bytes for the information required to do capture and replay for shader group handles.
- \texttt{maxRayDispatchInvocationCount} is the maximum number of ray generation shader invocations which \textbf{may} be produced by a single \texttt{vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR} or \texttt{vkCmdTraceRaysKHR}.
command.

- `shaderGroupHandleAlignment` is the **required** alignment in bytes for each shader binding table entry.
- `maxRayHitAttributeSize` is the maximum size in bytes for a ray attribute structure.

If the `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR` structure is included in the `pNext` chain of the `VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2` structure passed to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceProperties2`, it is filled in with each corresponding implementation-dependent property.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR-sType-sType**
  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_RAY_TRACING_PIPELINE_PROPERTIES_KHR`.

The `VkPhysicalDeviceTimelineSemaphoreProperties` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceTimelineSemaphoreProperties {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    uint64_t maxTimelineSemaphoreValueDifference;
} VkPhysicalDeviceTimelineSemaphoreProperties;
```

or the equivalent:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_timeline_semaphore
typedef VkPhysicalDeviceTimelineSemaphoreProperties
    VkPhysicalDeviceTimelineSemaphorePropertiesKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `maxTimelineSemaphoreValueDifference` indicates the maximum difference allowed by the implementation between the current value of a timeline semaphore and any pending signal or wait operations.

If the `VkPhysicalDeviceTimelineSemaphoreProperties` structure is included in the `pNext` chain of the `VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2` structure passed to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceProperties2`, it is filled in with each corresponding implementation-dependent property.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceTimelineSemaphoreProperties-sType-sType**
  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_TIMELINE_SEMAPHORE_PROPERTIES_KHR`.

1498 | Chapter 38. Limits
The `VkPhysicalDevicePortabilitySubsetPropertiesKHR` structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_portability_subset
typedef struct VkPhysicalDevicePortabilitySubsetPropertiesKHR {
    VkStructureType       sType;
    void*                 pNext;
    uint32_t              minVertexInputBindingStrideAlignment;
} VkPhysicalDevicePortabilitySubsetPropertiesKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `minVertexInputBindingStrideAlignment` indicates the minimum alignment for vertex input strides. `VkVertexInputBindingDescription::stride` must be a multiple of, and at least as large as, this value.

If the `VkPhysicalDevicePortabilitySubsetPropertiesKHR` structure is included in the `pNext` chain of the `VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2` structure passed to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceProperties2`, it is filled in with each corresponding implementation-dependent property.

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- `VUID-VkPhysicalDevicePortabilitySubsetPropertiesKHR-sType-sType` 
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_PORTABILITY_SUBSET_PROPERTIES_KHR`

The `VkPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRatePropertiesKHR` structure is defined as:
// Provided by VK_KHR_fragment_shading_rate

typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRatePropertiesKHR {
    VkStructureType       sType;
    void*                 pNext;
    VkExtent2D            minFragmentShadingRateAttachmentTexelSize;
    VkExtent2D            maxFragmentShadingRateAttachmentTexelSize;
    uint32_t              maxFragmentShadingRateAttachmentTexelSizeAspectRatio;
    VkBool32              primitiveFragmentShadingRateWithMultipleViewports;
    VkBool32              layeredShadingRateAttachments;
    VkBool32              fragmentShadingRateNonTrivialCombinerOps;
    VkExtent2D            maxFragmentSize;
    uint32_t              maxFragmentSizeAspectRatio;
    uint32_t              maxFragmentShadingRateCoverageSamples;
    VkSampleCountFlagBits maxFragmentShadingRateRasterizationSamples;
    VkBool32              fragmentShadingRateWithShaderDepthStencilWrites;
    VkBool32              fragmentShadingRateWithSampleMask;
    VkBool32              fragmentShadingRateWithShaderSampleMask;
    VkBool32              fragmentShadingRateWithConservativeRasterization;
    VkBool32              fragmentShadingRateWithFragmentShaderInterlock;
    VkBool32              fragmentShadingRateWithCustomSampleLocations;
    VkBool32              fragmentShadingRateStrictMultiplyCombiner;
} VkPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRatePropertiesKHR;

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **minFragmentShadingRateAttachmentTexelSize** indicates minimum supported width and height of the portion of the framebuffer corresponding to each texel in a fragment shading rate attachment. Each value must be less than or equal to the values in **maxFragmentShadingRateAttachmentTexelSize**. Each value must be a power-of-two. It must be (0,0) if the attachmentFragmentShadingRate feature is not supported.
- **maxFragmentShadingRateAttachmentTexelSize** indicates maximum supported width and height of the portion of the framebuffer corresponding to each texel in a fragment shading rate attachment. Each value must be greater than or equal to the values in **minFragmentShadingRateAttachmentTexelSize**. Each value must be a power-of-two. It must be (0,0) if the attachmentFragmentShadingRate feature is not supported.
- **maxFragmentShadingRateAttachmentTexelSizeAspectRatio** indicates the maximum ratio between the width and height of the portion of the framebuffer corresponding to each texel in a fragment shading rate attachment. **maxFragmentShadingRateAttachmentTexelSizeAspectRatio** must be a power-of-two value, and must be less than or equal to \(\frac{\text{maxFragmentShadingRateAttachmentTexelSize.width}}{\text{minFragmentShadingRateAttachmentTexelSize.height}}, \frac{\text{maxFragmentShadingRateAttachmentTexelSize.height}}{\text{minFragmentShadingRateAttachmentTexelSize.width}}\). It must be 0 if the attachmentFragmentShadingRate feature is not supported.
- **primitiveFragmentShadingRateWithMultipleViewports** specifies whether the **primitive fragment shading rate** can be used when multiple viewports are used. If this value is **VK_FALSE**, only a
single viewport must be used, and applications must not write to the ViewportIndex built-in when setting PrimitiveShadingRateKHR. It must be VK_FALSE if the geometryShader feature is not supported, or if the primitiveFragmentShadingRate feature is not supported.

- LayeredShadingRateAttachments specifies whether a shading rate attachment image view can be created with multiple layers. If this value is VK_FALSE, when creating an image view with a usage that includes VK_IMAGE_USAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_BIT_KHR, layerCount must be 1. It must be VK_FALSE if the multiview feature, or the geometryShader feature is not supported, or if the attachmentFragmentShadingRate feature is not supported.

- fragmentShadingRateNonTrivialCombinerOps specifies whether VkFragmentShadingRateCombinerOpKHR enums other than VK_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_COMBINER_OP_KEEP_KHR or VK_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_COMBINER_OP_REPLACE_KHR can be used. It must be VK_FALSE unless either the primitiveFragmentShadingRate or attachmentFragmentShadingRate feature is supported.

- maxFragmentSize indicates the maximum supported width and height of a fragment. Its width and height members must both be power-of-two values. This limit is purely informational, and is not validated.

- maxFragmentSizeAspectRatio indicates the maximum ratio between the width and height of a fragment. maxFragmentSizeAspectRatio must be a power-of-two value, and must be less than or equal to the maximum of the width and height members of maxFragmentSize. This limit is purely informational, and is not validated.

- maxFragmentShadingRateCoverageSamples specifies the maximum number of coverage samples supported in a single fragment. maxFragmentShadingRateCoverageSamples must be less than or equal to the product of the width and height members of maxFragmentSize, and the sample count reported by maxFragmentShadingRateRasterizationSamples. maxFragmentShadingRateCoverageSamples must be less than or equal to maxSampleMaskWords × 32 if fragmentShadingRateWithShaderSampleMask is supported. This limit is purely informational, and is not validated.

- maxFragmentShadingRateRasterizationSamples is a VkSampleCountFlagBits value specifying the maximum sample rate supported when a fragment covers multiple pixels. This limit is purely informational, and is not validated.

- fragmentShadingRateWithShaderDepthStencilWrites specifies whether the implementation supports writing FragDepth from a fragment shader for multi-pixel fragments. If this value is VK_FALSE, writing to those built-ins will clamp the fragment shading rate to (1,1).

- fragmentShadingRateWithSampleMask specifies whether the the implementation supports setting valid bits of VkPipelineMultisampleStateCreateInfo::pSampleMask to 0 for multi-pixel fragments. If this value is VK_FALSE, zeroing valid bits in the sample mask will clamp the fragment shading rate to (1,1).

- fragmentShadingRateWithShaderSampleMask specifies whether the implementation supports reading or writing SampleMask for multi-pixel fragments. If this value is VK_FALSE, using that built-in will clamp the fragment shading rate to (1,1).

- fragmentShadingRateWithConservativeRasterization is reserved for future use.

- fragmentShadingRateWithFragmentShaderInterlock is reserved for future use.

- fragmentShadingRateWithCustomSampleLocations is reserved for future use.
• fragmentShadingRateStrictMultiplyCombiner specifies whether
  VK_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_COMBINER_OP_MUL_KHR accurately performs a multiplication or not.
  Implementations where this value is VK_FALSE will instead combine rates with an addition. If
  fragmentShadingRateNonTrivialCombinerOps is VK_FALSE, implementations must report this as
  VK_FALSE. If fragmentShadingRateNonTrivialCombinerOps is VK_TRUE, implementations should
  report this as VK_TRUE.

  Note
  Multiplication of the combiner rates using the fragment width/height in linear
  space is equivalent to an addition of those values in log2 space. Some
  implementations inadvertently implemented an addition in linear space due to
  unclear requirements originating outside of this specification. This resulted in
  fragmentShadingRateStrictMultiplyCombiner being added. Fortunately, this only
  affects situations where a rate of 1 in either dimension is combined with another
  rate of 1. All other combinations result in the exact same result as if multiplication
  was performed in linear space due to the clamping logic, and the fact that both the
  sum and product of 2 and 2 are equal. In many cases, this limit will not affect the
  correct operation of applications.

If the VkPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRatePropertiesKHR structure is included in the pNext chain of
the VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2 structure passed to vkGetPhysicalDeviceProperties2, it is filled in
with each corresponding implementation-dependent property.

These properties are related to fragment shading rates.

Valid Usage (Implicit)

• VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRatePropertiesKHR-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_PROPERTIES_KHR

38.1. Limit Requirements

The following table specifies the required minimum/maximum for all Vulkan graphics
implementations. Where a limit corresponds to a fine-grained device feature which is optional, the
feature name is listed with two required limits, one when the feature is supported and one when it
is not supported. If an implementation supports a feature, the limits reported are the same whether
or not the feature is enabled.

Table 40. Required Limit Types

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Limit</th>
<th>Feature</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxImageDimension1D</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxImageDimension2D</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxImageDimension3D</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxImageDimensionCube</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Limit</td>
<td>Feature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxImageArrayLayers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxTexelBufferElements</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxUniformBufferRange</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxStorageBufferRange</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxPushConstantsSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxMemoryAllocationCount</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxSamplerAllocationCount</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkDeviceSize</td>
<td>bufferImageGranularity</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkDeviceSize</td>
<td>sparseAddressSpaceSize</td>
<td>sparseBinding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxBoundDescriptorSets</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxPerStageDescriptorSamplers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxPerStageDescriptorUniformBuffers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxPerStageDescriptorStorageBuffers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxPerStageDescriptorSampledImages</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxPerStageDescriptorStorageImages</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxPerStageDescriptorInputAttachments</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxPerStageResources</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxDescriptorSetSamplers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxDescriptorSetUniformBuffers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxDescriptorSetUniformBuffersDynamic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxDescriptorSetStorageBuffers</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxDescriptorSetStorageBuffersDynamic</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxDescriptorSetSampledImages</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxDescriptorSetStorageImages</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxDescriptorSetInputAttachments</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxVertexInputAttributes</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxVertexInputBindings</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxVertexInputAttributeOffset</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxVertexInputBindingStride</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxVertexOutputComponents</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxTessellationGenerationLevel</td>
<td>tessellationShader</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxTessellationPatchSize</td>
<td>tessellationShader</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxTessellationControlPerVertexInputComponents</td>
<td>tessellationShader</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Limit</td>
<td>Feature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxTessellationControlPerVertexOutputComponents</td>
<td>tessellationShader</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxTessellationControlPerPatchOutputComponents</td>
<td>tessellationShader</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxTessellationControlTotalOutputComponents</td>
<td>tessellationShader</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxTessellationEvaluationInputComponents</td>
<td>tessellationShader</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxTessellationEvaluationOutputComponents</td>
<td>tessellationShader</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxGeometryShaderInvocations</td>
<td>geometryShader</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxGeometryInputComponents</td>
<td>geometryShader</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxGeometryOutputComponents</td>
<td>geometryShader</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxGeometryOutputVertices</td>
<td>geometryShader</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxGeometryTotalOutputComponents</td>
<td>geometryShader</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxFragmentInputComponents</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxFragmentOutputAttachments</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxFragmentDualSrcAttachments</td>
<td>dualSrcBlend</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxFragmentCombinedOutputResources</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxComputeSharedMemorySize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 × uint32_t</td>
<td>maxComputeWorkGroupCount</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxComputeWorkGroupInvocations</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3 × uint32_t</td>
<td>maxComputeWorkGroupSize</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>subPixelPrecisionBits</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>subTexelPrecisionBits</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>mipmapPrecisionBits</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxDrawIndexedIndexValue</td>
<td>fullDrawIndexUint32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxDrawIndirectCount</td>
<td>multiDrawIndirect</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>float</td>
<td>maxSamplerLodBias</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>float</td>
<td>maxSamplerAnisotropy</td>
<td>samplerAnisotropy</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxViewports</td>
<td>multiViewport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 × uint32_t</td>
<td>maxViewportDimensions</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 × float</td>
<td>viewportBoundsRange</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>viewportSubPixelBits</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>size_t</td>
<td>minMemoryMapAlignment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkDeviceSize</td>
<td>minTexelBufferOffsetAlignment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkDeviceSize</td>
<td>minUniformBufferOffsetAlignment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkDeviceSize</td>
<td>minStorageBufferOffsetAlignment</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>int32_t</td>
<td>minTexelOffset</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxTexelOffset</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Limit</td>
<td>Feature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>int32_t</td>
<td>minTexelGatherOffset</td>
<td>shaderImageGatherExtended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxTexelGatherOffset</td>
<td>shaderImageGatherExtended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>float</td>
<td>minInterpolationOffset</td>
<td>sampleRateShading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>float</td>
<td>maxInterpolationOffset</td>
<td>sampleRateShading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>subPixelInterpolationOffsetBits</td>
<td>sampleRateShading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxFramebufferWidth</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxFramebufferHeight</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxFramebufferLayers</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkSampleCountFlags</td>
<td>framebufferColorSampleCounts</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkSampleCountFlags</td>
<td>framebufferDepthSampleCounts</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkSampleCountFlags</td>
<td>framebufferStencilSampleCounts</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkSampleCountFlags</td>
<td>framebufferNoAttachmentsSampleCounts</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxColorAttachments</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkSampleCountFlags</td>
<td>sampledImageColorSampleCounts</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkSampleCountFlags</td>
<td>sampledImageIntegerSampleCounts</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkSampleCountFlags</td>
<td>sampledImageDepthSampleCounts</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkSampleCountFlags</td>
<td>sampledImageStencilSampleCounts</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkSampleCountFlags</td>
<td>storageImageSampleCounts</td>
<td>shaderStorageImageMultisample</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxSampleMaskWords</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkBool32</td>
<td>timestampComputeAndGraphics</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>float</td>
<td>timestampPeriod</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxClipDistances</td>
<td>shaderClipDistance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxCullDistances</td>
<td>shaderCullDistance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxCombinedClipAndCullDistances</td>
<td>shaderCullDistance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>discreteQueuePriorities</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 × float</td>
<td>pointSizeRange</td>
<td>largePoints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 × float</td>
<td>lineWidthRange</td>
<td>wideLines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>float</td>
<td>pointSizeGranularity</td>
<td>largePoints</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Type</td>
<td>Limit</td>
<td>Feature</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
<td>-----------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>float</td>
<td>lineWidthGranularity</td>
<td>wideLines</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkBool32</td>
<td>strictLines</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkBool32</td>
<td>standardSampleLocations</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkDeviceSize</td>
<td>optimalBufferCopyOffsetAlignment</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkDeviceSize</td>
<td>optimalBufferCopyRowPitchAlignment</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkDeviceSize</td>
<td>nonCoherentAtomSize</td>
<td>-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxGeometryCount</td>
<td>[VK_NV_ray_tracing], VK_KHR_acceleration_structure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxInstanceCount</td>
<td>[VK_NV_ray_tracing], VK_KHR_acceleration_structure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>shaderGroupHandleSize</td>
<td>[VK_NV_ray_tracing], VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxShaderGroupStride</td>
<td>[VK_NV_ray_tracing], VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>shaderGroupBaseAlignment</td>
<td>[VK_NV_ray_tracing], VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxPerStageDescriptorAccelerationStructures</td>
<td>VK_KHR_acceleration_structure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxPerStageDescriptorUpdateAfterBindAccelerationStructures</td>
<td>VK_KHR_acceleration_structure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxDescriptorSetAccelerationStructures</td>
<td>[VK_NV_ray_tracing], VK_KHR_acceleration_structure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxDescriptorSetUpdateAfterBindAccelerationStructures</td>
<td>VK_KHR_acceleration_structure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>minAccelerationStructureScratchOffsetAlignment</td>
<td>VK_KHR_acceleration_structure</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxRayRecursionDepth</td>
<td>VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>shaderGroupHandleCaptureReplaySize</td>
<td>VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxRayDispatchInvocationCount</td>
<td>VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>shaderGroupHandleAlignment</td>
<td>VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxRayHitAttributeSize</td>
<td>VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint64_t</td>
<td>maxTimelineSemaphoreValueDifference</td>
<td>timelineSemaphore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 × uint32_t</td>
<td>minFragmentShadingRateAttachmentTexelSize</td>
<td>attachmentFragmentShadingRate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2 × uint32_t</td>
<td>maxFragmentShadingRateAttachmentTexelSize</td>
<td>attachmentFragmentShadingRate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxFragmentShadingRateAttachmentTexelSizeAspectRatio</td>
<td>attachmentFragmentShadingRate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1506 | Chapter 38. Limits
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Limit</th>
<th>Feature</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VkBool32</td>
<td>primitiveFragmentShadingRateWithMultipleViewports</td>
<td>primitiveFragmentShadingRate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkBool32</td>
<td>layeredShadingRateAttachments</td>
<td>attachmentFragmentShadingRate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkBool32</td>
<td>fragmentShadingRateNonTrivialCombinerOps</td>
<td>pipelineFragmentShadingRate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxFragmentSize</td>
<td>pipelineFragmentShadingRate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>uint32_t</td>
<td>maxFragmentSizeAspectRatio</td>
<td>pipelineFragmentShadingRate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkSampleCountFlagsBits</td>
<td>maxFragmentShadingRateRasterizationSamples</td>
<td>pipelineFragmentShadingRate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkBool32</td>
<td>fragmentShadingRateWithShaderDepthStencilWrites</td>
<td>pipelineFragmentShadingRate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkBool32</td>
<td>fragmentShadingRateWithSampleMask</td>
<td>pipelineFragmentShadingRate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkBool32</td>
<td>fragmentShadingRateWithShaderSampleMask</td>
<td>pipelineFragmentShadingRate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkBool32</td>
<td>fragmentShadingRateWithConservativeRasterization</td>
<td>pipelineFragmentShadingRate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkBool32</td>
<td>fragmentShadingRateWithFragmentShaderInterlock</td>
<td>pipelineFragmentShadingRate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkBool32</td>
<td>fragmentShadingRateWithCustomSampleLocations</td>
<td>pipelineFragmentShadingRate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkBool32</td>
<td>fragmentShadingRateStrictMultiplyCombiner</td>
<td>pipelineFragmentShadingRate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 41. Required Limits

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Limit</th>
<th>Unsupported Limit</th>
<th>Supported Limit</th>
<th>Limit Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>maxImageDimension1D</td>
<td></td>
<td>4096</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxImageDimension2D</td>
<td></td>
<td>4096</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxImageDimension3D</td>
<td></td>
<td>256</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxImageDimensionCube</td>
<td></td>
<td>4096</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxImageArrayLayers</td>
<td></td>
<td>256</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxTexelBufferElements</td>
<td></td>
<td>65536</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxUniformBufferRange</td>
<td></td>
<td>16384</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxStorageBufferRange</td>
<td></td>
<td>$2^{27}$</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxPushConstantsSize</td>
<td></td>
<td>128</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxMemoryAllocationCount</td>
<td></td>
<td>4096</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxSamplerAllocationCount</td>
<td></td>
<td>4000</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>bufferImageGranularity</td>
<td></td>
<td>131072</td>
<td>max</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sparseAddressSpaceSize</td>
<td></td>
<td>$2^{31}$</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxBoundDescriptorSets</td>
<td></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxPerStageDescriptorSamplers</td>
<td></td>
<td>16</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limit</td>
<td>Unsupported Limit</td>
<td>Supported Limit</td>
<td>Limit Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxPerStageDescriptorUniformBuffers</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>12</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxPerStageDescriptorStorageBuffers</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxPerStageDescriptorSampledImages</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxPerStageDescriptorStorageImages</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxPerStageDescriptorInputAttachments</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxPerStageResources</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxDescriptorSetSamplers</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>min, n × PerStage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxDescriptorSetUniformBuffers</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>72</td>
<td>min, n × PerStage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxDescriptorSetUniformBuffersDynamic</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxDescriptorSetStorageBuffers</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>min, n × PerStage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxDescriptorSetStorageBuffersDynamic</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxDescriptorSetSampledImages</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>96</td>
<td>min, n × PerStage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxDescriptorSetStorageImages</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>min, n × PerStage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxDescriptorSetInputAttachments</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxVertexInputAttributes</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxVertexInputBindings</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxVertexInputAttributeOffset</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2047</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxVertexInputBindingStride</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2048</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxVertexOutputComponents</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxTessellationGenerationLevel</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxTessellationPatchSize</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxTessellationControlPerVertexInputComponents</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxTessellationControlPerVertexOutputComponents</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxTessellationControlPerPatchOutputComponents</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>120</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxTessellationControlTotalOutputComponents</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>2048</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxTessellationEvaluationInputComponents</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxTessellationEvaluationOutputComponents</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxGeometryShaderInvocations</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxGeometryInputComponents</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limit</td>
<td>Unsupported Limit</td>
<td>Supported Limit</td>
<td>Limit Type¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxGeometryOutputComponents</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxGeometryOutputVertices</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>256</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxGeometryTotalOutputComponents</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1024</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxFragmentInputComponents</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxFragmentOutputAttachments</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxFragmentDualSrcAttachments</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxFragmentCombinedOutputResources</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxComputeSharedMemorySize</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>16384</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxComputeWorkGroupCount</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>(65535,65535,65535)</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxComputeWorkGroupInvocations</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxComputeWorkGroupSize</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>(128,128,64)</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subPixelPrecisionBits</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>subTexelPrecisionBits</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>mipmapPrecisionBits</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxDrawIndexedIndexValue</td>
<td>$2^{24} - 1$</td>
<td>$2^{24} - 1$</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxDrawIndirectCount</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>$2^{16} - 1$</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxSamplerLodBias</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxSamplerAnisotropy</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxViewports</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxViewportDimensions</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>(4096,4096)³</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>viewportBoundsRange</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>(-8192,8191)⁴</td>
<td>(max,min)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>viewportSubPixelBits</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minMemoryMapAlignment</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minTexelBufferOffsetAlignment</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>256</td>
<td>max</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minUniformBufferOffsetAlignment</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>256</td>
<td>max</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minStorageBufferOffsetAlignment</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>256</td>
<td>max</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minTexelOffset</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-8</td>
<td>max</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxTexelOffset</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minTexelGatherOffset</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>-8</td>
<td>max</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxTexelGatherOffset</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>7</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minInterpolationOffset</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>-0.5⁵</td>
<td>max</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxInterpolationOffset</td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>0.5 - (1 ULP)⁵</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Limit Type: min = Minimum, max = Maximum
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Limit</th>
<th>Unsupported Limit</th>
<th>Supported Limit</th>
<th>Limit Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>subPixelInterpolationOffsetBits</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>4 (^5)</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxFramebufferWidth</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4096</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxFramebufferHeight</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4096</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxFramebufferLayers</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>256</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>framebufferColorSampleCounts</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>(VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>| VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_4_BIT)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>framebufferDepthSampleCounts</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>(VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>| VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_4_BIT)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>framebufferStencilSampleCounts</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>(VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>| VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_4_BIT)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>framebufferNoAttachmentsSampleCounts</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>(VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>| VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_4_BIT)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxColorAttachments</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sampledImageColorSampleCounts</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>(VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>| VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_4_BIT)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sampledImageIntegerSampleCounts</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sampledImageDepthSampleCounts</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>(VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>| VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_4_BIT)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sampledImageStencilSampleCounts</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>(VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>| VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_4_BIT)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>storageImageSampleCounts</td>
<td>VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT</td>
<td>(VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>| VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_4_BIT)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxSampleMaskWords</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Limit</td>
<td>Unsupported Limit</td>
<td>Supported Limit</td>
<td>Limit Type¹</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>-----------------</td>
<td>-------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>timestampComputeAndGraphics</code></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>implementation-dependent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>timestampPeriod</code></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>duration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>maxClipDistances</code></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>maxCullDistances</code></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>maxCombinedClipAndCullDistances</code></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>discreteQueuePriorities</code></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pointSizeRange</code></td>
<td>(1.0,1.0)</td>
<td>(1.0,64.0 - ULP)⁶</td>
<td>(max,min)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>lineWidthRange</code></td>
<td>(1.0,1.0)</td>
<td>(1.0,8.0 - ULP)⁷</td>
<td>(max,min)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pointSizeGranularity</code></td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>1.0⁶</td>
<td>max, fixed point increment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>lineWidthGranularity</code></td>
<td>0.0</td>
<td>1.0⁷</td>
<td>max, fixed point increment</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>strictLines</code></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>implementation-dependent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>standardSampleLocations</code></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>implementation-dependent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>optimalBufferCopyOffsetAlignment</code></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>recommendation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>optimalBufferCopyRowPitchAlignment</code></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>recommendation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>nonCoherentAtomSize</code></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>256</td>
<td>max</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>maxPushDescriptors</code></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>maxMultiviewViewCount</code></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>maxMultiviewInstanceIndex</code></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2³⁷-1</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>maxPerSetDescriptors</code></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1024</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>maxMemoryAllocationSize</code></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2³⁰</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR::shaderGroupHandleSize</code></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>exact</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR::maxRayRecursionDepth</code></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>maxShaderGroupStride</code></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>4096</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>shaderGroupBaseAlignment</code></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>max</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>maxGeometryCount</code></td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2³⁴-1</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Limits marked as “implementation-dependent” may vary between different implementations.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Limit</th>
<th>Unsupported Limit</th>
<th>Supported Limit</th>
<th>Limit Type¹</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>maxInstanceCount</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>$2^{24}$-1</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxPrimitiveCount</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>$2^{29}$-1</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxPerStageDescriptorAccelerationStructures</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxPerStageDescriptorUpdateAfterBindAccelerationStructures</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>$500000^9$</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxDescriptorSetAccelerationStructures</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxDescriptorSetUpdateAfterBindAccelerationStructures</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>$500000^9$</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minAccelerationStructureScratchOffsetAlignment</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>256</td>
<td>max</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shaderGroupHandleCaptureReplaySize</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>64</td>
<td>max</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxRayDispatchInvocationCount</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>$2^{30}$</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shaderGroupHandleAlignment</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>max</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxRayHitAttributeSize</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxTimelineSemaphoreValueDifference</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>$2^{31}$-1</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>minFragmentShadingRateAttachmentTexelSize</td>
<td>(0,0)</td>
<td>(32,32)</td>
<td>max</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxFragmentShadingRateAttachmentTexelSize</td>
<td>(0,0)</td>
<td>(8,8)</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxFragmentShadingRateAttachmentTexelSizeAspectRatio</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>primitiveFragmentShadingRateWithMultipleViewports</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>implementatio n-dependent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>layeredShadingRateAttachments</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>implementatio n-dependent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fragmentShadingRateNonTrivialCombinerOps</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>implementatio n-dependent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxFragmentSize</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>(2,2)</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxFragmentSizeAspectRatio</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxFragmentShadingRateCoverageSamples</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>16</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>maxFragmentShadingRateRasterizationSamples</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_4_BIT</td>
<td>min</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fragmentShadingRateWithShaderDepthStencilWrites</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>implementatio n-dependent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fragmentShadingRateWithSampleMask</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>implementatio n-dependent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fragmentShadingRateWithShaderSampleMask</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>implementatio n-dependent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fragmentShadingRateWithConservativeRasterization</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>implementatio n-dependent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

¹ Limit Type: min (minimum), max (maximum), implementation-dependent
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Limit</th>
<th>Unsupported Limit</th>
<th>Supported Limit</th>
<th>Limit Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>fragmentShadingRateWithFragmentShaderInterlock</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>implementation-dependent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fragmentShadingRateWithCustomSampleLocations</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>implementation-dependent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fragmentShadingRateStrictMultiplyCombiner</td>
<td>-</td>
<td>false</td>
<td>implementation-dependent</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1. The **Limit Type** column specifies the limit is either the minimum limit all implementations **must** support, the maximum limit all implementations **must** support, or the exact value all implementations **must** support. For bitmasks a minimum limit is the least bits all implementations **must** set, but they **may** have additional bits set beyond this minimum.

2. The **maxPerStageResources** **must** be at least the smallest of the following:

   - the sum of the **maxPerStageDescriptorUniformBuffers**, **maxPerStageDescriptorStorageBuffers**, **maxPerStageDescriptorSampledImages**, **maxPerStageDescriptorStorageImages**, **maxPerStageDescriptorInputAttachments**, **maxColorAttachments** limits, or
   - 128.

   It **may** not be possible to reach this limit in every stage.

3. See **maxViewportDimensions** for the **required** relationship to other limits.

4. See **viewportBoundsRange** for the **required** relationship to other limits.

5. The values **minInterpolationOffset** and **maxInterpolationOffset** describe the closed interval of supported interpolation offsets: \([\text{minInterpolationOffset}, \text{maxInterpolationOffset}]\). The ULP is determined by **subPixelInterpolationOffsetBits**. If **subPixelInterpolationOffsetBits** is 4, this provides increments of \((1/2^4) = 0.0625\), and thus the range of supported interpolation offsets would be \([-0.5, 0.4375]\).

6. The point size ULP is determined by **PointSizeGranularity**. If the **PointSizeGranularity** is 0.125, the range of supported point sizes **must** be at least \([1.0, 63.875]\).

7. The line width ULP is determined by **LineWidthGranularity**. If the **LineWidthGranularity** is 0.0625, the range of supported line widths **must** be at least \([1.0, 7.9375]\).
The minimum \texttt{maxDescriptorSet}\* limit is \( n \) times the corresponding \textit{specification} minimum \texttt{maxPerStageDescriptor}\* limit, where \( n \) is the number of shader stages supported by the \texttt{VkPhysicalDevice}. If all shader stages are supported, \( n = 6 \) (vertex, tessellation control, tessellation evaluation, geometry, fragment, compute).

If the \texttt{VK_KHR_portability_subset} extension is enabled, the required minimum value of \texttt{maxVertexInputBindings} is 8.
Chapter 39. Formats

Supported buffer and image formats may vary across implementations. A minimum set of format features are guaranteed, but others must be explicitly queried before use to ensure they are supported by the implementation.

The features for the set of formats (VkFormat) supported by the implementation are queried individually using the vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties command.

39.1. Format Definition

The following image formats can be passed to, and may be returned from Vulkan commands. The memory required to store each format is discussed with that format, and also summarized in the Representation and Texel Block Size section and the Compatible formats table.

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkFormat {
    VK_FORMAT_UNDEFINED = 0,
    VK_FORMAT_R4G4_UNORM_PACK8 = 1,
    VK_FORMAT_R4G4B4A4_UNORM_PACK16 = 2,
    VK_FORMAT_B4G4R4A4_UNORM_PACK16 = 3,
    VK_FORMAT_R5G6B5_UNORM_PACK16 = 4,
    VK_FORMAT_B5G6R5_UNORM_PACK16 = 5,
    VK_FORMAT_R5G5B5A1_UNORM_PACK16 = 6,
    VK_FORMAT_B5G5R5A1_UNORM_PACK16 = 7,
    VK_FORMAT_A1R5G5B5_UNORM_PACK16 = 8,
    VK_FORMAT_R8_UNORM = 9,
    VK_FORMAT_R8_SNORM = 10,
    VK_FORMAT_R8_USCALED = 11,
    VK_FORMAT_R8_SSCALED = 12,
    VK_FORMAT_R8_UINT = 13,
    VK_FORMAT_R8_SINT = 14,
    VK_FORMAT_R8_SRGB = 15,
    VK_FORMAT_R8G8_UNORM = 16,
    VK_FORMAT_R8G8_SNORM = 17,
    VK_FORMAT_R8G8_USCALED = 18,
    VK_FORMAT_R8G8_SSCALED = 19,
    VK_FORMAT_R8G8_UINT = 20,
    VK_FORMAT_R8G8_SINT = 21,
    VK_FORMAT_R8G8_SRGB = 22,
    VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8_UNORM = 23,
    VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8_SNORM = 24,
    VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8_USCALED = 25,
    VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8_SSCALED = 26,
    VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8_UINT = 27,
    VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8_SINT = 28,
    VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8_SRGB = 29,
    VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_UNORM = 30,
    VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_SNORM = 31,
```
VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_USCALED = 32,
VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_SSCALED = 33,
VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_UINT = 34,
VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_SINT = 35,
VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_SRGB = 36,
VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8A8_UNORM = 37,
VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8A8_SNORM = 38,
VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8A8_USCALED = 39,
VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8A8_SSCALED = 40,
VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8A8_UINT = 41,
VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8A8_SINT = 42,
VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8A8_SRGB = 43,
VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8A8_USCALED = 44,
VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8A8_SSCALED = 45,
VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8A8_UINT = 46,
VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8A8_SINT = 47,
VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8A8_SRGB = 48,
VK_FORMAT_A8B8G8R8_UNORM_PACK32 = 49,
VK_FORMAT_A8B8G8R8_SNORM_PACK32 = 50,
VK_FORMAT_A8B8G8R8_USCALED_PACK32 = 51,
VK_FORMAT_A8B8G8R8_SSCALED_PACK32 = 52,
VK_FORMAT_A8B8G8R8_UINT_PACK32 = 53,
VK_FORMAT_A8B8G8R8_SINT_PACK32 = 54,
VK_FORMAT_A8B8G8R8_SRGB_PACK32 = 55,
VK_FORMAT_A2R10G10B10_UNORM_PACK32 = 56,
VK_FORMAT_A2R10G10B10_SNORM_PACK32 = 57,
VK_FORMAT_A2R10G10B10_USCALED_PACK32 = 58,
VK_FORMAT_A2R10G10B10_SSCALED_PACK32 = 59,
VK_FORMAT_A2R10G10B10_UINT_PACK32 = 60,
VK_FORMAT_A2R10G10B10_SINT_PACK32 = 61,
VK_FORMAT_A2R10G10B10_SRGB_PACK32 = 62,
VK_FORMAT_A2B10G10R10_UNORM_PACK32 = 63,
VK_FORMAT_A2B10G10R10_SNORM_PACK32 = 64,
VK_FORMAT_A2B10G10R10_USCALED_PACK32 = 65,
VK_FORMAT_A2B10G10R10_SSCALED_PACK32 = 66,
VK_FORMAT_A2B10G10R10_UINT_PACK32 = 67,
VK_FORMAT_A2B10G10R10_SINT_PACK32 = 68,
VK_FORMAT_A2B10G10R10_SRGB_PACK32 = 69,
VK_FORMAT_R16_UNORM = 70,
VK_FORMAT_R16_SNORM = 71,
VK_FORMAT_R16_USCALED = 72,
VK_FORMAT_R16_SSCALED = 73,
VK_FORMAT_R16_UINT = 74,
VK_FORMAT_R16_SINT = 75,
VK_FORMAT_R16_SFLOAT = 76,
VK_FORMAT_R16G16_UNORM = 77,
VK_FORMAT_R16G16_SNORM = 78,
VK_FORMAT_R16G16_USCALED = 79,
VK_FORMAT_R16G16_SSCALED = 80,
VK_FORMAT_R16G16_UINT = 81,
VK_FORMAT_R16G16_SINT = 82,
VK_FORMAT_R16G16_SFLOAT = 83,
VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16_UNORM = 84,
VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16_SNORM = 85,
VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16_USCALED = 86,
VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16_SSCALED = 87,
VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16_UINT = 88,
VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16_SINT = 89,
VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16_SFLOAT = 90,
VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16A16_UNORM = 91,
VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16A16_SNORM = 92,
VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16A16_USCALED = 93,
VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16A16_SSCALED = 94,
VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16A16_UINT = 95,
VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16A16_SINT = 96,
VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16A16_SFLOAT = 97,
VK_FORMAT_R32_UINT = 98,
VK_FORMAT_R32_SINT = 99,
VK_FORMAT_R32_SFLOAT = 100,
VK_FORMAT_R32G32_UINT = 101,
VK_FORMAT_R32G32_SINT = 102,
VK_FORMAT_R32G32_SFLOAT = 103,
VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32_UINT = 104,
VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32_SINT = 105,
VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32_SFLOAT = 106,
VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32A32_UINT = 107,
VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32A32_SINT = 108,
VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32A32_SFLOAT = 109,
VK_FORMAT_R64_UINT = 110,
VK_FORMAT_R64_SINT = 111,
VK_FORMAT_R64_SFLOAT = 112,
VK_FORMAT_R64G64_UINT = 113,
VK_FORMAT_R64G64_SINT = 114,
VK_FORMAT_R64G64_SFLOAT = 115,
VK_FORMAT_R64G64B64_UINT = 116,
VK_FORMAT_R64G64B64_SINT = 117,
VK_FORMAT_R64G64B64_SFLOAT = 118,
VK_FORMAT_R64G64B64A64_UINT = 119,
VK_FORMAT_R64G64B64A64_SINT = 120,
VK_FORMAT_R64G64B64A64_SFLOAT = 121,
VK_FORMAT_B10G11R11_UFLOAT_PACK32 = 122,
VK_FORMAT_E5B9G9R9_UFLOAT_PACK32 = 123,
VK_FORMAT_D16_UNORM = 124,
VK_FORMAT_X8_D24_UNORM_PACK32 = 125,
VK_FORMAT_D16_SFLOAT = 126,
VK_FORMAT_S8_UINT = 127,
VK_FORMAT_D16_UNORM_S8_UINT = 128,
VK_FORMAT_D24_UNORM_S8_UINT = 129,
VK_FORMAT_D32_SFLOAT_S8_UINT = 130,
VK_FORMAT_BC1_RGB_UNORM_BLOCK = 131,
VK_FORMAT_BC1_RGB_SRGB_BLOCK = 132,
VK_FORMAT_BC1_RGBA_UNORM_BLOCK = 133,
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VK_FORMAT_BC1_RGBA_SRGB_BLOCK</th>
<th>134</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC2_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>135</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC2_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>136</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC3_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>137</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC3_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>138</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC4_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>139</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC4_SNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>140</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC5_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>141</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC5_SNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BCGH_UFLOAT_BLOCK</td>
<td>143</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BCGH_SFLOAT_BLOCK</td>
<td>144</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC7_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>145</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC7_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>146</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ETC2_R8G8B8_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>147</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ETC2_R8G8B8_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>148</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ETC2_R8G8B8A1_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>149</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ETC2_R8G8B8A1_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>150</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ETC2_R8G8B8A8_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>151</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ETC2_R8G8B8A8_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>152</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_EAC_R11_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>153</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_EAC_R11_SNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>154</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_EAC_R11G11_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>155</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_EAC_R11G11_SNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>156</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_4x4_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>157</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_4x4_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>158</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_5x4_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>159</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_5x4_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>160</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_5x5_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>161</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_5x5_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>162</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_6x5_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>163</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_6x5_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>164</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_6x6_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>165</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_6x6_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>166</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x5_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>167</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x5_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>168</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x6_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>169</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x6_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>170</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x8_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>171</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x8_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>172</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x5_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>173</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x5_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>174</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x6_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>175</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x6_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>176</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x8_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>177</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x8_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>178</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x10_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>179</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x10_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>180</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_12x10_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>181</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_12x10_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>182</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_12x12_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>183</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_12x12_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>184</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
VK_FORMAT_G8B8G8R8_422_UNORM = 1000156000,
VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8G8_422_UNORM = 1000156001,
VK_FORMAT_G8_B8_R8_3PLANE_420_UNORM = 1000156002,
VK_FORMAT_G8_B8R8_2PLANE_420_UNORM = 1000156003,
VK_FORMAT_G8_B8_R8_3PLANE_422_UNORM = 1000156004,
VK_FORMAT_G8_B8R8_2PLANE_422_UNORM = 1000156005,
VK_FORMAT_G8_B8_R8_3PLANE_444_UNORM = 1000156006,
VK_FORMAT_R10X6_UNORM_PACK16 = 1000156007,
VK_FORMAT_R10X6G10X6_UNORM_2PACK16 = 1000156008,
VK_FORMAT_R10X6G10X6B10X6A10X6_UNORM_4PACK16 = 1000156009,
VK_FORMAT_G10X6B10X6G10X6R10X6_422_UNORM_4PACK16 = 1000156010,
VK_FORMAT_B10X6G10X6R10X6G10X6_422_UNORM_4PACK16 = 1000156011,
VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6_R10X6_3PLANE_420_UNORM_3PACK16 = 1000156012,
VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6R10X6_2PLANE_420_UNORM_3PACK16 = 1000156013,
VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6_R10X6_3PLANE_422_UNORM_3PACK16 = 1000156014,
VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6R10X6_2PLANE_422_UNORM_3PACK16 = 1000156015,
VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6_R10X6_3PLANE_444_UNORM_3PACK16 = 1000156016,
VK_FORMAT_R12X4_UNORM_PACK16 = 1000156017,
VK_FORMAT_R12X4G12X4_UNORM_2PACK16 = 1000156018,
VK_FORMAT_R12X4G12X4B12X4A12X4_UNORM_4PACK16 = 1000156019,
VK_FORMAT_G12X4B12X4G12X4R12X4_422_UNORM_4PACK16 = 1000156020,
VK_FORMAT_B12X4G12X4R12X4G12X4_422_UNORM_4PACK16 = 1000156021,
VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4_R12X4_3PLANE_420_UNORM_3PACK16 = 1000156022,
VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4R12X4_2PLANE_420_UNORM_3PACK16 = 1000156023,
VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4_R12X4_3PLANE_422_UNORM_3PACK16 = 1000156024,
VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4R12X4_2PLANE_422_UNORM_3PACK16 = 1000156025,
VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4_R12X4_3PLANE_444_UNORM_3PACK16 = 1000156026,
VK_FORMAT_G16B16G16R16_422_UNORM = 1000156027,
VK_FORMAT_B16G16R16G16_422_UNORM = 1000156028,
VK_FORMAT_G16_B16_R16_3PLANE_420_UNORM = 1000156029,
VK_FORMAT_G16_B16R16_2PLANE_420_UNORM = 1000156030,
VK_FORMAT_G16_B16_R16_3PLANE_422_UNORM = 1000156031,
VK_FORMAT_G16_B16R16_2PLANE_422_UNORM = 1000156032,
VK_FORMAT_G16_B16_R16_3PLANE_444_UNORM = 1000156033,
VK_FORMAT_G8B8G8R8_422_UNORM_KHR = VK_FORMAT_G8B8G8R8_422_UNORM,
VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8G8_422_UNORM_KHR = VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8G8_422_UNORM,
VK_FORMAT_G8_B8_R8_3PLANE_420_UNORM_KHR = VK_FORMAT_G8_B8_R8_3PLANE_420_UNORM,
VK_FORMAT_G8_B8R8_2PLANE_420_UNORM_KHR = VK_FORMAT_G8_B8R8_2PLANE_420_UNORM,
VK_FORMAT_G8_B8_R8_3PLANE_422_UNORM_KHR = VK_FORMAT_G8_B8_R8_3PLANE_422_UNORM,
VK_FORMAT_G8_B8R8_2PLANE_422_UNORM_KHR = VK_FORMAT_G8_B8R8_2PLANE_422_UNORM,
VK_FORMAT_G8_B8_R8_3PLANE_444_UNORM_KHR = VK_FORMAT_G8_B8_R8_3PLANE_444_UNORM,
VK_FORMAT_R10X6_UNORM_PACK16_KHR = VK_FORMAT_R10X6_UNORM_PACK16,
VK_FORMAT_R10X6G10X6_UNORM_2PACK16_KHR = VK_FORMAT_R10X6G10X6_UNORM_2PACK16,
// Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
VK_FORMAT_R10X6G10X6B10X6A10X6_UNORM_4PACK16_KHR = VK_FORMAT_R10X6G10X6B10X6A10X6_UNORM_4PACK16,
// Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
VK_FORMAT_G10X6B10X6G10X6R10X6_422_UNORM_4PACK16_KHR = VK_FORMAT_G10X6B10X6G10X6R10X6_422_UNORM_4PACK16,
// Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6_R10X6_3PLANE_420_UNORM_3PACK16_KHR = VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6_R10X6_3PLANE_420_UNORM_3PACK16,
// Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6R10X6_2PLANE_420_UNORM_3PACK16_KHR = VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6R10X6_2PLANE_420_UNORM_3PACK16,
// Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6_R10X6_3PLANE_422_UNORM_3PACK16_KHR = VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6_R10X6_3PLANE_422_UNORM_3PACK16,
// Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6R10X6_2PLANE_422_UNORM_3PACK16_KHR = VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6R10X6_2PLANE_422_UNORM_3PACK16,
// Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6_R10X6_3PLANE_444_UNORM_3PACK16_KHR = VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6_R10X6_3PLANE_444_UNORM_3PACK16,
// Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
VK_FORMAT_R12X4_UNORM_PACK16_KHR = VK_FORMAT_R12X4_UNORM_PACK16,
// Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
VK_FORMAT_R12X4G12X4_UNORM_2PACK16_KHR = VK_FORMAT_R12X4G12X4_UNORM_2PACK16,
// Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
VK_FORMAT_R12X4G12X4B12X4A12X4_UNORM_4PACK16_KHR = VK_FORMAT_R12X4G12X4B12X4A12X4_UNORM_4PACK16,
// Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
VK_FORMAT_G12X4B12X4G12X4R12X4_422_UNORM_4PACK16_KHR = VK_FORMAT_G12X4B12X4G12X4R12X4_422_UNORM_4PACK16,
// Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4_R12X4_3PLANE_420_UNORM_3PACK16_KHR = VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4_R12X4_3PLANE_420_UNORM_3PACK16,
// Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4R12X4_2PLANE_420_UNORM_3PACK16_KHR = VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4R12X4_2PLANE_420_UNORM_3PACK16,
// Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4_R12X4_3PLANE_422_UNORM_3PACK16_KHR = VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4_R12X4_3PLANE_422_UNORM_3PACK16,
// Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4R12X4_2PLANE_422_UNORM_3PACK16_KHR = VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4R12X4_2PLANE_422_UNORM_3PACK16,
// Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
VK_FORMAT_R12X4G12X4B12X4A12X4_UNORM_4PACK16_KHR = VK_FORMAT_R12X4G12X4B12X4A12X4_UNORM_4PACK16,
VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4_R12X4_3PLANE_444_UNORM_3PACK16_KHR =
    VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4_R12X4_3PLANE_444_UNORM_3PACK16,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycc_conversion
VK_FORMAT_G16B16G16R16_422_UNORM_KHR =
    VK_FORMAT_G16B16G16R16_422_UNORM,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycc_conversion
VK_FORMAT_B16G16R16_2PLANE_420_UNORM_KHR =
    VK_FORMAT_B16G16R16_2PLANE_420_UNORM,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycc_conversion
VK_FORMAT_G16_B16_R16_3PLANE_420_UNORM_KHR =
    VK_FORMAT_G16_B16_R16_3PLANE_420_UNORM,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycc_conversion
VK_FORMAT_G16_B16R16_2PLANE_422_UNORM_KHR =
    VK_FORMAT_G16_B16R16_2PLANE_422_UNORM,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycc_conversion
VK_FORMAT_G16_B16_R16_3PLANE_444_UNORM_KHR =
    VK_FORMAT_G16_B16_R16_3PLANE_444_UNORM,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycc_conversion

VkFormat

• VK_FORMAT_UNDEFINED specifies that the format is not specified.
• VK_FORMAT_R4G4_UNORM_PACK8 specifies a two-component, 8-bit packed unsigned normalized format that has a 4-bit R component in bits 4..7, and a 4-bit G component in bits 0..3.
• VK_FORMAT_R4G4B4A4_UNORM_PACK16 specifies a four-component, 16-bit packed unsigned normalized format that has a 4-bit R component in bits 12..15, a 4-bit G component in bits 8..11, a 4-bit B component in bits 4..7, and a 4-bit A component in bits 0..3.
• VK_FORMAT_B4G4R4A4_UNORM_PACK16 specifies a four-component, 16-bit packed unsigned normalized format that has a 4-bit B component in bits 12..15, a 4-bit G component in bits 8..11, a 4-bit R component in bits 4..7, and a 4-bit A component in bits 0..3.
• VK_FORMAT_R5G6B5_UNORM_PACK16 specifies a three-component, 16-bit packed unsigned normalized format that has a 5-bit R component in bits 11..15, a 6-bit G component in bits 5..10, and a 5-bit B component in bits 0..4.
• VK_FORMAT_B5G5R5A1_UNORM_PACK16 specifies a four-component, 16-bit packed unsigned normalized format that has a 5-bit B component in bits 11..15, a 6-bit G component in bits 5..10, and a 5-bit R component in bits 0..4.
• VK_FORMAT_R5G5B5A1_UNORM_PACK16 specifies a four-component, 16-bit packed unsigned normalized format that has a 5-bit R component in bits 11..15, a 5-bit G component in bits 6..10, a 5-bit B component in bits 1..5, and a 1-bit A component in bit 0.
• VK_FORMAT_B5G5R5A1_UNORM_PACK16 specifies a four-component, 16-bit packed unsigned normalized format that has a 5-bit B component in bits 11..15, a 5-bit G component in bits 6..10, a 5-bit R component in bits 1..5, and a 1-bit A component in bit 0.
• VK_FORMAT_A1R5G5B5_UNORM_PACK16 specifies a four-component, 16-bit packed unsigned normalized format that has a 1-bit A component in bit 15, a 5-bit R component in bits 10..14, a 5-bit G component in bits 5..9, and a 5-bit B component in bits 0..4.
• **VK_FORMAT_R8_UNORM** specifies a one-component, 8-bit unsigned normalized format that has a single 8-bit R component.

• **VK_FORMAT_R8_SNORM** specifies a one-component, 8-bit signed normalized format that has a single 8-bit R component.

• **VK_FORMAT_R8_USCALED** specifies a one-component, 8-bit unsigned scaled integer format that has a single 8-bit R component.

• **VK_FORMAT_R8_SSCALED** specifies a one-component, 8-bit signed scaled integer format that has a single 8-bit R component.

• **VK_FORMAT_R8_UINT** specifies a one-component, 8-bit unsigned integer format that has a single 8-bit R component.

• **VK_FORMAT_R8_SINT** specifies a one-component, 8-bit signed integer format that has a single 8-bit R component.

• **VK_FORMAT_R8_SRGB** specifies a one-component, 8-bit unsigned normalized format that has a single 8-bit R component stored with sRGB nonlinear encoding.

• **VK_FORMAT_R8G8_UNORM** specifies a two-component, 16-bit unsigned normalized format that has an 8-bit R component in byte 0, and an 8-bit G component in byte 1.

• **VK_FORMAT_R8G8_SNORM** specifies a two-component, 16-bit signed normalized format that has an 8-bit R component in byte 0, and an 8-bit G component in byte 1.

• **VK_FORMAT_R8G8_USCALED** specifies a two-component, 16-bit unsigned scaled integer format that has an 8-bit R component in byte 0, and an 8-bit G component in byte 1.

• **VK_FORMAT_R8G8_SSCALED** specifies a two-component, 16-bit signed scaled integer format that has an 8-bit R component in byte 0, and an 8-bit G component in byte 1.

• **VK_FORMAT_R8G8_UINT** specifies a two-component, 16-bit unsigned integer format that has an 8-bit R component in byte 0, and an 8-bit G component in byte 1.

• **VK_FORMAT_R8G8_SINT** specifies a two-component, 16-bit signed integer format that has an 8-bit R component in byte 0, and an 8-bit G component in byte 1.

• **VK_FORMAT_R8G8_SRGB** specifies a two-component, 16-bit unsigned normalized format that has an 8-bit R component stored with sRGB nonlinear encoding in byte 0, and an 8-bit G component stored with sRGB nonlinear encoding in byte 1.

• **VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8_UNORM** specifies a three-component, 24-bit unsigned normalized format that has an 8-bit R component in byte 0, an 8-bit G component in byte 1, and an 8-bit B component in byte 2.

• **VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8_SNORM** specifies a three-component, 24-bit signed normalized format that has an 8-bit R component in byte 0, an 8-bit G component in byte 1, and an 8-bit B component in byte 2.

• **VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8_USCALED** specifies a three-component, 24-bit unsigned scaled format that has an 8-bit R component in byte 0, an 8-bit G component in byte 1, and an 8-bit B component in byte 2.

• **VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8_SSCALED** specifies a three-component, 24-bit signed scaled format that has an 8-bit R component in byte 0, an 8-bit G component in byte 1, and an 8-bit B component in byte 2.

• **VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8_UINT** specifies a three-component, 24-bit unsigned integer format that has an 8-bit R component in byte 0, an 8-bit G component in byte 1, and an 8-bit B component in byte 2.
• **VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8_SINT** specifies a three-component, 24-bit signed integer format that has an 8-bit R component in byte 0, an 8-bit G component in byte 1, and an 8-bit B component in byte 2.

• **VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8_SRGB** specifies a three-component, 24-bit unsigned normalized format that has an 8-bit R component stored with sRGB nonlinear encoding in byte 0, an 8-bit G component stored with sRGB nonlinear encoding in byte 1, and an 8-bit B component stored with sRGB nonlinear encoding in byte 2.

• **VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_UNORM** specifies a three-component, 24-bit unsigned normalized format that has an 8-bit B component in byte 0, an 8-bit G component in byte 1, and an 8-bit R component in byte 2.

• **VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_SNORM** specifies a three-component, 24-bit signed normalized format that has an 8-bit B component in byte 0, an 8-bit G component in byte 1, and an 8-bit R component in byte 2.

• **VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_USCALED** specifies a three-component, 24-bit unsigned scaled format that has an 8-bit B component in byte 0, an 8-bit G component in byte 1, and an 8-bit R component in byte 2.

• **VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_SSCALED** specifies a three-component, 24-bit signed scaled format that has an 8-bit B component in byte 0, an 8-bit G component in byte 1, and an 8-bit R component in byte 2.

• **VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_UINT** specifies a three-component, 24-bit unsigned integer format that has an 8-bit B component in byte 0, an 8-bit G component in byte 1, and an 8-bit R component in byte 2.

• **VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_SINT** specifies a three-component, 24-bit signed integer format that has an 8-bit B component in byte 0, an 8-bit G component in byte 1, and an 8-bit R component in byte 2.

• **VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_SRGB** specifies a three-component, 24-bit unsigned normalized format that has an 8-bit B component stored with sRGB nonlinear encoding in byte 0, an 8-bit G component stored with sRGB nonlinear encoding in byte 1, and an 8-bit R component stored with sRGB nonlinear encoding in byte 2.

• **VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8A8_UNORM** specifies a four-component, 32-bit unsigned normalized format that has an 8-bit R component in byte 0, an 8-bit G component in byte 1, an 8-bit B component in byte 2, and an 8-bit A component in byte 3.

• **VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8A8_SNORM** specifies a four-component, 32-bit signed normalized format that has an 8-bit R component in byte 0, an 8-bit G component in byte 1, an 8-bit B component in byte 2, and an 8-bit A component in byte 3.

• **VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8A8_USCALED** specifies a four-component, 32-bit unsigned scaled format that has an 8-bit R component in byte 0, an 8-bit G component in byte 1, an 8-bit B component in byte 2, and an 8-bit A component in byte 3.

• **VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8A8_SSCALED** specifies a four-component, 32-bit signed scaled format that has an 8-bit R component in byte 0, an 8-bit G component in byte 1, an 8-bit B component in byte 2, and an 8-bit A component in byte 3.

• **VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8A8_UINT** specifies a four-component, 32-bit unsigned integer format that has an 8-bit R component in byte 0, an 8-bit G component in byte 1, an 8-bit B component in byte 2, and an 8-bit A component in byte 3.

• **VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8A8_SINT** specifies a four-component, 32-bit signed integer format that has an 8-bit R component in byte 0, an 8-bit G component in byte 1, an 8-bit B component in byte 2, and an 8-bit A component in byte 3.
• **VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8A8_SRGB** specifies a four-component, 32-bit unsigned normalized format that has an 8-bit R component stored with sRGB nonlinear encoding in byte 0, an 8-bit G component stored with sRGB nonlinear encoding in byte 1, an 8-bit B component stored with sRGB nonlinear encoding in byte 2, and an 8-bit A component in byte 3.

• **VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8A8_UNORM** specifies a four-component, 32-bit unsigned normalized format that has an 8-bit B component in byte 0, an 8-bit G component in byte 1, an 8-bit R component in byte 2, and an 8-bit A component in byte 3.

• **VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8A8_SNORM** specifies a four-component, 32-bit signed normalized format that has an 8-bit B component in byte 0, an 8-bit G component in byte 1, an 8-bit R component in byte 2, and an 8-bit A component in byte 3.

• **VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8A8_USCALED** specifies a four-component, 32-bit unsigned scaled format that has an 8-bit B component in byte 0, an 8-bit G component in byte 1, an 8-bit R component in byte 2, and an 8-bit A component in byte 3.

• **VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8A8_SSCALED** specifies a four-component, 32-bit signed scaled format that has an 8-bit B component in byte 0, an 8-bit G component in byte 1, an 8-bit R component in byte 2, and an 8-bit A component in byte 3.

• **VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8A8_UINT** specifies a four-component, 32-bit unsigned integer format that has an 8-bit B component in byte 0, an 8-bit G component in byte 1, an 8-bit R component in byte 2, and an 8-bit A component in byte 3.

• **VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8A8_SINT** specifies a four-component, 32-bit signed integer format that has an 8-bit B component in byte 0, an 8-bit G component in byte 1, an 8-bit R component in byte 2, and an 8-bit A component in byte 3.

• **VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8A8_SRGB** specifies a four-component, 32-bit unsigned normalized format that has an 8-bit B component stored with sRGB nonlinear encoding in byte 0, an 8-bit G component stored with sRGB nonlinear encoding in byte 1, an 8-bit R component stored with sRGB nonlinear encoding in byte 2, and an 8-bit A component in byte 3.

• **VK_FORMAT_A8B8G8R8_UNORM_PACK32** specifies a four-component, 32-bit packed unsigned normalized format that has an 8-bit A component in bits 24..31, an 8-bit B component in bits 16..23, an 8-bit G component in bits 8..15, and an 8-bit R component in bits 0..7.

• **VK_FORMAT_A8B8G8R8_SNORM_PACK32** specifies a four-component, 32-bit packed signed normalized format that has an 8-bit A component in bits 24..31, an 8-bit B component in bits 16..23, an 8-bit G component in bits 8..15, and an 8-bit R component in bits 0..7.

• **VK_FORMAT_A8B8G8R8_USCALED_PACK32** specifies a four-component, 32-bit packed unsigned scaled integer format that has an 8-bit A component in bits 24..31, an 8-bit B component in bits 16..23, an 8-bit G component in bits 8..15, and an 8-bit R component in bits 0..7.

• **VK_FORMAT_A8B8G8R8_SSCALED_PACK32** specifies a four-component, 32-bit packed signed scaled integer format that has an 8-bit A component in bits 24..31, an 8-bit B component in bits 16..23, an 8-bit G component in bits 8..15, and an 8-bit R component in bits 0..7.

• **VK_FORMAT_A8B8G8R8_UINT_PACK32** specifies a four-component, 32-bit packed unsigned integer format that has an 8-bit A component in bits 24..31, an 8-bit B component in bits 16..23, an 8-bit G component in bits 8..15, and an 8-bit R component in bits 0..7.

• **VK_FORMAT_A8B8G8R8_SINT_PACK32** specifies a four-component, 32-bit packed signed integer format that has an 8-bit A component in bits 24..31, an 8-bit B component in bits 16..23, an 8-bit G component in bits 8..15, and an 8-bit R component in bits 0..7.
component in bits 8..15, and an 8-bit R component in bits 0..7.

- **VK_FORMAT_A8B8G8R8_SRGB_PACK32** specifies a four-component, 32-bit packed unsigned normalized format that has an 8-bit A component in bits 24..31, an 8-bit B component stored with sRGB nonlinear encoding in bits 16..23, an 8-bit G component stored with sRGB nonlinear encoding in bits 8..15, and an 8-bit R component stored with sRGB nonlinear encoding in bits 0..7.

- **VK_FORMAT_A2R10G10B10_UNORM_PACK32** specifies a four-component, 32-bit packed unsigned normalized format that has a 2-bit A component in bits 30..31, a 10-bit R component in bits 20..29, a 10-bit G component in bits 10..19, and a 10-bit B component in bits 0..9.

- **VK_FORMAT_A2R10G10B10_SNORM_PACK32** specifies a four-component, 32-bit packed signed normalized format that has a 2-bit A component in bits 30..31, a 10-bit R component in bits 20..29, a 10-bit G component in bits 10..19, and a 10-bit B component in bits 0..9.

- **VK_FORMAT_A2R10G10B10_USCALED_PACK32** specifies a four-component, 32-bit packed unsigned scaled integer format that has a 2-bit A component in bits 30..31, a 10-bit R component in bits 20..29, a 10-bit G component in bits 10..19, and a 10-bit B component in bits 0..9.

- **VK_FORMAT_A2R10G10B10_SSCALED_PACK32** specifies a four-component, 32-bit packed signed scaled integer format that has a 2-bit A component in bits 30..31, a 10-bit R component in bits 20..29, a 10-bit G component in bits 10..19, and a 10-bit B component in bits 0..9.

- **VK_FORMAT_A2R10G10B10_UINT_PACK32** specifies a four-component, 32-bit packed unsigned integer format that has a 2-bit A component in bits 30..31, a 10-bit R component in bits 20..29, a 10-bit G component in bits 10..19, and a 10-bit B component in bits 0..9.

- **VK_FORMAT_A2R10G10B10_SINT_PACK32** specifies a four-component, 32-bit packed signed integer format that has a 2-bit A component in bits 30..31, a 10-bit R component in bits 20..29, a 10-bit G component in bits 10..19, and a 10-bit B component in bits 0..9.

- **VK_FORMAT_A2B10G10R10_UNORM_PACK32** specifies a four-component, 32-bit packed unsigned normalized format that has a 2-bit A component in bits 30..31, a 10-bit R component in bits 20..29, a 10-bit G component in bits 10..19, and a 10-bit B component in bits 0..9.

- **VK_FORMAT_A2B10G10R10_SNORM_PACK32** specifies a four-component, 32-bit packed signed normalized format that has a 2-bit A component in bits 30..31, a 10-bit R component in bits 20..29, a 10-bit G component in bits 10..19, and a 10-bit B component in bits 0..9.

- **VK_FORMAT_A2B10G10R10_USCALED_PACK32** specifies a four-component, 32-bit packed unsigned scaled integer format that has a 2-bit A component in bits 30..31, a 10-bit R component in bits 20..29, a 10-bit G component in bits 10..19, and a 10-bit B component in bits 0..9.

- **VK_FORMAT_A2B10G10R10_SSCALED_PACK32** specifies a four-component, 32-bit packed signed scaled integer format that has a 2-bit A component in bits 30..31, a 10-bit R component in bits 20..29, a 10-bit G component in bits 10..19, and a 10-bit B component in bits 0..9.

- **VK_FORMAT_A2B10G10R10_UINT_PACK32** specifies a four-component, 32-bit packed unsigned integer format that has a 2-bit A component in bits 30..31, a 10-bit R component in bits 20..29, a 10-bit G component in bits 10..19, and a 10-bit B component in bits 0..9.

- **VK_FORMAT_A2B10G10R10_SINT_PACK32** specifies a four-component, 32-bit packed signed integer format that has a 2-bit A component in bits 30..31, a 10-bit R component in bits 20..29, a 10-bit G component in bits 10..19, and a 10-bit B component in bits 0..9.

- **VK_FORMAT_R16_UNORM** specifies a one-component, 16-bit unsigned normalized format that has a
single 16-bit R component.

- **VK_FORMAT_R16_SNORM** specifies a one-component, 16-bit signed normalized format that has a single 16-bit R component.
- **VK_FORMAT_R16_USCALED** specifies a one-component, 16-bit unsigned scaled integer format that has a single 16-bit R component.
- **VK_FORMAT_R16_SSCALED** specifies a one-component, 16-bit signed scaled integer format that has a single 16-bit R component.
- **VK_FORMAT_R16_UINT** specifies a one-component, 16-bit unsigned integer format that has a single 16-bit R component.
- **VK_FORMAT_R16_SINT** specifies a one-component, 16-bit signed integer format that has a single 16-bit R component.
- **VK_FORMAT_R16_SFLOAT** specifies a one-component, 16-bit signed floating-point format that has a single 16-bit R component.
- **VK_FORMAT_R16G16_UNORM** specifies a two-component, 32-bit unsigned normalized format that has a 16-bit R component in bytes 0..1, and a 16-bit G component in bytes 2..3.
- **VK_FORMAT_R16G16_SNORM** specifies a two-component, 32-bit signed normalized format that has a 16-bit R component in bytes 0..1, and a 16-bit G component in bytes 2..3.
- **VK_FORMAT_R16G16_USCALED** specifies a two-component, 32-bit unsigned scaled integer format that has a 16-bit R component in bytes 0..1, and a 16-bit G component in bytes 2..3.
- **VK_FORMAT_R16G16_SSCALED** specifies a two-component, 32-bit signed scaled integer format that has a 16-bit R component in bytes 0..1, and a 16-bit G component in bytes 2..3.
- **VK_FORMAT_R16G16_UINT** specifies a two-component, 32-bit unsigned integer format that has a 16-bit R component in bytes 0..1, and a 16-bit G component in bytes 2..3.
- **VK_FORMAT_R16G16_SINT** specifies a two-component, 32-bit signed integer format that has a 16-bit R component in bytes 0..1, and a 16-bit G component in bytes 2..3.
- **VK_FORMAT_R16G16_SFLOAT** specifies a two-component, 32-bit signed floating-point format that has a 16-bit R component in bytes 0..1, and a 16-bit G component in bytes 2..3.
- **VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16_UNORM** specifies a three-component, 48-bit unsigned normalized format that has a 16-bit R component in bytes 0..1, a 16-bit G component in bytes 2..3, and a 16-bit B component in bytes 4..5.
- **VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16_SNORM** specifies a three-component, 48-bit signed normalized format that has a 16-bit R component in bytes 0..1, a 16-bit G component in bytes 2..3, and a 16-bit B component in bytes 4..5.
- **VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16_USCALED** specifies a three-component, 48-bit unsigned scaled integer format that has a 16-bit R component in bytes 0..1, a 16-bit G component in bytes 2..3, and a 16-bit B component in bytes 4..5.
- **VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16_SSCALED** specifies a three-component, 48-bit signed scaled integer format that has a 16-bit R component in bytes 0..1, a 16-bit G component in bytes 2..3, and a 16-bit B component in bytes 4..5.
- **VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16_UINT** specifies a three-component, 48-bit unsigned integer format that has a 16-bit R component in bytes 0..1, a 16-bit G component in bytes 2..3, and a 16-bit B component in bytes 4..5.
• **VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16_SINT** specifies a three-component, 48-bit signed integer format that has a 16-bit R component in bytes 0..1, a 16-bit G component in bytes 2..3, and a 16-bit B component in bytes 4..5.

• **VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16_SFLOAT** specifies a three-component, 48-bit signed floating-point format that has a 16-bit R component in bytes 0..1, a 16-bit G component in bytes 2..3, and a 16-bit B component in bytes 4..5.

• **VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16A16_UNORM** specifies a four-component, 64-bit unsigned normalized format that has a 16-bit R component in bytes 0..1, a 16-bit G component in bytes 2..3, a 16-bit B component in bytes 4..5, and a 16-bit A component in bytes 6..7.

• **VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16A16_SNORM** specifies a four-component, 64-bit signed normalized format that has a 16-bit R component in bytes 0..1, a 16-bit G component in bytes 2..3, a 16-bit B component in bytes 4..5, and a 16-bit A component in bytes 6..7.

• **VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16A16_USCALED** specifies a four-component, 64-bit unsigned scaled integer format that has a 16-bit R component in bytes 0..1, a 16-bit G component in bytes 2..3, a 16-bit B component in bytes 4..5, and a 16-bit A component in bytes 6..7.

• **VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16A16_SSCALED** specifies a four-component, 64-bit signed scaled integer format that has a 16-bit R component in bytes 0..1, a 16-bit G component in bytes 2..3, a 16-bit B component in bytes 4..5, and a 16-bit A component in bytes 6..7.

• **VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16A16_UINT** specifies a four-component, 64-bit unsigned integer format that has a 16-bit R component in bytes 0..1, a 16-bit G component in bytes 2..3, a 16-bit B component in bytes 4..5, and a 16-bit A component in bytes 6..7.

• **VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16A16_SINT** specifies a four-component, 64-bit signed integer format that has a 16-bit R component in bytes 0..1, a 16-bit G component in bytes 2..3, a 16-bit B component in bytes 4..5, and a 16-bit A component in bytes 6..7.

• **VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16A16_SFLOAT** specifies a four-component, 64-bit signed floating-point format that has a 16-bit R component in bytes 0..1, a 16-bit G component in bytes 2..3, a 16-bit B component in bytes 4..5, and a 16-bit A component in bytes 6..7.

• **VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16A16_UNORM** specifies a four-component, 64-bit unsigned normalized format that has a 16-bit R component in bytes 0..1, a 16-bit G component in bytes 2..3, a 16-bit B component in bytes 4..5, and a 16-bit A component in bytes 6..7.

• **VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16A16_SNORM** specifies a four-component, 64-bit signed normalized format that has a 16-bit R component in bytes 0..1, a 16-bit G component in bytes 2..3, a 16-bit B component in bytes 4..5, and a 16-bit A component in bytes 6..7.

• **VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16A16_USCALED** specifies a four-component, 64-bit unsigned scaled integer format that has a 16-bit R component in bytes 0..1, a 16-bit G component in bytes 2..3, a 16-bit B component in bytes 4..5, and a 16-bit A component in bytes 6..7.

• **VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16A16_SSCALED** specifies a four-component, 64-bit signed scaled integer format that has a 16-bit R component in bytes 0..1, a 16-bit G component in bytes 2..3, a 16-bit B component in bytes 4..5, and a 16-bit A component in bytes 6..7.

• **VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16A16_UINT** specifies a four-component, 64-bit unsigned integer format that has a 16-bit R component in bytes 0..1, a 16-bit G component in bytes 2..3, a 16-bit B component in bytes 4..5, and a 16-bit A component in bytes 6..7.

• **VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16A16_SINT** specifies a four-component, 64-bit signed integer format that has a 16-bit R component in bytes 0..1, a 16-bit G component in bytes 2..3, a 16-bit B component in bytes 4..5, and a 16-bit A component in bytes 6..7.

• **VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16A16_SFLOAT** specifies a four-component, 64-bit signed floating-point format that has a 16-bit R component in bytes 0..1, a 16-bit G component in bytes 2..3, a 16-bit B component in bytes 4..5, and a 16-bit A component in bytes 6..7.

• **VK_FORMAT_R32_UINT** specifies a one-component, 32-bit unsigned integer format that has a single 32-bit R component.

• **VK_FORMAT_R32_SINT** specifies a one-component, 32-bit signed integer format that has a single 32-bit R component.

• **VK_FORMAT_R32_SFLOAT** specifies a one-component, 32-bit signed floating-point format that has a single 32-bit R component.

• **VK_FORMAT_R32G32_UINT** specifies a two-component, 64-bit unsigned integer format that has a 32-bit R component in bytes 0..3, and a 32-bit G component in bytes 4..7.

• **VK_FORMAT_R32G32_SINT** specifies a two-component, 64-bit signed integer format that has a 32-bit R component in bytes 0..3, and a 32-bit G component in bytes 4..7.

• **VK_FORMAT_R32G32_SFLOAT** specifies a two-component, 64-bit signed floating-point format that has a 32-bit R component in bytes 0..3, and a 32-bit G component in bytes 4..7.

• **VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32_UINT** specifies a three-component, 96-bit unsigned integer format that has a 32-bit R component in bytes 0..3, a 32-bit G component in bytes 4..7, and a 32-bit B component in bytes 6..7.
• **VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32_SINT** specifies a three-component, 96-bit signed integer format that has a 32-bit R component in bytes 0..3, a 32-bit G component in bytes 4..7, and a 32-bit B component in bytes 8..11.

• **VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32_SFLOAT** specifies a three-component, 96-bit signed floating-point format that has a 32-bit R component in bytes 0..3, a 32-bit G component in bytes 4..7, and a 32-bit B component in bytes 8..11.

• **VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32A32_UINT** specifies a four-component, 128-bit unsigned integer format that has a 32-bit R component in bytes 0..3, a 32-bit G component in bytes 4..7, a 32-bit B component in bytes 8..11, and a 32-bit A component in bytes 12..15.

• **VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32A32_SINT** specifies a four-component, 128-bit signed integer format that has a 32-bit R component in bytes 0..3, a 32-bit G component in bytes 4..7, a 32-bit B component in bytes 8..11, and a 32-bit A component in bytes 12..15.

• **VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32A32_SFLOAT** specifies a four-component, 128-bit signed floating-point format that has a 32-bit R component in bytes 0..3, a 32-bit G component in bytes 4..7, a 32-bit B component in bytes 8..11, and a 32-bit A component in bytes 12..15.

• **VK_FORMAT_R64_UINT** specifies a one-component, 64-bit unsigned integer format that has a single 64-bit R component.

• **VK_FORMAT_R64_SINT** specifies a one-component, 64-bit signed integer format that has a single 64-bit R component.

• **VK_FORMAT_R64_SFLOAT** specifies a one-component, 64-bit signed floating-point format that has a single 64-bit R component.

• **VK_FORMAT_R64G64_UINT** specifies a two-component, 128-bit unsigned integer format that has a 64-bit R component in bytes 0..7, and a 64-bit G component in bytes 8..15.

• **VK_FORMAT_R64G64_SINT** specifies a two-component, 128-bit signed integer format that has a 64-bit R component in bytes 0..7, and a 64-bit G component in bytes 8..15.

• **VK_FORMAT_R64G64_SFLOAT** specifies a two-component, 128-bit signed floating-point format that has a 64-bit R component in bytes 0..7, and a 64-bit G component in bytes 8..15.

• **VK_FORMAT_R64G64B64_UINT** specifies a three-component, 192-bit unsigned integer format that has a 64-bit R component in bytes 0..7, a 64-bit G component in bytes 8..15, and a 64-bit B component in bytes 16..23.

• **VK_FORMAT_R64G64B64_SINT** specifies a three-component, 192-bit signed integer format that has a 64-bit R component in bytes 0..7, a 64-bit G component in bytes 8..15, and a 64-bit B component in bytes 16..23.

• **VK_FORMAT_R64G64B64_SFLOAT** specifies a three-component, 192-bit signed floating-point format that has a 64-bit R component in bytes 0..7, a 64-bit G component in bytes 8..15, and a 64-bit B component in bytes 16..23.

• **VK_FORMAT_R64G64B64A64_UINT** specifies a four-component, 256-bit unsigned integer format that has a 64-bit R component in bytes 0..7, a 64-bit G component in bytes 8..15, a 64-bit B component in bytes 16..23, and a 64-bit A component in bytes 24..31.

• **VK_FORMAT_R64G64B64A64_SINT** specifies a four-component, 256-bit signed integer format that has a 64-bit R component in bytes 0..7, a 64-bit G component in bytes 8..15, a 64-bit B component in bytes 16..23, and a 64-bit A component in bytes 24..31.
bytes 16..23, and a 64-bit A component in bytes 24..31.

- **VK_FORMAT_R64G64B64A64_SFLOAT** specifies a four-component, 256-bit signed floating-point format that has a 64-bit R component in bytes 0..7, a 64-bit G component in bytes 8..15, a 64-bit B component in bytes 16..23, and a 64-bit A component in bytes 24..31.

- **VK_FORMAT_B10G11R11_UFLOAT_PACK32** specifies a three-component, 32-bit packed unsigned floating-point format that has a 10-bit B component in bits 22..31, an 11-bit G component in bits 11..21, an 11-bit R component in bits 0..10. See *Unsigned 10-Bit Floating-Point Numbers* and *Unsigned 11-Bit Floating-Point Numbers*.

- **VK_FORMAT_E5B9G9R9_UFLOAT_PACK32** specifies a three-component, 32-bit packed unsigned floating-point format that has a 5-bit shared exponent in bits 27..31, a 9-bit B component mantissa in bits 18..26, a 9-bit G component mantissa in bits 9..17, and a 9-bit R component mantissa in bits 0..8.

- **VK_FORMAT_D16_UNORM** specifies a one-component, 16-bit unsigned normalized format that has a single 16-bit depth component.

- **VK_FORMAT_X8_D24_UNORM_PACK32** specifies a two-component, 32-bit format that has 24 unsigned normalized bits in the depth component and, **optionally**, 8 bits that are unused.

- **VK_FORMAT_D32_SFLOAT** specifies a one-component, 32-bit signed floating-point format that has 32 bits in the depth component.

- **VK_FORMAT_S8_UINT** specifies a one-component, 8-bit unsigned integer format that has 8 bits in the stencil component.

- **VK_FORMAT_D16_UNORM_S8_UINT** specifies a two-component, 24-bit format that has 16 unsigned normalized bits in the depth component and 8 unsigned integer bits in the stencil component.

- **VK_FORMAT_D24_UNORM_S8_UINT** specifies a two-component, 32-bit packed format that has 8 unsigned integer bits in the stencil component, and 24 unsigned normalized bits in the depth component.

- **VK_FORMAT_D32_SFLOAT_S8_UINT** specifies a two-component format that has 32 signed float bits in the depth component and 8 unsigned integer bits in the stencil component. There are **optionally** 24 bits that are unused.

- **VK_FORMAT_BC1_RGB_UNORM_BLOCK** specifies a three-component, block-compressed format where each 64-bit compressed texel block encodes a 4×4 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGB texel data. This format has no alpha and is considered opaque.

- **VK_FORMAT_BC1_RGB_SRGB_BLOCK** specifies a three-component, block-compressed format where each 64-bit compressed texel block encodes a 4×4 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGB texel data with sRGB nonlinear encoding. This format has no alpha and is considered opaque.

- **VK_FORMAT_BC1_RGBA_UNORM_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, block-compressed format where each 64-bit compressed texel block encodes a 4×4 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGB texel data, and provides 1 bit of alpha.

- **VK_FORMAT_BC1_RGBA_SRGB_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, block-compressed format where each 64-bit compressed texel block encodes a 4×4 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data with sRGB nonlinear encoding, and provides 1 bit of alpha.

- **VK_FORMAT_BC2_UNORM_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, block-compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a 4×4 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data with the first 64 bits encoding alpha values followed by 64 bits encoding RGB values.
• **VK_FORMAT_BC2_SRGB_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, block-compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a 4×4 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data with the first 64 bits encoding alpha values followed by 64 bits encoding RGB values with sRGB nonlinear encoding.

• **VK_FORMAT_BC3_UNORM_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, block-compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a 4×4 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data with the first 64 bits encoding alpha values followed by 64 bits encoding RGB values.

• **VK_FORMAT_BC3_SRGB_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, block-compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a 4×4 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data with the first 64 bits encoding alpha values followed by 64 bits encoding RGB values with sRGB nonlinear encoding.

• **VK_FORMAT_BC4_UNORM_BLOCK** specifies a one-component, block-compressed format where each 64-bit compressed texel block encodes a 4×4 rectangle of unsigned normalized red texel data.

• **VK_FORMAT_BC4_SNORM_BLOCK** specifies a one-component, block-compressed format where each 64-bit compressed texel block encodes a 4×4 rectangle of signed normalized red texel data.

• **VK_FORMAT_BC5_UNORM_BLOCK** specifies a two-component, block-compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a 4×4 rectangle of unsigned normalized RG texel data with the first 64 bits encoding red values followed by 64 bits encoding green values.

• **VK_FORMAT_BC5_SNORM_BLOCK** specifies a two-component, block-compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a 4×4 rectangle of signed normalized RG texel data with the first 64 bits encoding red values followed by 64 bits encoding green values.

• **VK_FORMAT_BC6H_UFLOAT_BLOCK** specifies a three-component, block-compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a 4×4 rectangle of unsigned floating-point RGB texel data.

• **VK_FORMAT_BC6H_SFLOAT_BLOCK** specifies a three-component, block-compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a 4×4 rectangle of signed floating-point RGB texel data.

• **VK_FORMAT_BC7_UNORM_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, block-compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a 4×4 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data.

• **VK_FORMAT_BC7_SRGB_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, block-compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a 4×4 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data with sRGB nonlinear encoding applied to the RGB components.

• **VK_FORMAT_ETC2_R8G8B8_UNORM_BLOCK** specifies a three-component, ETC2 compressed format where each 64-bit compressed texel block encodes a 4×4 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGB texel data. This format has no alpha and is considered opaque.

• **VK_FORMAT_ETC2_R8G8B8_SRGB_BLOCK** specifies a three-component, ETC2 compressed format where each 64-bit compressed texel block encodes a 4×4 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGB texel data with sRGB nonlinear encoding. This format has no alpha and is considered opaque.

• **VK_FORMAT_ETC2_R8G8B8A1_UNORM_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, ETC2 compressed format where each 64-bit compressed texel block encodes a 4×4 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGB texel data, and provides 1 bit of alpha.

• **VK_FORMAT_ETC2_R8G8B8A1_SRGB_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, ETC2 compressed format...
where each 64-bit compressed texel block encodes a $4 \times 4$ rectangle of unsigned normalized RGB texel data with sRGB nonlinear encoding, and provides 1 bit of alpha.

- **VK_FORMAT_ETC2_R8G8B8A8_UNORM_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, ETC2 compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a $4 \times 4$ rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data with the first 64 bits encoding alpha values followed by 64 bits encoding RGB values.

- **VK_FORMAT_ETC2_R8G8B8A8_SRGB_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, ETC2 compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a $4 \times 4$ rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data with the first 64 bits encoding alpha values followed by 64 bits encoding RGB values with sRGB nonlinear encoding applied.

- **VK_FORMAT_EAC_R11_UNORM_BLOCK** specifies a one-component, ETC2 compressed format where each 64-bit compressed texel block encodes a $4 \times 4$ rectangle of unsigned normalized red texel data.

- **VK_FORMAT_EAC_R11_SNORM_BLOCK** specifies a one-component, ETC2 compressed format where each 64-bit compressed texel block encodes a $4 \times 4$ rectangle of signed normalized red texel data.

- **VK_FORMAT_EAC_R11G11_UNORM_BLOCK** specifies a two-component, ETC2 compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a $4 \times 4$ rectangle of unsigned normalized RG texel data with the first 64 bits encoding red values followed by 64 bits encoding green values.

- **VK_FORMAT_EAC_R11G11_SNORM_BLOCK** specifies a two-component, ETC2 compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a $4 \times 4$ rectangle of signed normalized RG texel data with the first 64 bits encoding red values followed by 64 bits encoding green values.

- **VK_FORMAT_ASTC_4x4_UNORM_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, ASTC compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a $4 \times 4$ rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data.

- **VK_FORMAT_ASTC_4x4_SRGB_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, ASTC compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a $4 \times 4$ rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data with sRGB nonlinear encoding applied to the RGB components.

- **VK_FORMAT_ASTC_5x4_UNORM_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, ASTC compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a $5 \times 4$ rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data.

- **VK_FORMAT_ASTC_5x4_SRGB_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, ASTC compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a $5 \times 4$ rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data with sRGB nonlinear encoding applied to the RGB components.

- **VK_FORMAT_ASTC_5x5_UNORM_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, ASTC compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a $5 \times 5$ rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data.

- **VK_FORMAT_ASTC_5x5_SRGB_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, ASTC compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a $5 \times 5$ rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data with sRGB nonlinear encoding applied to the RGB components.

- **VK_FORMAT_ASTC_6x5_UNORM_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, ASTC compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a $6 \times 5$ rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data.

- **VK_FORMAT_ASTC_6x5_SRGB_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, ASTC compressed format where
each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a 6×5 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data with sRGB nonlinear encoding applied to the RGB components.

- **VK_FORMAT_ASTC_6x6_UNORM_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, ASTC compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a 6×6 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data.

- **VK_FORMAT_ASTC_6x6_SRGB_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, ASTC compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a 6×6 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data with sRGB nonlinear encoding applied to the RGB components.

- **VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x5_UNORM_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, ASTC compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes an 8×5 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data.

- **VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x5_SRGB_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, ASTC compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes an 8×5 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data with sRGB nonlinear encoding applied to the RGB components.

- **VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x6_UNORM_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, ASTC compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes an 8×6 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data.

- **VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x6_SRGB_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, ASTC compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes an 8×6 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data with sRGB nonlinear encoding applied to the RGB components.

- **VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x8_UNORM_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, ASTC compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes an 8×8 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data.

- **VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x8_SRGB_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, ASTC compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes an 8×8 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data with sRGB nonlinear encoding applied to the RGB components.

- **VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x5_UNORM_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, ASTC compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a 10×5 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data.

- **VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x5_SRGB_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, ASTC compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a 10×5 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data with sRGB nonlinear encoding applied to the RGB components.

- **VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x6_UNORM_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, ASTC compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a 10×6 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data.

- **VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x6_SRGB_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, ASTC compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a 10×6 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data with sRGB nonlinear encoding applied to the RGB components.

- **VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x8_UNORM_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, ASTC compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a 10×8 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data.

- **VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x8_SRGB_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, ASTC compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a 10×8 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data with sRGB nonlinear encoding applied to the RGB components.
each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a 10×8 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data with sRGB nonlinear encoding applied to the RGB components.

- **VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x10_UNORM_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, ASTC compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a 10×10 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data.

- **VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x10_SRGB_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, ASTC compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a 10×10 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data with sRGB nonlinear encoding applied to the RGB components.

- **VK_FORMAT_ASTC_12x10_UNORM_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, ASTC compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a 12×10 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data.

- **VK_FORMAT_ASTC_12x10_SRGB_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, ASTC compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a 12×10 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data with sRGB nonlinear encoding applied to the RGB components.

- **VK_FORMAT_ASTC_12x12_UNORM_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, ASTC compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a 12×12 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data.

- **VK_FORMAT_ASTC_12x12_SRGB_BLOCK** specifies a four-component, ASTC compressed format where each 128-bit compressed texel block encodes a 12×12 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGBA texel data with sRGB nonlinear encoding applied to the RGB components.

- **VK_FORMAT_G8B8G8R8_422_UNORM** specifies a four-component, 32-bit format containing a pair of G components, an R component, and a B component, collectively encoding a 2×1 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGB texel data. One G value is present at each i coordinate, with the B and R values shared across both G values and thus recorded at half the horizontal resolution of the image. This format has an 8-bit G component for the even i coordinate in byte 0, an 8-bit B component in byte 1, an 8-bit G component for the odd i coordinate in byte 2, and an 8-bit R component in byte 3. This format only supports images with a width that is a multiple of two. For the purposes of the constraints on copy extents, this format is treated as a compressed format with a 2×1 compressed texel block.

- **VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8G8_422_UNORM** specifies a four-component, 32-bit format containing a pair of G components, an R component, and a B component, collectively encoding a 2×1 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGB texel data. One G value is present at each i coordinate, with the B and R values shared across both G values and thus recorded at half the horizontal resolution of the image. This format has an 8-bit B component in byte 0, an 8-bit G component for the even i coordinate in byte 1, an 8-bit R component in byte 2, and an 8-bit G component for the odd i coordinate in byte 3. This format only supports images with a width that is a multiple of two. For the purposes of the constraints on copy extents, this format is treated as a compressed format with a 2×1 compressed texel block.

- **VK_FORMAT_G8B8R8G8_3PLANE_420_UNORM** specifies an unsigned normalized multi-planar format that has an 8-bit G component in plane 0, an 8-bit B component in plane 1, and an 8-bit R component in plane 2. The horizontal and vertical dimensions of the R and B planes are halved relative to the image dimensions, and each R and B component is shared with the G components for which \(|i_0 \times 0.5| = i_B = i_R\) and \(|j_0 \times 0.5| = j_B = j_R\). The location of each plane when this image is in linear layout can be determined via **vkGetImageSubresourceLayout**, using
VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT for the G plane, VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT for the B plane, and VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT for the R plane. This format only supports images with a width and height that is a multiple of two.

- VK_FORMAT_G8_B8R8_2PLANE_420_UNORM specifies an unsigned normalized multi-planar format that has an 8-bit G component in plane 0, and a two-component, 16-bit BR plane 1 consisting of an 8-bit B component in byte 0 and an 8-bit R component in byte 1. The horizontal and vertical dimensions of the BR plane are halved relative to the image dimensions, and each R and B value is shared with the G components for which $|i_C \times 0.5| = i_B = i_R$. The location of each plane when this image is in linear layout can be determined via vkGetImageSubresourceLayout, using VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT for the G plane, and VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT for the BR plane. This format only supports images with a width and height that is a multiple of two.

- VK_FORMAT_G8_B8_R8_3PLANE_422_UNORM specifies an unsigned normalized multi-planar format that has an 8-bit G component in plane 0, an 8-bit B component in plane 1, and an 8-bit R component in plane 2. The horizontal dimension of the R and B plane is halved relative to the image dimensions, and each R and B value is shared with the G components for which $|i_C \times 0.5| = i_B = i_R$. The location of each plane when this image is in linear layout can be determined via vkGetImageSubresourceLayout, using VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT for the G plane, VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT for the B plane, and VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT for the R plane. This format only supports images with a width that is a multiple of two.

- VK_FORMAT_G8_B8R8_2PLANE_422_UNORM specifies an unsigned normalized multi-planar format that has an 8-bit G component in plane 0, and a two-component, 16-bit BR plane 1 consisting of an 8-bit B component in byte 0 and an 8-bit R component in byte 1. The horizontal dimension of the BR plane is halved relative to the image dimensions, and each R and B value is shared with the G components for which $|i_C \times 0.5| = i_B = i_R$. The location of each plane when this image is in linear layout can be determined via vkGetImageSubresourceLayout, using VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT for the G plane, and VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT for the BR plane. This format only supports images with a width that is a multiple of two.

- VK_FORMAT_G8_B8_R8_3PLANE_444_UNORM specifies an unsigned normalized multi-planar format that has an 8-bit G component in plane 0, an 8-bit B component in plane 1, and an 8-bit R component in plane 2. Each plane has the same dimensions and each R, G and B component contributes to a single texel. The location of each plane when this image is in linear layout can be determined via vkGetImageSubresourceLayout, using VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT for the G plane, VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT for the B plane, and VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT for the R plane.

- VK_FORMAT_R10X6_UNORM_PACK16 specifies a one-component, 16-bit unsigned normalized format that has a single 10-bit R component in the top 10 bits of a 16-bit word, with the bottom 6 bits unused.

- VK_FORMAT_R10X6G10X6_UNORM_2PACK16 specifies a two-component, 32-bit unsigned normalized format that has a 10-bit R component in the top 10 bits of the word in bytes 0..1, and a 10-bit G component in the top 10 bits of the word in bytes 2..3, with the bottom 6 bits of each word unused.

- VK_FORMAT_R10X6G10X6B10X6_A10X6_UNORM_4PACK16 specifies a four-component, 64-bit unsigned normalized format that has a 10-bit R component in the top 10 bits of the word in bytes 0..1, a 10-bit G component in the top 10 bits of the word in bytes 2..3, a 10-bit B component in the top 10 bits of the word in bytes 4..5, and a 10-bit A component in the top 10 bits of the word in bytes
6..7, with the bottom 6 bits of each word unused.

- **VK_FORMAT_G10X6B10X6G10X6R10X6_422_UNORM_4PACK16** specifies a four-component, 64-bit format containing a pair of G components, an R component, and a B component, collectively encoding a 2×1 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGB texel data. One G value is present at each \(i\) coordinate, with the B and R values shared across both G values and thus recorded at half the horizontal resolution of the image. This format has a 10-bit G component for the even \(i\) coordinate in the top 10 bits of the word in bytes 0..1, a 10-bit B component in the top 10 bits of the word in bytes 2..3, a 10-bit G component for the odd \(i\) coordinate in the top 10 bits of the word in bytes 4..5, and a 10-bit R component in the top 10 bits of the word in bytes 6..7, with the bottom 6 bits of each word unused. This format only supports images with a width that is a multiple of two. For the purposes of the constraints on copy extents, this format is treated as a compressed format with a 2×1 compressed texel block.

- **VK_FORMAT_B10X6G10X6R10X6G10X6_422_UNORM_4PACK16** specifies a four-component, 64-bit format containing a pair of G components, an R component, and a B component, collectively encoding a 2×1 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGB texel data. One G value is present at each \(i\) coordinate, with the B and R values shared across both G values and thus recorded at half the horizontal resolution of the image. This format has a 10-bit B component in the top 10 bits of the word in bytes 0..1, a 10-bit G component for the even \(i\) coordinate in the top 10 bits of the word in bytes 2..3, a 10-bit R component in the top 10 bits of the word in bytes 4..5, and a 10-bit G component for the odd \(i\) coordinate in the top 10 bits of the word in bytes 6..7, with the bottom 6 bits of each word unused. This format only supports images with a width that is a multiple of two. For the purposes of the constraints on copy extents, this format is treated as a compressed format with a 2×1 compressed texel block.

- **VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6R10X6_3PLANE_420_UNORM_3PACK16** specifies an unsigned normalized multi-planar format that has a 10-bit G component in the top 10 bits of each 16-bit word of plane 0, a 10-bit B component in the top 10 bits of each 16-bit word of plane 1, and a 10-bit R component in the top 10 bits of each 16-bit word of plane 2, with the bottom 6 bits of each word unused. The horizontal and vertical dimensions of the R and B planes are halved relative to the image dimensions, and each R and B component is shared with the G components for which \(i_C \times 0.5\) = \(i_R\), and \(i_C \times 0.5\) = \(i_B\). The location of each plane when this image is in linear layout can be determined via `vkGetImageSubresourceLayout`, using `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT` for the G plane, `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT` for the B plane, and `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT` for the R plane. This format only supports images with a width and height that is a multiple of two.

- **VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6R10X6_2PLANE_420_UNORM_3PACK16** specifies an unsigned normalized multi-planar format that has a 10-bit G component in the top 10 bits of each 16-bit word of plane 0, and a two-component, 32-bit BR plane 1 consisting of a 10-bit B component in the top 10 bits of the word in bytes 0..1, and a 10-bit R component in the top 10 bits of the word in bytes 2..3, with the bottom 6 bits of each word unused. The horizontal and vertical dimensions of the BR plane are halved relative to the image dimensions, and each R and B value is shared with the G components for which \(i_C \times 0.5\) = \(i_R\), and \(i_C \times 0.5\) = \(i_B\). The location of each plane when this image is in linear layout can be determined via `vkGetImageSubresourceLayout`, using `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT` for the G plane, and `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT` for the BR plane. This format only supports images with a width and height that is a multiple of two.

- **VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6_R10X6_3PLANE_422_UNORM_3PACK16** specifies an unsigned normalized multi-planar format that has a 10-bit G component in the top 10 bits of each 16-bit word of plane 0, a
10-bit B component in the top 10 bits of each 16-bit word of plane 1, and a 10-bit R component in the top 10 bits of each 16-bit word of plane 2, with the bottom 6 bits of each word unused. The horizontal dimension of the R and B plane is halved relative to the image dimensions, and each R and B value is shared with the G components for which \( |i_G \times 0.5| = i_R = i_B \). The location of each plane when this image is in linear layout can be determined via \( \text{vkGetImageSubresourceLayout} \), using \( \text{VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT} \) for the G plane, \( \text{VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT} \) for the B plane, and \( \text{VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT} \) for the R plane. This format only supports images with a width that is a multiple of two.

- **VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6R10X6_2PLANE_422_UNORM_3PACK16** specifies an unsigned normalized multi-planar format that has a 10-bit G component in the top 10 bits of each 16-bit word of plane 0, and a two-component, 32-bit BR plane 1 consisting of a 10-bit B component in the top 10 bits of the word in bytes 0..1, and a 10-bit R component in the top 10 bits of the word in bytes 2..3, with the bottom 6 bits of each word unused. The horizontal dimension of the BR plane is halved relative to the image dimensions, and each R and B value is shared with the G components for which \( |i_G \times 0.5| = i_B = i_R \). The location of each plane when this image is in linear layout can be determined via \( \text{vkGetImageSubresourceLayout} \), using \( \text{VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT} \) for the G plane, and \( \text{VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT} \) for the BR plane. This format only supports images with a width that is a multiple of two.

- **VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6_R10X6_3PLANE_444_UNORM_3PACK16** specifies an unsigned normalized multi-planar format that has a 10-bit G component in the top 10 bits of each 16-bit word of plane 0, a 10-bit B component in the top 10 bits of each 16-bit word of plane 1, and a 10-bit R component in the top 10 bits of each 16-bit word of plane 2, with the bottom 6 bits of each word unused. Each plane has the same dimensions and each R, G and B component contributes to a single texel. The location of each plane when this image is in linear layout can be determined via \( \text{vkGetImageSubresourceLayout} \), using \( \text{VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT} \) for the G plane, \( \text{VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT} \) for the B plane, and \( \text{VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT} \) for the R plane.

- **VK_FORMAT_R12X4_UNORM_PACK16** specifies a one-component, 16-bit unsigned normalized format that has a single 12-bit R component in the top 12 bits of a 16-bit word, with the bottom 4 bits unused.

- **VK_FORMAT_R12X4G12X4_UNORM_2PACK16** specifies a two-component, 32-bit unsigned normalized format that has a 12-bit R component in the top 12 bits of the word in bytes 0..1, and a 12-bit G component in the top 12 bits of the word in bytes 2..3, with the bottom 4 bits of each word unused.

- **VK_FORMAT_R12X4G12X4B12X4A12X4_UNORM_4PACK16** specifies a four-component, 64-bit unsigned normalized format that has a 12-bit R component in the top 12 bits of the word in bytes 0..1, a 12-bit G component in the top 12 bits of the word in bytes 2..3, a 12-bit B component in the top 12 bits of the word in bytes 4..5, and a 12-bit A component in the top 12 bits of the word in bytes 6..7, with the bottom 4 bits of each word unused.

- **VK_FORMAT_G12X4B12X4G12X4R12X4_422_UNORM_4PACK16** specifies a four-component, 64-bit format containing a pair of G components, an R component, and a B component, collectively encoding a 2×1 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGB texel data. One G value is present at each \( i \) coordinate, with the B and R values shared across both G values and thus recorded at half the horizontal resolution of the image. This format has a 12-bit G component for the even \( i \) coordinate in the top 12 bits of the word in bytes 0..1, a 12-bit B component in the top 12 bits of the word in bytes 2..3, a 12-bit G component for the odd \( i \) coordinate in the top 12 bits of the
word in bytes 4..5, and a 12-bit R component in the top 12 bits of the word in bytes 6..7, with the bottom 4 bits of each word unused. This format only supports images with a width that is a multiple of two. For the purposes of the constraints on copy extents, this format is treated as a compressed format with a 2×1 compressed texel block.

- **VK_FORMAT_B12X4G12X4R12X4G12X4_422_UNORM_4PACK16** specifies a four-component, 64-bit format containing a pair of G components, an R component, and a B component, collectively encoding a 2×1 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGB texel data. One G value is present at each i coordinate, with the B and R values shared across both G values and thus recorded at half the horizontal resolution of the image. This format has a 12-bit B component in the top 12 bits of the word in bytes 0..1, a 12-bit G component for the even i coordinate in the top 12 bits of the word in bytes 2..3, a 12-bit R component in the top 12 bits of the word in bytes 4..5, and a 12-bit G component for the odd i coordinate in the top 12 bits of the word in bytes 6..7, with the bottom 4 bits of each word unused. This format only supports images with a width that is a multiple of two. For the purposes of the constraints on copy extents, this format is treated as a compressed format with a 2×1 compressed texel block.

- **VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4_R12X4_3PLANE_420_UNORM_3PACK16** specifies an unsigned normalized *multi-planar format* that has a 12-bit G component in the top 12 bits of each 16-bit word of plane 0, a 12-bit B component in the top 12 bits of each 16-bit word of plane 1, and a 12-bit R component in the top 12 bits of each 16-bit word of plane 2, with the bottom 4 bits of each word unused. The horizontal and vertical dimensions of the R and B planes are halved relative to the image dimensions, and each R and B component is shared with the G components for which \(|ic \times 0.5| = ib = ir\) and \(|jc \times 0.5| = jB = jR\). The location of each plane when this image is in linear layout can be determined via `vkGetImageSubresourceLayout`, using `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT` for the G plane, `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT` for the B plane, and `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT` for the R plane. This format only supports images with a width and height that is a multiple of two.

- **VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4_R12X4_2PLANE_420_UNORM_3PACK16** specifies an unsigned normalized *multi-planar format* that has a 12-bit G component in the top 12 bits of each 16-bit word of plane 0, and a two-component, 32-bit BR plane 1 consisting of a 12-bit B component in the top 12 bits of the word in bytes 0..1, and a 12-bit R component in the top 12 bits of the word in bytes 2..3, with the bottom 4 bits of each word unused. The horizontal and vertical dimensions of the BR plane are halved relative to the image dimensions, and each R and B value is shared with the G components for which \(|ic \times 0.5| = ib = ir\) and \(|jc \times 0.5| = jB = jR\). The location of each plane when this image is in linear layout can be determined via `vkGetImageSubresourceLayout`, using `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT` for the G plane, and `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT` for the BR plane. This format only supports images with a width and height that is a multiple of two.

- **VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4_R12X4_3PLANE_422_UNORM_3PACK16** specifies an unsigned normalized *multi-planar format* that has a 12-bit G component in the top 12 bits of each 16-bit word of plane 0, a 12-bit B component in the top 12 bits of each 16-bit word of plane 1, and a 12-bit R component in the top 12 bits of each 16-bit word of plane 2, with the bottom 4 bits of each word unused. The horizontal dimension of the R and B plane is halved relative to the image dimensions, and each R and B value is shared with the G components for which \(|ic \times 0.5| = ib = ir\). The location of each plane when this image is in linear layout can be determined via `vkGetImageSubresourceLayout`, using `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT` for the G plane, `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT` for the B plane, and `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT` for the R plane. This format only supports images with a width that is a multiple of two.
VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4R12X4_2PLANE_422_UNORM_3PACK16 specifies an unsigned normalized multi-planar format that has a 12-bit G component in the top 12 bits of each 16-bit word of plane 0, and a two-component, 32-bit BR plane 1 consisting of a 12-bit B component in the top 12 bits of the word in bytes 0..1, and a 12-bit R component in the top 12 bits of the word in bytes 2..3, with the bottom 4 bits of each word unused. The horizontal dimension of the BR plane is halved relative to the image dimensions, and each R and B value is shared with the G components for which $I_G \times 0.5 = I_B = I_R$. The location of each plane when this image is in linear layout can be determined via vkGetImageSubresourceLayout, using VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT for the G plane, and VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT for the BR plane. This format only supports images with a width that is a multiple of two.

VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4_R12X4_3PLANE_444_UNORM_3PACK16 specifies an unsigned normalized multi-planar format that has a 12-bit G component in the top 12 bits of each 16-bit word of plane 0, a 12-bit B component in the top 12 bits of each 16-bit word of plane 1, and a 12-bit R component in the top 12 bits of each 16-bit word of plane 2, with the bottom 4 bits of each word unused. Each plane has the same dimensions and each R, G and B component contributes to a single texel. The location of each plane when this image is in linear layout can be determined via vkGetImageSubresourceLayout, using VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT for the G plane, VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT for the B plane, and VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT for the R plane.

VK_FORMAT_G16B16G16R16_422_UNORM specifies a four-component, 64-bit format containing a pair of G components, an R component, and a B component, collectively encoding a 2×1 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGB texel data. One G value is present at each i coordinate, with the B and R values shared across both G values and thus recorded at half the horizontal resolution of the image. This format has a 16-bit G component for the even i coordinate in the word in bytes 0..1, a 16-bit B component in the word in bytes 2..3, a 16-bit G component for the odd i coordinate in the word in bytes 4..5, and a 16-bit R component in the word in bytes 6..7. This format only supports images with a width that is a multiple of two. For the purposes of the constraints on copy extents, this format is treated as a compressed format with a 2×1 compressed texel block.

VK_FORMAT_B16G16R16G16_422_UNORM specifies a four-component, 64-bit format containing a pair of G components, an R component, and a B component, collectively encoding a 2×1 rectangle of unsigned normalized RGB texel data. One G value is present at each i coordinate, with the B and R values shared across both G values and thus recorded at half the horizontal resolution of the image. This format has a 16-bit B component in the word in bytes 0..1, a 16-bit G component for the even i coordinate in the word in bytes 2..3, a 16-bit R component in the word in bytes 4..5, and a 16-bit G component for the odd i coordinate in the word in bytes 6..7. This format only supports images with a width that is a multiple of two. For the purposes of the constraints on copy extents, this format is treated as a compressed format with a 2×1 compressed texel block.

VK_FORMAT_G16_B16R16_2PLANE_420_UNORM specifies an unsigned normalized multi-planar format that has a 16-bit G component in each 16-bit word of plane 0, a 16-bit B component in each 16-bit word of plane 1, and a 16-bit R component in each 16-bit word of plane 2. The horizontal and vertical dimensions of the R and B planes are halved relative to the image dimensions, and each R and B component is shared with the G components for which $I_G \times 0.5 = I_B = I_R$ and $J_G \times 0.5 = J_B = J_R$. The location of each plane when this image is in linear layout can be determined via vkGetImageSubresourceLayout, using VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT for the G plane, VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT for the B plane, and VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT for the R plane. This format only supports images with a width and height that is a multiple of two.

VK_FORMAT_G16_B16R16_2PLANE_420_UNORM specifies an unsigned normalized multi-planar format
that has a 16-bit G component in each 16-bit word of plane 0, and a two-component, 32-bit BR plane 1 consisting of a 16-bit B component in the word in bytes 0..1, and a 16-bit R component in the word in bytes 2..3. The horizontal and vertical dimensions of the BR plane are halved relative to the image dimensions, and each R and B value is shared with the G components for which \[ \lfloor C \times 0.5 \rfloor = i_B = i_R \] and \[ \lfloor J \times 0.5 \rfloor = J_B = J_R. \] The location of each plane when this image is in linear layout can be determined via `vkGetImageSubresourceLayout`, using `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT` for the G plane, and `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT` for the BR plane.

This format only supports images with a width and height that is a multiple of two.

- **VK_FORMAT_G16_B16R16_3PLANE_422_UNORM** specifies an unsigned normalized multi-planar format that has a 16-bit G component in each 16-bit word of plane 0, and a two-component, 32-bit BR plane 1 consisting of a 16-bit B component in the word in bytes 0..1, and a 16-bit R component in the word in bytes 2..3. The horizontal and vertical dimensions of the BR plane are halved relative to the image dimensions, and each R and B value is shared with the G components for which \[ \lfloor C \times 0.5 \rfloor = i_B = i_R \] and \[ \lfloor J \times 0.5 \rfloor = J_B = J_R. \] The location of each plane when this image is in linear layout can be determined via `vkGetImageSubresourceLayout`, using `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT` for the G plane, and `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT` for the BR plane. This format only supports images with a width that is a multiple of two.

- **VK_FORMAT_G16_B16R16_2PLANE_422_UNORM** specifies an unsigned normalized multi-planar format that has a 16-bit G component in each 16-bit word of plane 0, and a two-component, 32-bit BR plane 1 consisting of a 16-bit B component in the word in bytes 0..1, and a 16-bit R component in the word in bytes 2..3. The horizontal dimension of the BR plane is halved relative to the image dimensions, and each R and B value is shared with the G components for which \[ \lfloor C \times 0.5 \rfloor = i_B = i_R \] and \[ \lfloor J \times 0.5 \rfloor = J_B = J_R. \] The location of each plane when this image is in linear layout can be determined via `vkGetImageSubresourceLayout`, using `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT` for the G plane, and `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT` for the BR plane. This format only supports images with a width that is a multiple of two.

- **VK_FORMAT_G16_B16_R16_3PLANE_444_UNORM** specifies an unsigned normalized multi-planar format that has a 16-bit G component in each 16-bit word of plane 0, a 16-bit B component in each 16-bit word of plane 1, and a 16-bit R component in each 16-bit word of plane 2. Each plane has the same dimensions and each R, G and B component contributes to a single texel. The location of each plane when this image is in linear layout can be determined via `vkGetImageSubresourceLayout`, using `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT` for the G plane, `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT` for the B plane, and `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT` for the R plane.

### 39.1.1. Compatible formats of planes of multi-planar formats

Individual planes of multi-planar formats are compatible with single-plane formats if they occupy the same number of bits per texel block. In the following table, individual planes of a multi-planar format are compatible with the format listed against the relevant plane index for that multi-planar format, and any format compatible with the listed single-plane format according to Format Compatibility Classes.

**Table 42. Plane Format Compatibility Table**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Plane</th>
<th>Compatible format for plane</th>
<th>Width relative to the width $w$ of the plane with the largest dimensions</th>
<th>Height relative to the height $h$ of the plane with the largest dimensions</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8_UNORM</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8_UNORM</td>
<td>$w$</td>
<td>$h$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8_UNORM</td>
<td>$w/2$</td>
<td>$h/2$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8_UNORM</td>
<td>$w/2$</td>
<td>$h/2$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8G8_UNORM</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8G8_UNORM</td>
<td>$w/2$</td>
<td>$h/2$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8G8_UNORM</td>
<td>$w/2$</td>
<td>$h/2$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8G8_UNORM</td>
<td>$w/2$</td>
<td>$h/2$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8G8_UNORM</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8G8_UNORM</td>
<td>$w/2$</td>
<td>$h/2$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8G8_UNORM</td>
<td>$w/2$</td>
<td>$h/2$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8G8_UNORM</td>
<td>$w/2$</td>
<td>$h/2$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R10X6G10X6_UNORM</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R10X6G10X6_UNORM</td>
<td>$w/2$</td>
<td>$h/2$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R10X6G10X6_UNORM</td>
<td>$w/2$</td>
<td>$h/2$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R10X6G10X6_UNORM</td>
<td>$w/2$</td>
<td>$h/2$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plane</td>
<td>Compatible format for plane</td>
<td>Width relative to the width $w$ of the plane with the largest dimensions</td>
<td>Height relative to the height $h$ of the plane with the largest dimensions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>----------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6_R10X6_3PLANE_444_UNORM_3PACK16</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R10X6_UNORM_PACK16</td>
<td>$w$</td>
<td>$h$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R10X6_UNORM_PACK16</td>
<td>$w$</td>
<td>$h$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R10X6_UNORM_PACK16</td>
<td>$w$</td>
<td>$h$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4_R12X4_3PLANE_420_UNORM_3PACK16</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R12X4_UNORM_PACK16</td>
<td>$w$</td>
<td>$h$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R12X4_UNORM_PACK16</td>
<td>$w/2$</td>
<td>$h/2$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R12X4_UNORM_PACK16</td>
<td>$w/2$</td>
<td>$h/2$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4R12X4_2PLANE_420_UNORM_3PACK16</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R12X4_UNORM_PACK16</td>
<td>$w$</td>
<td>$h$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R12X4G12X4_UNORM_2PACK16</td>
<td>$w/2$</td>
<td>$h/2$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4_R12X4_3PLANE_422_UNORM_3PACK16</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R12X4_UNORM_PACK16</td>
<td>$w$</td>
<td>$h$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R12X4_UNORM_PACK16</td>
<td>$w/2$</td>
<td>$h$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R12X4_UNORM_PACK16</td>
<td>$w/2$</td>
<td>$h$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4R12X4_2PLANE_422_UNORM_3PACK16</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R12X4_UNORM_PACK16</td>
<td>$w$</td>
<td>$h$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R12X4G12X4_UNORM_2PACK16</td>
<td>$w/2$</td>
<td>$h$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G16_B16_R16_3PLANE_420_UNORM</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16_UNORM</td>
<td>$w$</td>
<td>$h$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16_UNORM</td>
<td>$w/2$</td>
<td>$h/2$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16_UNORM</td>
<td>$w/2$</td>
<td>$h/2$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G16_B16R16_2PLANE_420_UNORM</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16_UNORM</td>
<td>$w$</td>
<td>$h$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16G16_UNORM</td>
<td>$w/2$</td>
<td>$h/2$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G16_B16_R16_3PLANE_422_UNORM</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16_UNORM</td>
<td>$w$</td>
<td>$h$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16_UNORM</td>
<td>$w/2$</td>
<td>$h$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Plane</td>
<td>Compatible format for plane</td>
<td>Width relative to the width $w$ of the plane with the largest dimensions</td>
<td>Height relative to the height $h$ of the plane with the largest dimensions</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------</td>
<td>-----------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16_UNORM</td>
<td>$w/2$</td>
<td>$h$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16_UNORM</td>
<td>$w$</td>
<td>$h$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16_UNORM</td>
<td>$w/2$</td>
<td>$h$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16_UNORM</td>
<td>$w$</td>
<td>$h$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16_UNORM</td>
<td>$w$</td>
<td>$h$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16_UNORM</td>
<td>$w$</td>
<td>$h$</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 39.1.2. Packed Formats

For the purposes of address alignment when accessing buffer memory containing vertex attribute or texel data, the following formats are considered *packed* - whole texels or attributes are stored in bitfields of a single 8-, 16-, or 32-bit fundamental data type.

- **Packed into 8-bit data types:**
  - VK_FORMAT_R4G4_UNORM_PACK8
- **Packed into 16-bit data types:**
  - VK_FORMAT_R4G4B4A4_UNORM_PACK16
  - VK_FORMAT_B4G4R4A4_UNORM_PACK16
  - VK_FORMAT_R5G6B5_UNORM_PACK16
  - VK_FORMAT_B5G6R5_UNORM_PACK16
  - VK_FORMAT_R5G5B5A1_UNORM_PACK16
  - VK_FORMAT_B5G5R5A1_UNORM_PACK16
  - VK_FORMAT_A1R5G5B5_UNORM_PACK16
- **Packed into 32-bit data types:**
  - VK_FORMAT_A8B8G8R8_UNORM_PACK32
  - VK_FORMAT_A8B8G8R8_SNORM_PACK32
  - VK_FORMAT_A8B8G8R8_USCALED_PACK32
  - VK_FORMAT_A8B8G8R8_SSCALED_PACK32
  - VK_FORMAT_A8B8G8R8_UINT_PACK32
  - VK_FORMAT_A8B8G8R8_SINT_PACK32
  - VK_FORMAT_A8B8G8R8_SRGB_PACK32
  - VK_FORMAT_A2R10G10B10_UNORM_PACK32
39.1.3. Identification of Formats

A “format” is represented by a single enum value. The name of a format is usually built up by using the following pattern:

\[
\text{VK_FORMAT}_{\text{component-format|compression-scheme}}_{\text{numeric-format}}
\]

The component-format indicates either the size of the R, G, B, and A components (if they are present) in the case of a color format, or the size of the depth (D) and stencil (S) components (if they are present) in the case of a depth/stencil format (see below). An X indicates a component that is unused, but \textbf{may} be present for padding.
### Table 43. Interpretation of Numeric Format

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Numeric format</th>
<th>SPIR-V Sampled Type</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>UNORM</td>
<td>OpTypeFloat</td>
<td>The components are unsigned normalized values in the range [0,1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SNORM</td>
<td>OpTypeFloat</td>
<td>The components are signed normalized values in the range [-1,1]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>USCALED</td>
<td>OpTypeFloat</td>
<td>The components are unsigned integer values that get converted to floating-point in the range ([0,2^{n}-1])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SSCALED</td>
<td>OpTypeFloat</td>
<td>The components are signed integer values that get converted to floating-point in the range ([-2^{n-1},2^{n-1}-1])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UINT</td>
<td>OpTypeInt</td>
<td>The components are unsigned integer values in the range ([0,2^{n}-1])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SINT</td>
<td>OpTypeInt</td>
<td>The components are signed integer values in the range ([-2^{n-1},2^{n-1}-1])</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UFLOAT</td>
<td>OpTypeFloat</td>
<td>The components are unsigned floating-point numbers (used by packed, shared exponent, and some compressed formats)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SFLOAT</td>
<td>OpTypeFloat</td>
<td>The components are signed floating-point numbers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SRGB</td>
<td>OpTypeFloat</td>
<td>The R, G, and B components are unsigned normalized values that represent values using SRGB nonlinear encoding, while the A component (if one exists) is a regular unsigned normalized value</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The suffix \_PACKnn\_ indicates that the format is packed into an underlying type with nn bits. The suffix \_mPACKnn\_ is a short-hand that indicates that the format has several components (which may or may not be stored in separate planes) that are each packed into an underlying type with nn bits.

The suffix \_BLOCK\_ indicates that the format is a block-compressed format, with the representation of multiple pixels encoded interdependently within a region.

### Table 44. Interpretation of Compression Scheme

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Compression scheme</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>BC</td>
<td>Block Compression. See Block-Compressed Image Formats.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETC2</td>
<td>Ericsson Texture Compression. See ETC Compressed Image Formats.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EAC</td>
<td>ETC2 Alpha Compression. See ETC Compressed Image Formats.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASTC</td>
<td>Adaptive Scalable Texture Compression (LDR Profile). See ASTC Compressed Image Formats.</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For multi-planar images, the components in separate planes are separated by underscores, and the number of planes is indicated by the addition of a \_2PLANE\_ or \_3PLANE\_ suffix. Similarly, the separate
aspects of depth-stencil formats are separated by underscores, although these are not considered separate planes. Formats are suffixed by _422 to indicate that planes other than the first are reduced in size by a factor of two horizontally or that the R and B values appear at half the horizontal frequency of the G values, _420 to indicate that planes other than the first are reduced in size by a factor of two both horizontally and vertically, and _444 for consistency to indicate that all three planes of a three-planar image are the same size.

Note
No common format has a single plane containing both R and B channels but does not store these channels at reduced horizontal resolution.

39.1.4. Representation and Texel Block Size

Color formats **must** be represented in memory in exactly the form indicated by the format’s name. This means that promoting one format to another with more bits per component and/or additional components **must** not occur for color formats. Depth/stencil formats have more relaxed requirements as discussed below.

Each format has a **texel block size**, the number of bytes used to store one texel block (a single addressable element of an uncompressed image, or a single compressed block of a compressed image). The texel block size for each format is shown in the **Compatible formats** table.

The representation of non-packed formats is that the first component specified in the name of the format is in the lowest memory addresses and the last component specified is in the highest memory addresses. See **Byte mappings for non-packed/compressed color formats**. The in-memory ordering of bytes within a component is determined by the host endianness.

**Table 45. Byte mappings for non-packed/compressed color formats**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>0</th>
<th>1</th>
<th>2</th>
<th>3</th>
<th>4</th>
<th>5</th>
<th>6</th>
<th>7</th>
<th>8</th>
<th>9</th>
<th>10</th>
<th>11</th>
<th>12</th>
<th>13</th>
<th>14</th>
<th>15</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>R</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R G</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R G B</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B G R</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R G B A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B G R A</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>G_0 B G_1 R</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>B G_0 R G_1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

0 R G
1 R G B
2 B G R
3 R G B A
4 G_0 B G_1 R
5 B G_0 R G_1
6 R
7 R G
8 R G B
9 R G B A
Packed formats store multiple components within one underlying type. The bit representation is
that the first component specified in the name of the format is in the most-significant bits and the
last component specified is in the least-significant bits of the underlying type. The in-memory
ordering of bytes comprising the underlying type is determined by the host endianness.

Table 46. Bit mappings for packed 8-bit formats

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

VK_FORMAT_R4G4_UNORM_PACK8

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>R</th>
<th>G</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 47. Bit mappings for packed 16-bit formats

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bit</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

VK_FORMAT_R4G4B4A4_UNORM_PACK16

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>R</th>
<th>G</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

VK_FORMAT_B4G4R4A4_UNORM_PACK16

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>B</th>
<th>G</th>
<th>R</th>
<th>A</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

VK_FORMAT_R5G6B5_UNORM_PACK16

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>R</th>
<th>G</th>
<th>B</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

VK_FORMAT_B5G6R5_UNORM_PACK16
### Table 48. Bit mappings for packed 32-bit formats

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bit</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>G</th>
<th>R</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VK_FORMAT_R5G5B5A1_UNORM_PACK16</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VK_FORMAT_B5G5R5A1_UNORM_PACK16</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VK_FORMAT_A1R5G5B5_UNORM_PACK16</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VK_FORMAT_R10X6_UNORM_PACK16</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>R</strong></td>
<td>9</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VK_FORMAT_R12X4_UNORM_PACK16</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>R</strong></td>
<td>11</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Bit</th>
<th>B</th>
<th>G</th>
<th>R</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>A</strong></td>
<td>0</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VK_FORMAT_A8B8G8R8_*_PACK32</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>A</strong></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VK_FORMAT_A2R10G10B10_*_PACK32</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>A</strong></td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VK_FORMAT_B10G11R11_UFLOAT_PACK32</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>R</strong></td>
<td>9</td>
<td>8</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VK_FORMAT_E5B9G9R9_UFLOAT_PACK32</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>R</strong></td>
<td>4</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>VK_FORMAT_X8_D24_UNORM_PACK32</strong></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>X</strong></td>
<td>7</td>
<td>6</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chapter 39. Formats | 1547
39.1.5. Depth/Stencil Formats

Depth/stencil formats are considered opaque and need not be stored in the exact number of bits per texel or component ordering indicated by the format enum. However, implementations must not substitute a different depth or stencil precision than that described in the format (e.g. D16 must not be implemented as D24 or D32).

39.1.6. Format Compatibility Classes

Uncompressed color formats are compatible with each other if they occupy the same number of bits per texel block. Compressed color formats are compatible with each other if the only difference between them is the numerical type of the uncompressed pixels (e.g. signed vs. unsigned, or SRGB vs. UNORM encoding). Each depth/stencil format is only compatible with itself. In the following table, all the formats in the same row are compatible.

Table 49. Compatible Formats

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Class, Texel Block Size, # Texels/Block</th>
<th>Formats</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>8-bit</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R4G4_UNORM_PACK8,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Block size 1 byte 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8_UNORM,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8_SNORM,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8_USCALED,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8_SSCALED,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8_UINT,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8_SINT,</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8_SRGB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class, Texel Block Size, # Texels/Block</td>
<td>Formats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16-bit</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R4G4B4A4_UNORM_PACK16, VK_FORMAT_B4G4R4A4_UNORM_PACK16, VK_FORMAT_R5G6B5_UNORM_PACK16, VK_FORMAT_B5G6R5_UNORM_PACK16, VK_FORMAT_R5G5B5A1_UNORM_PACK16, VK_FORMAT_B5G5R5A1_UNORM_PACK16, VK_FORMAT_A1R5G5B5_UNORM_PACK16, VK_FORMAT_R8G8_UNORM, VK_FORMAT_R8G8_SNORM, VK_FORMAT_R8G8_USCALED, VK_FORMAT_R8G8_SSCALED, VK_FORMAT_R8G8_UINT, VK_FORMAT_R8G8_SINT, VK_FORMAT_R8G8_SRGB, VK_FORMAT_R16_UNORM, VK_FORMAT_R16_SNORM, VK_FORMAT_R16_USCALED, VK_FORMAT_R16_SSCALED, VK_FORMAT_R16_UINT, VK_FORMAT_R16_SINT, VK_FORMAT_R16_SFLOAT, VK_FORMAT_R10X6_UNORM_PACK16, VK_FORMAT_R12X4_UNORM_PACK16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24-bit</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8_UNORM, VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8_SNORM, VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8_USCALED, VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8_SSCALED, VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8_UINT, VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8_SINT, VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8_SRGB, VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_UNORM, VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_SNRN, VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_USCALED, VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_SSCALED, VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_UINT, VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_SINT, VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_SRGB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>24-bit</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8_UNORM, VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8_SNORM, VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8_USCALED, VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8_SSCALED, VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8_UINT, VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8_SINT, VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8_SRGB, VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_UNORM, VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_SNRN, VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_USCALED, VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_SSCALED, VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_UINT, VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_SINT, VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_SRGB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class, Texel Block Size, # Texels/Block</td>
<td>Formats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32-bit Block size 4 bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8A8_UNORM, VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8A8_SNORM, VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8A8_USCALED, VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8A8_SSCALED, VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8A8_UINT, VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8A8_SINT, VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8A8_SRGB, VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8A8_UNORM, VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8A8_SNORM, VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8A8_USCALED, VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8A8_SSCALED, VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8A8_UINT, VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8A8_SINT, VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8A8_SRGB, VK_FORMAT_A8B8G8R8_UNORM_PACK32, VK_FORMAT_A8B8G8R8_SNORM_PACK32, VK_FORMAT_A8B8G8R8_USCALED_PACK32, VK_FORMAT_A8B8G8R8_SSCALED_PACK32, VK_FORMAT_A8B8G8R8_UINT_PACK32, VK_FORMAT_A8B8G8R8_SINT_PACK32, VK_FORMAT_A8B8G8R8_SRGB_PACK32, VK_FORMAT_A2R10G10B10_UNORM_PACK32, VK_FORMAT_A2R10G10B10_SNORM_PACK32, VK_FORMAT_A2R10G10B10_USCALED_PACK32, VK_FORMAT_A2R10G10B10_SSCALED_PACK32, VK_FORMAT_A2R10G10B10_UINT_PACK32, VK_FORMAT_A2R10G10B10_SINT_PACK32, VK_FORMAT_A2R10G10B10_SRGB_PACK32, VK_FORMAT_R16G16_UNORM, VK_FORMAT_R16G16_SNORM, VK_FORMAT_R16G16_USCALED, VK_FORMAT_R16G16_SSCALED, VK_FORMAT_R16G16_UINT, VK_FORMAT_R16G16_SINT, VK_FORMAT_R16G16_SFLOAT, VK_FORMAT_R32_UINT, VK_FORMAT_R32_SINT, VK_FORMAT_R32_SFLOAT, VK_FORMAT_B10G11R11_UFLOAT_PACK32, VK_FORMAT_E5B9G9R9_UFLOAT_PACK32, VK_FORMAT_R10X6G10X6_UNORM_2PACK16, VK_FORMAT_R12X4G12X4_UNORM_2PACK16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class, Texel Block Size, # Texels/Block</td>
<td>Formats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32-bit G8B8G8R8 Block size 4 bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G8B8G8R8_422_UNORM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>32-bit B8G8R8G8 Block size 4 bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8G8_422_UNORM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64-bit R10G10B10A10 Block size 8 bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R10X6G10X6B10X6A10X6_UNORM_4PACK16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64-bit G10B10G10R10 Block size 8 bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G10X6B10X6G10X6R10X6_422_UNORM_4PACK16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64-bit B10G10R10G10 Block size 8 bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_B10X6G10X6R10X6G10X6_422_UNORM_4PACK16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64-bit R12G12B12A12 Block size 8 bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R12X4G12X4B12X4A12X4_UNORM_4PACK16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64-bit G12B12G12R12 Block size 8 bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G12X4B12X4G12X4R12X4_422_UNORM_4PACK16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class, Texel Block Size, # Texels/Block</td>
<td>Formats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64-bit B12G12R12G12 Block size 8 bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_B12X4G12X4R12X4G12X4_422_UNORM_4PACK16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64-bit G16B16G16R16 Block size 8 bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G16B16G16R16_422_UNORM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>64-bit B16G16R16G16 Block size 8 bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_B16G16R16G16_422_UNORM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>96-bit Block size 12 bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32_UINT, VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32_SINT, VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>128-bit Block size 16 bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32A32_UINT, VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32A32_SINT, VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32A32_SFLOAT, VK_FORMAT_R64G64_UINT, VK_FORMAT_R64G64_SINT, VK_FORMAT_R64G64_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>192-bit Block size 24 bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R64G64B64_UINT, VK_FORMAT_R64G64B64_SINT, VK_FORMAT_R64G64B64_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>256-bit Block size 32 bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R64G64B64A64_UINT, VK_FORMAT_R64G64B64A64_SINT, VK_FORMAT_R64G64B64A64_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BC1_RGB (64 bit) Block size 8 bytes 16 texels/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC1_RGB_UNORM_BLOCK, VK_FORMAT_BC1_RGB_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BC1_RGBA (64 bit) Block size 8 bytes 16 texels/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC1_RGBA_UNORM_BLOCK, VK_FORMAT_BC1_RGBA_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BC2 (128 bit) Block size 16 bytes 16 texels/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC2_UNORM_BLOCK, VK_FORMAT_BC2_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BC3 (128 bit) Block size 16 bytes 16 texels/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC3_UNORM_BLOCK, VK_FORMAT_BC3_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BC4 (64 bit) Block size 8 bytes 16 texels/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC4_UNORM_BLOCK, VK_FORMAT_BC4_SNORM_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class, Texel Block Size, # Texels/Block</td>
<td>Formats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BC5 (128 bit) Block size 16 bytes 16 texels/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC5_UNORM_BLOCK, VK_FORMAT_BC5_SNORM_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BC6H (128 bit) Block size 16 bytes 16 texels/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC6H_UFLOAT_BLOCK, VK_FORMAT_BC6H_SFLOAT_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BC7 (128 bit) Block size 16 bytes 16 texels/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC7_UNORM_BLOCK, VK_FORMAT_BC7_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETC2_RGB (64 bit) Block size 8 bytes 16 texels/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ETC2_R8G8B8_UNORM_BLOCK, VK_FORMAT_ETC2_R8G8B8_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETC2_RGBA (64 bit) Block size 8 bytes 16 texels/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ETC2_R8G8B8A1_UNORM_BLOCK, VK_FORMAT_ETC2_R8G8B8A1_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ETC2_EAC_RGBA (64 bit) Block size 8 bytes 16 texels/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ETC2_R8G8B8A8_UNORM_BLOCK, VK_FORMAT_ETC2_R8G8B8A8_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EAC_R (64 bit) Block size 8 bytes 16 texels/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_EAC_R11_UNORM_BLOCK, VK_FORMAT_EAC_R11_SNORM_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EAC_RG (128 bit) Block size 16 bytes 16 texels/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_EAC_R11G11_UNORM_BLOCK, VK_FORMAT_EAC_R11G11_SNORM_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASTC_4x4 (128 bit) Block size 16 bytes 16 texels/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_4x4_UNORM_BLOCK, VK_FORMAT_ASTC_4x4_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASTC_5x4 (128 bit) Block size 16 bytes 20 texels/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_5x4_UNORM_BLOCK, VK_FORMAT_ASTC_5x4_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASTC_5x5 (128 bit) Block size 16 bytes 25 texels/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_5x5_UNORM_BLOCK, VK_FORMAT_ASTC_5x5_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASTC_6x5 (128 bit) Block size 16 bytes 30 texels/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_6x5_UNORM_BLOCK, VK_FORMAT_ASTC_6x5_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASTC_6x6 (128 bit) Block size 16 bytes 36 texels/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_6x6_UNORM_BLOCK, VK_FORMAT_ASTC_6x6_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class, Texel Block Size, # Texels/Block</td>
<td>Formats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>------------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASTC_8x5 (128 bit) Block size 16 bytes 40 texels/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x5_UNORM_BLOCK, VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x5_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASTC_8x6 (128 bit) Block size 16 bytes 48 texels/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x6_UNORM_BLOCK, VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x6_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASTC_8x8 (128 bit) Block size 16 bytes 64 texels/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x8_UNORM_BLOCK, VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x8_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASTC_10x5 (128 bit) Block size 16 bytes 50 texels/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x5_UNORM_BLOCK, VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x5_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASTC_10x6 (128 bit) Block size 16 bytes 60 texels/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x6_UNORM_BLOCK, VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x6_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASTC_10x8 (128 bit) Block size 16 bytes 80 texels/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x8_UNORM_BLOCK, VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x8_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASTC_10x10 (128 bit) Block size 16 bytes 100 texels/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x10_UNORM_BLOCK, VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x10_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASTC_12x10 (128 bit) Block size 16 bytes 120 texels/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_12x10_UNORM_BLOCK, VK_FORMAT_ASTC_12x10_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ASTC_12x12 (128 bit) Block size 16 bytes 144 texels/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_12x12_UNORM_BLOCK, VK_FORMAT_ASTC_12x12_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D16 (16 bit) Block size 2 bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_D16_UNORM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D24 (32 bit) Block size 4 bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_X8_D24_UNORM_PACK32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D32 (32 bit) Block size 4 bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_D32_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S8 (8 bit) Block size 1 byte 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_S8_UINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class, Texel Block Size, # Texels/Block</td>
<td>Formats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D16S8 (24 bit) Block size 3 bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_D16_UNORM_S8_UINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D24S8 (32 bit) Block size 4 bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_D24_UNORM_S8_UINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>D32S8 (40 bit) Block size 5 bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_D32_SFLOAT_S8_UINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-bit 3-plane 420 Block size (1,1,1) bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G8_B8_R8_3PLANE_420_UNORM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-bit 2-plane 420 Block size (1,2) bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G8_B8R8_2PLANE_420_UNORM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-bit 3-plane 422 Block size (1,1,1) bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G8_B8_R8_3PLANE_422_UNORM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-bit 2-plane 422 Block size (1,2) bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G8_B8R8_2PLANE_422_UNORM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8-bit 3-plane 444 Block size (1,1,1) bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G8_B8_R8_3PLANE_444_UNORM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-bit 3-plane 420 Block size (2,2,2) bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6_R10X6_3PLANE_420_UNORM_3PACK16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-bit 2-plane 420 Block size (2,4) bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6R10X6_2PLANE_420_UNORM_3PACK16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-bit 3-plane 422 Block size (2,2,2) bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6_R10X6_3PLANE_422_UNORM_3PACK16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-bit 2-plane 422 Block size (2,2) bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6R10X6_2PLANE_422_UNORM_3PACK16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10-bit 3-plane 444 Block size (2,2,2) bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6_R10X6_3PLANE_444_UNORM_3PACK16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Class, Texel Block Size, # Texels/Block</td>
<td>Formats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------------------------</td>
<td>---------------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12-bit 3-plane 420 Block size (2,2,2) bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4_R12X4_3PLANE_420_UNORM_3PACK16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12-bit 2-plane 420 Block size (2,4) bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4R12X4_2PLANE_420_UNORM_3PACK16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12-bit 3-plane 422 Block size (2,2,2) bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4_R12X4_3PLANE_422_UNORM_3PACK16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12-bit 2-plane 422 Block size (2,4) bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4R12X4_2PLANE_422_UNORM_3PACK16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12-bit 3-plane 444 Block size (2,2,2) bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4_R12X4_3PLANE_444_UNORM_3PACK16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16-bit 3-plane 420 Block size (2,2,2) bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G16_B16_R16_3PLANE_420_UNORM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16-bit 2-plane 420 Block size (2,4) bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G16_B16R16_2PLANE_420_UNORM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16-bit 3-plane 422 Block size (2,2,2) bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G16_B16_R16_3PLANE_422_UNORM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16-bit 2-plane 422 Block size (2,4) bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G16_B16R16_2PLANE_422_UNORM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16-bit 3-plane 444 Block size (2,2,2) bytes 1 texel/block</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G16_B16_R16_3PLANE_444_UNORM</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### 39.2. Format Properties

To query supported format features which are properties of the physical device, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
void vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    VkFormat format,
    VkFormatProperties* pFormatProperties);
```
• **physicalDevice** is the physical device from which to query the format properties.
• **format** is the format whose properties are queried.
• **pFormatProperties** is a pointer to a **VkFormatProperties** structure in which physical device properties for **format** are returned.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties-physicalDevice-parameter: **physicalDevice** must be a valid **VkPhysicalDevice** handle
- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties-format-parameter: **format** must be a valid **VkFormat** value
- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties-pFormatProperties-parameter: **pFormatProperties** must be a valid pointer to a **VkFormatProperties** structure

The **VkFormatProperties** structure is defined as:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef struct VkFormatProperties {
    VkFormatFeatureFlags linearTilingFeatures;
    VkFormatFeatureFlags optimalTilingFeatures;
    VkFormatFeatureFlags bufferFeatures;
} VkFormatProperties;
```

- **linearTilingFeatures** is a bitmask of **VkFormatFeatureFlagBits** specifying features supported by images created with a **tiling** parameter of **VK_IMAGE_TILING_LINEAR**.
- **optimalTilingFeatures** is a bitmask of **VkFormatFeatureFlagBits** specifying features supported by images created with a **tiling** parameter of **VK_IMAGE_TILING_OPTIMAL**.
- **bufferFeatures** is a bitmask of **VkFormatFeatureFlagBits** specifying features supported by buffers.

**Note**

If no format feature flags are supported, the format itself is not supported, and images of that format cannot be created.

If **format** is a block-compressed format, then **bufferFeatures** must not support any features for the format.

If **format** is not a multi-plane format then **linearTilingFeatures** and **optimalTilingFeatures** must not contain **VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_DISJOINT_BIT**.

Bits which can be set in the **VkFormatProperties** features **linearTilingFeatures**, **optimalTilingFeatures**, and **bufferFeatures** are:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
```
typedef enum VkFormatFeatureFlagBits {
    VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_BIT = 0x00000001,
    VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_BIT = 0x00000002,
    VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_ATOMIC_BIT = 0x00000004,
    VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT = 0x00000008,
    VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT = 0x00000010,
    VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_ATOMIC_BIT = 0x00000020,
    VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_VERTEX_BUFFER_BIT = 0x00000040,
    VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT = 0x00000080,
    VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BLEND_BIT = 0x00000100,
    VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT = 0x00000200,
    VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLIT_SRC_BIT = 0x00000400,
    VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLIT_DST_BIT = 0x00000800,
    VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT = 0x00001000,
    VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT = 0x00004000,
    VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT = 0x00008000,
    VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_MIDPOINT_CHROMA_SAMPLES_BIT = 0x00020000,
    VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_YCBCR_CONVERSION_LINEAR_FILTER_BIT = 0x00040000,
    VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_YCBCR_CONVERSION_SEPARATE_RECONSTRUCTION_FILTER_BIT = 0x00080000,
    VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_YCBCR_CONVERSION_CHROMA_RECONSTRUCTION_EXPLICIT_BIT = 0x00100000,
    VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_YCBCR_CONVERSION_CHROMA_RECONSTRUCTION_EXPLICIT_FORCEABLE_BIT = 0x00200000,
    VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_DISJOINT_BIT = 0x00400000,
    VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COSITED_CHROMA_SAMPLES_BIT = 0x00800000,
    #ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_decode_queue
    VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_VIDEO_DECODE_OUTPUT_BIT_KHR = 0x02000000,
    #endif
    #ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_decode_queue
    VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_VIDEO_DECODE_DPB_BIT_KHR = 0x04000000,
    #endif
    // Provided by VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
    VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_VERTEX_BUFFER_BIT_KHR = 0x20000000,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_fragment_shading_rate
    VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_BIT_KHR = 0x40000000,
    #ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_encode_queue
    VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_VIDEO_ENCODE_INPUT_BIT_KHR = 0x08000000,
    #endif
    #ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
    // Provided by VK_KHR_video_encode_queue
    VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_VIDEO_ENCODE_DPB_BIT_KHR = 0x10000000,
    #endif
    // Provided by VK_KHR_maintenance1
    VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT_KHR = VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT,
    VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT_KHR = VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT,
}
The following bits may be set in linearTilingFeatures and optimalTilingFeatures, specifying that the features are supported by images or image views or sampler Y’CbCr conversion objects created with the queried vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties::format:

- **VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_BIT** specifies that an image view can be sampled from.
- **VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_BIT** specifies that an image view can be used as a storage image.
- **VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_ATOMIC_BIT** specifies that an image view can be used as storage image that supports atomic operations.
- **VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT** specifies that an image view can be used as a framebuffer color attachment and as an input attachment.
- **VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BLEND_BIT** specifies that an image view can be used as a framebuffer color attachment that supports blending and as an input attachment.
- **VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT** specifies that an image view can be used as a framebuffer depth/stencil attachment and as an input attachment.
- **VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLIT_SRC_BIT** specifies that an image can be used as srcImage for the
vkCmdBlitImage2KHR and vkCmdBlitImage commands.

- **VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLIT_DST_BIT** specifies that an image can be used as dstImage for the vkCmdBlitImage2KHR and vkCmdBlitImage commands.

- **VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT** specifies that if VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_BIT is also set, an image view can be used with a sampler that has either of magFilter or minFilter set to VK_FILTER_LINEAR, oripmapMode set to VK_SAMPLER_MIPMAP_MODE_LINEAR. If VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLIT_SRC_BIT is also set, an image can be used as the srcImage to vkCmdBlitImage2KHR and vkCmdBlitImage with a filter of VK_FILTER_LINEAR. This bit must only be exposed for formats that also support the VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_BIT or VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLIT_SRC_BIT.

If the format being queried is a depth/stencil format, this bit only specifies that the depth aspect (not the stencil aspect) of an image of this format supports linear filtering, and that linear filtering of the depth aspect is supported whether depth compare is enabled in the sampler or not. If this bit is not present, linear filtering with depth compare disabled is unsupported and linear filtering with depth compare enabled is supported, but may compute the filtered value in an implementation-dependent manner which differs from the normal rules of linear filtering. The resulting value must be in the range [0,1] and should be proportional to, or a weighted average of, the number of comparison passes or failures.

- **VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT** specifies that an image can be used as a source image for copy commands.

- **VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT** specifies that an image can be used as a destination image for copy commands and clear commands.

- **VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_MIDPOINT_CHROMA_SAMPLES_BIT** specifies that an application can define a sampler Y′C_bC_r conversion using this format as a source, and that an image of this format can be used with a VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo xChromaOffset and/or yChromaOffset of VK_CHROMA_LOCATION_MIDPOINT. Otherwise both xChromaOffset and yChromaOffset must be VK_CHROMA_LOCATION_COSITED_EVEN. If a format does not incorporate chroma downsampling (it is not a “422” or “420” format) but the implementation supports sampler Y′C_bC_r conversion for this format, the implementation must set VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_MIDPOINT_CHROMA_SAMPLES_BIT.

- **VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COSITED_CHROMA_SAMPLES_BIT** specifies that an application can define a sampler Y′C_bC_r conversion using this format as a source, and that an image of this format can be used with a VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo xChromaOffset and/or yChromaOffset of VK_CHROMA_LOCATION_COSITED_EVEN. Otherwise both xChromaOffset and yChromaOffset must be VK_CHROMA_LOCATION_MIDPOINT. If neither VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COSITED_CHROMA_SAMPLES_BIT nor VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_MIDPOINT_CHROMA_SAMPLES_BIT is set, the application must not define a sampler Y′C_bC_r conversion using this format as a source.

- **VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_YCBCR_CONVERSION_LINEAR_FILTER_BIT** specifies that an application can define a sampler Y′C_bC_r conversion using this format as a source with chromaFilter set to VK_FILTER_LINEAR.

- **VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_YCBCR_CONVERSION_SEPARATE_RECONSTRUCTION_FILTER_BIT** specifies that the format can have different chroma, min, and mag filters.

- **VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_YCBCR_CONVERSION_CHROMA_RECONSTRUCTION_EXPLICIT_BIT** specifies that reconstruction is explicit, as described in Chroma Reconstruction. If this bit is not
present, reconstruction is implicit by default.

- **VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_YCBCR_CONVERSION_CHROMA_RECONSTRUCTION_EXPLICIT_FORCEABLE_BIT** specifies that reconstruction can be forcibly made explicit by setting `VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfo::forceExplicitReconstruction` to `VK_TRUE`. If the format being queried supports `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_YCBCR_CONVERSION_CHROMA_RECONSTRUCTION_EXPLICIT_BIT` it must also support `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_YCBCR_CONVERSION_CHROMA_RECONSTRUCTION_EXPLICIT_FORCEABLE_BIT`.

- **VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_DISJOINT_BIT** specifies that a multi-planar image can have the `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_DISJOINT_BIT` set during image creation. An implementation must not set `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_DISJOINT_BIT` for single-plane formats.

- **VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_BIT_KHR** specifies that an image view can be used as a fragment shading rate attachment. An implementation must not set this feature for formats with numeric type other than *UINT*, or set it as a buffer feature.

- **VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_VIDEO_DECODE_OUTPUT_BIT_KHR** specifies that an image view with this format can be used as an output for video decode operations.

- **VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_VIDEO_DECODE_DPB_BIT_KHR** specifies that an image view with this format can be used as a DPB for video decode operations.

- **VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_VIDEO_ENCODE_INPUT_BIT_KHR** specifies that an image view with this format can be used as an input to video encode operations.

- **VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_VIDEO_ENCODE_DPB_BIT_KHR** specifies that an image view with this format can be used as a DPB for video encode operations.

The following bits may be set in `bufferFeatures`, specifying that the features are supported by buffers or buffer views created with the queried `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties::format`:

- **VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT** specifies that the format can be used to create a buffer view that can be bound to a `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER` descriptor.

- **VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT** specifies that the format can be used to create a buffer view that can be bound to a `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER` descriptor.

- **VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_ATOMIC_BIT** specifies that atomic operations are supported on `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER` with this format.

- **VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_VERTEX_BUFFER_BIT** specifies that the format can be used as a vertex attribute format (`VkVertexInputAttributeDescription::format`).

- **VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_VERTEX_BUFFER_BIT_KHR** specifies that the format can be used as the vertex format when creating an acceleration structure (`VkAccelerationStructureGeometryTrianglesDataKHR::vertexFormat`). This format can also be used as the vertex format in host memory when doing host acceleration structure builds.

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef VkFlags VkFormatFeatureFlags;
```
**VkFormatFeatureFlags** is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more **VkFormatFeatureFlagBits**.

To query supported format features which are properties of the physical device, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2
void vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties2KHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    VkFormat format,
    VkFormatProperties2* pFormatProperties);
```

- **physicalDevice** is the physical device from which to query the format properties.
- **format** is the format whose properties are queried.
- **pFormatProperties** is a pointer to a **VkFormatProperties2** structure in which physical device properties for **format** are returned.

**vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties2** behaves similarly to **vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties**, with the ability to return extended information in a **pNext** chain of output structures.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties2-physicalDevice-parameter**
  - **physicalDevice** must be a valid **VkPhysicalDevice** handle
- **VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties2-format-parameter**
  - **format** must be a valid **VkFormat** value
- **VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties2-pFormatProperties-parameter**
  - **pFormatProperties** must be a valid pointer to a **VkFormatProperties2** structure

The **VkFormatProperties2** structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkFormatProperties2 {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkFormatProperties formatProperties;
} VkFormatProperties2;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2
typedef VkFormatProperties2 VkFormatProperties2KHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **formatProperties** is a **VkFormatProperties** structure describing features supported by the
39.2.1. Potential Format Features

Some valid usage conditions depend on the format features supported by an VkImage whose VkImageTiling is unknown. In such cases the exact VkFormatFeatureFlagBits supported by the VkImage cannot be determined, so the valid usage conditions are expressed in terms of the potential format features of the VkImage format.

The potential format features of a VkFormat are defined as follows:

- The union of VkFormatFeatureFlagBits supported when the VkImageTiling is VK_IMAGE_TILING_OPTIMAL or VK_IMAGE_TILING_LINEAR

39.3. Required Format Support

Implementations must support at least the following set of features on the listed formats. For images, these features must be supported for every VkImageType (including arrayed and cube variants) unless otherwise noted. These features are supported on existing formats without needing to advertise an extension or needing to explicitly enable them. Support for additional functionality beyond the requirements listed here is queried using the vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties command.

Note

Unless otherwise excluded below, the required formats are supported for all VkImageCreateFlags values as long as those flag values are otherwise allowed.

The following tables show which feature bits must be supported for each format. Formats that are required to support VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_BIT must also support VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT and VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT.

Table 50. Key for format feature tables

| ✓ | This feature must be supported on the named format |
This feature **must** be supported on at least some of the named formats, with more information in the table where the symbol appears

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Bits in <code>optimalTilingFeatures</code></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLIT_SRC_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_ATOMIC_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLIT_DST_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BLEND_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

This feature **must** be supported with some caveats or preconditions, with more information in the table where the symbol appears

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature Bits in <code>bufferFeatures</code></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_VERTEX_BUFFER_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_ATOMIC_BIT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Table 53. Mandatory format support: sub-byte channels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Format</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_ATOMIC_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER(Bit)</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_VERTEX_BUFFER_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BLEND_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLIT_DST_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_ATOMIC_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLIT_SRC_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_BIT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_UNDEFINED</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R4G4_UNORM_PACK8</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R4G4B4A4_UNORM_PACK16</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_B4G4R4A4_UNORM_PACK16</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R5G6B5_UNORM_PACK16</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✔</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_B5G6R5_UNORM_PACK16</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_A1R5G5B5_UNORM_PACK16</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
<td>✗</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Chapter 39. Formats | 1565
<p>| Format                          | VK_FORMAT_R8_UNORM | VK_FORMAT_R8_SNORM | VK_FORMAT_R8_USCALED | VK_FORMAT_R8_SSCALED | VK_FORMAT_R8_UINT | VK_FORMAT_R8_SINT | VK_FORMAT_R8_SRGB | VK_FORMAT_R8G8_UNORM | VK_FORMAT_R8G8_SNORM | VK_FORMAT_R8G8_USCALED | VK_FORMAT_R8G8_SSCALED | VK_FORMAT_R8G8_UINT | VK_FORMAT_R8G8_SINT | VK_FORMAT_R8G8_SRGB | VK_FORMAT_R8G888_UNORM | VK_FORMAT_R8G888_SNORM | VK_FORMAT_R8G888_USCALED | VK_FORMAT_R8G888_SSCALED | VK_FORMAT_R8G888_UINT | VK_FORMAT_R8G888_SINT | VK_FORMAT_R8G888_SRGB | VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_UNORM | VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_SNORM |
|--------------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|-------------------|------------------|---------------------|---------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|------------------|---------------------|---------------------|----------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|------------------|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------|
| VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_ATOMIC_BIT | ✓                  | ✓                  | ✓                     | ✓                     | ✓                   | ✓                 | ✓                | ✓                   | ✓                   | ✓                    | ✓                     | ✓                   | ✓                 | ✓                 | ✓                   | ✓                   | ✓                    | ✓                   | ✓                    | ✓                   | ✓                 | ✓                   | ✓                   | ✓                   |
| VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT | ✓                  | ✓                  | ✓                     | ✓                     | ✓                   | ✓                 | ✓                | ✓                   | ✓                   | ✓                    | ✓                     | ✓                   | ✓                 | ✓                 | ✓                   | ✓                   | ✓                    | ✓                   | ✓                    | ✓                   | ✓                 | ✓                   | ✓                   | ✓                   |
| VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT | ✓                  | ✓                  | ✓                     | ✓                     | ✓                   | ✓                 | ✓                | ✓                   | ✓                   | ✓                    | ✓                     | ✓                   | ✓                 | ✓                 | ✓                   | ✓                   | ✓                    | ✓                   | ✓                    | ✓                   | ✓                 | ✓                   | ✓                   | ✓                   |
| VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_VERTEX_BUFFER_BIT | ✓                  | ✓                  | ✓                     | ✓                     | ✓                   | ✓                 | ✓                | ✓                   | ✓                   | ✓                    | ✓                     | ✓                   | ✓                 | ✓                 | ✓                   | ✓                   | ✓                    | ✓                   | ✓                    | ✓                   | ✓                 | ✓                   | ✓                   | ✓                   |
| VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT | ✓                  | ✓                  | ✓                     | ✓                     | ✓                   | ✓                 | ✓                | ✓                   | ✓                   | ✓                    | ✓                     | ✓                   | ✓                 | ✓                 | ✓                   | ✓                   | ✓                    | ✓                   | ✓                    | ✓                   | ✓                 | ✓                   | ✓                   | ✓                   |
| VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BLEND_BIT | ✓                  | ✓                  | ✓                     | ✓                     | ✓                   | ✓                 | ✓                | ✓                   | ✓                   | ✓                    | ✓                     | ✓                   | ✓                 | ✓                 | ✓                   | ✓                   | ✓                    | ✓                   | ✓                    | ✓                   | ✓                 | ✓                   | ✓                   | ✓                   |
| VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLIT_DST_BIT | ✓                  | ✓                  | ✓                     | ✓                     | ✓                   | ✓                 | ✓                | ✓                   | ✓                   | ✓                    | ✓                     | ✓                   | ✓                 | ✓                 | ✓                   | ✓                   | ✓                    | ✓                   | ✓                    | ✓                   | ✓                 | ✓                   | ✓                   | ✓                   |
| VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT | ✓                  | ✓                  | ✓                     | ✓                     | ✓                   | ✓                 | ✓                | ✓                   | ✓                   | ✓                    | ✓                     | ✓                   | ✓                 | ✓                 | ✓                   | ✓                   | ✓                    | ✓                   | ✓                    | ✓                   | ✓                 | ✓                   | ✓                   | ✓                   |
| VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_ATOMIC_BIT | ✓                  | ✓                  | ✓                     | ✓                     | ✓                   | ✓                 | ✓                | ✓                   | ✓                   | ✓                    | ✓                     | ✓                   | ✓                 | ✓                 | ✓                   | ✓                   | ✓                    | ✓                   | ✓                    | ✓                   | ✓                 | ✓                   | ✓                   | ✓                   |
| VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_BIT | ✓                  | ✓                  | ✓                     | ✓                     | ✓                   | ✓                 | ✓                | ✓                   | ✓                   | ✓                    | ✓                     | ✓                   | ✓                 | ✓                 | ✓                   | ✓                   | ✓                    | ✓                   | ✓                    | ✓                   | ✓                 | ✓                   | ✓                   | ✓                   |</p>
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_USCALED</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_SSCALED</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_UINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_SINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8_SRGB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Format features marked with ‡ must be supported for `optimalTilingFeatures` if the `VkPhysicalDevice` supports the `shaderStorageImageExtendedFormats` feature.
Table 55. Mandatory format support: 4 byte-sized channels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8A8_UNORM</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8A8_SNORM</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8A8_USCALED</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8A8_SSCALED</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8A8_UINT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8A8_SINT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8A8_SRGB</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8A8_UNORM</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8A8_SNORM</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8A8_USCALED</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8A8_SSCALED</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8A8_UINT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8A8_SINT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8A8_SRGB</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_ATOMIC_BIT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_VERTEX_BUFFER_BIT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BLEND_BIT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLIT_DST_BIT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_ATOMIC_BIT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_BIT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLIT_SRC_BIT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_BIT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1568 | Chapter 39. Formats
Table 56. Mandatory format support: 10- and 12-bit channels

| Format | VK_FORMAT_A2R10G10B10_UNORM_PACK32 | VK_FORMAT_A2R10G10B10_SNORM_PACK32 | VK_FORMAT_A2R10G10B10_USCALED_PACK32 | VK_FORMAT_A2R10G10B10_SSCALED_PACK32 | VK_FORMAT_A2R10G10B10_UINT_PACK32 | VK_FORMAT_A2R10G10B10_SINT_PACK32 | VK_FORMAT_A2B10G10R10_UNORM_PACK32 | VK_FORMAT_A2B10G10R10_SNORM_PACK32 | VK_FORMAT_A2B10G10R10_USCALED_PACK32 | VK_FORMAT_A2B10G10R10_SSCALED_PACK32 | VK_FORMAT_A2B10G10R10_UINT_PACK32 | VK_FORMAT_A2B10G10R10_SINT_PACK32 | VK_FORMAT_R10X6_UNORM_PACK16 | VK_FORMAT_R10X6G10X6_UNORM_2PACK16 | VK_FORMAT_R12X4_UNORM_PACK16 | VK_FORMAT_R12X4G12X4_UNORM_2PACK16 |
|--------|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| ✓      | ✓                                    | ✓                                  | ‡                                    | ✓                                    | ✓                                | ✓                                | ✓                                | ✓                                | ✓                                | ✓                                | ✓                                | ✓                                | ✓                                | ✓                                | ✓                                | ✓                                |

Format features marked with ‡ must be supported for optimalTilingFeatures if the VkPhysicalDevice supports the shaderStorageImageExtendedFormats feature.
### Table 57. Mandatory format support: 16-bit channels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_ATOMIC_BIT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_VERTEX_BUFFER_BIT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BLEND_BIT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_ATOMIC_BIT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_BIT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLIT_DST_BIT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLEND_DST_BIT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BLEND_BIT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

1570 | Chapter 39. Formats
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Format</th>
<th>✓</th>
<th>✓</th>
<th>✓</th>
<th>✓</th>
<th>✓</th>
<th>✓</th>
<th>✓</th>
<th>✓</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16A16_USCALED</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16A16_SSCALED</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16A16_UINT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16A16_SINT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16A16_SFLOAT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Format features marked with ‡ **must** be supported for optimalTilingFeatures if the VkPhysicalDevice supports the shaderStorageImageExtendedFormats feature.
Table 58. Mandatory format support: 32-bit channels

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Format</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_ATOMIC_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_VERTEX_BUFFER_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BLEND_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLIT_DST_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_ATOMIC_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLIT_SRC_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_BIT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32_UINT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32_SINT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32_SFLOAT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32G32_UINT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32G32_SINT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32G32_SFLOAT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32_UINT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32_SINT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32_SFLOAT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32A32_UINT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32A32_SINT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32A32_SFLOAT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Format Features</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-----------------------------------------------------</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_ATOMIC_BIT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_VERTEX_BUFFER_BIT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BLEND_BIT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLIT_DST_BIT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_ATOMIC_BIT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_BIT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLIT_SRC_BIT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_BIT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Format

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Format</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R64_UINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R64_SINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R64_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R64G64_UINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R64G64_SINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R64G64_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R64G64B64_UINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R64G64B64_SINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R64G64B64A64_UINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R64G64B64A64_SINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R64G64B64A64_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_B10G11R11_UFLOAT_PACK32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_E5B9G9R9_UFLOAT_PACK32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Format features marked with ‡ must be supported for optimalTilingFeatures if the VkPhysicalDevice supports the shaderStorageImageExtendedFormats feature.**
Table 60. Mandatory format support: depth/stencil with VkImageType VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Format</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_ATOMIC_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_VERTEX_BUFFER_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BLEND_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLIT_DST_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_ATOMIC_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLIT_SRC_BIT</th>
<th>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_BIT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_D16_UNORM</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_X8_D24_UNORM_PACK32</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_D32_SFLOAT</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td>✓</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_S8_UINT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_D16_UNORM_S8_UINT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_D24_UNORM_S8_UINT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_D32_SFLOAT_S8_UINT</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT feature must be supported for at least one of VK_FORMAT_X8_D24_UNORM_PACK32 and VK_FORMAT_D32_SFLOAT, and must be supported for at least one of VK_FORMAT_D24_UNORM_S8_UINT and VK_FORMAT_D32_SFLOAT_S8_UINT.
### Table 61. Mandatory format support: BC compressed formats with VkImageType VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D and VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Feature</th>
<th>Format</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_ATOMIC_BIT</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC1_RGB_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC1_RGB_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC1_RGBA_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_VERTEX_BUFFER_BIT</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC1_RGBA_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC2_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BLEND_BIT</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC2_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLIT_DST_BIT</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC3_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC3_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC4_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_ATOMIC_BIT</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC4_SNORM_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLIT_SRC_BIT</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC5_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_ATOMIC_BIT</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC5_SNORM_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLIT_DST_BIT</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC6H_UFLOAT_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_PIXEL_REMOTE_Calance</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC6H_SFLOAT_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_ATOMIC_BIT</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC7_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_BIT</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC7_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_ATOMIC_BIT, VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLIT_SRC_BIT and VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT features **must** be supported in optimalTilingFeatures for all the formats in at least one of: this table, Mandatory format support: ETC2 and EAC compressed formats with VkImageType VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D, or Mandatory format support: ASTC LDR compressed formats with VkImageType VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D.
**Table 62. Mandatory format support: ETC2 and EAC compressed formats with **\texttt{VkImageType VK\_IMAGE\_TYPE\_2D}**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Format</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_ATOMIC_BIT}</td>
<td>\texttt{VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT}</td>
<td>\texttt{VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_UNIFORM_TEXEL_BUFFER_BIT}</td>
<td>\texttt{VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_VERTEX_BUFFER_BIT}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT}</td>
<td>\texttt{VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BLEND_BIT}</td>
<td>\texttt{VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT}</td>
<td>\texttt{VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT}</td>
<td>\texttt{VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_ATOMIC_BIT}</td>
<td>\texttt{VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_BIT}</td>
<td>\texttt{VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>\texttt{VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_STORAGE_IMAGE_BIT}</td>
<td>\texttt{VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLIT_SRC_BIT}</td>
<td>\texttt{VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLIT_SRC_BIT}</td>
<td>\texttt{VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_BIT}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The \texttt{VK\_FORMAT\_FEATURE\_SAMPLED\_IMAGE\_BIT}, \texttt{VK\_FORMAT\_FEATURE\_BLIT\_SRC\_BIT} and \texttt{VK\_FORMAT\_FEATURE\_SAMPLED\_IMAGE\_FILTER\_LINEAR\_BIT} features must be supported in \texttt{optimalTilingFeatures} for all the formats in at least one of: this table, Mandatory format support: BC compressed formats with \texttt{VkImageType VK\_IMAGE\_TYPE\_2D and VK\_IMAGE\_TYPE\_3D}, or Mandatory format support: ASTC LDR compressed formats with \texttt{VkImageType VK\_IMAGE\_TYPE\_2D}.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Format</th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_4x4_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>†</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_4x4_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>†</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_5x4_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>†</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_5x4_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>†</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_5x5_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>†</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_5x5_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>†</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_6x5_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>†</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_6x5_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>†</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_6x6_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>†</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_6x6_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>†</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x5_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>†</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x5_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>†</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x6_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>†</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x6_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>†</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x8_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>†</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x8_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>†</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x5_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>†</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x5_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>†</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x6_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>†</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x6_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>†</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_BIT`, `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_BLIT_SRC_BIT` and `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_FILTER_LINEAR_BIT` features must be supported in `optimalTilingFeatures` for all the formats in at least one of: this table, Mandatory format support: BC compressed formats with `VkImageType VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D` and `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D`, or Mandatory format support: ETC2 and EAC compressed formats with `VkImageType VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D`.

To be used with `VkImageView` with `subresourceRange.aspectMask = VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT`, sampler Y'C_bC_r conversion must be enabled for the following formats:

### Table 64. Formats requiring sampler Y'CbCr conversion for VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT image views

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Format</th>
<th>Planes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G8B8G8R8_422_UNORM</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8G8_422_UNORM</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G8_B8_R8_3PLANE_420_UNORM</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G8_B8_R8_2PLANE_420_UNORM</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G8_B8_R8_3PLANE_422_UNORM</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G8_B8R8_2PLANE_422_UNORM</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G8_B8R8_3PLANE_444_UNORM</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R10X6G10X6B10X6A10X6_UNORM_4PACK16</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G10X6B10X6G10X6R10X6_422_UNORM_4PACK16</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_B10X6G10X6R10X6G10X6_422_UNORM_4PACK16</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Format Features</td>
<td>Count</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------------------</td>
<td>-------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6_R10X6_3PLANE_420_UNORM_3PACK16</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6R10X6_2PLANE_420_UNORM_3PACK16</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6_R10X6_3PLANE_422_UNORM_3PACK16</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6R10X6_2PLANE_422_UNORM_3PACK16</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6_R10X6_3PLANE_444_UNORM_3PACK16</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R12X4G12X4B12X4A12X4_UNORM_4PACK16</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G12X4B12X4G12X4R12X4_422_UNORM_4PACK16</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_B12X4G12X4R12X4G12X4_422_UNORM_4PACK16</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4_R12X4_3PLANE_420_UNORM_3PACK16</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4R12X4_2PLANE_420_UNORM_3PACK16</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4_R12X4_3PLANE_422_UNORM_3PACK16</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4R12X4_2PLANE_422_UNORM_3PACK16</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4_R12X4_3PLANE_444_UNORM_3PACK16</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G16B16G16R16_422_UNORM</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_B16G16R16G16_422_UNORM</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G16_B16_R16_3PLANE_420_UNORM</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G16_B16R16_2PLANE_420_UNORM</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G16_B16_R16_3PLANE_422_UNORM</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G16_B16R16_2PLANE_422_UNORM</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_G16_B16_R16_3PLANE_444_UNORM</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Format features marked † must be supported for optimalTilingFeatures with VkImageType
VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D if the VkPhysicalDevice supports the
VkPhysicalDeviceSamplerYcbcrConversionFeatures feature.

Implementations are not required to support the VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_BINDING_BIT,
VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_RESIDENCY_BIT, or VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPARSE_ALIASED_BIT VkImageCreateFlags
for the above formats that require sampler YC_bC_r conversion. To determine whether the
implementation supports sparse image creation flags with these formats use

VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_VERTEX_BUFFER_BIT_KHR must be supported in
bufferFeatures for the following formats if the accelerationStructure feature is supported:

- VK_FORMAT_R32G32_SFLOAT
- VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32_SFLOAT
- VK_FORMAT_R16G16_SFLOAT
- VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16A16_SFLOAT
- VK_FORMAT_R16G16_SNORM
• VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16A16_SNORM

VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_BIT_KHR must be supported for the following formats if the attachmentFragmentShadingRate feature is supported:

• VK_FORMAT_R8_UINT
Chapter 40. Additional Capabilities

This chapter describes additional capabilities beyond the minimum capabilities described in the Limits and Formats chapters, including:

- Additional Image Capabilities
- Additional Buffer Capabilities
- Optional Semaphore Capabilities
- Optional Fence Capabilities

40.1. Additional Image Capabilities

Additional image capabilities, such as larger dimensions or additional sample counts for certain image types, or additional capabilities for linear tiling format images, are described in this section.

To query additional capabilities specific to image types, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
VkResult vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    VkFormat format,
    VkImageType type,
    VkImageTiling tiling,
    VkImageUsageFlags usage,
    VkImageCreateFlags flags,
    VkImageFormatProperties* pImageFormatProperties);
```

- `physicalDevice` is the physical device from which to query the image capabilities.
- `format` is a `VkFormat` value specifying the image format, corresponding to `VkImageCreateInfo::format`.
- `type` is a `VkImageType` value specifying the image type, corresponding to `VkImageCreateInfo::imageType`.
- `tiling` is a `VkImageTiling` value specifying the image tiling, corresponding to `VkImageCreateInfo::tiling`.
- `usage` is a bitmask of `VkImageUsageFlagBits` specifying the intended usage of the image, corresponding to `VkImageCreateInfo::usage`.
- `flags` is a bitmask of `VkImageCreateFlagBits` specifying additional parameters of the image, corresponding to `VkImageCreateInfo::flags`.
- `pImageFormatProperties` is a pointer to a `VkImageFormatProperties` structure in which capabilities are returned.

The `format`, `type`, `tiling`, `usage`, and `flags` parameters correspond to parameters that would be consumed by `vkCreateImage` (as members of `VkImageCreateInfo`).
If `format` is not a supported image format, or if the combination of `format`, `type`, `tiling`, `usage`, and `flags` is not supported for images, then `vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties` returns `VK_ERROR_FORMAT_NOT_SUPPORTED`.

The limitations on an image format that are reported by `vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties` have the following property: if `usage1` and `usage2` of type `VkImageUsageFlags` are such that the bits set in `usage1` are a subset of the bits set in `usage2`, and `flags1` and `flags2` of type `VkImageCreateFlags` are such that the bits set in `flags1` are a subset of the bits set in `flags2`, then the limitations for `usage1` and `flags1` must be no more strict than the limitations for `usage2` and `flags2`, for all values of `format`, `type`, and `tiling`.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties-physicalDevice-parameter
  `physicalDevice` must be a valid `VkPhysicalDevice` handle
- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties-format-parameter
  `format` must be a valid `VkFormat` value
- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties-type-parameter
  `type` must be a valid `VkImageType` value
- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties-tiling-parameter
  `tiling` must be a valid `VkImageTiling` value
- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties-usage-parameter
  `usage` must be a valid combination of `VkImageUsageFlagBits` values
- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties-usage-requiredbitmask
  `usage` must not be 0
- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties-flags-parameter
  `flags` must be a valid combination of `VkImageCreateFlagBits` values
  `pImageFormatProperties` must be a valid pointer to a `VkImageFormatProperties` structure

### Return Codes

**Success**

- VK_SUCCESS

**Failure**

- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_FORMAT_NOT_SUPPORTED

The `VkImageFormatProperties` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkImageFormatProperties {
    VkExtent3D maxExtent;
    uint32_t maxMipLevels;
    uint32_t maxArrayLayers;
    VkSampleCountFlags sampleCounts;
    VkDeviceSize maxResourceSize;
} VkImageFormatProperties;

- `maxExtent` are the maximum image dimensions. See the Allowed Extent Values section below for how these values are constrained by type.

- `maxMipLevels` is the maximum number of mipmap levels. `maxMipLevels` must be equal to the number of levels in the complete mipmap chain based on the `maxExtent.width`, `maxExtent.height`, and `maxExtent.depth`, except when one of the following conditions is true, in which case it may instead be 1:
  - `vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties::tiling` was `VK_IMAGE_TILING_LINEAR`
  - the `VkPhysicalDeviceImageFormatInfo2::pNext` chain included a `VkPhysicalDeviceExternalImageFormatInfo` structure with a handle type included in the `handleTypes` member for which mipmap image support is not required
  - image format is one of those listed in Formats requiring sampler Y’C₉C₈ conversion for `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT` image views

- `maxArrayLayers` is the maximum number of array layers. `maxArrayLayers` must be no less than `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxImageArrayLayers`, except when one of the following conditions is true, in which case it may instead be 1:
  - `tiling` is `VK_IMAGE_TILING_LINEAR`
  - `tiling` is `VK_IMAGE_TILING_OPTIMAL` and type is `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D`
  - format is one of those listed in Formats requiring sampler Y’C₉C₈ conversion for `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT` image views

- `sampleCounts` is a bitmask of `VkSampleCountFlagBits` specifying all the supported sample counts for this image as described below.

- `maxResourceSize` is an upper bound on the total image size in bytes, inclusive of all image subresources. Implementations may have an address space limit on total size of a resource, which is advertised by this property. `maxResourceSize` must be at least $2^{31}$.

**Note**

There is no mechanism to query the size of an image before creating it, to compare that size against `maxResourceSize`. If an application attempts to create an image that exceeds this limit, the creation will fail and `vkCreateImage` will return `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY`. While the advertised limit must be at least $2^{31}$, it may not be possible to create an image that approaches that size, particularly for `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D`.

If the combination of parameters to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties` is not supported by
the implementation for use in `vkCreateImage`, then all members of `VkImageFormatProperties` will be filled with zero.

### Note

Filling `VkImageFormatProperties` with zero for unsupported formats is an exception to the usual rule that output structures have undefined contents on error. This exception was unintentional, but is preserved for backwards compatibility.

To query additional capabilities specific to image types, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2
VkResult vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties2KHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    const VkPhysicalDeviceImageFormatInfo2* pImageFormatInfo,
    VkImageFormatProperties2* pImageFormatProperties);
```

- `physicalDevice` is the physical device from which to query the image capabilities.
- `pImageFormatInfo` is a pointer to a `VkPhysicalDeviceImageFormatInfo2` structure describing the parameters that would be consumed by `vkCreateImage`.
- `pImageFormatProperties` is a pointer to a `VkImageFormatProperties2` structure in which capabilities are returned.

`vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties2KHR` behaves similarly to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties`, with the ability to return extended information in a `pNext` chain of output structures.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties2-physicalDevice-parameter `physicalDevice` must be a valid `VkPhysicalDevice` handle
- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties2-pImageFormatInfo-parameter `pImageFormatInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkPhysicalDeviceImageFormatInfo2` structure
- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties2-pImageFormatProperties-parameter `pImageFormatProperties` must be a valid pointer to a `VkImageFormatProperties2` structure
Return Codes

**Success**
- VK_SUCCESS

**Failure**
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_HOST_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DEVICE_MEMORY
- VK_ERROR_FORMAT_NOT_SUPPORTED

The `VkPhysicalDeviceImageFormatInfo2` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceImageFormatInfo2 {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkFormat format;
    VkImageType type;
    VkImageTiling tiling;
    VkImageUsageFlags usage;
    VkImageCreateFlags flags;
} VkPhysicalDeviceImageFormatInfo2;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2
typedef VkPhysicalDeviceImageFormatInfo2 VkPhysicalDeviceImageFormatInfo2KHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure. The `pNext` chain of `VkPhysicalDeviceImageFormatInfo2` is used to provide additional image parameters to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties2`.
- `format` is a `VkFormat` value indicating the image format, corresponding to `VkImageCreateInfo::format`.
- `type` is a `VkImageType` value indicating the image type, corresponding to `VkImageCreateInfo::imageType`.
- `tiling` is a `VkImageTiling` value indicating the image tiling, corresponding to `VkImageCreateInfo::tiling`.
- `usage` is a bitmask of `VkImageUsageFlagBits` indicating the intended usage of the image, corresponding to `VkImageCreateInfo::usage`.
- `flags` is a bitmask of `VkImageCreateFlagBits` indicating additional parameters of the image, corresponding to `VkImageCreateInfo::flags`. 
The members of `VkPhysicalDeviceImageFormatInfo2` correspond to the arguments to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties`, with `sType` and `pNext` added for extensibility.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceImageFormatInfo2-sType-sType**
  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_IMAGE_FORMAT_INFO_2`

- **VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceImageFormatInfo2-pNext-pNext**
  
  Each `pNext` member of any structure (including this one) in the `pNext` chain must be either `NULL` or a pointer to a valid instance of `VkImageFormatListCreateInfo` or `VkPhysicalDeviceExternalImageFormatInfo`

- **VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceImageFormatInfo2-sType-unique**
  
  The `sType` value of each struct in the `pNext` chain must be unique

- **VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceImageFormatInfo2-format-parameter**
  
  `format` must be a valid `VkFormat` value

- **VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceImageFormatInfo2-type-parameter**
  
  `type` must be a valid `VkImageType` value

- **VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceImageFormatInfo2-tiling-parameter**
  
  `tiling` must be a valid `VkImageTiling` value

- **VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceImageFormatInfo2-usage-parameter**
  
  `usage` must be a valid combination of `VkImageUsageFlagBits` values

- **VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceImageFormatInfo2-usage-requiredbitset**
  
  `usage` must not be `0`

- **VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceImageFormatInfo2-flags-parameter**
  
  `flags` must be a valid combination of `VkImageCreateFlagBits` values

The `VkImageFormatProperties2` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkImageFormatProperties2 {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkImageFormatProperties imageFormatProperties;
} VkImageFormatProperties2;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2
typedef VkImageFormatProperties2 VkImageFormatProperties2KHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure. The `pNext` chain of `VkImageFormatProperties2` is used to allow the specification of additional capabilities to be
returned from `vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties2`.

- `imageFormatProperties` is a `VkImageFormatProperties` structure in which capabilities are returned.

If the combination of parameters to `vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties2` is not supported by the implementation for use in `vkCreateImage`, then all members of `imageFormatProperties` will be filled with zero.

### Note

Filling `imageFormatProperties` with zero for unsupported formats is an exception to the usual rule that output structures have undefined contents on error. This exception was unintentional, but is preserved for backwards compatibility. This exception only applies to `imageFormatProperties`, not `sType`, `pNext`, or any structures chained from `pNext`.

---

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkImageFormatProperties2-sType-sType**
  - `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_FORMAT_PROPERTIES_2`

- **VUID-VkImageFormatProperties2-pNext-pNext**
  - Each `pNext` member of any structure (including this one) in the `pNext` chain must be either NULL or a pointer to a valid instance of `VkExternalImageFormatProperties` or `VkSamplerYcbcrConversionImageFormatProperties`

- **VUID-VkImageFormatProperties2-sType-unique**
  - The `sType` value of each struct in the `pNext` chain must be unique

To determine the image capabilities compatible with an external memory handle type, add a `VkPhysicalDeviceExternalImageFormatInfo` structure to the `pNext` chain of the `VkPhysicalDeviceImageFormatInfo2` structure and a `VkExternalImageFormatProperties` structure to the `pNext` chain of the `VkImageFormatProperties2` structure.

The `VkPhysicalDeviceExternalImageFormatInfo` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceExternalImageFormatInfo {
    VkStructureType             sType;
    const void*                 pNext;
    VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits handleType;
} VkPhysicalDeviceExternalImageFormatInfo;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory_capabilities
typedef VkPhysicalDeviceExternalImageFormatInfo
    VkPhysicalDeviceExternalImageFormatInfoKHR;
```
• **sType** is the type of this structure.

• **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.

• **handleType** is a `VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits` value specifying the memory handle type that will be used with the memory associated with the image.

If **handleType** is 0, `vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties2` will behave as if `VkPhysicalDeviceExternalImageFormatInfo` was not present, and `VkExternalImageFormatProperties` will be ignored.

If **handleType** is not compatible with the format, type, tiling, usage, and flags specified in `VkPhysicalDeviceImageFormatInfo2`, then `vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties2` returns `VK_ERROR_FORMAT_NOT_SUPPORTED`.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceExternalImageFormatInfo-sType-sType
  **sType** must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_EXTERNAL_IMAGE_FORMAT_INFO`.

- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceExternalImageFormatInfo-handleType-parameter
  If **handleType** is not 0, **handleType** must be a valid `VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits` value.

Possible values of `VkPhysicalDeviceExternalImageFormatInfo::handleType`, specifying an external memory handle type, are:
typedef enum VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits {
    VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_FD_BIT = 0x00000001,
    VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_BIT = 0x00000002,
    VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_KMT_BIT = 0x00000004,
    VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D11_TEXTURE_BIT = 0x00000008,
    VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D11_TEXTURE_KMT_BIT = 0x00000010,
    VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_HEAP_BIT = 0x00000020,
    VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_RESOURCE_BIT = 0x00000040,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory_capabilities
    VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_FD_BIT_KHR = VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_FD_BIT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory_capabilities
    VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_BIT_KHR = VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_BIT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory_capabilities
    VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_KMT_BIT_KHR = VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_KMT_BIT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory_capabilities
    VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D11_TEXTURE_BIT_KHR = VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D11_TEXTURE_BIT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory_capabilities
    VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D11_TEXTURE_KMT_BIT_KHR = VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D11_TEXTURE_KMT_BIT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory_capabilities
    VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_HEAP_BIT_KHR = VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_HEAP_BIT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory_capabilities
    VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_RESOURCE_BIT_KHR = VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_RESOURCE_BIT,
} VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits;

or the equivalent

// Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory_capabilities
typedef VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBitsKHR;

• **VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_FD_BIT** specifies a POSIX file descriptor handle that has only limited valid usage outside of Vulkan and other compatible APIs. It **must** be compatible with the POSIX system calls `dup`, `dup2`, `close`, and the non-standard system call `dup3`. Additionally, it **must** be transportable over a socket using an `SCM_RIGHTS` control message. It owns a reference to the underlying memory resource represented by its Vulkan memory object.

• **VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_BIT** specifies an NT handle that has only limited valid usage outside of Vulkan and other compatible APIs. It **must** be compatible with the functions `DuplicateHandle`, `CloseHandle`, `CompareObjectHandles`, `GetHandleInformation`, and `SetHandleInformation`. It owns a reference to the underlying memory resource represented by its Vulkan memory object.

• **VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_KMT_BIT** specifies a global share handle that has
only limited valid usage outside of Vulkan and other compatible APIs. It is not compatible with any native APIs. It does not own a reference to the underlying memory resource represented by its Vulkan memory object, and will therefore become invalid when all Vulkan memory objects associated with it are destroyed.

- **VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D11_TEXTURE_BIT** specifies an NT handle returned by `IDXGIResource1::CreateSharedHandle` referring to a Direct3D 10 or 11 texture resource. It owns a reference to the memory used by the Direct3D resource.

- **VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D11_TEXTURE_KMT_BIT** specifies a global share handle returned by `IDXGIResource::GetSharedHandle` referring to a Direct3D 10 or 11 texture resource. It does not own a reference to the underlying Direct3D resource, and will therefore become invalid when all Vulkan memory objects and Direct3D resources associated with it are destroyed.

- **VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_HEAP_BIT** specifies an NT handle returned by `ID3D12Device::CreateSharedHandle` referring to a Direct3D 12 heap resource. It owns a reference to the resources used by the Direct3D heap.

- **VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_RESOURCE_BIT** specifies an NT handle returned by `ID3D12Device::CreateSharedHandle` referring to a Direct3D 12 committed resource. It owns a reference to the memory used by the Direct3D resource.
Some external memory handle types can only be shared within the same underlying physical device and/or the same driver version, as defined in the following table:

**Table 65. External memory handle types compatibility**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Handle type</th>
<th>VkPhysicalDeviceIDProperties::driverUUID</th>
<th>VkPhysicalDeviceIDProperties::deviceUUID</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_FD_BIT</td>
<td>Must match</td>
<td>Must match</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_BIT</td>
<td>Must match</td>
<td>Must match</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_KMT_BIT</td>
<td>Must match</td>
<td>Must match</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D11_TEXTURE_BIT</td>
<td>Must match</td>
<td>Must match</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D11_TEXTURE_KMT_BIT</td>
<td>Must match</td>
<td>Must match</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_HEAP_BIT</td>
<td>Must match</td>
<td>Must match</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_RESOURCE_BIT</td>
<td>Must match</td>
<td>Must match</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>


typedef VkFlags VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlags;

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory_capabilities
typedef VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlags VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagsKHR;
```

**VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlags** is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more **VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits**.

The **VkExternalImageFormatProperties** structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkExternalImageFormatProperties {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkExternalMemoryProperties externalMemoryProperties;
} VkExternalImageFormatProperties;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory_capabilities
typedef VkExternalImageFormatProperties VkExternalImageFormatPropertiesKHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
• `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.

• `externalMemoryProperties` is a `VkExternalMemoryProperties` structure specifying various capabilities of the external handle type when used with the specified image creation parameters.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkExternalImageFormatProperties-sType-sType**
  - `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXTERNAL_IMAGE_FORMAT_PROPERTIES`

The `VkExternalMemoryProperties` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkExternalMemoryProperties {
    VkExternalMemoryFeatureFlags externalMemoryFeatures;
    VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlags exportFromImportedHandleTypes;
    VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlags compatibleHandleTypes;
} VkExternalMemoryProperties;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory_capabilities
typedef VkExternalMemoryProperties VkExternalMemoryPropertiesKHR;
```

- `externalMemoryFeatures` is a bitmask of `VkExternalMemoryFeatureFlagBits` specifying the features of `handleType`.

- `exportFromImportedHandleTypes` is a bitmask of `VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits` specifying which types of imported handle `handleType` can be exported from.

- `compatibleHandleTypes` is a bitmask of `VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits` specifying handle types which can be specified at the same time as `handleType` when creating an image compatible with external memory.

`compatibleHandleTypes` **must** include at least `handleType`. Inclusion of a handle type in `compatibleHandleTypes` does not imply the values returned in `VkImageFormatProperties2` will be the same when `VkPhysicalDeviceExternalImageFormatInfo::handleType` is set to that type. The application is responsible for querying the capabilities of all handle types intended for concurrent use in a single image and intersecting them to obtain the compatible set of capabilities.

Bits which **may** be set in `VkExternalMemoryProperties::externalMemoryFeatures`, specifying features of an external memory handle type, are:
typedef enum VkExternalMemoryFeatureFlagBits {
    VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_FEATURE_DEDICATED_ONLY_BIT = 0x00000001,
    VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_FEATURE_EXPORTABLE_BIT = 0x00000002,
    VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_FEATURE_IMPORTABLE_BIT = 0x00000004,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory_capabilities
    VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_FEATURE_DEDICATED_ONLY_BIT_KHR = VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_FEATURE_DEDICATED_ONLY_BIT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory_capabilities
    VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_FEATURE_EXPORTABLE_BIT_KHR = VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_FEATURE_EXPORTABLE_BIT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory_capabilities
    VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_FEATURE_IMPORTABLE_BIT_KHR = VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_FEATURE_IMPORTABLE_BIT,
} VkExternalMemoryFeatureFlagBits;

or the equivalent

// Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory_capabilities
typedef VkExternalMemoryFeatureFlagBits VkExternalMemoryFeatureFlagBitsKHR;

• **VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_FEATURE_DEDICATED_ONLY_BIT** specifies that images or buffers created with the specified parameters and handle type **must** use the mechanisms defined by VkMemoryDedicatedRequirements and VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfo to create (or import) a dedicated allocation for the image or buffer.

• **VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_FEATURE_EXPORTABLE_BIT** specifies that handles of this type **can** be exported from Vulkan memory objects.

• **VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_FEATURE_IMPORTABLE_BIT** specifies that handles of this type **can** be imported as Vulkan memory objects.

Because their semantics in external APIs roughly align with that of an image or buffer with a dedicated allocation in Vulkan, implementations are **required** to report **VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_FEATURE_DEDICATED_ONLY_BIT** for the following external handle types:

• **VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D11_TEXTURE_BIT**

• **VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D11_TEXTURE_KMT_BIT**

• **VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_RESOURCE_BIT**

typedef VkFlags VkExternalMemoryFeatureFlags;

or the equivalent

// Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory_capabilities
typedef VkExternalMemoryFeatureFlags VkExternalMemoryFeatureFlagsKHR;
**VkExternalMemoryFeatureFlags** is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more **VkExternalMemoryFeatureFlagBits**.

To determine the number of combined image samplers required to support a multi-planar format, add **VkSamplerYcbcrConversionImageFormatProperties** to the **pNext** chain of the **VkImageFormatProperties2** structure in a call to **vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties2**.

The **VkSamplerYcbcrConversionImageFormatProperties** structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkSamplerYcbcrConversionImageFormatProperties {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    uint32_t combinedImageSamplerDescriptorCount;
} VkSamplerYcbcrConversionImageFormatProperties;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
typedef VkSamplerYcbcrConversionImageFormatProperties VkSamplerYcbcrConversionImageFormatPropertiesKHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **combinedImageSamplerDescriptorCount** is the number of combined image sampler descriptors that the implementation uses to access the format.

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

```c
• VUID-VkSamplerYcbcrConversionImageFormatProperties-sType-sType
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SAMPLER_YCBCR_CONVERSION_IMAGE_FORMAT_PROPERTIES
```

**combinedImageSamplerDescriptorCount** is a number between 1 and the number of planes in the format. A descriptor set layout binding with immutable YCbCr conversion samplers will have a maximum **combinedImageSamplerDescriptorCount** which is the maximum across all formats supported by its samplers of the **combinedImageSamplerDescriptorCount** for each format. Descriptor sets with that layout will internally use that maximum **combinedImageSamplerDescriptorCount** descriptors for each descriptor in the binding. This expanded number of descriptors will be consumed from the descriptor pool when a descriptor set is allocated, and counts towards the **maxDescriptorSetSamplers**, **maxDescriptorSetSampledImages**, **maxPerStageDescriptorSamplers**, and **maxPerStageDescriptorSampledImages** limits.
Note

All descriptors in a binding use the same maximum combinedImageSamplerDescriptorCount descriptors to allow implementations to use a uniform stride for dynamic indexing of the descriptors in the binding.

For example, consider a descriptor set layout binding with two descriptors and immutable samplers for multi-planar formats that have VkSamplerYcbcrConversionImageFormatProperties::combinedImageSamplerDescriptorCount values of 2 and 3 respectively. There are two descriptors in the binding and the maximum combinedImageSamplerDescriptorCount is 3, so descriptor sets with this layout consume 6 descriptors from the descriptor pool. To create a descriptor pool that allows allocating four descriptor sets with this layout, descriptorCount must be at least 24.

40.1.1. Supported Sample Counts

vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties returns a bitmask of VkSampleCountFlagBits in sampleCounts specifying the supported sample counts for the image parameters.

sampleCounts will be set to VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT if at least one of the following conditions is true:

- tiling is VK_IMAGE_TILING_LINEAR
- type is not VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D
- flags contains VK_IMAGE_CREATE_CUBE_COMPATIBLE_BIT
- Neither the VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT flag nor the VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT flag in VkFormatProperties::optimalTilingFeatures returned by vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties is set
- VkPhysicalDeviceExternalImageFormatInfo::handleType is an external handle type for which multisampled image support is not required.
- format is one of those listed in Formats requiring sampler Y’CbCr conversion for VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT image views
- usage contains VK_IMAGE_USAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_BIT_KHR

Otherwise, the bits in sampleCounts will be the sample counts supported for the specified values of usage and format. For each bit set in usage, the supported sample counts relate to the limits in VkPhysicalDeviceLimits as follows:

- If usage includes VK_IMAGE_USAGE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT and format is a floating- or fixed-point color format, a superset of VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::framebufferColorSampleCounts
- If usage includes VK_IMAGE_USAGE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT, and format includes a depth aspect, a superset of VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::framebufferDepthSampleCounts
- If usage includes VK_IMAGE_USAGE_DEPTH_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_BIT, and format includes a stencil aspect, a superset of VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::framebufferStencilSampleCounts
- If usage includes VK_IMAGE_USAGE_SAMPLED_BIT, and format includes a color aspect, a superset of VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::sampledImageColorSampleCounts
• If `usage` includes `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_SAMPLED_BIT`, and `format` includes a depth aspect, a superset of `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::sampledImageDepthSampleCounts`

• If `usage` includes `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_SAMPLED_BIT`, and `format` is an integer format, a superset of `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::sampledImageIntegerSampleCounts`

• If `usage` includes `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_STORAGE_BIT`, a superset of `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::storageImageSampleCounts`

If multiple bits are set in `usage`, `sampleCounts` will be the intersection of the per-usage values described above.

If none of the bits described above are set in `usage`, then there is no corresponding limit in `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits`. In this case, `sampleCounts` must include at least `VK_SAMPLE_COUNT_1_BIT`.

### 40.1.2. Allowed Extent Values Based On Image Type

Implementations may support extent values larger than the required minimum/maximum values for certain types of images. `VkImageFormatProperties::maxExtent` for each type is subject to the constraints below.

**Note**

Implementations **must** support images with dimensions up to the **required minimum/maximum values** for all types of images. It follows that the query for additional capabilities **must** return extent values that are at least as large as the required values.

For `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_1D`:

- `maxExtent.width ≥ VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxImageDimension1D`
- `maxExtent.height = 1`
- `maxExtent.depth = 1`

For `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D` when `flags` does not contain `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_CUBE_COMPATIBLE_BIT`:

- `maxExtent.width ≥ VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxImageDimension2D`
- `maxExtent.height ≥ VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxImageDimension2D`
- `maxExtent.depth = 1`

For `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_2D` when `flags` contains `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_CUBE_COMPATIBLE_BIT`:

- `maxExtent.width ≥ VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxImageDimensionCube`
- `maxExtent.height ≥ VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxImageDimensionCube`
- `maxExtent.depth = 1`

For `VK_IMAGE_TYPE_3D`:

- `maxExtent.width ≥ VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxImageDimension3D`
• maxExtent.height ≥ VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxImageDimension3D
• maxExtent.depth ≥ VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxImageDimension3D

### 40.2. Additional Buffer Capabilities

To query the external handle types supported by buffers, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory_capabilities
void vkGetPhysicalDeviceExternalBufferPropertiesKHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    const VkPhysicalDeviceExternalBufferInfo* pExternalBufferInfo,
    VkExternalBufferProperties* pExternalBufferProperties);
```

- `physicalDevice` is the physical device from which to query the buffer capabilities.
- `pExternalBufferInfo` is a pointer to a `VkPhysicalDeviceExternalBufferInfo` structure describing the parameters that would be consumed by `vkCreateBuffer`.
- `pExternalBufferProperties` is a pointer to a `VkExternalBufferProperties` structure in which capabilities are returned.

#### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceExternalBufferProperties-physicalDevice-parameter
  - `physicalDevice` must be a valid `VkPhysicalDevice` handle
- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceExternalBufferProperties-pExternalBufferInfo-parameter
  - `pExternalBufferInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkPhysicalDeviceExternalBufferInfo` structure
- VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceExternalBufferProperties-pExternalBufferProperties-parameter
  - `pExternalBufferProperties` must be a valid pointer to a `VkExternalBufferProperties` structure

The `VkPhysicalDeviceExternalBufferInfo` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceExternalBufferInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkBufferCreateFlags flags;
    VkBufferUsageFlags usage;
    VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits handleType;
} VkPhysicalDeviceExternalBufferInfo;
```

or the equivalent
typedef VkPhysicalDeviceExternalBufferInfo VkPhysicalDeviceExternalBufferInfoKHR;

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is **NULL** or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **flags** is a bitmask of VkBufferCreateFlagBits describing additional parameters of the buffer, corresponding to VkBufferCreateInfo::flags.
- **usage** is a bitmask of VkBufferUsageFlagBits describing the intended usage of the buffer, corresponding to VkBufferCreateInfo::usage.
- **handleType** is a VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits value specifying the memory handle type that will be used with the memory associated with the buffer.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceExternalBufferInfo-sType-sType**
  
  sType must be VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_EXTERNAL_BUFFER_INFO

- **VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceExternalBufferInfo-pNext-pNext**
  
  pNext must be **NULL**

- **VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceExternalBufferInfo-flags-parameter**
  
  flags must be a valid combination of VkBufferCreateFlagBits values

- **VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceExternalBufferInfo-usage-parameter**
  
  usage must be a valid combination of VkBufferUsageFlagBits values

- **VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceExternalBufferInfo-usage-requiredbitmask**
  
  usage must not be 0

- **VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceExternalBufferInfo-handleType-parameter**
  
  handleType must be a valid VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits value

The VkExternalBufferProperties structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkExternalBufferProperties {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkExternalMemoryProperties externalMemoryProperties;
} VkExternalBufferProperties;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_memory_capabilities
typedef VkExternalBufferProperties VkExternalBufferPropertiesKHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
• `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.

• `externalMemoryProperties` is a `VkExternalMemoryProperties` structure specifying various capabilities of the external handle type when used with the specified buffer creation parameters.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- `VUID-VkExternalBufferProperties-sType-sType`  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXTERNAL_BUFFER_PROPERTIES`

- `VUID-VkExternalBufferProperties-pNext-pNext`  
  `pNext` must be `NULL`

### 40.3. Optional Semaphore Capabilities

Semaphores may support import and export of their payload to external handles. To query the external handle types supported by semaphores, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_semaphore_capabilities
void vkGetPhysicalDeviceExternalSemaphorePropertiesKHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    const VkPhysicalDeviceExternalSemaphoreInfo* pExternalSemaphoreInfo,
    VkExternalSemaphoreProperties* pExternalSemaphoreProperties);
```

• `physicalDevice` is the physical device from which to query the semaphore capabilities.

• `pExternalSemaphoreInfo` is a pointer to a `VkPhysicalDeviceExternalSemaphoreInfo` structure describing the parameters that would be consumed by `vkCreateSemaphore`.

• `pExternalSemaphoreProperties` is a pointer to a `VkExternalSemaphoreProperties` structure in which capabilities are returned.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- `VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceExternalSemaphoreProperties-physicalDevice-parameter`  
  `physicalDevice` must be a valid `VkPhysicalDevice` handle

- `VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceExternalSemaphoreProperties-pExternalSemaphoreInfo-parameter`  
  `pExternalSemaphoreInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkPhysicalDeviceExternalSemaphoreInfo` structure

- `VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceExternalSemaphoreProperties-pExternalSemaphoreProperties-parameter`  
  `pExternalSemaphoreProperties` must be a valid pointer to a `VkExternalSemaphoreProperties` structure

The `VkPhysicalDeviceExternalSemaphoreInfo` structure is defined as:
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceExternalSemaphoreInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlagBits handleType;
} VkPhysicalDeviceExternalSemaphoreInfo;

or the equivalent

// Provided by VK_KHR_external_semaphore_capabilities
typedef VkPhysicalDeviceExternalSemaphoreInfo
VkPhysicalDeviceExternalSemaphoreInfoKHR;

- **sType** is the type of this structure.
- **pNext** is NULL or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- **handleType** is a `VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlagBits` value specifying the external semaphore handle type for which capabilities will be returned.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceExternalSemaphoreInfo-sType-sType
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICALDEVICE_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_INFO`
- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceExternalSemaphoreInfo-pNext-pNext
  `pNext` must be NULL or a pointer to a valid instance of `VkSemaphoreTypeCreateInfo`
- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceExternalSemaphoreInfo-sType-unique
  The `sType` value of each struct in the `pNext` chain must be unique
- VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceExternalSemaphoreInfo-handleType-parameter
  `handleType` must be a valid `VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlagBits` value

Bits which may be set in `VkPhysicalDeviceExternalSemaphoreInfo::handleType`, specifying an external semaphore handle type, are:
typedef enum VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlagBits {
    VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_FD_BIT = 0x00000001,
    VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_BIT = 0x00000002,
    VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_KMT_BIT = 0x00000004,
    VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_FENCE_BIT = 0x00000008,
    VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_SYNC_FD_BIT = 0x00000010,
    VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D11_FENCE_BIT =
        VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_FENCE_BIT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_external_semaphore_capabilities
    VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_FD_BIT_KHR =
        VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_FD_BIT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_external_semaphore_capabilities
    VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_BIT_KHR =
        VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_BIT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_external_semaphore_capabilities
    VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_KMT_BIT_KHR =
        VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_KMT_BIT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_external_semaphore_capabilities
    VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_FENCE_BIT_KHR =
        VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_FENCE_BIT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_external_semaphore_capabilities
    VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_SYNC_FD_BIT_KHR =
        VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_SYNC_FD_BIT,
} VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlagBits;

or the equivalent

// Provided by VK_KHR_external_semaphore_capabilities
typedef VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlagBits
    VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlagBitsKHR;

• **VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_FD_BIT** specifies a POSIX file descriptor handle that has only limited valid usage outside of Vulkan and other compatible APIs. It must be compatible with the POSIX system calls `dup`, `dup2`, `close`, and the non-standard system call `dup3`. Additionally, it must be transportable over a socket using an `SCM_RIGHTS` control message. It owns a reference to the underlying synchronization primitive represented by its Vulkan semaphore object.

• **VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_BIT** specifies an NT handle that has only limited valid usage outside of Vulkan and other compatible APIs. It must be compatible with the functions `DuplicateHandle`, `CloseHandle`, `CompareObjectHandles`, `GetHandleInformation`, and `SetHandleInformation`. It owns a reference to the underlying synchronization primitive represented by its Vulkan semaphore object.

• **VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_KMT_BIT** specifies a global share handle that has only limited valid usage outside of Vulkan and other compatible APIs. It is not compatible with any native APIs. It does not own a reference to the underlying synchronization primitive represented by its Vulkan semaphore object, and will therefore become invalid when all Vulkan semaphore objects associated with it are destroyed.
• **VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_FENCE_BIT** specifies an NT handle returned by `ID3D12Device::CreateSharedHandle` referring to a Direct3D 12 fence, or `ID3D11Device5::CreateFence` referring to a Direct3D 11 fence. It owns a reference to the underlying synchronization primitive associated with the Direct3D fence.

• **VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D11_FENCE_BIT** is an alias of **VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_FENCE_BIT** with the same meaning. It is provided for convenience and code clarity when interacting with D3D11 fences.

• **VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_SYNC_FD_BIT** specifies a POSIX file descriptor handle to a Linux Sync File or Android Fence object. It can be used with any native API accepting a valid sync file or fence as input. It owns a reference to the underlying synchronization primitive associated with the file descriptor. Implementations which support importing this handle type must accept any type of sync or fence FD supported by the native system they are running on.

**Note**

Handles of type **VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_SYNC_FD_BIT** generated by the implementation may represent either Linux Sync Files or Android Fences at the implementation's discretion. Applications should only use operations defined for both types of file descriptors, unless they know via means external to Vulkan the type of the file descriptor, or are prepared to deal with the system-defined operation failures resulting from using the wrong type.
Some external semaphore handle types can only be shared within the same underlying physical device and/or the same driver version, as defined in the following table:

**Table 66. External semaphore handle types compatibility**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Handle type</th>
<th>VkPhysicalDeviceIDProperties::driverUUID</th>
<th>VkPhysicalDeviceIDProperties::deviceUUID</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_FD_BIT</td>
<td>Must match</td>
<td>Must match</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_BIT</td>
<td>Must match</td>
<td>Must match</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_KMT_BIT</td>
<td>Must match</td>
<td>Must match</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_FENCE_BIT</td>
<td>Must match</td>
<td>Must match</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_SYNC_FD_BIT</td>
<td>No restriction</td>
<td>No restriction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_ZIRCON_EVENT_BIT_FUCHSIA</td>
<td>No restriction</td>
<td>No restriction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```c
typedef VkFlags VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlags;
```
or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_semaphore_capabilities
typedef VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlags VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlagsKHR;
```

**VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlags** is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more **VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlagBits**.

The **VkExternalSemaphoreProperties** structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkExternalSemaphoreProperties {
    VkStructureType sType;
    void* pNext;
    VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlags exportFromImportedHandleTypes;
    VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlags compatibleHandleTypes;
    VkExternalSemaphoreFeatureFlags externalSemaphoreFeatures;
} VkExternalSemaphoreProperties;
```
or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_semaphore_capabilities
typedef VkExternalSemaphoreProperties VkExternalSemaphorePropertiesKHR;
```

- **sType** is the type of this structure
• `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.

• `exportFromImportedHandleTypes` is a bitmask of `VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlagBits` specifying which types of imported handle `handleType` can be exported from.

• `compatibleHandleTypes` is a bitmask of `VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlagBits` specifying handle types which can be specified at the same time as `handleType` when creating a semaphore.

• `externalSemaphoreFeatures` is a bitmask of `VkExternalSemaphoreFeatureFlagBits` describing the features of `handleType`.

If `handleType` is not supported by the implementation, then `VkExternalSemaphoreProperties::externalSemaphoreFeatures` will be set to zero.

### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-VkExternalSemaphoreProperties-sType-sType**
  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_PROPERTIES`.

- **VUID-VkExternalSemaphoreProperties-pNext-pNext**
  
  `pNext` must be `NULL`.

Possible values of `VkExternalSemaphoreProperties::externalSemaphoreFeatures`, specifying the features of an external semaphore handle type, are:

```c
typedef enum VkExternalSemaphoreFeatureFlagBits {
    VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_FEATURE_EXPORTABLE_BIT = 0x00000001,
    VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_FEATURE_IMPORTABLE_BIT = 0x00000002,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_external_semaphore_capabilities
    VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_FEATURE_EXPORTABLE_BIT_KHR = VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_FEATURE_EXPORTABLE_BIT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_external_semaphore_capabilities
    VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_FEATURE_IMPORTABLE_BIT_KHR = VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_FEATURE_IMPORTABLE_BIT,
} VkExternalSemaphoreFeatureFlagBits;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_semaphore_capabilities
typedef VkExternalSemaphoreFeatureFlagBits VkExternalSemaphoreFeatureFlagBitsKHR;
```

- **`VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_FEATURE_EXPORTABLE_BIT`** specifies that handles of this type can be exported from Vulkan semaphore objects.

- **`VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_FEATURE_IMPORTABLE_BIT`** specifies that handles of this type can be imported as Vulkan semaphore objects.

```c
typedef VkFlags VkExternalSemaphoreFeatureFlags;
```
or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_semaphore_capabilities
typedef VkExternalSemaphoreFeatureFlags VkExternalSemaphoreFeatureFlagsKHR;
```

`VkExternalSemaphoreFeatureFlags` is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more `VkExternalSemaphoreFeatureFlagBits`.

### 40.4. Optional Fence Capabilities

Fences **may** support import and export of their payload to external handles. To query the external handle types supported by fences, call:

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_fence_capabilities
void vkGetPhysicalDeviceExternalFencePropertiesKHR(
    VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice,
    const VkPhysicalDeviceExternalFenceInfo* pExternalFenceInfo,
    VkExternalFenceProperties* pExternalFenceProperties);
```

- `physicalDevice` is the physical device from which to query the fence capabilities.
- `pExternalFenceInfo` is a pointer to a `VkPhysicalDeviceExternalFenceInfo` structure describing the parameters that would be consumed by `vkCreateFence`.
- `pExternalFenceProperties` is a pointer to a `VkExternalFenceProperties` structure in which capabilities are returned.

#### Valid Usage (Implicit)

- **VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceExternalFenceProperties-physicalDevice-parameter**
  - `physicalDevice` must be a valid `VkPhysicalDevice` handle
- **VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceExternalFenceProperties-pExternalFenceInfo-parameter**
  - `pExternalFenceInfo` must be a valid pointer to a valid `VkPhysicalDeviceExternalFenceInfo` structure
- **VUID-vkGetPhysicalDeviceExternalFenceProperties-pExternalFenceProperties-parameter**
  - `pExternalFenceProperties` must be a valid pointer to a `VkExternalFenceProperties` structure

The `VkPhysicalDeviceExternalFenceInfo` structure is defined as:

```c
typedef struct VkPhysicalDeviceExternalFenceInfo {
    VkStructureType sType;
    const void* pNext;
    VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlagBits handleType;
} VkPhysicalDeviceExternalFenceInfo;
```
or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_fence_capabilities
typedef VkPhysicalDeviceExternalFenceInfo VkPhysicalDeviceExternalFenceInfoKHR;
```

- `sType` is the type of this structure.
- `pNext` is `NULL` or a pointer to a structure extending this structure.
- `handleType` is a `VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlagBits` value specifying an external fence handle type for which capabilities will be returned.

**Note**

Handles of type `VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_SYNC_FD_BIT` generated by the implementation may represent either Linux Sync Files or Android Fences at the implementation's discretion. Applications **should** only use operations defined for both types of file descriptors, unless they know via means external to Vulkan the type of the file descriptor, or are prepared to deal with the system-defined operation failures resulting from using the wrong type.

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- `VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceExternalFenceInfo-sType-sType`  
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_EXTERNAL_FENCE_INFO`
- `VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceExternalFenceInfo-pNext-pNext`  
  `pNext` must be `NULL`
- `VUID-VkPhysicalDeviceExternalFenceInfo-handleType-parameter`  
  `handleType` must be a valid `VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlagBits` value

Bits which **may** be set in `VkPhysicalDeviceExternalFenceInfo::handleType`, and in the `exportFromImportedHandleTypes` and `compatibleHandleTypes` members of `VkExternalFenceProperties`, to indicate external fence handle types, are:
typedef enum VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlagBits {
    VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_FD_BIT = 0x00000001,
    VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_BIT = 0x00000002,
    VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_KMT_BIT = 0x00000004,
    VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_SYNC_FD_BIT = 0x00000008,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_external_fence_capabilities
    VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_FD_BIT_KHR =
    VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_FD_BIT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_external_fence_capabilities
    VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_BIT_KHR =
    VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_BIT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_external_fence_capabilities
    VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_KMT_BIT_KHR =
    VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_KMT_BIT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_external_fence_capabilities
    VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_SYNC_FD_BIT_KHR =
    VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_SYNC_FD_BIT,
} VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlagBits;

or the equivalent

// Provided by VK_KHR_external_fence_capabilities
typedef VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlagBits VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlagBitsKHR;

• **VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_FD_BIT** specifies a POSIX file descriptor handle that has only limited valid usage outside of Vulkan and other compatible APIs. It **must** be compatible with the POSIX system calls `dup`, `dup2`, `close`, and the non-standard system call `dup3`. Additionally, it **must** be transportable over a socket using an `SCM_RIGHTS` control message. It owns a reference to the underlying synchronization primitive represented by its Vulkan fence object.

• **VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_BIT** specifies an NT handle that has only limited valid usage outside of Vulkan and other compatible APIs. It **must** be compatible with the functions `DuplicateHandle`, `CloseHandle`, `CompareObjectHandles`, `GetHandleInformation`, and `SetHandleInformation`. It owns a reference to the underlying synchronization primitive represented by its Vulkan fence object.

• **VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_KMT_BIT** specifies a global share handle that has only limited valid usage outside of Vulkan and other compatible APIs. It is not compatible with any native APIs. It does not own a reference to the underlying synchronization primitive represented by its Vulkan fence object, and will therefore become invalid when all Vulkan fence objects associated with it are destroyed.

• **VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_SYNC_FD_BIT** specifies a POSIX file descriptor handle to a Linux Sync File or Android Fence. It can be used with any native API accepting a valid sync file or fence as input. It owns a reference to the underlying synchronization primitive associated with the file descriptor. Implementations which support importing this handle type **must** accept any type of sync or fence FD supported by the native system they are running on.
Some external fence handle types can only be shared within the same underlying physical device and/or the same driver version, as defined in the following table:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Handle type</th>
<th>VkPhysicalDeviceIDProperties:driverUUID</th>
<th>VkPhysicalDeviceIDProperties:deviceUUID</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_FD_BIT</td>
<td>Must match</td>
<td>Must match</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_BIT</td>
<td>Must match</td>
<td>Must match</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_KMT_BIT</td>
<td>Must match</td>
<td>Must match</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_SYNC_FD_BIT</td>
<td>No restriction</td>
<td>No restriction</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

```markdown
typedef VkFlags VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlags;
```

or the equivalent

```markdown
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_fence_capabilities
typedef VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlags VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlagsKHR;
```

`VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlags` is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more `VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlagBits`.

The `VkExternalFenceProperties` structure is defined as:

```markdown
typedef struct VkExternalFenceProperties {
  VkStructureType sType;
  void* pNext;
  VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlags exportFromImportedHandleTypes;
  VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlags compatibleHandleTypes;
  VkExternalFenceFeatureFlags externalFenceFeatures;
} VkExternalFenceProperties;
```

or the equivalent

```markdown
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_fence_capabilities
typedef VkExternalFenceProperties VkExternalFencePropertiesKHR;
```

- `exportFromImportedHandleTypes` is a bitmask of `VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlagBits` indicating which types of imported handle `handleType` can be exported from.
- `compatibleHandleTypes` is a bitmask of `VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlagBits` specifying handle types which can be specified at the same time as `handleType` when creating a fence.
• `externalFenceFeatures` is a bitmask of `VkExternalFenceFeatureFlagBits` indicating the features of `handleType`.

If `handleType` is not supported by the implementation, then `VkExternalFenceProperties::externalFenceFeatures` will be set to zero.

**Valid Usage (Implicit)**

- VUID-VkExternalFenceProperties-sType-sType
  `sType` must be `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXTERNAL_FENCE_PROPERTIES`
- VUID-VkExternalFenceProperties-pNext-pNext
  `pNext` must be `NULL`

Bits which may be set in `VkExternalFenceProperties::externalFenceFeatures`, indicating features of a fence external handle type, are:

```c
typedef enum VkExternalFenceFeatureFlagBits {
    VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_FEATURE_EXPORTABLE_BIT = 0x00000001,
    VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_FEATURE_IMPORTABLE_BIT = 0x00000002,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_external_fence_capabilities
    VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_FEATURE_EXPORTABLE_BIT_KHR =
    VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_FEATURE_EXPORTABLE_BIT,
    // Provided by VK_KHR_external_fence_capabilities
    VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_FEATURE_IMPORTABLE_BIT_KHR =
    VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_FEATURE_IMPORTABLE_BIT,
} VkExternalFenceFeatureFlagBits;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_fence_capabilities
typedef VkExternalFenceFeatureFlagBits VkExternalFenceFeatureFlagBitsKHR;
```

- `VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_FEATURE_EXPORTABLE_BIT` specifies handles of this type can be exported from Vulkan fence objects.
- `VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_FEATURE_IMPORTABLE_BIT` specifies handles of this type can be imported to Vulkan fence objects.

```c
typedef VkFlags VkExternalFenceFeatureFlags;
```

or the equivalent

```c
// Provided by VK_KHR_external_fence_capabilities
typedef VkExternalFenceFeatureFlags VkExternalFenceFeatureFlagsKHR;
```
**VkExternalFenceFeatureFlags** is a bitmask type for setting a mask of zero or more **VkExternalFenceFeatureFlagBits**.
Chapter 41. Debugging

To aid developers in tracking down errors in the application’s use of Vulkan, particularly in combination with an external debugger or profiler, *debugging extensions* may be available.

The `VkObjectType` enumeration defines values, each of which corresponds to a specific Vulkan handle type. These values *can* be used to associate debug information with a particular type of object through one or more extensions.

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
typedef enum VkObjectType {
    VK_OBJECT_TYPE_UNKNOWN = 0,
    VK_OBJECT_TYPE_INSTANCE = 1,
    VK_OBJECT_TYPE_PHYSICALDEVICE = 2,
    VK_OBJECT_TYPE_DEVICE = 3,
    VK_OBJECT_TYPE_QUEUE = 4,
    VK_OBJECT_TYPE_SEMAPHORE = 5,
    VK_OBJECT_TYPE_COMMANDBUFFER = 6,
    VK_OBJECT_TYPE_FENCE = 7,
    VK_OBJECT_TYPE_DEVICE_MEMORY = 8,
    VK_OBJECT_TYPE_BUFFER = 9,
    VK_OBJECT_TYPE_IMAGE = 10,
    VK_OBJECT_TYPE_EVENT = 11,
    VK_OBJECT_TYPE_QUERYPOOL = 12,
    VK_OBJECT_TYPE_BUFFERVIEW = 13,
    VK_OBJECT_TYPE_IMAGEVIEW = 14,
    VK_OBJECT_TYPE_SHADER_MODULE = 15,
    VK_OBJECT_TYPE_PIPELINECACHE = 16,
    VK_OBJECT_TYPE_PIPELINELAYOUT = 17,
    VK_OBJECT_TYPE_RENDERPASS = 18,
    VK_OBJECT_TYPE_PIPELINE = 19,
    VK_OBJECT_TYPE_DESCRIPTORSETLAYOUT = 20,
    VK_OBJECT_TYPE_SAMPLER = 21,
    VK_OBJECT_TYPE_DESCRIPTORPOOL = 22,
    VK_OBJECT_TYPE_DESCRIPTORSET = 23,
    VK_OBJECT_TYPE_FRAMEBUFFER = 24,
    VK_OBJECT_TYPE_COMMANDPOOL = 25,
    VK_OBJECT_TYPE_SAMPLER_YCBCRCONVERSION = 100156000,
    VK_OBJECT_TYPE_DESCRIPTORUPDATETEMPLATE = 1000085000,
} VkObjectType;
```

// Provided by VK_KHR_surface
```
VK_OBJECT_TYPE_SURFACE_KHR = 1000000000,
```

// Provided by VK_KHR_swapchain
```
VK_OBJECT_TYPE_SWAPCHAIN_KHR = 1000001000,
```

// Provided by VK_KHR_display
```
VK_OBJECT_TYPE_DISPLAY_KHR = 1000002000,
```

// Provided by VK_KHR_display
```
VK_OBJECT_TYPE_DISPLAYMODE_KHR = 1000002001
```

// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
```
VK_OBJECT_TYPE_VIDEO_SESSION_KHR = 1000023000
```

#ifdef VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS
// Provided by VK_KHR_video_queue
```
VK_OBJECT_TYPE_VIDEOSESSION_KHR = 1000023000
```
```
Table 68. VkObjectType and Vulkan Handle Relationship

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VkObjectType</th>
<th>Vulkan Handle Type</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_OBJECT_TYPE_UNKNOWN</td>
<td>Unknown/Undefined Handle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_OBJECT_TYPE_INSTANCE</td>
<td>VkInstance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_OBJECT_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE</td>
<td>VkPhysicalDevice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_OBJECT_TYPE_DEVICE</td>
<td>VkDevice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_OBJECT_TYPE_QUEUE</td>
<td>VkQueue</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_OBJECT_TYPE_SEMAPHORE</td>
<td>VkSemaphore</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_OBJECT_TYPE_COMMAND_BUFFER</td>
<td>VkCommandBuffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_OBJECT_TYPE_FENCE</td>
<td>VkFence</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_OBJECT_TYPE_DEVICE_MEMORY</td>
<td>VkDeviceMemory</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_OBJECT_TYPE_BUFFER</td>
<td>VkDevice</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_OBJECT_TYPE_IMAGE</td>
<td>VkImage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_OBJECT_TYPE_EVENT</td>
<td>VkEvent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_OBJECT_TYPE_QUERY_POOL</td>
<td>VkQueryPool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_OBJECT_TYPE_BUFFER_VIEW</td>
<td>VkBufferView</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_OBJECT_TYPE_IMAGE_VIEW</td>
<td>VkImageView</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_OBJECT_TYPE_SHADER_MODULE</td>
<td>VkShaderModule</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_OBJECT_TYPE_PIPELINE_CACHE</td>
<td>VkPipelineCache</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_OBJECT_TYPE_PIPELINE_LAYOUT</td>
<td>VkPipelineLayout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_OBJECT_TYPE_RENDER_PASS</td>
<td>VkRenderPass</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_OBJECT_TYPE_PIPELINE</td>
<td>VkPipeline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_OBJECT_TYPE_DESCRIPTOR_SET_LAYOUT</td>
<td>VkDescriptorSetLayout</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkObjectType</td>
<td>Vulkan Handle Type</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
<td>--------------------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_OBJECT_TYPE_SAMPLER</td>
<td>VkSampler</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_OBJECT_TYPE_DESCRIPTOR_POOL</td>
<td>VkDescriptorPool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_OBJECT_TYPE_DESCRIPTOR_SET</td>
<td>VkDescriptorSet</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_OBJECT_TYPE_FRAMEBUFFER</td>
<td>VkFramebuffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_OBJECT_TYPE_COMMAND_POOL</td>
<td>VkCommandPool</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_OBJECT_TYPE_SAMPLER_YCBCR_CONVERSION</td>
<td>VkSamplerYcbcrConversion</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_OBJECT_TYPE_DESCRIPTOR_UPDATE_TEMPLATE</td>
<td>VkDescriptorUpdateTemplate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_OBJECT_TYPE_SURFACE_KHR</td>
<td>VkSurfaceKHR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_OBJECT_TYPE_SWAPCHAIN_KHR</td>
<td>VkSwapchainKHR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_OBJECT_TYPE_DISPLAY_KHR</td>
<td>VkDisplayKHR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_OBJECT_TYPE_DISPLAY_MODE_KHR</td>
<td>VkDisplayModeKHR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_OBJECT_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_KHR</td>
<td>VkAccelerationStructureKHR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_OBJECT_TYPE_DEFERRED_OPERATION_KHR</td>
<td>VkDeferredOperationKHR</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

If this Specification was generated with any such extensions included, they will be described in the remainder of this chapter.
Appendix A: Vulkan Environment for SPIR-V

Shaders for Vulkan are defined by the Khronos SPIR-V Specification as well as the Khronos SPIR-V Extended Instructions for GLSL Specification. This appendix defines additional SPIR-V requirements applying to Vulkan shaders.

Versions and Formats

A Vulkan 1.0 implementation must support the 1.0 version of SPIR-V and the 1.0 version of the SPIR-V Extended Instructions for GLSL. If the VK_KHR_spirv_1_4 extension is enabled, the implementation must additionally support the 1.4 version of SPIR-V.

A SPIR-V module passed into vkCreateShaderModule is interpreted as a series of 32-bit words in host endianness, with literal strings packed as described in section 2.2 of the SPIR-V Specification. The first few words of the SPIR-V module must be a magic number and a SPIR-V version number, as described in section 2.3 of the SPIR-V Specification.

Capabilities

The table below lists the set of SPIR-V capabilities that may be supported in Vulkan implementations. The application must not use any of these capabilities in SPIR-V passed to vkCreateShaderModule unless one of the following conditions is met for the VkDevice specified in the device parameter of vkCreateShaderModule:

- The corresponding field in the table is blank.
- Any corresponding Vulkan feature is enabled.
- Any corresponding Vulkan extension is enabled.
- Any corresponding Vulkan property is supported.
- The corresponding core version is supported (as returned by VkPhysicalDeviceProperties::apiVersion).

Table 69. List of SPIR-V Capabilities and corresponding Vulkan features, extensions, or core version

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SPIR-V OpCapability</th>
<th>Vulkan feature, extension, or core version</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Matrix</td>
<td>VK_API_VERSION_1_0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shader</td>
<td>VK_API_VERSION_1_0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InputAttachment</td>
<td>VK_API_VERSION_1_0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sampled1D</td>
<td>VK_API_VERSION_1_0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 69 | Appendix A: Vulkan Environment for SPIR-V
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SPIR-V</th>
<th>OpCapability</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Vulkan feature, extension, or core version</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Vulkan feature, extension, or core version</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Image1D</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_API_VERSION_1_0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SampledBuffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_API_VERSION_1_0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ImageBuffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_API_VERSION_1_0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ImageQuery</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_API_VERSION_1_0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DerivativeControl</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_API_VERSION_1_0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Geometry</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures::geometryShader</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Tessellation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures::tessellationShader</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Float64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures::shaderFloat64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Int64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures::shaderInt64</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Int64Atomics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkPhysicalDeviceVulkan12Features::shaderBufferInt64Atomics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkPhysicalDeviceVulkan12Features::shaderSharedInt64Atomics</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Int16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures::shaderInt16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TessellationPointSize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures::shaderTessellationAndGeometryPointSize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>GeometryPointSize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures::shaderTessellationAndGeometryPointSize</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ImageGatherExtended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures::shaderImageGatherExtended</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StorageImageMultisample</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures::shaderStorageImageMultisample</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>UniformBufferArrayDynamicIndexing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures::shaderUniformBufferArrayDynamicIndexing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SampledImageArrayDynamicIndexing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures::shaderSampledImageArrayDynamicIndexing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StorageBufferArrayDynamicIndexing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures::shaderStorageBufferArrayDynamicIndexing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPIR-V OpCapability</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StorageImageArrayDynamicIndexing</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ClipDistance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CullDistance</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ImageCubeArray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SampleRateShading</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SparseResidency</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MinLod</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SampledCubeArray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ImageMSArray</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StorageImageExtendedFormats</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>InterpolationFunction</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StorageImageReadWithoutFormat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>StorageImageWriteWithoutFormat</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MultiViewport</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DrawParameters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MultiView</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DeviceGroup</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VariablePointersStorageBuffer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VariablePointers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPIR-V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>--------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Float16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Int8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VulkanMemoryModel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VulkanMemoryModelDeviceScope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DenormPreserve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DenormFlushToZero</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SignedZeroInfNanPreserve</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
SPIR-V `OpCapability`

**Vulkan feature, extension, or core version**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RoundingModeRTE</th>
<th>VkPhysicalDeviceVulkan12Properties::shaderRoundingModeRTEFloat16</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VkPhysicalDeviceVulkan12Properties::shaderRoundingModeRTEFloat32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VkPhysicalDeviceVulkan12Properties::shaderRoundingModeRTEFloat64</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>RoundingModeRTZ</th>
<th>VkPhysicalDeviceVulkan12Properties::shaderRoundingModeRTZFloat16</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VkPhysicalDeviceVulkan12Properties::shaderRoundingModeRTZFloat32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VkPhysicalDeviceVulkan12Properties::shaderRoundingModeRTZFloat64</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

| RayTracingKHR            | VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelineFeaturesKHR::rayTracingPipeline |

| RayQueryKHR              | VkPhysicalDeviceRayQueryFeaturesKHR::rayQuery                     |

| RayTraversalPrimitiveCullingKHR | VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelineFeaturesKHR::rayTraversalPrimitiveCulling |

| PhysicalStorageBufferAddresses | VkPhysicalDeviceVulkan12Features::bufferDeviceAddress |

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FragmentShadingRateKHR</th>
<th>VkPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRateFeaturesKHR::pipelineFragmentShadingRate</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VkPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRateFeaturesKHR::primitiveFragmentShadingRate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>VkPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRateFeaturesKHR::attachmentFragmentShadingRate</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>WorkgroupMemoryExplicitLayoutKHR</th>
<th>VkPhysicalDeviceWorkgroupMemoryExplicitLayoutFeaturesKHR::workgroupMemoryExplicitLayout</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

| WorkgroupMemoryExplicitLayout8BitAccessKHR | VkPhysicalDeviceWorkgroupMemoryExplicitLayoutFeaturesKHR::workgroupMemoryExplicitLayout8BitAccess |

| WorkgroupMemoryExplicitLayout16BitAccessKHR | VkPhysicalDeviceWorkgroupMemoryExplicitLayoutFeaturesKHR::workgroupMemoryExplicitLayout16BitAccess |

The application must not pass a SPIR-V module containing any of the following to `vkCreateShaderModule`:

- any `OpCapability` not listed above,
- an unsupported capability, or
- a capability which corresponds to a Vulkan feature or extension which has not been enabled.

**SPIR-V Extensions**

The following table lists SPIR-V extensions that implementations may support. The application
must not pass a SPIR-V module to `vkCreateShaderModule` that uses the following SPIR-V extensions unless one of the following conditions is met for the `VkDevice` specified in the `device` parameter of `vkCreateShaderModule`:

- Any corresponding Vulkan extension is enabled.
- The corresponding core version is supported (as returned by `VkPhysicalDeviceProperties::apiVersion`).

Table 70. List of SPIR-V Extensions and corresponding Vulkan extensions or core version

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SPIR-V OpExtension</th>
<th>Vulkan extension or core version</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>SPV_KHR_variable_pointers</td>
<td>VK_KHR_variable_pointers</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPV_KHR_shader_draw_parameters</td>
<td>VK_KHR_shader_draw_parameters</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPV_KHR_8bit_storage</td>
<td>VK_KHR_8bit_storage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPV_KHR_16bit_storage</td>
<td>VK_KHR_16bit_storage</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPV_KHR_shader_clock</td>
<td>VK_KHR_shader_clock</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPV_KHR_float_controls</td>
<td>VK_KHR_shader_float_controls</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPV_KHR_storage_buffer_storage_class</td>
<td>VK_KHR_storage_buffer_storage_class</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPV_KHR_vulkan_memory_model</td>
<td>VK_KHR_vulkan_memory_model</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPV_KHR_ray_tracing</td>
<td>VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPV_KHR_ray_query</td>
<td>VK_KHR_ray_query</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPV_KHR_physical_storage_buffer</td>
<td>VK_KHR_buffer_device_address</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPV_KHR_fragment_shading_rate</td>
<td>VK_KHR_fragment_shading_rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPV_KHR_non_semantic_info</td>
<td>VK_KHR_shader_non_semantic_info</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPV_KHR_terminate_invocation</td>
<td>VK_KHR_shader_terminate_invocation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPV_KHR_multiview</td>
<td>VK_KHR_multiview</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Validation Rules within a Module

A SPIR-V module passed to `vkCreateShaderModule` must conform to the following rules:

**Standalone SPIR-V Validation**

The following rules can be validated with only the SPIR-V module itself. They do not depend on knowledge of the implementation and its capabilities or knowledge of runtime information, such as enabled features.
Valid Usage

- **VUID-StandaloneSpirv-None-04633**
  Every entry point **must** have no return value and accept no arguments

- **VUID-StandaloneSpirv-None-04634**
  The static function-call graph for an entry point **must** not contain cycles; that is, static recursion is not allowed

- **VUID-StandaloneSpirv-None-04635**
  The Logical or PhysicalStorageBuffer64 addressing model **must** be selected

- **VUID-StandaloneSpirv-None-04636**
  Scope for execution **must** be limited to Workgroup or Subgroup

- **VUID-StandaloneSpirv-None-04637**
  If the Scope for execution is Workgroup, then it **must** only be used in the task, mesh, tessellation control, or compute execution models

- **VUID-StandaloneSpirv-None-04638**
  Scope for memory **must** be limited to Device, QueueFamily, Workgroup, ShaderCallKHR, Subgroup, or Invocation

- **VUID-StandaloneSpirv-None-04639**
  If the Scope for memory is Workgroup, then it **must** only be used in the task, mesh, or compute execution models

- **VUID-StandaloneSpirv-None-04640**
  If the Scope for memory is ShaderCallKHR, then it **must** only be used in ray generation, intersection, closest hit, any-hit, miss, and callable execution models

- **VUID-StandaloneSpirv-None-04641**
  If the Scope for memory is Invocation, then memory semantics **must** be None

- **VUID-StandaloneSpirv-None-04642**
  Scope for Non Uniform Group Operations **must** be limited to Subgroup

- **VUID-StandaloneSpirv-None-04643**
  Storage Class **must** be limited to UniformConstant, Input, Uniform, Output, Workgroup, Private, Function, PushConstant, Image, StorageBuffer, RayPayloadKHR, IncomingRayPayloadKHR, HitAttributeKHR, CallableDataKHR, IncomingCallableDataKHR, ShaderRecordBufferKHR, or PhysicalStorageBuffer

- **VUID-StandaloneSpirv-None-04644**
  If the Storage Class is Output, then it **must** not be used in the GlCompute, RayGenerationKHR, IntersectionKHR, AnyHitKHR, ClosestHitKHR, MissKHR, or CallableKHR execution models

- **VUID-StandaloneSpirv-None-04645**
  If the Storage Class is Workgroup, then it **must** only be used in the task, mesh, or compute execution models

- **VUID-StandaloneSpirv-OpAtomicStore-04730**
  OpAtomicStore **must** not use Acquire, AcquireRelease, or SequentiallyConsistent memory semantics
OpAtomicLoad must not use Release, AcquireRelease, or SequentiallyConsistent memory semantics.

OpMemoryBarrier must use one of Acquire, Release, AcquireRelease, or SequentiallyConsistent memory semantics.

OpMemoryBarrier must include at least one storage class.

If the semantics for OpControlBarrier includes one of Acquire, Release, AcquireRelease, or SequentiallyConsistent memory semantics, then it must include at least one storage class.

Any OpVariable with an Initializer operand must have Output, Private, Function, or Workgroup as its Storage Class operand.

Any OpVariable with an Initializer operand and Workgroup as its Storage Class operand must use OpConstantNull as the initializer.

Scope for OpReadClockKHR must be limited to Subgroup or Device.

The OriginLowerLeft execution mode must not be used; fragment entry points must declare OriginUpperLeft.

The PixelCenterInteger execution mode must not be used (pixels are always centered at half-integer coordinates).

Any variable in the UniformConstant storage class must be typed as either OpTypeImage, OpTypeSampler, OpTypeSampledImage, OpTypeAccelerationStructureKHR, or an array of one of these types.

OpTypeImage must declare a scalar 32-bit float, 64-bit integer, or 32-bit integer type for the “Sampled Type” (RelaxedPrecision can be applied to a sampling instruction and to the variable holding the result of a sampling instruction).

OpTypeImage must have a “Sampled” operand of 1 (sampled image) or 2 (storage image).

The converted bit width, signedness, and numeric type of the Image Format operand of an OpTypeImage must match the Sampled Type, as defined in Image Format and Type Matching.

If an OpImageTexelPointer is used in an atomic operation, the image type of the image parameter to OpImageTexelPointer must have an image format of R64i, R64ui, R32f, R32i, or R32ui.
OpImageQuerySizeLod, OpImageQueryLod, and OpImageQueryLevels must only consume an “Image” operand whose type has its “Sampled” operand set to 1.

An OpTypeImage with a “Dim” operand of SubpassData must have an “Arrayed” operand of 0 (non-arrayed) and a “Sampled” operand of 2 (storage image).

The (u,v) coordinates used for a SubpassData must be the <id> of a constant vector (0,0), or if a layer coordinate is used, must be a vector that was formed with constant 0 for the u and v components.

Objects of types OpTypeImage, OpTypeSampler, OpTypeSampledImage, and arrays of these types must not be stored to or modified.

Any image operation must use at most one of the Offset, ConstOffset, and ConstOffsets image operands.

Image operand Offset must only be used with OpImage*Gather instructions.

Any image instruction which uses an Offset, ConstOffset, or ConstOffsets image operand, must only consume a “Sampled Image” operand whose type has its “Sampled” operand set to 1.

The “Component” operand of OpImageGather, and OpImageSparseGather must be the <id> of a constant instruction.

OpImage*Dref must not consume an image whose Dim is 3D.

Objects of types OpTypeAccelerationStructureKHR and arrays of this type must not be stored to or modified.

The value of the “Hit Kind” operand of OpReportIntersectionKHR must be in the range [0,127].

Structure types must not contain opaque types.

Any BuiltIn decoration not listed in Built-In Variables must not be used.

The Location or Component decorations must not be used with BuiltIn.

The Location decorations must be used on user-defined variables.

Structure types must not contain opaque types.

VUID-StandaloneSpirv-BuiltIn-04668

Any BuiltIn decoration not listed in Built-In Variables must not be used.

VUID-StandaloneSpirv-Location-04915

The Location or Component decorations must not be used with BuiltIn.

VUID-StandaloneSpirv-Location-04916

The Location decorations must be used on user-defined variables.
The **Location** decorations must be used on an **OpVariable** with a structure type that is not a block

- VUID-StandaloneSpirv-Location-04918
  The **Location** decorations must not be used on the members of **OpVariable** with a structure type that is a block decorated with **Location**

- VUID-StandaloneSpirv-Location-04919
  The **Location** decorations must be used on each member of **OpVariable** with a structure type that is a block not decorated with **Location**

- VUID-StandaloneSpirv-Component-04920
  The **Component** decoration value must not be greater than 3

- VUID-StandaloneSpirv-Component-04921
  If the **Component** decoration is used on an **OpVariable** that has a **OpTypeVector** type with a **Component Type** with a **Width** that is less than or equal to 32, the sum of its **Component Count** and the **Component** decoration value must be less than 4

- VUID-StandaloneSpirv-Component-04922
  If the **Component** decoration is used on an **OpVariable** that has a **OpTypeVector** type with a **Component Type** with a **Width** that is equal to 64, the sum of two times its **Component Count** and the **Component** decoration value must be less than 4

- VUID-StandaloneSpirv-Component-04923
  The **Component** decorations value must not be 1 or 3 for scalar or two-component 64-bit data types

- VUID-StandaloneSpirv-Component-04924
  The **Component** decorations must not used with any type that is not a scalar or vector

- VUID-StandaloneSpirv-GLSLShared-04669
  The **GLSLShared** and **GLSLPacked** decorations must not be used

- VUID-StandaloneSpirv-Flat-04670
  The **Flat**, **NoPerspective**, **Sample**, and **Centroid** decorations must only be used on variables with the **Output** or **Input** storage class

- VUID-StandaloneSpirv-Flat-06201
  The **Flat**, **NoPerspective**, **Sample**, and **Centroid** decorations must not be used on variables with the **Output** storage class in a fragment shader

- VUID-StandaloneSpirv-Flat-06202
  The **Flat**, **NoPerspective**, **Sample**, and **Centroid** decorations must not be used on variables with the **Input** storage class in a vertex shader

- VUID-StandaloneSpirv-Flat-04744
  Any variable with integer or double-precision floating-point type and with **Input** storage class in a fragment shader, must be decorated **Flat**

- VUID-StandaloneSpirv-ViewportRelativeNV-04672
  The **ViewportRelativeNV** decoration must only be used on a variable decorated with **Layer** in the vertex, tessellation evaluation, or geometry shader stages

- VUID-StandaloneSpirv-ViewportRelativeNV-04673
  The **ViewportRelativeNV** decoration must not be used unless a variable decorated with one
ViewportIndex or ViewportMaskNV is also statically used by the same OpEntryPoint

The ViewportMaskNV and ViewportIndex decorations must not both be statically used by one or more OpEntryPoint's that form the pre-rasterization shader stages of a graphics pipeline

Rounding modes other than round-to-nearest-even and round-towards-zero must not be used for the FPRoundingMode decoration

The FPRoundingMode decoration must only be used for a width-only conversion instruction whose only uses are Object operands of OpStore instructions storing through a pointer to a 16-bit floating-point object in the StorageBuffer, PhysicalStorageBuffer, Uniform, or Output storage class

Variables decorated with Invariant and variables with structure types that have any members decorated with Invariant must be in the Output or Input storage class, Invariant used on an Input storage class variable or structure member has no effect

If the VulkanMemoryModel capability is not declared, the Volatile decoration must be used on any variable declaration that includes one of the SMIDNV, WarpIDNV, SubgroupSize, SubgroupLocalInvocationId, SubgroupEqMask, SubgroupGeMask, SubgroupGtMask, SubgroupLeMask, or SubgroupLtMask BuiltIn decorations when used in the ray generation, closest hit, miss, intersection, or callable shaders, or with the RayTmaxKHR BuiltIn decoration when used in an intersection shader

If the VulkanMemoryModel capability is declared, the OpLoad instruction must use the Volatile memory semantics when it accesses into any variable that includes one of the SMIDNV, WarpIDNV, SubgroupSize, SubgroupLocalInvocationId, SubgroupEqMask, SubgroupGeMask, SubgroupGtMask, SubgroupLeMask, or SubgroupLtMask BuiltIn decorations when used in the ray generation, closest hit, miss, intersection, or callable shaders, or with the RayTmaxKHR BuiltIn decoration when used in an intersection shader

OpTypeRuntimeArray must only be used for the last member of an OpTypeStruct that is in the StorageBuffer or PhysicalStorageBuffer storage class decorated as Block, or that is in the Uniform storage class decorated as BufferBlock

A type $T$ that is an array sized with a specialization constant must neither be, nor be contained in, the type $T_2$ of a variable $V$, unless either: a) $T$ is equal to $T_2$, b) $V$ is declared in the Function, or Private storage classes, c) $V$ is a non-Block variable in the Workgroup storage class, or d) $V$ is an interface variable with an additional level of arrayness, as described in interface matching, and $T$ is the member type of the array type $T_2$

If OpControlBarrier is used in ray generation, intersection, any-hit, closest hit, miss, fragment, vertex, tessellation evaluation, or geometry shaders, the execution Scope must be Subgroup
For each compute shader entry point, either a `LocalSize` execution mode or an object decorated with the `WorkgroupSize` decoration must be specified.

For compute shaders using the `DerivativeGroupQuadsNV` execution mode, the first two dimensions of the local workgroup size must be a multiple of two.

For compute shaders using the `DerivativeGroupLinearNV` execution mode, the product of the dimensions of the local workgroup size must be a multiple of four.

If `OpGroupNonUniformBallotBitCount` is used, the group operation must be limited to `Reduce`, `InclusiveScan`, or `ExclusiveScan`.

The `Pointer` operand of all atomic instructions must have a `Storage Class` limited to `Uniform`, `Workgroup`, `Image`, `StorageBuffer`, or `PhysicalStorageBuffer`.

Output variables or block members decorated with `Offset` that have a 64-bit type, or a composite type containing a 64-bit type, must specify an `Offset` value aligned to a 8 byte boundary.

The size of any output block containing any member decorated with `Offset` that is a 64-bit type must be a multiple of 8.

The first member of an output block that specifies a `Offset` decoration must specify a `Offset` value that is aligned to an 8 byte boundary if that block contains any member decorated with `Offset` and is a 64-bit type.

Output variables or block members decorated with `Offset` that have a 32-bit type, or a composite type contains a 32-bit type, must specify an `Offset` value aligned to a 4 byte boundary.

Output variables, blocks or block members decorated with `Offset` must only contain base types that have components that are either 32-bit or 64-bit in size.

Only variables or block members in the output interface decorated with `Offset` can be captured for transform feedback, and those variables or block members must also be decorated with `XfbBuffer` and `XfbStride`, or inherit `XfbBuffer` and `XfbStride` decorations from a block containing them.

All variables or block members in the output interface of the entry point being compiled decorated with a specific `XfbBuffer` value must all be decorated with identical `XfbStride` values.
If any variables or block members in the output interface of the entry point being compiled are decorated with `Stream`, then all variables belonging to the same `XfbBuffer` must specify the same `Stream` value.

- **VUID-StandaloneSpirv-XfbBuffer-04696**
  For any two variables or block members in the output interface of the entry point being compiled with the same `XfbBuffer` value, the ranges determined by the `Offset` decoration and the size of the type must not overlap.

- **VUID-StandaloneSpirv-XfbBuffer-04697**
  All block members in the output interface of the entry point being compiled that are in the same block and have a declared or inherited `XfbBuffer` decoration must specify the same `XfbBuffer` value.

- **VUID-StandaloneSpirv-RayPayloadKHR-04698**
  `RayPayloadKHR` storage class must only be used in ray generation, closest hit or miss shaders.

- **VUID-StandaloneSpirv-IncomingRayPayloadKHR-04699**
  `IncomingRayPayloadKHR` storage class must only be used in closest hit, any-hit, or miss shaders.

- **VUID-StandaloneSpirv-IncomingRayPayloadKHR-04700**
  There must be at most one variable with the `IncomingRayPayloadKHR` storage class in the input interface of an entry point.

- **VUID-StandaloneSpirv-HitAttributeKHR-04701**
  `HitAttributeKHR` storage class must only be used in intersection, any-hit, or closest hit shaders.

- **VUID-StandaloneSpirv-HitAttributeKHR-04702**
  There must be at most one variable with the `HitAttributeKHR` storage class in the input interface of an entry point.

- **VUID-StandaloneSpirv-HitAttributeKHR-04703**
  A variable with `HitAttributeKHR` storage class must only be written to in an intersection shader.

- **VUID-StandaloneSpirv-CallableDataKHR-04704**
  `CallableDataKHR` storage class must only be used in ray generation, closest hit, miss, and callable shaders.

- **VUID-StandaloneSpirv-IncomingCallableDataKHR-04705**
  `IncomingCallableDataKHR` storage class must only be used in callable shaders.

- **VUID-StandaloneSpirv-IncomingCallableDataKHR-04706**
  There must be at most one variable with the `IncomingCallableDataKHR` storage class in the input interface of an entry point.

- **VUID-StandaloneSpirv-Base-04707**
  The `Base` operand of `OpPtrAccessChain` must point to one of the following: `Workgroup`, if `VariablePointers` is enabled; `StorageBuffer`, if `VariablePointers` or `VariablePointersStorageBuffer` is enabled; `PhysicalStorageBuffer`, if the `PhysicalStorageBuffer64` addressing model is enabled.

- **VUID-StandaloneSpirv-PhysicalStorageBuffer64-04708**
If the **PhysicalStorageBuffer64** addressing model is enabled, all instructions that support memory access operands and that use a physical pointer **must** include the **Aligned** operand

- **VUID-StandaloneSpirv-PhysicalStorageBuffer64-04709**
  If the **PhysicalStorageBuffer64** addressing model is enabled, any access chain instruction that accesses into a **RowMajor** matrix **must** only be used as the **Pointer** operand to **OpLoad** or **OpStore**

- **VUID-StandaloneSpirv-PhysicalStorageBuffer64-04710**
  If the **PhysicalStorageBuffer64** addressing model is enabled, **OpConvertUToPtr** and **OpConvertPtrToU** **must** use an integer type whose **Width** is 64

- **VUID-StandaloneSpirv-OpTypeForwardPointer-04711**
  **OpTypeForwardPointer** **must** have a storage class of **PhysicalStorageBuffer**

- **VUID-StandaloneSpirv-None-04745**
  All variables with a storage class of **PushConstant** declared as an array **must** only be accessed by dynamically uniform indices

- **VUID-StandaloneSpirv-Result-04780**
  The **Result Type** operand of any **OpImageRead** or **OpImageSparseRead** instruction **must** be a vector of four components

- **VUID-StandaloneSpirv-Base-04781**
  The **Base** operand of any **OpBitCount**, **OpBitReverse**, **OpBitFieldInsert**, **OpBitFieldSExtract**, or **OpBitFieldUExtract** instruction **must** be a 32-bit integer scalar or a vector of 32-bit integers

### Runtime SPIR-V Validation

The following rules **must** be validated at runtime. These rules depend on knowledge of the implementation and its capabilities and knowledge of runtime information, such as enabled features.

- If **vulkanMemoryModel** is enabled and **vulkanMemoryModelDeviceScope** is not enabled, **Device** memory scope **must** not be used.

- If **vulkanMemoryModel** is not enabled, **QueueFamily** memory scope **must** not be used.

- If **shaderSubgroupClock** is not enabled, the **Subgroup** scope **must** not be used for **OpReadClockKHR**.

- If **shaderDeviceClock** is not enabled, the **Device** scope **must** not be used for **OpReadClockKHR**.

- If **shaderStorageImageWriteWithoutFormat** is not enabled, any variable created with a “Type” of **OpTypeImage** that has a “Sampled” operand of 2 and an “Image Format” operand of **Unknown** **must** be decorated with **NonWritable**.

- If **shaderStorageImageReadWithoutFormat** is not enabled, any variable created with a “Type” of **OpTypeImage** that has a “Sampled” operand of 2 and an “Image Format” operand of **Unknown** **must** be decorated with **NonReadable**.

- Any **BuiltIn** decoration that corresponds only to Vulkan features or extensions that have not been enabled **must** not be used.
• The sum of Location and the number of locations the variable it decorates consumes must be less than or equal to the value for the matching Execution Model defined in Shader Input and Output Locations.

• shaderBufferInt64Atomics must be enabled for 64-bit integer atomic operations to be supported on a Pointer with a Storage Class of StorageBuffer or Uniform.

• shaderSharedInt64Atomics must be enabled for 64-bit integer atomic operations to be supported on a Pointer with a Storage Class of Workgroup.

• shaderBufferFloat32Atomics or shaderBufferFloat32AtomicAdd or shaderBufferFloat64Atomics or shaderBufferFloat64AtomicAdd must be enabled for floating-point atomic operations to be supported on a Pointer with a Storage Class of StorageBuffer.

• If denormBehaviorIndependence is VK_SHADER_FLOAT_CONTROLS_INDEPENDENCE_32_BIT_ONLY, then the entry point must use the same denormals execution mode for both 16-bit and 64-bit floating-point types.

• If denormBehaviorIndependence is VK_SHADER_FLOAT_CONTROLS_INDEPENDENCE_NONE, then the entry point must use the same denormals execution mode for all floating-point types.

• If roundingModeIndependence is VK_SHADER_FLOAT_CONTROLS_INDEPENDENCE_32_BIT_ONLY, then the entry point must use the same rounding execution mode for both 16-bit and 64-bit floating-point types.

• If roundingModeIndependence is VK_SHADER_FLOAT_CONTROLS_INDEPENDENCE_NONE, then the entry point must use the same rounding execution mode for all floating-point types.

• If shaderSignedZeroInfNanPreserveFloat16 is VK_FALSE, then SignedZeroInfNanPreserve for 16-bit floating-point type must not be used.

• If shaderSignedZeroInfNanPreserveFloat32 is VK_FALSE, then SignedZeroInfNanPreserve for 32-bit floating-point type must not be used.

• If shaderSignedZeroInfNanPreserveFloat64 is VK_FALSE, then SignedZeroInfNanPreserve for 64-bit floating-point type must not be used.

• If shaderDenormPreserveFloat16 is VK_FALSE, then DenormPreserve for 16-bit floating-point type must not be used.

• If shaderDenormPreserveFloat32 is VK_FALSE, then DenormPreserve for 32-bit floating-point type must not be used.

• If shaderDenormPreserveFloat64 is VK_FALSE, then DenormPreserve for 64-bit floating-point type must not be used.

• If shaderDenormFlushToZeroFloat16 is VK_FALSE, then DenormFlushToZero for 16-bit floating-point type must not be used.

• If shaderDenormFlushToZeroFloat32 is VK_FALSE, then DenormFlushToZero for 32-bit floating-point type must not be used.

• If shaderDenormFlushToZeroFloat64 is VK_FALSE, then DenormFlushToZero for 64-bit floating-point type must not be used.

• If shaderRoundingModeRTEFloat16 is VK_FALSE, then RoundingModeRTE for 16-bit floating-point type must not be used.

• If shaderRoundingModeRTEFloat32 is VK_FALSE, then RoundingModeRTE for 32-bit floating-point type must not be used.
• If shaderRoundingModeRTEFloat64 is VK_FALSE, then RoundingModeRTE for 64-bit floating-point type must not be used.

• If shaderRoundingModeRTZFloat16 is VK_FALSE, then RoundingModeRTZ for 16-bit floating-point type must not be used.

• If shaderRoundingModeRTZFloat32 is VK_FALSE, then RoundingModeRTZ for 32-bit floating-point type must not be used.

• If shaderRoundingModeRTZFloat64 is VK_FALSE, then RoundingModeRTZ for 64-bit floating-point type must not be used.

• If the PhysicalStorageBuffer64 addressing model is enabled any load or store through a physical pointer type must be aligned to a multiple of the size of the largest scalar type in the pointed-to type.

• If the PhysicalStorageBuffer64 addressing model is enabled the pointer value of a memory access instruction must be at least as aligned as specified by the Aligned memory access operand.

• DescriptorSet and Binding decorations must obey the constraints on storage class, type, and descriptor type described in DescriptorSet and Binding Assignment

• If the VK_KHR_portability_subset extension is enabled, and VkPhysicalDevicePortabilitySubsetFeaturesKHR::shaderSampleRateInterpolationFunctions is VK_FALSE, then GLSL.std.450 fragment interpolation functions are not supported by the implementation and OpCapability must not be set to InterpolationFunction.

• If tessellationShader is enabled, and the VK_KHR_portability_subset extension is enabled, and VkPhysicalDevicePortabilitySubsetFeaturesKHR::tessellationIsolines is VK_FALSE, then OpExecutionMode must not be set to Isolines.

• If tessellationShader is enabled, and the VK_KHR_portability_subset extension is enabled, and VkPhysicalDevicePortabilitySubsetFeaturesKHR::tessellationPointMode is VK_FALSE, then OpExecutionMode must not be set to PointMode.

• If storageBuffer8BitAccess is VK_FALSE, then objects containing an 8-bit integer element must not have storage class of StorageBuffer, ShaderRecordBufferKHR, or PhysicalStorageBuffer.

• If uniformAndStorageBuffer8BitAccess is VK_FALSE, then objects in the Uniform storage class with the Block decoration must not have an 8-bit integer member.

• If storagePushConstant8 is VK_FALSE, then objects containing an 8-bit integer element must not have storage class of PushConstant.

• If storageBuffer16BitAccess is VK_FALSE, then objects containing 16-bit integer or 16-bit floating-point elements must not have storage class of StorageBuffer, ShaderRecordBufferKHR, or PhysicalStorageBuffer.

• If uniformAndStorageBuffer16BitAccess is VK_FALSE, then objects in the Uniform storage class with the Block decoration must not have 16-bit integer or 16-bit floating-point members.

• If storagePushConstant16 is VK_FALSE, then objects containing 16-bit integer or 16-bit floating-point elements must not have storage class of PushConstant.

• If storageInputOutput16 is VK_FALSE, then objects containing 16-bit integer or 16-bit floating-point
elements must not have storage class of Input or Output.

- Atomic instructions must declare for the value pointed to by Pointer any of the types below:
  - Scalar 32-bit integer.
  - Scalar 64-bit integer, if Int64Atomics capability is enabled.

- If fragmentStoresAndAtomics is not enabled, then all storage image, storage texel buffer, and storage buffer variables in the fragment stage must be decorated with the NonWritable decoration.

- If vertexPipelineStoresAndAtomics is not enabled, then all storage image, storage texel buffer, and storage buffer variables in the vertex, tessellation, and geometry stages must be decorated with the NonWritable decoration.

- If subgroupQuadOperationsInAllStages is VK_FALSE, then quad subgroup operations must not be used except for in fragment and compute stages.

- Group operations with subgroup scope must not be used if the shader stage is not in subgroupSupportedStages.

- The first element of the Offset operand of InterpolateAtOffset must be greater than or equal to:

\[
\text{frag}_{\text{width}} \times \minInterpolationOffset
\]

where \(\text{frag}_{\text{width}}\) is the width of the current fragment in pixels.

- The first element of the Offset operand of InterpolateAtOffset must be less than or equal to:

\[
\text{frag}_{\text{width}} \times (\maxInterpolationOffset + \text{ULP}) - \text{ULP}
\]

where \(\text{frag}_{\text{width}}\) is the width of the current fragment in pixels and \(\text{ULP} = 1 \div 2^\text{subPixelInterpolationOffsetBits}\).

- The second element of the Offset operand of InterpolateAtOffset must be greater than or equal to:

\[
\text{frag}_{\text{height}} \times \minInterpolationOffset
\]

where \(\text{frag}_{\text{height}}\) is the height of the current fragment in pixels.

- The second element of the Offset operand of InterpolateAtOffset must be less than or equal to:

\[
\text{frag}_{\text{height}} \times (\maxInterpolationOffset + \text{ULP}) - \text{ULP}
\]

where \(\text{frag}_{\text{height}}\) is the height of the current fragment in pixels and \(\text{ULP} = 1 \div 2^\text{subPixelInterpolationOffsetBits}\).

- For OpRayQueryInitializeKHR instructions, all components of the RayOrigin and RayDirection operands must be finite floating-point values.
For `OpRayQueryInitializeKHR` instructions, the `RayTmin` and `RayTmax` operands must be non-negative floating-point values.

For `OpRayQueryInitializeKHR` instructions, the `RayTmin` operand must be less than or equal to the `RayTmax` operand.

For `OpRayQueryInitializeKHR` instructions, the `RayTmin`, `RayOrigin`, `RayDirection`, `RayTmin`, and `RayTmax` operands must not contain NaNs.

For `OpRayQueryInitializeKHR` instructions, Acceleration Structure must be an acceleration structure built as a top-level acceleration structure.

For `OpRayQueryGenerateIntersectionKHR` instructions, Hit T must satisfy the condition `RayTmin ≤ Hit T ≤ RayTmax`, where `RayTmin` is equal to the value returned by `OpRayQueryGetRayTMinKHR` with the same ray query object, and `RayTmax` is equal to the value of `OpRayQueryGetIntersectionTKHR` for the current committed intersection with the same ray query object.

For `OpTraceRayKHR` instructions, all components of the `RayOrigin` and `RayDirection` operands must be finite floating-point values.

For `OpTraceRayKHR` instructions, the `RayTmin` and `RayTmax` operands must be non-negative floating-point values.

For `OpTraceRayKHR` instructions, the `RayTmin` operand must be less than or equal to the `RayTmax` operand.

For `OpTraceRayKHR` instructions, `RayOrigin`, `RayDirection`, `RayTmin`, and `RayTmax` operands must not contain NaNs.

For `OpTraceRayKHR` instructions, Acceleration Structure must be an acceleration structure built as a top-level acceleration structure.

The x size in `LocalSize` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxComputeWorkGroupSize[0]`

The y size in `LocalSize` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxComputeWorkGroupSize[1]`

The z size in `LocalSize` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxComputeWorkGroupSize[2]`

The product of x size, y size, and z size in `LocalSize` must be less than or equal to `VkPhysicalDeviceLimits::maxComputeWorkGroupInvocations`

If `shaderZeroInitializeWorkgroupMemory` is not enabled, any `OpVariable` with `Workgroup` as its Storage Class must not have an Initializer operand.

If `workgroupMemoryExplicitLayout8BitAccess` is `VK_FALSE`, objects in the `Workgroup` storage class with the `Block` decoration must not contain 8-bit integer members.

If `workgroupMemoryExplicitLayout16BitAccess` is `VK_FALSE`, objects in the `Workgroup` storage class with the `Block` decoration must not contain 16-bit integer or 16-bit floating-point members.

If an `OpImage*Gather` operation has an image operand of `Offset`, `ConstOffset`, or `ConstOffsets` the offset value must be greater than or equal to `minTexelGatherOffset`

If an `OpImage*Gather` operation has an image operand of `Offset`, `ConstOffset`, or `ConstOffsets` the offset value must be less than or equal to `maxTexelGatherOffset`
• The execution mode `SubgroupUniformControlFlowKHR` must not be applied to an entry point unless `shaderSubgroupUniformControlFlow` is enabled and the corresponding shader stage bit is set in `subgroup supportedStages` and the entry point does not execute any invocation repack instructions.

Precision and Operation of SPIR-V Instructions

The following rules apply to half, single, and double-precision floating point instructions:

• Positive and negative infinities and positive and negative zeros are generated as dictated by IEEE 754, but subject to the precisions allowed in the following table.

• Dividing a non-zero by a zero results in the appropriately signed IEEE 754 infinity.

• Signaling NaNs are not required to be generated and exceptions are never raised. Signaling NaNs may be converted to quiet NaNs values by any floating point instruction.

• By default, the implementation may perform optimizations on half, single, or double-precision floating-point instructions that ignore sign of a zero, or assume that arguments and results are not NaNs or infinities. If the entry point is declared with the `SignedZeroInfNanPreserve` execution mode, then NaNs, infinities, and the sign of zero must not be ignored.


• Denormalized values are supported.

° By default, any half, single, or double-precision denormalized value input into a shader or potentially generated by any instruction (except those listed above) or any extended instructions for GLSL in a shader may be flushed to zero.

° If the entry point is declared with the `DenormFlushToZero` execution mode then for the affected instructions the denormalized result must be flushed to zero and the denormalized operands may be flushed to zero. Denormalized values obtained via unpacking an integer into a vector of values with smaller bit width and interpreting those values as floating-point numbers must be flushed to zero.

Cos, Tan, Asin, Acos, Atan, Sinh, Cosh, Asinh, Acosh, Atanh, Pow, Exp, Log, Exp2, Log2, Sqrt, InverseSqrt, Determinant, MatrixInverse, Modf, ModfStruct, FMin, FMax, FClamp, FMix, Step, SmoothStep, Fma, UnpackHalf2x16, UnpackDouble2x32, Length, Distance, Cross, Normalize, FaceForward, Reflect, Refract, NMin, NMax, NClamp. Other SPIR-V instructions (except those excluded above) may also flush denormalized values.


The precision of double-precision instructions is at least that of single precision.

The precision of operations is defined either in terms of rounding, as an error bound in ULP, or as inherited from a formula as follows.

Correctly Rounded

Operations described as “correctly rounded” will return the infinitely precise result, \( x \), rounded so as to be representable in floating-point. The rounding mode is not specified, unless the entry point is declared with the RoundingModeRTE or the RoundingModeRTZ execution mode. These execution modes affect only correctly rounded SPIR-V instructions. These execution modes do not affect OpQuantizeToF16. If the rounding mode is not specified then this rounding is implementation specific, subject to the following rules. If \( x \) is exactly representable then \( x \) will be returned. Otherwise, either the floating-point value closest to and no less than \( x \) or the value closest to and no greater than \( x \) will be returned.

ULP

Where an error bound of \( n \) ULP (units in the last place) is given, for an operation with infinitely precise result \( x \) the value returned must be in the range \([x - n \times \text{ulp}(x), x + n \times \text{ulp}(x)]\). The function \( \text{ulp}(x) \) is defined as follows:

If there exist non-equal floating-point numbers \( a \) and \( b \) such that \( a \leq x \leq b \) then \( \text{ulp}(x) \) is the minimum possible distance between such numbers, \( \text{ulp}(x) = \min_a \ |b - a| \). If such numbers do not exist then \( \text{ulp}(x) \) is defined to be the difference between the two finite floating-point numbers nearest to \( x \).

Where the range of allowed return values includes any value of magnitude larger than that of the largest representable finite floating-point number, operations may, additionally, return either an infinity of the appropriate sign or the finite number with the largest magnitude of the appropriate sign. If the infinitely precise result of the operation is not mathematically defined then the value returned is undefined.
Inherited From …

Where an operation's precision is described as being inherited from a formula, the result returned must be at least as accurate as the result of computing an approximation to x using a formula equivalent to the given formula applied to the supplied inputs. Specifically, the formula given may be transformed using the mathematical associativity, commutativity and distributivity of the operators involved to yield an equivalent formula. The SPIR-V precision rules, when applied to each such formula and the given input values, define a range of permitted values. If NaN is one of the permitted values then the operation may return any result, otherwise let the largest permitted value in any of the ranges be $F_{\text{max}}$ and the smallest be $F_{\text{min}}$. The operation must return a value in the range $[x - E, x + E]$ where $E = \max(|x - F_{\text{max}}|, |x - F_{\text{min}}|)$. If the entry point is declared with the `DenormFlushToZero` execution mode, then any intermediate denormal value(s) while evaluating the formula may be flushed to zero. Denormal final results must be flushed to zero. If the entry point is declared with the `DenormPreserve` execution mode, then denormals must be preserved throughout the formula.

For half- (16 bit) and single- (32 bit) precision instructions, precisions are required to be at least as follows:

Table 71. Precision of core SPIR-V Instructions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Instruction</th>
<th>Single precision, unless decorated with RelaxedPrecision</th>
<th>Half precision</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>OpFAdd</td>
<td>Correctly rounded.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OpFSub</td>
<td>Correctly rounded.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OpDot(x, y)</td>
<td>Inherited from $\sum_{i=0}^{n-1} x_i \times y_i$.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OpFOrdEqual, OpFUnordEqual</td>
<td>Correct result.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OpFOrdLessThan, OpFUnordLessThan</td>
<td>Correct result.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OpFOrdGreaterThan, OpFUnordGreaterThan</td>
<td>Correct result.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OpFOrdGreaterThanEqual, OpFUnordGreaterThanEqual</td>
<td>Correct result.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OpFDiv(x, y)</td>
<td>2.5 ULP for $</td>
<td>y</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OpFRem(x, y)</td>
<td>Inherited from $x - y \times \text{trunc}(x/y)$.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OpFMod(x, y)</td>
<td>Inherited from $x - y \times \text{floor}(x/y)$.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>conversions between types</td>
<td>Correctly rounded.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
The **OpFRem** and **OpFMod** instructions use cheap approximations of remainder, and the error can be large due to the discontinuity in `trunc()` and `floor()`. This can produce mathematically unexpected results in some cases, such as `FMod(x,x)` computing `x` rather than `0`, and can also cause the result to have a different sign than the infinitely precise result.

### Table 72. Precision of GLSL.std.450 Instructions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Instruction</th>
<th>Single precision, unless decorated with RelaxedPrecision</th>
<th>Half precision</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><code>fma()</code></td>
<td>Inherited from <code>OpFMul</code> followed by <code>OpFAdd</code>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>exp(x), exp2(x)</code></td>
<td>$3 + 2 \times</td>
<td>x</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>log(), log2()</code></td>
<td>3 ULP outside the range $[0.5, 2.0]$. Absolute error $&lt; 2^{-21}$ inside the range $[0.5, 2.0]$.</td>
<td>3 ULP outside the range $[0.5, 2.0]$. Absolute error $&lt; 2^{-7}$ inside the range $[0.5, 2.0]$.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>pow(x, y)</code></td>
<td>Inherited from <code>exp2(y \times \log2(x))</code>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>sqrt()</code></td>
<td>Inherited from <code>1.0 / inversesqrt()</code>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>inversesqrt()</code></td>
<td>2 ULP.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>radians(x)</code></td>
<td>Inherited from $x \times \frac{\pi}{180}$.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>degrees(x)</code></td>
<td>Inherited from $x \times \frac{180}{\pi}$.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>sin()</code></td>
<td>Absolute error $\leq 2^{-11}$ inside the range $[-\pi, \pi]$.</td>
<td>Absolute error $\leq 2^{-7}$ inside the range $[-\pi, \pi]$.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>cos()</code></td>
<td>Absolute error $\leq 2^{-11}$ inside the range $[-\pi, \pi]$.</td>
<td>Absolute error $\leq 2^{-7}$ inside the range $[-\pi, \pi]$.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>tan()</code></td>
<td>Inherited from $\frac{\sin(x)}{\cos(x)}$.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>asin(x)</code></td>
<td>Inherited from <code>atan2(x, sqrt(1.0 - x \times x))</code>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>acos(x)</code></td>
<td>Inherited from <code>atan2(sqrt(1.0 - x \times x), x)</code>.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>atan(), atan2()</code></td>
<td>4096 ULP</td>
<td>5 ULP.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>sinh(x)</code></td>
<td>Inherited from $(\exp(x) - \exp(-x)) \times 0.5$.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><code>cosh(x)</code></td>
<td>Inherited from $(\exp(x) + \exp(-x)) \times 0.5$.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instruction</td>
<td>Single precision, unless decorated with RelaxedPrecision</td>
<td>Half precision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>-------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>tanh()</td>
<td>Inherited from ( \frac{\sinh(x)}{\cosh(x)} )</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>asinh(x)</td>
<td>Inherited from ( \log(x + \sqrt{x^2 + 1.0}) ).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>acosh(x)</td>
<td>Inherited from ( \log(x + \sqrt{x^2 - 1.0}) ).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>atanh(x)</td>
<td>Inherited from ( \log\left(\frac{1 + x}{1 - x}\right) \times 0.5 ).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>frexp()</td>
<td>Correctly rounded.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ldexp()</td>
<td>Correctly rounded.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>length(x)</td>
<td>Inherited from ( \sqrt{\text{dot}(x, x)} ).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distance(x, y)</td>
<td>Inherited from ( \text{length}(x - y) ).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cross()</td>
<td>Inherited from ( \text{OpFSub}(\text{OpFMul}, \text{OpFMul}) ).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>normalize(x)</td>
<td>Inherited from ( \frac{x}{\text{length}(x)} ).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>faceforward(N, I, NRef)</td>
<td>Inherited from ( \text{dot}(\text{NRef}, I) &lt; 0.0 ? N : -N ).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reflect(x, y)</td>
<td>Inherited from ( x - 2.0 \times \text{dot}(y, x) \times y ).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>refract(I, N, eta)</td>
<td>Inherited from ( k &lt; 0.0 ? 0.0 : \eta \times I - (\eta \times \text{dot}(N, I) + \sqrt{k}) \times N ), ( k = 1 - \eta \times \eta \times (1.0 - \text{dot}(N, I) \times \text{dot}(N, I)) ).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>round</td>
<td>Correctly rounded.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>roundEven</td>
<td>Correctly rounded.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>trunc</td>
<td>Correctly rounded.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fabs</td>
<td>Correctly rounded.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fsign</td>
<td>Correctly rounded.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>floor</td>
<td>Correctly rounded.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ceil</td>
<td>Correctly rounded.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fract</td>
<td>Correctly rounded.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>modf</td>
<td>Correctly rounded.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fmin</td>
<td>Correctly rounded.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fmax</td>
<td>Correctly rounded.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fclamp</td>
<td>Correctly rounded.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>fmix(x, y, a)</td>
<td>Inherited from ( x \times (1.0 - a) + y \times a ).</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>step</td>
<td>Correctly rounded.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Instruction</td>
<td>Single precision, unless decorated with RelaxedPrecision</td>
<td>Half precision</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>----------------------</td>
<td>----------------------------------------------------------</td>
<td>----------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>smoothStep(edge0, edge1, x)</td>
<td>Inherited from $t = \text{clamp}(x - edge0_{edge1} - edge0, 0.0, 1.0)$</td>
<td>$t \times t \times (3.0 - 2.0 \times t)$, where</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nmin</td>
<td>Correctly rounded.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nmax</td>
<td>Correctly rounded.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>nclamp</td>
<td>Correctly rounded.</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

GLSL.std.450 extended instructions specifically defined in terms of the above instructions inherit the above errors. GLSL.std.450 extended instructions not listed above and not defined in terms of the above have undefined precision.

For the OpSRem and OpSMod instructions, if either operand is negative the result is undefined.

Note

While the OpSRem and OpSMod instructions are supported by the Vulkan environment, they require non-negative values and thus do not enable additional functionality beyond what OpUMod provides.

Signedness of SPIR-V Image Accesses

SPIR-V associates a signedness with all integer image accesses. This is required in certain parts of the SPIR-V and the Vulkan image access pipeline to ensure defined results. The signedness is determined from a combination of the access instruction’s Image Operands and the underlying image’s Sampled Type as follows: 1. If the instruction’s Image Operands contains the SignExtend operand then the access is signed. 2. If the instruction’s Image Operands contains the ZeroExtend operand then the access is unsigned. 3. Otherwise, the image accesses signedness matches that of the Sampled Type of the OpTypeImage being accessed.

Image Format and Type Matching

When specifying the Image Format of an OpTypeImage, the converted bit width and type, as shown in the table below, must match the Sampled Type. The signedness must match the signedness of any access to the image.

Note

Formatted accesses are always converted from a shader readable type to the resource’s format or vice versa via Format Conversion for reads and Texel Output Format Conversion for writes. As such, the bit width and format below do not necessarily match 1:1 with what might be expected for some formats.

For a given Image Format, the Sampled Type must be the type described in the Type column of the below table, with its Literal Width set to that in the Bit Width column. Every access that is made to
the image **must** have a signedness equal to that in the *Signedness* column (where applicable).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Image Format</th>
<th>Type</th>
<th>Bit Width</th>
<th>Signedness</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rgba32f</td>
<td>OpTypeFloat</td>
<td>32</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rg32f</td>
<td>R32f</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rgba16f</td>
<td>Rg16f</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R16f</td>
<td>Rgba16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rg16</td>
<td>R16</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rgba16Snorm</td>
<td>Rgba16Snorm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rg16Snorm</td>
<td>Rg16Snorm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R16Snorm</td>
<td>Rgb10A2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R11fG11fB10f</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rgba8</td>
<td>Rgba8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rg8</td>
<td>Rg8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R8</td>
<td>R8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rgba8Snorm</td>
<td>Rgba8Snorm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rg8Snorm</td>
<td>Rg8Snorm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R8Snorm</td>
<td>R8Snorm</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### Compatibility Between SPIR-V Image Formats And Vulkan Formats

SPIR-V *Image Format* values are compatible with *VkFormat* values as defined below:

**Table 73. SPIR-V and Vulkan Image Format Compatibility**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SPIR-V Image Format</th>
<th>Compatible Vulkan Format</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Unknown</td>
<td>Any</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rgba32f</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32A32_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rgba16f</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16A16_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R32f</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rgba8</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8A8_UNORM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rgba8Snorm</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8A8_SNORM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R32ui</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rgba16ui</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8A8_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R32ui</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rgba32ui</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32A32_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rgba32ui</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32A32_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rg32f</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rg16f</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16G16_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R8i</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rgba32ui</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32A32_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rgba32ui</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32A32_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rg32f</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rg16f</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16G16_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R8i</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rgba32ui</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32A32_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rgba32ui</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32A32_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rg32f</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rg16f</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16G16_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R8i</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rgba32ui</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32A32_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rgba32ui</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32A32_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rg32f</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rg16f</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16G16_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R8i</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SPIR-V Image Format</td>
<td>Compatible Vulkan Format</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>---------------------</td>
<td>-------------------------</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R11fG11fB10f</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_B10G11R11_UFLOAT_PACK32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R16f</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16_SFLOAT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rgba16</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16A16_UNORM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rgb10A2</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_A2B10G10R10_UNORM_PACK32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rg16</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16G16_UNORM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rg8</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8G8_UNORM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R16</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16_UNORM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R8</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8_UNORM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rgba16Snorm</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16A16_SNORM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rg16Snorm</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16G16_SNORM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rg8Snorm</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8G8_SNORM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R16Snorm</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16_SNORM</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R32i</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32_SINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rg32i</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32G32_SINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rg16i</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16G16_SINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rg8i</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8G8_SINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R16i</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16_SINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R8i</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8_SINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rgba32ui</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32G32B32A32_UINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rgba16ui</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16G16B16A16_UINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rgba8ui</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8G8B8A8_UINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R32ui</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32_UINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rgb10a2ui</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_A2B10G10R10_UNORM_PACK32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rg32ui</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R32G32_UINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rg16ui</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16G16_UINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rg8ui</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8G8_UINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R16ui</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R16_UINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R8ui</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R8_UINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R64i</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R64_SINT</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>R64ui</td>
<td>VK_FORMAT_R64_UINT</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Appendix B: Memory Model

Agent

*Operation* is a general term for any task that is executed on the system.

*Note*

An operation is by definition something that is executed. Thus if an instruction is skipped due to control flow, it does not constitute an operation.

Each operation is executed by a particular *agent*. Possible agents include each shader invocation, each host thread, and each fixed-function stage of the pipeline.

Memory Location

A *memory location* identifies unique storage for 8 bits of data. Memory operations access a *set of memory locations* consisting of one or more memory locations at a time, e.g. an operation accessing a 32-bit integer in memory would read/write a set of four memory locations. Memory operations that access whole aggregates *may* access any padding bytes between elements or members, but no padding bytes at the end of the aggregate. Two sets of memory locations *overlap* if the intersection of their sets of memory locations is non-empty. A memory operation *must* not affect memory at a memory location not within its set of memory locations.

Memory locations for buffers and images are explicitly allocated in *VkDeviceMemory* objects, and are implicitly allocated for SPIR-V variables in each shader invocation.

Variables with *Workgroup* storage class that point to a block-decorated type share a set of memory locations.

Allocation

The values stored in newly allocated memory locations are determined by a SPIR-V variable's initializer, if present, or else are undefined. At the time an allocation is created there have been no memory operations to any of its memory locations. The initialization is not considered to be a memory operation.

*Note*

For tessellation control shader output variables, a consequence of initialization not being considered a memory operation is that some implementations may need to insert a barrier between the initialization of the output variables and any reads of those variables.

Memory Operation

For an operation A and memory location M:
• A reads M if and only if the data stored in M is an input to A.
• A writes M if and only if the data output from A is stored to M.
• A accesses M if and only if it either reads or writes (or both) M.

**Note**
A write whose value is the same as what was already in those memory locations is still considered to be a write and has all the same effects.

**Reference**

A reference is an object that a particular agent can use to access a set of memory locations. On the host, a reference is a host virtual address. On the device, a reference is:

- The descriptor that a variable is bound to, for variables in Image, Uniform, or StorageBuffer storage classes. If the variable is an array (or array of arrays, etc.) then each element of the array may be a unique reference.
- The address range for a buffer in PhysicalStorageBuffer storage class, where the base of the address range is queried with vkGetBufferDeviceAddress and the length of the range is the size of the buffer.
- A single common reference for all variables with Workgroup storage class that point to a block-decorated type.
- The variable itself for non-block-decorated type variables in Workgroup storage class.
- The variable itself for variables in other storage classes.

Two memory accesses through distinct references may require availability and visibility operations as defined below.

**Program-Order**

A dynamic instance of an instruction is defined in SPIR-V ([https://www.khronos.org/registry/spir-v/specs/unified1/SPIRV.html#DynamicInstance](https://www.khronos.org/registry/spir-v/specs/unified1/SPIRV.html#DynamicInstance)) as a way of referring to a particular execution of a static instruction. Program-order is an ordering on dynamic instances of instructions executed by a single shader invocation:

- (Basic block): If instructions A and B are in the same basic block, and A is listed in the module before B, then the n'th dynamic instance of A is program-ordered before the n’th dynamic instance of B.
- (Branch): The dynamic instance of a branch or switch instruction is program-ordered before the dynamic instance of the OpLabel instruction to which it transfers control.
- (Call entry): The dynamic instance of an OpFunctionCall instruction is program-ordered before the dynamic instances of the OpFunctionParameter instructions and the body of the called function.
- (Call exit): The dynamic instance of the instruction following an OpFunctionCall instruction is program-ordered after the dynamic instance of the return instruction executed by the called
function.

- **(Transitive Closure):** If dynamic instance A of any instruction is program-ordered before dynamic instance B of any instruction and B is program-ordered before dynamic instance C of any instruction then A is program-ordered before C.
- **(Complete definition):** No other dynamic instances are program-ordered.

For instructions executed on the host, the source language defines the program-order relation (e.g. as “sequenced-before”).

### Shader Call Related

Shader-call-related is an equivalence relation on invocations defined as the symmetric and transitive closure of:

- A is shader-call-related to B if A is created by an invocation repack instruction executed by B.

### Shader Call Order

Shader-call-order is a partial order on dynamic instances of instructions executed by invocations that are shader-call-related:

- **(Program order):** If dynamic instance A is program-ordered before B, then A is shader-call-ordered before B.
- **(Shader call entry):** If A is a dynamic instance of an invocation repack instruction and B is a dynamic instance executed by an invocation that is created by A, then A is shader-call-ordered before B.
- **(Shader call exit):** If A is a dynamic instance of an invocation repack instruction, B is the next dynamic instance executed by the same invocation, and C is a dynamic instance executed by an invocation that is created by A, then C is shader-call-ordered before B.
- **(Transitive closure):** If A is shader-call-ordered-before B and B is shader-call-ordered-before C, then A is shader-call-ordered-before C.
- **(Complete definition):** No other dynamic instances are shader-call-ordered.

### Scope

Atomic and barrier instructions include scopes which identify sets of shader invocations that must obey the requested ordering and atomicity rules of the operation, as defined below.

The various scopes are described in detail in the Shaders chapter.

### Atomic Operation

An *atomic operation* on the device is any SPIR-V operation whose name begins with `OpAtomic`. An atomic operation on the host is any operation performed with an std::atomic typed object.
Each atomic operation has a memory scope and a semantics. Informally, the scope determines which other agents it is atomic with respect to, and the semantics constrains its ordering against other memory accesses. Device atomic operations have explicit scopes and semantics. Each host atomic operation implicitly uses the CrossDevice scope, and uses a memory semantics equivalent to a C++ std::memory_order value of relaxed, acquire, release, acq_rel, or seq_cst.

Two atomic operations A and B are potentially-mutually-ordered if and only if all of the following are true:

- They access the same set of memory locations.
- They use the same reference.
- A is in the instance of B's memory scope.
- B is in the instance of A's memory scope.
- A and B are not the same operation (irreflexive).

Two atomic operations A and B are mutually-ordered if and only if they are potentially-mutually-ordered and any of the following are true:

- A and B are both device operations.
- A and B are both host operations.
- A is a device operation, B is a host operation, and the implementation supports concurrent host- and device-atomics.

**Note**

If two atomic operations are not mutually-ordered, and if their sets of memory locations overlap, then each must be synchronized against the other as if they were non-atomic operations.

**Scoped Modification Order**

For a given atomic write A, all atomic writes that are mutually-ordered with A occur in an order known as A's scoped modification order. A's scoped modification order relates no other operations.

**Note**

Invocations outside the instance of A's memory scope may observe the values at A's set of memory locations becoming visible to it in an order that disagrees with the scoped modification order.

**Note**

It is valid to have non-atomic operations or atomics in a different scope instance to the same set of memory locations, as long as they are synchronized against each other as if they were non-atomic (if they are not, it is treated as a data race). That means this definition of A's scoped modification order could include atomic operations that occur much later, after intervening non-atomics. That is a bit non-intuitive, but it helps to keep this definition simple and non-circular.
**Memory Semantics**

Non-atomic memory operations, by default, **may** be observed by one agent in a different order than they were written by another agent.

Atomics and some synchronization operations include **memory semantics**, which are flags that constrain the order in which other memory accesses (including non-atomic memory accesses and availability and visibility operations) performed by the same agent **can** be observed by other agents, or **can** observe accesses by other agents.

Device instructions that include semantics are **OpAtomic***, **OpControlBarrier**, **OpMemoryBarrier**, and **OpMemoryNamedBarrier**. Host instructions that include semantics are some `std::atomic` methods and memory fences.

SPIR-V supports the following memory semantics:

- **Relaxed**: No constraints on order of other memory accesses.
- **Acquire**: A memory read with this semantic performs an *acquire operation*. A memory barrier with this semantic is an *acquire barrier*.
- **Release**: A memory write with this semantic performs a *release operation*. A memory barrier with this semantic is a *release barrier*.
- **AcquireRelease**: A memory read-modify-write operation with this semantic performs both an acquire operation and a release operation, and inherits the limitations on ordering from both of those operations. A memory barrier with this semantic is both a release and acquire barrier.

**Note**

SPIR-V does not support “consume” semantics on the device.

The memory semantics operand also includes **storage class semantics** which indicate which storage classes are constrained by the synchronization. SPIR-V storage class semantics include:

- UniformMemory
- WorkgroupMemory
- ImageMemory
- OutputMemory

Each SPIR-V memory operation accesses a single storage class. Semantics in synchronization operations can include a combination of storage classes.

The UniformMemory storage class semantic applies to accesses to memory in the PhysicalStorageBuffer, `ShaderRecordBufferKHR`, Uniform and StorageBuffer storage classes. The WorkgroupMemory storage class semantic applies to accesses to memory in the Workgroup storage class. The ImageMemory storage class semantic applies to accesses to memory in the Image storage class. The OutputMemory storage class semantic applies to accesses to memory in the Output storage class.
Informally, these constraints limit how memory operations can be reordered, and these limits apply not only to the order of accesses as performed in the agent that executes the instruction, but also to the order the effects of writes become visible to all other agents within the same instance of the instruction’s memory scope.

Note

Release and acquire operations in different threads can act as synchronization operations, to guarantee that writes that happened before the release are visible after the acquire. (This is not a formal definition, just an Informative forward reference.)

Note

The OutputMemory storage class semantic is only useful in tessellation control shaders, which is the only execution model where output variables are shared between invocations.

The memory semantics operand can also include availability and visibility flags, which apply availability and visibility operations as described in availability and visibility. The availability/visibility flags are:

- **MakeAvailable**: Semantics must be Release or AcquireRelease. Performs an availability operation before the release operation or barrier.
- **MakeVisible**: Semantics must be Acquire or AcquireRelease. Performs a visibility operation after the acquire operation or barrier.

The specifics of these operations are defined in Availability and Visibility Semantics.

Host atomic operations may support a different list of memory semantics and synchronization operations, depending on the host architecture and source language.

### Release Sequence

After an atomic operation A performs a release operation on a set of memory locations M, the release sequence headed by A is the longest continuous subsequence of A’s scoped modification order that consists of:

- the atomic operation A as its first element
- atomic read-modify-write operations on M by any agent

Note

The atomics in the last bullet must be mutually-ordered with A by virtue of being in A’s scoped modification order.
Note
This intentionally omits “atomic writes to M performed by the same agent that performed A”, which is present in the corresponding C++ definition.

Synchronizes-With

*Synchronizes-with* is a relation between operations, where each operation is either an atomic operation or a memory barrier (aka fence on the host).

If A and B are atomic operations, then A synchronizes-with B if and only if all of the following are true:

- A performs a release operation
- B performs an acquire operation
- A and B are mutually-ordered
- B reads a value written by A or by an operation in the release sequence headed by A

*OpControlBarrier, OpMemoryBarrier, and OpMemoryNamedBarrier* are *memory barrier* instructions in SPIR-V.

If A is a release barrier and B is an atomic operation that performs an acquire operation, then A synchronizes-with B if and only if all of the following are true:

- there exists an atomic write X (with any memory semantics)
- A is program-ordered before X
- X and B are mutually-ordered
- B reads a value written by X or by an operation in the release sequence headed by X
  - If X is relaxed, it is still considered to head a hypothetical release sequence for this rule
- A and B are in the instance of each other’s memory scopes
- X’s storage class is in A’s semantics.

If A is an atomic operation that performs a release operation and B is an acquire barrier, then A synchronizes-with B if and only if all of the following are true:

- there exists an atomic read X (with any memory semantics)
- X is program-ordered before B
- X and A are mutually-ordered
- X reads a value written by A or by an operation in the release sequence headed by A
- A and B are in the instance of each other’s memory scopes
- X’s storage class is in B’s semantics.

If A is a release barrier and B is an acquire barrier, then A synchronizes-with B if all of the following are true:
• there exists an atomic write X (with any memory semantics)
• A is program-ordered before X
• there exists an atomic read Y (with any memory semantics)
• Y is program-ordered before B
• X and Y are mutually-ordered
• Y reads the value written by X or by an operation in the release sequence headed by X
  ◦ If X is relaxed, it is still considered to head a hypothetical release sequence for this rule
• A and B are in the instance of each other’s memory scopes
• X’s and Y’s storage class is in A’s and B’s semantics.
  ◦ NOTE: X and Y must have the same storage class, because they are mutually ordered.

If A is a release barrier, B is an acquire barrier, and C is a control barrier (where A can equal C, and B can equal C), then A synchronizes-with B if all of the following are true:

• A is program-ordered before (or equals) C
• C is program-ordered before (or equals) B
• A and B are in the instance of each other’s memory scopes
• A and B are in the instance of C’s execution scope

Note
This is similar to the barrier-barrier synchronization above, but with a control barrier filling the role of the relaxed atomics.

If A is a release barrier and B is an acquire barrier, then A synchronizes-with B if all of the following are true:

• A is shader-call-ordered-before B
• A and B are in the instance of each other’s memory scopes

No other release and acquire barriers synchronize-with each other.

System-Synchronizes-With

Sysytem-synchronizes-with is a relation between arbitrary operations on the device or host. Certain operations system-synchronize-with each other, which informally means the first operation occurs before the second and that the synchronization is performed without using application-visible memory accesses.

If there is an execution dependency between two operations A and B, then the operation in the first synchronization scope system-synchronizes-with the operation in the second synchronization scope.
**Note**  
This covers all Vulkan synchronization primitives, including device operations executing before a synchronization primitive is signaled, wait operations happening before subsequent device operations, signal operations happening before host operations that wait on them, and host operations happening before `vkQueueSubmit`. The list is spread throughout the synchronization chapter, and is not repeated here.

System-synchronizes-with implicitly includes all storage class semantics and has `CrossDevice` scope.

If A system-synchronizes-with B, we also say A is system-synchronized-before B and B is system-synchronized-after A.

**Private vs. Non-Private**

By default, non-atomic memory operations are treated as private, meaning such a memory operation is not intended to be used for communication with other agents. Memory operations with the NonPrivatePointer/NonPrivateTexel bit set are treated as non-private, and are intended to be used for communication with other agents.

More precisely, for private memory operations to be Location-Ordered between distinct agents requires using system-synchronizes-with rather than shader-based synchronization. Non-private memory operations still obey program-order.

Atomic operations are always considered non-private.

**Inter-Thread-Happens-Before**

Let SC be a non-empty set of storage class semantics. Then (using template syntax) operation A inter-thread-happens-before<SC> operation B if and only if any of the following is true:

- A system-synchronizes-with B
- A synchronizes-with B, and both A and B have all of SC in their semantics
- A is an operation on memory in a storage class in SC or that has all of SC in its semantics, B is a release barrier or release atomic with all of SC in its semantics, and A is program-ordered before B
- A is an acquire barrier or acquire atomic with all of SC in its semantics, B is an operation on memory in a storage class in SC or that has all of SC in its semantics, and A is program-ordered before B
- A and B are both host operations and A inter-thread-happens-before B as defined in the host language specification
- A inter-thread-happens-before<SC> some X and X inter-thread-happens-before<SC> B
Happens-Before

Operation A happens-before operation B if and only if any of the following is true:

- A is program-ordered before B
- A inter-thread-happens-before<SC> B for some set of storage classes SC

Happens-after is defined similarly.

Note
Unlike C++, happens-before is not always sufficient for a write to be visible to a read. Additional availability and visibility operations may be required for writes to be visible-to other memory accesses.

Note
Happens-before is not transitive, but each of program-order and inter-thread-happens-before<SC> are transitive. These can be thought of as covering the “single-threaded” case and the “multi-threaded” case, and it is not necessary (and not valid) to form chains between the two.

Availability and Visibility

Availability and visibility are states of a write operation, which (informally) track how far the write has permeated the system, i.e. which agents and references are able to observe the write. Availability state is per memory domain. Visibility state is per (agent,reference) pair. Availability and visibility states are per-memory location for each write.

Memory domains are named according to the agents whose memory accesses use the domain. Domains used by shader invocations are organized hierarchically into multiple smaller memory domains which correspond to the different scopes. Each memory domain is considered the dual of a scope, and vice versa. The memory domains defined in Vulkan include:

- **host** - accessible by host agents
- **device** - accessible by all device agents for a particular device
- **shader** - accessible by shader agents for a particular device, corresponding to the Device scope
- **queue family instance** - accessible by shader agents in a single queue family, corresponding to the QueueFamily scope.
- **shader call instance** - accessible by shader agents that are shader-call-related, corresponding to the ShaderCallKHR scope.
- **workgroup instance** - accessible by shader agents in the same workgroup, corresponding to the Workgroup scope.
- **subgroup instance** - accessible by shader agents in the same subgroup, corresponding to the Subgroup scope.

The memory domains are nested in the order listed above, except for shader call instance domain,
with memory domains later in the list nested in the domains earlier in the list. The shader call instance domain is at an implementation-dependent location in the list, and is nested according to that location. The shader call instance domain is not broader than the queue family instance domain.

Note

Memory domains do not correspond to storage classes or device-local and host-local `VkDeviceMemory` allocations, rather they indicate whether a write can be made visible only to agents in the same subgroup, same workgroup, shader-call-related ray tracing invocation, in any shader invocation, or anywhere on the device, or host. The shader, queue family instance, shader call instance, workgroup instance, and subgroup instance domains are only used for shader-based availability/visibility operations, in other cases writes can be made available from/visible to the shader via the device domain.

**Availability operations**, **visibility operations**, and **memory domain operations** alter the state of the write operations that happen-before them, and which are included in their *source scope* to be available or visible to their *destination scope*.

- For an availability operation, the source scope is a set of (agent, reference, memory location) tuples, and the destination scope is a set of memory domains.
- For a memory domain operation, the source scope is a memory domain and the destination scope is a memory domain.
- For a visibility operation, the source scope is a set of memory domains and the destination scope is a set of (agent, reference, memory location) tuples.

How the scopes are determined depends on the specific operation. Availability and memory domain operations expand the set of memory domains to which the write is available. Visibility operations expand the set of (agent, reference, memory location) tuples to which the write is visible.

Recall that availability and visibility states are per-memory location, and let \( W \) be a write operation to one or more locations performed by agent A via reference R. Let \( L \) be one of the locations written. \((W,L)\) (the write \( W \) to \( L \)), is initially not available to any memory domain and only visible to \((A,R,L)\). An availability operation \( AV \) that happens-after \( W \) and that includes \((A,R,L)\) in its source scope makes \((W,L)\) *available* to the memory domains in its destination scope.

A memory domain operation \( DOM \) that happens-after \( AV \) and for which \((W,L)\) is available in the source scope makes \((W,L)\) available in the destination memory domain.

A visibility operation \( VIS \) that happens-after \( AV \) (or \( DOM \)) and for which \((W,L)\) is available in any domain in the source scope makes \((W,L)\) *visible* to all (agent,reference,L) tuples included in its destination scope.

If write \( W_2 \) happens-after \( W \), and their sets of memory locations overlap, then \( W \) will not be available/visible to all agents/references for those memory locations that overlap (and future AV/DOM/VIS ops cannot revive \( W \)'s write to those locations).

Availability, memory domain, and visibility operations are treated like other non-atomic memory
accesses for the purpose of memory semantics, meaning they can be ordered by release-acquire sequences or memory barriers.

An availability chain is a sequence of availability operations to increasingly broad memory domains, where element N+1 of the chain is performed in the dual scope instance of the destination memory domain of element N and element N happens-before element N+1. An example is an availability operation with destination scope of the workgroup instance domain that happens-before an availability operation to the shader domain performed by an invocation in the same workgroup. An availability chain AVC that happens-after W and that includes (A,R,L) in the source scope makes (W,L) available to the memory domains in its final destination scope. An availability chain with a single element is just the availability operation.

Similarly, a visibility chain is a sequence of visibility operations from increasingly narrow memory domains, where element N of the chain is performed in the dual scope instance of the source memory domain of element N+1 and element N happens-before element N+1. An example is a visibility operation with source scope of the shader domain that happens-before a visibility operation with source scope of the workgroup instance domain performed by an invocation in the same workgroup. A visibility chain VISC that happens-after AVC (or DOM) and for which (W,L) is available in any domain in the source scope makes (W,L) visible to all (agent,reference,L) tuples included in its final destination scope. A visibility chain with a single element is just the visibility operation.

### Availability, Visibility, and Domain Operations

The following operations generate availability, visibility, and domain operations. When multiple availability/visibility/domain operations are described, they are system-synchronized-with each other in the order listed.

An operation that performs a memory dependency generates:

- If the source access mask includes **VK_ACCESS_HOST_WRITE_BIT**, then the dependency includes a memory domain operation from host domain to device domain.
- An availability operation with source scope of all writes in the first access scope of the dependency and a destination scope of the device domain.
- A visibility operation with source scope of the device domain and destination scope of the second access scope of the dependency.
- If the destination access mask includes **VK_ACCESS_HOST_READ_BIT** or **VK_ACCESS_HOST_WRITE_BIT**, then the dependency includes a memory domain operation from device domain to host domain.

**vkFlushMappedMemoryRanges** performs an availability operation, with a source scope of (agents,references) = (all host threads, all mapped memory ranges passed to the command), and destination scope of the host domain.

**vkInvalidateMappedMemoryRanges** performs a visibility operation, with a source scope of the host domain and a destination scope of (agents,references) = (all host threads, all mapped memory ranges passed to the command).

**vkQueueSubmit** performs a memory domain operation from host to device, and a visibility
operation with source scope of the device domain and destination scope of all agents and references on the device.

### Availability and Visibility Semantics

A memory barrier or atomic operation via agent A that includes MakeAvailable in its semantics performs an availability operation whose source scope includes agent A and all references in the storage classes in that instruction's storage class semantics, and all memory locations, and whose destination scope is a set of memory domains selected as specified below. The implicit availability operation is program-ordered between the barrier or atomic and all other operations program-ordered before the barrier or atomic.

A memory barrier or atomic operation via agent A that includes MakeVisible in its semantics performs a visibility operation whose source scope is a set of memory domains selected as specified below, and whose destination scope includes agent A and all references in the storage classes in that instruction's storage class semantics, and all memory locations. The implicit visibility operation is program-ordered between the barrier or atomic and all other operations program-ordered after the barrier or atomic.

The memory domains are selected based on the memory scope of the instruction as follows:

- **Device** scope uses the shader domain
- **QueueFamily** scope uses the queue family instance domain
- **ShaderCallKHR** scope uses the shader call instance domain
- **Workgroup** scope uses the workgroup instance domain
- **Subgroup** uses the subgroup instance domain
- **Invocation** perform no availability/visibility operations.

When an availability operation performed by an agent A includes a memory domain D in its destination scope, where D corresponds to scope instance S, it also includes the memory domains that correspond to each smaller scope instance S' that is a subset of S and that includes A. Similarly for visibility operations.

### Per-Instruction Availability and Visibility Semantics

A memory write instruction that includes MakePointerAvailable, or an image write instruction that includes MakeTexelAvailable, performs an availability operation whose source scope includes the agent and reference used to perform the write and the memory locations written by the instruction, and whose destination scope is a set of memory domains selected by the Scope operand specified in Availability and Visibility Semantics. The implicit availability operation is program-ordered between the write and all other operations program-ordered after the write.

A memory read instruction that includes MakePointerVisible, or an image read instruction that includes MakeTexelVisible, performs a visibility operation whose source scope is a set of memory domains selected by the Scope operand as specified in Availability and Visibility Semantics, and whose destination scope includes the agent and reference used to perform the read and the
memory locations read by the instruction. The implicit visibility operation is program-ordered between read and all other operations program-ordered before the read.

**Note**

Although reads with per-instruction visibility only perform visibility ops from the shader or shader call instance or workgroup instance or subgroup instance domain, they will also see writes that were made visible via the device domain, i.e. those writes previously performed by non-shader agents and made visible via API commands.

**Note**

It is expected that all invocations in a subgroup execute on the same processor with the same path to memory, and thus availability and visibility operations with subgroup scope can be expected to be “free”.

## Location-Ordered

Let X and Y be memory accesses to overlapping sets of memory locations M, where X ≠ Y. Let \( (A_X, R_X) \) be the agent and reference used for X, and \( (A_Y, R_Y) \) be the agent and reference used for Y. For now, let “→” denote happens-before and “→_rcpo” denote the reflexive closure of program-ordered before.

If \( D_1 \) and \( D_2 \) are different memory domains, then let \( \text{DOM}(D_1, D_2) \) be a memory domain operation from \( D_1 \) to \( D_2 \). Otherwise, let \( \text{DOM}(D, D) \) be a placeholder such that \( X \rightarrow \text{DOM}(D, D) \rightarrow Y \) if and only if \( X \rightarrow Y \).

X is **location-ordered** before Y for a location L in M if and only if any of the following is true:

- \( A_X = A_Y \) and \( R_X = R_Y \) and \( X \rightarrow Y \)
  - **NOTE**: this case means no availability/visibility ops are required when it is the same (agent,reference).
- X is a read, both X and Y are non-private, and \( X \rightarrow Y \)
- X is a read, and X (transitively) system-synchronizes with Y
- If \( R_X = R_Y \) and \( A_X \) and \( A_Y \) access a common memory domain D (e.g. are in the same workgroup instance if D is the workgroup instance domain), and both X and Y are non-private:
  - X is a write, Y is a write, \( \text{AVC}(A_X, R_X, D, L) \) is an availability chain making \((X, L)\) available to domain D, and \( X \rightarrow_{rcpo} \text{AVC}(A_X, R_X, D, L) \rightarrow Y \)
  - X is a write, Y is a read, \( \text{AVC}(A_X, R_X, D, L) \) is an availability chain making \((X, L)\) available to domain D, \( \text{VISC}(A_Y, R_Y, D, L) \) is a visibility chain making writes to L available in domain D visible to Y, and \( X \rightarrow_{rcpo} \text{AVC}(A_X, R_X, D, L) \rightarrow \text{VISC}(A_Y, R_Y, D, L) \rightarrow_{rcpo} Y \)
  - \( \text{VkPhysicalDeviceVulkanMemoryModelFeatures::vulkanMemoryModelAvailabilityVisibilityChains} \) is VK_FALSE, then AVC and VISC must each only have a single element in the chain, in each sub-bullet above.
- Let \( D_X \) and \( D_Y \) each be either the device domain or the host domain, depending on whether \( A_X \) and \( A_Y \) execute on the device or host:
Data Race

Let $X$ and $Y$ be operations that access overlapping sets of memory locations $M$, where $X \neq Y$, and at least one of $X$ and $Y$ is a write, and $X$ and $Y$ are not mutually-ordered atomic operations. If there does not exist a location-ordered relation between $X$ and $Y$ for each location in $M$, then there is a data race.

Applications must ensure that no data races occur during the execution of their application.

Visible-To

Let $X$ be a write and $Y$ be a read whose sets of memory locations overlap, and let $M$ be the set of memory locations that overlap. Let $M_2$ be a non-empty subset of $M$. Then $X$ is visible-to $Y$ for $M_2$ if and only if all of the following are true:

- $X$ is location-ordered before $Y$ for each location $L$ in $M_2$.
- There does not exist another write $Z$ to any location $L$ in $M_2$ such that $X$ is location-ordered before $Z$ for location $L$ and $Z$ is location-ordered before $Y$ for location $L$.

If $X$ is visible-to $Y$, then $Y$ reads the value written by $X$ for locations $M_2$.

Acyclicity

$Reads-from$ is a relation between operations, where the first operation is a write, the second operation is a read, and the second operation reads the value written by the first operation. $From-reads$ is a relation between operations, where the first operation is a read, the second operation is a
write, and the first operation reads a value written earlier than the second operation in the second operation’s scoped modification order (or the first operation reads from the initial value, and the second operation is any write to the same locations).

Then the implementation must guarantee that no cycles exist in the union of the following relations:

- location-ordered
- scoped modification order (over all atomic writes)
- reads-from
- from-reads

**Note**

This is a “consistency” axiom, which informally guarantees that sequences of operations cannot violate causality.

**Scoped Modification Order Coherence**

Let A and B be mutually-ordered atomic operations, where A is location-ordered before B. Then the following rules are a consequence of acyclicity:

- If A and B are both reads and A does not read the initial value, then the write that A takes its value from must be earlier in its own scoped modification order than (or the same as) the write that B takes its value from (no cycles between location-order, reads-from, and from-reads).
- If A is a read and B is a write and A does not read the initial value, then A must take its value from a write earlier than B in B’s scoped modification order (no cycles between location-order, scoped modification order, and reads-from).
- If A is a write and B is a read, then B must take its value from A or a write later than A in A’s scoped modification order (no cycles between location-order, scoped modification order, and from-reads).
- If A and B are both writes, then A must be earlier than B in A’s scoped modification order (no cycles between location-order and scoped modification order).
- If A is a write and B is a read-modify-write and B reads the value written by A, then B comes immediately after A in A’s scoped modification order (no cycles between scoped modification order and from-reads).

**Shader I/O**

If a shader invocation A in a shader stage other than Vertex performs a memory read operation X from an object in storage class CallableDataKHR, IncomingCallableDataKHR, RayPayloadKHR, HitAttributeKHR, IncomingRayPayloadKHR, or Input, then X is system-synchronized-after all writes to the corresponding CallableDataKHR, IncomingCallableDataKHR, RayPayloadKHR, HitAttributeKHR, IncomingRayPayloadKHR, or Output storage variable(s) in the shader invocation(s) that contribute to generating invocation A, and those writes are all visible-to X.
Note

It is not necessary for the upstream shader invocations to have completed execution, they only need to have generated the output that is being read.

**Deallocation**

A call to `vkFreeMemory` must happen-after all memory operations on all memory locations in that `VkDeviceMemory` object.

Note

Normally, device memory operations in a given queue are synchronized with `vkFreeMemory` by having a host thread wait on a fence signalled by that queue, and the wait happens-before the call to `vkFreeMemory` on the host.

The deallocation of SPIR-V variables is managed by the system and happens-after all operations on those variables.

**Descriptions (Informative)**

This subsection offers more easily understandable consequences of the memory model for app/compiler developers.

Let SC be the storage class(es) specified by a release or acquire operation or barrier.

- An atomic write with release semantics must not be reordered against any read or write to SC that is program-ordered before it (regardless of the storage class the atomic is in).
- An atomic read with acquire semantics must not be reordered against any read or write to SC that is program-ordered after it (regardless of the storage class the atomic is in).
- Any write to SC program-ordered after a release barrier must not be reordered against any read or write to SC program-ordered before that barrier.
- Any read from SC program-ordered before an acquire barrier must not be reordered against any read or write to SC program-ordered after the barrier.

A control barrier (even if it has no memory semantics) must not be reordered against any memory barriers.

This memory model allows memory accesses with and without availability and visibility operations, as well as atomic operations, all to be performed on the same memory location. This is critical to allow it to reason about memory that is reused in multiple ways, e.g. across the lifetime of different shader invocations or draw calls. While GLSL (and legacy SPIR-V) applies the “coherent” decoration to variables (for historical reasons), this model treats each memory access instruction as having optional implicit availability/visibility operations. GLSL to SPIR-V compilers should map all (non-atomic) operations on a coherent variable to Make{Pointer,Texel}{Available}{Visible} flags in this model.

Atomic operations implicitly have availability/visibility operations, and the scope of those
operations is taken from the atomic operation’s scope.

**Tessellation Output Ordering**

For SPIR-V that uses the Vulkan Memory Model, the `OutputMemory` storage class is used to synchronize accesses to tessellation control output variables. For legacy SPIR-V that does not enable the Vulkan Memory Model via `OpMemoryModel`, tessellation outputs can be ordered using a control barrier with no particular memory scope or semantics, as defined below.

Let X and Y be memory operations performed by shader invocations A_X and A_Y. Operation X is *tessellation-output-ordered* before operation Y if and only if all of the following are true:

- There is a dynamic instance of an `OpControlBarrier` instruction C such that X is program-ordered before C in A_X and C is program-ordered before Y in A_Y.
- A_X and A_Y are in the same instance of C’s execution scope.

If shader invocations A_X and A_Y in the `TessellationControl` execution model execute memory operations X and Y, respectively, on the `Output` storage class, and X is tessellation-output-ordered before Y with a scope of `Workgroup`, then X is location-ordered before Y, and if X is a write and Y is a read then X is visible-to Y.
Appendix C: Compressed Image Formats

The compressed texture formats used by Vulkan are described in the specifically identified sections of the Khronos Data Format Specification, version 1.3.

Unless otherwise described, the quantities encoded in these compressed formats are treated as normalized, unsigned values.

Those formats listed as sRGB-encoded have in-memory representations of R, G and B components which are nonlinearly-encoded as R', G', and B'; any alpha component is unchanged. As part of filtering, the nonlinear R', G', and B' values are converted to linear R, G, and B components; any alpha component is unchanged. The conversion between linear and nonlinear encoding is performed as described in the “KHR_DF_TRANSFER_SRGB” section of the Khronos Data Format Specification.
Block-Compressed Image Formats

BC1, BC2 and BC3 formats are described in “S3TC Compressed Texture Image Formats” chapter of the Khronos Data Format Specification. BC4 and BC5 are described in the “RGTC Compressed Texture Image Formats” chapter. BC6H and BC7 are described in the “BPTC Compressed Texture Image Formats” chapter.

Table 74. Mapping of Vulkan BC formats to descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VkFormat</th>
<th>Khronos Data Format Specification</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC1_RGB_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>BC1 with no alpha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC1_RGB_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>BC1 with no alpha, sRGB-encoded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC1_RGBA_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>BC1 with alpha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC1_RGBA_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>BC1 with alpha, sRGB-encoded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC2_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>BC2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC2_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>BC2, sRGB-encoded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC3_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>BC3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC3_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>BC3, sRGB-encoded</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC4_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>BC4 unsigned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC4_SNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>BC4 signed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC5_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>BC5 unsigned</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC5_SNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>BC5 signed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC6H_UFLOAT_BLOCK</td>
<td>BC6H (unsigned version)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC6H_SFLOAT_BLOCK</td>
<td>BC6H (signed version)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC7_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>BC7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_BC7_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>BC7, sRGB-encoded</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ETC Compressed Image Formats

The following formats are described in the “ETC2 Compressed Texture Image Formats” chapter of the Khronos Data Format Specification.

Table 75. Mapping of Vulkan ETC formats to descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VkFormat</th>
<th>Khronos Data Format Specification description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ETC2_R8G8B8_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>RGB ETC2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ETC2_R8G8B8_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>RGB ETC2 with sRGB encoding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ETC2_R8G8B8A1_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>RGB ETC2 with punch-through alpha</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ETC2_R8G8B8A1_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>RGB ETC2 with punch-through alpha and sRGB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ETC2_R8G8B8A8_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>RGBA ETC2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ETC2_R8G8B8A8_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>RGBA ETC2 with sRGB encoding</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_EAC_R11_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>Unsigned R11 EAC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_EAC_R11_SNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>Signed R11 EAC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_EAC_R11G11_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>Unsigned RG11 EAC</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_EAC_R11G11_SNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>Signed RG11 EAC</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
ASTC Compressed Image Formats

ASTC formats are described in the “ASTC Compressed Texture Image Formats” chapter of the Khronos Data Format Specification.

Table 76. Mapping of Vulkan ASTC formats to descriptions

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VkFormat</th>
<th>Compressed texel block dimensions</th>
<th>Requested mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_4x4_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>4 × 4</td>
<td>Linear LDR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_4x4_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>4 × 4</td>
<td>sRGB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_5x4_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>5 × 4</td>
<td>Linear LDR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_5x4_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>5 × 4</td>
<td>sRGB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_5x5_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>5 × 5</td>
<td>Linear LDR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_5x5_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>5 × 5</td>
<td>sRGB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_6x5_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>6 × 5</td>
<td>Linear LDR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_6x5_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>6 × 5</td>
<td>sRGB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_6x6_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>6 × 6</td>
<td>Linear LDR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_6x6_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>6 × 6</td>
<td>sRGB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x5_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>8 × 5</td>
<td>Linear LDR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x5_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>8 × 5</td>
<td>sRGB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x6_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>8 × 6</td>
<td>Linear LDR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x6_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>8 × 6</td>
<td>sRGB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x8_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>8 × 8</td>
<td>Linear LDR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_8x8_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>8 × 8</td>
<td>sRGB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x5_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>10 × 5</td>
<td>Linear LDR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x5_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>10 × 5</td>
<td>sRGB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x6_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>10 × 6</td>
<td>Linear LDR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x6_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>10 × 6</td>
<td>sRGB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x8_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>10 × 8</td>
<td>Linear LDR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x8_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>10 × 8</td>
<td>sRGB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x10_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>10 × 10</td>
<td>Linear LDR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_10x10_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>10 × 10</td>
<td>sRGB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_12x10_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>12 × 10</td>
<td>Linear LDR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_12x10_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>12 × 10</td>
<td>sRGB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_12x12_UNORM_BLOCK</td>
<td>12 × 12</td>
<td>Linear LDR</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
### VkFormat

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>VkFormat</th>
<th>Compressed texel block dimensions</th>
<th>Requested mode</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_FORMAT_ASTC_12x12_SRGB_BLOCK</td>
<td>12 × 12</td>
<td>sRGB</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ASTC textures containing any HDR blocks **should** not be passed into the API using an sRGB or UNORM texture format.

*Note*

An HDR block in a texture passed using a LDR UNORM format will return the appropriate ASTC error color if the implementation supports only the ASTC LDR profile, but may result in either the error color or a decompressed HDR color if the implementation supports HDR decoding.

The ASTC decode mode is decode_float16.

Note that an implementation **may** use HDR mode when linear LDR mode is requested.
Appendix D: Core Revisions (Informative)

New minor versions of the Vulkan API are defined periodically by the Khronos Vulkan Working Group. These consist of some amount of additional functionality added to the core API, potentially including both new functionality and functionality promoted from extensions.
Appendix E: Layers & Extensions (Informative)

Extensions to the Vulkan API can be defined by authors, groups of authors, and the Khronos Vulkan Working Group. In order not to compromise the readability of the Vulkan Specification, the core Specification does not incorporate most extensions. The online Registry of extensions is available at URL

https://www.khronos.org/registry/vulkan/

and allows generating versions of the Specification incorporating different extensions.

Most of the content previously in this appendix does not specify use of specific Vulkan extensions and layers, but rather specifies the processes by which extensions and layers are created. As of version 1.0.21 of the Vulkan Specification, this content has been migrated to the Vulkan Documentation and Extensions document. Authors creating extensions and layers must follow the mandatory procedures in that document.

The remainder of this appendix documents a set of extensions chosen when this document was built. Versions of the Specification published in the Registry include:

- Core API + mandatory extensions required of all Vulkan implementations.
- Core API + all registered and published Khronos (KHR) extensions.
- Core API + all registered and published extensions.

Extensions are grouped as Khronos KHR, multivendor EXT, and then alphabetically by author ID. Within each group, extensions are listed in alphabetical order by their name.

Note
As of the initial Vulkan 1.1 public release, the KHX author ID is no longer used. All KHX extensions have been promoted to KHR status. Previously, this author ID was used to indicate that an extension was experimental, and is being considered for standardization in future KHR or core Vulkan API versions. We no longer use this mechanism for exposing experimental functionality.

Some vendors may use an alternate author ID ending in X for some of their extensions. The exact meaning of such an author ID is defined by each vendor, and may not be equivalent to KHX, but it is likely to indicate a lesser degree of interface stability than a non-X extension from the same vendor.

List of Extensions

- VK_KHR_16bit_storage
- VK_KHR_8bit_storage
- VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
• VK_KHR_android_surface
• VK_KHR_bind_memory2
• VK_KHR_buffer_device_address
• VK_KHR_copy_commands2
• VK_KHR_create_renderpass2
• VK_KHR_dedicated_allocation
• VK_KHR_deferred_host_operations
• VK_KHR_depth_stencil_resolve
• VK_KHR_descriptor_update_template
• VK_KHR_device_group
• VK_KHR_device_group_creation
• VK_KHR_display
• VK_KHR_display_swapchain
• VK_KHR_draw_indirect_count
• VK_KHR_driver_properties
• VK_KHR_external_fence
• VK_KHR_external_fence_capabilities
• VK_KHR_external_fence_fd
• VK_KHR_external_fence_win32
• VK_KHR_external_memory
• VK_KHR_external_memory_capabilities
• VK_KHR_external_memory_fd
• VK_KHR_external_memory_win32
• VK_KHR_external_semaphore
• VK_KHR_external_semaphore_capabilities
• VK_KHR_external_semaphore_fd
• VK_KHR_external_semaphore_win32
• VK_KHR_fragment_shading_rate
• VK_KHR_get_display_properties2
• VK_KHR_get_memory_requirements2
• VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2
• VK_KHR_get_surface_capabilities2
• VK_KHR_image_format_list
• VK_KHR_imageless_framebuffer
• VK_KHR_incremental_present
• VK_KHR_maintenance1
• VK_KHR_maintenance2
• VK_KHR_maintenance3
• VK_KHR_multiview
• VK_KHR_performance_query
• VK_KHR_pipeline_executable_properties
• VK_KHR_pipeline_library
• VK_KHR_present_id
• VK_KHR_present_wait
• VK_KHR_push_descriptor
• VK_KHR_ray_query
• VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline
• VK_KHR_relaxed_block_layout
• VK_KHR_sampler_mirror_clamp_to_edge
• VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
• VK_KHR_separate_depth_STENCIL_layouts
• VK_KHR_shader_atomic_int64
• VK_KHR_shader_clock
• VK_KHR_shader_draw_parameters
• VK_KHR_shader_float16_int8
• VK_KHR_shader_float_controls
• VK_KHR_shader_non_semantic_info
• VK_KHR_shader_subgroup_extended_types
• VK_KHR_shader_subgroup_uniform_control_flow
• VK_KHR_shader_terminate_invocation
• VK_KHR_shared_presentable_image
• VK_KHR_spirv_1_4
• VK_KHR_storage_buffer_storage_class
• VK_KHR_surface
• VK_KHR_surface_protected_capabilities
• VK_KHR_swapchain
• VK_KHR_swapchain_mutable_format
• VK_KHR_synchronization2
• VK_KHR_timeline_semaphore
• VK_KHR_uniform_buffer_standard_layout
• VK_KHR_variable_pointers
• VK_KHR_vulkan_memory_model
• VK_KHR_wayland_surface
• VK_KHR_win32_keyed_mutex
• VK_KHR_win32_surface
• VK_KHR_workgroup_memory_explicit_layout
• VK_KHR_xcb_surface
• VK_KHR_xlib_surface
• VK_KHR_zero_initialize_workgroup_memory
**VK_KHR_16bit_storage**

**Name String**

`VK_KHR_16bit_storage`

**Extension Type**

Device extension

**Registered Extension Number**

84

**Revision**

1

**Extension and Version Dependencies**

- Requires Vulkan 1.0
- Requires `VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2`
- Requires `VK_KHR_storage_buffer_storage_class`

**Deprecation state**

- Promoted to Vulkan 1.1

**Contact**

- Jan-Harald Fredriksen [janharaldfredriksen-arm](mailto:janharaldfredriksen-arm)

**Other Extension Metadata**

**Last Modified Date**

2017-09-05

**IP Status**

No known IP claims.

**Interactions and External Dependencies**

- Promoted to Vulkan 1.1 Core
- This extension requires `SPV_KHR_16bit_storage`
- This extension provides API support for `GL_EXT_shader_16bit_storage`

** Contributors**

- Alexander Galazin, ARM
- Jan-Harald Fredriksen, ARM
- Joerg Wagner, ARM
- Neil Henning, Codeplay
- Jeff Bolz, Nvidia
- Daniel Koch, Nvidia
Description

The VK_KHR_16bit_storage extension allows use of 16-bit types in shader input and output interfaces, and push constant blocks. This extension introduces several new optional features which map to SPIR-V capabilities and allow access to 16-bit data in Block-decorated objects in the Uniform and the StorageBuffer storage classes, and objects in the PushConstant storage class. This extension allows 16-bit variables to be declared and used as user-defined shader inputs and outputs but does not change location assignment and component assignment rules.

Promotion to Vulkan 1.1

All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.1, with the KHR suffix omitted. However, if Vulkan 1.1 is supported and this extension is not, the storageBuffer16BitAccess capability is optional. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

New Structures

- Extending VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2, VkDeviceCreateInfo:
  - VkPhysicalDevice16BitStorageFeaturesKHR

New Enum Constants

- VK_KHR_16BIT_STORAGE_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_16BIT_STORAGE_SPEC_VERSION
- Extending VkStructureType:
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_16BIT_STORAGE_FEATURES_KHR

New SPIR-V Capabilities

- StorageBuffer16BitAccess
- UniformAndStorageBuffer16BitAccess
- StoragePushConstant16
- StorageInputOutput16

Version History

- Revision 1, 2017-03-23 (Alexander Galazin)
  - Initial draft
VK_KHR_8bit_storage

Name String
VK_KHR_8bit_storage

Extension Type
Device extension

Registered Extension Number
178

Revision
1

Extension and Version Dependencies
- Requires Vulkan 1.0
- Requires VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2
- Requires VK_KHR_storage_buffer_storage_class

Deprecation state
- Promoted to Vulkan 1.2

Contact
- Alexander Galazin alegal-arm

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
2018-02-05

Interactions and External Dependencies
- Promoted to Vulkan 1.2 Core
- This extension requires SPV_KHR_8bit_storage
- This extension provides API support for GL_EXT_shader_16bit_storage

IP Status
No known IP claims.

Contributors
- Alexander Galazin, Arm

Description
The VK_KHR_8bit_storage extension allows use of 8-bit types in uniform and storage buffers, and push constant blocks. This extension introduces several new optional features which map to SPIR-V capabilities and allow access to 8-bit data in Block-decorated objects in the Uniform and the StorageBuffer storage classes, and objects in the PushConstant storage class.
The StorageBuffer8BitAccess capability must be supported by all implementations of this extension. The other capabilities are optional.

**Promotion to Vulkan 1.2**

Functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.2, with the KHR suffix omitted. However, if Vulkan 1.2 is supported and this extension is not, the StorageBuffer8BitAccess capability is optional. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

**New Structures**

- Extending VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2, VkDeviceCreateInfo:
  - VkPhysicalDevice8BitStorageFeaturesKHR

**New Enum Constants**

- VK_KHR_8BIT_STORAGE_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_8BIT_STORAGE_SPEC_VERSION

- Extending VkStructureType:
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_8BIT_STORAGE_FEATURES_KHR

**New SPIR-V Capabilities**

- StorageBuffer8BitAccess
- UniformAndStorageBuffer8BitAccess
- StoragePushConstant8

**Version History**

- Revision 1, 2018-02-05 (Alexander Galazin)
  - Initial draft

**VK_KHR_acceleration_structure**

**Name String**

VK_KHR_acceleration_structure

**Extension Type**

Device extension

**Registered Extension Number**

151

**Revision**

12
Extension and Version Dependencies

- Requires Vulkan 1.1
- Requires `VK_EXT_descriptor_indexing`
- Requires `VK_KHR_buffer_device_address`
- Requires `VK_KHR_deferred_host_operations`

Contact

- Daniel Koch 📧 dgkoch

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date

2020-11-12

Contributors

- Samuel Bourasseau, Adobe
- Matthäus Chajdas, AMD
- Greg Grebe, AMD
- Nicolai Hähnle, AMD
- Tobias Hector, AMD
- Dave Oldcorn, AMD
- Skyler Saleh, AMD
- Mathieu Robart, Arm
- Marius Bjorge, Arm
- Tom Olson, Arm
- Sebastian Tafuri, EA
- Henrik Rydgard, Embark
- Juan Cañada, Epic Games
- Patrick Kelly, Epic Games
- Yuriy O'Donnell, Epic Games
- Michael Doggett, Facebook/Oculus
- Ricardo García, Igalia
- Andrew Garrard, Imagination
- Don Scorgie, Imagination
- Dae Kim, Imagination
- Joshua Barczak, Intel
- Slawek Grajewski, Intel
- Jeff Bolz, NVIDIA
Description

In order to be efficient, rendering techniques such as ray tracing need a quick way to identify which primitives may be intersected by a ray traversing the geometries. Acceleration structures are the most common way to represent the geometry spatially sorted, in order to quickly identify such potential intersections.

This extension adds new functionalities:

- Acceleration structure objects and build commands
- Structures to describe geometry inputs to acceleration structure builds
- Acceleration structure copy commands

New Object Types

- VkAccelerationStructureKHR

New Commands

- vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR
• `vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR`
• `vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR`
• `vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureKHR`
• `vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR`
• `vkCmdCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR`
• `vkCmdCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR`
• `vkCmdWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR`
• `vkCopyAccelerationStructureKHR`
• `vkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR`
• `vkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR`
• `vkCreateAccelerationStructureKHR`
• `vkDestroyAccelerationStructureKHR`
• `vkGetAccelerationStructureBuildSizesKHR`
• `vkGetAccelerationStructureDeviceAddressKHR`
• `vkGetDeviceAccelerationStructureCompatibilityKHR`
• `vkWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR`

**New Structures**

• `VkAabbPositionsKHR`
• `VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR`
• `VkAccelerationStructureBuildRangeInfoKHR`
• `VkAccelerationStructureBuildSizesInfoKHR`
• `VkAccelerationStructureCreateInfoKHR`
• `VkAccelerationStructureDeviceAddressInfoKHR`
• `VkAccelerationStructureGeometryAabbsDataKHR`
• `VkAccelerationStructureGeometryInstancesDataKHR`
• `VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR`
• `VkAccelerationStructureGeometryTrianglesDataKHR`
• `VkAccelerationStructureInstanceKHR`
• `VkAccelerationStructureVersionInfoKHR`
• `VkCopyAccelerationStructureInfoKHR`
• `VkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryInfoKHR`
• `VkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureInfoKHR`
• `VkTransformMatrixKHR`

**Extending** `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2`, `VkDeviceCreateInfo`:

• `VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructureFeaturesKHR`
• Extending \texttt{VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2}:  
  ◦ \texttt{VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructurePropertiesKHR}

• Extending \texttt{VkWriteDescriptorSet}:  
  ◦ \texttt{VkWriteDescriptorSetAccelerationStructureKHR}

### New Unions

• \texttt{VkAccelerationStructureGeometryDataKHR}
• \texttt{VkDeviceOrHostAddressConstKHR}
• \texttt{VkDeviceOrHostAddressKHR}

### New Enums

• \texttt{VkAccelerationStructureBuildTypeKHR}
• \texttt{VkAccelerationStructureCompatibilityKHR}
• \texttt{VkAccelerationStructureCreateFlagBitsKHR}
• \texttt{VkAccelerationStructureTypeKHR}
• \texttt{VkBuildAccelerationStructureFlagBitsKHR}
• \texttt{VkBuildAccelerationStructureModeKHR}
• \texttt{VkCopyAccelerationStructureModeKHR}
• \texttt{VkGeometryFlagBitsKHR}
• \texttt{VkGeometryInstanceFlagBitsKHR}
• \texttt{VkGeometryTypeKHR}

### New Bitmasks

• \texttt{VkAccelerationStructureCreateFlagsKHR}
• \texttt{VkBuildAccelerationStructureFlagsKHR}
• \texttt{VkGeometryFlagsKHR}
• \texttt{VkGeometryInstanceFlagsKHR}

### New Enum Constants

• \texttt{VK_KHR_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_EXTENSION_NAME}
• \texttt{VK_KHR_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_SPEC_VERSION}

• Extending \texttt{VkAccessFlagBits}:  
  ◦ \texttt{VK_ACCESS_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_READ_BIT_KHR}
  ◦ \texttt{VK_ACCESS_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_WRITE_BIT_KHR}

• Extending \texttt{VkBufferUsageFlagBits}:
- `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_INPUT_READ_ONLY_BIT_KHR`
- `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_STORAGE_BIT_KHR`

**Extending `VkDebugReportObjectTypeEXT`:**
- `VK_DEBUG_REPORT_OBJECT_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_KHR_EXT`

**Extending `VkDescriptorType`:**
- `VK_DESCRIPTOR_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_KHR`

**Extending `VkFormatFeatureFlagBits`:**
- `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_VERTEX_BUFFER_BIT_KHR`

**Extending `VkIndexType`:**
- `VK_INDEX_TYPE_NONE_KHR`

**Extending `VkObjectType`:**
- `VK_OBJECT_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_KHR`

**Extending `VkPipelineStageFlagBits`:**
- `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR`

**Extending `VkQueryType`:**
- `VK_QUERY_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_COMPACTED_SIZE_KHR`
- `VK_QUERY_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_SERIALIZATION_SIZE_KHR`

**Extending `VkStructureType`:**
- `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_GEOMETRY_INFO_KHR`
- `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_SIZES_INFO_KHR`
- `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_CREATE_INFO_KHR`
- `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_DEVICE_ADDRESS_INFO_KHR`
- `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_GEOMETRY_AABBS_DATA_KHR`
- `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_GEOMETRY_INSTANCES_DATA_KHR`
- `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_GEOMETRY_KHR`
- `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_GEOMETRY_TRIANGLES_DATA_KHR`
- `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_VERSION_INFO_KHR`
- `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COPY_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_INFO_KHR`
- `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COPY_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TO_MEMORY_INFO_KHR`
- `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COPY_MEMORY_TO_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_INFO_KHR`
- `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_FEATURES_KHR`
- `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_PROPERTIES_KHR`
- `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_WRITE_DESCRIPTOR_SET_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_KHR`
Issues

(1) How does this extension differ from VK_NV_ray_tracing?

DISCUSSION:

The following is a summary of the main functional differences between
VK_KHR_acceleration_structure and VK_NV_ray_tracing:

- added acceleration structure serialization / deserialization
  (VK_COPY_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_SERIALIZE_KHR,
  VK_COPY_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_MODE_DESERIALIZE_KHR,
  vkCmdCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR,
  vkCmdCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR)

- document inactive primitives and instances

- added VkPhysicalDeviceAccelerationStructureFeaturesKHR structure

- added indirect and batched acceleration structure builds
  (vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR)

- added host acceleration structure commands

- reworked geometry structures so they could be better shared between device, host, and indirect builds

- explicitly made VkAccelerationStructureKHR use device addresses

- added acceleration structure compatibility check function
  (vkGetDeviceAccelerationStructureCompatibilityKHR)

- add parameter for requesting memory requirements for host and/or device build

- added format feature for acceleration structure build vertex formats
  (VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_VERTEX_BUFFER_BIT_KHR)

(3) What are the changes between the public provisional (VK_KHR_ray_tracing v8) release and the internal provisional (VK_KHR_ray_tracing v9) release?

- added geometryFlags to VkAccelerationStructureCreateInfoKHR (later reworked to obsolete this)

- added minAccelerationStructureScratchOffsetAlignment property to
  VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPropertiesKHR

- fix naming and return enum from vkGetDeviceAccelerationStructureCompatibilityKHR

  - renamed VkAccelerationStructureVersionKHR to VkAccelerationStructureVersionInfoKHR
  - renamed VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_VERSION_KHR to
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_VERSION_INFO_KHR
  - removed VK_ERROR_INCOMPATIBLE_VERSION_KHR
  - added VkAccelerationStructureCompatibilityKHR enum
  - remove return value from vkGetDeviceAccelerationStructureCompatibilityKHR and added
    return enum parameter
• Require Vulkan 1.1
• added creation time capture and replay flags
  ◦ added `VkAccelerationStructureCreateFlagBitsKHR` and `VkAccelerationStructureCreateFlagsKHR`
  ◦ renamed the `flags` member of `VkAccelerationStructureCreateInfoKHR` to `buildFlags` (later removed) and added the `createFlags` member
• change `vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR` to use buffer device address for indirect parameter
• make `VK_KHR_deferred_host_operations` an interaction instead of a required extension (later went back on this)
• renamed `VkAccelerationStructureBuildOffsetInfoKHR` to `VkAccelerationStructureBuildRangeInfoKHR`
  ◦ renamed the `ppOffsetInfos` parameter of `vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR` to `ppBuildRangeInfos`
• Re-unify geometry description between build and create
  ◦ remove `VkAccelerationStructureCreateGeometryTypeInfoKHR` and `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_CREATE_GEOMETRY_TYPE_INFO_KHR`
  ◦ added `VkAccelerationStructureCreateSizeInfoKHR` structure (later removed)
  ◦ change type of the `pGeometryInfos` member of `VkAccelerationStructureCreateInfoKHR` from `VkAccelerationStructureCreateGeometryTypeInfoKHR` to `VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR` (later removed)
  ◦ added `pCreateSizeInfos` member to `VkAccelerationStructureCreateInfoKHR` (later removed)
• Fix `ppGeometries` ambiguity, add `pGeometries`
  ◦ remove `geometryArrayOfPointers` member of `VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR`
  ◦ disambiguate two meanings of `ppGeometries` by explicitly adding `pGeometries` to the `VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR` structure and require one of them be `NULL`
• added `nullDescriptor` support for acceleration structures
• changed the `update` member of `VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR` from a bool to the `mode` `VkBuildAccelerationStructureModeKHR` enum which allows future extensibility in update types
• Clarify deferred host ops for pipeline creation
  ◦ `VkDeferredOperationKHR` is now a top-level parameter for `vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR`, `vkCreateRayTracingPipelinesKHR`, `vkCopyAccelerationStructureToMemoryKHR`, `vkCopyAccelerationStructureKHR`, and `vkCopyMemoryToAccelerationStructureKHR`
  ◦ removed `VkDeferredOperationInfoKHR` structure
  ◦ change deferred host creation/return parameter behavior such that the implementation can modify such parameters until the deferred host operation completes
  ◦ `VK_KHR_deferred_host_operations` is required again
• Change acceleration structure build to always be sized
  ◦ de-alias \texttt{VkAccelerationStructureMemoryRequirementsTypeNV} and \texttt{VkAccelerationStructureMemoryRequirementsTypeKHR} and remove \texttt{VkAccelerationStructureMemoryRequirementsTypeKHR}
  ◦ add \texttt{vkGetAccelerationStructureBuildSizesKHR} command and \texttt{VkAccelerationStructureBuildSizesInfoKHR} structure and \texttt{VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_SIZES_INFO_KHR} enum to query sizes for acceleration structures and scratch storage
  ◦ move size queries for scratch space to \texttt{vkGetAccelerationStructureBuildSizesKHR}
  ◦ remove \texttt{compactedSize}, \texttt{buildFlags}, \texttt{maxGeometryCount}, \texttt{pGeometryInfos}, \texttt{pCreateSizeInfos} members of \texttt{VkAccelerationStructureCreateInfoKHR} and add the \texttt{size} member
  ◦ add \texttt{maxVertex} member to \texttt{VkAccelerationStructureGeometryTrianglesDataKHR} structure
  ◦ remove \texttt{VkAccelerationStructureCreateSizeInfoKHR} structure

(4) What are the changes between the internal provisional (VK_KHR_ray_tracing v9) release and the final (VK_KHR_acceleration_structure v11) release?

• refactor VK_KHR_ray_tracing into 3 extensions, enabling implementation flexibility and decoupling ray query support from ray pipelines:
  ◦ \texttt{VK_KHR_acceleration_structure} (for acceleration structure operations)
  ◦ \texttt{VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline} (for ray tracing pipeline and shader stages)
  ◦ \texttt{VK_KHR_ray_query} (for ray queries in existing shader stages)

• clarify buffer usage flags for ray tracing
  ◦ \texttt{VK_BUFFER_USAGE_RAY_TRACING_BIT_NV} is left alone in [VK_NV_ray_tracing] (required on scratch and instanceData)
  ◦ \texttt{VK_BUFFER_USAGE_SHADER_BINDING_TABLE_BIT_KHR} is added as an alias of \texttt{VK_BUFFER_USAGE_RAY_TRACING_BIT_NV} in \texttt{VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline} and is required on shader binding table buffers
  ◦ \texttt{VK_BUFFER_USAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_INPUT_READ_ONLY_BIT_KHR} is added in \texttt{VK_KHR_acceleration_structure} for all vertex, index, transform, aabb, and instance buffer data referenced by device build commands
  ◦ \texttt{VK_BUFFER_USAGE_STORAGE_BUFFER_BIT} is used for scratchData

• add \texttt{max primitive counts} (\texttt{ppMaxPrimitiveCounts}) to \texttt{vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR}

• Allocate acceleration structures from \texttt{VkBuffers} and add a mode to constrain the device address
  ◦ de-alias \texttt{VkBindAccelerationStructureMemoryInfoNV}, \texttt{VkBindAccelerationStructureMemoryInfoKHR}, \texttt{VkAccelerationStructureMemoryRequirementsInfoKHR}, and \texttt{vkGetAccelerationStructureMemoryRequirementsKHR} and remove \texttt{VkBindAccelerationStructureMemoryInfoNV}, \texttt{VkBindAccelerationStructureMemoryInfoKHR}, \texttt{VkAccelerationStructureMemoryRequirementsInfoKHR}, and \texttt{vkGetAccelerationStructureMemoryRequirementsKHR}
  ◦ acceleration structures now take a \texttt{VkBuffer} and offset at creation time for memory placement
• add a new `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_STORAGE_BIT_KHR` buffer usage for such buffers

• add a new `VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_GENERIC_KHR` acceleration structure type for layering

• move `VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_INSTANCES_KHR` to main enum instead of being added via extension

• make build commands more consistent - all now build multiple acceleration structures and are named plurally (vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresIndirectKHR, vkCmdBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR, vkBuildAccelerationStructuresKHR)

• add interactions with `VK_DESCRIPTOR_SET_LAYOUT_CREATE_UPDATE_AFTER_BIND_POOL_BIT` for acceleration structures, including a new feature (descriptorBindingAccelerationStructureUpdateAfterBind) and 3 new properties (maxPerStageDescriptorAccelerationStructureUpdateAfterBind, maxPerStageDescriptorUpdateAfterBindAccelerationStructures, maxDescriptorSetUpdateAfterBindAccelerationStructures)

• extension is no longer provisional

• define synchronization requirements for builds, traces, and copies

• define synchronization requirements for AS build inputs and indirect build buffer

(5) What is `VK_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_TYPE_GENERIC_KHR` for?

**Resolved:** It is primarily intended for API layering. In DXR, the acceleration structure is basically just a buffer in a special layout, and you do not know at creation time whether it will be used as a top or bottom level acceleration structure. We thus added a generic acceleration structure type whose type is unknown at creation time, but is specified at build time instead. Applications which are written directly for Vulkan should not use it.

**Version History**

• Revision 1, 2019-12-05 (Members of the Vulkan Ray Tracing TSG)
  ◦ Internal revisions (forked from VK_NV_ray_tracing)

• Revision 2, 2019-12-20 (Daniel Koch, Eric Werness)
  ◦ Add const version of DeviceOrHostAddress (!3515)
  ◦ Add VU to clarify that only handles in the current pipeline are valid (!3518)
  ◦ Restore some missing VUs and add in-place update language (#1902, !3522)
  ◦ rename VkAccelerationStructureInstanceKHR member from accelerationStructure to accelerationStructureReference to better match its type (!3523)
  ◦ Allow `VK_ERROR_INVALID_OPAQUE_CAPTURE_ADDRESS` for pipeline creation if shader group handles cannot be reused (!3523)
  ◦ update documentation for the `VK_ERROR_INVALID_OPAQUE_CAPTURE_ADDRESS` error code and add missing documentation for new return codes from VK_KHR_deferred_host_operations (!3523)
  ◦ list new query types for VK_KHR_ray_tracing (!3523)
• Fix VU statements for VkAccelerationStructureGeometryKHR referring to correct union members and update to use more current wording (I3523)

Revision 3, 2020-01-10 (Daniel Koch, Jon Leech, Christoph Kubisch)
• Fix 'instance of' and 'that/which contains/defines' markup issues (I3528)
• factor out VK_KHR_pipeline_library as stand-alone extension (I3540)
• Resolve Vulkan-hpp issues (I3543)
• add missing require for VkGeometryInstanceFlagsKHR
• de-alias VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_CREATE_INFO_NV since the KHR structure is no longer equivalent
• add len to pDataSize attribute for vkWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR

Revision 4, 2020-01-23 (Daniel Koch, Eric Werness)
• Improve vkWriteAccelerationStructuresPropertiesKHR, add return value and VUs (#1947)
• Clarify language to allow multiple raygen shaders (#1959)
• Various editorial feedback (I3556)
• Add language to help deal with looped self-intersecting fans (#1901)
• Change vkCmdTraceRays{Indirect}KHR args to pointers (I3559)
• Add scratch address validation language (#1941, I3551)
• Fix definition and add hierarchy information for shader call scope (#1977, I3571)

Revision 5, 2020-02-04 (Eric Werness, Jeff Bolz, Daniel Koch)
• remove vestigial accelerationStructureUUID (I3582)
• update definition of repack instructions and improve memory model interactions (#1910, #1913, I3584)
• Fix wrong sType for VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingFeaturesKHR (#1988)
• Use provisional SPIR-V capabilities (#1987)
• require rayTraversalPrimitiveCulling if rayQuery is supported (#1927)
• Miss shaders do not have object parameters (I3592)
• Fix missing required types in XML (I3592)
• clarify matching conditions for update (I3592)
• add goal that host and device builds be similar (I3592)
• clarify that maxPrimitiveCount limit should apply to triangles and AABBs (I3592)
• Require alignment for instance arrayOfPointers (I3592)
• Zero is a valid value for instance flags (I3592)
• Add some alignment VUs that got lost in refactoring (I3592)
• Recommend TMin epsilon rather than culling (I3592)
• Get angle from dot product not cross product (I3592)
• Clarify that AH can access the payload and attributes (13592)
  • Match DXR behavior for inactive primitive definition (13592)
  • Use a more generic term than degenerate for inactive to avoid confusion (13592)

Revision 6, 2020-02-20 (Daniel Koch)

• fix some dangling NV references (#1996)
• rename VkCmdTraceRaysIndirectCommandKHR to VkTraceRaysIndirectCommandKHR (!3607)
• update contributor list (!3611)
• use uint64_t instead of VkAccelerationStructureReferenceKHR in VkAccelerationStructureInstanceKHR (#2004)

Revision 7, 2020-02-28 (Tobias Hector)

• remove HitTKHR SPIR-V builtin (spirv/spirv-extensions#7)

Revision 8, 2020-03-06 (Tobias Hector, Dae Kim, Daniel Koch, Jeff Bolz, Eric Werness)

• explicitly state that Tmax is updated when new closest intersection is accepted (#2020,13536)
• Made references to min and max t values consistent (!3644)
• finish enumerating differences relative to VK_NV_ray_tracing in issues (1) and (2) (#1974,13642)
• fix formatting in some math equations (!3642)
• Restrict the Hit Kind operand of OpReportIntersectionKHR to 7-bits (spirv/spirv-extensions#8,13646)
• Say ray tracing 'should' be watertight (#2008,13631)
• Clarify memory requirements for ray tracing buffers (#2005,13649)
• Add callable size limits (#1997,13652)

Revision 9, 2020-04-15 (Eric Werness, Daniel Koch, Tobias Hector, Joshua Barczak)

• Add geometry flags to acceleration structure creation (13672)
• add build scratch memory alignment (minAccelerationStructureScratchOffsetAlignment) (#2065,13725)
• fix naming and return enum from vkGetDeviceAccelerationStructureCompatibilityKHR (#2051,13726)
• require SPIR-V 1.4 (#2096,13777)
• added creation time capture/replay flags (#2104,13774)
• require Vulkan 1.1 (#2133,13806)
• use device addresses instead of VkBuffers for ray tracing commands (#2074,13815)
• add interactions with Vulkan 1.2 and VK_KHR_vulkan_memory_model (#2133,13830)
• make VK_KHR_pipeline_library an interaction instead of required (#2045,#2108,13830)
• make VK_KHR_deferred_host_operations an interaction instead of required (#2045,13830)
• removed maxCallableSize and added explicit stack size management for ray pipelines (#1997,!3817,!3772,!3844)
• improved documentation for VkAccelerationStructureVersionInfoKHR (#2135,3835)
• rename VkAccelerationStructureBuildOffsetInfoKHR to VkAccelerationStructureBuildRangeInfoKHR (#2058,!3754)
• Re-unify geometry description between build and create (!3754)
• Fix ppGeometries ambiguity, add pGeometries (#2032,!3811)
• add interactions with VK_EXT_robustness2 and allow nullDescriptor support for acceleration structures (#1920,!3848)
• added future extensibility for AS updates (#2114,!3849)
• Fix VU for dispatchrays and add a limit on the size of the full grid (#2160,!3851)
• Add shaderGroupHandleAlignment property (#2180,!3875)
• Clarify deferred host ops for pipeline creation (#2067,!3813)
• Change acceleration structure build to always be sized (#2131,#2197,#2198,13854,13883,13880)

• Revision 10, 2020-07-03 (Mathieu Robart, Daniel Koch, Eric Werness, Tobias Hector)
  • Decomposition of the specification, from VK_KHR_ray_tracing to VK_KHR_acceleration_structure (#1918,!3912)
  • clarify buffer usage flags for ray tracing (#2181,!3939)
  • add max primitive counts to build indirect command (#2233,!3944)
  • Allocate acceleration structures from VkBuffers and add a mode to constrain the device address (#2131,!3936)
  • Move VK_GEOMETRY_TYPE_INSTANCES_KHR to main enum (#2243,!3952)
  • make build commands more consistent (#2247,!3958)
  • add interactions with UPDATE_AFTER_BIND (#2128,!3986)
  • correct and expand build command VUs (!4020)
  • fix copy command VUs (!4018)
  • added various alignment requirements (#2229,!3943)
  • fix valid usage for arrays of geometryCount items (#2198,!4010)
  • define what is allowed to change on RTAS updates and relevant VUs (#2177,!3961)

• Revision 11, 2020-11-12 (Eric Werness, Josh Barczak, Daniel Koch, Tobias Hector)
  • de-alias NV and KHR acceleration structure types and associated commands (#2271,!4035)
  • specify alignment for host copy commands (#2273,!4037)
  • document VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_VERTEX_BUFFER_BIT_KHR
  • specify that acceleration structures are non-linear (#2289,!4068)
  • add several missing VUs for strides, vertexFormat, and indexType (#2315,!4069)

Appendix E: Layers & Extensions (Informative) | 1685
• restore VUs for VkAccelerationStructureBuildGeometryInfoKHR (#2337,4098)
• ban multi-instance memory for host operations (#2324,4102)
• allow dstAccelerationStructure to be null for vkGetAccelerationStructureBuildSizesKHR (#2330,4111)
• more build VU cleanup (#2138,4130)
• specify host endianness for AS serialization (#2261,4136)
• add invertible transform matrix VU (#1710,4140)
• require geometryCount to be 1 for TLAS builds (#4145)
• improved validity conditions for build addresses (#4142)
• add single statement SPIR-V VUs, build limit VUs (#4158)
• document limits for vertex and aabb strides (#2390,4184)
• specify that VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_ACCELERATION_STRUCTURE_BUILD_BIT_KHR applies to AS copies (#2382,4173)
• define sync for AS build inputs and indirect buffer (#2407,4208)

• Revision 12, 2021-08-06 (Samuel Bourasseau)
  • rename VK_GEOMETRY_INSTANCE_TRIANGLE_FRONT_COUNTERCLOCKWISE_BIT_KHR to VK_GEOMETRY_INSTANCE_TRIANGLE_FLIP_FACING_BIT_KHR (keep previous as alias).
  • Clarify description and add note.

**VK_KHR_android_surface**

**Name String**

VK_KHR_android_surface

**Extension Type**

Instance extension

**Registered Extension Number**

9

**Revision**

6

**Extension and Version Dependencies**

• Requires Vulkan 1.0
• Requires VK_KHR_surface

**Contact**

• Jesse Hall critsec
Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
2016-01-14

IP Status
No known IP claims.

Contributors
- Patrick Doane, Blizzard
- Jason Ekstrand, Intel
- Ian Elliott, LunarG
- Courtney Goeltzenleuchter, LunarG
- Jesse Hall, Google
- James Jones, NVIDIA
- Antoine Labour, Google
- Jon Leech, Khronos
- David Mao, AMD
- Norbert Nopper, Freescale
- Alon Or-bach, Samsung
- Daniel Rakos, AMD
- Graham Sellers, AMD
- Ray Smith, ARM
- Jeff Vigil, Qualcomm
- Chia-I Wu, LunarG

Description
The VK_KHR_android_surface extension is an instance extension. It provides a mechanism to create a VkSurfaceKHR object (defined by the VK_KHR_surface extension) that refers to an ANativeWindow, Android's native surface type. The ANativeWindow represents the producer endpoint of any buffer queue, regardless of consumer endpoint. Common consumer endpoints for ANativeWindows are the system window compositor, video encoders, and application-specific compositors importing the images through a SurfaceTexture.

New Base Types
- ANativeWindow

New Commands
- vkCreateAndroidSurfaceKHR
New Structures

- VkAndroidSurfaceCreateInfoKHR

New Bitmasks

- VkAndroidSurfaceCreateFlagsKHR

New Enum Constants

- VK_KHR_ANDROID_SURFACE_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_ANDROID_SURFACE_SPEC_VERSION
- Extending VkStructureType:
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ANDROID_SURFACE_CREATE_INFO_KHR

Issues

1) Does Android need a way to query for compatibility between a particular physical device (and queue family?) and a specific Android display?

RESOLVED: No. Currently on Android, any physical device is expected to be able to present to the system compositor, and all queue families must support the necessary image layout transitions and synchronization operations.

Version History

- Revision 1, 2015-09-23 (Jesse Hall)
  - Initial draft.
- Revision 2, 2015-10-26 (Ian Elliott)
  - Renamed from VK_EXT_KHR_android_surface to VK_KHR_android_surface.
- Revision 3, 2015-11-03 (Daniel Rakos)
  - Added allocation callbacks to surface creation function.
- Revision 4, 2015-11-10 (Jesse Hall)
  - Removed VK_ERROR_INVALID_ANDROID_WINDOW_KHR.
- Revision 5, 2015-11-28 (Daniel Rakos)
  - Updated the surface create function to take a pCreateInfo structure.
- Revision 6, 2016-01-14 (James Jones)
  - Moved VK_ERROR_NATIVE_WINDOW_IN_USE_KHR from the VK_KHR_android_surface to the VK_KHR_surface extension.

VK_KHR_bind_memory2
This extension provides versions of `vkBindBufferMemory` and `vkBindImageMemory` that allow multiple bindings to be performed at once, and are extensible.

This extension also introduces `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_ALIAS_BIT_KHR`, which allows “identical” images that alias the same memory to interpret the contents consistently, even across image layout changes.

**Promotion to Vulkan 1.1**

All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.1, with the KHR suffix omitted. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.
New Commands

- vkBindBufferMemory2KHR
- vkBindImageMemory2KHR

New Structures

- VkBindBufferMemoryInfoKHR
- VkBindImageMemoryInfoKHR

New Enum Constants

- VK_KHR_BIND_MEMORY_2_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_BIND_MEMORY_2_SPEC_VERSION
- Extending VkImageCreateFlagBits:
  ◦ VK_IMAGE_CREATE_ALIAS_BIT_KHR
- Extending VkStructureType:
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BIND_BUFFER_MEMORY_INFO_KHR
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BIND_IMAGE_MEMORY_INFO_KHR

Version History

- Revision 1, 2017-05-19 (Tobias Hector)
  ◦ Pulled bind memory functions into their own extension

VK_KHR_buffer_device_address

Name String

VK_KHR_buffer_device_address

Extension Type

Device extension

Registered Extension Number

258

Revision

1

Extension and Version Dependencies

- Requires Vulkan 1.0
- Requires VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2
Description

This extension allows the application to query a 64-bit buffer device address value for a buffer, which can be used to access the buffer memory via the `PhysicalStorageBuffer` storage class in the `GL_EXT_buffer_reference` GLSL extension and `SPV_KHR_physical_storage_buffer` SPIR-V extension.

Another way to describe this extension is that it adds “pointers to buffer memory in shaders”. By calling `vkGetBufferDeviceAddress` with a `VkBuffer`, it will return a `VkDeviceAddress` value which represents the address of the start of the buffer.

`vkGetBufferOpaqueCaptureAddress` and `vkGetDeviceMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddress` allow opaque addresses for buffers and memory objects to be queried for the current process. A trace capture and replay tool can then supply these addresses to be used at replay time to match the addresses used when the trace was captured. To enable tools to insert these queries, new memory allocation flags must be specified for memory objects that will be bound to buffers accessed via the `PhysicalStorageBuffer` storage class. Note that this mechanism is intended only to support capture/replay tools, and is not recommended for use in other applications.
There are various use cases this extension is designed for. It is required for ray tracing, useful for DX12 portability, and by allowing buffer addresses to be stored in memory it enables more complex data structures to be created.

This extension can also be used to hardcode a dedicated debug channel into all shaders by querying a pointer at startup and pushing that into shaders as a run-time constant (e.g. specialization constant) that avoids impacting other descriptor limits.

There are examples of usage in the GL_EXT_buffer_reference spec for how to use this in a high-level shading language such as GLSL. The GL_EXT_buffer_reference2 and GL_EXT_buffer_reference_uvec2 extensions were also added to help cover a few additional edge cases.

**Promotion to Vulkan 1.2**

All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.2, with the KHR suffix omitted. However, if Vulkan 1.2 is supported and this extension is not, the bufferDeviceAddress capability is optional. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

**New Commands**

- vkGetBufferDeviceAddressKHR
- vkGetBufferOpaqueCaptureAddressKHR
- vkGetDeviceMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddressKHR

**New Structures**

- VkBufferDeviceAddressInfoKHR
- VkDeviceMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddressInfoKHR
- Extending VkBufferCreateInfo:
  - VkBufferOpaqueCaptureAddressCreateInfoKHR
- Extending VkMemoryAllocateInfo:
  - VkMemoryOpaqueCaptureAddressAllocateInfoKHR
- Extending VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2, VkDeviceCreateInfo:
  - VkPhysicalDeviceBufferDeviceAddressFeaturesKHR

**New Enum Constants**

- VK_KHR_BUFFER_DEVICE_ADDRESS_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_BUFFER_DEVICE_ADDRESS_SPEC_VERSION
- Extending VkBufferCreateFlagBits:
  - VK_BUFFER_CREATE_DEVICE_ADDRESS_CAPTURE_REPLAY_BIT_KHR
- Extending VkBufferUsageFlagBits:
• `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_SHADER_DEVICE_ADDRESS_BIT_KHR`

- **Extending `VkMemoryAllocateFlagBits`:**
  - `VK_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_DEVICE_ADDRESS_BIT_KHR`
  - `VK_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_DEVICE_ADDRESS_CAPTURE_REPLAY_BIT_KHR`

- **Extending `VkResult`:**
  - `VK_ERROR_INVALID_OPAQUE_CAPTURE_ADDRESS_KHR`

- **Extending `VkStructureType`:**
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BUFFER_DEVICE_ADDRESS_INFO_KHR`
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BUFFER_OPAQUE_CAPTURE_ADDRESS_CREATE_INFO_KHR`
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEVICE_MEMORY_OPAQUE_CAPTURE_ADDRESS_INFO_KHR`
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_OPAQUE_CAPTURE_ADDRESS_ALLOCATE_INFO_KHR`
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_BUFFER_DEVICE_ADDRESS_FEATURES_KHR`

### New SPIR-V Capabilities

- `PhysicalStorageBufferAddresses`

### Version History

- Revision 1, 2019-06-24 (Jan-Harald Fredriksen)
  - Internal revisions based on VK_EXT_buffer_device_address

### `VK_KHR_copy_commands2`

#### Name String

`VK_KHR_copy_commands2`

#### Extension Type

- Device extension

#### Registered Extension Number

338

#### Revision

1

#### Extension and Version Dependencies

- Requires Vulkan 1.0

#### Contact

- Jeff Leger [jackohound](https://github.com/jackohound)
Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
2020-07-06

Interactions and External Dependencies
- None

Contributors
- Jeff Leger, Qualcomm
- Tobias Hector, AMD
- Jan-Harald Fredriksen, ARM
- Tom Olson, ARM

Description
This extension provides extensible versions of the Vulkan buffer and image copy commands. The new commands are functionally identical to the core commands, except that their copy parameters are specified using extensible structures that can be used to pass extension-specific information.

The following extensible copy commands are introduced with this extension: 
\texttt{vkCmdCopyBuffer2KHR}, \texttt{vkCmdCopyImage2KHR}, \texttt{vkCmdCopyBufferToImage2KHR}, \texttt{vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer2KHR}, \texttt{vkCmdBlitImage2KHR}, and \texttt{vkCmdResolveImage2KHR}. Each command contains an \texttt{*Info2KHR} structure parameter that includes \texttt{sType/pNext} members. Lower level structures that describe each region to be copied are also extended with \texttt{sType/pNext} members.

New Commands
- \texttt{vkCmdBlitImage2KHR}
- \texttt{vkCmdCopyBuffer2KHR}
- \texttt{vkCmdCopyBufferToImage2KHR}
- \texttt{vkCmdCopyImage2KHR}
- \texttt{vkCmdCopyImageToBuffer2KHR}
- \texttt{vkCmdResolveImage2KHR}

New Structures
- \texttt{VkBlitImageInfo2KHR}
- \texttt{VkBufferCopy2KHR}
- \texttt{VkBufferImageCopy2KHR}
- \texttt{VkCopyBufferInfo2KHR}
- \texttt{VkCopyBufferToImageInfo2KHR}
- \texttt{VkCopyImageInfo2KHR}
- VkCopyImageToBufferInfo2KHR
- VkImageBlit2KHR
- VkImageCopy2KHR
- VkImageResolve2KHR
- VkResolveImageInfo2KHR

**New Enum Constants**

- VK_KHR_COPY_COMMANDS_2_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_COPY_COMMANDS_2_SPEC_VERSION

**Extending VkStructureType:**

- VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BLIT_IMAGE_INFO_2_KHR
- VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BUFFER_COPY_2_KHR
- VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BUFFER_IMAGE_COPY_2_KHR
- VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COPY_BUFFER_INFO_2_KHR
- VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COPY_BUFFER_TO_IMAGE_INFO_2_KHR
- VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COPY_IMAGE_INFO_2_KHR
- VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COPY_IMAGE_TO_BUFFER_INFO_2_KHR
- VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_BLIT_2_KHR
- VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_COPY_2_KHR
- VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_RESOLVE_2_KHR
- VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RESOLVE_IMAGE_INFO_2_KHR

**Version History**

- Revision 1, 2020-07-06 (Jeff Leger)
  - Internal revisions

**VK_KHR_create_renderpass2**

**Name String**

VK_KHR_create_renderpass2

**Extension Type**

Device extension

**Registered Extension Number**

110

**Revision**

1
Extension and Version Dependencies

- Requires Vulkan 1.0
- Requires VK_KHR_multiview
- Requires VK_KHR_maintenance2

Deprecation state

- Promoted to Vulkan 1.2

Contact

- Tobias Hector @tobias

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date

2018-02-07

Interactions and External Dependencies

- Promoted to Vulkan 1.2 Core

Contributors

- Tobias Hector
- Jeff Bolz

Description

This extension provides a new entry point to create render passes in a way that can be easily extended by other extensions through the substructures of render pass creation. The Vulkan 1.0 render pass creation sub-structures do not include sType/pNext members. Additionally, the renderpass begin/next/end commands have been augmented with new extensible structures for passing additional subpass information.

The VkRenderPassMultiviewCreateInfo and VkInputAttachmentAspectReference structures that extended the original VkRenderPassCreateInfo are not accepted into the new creation functions, and instead their parameters are folded into this extension as follows:

- Elements of VkRenderPassMultiviewCreateInfo::pViewMasks are now specified in VkSubpassDescription2KHR::viewMask.
- Elements of VkRenderPassMultiviewCreateInfo::pViewOffsets are now specified in VkSubpassDependency2KHR::viewOffset.
- VkRenderPassMultiviewCreateInfo::correlationMaskCount and VkRenderPassMultiviewCreateInfo::pCorrelationMasks are directly specified in VkRenderPassCreateInfo2KHR.
- VkInputAttachmentAspectReference::aspectMask is now specified in the relevant input attachment description in VkAttachmentDescription2KHR::aspectMask

The details of these mappings are explained fully in the new structures.
Promotion to Vulkan 1.2

All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.2, with the KHR suffix omitted. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

New Commands

- `vkCmdBeginRenderPass2KHR`
- `vkCmdEndRenderPass2KHR`
- `vkCmdNextSubpass2KHR`
- `vkCreateRenderPass2KHR`

New Structures

- `VkAttachmentDescription2KHR`
- `VkAttachmentReference2KHR`
- `VkRenderPassCreateInfo2KHR`
- `VkSubpassBeginInfoKHR`
- `VkSubpassDependency2KHR`
- `VkSubpassDescription2KHR`
- `VkSubpassEndInfoKHR`

New Enum Constants

- `VK_KHR_CREATE_RENDERPASS_2_EXTENSION_NAME`
- `VK_KHR_CREATE_RENDERPASS_2_SPEC_VERSION`

Extending `VkStructureType`:

- `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ATTACHMENT_DESCRIPTION_2_KHR`
- `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ATTACHMENT_REFERENCE_2_KHR`
- `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RENDER_PASS_CREATE_INFO_2_KHR`
- `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SUBPASS_BEGIN_INFO_KHR`
- `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SUBPASS_DEPENDENCY_2_KHR`
- `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SUBPASS_DESCRIPTION_2_KHR`
- `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SUBPASS_END_INFO_KHR`

Version History

- Revision 1, 2018-02-07 (Tobias Hector)
  - Internal revisions
VK_KHR_dedicated_allocation

Name String
VK_KHR_dedicated_allocation

Extension Type
Device extension

Registered Extension Number
128

Revision
3

Extension and Version Dependencies
• Requires Vulkan 1.0
• Requires VK_KHR_get_memory_requirements2

Deprecation state
• Promoted to Vulkan 1.1

Contact
• James Jones

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
2017-09-05

IP Status
No known IP claims.

Interactions and External Dependencies
• Promoted to Vulkan 1.1 Core

Contributors
• Jeff Bolz, NVIDIA
• Jason Ekstrand, Intel

Description
This extension enables resources to be bound to a dedicated allocation, rather than suballocated. For any particular resource, applications can query whether a dedicated allocation is recommended, in which case using a dedicated allocation may improve the performance of access to that resource. Normal device memory allocations must support multiple resources per allocation, memory aliasing and sparse binding, which could interfere with some optimizations. Applications should query the implementation for when a dedicated allocation may be beneficial.
by adding a VkMemoryDedicatedRequirementsKHR structure to the pNext chain of the VkMemoryRequirements2 structure passed as the pMemoryRequirements parameter of a call to vkGetBufferMemoryRequirements2 or vkGetImageMemoryRequirements2. Certain external handle types and external images or buffers may also depend on dedicated allocations on implementations that associate image or buffer metadata with OS-level memory objects.

This extension adds a two small structures to memory requirements querying and memory allocation: a new structure that flags whether an image buffer should have a dedicated allocation, and a structure indicating the image or buffer that an allocation will be bound to.

**Promotion to Vulkan 1.1**

All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.1, with the KHR suffix omitted. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

**New Structures**

- Extending VkMemoryAllocateInfo:
  - VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfoKHR
- Extending VkMemoryRequirements2:
  - VkMemoryDedicatedRequirementsKHR

**New Enum Constants**

- VK_KHR_DEDICATED_ALLOCATION_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_DEDICATED_ALLOCATION_SPEC_VERSION
- Extending VkStructureType:
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_DEDICATED_ALLOCATE_INFO_KHR
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_DEDICATED_REQUIREMENTS_KHR

**Examples**

```c
// Create an image with a dedicated allocation based on the
// implementation's preference

VkImageCreateInfo imageCreateInfo =
{
    // Image creation parameters
};

VkImage image;
VkResult result = vkCreateImage(
    device,
    &imageCreateInfo,
    NULL,          // pAllocator
    &image);```
VkMemoryDedicatedRequirementsKHR dedicatedRequirements =
{
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_DEDICATED_REQUIREMENTS_KHR,
    NULL,                    // pNext
};

VkMemoryRequirements2 memoryRequirements =
{
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_REQUIREMENTS_2,
    &dedicatedRequirements,   // pNext
};

const VkImageMemoryRequirementsInfo2 imageRequirementsInfo =
{
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_MEMORY_REQUIREMENTS_INFO_2,
    NULL,                    // pNext
    image
};

vkGetImageMemoryRequirements2(
    device,
    &imageRequirementsInfo,
    &memoryRequirements);

if (dedicatedRequirements.prefersDedicatedAllocation) {
    // Allocate memory with VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfoKHR::image
    // pointing to the image we are allocating the memory for

    VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfoKHR dedicatedInfo =
    {
        VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_DEDICATED_ALLOCATE_INFO_KHR, // sType
        NULL,                    // pNext
        image,                   // image
        VK_NULL_HANDLE,          // buffer
    };

    VkMemoryAllocateInfo memoryAllocateInfo =
    {
        VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_INFO,               // sType
        &dedicatedInfo,                                       // pNext
        memoryRequirements.size,                             // allocationSize
        FindMemoryTypeIndex(memoryRequirements.memoryTypeBits), // memoryTypeIndex
    };

    VkDeviceMemory memory;
    vkAllocateMemory(
        device,
        &memoryAllocateInfo,
        NULL,                   // pAllocator
        &memory);
// Bind the image to the memory

vkBindImageMemory(
    device,
    image,
    memory,
    0);

} else {
    // Take the normal memory sub-allocation path

Version History

• Revision 1, 2017-02-27 (James Jones)
  ◦ Copy content from VK_NV_dedicated_allocation
  ◦ Add some references to external object interactions to the overview.

• Revision 2, 2017-03-27 (Jason Ekstrand)
  ◦ Rework the extension to be query-based

• Revision 3, 2017-07-31 (Jason Ekstrand)
  ◦ Clarify that memory objects allocated with VkMemoryDedicatedAllocateInfoKHR can only
    have the specified resource bound and no others.

VK_KHR_deferred_host_operations

Name String
  VK_KHR_deferred_host_operations

Extension Type
  Device extension

Registered Extension Number
  269

Revision
  4

Extension and Version Dependencies
  • Requires Vulkan 1.0

Contact
  • Josh Barczak [jbarczak](https://jbarczak)

Other Extension Metadata
Description

The `VK_KHR_deferred_host_operations` extension defines the infrastructure and usage patterns for deferrable commands, but does not specify any commands as deferrable. This is left to additional dependent extensions. Commands must not be deferred unless the deferral is specifically allowed by another extension which depends on `VK_KHR_deferred_host_operations`.

New Object Types

- `VkDeferredOperationKHR`

New Commands

- `vkCreateDeferredOperationKHR`
- `vkDeferredOperationJoinKHR`
- `vkDestroyDeferredOperationKHR`
- `vkGetDeferredOperationMaxConcurrencyKHR`
- `vkGetDeferredOperationResultKHR`

New Enum Constants

- `VK_KHR_DEFERRED_HOST_OPERATIONS_EXTENSION_NAME`
- `VK_KHR_DEFERRED_HOST_OPERATIONS_SPEC_VERSION`

Extending `VkObjectType`:
- VK_OBJECT_TYPE_DEFERRED_OPERATION_KHR

- Extending VkResult:
  - VK_OPERATION_DEFERRED_KHR
  - VK_OPERATION_NOT_DEFERRED_KHR
  - VK_THREAD_DONE_KHR
  - VK_THREAD_IDLE_KHR

**Code Examples**

The following examples will illustrate the concept of deferrable operations using a hypothetical example. The command `vkDoSomethingExpensiveEXT` denotes a deferrable command. The structure `VkExpensiveOperationArgsEXT` represents the arguments which it would normally accept.

The following example illustrates how a vulkan application might request deferral of an expensive operation:

```c
// create a deferred operation
VkDeferredOperationKHR hOp;
VkResult result = vkCreateDeferredOperationKHR(device, pCallbacks, &hOp);
assert(result == VK_SUCCESS);

result = vkDoSomethingExpensive(device, hOp, ...);
assert(result == VK_OPERATION_DEFERRED_KHR);

// operation was deferred. Execute it asynchronously
std::async::launch(
    [ hOp ] ( )
    {
      vkDeferredOperationJoinKHR(device, hOp);

      result = vkGetDeferredOperationResultKHR(device, hOp);

      // deferred operation is now complete. 'result' indicates success or failure

      vkDestroyDeferredOperationKHR(device, hOp, pCallbacks);
    }
);
```

The following example illustrates extracting concurrency from a single deferred operation:
// create a deferred operation
VkDeferredOperationKHR hOp;
VkResult result = vkCreateDeferredOperationKHR(device, pCallbacks, &hOp);
assert(result == VK_SUCCESS);

result = vkDoSomethingExpensive(device, hOp, ...);
assert(result == VK_OPERATION_DEFERRED_KHR);

// Query the maximum amount of concurrency and clamp to the desired maximum
uint32_t numLaunches = std::min(vkGetDeferredOperationMaxConcurrencyKHR(device, hOp), maxThreads);

std::vector<std::future<void>> joins;
for (uint32_t i = 0; i < numLaunches; i++) {
    joins.emplace_back(std::async::launch(
        [hOp] () {
            vkDeferredOperationJoinKHR(device, hOp);
            // in a job system, a return of VK_THREAD_IDLE_KHR should queue another
            // job, but it is not functionally required
        }
    ));
}

for (auto &f : joins) {
    f.get();
}

result = vkGetDeferredOperationResultKHR(device, hOp);
// deferred operation is now complete. 'result' indicates success or failure
vkDestroyDeferredOperationKHR(device, hOp, pCallbacks);

The following example shows a subroutine which guarantees completion of a deferred operation, in the presence of multiple worker threads, and returns the result of the operation.
VkResult FinishDeferredOperation(VkDeferredOperationKHR hOp)
{
    // Attempt to join the operation until the implementation indicates that we should stop

    VkResult result = vkDeferredOperationJoinKHR(device, hOp);
    while( result == VK_THREAD_IDLE_KHR )
    {
        std::this_thread::yield();
        result = vkDeferredOperationJoinKHR(device, hOp);
    }

    switch( result )
    {
    case VK_SUCCESS:
    {
        // deferred operation has finished. Query its result
        result = vkGetDeferredOperationResultKHR(device, hOp);
    }
    break;

    case VK_THREAD_DONE_KHR:
    {
        // deferred operation is being wrapped up by another thread
        // wait for that thread to finish
        do
        {
            std::this_thread::yield();
            result = vkGetDeferredOperationResultKHR(device, hOp);
        } while( result == VK_NOT_READY );
    }
    break;

    default:
    {
        assert(false); // other conditions are illegal.
        break;
    }
    }

    return result;
}

**Issues**

1. Should this extension have a VkPhysicalDevice*FeaturesKHR structure?

**RESOLVED:** No. This extension does not add any functionality on its own and requires a dependent extension to actually enable functionality and thus there is no value in adding a feature structure. If necessary, any dependent extension could add a feature boolean if it wanted to indicate that it is adding optional deferral support.
Version History

- Revision 1, 2019-12-05 (Josh Barczak, Daniel Koch)
  - Initial draft.
- Revision 2, 2020-03-06 (Daniel Koch, Tobias Hector)
  - Add missing VK_OBJECT_TYPE_DEFERRED_OPERATION_KHR enum
  - fix sample code
  - Clarified deferred operation parameter lifetimes (#2018,!3647)
- Revision 3, 2020-05-15 (Josh Barczak)
  - Clarify behavior of vkGetDeferredOperationMaxConcurrencyKHR, allowing it to return 0 if the operation is complete (#2036,!3850)
- Revision 4, 2020-11-12 (Tobias Hector, Daniel Koch)
  - Remove VkDeferredOperationInfoKHR and change return value semantics when deferred host operations are in use (#2067,3813)
  - clarify return value of vkGetDeferredOperationResultKHR (#2339,!4110)

VK_KHR_depth_stencil_resolve

Name String

VK_KHR_depth_stencil_resolve

Extension Type

Device extension

Registered Extension Number

200

Revision

1

Extension and Version Dependencies

- Requires Vulkan 1.0
- Requires VK_KHR_create_renderpass2

Deprecation state

- Promoted to Vulkan 1.2

Contact

- Jan-Harald Fredriksen Janharald

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date

2018-04-09
Interactions and External Dependencies

- Promoted to Vulkan 1.2 Core

Contributors

- Jan-Harald Fredriksen, Arm
- Andrew Garrard, Samsung Electronics
- Soowan Park, Samsung Electronics
- Jeff Bolz, NVIDIA
- Daniel Rakos, AMD

Description

This extension adds support for automatically resolving multisampled depth/stencil attachments in a subpass in a similar manner as for color attachments.

Multisampled color attachments can be resolved at the end of a subpass by specifying \texttt{pResolveAttachments} entries corresponding to the \texttt{pColorAttachments} array entries. This does not allow for a way to map the resolve attachments to the depth/stencil attachment. The \texttt{vkCmdResolveImage} command does not allow for depth/stencil images. While there are other ways to resolve the depth/stencil attachment, they can give sub-optimal performance. Extending the \texttt{VkSubpassDescription2} in this extension allows an application to add a \texttt{pDepthStencilResolveAttachment}, that is similar to the color \texttt{pResolveAttachments}, that the \texttt{pDepthStencilAttachment} can be resolved into.

Depth and stencil samples are resolved to a single value based on the resolve mode. The set of possible resolve modes is defined in the \texttt{VkResolveModeFlagBits} enum. The \texttt{VK_RESOLVE_MODE_SAMPLE_ZERO_BIT} mode is the only mode that is required of all implementations (that support the extension or support Vulkan 1.2 or higher). Some implementations may also support averaging (the same as color sample resolve) or taking the minimum or maximum sample, which may be more suitable for depth/stencil resolve.

Promotion to Vulkan 1.2

All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.2, with the KHR suffix omitted. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

New Structures

- Extending \texttt{VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2}:
  - \texttt{VkPhysicalDeviceDepthStencilResolvePropertiesKHR}
- Extending \texttt{VkSubpassDescription2}:
  - \texttt{VkSubpassDescriptionDepthStencilResolveKHR}

New Enums

- \texttt{VkResolveModeFlagBitsKHR}
New Bitmasks

- VkResolveModeFlagsKHR

New Enum Constants

- VK_KHR_DEPTH_STENCIL_RESOLVE_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_DEPTH_STENCIL_RESOLVE_SPEC_VERSION

- Extending VkResolveModeFlagBits:
  - VK_RESOLVE_MODE_AVERAGE_BIT_KHR
  - VK_RESOLVE_MODE_MAX_BIT_KHR
  - VK_RESOLVE_MODE_MIN_BIT_KHR
  - VK_RESOLVE_MODE_NONE_KHR
  - VK_RESOLVE_MODE_SAMPLE_ZERO_BIT_KHR

- Extending VkStructureType:
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_DEPTH_STENCIL_RESOLVE_PROPERTIES_KHR
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SUBPASS_DESCRIPTION_DEPTH_STENCIL_RESOLVE_KHR

Version History

- Revision 1, 2018-04-09 (Jan-Harald Fredriksen)
  - Initial revision

VK_KHR_descriptor_update_template

Name String

  VK_KHR_descriptor_update_template

Extension Type

  Device extension

Registered Extension Number

  86

Revision

  1

Extension and Version Dependencies

- Requires Vulkan 1.0

Deprecation state

- Promoted to Vulkan 1.1
Contact

- Markus Tavenrath mtavenrath

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
2017-09-05

IP Status
No known IP claims.

Interactions and External Dependencies
- Interacts with VK_KHR_push_descriptor
- Promoted to Vulkan 1.1 Core

Contributors
- Jeff Bolz, NVIDIA
- Michael Worcester, Imagination Technologies

Description
Applications may wish to update a fixed set of descriptors in a large number of descriptor sets very frequently, i.e. during initialization phase or if it is required to rebuild descriptor sets for each frame. For those cases it is also not unlikely that all information required to update a single descriptor set is stored in a single struct. This extension provides a way to update a fixed set of descriptors in a single VkDescriptorSet with a pointer to a user defined data structure describing the new descriptors.

Promotion to Vulkan 1.1

vkCmdPushDescriptorSetWithTemplateKHR is included as an interaction with VK_KHR_push_descriptor. If Vulkan 1.1 and VK_KHR_push_descriptor are supported, this is included by VK_KHR_push_descriptor.

The base functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.1, with the KHR suffix omitted. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

New Object Types
- VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateKHR

New Commands
- vkCreateDescriptorUpdateTemplateKHR
- vkDestroyDescriptorUpdateTemplateKHR
- vkUpdateDescriptorSetWithTemplateKHR
If `VK_KHR_push_descriptor` is supported:

- `vkCmdPushDescriptorSetWithTemplateKHR`

**New Structures**

- `VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateCreateInfoKHR`
- `VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateEntryKHR`

**New Enums**

- `VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateTypeKHR`

**New Bitmasks**

- `VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateCreateFlagsKHR`

**New Enum Constants**

- `VK_KHR_DESCRIPTOR_UPDATE_TEMPLATE_EXTENSION_NAME`
- `VK_KHR_DESCRIPTOR_UPDATE_TEMPLATE_SPEC_VERSION`

Extending `VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateType`:

- `VK_DESCRIPTOR_UPDATE_TEMPLATE_TYPE_DESCRIPTOR_SET_KHR`

Extending `VkObjectType`:

- `VK_OBJECT_TYPE_DESCRIPTOR_UPDATE_TEMPLATE_KHR`

Extending `VkStructureType`:

- `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DESCRIPTOR_UPDATE_TEMPLATE_CREATE_INFO_KHR`

If `VK_KHR_push_descriptor` is supported:

- Extending `VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateType`:

  - `VK_DESCRIPTOR_UPDATE_TEMPLATE_TYPE_PUSH_DESCRIPTORS_KHR`

**Version History**

- Revision 1, 2016-01-11 (Markus Tavenrath)
  - Initial draft

**VK_KHR_device_group**

**Name String**

- `VK_KHR_device_group`

**Extension Type**

- Device extension
Description

This extension provides functionality to use a logical device that consists of multiple physical devices, as created with the `VK_KHR_device_group_creation` extension. A device group can allocate memory across the subdevices, bind memory from one subdevice to a resource on another subdevice, record command buffers where some work executes on an arbitrary subset of the subdevices, and potentially present a swapchain image from one or more subdevices.

Promotion to Vulkan 1.1

The following enums, types and commands are included as interactions with `VK_KHR_swapchain`:

- `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEVICE_GROUP_PRESENT_CAPABILITIES_KHR`
- `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_SWAPCHAIN_CREATE_INFO_KHR`
- `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BIND_IMAGE_MEMORY_SWAPCHAIN_INFO_KHR`
If Vulkan 1.1 and VK_KHR_swapchain are supported, these are included by VK_KHR_swapchain.

The base functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.1, with the KHR suffix omitted. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

**New Commands**

- `vkCmdDispatchBaseKHR`
- `vkCmdSetDeviceMaskKHR`
- `vkGetDeviceGroupPeerMemoryFeaturesKHR`

If VK_KHR_surface is supported:

- `vkGetDeviceGroupPresentCapabilitiesKHR`
- `vkGetDeviceGroupSurfacePresentModesKHR`
- `vkGetPhysicalDevicePresentRectanglesKHR`

If VK_KHR_swapchain is supported:

- `vkAcquireNextImage2KHR`

**New Structures**

- Extending `VkBindSparseInfo`:
  - `VkDeviceGroupBindSparseInfoKHR`
- Extending `VkCommandBufferBeginInfo`: 
• VkDeviceGroupCommandBufferBeginInfoKHR

• Extending VkMemoryAllocateInfo:
  • VkMemoryAllocateFlagsInfoKHR

• Extending VkRenderPassBeginInfo:
  • VkDeviceGroupRenderPassBeginInfoKHR

• Extending VkSubmitInfo:
  • VkDeviceGroupSubmitInfoKHR

If VK_KHR_bind_memory2 is supported:

• Extending VkBindBufferMemoryInfo:
  • VkBindBufferMemoryDeviceGroupInfoKHR

• Extending VkBindImageMemoryInfo:
  • VkBindImageMemoryDeviceGroupInfoKHR

If VK_KHR_surface is supported:

• VkDeviceGroupPresentCapabilitiesKHR

If VK_KHR_swapchain is supported:

• VkAcquireNextImageInfoKHR

• Extending VkBindImageMemoryInfo:
  • VkBindImageMemorySwapchainInfoKHR

• Extending VkImageCreateInfo:
  • VkImageSwapchainCreateInfoKHR

• Extending VkPresentInfoKHR:
  • VkDeviceGroupPresentInfoKHR

• Extending VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR:
  • VkDeviceGroupSwapchainCreateInfoKHR

New Enums

• VkMemoryAllocateFlagBitsKHR
• VkPeerMemoryFeatureFlagBitsKHR

If VK_KHR_surface is supported:

• VkDeviceGroupPresentModeFlagBitsKHR

New Bitmasks

• VkMemoryAllocateFlagsKHR
• VkPeerMemoryFeatureFlagsKHR

If VK_KHR_surface is supported:

• VkDeviceGroupPresentModeFlagsKHR

New Enum Constants

• VK_KHR_DEVICE_GROUP_EXTENSION_NAME
• VK_KHR_DEVICE_GROUP_SPEC_VERSION

Extending VkDependencyFlagBits:

◦ VK_DEPENDENCY_DEVICE_GROUP_BIT_KHR

Extending VkMemoryAllocateFlagBits:

◦ VK_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_DEVICE_MASK_BIT_KHR

Extending VkPeerMemoryFeatureFlagBits:

◦ VK_PEER_MEMORY_FEATURE_COPY_DST_BIT_KHR
◦ VK_PEER_MEMORY_FEATURE_COPY_SRC_BIT_KHR
◦ VK_PEER_MEMORY_FEATURE_GENERIC_DST_BIT_KHR
◦ VK_PEER_MEMORY_FEATURE_GENERIC_SRC_BIT_KHR

Extending VkPipelineCreateFlagBits:

◦ VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_DISPATCH_BASE_KHR
◦ VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_VIEW_INDEX_FROM_DEVICE_INDEX_BIT_KHR

Extending VkStructureType:

◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPEDEVICEGROUPBINDSPARSEINFOKHR
◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPEDEVICEGROUPCOMMANDBUFFERBEGININFOKHR
◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPEDEVICEGROUPRENDERPASSBEGININFOKHR
◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPEDEVICEGROUPSUBMITINFOKHR
◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPEMEMORYALLOCATEFLAGSINFOKHR

If VK_KHR_bind_memory2 is supported:

• Extending VkImageCreateFlagBits:

◦ VK_IMAGE_CREATE_SPLIT_INSTANCE_BIND_REGIONS_BIT_KHR

• Extending VkStructureType:

◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPEBINDBUFFERMEMORYDEVICEGROUPINFOKHR
◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPEBINDIMAGEMEMORYDEVICEGROUPINFOKHR

If VK_KHR_surface is supported:

• Extending VkStructureType:
If **VK_KHR_swapchain** is supported:

- **Extending** `VkStructureType`:
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ACQUIRE_NEXT_IMAGE_INFO_KHR`
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BIND_IMAGE_MEMORY_SWAPCHAIN_INFO_KHR`
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEVICE_GROUP_PRESENT_INFO_KHR`
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEVICE_GROUP_SWAPCHAIN_CREATE_INFO_KHR`
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_SWAPCHAIN_CREATE_INFO_KHR`

- **Extending** `VkSwapchainCreateFlagBitsKHR`:
  - `VK_SWAPCHAIN_CREATE_SPLIT_INSTANCE_BIND_REGIONS_BIT_KHR`

**New Built-in Variables**

- `DeviceIndex`

**New SPIR-V Capabilities**

- `DeviceGroup`

**Version History**

- **Revision 1**, 2016-10-19 (Jeff Bolz)
  - Internal revisions

- **Revision 2**, 2017-05-19 (Tobias Hector)
  - Removed extended memory bind functions to VK_KHR_bind_memory2, added dependency on that extension, and device-group-specific structs for those functions.

- **Revision 3**, 2017-10-06 (Ian Elliott)
  - Corrected Vulkan 1.1 interactions with the WSI extensions. All Vulkan 1.1 WSI interactions are with the VK_KHR_swapchain extension.

- **Revision 4**, 2017-10-10 (Jeff Bolz)
  - Rename “SFR” bits and structure members to use the phrase “split instance bind regions”.

**VK_KHR_device_group_creation**

**Name String**

- `VK_KHR_device_group_creation`

**Extension Type**

- Instance extension
Description

This extension provides instance-level commands to enumerate groups of physical devices, and to create a logical device from a subset of one of those groups. Such a logical device can then be used with new features in the VK_KHR_device_group extension.

Promotion to Vulkan 1.1

All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.1, with the KHR suffix omitted. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

New Commands

- vkEnumeratePhysicalDeviceGroupsKHR

New Structures

- VkPhysicalDeviceGroupPropertiesKHR
- Extending VkDeviceCreateInfo:
New Enum Constants

- VK_KHR_DEVICE_GROUP_CREATION_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_DEVICE_GROUP_CREATION_SPEC_VERSION
- VK_MAX_DEVICE_GROUP_SIZE_KHR

Extending VkMemoryHeapFlagBits:
- VK_MEMORY_HEAP_MULTI_INSTANCE_BIT_KHR

Extending VkStructureType:
- VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEVICE_GROUPDEVICE_CREATE_INFO_KHR
- VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICALDEVICE_GROUP_PROPERTIES_KHR

Examples

```c
VkDeviceCreateInfo devCreateInfo = { VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEVICE_CREATE_INFO }; // (not shown) fill out devCreateInfo as usual.
uint32_t deviceGroupCount = 0;
VkPhysicalDeviceGroupPropertiesKHR *props = NULL;

// Query the number of device groups
vkEnumeratePhysicalDeviceGroupsKHR(g_vkInstance, &deviceGroupCount, NULL);

// Allocate and initialize structures to query the device groups
props = (VkPhysicalDeviceGroupPropertiesKHR *)malloc(deviceGroupCount*sizeof(VkPhysicalDeviceGroupPropertiesKHR));
for (i = 0; i < deviceGroupCount; ++i) {
    props[i].sType = VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICALDEVICE_GROUP_PROPERTIES_KHR;
    props[i].pNext = NULL;
}
vkEnumeratePhysicalDeviceGroupsKHR(g_vkInstance, &deviceGroupCount, props);

// If the first device group has more than one physical device, create
// a logical device using all of the physical devices.
VkDeviceGroupDeviceCreateInfoKHR deviceGroupInfo = {
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPEDEVICE_GROUP_CREATE_INFO_KHR
};
if (props[0].physicalDeviceCount > 1) {
    deviceGroupInfo.physicalDeviceCount = props[0].physicalDeviceCount;
    deviceGroupInfo.physicalDevices = props[0].physicalDevices;
    devCreateInfo.pNext = &deviceGroupInfo;
}
vkCreateDevice(props[0].physicalDevices[0], &devCreateInfo, NULL, &g_vkDevice);
free(props);
```
Version History

- Revision 1, 2016-10-19 (Jeff Bolz)
  - Internal revisions

VK_KHR_display

Name String

VK_KHR_display

Extension Type

Instance extension

Registered Extension Number

3

Revision

23

Extension and Version Dependencies

- Requires Vulkan 1.0
- Requires VK_KHR_surface

Contact

- James Jones Cubanismo
- Norbert Nopper FslNopper

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date

2017-03-13

IP Status

No known IP claims.

Contributors

- James Jones, NVIDIA
- Norbert Nopper, Freescale
- Jeff Vigil, Qualcomm
- Daniel Rakos, AMD

Description

This extension provides the API to enumerate displays and available modes on a given device.
New Object Types

- VkDisplayKHR
- VkDisplayModeKHR

New Commands

- vkCreateDisplayModeKHR
- vkCreateDisplayPlaneSurfaceKHR
- vkGetDisplayModePropertiesKHR
- vkGetDisplayPlaneCapabilitiesKHR
- vkGetDisplayPlaneSupportedDisplaysKHR
- vkGetPhysicalDeviceDisplayPlanePropertiesKHR
- vkGetPhysicalDeviceDisplayPropertiesKHR

New Structures

- VkDisplayModeCreateInfoKHR
- VkDisplayModeParametersKHR
- VkDisplayModePropertiesKHR
- VkDisplayPlaneCapabilitiesKHR
- VkDisplayPlanePropertiesKHR
- VkDisplayPropertiesKHR
- VkDisplaySurfaceCreateInfoKHR

New Enums

- VkDisplayPlaneAlphaFlagBitsKHR

New Bitmasks

- VkDisplayModeCreateFlagsKHR
- VkDisplayPlaneAlphaFlagsKHR
- VkDisplaySurfaceCreateFlagsKHR
- VkSurfaceTransformFlagsKHR

New Enum Constants

- VK_KHR_DISPLAY_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_DISPLAY_SPEC_VERSION

Extending VkObjectType:
Extending VkStructureType:
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DISPLAY_MODE_CREATE_INFO_KHR
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DISPLAY_SURFACE_CREATE_INFO_KHR

Issues

1) Which properties of a mode should be fixed in the mode information vs. settable in some other function when setting the mode? E.g., do we need to double the size of the mode pool to include both stereo and non-stereo modes? YUV and RGB scanout even if they both take RGB input images? BGR vs. RGB input? etc.

**PROPOSED RESOLUTION**: Many modern displays support at most a handful of resolutions and timings natively. Other “modes” are expected to be supported using scaling hardware on the display engine or GPU. Other properties, such as rotation and mirroring should not require duplicating hardware modes just to express all combinations. Further, these properties may be implemented on a per-display or per-overlay granularity.

To avoid the exponential growth of modes as mutable properties are added, as was the case with EGLConfig/WGL pixel formats/GLXFBConfig, this specification should separate out hardware properties and configurable state into separate objects. Modes and overlay planes will express capabilities of the hardware, while a separate structure will allow applications to configure scaling, rotation, mirroring, color keys, LUT values, alpha masks, etc. for a given swapchain independent of the mode in use. Constraints on these settings will be established by properties of the immutable objects.

Note the resolution of this issue may affect issue 5 as well.

2) What properties of a display itself are useful?

**PROPOSED RESOLUTION**: This issue is too broad. It was meant to prompt general discussion, but resolving this issue amounts to completing this specification. All interesting properties should be included. The issue will remain as a placeholder since removing it would make it hard to parse existing discussion notes that refer to issues by number.

3) How are multiple overlay planes within a display or mode enumerated?

**PROPOSED RESOLUTION**: They are referred to by an index. Each display will report the number of overlay planes it contains.

4) Should swapchains be created relative to a mode or a display?

**PROPOSED RESOLUTION**: When using this extension, swapchains are created relative to a mode and a plane. The mode implies the display object the swapchain will present to. If the specified mode is not the display’s current mode, the new mode will be applied when the first image is presented to the swapchain, and the default operating system mode, if any, will be restored when the swapchain is destroyed.
5) Should users query generic ranges from displays and construct their own modes explicitly using those constraints rather than querying a fixed set of modes (Most monitors only have one real “mode” these days, even though many support relatively arbitrary scaling, either on the monitor side or in the GPU display engine, making “modes” something of a relic/compatibility construct).

**PROPOSED RESOLUTION:** Expose both. Display information structures will expose a set of predefined modes, as well as any attributes necessary to construct a customized mode.

6) Is it fine if we return the display and display mode handles in the structure used to query their properties?

**PROPOSED RESOLUTION:** Yes.

7) Is there a possibility that not all displays of a device work with all of the present queues of a device? If yes, how do we determine which displays work with which present queues?

**PROPOSED RESOLUTION:** No known hardware has such limitations, but determining such limitations is supported automatically using the existing `VK_KHR_surface` and `VK_KHR_swapchain` query mechanisms.

8) Should all presentation need to be done relative to an overlay plane, or can a display mode + display be used alone to target an output?

**PROPOSED RESOLUTION:** Require specifying a plane explicitly.

9) Should displays have an associated window system display, such as an HDC or Display*?

**PROPOSED RESOLUTION:** No. Displays are independent of any windowing system in use on the system. Further, neither HDC nor Display* refer to a physical display object.

10) Are displays queried from a physical GPU or from a device instance?

**PROPOSED RESOLUTION:** Developers prefer to query modes directly from the physical GPU so they can use display information as an input to their device selection algorithms prior to device creation. This avoids the need to create placeholder device instances to enumerate displays.

This preference must be weighed against the extra initialization that must be done by driver vendors prior to device instance creation to support this usage.

11) Should displays and/or modes be dispatchable objects? If functions are to take displays, overlays, or modes as their first parameter, they must be dispatchable objects as defined in Khronos bug 13529. If they are not added to the list of dispatchable objects, functions operating on them must take some higher-level object as their first parameter. There is no performance case against making them dispatchable objects, but they would be the first extension objects to be dispatchable.

**PROPOSED RESOLUTION:** Do not make displays or modes dispatchable. They will dispatch based on their associated physical device.

12) Should hardware cursor capabilities be exposed?
**PROPOSED RESOLUTION:** Defer. This could be a separate extension on top of the base WSI specs.

if they are one physical display device to an end user, but may internally be implemented as two side-by-side displays using the same display engine (and sometimes cabling) resources as two physically separate display devices.

**RESOLVED:** Tiled displays will appear as a single display object in this API.

14) Should the raw EDID data be included in the display information?

**RESOLVED:** No. A future extension could be added which reports the EDID if necessary. This may be complicated by the outcome of issue 13.

15) Should min and max scaling factor capabilities of overlays be exposed?

**RESOLVED:** Yes. This is exposed indirectly by allowing applications to query the min/max position and extent of the source and destination regions from which image contents are fetched by the display engine when using a particular mode and overlay pair.

16) Should devices be able to expose planes that can be moved between displays? If so, how?

**RESOLVED:** Yes. Applications can determine which displays a given plane supports using `vkGetDisplayPlaneSupportedDisplaysKHR`.

17) Should there be a way to destroy display modes? If so, does it support destroying “built in” modes?

**RESOLVED:** Not in this extension. A future extension could add this functionality.

18) What should the lifetime of display and built-in display mode objects be?

**RESOLVED:** The lifetime of the instance. These objects cannot be destroyed. A future extension may be added to expose a way to destroy these objects and/or support display hotplug.

19) Should persistent mode for smart panels be enabled/disabled at swapchain creation time, or on a per-present basis?

**RESOLVED:** On a per-present basis.

**Examples**

*Note*

The example code for the `VK_KHR_display` and `VK_KHR_display_swapchain` extensions was removed from the appendix after revision 1.0.43. The display enumeration example code was ported to the cube demo that is shipped with the official Khronos SDK, and is being kept up-to-date in that location (see: [https://github.com/KhronosGroup/Vulkan-Tools/blob/master/cube/cube.c](https://github.com/KhronosGroup/Vulkan-Tools/blob/master/cube/cube.c)).
Version History

• Revision 1, 2015-02-24 (James Jones)
  ◦ Initial draft

• Revision 2, 2015-03-12 (Norbert Nopper)
  ◦ Added overlay enumeration for a display.

• Revision 3, 2015-03-17 (Norbert Nopper)
  ◦ Fixed typos and namings as discussed in Bugzilla.
  ◦ Reordered and grouped functions.
  ◦ Added functions to query count of display, mode and overlay.
  ◦ Added native display handle, which may be needed on some platforms to create a native Window.

• Revision 4, 2015-03-18 (Norbert Nopper)
  ◦ Removed primary and virtualPostion members (see comment of James Jones in Bugzilla).
  ◦ Added native overlay handle to information structure.
  ◦ Replaced , with ; in struct.

• Revision 6, 2015-03-18 (Daniel Rakos)
  ◦ Added WSI extension suffix to all items.
  ◦ Made the whole API more “Vulkanish”.
  ◦ Replaced all functions with a single vkGetDisplayInfoKHR function to better match the rest of the API.
  ◦ Made the display, display mode, and overlay objects be first class objects, not subclasses of VkBaseObject as they do not support the common functions anyways.
  ◦ Renamed *Info structures to *Properties.
  ◦ Removed overlayIndex field from VkOverlayProperties as there is an implicit index already as a result of moving to a “Vulkanish” API.
  ◦ Displays are not get through device, but through physical GPU to match the rest of the Vulkan API. Also this is something ISVs explicitly requested.
  ◦ Added issue (6) and (7).

• Revision 7, 2015-03-25 (James Jones)
  ◦ Added an issues section
  ◦ Added rotation and mirroring flags

• Revision 8, 2015-03-25 (James Jones)
  ◦ Combined the duplicate issues sections introduced in last change.
  ◦ Added proposed resolutions to several issues.

• Revision 9, 2015-04-01 (Daniel Rakos)
  ◦ Rebased extension against Vulkan 0.82.0
• Revision 10, 2015-04-01 (James Jones)
  ◦ Added issues (10) and (11).
  ◦ Added more straw-man issue resolutions, and cleaned up the proposed resolution for issue (4).
  ◦ Updated the rotation and mirroring enums to have proper bitmask semantics.

• Revision 11, 2015-04-15 (James Jones)
  ◦ Added proposed resolution for issues (1) and (2).
  ◦ Added issues (12), (13), (14), and (15)
  ◦ Removed pNativeHandle field from overlay structure.
  ◦ Fixed small compilation errors in example code.

• Revision 12, 2015-07-29 (James Jones)
  ◦ Rewrote the guts of the extension against the latest WSI swapchain specifications and the latest Vulkan API.
  ◦ Address overlay planes by their index rather than an object handle and refer to them as “planes” rather than “overlays” to make it slightly clearer that even a display with no “overlays” still has at least one base “plane” that images can be displayed on.
  ◦ Updated most of the issues.
  ◦ Added an “extension type” section to the specification header.
  ◦ Re-used the VK_EXT_KHR_surface surface transform enumerations rather than redefining them here.
  ◦ Updated the example code to use the new semantics.

• Revision 13, 2015-08-21 (Ian Elliott)
  ◦ Renamed this extension and all of its enumerations, types, functions, etc. This makes it compliant with the proposed standard for Vulkan extensions.
  ◦ Switched from “revision” to “version”, including use of the VK_MAKE_VERSION macro in the header file.

• Revision 14, 2015-09-01 (James Jones)
  ◦ Restore single-field revision number.

• Revision 15, 2015-09-08 (James Jones)
  ◦ Added alpha flags enum.
  ◦ Added premultiplied alpha support.

• Revision 16, 2015-09-08 (James Jones)
  ◦ Added description section to the spec.
  ◦ Added issues 16 - 18.

• Revision 17, 2015-10-02 (James Jones)
  ◦ Planes are now a property of the entire device rather than individual displays. This allows planes to be moved between multiple displays on devices that support it.
Added a function to create a VkSurfaceKHR object describing a display plane and mode to align with the new per-platform surface creation conventions.

Removed detailed mode timing data. It was agreed that the mode extents and refresh rate are sufficient for current use cases. Other information could be added back in as an extension if it is needed in the future.

Added support for smart/persistent/buffered display devices.

- Revision 18, 2015-10-26 (Ian Elliott)
  - Renamed from VK_EXT_KHR_display to VK_KHR_display.

- Revision 19, 2015-11-02 (James Jones)
  - Updated example code to match revision 17 changes.

- Revision 20, 2015-11-03 (Daniel Rakos)
  - Added allocation callbacks to creation functions.

- Revision 21, 2015-11-10 (Jesse Hall)
  - Added VK_DISPLAY_PLANE_ALPHA_OPAQUE_BIT_KHR, and use VkDisplayPlaneAlphaFlagBitsKHR for VkDisplayPlanePropertiesKHR::alphaMode instead of VkDisplayPlaneAlphaFlagsKHR, since it only represents one mode.
  - Added reserved flags bitmask to VkDisplayPlanePropertiesKHR.
  - Use VkSurfaceTransformFlagBitsKHR instead of obsolete VkSurfaceTransformKHR.
  - Renamed vkGetDisplayPlaneSupportedDisplaysKHR parameters for clarity.

- Revision 22, 2015-12-18 (James Jones)
  - Added missing “planeIndex” parameter to vkGetDisplayPlaneSupportedDisplaysKHR()

- Revision 23, 2017-03-13 (James Jones)
  - Closed all remaining issues. The specification and implementations have been shipping with the proposed resolutions for some time now.
  - Removed the sample code and noted it has been integrated into the official Vulkan SDK cube demo.

**VK_KHR_display_swapchain**

**Name String**

VK_KHR_display_swapchain

**Extension Type**

Device extension

**Registered Extension Number**

4

**Revision**

10
Extension and Version Dependencies

- Requires Vulkan 1.0
- Requires VK_KHR_swapchain
- Requires VK_KHR_display

Contact

- James Jones @cubanismo

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date

2017-03-13

IP Status

No known IP claims.

Contributors

- James Jones, NVIDIA
- Jeff Vigil, Qualcomm
- Jesse Hall, Google

Description

This extension provides an API to create a swapchain directly on a device's display without any underlying window system.

New Commands

- vkCreateSharedSwapchainsKHR

New Structures

- Extending VkPresentInfoKHR:
  - VkDisplayPresentInfoKHR

New Enum Constants

- VK_KHR_DISPLAY_SWAPCHAIN_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_DISPLAY_SWAPCHAIN_SPEC_VERSION

- Extending VkResult:
  - VK_ERROR_INCOMPATIBLE_DISPLAY_KHR

- Extending VkStructureType:
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DISPLAY_PRESENT_INFO_KHR
Issues

1) Should swapchains sharing images each hold a reference to the images, or should it be up to the application to destroy the swapchains and images in an order that avoids the need for reference counting?

**RESOLVED:** Take a reference. The lifetime of presentable images is already complex enough.

2) Should the `srcRect` and `dstRect` parameters be specified as part of the presentation command, or at swapchain creation time?

**RESOLVED:** As part of the presentation command. This allows moving and scaling the image on the screen without the need to respecify the mode or create a new swapchain and presentable images.

3) Should `srcRect` and `dstRect` be specified as rects, or separate offset/extent values?

**RESOLVED:** As rects. Specifying them separately might make it easier for hardware to expose support for one but not the other, but in such cases applications must just take care to obey the reported capabilities and not use non-zero offsets or extents that require scaling, as appropriate.

4) How can applications create multiple swapchains that use the same images?

**RESOLVED:** By calling `vkCreateSharedSwapchainsKHR`.

An earlier resolution used `vkCreateSwapchainKHR`, chaining multiple `VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR` structures through `pNext`. In order to allow each swapchain to also allow other extension structs, a level of indirection was used: `VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR::pNext` pointed to a different structure, which had both `sType` and `pNext` members for additional extensions, and also had a pointer to the next `VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR` structure. The number of swapchains to be created could only be found by walking this linked list of alternating structures, and the `pSwapchains` out parameter was reinterpreted to be an array of `VkSwapchainKHR` handles.

Another option considered was a method to specify a “shared” swapchain when creating a new swapchain, such that groups of swapchains using the same images could be built up one at a time. This was deemed unusable because drivers need to know all of the displays an image will be used on when determining which internal formats and layouts to use for that image.

Examples

*Note*

The example code for the `VK_KHR.display` and `VK_KHR.display_swapchain` extensions was removed from the appendix after revision 1.0.43. The display swapchain creation example code was ported to the cube demo that is shipped with the official Khronos SDK, and is being kept up-to-date in that location (see: [https://github.com/KhronosGroup/Vulkan-Tools/blob/master/cube/cube.c](https://github.com/KhronosGroup/Vulkan-Tools/blob/master/cube/cube.c)).

Version History

- Revision 1, 2015-07-29 (James Jones)
• Initial draft

• Revision 2, 2015-08-21 (Ian Elliott)
  ◦ Renamed this extension and all of its enumerations, types, functions, etc. This makes it compliant with the proposed standard for Vulkan extensions.
  ◦ Switched from “revision” to “version”, including use of the VK_MAKE_VERSION macro in the header file.

• Revision 3, 2015-09-01 (James Jones)
  ◦ Restore single-field revision number.

• Revision 4, 2015-09-08 (James Jones)
  ◦ Allow creating multiple swap chains that share the same images using a single call to vkCreateSwapChainKHR().

• Revision 5, 2015-09-10 (Alon Or-bach)
  ◦ Removed underscores from SWAP_CHAIN in two enums.

• Revision 6, 2015-10-02 (James Jones)
  ◦ Added support for smart panels/buffered displays.

• Revision 7, 2015-10-26 (Ian Elliott)
  ◦ Renamed from VK_EXT_KHR_display_swapchain to VK_KHR_display_swapchain.

• Revision 8, 2015-11-03 (Daniel Rakos)
  ◦ Updated sample code based on the changes to VK_KHR_swapchain.

• Revision 9, 2015-11-10 (Jesse Hall)
  ◦ Replaced VkDisplaySwapchainCreateInfoKHR with vkCreateSharedSwapchainsKHR, changing resolution of issue #4.

• Revision 10, 2017-03-13 (James Jones)
  ◦ Closed all remaining issues. The specification and implementations have been shipping with the proposed resolutions for some time now.
  ◦ Removed the sample code and noted it has been integrated into the official Vulkan SDK cube demo.

**VK_KHR_draw_indirect_count**

Name String

VK_KHR_draw_indirect_count

Extension Type

Device extension

Registered Extension Number

170
Revision
1

Extension and Version Dependencies
  • Requires Vulkan 1.0

Deprecation state
  • Promoted to Vulkan 1.2

Contact
  • Piers Daniell pdaniell-nv

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
2017-08-25

Interactions and External Dependencies
  • Promoted to Vulkan 1.2 Core

IP Status
  No known IP claims.

Contributors
  • Matthaeus G. Chajdas, AMD
  • Derrick Owens, AMD
  • Graham Sellers, AMD
  • Daniel Rakos, AMD
  • Dominik Witczak, AMD
  • Piers Daniell, NVIDIA

Description
This extension is based off the [VK_AMD_draw_indirect_count] extension. This extension allows an application to source the number of draws for indirect draw calls from a buffer.

Applications might want to do culling on the GPU via a compute shader prior to drawing. This enables the application to generate an arbitrary number of drawing commands and execute them without host intervention.

Promotion to Vulkan 1.2

All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.2, with the KHR suffix omitted. However, if Vulkan 1.2 is supported and this extension is not, the entry points vkCmdDrawIndirectCount and vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCount are optional. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.
New Commands

- vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCountKHR
- vkCmdDrawIndirectCountKHR

New Enum Constants

- VK_KHR_DRAW_INDIRECT_COUNT_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_DRAW_INDIRECT_COUNT_SPEC_VERSION

Version History

- Revision 1, 2017-08-25 (Piers Daniell)
  - Initial draft based off VK_AMD_draw_indirect_count

VK_KHR_driver_properties

Name String

VK_KHR_driver_properties

Extension Type

Device extension

Registered Extension Number

197

Revision

1

Extension and Version Dependencies

- Requires Vulkan 1.0
- Requires VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2

Deprecation state

- Promoted to Vulkan 1.2

Contact

- Daniel Rakos drakos-amd

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date

2018-04-11

Interactions and External Dependencies

- Promoted to Vulkan 1.2 Core
IP Status
No known IP claims.

Contributors
• Baldur Karlsson
• Matthaeus G. Chajdas, AMD
• Piers Daniell, NVIDIA
• Alexander Galazin, Arm
• Jesse Hall, Google
• Daniel Rakos, AMD

Description
This extension provides a new physical device query which allows retrieving information about the driver implementation, allowing applications to determine which physical device corresponds to which particular vendor's driver, and which conformance test suite version the driver implementation is compliant with.

Promotion to Vulkan 1.2
All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.2, with the KHR suffix omitted. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

New Structures
• VkConformanceVersionKHR
• Extending VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2:
  ◦ VkPhysicalDeviceDriverPropertiesKHR

New Enums
• VkDriverIdKHR

New Enum Constants
• VK_KHR_DRIVER_PROPERTIES_EXTENSION_NAME
• VK_KHR_DRIVER_PROPERTIES_SPEC_VERSION
• VK_MAX_DRIVER_INFO_SIZE_KHR
• VK_MAX_DRIVER_NAME_SIZE_KHR
• Extending VkDriverId:
  ◦ VK_DRIVER_ID_AMD_OPEN_SOURCE_KHR
  ◦ VK_DRIVER_ID_AMD_PROPRIETARY_KHR
  ◦ VK_DRIVER_ID_ARM_PROPRIETARY_KHR
VK_DRIVER_ID_BROADCOM_PROPRIETARY_KHR
VK_DRIVER_ID_GGP_PROPRIETARY_KHR
VK_DRIVER_ID_GOOGLE_SWIFTSHADER_KHR
VK_DRIVER_ID_IMAGINATION_PROPRIETARY_KHR
VK_DRIVER_ID_INTEL_OPEN_SOURCE_MESA_KHR
VK_DRIVER_ID_INTEL_PROPRIETARY_WINDOWS_KHR
VK_DRIVER_ID_MESA_RADV_KHR
VK_DRIVER_ID_NVIDIA_PROPRIETARY_KHR
VK_DRIVER_ID_QUALCOMM_PROPRIETARY_KHR

• Extending VkStructureType:
  • VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_DRIVER_PROPERTIES_KHR

Version History

• Revision 1, 2018-04-11 (Daniel Rakos)
  • Internal revisions

VK_KHR_external_fence

Name String

VK_KHR_external_fence

Extension Type

Device extension

Registered Extension Number

114

Revision

1

Extension and Version Dependencies

• Requires Vulkan 1.0
  • Requires VK_KHR_external_fence_capabilities

Deprecation state

• Promoted to Vulkan 1.1

Contact

• Jesse Hall 🌞critsec
Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
2017-05-08

IP Status
No known IP claims.

Interactions and External Dependencies
• Promoted to Vulkan 1.1 Core

Contributors
• Jesse Hall, Google
• James Jones, NVIDIA
• Jeff Juliano, NVIDIA
• Cass Everitt, Oculus
• Contributors to VK_KHR_external_semaphore

Description
An application using external memory may wish to synchronize access to that memory using fences. This extension enables an application to create fences from which non-Vulkan handles that reference the underlying synchronization primitive can be exported.

Promotion to Vulkan 1.1
All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.1, with the KHR suffix omitted. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

New Structures
• Extending VkFenceCreateInfo:
  ◦ VkExportFenceCreateInfoKHR

New Enums
• VkFenceImportFlagBitsKHR

New Bitmasks
• VkFenceImportFlagsKHR

New Enum Constants
• VK_KHR_EXTERNAL_FENCE_EXTENSION_NAME
• VK_KHR_EXTERNAL_FENCE_SPEC_VERSION
• Extending VkFenceImportFlagBits:
  ◦ VK_FENCE_IMPORT_TEMPORARY_BIT_KHR
• Extending VkStructureType:
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXPORT_FENCE_CREATE_INFO_KHR

Issues

This extension borrows concepts, semantics, and language from VK_KHR_external_semaphore. That extension's issues apply equally to this extension.

Version History

• Revision 1, 2017-05-08 (Jesse Hall)
  ◦ Initial revision

VK_KHR_external_fence_capabilities

Name String

VK_KHR_external_fence_capabilities

Extension Type

Instance extension

Registered Extension Number

113

Revision

1

Extension and Version Dependencies

• Requires Vulkan 1.0
• Requires VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2

Deprecation state

• Promoted to Vulkan 1.1

Contact

• Jesse Hall

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date

2017-05-08

IP Status

No known IP claims.
Interactions and External Dependencies

- Promoted to Vulkan 1.1 Core

Contributors

- Jesse Hall, Google
- James Jones, NVIDIA
- Jeff Juliano, NVIDIA
- Cass Everitt, Oculus
- Contributors to VK_KHR_external_semaphore_capabilities

Description

An application may wish to reference device fences in multiple Vulkan logical devices or instances, in multiple processes, and/or in multiple APIs. This extension provides a set of capability queries and handle definitions that allow an application to determine what types of “external” fence handles an implementation supports for a given set of use cases.

Promotion to Vulkan 1.1

All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.1, with the KHR suffix omitted. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

New Commands

- vkGetPhysicalDeviceExternalFencePropertiesKHR

New Structures

- VkExternalFencePropertiesKHR
- VkPhysicalDeviceExternalFenceInfoKHR
- Extending VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2:
  - VkPhysicalDeviceIDPropertiesKHR

New Enums

- VkExternalFenceFeatureFlagBitsKHR
- VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlagBitsKHR

New Bitmasks

- VkExternalFenceFeatureFlagsKHR
- VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlagsKHR
New Enum Constants

- `VK_KHR_EXTERNAL_FENCE_CAPABILITIES_EXTENSION_NAME`
- `VK_KHR_EXTERNAL_FENCE_CAPABILITIES_SPEC_VERSION`
- `VK_LUID_SIZE_KHR`

Extending `VkExternalFenceFeatureFlagBits`:
- `VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_FEATURE_EXPORTABLE_BIT_KHR`
- `VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_FEATURE_IMPORTABLE_BIT_KHR`

Extending `VkExternalFenceHandleTypeFlagBits`:
- `VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_FD_BIT_KHR`
- `VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_BIT_KHR`
- `VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_KMT_BIT_KHR`
- `VK_EXTERNAL_FENCE_HANDLE_TYPE_SYNC_FD_BIT_KHR`

Extending `VkStructureType`:
- `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXTERNAL_FENCE_PROPERTIES_KHR`
- `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_EXTERNAL_FENCE_INFO_KHR`
- `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_ID_PROPERTIES_KHR`

Version History

- Revision 1, 2017-05-08 (Jesse Hall)
  - Initial version

**VK_KHR_external_fence_fd**

Name String

```
VK_KHR_external_fence_fd
```

Extension Type

- Device extension

Registered Extension Number

- 116

Revision

- 1

Extension and Version Dependencies

- Requires Vulkan 1.0
- Requires `VK_KHR_external_fence`
Contact

- Jesse Hall (critsec)

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date

2017-05-08

IP Status

No known IP claims.

Contributors

- Jesse Hall, Google
- James Jones, NVIDIA
- Jeff Juliano, NVIDIA
- Cass Everitt, Oculus
- Contributors to VK_KHR_external_semaphore_fd

Description

An application using external memory may wish to synchronize access to that memory using fences. This extension enables an application to export fence payload to and import fence payload from POSIX file descriptors.

New Commands

- vkGetFenceFdKHR
- vkImportFenceFdKHR

New Structures

- VkFenceGetFdInfoKHR
- VkImportFenceFdInfoKHR

New Enum Constants

- VK_KHR_EXTERNAL_FENCE_FD_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_EXTERNAL_FENCE_FD_SPEC_VERSION
- Extending VkStructureType:
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_FENCE_GET_FD_INFO_KHR
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMPORT_FENCE_FD_INFO_KHR
Issues
This extension borrows concepts, semantics, and language from VK_KHR_external_semaphore_fd. That extension's issues apply equally to this extension.

Version History
• Revision 1, 2017-05-08 (Jesse Hall)
  ◦ Initial revision

VK_KHR_external_fence_win32

Name String
  VK_KHR_external_fence_win32

Extension Type
  Device extension

Registered Extension Number
  115

Revision
  1

Extension and Version Dependencies
• Requires Vulkan 1.0
• Requires VK_KHR_external_fence

Contact
• Jesse Hall critsec

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
  2017-05-08

IP Status
  No known IP claims.

Contributors
• Jesse Hall, Google
• James Jones, NVIDIA
• Jeff Juliano, NVIDIA
• Cass Everitt, Oculus
• Contributors to VK_KHR_external_semaphore_win32
Description

An application using external memory may wish to synchronize access to that memory using fences. This extension enables an application to export fence payload to and import fence payload from Windows handles.

New Commands

- `vkGetFenceWin32HandleKHR`
- `vkImportFenceWin32HandleKHR`

New Structures

- `VkFenceGetWin32HandleInfoKHR`
- `VkImportFenceWin32HandleInfoKHR`
- Extending `VkFenceCreateInfo`:
  - `VkExportFenceWin32HandleInfoKHR`

New Enum Constants

- `VK_KHR_EXTERNAL_FENCE_WIN32_EXTENSION_NAME`
- `VK_KHR_EXTERNAL_FENCE_WIN32_SPEC_VERSION`
- Extending `VkStructureType`:
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXPORT_FENCE_WIN32_HANDLE_INFO_KHR`
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_FENCE_GET_WIN32_HANDLE_INFO_KHR`
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMPORT_FENCE_WIN32_HANDLE_INFO_KHR`

Issues

This extension borrows concepts, semantics, and language from `VK_KHR_external_semaphore_win32`. That extension’s issues apply equally to this extension.

1) Should D3D12 fence handle types be supported, like they are for semaphores?

**RESOLVED**: No. Doing so would require extending the fence signal and wait operations to provide values to signal / wait for, like `VkD3D12FenceSubmitInfoKHR` does. A D3D12 fence can be signaled by importing it into a `VkSemaphore` instead of a `VkFence`, and applications can check status or wait on the D3D12 fence using non-Vulkan APIs. The convenience of being able to do these operations on `VkFence` objects does not justify the extra API complexity.

Version History

- Revision 1, 2017-05-08 (Jesse Hall)
  - Initial revision
VK_KHR_external_memory

Name String
    VK_KHR_external_memory

Extension Type
    Device extension

Registered Extension Number
    73

Revision
    1

Extension and Version Dependencies
    • Requires Vulkan 1.0
    • Requires VK_KHR_external_memory_capabilities

Deprecation state
    • Promoted to Vulkan 1.1

Contact
    • James Jones cubanismo

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
    2016-10-20

IP Status
    No known IP claims.

Interactions and External Dependencies
    • Interacts with VK_KHR_dedicated_allocation.
    • Interacts with [VK_NV_dedicated_allocation].
    • Promoted to Vulkan 1.1 Core

Contributors
    • Jason Ekstrand, Intel
    • Ian Elliot, Google
    • Jesse Hall, Google
    • Tobias Hector, Imagination Technologies
    • James Jones, NVIDIA
    • Jeff Juliano, NVIDIA
    • Matthew Netsch, Qualcomm Technologies, Inc.
Description

An application may wish to reference device memory in multiple Vulkan logical devices or instances, in multiple processes, and/or in multiple APIs. This extension enables an application to export non-Vulkan handles from Vulkan memory objects such that the underlying resources can be referenced outside the scope of the Vulkan logical device that created them.

Promotion to Vulkan 1.1

All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.1, with the KHR suffix omitted. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

New Structures

- Extending `VkBufferCreateInfo`:
  - `VkExternalMemoryBufferCreateInfoKHR`
- Extending `VkImageCreateInfo`:
  - `VkExternalMemoryImageCreateInfoKHR`
- Extending `VkMemoryAllocateInfo`:
  - `VkExportMemoryAllocateInfoKHR`

New Enum Constants

- `VK_KHR_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_EXTENSION_NAME`
- `VK_KHR_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_SPEC_VERSION`
- `VK_QUEUE_FAMILY_EXTERNAL_KHR`
- Extending `VkResult`:
  - `VK_ERROR_INVALID_EXTERNAL_HANDLE_KHR`
- Extending `VkStructureType`:
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXPORT_MEMORY_ALLOCATE_INFO_KHR`
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_BUFFER_CREATE_INFO_KHR`
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_IMAGE_CREATE_INFO_KHR`

Issues

1) How do applications correlate two physical devices across process or Vulkan instance boundaries?
**RESOLVED**: New device ID fields have been introduced by `VK_KHR_external_memory_capabilities`. These fields, combined with the existing `VkPhysicalDeviceProperties::driverVersion` field can be used to identify compatible devices across processes, drivers, and APIs. `VkPhysicalDeviceProperties::pipelineCacheUUID` is not sufficient for this purpose because despite its description in the specification, it need only identify a unique pipeline cache format in practice. Multiple devices may be able to use the same pipeline cache data, and hence it would be desirable for all of them to have the same pipeline cache UUID. However, only the same concrete physical device can be used when sharing memory, so an actual unique device ID was introduced. Further, the pipeline cache UUID was specific to Vulkan, but correlation with other, non-extensible APIs is required to enable interoperation with those APIs.

2) If memory objects are shared between processes and APIs, is this considered aliasing according to the rules outlined in the Memory Aliasing section?

**RESOLVED**: Yes. Applications must take care to obey all restrictions imposed on aliased resources when using memory across multiple Vulkan instances or other APIs.

3) Are new image layouts or metadata required to specify image layouts and layout transitions compatible with non-Vulkan APIs, or with other instances of the same Vulkan driver?

**RESOLVED**: Separate instances of the same Vulkan driver running on the same GPU should have identical internal layout semantics, so applications have the tools they need to ensure views of images are consistent between the two instances. Other APIs will fall into two categories: Those that are Vulkan-compatible, and those that are Vulkan-incompatible. Vulkan-incompatible APIs will require the image to be in the GENERAL layout whenever they are accessing them.

Note this does not attempt to address cross-device transitions, nor transitions to engines on the same device which are not visible within the Vulkan API. Both of these are beyond the scope of this extension.

4) Is a new barrier flag or operation of some type needed to prepare external memory for handoff to another Vulkan instance or API and/or receive it from another instance or API?

**RESOLVED**: Yes. Some implementations need to perform additional cache management when transitioning memory between address spaces and other APIs, instances, or processes which may operate in a separate address space. Options for defining this transition include:

- A new structure that can be added to the `pNext` list in `VkMemoryBarrier`, `VkBufferMemoryBarrier`, and `VkImageMemoryBarrier`.
- A new bit in `VkAccessFlags` that can be set to indicate an “external” access.
- A new bit in `VkDependencyFlags`.
- A new special queue family that represents an “external” queue.

A new structure has the advantage that the type of external transition can be described in as much detail as necessary. However, there is not currently a known need for anything beyond differentiating between external and internal accesses, so this is likely an over-engineered solution. The access flag bit has the advantage that it can be applied at buffer, image, or global granularity, and semantically it maps pretty well to the operation being described. Additionally, the API already includes `VK_ACCESS_MEMORY_READ_BIT` and `VK_ACCESS_MEMORY_WRITE_BIT` which appear to be intended.
for this purpose. However, there is no obvious pipeline stage that would correspond to an external access, and therefore no clear way to use \texttt{VK_ACCESS_MEMORY_READ_BIT} or \texttt{VK_ACCESS_MEMORY_WRITE_BIT}. \texttt{VkDependencyFlags} and \texttt{VkPipelineStageFlags} operate at command granularity rather than image or buffer granularity, which would make an entire pipeline barrier an internal→external or external→internal barrier. This may not be a problem in practice, but seems like the wrong scope. Another downside of \texttt{VkDependencyFlags} is that it lacks inherent directionality: there are no \texttt{src} and \texttt{dst} variants of it in the barrier or dependency description semantics, so two bits might need to be added to describe both internal→external and external→internal transitions. Transitioning a resource to a special queue family corresponds well with the operation of transitioning to a separate Vulkan instance, in that both operations ideally include scheduling a barrier on both sides of the transition: Both the releasing and the acquiring queue or process. Using a special queue family requires adding an additional reserved queue family index. Re-using \texttt{VK_QUEUE_FAMILY_IGNORED} would have left it unclear how to transition a concurrent usage resource from one process to another, since the semantics would have likely been equivalent to the currently-ignored transition of \texttt{VK_QUEUE_FAMILY_IGNORED → VK_QUEUE_FAMILY_IGNORED}. Fortunately, creating a new reserved queue family index is not invasive.

Based on the above analysis, the approach of transitioning to a special “external” queue family was chosen.

5) Do internal driver memory arrangements and/or other internal driver image properties need to be exported and imported when sharing images across processes or APIs.

\textbf{RESOLVED:} Some vendors claim this is necessary on their implementations, but it was determined that the security risks of allowing opaque metadata to be passed from applications to the driver were too high. Therefore, implementations which require metadata will need to associate it with the objects represented by the external handles, and rely on the dedicated allocation mechanism to associate the exported and imported memory objects with a single image or buffer.

6) Most prior interoperation and cross-process sharing APIs have been based on image-level sharing. Should Vulkan sharing be based on memory-object sharing or image sharing?

\textbf{RESOLVED:} These extensions have assumed memory-level sharing is the correct granularity. Vulkan is a lower-level API than most prior APIs, and as such attempts to closely align with to the underlying primitives of the hardware and system-level drivers it abstracts. In general, the resource that holds the backing store for both images and buffers of various types is memory. Images and buffers are merely metadata containing brief descriptions of the layout of bits within that memory.

Because memory object-based sharing is aligned with the overall Vulkan API design, it enables the full range of Vulkan capabilities with external objects. External memory can be used as backing for sparse images, for example, whereas such usage would be awkward at best with a sharing mechanism based on higher-level primitives such as images. Further, aligning the mechanism with the API in this way provides some hope of trivial compatibility with future API enhancements. If new objects backed by memory objects are added to the API, they too can be used across processes with minimal additions to the base external memory APIs.

Earlier APIs implemented interop at a higher level, and this necessitated entirely separate sharing APIs for images and buffers. To co-exist and interoperate with those APIs, the Vulkan external
sharing mechanism must accommodate their model. However, if it can be agreed that memory-based sharing is the more desirable and forward-looking design, legacy interoperation constraints can be considered another reason to favor memory-based sharing: while native and legacy driver primitives that may be used to implement sharing may not be as low-level as the API here suggests, raw memory is still the least common denominator among the types. Image-based sharing can be cleanly derived from a set of base memory-object sharing APIs with minimal effort, whereas image-based sharing does not generalize well to buffer or raw-memory sharing. Therefore, following the general Vulkan design principle of minimalism, it is better to expose interoperability with image-based native and external primitives via the memory sharing API, and place sufficient limits on their usage to ensure they can be used only as backing for equivalent Vulkan images. This provides a consistent API for applications regardless of which platform or external API they are targeting, which makes development of multi-API and multi-platform applications simpler.

7) Should Vulkan define a common external handle type and provide Vulkan functions to facilitate cross-process sharing of such handles rather than relying on native handles to define the external objects?

**RESOLVED:** No. Cross-process sharing of resources is best left to native platforms. There are myriad security and extensibility issues with such a mechanism, and attempting to re-solve all those issues within Vulkan does not align with Vulkan's purpose as a graphics API. If desired, such a mechanism could be built as a layer or helper library on top of the opaque native handle defined in this family of extensions.

8) Must implementations provide additional guarantees about state implicitly included in memory objects for those memory objects that may be exported?

**RESOLVED:** Implementations must ensure that sharing memory objects does not transfer any information between the exporting and importing instances and APIs other than that required to share the data contained in the memory objects explicitly shared. As specific examples, data from previously freed memory objects that used the same underlying physical memory, and data from memory objects using adjacent physical memory must not be visible to applications importing an exported memory object.

9) Must implementations validate external handles the application provides as inputs to memory import operations?

**RESOLVED:** Implementations must return an error to the application if the provided memory handle cannot be used to complete the requested import operation. However, implementations need not validate handles are of the exact type specified by the application.

**Version History**

- Revision 1, 2016-10-20 (James Jones)
  - Initial version

**VK_KHR_external_memory_capabilities**

**Name String**

- VK_KHR_external_memory_capabilities
Extension Type
  Instance extension

Registered Extension Number
  72

Revision
  1

Extension and Version Dependencies
  • Requires Vulkan 1.0
  • Requires VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2

Deprecation state
  • Promoted to Vulkan 1.1

Contact
  • James Jones cubanismo

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
  2016-10-17

IP Status
  No known IP claims.

Interactions and External Dependencies
  • Interacts with VK_KHR_dedicated_allocation.
  • Interacts with [VK_NV_dedicated_allocation].
  • Promoted to Vulkan 1.1 Core

Contributors
  • Ian Elliot, Google
  • Jesse Hall, Google
  • James Jones, NVIDIA

Description
An application may wish to reference device memory in multiple Vulkan logical devices or instances, in multiple processes, and/or in multiple APIs. This extension provides a set of capability queries and handle definitions that allow an application to determine what types of “external” memory handles an implementation supports for a given set of use cases.
Promotion to Vulkan 1.1

All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.1, with the KHR suffix omitted. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

New Commands

• vkGetPhysicalDeviceExternalBufferPropertiesKHR

New Structures

• VkExternalBufferPropertiesKHR
• VkExternalMemoryPropertiesKHR
• VkPhysicalDeviceExternalBufferInfoKHR
• Extending VkImageFormatProperties2:
  ◦ VkExternalImageFormatPropertiesKHR
• Extending VkPhysicalDeviceImageFormatInfo2:
  ◦ VkPhysicalDeviceExternalImageFormatInfoKHR
• Extending VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2:
  ◦ VkPhysicalDeviceIDPropertiesKHR

New Enums

• VkExternalMemoryFeatureFlagBitsKHR
• VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBitsKHR

New Bitmasks

• VkExternalMemoryFeatureFlagsKHR
• VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagsKHR

New Enum Constants

• VK_KHR_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_CAPABILITIES_EXTENSION_NAME
• VK_KHR_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_CAPABILITIES_SPEC_VERSION
• VK_LUID_SIZE_KHR
• Extending VkExternalMemoryFeatureFlagBits:
  ◦ VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_FEATURE_DEDICATED_ONLY_BIT_KHR
  ◦ VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_FEATURE_EXPORTABLE_BIT_KHR
  ◦ VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_FEATURE_IMPORTABLE_BIT_KHR
• Extending VkExternalMemoryHandleTypeFlagBits:
  ◦ VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D11_TEXTURE_BIT_KHR
• Extending VkStructureType:
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXTERNAL_BUFFER_PROPERTIES_KHR
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXTERNAL_IMAGE_FORMAT_PROPERTIES_KHR
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_EXTERNAL_BUFFER_INFO_KHR
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_EXTERNAL_IMAGE_FORMAT_INFO_KHR
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_ID_PROPERTIES_KHR

Issues

1) Why do so many external memory capabilities need to be queried on a per-memory-handle-type basis?

**PROPOSED RESOLUTION:** This is because some handle types are based on OS-native objects that have far more limited capabilities than the very generic Vulkan memory objects. Not all memory handle types can name memory objects that support 3D images, for example. Some handle types cannot even support the deferred image and memory binding behavior of Vulkan and require specifying the image when allocating or importing the memory object.

2) Do the VkExternalImageFormatPropertiesKHR and VkExternalBufferPropertiesKHR structs need to include a list of memory type bits that support the given handle type?

**PROPOSED RESOLUTION:** No. The memory types that do not support the handle types will simply be filtered out of the results returned by vkGetImageMemoryRequirements and vkGetBufferMemoryRequirements when a set of handle types was specified at image or buffer creation time.

3) Should the non-opaque handle types be moved to their own extension?

**PROPOSED RESOLUTION:** Perhaps. However, defining the handle type bits does very little and does not require any platform-specific types on its own, and it is easier to maintain the bitfield values in a single extension for now. Presumably more handle types could be added by separate extensions though, and it would be midly weird to have some platform-specific ones defined in the core spec and some in extensions.

4) Do we need a D3D11_TILEPOOL type?

**PROPOSED RESOLUTION:** No. This is technically possible, but the synchronization is awkward. D3D11 surfaces must be synchronized using shared mutexes, and these synchronization primitives are shared by the entire memory object, so D3D11 shared allocations divided among multiple
buffer and image bindings may be difficult to synchronize.

5) Should the Windows 7-compatible handle types be named “KMT” handles or “GLOBAL_SHARE” handles?

**PROPOSED RESOLUTION**: KMT, simply because it is more concise.

6) How do applications identify compatible devices and drivers across instance, process, and API boundaries when sharing memory?

**PROPOSED RESOLUTION**: New device properties are exposed that allow applications to correctly correlate devices and drivers. A device and driver UUID that must both match to ensure sharing compatibility between two Vulkan instances, or a Vulkan instance and an extensible external API are added. To allow correlating with Direct3D devices, a device LUID is added that corresponds to a DXGI adapter LUID. A driver ID is not needed for Direct3D because mismatched driver component versions are not currently supported on the Windows OS. Should support for such configurations be introduced at the OS level, further Vulkan extensions would be needed to correlate userspace component builds.

**Version History**

- Revision 1, 2016-10-17 (James Jones)
  - Initial version

**VK_KHR_external_memory_fd**

**Name String**

VK_KHR_external_memory_fd

**Extension Type**

Device extension

**Registered Extension Number**

75

**Revision**

1

**Extension and Version Dependencies**

- Requires Vulkan 1.0
- Requires VK_KHR_external_memory

**Contact**

- James Jones 📧 cubanismo

**Other Extension Metadata**
Description

An application may wish to reference device memory in multiple Vulkan logical devices or instances, in multiple processes, and/or in multiple APIs. This extension enables an application to export POSIX file descriptor handles from Vulkan memory objects and to import Vulkan memory objects from POSIX file descriptor handles exported from other Vulkan memory objects or from similar resources in other APIs.

New Commands

- `vkGetMemoryFdKHR`
- `vkGetMemoryFdPropertiesKHR`

New Structures

- `VkMemoryFdPropertiesKHR`
- `VkMemoryGetFdInfoKHR`
- Extending `VkMemoryAllocateInfo`:
  - `VkImportMemoryFdInfoKHR`

New Enum Constants

- `VK_KHR_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_FD_EXTENSION_NAME`
- `VK_KHR_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_FD_SPEC_VERSION`
- Extending `VkStructureType`:
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMPORT_MEMORY_FD_INFO_KHR`
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_FD_PROPERTIES_KHR`
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_GET_FD_INFO_KHR`

Issues

1) Does the application need to close the file descriptor returned by `vkGetMemoryFdKHR`?

**RESOLVED**: Yes, unless it is passed back in to a driver instance to import the memory. A successful get call transfers ownership of the file descriptor to the application, and a successful import
transfers it back to the driver. Destroying the original memory object will not close the file descriptor or remove its reference to the underlying memory resource associated with it.

2) Do drivers ever need to expose multiple file descriptors per memory object?

**RESOLVED:** No. This would indicate there are actually multiple memory objects, rather than a single memory object.

3) How should the valid size and memory type for POSIX file descriptor memory handles created outside of Vulkan be specified?

**RESOLVED:** The valid memory types are queried directly from the external handle. The size will be specified by future extensions that introduce such external memory handle types.

### Version History

- Revision 1, 2016-10-21 (James Jones)
  - Initial revision

### VK_KHR_external_memory_win32

**Name String**

VK_KHR_external_memory_win32

**Extension Type**

Device extension

**Registered Extension Number**

74

**Revision**

1

**Extension and Version Dependencies**

- Requires Vulkan 1.0
- Requires VK_KHR_external_memory

**Contact**

- James Jones 📩 cubanismo

### Other Extension Metadata

**Last Modified Date**

2016-10-21

**IP Status**

No known IP claims.
Contributors

• James Jones, NVIDIA
• Jeff Juliano, NVIDIA
• Carsten Rohde, NVIDIA

Description

An application may wish to reference device memory in multiple Vulkan logical devices or instances, in multiple processes, and/or in multiple APIs. This extension enables an application to export Windows handles from Vulkan memory objects and to import Vulkan memory objects from Windows handles exported from other Vulkan memory objects or from similar resources in other APIs.

New Commands

• vkGetMemoryWin32HandleKHR
• vkGetMemoryWin32HandlePropertiesKHR

New Structures

• VkMemoryGetWin32HandleInfoKHR
• VkMemoryWin32HandlePropertiesKHR
• Extending VkMemoryAllocateInfo:
  ◦ VkExportMemoryWin32HandleInfoKHR
  ◦ VkImportMemoryWin32HandleInfoKHR

New Enum Constants

• VK_KHR_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_WIN32_EXTENSION_NAME
• VK_KHR_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_WIN32_SPEC_VERSION
• Extending VkStructureType:
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXPORT_MEMORY_WIN32_HANDLE_INFO_KHR
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMPORT_MEMORY_WIN32_HANDLE_INFO_KHR
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_GET_WIN32_HANDLE_INFO_KHR
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_WIN32_HANDLE_PROPERTIES_KHR

Issues

1) Do applications need to call CloseHandle() on the values returned from vkGetMemoryWin32HandleKHR when handleType is VK_EXTERNAL_MEMORY_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_BIT_KHR?

RESOLVED: Yes, unless it is passed back in to another driver instance to import the object. A
successful get call transfers ownership of the handle to the application. Destroying the memory object will not destroy the handle or the handle’s reference to the underlying memory resource.

2) Should the language regarding KMT/Windows 7 handles be moved to a separate extension so that it can be deprecated over time?

**RESOLVED:** No. Support for them can be deprecated by drivers if they choose, by no longer returning them in the supported handle types of the instance level queries.

3) How should the valid size and memory type for windows memory handles created outside of Vulkan be specified?

**RESOLVED:** The valid memory types are queried directly from the external handle. The size is determined by the associated image or buffer memory requirements for external handle types that require dedicated allocations, and by the size specified when creating the object from which the handle was exported for other external handle types.

### Version History

- Revision 1, 2016-10-21 (James Jones)
  - Initial revision

### VK_KHR_external_semaphore

**Name String**

VK_KHR_external_semaphore

**Extension Type**

Device extension

**Registered Extension Number**

78

**Revision**

1

**Extension and Version Dependencies**

- Requires Vulkan 1.0
- Requires `VK_KHR_external_semaphore_capabilities`

**Deprecation state**

- *Promoted* to Vulkan 1.1

**Contact**

- James Jones 🌿cubanismo
Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
2016-10-21

IP Status
No known IP claims.

Interactions and External Dependencies
• Promoted to Vulkan 1.1 Core

Contributors
• Jason Ekstrand, Intel
• Jesse Hall, Google
• Tobias Hector, Imagination Technologies
• James Jones, NVIDIA
• Jeff Juliano, NVIDIA
• Matthew Netsch, Qualcomm Technologies, Inc.
• Ray Smith, ARM
• Chad Versace, Google

Description
An application using external memory may wish to synchronize access to that memory using semaphores. This extension enables an application to create semaphores from which non-Vulkan handles that reference the underlying synchronization primitive can be exported.

Promotion to Vulkan 1.1
All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.1, with the KHR suffix omitted. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

New Structures
• Extending VkSemaphoreCreateInfo:
  ◦ VkExportSemaphoreCreateInfoKHR

New Enums
• VkSemaphoreImportFlagBitsKHR

New Bitmasks
• VkSemaphoreImportFlagsKHR
New Enum Constants

- VK_KHR_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_SPEC_VERSION

Extending VkSemaphoreImportFlagBits:
- VK_SEMAPHORE_IMPORT_TEMPORARY_BIT_KHR

Extending VkStructureType:
- VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXPORT_SEMAPHORE_CREATE_INFO_KHR

Issues

1) Should there be restrictions on what side effects can occur when waiting on imported semaphores that are in an invalid state?

**RESOLVED:** Yes. Normally, validating such state would be the responsibility of the application, and the implementation would be free to enter an undefined state if valid usage rules were violated. However, this could cause security concerns when using imported semaphores, as it would require the importing application to trust the exporting application to ensure the state is valid. Requiring this level of trust is undesirable for many potential use cases.

2) Must implementations validate external handles the application provides as input to semaphore state import operations?

**RESOLVED:** Implementations must return an error to the application if the provided semaphore state handle cannot be used to complete the requested import operation. However, implementations need not validate handles are of the exact type specified by the application.

Version History

- Revision 1, 2016-10-21 (James Jones)
  - Initial revision

**VK_KHR_external_semaphore_capabilities**

Name String

- VK_KHR_external_semaphore_capabilities

Extension Type

- Instance extension

Registered Extension Number

- 77

Revision

- 1
Extension and Version Dependencies

- Requires Vulkan 1.0
- Requires `VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2`

Deprecation state

- `Promoted` to Vulkan 1.1

Contact

- James Jones [Cubanismo](#)

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date

2016-10-20

IP Status

No known IP claims.

Interactions and External Dependencies

- Promoted to Vulkan 1.1 Core

Contributors

- Jesse Hall, Google
- James Jones, NVIDIA
- Jeff Juliano, NVIDIA

Description

An application may wish to reference device semaphores in multiple Vulkan logical devices or instances, in multiple processes, and/or in multiple APIs. This extension provides a set of capability queries and handle definitions that allow an application to determine what types of “external” semaphore handles an implementation supports for a given set of use cases.

Promotion to Vulkan 1.1

All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.1, with the KHR suffix omitted. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

New Commands

- `vkGetPhysicalDeviceExternalSemaphorePropertiesKHR`

New Structures

- `VkExternalSemaphorePropertiesKHR`
- `VkPhysicalDeviceExternalSemaphoreInfoKHR`
• Extending VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2:
  ◦ VkPhysicalDeviceIDPropertiesKHR

New Enums

• VkExternalSemaphoreFeatureFlagBitsKHR
• VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlagBitsKHR

New Bitmasks

• VkExternalSemaphoreFeatureFlagsKHR
• VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlagsKHR

New Enum Constants

• VK_KHR_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_CAPABILITIES_EXTENSION_NAME
• VK_KHR_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_CAPABILITIES_SPEC_VERSION
• VK_LUID_SIZE_KHR
• Extending VkExternalSemaphoreFeatureFlagBits:
  ◦ VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_FEATURE_EXPORTABLE_BIT_KHR
  ◦ VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_FEATURE_IMPORTABLE_BIT_KHR
• Extending VkExternalSemaphoreHandleTypeFlagBits:
  ◦ VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_D3D12_FENCE_BIT_KHR
  ◦ VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_FD_BIT_KHR
  ◦ VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_BIT_KHR
  ◦ VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_KMT_BIT_KHR
  ◦ VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_SYNC_FD_BIT_KHR
• Extending VkStructureType:
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_PROPERTIES_KHR
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_INFO_KHR
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_ID_PROPERTIES_KHR

Version History

• Revision 1, 2016-10-20 (James Jones)
  ◦ Initial revision

VK_KHR_external_semaphore_fd

Name String

  VK_KHR_external_semaphore_fd
Extension Type
Device extension

Registered Extension Number
80

Revision
1

Extension and Version Dependencies
• Requires Vulkan 1.0
• Requires VK_KHR_external_semaphore

Contact
• James Jones cubanismo

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
2016-10-21

IP Status
No known IP claims.

Contributors
• Jesse Hall, Google
• James Jones, NVIDIA
• Jeff Juliano, NVIDIA
• Carsten Rohde, NVIDIA

Description
An application using external memory may wish to synchronize access to that memory using semaphores. This extension enables an application to export semaphore payload to and import semaphore payload from POSIX file descriptors.

New Commands
• vkGetSemaphoreFdKHR
• vkImportSemaphoreFdKHR

New Structures
• VkImportSemaphoreFdInfoKHR
• VkSemaphoreGetFdInfoKHR
New Enum Constants

- VK_KHR_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_FD_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_FD_SPEC_VERSION
- Extending VkStructureType:
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMPORT_SEMAPHORE_FD_INFO_KHR
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SEMAPHORE_GET_FD_INFO_KHR

Issues

1) Does the application need to close the file descriptor returned by vkGetSemaphoreFdKHR?

**RESOLVED**: Yes, unless it is passed back in to a driver instance to import the semaphore. A successful get call transfers ownership of the file descriptor to the application, and a successful import transfers it back to the driver. Destroying the original semaphore object will not close the file descriptor or remove its reference to the underlying semaphore resource associated with it.

Version History

- Revision 1, 2016-10-21 (Jesse Hall)
  - Initial revision

**VK_KHR_external_semaphore_win32**

Name String

VK_KHR_external_semaphore_win32

Extension Type

Device extension

Registered Extension Number

79

Revision

1

Extension and Version Dependencies

- Requires Vulkan 1.0
- Requires VK_KHR_external_semaphore

Contact

- James Jones cubanismo

Other Extension Metadata
Description

An application using external memory may wish to synchronize access to that memory using semaphores. This extension enables an application to export semaphore payload to and import semaphore payload from Windows handles.

New Commands

- vkGetSemaphoreWin32HandleKHR
- vkImportSemaphoreWin32HandleKHR

New Structures

- VkImportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfoKHR
- VkSemaphoreGetWin32HandleInfoKHR
- Extending VkSemaphoreCreateInfo:
  - VkExportSemaphoreWin32HandleInfoKHR
- Extending VkSubmitInfo:
  - VkD3D12FenceSubmitInfoKHR

New Enum Constants

- VK_KHR_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_WIN32_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_WIN32_SPEC_VERSION
- Extending VkStructureType:
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_D3D12_FENCE_SUBMIT_INFO_KHR
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_EXPORT_SEMAPHORE_WIN32_HANDLE_INFO_KHR
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMPORT_SEMAPHORE_WIN32_HANDLE_INFO_KHR
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SEMAPHORE_GET_WIN32_HANDLE_INFO_KHR
Issues

1) Do applications need to call `CloseHandle()` on the values returned from `vkGetSemaphoreWin32HandleKHR` when `handleType` is `VK_EXTERNAL_SEMAPHORE_HANDLE_TYPE_OPAQUE_WIN32_BIT_KHR`?

RESOLVED: Yes, unless it is passed back in to another driver instance to import the object. A successful get call transfers ownership of the handle to the application. Destroying the semaphore object will not destroy the handle or the handle’s reference to the underlying semaphore resource.

2) Should the language regarding KMT/Windows 7 handles be moved to a separate extension so that it can be deprecated over time?

RESOLVED: No. Support for them can be deprecated by drivers if they choose, by no longer returning them in the supported handle types of the instance level queries.

3) Should applications be allowed to specify additional object attributes for shared handles?

RESOLVED: Yes. Applications will be allowed to provide similar attributes to those they would to any other handle creation API.

4) How do applications communicate the desired fence values to use with D3D12_FENCE-based Vulkan semaphores?

RESOLVED: There are a couple of options. The values for the signaled and reset states could be communicated up front when creating the object and remain static for the life of the Vulkan semaphore, or they could be specified using auxiliary structures when submitting semaphore signal and wait operations, similar to what is done with the keyed mutex extensions. The latter is more flexible and consistent with the keyed mutex usage, but the former is a much simpler API.

Since Vulkan tends to favor flexibility and consistency over simplicity, a new structure specifying D3D12 fence acquire and release values is added to the `vkQueueSubmit` function.

Version History

- Revision 1, 2016-10-21 (James Jones)
  - Initial revision

VK_KHR_fragment_shading_rate

Name String

`VK_KHR_fragment_shading_rate`

Extension Type

Device extension

Registered Extension Number

227
Extension and Version Dependencies

- Requires Vulkan 1.0
- Requires VK_KHR_create_renderpass2
- Requires VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2

Contact

- Tobias Hector @tobski

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date

2020-05-06

Interactions and External Dependencies

- This extension requires SPV_KHR_fragment_shading_rate.

Contributors

- Tobias Hector, AMD
- Guennadi Riguer, AMD
- Matthaeus Chajdas, AMD
- Pat Brown, Nvidia
- Matthew Netsch, Qualcomm
- Slawomir Grajewski, Intel
- Jan-Harald Fredriksen, Arm
- Jeff Bolz, Nvidia
- Contributors to the VK_NV_shading_rate_image specification
- Contributors to the VK_EXT_fragment_density_map specification

Description

This extension adds the ability to change the rate at which fragments are shaded. Rather than the usual single fragment invocation for each pixel covered by a primitive, multiple pixels can be shaded by a single fragment shader invocation.

Up to three methods are available to the application to change the fragment shading rate:

- Pipeline Fragment Shading Rate, which allows the specification of a rate per-draw.
- Primitive Fragment Shading Rate, which allows the specification of a rate per primitive, specified during shading.
- Attachment Fragment Shading Rate, which allows the specification of a rate per-region of the
framebuffer, specified in a specialized image attachment.

Additionally, these rates can all be specified and combined in order to adjust the overall detail in the image at each point.

This functionality can be used to focus shading efforts where higher levels of detail are needed in some parts of a scene compared to others. This can be particularly useful in high resolution rendering, or for XR contexts.

This extension also adds support for the SPV_KHR_fragment_shading_rate extension which enables setting the primitive fragment shading rate, and allows querying the final shading rate from a fragment shader.

**New Commands**

- `vkCmdSetFragmentShadingRateKHR`
- `vkGetPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRatesKHR`

**New Structures**

- `VkPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRateKHR`
- Extending `VkGraphicsPipelineCreateInfo`:
  - `VkPipelineFragmentShadingRateStateCreateInfoKHR`
- Extending `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2, VkDeviceCreateInfo`:
  - `VkPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRateFeaturesKHR`
- Extending `VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2`:
  - `VkPhysicalDeviceFragmentShadingRatePropertiesKHR`
- Extending `VkSubpassDescription2`:
  - `VkFragmentShadingRateAttachmentInfoKHR`

**New Enums**

- `VkFragmentShadingRateCombinerOpKHR`

**New Enum Constants**

- `VK_KHR_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_EXTENSION_NAME`
- `VK_KHR_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_SPEC_VERSION`
- Extending `VkAccessFlagBits`:
  - `VK_ACCESS_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_READ_BIT_KHR`
- Extending `VkDynamicState`:
  - `VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_KHR`
- Extending `VkFormatFeatureFlagBits`:

---

1762 | Appendix E: Layers & Extensions (Informative)
Extending `VkImageLayout`:
- `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL_KHR`

Extending `VkImageUsageFlagBits`:
- `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_BIT_KHR`

Extending `VkPipelineStageFlagBits`:
- `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_BIT_KHR`

Extending `VkStructureType`:
- `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_ATTACHMENT_INFO_KHR`
- `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_FEATURES_KHR`
- `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_KHR`
- `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_PROPERTIES_KHR`
- `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_FRAGMENT_SHADING_RATE_STATE_CREATE_INFO_KHR`

Version History

- Revision 1, 2020-05-06 (Tobias Hector)
  - Initial revision

**VK_KHR_get_display_properties2**

**Name String**

`VK_KHR_get_display_properties2`

**Extension Type**

Instance extension

**Registered Extension Number**

122

**Revision**

1

**Extension and Version Dependencies**

- Requires Vulkan 1.0
- Requires `VK_KHR_display`

**Contact**

- James Jones 🗳️ cubanismo
**Other Extension Metadata**

**Last Modified Date**
2017-02-21

**IP Status**
No known IP claims.

**Contributors**
- Ian Elliott, Google
- James Jones, NVIDIA

**Description**
This extension provides new entry points to query device display properties and capabilities in a way that can be easily extended by other extensions, without introducing any further entry points. This extension can be considered the `VK_KHR_display` equivalent of the `VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2` extension.

**New Commands**
- `vkGetDisplayModeProperties2KHR`
- `vkGetDisplayPlaneCapabilities2KHR`
- `vkGetPhysicalDeviceDisplayPlaneProperties2KHR`
- `vkGetPhysicalDeviceDisplayProperties2KHR`

**New Structures**
- `VkDisplayModeProperties2KHR`
- `VkDisplayPlaneCapabilities2KHR`
- `VkDisplayPlaneInfo2KHR`
- `VkDisplayPlaneProperties2KHR`
- `VkDisplayProperties2KHR`

**New Enum Constants**
- `VK_KHR_GET_DISPLAY_PROPERTIES_2_EXTENSION_NAME`
- `VK_KHR_GET_DISPLAY_PROPERTIES_2_SPEC_VERSION`
- Extending `VkStructureType`:
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DISPLAY_MODE_PROPERTIES_2_KHR`
Issues

1) What should this extension be named?

RESOLVED: VK_KHR_get_display_properties2. Other alternatives:

- VK_KHR_display2
- One extension, combined with VK_KHR_surface_capabilities2.

2) Should extensible input structs be added for these new functions:

RESOLVED:

- vkGetPhysicalDeviceDisplayProperties2KHR: No. The only current input is a VkPhysicalDevice. Other inputs would not make sense.
- vkGetPhysicalDeviceDisplayPlaneProperties2KHR: No. The only current input is a VkPhysicalDevice. Other inputs wouldn’t make sense.
- vkGetDisplayModeProperties2KHR: No. The only current inputs are a VkPhysicalDevice and a VkDisplayModeKHR. Other inputs wouldn’t make sense.

3) Should additional display query functions be extended?

RESOLVED:

- vkGetDisplayPlaneSupportedDisplaysKHR: No. Extensions should instead extend vkGetDisplayPlaneCapabilitiesKHR().

Version History

- Revision 1, 2017-02-21 (James Jones)
  - Initial draft.

VK_KHR_get_memory_requirements2

Name String

VK_KHR_get_memory_requirements2

Extension Type

Device extension

Registered Extension Number

147

Revision

1
Description

This extension provides new entry points to query memory requirements of images and buffers in a way that can be easily extended by other extensions, without introducing any further entry points. The Vulkan 1.0 `VkMemoryRequirements` and `VkSparseImageMemoryRequirements` structures do not include `sType` and `pNext` members. This extension wraps them in new structures with these members, so an application can query a chain of memory requirements structures by constructing the chain and letting the implementation fill them in. A new command is added for each `vkGet*MemoryRequirements` command in core Vulkan 1.0.

Promotion to Vulkan 1.1

All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.1, with the KHR suffix omitted. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

New Commands

- `vkGetBufferMemoryRequirements2KHR`
- `vkGetImageMemoryRequirements2KHR`
- `vkGetImageSparseMemoryRequirements2KHR`
New Structures

- VkBufferMemoryRequirementsInfo2KHR
- VkImageMemoryRequirementsInfo2KHR
- VkImageSparseMemoryRequirementsInfo2KHR
- VkMemoryRequirements2KHR
- VkSparseImageMemoryRequirements2KHR

New Enum Constants

- VK_KHR_GET_MEMORY_REQUIREMENTS_2_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_GET_MEMORY_REQUIREMENTS_2_SPEC_VERSION
- Extending VkStructureType:
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BUFFER_MEMORY_REQUIREMENTS_INFO_2_KHR
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_MEMORY_REQUIREMENTS_INFO_2_KHR
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_SPARSE_MEMORY_REQUIREMENTS_INFO_2_KHR
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_MEMORY_REQUIREMENTS_2_KHR
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SPARSE_IMAGE_MEMORY_REQUIREMENTS_2_KHR

Version History

- Revision 1, 2017-03-23 (Jason Ekstrand)
  - Internal revisions

VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2

Name String

VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2

Extension Type

Instance extension

Registered Extension Number

60

Revision

2

Extension and Version Dependencies

- Requires Vulkan 1.0

Deprecation state

- Promoted to Vulkan 1.1
Description

This extension provides new entry points to query device features, device properties, and format properties in a way that can be easily extended by other extensions, without introducing any further entry points. The Vulkan 1.0 feature/limit/formatproperty structures do not include sType/pNext members. This extension wraps them in new structures with sType/pNext members, so an application can query a chain of feature/limit/formatproperty structures by constructing the chain and letting the implementation fill them in. A new command is added for each vkGetPhysicalDevice* command in core Vulkan 1.0. The new feature structure (and a pNext chain of extending structures) can also be passed in to device creation to enable features.

This extension also allows applications to use the physical-device components of device extensions before vkCreateDevice is called.

Promotion to Vulkan 1.1

All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.1, with the KHR suffix omitted. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

New Commands

- vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2KHR
- vkGetPhysicalDeviceFormatProperties2KHR
- vkGetPhysicalDeviceImageFormatProperties2KHR
- vkGetPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties2KHR
- vkGetPhysicalDeviceProperties2KHR
- vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyProperties2KHR
• vkGetPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatProperties2KHR

New Structures

• VkFormatProperties2KHR
• VkImageFormatProperties2KHR
• VkPhysicalDeviceImageFormatInfo2KHR
• VkPhysicalDeviceMemoryProperties2KHR
• VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2KHR
• VkPhysicalDeviceSparseImageFormatInfo2KHR
• VkQueueFamilyProperties2KHR
• VkSparseImageFormatProperties2KHR
• Extending VkDeviceCreateInfo:
  ◦ VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2KHR

New Enum Constants

• VK_KHR_GET_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_PROPERTIES_2_EXTENSION_NAME
• VK_KHR_GET_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_PROPERTIES_2_SPEC_VERSION
• Extending VkStructureType:
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_FORMAT_PROPERTIES_2_KHR
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_FORMAT_PROPERTIES_2_KHR
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_FEATURES_2_KHR
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_IMAGE_FORMAT_INFO_2_KHR
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_MEMORY_PROPERTIES_2_KHR
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_PROPERTIES_2_KHR
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SPARSE_IMAGE_FORMAT_INFO_2_KHR
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_QUEUE_FAMILY_PROPERTIES_2_KHR
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SPARSE_IMAGE_FORMAT_PROPERTIES_2_KHR

Examples
Get features with a hypothetical future extension.

```c
VkHypotheticalExtensionFeaturesKHR hypotheticalFeatures = {
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_HYPOTHETICAL_FEATURES_KHR,    // sType
    NULL,                                           // pNext
};

VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2KHR features = {
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_FEATURES_2_KHR, // sType
    &hypotheticalFeatures,                            // pNext
};
```

After this call, features and hypotheticalFeatures have been filled out.

```c
vkGetPhysicalDeviceFeatures2KHR(physicalDevice, &features);
```

Properties/limits can be chained and queried similarly.

Enable some features:

```c
VkHypotheticalExtensionFeaturesKHR enabledHypotheticalFeatures = {
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_HYPOTHETICAL_FEATURES_KHR,    // sType
    NULL,                                           // pNext
};

VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2KHR enabledFeatures = {
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_FEATURES_2_KHR, // sType
    &enabledHypotheticalFeatures,                    // pNext
};
```

```c
enabledFeatures.features.xyz = VK_TRUE;
enabledHypotheticalFeatures.abc = VK_TRUE;
```

```c
VkDeviceCreateInfo deviceCreateInfo = {
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DEVICE_CREATE_INFO,           // sType
    &enabledFeatures,                               // pNext
    ...                                             // pNext
    NULL,                                           // pNext
    pEnabledFeatures
};
```

```c
VkDevice device;
vkCreateDevice(physicalDevice, &deviceCreateInfo, NULL, &device);
```

**Version History**

- Revision 1, 2016-09-12 (Jeff Bolz)
This extension provides new entry points to query device surface capabilities in a way that can be easily extended by other extensions, without introducing any further entry points. This extension can be considered the `VK_KHR_surface` equivalent of the `VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2` extension.
New Commands

- `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceCapabilities2KHR`
- `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceFormats2KHR`

New Structures

- `VkPhysicalDeviceSurfaceInfo2KHR`
- `VkSurfaceCapabilities2KHR`
- `VkSurfaceFormat2KHR`

New Enum Constants

- `VK_KHR_GET_SURFACE_CAPABILITIES_2_EXTENSION_NAME`
- `VK_KHR_GET_SURFACE_CAPABILITIES_2_SPEC_VERSION`
- Extending `VkStructureType`:
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SURFACE_INFO_2_KHR`
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SURFACE_CAPABILITIES_2_KHR`
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SURFACE_FORMAT_2_KHR`

Issues

1) What should this extension be named?

**RESOLVED:** `VK_KHR_get_surface_capabilities2`. Other alternatives:

- `VK_KHR_surface2`
- One extension, combining a separate display-specific query extension.

2) Should additional WSI query functions be extended?

**RESOLVED:**

- `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR`: Yes. The need for this motivated the extension.
- `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceSupportKHR`: No. Currently only has boolean output. Extensions should instead extend `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceCapabilities2KHR`.
- `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceFormatsKHR`: Yes.
- `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfacePresentModesKHR`: No. Recent discussion concluded this introduced too much variability for applications to deal with. Extensions should instead extend `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceCapabilities2KHR`.
- `vkGetPhysicalDeviceXlibPresentationSupportKHR`: Not in this extension.
- `vkGetPhysicalDeviceXcbPresentationSupportKHR`: Not in this extension.
- `vkGetPhysicalDeviceWaylandPresentationSupportKHR`: Not in this extension.
• `vkGetPhysicalDeviceWin32PresentationSupportKHR`: Not in this extension.

**Version History**

• Revision 1, 2017-02-27 (James Jones)
  ◦ Initial draft.

**VK_KHR_image_format_list**

**Name String**

`VK_KHR_image_format_list`

**Extension Type**

Device extension

**Registered Extension Number**

148

**Revision**

1

**Extension and Version Dependencies**

• Requires Vulkan 1.0

**Deprecation state**

• *Promoted* to Vulkan 1.2

**Contact**

• Jason Ekstrand @jekstrand

**Other Extension Metadata**

**Last Modified Date**

2017-03-20

**Interactions and External Dependencies**

• Promoted to Vulkan 1.2 Core

**IP Status**

No known IP claims.

**Contributors**

• Jason Ekstrand, Intel
• Jan-Harald Fredriksen, ARM
• Jeff Bolz, NVIDIA
• Jeff Leger, Qualcomm
Description

On some implementations, setting the `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_MUTABLE_FORMAT_BIT` on image creation can cause access to that image to perform worse than an equivalent image created without `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_MUTABLE_FORMAT_BIT` because the implementation does not know what view formats will be paired with the image.

This extension allows an application to provide the list of all formats that can be used with an image when it is created. The implementation may then be able to create a more efficient image that supports the subset of formats required by the application without having to support all formats in the format compatibility class of the image format.

Promotion to Vulkan 1.2

All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.2, with the KHR suffix omitted. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

New Structures

- Extending `VkImageCreateInfo`, `VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR`, `VkPhysicalDeviceImageFormatInfo2`:
  - `VkImageFormatListCreateInfoKHR`

New Enum Constants

- `VK_KHR_IMAGE_FORMAT_LIST_EXTENSION_NAME`
- `VK_KHR_IMAGE_FORMAT_LIST_SPEC_VERSION`
- Extending `VkStructureType`:
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_FORMAT_LIST_CREATE_INFO_KHR`

Version History

- Revision 1, 2017-03-20 (Jason Ekstrand)
  - Initial revision

VK_KHR_imageless_framebuffer

Name String

- `VK_KHR_imageless_framebuffer`

Extension Type

- Device extension

Registered Extension Number

- 109
Revision
1

Extension and Version Dependencies
- Requires Vulkan 1.0
- Requires VK_KHR_maintenance2
- Requires VK_KHR_image_format_list

Deprecation state
- Promoted to Vulkan 1.2

Contact
- Tobias Hector 🌐tobias

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
2018-12-14

Interactions and External Dependencies
- Promoted to Vulkan 1.2 Core

Contributors
- Tobias Hector
- Graham Wihlidal

Description
This extension allows framebuffers to be created without the need for creating images first, allowing more flexibility in how they are used, and avoiding the need for many of the confusing compatibility rules.

Framebuffers are now created with a small amount of additional metadata about the image views that will be used in VkFramebufferAttachmentsCreateInfoKHR, and the actual image views are provided at render pass begin time via VkRenderPassAttachmentBeginInfoKHR.

Promotion to Vulkan 1.2
All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.2, with the KHR suffix omitted. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

New Structures
- VkFramebufferAttachmentImageInfoKHR
- Extending VkFramebufferCreateInfo:
  - VkFramebufferAttachmentsCreateInfoKHR
• Extending VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2, VkDeviceCreateInfo:
  ◦ VkPhysicalDeviceImagelessFramebufferFeaturesKHR

• Extending VkRenderPassBeginInfo:
  ◦ VkRenderPassAttachmentBeginInfoKHR

New Enum Constants

• VK_KHR_IMAGELESS_FRAMEBUFFER_EXTENSION_NAME
• VK_KHR_IMAGELESS_FRAMEBUFFER_SPEC_VERSION

• Extending VkFramebufferCreateFlagBits:
  ◦ VK_FRAMEBUFFER_CREATE_IMAGELESS_BIT_KHR

• Extending VkStructureType:
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_FRAMEBUFFER_ATTACHMENTS_CREATE_INFO_KHR
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_FRAMEBUFFER_ATTACHMENT_IMAGE_INFO_KHR
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_IMAGELESS_FRAMEBUFFER_FEATURES_KHR
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RENDER_PASS_ATTACHMENT_BEGIN_INFO_KHR

Version History

• Revision 1, 2018-12-14 (Tobias Hector)
  ◦ Internal revisions

VK_KHR_incremental_present

Name String

VK_KHR_incremental_present

Extension Type

Device extension

Registered Extension Number

85

Revision

2

Extension and Version Dependencies

• Requires Vulkan 1.0
• Requires VK_KHR_swapchain

Contact

• Ian Elliott @ianelliottus
Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
2016-11-02

IP Status
No known IP claims.

Contributors
- Ian Elliott, Google
- Jesse Hall, Google
- Alon Or-bach, Samsung
- James Jones, NVIDIA
- Daniel Rakos, AMD
- Ray Smith, ARM
- Mika Isojarvi, Google
- Jeff Juliano, NVIDIA
- Jeff Bolz, NVIDIA

Description
This device extension extends `vkQueuePresentKHR`, from the `VK_KHR_swapchain` extension, allowing an application to specify a list of rectangular, modified regions of each image to present. This should be used in situations where an application is only changing a small portion of the presentable images within a swapchain, since it enables the presentation engine to avoid wasting time presenting parts of the surface that have not changed.

This extension is leveraged from the `EGL_KHR_swap_buffers_with_damage` extension.

New Structures
- `VkPresentRegionKHR`
- `VkRectLayerKHR`
- Extending `VkPresentInfoKHR`:
  - `VkPresentRegionsKHR`

New Enum Constants
- `VK_KHR_INCREMENTAL_PRESENT_EXTENSION_NAME`
- `VK_KHR_INCREMENTAL_PRESENT_SPEC_VERSION`
- Extending `VkStructureType`:
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PRESENT_REGIONS_KHR`
Issues

1) How should we handle steroescopic-3D swapchains? We need to add a layer for each rectangle. One approach is to create another struct containing the `VkRect2D` plus layer, and have `VkPresentRegionsKHR` point to an array of that struct. Another approach is to have two parallel arrays, `pRectangles` and `pLayers`, where `pRectangles[i]` and `pLayers[i]` must be used together. Which approach should we use, and if the array of a new structure, what should that be called?

**RESOLVED:** Create a new structure, which is a `VkRect2D` plus a layer, and will be called `VkRectLayerKHR`.

2) Where is the origin of the `VkRectLayerKHR`?

**RESOLVED:** The upper left corner of the presentable image(s) of the swapchain, per the definition of framebuffer coordinates.

3) Does the rectangular region, `VkRectLayerKHR`, specify pixels of the swapchain's image(s), or of the surface?

**RESOLVED:** Of the image(s). Some presentation engines may scale the pixels of a swapchain's image(s) to the size of the surface. The size of the swapchain's image(s) will be consistent, where the size of the surface may vary over time.

4) What if all of the rectangles for a given swapchain contain a width and/or height of zero?

**RESOLVED:** The application is indicating that no pixels changed since the last present. The presentation engine may use such a hint and not update any pixels for the swapchain. However, all other semantics of `vkQueuePresentKHR` must still be honored, including waiting for semaphores to signal.

5) When the swapchain is created with `VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR::preTransform` set to a value other than `VK_SURFACE_TRANSFORM_IDENTITY_BIT_KHR`, should the rectangular region, `VkRectLayerKHR`, be transformed to align with the `preTransform`?

**RESOLVED:** No. The rectangular region in `VkRectLayerKHR` should not be tranformed. As such, it may not align with the extents of the swapchain's image(s). It is the responsibility of the presentation engine to transform the rectangular region. This matches the behavior of the Android presentation engine, which set the precedent.

Version History

- Revision 1, 2016-11-02 (Ian Elliott)
  - Internal revisions
- Revision 2, 2021-03-18 (Ian Elliott)
  - Clarified alignment of rectangles for presentation engines that support transformed swapchains.
VK_KHR_maintenance1

Name String
VK_KHR_maintenance1

Extension Type
Device extension

Registered Extension Number
70

Revision
2

Extension and Version Dependencies
• Requires Vulkan 1.0

Deprecation state
• Promoted to Vulkan 1.1

Contact
• Piers Daniell pdaniell-nv

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
2018-03-13

Interactions and External Dependencies
• Promoted to Vulkan 1.1 Core

Contributors
• Dan Ginsburg, Valve
• Daniel Koch, NVIDIA
• Daniel Rakos, AMD
• Jan-Harald Fredriksen, ARM
• Jason Ekstrand, Intel
• Jeff Bolz, NVIDIA
• Jesse Hall, Google
• John Kessenich, Google
• Michael Worcester, Imagination Technologies
• Neil Henning, Codeplay Software Ltd.
• Piers Daniell, NVIDIA
• Slawomir Grajewski, Intel
VK_KHR_maintenance1 adds a collection of minor features that were intentionally left out or overlooked from the original Vulkan 1.0 release.

The new features are as follows:

- Allow 2D and 2D array image views to be created from 3D images, which can then be used as color framebuffer attachments. This allows applications to render to slices of a 3D image.

- Support `vkCmdCopyImage` between 2D array layers and 3D slices. This extension allows copying from layers of a 2D array image to slices of a 3D image and vice versa.

- Allow negative height to be specified in the `VkViewport::height` field to perform y-inversion of the clip-space to framebuffer-space transform. This allows apps to avoid having to use `gl_Position.y = -gl_Position.y` in shaders also targeting other APIs.

- Allow implementations to express support for doing just transfers and clears of image formats that they otherwise support no other format features for. This is done by adding new format feature flags `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT_KHR` and `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT_KHR`.

- Support `vkCmdFillBuffer` on transfer-only queues. Previously `vkCmdFillBuffer` was defined to only work on command buffers allocated from command pools which support graphics or compute queues. It is now allowed on queues that just support transfer operations.

- Fix the inconsistency of how error conditions are returned between the `vkCreateGraphicsPipelines` and `vkCreateComputePipelines` functions and the `vkAllocateDescriptorSets` and `vkAllocateCommandBuffers` functions.

- Add new `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_POOL_MEMORY_KHR` error so implementations can give a more precise reason for `vkAllocateDescriptorSets` failures.

- Add a new command `vkTrimCommandPoolKHR` which gives the implementation an opportunity to release any unused command pool memory back to the system.

Promotion to Vulkan 1.1

All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.1, with the KHR suffix omitted. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

New Commands

- `vkTrimCommandPoolKHR`

New Bitmasks

- `VkCommandPoolTrimFlagsKHR`
New Enum Constants

- `VK_KHR_MAINTENANCE1_EXTENSION_NAME`
- `VK_KHR_MAINTENANCE1_SPEC_VERSION`

Extending `VkFormatFeatureFlagBits`:
- `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_TRANSFER_DST_BIT_KHR`
- `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_TRANSFER_SRC_BIT_KHR`

Extending `VkImageCreateFlagBits`:
- `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_2D_ARRAY_COMPATIBLE_BIT_KHR`

Extending `VkResult`:
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_POOL_MEMORY_KHR`

Issues

1. Are viewports with zero height allowed?

   **RESOLVED**: Yes, although they have low utility.

Version History

- Revision 1, 2016-10-26 (Piers Daniell)
  - Internal revisions
- Revision 2, 2018-03-13 (Jon Leech)
  - Add issue for zero-height viewports

**VK_KHR_maintenance2**

Name String

`VK_KHR_maintenance2`

Extension Type

Device extension

Registered Extension Number

118

Revision

1

Extension and Version Dependencies

- Requires Vulkan 1.0

Deprecation state

- *Promoted* to Vulkan 1.1
Description

VK_KHR_maintenance2 adds a collection of minor features that were intentionally left out or overlooked from the original Vulkan 1.0 release.

The new features are as follows:

- Allow the application to specify which aspect of an input attachment might be read for a given subpass.
- Allow implementations to express the clipping behavior of points.
- Allow creating images with usage flags that may not be supported for the base image’s format, but are supported for image views of the image that have a different but compatible format.
- Allow creating uncompressed image views of compressed images.
- Allow the application to select between an upper-left and lower-left origin for the tessellation domain space.
- Adds two new image layouts for depth stencil images to allow either the depth or stencil aspect to be read-only while the other aspect is writable.

Input Attachment Specification

Input attachment specification allows an application to specify which aspect of a multi-aspect image (e.g. a combined depth stencil format) will be accessed via a subpassLoad operation.
On some implementations there **may** be a performance penalty if the implementation does not know (at `vkCreateRenderPass` time) which aspect(s) of multi-aspect images **can** be accessed as input attachments.

**Promotion to Vulkan 1.1**

All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.1, with the KHR suffix omitted. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

**New Structures**

- `VkInputAttachmentAspectReferenceKHR`
- Extending `VkImageViewCreateInfo`:
  - `VkImageViewUsageCreateInfoKHR`
- Extending `VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2`:
  - `VkPhysicalDevicePointClippingPropertiesKHR`
- Extending `VkPipelineTessellationStateCreateInfo`:
  - `VkPipelineTessellationDomainOriginStateCreateInfoKHR`
- Extending `VkRenderPassCreateInfo`:
  - `VkRenderPassInputAttachmentAspectCreateInfoKHR`

**New Enums**

- `VkPointClippingBehaviorKHR`
- `VkTessellationDomainOriginKHR`

**New Enum Constants**

- `VK_KHR_MAINTENANCE2_EXTENSION_NAME`
- `VK_KHR_MAINTENANCE2_SPEC_VERSION`
- Extending `VkImageCreateFlagBits`:
  - `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_BLOCK_TEXEL_VIEW_COMPATIBLE_BIT_KHR`
  - `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_EXTENDED_USAGE_BIT_KHR`
- Extending `VkImageLayout`:
  - `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL_KHR`
  - `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL_KHR`
- Extending `VkPointClippingBehavior`:
  - `VK_POINT_CLIPPING_BEHAVIOR_ALL_CLIP_PLANES_KHR`
  - `VK_POINT_CLIPPING_BEHAVIOR_USER_CLIP_PLANES_ONLY_KHR`
- Extending `VkStructureType`:
• Extending VkTessellationDomainOrigin:
  ◦ VK_TESSELLATION_DOMAIN_ORIGIN_LOWER_LEFT_KHR
  ◦ VK_TESSELLATION_DOMAIN_ORIGIN_UPPER_LEFT_KHR

Input Attachment Specification Example

Consider the case where a render pass has two subpasses and two attachments.

Attachment 0 has the format VK_FORMAT_D24_UNORM_S8_UINT, attachment 1 has some color format.

Subpass 0 writes to attachment 0, subpass 1 reads only the depth information from attachment 0 (using inputAttachmentRead) and writes to attachment 1.

```c
VkInputAttachmentAspectReferenceKHR references[] = {
    {
        .subpass = 1,
        .inputAttachmentIndex = 0,
        .aspectMask = VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_DEPTH_BIT
    }
};

VkRenderPassInputAttachmentAspectCreateInfoKHR specifyAspects = {
    .sType = VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RENDER_PASS_INPUT_ATTACHMENT_ASPECT_CREATE_INFO_KHR,
    .pNext = NULL,
    .aspectReferenceCount = 1,
    .pAspectReferences = references
};

VkRenderPassCreateInfo createInfo = {
    ...
    .pNext = &specifyAspects,
    ...
};

vkCreateRenderPass(...);
```

Issues

1) What is the default tessellation domain origin?

**Resolved:** Vulkan 1.0 originally inadvertently documented a lower-left origin, but the
conformance tests and all implementations implemented an upper-left origin. This extension adds a control to select between lower-left (for compatibility with OpenGL) and upper-left, and we retroactively fix unextended Vulkan to have a default of an upper-left origin.

**Version History**

- Revision 1, 2017-04-28

**VK_KHR_maintenance3**

**Name String**

VK_KHR_maintenance3

**Extension Type**

Device extension

**Registered Extension Number**

169

**Revision**

1

**Extension and Version Dependencies**

- Requires Vulkan 1.0
- Requires VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2

**Deprecation state**

- Promoted to Vulkan 1.1

**Contact**

- Jeff Bolz [jeffbolznv](mailto:jeffbolznv)

**Other Extension Metadata**

**Last Modified Date**

2017-09-05

**Interactions and External Dependencies**

- Promoted to Vulkan 1.1 Core

**Contributors**

- Jeff Bolz, NVIDIA

**Description**

VK_KHR_maintenance3 adds a collection of minor features that were intentionally left out or overlooked from the original Vulkan 1.0 release.
The new features are as follows:

- A limit on the maximum number of descriptors that are supported in a single descriptor set layout. Some implementations have a limit on the total size of descriptors in a set, which cannot be expressed in terms of the limits in Vulkan 1.0.
- A limit on the maximum size of a single memory allocation. Some platforms have kernel interfaces that limit the maximum size of an allocation.

**Promotion to Vulkan 1.1**

All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.1, with the KHR suffix omitted. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

**New Commands**

- vkGetDescriptorSetLayoutSupportKHR

**New Structures**

- VkDescriptorSetLayoutSupportKHR
- Extending VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2:
  - VkPhysicalDeviceMaintenance3PropertiesKHR

**New Enum Constants**

- VK_KHR_MAINTENANCE3_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_MAINTENANCE3_SPEC_VERSION
- Extending VkStructureType:
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_DESCRIPTOR_SET_LAYOUT_SUPPORT_KHR
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_MAINTENANCE_3_PROPERTIES_KHR

**Version History**

- Revision 1, 2017-08-22

**VK_KHR_multiview**

**Name String**

```
VK_KHR_multiview
```

**Extension Type**

Device extension

**Registered Extension Number**

54
Extension and Version Dependencies

- Requires Vulkan 1.0
- Requires VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2

Deprecation state

- Promoted to Vulkan 1.1

Contact

- Jeff Bolz @jeffbolznv

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date

2016-10-28

IP Status

No known IP claims.

Interactions and External Dependencies

- Promoted to Vulkan 1.1 Core
- This extension requires SPV_KHR_multiview
- This extension provides API support for GL_EXT_multiview

Contributors

- Jeff Bolz, NVIDIA

Description

This extension has the same goal as the OpenGL ES GL_OVR_multiview extension. Multiview is a rendering technique originally designed for VR where it is more efficient to record a single set of commands to be executed with slightly different behavior for each “view”.

It includes a concise way to declare a render pass with multiple views, and gives implementations freedom to render the views in the most efficient way possible. This is done with a multiview configuration specified during render pass creation with the VkRenderPassMultiviewCreateInfo passed into VkRenderPassCreateInfo::pNext.

This extension enables the use of the SPV_KHR_multiview shader extension, which adds a new ViewIndex built-in type that allows shaders to control what to do for each view. If using GLSL there is also the GL_EXT_multiview extension that introduces a highp int gl_ViewIndex; built-in variable for vertex, tessellation, geometry, and fragment shaders.
Promotion to Vulkan 1.1

All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.1, with the KHR suffix omitted. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

New Structures

- Extending `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2`, `VkDeviceCreateInfo`:
  - `VkPhysicalDeviceMultiviewFeaturesKHR`
- Extending `VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2`:
  - `VkPhysicalDeviceMultiviewPropertiesKHR`
- Extending `VkRenderPassCreateInfo`:
  - `VkRenderPassMultiviewCreateInfoKHR`

New Enum Constants

- `VK_KHR_MULTIVIEW_EXTENSION_NAME`
- `VK_KHR_MULTIVIEW_SPEC_VERSION`
- Extending `VkDependencyFlagBits`:
  - `VK_DEPENDENCY_VIEW_LOCAL_BIT_KHR`
- Extending `VkStructureType`:
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_MULTIVIEW_FEATURES_KHR`
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICALDEVICE_MULTIVIEW_PROPERTIES_KHR`
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RENDER_PASS_MULTIVIEW_CREATE_INFO_KHR`

New Built-In Variables

- `ViewIndex`

New SPIR-V Capabilities

- `MultiView`

Version History

- Revision 1, 2016-10-28 (Jeff Bolz)
  - Internal revisions

VK_KHR_performance_query

Name String

`VK_KHR_performance_query`
Extension Type
   Device extension

Registered Extension Number
   117

Revision
   1

Extension and Version Dependencies
   • Requires Vulkan 1.0
   • Requires VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2

Special Use
   • Developer tools

Contact
   • Alon Or-bach @alonorbach

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
   2019-10-08

IP Status
   No known IP claims.

Contributors
   • Jesse Barker, Unity Technologies
   • Kenneth Benzie, Codeplay
   • Jan-Harald Fredriksen, ARM
   • Jeff Leger, Qualcomm
   • Jesse Hall, Google
   • Tobias Hector, AMD
   • Neil Henning, Codeplay
   • Baldur Karlsson
   • Lionel Landwerlin, Intel
   • Peter Lohrmann, AMD
   • Alon Or-bach, Samsung
   • Daniel Rakos, AMD
   • Niklas Smedberg, Unity Technologies
   • Igor Ostrowski, Intel
Description

The `VK_KHR_performance_query` extension adds a mechanism to allow querying of performance counters for use in applications and by profiling tools.

Each queue family may expose counters that can be enabled on a queue of that family. We extend `VkQueryType` to add a new query type for performance queries, and chain a structure on `VkQueryPoolCreateInfo` to specify the performance queries to enable.

New Commands

- `vkAcquireProfilingLockKHR`
- `vkEnumeratePhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyPerformanceQueryCountersKHR`
- `vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyPerformanceQueryPassesKHR`
- `vkReleaseProfilingLockKHR`

New Structures

- `VkAcquireProfilingLockInfoKHR`
- `VkPerformanceCounterDescriptionKHR`
- `VkPerformanceCounterKHR`
- Extending `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2`, `VkDeviceCreateInfo`:
  - `VkPhysicalDevicePerformanceQueryFeaturesKHR`
- Extending `VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2`:
  - `VkPhysicalDevicePerformanceQueryPropertiesKHR`
- Extending `VkQueryPoolCreateInfo`:
  - `VkQueryPoolPerformanceCreateInfoKHR`
- Extending `VkSubmitInfo`, `VkSubmitInfo2KHR`:
  - `VkPerformanceQuerySubmitInfoKHR`

New Unions

- `VkPerformanceCounterResultKHR`

New Enums

- `VkAcquireProfilingLockFlagBitsKHR`
- `VkPerformanceCounterDescriptionFlagBitsKHR`
- `VkPerformanceCounterScopeKHR`
- `VkPerformanceCounterStorageKHR`
- `VkPerformanceCounterUnitKHR`
New Bitmasks
- VkAcquireProfilingLockFlagsKHR
- VkPerformanceCounterDescriptionFlagsKHR

New Enum Constants
- VK_KHR_PERFORMANCE_QUERY_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_PERFORMANCE_QUERY_SPEC_VERSION
- Extending VkQueryType:
  - VK_QUERY_TYPE_PERFORMANCE_QUERY_KHR
- Extending VkStructureType:
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ACQUIRE_PROFILING_LOCK_INFO_KHR
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_DESCRIPTION_KHR
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_KHR
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PERFORMANCE_QUERY_SUBMIT_INFO_KHR
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_PERFORMANCE_QUERY_FEATURES_KHR
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_PERFORMANCE_QUERY_PROPERTIES_KHR
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_QUERY_POOL_PERFORMANCE_CREATE_INFO_KHR

Issues

1) Should this extension include a mechanism to begin a query in command buffer A and end the query in command buffer B?

RESOLVED No - queries are tied to command buffer creation and thus have to be encapsulated within a single command buffer.

2) Should this extension include a mechanism to begin and end queries globally on the queue, not using the existing command buffer commands?

RESOLVED No - for the same reasoning as the resolution of 1).

3) Should this extension expose counters that require multiple passes?

RESOLVED Yes - users should re-submit a command buffer with the same commands in it multiple times, specifying the pass to count as the query parameter in VkPerformanceQuerySubmitInfoKHR.

4) How to handle counters across parallel workloads?

RESOLVED In the spirit of Vulkan, a counter description flag VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_DESCRIPTION_CONCURRENTLY_IMPACTED_BIT_KHR denotes that the accuracy of a counter result is affected by parallel workloads.

5) How to handle secondary command buffers?
RESOLVED Secondary command buffers inherit any counter pass index specified in the parent primary command buffer. Note: this is no longer an issue after change from issue 10 resolution.

6) What commands does the profiling lock have to be held for?

RESOLVED For any command buffer that is being queried with a performance query pool, the profiling lock must be held while that command buffer is in the recording, executable, or pending state.

7) Should we support `vkCmdCopyQueryPoolResults`?

RESOLVED Yes.

8) Should we allow performance queries to interact with multiview?

RESOLVED Yes, but the performance queries must be performed once for each pass per view.

9) Should a `queryCount > 1` be usable for performance queries?

RESOLVED Yes. Some vendors will have costly performance counter query pool creation, and would rather if a certain set of counters were to be used multiple times that a `queryCount > 1` can be used to amortize the instantiation cost.

10) Should we introduce an indirect mechanism to set the counter pass index?

RESOLVED Specify the counter pass index at submit time instead, to avoid requiring re-recording of command buffers when multiple counter passes are needed.

**Examples**

The following example shows how to find what performance counters a queue family supports, setup a query pool to record these performance counters, how to add the query pool to the command buffer to record information, and how to get the results from the query pool.

```c
// A previously created physical device
VkPhysicalDevice physicalDevice;

// One of the queue families our device supports
uint32_t queueFamilyIndex;

uint32_t counterCount;

// Get the count of counters supported
vkEnumeratePhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyPerformanceQueryCountersKHR(
    physicalDevice,
    queueFamilyIndex,
    &counterCount,
    NULL,
    NULL);

VkPerformanceCounterKHR* counters =
```
malloc(sizeof(VkPerformanceCounterKHR) * counterCount);
VkPerformanceCounterDescriptionKHR* counterDescriptions =
    malloc(sizeof(VkPerformanceCounterDescriptionKHR) * counterCount);

// Get the counters supported
vkEnumeratePhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyPerformanceQueryCountersKHR(
    physicalDevice,
    queueFamilyIndex,
    &counterCount,
    counters,
    counterDescriptions);

// Try to enable the first 8 counters
uint32_t enabledCounters[8];

const uint32_t enabledCounterCount = min(counterCount, 8));

for (uint32_t i = 0; i < enabledCounterCount; i++) {
    enabledCounters[i] = i;
}

// A previously created device that had the performanceCounterQueryPools feature
// set to VK_TRUE
VkDevice device;

VkQueryPoolPerformanceCreateInfoKHR performanceQueryCreateInfo = {
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_QUERY_POOL_PERFORMANCE_CREATE_INFO_KHR,
    NULL,
    // Specify the queue family that this performance query is performed on
    queueFamilyIndex,
    // The number of counters to enable
    enabledCounterCount,
    // The array of indices of counters to enable
    enabledCounters
};

// Get the number of passes our counters will require.
uint32_t numPasses;

vkGetPhysicalDeviceQueueFamilyPerformanceQueryPassesKHR(
    physicalDevice,
    &performanceQueryCreateInfo,
    &numPasses);

VkQueryPoolCreateInfo queryPoolCreateInfo = {
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_QUERY_POOL_CREATE_INFO,
    &performanceQueryCreateInfo,
0,

// Using our new query type here
VK_QUERY_TYPE_PERFORMANCE_QUERY_KHR,

1,
0
};

VkQueryPool queryPool;

VkResult result = vkCreateQueryPool(
    device,
    &queryPoolCreateInfo,
    NULL,
    &queryPool);

assert(VK_SUCCESS == result);

// A queue from queueFamilyIndex
VkQueue queue;

// A command buffer we want to record counters on
VkCommandBuffer commandBuffer;

VkCommandBufferBeginInfo commandBufferBeginInfo = {
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_COMMAND_BUFFER_BEGIN_INFO,
    NULL,
    0,
    NULL
};

VkAcquireProfilingLockInfoKHR lockInfo = {
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ACQUIRE_PROFILING_LOCK_INFO_KHR,
    NULL,
    0,
    UINT64_MAX // Wait forever for the lock
};

// Acquire the profiling lock before we record command buffers
// that will use performance queries

result = vkAcquireProfilingLockKHR(device, &lockInfo);

assert(VK_SUCCESS == result);

result = vkBeginCommandBuffer(commandBuffer, &commandBufferBeginInfo);

assert(VK_SUCCESS == result);
vkCmdResetQueryPool(
    commandBuffer,
    queryPool,
    0,
    1);

vkCmdBeginQuery(
    commandBuffer,
    queryPool,
    0,
    0);

// Perform the commands you want to get performance information on
// ...

// Perform a barrier to ensure all previous commands were complete before
// ending the query
vkCmdPipelineBarrier(commandBuffer,
    VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_BOTTOM_OF_PIPE_BIT,
    VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_BOTTOM_OF_PIPE_BIT,
    0,
    0,
    NULL,
    0,
    NULL,
    0,
    NULL);

vkCmdEndQuery(
    commandBuffer,
    queryPool,
    0);

result = vkEndCommandBuffer(commandBuffer);

assert(VK_SUCCESS == result);

for (uint32_t counterPass = 0; counterPass < numPasses; counterPass++) {

    VkPerformanceQuerySubmitInfoKHR performanceQuerySubmitInfo = {
        VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PERFORMANCE_QUERY_SUBMIT_INFO_KHR,
        NULL,
        counterPass
    };

    // Submit the command buffer and wait for its completion
    // ...
}

// Release the profiling lock after the command buffer is no longer in the
vkReleaseProfilingLockKHR(device);

result = vkResetCommandBuffer(commandBuffer, 0);

assert(VK_SUCCESS == result);

// Create an array to hold the results of all counters
VkPerformanceCounterResultKHR* recordedCounters = malloc(
    sizeof(VkPerformanceCounterResultKHR) * enabledCounterCount);

result = vkGetQueryPoolResults(
    device,
    queryPool,
    0,
    1,
    sizeof(VkPerformanceCounterResultKHR) * enabledCounterCount,
    recordedCounters,
    sizeof(VkPerformanceCounterResultKHR),
    NULL);

// recordedCounters is filled with our counters, we will look at one for posterity
switch (counters[0].storage) {
    case VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_STORAGE_INT32:
        // use recordCounters[0].int32 to get at the counter result!
        break;
    case VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_STORAGE_INT64:
        // use recordCounters[0].int64 to get at the counter result!
        break;
    case VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_STORAGE_UINT32:
        // use recordCounters[0].uint32 to get at the counter result!
        break;
    case VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_STORAGE_UINT64:
        // use recordCounters[0].uint64 to get at the counter result!
        break;
    case VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_STORAGE_FLOAT32:
        // use recordCounters[0].float32 to get at the counter result!
        break;
    case VK_PERFORMANCE_COUNTER_STORAGE_FLOAT64:
        // use recordCounters[0].float64 to get at the counter result!
        break;
}

Version History

• Revision 1, 2019-10-08

VK_KHR_pipeline_executable_properties
Name String

VK_KHR_pipeline_executable_properties

Extension Type

Device extension

Registered Extension Number

270

Revision

1

Extension and Version Dependencies

• Requires Vulkan 1.0
  • Requires VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2

Special Use

• Developer tools

Contact

• Jason Ekstrand (jekstrand)

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date

2019-05-28

IP Status

No known IP claims.

Interactions and External Dependencies

Contributors

• Jason Ekstrand, Intel
• Ian Romanick, Intel
• Kenneth Graunke, Intel
• Baldur Karlsson, Valve
• Jesse Hall, Google
• Jeff Bolz, Nvidia
• Piers Daniel, Nvidia
• Tobias Hector, AMD
• Jan-Harald Fredriksen, ARM
• Tom Olson, ARM
• Daniel Koch, Nvidia
Description

When a pipeline is created, its state and shaders are compiled into zero or more device-specific executables, which are used when executing commands against that pipeline. This extension adds a mechanism to query properties and statistics about the different executables produced by the pipeline compilation process. This is intended to be used by debugging and performance tools to allow them to provide more detailed information to the user. Certain compile-time shader statistics provided through this extension may be useful to developers for debugging or performance analysis.

New Commands

• vkGetPipelineExecutableInternalRepresentationsKHR
• vkGetPipelineExecutablePropertiesKHR
• vkGetPipelineExecutableStatisticsKHR

New Structures

• VkPipelineExecutableInfoKHR
• VkPipelineExecutableInternalRepresentationKHR
• VkPipelineExecutablePropertiesKHR
• VkPipelineExecutableStatisticKHR
• VkPipelineInfoKHR
• Extending VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2, VkDeviceCreateInfo:
  ◦ VkPhysicalDevicePipelineExecutablePropertiesFeaturesKHR

New Unions

• VkPipelineExecutableStatisticValueKHR

New Enums

• VkPipelineExecutableStatisticFormatKHR

New Enum Constants

• VK_KHR_PIPELINE_EXECUTABLE_PROPERTIES_EXTENSION_NAME
• VK_KHR_PIPELINE_EXECUTABLE_PROPERTIES_SPEC_VERSION
• Extending VkPipelineCreateFlagBits:
  ◦ VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_CAPTURE_INTERNAL_REPRESENTATIONS_BIT_KHR
  ◦ VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_CAPTURE_STATISTICS_BIT_KHR
• Extending `VkStructureType`:
  ◦ `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_PIPELINE_EXECUTABLE_PROPERTIES_FEATURES_KHR`
  ◦ `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_EXECUTABLE_INFO_KHR`
  ◦ `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_EXECUTABLE_INTERNAL_REPRESENTATION_KHR`
  ◦ `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_EXECUTABLE_PROPERTIES_KHR`
  ◦ `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_EXECUTABLE_STATISTIC_KHR`
  ◦ `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_INFO_KHR`

Issues

1) What should we call the pieces of the pipeline which are produced by the compilation process and about which you can query properties and statistics?

**RESOLVED**: Call them “executables”. The name “binary” was used in early drafts of the extension but it was determined that “pipeline binary” could have a fairly broad meaning (such as a binary serialized form of an entire pipeline) and was too big of a namespace for the very specific needs of this extension.

Version History

• Revision 1, 2019-05-28 (Jason Ekstrand)
  ◦ Initial draft

**VK_KHR_pipeline_library**

Name String

`VK_KHR_pipeline_library`

Extension Type

Device extension

Registered Extension Number

291

Revision

1

Extension and Version Dependencies

• Requires Vulkan 1.0

Contact

• Christoph Kubisch [pixeljetstream](url)

Other Extension Metadata
Description

A pipeline library is a special pipeline that cannot be bound, instead it defines a set of shaders and shader groups which can be linked into other pipelines. This extension defines the infrastructure for pipeline libraries, but does not specify the creation or usage of pipeline libraries. This is left to additional dependent extensions.

New Structures

- VkPipelineLibraryCreateInfoKHR

New Enum Constants

- VK_KHR_PIPELINE_LIBRARY_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_PIPELINE_LIBRARY_SPEC_VERSION
- Extending VkPipelineCreateFlagBits:
  - VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_LIBRARY_BIT_KHR
- Extending VkStructureType:
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PIPELINE_LIBRARY_CREATE_INFO_KHR

Version History

- Revision 1, 2020-01-08 (Christoph Kubisch)
  - Initial draft.

VK_KHR_present_id

Name String

VK_KHR_present_id

Extension Type

Device extension

Registered Extension Number

295
Revision
1

Extension and Version Dependencies
• Requires Vulkan 1.0
• Requires VK_KHR_swapchain

Contact
• Keith Packard ⬆️keithp

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
2019-05-15

IP Status
No known IP claims.

Contributors
• Keith Packard, Valve
• Ian Elliott, Google
• Alon Or-bach, Samsung

Description
This device extension allows an application that uses the VK_KHR_swapchain extension to provide an identifier for present operations on a swapchain. An application can use this to reference specific present operations in other extensions.

New Structures
• Extending VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2, VkDeviceCreateInfo:
  ◦ VkPhysicalDevicePresentIdFeaturesKHR
• Extending VkPresentInfoKHR:
  ◦ VkPresentIdKHR

New Enum Constants
• VK_KHR_PRESENT_ID_EXTENSION_NAME
• VK_KHR_PRESENT_ID_SPEC_VERSION
• Extending VkStructureType:
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_PRESENT_ID_FEATURES_KHR
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PRESENT_ID_KHR
Issues
None.

Examples

Version History

• Revision 1, 2019-05-15 (Keith Packard)
  ◦ Initial version

VK_KHR_present_wait

Name String
VK_KHR_present_wait

Extension Type
Device extension

Registered Extension Number
249

Revision
1

Extension and Version Dependencies
• Requires Vulkan 1.0
• Requires VK_KHR_swapchain
• Requires VK_KHR_present_id

Contact
• Keith Packard keithp

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
2019-05-15

IP Status
No known IP claims.

Contributors
• Keith Packard, Valve
• Ian Elliott, Google
• Tobias Hector, AMD
• Daniel Stone, Collabora
Description

This device extension allows an application that uses the VK_KHR_swapchain extension to wait for present operations to complete. An application can use this to monitor and control the pacing of the application by managing the number of outstanding images yet to be presented.

New Commands

• vkWaitForPresentKHR

New Structures

• Extending VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2, VkDeviceCreateInfo:
  ◦ VkPhysicalDevicePresentWaitFeaturesKHR

New Enum Constants

• VK_KHR_PRESENT_WAIT_EXTENSION_NAME
• VK_KHR_PRESENT_WAIT_SPEC_VERSION
• Extending VkStructureType:
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_PRESENT_WAIT_FEATURES_KHR

Issues

1) When does the wait finish?

RESOLVED. The wait will finish when the present is visible to the user. There is no requirement for any precise timing relationship between the presentation of the image to the user, but implementations should signal the wait as close as possible to the presentation of the first pixel in the new image to the user.

2) Should this use fences or other existing synchronization mechanism.

RESOLVED. Because display and rendering are often implemented in separate drivers, this extension will provide a separate synchronization API.

3) Should this extension share present identification with other extensions?

RESOLVED. Yes. A new extension, VK_KHR_present_id, should be created to provide a shared structure for presentation identifiers.

4) What happens when presentations complete out of order wrt calls to vkQueuePresent? This could happen if the semaphores for the presentations were ready out of order.

OPTION A: Require that when a PresentId is set that the driver ensure that images are always presented in the order of calls to vkQueuePresent.

OPTION B: Finish both waits when the earliest present completes. This will complete the later present wait earlier than the actual presentation. This should be the easiest to implement as the
driver need only track the largest present ID completed. This is also the 'natural' consequence of interpreting the existing vkWaitForPresentKHR specification.

**OPTION C:** Finish both waits when both have completed. This will complete the earlier presentation later than the actual presentation time. This is allowed by the current specification as there is no precise timing requirement for when the presentId value is updated. This requires slightly more complexity in the driver as it will need to track all outstanding presentId values.

**Examples**

**Version History**

- Revision 1, 2019-02-19 (Keith Packard)
  - Initial version

**VK_KHR_push_descriptor**

**Name String**

`VK_KHR_push_descriptor`

**Extension Type**

Device extension

**Registered Extension Number**

81

**Revision**

2

**Extension and Version Dependencies**

- Requires Vulkan 1.0
- Requires `VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2`

**Contact**

- Jeff Bolz [jeffbolznv](mailto:jeffbolznv)

**Other Extension Metadata**

**Last Modified Date**

2017-09-12

**IP Status**

No known IP claims.

**Contributors**

- Jeff Bolz, NVIDIA
- Michael Worcester, Imagination Technologies
Description

This extension allows descriptors to be written into the command buffer, while the implementation is responsible for managing their memory. Push descriptors may enable easier porting from older APIs and in some cases can be more efficient than writing descriptors into descriptor sets.

New Commands

- vkCmdPushDescriptorSetKHR

If VK_KHR_descriptor_update_template is supported:

- vkCmdPushDescriptorSetWithTemplateKHR

New Structures

- Extending VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2:
  - VkPhysicalDevicePushDescriptorPropertiesKHR

New Enum Constants

- VK_KHR_PUSH_DESCRIPTOR_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_PUSH_DESCRIPTOR_SPEC_VERSION
- Extending VkDescriptorSetLayoutCreateFlagBits:
  - VK_DESCRIPTOR_SET_LAYOUT_CREATE_PUSH_DESCRIPTOR_BIT_KHR
- Extending VkStructureType:
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_PUSH_DESCRIPTOR_PROPERTIES_KHR

If VK_KHR_descriptor_update_template is supported:

- Extending VkDescriptorUpdateTemplateType:
  - VK_DESCRIPTOR_UPDATE_TEMPLATE_TYPE_PUSH_DESCRIPTORS_KHR

Version History

- Revision 1, 2016-10-15 (Jeff Bolz)
  - Internal revisions
- Revision 2, 2017-09-12 (Tobias Hector)
  - Added interactions with Vulkan 1.1

VK_KHR_ray_query

Name String

VK_KHR_ray_query
Extension Type
Device extension

Registered Extension Number
349

Revision
1

Extension and Version Dependencies
• Requires Vulkan 1.1
• Requires VK_KHR_spirv_1_4
• Requires VK_KHR_acceleration_structure

Contact
• Daniel Koch @dgkoch

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
2020-11-12

Interactions and External Dependencies
• This extension requires SPV_KHR_ray_query
• This extension provides API support for GLSL_EXT_ray_query

Contributors
• Matthäus Chajdas, AMD
• Greg Grebe, AMD
• Nicolai Hähnle, AMD
• Tobias Hector, AMD
• Dave Oldcorn, AMD
• Skyler Saleh, AMD
• Mathieu Robart, Arm
• Marius Bjorge, Arm
• Tom Olson, Arm
• Sebastian Tafuri, EA
• Henrik Rydgard, Embark
• Juan Cañada, Epic Games
• Patrick Kelly, Epic Games
• Yuriy O’Donnell, Epic Games
Description

Rasterization has been the dominant method to produce interactive graphics, but increasing performance of graphics hardware has made ray tracing a viable option for interactive rendering. Being able to integrate ray tracing with traditional rasterization makes it easier for applications to incrementally add ray traced effects to existing applications or to do hybrid approaches with rasterization for primary visibility and ray tracing for secondary queries.

Ray queries are available to all shader types, including graphics, compute and ray tracing pipelines. Ray queries are not able to launch additional shaders, instead returning traversal results to the...
This extension adds support for the following SPIR-V extension in Vulkan:

- **SPV_KHR_ray_query**

**New Structures**

- Extending `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2`, `VkDeviceCreateInfo`:
  - `VkPhysicalDeviceRayQueryFeaturesKHR`

**New Enum Constants**

- `VK_KHR_RAY_QUERY_EXTENSION_NAME`
- `VK_KHR_RAY_QUERY_SPEC_VERSION`

- Extending `VkStructureType`:
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_RAY_QUERY_FEATURES_KHR`

**New SPIR-V Capabilities**

- `RayQueryKHR`
- `RayTraversalPrimitiveCullingKHR`

**Sample Code**

Example of ray query in a GLSL shader

```glsl
calling shader.

rayQueryEXT rq;

rayQueryInitializeEXT(rq, accStruct, gl_RayFlagsNoneEXT, 0, origin, tMin, direction, tMax);

while(rayQueryProceedEXT(rq)) {
    if (rayQueryGetIntersectionTypeEXT(rq, false) ==
        gl_RayQueryCandidateIntersectionTriangleEXT) {
        //...
        rayQueryConfirmIntersectionEXT(rq);
    }
}

if (rayQueryGetIntersectionTypeEXT(rq, true) ==
    gl_RayQueryCommittedIntersectionNoneEXT) {
    //...
}
```
Issues

(1) What are the changes between the public provisional (VK_KHR_ray_tracing v8) release and the final (VK_KHR_acceleration_structure v11 / VK_KHR_ray_query v1) release?

• refactor VK_KHR_ray_tracing into 3 extensions, enabling implementation flexibility and decoupling ray query support from ray pipelines:
  ◦ VK_KHR_acceleration_structure (for acceleration structure operations)
  ◦ VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline (for ray tracing pipeline and shader stages)
  ◦ VK_KHR_ray_query (for ray queries in existing shader stages)
• Update SPIRV capabilities to use RayQueryKHR
• extension is no longer provisional

Version History

• Revision 1, 2020-11-12 (Mathieu Robart, Daniel Koch, Andrew Garrard)
  ◦ Decomposition of the specification, from VK_KHR_ray_tracing to VK_KHR_ray_query (#1918,!3912)
  ◦ update to use RayQueryKHR SPIR-V capability
  ◦ add numerical limits for ray parameters (#2235,!3960)
  ◦ relax formula for ray intersection candidate determination (#2322,!4080)
  ◦ restrict traces to TLAS (#2239,!4141)
  ◦ require HitT to be in ray interval for OpRayQueryGenerateIntersectionKHR (#2359,!4146)
  ◦ add ray query shader stages for AS read bit (#2407,!4203)

VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline

Name String
VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline

Extension Type
Device extension

Registered Extension Number
348

Revision
1

Extension and Version Dependencies
• Requires Vulkan 1.1
• Requires VK_KHR_spirv_1_4
• Requires VK_KHR_acceleration_structure
Contact
  • Daniel Koch dgkoch

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
  2020-11-12

Interactions and External Dependencies
  • This extension requires SPV_KHR_ray_tracing
  • This extension provides API support for GLSL_EXT_ray_tracing
  • This extension interacts with Vulkan 1.2 and VK_KHR_vulkan_memory_model, adding the shader-call-related relation of invocations, shader-call-order partial order of dynamic instances of instructions, and the ShaderCallKHR scope.
  • This extension interacts with VK_KHR_pipeline_library, enabling pipeline libraries to be used with ray tracing pipelines and enabling usage of VkRayTracingPipelineInterfaceCreateInfoKHR.

Contributors
  • Matthäus Chajdas, AMD
  • Greg Grebe, AMD
  • Nicolai Hähnle, AMD
  • Tobias Hector, AMD
  • Dave Oldcorn, AMD
  • Skyler Saleh, AMD
  • Mathieu Robart, Arm
  • Marius Bjorge, Arm
  • Tom Olson, Arm
  • Sebastian Tafuri, EA
  • Henrik Rydgard, Embark
  • Juan Cañada, Epic Games
  • Patrick Kelly, Epic Games
  • Yuriy O'Donnell, Epic Games
  • Michael Doggett, Facebook/Oculus
  • Andrew Garrard, Imagination
  • Don Scorgie, Imagination
  • Dae Kim, Imagination
  • Joshua Barczak, Intel
  • Slawek Grajewski, Intel
**Description**

Rasterization has been the dominant method to produce interactive graphics, but increasing performance of graphics hardware has made ray tracing a viable option for interactive rendering. Being able to integrate ray tracing with traditional rasterization makes it easier for applications to incrementally add ray traced effects to existing applications or to do hybrid approaches with rasterization for primary visibility and ray tracing for secondary queries.

To enable ray tracing, this extension adds a few different categories of new functionality:

- A new ray tracing pipeline type with new shader domains: ray generation, intersection, any-hit, closest hit, miss, and callable
- A shader binding indirection table to link shader groups with acceleration structure items
- Ray tracing commands which initiate the ray pipeline traversal and invocation of the various new shader domains depending on which traversal conditions are met

This extension adds support for the following SPIR-V extension in Vulkan:
New Commands

- `vkCmdSetRayTracingPipelineStackSizeKHR`
- `vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR`
- `vkCmdTraceRaysKHR`
- `vkCreateRayTracingPipelinesKHR`
- `vkGetRayTracingCaptureReplayShaderGroupHandlesKHR`
- `vkGetRayTracingShaderGroupHandlesKHR`
- `vkGetRayTracingShaderGroupStackSizeKHR`

New Structures

- `VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR`
- `VkRayTracingPipelineInterfaceCreateInfoKHR`
- `VkRayTracingShaderGroupCreateInfoKHR`
- `VkStridedDeviceAddressRegionKHR`
- `VkTraceRaysIndirectCommandKHR`
- Extending `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2`, `VkDeviceCreateInfo`:
  - `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelineFeaturesKHR`
- Extending `VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2`:
  - `VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR`

New Enums

- `VkRayTracingShaderGroupTypeKHR`
- `VkShaderGroupShaderKHR`

New Enum Constants

- `VK_KHR_RAY_TRACING_PIPELINE_EXTENSION_NAME`
- `VK_KHR_RAY_TRACING_PIPELINE_SPEC_VERSION`
- `VK_SHADER_UNUSED_KHR`
- Extending `VkBufferUsageFlagBits`:
  - `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_SHADER_BINDING_TABLE_BIT_KHR`
- Extending `VkDynamicState`:
  - `VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_RAY_TRACING_PIPELINE_STACK_SIZE_KHR`
- Extending `VkPipelineBindPoint`:
• VK_PIPELINE_BIND_POINT_RAY_TRACING_KHR

• Extending VkPipelineCreateFlagBits:
  ◦ VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_ANY_HIT_SHADERS_BIT_KHR
  ◦ VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_CLOSEST_HIT_SHADERS_BIT_KHR
  ◦ VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_INTERSECTION_SHADERS_BIT_KHR
  ◦ VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_NO_NULL_MISS_SHADERS_BIT_KHR
  ◦ VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_HANDLE_CAPTURE_REPLAY_BIT_KHR
  ◦ VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_SKIP_AABBS_BIT_KHR
  ◦ VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_SKIP_TRIANGLES_BIT_KHR

• Extending VkPipelineStageFlagBits:
  ◦ VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_BIT_KHR

• Extending VkShaderStageFlagBits:
  ◦ VK_SHADER_STAGE_ANY_HIT_BIT_KHR
  ◦ VK_SHADER_STAGE_CALLABLE_BIT_KHR
  ◦ VK_SHADER_STAGE_CLOSEST_HIT_BIT_KHR
  ◦ VK_SHADER_STAGE_INTERSECTION_BIT_KHR
  ◦ VK_SHADER_STAGE_MISS_BIT_KHR
  ◦ VK_SHADER_STAGE_RAYGEN_BIT_KHR

• Extending VkStructureType:
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_RAY_TRACING_PIPELINE_FEATURES_KHR
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_RAY_TRACING_PIPELINE_PROPERTIES_KHR
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RAY_TRACING_PIPELINE_CREATE_INFO_KHR
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RAY_TRACING_PIPELINE_INTERFACE_CREATE_INFO_KHR
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_CREATE_INFO_KHR

**New or Modified Built-In Variables**

• LaunchIdKHR
• LaunchSizeKHR
• WorldRayOriginKHR
• WorldRayDirectionKHR
• ObjectRayOriginKHR
• ObjectRayDirectionKHR
• RayTminKHR
• RayTmaxKHR
• InstanceCustomIndexKHR
• InstanceId
• ObjectToWorldKHR
• WorldToObjectKHR
• HitKindKHR
• IncomingRayFlagsKHR
• RayGeometryIndexKHR
• (modified) PrimitiveId

New SPIR-V Capabilities

• RayTracingKHR
• RayTraversalPrimitiveCullingKHR

Issues

(1) How does this extension differ from VK_NV_ray_tracing?

DISCUSSION:

The following is a summary of the main functional differences between VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline and VK_NV_ray_tracing:

• added support for indirect ray tracing (vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR)
• uses SPV_KHR_ray_tracing instead of SPV_NV_ray_tracing
  ◦ refer to KHR SPIR-V enums instead of NV SPIR-V enums (which are functionally equivalent and aliased to the same values).
  ◦ added RayGeometryIndexKHR built-in
• removed vkCompileDeferredNV compilation functionality and replaced with deferred host operations interactions for ray tracing
• added VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelineFeaturesKHR structure
• extended VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR structure
  ◦ renamed maxRecursionDepth to maxRayRecursionDepth and it has a minimum of 1 instead of 31
  ◦ require shaderGroupHandleSize to be 32 bytes
  ◦ added maxRayDispatchInvocationCount, shaderGroupHandleAlignment and maxRayHitAttributeSize
• reworked geometry structures so they could be better shared between device, host, and indirect builds
• changed SBT parameters to a structure and added size (VkStridedDeviceAddressRegionKHR)
• add parameter for requesting memory requirements for host and/or device build
• added pipeline library support for ray tracing
• added watertightness guarantees
- added no-null-shader pipeline flags (VK_PIPELINE_CREATERAY TRACING_NO NULL _SHADERS_BIT_KHR)
- added memory model interactions with ray tracing and define how subgroups work and can be repacked

(3) What are the changes between the public provisional (VK_KHR_ray_tracing v8) release and the internal provisional (VK_KHR_ray_tracing v9) release?

- Require Vulkan 1.1 and SPIR-V 1.4
- Added interactions with Vulkan 1.2 and VK_KHR_vulkan_memory_model
- added creation time capture and replay flags
  - added VK_PIPELINE_CREATE_RAY_TRACING_SHADER_GROUP_HANDLE_CAPTURE_REPLAY_BIT_KHR to VkPipelineCreateFlagBits
- replace VkStridedBufferRegionKHR with VkStridedDeviceAddressRegionKHR and change vkCmdTraceRaysKHR, vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR, to take these for the shader binding table and use device addresses instead of buffers.
- require the shader binding table buffers to have the VK_BUFFER_USAGE_RAY_TRACING_BIT_KHR set
- make VK_KHR_pipeline_library an interaction instead of required extension
- rename the libraries member of VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR to pLibraryInfo and make it a pointer
- make VK_KHR_deferred_host_operations an interaction instead of a required extension (later went back on this)
- added explicit stack size management for ray tracing pipelines
  - removed the maxCallableSize member of VkRayTracingPipelineInterfaceCreateInfoKHR
  - added the pDynamicState member to VkRayTracingPipelineCreateInfoKHR
  - added VK_DYNAMIC_STATE_RAY_TRACING_PIPELINE_STACK_SIZE_KHR dynamic state for ray tracing pipelines
    - added vkGetRayTracingShaderGroupStackSizeKHR and vkCmdSetRayTracingPipelineStackSizeKHR commands
    - added VkShaderGroupShaderKHR enum
- Added maxRayDispatchInvocationCount limit to VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR
- Added shaderGroupHandleAlignment property to VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR
- Added maxRayHitAttributeSize property to VkPhysicalDeviceRayTracingPipelinePropertiesKHR
- Clarify deferred host ops for pipeline creation
  - VkDeferredOperationKHR is now a top-level parameter for vkCreateRayTracingPipelinesKHR
  - removed VkDeferredOperationInfoKHR structure
  - change deferred host creation/return parameter behavior such that the implementation can modify such parameters until the deferred host operation completes
VK_KHR_deferred_host_operations is required again

(4) What are the changes between the internal provisional (VK_KHR_ray_tracing v9) release and the final (VK_KHR_acceleration_structure v11 / VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline v1) release?

- refactor VK_KHR_ray_tracing into 3 extensions, enabling implementation flexibility and decoupling ray query support from ray pipelines:
  - VK_KHR_acceleration_structure (for acceleration structure operations)
  - VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline (for ray tracing pipeline and shader stages)
  - VK_KHR_ray_query (for ray queries in existing shader stages)
- Require Volatile for the following builtins in the ray generation, closest hit, miss, intersection, and callable shader stages:
  - SubgroupSize, SubgroupLocalInvocationId, SubgroupEqMask, SubgroupGeMask, SubgroupGtMask, SubgroupLeMask, SubgroupLtMask
  - SMIDNV, WarpIDNV
- clarify buffer usage flags for ray tracing
  - VK_BUFFER_USAGE_SHADER_BINDING_TABLE_BIT_KHR is added as an alias of VK_BUFFER_USAGE_RAY_TRACING_BIT_NV and is required on shader binding table buffers
  - VK_BUFFER_USAGE_STORAGE_BUFFER_BIT is used in VK_KHR_acceleration_structure for scratchData
- rename maxRecursionDepth to maxRayPipelineRecursionDepth (pipeline creation) and maxRayRecursionDepth (limit) to reduce confusion
- Add queryable maxRayHitAttributeSize limit and rename members of VkRayTracingPipelineInterfaceCreateInfoKHR to maxPipelineRayPayloadSize and maxPipelineRayHitAttributeSize for clarity
- Update SPIRV capabilities to use RayTracingKHR
- extension is no longer provisional
- define synchronization requirements for indirect trace rays and indirect buffer

(5) This extension adds gl_InstanceID for the intersection, any-hit, and closest hit shaders, but in KHR_vulkan_gls, gl_InstanceID is replaced with gl_InstanceIndex. Which should be used for Vulkan in this extension?

RESOLVED: This extension uses gl_InstanceID and maps it to InstanceId in SPIR-V. It is acknowledged that this is different than other shader stages in Vulkan. There are two main reasons for the difference here:

- symmetry with gl_PrimitiveID which is also available in these shaders
- there is no “baseInstance” relevant for these shaders, and so ID makes it more obvious that this is zero-based.
**Sample Code**

Example ray generation GLSL shader

```glsl
#version 450 core
#extension GL_EXT_ray_tracing : require
layout(set = 0, binding = 0, rgba8) uniform image2D image;
layout(set = 0, binding = 1) uniform accelerationStructureEXT as;
layout(location = 0) rayPayloadEXT float payload;

void main()
{
    vec4 col = vec4(0, 0, 0, 1);

    vec3 origin = vec3(float(gl_LaunchIDEXT.x)/float(gl_LaunchSizeEXT.x), float(gl_LaunchIDEXT.y)/float(gl_LaunchSizeEXT.y), 1.0);
    vec3 dir = vec3(0.0, 0.0, -1.0);

    traceRayEXT(as, 0, 0xff, 0, 1, origin, 0.0, dir, 1000.0, 0);

    col.y = payload;

    imageStore(image, ivec2(gl_LaunchIDEXT.xy), col);
}
```

**Version History**

- Revision 1, 2020-11-12 (Mathieu Robart, Daniel Koch, Eric Werness, Tobias Hector)
  - Decomposition of the specification, from VK_KHR_ray_tracing to VK_KHR_ray_tracing_pipeline (#1918,!3912)
  - require certain subgroup and sm_shader_builtin shader builtins to be decorated as volatile in the ray generation, closest hit, miss, intersection, and callable stages (#1924,!3903,!3954)
  - clarify buffer usage flags for ray tracing (#2181,!3939)
  - rename maxRecursionDepth to maxRayPipelineRecursionDepth and maxRayRecursionDepth (#2203,!3937)
  - add queriable maxRayHitAttributeSize and rename members of VkRayTracingPipelineInterfaceCreateInfoKHR (#2102,!3966)
  - update to use RayTracingKHR SPIR-V capability
  - add VUs for matching hit group type against geometry type (#2245,!3994)
  - require RayTMaxKHR be volatile in intersection shaders (#2268,!4030)
  - add numerical limits for ray parameters (#2235,!3960)
  - fix SBT indexing rules for device addresses (#2308,!4079)
  - relax formula for ray intersection candidate determination (#2322,!4080)
add more details on ShaderRecordBufferKHR variables (#2230,!4083)
clarify valid bits for InstanceCustomIndexKHR (GLSL/GLSL#19,!4128)
allow at most one IncomingRayPayloadKHR, IncomingCallableDataKHR, and HitAttributeKHR (!4129)
ad minimum for maxShaderGroupStride (#2353,!4131)
require VK_KHR_pipeline_library extension to be supported (#2348,!4135)
clarify meaning of 'geometry index' (#2272,!4137)
restrict traces to TLAS (#2239,!4139)
add note about maxPipelineRayPayloadSize (#2383,!4172)
do not require raygen shader in pipeline libraries (!4185)
define sync for indirect trace rays and indirect buffer (#2407,!4208)

**VK_KHR_relaxed_block_layout**

**Name String**

VK_KHR_relaxed_block_layout

**Extension Type**

Device extension

**Registered Extension Number**

145

**Revision**

1

**Extension and Version Dependencies**

- Requires Vulkan 1.0

**Deprecation state**

- Promoted to Vulkan 1.1

**Contact**

- John Kessenich @johnkslang

**Other Extension Metadata**

**Last Modified Date**

2017-03-26

**IP Status**

No known IP claims.
Interactions and External Dependencies

• Promoted to Vulkan 1.1 Core

Contributors

• John Kessenich, Google

Description

The `VK_KHR_relaxed_block_layout` extension allows implementations to indicate they can support more variation in block Offset decorations. For example, placing a vector of three floats at an offset of 16×N + 4.

See Offset and Stride Assignment for details.

Promotion to Vulkan 1.1

All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.1, with the KHR suffix omitted. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

New Enum Constants

• `VK_KHR_RELAXED_BLOCK_LAYOUT_EXTENSION_NAME`
• `VK_KHR_RELAXED_BLOCK_LAYOUT_SPEC_VERSION`

Version History

• Revision 1, 2017-03-26 (JohnK)

VK_KHR_sampler_mirror_clamp_to_edge

Name String

`VK_KHR_sampler_mirror_clamp_to_edge`

Extension Type

Device extension

Registered Extension Number

15

Revision

3

Extension and Version Dependencies

• Requires Vulkan 1.0

Deprecation state

• Promoted to Vulkan 1.2
Description

VK_KHR_sampler_mirror_clamp_to_edge extends the set of sampler address modes to include an additional mode (VK_SAMPLER_ADDRESS_MODE_MIRROR_CLAMP_TO_EDGE) that effectively uses a texture map twice as large as the original image in which the additional half of the new image is a mirror image of the original image.

This new mode relaxes the need to generate images whose opposite edges match by using the original image to generate a matching “mirror image”. This mode allows the texture to be mirrored only once in the negative s, t, and r directions.

Promotion to Vulkan 1.2

All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.2. However, if Vulkan 1.2 is supported and this extension is not, the VkSamplerAddressMode VK_SAMPLER_ADDRESS_MODE_MIRROR_CLAMP_TO_EDGE is optional. Since the original extension did not use an author suffix on the enum VK_SAMPLER_ADDRESS_MODE_MIRROR_CLAMP_TO_EDGE, it is used by both core and extension implementations.

New Enum Constants

- VK_KHR_SAMPLER_MIRROR_CLAMP_TO_EDGE_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_SAMPLER_MIRROR_CLAMP_TO_EDGE_SPEC_VERSION
- Extending VkSamplerAddressMode:
  - VK_SAMPLER_ADDRESS_MODE_MIRROR_CLAMP_TO_EDGE

Example

Creating a sampler with the new address mode in each dimension
VkSamplerCreateInfo createInfo =
{
    VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SAMPLER_CREATE_INFO // sType
    // Other members set to application-desired values
};

createInfo.addressModeU = VK_SAMPLER_ADDRESS_MODE_MIRROR_CLAMP_TO_EDGE;
createInfo.addressModeV = VK_SAMPLER_ADDRESS_MODE_MIRROR_CLAMP_TO_EDGE;
createInfo.addressModeW = VK_SAMPLER_ADDRESS_MODE_MIRROR_CLAMP_TO_EDGE;

VkSampler sampler;
VkResult result = vkCreateSampler(
    device,
    &createInfo,
    &sampler);

Issues

1) Why are both KHR and core versions of the VK_SAMPLER_ADDRESS_MODE_MIRROR_CLAMP_TO_EDGE token present?

**RESOLVED:** This functionality was intended to be required in Vulkan 1.0. We realized shortly before public release that not all implementations could support it, and moved the functionality into an optional extension, but did not apply the KHR extension suffix. Adding a KHR-suffixed alias of the non-suffixed enum has been done to comply with our own naming rules.

In a related change, before spec revision 1.1.121 this extension was hardwiring into the spec Makefile so it was always included with the Specification, even in the core-only versions. This has now been reverted, and it is treated as any other extension.

Version History

- Revision 1, 2016-02-16 (Tobias Hector)
  - Initial draft
- Revision 2, 2019-08-14 (Jon Leech)
  - Add KHR-suffixed alias of non-suffixed enum.
- Revision 3, 2019-08-17 (Jon Leech)
  - Add an issue explaining the reason for the extension API not being suffixed with KHR.

**VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion**

**Name String**

VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion

**Extension Type**

Device extension
Registered Extension Number
157

Revision
14

Extension and Version Dependencies
- Requires Vulkan 1.0
- Requires VK_KHR_maintenance1
- Requires VK_KHR_bind_memory2
- Requires VK_KHR_get_memory_requirements2
- Requires VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2

Deprecation state
- Promoted to Vulkan 1.1

Contact
- Andrew Garrard @fluppeteer

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
2017-08-11

IP Status
No known IP claims.

Interactions and External Dependencies
- Promoted to Vulkan 1.1 Core

Contributors
- Andrew Garrard, Samsung Electronics
- Tobias Hector, Imagination Technologies
- James Jones, NVIDIA
- Daniel Koch, NVIDIA
- Daniel Rakos, AMD
- Romain Guy, Google
- Jesse Hall, Google
- Tom Cooksey, ARM Ltd
- Jeff Leger, Qualcomm Technologies, Inc
- Jan-Harald Fredriksen, ARM Ltd
- Jan Outters, Samsung Electronics
Description

The use of $Y'CbCr$ sampler conversion is an area in 3D graphics not used by most Vulkan developers. It is mainly used for processing inputs from video decoders and cameras. The use of the extension assumes basic knowledge of $Y'CbCr$ concepts.

This extension provides the ability to perform specified color space conversions during texture sampling operations for the $Y'CbCr$ color space natively. It also adds a selection of multi-planar formats, image aspect plane, and the ability to bind memory to the planes of an image collectively or separately.

Promotion to Vulkan 1.1

All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.1, with the KHR suffix omitted. However, if Vulkan 1.1 is supported and this extension is not, the `samplerYcbcrConversion` capability is optional. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

New Object Types

- VkSamplerYcbcrConversionKHR

New Commands

- vkCreateSamplerYcbcrConversionKHR
- vkDestroySamplerYcbcrConversionKHR

New Structures

- VkSamplerYcbcrConversionCreateInfoKHR
- Extending VkBindImageMemoryInfo:
  - VkBindImagePlaneMemoryInfoKHR
- Extending VkImageFormatProperties2:
  - VkSamplerYcbcrConversionImageFormatPropertiesKHR
- Extending VkImageMemoryRequirementsInfo2:
  - VkImagePlaneMemoryRequirementsInfoKHR
- Extending VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2, VkDeviceCreateInfo:
  - VkPhysicalDeviceSamplerYcbcrConversionFeaturesKHR
• Extending `VkSamplerCreateInfo`, `VkImageViewCreateInfo`:
  ○ `VkSamplerYcbcrConversionInfoKHR`

New Enums

• `VkChromaLocationKHR`
• `VkSamplerYcbcrModelConversionKHR`
• `VkSamplerYcbcrRangeKHR`

New Enum Constants

• `VK_KHR_SAMPLER_YCBCR_CONVERSION_EXTENSION_NAME`
• `VK_KHR_SAMPLER_YCBCR_CONVERSION_SPEC_VERSION`

Extending `VkChromaLocation`:
  ○ `VK_CHROMA_LOCATION_COSITED_EVEN_KHR`
  ○ `VK_CHROMA_LOCATION_MIDPOINT_KHR`

Extending `VkDebugReportObjectTypeEXT`:
  ○ `VK_DEBUG_REPORT_OBJECT_TYPE_SAMPLER_YCBCR_CONVERSION_KHR_EXT`

Extending `VkFormat`:
  ○ `VK_FORMAT_B10X6G10X6R10X6G10X6_422_UNORM_4PACK16_KHR`
  ○ `VK_FORMAT_B12X4G12X4R12X4G12X4_422_UNORM_4PACK16_KHR`
  ○ `VK_FORMAT_B16G16R16G16_422_UNORM_KHR`
  ○ `VK_FORMAT_B8G8R8G8_422_UNORM_KHR`
  ○ `VK_FORMAT_G10X6B10X6G10X6R10X6_422_UNORM_4PACK16_KHR`
  ○ `VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6R10X6_2PLANE_420_UNORM_3PACK16_KHR`
  ○ `VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6_R10X6_3PLANE_420_UNORM_3PACK16_KHR`
  ○ `VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6_R10X6_3PLANE_422_UNORM_3PACK16_KHR`
  ○ `VK_FORMAT_G10X6_B10X6_R10X6_3PLANE_444_UNORM_3PACK16_KHR`
  ○ `VK_FORMAT_G12X4B12X4G12X4R12X4_422_UNORM_4PACK16_KHR`
  ○ `VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4R12X4_2PLANE_420_UNORM_3PACK16_KHR`
  ○ `VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4_R12X4_3PLANE_420_UNORM_3PACK16_KHR`
  ○ `VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4_R12X4_3PLANE_422_UNORM_3PACK16_KHR`
  ○ `VK_FORMAT_G12X4_B12X4_R12X4_3PLANE_444_UNORM_3PACK16_KHR`
  ○ `VK_FORMAT_G16B16G16R16_422_UNORM_KHR`
  ○ `VK_FORMAT_G16_B16R16_2PLANE_420_UNORM_KHR`
- **Extending **`VkFormatFeatureFlagBits`:
  - `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COSITED_CHROMA_SAMPLES_BIT_KHR`
  - `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_DISJOINT_BIT_KHR`
  - `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_MIDPOINT_CHROMA_SAMPLES_BIT_KHR`
  - `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_YCBCR_CONVERSION_CHROMA_RECONSTRUCTION_EXPLICIT_BIT_KHR`
  - `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_YCBCR_CONVERSION_CHROMA_RECONSTRUCTION_EXPLICIT_FORCEABLE_BIT_KHR`
  - `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_YCBCR_CONVERSION_LINEAR_FILTER_BIT_KHR`
  - `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_SAMPLED_IMAGE_YCBCR_CONVERSION_SEPARATE_RECONSTRUCTION_FILTER_BIT_KHR`

- **Extending **`VkImageAspectFlagBits`:
  - `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_0_BIT_KHR`
  - `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_1_BIT_KHR`
  - `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_PLANE_2_BIT_KHR`

- **Extending **`VkImageCreateFlagBits`:
  - `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_DISJOINT_BIT_KHR`

- **Extending **`VkObjectType`:
  - `VK_OBJECT_TYPE_SAMPLER_YCBCR_CONVERSION_KHR`

- **Extending **`VkSamplerYcbcrModelConversion`:
  - `VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_MODEL_CONVERSION_RGB_IDENTITY_KHR`
Extending VkSamplerYcbcrRange:

- VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_RANGE_ITU_FULL_KHR
- VK_SAMPLER_YCBCR_RANGE_ITU_NARROW_KHR

Extending VkStructureType:

- VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_BIND_IMAGE_PLANE_MEMORY_INFO_KHR
- VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_IMAGE_PLANE_MEMORY_REQUIREMENTS_INFO_KHR
- VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SAMPLER_YCBCR_CONVERSION_FEATURES_KHR
- VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SAMPLER_YCBCR_CONVERSION_CREATE_INFO_KHR
- VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SAMPLER_YCBCR_CONVERSION_IMAGE_FORMAT_PROPERTIES_KHR
- VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SAMPLER_YCBCR_CONVERSION_INFO_KHR

Version History

- Revision 1, 2017-01-24 (Andrew Garrard)
  - Initial draft
- Revision 2, 2017-01-25 (Andrew Garrard)
  - After initial feedback
- Revision 3, 2017-01-27 (Andrew Garrard)
  - Higher bit depth formats, renaming, swizzle
- Revision 4, 2017-02-22 (Andrew Garrard)
  - Added query function, formats as RGB, clarifications
- Revision 5, 2017-04-?? (Andrew Garrard)
  - Simplified query and removed output conversions
- Revision 6, 2017-04-24 (Andrew Garrard)
  - Tidying, incorporated new image query, restored transfer functions
- Revision 7, 2017-04-25 (Andrew Garrard)
  - Added cosited option/midpoint requirement for formats, “bypassConversion”
- Revision 8, 2017-04-25 (Andrew Garrard)
  - Simplified further
- Revision 9, 2017-04-27 (Andrew Garrard)
  - Disjoint no more
• Restored disjoint
• Revision 11, 2017-04-29 (Andrew Garrard)
  • Now Ycbcr conversion, and KHR
• Revision 12, 2017-06-06 (Andrew Garrard)
  • Added conversion to image view creation
• Revision 13, 2017-07-13 (Andrew Garrard)
  • Allowed cosited-only chroma samples for formats
• Revision 14, 2017-08-11 (Andrew Garrard)
  • Reflected quantization changes in BT.2100-1

**VK_KHR_separate_depth_stencil_layouts**

Name String

VK_KHR_separate_depth_stencil_layouts

Extension Type

Device extension

Registered Extension Number

242

Revision

1

Extension and Version Dependencies

• Requires Vulkan 1.0
  • Requires **VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2**
  • Requires **VK_KHR_create_renderpass2**

Deprecation state

• *Promoted* to Vulkan 1.2

Contact

• Piers Daniell [@pdaniell-nv](https://github.com/pdaniell-nv)

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date

2019-06-25

Interactions and External Dependencies

• Promoted to Vulkan 1.2 Core
Contributors

• Daniel Koch, NVIDIA
• Jeff Bolz, NVIDIA
• Jesse Barker, Unity
• Tobias Hector, AMD

Description

This extension allows image memory barriers for depth/stencil images to have just one of the `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_DEPTH_BIT` or `VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_STENCIL_BIT` aspect bits set, rather than require both. This allows their layouts to be set independently. To support depth/stencil images with different layouts for the depth and stencil aspects, the depth/stencil attachment interface has been updated to support a separate layout for stencil.

Promotion to Vulkan 1.2

All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.2, with the KHR suffix omitted. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

New Structures

• Extending `VkAttachmentDescription2`:
  ◦ `VkAttachmentDescriptionStencilLayoutKHR`

• Extending `VkAttachmentReference2`:
  ◦ `VkAttachmentReferenceStencilLayoutKHR`

• Extending `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2`, `VkDeviceCreateInfo`:
  ◦ `VkPhysicalDeviceSeparateDepthStencilLayoutsFeaturesKHR`

New Enum Constants

• `VK_KHR_SEPARATE_DEPTH_STENCIL_LAYOUTS_EXTENSION_NAME`
• `VK_KHR_SEPARATE_DEPTH_STENCIL_LAYOUTS_SPEC_VERSION`

• Extending `VkImageLayout`:
  ◦ `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL_KHR`
  ◦ `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL_KHR`
  ◦ `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL_KHR`
  ◦ `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_STENCIL_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL_KHR`

• Extending `VkStructureType`:
  ◦ `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ATTACHMENT_DESCRIPTION_STENCIL_LAYOUT_KHR`
  ◦ `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_ATTACHMENT_REFERENCE_STENCIL_LAYOUT_KHR`
  ◦ `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SEPARATE_DEPTH_STENCIL_LAYOUTS_FEATURES_KHR`
Version History

• Revision 1, 2019-06-25 (Piers Daniell)
  ◦ Internal revisions

VK_KHR_shader_atomic_int64

Name String
VK_KHR_shader_atomic_int64

Extension Type
Device extension

Registered Extension Number
181

Revision
1

Extension and Version Dependencies
• Requires Vulkan 1.0
• Requires VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2

Deprecation state
• Promoted to Vulkan 1.2

Contact
• Aaron Hagan ahagan

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
2018-07-05

Interactions and External Dependencies
• Promoted to Vulkan 1.2 Core
• This extension enables GL_ARB_gpu_shader_int64 and GL_EXT_shader_atomic_int64 for GLSL source languages.

Contributors
• Aaron Hagan, AMD
• Daniel Rakos, AMD
• Jeff Bolz, NVIDIA
• Neil Henning, Codeplay
Description

This extension advertises the SPIR-V **Int64Atomics** capability for Vulkan, which allows a shader to contain 64-bit atomic operations on signed and unsigned integers. The supported operations include OpAtomicMin, OpAtomicMax, OpAtomicAnd, OpAtomicOr, OpAtomicXor, OpAtomicAdd, OpAtomicExchange, and OpAtomicCompareExchange.

Promotion to Vulkan 1.2

All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.2, with the KHR suffix omitted. However, if Vulkan 1.2 is supported and this extension is not, the `shaderBufferInt64Atomics` capability is optional. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

New Structures

- Extending `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2, VkDeviceCreateInfo`:
  - `VkPhysicalDeviceShaderAtomicInt64FeaturesKHR`

New Enum Constants

- `VK_KHR_SHADER_ATOMIC_INT64_EXTENSION_NAME`
- `VK_KHR_SHADER_ATOMIC_INT64_SPEC_VERSION`
- Extending `VkStructureType`:
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SHADER_ATOMIC_INT64_FEATURES_KHR`

New SPIR-V Capabilities

- `Int64Atomics`

Version History

- Revision 1, 2018-07-05 (Aaron Hagan)
  - Internal revisions

**VK_KHR_shader_clock**

Name String

`VK_KHR_shader_clock`

Extension Type

Device extension

Registered Extension Number

182
Revision
1

Extension and Version Dependencies
• Requires Vulkan 1.0
• Requires VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2

Contact
• Aaron Hagan @ahagan

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
2019-4-25

IP Status
No known IP claims.

Interactions and External Dependencies
• This extension requires SPV_KHR_shader_clock.
• This extension provides API support for ARB_shader_clock and EXT_shader_realtime_clock

Contributors
• Aaron Hagan, AMD
• Daniel Koch, NVIDIA

Description
This extension advertises the SPIR-V ShaderClockKHR capability for Vulkan, which allows a shader to query a real-time or monotonically incrementing counter at the subgroup level or across the device level. The two valid SPIR-V scopes for OpReadClockKHR are Subgroup and Device.

When using GLSL source-based shading languages, the clockRealtime*EXT() timing functions map to the OpReadClockKHR instruction with a scope of Device, and the clock*ARB() timing functions map to the OpReadClockKHR instruction with a scope of Subgroup.

New Structures
• Extending VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2, VkDeviceCreateInfo:
  ◦ VkPhysicalDeviceShaderClockFeaturesKHR

New Enum Constants
• VK_KHR_SHADER_CLOCK_EXTENSION_NAME
• VK_KHR_SHADER_CLOCK_SPEC_VERSION
• Extending VkStructureType:
New SPIR-V Capabilities

- ShaderClockKHR

Version History

- Revision 1, 2019-4-25 (Aaron Hagan)
  - Initial revision

VK_KHR_shader_draw_parameters

Name String

VK_KHR_shader_draw_parameters

Extension Type

Device extension

Registered Extension Number

64

Revision

1

Extension and Version Dependencies

- Requires Vulkan 1.0

Deprecation state

- Promoted to Vulkan 1.1

Contact

- Daniel Koch @dgkoch

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date

2017-09-05

IP Status

No known IP claims.

Interactions and External Dependencies

- This extension requires SPV_KHR_shader_draw_parameters
- This extension provides API support for GL_ARB_shader_draw_parameters
- Promoted to Vulkan 1.1 Core
Contributors

• Daniel Koch, NVIDIA Corporation
• Jeff Bolz, NVIDIA
• Daniel Rakos, AMD
• Jan-Harald Fredriksen, ARM
• John Kessenich, Google
• Stuart Smith, IMG

Description

This extension adds support for the following SPIR-V extension in Vulkan:

• SPV_KHR_shader_draw_parameters

The extension provides access to three additional built-in shader variables in Vulkan:

• BaseInstance, which contains the firstInstance parameter passed to drawing commands,
• BaseVertex, which contains the firstVertex or vertexOffset parameter passed to drawing commands, and
• DrawIndex, which contains the index of the draw call currently being processed from an indirect draw call.

When using GLSL source-based shader languages, the following variables from GL_ARB_shader_draw_parameters can map to these SPIR-V built-in decorations:

• in int gl_BaseInstanceARB; → BaseInstance,
• in int gl_BaseVertexARB; → BaseVertex, and
• in int gl_DrawIDARB; → DrawIndex.

Promotion to Vulkan 1.1

All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.1, however a feature bit was added to distinguish whether it is actually available or not.

New Enum Constants

• VK_KHR_SHADER_DRAW_PARAMETERS_EXTENSION_NAME
• VK_KHR_SHADER_DRAW_PARAMETERS_SPEC_VERSION

New Built-In Variables

• BaseInstance
• BaseVertex
• DrawIndex
New SPIR-V Capabilities

- **DrawParameters**

**Issues**

1) Is this the same functionality as `GL_ARB_shader_draw_parameters`?

**RESOLVED:** It is actually a superset, as it also adds in support for arrayed drawing commands.

In GL for `GL_ARB_shader_draw_parameters`, `gl_BaseVertexARB` holds the integer value passed to the parameter to the command that resulted in the current shader invocation. In the case where the command has no `baseVertex` parameter, the value of `gl_BaseVertexARB` is zero. This means that `gl_BaseVertexARB = baseVertex` (for `glDrawElements` commands with `baseVertex`) or 0. In particular there are no `glDrawArrays` commands that take a `baseVertex` parameter.

Now in Vulkan, we have `BaseVertex = vertexOffset` (for indexed drawing commands) or `firstVertex` (for arrayed drawing commands), and so Vulkan’s version is really a superset of GL functionality.

**Version History**

- Revision 1, 2016-10-05 (Daniel Koch)
  - Internal revisions

**VK_KHR_shader_float16_int8**

**Name String**

`VK_KHR_shader_float16_int8`

**Extension Type**

Device extension

**Registered Extension Number**

83

**Revision**

1

**Extension and Version Dependencies**

- Requires Vulkan 1.0
- Requires `VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2`

**Deprecation state**

- Promoted to Vulkan 1.2

**Contact**

- Alexander Galazin 🌐alegal-arm
Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
2018-03-07

Interactions and External Dependencies

- Promoted to Vulkan 1.2 Core
- This extension interacts with VK_KHR_8bit_storage
- This extension interacts with VK_KHR_16bit_storage
- This extension interacts with VK_KHR_shader_float Controls
- This extension provides API support for GL_EXT_shader_explicit_arithmetic_types

IP Status
No known IP claims.

Contributors
- Alexander Galazin, Arm
- Jan-Harald Fredriksen, Arm
- Jeff Bolz, NVIDIA
- Graeme Leese, Broadcom
- Daniel Rakos, AMD

Description

The VK_KHR_shader_float16_int8 extension allows use of 16-bit floating-point types and 8-bit integer types in shaders for arithmetic operations.

It introduces two new optional features shaderFloat16 and shaderInt8 which directly map to the Float16 and the Int8 SPIR-V capabilities. The VK_KHR_shader_float16_int8 extension also specifies precision requirements for half-precision floating-point SPIR-V operations. This extension does not enable use of 8-bit integer types or 16-bit floating-point types in any shader input and output interfaces and therefore does not supersede the VK_KHR_8bit_storage or VK_KHR_16bit_storage extensions.

Promotion to Vulkan 1.2

All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.2, with the KHR suffix omitted. However, if Vulkan 1.2 is supported and this extension is not, both the shaderFloat16 and shaderInt8 capabilities are optional. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

New Structures

- Extending VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2, VkDeviceCreateInfo:
  - VkPhysicalDeviceFloat16Int8FeaturesKHR
New Enum Constants

- VK_KHR_SHADER_FLOAT16_INT8_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_SHADER_FLOAT16_INT8_SPEC_VERSION
- Extending VkStructureType:
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_FLOAT16_INT8_FEATURES_KHR
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SHADER_FLOAT16_INT8_FEATURES_KHR

Version History

- Revision 1, 2018-03-07 (Alexander Galazin)
  - Initial draft

VK_KHR_shader_float_controls

Name String

- VK_KHR_shader_float_controls

Extension Type

- Device extension

Registered Extension Number

- 198

Revision

- 4

Extension and Version Dependencies

- Requires Vulkan 1.0
- Requires VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2

Deprecation state

- Promoted to Vulkan 1.2

Contact

- Alexander Galazin @alegal-arm

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date

- 2018-09-11

Interactions and External Dependencies

- Promoted to Vulkan 1.2 Core
• This extension requires *SPV_KHR_float_controls*

**IP Status**

No known IP claims.

**Contributors**

• Alexander Galazin, Arm
• Jan-Harald Fredriksen, Arm
• Jeff Bolz, NVIDIA
• Graeme Leese, Broadcom
• Daniel Rakos, AMD

**Description**

The *VK_KHR_shader_float_controls* extension enables efficient use of floating-point computations through the ability to query and override the implementation's default behavior for rounding modes, denormals, signed zero, and infinity.

**Promotion to Vulkan 1.2**

All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.2, with the KHR suffix omitted. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

**New Structures**

• Extending *VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2*:
  ◦ *VkPhysicalDeviceFloatControlsPropertiesKHR*

**New Enums**

• *VkShaderFloatControlsIndependenceKHR*

**New Enum Constants**

• *VK_KHR_SHADER_FLOAT_CONTROLS_EXTENSION_NAME*
• *VK_KHR_SHADER_FLOAT_CONTROLS_SPEC_VERSION*

• Extending *VkShaderFloatControlsIndependence*:
  ◦ *VK_SHADER_FLOAT_CONTROLS_INDEPENDENCE_32_BIT_ONLY_KHR*
  ◦ *VK_SHADER_FLOAT_CONTROLS_INDEPENDENCE_ALL_KHR*
  ◦ *VK_SHADER_FLOAT_CONTROLS_INDEPENDENCE_NONE_KHR*

• Extending *VkStructureType*:
  ◦ *VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_FLOAT_CONTROLS_PROPERTIES_KHR*
New SPIR-V Capabilities

- DenormPreserve
- DenormFlushToZero
- SignedZeroInfNanPreserve
- RoundingModeRTE
- RoundingModeRTZ

Issues

1) Which instructions must flush denorms?

**RESOLVED:** Only floating-point conversion, floating-point arithmetic, floating-point relational (except OpIsNaN, OpIsInf), and floating-point GLSL.std.450 extended instructions must flush denormals.

2) What is the denorm behavior for intermediate results?

**RESOLVED:** When a SPIR-V instruction is implemented as a sequence of other instructions:

- in the DenormFlushToZero execution mode, the intermediate instructions may flush denormals, the final result of the sequence **must** not be denormal.
- in the DenormPreserve execution mode, denormals must be preserved throughout the whole sequence.

3) Do denorm and rounding mode controls apply to OpSpecConstantOp?

**RESOLVED:** Yes, except when the opcode is OpQuantizeToF16.

4) The SPIR-V specification says that OpConvertFToU and OpConvertFToS unconditionally round towards zero. Do the rounding mode controls specified through the execution modes apply to them?

**RESOLVED:** No, these instructions unconditionally round towards zero.

5) Do any of the “Pack” GLSL.std.450 instructions count as conversion instructions and have the rounding mode applied?

**RESOLVED:** No, only instructions listed in “section 3.32.11. Conversion Instructions” of the SPIR-V specification count as conversion instructions.

6) When using inf/nan-ignore mode, what is expected of OpIsNan and OpIsInf?

**RESOLVED:** These instructions must always accurately detect inf/nan if it is passed to them.

Version 4 API incompatibility

The original versions of VK_KHR_shader_float_controls shipped with booleans named “separateDenormSettings” and “separateRoundingModeSettings”, which at first glance could have
indicated “they can all be set independently, or not”. However the spec language as written indicated that the 32-bit value could always be set independently, and only the 16- and 64-bit controls needed to be the same if these values were \texttt{VK\_FALSE}.

As a result of this slight disparity, and lack of test coverage for this facet of the extension, we ended up with two different behaviors in the wild, where some implementations worked as written, and others worked based on the naming. As these are hard limits in hardware with reasons for exposure as written, it was not possible to standardise on a single way to make this work within the existing API.

No known users of this part of the extension exist in the wild, and as such the Vulkan WG took the unusual step of retroactively changing the once boolean value into a tri-state enum, breaking source compatibility. This was however done in such a way as to retain ABI compatibility, in case any code using this did exist; with the numerical values 0 and 1 retaining their original specified meaning, and a new value signifying the additional “all need to be set together” state. If any applications exist today, compiled binaries will continue to work as written in most cases, but will need changes before the code can be recompiled.

\textbf{Version History}

\begin{itemize}
\item Revision 4, 2019-06-18 (Tobias Hector)
  \begin{itemize}
  \item Modified settings restrictions, see \texttt{Version 4 API incompatibility}
  \end{itemize}
\item Revision 3, 2018-09-11 (Alexander Galazin)
  \begin{itemize}
  \item Minor restructuring
  \end{itemize}
\item Revision 2, 2018-04-17 (Alexander Galazin)
  \begin{itemize}
  \item Added issues and resolutions
  \end{itemize}
\item Revision 1, 2018-04-11 (Alexander Galazin)
  \begin{itemize}
  \item Initial draft
  \end{itemize}
\end{itemize}

\texttt{VK\_KHR\_shader\_non\_semantic\_info}

\textbf{Name String}

\texttt{VK\_KHR\_shader\_non\_semantic\_info}

\textbf{Extension Type}

Device extension

\textbf{Registered Extension Number}

294

\textbf{Revision}

1

\textbf{Extension and Version Dependencies}

\begin{itemize}
\item Requires Vulkan 1.0
\end{itemize}
Contact
- Baldur Karlsson @baldurk

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
2019-10-16

IP Status
No known IP claims.

Interactions and External Dependencies
- This extension requires SPV_KHR_non_semantic_info

Contributors
- Baldur Karlsson, Valve

Description
This extension allows the use of the SPV_KHR_non_semantic_info extension in SPIR-V shader modules.

New Enum Constants
- VK_KHR_SHADER_NON_SEMANTIC_INFO_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_SHADER_NON_SEMANTIC_INFO_SPEC_VERSION

Version History
- Revision 1, 2019-10-16 (Baldur Karlsson)
  - Initial revision

VK_KHR_shader_subgroup_extended_types

Name String
VK_KHR_shader_subgroup_extended_types

Extension Type
Device extension

Registered Extension Number
176

Revision
1

Extension and Version Dependencies
- Requires Vulkan 1.1
Description

This extension enables the Non Uniform Group Operations in SPIR-V to support 8-bit integer, 16-bit integer, 64-bit integer, 16-bit floating-point, and vectors of these types.

Promotion to Vulkan 1.2

All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.2, with the KHR suffix omitted. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

New Structures

- Extending `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2`, `VkDeviceCreateInfo`:
  - `VkPhysicalDeviceShaderSubgroupExtendedTypesFeaturesKHR`
New Enum Constants

- `VK_KHR_SHADER_SUBGROUP_EXTENDED_TYPES_EXTENSION_NAME`
- `VK_KHR_SHADER_SUBGROUP_EXTENDED_TYPES_SPEC_VERSION`
- Extending `VkStructureType`:
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SHADER_SUBGROUP_EXTENDED_TYPES_FEATURES_KHR`

Version History

- Revision 1, 2019-01-08 (Neil Henning)
  - Initial draft

`VK_KHR_shader_subgroup_uniform_control_flow`

Name String

- `VK_KHR_shader_subgroup_uniform_control_flow`

Extension Type

- Device extension

Registered Extension Number

- 324

Revision

- 1

Extension and Version Dependencies

- Requires Vulkan 1.1

Contact

- Alan Baker `@alan-baker`

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date

- 2020-08-27

IP Status

- No known IP claims.

Interactions and External Dependencies

- Requires SPIR-V 1.3.
- This extension requires `SPV_KHR_subgroup_uniform_control_flow`

Contributors

- Alan Baker, Google
### Description

This extension allows the use of the `SPV_KHR_subgroup_uniform_control_flow` SPIR-V extension in shader modules. `SPV_KHR_subgroup_uniform_control_flow` provides stronger guarantees that diverged subgroups will reconverge.

Developers should utilize this extension if they use subgroup operations to reduce the work performed by a uniform subgroup. This extension will guarantee that uniform subgroup will reconverge in the same manner as invocation groups (see “Uniform Control Flow” in the Khronos SPIR-V Specification).

### New Structures

- Extending `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2`, `VkDeviceCreateInfo`:
  - `VkPhysicalDeviceShaderSubgroupUniformControlFlowFeaturesKHR`

### New Enum Constants

- `VK_KHR_SHADER_SUBGROUP_UNIFORM_CONTROL_FLOW_EXTENSION_NAME`
- `VK_KHR_SHADER_SUBGROUP_UNIFORM_CONTROL_FLOW_SPEC_VERSION`

- Extending `VkStructureType`:
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_SHADER_SUBGROUP_UNIFORM_CONTROL_FLOW_FEATURES_KHR`

### Version History

- Revision 1, 2020-08-27 (Alan Baker)
  - Internal draft version

### VK_KHR_shader_terminate_invocation

**Name String**

`VK_KHR_shader_terminate_invocation`

**Extension Type**

Device extension

**Registered Extension Number**

216

**Revision**

1

**Extension and Version Dependencies**

- Requires Vulkan 1.0
• Requires `VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2`

Contact
• Jesse Hall 📧critsec

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
2020-08-11

IP Status
No known IP claims.

Interactions and External Dependencies
• Requires the `SPV_KHR_terminate_invocation` SPIR-V extension.

Contributors
• Alan Baker, Google
• Jeff Bolz, NVIDIA
• Jesse Hall, Google
• Ralph Potter, Samsung
• Tom Olson, Arm

Description
This extension adds Vulkan support for the `SPV_KHR_terminate_invocation` SPIR-V extension. That SPIR-V extension provides a new instruction, `OpTerminateInvocation`, which causes a shader invocation to immediately terminate and sets the coverage of shaded samples to 0; only previously executed instructions will have observable effects. The `OpTerminateInvocation` instruction, along with the `OpDemoteToHelperInvocation` instruction from the [VK_EXT_shader_demote_to_helper_invocation] extension, together replace the `OpKill` instruction, which could behave like either of these instructions. `OpTerminateInvocation` provides the behavior required by the GLSL `discard` statement, and should be used when available by GLSL compilers and applications that need the GLSL `discard` behavior.

New Structures

• Extending `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2`, `VkDeviceCreateInfo`:
  ◦ `VkPhysicalDeviceShaderTerminateInvocationFeaturesKHR`

New Enum Constants

• `VK_KHR_SHADER_TERMINATE_INVOCATION_EXTENSION_NAME`
• `VK_KHR_SHADER_TERMINATE_INVOCATION_SPEC_VERSION`

• Extending `VkStructureType`:
Version History

• Revision 1, 2020-08-11 (Jesse Hall)

VK_KHR_shared_presentable_image

Name String

VK_KHR_shared_presentable_image

Extension Type

Device extension

Registered Extension Number

112

Revision

1

Extension and Version Dependencies

• Requires Vulkan 1.0
• Requires VK_KHR_swapchain
• Requires VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2
• Requires VK_KHR_get_surface_capabilities2

Contact

• Alon Or-bach alonorbach

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date

2017-03-20

IP Status

No known IP claims.

Contributors

• Alon Or-bach, Samsung Electronics
• Ian Elliott, Google
• Jesse Hall, Google
• Pablo Ceballos, Google
• Chris Forbes, Google
• Jeff Juliano, NVIDIA

Appendix E: Layers & Extensions (Informative) | 1845
Description

This extension extends `VK_KHR_swapchain` to enable creation of a shared presentable image. This allows the application to use the image while the presentation engine is accessing it, in order to reduce the latency between rendering and presentation.

New Commands

- `vkGetSwapchainStatusKHR`

New Structures

- Extending `VkSurfaceCapabilities2KHR`:
  - `VkSharedPresentSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR`

New Enum Constants

- `VK_KHR_SHARED_PRESENTABLE_IMAGE_EXTENSION_NAME`
- `VK_KHR_SHARED_PRESENTABLE_IMAGE_SPEC_VERSION`
- Extending `VkImageLayout`:
  - `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHARED_PRESENT_KHR`
- Extending `VkPresentModeKHR`:
  - `VK_PRESENT_MODE_SHARED_CONTINUOUS_REFRESH_KHR`
  - `VK_PRESENT_MODE_SHARED_DEMAND_REFRESH_KHR`
- Extending `VkStructureType`:
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SHARED_PRESENT_SURFACE_CAPABILITIES_KHR`

Issues

1) Should we allow a Vulkan WSI swapchain to toggle between normal usage and shared presentation usage?

**RESOLVED**: No. WSI swapchains are typically recreated with new properties instead of having their properties changed. This can also save resources, assuming that fewer images are needed for shared presentation, and assuming that most VR applications do not need to switch between
normal and shared usage.

2) Should we have a query for determining how the presentation engine refresh is triggered?

**RESOLVED:** Yes. This is done via which presentation modes a surface supports.

3) Should the object representing a shared presentable image be an extension of a `VkSwapchainKHR` or a separate object?

**RESOLVED:** Extension of a swapchain due to overlap in creation properties and to allow common functionality between shared and normal presentable images and swapchains.

4) What should we call the extension and the new structures it creates?

**RESOLVED:** Shared presentable image / shared present.

5) Should the `minImageCount` and `presentMode` values of the `VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR` be ignored, or required to be compatible values?

**RESOLVED:** `minImageCount` must be set to 1, and `presentMode` should be set to either `VK_PRESENT_MODE_SHARED_DEMAND_REFRESH_KHR` or `VK_PRESENT_MODE_SHARED_CONTINUOUS_REFRESH_KHR`.

6) What should the layout of the shared presentable image be?

**RESOLVED:** After acquiring the shared presentable image, the application must transition it to the `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHARED_PRESENT_KHR` layout prior to it being used. After this initial transition, any image usage that was requested during swapchain creation can be performed on the image without layout transitions being performed.

7) Do we need a new API for the trigger to refresh new content?

**RESOLVED:** `vkQueuePresentKHR` to act as API to trigger a refresh, as will allow combination with other compatible extensions to `vkQueuePresentKHR`.

8) How should an application detect a `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DATE_KHR` error on a swapchain using the `VK_PRESENT_MODE_SHARED_CONTINUOUS_REFRESH_KHR` present mode?

**RESOLVED:** Introduce `vkGetSwapchainStatusKHR` to allow applications to query the status of a swapchain using a shared presentation mode.

9) What should subsequent calls to `vkQueuePresentKHR` for `VK_PRESENT_MODE_SHARED_CONTINUOUS_REFRESH_KHR` swapchains be defined to do?

**RESOLVED:** State that implementations may use it as a hint for updated content.

10) Can the ownership of a shared presentable image be transferred to a different queue?

**RESOLVED:** No. It is not possible to transfer ownership of a shared presentable image obtained from a swapchain created using `VK_SHARING_MODE_EXCLUSIVE` after it has been presented.

11) How should `vkQueueSubmit` behave if a command buffer uses an image from a `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DATE_KHR` swapchain?
**RESOLVED**: `vkQueueSubmit` is expected to return the `VK_ERROR_DEVICE_LOST` error.

12) Can Vulkan provide any guarantee on the order of rendering, to enable beam chasing?

**RESOLVED**: This could be achieved via use of render passes to ensure strip rendering.

### Version History

- Revision 1, 2017-03-20 (Alon Or-bach)
  - Internal revisions

### VK_KHR_spirv_1_4

**Name String**

`VK_KHR_spirv_1_4`

**Extension Type**

Device extension

**Registered Extension Number**

237

**Revision**

1

**Extension and Version Dependencies**

- Requires Vulkan 1.1
- Requires `VK_KHR_shader_float_controls`

**Deprecation state**

- *Promoted* to Vulkan 1.2

**Contact**

- Jesse Hall [critsec](#)

**Other Extension Metadata**

**Last Modified Date**

2019-04-01

**IP Status**

No known IP claims.

**Interactions and External Dependencies**

- Requires SPIR-V 1.4.
- Promoted to Vulkan 1.2 Core
Contributors

- Alexander Galazin, Arm
- David Neto, Google
- Jesse Hall, Google
- John Kessenich, Google
- Neil Henning, AMD
- Tom Olson, Arm

Description

This extension allows the use of SPIR-V 1.4 shader modules. SPIR-V 1.4’s new features primarily make it an easier target for compilers from high-level languages, rather than exposing new hardware functionality.

SPIR-V 1.4 incorporates features that are also available separately as extensions. SPIR-V 1.4 shader modules do not need to enable those extensions with the `OpExtension` opcode, since they are integral parts of SPIR-V 1.4.

SPIR-V 1.4 introduces new floating point execution mode capabilities, also available via `SPV_KHR_float_controls`. Implementations are not required to support all of these new capabilities; support can be queried using `VkPhysicalDeviceFloatControlsPropertiesKHR` from the `VK_KHR_shader_float_controls` extension.

Promotion to Vulkan 1.2

All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.2, with the KHR suffix omitted. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

New Enum Constants

- `VK_KHR_SPIRV_1_4_EXTENSION_NAME`
- `VK_KHR_SPIRV_1_4_SPEC_VERSION`

Issues

1. Should we have an extension specific to this SPIR-V version, or add a version-generic query for SPIR-V version? SPIR-V 1.4 does not need any other API changes.

RESOLVED: Just expose SPIR-V 1.4.

Most new SPIR-V versions introduce optionally-required capabilities or have implementation-defined limits, and would need more API and specification changes specific to that version to make them available in Vulkan. While we could expose the parts of a new SPIR-V version that do not need accompanying changes generically, we will still end up writing extensions specific to each version for the remaining parts. Thus the generic mechanism will not reduce future spec-writing effort. In addition, making it clear which parts of a future version are supported by the generic mechanism and which cannot be used without specific support would be difficult to get right ahead of time.
2. Can different stages of the same pipeline use shaders with different SPIR-V versions?

**RESOLVED:** Yes.

Mixing SPIR-V versions 1.0-1.3 in the same pipeline has not been disallowed, so it would be inconsistent to disallow mixing 1.4 with previous versions. SPIR-V 1.4 does not introduce anything that should cause new difficulties here.

3. Must Vulkan extensions corresponding to SPIR-V extensions that were promoted to core in 1.4 be enabled in order to use that functionality in a SPIR-V 1.4 module?

**RESOLVED:** No, with caveats.

The SPIR-V 1.4 module does not need to declare the SPIR-V extensions, since the functionality is now part of core, so there is no need to enable the Vulkan extension that allows SPIR-V modules to declare the SPIR-V extension. However, when the functionality that is now core in SPIR-V 1.4 is optionally supported, the query for support is provided by a Vulkan extension, and that query can only be used if the extension is enabled.

This applies to any SPIR-V version; specifically for SPIR-V 1.4 this only applies to the functionality from `SPV_KHR_float_controls`, which was made available in Vulkan by `VK_KHR_shader_float_controls`. Even though the extension was promoted in SPIR-V 1.4, the capabilities are still optional in implementations that support `VK_KHR_spirv_1_4`.

A SPIR-V 1.4 module does not need to enable `SPV_KHR_float_controls` in order to use the capabilities, so if the application has *a priori* knowledge that the implementation supports the capabilities, it does not need to enable `VK_KHR_shader_float_controls`. However, if it does not have this knowledge and has to query for support at runtime, it must enable `VK_KHR_shader_float_controls` in order to use `VkPhysicalDeviceFloatControlsPropertiesKHR`.

**Version History**

- **Revision 1, 2019-04-01** (Jesse Hall)
  - Internal draft versions

**VK_KHR_storage_buffer_storage_class**

**Name String**

`VK_KHR_storage_buffer_storage_class`

**Extension Type**

Device extension

**Registered Extension Number**

132

**Revision**

1
Extension and Version Dependencies

- Requires Vulkan 1.0

Deprecation state

- Promoted to Vulkan 1.1

Contact

- Alexander Galazin 🌐alegal-arm

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date

2017-09-05

IP Status

No known IP claims.

Interactions and External Dependencies

- This extension requires SPV_KHR_storage_buffer_storage_class
- Promoted to Vulkan 1.1 Core

Contributors

- Alexander Galazin, ARM
- David Neto, Google

Description

This extension adds support for the following SPIR-V extension in Vulkan:

- SPV_KHR_storage_buffer_storage_class

This extension provides a new SPIR-V StorageBuffer storage class. A Block-decorated object in this class is equivalent to a BufferBlock-decorated object in the Uniform storage class.

Promotion to Vulkan 1.1

All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.1.

New Enum Constants

- VK_KHR_STORAGE_BUFFER_STORAGE_CLASS_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_STORAGE_BUFFER_STORAGE_CLASS_SPEC_VERSION

Version History

- Revision 1, 2017-03-23 (Alexander Galazin)
  ◦ Initial draft
VK_KHR_surface

Name String
VK_KHR_surface

Extension Type
Instance extension

Registered Extension Number
1

Revision
25

Extension and Version Dependencies
• Requires Vulkan 1.0

Contact
• James Jones cubanismo
• Ian Elliott ianelliottus

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
2016-08-25

IP Status
No known IP claims.

Contributors
• Patrick Doane, Blizzard
• Ian Elliott, LunarG
• Jesse Hall, Google
• James Jones, NVIDIA
• David Mao, AMD
• Norbert Nopper, Freescale
• Alon Or-bach, Samsung
• Daniel Rakos, AMD
• Graham Sellers, AMD
• Jeff Vigil, Qualcomm
• Chia-I Wu, LunarG
• Jason Ekstrand, Intel
Description

The `VK_KHR_surface` extension is an instance extension. It introduces `VkSurfaceKHR` objects, which abstract native platform surface or window objects for use with Vulkan. It also provides a way to determine whether a queue family in a physical device supports presenting to particular surface.

Separate extensions for each platform provide the mechanisms for creating `VkSurfaceKHR` objects, but once created they may be used in this and other platform-independent extensions, in particular the `VK_KHR_swapchain` extension.

New Object Types

- `VkSurfaceKHR`

New Commands

- `vkDestroySurfaceKHR`
- `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR`
- `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceFormatsKHR`
- `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfacePresentModesKHR`
- `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceSupportKHR`

New Structures

- `VkSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR`
- `VkSurfaceFormatKHR`

New Enums

- `VkColorSpaceKHR`
- `VkCompositeAlphaFlagBitsKHR`
- `VkPresentModeKHR`
- `VkSurfaceTransformFlagBitsKHR`

New Bitmasks

- `VkCompositeAlphaFlagsKHR`

New Enum Constants

- `VK_KHR_SURFACE_EXTENSION_NAME`
- `VK_KHR_SURFACE_SPEC_VERSION`
- Extending `VkObjectType`:
  - `VK_OBJECT_TYPE_SURFACE_KHR`
• Extending `VkResult`:
  ◦ `VK_ERROR_NATIVE_WINDOW_IN_USE_KHR`
  ◦ `VK_ERROR_SURFACE_LOST_KHR`

**Examples**

*Note*

The example code for the `VK_KHR_surface` and `VK_KHR_swapchain` extensions was removed from the appendix after revision 1.0.29. This WSI example code was ported to the cube demo that is shipped with the official Khronos SDK, and is being kept up-to-date in that location (see: [https://github.com/KhronosGroup/Vulkan-Tools/blob/master/cube/cube.c](https://github.com/KhronosGroup/Vulkan-Tools/blob/master/cube/cube.c)).

**Issues**

1) Should this extension include a method to query whether a physical device supports presenting to a specific window or native surface on a given platform?

**RESOLVED:** Yes. Without this, applications would need to create a device instance to determine whether a particular window can be presented to. Knowing that a device supports presentation to a platform in general is not sufficient, as a single machine might support multiple seats, or instances of the platform that each use different underlying physical devices. Additionally, on some platforms, such as the X Window System, different drivers and devices might be used for different windows depending on which section of the desktop they exist on.

2) Should the `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR`, `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceFormatsKHR`, and `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfacePresentModesKHR` functions be in this extension and operate on physical devices, rather than being in `VK_KHR_swapchain` (i.e. device extension) and being dependent on `VkDevice`?

**RESOLVED:** Yes. While it might be useful to depend on `VkDevice` (and therefore on enabled extensions and features) for the queries, Vulkan was released only with the `VkPhysicalDevice` versions. Many cases can be resolved by a Valid Usage statement, and/or by a separate `pNext` chain version of the query struct specific to a given extension or parameters, via extensible versions of the queries: `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceCapabilities2KHR`, `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceFormats2KHR`, and `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfacePresentModes2EXT`,

3) Should Vulkan support Xlib or XCB as the API for accessing the X Window System platform?

**RESOLVED:** Both. XCB is a more modern and efficient API, but Xlib usage is deeply ingrained in many applications and likely will remain in use for the foreseeable future. Not all drivers necessarily need to support both, but including both as options in the core specification will probably encourage support, which should in turn ease adoption of the Vulkan API in older codebases. Additionally, the performance improvements possible with XCB likely will not have a measurable impact on the performance of Vulkan presentation and other minimal window system interactions defined here.

4) Should the GBM platform be included in the list of platform enums?
RESOLVED: Deferred, and will be addressed with a platform-specific extension to be written in the future.

Version History

- Revision 1, 2015-05-20 (James Jones)
  ◦ Initial draft, based on LunarG KHR spec, other KHR specs, patches attached to bugs.
- Revision 2, 2015-05-22 (Ian Elliott)
  ◦ Created initial Description section.
  ◦ Removed query for whether a platform requires the use of a queue for presentation, since it was decided that presentation will always be modeled as being part of the queue.
  ◦ Fixed typos and other minor mistakes.
- Revision 3, 2015-05-26 (Ian Elliott)
  ◦ Improved the Description section.
- Revision 4, 2015-05-27 (James Jones)
  ◦ Fixed compilation errors in example code.
- Revision 5, 2015-06-01 (James Jones)
  ◦ Added issues 1 and 2 and made related spec updates.
- Revision 6, 2015-06-01 (James Jones)
  ◦ Merged the platform type mappings table previously removed from VK_KHR_swapchain with the platform description table in this spec.
  ◦ Added issues 3 and 4 documenting choices made when building the initial list of native platforms supported.
- Revision 7, 2015-06-11 (Ian Elliott)
  ◦ Updated table 1 per input from the KHR TSG.
  ◦ Updated issue 4 (GBM) per discussion with Daniel Stone. He will create a platform-specific extension sometime in the future.
- Revision 8, 2015-06-17 (James Jones)
  ◦ Updated enum-extending values using new convention.
  ◦ Fixed the value of VK_SURFACE_PLATFORM_INFO_TYPE_SUPPORTED_KHR.
- Revision 9, 2015-06-17 (James Jones)
  ◦ Rebased on Vulkan API version 126.
- Revision 10, 2015-06-18 (James Jones)
  ◦ Marked issues 2 and 3 resolved.
- Revision 11, 2015-06-23 (Ian Elliott)
  ◦ Examples now show use of function pointers for extension functions.
  ◦ Eliminated extraneous whitespace.
• Revision 12, 2015-07-07 (Daniel Rakos)
  ◦ Added error section describing when each error is expected to be reported.
  ◦ Replaced the term “queue node index” with “queue family index” in the spec as that is the agreed term to be used in the latest version of the core header and spec.
  ◦ Replaced bool32_t with VkBool32.
• Revision 13, 2015-08-06 (Daniel Rakos)
  ◦ Updated spec against latest core API header version.
• Revision 14, 2015-08-20 (Ian Elliott)
  ◦ Renamed this extension and all of its enumerations, types, functions, etc. This makes it compliant with the proposed standard for Vulkan extensions.
  ◦ Switched from “revision” to “version”, including use of the VK_MAKE_VERSION macro in the header file.
  ◦ Did miscellaneous cleanup, etc.
• Revision 15, 2015-08-20 (Ian Elliott—porting a 2015-07-29 change from James Jones)
  ◦ Moved the surface transform enums here from VK_WSI_swapchain so they could be reused by VK_WSI_display.
• Revision 16, 2015-09-01 (James Jones)
  ◦ Restore single-field revision number.
• Revision 17, 2015-09-01 (James Jones)
  ◦ Fix example code compilation errors.
• Revision 18, 2015-09-26 (Jesse Hall)
  ◦ Replaced VkSurfaceDescriptionKHR with the VkSurfaceKHR object, which is created via layered extensions. Added VkDestroySurfaceKHR.
• Revision 19, 2015-09-28 (Jesse Hall)
  ◦ Renamed from VK_EXT_KHR_swapchain to VK_EXT_KHR_surface.
• Revision 20, 2015-09-30 (Jeff Vigil)
  ◦ Add error result VK_ERROR_SURFACE_LOST_KHR.
• Revision 21, 2015-10-15 (Daniel Rakos)
  ◦ Updated the resolution of issue #2 and include the surface capability queries in this extension.
  ◦ Renamed SurfaceProperties to SurfaceCapabilities as it better reflects that the values returned are the capabilities of the surface on a particular device.
  ◦ Other minor cleanup and consistency changes.
• Revision 22, 2015-10-26 (Ian Elliott)
  ◦ Renamed from VK_EXT_KHR_surface to VK_KHR_surface.
• Revision 23, 2015-11-03 (Daniel Rakos)
  ◦ Added allocation callbacks to vkDestroySurfaceKHR.
• Revision 24, 2015-11-10 (Jesse Hall)
  ◦ Removed VkSurfaceTransformKHR. Use VkSurfaceTransformFlagBitsKHR instead.
  ◦ Rename VkSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR member maxImageArraySize to maxImageArrayLayers.
• Revision 25, 2016-01-14 (James Jones)
  ◦ Moved VK_ERROR_NATIVE_WINDOW_IN_USE_KHR from the VK_KHR_android_surface to the VK_KHR_surface extension.
• 2016-08-23 (Ian Elliott)
  ◦ Update the example code, to not have so many characters per line, and to split out a new example to show how to obtain function pointers.
• 2016-08-25 (Ian Elliott)
  ◦ A note was added at the beginning of the example code, stating that it will be removed from future versions of the appendix.

**VK_KHR_surface_protected_capabilities**

**Name String**

VK_KHR_surface_protected_capabilities

**Extension Type**

Instance extension

**Registered Extension Number**

240

**Revision**

1

**Extension and Version Dependencies**

• Requires Vulkan 1.1
  • Requires VK_KHR_get_surface_capabilities2

**Contact**

• Sandeep Shinde @sashinde

**Other Extension Metadata**

**Last Modified Date**

2018-12-18

**IP Status**

No known IP claims.

**Contributors**

• Sandeep Shinde, NVIDIA
Description

This extension extends VkSurfaceCapabilities2KHR, providing applications a way to query whether swapchains can be created with the VK_SWAPCHAIN_CREATE_PROTECTED_BIT_KHR flag set.

Vulkan 1.1 added (optional) support for protect memory and protected resources including buffers (VK_BUFFER_CREATE_PROTECTED_BIT), images (VK_IMAGE_CREATE_PROTECTED_BIT), and swapchains (VK_SWAPCHAIN_CREATE_PROTECTED_BIT_KHR). However, on implementations which support multiple windowing systems, not all window systems may be able to provide a protected display path.

This extension provides a way to query if a protected swapchain created for a surface (and thus a specific windowing system) can be displayed on screen. It extends the existing VkSurfaceCapabilities2KHR structure with a new VkSurfaceProtectedCapabilitiesKHR structure from which the application can obtain information about support for protected swapchain creation through vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceCapabilities2KHR.

New Structures

- Extending VkSurfaceCapabilities2KHR:
  - VkSurfaceProtectedCapabilitiesKHR

New Enum Constants

- VK_KHR_SURFACE_PROTECTED_CAPABILITIES_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_SURFACE_PROTECTED_CAPABILITIES_SPEC_VERSION

- Extending VkStructureType:
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SURFACE_PROTECTED_CAPABILITIES_KHR

Version History

- Revision 1, 2018-12-18 (Sandeep Shinde, Daniel Koch)
  - Internal revisions.

VK_KHR_swapchain

Name String

VK_KHR_swapchain

Extension Type

Device extension

Registered Extension Number

2
Extension and Version Dependencies

- Requires Vulkan 1.0
- Requires `VK_KHR_surface`

Contact

- James Jones @cubanismo
- Ian Elliott @ianelliottus

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
2017-10-06

IP Status
No known IP claims.

Interactions and External Dependencies

- Interacts with Vulkan 1.1

Contributors

- Patrick Doane, Blizzard
- Ian Elliott, LunarG
- Jesse Hall, Google
- Mathias Heyer, NVIDIA
- James Jones, NVIDIA
- David Mao, AMD
- Norbert Nopper, Freescale
- Alon Or-bach, Samsung
- Daniel Rakos, AMD
- Graham Sellers, AMD
- Jeff Vigil, Qualcomm
- Chia-I Wu, LunarG
- Jason Ekstrand, Intel
- Matthaeus G. Chajdas, AMD
- Ray Smith, ARM
Description

The `VK_KHR_swapchain` extension is the device-level companion to the `VK_KHR_surface` extension. It introduces `VkSwapchainKHR` objects, which provide the ability to present rendering results to a surface.

New Object Types

- `VkSwapchainKHR`

New Commands

- `vkAcquireNextImageKHR`
- `vkCreateSwapchainKHR`
- `vkDestroySwapchainKHR`
- `vkGetSwapchainImagesKHR`
- `vkQueuePresentKHR`

New Structures

- `VkPresentInfoKHR`
- `VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR`

New Enums

- `VkSwapchainCreateFlagBitsKHR`

New Bitmasks

- `VkSwapchainCreateFlagsKHR`

New Enum Constants

- `VK_KHR_SWAPCHAIN_EXTENSION_NAME`
- `VK_KHR_SWAPCHAIN_SPEC_VERSION`

Extending `VkImageLayout`:

- `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_PRESENT_SRC_KHR`

Extending `VkObjectType`:

- `VK_OBJECT_TYPE_SWAPCHAIN_KHR`

Extending `VkResult`:

- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DATE_KHR`
- `VK_SUBOPTIMAL_KHR`

Extending `VkStructureType`:

---

1860 | Appendix E: Layers & Extensions (Informative)
Issues

1) Does this extension allow the application to specify the memory backing of the presentable images?

**RESOLVED**: No. Unlike standard images, the implementation will allocate the memory backing of the presentable image.

2) What operations are allowed on presentable images?

**RESOLVED**: This is determined by the image usage flags specified when creating the presentable image's swapchain.

3) Does this extension support MSAA presentable images?

**RESOLVED**: No. Presentable images are always single-sampled. Multi-sampled rendering must use regular images. To present the rendering results the application must manually resolve the multi-sampled image to a single-sampled presentable image prior to presentation.

4) Does this extension support stereo/multi-view presentable images?

**RESOLVED**: Yes. The number of views associated with a presentable image is determined by the `imageArrayLayers` specified when creating a swapchain. All presentable images in a given swapchain use the same array size.

5) Are the layers of stereo presentable images half-sized?

**RESOLVED**: No. The image extents always match those requested by the application.

6) Do the “present” and “acquire next image” commands operate on a queue? If not, do they need to include explicit semaphore objects to interlock them with queue operations?

**RESOLVED**: The present command operates on a queue. The image ownership operation it represents happens in order with other operations on the queue, so no explicit semaphore object is required to synchronize its actions.

Applications may want to acquire the next image in separate threads from those in which they manage their queue, or in multiple threads. To make such usage easier, the acquire next image command takes a semaphore to signal as a method of explicit synchronization. The application must later queue a wait for this semaphore before queuing execution of any commands using the image.

7) Does `vkAcquireNextImageKHR` block if no images are available?

**RESOLVED**: The command takes a timeout parameter. Special values for the timeout are 0, which makes the call a non-blocking operation, and `UINT64_MAX`, which blocks indefinitely. Values in between will block for up to the specified time. The call will return when an image becomes available or an error occurs. It may, but is not required to, return before the specified timeout.
expires if the swapchain becomes out of date.

8) Can multiple presents be queued using one `vkQueuePresentKHR` call?

**RESOLVED:** Yes. `VkPresentInfoKHR` contains a list of swapchains and corresponding image indices that will be presented. When supported, all presentations queued with a single `vkQueuePresentKHR` call will be applied atomically as one operation. The same swapchain must not appear in the list more than once. Later extensions may provide applications stronger guarantees of atomicity for such present operations, and/or allow them to query whether atomic presentation of a particular group of swapchains is possible.

9) How do the presentation and acquire next image functions notify the application the targeted surface has changed?

**RESOLVED:** Two new result codes are introduced for this purpose:

- `VK_SUBOPTIMAL_KHR` - Presentation will still succeed, subject to the window resize behavior, but the swapchain is no longer configured optimally for the surface it targets. Applications should query updated surface information and recreate their swapchain at the next convenient opportunity.
- `VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DATE_KHR` - Failure. The swapchain is no longer compatible with the surface it targets. The application must query updated surface information and recreate the swapchain before presentation will succeed.

These can be returned by both `vkAcquireNextImageKHR` and `vkQueuePresentKHR`.

10) Does the `vkAcquireNextImageKHR` command return a semaphore to the application via an output parameter, or accept a semaphore to signal from the application as an object handle parameter?

**RESOLVED:** Accept a semaphore to signal as an object handle. This avoids the need to specify whether the application must destroy the semaphore or whether it is owned by the swapchain, and if the latter, what its lifetime is and whether it can be reused for other operations once it is received from `vkAcquireNextImageKHR`.

11) What types of swapchain queuing behavior should be exposed? Options include swap interval specification, mailbox/most recent vs. FIFO queue management, targeting specific vertical blank intervals or absolute times for a given present operation, and probably others. For some of these, whether they are specified at swapchain creation time or as per-present parameters needs to be decided as well.

**RESOLVED:** The base swapchain extension will expose 3 possible behaviors (of which, FIFO will always be supported):

- **Immediate present:** Does not wait for vertical blanking period to update the current image, likely resulting in visible tearing. No internal queue is used. Present requests are applied immediately.
- **Mailbox queue:** Waits for the next vertical blanking period to update the current image. No tearing should be observed. An internal single-entry queue is used to hold pending presentation
requests. If the queue is full when a new presentation request is received, the new request replaces the existing entry, and any images associated with the prior entry become available for reuse by the application.

- FIFO queue: Waits for the next vertical blanking period to update the current image. No tearing should be observed. An internal queue containing \( \text{numSwapchainImages} - 1 \) entries is used to hold pending presentation requests. New requests are appended to the end of the queue, and one request is removed from the beginning of the queue and processed during each vertical blanking period in which the queue is non-empty.

Not all surfaces will support all of these modes, so the modes supported will be returned using a surface information query. All surfaces must support the FIFO queue mode. Applications must choose one of these modes up front when creating a swapchain. Switching modes can be accomplished by recreating the swapchain.

12) Can \texttt{VK_PRESENT_MODE_MAILBOX_KHR} provide non-blocking guarantees for \texttt{vkAcquireNextImageKHR}? If so, what is the proper criteria?

**RESOLVED:** Yes. The difficulty is not immediately obvious here. Naively, if at least 3 images are requested, mailbox mode should always have an image available for the application if the application does not own any images when the call to \texttt{vkAcquireNextImageKHR} was made. However, some presentation engines may have more than one “current” image, and would still need to block in some cases. The right requirement appears to be that if the application allocates the surface's minimum number of images + 1 then it is guaranteed non-blocking behavior when it does not currently own any images.

13) Is there a way to create and initialize a new swapchain for a surface that has generated a \texttt{VK_SUBOPTIMAL_KHR} return code while still using the old swapchain?

**RESOLVED:** Not as part of this specification. This could be useful to allow the application to create an “optimal” replacement swapchain and rebuild all its command buffers using it in a background thread at a low priority while continuing to use the “suboptimal” swapchain in the main thread. It could probably use the same “atomic replace” semantics proposed for recreating direct-to-device swapchains without incurring a mode switch. However, after discussion, it was determined some platforms probably could not support concurrent swapchains for the same surface though, so this will be left out of the base KHR extensions. A future extension could add this for platforms where it is supported.

14) Should there be a special value for \texttt{VkSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR::maxImageCount} to indicate there are no practical limits on the number of images in a swapchain?

**RESOLVED:** Yes. There will often be cases where there is no practical limit to the number of images in a swapchain other than the amount of available resources (i.e., memory) in the system. Trying to derive a hard limit from things like memory size is prone to failure. It is better in such cases to leave it to applications to figure such soft limits out via trial/failure iterations.

15) Should there be a special value for \texttt{VkSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR::currentExtent} to indicate the size of the platform surface is undefined?

**RESOLVED:** Yes. On some platforms (Wayland, for example), the surface size is defined by the
images presented to it rather than the other way around.

16) Should there be a special value for VkSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR::maxImageExtent to indicate there is no practical limit on the surface size?

**RESOLVED:** No. It seems unlikely such a system would exist. 0 could be used to indicate the platform places no limits on the extents beyond those imposed by Vulkan for normal images, but this query could just as easily return those same limits, so a special “unlimited” value does not seem useful for this field.

17) How should surface rotation and mirroring be exposed to applications? How do they specify rotation and mirroring transforms applied prior to presentation?

**RESOLVED:** Applications can query both the supported and current transforms of a surface. Both are specified relative to the device’s “natural” display rotation and direction. The supported transforms indicate which orientations the presentation engine accepts images in. For example, a presentation engine that does not support transforming surfaces as part of presentation, and which is presenting to a surface that is displayed with a 90-degree rotation, would return only one supported transform bit: VK_SURFACE_TRANSFORM_ROTATE_90_BIT_KHR. Applications must transform their rendering by the transform they specify when creating the swapchain in preTransform field.

18) Can surfaces ever not support VK_MIRROR_NONE? Can they support vertical and horizontal mirroring simultaneously? Relatedly, should VK_MIRROR_NONE_BIT be zero, or bit one, and should applications be allowed to specify multiple pre and current mirror transform bits, or exactly one?

**RESOLVED:** Since some platforms may not support presenting with a transform other than the native window’s current transform, and prerotation/mirroring are specified relative to the device’s natural rotation and direction, rather than relative to the surface’s current rotation and direction, it is necessary to express lack of support for no mirroring. To allow this, the MIRROR_NONE enum must occupy a bit in the flags. Since MIRROR_NONE must be a bit in the bitmask rather than a bitmask with no values set, allowing more than one bit to be set in the bitmask would make it possible to describe undefined transforms such as VK_MIRROR_NONE_BIT | VK_MIRROR_HORIZONTAL_BIT, or a transform that includes both “no mirroring” and “horizontal mirroring” simultaneously. Therefore, it is desirable to allow specifying all supported mirroring transforms using only one bit. The question then becomes, should there be a VK_MIRROR_HORIZONTAL_AND_VERTICAL_BIT to represent a simultaneous horizontal and vertical mirror transform? However, such a transform is equivalent to a 180 degree rotation, so presentation engines and applications that wish to support or use such a transform can express it through rotation instead. Therefore, 3 exclusive bits are sufficient to express all needed mirroring transforms.

19) Should support for sRGB be required?

**RESOLVED:** In the advent of UHD and HDR display devices, proper color space information is vital to the display pipeline represented by the swapchain. The app can discover the supported format/color-space pairs and select a pair most suited to its rendering needs. Currently only the sRGB color space is supported, future extensions may provide support for more color spaces. See issues 23 and 24.

20) Is there a mechanism to modify or replace an existing swapchain with one targeting the same surface?
21) Should there be a way to set prerotation and mirroring using native APIs when presenting using a Vulkan swapchain?

**RESOLVED:** Yes. The transforms that can be expressed in this extension are a subset of those possible on native platforms. If a platform exposes a method to specify the transform of presented images for a given surface using native methods and exposes more transforms or other properties for surfaces than Vulkan supports, it might be impossible, difficult, or inconvenient to set some of those properties using Vulkan KHR extensions and some using the native interfaces. To avoid overwriting properties set using native commands when presenting using a Vulkan swapchain, the application can set the pretransform to “inherit”, in which case the current native properties will be used, or if none are available, a platform-specific default will be used. Platforms that do not specify a reasonable default or do not provide native mechanisms to specify such transforms should not include the inherit bits in the `supportedTransforms` bitmask they return in `VkSurfaceCapabilitiesKHR`.

22) Should the content of presentable images be clipped by objects obscuring their target surface?

**RESOLVED:** Applications can choose which behavior they prefer. Allowing the content to be clipped could enable more efficient presentation methods on some platforms, but some applications might rely on the content of presentable images to perform techniques such as partial updates or motion blurs.

23) What is the purpose of specifying a `VkColorSpaceKHR` along with `VkFormat` when creating a swapchain?

**RESOLVED:** While Vulkan itself is color space agnostic (e.g. even the meaning of R, G, B and A can be freely defined by the rendering application), the swapchain eventually will have to present the images on a display device with specific color reproduction characteristics. If any color space transformations are necessary before an image can be displayed, the color space of the presented image must be known to the swapchain. A swapchain will only support a restricted set of color format and -space pairs. This set can be discovered via `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceFormatsKHR`. As it can be expected that most display devices support the sRGB color space, at least one format/color-space pair has to be exposed, where the color space is `VK_COLOR_SPACE_SRGB_NONLINEAR_KHR`.

24) How are sRGB formats and the sRGB color space related?

**RESOLVED:** While Vulkan exposes a number of SRGB texture formats, using such formats does not guarantee working in a specific color space. It merely means that the hardware can directly support applying the non-linear transfer functions defined by the sRGB standard color space when reading from or writing to images of those formats. Still, it is unlikely that a swapchain will expose a `*_SRGB` format along with any color space other than `VK_COLOR_SPACE_SRGB_NONLINEAR_KHR`.

On the other hand, non-`*_SRGB` formats will be very likely exposed in pair with a SRGB color space. This means, the hardware will not apply any transfer function when reading from or writing to such images, yet they will still be presented on a device with sRGB display characteristics. In this case the application is responsible for applying the transfer function, for instance by using shader math.
25) How are the lifetimes of surfaces and swapchains targeting them related?

**RESOLVED:** A surface must outlive any swapchains targeting it. A VkSurfaceKHR owns the binding of the native window to the Vulkan driver.

26) How can the client control the way the alpha channel of swapchain images is treated by the presentation engine during compositing?

**RESOLVED:** We should add new enum values to allow the client to negotiate with the presentation engine on how to treat image alpha values during the compositing process. Since not all platforms can practically control this through the Vulkan driver, a value of VK_COMPOSITE_ALPHA_INHERIT_BIT_KHR is provided like for surface transforms.

27) Is vkCreateSwapchainKHR the right function to return VK_ERROR_NATIVE_WINDOW_IN_USE_KHR, or should the various platform-specific VkSurfaceKHR factory functions catch this error earlier?

**RESOLVED:** For most platforms, the VkSurfaceKHR structure is a simple container holding the data that identifies a native window or other object representing a surface on a particular platform. For the surface factory functions to return this error, they would likely need to register a reference on the native objects with the native display server somehow, and ensure no other such references exist. Surfaces were not intended to be that heavyweight.

Swapchains are intended to be the objects that directly manipulate native windows and communicate with the native presentation mechanisms. Swapchains will already need to communicate with the native display server to negotiate allocation and/or presentation of presentable images for a native surface. Therefore, it makes more sense for swapchain creation to be the point at which native object exclusivity is enforced. Platforms may choose to enforce further restrictions on the number of VkSurfaceKHR objects that may be created for the same native window if such a requirement makes sense on a particular platform, but a global requirement is only sensible at the swapchain level.

**Examples**

*Note*

The example code for the VK_KHR_surface and VK_KHR_swapchain extensions was removed from the appendix after revision 1.0.29. This WSI example code was ported to the cube demo that is shipped with the official Khronos SDK, and is being kept up-to-date in that location (see: https://github.com/KhronosGroup/Vulkan-Tools/blob/master/cube/cube.c).

**Version History**

- **Revision 1, 2015-05-20** (James Jones)
  - Initial draft, based on LunarG KHR spec, other KHR specs, patches attached to bugs.

- **Revision 2, 2015-05-22** (Ian Elliott)
  - Made many agreed-upon changes from 2015-05-21 KHR TSG meeting. This includes using only a queue for presentation, and having an explicit function to acquire the next image.
Fixed typos and other minor mistakes.

Revision 3, 2015-05-26 (Ian Elliott)
- Improved the Description section.
- Added or resolved issues that were found in improving the Description. For example, pSurfaceDescription is used consistently, instead of sometimes using pSurface.

Revision 4, 2015-05-27 (James Jones)
- Fixed some grammatical errors and typos
- Filled in the description of imageUseFlags when creating a swapchain.
- Added a description of swapInterval.
- Replaced the paragraph describing the order of operations on a queue for image ownership and presentation.

Revision 5, 2015-05-27 (James Jones)
- Imported relevant issues from the (abandoned) vk_wsi_persistent_swapchain_images extension.
- Added issues 6 and 7, regarding behavior of the acquire next image and present commands with respect to queues.
- Updated spec language and examples to align with proposed resolutions to issues 6 and 7.

Revision 6, 2015-05-27 (James Jones)
- Added issue 8, regarding atomic presentation of multiple swapchains
- Updated spec language and examples to align with proposed resolution to issue 8.

Revision 7, 2015-05-27 (James Jones)
- Fixed compilation errors in example code, and made related spec fixes.

Revision 8, 2015-05-27 (James Jones)
- Added issue 9, and the related VK_SUBOPTIMAL_KHR result code.
- Renamed VK_OUT_OF_DATE_KHR to VK_ERROR_OUT_OF_DATE_KHR.

Revision 9, 2015-05-27 (James Jones)
- Added inline proposed resolutions (marked with [JRJ]) to some XXX questions/issues. These should be moved to the issues section in a subsequent update if the proposals are adopted.

Revision 10, 2015-05-28 (James Jones)
- Converted vkAcquireNextImageKHR back to a non-queue operation that uses a VkSemaphore object for explicit synchronization.
- Added issue 10 to determine whether vkAcquireNextImageKHR generates or returns semaphores, or whether it operates on a semaphore provided by the application.

Revision 11, 2015-05-28 (James Jones)
- Marked issues 6, 7, and 8 resolved.
- Renamed VkSurfaceCapabilityPropertiesKHR to VkSurfacePropertiesKHR to better convey the mutable nature of the information it contains.
• Revision 12, 2015-05-28 (James Jones)
  ◦ Added issue 11 with a proposed resolution, and the related issue 12.
  ◦ Updated various sections of the spec to match the proposed resolution to issue 11.

• Revision 13, 2015-06-01 (James Jones)
  ◦ Moved some structures to VK_EXT_KHR_swap_chain to resolve the specification’s issues 1 and 2.

• Revision 14, 2015-06-01 (James Jones)
  ◦ Added code for example 4 demonstrating how an application might make use of the two different present and acquire next image KHR result codes.
  ◦ Added issue 13.

• Revision 15, 2015-06-01 (James Jones)
  ◦ Added issues 14 - 16 and related spec language.
  ◦ Fixed some spelling errors.
  ◦ Added language describing the meaningful return values for vkAcquireNextImageKHR and vkQueuePresentKHR.

• Revision 16, 2015-06-02 (James Jones)
  ◦ Added issues 17 and 18, as well as related spec language.
  ◦ Removed some erroneous text added by mistake in the last update.

• Revision 17, 2015-06-15 (Ian Elliott)
  ◦ Changed special value from "-1" to "0" so that the data types can be unsigned.

• Revision 18, 2015-06-15 (Ian Elliott)
  ◦ Clarified the values of VkSurfacePropertiesKHR::minImageCount and the timeout parameter of the vkAcquireNextImageKHR function.

• Revision 19, 2015-06-17 (James Jones)
  ◦ Misc. cleanup. Removed resolved inline issues and fixed typos.
  ◦ Fixed clarification of VkSurfacePropertiesKHR::minImageCount made in version 18.
  ◦ Added a brief "Image Ownership" definition to the list of terms used in the spec.

• Revision 20, 2015-06-17 (James Jones)
  ◦ Updated enum-extending values using new convention.

• Revision 21, 2015-06-17 (James Jones)
  ◦ Added language describing how to use VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_PRESENT_SOURCE_KHR.
  ◦ Cleaned up an XXX comment regarding the description of which queues vkQueuePresentKHR can be used on.

• Revision 22, 2015-06-17 (James Jones)
  ◦ Rebased on Vulkan API version 126.

• Revision 23, 2015-06-18 (James Jones)
Updated language for issue 12 to read as a proposed resolution.
Marked issues 11, 12, 13, 16, and 17 resolved.
Temporarily added links to the relevant bugs under the remaining unresolved issues.
Added issues 19 and 20 as well as proposed resolutions.

Revision 24, 2015-06-19 (Ian Elliott)
- Changed special value for VkSurfacePropertiesKHR::currentExtent back to “-1” from “0”. This value will never need to be unsigned, and “0” is actually a legal value.

Revision 25, 2015-06-23 (Ian Elliott)
- Examples now show use of function pointers for extension functions.
- Eliminated extraneous whitespace.

Revision 26, 2015-06-25 (Ian Elliott)
- Resolved Issues 9 & 10 per KHR TSG meeting.

Revision 27, 2015-06-25 (James Jones)
- Added oldSwapchain member to VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR.

Revision 28, 2015-06-25 (James Jones)
- Added the “inherit” bits to the rotation and mirroring flags and the associated issue 21.

Revision 29, 2015-06-25 (James Jones)
- Added the “clipped” flag to VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR, and the associated issue 22.
- Specified that presenting an image does not modify it.

Revision 30, 2015-06-25 (James Jones)
- Added language to the spec that clarifies the behavior of vkCreateSwapchainKHR() when the oldSwapchain field of VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR is not NULL.

Revision 31, 2015-06-26 (Ian Elliott)
- Example of new VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR members, “oldSwapchain” and “clipped”.
- Example of using VkSurfacePropertiesKHR::{min|max}ImageCount to set VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR::minImageCount.
- Rename vkGetSurfaceInfoKHR()'s 4th parameter to “pDataSize”, for consistency with other functions.
- Add macro with C-string name of extension (just to header file).

Revision 32, 2015-06-26 (James Jones)
- Minor adjustments to the language describing the behavior of “oldSwapchain”
- Fixed the version date on my previous two updates.

Revision 33, 2015-06-26 (Jesse Hall)
- Add usage flags to VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR

Revision 34, 2015-06-26 (Ian Elliott)
- Rename vkQueuePresentKHR()'s 2nd parameter to “pPresentInfo”, for consistency with
other functions.

• Revision 35, 2015-06-26 (Jason Ekstrand)
  ◦ Merged the VkRotationFlagBitsKHR and VkMirrorFlagBitsKHR enums into a single
    VkSurfaceTransformFlagBitsKHR enum.

• Revision 36, 2015-06-26 (Jason Ekstrand)
  ◦ Added a VkSurfaceTransformKHR enum that is not a bitmask. Each value in
    VkSurfaceTransformKHR corresponds directly to one of the bits in
    VkSurfaceTransformFlagBitsKHR so transforming from one to the other is easy. Having a
    separate enum means that currentTransform and preTransform are now unambiguous by
    definition.

• Revision 37, 2015-06-29 (Ian Elliott)
  ◦ Corrected one of the signatures of vkAcquireNextImageKHR, which had the last two
    parameters switched from what it is elsewhere in the specification and header files.

• Revision 38, 2015-06-30 (Ian Elliott)
  ◦ Corrected a typo in description of the vkGetSwapchainInfoKHR() function.
  ◦ Corrected a typo in header file comment for VkPresentInfoKHR::sType.

• Revision 39, 2015-07-07 (Daniel Rakos)
  ◦ Added error section describing when each error is expected to be reported.
  ◦ Replaced bool32_t with VkBool32.

• Revision 40, 2015-07-10 (Ian Elliott)
  ◦ Updated to work with version 138 of the vulkan.h header. This includes declaring the
    VkSwapchainKHR type using the new VK_DEFINE_NONDISP_HANDLE macro, and no longer
    extending VkObjectType (which was eliminated).

• Revision 41 2015-07-09 (Mathias Heyer)
  ◦ Added color space language.

• Revision 42, 2015-07-10 (Daniel Rakos)
  ◦ Updated query mechanism to reflect the convention changes done in the core spec.
  ◦ Removed “queue” from the name of VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_QUEUE_PRESENT_INFO_KHR to
    be consistent with the established naming convention.
  ◦ Removed reference to the no longer existing VkObjectType enum.

• Revision 43, 2015-07-17 (Daniel Rakos)
  ◦ Added support for concurrent sharing of swapchain images across queue families.
  ◦ Updated sample code based on recent changes

• Revision 44, 2015-07-27 (Ian Elliott)
  ◦ Noted that support for VK_PRESENT_MODE_FIFO_KHR is required. That is ICDs may
    optionally support IMMEDIATE and MAILBOX, but must support FIFO.

• Revision 45, 2015-08-07 (Ian Elliott)
Corrected a typo in spec file (type and variable name had wrong case for the `imageColorSpace` member of the `VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR` struct).

Corrected a typo in header file (last parameter in `PFN_vkGetSurfacePropertiesKHR` was missing “KHR” at the end of type: `VkSurfacePropertiesKHR`).

- **Revision 46, 2015-08-20 (Ian Elliott)**
  - Renamed this extension and all of its enumerations, types, functions, etc. This makes it compliant with the proposed standard for Vulkan extensions.
  - Switched from “revision” to “version”, including use of the `VK_MAKE_VERSION` macro in the header file.
  - Made improvements to several descriptions.
  - Changed the status of several issues from PROPOSED to RESOLVED, leaving no unresolved issues.
  - Resolved several TODOs, did miscellaneous cleanup, etc.

- **Revision 47, 2015-08-20 (Ian Elliott—porting a 2015-07-29 change from James Jones)**
  - Moved the surface transform enums to `VK_WSI_swapchain` so they could be reused by `VK_WSI_display`.

- **Revision 48, 2015-09-01 (James Jones)**
  - Various minor cleanups.

- **Revision 49, 2015-09-01 (James Jones)**
  - Restore single-field revision number.

- **Revision 50, 2015-09-01 (James Jones)**
  - Update Example #4 to include code that illustrates how to use the `oldSwapchain` field.

- **Revision 51, 2015-09-01 (James Jones)**
  - Fix example code compilation errors.

- **Revision 52, 2015-09-08 (Matthaeus G. Chajdas)**
  - Corrected a typo.

- **Revision 53, 2015-09-10 (Alon Or-bach)**
  - Removed underscore from `SWAP_CHAIN` left in `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SWAPCHAIN_CREATE_INFO_KHR`.

- **Revision 54, 2015-09-11 (Jesse Hall)**
  - Described the execution and memory coherence requirements for image transitions to and from `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_PRESENT_SOURCE_KHR`.

- **Revision 55, 2015-09-11 (Ray Smith)**
  - Added errors for destroying and binding memory to presentable images.

- **Revision 56, 2015-09-18 (James Jones)**
  - Added fence argument to `vkAcquireNextImageKHR`
  - Added example of how to meter a host thread based on presentation rate.
• Revision 57, 2015-09-26 (Jesse Hall)
  ◦ Replace VkSurfaceDescriptionKHR with VkSurfaceKHR.
  ◦ Added issue 25 with agreed resolution.

• Revision 58, 2015-09-28 (Jesse Hall)
  ◦ Renamed from VK_EXT_KHR_device_swapchain to VK_EXT_KHR_swapchain.

• Revision 59, 2015-09-29 (Ian Elliott)
  ◦ Changed vkDestroySwapchainKHR() to return void.

• Revision 60, 2015-10-01 (Jeff Vigil)
  ◦ Added error result VK_ERROR_SURFACE_LOST_KHR.

• Revision 61, 2015-10-05 (Jason Ekstrand)
  ◦ Added the VkCompositeAlpha enum and corresponding structure fields.

• Revision 62, 2015-10-12 (Daniel Rakos)
  ◦ Added VK_PRESENT_MODE_FIFO_RELAXED_KHR.

• Revision 63, 2015-10-15 (Daniel Rakos)
  ◦ Moved surface capability queries to VK_EXT_KHR_surface.

• Revision 64, 2015-10-26 (Ian Elliott)
  ◦ Renamed from VK_EXT_KHR_swapchain to VK_KHR_swapchain.

• Revision 65, 2015-10-28 (Ian Elliott)
  ◦ Added optional pResult member to VkPresentInfoKHR, so that per-swapchain results can be obtained from vkQueuePresentKHR().

• Revision 66, 2015-11-03 (Daniel Rakos)
  ◦ Added allocation callbacks to create and destroy functions.
  ◦ Updated resource transition language.
  ◦ Updated sample code.

• Revision 67, 2015-11-10 (Jesse Hall)
  ◦ Add reserved flags bitmask to VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR.
  ◦ Modify naming and member ordering to match API style conventions, and so the VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR image property members mirror corresponding VkImageCreateInfo members but with an ‘image’ prefix.
  ◦ Make VkPresentInfoKHR::pResults non-const; it is an output array parameter.
  ◦ Make pPresentInfo parameter to vkQueuePresentKHR const.

• Revision 68, 2016-04-05 (Ian Elliott)
  ◦ Moved the “validity” include for vkAcquireNextImage to be in its proper place, after the prototype and list of parameters.
  ◦ Clarified language about presentable images, including how they are acquired, when applications can and cannot use them, etc. As part of this, removed language about
“ownership” of presentable images, and replaced it with more-consistent language about presentable images being “acquired” by the application.

- 2016-08-23 (Ian Elliott)
  - Update the example code, to use the final API command names, to not have so many characters per line, and to split out a new example to show how to obtain function pointers. This code is more similar to the LunarG “cube” demo program.

- 2016-08-25 (Ian Elliott)
  - A note was added at the beginning of the example code, stating that it will be removed from future versions of the appendix.

- Revision 69, 2017-09-07 (Tobias Hector)
  - Added interactions with Vulkan 1.1

- Revision 70, 2017-10-06 (Ian Elliott)
  - Corrected interactions with Vulkan 1.1

**VK_KHR_swapchain_mutable_format**

**Name String**

VK_KHR_swapchain_mutable_format

**Extension Type**

Device extension

**Registered Extension Number**

201

**Revision**

1

**Extension and Version Dependencies**

- Requires Vulkan 1.0
- Requires VK_KHR_swapchain
- Requires VK_KHR_maintenance2
- Requires VK_KHR_image_format_list

**Contact**

- Daniel Rakos [drakos-arm](drakos-arm)

**Other Extension Metadata**

**Last Modified Date**

2018-03-28

**IP Status**

No known IP claims.
Contributors

- Jason Ekstrand, Intel
- Jan-Harald Fredriksen, ARM
- Jesse Hall, Google
- Daniel Rakos, AMD
- Ray Smith, ARM

Description

This extension allows processing of swapchain images as different formats to that used by the window system, which is particularly useful for switching between sRGB and linear RGB formats.

It adds a new swapchain creation flag that enables creating image views from presentable images with a different format than the one used to create the swapchain.

New Enum Constants

- VK_KHR_SWAPCHAIN_MUTABLE_FORMAT_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_SWAPCHAIN_MUTABLE_FORMAT_SPEC_VERSION
- Extending VkSwapchainCreateFlagBitsKHR:
  - VK_SWAPCHAIN_CREATE_MUTABLE_FORMAT_BIT_KHR

Issues

1) Are there any new capabilities needed?

**RESOLVED:** No. It is expected that all implementations exposing this extension support swapchain image format mutability.

2) Do we need a separate VK_SWAPCHAIN_CREATE_EXTENDED_USAGE_BIT_KHR?

**RESOLVED:** No. This extension requires VK_KHR_maintenance2 and presentable images of swapchains created with VK_SWAPCHAIN_CREATE_MUTABLE_FORMAT_BIT_KHR are created internally in a way equivalent to specifying both VK_IMAGE_CREATE_MUTABLE_FORMAT_BIT and VK_IMAGE_CREATE_EXTENDED_USAGE_BIT_KHR.

3) Do we need a separate structure to allow specifying an image format list for swapchains?

**RESOLVED:** No. We simply use the same VkImageFormatListCreateInfoKHR structure introduced by VK_KHR_image_format_list. The structure is required to be included in the pNext chain of VkSwapchainCreateInfoKHR for swapchains created with VK_SWAPCHAIN_CREATE_MUTABLE_FORMAT_BIT_KHR.

Version History

- Revision 1, 2018-03-28 (Daniel Rakos)
  - Internal revisions.
VK_KHR_synchronization2

Name String
VK_KHR_synchronization2

Extension Type
Device extension

Registered Extension Number
315

Revision
1

Extension and Version Dependencies
• Requires Vulkan 1.0
• Requires VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2

Contact
• Tobias Hector tobshi

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
2020-12-03

Interactions and External Dependencies
• Interacts with VK_KHR_create_renderpass2

Contributors
• Tobias Hector

Description

This extension modifies the original core synchronization APIs to simplify the interface and improve usability of these APIs. It also adds new pipeline stage and access flag types that extend into the 64-bit range, as we have run out within the 32-bit range. The new flags are identical to the old values within the 32-bit range, with new stages and bits beyond that.

Pipeline stages and access flags are now specified together in memory barrier structures, making the connection between the two more obvious. Additionally, scoping the pipeline stages into the barrier structs allows the use of the MEMORY_READ and MEMORY_WRITE flags without sacrificing precision. The per-stage access flags should be used to disambiguate specific accesses in a given stage or set of stages - for instance, between uniform reads and sampling operations.

Layout transitions have been simplified as well; rather than requiring a different set of layouts for depth/stencil/color attachments, there are generic VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL_KHR and VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL_KHR layouts which are contextually applied based on the image
format. For example, for a depth format image, `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL_KHR` is equivalent to `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_DEPTH_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL_KHR`. `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL_KHR` also functionally replaces `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_SHADER_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL`.

Events are now more efficient, because they include memory dependency information when you set them on the device. Previously, this information was only known when waiting on an event, so the dependencies could not be satisfied until the wait occurred. That sometimes meant stalling the pipeline when the wait occurred. The new API provides enough information for implementations to satisfy these dependencies in parallel with other tasks.

Queue submission has been changed to wrap command buffers and semaphores in extensible structures, which incorporate changes from Vulkan 1.1, `VK_KHR_device_group`, and `VK_KHR_timeline_semaphore`. This also adds a pipeline stage to the semaphore signal operation, mirroring the existing pipeline stage specification for wait operations.

Other miscellaneous changes include:

- Events can now be specified as interacting only with the device, allowing more efficient access to the underlying object.
- Image memory barriers that do not perform an image layout transition can be specified by setting `oldLayout` equal to `newLayout`.
  - E.g. the old and new layout can both be set to `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_UNDEFINED`, without discarding data in the image.
- Queue family ownership transfer parameters are simplified in some cases.
- Where two synchronization commands need to be matched up (queue transfer operations, events), the dependency information specified in each place must now match completely for consistency.
- Extensions with commands or functions with a `VkPipelineStageFlags` or `VkPipelineStageFlagBits` parameter have had those APIs replaced with equivalents using `VkPipelineStageFlags2KHR`.
- The new event and barrier interfaces are now more extensible for future changes.
- Relevant pipeline stage masks can now be specified as empty with the new `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_NONE_KHR` and `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_NONE_KHR` values.
- `VkMemoryBarrier2KHR` can be chained to `VkSubpassDependency2`, overriding the original 32-bit stage and access masks.

**New Commands**

- `vkCmdPipelineBarrier2KHR`
- `vkCmdResetEvent2KHR`
- `vkCmdSetEvent2KHR`
- `vkCmdWaitEvents2KHR`
- `vkCmdWriteTimestamp2KHR`
- `vkQueueSubmit2KHR`
New Structures

- VkBufferMemoryBarrier2KHR
- VkCommandBufferSubmitInfoKHR
- VkDependencyInfoKHR
- VkImageMemoryBarrier2KHR
- VkSemaphoreSubmitInfoKHR
- VkSubmitInfo2KHR
- Extending VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2, VkDeviceCreateInfo:
  - Extending VkPhysicalDeviceSynchronization2FeaturesKHR
- Extending VkSubpassDependency2:
  - VkMemoryBarrier2KHR

New Enums

- VkAccessFlagBits2KHR
- VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR
- VkSubmitFlagBitsKHR

New Bitmasks

- VkAccessFlags2KHR
- VkPipelineStageFlags2KHR
- VkSubmitFlagsKHR

New Enum Constants

- VK_KHR_SYNCHRONIZATION_2_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_SYNCHRONIZATION_2_SPEC_VERSION
- Extending VkAccessFlagBits:
  - VK_ACCESS_NONE_KHR
- Extending VkEventCreateFlagBits:
  - VK_EVENT_CREATE_DEVICE_ONLY_BIT_KHR
- Extending VkImageLayout:
  - VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_ATTACHMENT_OPTIMAL_KHR
  - VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_READ_ONLY_OPTIMAL_KHR
- Extending VkPipelineStageFlagBits:
  - VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_NONE_KHR
- Extending VkStructureType:
If \texttt{VK_KHR\_acceleration\_structure} is supported:

- Extending \texttt{VkAccessFlagBits2KHR}:
  - \texttt{VK\_ACCESS\_2\_ACCELERATION\_STRUCTURE\_READ\_BIT\_KHR}
  - \texttt{VK\_ACCESS\_2\_ACCELERATION\_STRUCTURE\_WRITE\_BIT\_KHR}

- Extending \texttt{VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR}:
  - \texttt{VK\_PIPELINE\_STAGE\_2\_ACCELERATION\_STRUCTURE\_BUILD\_BIT\_KHR}

If \texttt{VK_KHR\_fragment\_shading\_rate} is supported:

- Extending \texttt{VkAccessFlagBits2KHR}:
  - \texttt{VK\_ACCESS\_2\_FRAGMENT\_SHADING\_RATE\_ATTACHMENT\_READ\_BIT\_KHR}

- Extending \texttt{VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR}:
  - \texttt{VK\_PIPELINE\_STAGE\_2\_FRAGMENT\_SHADING\_RATE\_ATTACHMENT\_BIT\_KHR}

If \texttt{VK_KHR\_ray\_tracing\_pipeline} is supported:

- Extending \texttt{VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR}:
  - \texttt{VK\_PIPELINE\_STAGE\_2\_RAY\_TRACING\_SHADER\_BIT\_KHR}

\textbf{Examples}

See [https://github.com/KhronosGroup/Vulkan-Docs/wiki/Synchronization-Examples](https://github.com/KhronosGroup/Vulkan-Docs/wiki/Synchronization-Examples)

\textbf{Version History}

- Revision 1, 2020-12-03 (Tobias Hector)
  - Internal revisions

\textbf{VK_KHR\_timeline\_semaphore}

\textbf{Name String}

\texttt{VK_KHR\_timeline\_semaphore}
Extension Type
Device extension

Registered Extension Number
208

Revision
2

Extension and Version Dependencies
- Requires Vulkan 1.0
- Requires VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2

Deprecation state
- Promoted to Vulkan 1.2

Contact
- Jason Ekstrand @jekstrand

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
2019-06-12

IP Status
No known IP claims.

Interactions and External Dependencies
- This extension interacts with VK_KHR_external_semaphore_capabilities
- This extension interacts with VK_KHR_external_semaphore
- This extension interacts with VK_KHR_external_semaphore_win32
- Promoted to Vulkan 1.2 Core

Contributors
- Jeff Bolz, NVIDIA
- Yuriy O'Donnell, Epic Games
- Jason Ekstrand, Intel
- Jesse Hall, Google
- James Jones, NVIDIA
- Jeff Juliano, NVIDIA
- Daniel Rakos, AMD
- Ray Smith, Arm
Description

This extension introduces a new type of semaphore that has an integer payload identifying a point in a timeline. Such timeline semaphores support the following operations:

- Host query - A host operation that allows querying the payload of the timeline semaphore.
- Host wait - A host operation that allows a blocking wait for a timeline semaphore to reach a specified value.
- Host signal - A host operation that allows advancing the timeline semaphore to a specified value.
- Device wait - A device operation that allows waiting for a timeline semaphore to reach a specified value.
- Device signal - A device operation that allows advancing the timeline semaphore to a specified value.

Promotion to Vulkan 1.2

All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.2, with the KHR suffix omitted. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

New Commands

- `vkGetSemaphoreCounterValueKHR`
- `vkSignalSemaphoreKHR`
- `vkWaitSemaphoresKHR`

New Structures

- `VkSemaphoreSignalInfoKHR`
- `VkSemaphoreWaitInfoKHR`
- Extending `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2, VkDeviceCreateInfo`:
  - `VkPhysicalDeviceTimelineSemaphoreFeaturesKHR`
- Extending `VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2`:
  - `VkPhysicalDeviceTimelineSemaphorePropertiesKHR`
- Extending `VkSemaphoreCreateInfo, VkPhysicalDeviceExternalSemaphoreInfo`:
  - `VkSemaphoreTypeCreateInfoKHR`
- Extending `VkSubmitInfo, VkBindSparseInfo`:
  - `VkTimelineSemaphoreSubmitInfoKHR`

New Enums

- `VkSemaphoreTypeKHR`
• VkSemaphoreWaitFlagBitsKHR

New Bitmasks
• VkSemaphoreWaitFlagsKHR

New Enum Constants
• VK_KHR_TIMELINE_SEMAPHORE_EXTENSION_NAME
• VK_KHR_TIMELINE_SEMAPHORE_SPEC_VERSION
• Extending VkSemaphoreType:
  ◦ VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_BINARY_KHR
  ◦ VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE_KHR
• Extending VkSemaphoreWaitFlagBits:
  ◦ VK_SEMAPHORE_WAIT_ANY_BIT_KHR
• Extending VkStructureType:
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_TIMELINE_SEMAPHORE_FEATURES_KHR
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_TIMELINE_SEMAPHORE_PROPERTIES_KHR
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SEMAPHORE_SIGNAL_INFO_KHR
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_CREATE_INFO_KHR
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_SEMAPHORE_WAIT_INFO_KHR
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_TIMELINE_SEMAPHORE_SUBMIT_INFO_KHR

Issues

1) Do we need a new object type for this?

RESOLVED: No, we just introduce a new type of semaphore object, as VK_KHR_external_semaphore_win32 already uses semaphores as the destination for importing D3D12 fence objects, which are semantically close/identical to the proposed synchronization primitive.

2) What type of payload the new synchronization primitive has?

RESOLVED: A 64-bit unsigned integer that can only be set to strictly increasing values by signal operations and is not changed by wait operations.

3) Does the new synchronization primitive have the same signal-before-wait requirement as the existing semaphores do?

RESOLVED: No. Timeline semaphores support signaling and waiting entirely asynchronously. It is the responsibility of the client to avoid deadlock.

4) Does the new synchronization primitive allow resetting its payload?

RESOLVED: No, allowing the payload value to “go backwards” is problematic. Applications looking
for reset behavior should create a new instance of the synchronization primitive instead.

5) How do we enable host waits on the synchronization primitive?

**RESOLVED:** Both a non-blocking query of the current payload value of the synchronization primitive, and a blocking wait operation are provided.

6) How do we enable device waits and signals on the synchronization primitive?

**RESOLVED:** Similar to `VK_KHR_external_semaphore_win32`, this extension introduces a new structure that can be chained to `VkSubmitInfo` to specify the values signaled semaphores should be set to, and the values waited semaphores need to reach.

7) Can the new synchronization primitive be used to synchronize presentation and swapchain image acquisition operations?

**RESOLVED:** Some implementations may have problems with supporting that directly, thus it is not allowed in this extension.

8) Do we want to support external sharing of the new synchronization primitive type?

**RESOLVED:** Yes. Timeline semaphore specific external sharing capabilities can be queried using `vkGetPhysicalDeviceExternalSemaphoreProperties` by chaining the new `VkSemaphoreTypeCreateInfoKHR` structure to its `pExternalSemaphoreInfo` structure. This allows having a different set of external semaphore handle types supported for timeline semaphores vs binary semaphores.

9) Do we need to add a host signal operation for the new synchronization primitive type?

**RESOLVED:** Yes. This helps in situations where one host thread submits a workload but another host thread has the information on when the workload is ready to be executed.

10) How should the new synchronization primitive interact with the ordering requirements of the original `VkSemaphore`?

**RESOLVED:** Prior to calling any command which may cause a wait operation on a binary semaphore, the client must ensure that the semaphore signal operation that has been submitted for execution and any semaphore signal operations on which it depends (if any) must have also been submitted for execution.

11) Should we have separate feature bits for different sub-features of timeline semaphores?

**RESOLVED:** No. The only feature which cannot be supported universally is timeline semaphore import/export. For import/export, the client is already required to query available external handle types via `vkGetPhysicalDeviceExternalSemaphoreProperties` and provide the semaphore type by adding a `VkSemaphoreTypeCreateInfoKHR` structure to the `pNext` chain of `VkPhysicalDeviceExternalSemaphoreInfo` so no new feature bit is required.

**Version History**

- Revision 1, 2018-05-10 (Jason Ekstrand)
VK_KHR_uniform_buffer_standard_layout

Name String
VK_KHR_uniform_buffer_standard_layout

Extension Type
Device extension

Registered Extension Number
254

Revision
1

Extension and Version Dependencies
- Requires Vulkan 1.0
- Requires VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2

Deprecation state
- Promoted to Vulkan 1.2

Contact
- Graeme Leese gnl21

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
2019-01-25

Interactions and External Dependencies
- Promoted to Vulkan 1.2 Core

Contributors
- Graeme Leese, Broadcom
- Jeff Bolz, NVIDIA
- Tobias Hector, AMD
- Jason Ekstrand, Intel
- Neil Henning, AMD
Description

This extension enables tighter array and struct packing to be used with uniform buffers.

It modifies the alignment rules for uniform buffers, allowing for tighter packing of arrays and structures. This allows, for example, the std430 layout, as defined in GLSL to be supported in uniform buffers.

Promotion to Vulkan 1.2

All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.2, with the KHR suffix omitted. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

New Structures

- Extending VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2, VkDeviceCreateInfo:
  - VkPhysicalDeviceUniformBufferStandardLayoutFeaturesKHR

New Enum Constants

- VK_KHR_UNIFORM_BUFFER_STANDARD_LAYOUT_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_UNIFORM_BUFFER_STANDARD_LAYOUT_SPEC_VERSION
- Extending VkStructureType:
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_UNIFORM_BUFFER_STANDARD_LAYOUT_FEATURES_KHR

Version History

- Revision 1, 2019-01-25 (Graeme Leese)
  - Initial draft

VK_KHR_variable_pointers

Name String
  - VK_KHR_variable_pointers

Extension Type
  - Device extension

Registered Extension Number
  - 121

Revision
  - 1

Extension and Version Dependencies
  - Requires Vulkan 1.0
• Requires `VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2`
• Requires `VK_KHR_storage_buffer_storage_class`

**Deprecation state**
- *Promoted* to Vulkan 1.1

**Contact**
- Jesse Hall [critsec](mailto:critsec@googlegroups.com)

**Other Extension Metadata**

**Last Modified Date**
2017-09-05

**IP Status**
No known IP claims.

**Interactions and External Dependencies**
- This extension requires `SPV_KHR_variable_pointers`
- Promoted to Vulkan 1.1 Core

**Contributors**
- John Kessenich, Google
- Neil Henning, Codeplay
- David Neto, Google
- Daniel Koch, Nvidia
- Graeme Leese, Broadcom
- Weifeng Zhang, Qualcomm
- Stephen Clarke, Imagination Technologies
- Jason Ekstrand, Intel
- Jesse Hall, Google

**Description**

The `VK_KHR_variable_pointers` extension allows implementations to indicate their level of support for the `SPV_KHR_variable_pointers` SPIR-V extension. The SPIR-V extension allows shader modules to use invocation-private pointers into uniform and/or storage buffers, where the pointer values can be dynamic and non-uniform.

The `SPV_KHR_variable_pointers` extension introduces two capabilities. The first, `VariablePointersStorageBuffer`, **must** be supported by all implementations of this extension. The second, `VariablePointers`, is optional.
Promotion to Vulkan 1.1

All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.1, with the KHR suffix omitted, however support for the variablePointersStorageBuffer feature is made optional. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

New Structures

- Extending VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2, VkDeviceCreateInfo:
  - VkPhysicalDeviceVariablePointerFeaturesKHR
  - VkPhysicalDeviceVariablePointersFeaturesKHR

New Enum Constants

- VK_KHR_VARIABLE_POINTERS_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_VARIABLE_POINTERS_SPEC_VERSION

- Extending VkStructureType:
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_VARIABLE_POINTERS_FEATURES_KHR

New SPIR-V Capabilities

- VariablePointers
- VariablePointersStorageBuffer

Issues

1) Do we need an optional property for the SPIR-V VariablePointersStorageBuffer capability or should it be mandatory when this extension is advertised?

RESOLVED: Add it as a distinct feature, but make support mandatory. Adding it as a feature makes the extension easier to include in a future core API version. In the extension, the feature is mandatory, so that presence of the extension guarantees some functionality. When included in a core API version, the feature would be optional.

2) Can support for these capabilities vary between shader stages?

RESOLVED: No, if the capability is supported in any stage it must be supported in all stages.

3) Should the capabilities be features or limits?

RESOLVED: Features, primarily for consistency with other similar extensions.

Version History

- Revision 1, 2017-03-14 (Jesse Hall and John Kessenich)
  - Internal revisions
VK_KHR_vulkan_memory_model

Name String
VK_KHR_vulkan_memory_model

Extension Type
Device extension

Registered Extension Number
212

Revision
3

Extension and Version Dependencies
• Requires Vulkan 1.0

Deprecation state
• Promoted to Vulkan 1.2

Contact
• Jeff Bolz jeffbolznv

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
2018-12-10

IP Status
No known IP claims.

Interactions and External Dependencies
• Promoted to Vulkan 1.2 Core
• This extension requires SPV_KHR_vulkan_memory_model

Contributors
• Jeff Bolz, NVIDIA
• Alan Baker, Google
• Tobias Hector, AMD
• David Neto, Google
• Robert Simpson, Qualcomm Technologies, Inc.
• Brian Sumner, AMD

Description
The VK_KHR_vulkan_memory_model extension allows use of the Vulkan Memory Model, which formally
defines how to synchronize memory accesses to the same memory locations performed by multiple shader invocations.

\[\text{Note}\]
Version 3 of the spec added a member (vulkanMemoryModelAvailabilityVisibilityChains) to VkPhysicalDeviceVulkanMemoryModelFeaturesKHR, which is an incompatible change from version 2.

**Promotion to Vulkan 1.2**

All functionality in this extension is included in core Vulkan 1.2, with the KHR suffix omitted. However, if Vulkan 1.2 is supported and this extension is not, the `vulkanMemoryModel` capability is optional. The original type, enum and command names are still available as aliases of the core functionality.

**New Structures**

- Extending `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2, VkDeviceCreateInfo`:
  - `VkPhysicalDeviceVulkanMemoryModelFeaturesKHR`

**New Enum Constants**

- `VK_KHR_VULKAN_MEMORY_MODEL_EXTENSION_NAME`
- `VK_KHR_VULKAN_MEMORY_MODEL_SPEC_VERSION`

- Extending `VkStructureType`:
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_VULKAN_MEMORY_MODEL_FEATURES_KHR`

**New SPIR-V Capabilities**

- `VulkanMemoryModelKHR`

**Version History**

- Revision 1, 2018-06-24 (Jeff Bolz)
  - Initial draft
- Revision 3, 2018-12-10 (Jeff Bolz)
  - Add `vulkanMemoryModelAvailabilityVisibilityChains` member to the VkPhysicalDeviceVulkanMemoryModelFeaturesKHR structure.

**VK_KHR_wayland_surface**

**Name String**

`VK_KHR_wayland_surface`
Extension Type
  Instance extension

Registered Extension Number
  7

Revision
  6

Extension and Version Dependencies
  • Requires Vulkan 1.0
  • Requires VK_KHR_surface

Contact
  • Jesse Hall @critsec
  • Ian Elliott @ianelliottus

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
  2015-11-28

IP Status
  No known IP claims.

Contributors
  • Patrick Doane, Blizzard
  • Jason Ekstrand, Intel
  • Ian Elliott, LunarG
  • Courtney Goeltzenleuchter, LunarG
  • Jesse Hall, Google
  • James Jones, NVIDIA
  • Antoine Labour, Google
  • Jon Leech, Khronos
  • David Mao, AMD
  • Norbert Nopper, Freescale
  • Alon Or-bach, Samsung
  • Daniel Rakos, AMD
  • Graham Sellers, AMD
  • Ray Smith, ARM
  • Jeff Vigil, Qualcomm
Description

The VK_KHR_wayland_surface extension is an instance extension. It provides a mechanism to create a VkSurfaceKHR object (defined by the VK_KHR_surface extension) that refers to a Wayland wl_surface, as well as a query to determine support for rendering to a Wayland compositor.

New Commands

- vkCreateWaylandSurfaceKHR
- vkGetPhysicalDeviceWaylandPresentationSupportKHR

New Structures

- VkWaylandSurfaceCreateInfoKHR

New Bitmasks

- VkWaylandSurfaceCreateFlagsKHR

New Enum Constants

- VK_KHR_WAYLAND_SURFACE_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_WAYLAND_SURFACE_SPEC_VERSION
- Extending VkStructureType:
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_WAYLAND_SURFACE_CREATE_INFO_KHR

Issues

1) Does Wayland need a way to query for compatibility between a particular physical device and a specific Wayland display? This would be a more general query than vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceSupportKHR: if the Wayland-specific query returned VK_TRUE for a (VkPhysicalDevice, struct wl_display*) pair, then the physical device could be assumed to support presentation to any VkSurfaceKHR for surfaces on the display.

RESOLVED: Yes. vkGetPhysicalDeviceWaylandPresentationSupportKHR was added to address this issue.

2) Should we require surfaces created with vkCreateWaylandSurfaceKHR to support the VK_PRESENT_MODE_MAILBOX_KHR present mode?

RESOLVED: Yes. Wayland is an inherently mailbox window system and mailbox support is required for some Wayland compositor interactions to work as expected. While handling these interactions may be possible with VK_PRESENT_MODE_FIFO_KHR, it is much more difficult to do without deadlock and requiring all Wayland applications to be able to support implementations which only support VK_PRESENT_MODE_FIFO_KHR would be an onerous restriction on application developers.
Version History

- Revision 1, 2015-09-23 (Jesse Hall)
  - Initial draft, based on the previous contents of VK_EXT_KHR_swapchain (later renamed VK_EXT_KHR_surface).

- Revision 2, 2015-10-02 (James Jones)
  - Added vkGetPhysicalDeviceWaylandPresentationSupportKHR() to resolve issue #1.
  - Adjusted wording of issue #1 to match the agreed-upon solution.
  - Renamed “window” parameters to “surface” to match Wayland conventions.

- Revision 3, 2015-10-26 (Ian Elliott)
  - Renamed from VK_EXT_KHR_wayland_surface to VK_KHR_wayland_surface.

- Revision 4, 2015-11-03 (Daniel Rakos)
  - Added allocation callbacks to vkCreateWaylandSurfaceKHR.

- Revision 5, 2015-11-28 (Daniel Rakos)
  - Updated the surface create function to take a pCreateInfo structure.

- Revision 6, 2017-02-08 (Jason Ekstrand)
  - Added the requirement that implementations support VK_PRESENT_MODE_MAILBOX_KHR.
  - Added wording about interactions between vkQueuePresentKHR and the Wayland requests sent to the compositor.

VK_KHR_win32_keyed_mutex

Name String

VK_KHR_win32_keyed_mutex

Extension Type

Device extension

Registered Extension Number

76

Revision

1

Extension and Version Dependencies

- Requires Vulkan 1.0
- Requires VK_KHR_external_memory_win32

Contact

- Carsten Rohde crohde
Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
2016-10-21

IP Status
No known IP claims.

Contributors
• James Jones, NVIDIA
• Jeff Juliano, NVIDIA
• Carsten Rohde, NVIDIA

Description
Applications that wish to import Direct3D 11 memory objects into the Vulkan API may wish to use the native keyed mutex mechanism to synchronize access to the memory between Vulkan and Direct3D. This extension provides a way for an application to access the keyed mutex associated with an imported Vulkan memory object when submitting command buffers to a queue.

New Structures
• Extending VkSubmitInfo, VkSubmitInfo2KHR:
  ◦ VkWin32KeyedMutexAcquireReleaseInfoKHR

New Enum Constants
• VK_KHR_WIN32_KEYED_MUTEX_EXTENSION_NAME
• VK_KHR_WIN32_KEYED_MUTEX_SPEC_VERSION
• Extending VkStructureType:
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_WIN32_KEYED_MUTEX_ACQUIRE_RELEASE_INFO_KHR

Version History
• Revision 1, 2016-10-21 (James Jones)
  ◦ Initial revision

VK_KHR_win32_surface

Name String
VK_KHR_win32_surface

Extension Type
Instance extension
Registered Extension Number
10

Revision
6

Extension and Version Dependencies
• Requires Vulkan 1.0
• Requires VK_KHR_surface

Contact
• Jesse Hall @critsec
• Ian Elliott @ianelliottus

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
2017-04-24

IP Status
No known IP claims.

Contributors
• Patrick Doane, Blizzard
• Jason Ekstrand, Intel
• Ian Elliott, LunarG
• Courtney Goeltzenleuchter, LunarG
• Jesse Hall, Google
• James Jones, NVIDIA
• Antoine Labour, Google
• Jon Leech, Khronos
• David Mao, AMD
• Norbert Nopper, Freescale
• Alon Or-bach, Samsung
• Daniel Rakos, AMD
• Graham Sellers, AMD
• Ray Smith, ARM
• Jeff Vigil, Qualcomm
• Chia-I Wu, LunarG
Description

The VK_KHR_win32_surface extension is an instance extension. It provides a mechanism to create a VkSurfaceKHR object (defined by the VK_KHR_surface extension) that refers to a Win32 HWND, as well as a query to determine support for rendering to the windows desktop.

New Commands

- vkCreateWin32SurfaceKHR
- vkGetPhysicalDeviceWin32PresentationSupportKHR

New Structures

- VkWin32SurfaceCreateInfoKHR

New Bitmasks

- VkWin32SurfaceCreateFlagsKHR

New Enum Constants

- VK_KHR_WIN32_SURFACE_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_WIN32_SURFACE_SPEC_VERSION
- Extending VkStructureType:
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_WIN32_SURFACE_CREATE_INFO_KHR

Issues

1) Does Win32 need a way to query for compatibility between a particular physical device and a specific screen? Compatibility between a physical device and a window generally only depends on what screen the window is on. However, there is not an obvious way to identify a screen without already having a window on the screen.

RESOLVED: No. While it may be useful, there is not a clear way to do this on Win32. However, a method was added to query support for presenting to the windows desktop as a whole.

2) If a native window object (HWND) is used by one graphics API, and then is later used by a different graphics API (one of which is Vulkan), can these uses interfere with each other?

RESOLVED: Yes.

Uses of a window object by multiple graphics APIs results in undefined behavior. Such behavior may succeed when using one Vulkan implementation but fail when using a different Vulkan implementation. Potential failures include:

- Creating then destroying a flip presentation model DXGI swapchain on a window object can prevent vkCreateSwapchainKHR from succeeding on the same window object.
- Creating then destroying a VkSwapchainKHR on a window object can prevent creation of a
bitblt model DXGI swapchain on the same window object.

- Creating then destroying a `VkSwapchainKHR` on a window object can effectively `SetPixelFormat` to a different format than the format chosen by an OpenGL application.

- Creating then destroying a `VkSwapchainKHR` on a window object on one `VkPhysicalDevice` can prevent `vkCreateSwapchainKHR` from succeeding on the same window object, but on a different `VkPhysicalDevice` that is associated with a different Vulkan ICD.

In all cases the problem can be worked around by creating a new window object.

Technical details include:

- Creating a DXGI swapchain over a window object can alter the object for the remainder of its lifetime. The alteration persists even after the DXGI swapchain has been destroyed. This alteration can make it impossible for a conformant Vulkan implementation to create a `VkSwapchainKHR` over the same window object. Mention of this alteration can be found in the remarks section of the MSDN documentation for `DXGI_SWAP_EFFECT`.

- Calling GDI's `SetPixelFormat` (needed by OpenGL's WGL layer) on a window object alters the object for the remainder of its lifetime. The MSDN documentation for `SetPixelFormat` explains that a window object's pixel format can be set only one time.

- Creating a `VkSwapchainKHR` over a window object can alter the object for its remaining lifetime. Either of the above alterations may occur as a side effect of `vkCreateSwapchainKHR`.

**Version History**

- Revision 1, 2015-09-23 (Jesse Hall)
  - Initial draft, based on the previous contents of VK_EXT_KHR_swapchain (later renamed VK_EXT_KHR_surface).
- Revision 2, 2015-10-02 (James Jones)
  - Added presentation support query for win32 desktops.
- Revision 3, 2015-10-26 (Ian Elliott)
  - Renamed from VK_EXT_KHR_win32_surface to VK_KHR_win32_surface.
- Revision 4, 2015-11-03 (Daniel Rakos)
  - Added allocation callbacks to `vkCreateWin32SurfaceKHR`.
- Revision 5, 2015-11-28 (Daniel Rakos)
  - Updated the surface create function to take a `pCreateInfo` structure.
- Revision 6, 2017-04-24 (Jeff Juliano)
  - Add issue 2 addressing reuse of a native window object in a different Graphics API, or by a different Vulkan ICD.

**VK_KHR_workgroup_memory_explicit_layout**

**Name String**

`VK_KHR_workgroup_memory_explicit_layout`
Extension Type
Device extension

Registered Extension Number
337

Revision
1

Extension and Version Dependencies
• Requires Vulkan 1.0
• Requires VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2

Contact
• Caio Marcelo de Oliveira Filho

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
2020-06-01

IP Status
No known IP claims.

Interactions and External Dependencies
• This extension requires SPV_KHR_workgroup_memory_explicit_layout

Contributors
• Caio Marcelo de Oliveira Filho, Intel
• Jeff Bolz, NVIDIA
• Graeme Leese, Broadcom
• Jason Ekstrand, Intel
• Daniel Koch, NVIDIA

Description
This extension adds Vulkan support for the SPV_KHR_workgroup_memory_explicit_layout SPIR-V extension, which allows shaders to explicitly define the layout of Workgroup storage class memory and create aliases between variables from that storage class in a compute shader.

The aliasing feature allows different "views" on the same data, so the shader can bulk copy data from another storage class using one type (e.g. an array of large vectors), and then use the data with a more specific type. It also enables reducing the amount of workgroup memory consumed by allowing the shader to alias data whose lifetimes do not overlap.

The explicit layout support and some form of aliasing is also required for layering OpenCL on top of
New Structures

- Extending `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2`, `VkDeviceCreateInfo`:
  - `VkPhysicalDeviceWorkgroupMemoryExplicitLayoutFeaturesKHR`

New Enum Constants

- `VK_KHR_WORKGROUP_MEMORY_EXPLICIT_LAYOUT_EXTENSION_NAME`
- `VK_KHR_WORKGROUP_MEMORY_EXPLICIT_LAYOUT_SPEC_VERSION`
- Extending `VkStructureType`:
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_WORKGROUP_MEMORY_EXPLICIT_LAYOUT_FEATURES_KHR`

New SPIR-V Capabilities

- `WorkgroupMemoryExplicitLayoutKHR`
- `WorkgroupMemoryExplicitLayout8BitAccessKHR`
- `WorkgroupMemoryExplicitLayout16BitAccessKHR`

Version History

- Revision 1, 2020-06-01 (Caio Marcelo de Oliveira Filho)
  - Initial version

`VK_KHR_xcb_surface`

Name String

`VK_KHR_xcb_surface`

Extension Type

Instance extension

Registered Extension Number

6

Revision

6

Extension and Version Dependencies

- Requires Vulkan 1.0
- Requires `VK_KHR_surface`

Contact

- Jesse Hall @critsec
Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
2015-11-28

IP Status
No known IP claims.

Contributors
• Patrick Doane, Blizzard
• Jason Ekstrand, Intel
• Ian Elliott, LunarG
• Courtney Goeltzenleuchter, LunarG
• Jesse Hall, Google
• James Jones, NVIDIA
• Antoine Labour, Google
• Jon Leech, Khronos
• David Mao, AMD
• Norbert Nopper, Freescale
• Alon Or-bach, Samsung
• Daniel Rakos, AMD
• Graham Sellers, AMD
• Ray Smith, ARM
• Jeff Vigil, Qualcomm
• Chia-I Wu, LunarG

Description
The VK_KHR_xcb_surface extension is an instance extension. It provides a mechanism to create a VkSurfaceKHR object (defined by the VK_KHR_surface extension) that refers to an X11 Window, using the XCB client-side library, as well as a query to determine support for rendering via XCB.

New Commands
• vkCreateXcbSurfaceKHR
• vkGetPhysicalDeviceXcbPresentationSupportKHR

New Structures
• VkXcbSurfaceCreateInfoKHR
New Bitmasks

- VkXcbSurfaceCreateFlagsKHR

New Enum Constants

- VK_KHR_XCB_SURFACE_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_XCB_SURFACE_SPEC_VERSION
- Extending VkStructureType:
  - VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_XCB_SURFACE_CREATE_INFO_KHR

Issues

1) Does XCB need a way to query for compatibility between a particular physical device and a specific screen? This would be a more general query than vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceSupportKHR: If it returned VK_TRUE, then the physical device could be assumed to support presentation to any window on that screen.

RESOLVED: Yes, this is needed for toolkits that want to create a VkDevice before creating a window. To ensure the query is reliable, it must be made against a particular X visual rather than the screen in general.

Version History

- Revision 1, 2015-09-23 (Jesse Hall)
  - Initial draft, based on the previous contents of VK_EXT_KHR_swapchain (later renamed VK_EXT_KHR_surface).
- Revision 2, 2015-10-02 (James Jones)
  - Added presentation support query for an (xcb_connection_t*, xcb_visualid_t) pair.
  - Removed “root” parameter from CreateXcbSurfaceKHR(), as it is redundant when a window on the same screen is specified as well.
  - Adjusted wording of issue #1 and added agreed upon resolution.
- Revision 3, 2015-10-14 (Ian Elliott)
  - Removed “root” parameter from CreateXcbSurfaceKHR() in one more place.
- Revision 4, 2015-10-26 (Ian Elliott)
  - Renamed from VK_EXT_KHR_xcb_surface to VK_KHR xcb_surface.
- Revision 5, 2015-10-23 (Daniel Rakos)
  - Added allocation callbacks to vkCreateXcbSurfaceKHR.
- Revision 6, 2015-11-28 (Daniel Rakos)
  - Updated the surface create function to take a pCreateInfo structure.
VK_KHR_xlib_surface

Name String

VK_KHR_xlib_surface

Extension Type

Instance extension

Registered Extension Number

5

Revision

6

Extension and Version Dependencies

• Requires Vulkan 1.0
• Requires VK_KHR_surface

Contact

• Jesse Hall @critsec
• Ian Elliott @ianelliottus

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date

2015-11-28

IP Status

No known IP claims.

Contributors

• Patrick Doane, Blizzard
• Jason Ekstrand, Intel
• Ian Elliott, LunarG
• Courtney Goeltzenleuchter, LunarG
• Jesse Hall, Google
• James Jones, NVIDIA
• Antoine Labour, Google
• Jon Leech, Khronos
• David Mao, AMD
• Norbert Nopper, Freescale
• Alon Or-bach, Samsung
• Daniel Rakos, AMD
Description

The `VK_KHR_xlib_surface` extension is an instance extension. It provides a mechanism to create a `VkSurfaceKHR` object (defined by the `VK_KHR_surface` extension) that refers to an X11 `Window`, using the Xlib client-side library, as well as a query to determine support for rendering via Xlib.

New Commands

- `vkCreateXlibSurfaceKHR`
- `vkGetPhysicalDeviceXlibPresentationSupportKHR`

New Structures

- `VkXlibSurfaceCreateInfoKHR`

New Bitmasks

- `VkXlibSurfaceCreateFlagsKHR`

New Enum Constants

- `VK_KHR_XLIB_SURFACE_EXTENSION_NAME`
- `VK_KHR_XLIB_SURFACE_SPEC_VERSION`
- Extending `VkStructureType`:
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_XLIB_SURFACE_CREATE_INFO_KHR`

Issues

1) Does X11 need a way to query for compatibility between a particular physical device and a specific screen? This would be a more general query than `vkGetPhysicalDeviceSurfaceSupportKHR`; if it returned `VK_TRUE`, then the physical device could be assumed to support presentation to any window on that screen.

RESOLVED: Yes, this is needed for toolkits that want to create a `VkDevice` before creating a window. To ensure the query is reliable, it must be made against a particular X visual rather than the screen in general.

Version History

- Revision 1, 2015-09-23 (Jesse Hall)
  - Initial draft, based on the previous contents of VK_EXT_KHR_swapchain (later renamed...
VK_EXT_KHR_surface).

- Revision 2, 2015-10-02 (James Jones)
  - Added presentation support query for (Display*, VisualID) pair.
  - Removed “root” parameter from CreateXlibSurfaceKHR(), as it is redundant when a window on the same screen is specified as well.
  - Added appropriate X errors.
  - Adjusted wording of issue #1 and added agreed upon resolution.

- Revision 3, 2015-10-14 (Ian Elliott)
  - Renamed this extension from VK_EXT_KHR_x11_surface to VK_EXT_KHR_xlib_surface.

- Revision 4, 2015-10-26 (Ian Elliott)
  - Renamed from VK_EXT_KHR_xlib_surface to VK_KHR_xlib_surface.

- Revision 5, 2015-11-03 (Daniel Rakos)
  - Added allocation callbacks to vkCreateXlibSurfaceKHR.

- Revision 6, 2015-11-28 (Daniel Rakos)
  - Updated the surface create function to take a pCreateInfo structure.

**VK_KHR_zero_initialize_workgroup_memory**

**Name String**

VK_KHR_zero_initialize_workgroup_memory

**Extension Type**

Device extension

**Registered Extension Number**

326

**Revision**

1

**Extension and Version Dependencies**

- Requires Vulkan 1.0
- Requires VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2

**Contact**

- Alan Baker alan-baker

**Other Extension Metadata**

**Last Modified Date**

2020-11-18
IP Status
No known IP claims.

Interactions and External Dependencies
None

Contributors
• Alan Baker, Google
• Jeff Bolz, Nvidia
• Jason Ekstrand, Intel

Description
This extension allows the use of a null constant initializer on shader Workgroup memory variables, allowing implementations to expose any special hardware or instructions they may have. Zero initialization is commonly used by applications running untrusted content (e.g. web browsers) as way of defeating memory-scraping attacks.

New Structures
• Extending VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2, VkDeviceCreateInfo:
  ◦ VkPhysicalDeviceZeroInitializeWorkgroupMemoryFeaturesKHR

New Enum Constants
• VK_KHR_ZERO_INITIALIZE_WORKGROUP_MEMORY_EXTENSION_NAME
• VK_KHR_ZERO_INITIALIZE_WORKGROUP_MEMORY_SPEC_VERSION
• Extending VkStructureType:
  ◦ VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_ZERO_INITIALIZE_WORKGROUP_MEMORY_FEATURES_KHR

Version History
• Revision 1, 2020-11-18 (Alan Baker)
  ◦ Internal draft version

List of Provisional Extensions
• VK_KHR_portability_subset
• VK_KHR_video_decode_queue
• VK_KHR_video_encode_queue
• VK_KHR_video_queue
VK_KHR_portability_subset

Name String
   VK_KHR_portability_subset

Extension Type
   Device extension

Registered Extension Number
   164

Revision
   1

Extension and Version Dependencies
   • Requires Vulkan 1.0
   • Requires VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2
   • This is a provisional extension and must be used with caution. See the description of provisional header files for enablement and stability details.

Contact
   • Bill Hollings billhollings

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
   2020-07-21

IP Status
   No known IP claims.

Contributors
   • Bill Hollings, The Brenwill Workshop Ltd.
   • Daniel Koch, NVIDIA
   • Dzmitry Malyshau, Mozilla
   • Chip Davis, CodeWeavers
   • Dan Ginsburg, Valve
   • Mike Weiblen, LunarG
   • Neil Trevett, NVIDIA
   • Alexey Knyazev, Independent

Description

The `VK_KHR_portability_subset` extension allows a non-conformant Vulkan implementation to be built on top of another non-Vulkan graphics API, and identifies differences between that
implementation and a fully-conformant native Vulkan implementation.

This extension provides Vulkan implementations with the ability to mark otherwise-required capabilities as unsupported, or to establish additional properties and limits that the application should adhere to in order to guarantee portable behaviour and operation across platforms, including platforms where Vulkan is not natively supported.

The goal of this specification is to document, and make queryable, capabilities which are required to be supported by a fully-conformant Vulkan 1.0 implementation, but may be optional for an implementation of the Vulkan 1.0 Portability Subset.

The intent is that this extension will be advertised only on implementations of the Vulkan 1.0 Portability Subset, and not on conformant implementations of Vulkan 1.0. Fully-conformant Vulkan implementations provide all the required capabilities, and so will not provide this extension. Therefore, the existence of this extension can be used to determine that an implementation is likely not fully conformant with the Vulkan spec.

If this extension is supported by the Vulkan implementation, the application must enable this extension.

This extension defines several new structures that can be chained to the existing structures used by certain standard Vulkan calls, in order to query for non-conformant portable behavior.

**New Structures**

- Extending `VkPhysicalDeviceFeatures2`, `VkDeviceCreateInfo`:
  - `VkPhysicalDevicePortabilitySubsetFeaturesKHR`
- Extending `VkPhysicalDeviceProperties2`:
  - `VkPhysicalDevicePortabilitySubsetPropertiesKHR`

**New Enum Constants**

- `VK_KHR_PORTABILITY_SUBSET_EXTENSION_NAME`
- `VK_KHR_PORTABILITY_SUBSET_SPEC_VERSION`
- Extending `VkStructureType`:
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_PORTABILITY_SUBSET_FEATURES_KHR`
  - `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_PORTABILITY_SUBSET_PROPERTIES_KHR`

**Issues**

None.

**Version History**

- Revision 1, 2020-07-21 (Bill Hollings)
  - Initial draft.
VK_KHR_video_decode_queue

Name String

VK_KHR_video_decode_queue

Extension Type

Device extension

Registered Extension Number

25

Revision

1

Extension and Version Dependencies

• Requires Vulkan 1.0

• Requires VK_KHR_video_queue

• Requires VK_KHR_synchronization2

• This is a provisional extension and must be used with caution. See the description of provisional header files for enablement and stability details.

Contact

• jake.beju@amd.com

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date

2021-03-29

IP Status

No known IP claims.

Contributors

• Jake Beju, AMD

• Olivier Lapicque, NVIDIA

• Peter Fang, AMD

• Piers Daniell, NVIDIA

• Srinath Kumarapuram, NVIDIA

• Tony Zlatinski, NVIDIA

New Commands

• vkCmdDecodeVideoKHR
New Structures

- VkVideoDecodeInfoKHR

New Enums

- VkVideoDecodeFlagBitsKHR

New Bitmasks

- VkVideoDecodeFlagsKHR

New Enum Constants

- VK_KHR_VIDEO_DECODE_QUEUE_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_VIDEO_DECODE_QUEUE_SPEC_VERSION

Extending VkAccessFlagBits2KHR:

- VK_ACCESS_2_VIDEO_DECODE_READ_BIT_KHR
- VK_ACCESS_2_VIDEO_DECODE_WRITE_BIT_KHR

Extending VkBufferUsageFlagBits:

- VK_BUFFER_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODE_DST_BIT_KHR
- VK_BUFFER_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODE_SRC_BIT_KHR

Extending VkFormatFeatureFlagBits:

- VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_VIDEO_DECODE_DPB_BIT_KHR
- VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_VIDEO_DECODE_OUTPUT_BIT_KHR

Extending VkImageLayout:

- VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_VIDEO_DECODE_DPB_KHR
- VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_VIDEO_DECODE_DST_KHR
- VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_VIDEO_DECODE_SRC_KHR

Extending VkImageUsageFlagBits:

- VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODE_DPB_BIT_KHR
- VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODE_DST_BIT_KHR
- VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_DECODE_SRC_BIT_KHR

Extending VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR:

- VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VIDEO_DECODE_BIT_KHR

Extending VkQueueFlagBits:

- VK_QUEUE_VIDEO_DECODE_BIT_KHR

Extending VkStructureType:

- VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_DECODE_INFO_KHR
**Version History**

- Revision 1, 2018-6-11 (Peter Fang)
  - Initial draft
- Revision 1.5, Nov 09 2018 (Tony Zlatinski)
  - API Updates
- Revision 1.6, Jan 08 2020 (Tony Zlatinski)
  - API unify with the video_encode_queue spec
- Revision 1.7, March 29 2021 (Tony Zlatinski)
  - Spec and API updates.

**VK_KHR_video_encode_queue**

**Name String**

VK_KHR_video_encode_queue

**Extension Type**

Device extension

**Registered Extension Number**

300

**Revision**

2

**Extension and Version Dependencies**

- Requires Vulkan 1.0
- Requires VK_KHR_video_queue
- Requires VK_KHR_synchronization2
  
  This is a *provisional* extension and must be used with caution. See the [description](#) of provisional header files for enablement and stability details.

**Contact**

- ahmed.abdelkalek@amd.com

**Other Extension Metadata**

**Last Modified Date**

2021-03-29

**IP Status**

No known IP claims.
Contributors

- Ahmed Abdelkhalek, AMD
- Damien Kessler, NVIDIA
- Daniel Rakos, AMD
- George Hao, AMD
- Jake Beju, AMD
- Peter Fang, AMD
- Piers Daniell, NVIDIA
- Srinath Kumarapuram, NVIDIA
- Thomas J. Meier, NVIDIA
- Tony Zlatinski, NVIDIA
- Yang Liu, AMD

New Commands

- vkCmdEncodeVideoKHR

New Structures

- VkVideoEncodeInfoKHR
- Extending VkVideoCodingControlInfoKHR:
  - VkVideoEncodeRateControlInfoKHR

New Enums

- VkVideoEncodeFlagBitsKHR
- VkVideoEncodeRateControlFlagBitsKHR
- VkVideoEncodeRateControlModeFlagBitsKHR

New Bitmasks

- VkVideoEncodeFlagsKHR
- VkVideoEncodeRateControlFlagsKHR
- VkVideoEncodeRateControlModeFlagsKHR

New Enum Constants

- VK_KHR_VIDEO_ENCODE_QUEUE_EXTENSION_NAME
- VK_KHR_VIDEO_ENCODE_QUEUE_SPEC_VERSION
- Extending VkAccessFlagBits2KHR:
  - VK_ACCESS_2_VIDEO_ENCODE_READ_BIT_KHR
• Extending `VkBufferUsageFlagBits`:
  ◦ `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_DST_BIT_KHR`
  ◦ `VK_BUFFER_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_SRC_BIT_KHR`

• Extending `VkFormatFeatureFlagBits`:
  ◦ `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_VIDEO_ENCODE_DPB_BIT_KHR`
  ◦ `VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_VIDEO_ENCODE_INPUT_BIT_KHR`

• Extending `VkImageLayout`:
  ◦ `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_VIDEO_ENCODE_DPB_KHR`
  ◦ `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_VIDEO_ENCODE_DST_KHR`
  ◦ `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_VIDEO_ENCODE_SRC_KHR`

• Extending `VkImageUsageFlagBits`:
  ◦ `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_DPB_BIT_KHR`
  ◦ `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_DST_BIT_KHR`
  ◦ `VK_IMAGE_USAGE_VIDEO_ENCODE_SRC_BIT_KHR`

• Extending `VkPipelineStageFlagBits2KHR`:
  ◦ `VK_PIPELINE_STAGE_2_VIDEO_ENCODE_BIT_KHR`

• Extending `VkQueryType`:
  ◦ `VK_QUERY_TYPE_VIDEO_ENCODE_BITSTREAM_BUFFER_RANGE_KHR`

• Extending `VkQueueFlagBits`:
  ◦ `VK_QUEUE_VIDEO_ENCODE_BIT_KHR`

• Extending `VkStructureType`:
  ◦ `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_ENCODE_INFO_KHR`
  ◦ `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_ENCODE_RATE_CONTROL_INFO_KHR`

**Version History**

• Revision 1, 2018-07-23 (Ahmed Abdelkhalek)
  ◦ Initial draft

• Revision 1.1, 10/29/2019 (Tony Zlatinski)
  ◦ Updated the reserved spec tokens and renamed `VkVideoEncoderKHR` to `VkVideoSessionKHR`

• Revision 1.6, Jan 08 2020 (Tony Zlatinski)
  ◦ API unify with the video_decode_queue spec

• Revision 2, March 29 2021 (Tony Zlatinski)
  ◦ Spec and API updates.
VK_KHR_video_queue

Name String
  VK_KHR_video_queue

Extension Type
  Device extension

Registered Extension Number
  24

Revision
  2

Extension and Version Dependencies
  • Requires Vulkan 1.0
  • Requires VK_KHR_get_physical_device_properties2
  • Requires VK_KHR_sampler_ycbcr_conversion
  • This is a provisional extension and must be used with caution. See the description of provisional header files for enablement and stability details.

Contact
  • Tony Zlatinski @tzlatinski

Other Extension Metadata

Last Modified Date
  2021-03-29

IP Status
  No known IP claims.

Contributors
  • Ahmed Abdelkhaled, AMD
  • George Hao, AMD
  • Jake Beju, AMD
  • Piers Daniell, NVIDIA
  • Srinath Kumarapuram, NVIDIA
  • Tobias Hector, AMD
  • Tony Zlatinski, NVIDIA

New Object Types
  • VkVideoSessionKHR
• VkVideoSessionParametersKHR

New Commands

• vkBindVideoSessionMemoryKHR
• vkCmdBeginVideoCodingKHR
• vkCmdControlVideoCodingKHR
• vkCmdEndVideoCodingKHR
• vkCreateVideoSessionKHR
• vkCreateVideoSessionParametersKHR
• vkDestroyVideoSessionKHR
• vkDestroyVideoSessionParametersKHR
• vkGetPhysicalDeviceVideoCapabilitiesKHR
• vkGetPhysicalDeviceVideoFormatPropertiesKHR
• vkGetVideoSessionMemoryRequirementsKHR
• vkUpdateVideoSessionParametersKHR

New Structures

• VkPhysicalDeviceVideoFormatInfoKHR
• VkVideoBeginCodingInfoKHR
• VkVideoBindMemoryKHR
• VkVideoCapabilitiesKHR
• VkVideoCodingControlInfoKHR
• VkVideoEndCodingInfoKHR
• VkVideoFormatPropertiesKHR
• VkVideoGetMemoryPropertiesKHR
• VkVideoPictureResourceKHR
• VkVideoReferenceSlotKHR
• VkVideoSessionCreateInfoKHR
• VkVideoSessionParametersCreateInfoKHR
• VkVideoSessionParametersUpdateInfoKHR

Extending: VkFormatProperties2, VkImageCreateInfo, VkImageViewCreateInfo, VkBufferCreateInfo:

  ◦ VkVideoProfilesKHR

Extending: VkQueryPoolCreateInfo, VkFormatProperties2, VkImageCreateInfo, VkImageViewCreateInfo, VkBufferCreateInfo:

  ◦ VkVideoProfileKHR
• Extending VkQueueFamilyProperties2:
  ◦ VkVideoQueueFamilyProperties2KHR

New Enums

• VkQueryResultStatusKHR
• VkVideoCapabilityFlagBitsKHR
• VkVideoChromaSubsamplingFlagBitsKHR
• VkVideoCodecOperationFlagBitsKHR
• VkVideoCodingControlFlagBitsKHR
• VkVideoCodingQualityPresetFlagBitsKHR
• VkVideoComponentBitDepthFlagBitsKHR
• VkVideoSessionCreateFlagBitsKHR

New Bitmasks

• VkVideoBeginCodingFlagsKHR
• VkVideoCapabilityFlagsKHR
• VkVideoChromaSubsamplingFlagsKHR
• VkVideoCodecOperationFlagsKHR
• VkVideoCodingControlFlagsKHR
• VkVideoCodingQualityPresetFlagsKHR
• VkVideoComponentBitDepthFlagsKHR
• VkVideoEndCodingFlagsKHR
• VkVideoSessionCreateFlagsKHR

New Enum Constants

• VK_KHR_VIDEO_QUEUE_EXTENSION_NAME
• VK_KHR_VIDEO_QUEUE_SPEC_VERSION

Extending VkObjectType:
  ◦ VK_OBJECT_TYPE_VIDEO_SESSION_KHR
  ◦ VK_OBJECT_TYPE_VIDEO_SESSION_PARAMETERS_KHR

Extending VkQueryResultFlagBits:
  ◦ VK_QUERY_RESULT_WITH_STATUS_BIT_KHR

Extending VkQueryType:
  ◦ VK_QUERY_TYPE_RESULT_STATUS_ONLY_KHR

Extending VkStructureType:
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_PHYSICAL_DEVICE_VIDEO_FORMAT_INFO_KHR
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_BEGIN_CODING_INFO_KHR
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_BIND_MEMORY_KHR
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_CAPABILITIES_KHR
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_CODING_CONTROL_INFO_KHR
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_END_CODING_INFO_KHR
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_FORMAT_PROPERTIES_KHR
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_GET_MEMORY_PROPERTIES_KHR
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_PICTURE_RESOURCE_KHR
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_PROFILES_KHR
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_PROFILE_KHR
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_QUEUE_FAMILY_PROPERTIES_2_KHR
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_REFERENCE_SLOT_KHR
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_SESSION_CREATE_INFO_KHR
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_SESSION_PARAMETERS_CREATE_INFO_KHR
VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE_VIDEO_SESSION_PARAMETERS_UPDATE_INFO_KHR

Version History

• Revision 0.1, 2019-11-21 (Tony Zlatinski)
  ◦ Initial draft
• Revision 0.2, 2019-11-27 (Tony Zlatinski)
  ◦ Make vulkan video core common between decode and encode
• Revision 1, March 29 2021 (Tony Zlatinski)
  ◦ Spec and API updates.
• Revision 2, August 1 2021 (Srinath Kumarapuram)
  ◦ Rename VkVideoCapabilitiesFlagBitsKHR to VkVideoCapabilityFlagBitsKHR (along with the names of enumerants it defines) and VkVideoCapabilitiesFlagsKHR to VkVideoCapabilityFlagsKHR, following Vulkan naming conventions.
Appendix F: API Boilerplate

This appendix defines Vulkan API features that are infrastructure required for a complete functional description of Vulkan, but do not logically belong elsewhere in the Specification.

Vulkan Header Files

Vulkan is defined as an API in the C99 language. Khronos provides a corresponding set of header files for applications using the API, which may be used in either C or C++ code. The interface descriptions in the specification are the same as the interfaces defined in these header files, and both are derived from the vk.xml XML API Registry, which is the canonical machine-readable description of the Vulkan API. The Registry, scripts used for processing it into various forms, and documentation of the registry schema are available as described at https://www.khronos.org/registry/vulkan/#apiregistry.

Language bindings for other languages can be defined using the information in the Specification and the Registry. Khronos does not provide any such bindings, but third-party developers have created some additional bindings.

Vulkan Combined API Header vulkan.h (Informative)

Applications normally will include the header vulkan.h. In turn, vulkan.h always includes the following headers:

- vk_platform.h, defining platform-specific macros and headers.
- vulkan_core.h, defining APIs for the Vulkan core and all registered extensions other than window system-specific and provisional extensions, which are included in separate header files.

In addition, specific preprocessor macros defined at the time vulkan.h is included cause header files for the corresponding window system-specific and provisional interfaces to be included, as described below.

Vulkan Platform-Specific Header vk_platform.h (Informative)

Platform-specific macros and interfaces are defined in vk_platform.h. These macros are used to control platform-dependent behavior, and their exact definitions are under the control of specific platforms and Vulkan implementations.

Platform-Specific Calling Conventions

On many platforms the following macros are empty strings, causing platform- and compiler-specific default calling conventions to be used.

VKAPI_ATTR is a macro placed before the return type in Vulkan API function declarations. This macro controls calling conventions for C++11 and GCC/Clang-style compilers.

VKAPI_CALL is a macro placed after the return type in Vulkan API function declarations. This macro controls calling conventions for MSVC-style compilers.
VKAPI_PTR is a macro placed between the ‘(‘ and ‘*’ in Vulkan API function pointer declarations. This macro also controls calling conventions, and typically has the same definition as VKAPI_ATTR or VKAPI_CALL, depending on the compiler.

With these macros, a Vulkan function declaration takes the form of:

```
VKAPI_ATTR <return_type> VKAPI_CALL <command_name>(<command_parameters>);
```

Additionally, a Vulkan function pointer type declaration takes the form of:

```
typedef <return_type> (VKAPI_PTR *PFN_<command_name>)(<command_parameters>);
```

### Platform-Specific Header Control

If the VK_NO_STDINT_H macro is defined by the application at compile time, extended integer types used by the Vulkan API, such as uint8_t, must also be defined by the application. Otherwise, the Vulkan headers will not compile. If VK_NO_STDINT_H is not defined, the system <stdint.h> is used to define these types. There is a fallback path when Microsoft Visual Studio version 2008 and earlier versions are detected at compile time.

If the VK_NO_STDDEF_H macro is defined by the application at compile time, size_t, must also be defined by the application. Otherwise, the Vulkan headers will not compile. If VK_NO_STDDEF_H is not defined, the system <stddef.h> is used to define this type.

### Vulkan Core API Header `vulkan_core.h`

Applications that do not make use of window system-specific extensions may simply include `vulkan_core.h` instead of `vulkan.h`, although there is usually no reason to do so. In addition to the Vulkan API, `vulkan_core.h` also defines a small number of C preprocessor macros that are described below.

### Vulkan Header File Version Number

**VK_HEADER_VERSION** is the version number of the `vulkan_core.h` header. This value is kept synchronized with the patch version of the released Specification.

```
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
// Version of this file
#define VK_HEADER_VERSION 189
```

**VK_HEADER_VERSION_COMPLETE** is the complete version number of the `vulkan_core.h` header, comprising the major, minor, and patch versions. The major/minor values are kept synchronized with the complete version of the released Specification. This value is intended for use by automated tools to identify exactly which version of the header was used during their generation.

Applications should not use this value as their VkApplicationInfo::apiVersion. Instead applications
should explicitly select a specific fixed major/minor API version using, for example, one of the
*VK_API_VERSION_* values.

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
// Complete version of this file
#define VK_HEADER_VERSION_COMPLETE VK_MAKE_API_VERSION(0, 1, 2, VK_HEADER_VERSION)
```

*VK_API_VERSION* is now commented out of *vulkan_core.h* and cannot be used.

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
// DEPRECATED: This define has been removed. Specific version defines (e.g. 
// VK_API_VERSION_1_0), or the VK_MAKE_VERSION macro, should be used instead.
//#define VK_API_VERSION VK_MAKE_VERSION(1, 0, 0) // Patch version should always be 
// set to 0
```

**Vulkan Handle Macros**

*VK_DEFINE_HANDLE* defines a *dispatchable handle* type.

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0
#define VK_DEFINE_HANDLE(object) typedef struct object##_T* object;
```

- *object* is the name of the resulting C type.

The only dispatchable handle types are those related to device and instance management, such as *VkDevice*.

*VK_DEFINE_NON_DISPATCHABLE_HANDLE* defines a *non-dispatchable handle* type.

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0

#ifndef VK_DEFINE_NON_DISPATCHABLE_HANDLE
#if (VK_USE_64_BIT_PTR_DEFINES==1)
#define VK_DEFINE_NON_DISPATCHABLE_HANDLE(object) typedef struct object##_T
else
#define VK_DEFINE_NON_DISPATCHABLE_HANDLE(object) typedef uint64_t object;
#endif
#endif
```

- *object* is the name of the resulting C type.

Most Vulkan handle types, such as *VkBuffer*, are non-dispatchable.
The `vulkan_core.h` header allows the `VK_DEFINE_NON_DISPATCHABLE_HANDLE` and `VK_NULL_HANDLE` definitions to be overridden by the application. If `VK_DEFINE_NON_DISPATCHABLE_HANDLE` is already defined when `vulkan_core.h` is compiled, the default definitions for `VK_DEFINE_NON_DISPATCHABLE_HANDLE` and `VK_NULL_HANDLE` are skipped. This allows the application to define a binary-compatible custom handle which may provide more type-safety or other features needed by the application. Applications must not define handles in a way that is not binary compatible - where binary compatibility is platform dependent.

`VK_NULL_HANDLE` is a reserved value representing a non-valid object handle. It may be passed to and returned from Vulkan commands only when specifically allowed.

```c
// Provided by VK_VERSION_1_0

#ifndef VK_DEFINE_NON_DISPATCHABLE_HANDLE
    #if (VK_USE_64_BIT_PTR_DEFINES==1)
        #if (defined(__cplusplus) && (__cplusplus >= 201103L)) || (defined(_MSVC_LANG) && (_MSVC_LANG >= 201103L))
            #define VK_NULL_HANDLE nullptr
        #else
            #define VK_NULL_HANDLE ((void*)0)
        #endif
    #else
        #define VK_NULL_HANDLE 0ULL
    #endif
#else
    #define VK_NULL_HANDLE 0
#endif
#endif
```

`VK_USE_64_BIT_PTR_DEFINES` defines whether the default non-dispatchable handles are declared using either a 64-bit pointer type or a 64-bit unsigned integer type.

`VK_USE_64_BIT_PTR_DEFINES` is set to '1' to use a 64-bit pointer type or any other value to use a 64-bit unsigned integer type.
The `vulkan_core.h` header allows the `VK_USE_64_BIT_PTRDefines` definition to be overridden by the application. This allows the application to select either a 64-bit pointer type or a 64-bit unsigned integer type for non-dispatchable handles in the case where the predefined preprocessor check does not identify the desired configuration.

### Window System-Specific Header Control (Informative)

To use a Vulkan extension supporting a platform-specific window system, header files for that window systems **must** be included at compile time, or platform-specific types **must** be forward-declared. The Vulkan header files cannot determine whether or not an external header is available at compile time, so platform-specific extensions are provided in separate headers from the core API and platform-independent extensions, allowing applications to decide which ones should be defined and how the external headers are included.

Extensions dependent on particular sets of platform headers, or that forward-declare platform-specific types, are declared in a header named for that platform. Before including these platform-specific Vulkan headers, applications **must** include both `vulkan_core.h` and any external native headers the platform extensions depend on.

As a convenience for applications that do not need the flexibility of separate platform-specific Vulkan headers, `vulkan.h` includes `vulkan_core.h`, and then conditionally includes platform-specific Vulkan headers and the external headers they depend on. Applications control which platform-specific headers are included by defining macros before including `vulkan.h`.

The correspondence between platform-specific extensions, external headers they require, the platform-specific header which declares them, and the preprocessor macros which enable inclusion by `vulkan.h` are shown in the following table.

**Table 77. Window System Extensions and Headers**
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Extension Name</th>
<th>Window System Name</th>
<th>Platform-specific Header</th>
<th>Required External Headers</th>
<th>Controlling vulkan.h Macro</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>VK_KHR_android_surface</td>
<td>Android</td>
<td>Vulkan_android.h</td>
<td>None</td>
<td>VK_USE_PLATFORM_ANDROID_KHR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_KHR_wayland_surface</td>
<td>Wayland</td>
<td>Vulkan_wayland.h</td>
<td>&lt;wayland-client.h&gt;</td>
<td>VK_USE_PLATFORM_WAYLAND_KHR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_KHR_xcb_surface</td>
<td>X11 Xcb</td>
<td>Vulkan_xcb.h</td>
<td>&lt;xcb/xcb.h&gt;</td>
<td>VK_USE_PLATFORM_XCB_KHR</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>VK_KHR_xlib_surface</td>
<td>X11 Xlib</td>
<td>Vulkan_xlib.h</td>
<td>&lt;X11/Xlib.h&gt;</td>
<td>VK_USE_PLATFORM_XLIB_KHR</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Note**

This section describes the purpose of the headers independently of the specific underlying functionality of the window system extensions themselves. Each extension name will only link to a description of that extension when viewing a specification built with that extension included.

**Provisional Extension Header Control (Informative)**

Provisional extensions **should** not be used in production applications. The functionality defined by such extensions **may** change in ways that break backwards compatibility between revisions, and before final release of a non-provisional version of that extension.

Provisional extensions are defined in a separate provisional header, `vulkan_beta.h`, allowing applications to decide whether or not to include them. The mechanism is similar to window system-specific headers: before including `vulkan_beta.h`, applications **must** include `vulkan_core.h`.

**Note**

Sometimes a provisional extension will include a subset of its interfaces in `vulkan_core.h`. This may occur if the provisional extension is promoted from an existing vendor or EXT extension and some of the existing interfaces are defined as aliases of the provisional extension interfaces. All other interfaces of that provisional extension which are not aliased will be included in `vulkan_beta.h`.

As a convenience for applications, `vulkan.h` conditionally includes `vulkan_beta.h`. Applications **can** control inclusion of `vulkan_beta.h` by #defining the macro `VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS` before including `vulkan.h`.

1920 | Appendix F: API Boilerplate
Note
Starting in version 1.2.171 of the Specification, all provisional enumerants are protected by the macro `VK_ENABLE_BETA_EXTENSIONS`. Applications needing to use provisional extensions must always define this macro, even if they are explicitly including `vulkan_beta.h`. This is a minor change to behavior, affecting only provisional extensions.

Note
This section describes the purpose of the provisional header independently of the specific provisional extensions which are contained in that header at any given time. The extension appendices for provisional extensions note their provisional status, and link back to this section for more information. Provisional extensions are intended to provide early access for bleeding-edge developers, with the understanding that extension interfaces may change in response to developer feedback. Provisional extensions are very likely to eventually be updated and released as non-provisional extensions, but there is no guarantee this will happen, or how long it will take if it does happen.
Appendix G: Invariance

The Vulkan specification is not pixel exact. It therefore does not guarantee an exact match between images produced by different Vulkan implementations. However, the specification does specify exact matches, in some cases, for images produced by the same implementation. The purpose of this appendix is to identify and provide justification for those cases that require exact matches.

Repeatability

The obvious and most fundamental case is repeated issuance of a series of Vulkan commands. For any given Vulkan and framebuffer state vector, and for any Vulkan command, the resulting Vulkan and framebuffer state must be identical whenever the command is executed on that initial Vulkan and framebuffer state. This repeatability requirement does not apply when using shaders containing side effects (image and buffer variable stores and atomic operations), because these memory operations are not guaranteed to be processed in a defined order.

One purpose of repeatability is avoidance of visual artifacts when a double-buffered scene is redrawn. If rendering is not repeatable, swapping between two buffers rendered with the same command sequence may result in visible changes in the image. Such false motion is distracting to the viewer. Another reason for repeatability is testability.

Repeatability, while important, is a weak requirement. Given only repeatability as a requirement, two scenes rendered with one (small) polygon changed in position might differ at every pixel. Such a difference, while within the law of repeatability, is certainly not within its spirit. Additional invariance rules are desirable to ensure useful operation.

Multi-pass Algorithms

Invariance is necessary for a whole set of useful multi-pass algorithms. Such algorithms render multiple times, each time with a different Vulkan mode vector, to eventually produce a result in the framebuffer. Examples of these algorithms include:

- “Erasing” a primitive from the framebuffer by redrawing it, either in a different color or using the XOR logical operation.
- Using stencil operations to compute capping planes.

Invariance Rules

For a given Vulkan device:

Rule 1 For any given Vulkan and framebuffer state vector, and for any given Vulkan command, the resulting Vulkan and framebuffer state must be identical each time the command is executed on that initial Vulkan and framebuffer state.

Rule 2 Changes to the following state values have no side effects (the use of any other state value is not affected by the change):
Required:

- Color and depth/stencil attachment contents
- Scissor parameters (other than enable)
- Write masks (color, depth, stencil)
- Clear values (color, depth, stencil)

Strongly suggested:

- Stencil parameters (other than enable)
- Depth test parameters (other than enable)
- Blend parameters (other than enable)
- Logical operation parameters (other than enable)

Corollary 1 Fragment generation is invariant with respect to the state values listed in Rule 2.

Rule 3 The arithmetic of each per-fragment operation is invariant except with respect to parameters that directly control it.

Corollary 2 Images rendered into different color attachments of the same framebuffer, either simultaneously or separately using the same command sequence, are pixel identical.

Rule 4 Identical pipelines will produce the same result when run multiple times with the same input. The wording “Identical pipelines” means VkPipeline objects that have been created with identical SPIR-V binaries and identical state, which are then used by commands executed using the same Vulkan state vector. Invariance is relaxed for shaders with side effects, such as performing stores or atomics.

Rule 5 All fragment shaders that either conditionally or unconditionally assign FragCoord.z to FragDepth are depth-invariant with respect to each other, for those fragments where the assignment to FragDepth actually is done.

If a sequence of Vulkan commands specifies primitives to be rendered with shaders containing side effects (image and buffer variable stores and atomic operations), invariance rules are relaxed. In particular, rule 1, corollary 2, and rule 4 do not apply in the presence of shader side effects.

The following weaker versions of rules 1 and 4 apply to Vulkan commands involving shader side effects:

Rule 6 For any given Vulkan and framebuffer state vector, and for any given Vulkan command, the contents of any framebuffer state not directly or indirectly affected by results of shader image or buffer variable stores or atomic operations must be identical each time the command is executed on that initial Vulkan and framebuffer state.

Rule 7 Identical pipelines will produce the same result when run multiple times with the same input as long as:

- shader invocations do not use image atomic operations;
When any sequence of Vulkan commands triggers shader invocations that perform image stores or atomic operations, and subsequent Vulkan commands read the memory written by those shader invocations, these operations must be explicitly synchronized.

**Tessellation Invariance**

When using a pipeline containing tessellation evaluation shaders, the fixed-function tessellation primitive generator consumes the input patch specified by an application and emits a new set of primitives. The following invariance rules are intended to provide repeatability guarantees. Additionally, they are intended to allow an application with a carefully crafted tessellation evaluation shader to ensure that the sets of triangles generated for two adjacent patches have identical vertices along shared patch edges, avoiding “cracks” caused by minor differences in the positions of vertices along shared edges.

**Rule 1** When processing two patches with identical outer and inner tessellation levels, the tessellation primitive generator will emit an identical set of point, line, or triangle primitives as long as the pipeline used to process the patch primitives has tessellation evaluation shaders specifying the same tessellation mode, spacing, vertex order, and point mode decorations. Two sets of primitives are considered identical if and only if they contain the same number and type of primitives and the generated tessellation coordinates for the vertex numbered m of the primitive numbered n are identical for all values of m and n.

**Rule 2** The set of vertices generated along the outer edge of the subdivided primitive in triangle and quad tessellation, and the tessellation coordinates of each, depend only on the corresponding outer tessellation level and the spacing decorations in the tessellation shaders of the pipeline.

**Rule 3** The set of vertices generated when subdividing any outer primitive edge is always symmetric. For triangle tessellation, if the subdivision generates a vertex with tessellation coordinates of the form \((0, x, 1-x)\), \((x, 0, 1-x)\), or \((x, 1-x, 0)\), it will also generate a vertex with coordinates of exactly \((0, 1-x, x)\), \((1-x, 0, x)\), or \((1-x, x, 0)\), respectively. For quad tessellation, if the subdivision generates a vertex with coordinates of \((x, 0)\) or \((0, x)\), it will also generate a vertex with coordinates of exactly \((1-x, 0)\) or \((0, 1-x)\), respectively. For isoline tessellation, if it generates vertices at \((0, x)\) and \((1, x)\) where x is not zero, it will also generate vertices at exactly \((0, 1-x)\) and \((1, 1-x)\), respectively.
Rule 4 The set of vertices generated when subdividing outer edges in triangular and quad tessellation must be independent of the specific edge subdivided, given identical outer tessellation levels and spacing. For example, if vertices at \((x, 1-x, 0)\) and \((1-x, x, 0)\) are generated when subdividing the \(w = 0\) edge in triangular tessellation, vertices must be generated at \((x, 0, 1-x)\) and \((1-x, 0, x)\) when subdividing an otherwise identical \(v = 0\) edge. For quad tessellation, if vertices at \((x, 0)\) and \((1-x, 0)\) are generated when subdividing the \(v = 0\) edge, vertices must be generated at \((0, x)\) and \((0, 1-x)\) when subdividing an otherwise identical \(u = 0\) edge.

Rule 5 When processing two patches that are identical in all respects enumerated in rule 1 except for vertex order, the set of triangles generated for triangle and quad tessellation must be identical except for vertex and triangle order. For each triangle \(n_1\) produced by processing the first patch, there must be a triangle \(n_2\) produced when processing the second patch each of whose vertices has the same tessellation coordinates as one of the vertices in \(n_1\).

Rule 6 When processing two patches that are identical in all respects enumerated in rule 1 other than matching outer tessellation levels and/or vertex order, the set of interior triangles generated for triangle and quad tessellation must be identical in all respects except for vertex and triangle order. For each interior triangle \(n_1\) produced by processing the first patch, there must be a triangle \(n_2\) produced when processing the second patch each of whose vertices has the same tessellation coordinates as one of the vertices in \(n_1\). A triangle produced by the tessellator is considered an interior triangle if none of its vertices lie on an outer edge of the subdivided primitive.

Rule 7 For quad and triangle tessellation, the set of triangles connecting an inner and outer edge depends only on the inner and outer tessellation levels corresponding to that edge and the spacing decorations.

Rule 8 The value of all defined components of \(\text{TessCoord}\) will be in the range \([0, 1]\). Additionally, for any defined component \(x\) of \(\text{TessCoord}\), the results of computing \(1.0-x\) in a tessellation evaluation shader will be exact. If any floating-point values in the range \([0, 1]\) fail to satisfy this property, such values must not be used as tessellation coordinate components.
Appendix H: Lexicon

This appendix defines terms, abbreviations, and API prefixes used in the Specification.

Glossary

The terms defined in this section are used consistently throughout the Specification and may be used with or without capitalization.

Accessible (Descriptor Binding)
A descriptor binding is accessible to a shader stage if that stage is included in the `stageFlags` of the descriptor binding. Descriptors using that binding can only be used by stages in which they are accessible.

Acquire Operation (Resource)
An operation that acquires ownership of an image subresource or buffer range.

Adjacent Vertex
A vertex in an adjacency primitive topology that is not part of a given primitive, but is accessible in geometry shaders.

Active Object (Ray Tracing)
A primitive or instance in a ray tracing acceleration structure which has a corresponding ID, and is not inactive (meaning that it is visible to rays).

Alias (API type/command)
An identical definition of another API type/command with the same behavior but a different name.

Aliased Range (Memory)
A range of a device memory allocation that is bound to multiple resources simultaneously.

Allocation Scope
An association of a host memory allocation to a parent object or command, where the allocation's lifetime ends before or at the same time as the parent object is freed or destroyed, or during the parent command.

Aspect (Image)
An image may contain multiple kinds, or aspects, of data for each pixel, where each aspect is used in a particular way by the pipeline and may be stored differently or separately from other aspects. For example, the color components of an image format make up the color aspect of the image, and may be used as a framebuffer color attachment. Some operations, like depth testing, operate only on specific aspects of an image.

Attachment (Render Pass)
A zero-based integer index name used in render pass creation to refer to a framebuffer attachment that is accessed by one or more subpasses. The index also refers to an attachment
description which includes information about the properties of the image view that will later be attached.

**Availability Operation**
An operation that causes the values generated by specified memory write accesses to become available for future access.

**Available**
A state of values written to memory that allows them to be made visible.

**Axis-aligned Bounding Box**
A box bounding a region in space defined by extents along each axis and thus representing a box where each edge is aligned to one of the major axes.

**Back-Facing**
See Facingness.

**Batch**
A single structure submitted to a queue as part of a queue submission command, describing a set of queue operations to execute.

**Backwards Compatibility**
A given version of the API is backwards compatible with an earlier version if an application, relying only on valid behavior and functionality defined by the earlier specification, is able to correctly run against each version without any modification. This assumes no active attempt by that application to not run when it detects a different version.

**Binary Semaphore**
A semaphore with a boolean payload indicating whether the semaphore is signaled or unsignaled. Represented by a *VkSemaphore* object created with a semaphore type of *VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_BINARY*.

**Binding (Memory)**
An association established between a range of a resource object and a range of a memory object. These associations determine the memory locations affected by operations performed on elements of a resource object. Memory bindings are established using the *vkBindBufferMemory* command for non-sparse buffer objects, using the *vkBindImageMemory* command for non-sparse image objects, and using the *vkQueueBindSparse* command for sparse resources.

**Blend Constant**
Four floating point (RGBA) values used as an input to blending.

**Blending**
Arithmetic operations between a fragment color value and a value in a color attachment that produce a final color value to be written to the attachment.

**Buffer**
A resource that represents a linear array of data in device memory. Represented by a *VkBuffer*
Buffer Device Address
A 64-bit value used in a shader to access buffer memory through the PhysicalStorageBuffer storage class.

Buffer View
An object that represents a range of a specific buffer, and state that controls how the contents are interpreted. Represented by a VkBufferView object.

Built-In Variable
A variable decorated in a shader, where the decoration makes the variable take values provided by the execution environment or values that are generated by fixed-function pipeline stages.

Built-In Interface Block
A block defined in a shader that contains only variables decorated with built-in decorations, and is used to match against other shader stages.

Clip Coordinates
The homogeneous coordinate space that vertex positions (Position decoration) are written in by pre-rasterization shader stages.

Clip Distance
A built-in output from pre-rasterization shader stages that defines a clip half-space against which the primitive is clipped.

Clip Volume
The intersection of the view volume with all clip half-spaces.

Color Attachment
A subpass attachment point, or image view, that is the target of fragment color outputs and blending.

Color Renderable Format
A VkFormat where VK_FORMAT_FEATURE_COLOR_ATTACHMENT_BIT is set in one of the following, depending on the image's tiling:

- VkFormatProperties::linearTilingFeatures
- VkFormatProperties::optimalTilingFeatures

Combined Image Sampler
A descriptor type that includes both a sampled image and a sampler.

Command Buffer
An object that records commands to be submitted to a queue. Represented by a VkCommandBuffer object.
Command Pool
An object that command buffer memory is allocated from, and that owns that memory. Command pools aid multithreaded performance by enabling different threads to use different allocators, without internal synchronization on each use. Represented by a VkCommandPool object.

Compatible Allocator
When allocators are compatible, allocations from each allocator can be freed by the other allocator.

Compatible Image Formats
When formats are compatible, images created with one of the formats can have image views created from it using any of the compatible formats. Also see Size-Compatible Image Formats.

Compatible Queues
Queues within a queue family. Compatible queues have identical properties.

Complete Mipmap Chain
The entire set of mipmap levels that can be provided for an image, from the largest application specified mipmap level size down to the minimum mipmap level size. See Image Mipmap Sizing.

Completed Operation
A deferred operation whose corresponding command has been executed to completion. See Deferred Host Operations

Component (Format)
A distinct part of a format. Depth, stencil, and color channels (e.g. R, G, B, A), are all separate components.

Compressed Texel Block
An element of an image having a block-compressed format, comprising a rectangular block of texel values that are encoded as a single value in memory. Compressed texel blocks of a particular block-compressed format have a corresponding width, height, and depth that define the dimensions of these elements in units of texels, and a size in bytes of the encoding in memory.

Constant Integral Expressions
A SPIR-V constant instruction whose type is OpTypeInt. See Constant Instruction in section 2.2.1 “Instructions” of the Khronos SPIR-V Specification.

Coverage Index
The index of a sample in the coverage mask.

Coverage Mask
A bitfield associated with a fragment representing the samples that were determined to be covered based on the result of rasterization, and then subsequently modified by fragment operations or the fragment shader.
Cull Distance
A built-in output from pre-rasterization shader stages that defines a cull half-space where the primitive is rejected if all vertices have a negative value for the same cull distance.

Cull Volume
The intersection of the view volume with all cull half-spaces.

Decoration (SPIR-V)
Auxiliary information such as built-in variables, stream numbers, invariance, interpolation type, relaxed precision, etc., added to variables or structure-type members through decorations.

Deferrable Command
A command which allows deferred execution of host-side work. See Deferred Host Operations.

Deferrable Operation
A single logical item of host-side work which can be deferred. Represented by the VkDeferredOperationKHR object. See Deferred Host Operations.

Deprecated (feature)
A feature is deprecated if it is no longer recommended as the correct or best way to achieve its intended purpose.

Depth/Stencil Attachment
A subpass attachment point, or image view, that is the target of depth and/or stencil test operations and writes.

Depth/Stencil Format
A VkFormat that includes depth and/or stencil components.

Depth/Stencil Image (or ImageView)
A VkImage (or VkImageView) with a depth/stencil format.

Depth/Stencil Resolve Attachment
A subpass attachment point, or image view, that is the target of a multisample resolve operation from the corresponding depth/stencil attachment at the end of the subpass.

Derivative Group
A set of fragment shader invocations that cooperate to compute derivatives, including implicit derivatives for sampled image operations.

Descriptor
Information about a resource or resource view written into a descriptor set that is used to access the resource or view from a shader.

Descriptor Binding
An entry in a descriptor set layout corresponding to zero or more descriptors of a single descriptor type in a set. Defined by a VkDescriptorSetLayoutBinding structure.
**Descriptor Pool**

An object that descriptor sets are allocated from, and that owns the storage of those descriptor sets. Descriptor pools aid multithreaded performance by enabling different threads to use different allocators, without internal synchronization on each use. Represented by a `VkDescriptorPool` object.

**Descriptor Set**

An object that resource descriptors are written into via the API, and that can be bound to a command buffer such that the descriptors contained within it can be accessed from shaders. Represented by a `VkDescriptorSet` object.

**Descriptor Set Layout**

An object that defines the set of resources (types and counts) and their relative arrangement (in the binding namespace) within a descriptor set. Used when allocating descriptor sets and when creating pipeline layouts. Represented by a `VkDescriptorSetLayout` object.

**Device**

The processor(s) and execution environment that perform tasks requested by the application via the Vulkan API.

**Device Group**

A set of physical devices that support accessing each other's memory and recording a single command buffer that can be executed on all the physical devices.

**Device Index**

A zero-based integer that identifies one physical device from a logical device. A device index is valid if it is less than the number of physical devices in the logical device.

**Device Mask**

A bitmask where each bit represents one device index. A device mask value is valid if every bit that is set in the mask is at a bit position that is less than the number of physical devices in the logical device.

**Device Memory**

Memory accessible to the device. Represented by a `VkDeviceMemory` object.

**Device-Level Command**

Any command that is dispatched from a logical device, or from a child object of a logical device.

**Device-Level Functionality**

All device-level commands and objects, and their structures, enumerated types, and enumerants.

**Device-Level Object**

Logical device objects and their child objects. For example, `VkDevice`, `VkQueue`, and `VkCommandBuffer` objects are device-level objects.

**Device-Local Memory**

Memory that is connected to the device, and may be more performant for device access than...
host-local memory.

**Direct Drawing Commands**

*Drawing commands* that take all their parameters as direct arguments to the command (and not sourced via structures in buffer memory as the *indirect drawing commands*). Includes `vkCmdDraw` and `vkCmdDrawIndexed`.

**Disjoint**

*Disjoint planes* are *image planes* to which memory is bound independently.

A *disjoint image* consists of multiple *disjoint planes*, and is created with the `VK_IMAGE_CREATE_DISJOINT_BIT` bit set.

**Dispatchable Handle**

A handle of a pointer handle type which *may* be used by layers as part of intercepting API commands. The first argument to each Vulkan command is a dispatchable handle type.

**Dispatching Commands**

Commands that provoke work using a compute pipeline. Includes `vkCmdDispatch` and `vkCmdDispatchIndirect`.

**Drawing Commands**

Commands that provoke work using a graphics pipeline. Includes `vkCmdDraw`, `vkCmdDrawIndexed`, `vkCmdDrawIndirectCountKHR`, `vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCountKHR`, `vkCmdDrawIndirect`, and `vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect`.

**Duration (Command)**

The *duration* of a Vulkan command refers to the interval between calling the command and its return to the caller.

**Dynamic Storage Buffer**

A storage buffer whose offset is specified each time the storage buffer is bound to a command buffer via a descriptor set.

**Dynamic Uniform Buffer**

A uniform buffer whose offset is specified each time the uniform buffer is bound to a command buffer via a descriptor set.

**Dynamically Uniform**

See *Dynamically Uniform* in section 2.2 “Terms” of the Khronos SPIR-V Specification.

**Element**

Arrays are composed of multiple elements, where each element exists at a unique index within that array. Used primarily to describe data passed to or returned from the Vulkan API.

**Explicitly-Enabled Layer**

A layer enabled by the application by adding it to the enabled layer list in `vkCreateInstance` or `vkCreateDevice`. 
**Event**

A synchronization primitive that is signaled when execution of previous commands completes through a specified set of pipeline stages. Events can be waited on by the device and polled by the host. Represented by a `VkEvent` object.

**Executable State (Command Buffer)**

A command buffer that has ended recording commands and can be executed. See also Initial State and Recording State.

**Execution Dependency**

A dependency that guarantees that certain pipeline stages' work for a first set of commands has completed execution before certain pipeline stages' work for a second set of commands begins execution. This is accomplished via pipeline barriers, subpass dependencies, events, or implicit ordering operations.

**Execution Dependency Chain**

A sequence of execution dependencies that transitively act as a single execution dependency.

**Explicit chroma reconstruction**

An implementation of sampler Y'CbCr conversion which reconstructs reduced-resolution chroma samples to luma resolution and then separately performs texture sample interpolation. This is distinct from an implicit implementation, which incorporates chroma sample reconstruction into texture sample interpolation.

**Extension Scope**

The set of objects and commands that can be affected by an extension. Extensions are either device scope or instance scope.

**Extending Structure**

A structure type which may appear in the `pNext` chain of another structure, extending the functionality of the other structure. Extending structures may be defined by either core API versions or extensions.

**External Handle**

A resource handle which has meaning outside of a specific Vulkan device or its parent instance. External handles may be used to share resources between multiple Vulkan devices in different instances, or between Vulkan and other APIs. Some external handle types correspond to platform-defined handles, in which case the resource may outlive any particular Vulkan device or instance and may be transferred between processes, or otherwise manipulated via functionality defined by the platform for that handle type.

**External synchronization**

A type of synchronization required of the application, where parameters defined to be externally synchronized must not be used simultaneously in multiple threads.

**Facingness (Polygon)**

A classification of a polygon as either front-facing or back-facing, depending on the orientation (winding order) of its vertices.
Facingness (Fragment)
A fragment is either front-facing or back-facing, depending on the primitive it was generated from. If the primitive was a polygon (regardless of polygon mode), the fragment inherits the facingness of the polygon. All other fragments are front-facing.

Fence
A synchronization primitive that is signaled when a set of batches or sparse binding operations complete execution on a queue. Fences can be waited on by the host. Represented by a VkFence object.

Flat Shading
A property of a vertex attribute that causes the value from a single vertex (the provoking vertex) to be used for all vertices in a primitive, and for interpolation of that attribute to return that single value unaltered.

Format Features
A set of features from VkFormatFeatureFlagBits that a VkFormat is capable of using for various commands. The list is determined by factors such as VkImageTiling.

Fragment
A rectangular framebuffer region with associated data produced by rasterization and processed by fragment operations including the fragment shader.

Fragment Area
The width and height, in pixels, of a fragment.

Fragment Input Attachment Interface
Variables with UniformConstant storage class and a decoration of InputAttachmentIndex that are statically used by a fragment shader’s entry point, which receive values from input attachments.

Fragment Output Interface
A fragment shader entry point’s variables with Output storage class, which output to color and/or depth/stencil attachments.

Framebuffer
A collection of image views and a set of dimensions that, in conjunction with a render pass, define the inputs and outputs used by drawing commands. Represented by a VkFramebuffer object.

Framebuffer Attachment
One of the image views used in a framebuffer.

Framebuffer Coordinates
A coordinate system in which adjacent pixels’ coordinates differ by 1 in x and/or y, with (0,0) in the upper left corner and pixel centers at half-integers.

Framebuffer-Space
Operating with respect to framebuffer coordinates.
Framebuffer-Local
A framebuffer-local dependency guarantees that only for a single framebuffer region, the first set of operations happens-before the second set of operations.

Framebuffer-Global
A framebuffer-global dependency guarantees that for all framebuffer regions, the first set of operations happens-before the second set of operations.

Framebuffer Region
A framebuffer region is a set of sample (x, y, layer, sample) coordinates that is a subset of the entire framebuffer.

Front-Facing
See Facingness.

Full Compatibility
A given version of the API is fully compatible with another version if an application, relying only on valid behavior and functionality defined by either of those specifications, is able to correctly run against each version without any modification. This assumes no active attempt by that application to not run when it detects a different version.

Global Workgroup
A collection of local workgroups dispatched by a single dispatching command.

Handle
An opaque integer or pointer value used to refer to a Vulkan object. Each object type has a unique handle type.

Happen-after, happens-after
A transitive, irreflexive and antisymmetric ordering relation between operations. An execution dependency with a source of A and a destination of B enforces that B happens-after A. The inverse relation of happens-before.

Happen-before, happens-before
A transitive, irreflexive and antisymmetric ordering relation between operations. An execution dependency with a source of A and a destination of B enforces that A happens-before B. The inverse relation of happens-after.

Helper Invocation
A fragment shader invocation that is created solely for the purposes of evaluating derivatives for use in non-helper fragment shader invocations, and which does not have side effects.

Host
The processor(s) and execution environment that the application runs on, and that the Vulkan API is exposed on.

Host Mapped Device Memory
Device memory that is mapped for host access using vkMapMemory.
**Host Memory**
Memory not accessible to the device, used to store implementation data structures.

**Host-Accessible Subresource**
A buffer, or a linear image subresource in either the `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_PREINITIALIZED` or `VK_IMAGE_LAYOUT_GENERAL` layout. Host-accessible subresources have a well-defined addressing scheme which can be used by the host.

**Host-Local Memory**
Memory that is not local to the device, and may be less performant for device access than device-local memory.

**Host-Visible Memory**
Device memory that can be mapped on the host and can be read and written by the host.

**Identically Defined Objects**
Objects of the same type where all arguments to their creation or allocation functions, with the exception of `pAllocator`, are

1. Vulkan handles which refer to the same object or
2. identical scalar or enumeration values or
3. Host pointers which point to an array of values or structures which also satisfy these three constraints.

**Image**
A resource that represents a multi-dimensional formatted interpretation of device memory. Represented by a `VkImage` object.

**Image Subresource**
A specific mipmap level and layer of an image.

**Image Subresource Range**
A set of image subresources that are contiguous mipmap levels and layers.

**Image View**
An object that represents an image subresource range of a specific image, and state that controls how the contents are interpreted. Represented by a `VkImageView` object.

**Immutable Sampler**
A sampler descriptor provided at descriptor set layout creation time, and that is used for that binding in all descriptor sets allocated from the layout, and cannot be changed.

**Implicit chroma reconstruction**
An implementation of sampler `Y'CbCr` conversion which reconstructs the reduced-resolution chroma samples directly at the sample point, as part of the normal texture sampling operation. This is distinct from an explicit chroma reconstruction implementation, which reconstructs the reduced-resolution chroma samples to the resolution of the luma samples, then filters the result...
as part of texture sample interpolation.

Implicitly-Enabled Layer
A layer enabled by a loader-defined mechanism outside the Vulkan API, rather than explicitly by the application during instance or device creation.

Inactive Object (Ray Tracing)
A primitive or instance in a ray tracing acceleration structure which has a corresponding ID, but which will never report an intersection with any ray.

Index Buffer
A buffer bound via `vkCmdBindIndexBuffer` which is the source of index values used to fetch vertex attributes for a `vkCmdDrawIndexed` or `vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect` command.

Indexed Drawing Commands
*Drawing commands* which use an *index buffer* as the source of index values used to fetch vertex attributes for a drawing command. Includes `vkCmdDrawIndexed`, `vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCountKHR`, and `vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect`.

Indirect Commands
Drawing or dispatching commands that source some of their parameters from structures in buffer memory. Includes `vkCmdDrawIndirect`, `vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect`, `vkCmdDrawIndirectCountKHR`, `vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCountKHR`, and `vkCmdDispatchIndirect`.

Indirect Drawing Commands
*Drawing commands* that source some of their parameters from structures in buffer memory. Includes `vkCmdDrawIndirect`, `vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCountKHR`, `vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirectCountKHR`, and `vkCmdDrawIndexedIndirect`.

Initial State (Command Buffer)
A command buffer that has not begun recording commands. See also Recording State and Executable State.

Input Attachment
A descriptor type that represents an image view, and supports unfiltered read-only access in a shader, only at the fragment’s location in the view.

Instance
The top-level Vulkan object, which represents the application’s connection to the implementation. Represented by a `VkInstance` object.

Instance-Level Command
Any command that is dispatched from an instance, or from a child object of an instance, except for physical devices and their children.

Instance-Level Functionality
All instance-level commands and objects, and their structures, enumerated types, and
enumerants.

**Instance-Level Object**

High-level Vulkan objects, which are not physical devices, nor children of physical devices. For example, `VkInstance` is an instance-level object.

**Instance (Memory)**

In a logical device representing more than one physical device, some device memory allocations have the requested amount of memory allocated multiple times, once for each physical device in a device mask. Each such replicated allocation is an instance of the device memory.

**Instance (Resource)**

In a logical device representing more than one physical device, buffer and image resources exist on all physical devices but can be bound to memory differently on each. Each such replicated resource is an instance of the resource.

**Internal Synchronization**

A type of synchronization **required** of the implementation, where parameters not defined to be externally synchronized **may** require internal mutexing to avoid multithreaded race conditions.

**Invocation (Shader)**

A single execution of an entry point in a SPIR-V module. For example, a single vertex’s execution of a vertex shader or a single fragment’s execution of a fragment shader.

**Invocation Group**

A set of shader invocations that are executed in parallel and that **must** execute the same control flow path in order for control flow to be considered dynamically uniform.

**Invocation Repack Instruction**

A ray tracing shader call **instruction** where the implementation **may** change the set of invocations that are executing.

**Join (Deferred Host Operations)**

The act of instructing a thread to participate in the execution of a deferred operation. See **Deferred Host Operations**.

**Linear Resource**

A resource is **linear** if it is one of the following:

- a `VkBuffer`
- a `VkImage` created with `VK_IMAGE_TILING_LINEAR`

Because a `VkAccelerationStructureKHR` resource does not have memory bound to it directly, it is considered neither linear nor non-linear. However, the `VkBuffer` on which a `VkAccelerationStructureKHR` resource is placed is a linear resource.

A resource is **non-linear** if it is one of the following:

- a `VkImage` created with `VK_IMAGE_TILING_OPTIMAL`
Local Workgroup
A collection of compute shader invocations invoked by a single dispatching command, which share data via `WorkgroupLocal` variables and can synchronize with each other.

Logical Device
An object that represents the application’s interface to the physical device. The logical device is the parent of most Vulkan objects. Represented by a `VkDevice` object.

Logical Operation
Bitwise operations between a fragment color value and a value in a color attachment, that produce a final color value to be written to the attachment.

Lost Device
A state that a logical device may be in as a result of unrecoverable implementation errors, or other exceptional conditions.

Mappable
See Host-Visible Memory.

Memory Dependency
A memory dependency is an execution dependency which includes availability and visibility operations such that:

- The first set of operations happens-before the availability operation
- The availability operation happens-before the visibility operation
- The visibility operation happens-before the second set of operations

Memory Domain
A memory domain is an abstract place to which memory writes are made available by availability operations and memory domain operations. The memory domains correspond to the set of agents that the write can then be made visible to. The memory domains are host, device, shader, workgroup instance (for workgroup instance there is a unique domain for each compute workgroup) and subgroup instance (for subgroup instance there is a unique domain for each subgroup).

Memory Domain Operation
An operation that makes the writes that are available to one memory domain available to another memory domain.

Memory Heap
A region of memory from which device memory allocations can be made.

Memory Type
An index used to select a set of memory properties (e.g. mappable, cached) for a device memory allocation.
Minimum Miplevel Size
The smallest size that is permitted for a mipmap. For conventional images this is 1x1x1. See Image Miplevel Sizing.

Mip Tail Region
The set of mipmap levels of a sparse residency texture that are too small to fill a sparse block, and that **must** all be bound to memory collectively and opaquely.

Multi-planar
A *multi-planar format* (or “planar format”) is an image format consisting of more than one *plane*, identifiable with a `_2PLANE` or `_3PLANE` component to the format name and listed in Formats requiring sampler Y’C₆C₈ conversion for VK_IMAGE_ASPECT_COLOR_BIT image views. A *multi-planar image* (or “planar image”) is an image of a multi-planar format.

Non-Dispatchable Handle
A handle of an integer handle type. Handle values **may** not be unique, even for two objects of the same type.

Non-Indexed Drawing Commands
*Drawing commands* for which the vertex attributes are sourced in linear order from the vertex input attributes for a drawing command (i.e. they do not use an *index buffer*). Includes vkCmdDraw, vkCmdDrawIndirectCountKHR, and vkCmdDrawIndirect.

Normalized
A value that is interpreted as being in the range [0,1] as a result of being implicitly divided by some other value.

Normalized Device Coordinates
A coordinate space after perspective division is applied to clip coordinates, and before the viewport transformation converts to framebuffer coordinates.

Obsoleted (feature)
A feature is obsolete if it can no longer be used.

Opaque Capture Address
A 64-bit value representing the device address of a buffer or memory object that is expected to be used by trace capture/replay tools in combination with the bufferDeviceAddress feature.

Overlapped Range (Aliased Range)
The aliased range of a device memory allocation that intersects a given image subresource of an image or range of a buffer.

Ownership (Resource)
If an entity (e.g. a queue family) has ownership of a resource, access to that resource is well-defined for access by that entity.

Packed Format
A format whose components are stored as a single texel block in memory, with their relative
locations defined within that element.

**Payload**
Importable or exportable reference to the internal data of an object in Vulkan.

**Peer Memory**
An instance of memory corresponding to a different physical device than the physical device performing the memory access, in a logical device that represents multiple physical devices.

**Physical Device**
An object that represents a single device in the system. Represented by a `VkPhysicalDevice` object.

**Physical-Device-Level Command**
Any command that is dispatched from a physical device.

**Physical-Device-Level Functionality**
All physical-device-level commands and objects, and their structures, enumerated types, and enumerants.

**Physical-Device-Level Object**
Physical device objects. For example, `VkPhysicalDevice` is a physical-device-level object.

**Pipeline**
An object that controls how graphics or compute work is executed on the device. A pipeline includes one or more shaders, as well as state controlling any non-programmable stages of the pipeline. Represented by a `VkPipeline` object.

**Pipeline Barrier**
An execution and/or memory dependency recorded as an explicit command in a command buffer, that forms a dependency between the previous and subsequent commands.

**Pipeline Cache**
An object that can be used to collect and retrieve information from pipelines as they are created, and can be populated with previously retrieved information in order to accelerate pipeline creation. Represented by a `VkPipelineCache` object.

**Pipeline Layout**
An object that defines the set of resources (via a collection of descriptor set layouts) and push constants used by pipelines that are created using the layout. Used when creating a pipeline and when binding descriptor sets and setting push constant values. Represented by a `VkPipelineLayout` object.

**Pipeline Library**
A pipeline that cannot be directly used, instead defining a set of shaders and shader groups which will be linked into other pipelines.
Pipeline Stage
A logically independent execution unit that performs some of the operations defined by an action command.

Pipeline Trace Ray Instruction
A ray tracing instruction which traces a ray into an acceleration structure when using ray tracing pipelines. One of OpTraceRayKHR.

pNext Chain
A set of structures chained together through their pNext members.

Planar
See multi-planar.

Plane
An image plane is part of the representation of an image, containing a subset of the color channels required to represent the texels in the image and with a contiguous mapping of coordinates to bound memory. Most images consist only of a single plane, but some formats spread the channels across multiple image planes. The host-accessible properties of each image plane are accessed in a linear layout using vkGetImageSubresourceLayout. If a multi-planar image is created with the VK_IMAGE_CREATE_DISJOINT_BIT bit set, the image is described as disjoint, and its planes are therefore bound to memory independently.

Point Sampling (Rasterization)
A rule that determines whether a fragment sample location is covered by a polygon primitive by testing whether the sample location is in the interior of the polygon in framebuffer-space, or on the boundary of the polygon according to the tie-breaking rules.

Potential Format Features
The union of all VkFormatFeatureFlagBits that the implementation supports for a specified VkFormat, over all supported image tilings.

Pre-rasterization
Operations that execute before rasterization, and any state associated with those operations.

Presentable image
A VkImage object obtained from a VkSwapchainKHR used to present to a VkSurfaceKHR object.

Preserve Attachment
One of a list of attachments in a subpass description that is not read or written by the subpass, but that is read or written on earlier and later subpasses and whose contents must be preserved through this subpass.

Primary Command Buffer
A command buffer that can execute secondary command buffers, and can be submitted directly to a queue.
Primitive Topology
State that controls how vertices are assembled into primitives, e.g. as lists of triangles, strips of lines, etc..

Promoted (feature)
A feature from an older extension is considered promoted if it is made available as part of a new core version or newer extension with wider support.

Provisional
A feature is released provisionally in order to get wider feedback on the functionality before it is finalized. Provisional features may change in ways that break backwards compatibility, and thus are not recommended for use in production applications.

Provoking Vertex
The vertex in a primitive from which flat shaded attribute values are taken. This is generally the “first” vertex in the primitive, and depends on the primitive topology.

Push Constants
A small bank of values writable via the API and accessible in shaders. Push constants allow the application to set values used in shaders without creating buffers or modifying and binding descriptor sets for each update.

Push Constant Interface
The set of variables with PushConstant storage class that are statically used by a shader entry point, and which receive values from push constant commands.

Push Descriptors
Descriptors that are written directly into a command buffer rather than into a descriptor set. Push descriptors allow the application to set descriptors used in shaders without allocating or modifying descriptor sets for each update.

Descriptor Update Template
An object that specifies a mapping from descriptor update information in host memory to elements in a descriptor set, which helps enable more efficient descriptor set updates.

Query Pool
An object containing a number of query entries and their associated state and results. Represented by a VkQueryPool object.

Queue
An object that executes command buffers and sparse binding operations on a device. Represented by a VkQueue object.

Queue Family
A set of queues that have common properties and support the same functionality, as advertised in VkQueueFamilyProperties.
Queue Operation

A unit of work to be executed by a specific queue on a device, submitted via a queue submission command. Each queue submission command details the specific queue operations that occur as a result of calling that command. Queue operations typically include work that is specific to each command, and synchronization tasks.

Queue Submission

Zero or more batches and an optional fence to be signaled, passed to a command for execution on a queue. See the Devices and Queues chapter for more information.

Ray Tracing Command

Commands that provoke work using a ray tracing pipeline. Includes vkCmdTraceRaysKHR, and vkCmdTraceRaysIndirectKHR.

Recording State (Command Buffer)

A command buffer that is ready to record commands. See also Initial State and Executable State.

Release Operation (Resource)

An operation that releases ownership of an image subresource or buffer range.

Render Pass

An object that represents a set of framebuffer attachments and phases of rendering using those attachments. Represented by a VkRenderPass object.

Render Pass Instance

A use of a render pass in a command buffer.

Required Extensions

Extensions that must be enabled alongside extensions dependent on them (see Extension Dependencies).

Reset (Command Buffer)

Resetting a command buffer discards any previously recorded commands and puts a command buffer in the initial state.

Residency Code

An integer value returned by sparse image instructions, indicating whether any sparse unbound texels were accessed.

Resolve Attachment

A subpass attachment point, or image view, that is the target of a multisample resolve operation from the corresponding color attachment at the end of the subpass.

Retired Swapchain

A swapchain that has been used as the oldSwapchain parameter to vkCreateSwapchainKHR. Images cannot be acquired from a retired swapchain, however images that were acquired (but not presented) before the swapchain was retired can be presented.
Sample Index

The index of a sample within a single set of samples.

Sample Shading

Invoking the fragment shader multiple times per fragment, with the covered samples partitioned among the invocations.

Sampled Image

A descriptor type that represents an image view, and supports filtered (sampled) and unfiltered read-only access in a shader.

Sampler

An object containing state that controls how sampled image data is sampled (or filtered) when accessed in a shader. Also a descriptor type describing the object. Represented by a VkSampler object.

Secondary Command Buffer

A command buffer that can be executed by a primary command buffer, and must not be submitted directly to a queue.

Self-Dependency

A subpass dependency from a subpass to itself, i.e. with srcSubpass equal to dstSubpass. A self-dependency is not automatically performed during a render pass instance, rather a subset of it can be performed via vkCmdPipelineBarrier during the subpass.

Semaphore

A synchronization primitive that supports signal and wait operations, and can be used to synchronize operations within a queue or across queues. Represented by a VkSemaphore object.

Shader

Instructions selected (via an entry point) from a shader module, which are executed in a shader stage.

Shader Call

An instruction which may cause execution to continue in a different shader stage.

Shader Code

A stream of instructions used to describe the operation of a shader.

Shader Group

A set of Shader Stages that are part of a VkPipeline which contains multiple of such sets. This allows the device to make use of all the shader groups from the bound pipeline independently.

Shader Module

A collection of shader code, potentially including several functions and entry points, that is used to create shaders in pipelines. Represented by a VkShaderModule object.
Shader Stage
A stage of the graphics or compute pipeline that executes shader code.

Shading Rate
The ratio of the number of fragment shader invocations generated in a fully covered framebuffer region to the size (in pixels) of that region.

Shared presentable image
A presentable image created from a swapchain with VkPresentModeKHR set to either VK_PRESENT_MODE_SHARED_DEMAND_REFRESH_KHR or VK_PRESENT_MODE_SHARED_CONTINUOUS_REFRESH_KHR.

Side Effect
A store to memory or atomic operation on memory from a shader invocation.

Single-plane format
A format that is not multi-planar.

Size-Compatible Image Formats
When a compressed image format and an uncompressed image format are size-compatible, it means that the texel block size of the uncompressed format must equal the texel block size of the compressed format.

Sparse Block
An element of a sparse resource that can be independently bound to memory. Sparse blocks of a particular sparse resource have a corresponding size in bytes that they use in the bound memory.

Sparse Image Block
A sparse block in a sparse partially-resident image. In addition to the sparse block size in bytes, sparse image blocks have a corresponding width, height, and depth that define the dimensions of these elements in units of texels or compressed texel blocks, the latter being used in case of sparse images having a block-compressed format.

Sparse Unbound Texel
A texel read from a region of a sparse texture that does not have memory bound to it.

Static Use
An object in a shader is statically used by a shader entry point if any function in the entry point’s call tree contains an instruction using the object. Static use is used to constrain the set of descriptors used by a shader entry point.

Storage Buffer
A descriptor type that represents a buffer, and supports reads, writes, and atomics in a shader.

Storage Image
A descriptor type that represents an image view, and supports unfiltered loads, stores, and atomics in a shader.
Storage Texel Buffer
A descriptor type that represents a buffer view, and supports unfiltered, formatted reads, writes, and atomics in a shader.

Subpass
A phase of rendering within a render pass, that reads and writes a subset of the attachments.

Subpass Dependency
An execution and/or memory dependency between two subpasses described as part of render pass creation, and automatically performed between subpasses in a render pass instance. A subpass dependency limits the overlap of execution of the pair of subpasses, and can provide guarantees of memory coherence between accesses in the subpasses.

Subpass Description
Lists of attachment indices for input attachments, color attachments, depth/stencil attachment, resolve attachments, depth/stencil resolve, and preserve attachments used by the subpass in a render pass.

Subset (Self-Dependency)
A subset of a self-dependency is a pipeline barrier performed during the subpass of the self-dependency, and whose stage masks and access masks each contain a subset of the bits set in the identically named mask in the self-dependency.

Texel Block
A single addressable element of an image with an uncompressed VkFormat, or a single compressed block of an image with a compressed VkFormat.

Texel Block Size
The size (in bytes) used to store a texel block of a compressed or uncompressed image.

Texel Coordinate System
One of three coordinate systems (normalized, unnormalized, integer) that define how texel coordinates are interpreted in an image or a specific mipmap level of an image.

Timeline Semaphore
A semaphore with a strictly increasing 64-bit unsigned integer payload indicating whether the semaphore is signaled with respect to a particular reference value. Represented by a VkSemaphore object created with a semaphore type of VK_SEMAPHORE_TYPE_TIMELINE.

Uniform Texel Buffer
A descriptor type that represents a buffer view, and supports unfiltered, formatted, read-only access in a shader.

Uniform Buffer
A descriptor type that represents a buffer, and supports read-only access in a shader.

Units in the Last Place (ULP)
A measure of floating-point error loosely defined as the smallest representable step in a floating-
point format near a given value. For the precise definition see Precision and Operation of SPIR-V instructions or Jean-Michel Muller, “On the definition of ulp(x)”, RR-5504, INRIA. Other sources may also use the term “unit of least precision”.

**Unnormalized**
A value that is interpreted according to its conventional interpretation, and is not normalized.

**User-Defined Variable Interface**
A shader entry point’s variables with Input or Output storage class that are not built-in variables.

**Vertex Input Attribute**
A graphics pipeline resource that produces input values for the vertex shader by reading data from a vertex input binding and converting it to the attribute’s format.

**Vertex Input Binding**
A graphics pipeline resource that is bound to a buffer and includes state that affects addressing calculations within that buffer.

**Vertex Input Interface**
A vertex shader entry point’s variables with Input storage class, which receive values from vertex input attributes.

**View Mask**
When multiview is enabled, a view mask is a property of a subpass controlling which views the rendering commands are broadcast to.

**View Volume**
A subspace in homogeneous coordinates, corresponding to post-projection x and y values between -1 and +1, and z values between 0 and +1.

**Viewport Transformation**
A transformation from normalized device coordinates to framebuffer coordinates, based on a viewport rectangle and depth range.

**Visibility Operation**
An operation that causes available values to become visible to specified memory accesses.

**Visible**
A state of values written to memory that allows them to be accessed by a set of operations.

**Common Abbreviations**
The abbreviations and acronyms defined in this section are sometimes used in the Specification and the API where they are considered clear and commonplace.

**Src**
Source
Dst
  Destination

Min
  Minimum

Max
  Maximum

Rect
  Rectangle

Info
  Information

LOD
  Level of Detail

ID
  Identifier

UUID
  Universally Unique Identifier

Op
  Operation

R
  Red color component

G
  Green color component

B
  Blue color component

A
  Alpha color component

RTZ
  Round towards zero

RTE
  Round to nearest even

Prefixes

Prefixes are used in the API to denote specific semantic meaning of Vulkan names, or as a label to
avoid name clashes, and are explained here:

**VK/Vk/vk**
- Vulkan namespace
- All types, commands, enumerants and defines in this specification are prefixed with these two characters.

**PFN/pfn**
- Function Pointer
- Denotes that a type is a function pointer, or that a variable is of a pointer type.

**p**
- Pointer
- Variable is a pointer.

**vkCmd**
- Commands that record commands in command buffers
- These API commands do not result in immediate processing on the device. Instead, they record the requested action in a command buffer for execution when the command buffer is submitted to a queue.

**s**
- Structure
- Used to denote the `VK_STRUCTURE_TYPE*` member of each structure in `sType`
Appendix I: Credits (Informative)

Vulkan 1.2 is the result of contributions from many people and companies participating in the Khronos Vulkan Working Group, as well as input from the Vulkan Advisory Panel.

Members of the Working Group, including the company that they represented at the time of their most recent contribution, are listed in the following section. Some specific contributions made by individuals are listed together with their name.

Working Group Contributors to Vulkan

- Aaron Greig, Codeplay Software Ltd. (version 1.1)
- Aaron Hagan, AMD (version 1.1)
- Adam Jackson, Red Hat (versions 1.0, 1.1)
- Adam Śmigielski, Mobica (version 1.0)
- Aidan Fabius, Core Avionics & Industrial Inc. (version 1.2)
- Alan Baker, Google (versions 1.1, 1.2)
- Alan Ward, Google (versions 1.1, 1.2)
- Alejandro Piñeiro, Igalia (version 1.1)
- Alex Bourd, Qualcomm Technologies, Inc. (versions 1.0, 1.1)
- Alex Crabb, Caster Communications (version 1.2)
- Alex Walters, Imagination Technologies (version 1.2)
- Alexander Galazin, Arm (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)
- Allen Hux, Intel (version 1.0)
- Alon Or-bach, Samsung Electronics (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2) (WSI technical sub-group chair)
- Anastasia Stulova, Arm (version 1.2)
- Andreas Vasilakis, Think Silicon (version 1.2)
- Andres Gomez, Igalia (version 1.1)
- Andrew Cox, Samsung Electronics (version 1.0)
- Andrew Garrard, Samsung Electronics (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2) (format wrangler)
- Andrew Poole, Samsung Electronics (version 1.0)
- Andrew Rafter, Samsung Electronics (version 1.0)
- Andrew Richards, Codeplay Software Ltd. (version 1.0)
- Andrew Woloszyn, Google (versions 1.0, 1.1)
- Ann Thorsnes, Khronos (version 1.2)
- Antoine Labour, Google (versions 1.0, 1.1)
- Aras Pranckevičius, Unity Technologies (version 1.0)
• Ashwin Kolhe, NVIDIA (version 1.0)
• Baldur Karlsson, Independent (versions 1.1, 1.2)
• Barthold Lichtenbelt, NVIDIA (version 1.1)
• Bas Nieuwenhuizen, Google (versions 1.1, 1.2)
• Ben Bowman, Imagination Technologies (version 1.0)
• Benj Lipchak, Unknown (version 1.0)
• Bill Hollings, Brenwill (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)
• Bill Licea-Kane, Qualcomm Technologies, Inc. (versions 1.0, 1.1)
• Blaine Kohl, Khronos (version 1.2)
• Boris Zanin, Mobica (version 1.2)
• Brent E. Insko, Intel (version 1.0)
• Brian Ellis, Qualcomm Technologies, Inc. (version 1.0)
• Brian Paul, VMware (version 1.2)
• Caio Marcelo de Oliveira Filho, Intel (version 1.2)
• Cass Everitt, Oculus VR (versions 1.0, 1.1)
• Cemil Azizoglu, Canonical (version 1.0)
• Chad Versace, Google (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)
• Chang-Hyo Yu, Samsung Electronics (version 1.0)
• Chia-I Wu, LunarG (version 1.0)
• Chris Frascati, Qualcomm Technologies, Inc. (version 1.0)
• Christophe Riccio, Unity Technologies (versions 1.0, 1.1)
• Cody Northrop, LunarG (version 1.0)
• Colin Riley, AMD (version 1.1)
• Cort Stratton, Google (versions 1.1, 1.2)
• Courtney Goeltzenleuchter, Google (versions 1.0, 1.1)
• Craig Davies, Huawei (version 1.2)
• Dae Kim, Imagination Technologies (version 1.1)
• Damien Leone, NVIDIA (version 1.0)
• Dan Baker, Oxide Games (versions 1.0, 1.1)
• Dan Ginsburg, Valve Software (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)
• Daniel Johnston, Intel (versions 1.0, 1.1)
• Daniel Koch, NVIDIA (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)
• Daniel Rakos, AMD (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)
• Daniel Stone, Collabora (versions 1.1, 1.2)
• Daniel Vetter, Intel (version 1.2)
• David Airlie, Red Hat (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)
• David Mao, AMD (versions 1.0, 1.2)
• David Miller, Miller & Mattson (versions 1.0, 1.1) (Vulkan reference card)
• David Neto, Google (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)
• David Wilkinson, AMD (version 1.2)
• David Yu, Pixar (version 1.0)
• Dejan Mircevski, Google (version 1.1)
• Dominik Witczak, AMD (versions 1.0, 1.1)
• Donald Scorgie, Imagination Technologies (version 1.2)
• Dzmitry Malyshau, Mozilla (versions 1.1, 1.2)
• Ed Hutchins, Oculus (version 1.2)
• Emily Stearns, Khronos (version 1.2)
• Frank (LingJun) Chen, Qualcomm Technologies, Inc. (version 1.0)
• Fred Liao, Mediatek (version 1.0)
• Gabe Dagani, Freescale (version 1.0)
• Gabor Sines, AMD (version 1.2)
• Graeme Leese, Broadcom (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)
• Graham Connor, Imagination Technologies (version 1.0)
• Graham Sellers, AMD (versions 1.0, 1.1)
• Greg Fischer, LunarG (version 1.1)
• Hai Nguyen, Google (version 1.2)
• Hans-Kristian Arntzen, Arm (versions 1.1, 1.2)
• Henri Verbeet, Codeweavers (version 1.2)
• Hwanyong Lee, Kyungpook National University (version 1.0)
• Iago Toral, Igalia (versions 1.1, 1.2)
• Ian Elliott, Google (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)
• Ian Romanick, Intel (versions 1.0, 1.1)
• James Hughes, Oculus VR (version 1.0)
• James Jones, NVIDIA (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)
• James Riordon, Khronos (version 1.2)
• Jan Hermes, Continental Corporation (versions 1.0, 1.1)
• Jan-Harald Fredriksen, Arm (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)
• Jason Ekstrand, Intel (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)
• Jean-François Roy, Google (versions 1.1, 1.2)
• Jeff Bolz, NVIDIA (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)
• Jeff Juliano, NVIDIA (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)
• Jeff Leger, Qualcomm Technologies, Inc. (version 1.1)
• Jeff Vigil, Samsung Electronics (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)
• Jens Owen, Google (versions 1.0, 1.1)
• Jeremy Hayes, LunarG (version 1.0)
• Jesse Barker, Unity Technologies (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)
• Jesse Hall, Google (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)
• Joe Davis, Samsung Electronics (version 1.1)
• Johannes van Waveren, Oculus VR (versions 1.0, 1.1)
• John Kessenich, Google (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2) (SPIR-V and GLSL for Vulkan specification author)
• John McDonald, Valve Software (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)
• John Zulauf, LunarG (versions 1.1, 1.2)
• Jon Ashburn, LunarG (version 1.0)
• Jon Leech, Independent (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2) (XML toolchain, normative language, release wrangler)
• Jonas Gustavsson, Samsung Electronics (versions 1.0, 1.1)
• Jonas Meyer, Epic Games (version 1.2)
• Jonathan Hamilton, Imagination Technologies (version 1.0)
• Jordan Justen, Intel (version 1.1)
• Jungwoo Kim, Samsung Electronics (versions 1.0, 1.1)
• Jörg Wagner, Arm (version 1.1)
• Kalle Raita, Google (version 1.1)
• Karen Ghavam, LunarG (versions 1.1, 1.2)
• Karl Schultz, LunarG (versions 1.1, 1.2)
• Kathleen Mattson, Khronos (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)
• Kaye Mason, Google (version 1.2)
• Keith Packard, Valve (version 1.2)
• Kenneth Benzie, Codeplay Software Ltd. (versions 1.0, 1.1)
• Kenneth Russell, Google (version 1.1)
• Kerch Holt, NVIDIA (versions 1.0, 1.1)
• Kevin O’Neil, AMD (version 1.1)
• Kris Rose, Khronos (version 1.2)
• Kristian Kristensen, Intel (versions 1.0, 1.1)
• Krzysztof Iwanicki, Samsung Electronics (version 1.0)
• Larry Seiler, Intel (version 1.0)
• Lauri Ilola, Nokia (version 1.1)
• Lei Zhang, Google (version 1.2)
• Lenny Komow, LunarG (versions 1.1, 1.2)
• Lionel Landwerlin, Intel (versions 1.1, 1.2)
• Liz Maitral, Khronos (version 1.2)
• Lutz Latta, Lucasfilm (version 1.0)
• Maciej Jesionowski, AMD (version 1.1)
• Mais Alnasser, AMD (version 1.1)
• Marcin Rogucki, Mobica (version 1.1)
• Maria Rovatsou, Codeplay Software Ltd. (version 1.0)
• Mark Callow, Independent (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)
• Mark Kilgard, NVIDIA (versions 1.1, 1.2)
• Mark Lobodzinski, LunarG (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)
• Mark Young, LunarG (version 1.1)
• Markus Tavenrath, NVIDIA (version 1.1)
• Mateusz Przybylski, Intel (version 1.0)
• Mathias Heyer, NVIDIA (versions 1.0, 1.1)
• Mathias Schott, NVIDIA (versions 1.0, 1.1)
• Matt Netsch, Qualcomm Technologies, Inc. (version 1.1)
• Matthäus Chajdas, AMD (versions 1.1, 1.2)
• Maurice Ribble, Qualcomm Technologies, Inc. (versions 1.0, 1.1)
• Maxim Lukyanov, Samsung Electronics (version 1.0)
• Michael Lentine, Google (version 1.0)
• Michael O’Hara, AMD (version 1.1)
• Michael Phillip, Samsung Electronics (version 1.2)
• Michael Wong, Codeplay Software Ltd. (version 1.1)
• Michael Worcester, Imagination Technologies (versions 1.0, 1.1)
• Michal Pietrasiuk, Intel (version 1.0)
• Mika Isojarvi, Google (versions 1.0, 1.1)
• Mike Schuchardt, LunarG (versions 1.1, 1.2)
• Mike Stroyan, LunarG (version 1.0)
• Mike Weiblen, LunarG (versions 1.1, 1.2)
• Minyoung Son, Samsung Electronics (version 1.0)
• Mitch Singer, AMD (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)
• Mythri Venugopal, Samsung Electronics (version 1.0)
• Naveen Leekha, Google (version 1.0)
• Neil Henning, AMD (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)
• Neil Hickey, Arm (version 1.2)
• Neil Trevett, NVIDIA (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)
• Nick Penwarden, Epic Games (version 1.0)
• Nicolai Hähnle, AMD (version 1.1)
• Niklas Smedberg, Unity Technologies (version 1.0)
• Norbert Nopper, Independent (versions 1.0, 1.1)
• Nuno Subtil, NVIDIA (versions 1.1, 1.2)
• Pat Brown, NVIDIA (version 1.0)
• Patrick Cozzi, Independent (version 1.1)
• Patrick Doane, Blizzard Entertainment (version 1.0)
• Peter Lohrmann, AMD (versions 1.0, 1.2)
• Petros Bantolas, Imagination Technologies (version 1.1)
• Pierre Boudier, NVIDIA (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)
• Pierre-Loup Griffais, Valve Software (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)
• Piers Daniell, NVIDIA (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)
• Piotr Bialecki, Intel (version 1.0)
• Prabindh Sundareson, Samsung Electronics (version 1.0)
• Pyry Haulos, Google (versions 1.0, 1.1) (Vulkan conformance test subcommittee chair)
• Rajeev Rao, Qualcomm (version 1.2)
• Ralph Potter, Codeplay Software Ltd. (versions 1.1, 1.2)
• Ray Smith, Arm (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)
• Richard Huddy, Samsung Electronics (version 1.2)
• Rob Barris, NVIDIA (version 1.1)
• Rob Stepinski, Transgaming (version 1.0)
• Robert Simpson, Qualcomm Technologies, Inc. (versions 1.0, 1.1)
• Rolando Caloca Olivares, Epic Games (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)
• Roy Ju, Mediatek (version 1.0)
• Rufus Hamade, Imagination Technologies (version 1.0)
• Ruihao Zhang, Qualcomm Technologies, Inc. (versions 1.1, 1.2)
• Sean Ellis, Arm (version 1.0)
• Sean Harmer, KDAB Group (versions 1.0, 1.1)
• Shannon Woods, Google (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)
• Slawomir Cygan, Intel (versions 1.0, 1.1)
• Slawomir Grajewski, Intel (versions 1.0, 1.1)
• Sorel Bosan, AMD (version 1.1)
• Spencer Fricke, Samsung Electronics (version 1.2)
• Stefanus Du Toit, Google (version 1.0)
• Stephen Huang, Mediatek (version 1.1)
• Steve Hill, Broadcom (versions 1.0, 1.2)
• Steve Viggers, Core Avionics & Industrial Inc. (versions 1.0, 1.2)
• Stuart Smith, Imagination Technologies (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)
• Tilmann Scheller, Samsung Electronics (version 1.1)
• Tim Foley, Intel (version 1.0)
• Timo Suoranta, AMD (version 1.0)
• Timothy Lottes, AMD (versions 1.0, 1.1)
• Tobias Hector, AMD (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2) (validity language and toolchain)
• Tobin Ehlis, LunarG (version 1.0)
• Tom Olson, Arm (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2) (Working Group chair)
• Tomasz Bednarz, Independent (version 1.1)
• Tomasz Kubale, Intel (version 1.0)
• Tony Barbour, LunarG (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)
• Victor Eruhimov, Unknown (version 1.1)
• Vincent Hindriksen, StreamHPC (version 1.2)
• Wayne Lister, Imagination Technologies (version 1.0)
• Wolfgang Engel, Unknown (version 1.1)
• Yanjun Zhang, VeriSilicon (versions 1.0, 1.1, 1.2)

Other Credits

The Vulkan Advisory Panel members provided important real-world usage information and advice that helped guide design decisions.

The wider Vulkan community have provided useful feedback, questions and specification changes that have helped improve the quality of the Specification via GitHub.

Administrative support to the Working Group for Vulkan 1.1 and 1.2 was provided by Khronos staff including Angela Cheng, Ann Thorsnes, Blaine Kohl, Dominic Agoro-Ombaka, Emily Stearns, Jeff Phillips, Lisie Aartsen, and Liz Maitral; and by Alex Crabb of Caster Communications.

Administrative support for Vulkan 1.0 was provided by Andrew Riegel, Elizabeth Riegel, Glenn Fredericks, Kathleen Mattson and Michelle Clark of Gold Standard Group.

Technical support was provided by James Riordon, webmaster of Khronos.org and OpenGL.org.